



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>





Harvard College Library

FROM

*The Library of
Miss Grace Norton*



Grace Norton.

The Cottage

June 1891.

THE
POETICAL WORKS
OF
GEOFFREY CHAUCER.

THE OLD DRAMATISTS AND THE OLD POETS.

THE OLD DRAMATISTS.

SHAKESPEARE. With Remarks on his Life and Writings by THOMAS CAMPBELL; and Portrait, Vignette, Illustrations, and Index.

WYCHERLEY, CONGREVE, VANBRUGH, AND FARQUHAR. With Biographical and Critical Notices by LEIGHT HUNT; and Portrait and Vignette.

MASSINGER AND FORD. With an Introduction by HARTLEY COLERIDGE; and Portrait and Vignette.

BEN JONSON. With a Memoir by WILLIAM GIFFORD; and Portrait and Vignette.

DEAUMONT AND FLETCHER. With Introduction by GEORGE DARLEY; and Portraits and Vignettes. In Two Vols.

JOHN WEBSTER. With Life and Notes by the Rev. ALEXANDER DYCE.

MARLOWE. With a Memoir and Notes by the Rev. ALEXANDER DYCE.

GREENE AND PEELE'S DRAMATIC WORKS. Edited by the Rev. ALEXANDER DYCE.

THE OLD POETS.

SPENSER. With selected Notes, Life by the Rev. H. J. Todd, M.A.; Portrait, Vignette, and Glossarial Index.

CHAUCEER. With Notes and Glossary by TYRWHITT; and Portrait and Vignette.

DRYDEN. With Notes by the Revs. JOSEPH and JOHN WARTON; and Portrait and Vignette.

POPE. Including the Translations. With Notes and Life by Rev. H. F. CARY, A.M.; and Portrait.



Engraved by

E. D. Smith



GEOFFREY CHAUCER.

Printed by J. JOHNSON & SONS, Strand, near Ludgate Hill.

7

POETICAL WORKS

OF

GEOFFREY CHAUCER.



LONDON:
GEORGE ROUTLEDGE AND SONS,

0

THE
POETICAL WORKS
OF
GEOFFREY CHAUCER.

WITH
AN ESSAY ON HIS LANGUAGE AND VERSIFICATION.

AND
AN INTRODUCTORY DISCOURSE;

TOGETHER WITH
Notes and a Glossary.

BY THOMAS TYRWHITT.

LONDON:
GEORGE ROUTLEDGE AND SONS, LIMITED,
BROADWAY, LUDGATE HILL.
GLASGOW, MANCHESTER, AND NEW YORK.

12421.29.5
✓

PARLIAMENTARY LIBRARY
FROM THE LIBRARY OF
H. H. ASQUITH
SEP 14 1926

LONDON:
BRADBURY, AGNEW, & CO. LTD., PRINTERS, WHITEFRIARS.

2/5

TO
THE REV. ALEXANDER DYCE.

THIS EDITION OF
THE POETICAL WORKS OF CHAUCER,
IS INSCRIBED,

BY
THE PUBLISHER.

July, 1843.

CONTENTS

	PAGE
THE PREFACE	i
APPENDIX TO THE PREFACE	ii
(A) AN ACCOUNT OF FORMER EDITIONS OF THE CANTERBURY TALES	iii
(B) A LIST OF MSS. COLLATED, OR CONSULTED, WITH THE ABBREVIATIONS BY WHICH THEY ARE CITED	viii
(C) AN ABSTRACT OF THE HISTORICAL PASSAGES OF THE LIFE OF CHAUCER	ix
AN ESSAY ON THE LANGUAGE AND VERSIFICATION OF CHAUCER	xvi
AN INTRODUCTORY DISCOURSE TO THE CANTERBURY TALES	xlviii

THE CANTERBURY TALES.

{	THE PROLOGUE	1	
	THE KNIGHTES TALE <i>Chaucer's Knight's Tale</i>	7	<i>Chaucer's Knight's Tale</i>
	THE MILLERES TALE <i>Chaucer's Miller's Tale</i>	24	
	THE REVES TALE <i>Chaucer's Reeve's Tale</i>	29	<i>Chaucer's Reeve's Tale</i>
	THE COKES TALE <i>Chaucer's Cook's Tale</i>	33	
—	THE MAN OF LAWES TALE <i>Chaucer's Man of Law's Tale</i>	34	<i>Chaucer's Man of Law's Tale</i>
{	THE WIF OF BATHES TALE <i>Chaucer's Wife of Bath's Tale</i>	43	
	THE FRERES TALE	52	
	THE SOMPNOURES TALE <i>Chaucer's Somnouse's Tale</i>	55	
	THE CLERKES TALE <i>Chaucer's Clerk's Tale</i>	60	<i>Chaucer's Clerk's Tale</i>
	THE MARCHANTES TALE	70	
	THE SQUIERES TALE <i>Chaucer's Squire's Tale</i>	79	

CONTENTS.

12

THE HOUSE OF FAME

BOOK I.	373
" II.	376
" III.	381
CHAUCER'S DREAM	389
THE FLOWER AND THE LEAF	405
THE LEGEND OF GOOD WOMEN	410
THE LEGENDE OF CLEOPATRAS, QUEENE OF EGYPT	414
THE LEGEND OF TISBE OF BABILON	415
THE LEGEND OF DIDO, QUEENE OF CARTAGE	417
THE LEGEND OF HIPSPHILE AND MEDEA	420
THE LEGEND OF LUCRECE OF ROME	422
THE LEGEND OF ARIADNE OF ATHENS	424
THE LEGEND OF PHILOMENE	426
THE LEGENDE OF PHILLIS	427
THE LEGENDE OF HYPERMESTRE	429
THE COMPLAINT OF MARS AND VENUS	430
OF THE CUCKOW AND THE NIGHTINGALE	433
<i>for a profile.</i>	

MINOR POEMS.

L'ENVOY DE CHAUCER A BUKTON	436
BALADE SENT TO K. RICHARD	436
GOOD COUNSAIL OF CHAUCER	437
A BALLADE OF THE VILLAGE WITHOUT PAINTING	437
L'ENVOY DE CHAUCER. A SCOGAN	438
TO HIS EMPTY PURSE	438
A BALLAD MADE BY CHAUCER, TEACHING WHAT IS GENTILNESS, OR WHOM IS WORTHY TO BE CALLED GENTILL	438
PROVERBES AGAINST COVETISE AND NEGLIGENCE	439
CHAUCER'S WORDS UNTO HIS OWN SCRIVENER	439
PIRELA	439

b.

Mermaid Beauty, ...

CONTENTS.

GLOSSARY.

	PAGE
ADVERTISEMENT CONCERNING THE GLOSSARY	443
AN ACCOUNT OF THE WORKS OF CHAUCER, TO WHICH THE GLOSSARY IS ADAPTED; AND OF THOSE OTHER PIECES WHICH HAVE BEEN IMPROPERLY INTERMIXED WITH HIS IN THE EDITIONS	445
EXPLANATION OF THE ABBREVIATIONS BY WHICH THE WORKS OF CHAUCER AND SOME OTHER BOOKS ARE GENERALLY CITED IN THE FOLLOWING GLOSSARY	451
GLOSSARY	453
WORDS AND PHRASES NOT UNDERSTOOD	502

Inscription

FOR A STATUE OF CHAUCER

AT

WOODSTOCK.

SUCH WAS OLD CHAUCER; SUCH THE PLACID MIEN
OF HIM WHO FIRST WITH HARMONY INFORM'D
THE LANGUAGE OF OUR FATHERS. HERE HE DWELT
FOR MANY A CHEERFUL DAY. THESE ANCIENT WALLS
HAVE OFTEN HEARD HIM, WHILE HIS LEGENDS WITHIN
HIS SONG; OF LOVE, OR KNIGHTHOOD, OR THE WILES
OF HOMELY LIFE: THROUGH EACH ESTATE AND AGE,
THE FASHIONS AND THE FOLLIES OF THE WORLD
WITH CUNNING HAND FOURTRAYING. THOUGH PERCHANCE
FROM BLENHEIM'S TOWERS, O STRANGER, THOU ART COME
GLOWING WITH CHURCHILL'S TROPHIES; YET IN VAIN
DOST THOU APPLAUD THEM, IF THY BREAST BE COLD
TO HIM, THIS OTHER HERO; WHO, IN TIMES
DARK AND UNTAUGHT, BEGAN WITH CHARMING VERSE
TO TAKE THE RUDENESS OF HIS NATIVE LAND

AKENSIDE

THE PREFACE.

THE first object of this publication was to give the text of THE CANTERBURY TALES as correct as the MSS. within the reach of the Editor would enable him to make it.

The account of former Editions, in the Appendix to this Preface (A), will shew, that this object had hitherto been either entirely neglected, or at least very imperfectly pursued. The Editor therefore has proceeded as if his author had never been published before. He has formed the text throughout from the MSS. and has paid little regard to the readings of any edition, except the two by Caxton, each of which may now be considered as a Manuscript. A List of the MSS. collated, or consulted, upon this occasion is subjoined (B).

In order to make the proper use of these MSS., to unravel the confusions of their orthography, and to judge between a great number of various readings, it was necessary to enquire into the state of our language and versification at the time when Chaucer wrote, and also, as much as was possible, into the peculiarities of his style and manner of composition. Nor was it less necessary to examine with some attention the work now intended to be republished; to draw a line between the imperfections, which may be supposed to have been left in it by the author, and those which have crept into it since; to distinguish the parts where the author appears as an inventor, from those where he is merely a translator, or imitator; and throughout the whole to trace his allusions to a variety of forgotten books and obsolete customs. As a certain degree of information upon all these points will be found to be necessary even for the reading of the Canterbury Tales with intelligence and satisfaction, the Editor hopes he shall be excused for supposing, that the majority of his readers will not be displeased with his attempt to shorten at least the labour of their enquiries, by laying before them such parts of the result of his own researches, as he judges will be most conducive to that purpose. He has therefore added to the text, 1. AN ESSAY* ON THE LANGUAGE AND VERSIFICATION OF CHAUCER; 2. AN INTRODUCTORY DISCOURSE TO THE CANTERBURY TALES; and 3. NOTES,

* In this ESSAY, Part the third, §. 1-6. is contained a short view of English Poetry to the time of Chaucer, the trouble of compiling which the Editor might perhaps have saved himself, if he had foreseen, that Mr. Warton's *History of ENGLISH POETRY* would have appeared so soon. Both the *Essay* and the *Introductory Discourse* were printed before Mr. Warton's book was published; which is mentioned, not so much to obviate any suspicion of plagiarism, as to apologise for whatever defects there may be in either of those treatises, from a want of the lights which that learned and elegant writer has thrown upon all parts of this subject.

into which he has thrown an account of the most material various readings ; illustrations of particular passages ; and explanations of the most uncommon words and phrases, especially such as are omitted, or ill explained, in the Glossary to Urry's Edition.

He had once an intention of adding a Glossary*, and a Life of Chaucer. From the former of these undertakings he was deterred by the bulk to which this publication had already swollen, and by the consideration that a Glossary, adapted to a part only of Chaucer's writings, must necessarily be a very imperfect work, the utility of which would by no means be proportionable to the labour employed in compiling it. If this attempt, to invite the attention of the public to their too much neglected bard, should so far succeed as to bring to light any MSS, by the help of which, together with those in the Bodleian and other Libraries, the remainder of the writings of Chaucer might be restored to a tolerable degree of purity, a good Glossary to the whole would be a most useful work, and indeed would answer all the purposes of a Dictionary of our antient Language.

With respect to a life of Chaucer, he found, after a reasonable waste of time and pains in searching for materials, that he could add few *facts* to those, which have already appeared in several lives of that poet ; and he was not disposed, either to repeat the comments and inventions, by which former biographers have endeavoured to supply the deficiency of facts, or to substitute any of his own for the same laudable purpose. Instead therefore of a formal life of his author, which, upon these principles, must have been a very meagre narration, he has added to this Preface (c) a short **ABSTRACT OF THE HISTORICAL PASSAGES OF THE LIFE OF CHAUCER**, with remarks, which may serve to separate for the future those passages from others, which have nothing to recommend them to credit, but the single circumstance of having been often repeated.

He will detain the reader no longer than just to observe, that in the following edition of the *Canterbury Tales* he does not recollect to have deviated from the MSS. (except, perhaps, by adding the final *s* to a very few words) in any one instance, of which the reader is not advertised in the notes.

[* This intention the learned Editor afterwards carried into execution, and published a Glossary in 1778.]

Inscription
FOR A STATUE OF CHAUCER
AT
WOODSTOCK.

SUCH WAS OLD CHAUCER; SUCH THE PLACID MIRA
OF HIM WHO FIRST WITH HARMONY INFORM'D
THE LANGUAGE OF OUR FATHERS. HERE HE DWELT
FOR MANY A CHEERFUL DAY. THESE ANCIENT WALLS
HAVE OFTEN HEARD HIM, WHILE HIS LEGENDS BIRTH'D
HIS SONGS; OF LOVE, OR KNIGHTHOOD, OR THE WILES
OF HOMELY LIFE: THROUGH EACH ESTATE AND AGE,
THE FASHIONS AND THE FOLLIES OF THE WORLD
WITH CUNNING HAND PORTRAYING. THOUGH PERCHANCE
FROM BLENNHEIM'S TOWERS, O STRANGER, THOU ART COME
GLOWING WITH CHURCHILL'S TROPHIES; YET IN VAIN
DOST THOU APPLAUD THEM, IF THY BREAST BE COLD
TO HIM, THIS OTHER HERO; WHO, IN TIMES
DARK AND UNTAUGHT, BEGAN WITH CHARMING VERSE
TO TAME THE RUDENESS OF HIS NATIVE LAND

AKENSIDE

Ames mentions an Edition of Chaucer's *Canterbury Tales*, "Collected by William Caxton, and printed by Wynken de Worde at Westmestre, in 1496. Folio." He does not appear to have seen it himself, nor have I ever met with any other authority for its existence; which however I do not mean to dispute. If there was such an Edition, we may be tolerably sure, that it was only a copy of Caxton's.

This was certainly the case of both Pynson's Editions. He has prefixed to both the introductory part of Caxton's Prohemye to his 2d Edition, without the least alteration. In what follows, he says, that he purposes to imprint his book [in the first Edition] *by a copy of the said Master Caxton*, and [in the second] *by a copy of William Caxton's imprinting**. That the Copy, mentioned in both these passages, by which Pynson purposed to imprint, was really Caxton's second Edition, is evident from the slightest comparison of the three books. Pynson's first Edition has no date, but is supposed (upon good grounds, I think) to have been printed not long after 1491, the year of Caxton's death. His second Edition^d is dated in 1526, and was the first in which a Collection of some other pieces of Chaucer was added to the *Canterbury Tales*.

The next Edition, which I have been able to meet with, was printed by Thomas Godfray in 1532. If this be not the very Edition which Leland speaks of^e as printed by Berthelette, with

Mr. Lewis in his *Life of Caxton*, p. 104, has published a minute account of the contents of this edition from a copy in the Library of Magdalen College, Cambridge, but without deciding whether it is the first or the second edition.

It is undoubtedly the second; but the Preface is lost. There is an imperfect copy of this edition in the Museum, and another in the Library of the Royal Society. Both together would not make a complete one.

* See the *Prohemies* to Pynson's 1st and 2d Editt. in the Preface to Urry's Chaucer. There is a complete copy of Pynson's 1st Edit. in the Library of the Royal Society.

^d I venture to call this Pynson's 2d Edit. though Ames (from some notes of Bagford) speaks of Editions in 1520 and 1522. He does not appear to have seen them himself. Mr. West had a copy of the Edition of 1520, in which the name of the printer and the date of the impression are regularly set down at the end of the *Canterbury Tales*. After that follow "*Troilus and Creseide*" and "*The Boke of Fame*," at the end of which last is a note, copied from Caxton's edition of the same book, with this addition, *And here foloweth another of his workes*. But in Mr. West's copy nothing followed. The writer of the Preface to Ed. Urr. seems to have had the use of a copy of this Edition in 1526, which contained some other pieces of Chaucer's, and several by other hands. See the Pref. to Ed. Urr.

^e I think it necessary to state Leland's account of the editions of Chaucer in his own words, from Tanner's *Bibl. Brit.* v. Chaucer. "Non alienum meo erit instituto palam facere, *Gulielmum Caxodunum*, hominem nec indiligentem nec indoctum, et quem constat primum Londini artem exercuisse typographicam, *Chauceri opera*, quotquot vel prelo vel precibus comparare potuit, in unum volumen collegisse. Vicit tamen Caxodunioam editionem *Bertheletus* noster operâ *Gulielmi Thynni*, qui multo labore, sedulitate, ac curâ usus in perquirendis vetustis exemplaribus, multa *primæ* adiecit *editioni*. Sed nec in hac parte caruit *Brianus Tucca*, mihi familiaritate conjunctissimus, et Anglicæ lingue oloquentiâ mirificus, eâ gloriâ, editâ in postremam impressionem *præfatione* elimatâ, luculentâ, elegantî. Sequar igitur codicem *paucis abhinc annis* impressum, et promissum adponam syllabon." He then gives a Syllabus of the works of Chaucer, contained in that Edition, as follows: "*Fabula Cantilane* xxiv, quarum due solutâ oratione scripte s; sed *Petri Aratoris fabula*, quæ communi doctorum consensu Chaucero, tanquam vero parenti, attribuitur, in utriusque editione, quia malos sacerdotum mores vehementer inreperavit, suppressa est. *De arte amandi alias Romance of the Rose*," &c.

Before I make any remarks upon this account, I must observe that it was drawn up by Leland before the year 1540. This appears from his "New Year's gift to Henry VIII. in the xxxvii year of his raygne," (1 Jan. 1546.) in which he says expressly, that he had spent the last six years in travelling about the kingdom, "all his other occupations intermitted." [Ed. 1748. p. xxii. prefixed to Leland's *Itin.* v. l.] so that his book *De Viris illustribus*, which he speaks of as finished in the same piece, p. xxi. must have been finished before he set out upon his travels. I will observe too, by the way, that the Biographers of Leland seem to have confounded these last six years travels with his former travels, in execution of the Commission granted to him by Henry VIII. to scrothe the Libraries of Monasteries, Colleges, &c. That Commission was granted in the year 1533, 25 H. VIII. but how many years he spent in the execution of it, there is no authority, that I can find, for determining with precision.

In the account above-quoted, Leland is certainly mistaken in saying that Caxton collected the works of Chaucer into one volume. He printed two Editions of the *Canterbury Tales* by themselves, as has been shewn above. He also

the assistance of Mr. William Thynne, (as I rather suspect it is,) we may be assured that it was copied from that. Mr. Thynne's Dedication to Henry VIII. stands at the head of it; and the great number of Chaucer's works, never before published, which appear in it, fully

printed Boethius, Troilus and Cressida, and the Boke of Fame; but each in a separate volume; and some smaller pieces of Chaucer, intermixed with several of Lydgate, &c. in another volume, of which the contents may be seen in Middleton's Dissert. p. 263. n. [d]; but it does not appear that he ever attempted to collect these separate publications into one volume.

Leland is also inaccurate, at least, in representing the edition by Thynne as coming next after that by Caxton, without taking any notice of the intermediate editions by Fynson, and especially that in 1526, in which an attempt was really made to collect the works of Chaucer into one volume.

It may appear presumptuous to go further, and to charge him with inaccuracy in his description of that very edition by Thynne, which he seems to have had before his eyes, but I am much inclined to suspect, (as I have intimated in the text,) that the edition which he speaks of as printed by Berthelette was really printed by Godfray, and that the Preface of *Brianus Tuces* (Sir Brian Tuke) which he commends so much, was nothing else but the Prefatory address, or Dedication, to the King, which is prefixed to Godfray's and other later editions in the name of Mr. William Thynne. The mistake may not have been so extravagant, as it appears to be at first. It is possible, that Berthelette might be concerned in putting forth the edition of 1532, though it was printed by Godfray; and it is very probable, that the Dedication, (which is in such a style as I think very likely to be commended by Leland,) though standing in the name of Mr. William Thynne, was composed for him by Sir Brian Tuke. Mr. Thynne himself, I apprehend, was rather a lover, than a master, of these studies.

In support of this suspicion I observe, 1. that the syllabus, which Leland has given of the contents of Berthelette's edition, agrees exactly enough with the contents of the edition by Godfray, a few small pieces only being omitted by him. 2. The date of Godfray's Edition in 1532 agrees perfectly with what Leland says of the edition in question, (viz. that it was printed a few years before,) and with the probable date of Mr. Thynne's edition, which appears to have been published not earlier than 1530, and certainly not later than 1532. It was not published earlier than 1530, because the *French Grammar made by an Englishman*, mentioned in the Dedication, must mean, in all probability, *L'claircissement de la langue Françoise* by John Palgrave, the printing of which was finished by John Hawkins, xviii July, 1530, and the Privilege granted on the 2 September following. It was not later than 1532, because the Dedication appears in Godfray's edition of that year. 3. If Berthelette had printed Mr. Thynne's edition, in 1531 (we will suppose), it is inconceivable that Godfray should set about another edition so immediately as to be able to publish it the very next year. Though the printers of that age had a very imperfect notion, I apprehend, of Copy-right at Common Law, they may be presumed to have had always a certain Common Sense, which would restrain them from undertaking a new impression of a book, while a considerable number of copies of a former impression remained unsold, whether those copies belonged to themselves or to others. Besides, Godfray's edition has no appearance of a hasty, piratical impression. It is upon a fine paper, and the types and presswork are remarkably neat and elegant. 4. I think we have Berthelette's own authority for believing that he did not print Mr. Thynne's edition of Chaucer. In the preface to Gower's *Confessio Amantis*, which he published in this very year 1532, after having mentioned *Troilus and Cressida*, he goes on thus: "The whiche noble warke and many other of the sayde Chaucers, that never were before imprinted, and those that very fewe men knewe and fewe hadde them, be now of late put forth together in a fayre volume." There can be no doubt that in this passage he refers to Mr. Thynne's edition, and if he had printed it himself, I think he would certainly have claimed the honour of it. At the same time, the favourable manner in which he speaks of it, would lead one to imagine, (as has been suggested above,) that he had some concern in it.

Upon the whole therefore I am persuaded, that the edition by Godfray in 1532 is the edition which Leland speaks of as printed by Berthelette. I have given above what I conjecture to have been the probable grounds of his mistake. But indeed, when we recollect the hurry in which this work of Leland must have been compiled, and that it was left by him unfinished, we need not seek for any other causes of the inaccuracies with which it abounds. In the latter part of the passage cited above, he speaks of *The Ploughman's Tale* by the title of *Petri Aratoris fabula*, confounding it, in the title at least, with *Pierce Ploughman's Visions*. For I do not suppose that he meant to attribute the *Visions* to Chaucer; though in fact the one might as well be attributed to him as the other.

Notwithstanding the immoderate length of this note, I must not suppress another testimony, which may be produced in favour of the existence of an Edition of Chaucer by Mr. Thynne, distinct from that printed by Godfray. Mr. Spaght in his *Life of Chaucer* has the following passage: "M. William Thynn in his first printed booke of Chaucers works with one columbe on a side, had a Tale called the Pilgrims tale, which was more odious to the Clergie, than the speech of the Plowman. The tale began thus: *In Lincolneshire fast by a fenne; Standeth a religious house who doth it house.* The argument of which tale, as also the occasion thereof, and the cause why it was left out of Chaucers works, shall hereafter be shewed, if God permit, in M. Fran. Thyns coment upon Chaucer: and the Tale itself published if possibly it can be found."

It must be allowed that this description of Mr. Thynne's first edition, "with one columbe on a side, and a tale called the Pilgrim's tale," does not suit the edition printed by Godfray which is in two columns and has no Pilgrim's tale.

entitles it to the commendations, which have always been given to Mr. Thynne's edition on that account. Accordingly, it was several times reprinted as the standard edition of Chaucer's works, without any material alteration, except the insertion of the Plowman's tale in 1542, of which I have spoken in the Discourse, &c. n. 32.

As my business here is solely with the Canterbury Tales, I shall take no notice of the several miscellaneous pieces, by Chaucer and others, which were added to them by Mr. Thynne in his Edition, and afterwards by Stowe and Speght in the Editions of 1561, 1597, and

But I observe that Mr. Speght does not pretend to have seen this book. He even doubts whether the tale can be found. If therefore I should be able to prove, that the Tale, which he speaks of, could not possibly be in Mr. Thynne's first edition, I presume no great stress will be laid upon the other part of his evidence, in which he supposes that edition to have been printed with only one column on a side.

It appears very strange, at first sight, that the Plowman's Tale (according to Leland) should have been suppressed in Mr. Thynne's edition, *quia malos sacerdotum mores vehementer increpavit*, and that he should have inserted this Pilgrim's Tale, which, as Mr. Speght tells us, was still *more odious to the Clergy*. A few years after, when the Reformation was further advanced, in 1549, the Plowman's Tale is inserted among Chaucer's works and the Pilgrim's Tale is suppressed! But there is no occasion to insist upon these little improbabilities. Though Mr. Speght did not know where to find the Pilgrim's Tale, and the Printer of the Edit. in 1607 assures us, that he had searched for it "in the public libraries of both Universities," and also "in all private libraries that he could have access unto," I have had the good fortune to meet with a copy*. It is entitled, "*The Pilgrimage tale*," and begins thus:

In Lincolnshyr fast by the fene
Ther stant an hows and you yt ken,
And callid sempynham of religion
And is of an old foundation, &c.

There can be no doubt, I think, that this is the piece of which Mr. Speght had received some confused intelligence: It seems to have been mentioned by Bale among Chaucer's works, in the following manner. "*Narrationes diversorum, Lib. I. In comitatu Lincolnensi fuit*—" *Script. Brit.* p. 526. Ed. 1558. But it is impossible that any one who had read it should ascribe it to Chaucer. He is quoted in it twice by name, fol. xxxiii. and fol. xiv. and in the latter place the reference seems to be made to a printed book. The reader shall judge.—

He sayd he durst not it disclose,
But bad me reyd the Romant of the Rose,
The thred leafe just from the end,
To the second page ther he did me send,
He prayd me thes vi. stavis for to make,
Whiche be Chaucers awn hand werk.
¶ Thus moche wold our boke signify
That while Peter hath mastery, &c.

[Then follow four more lines from Chaucer's R. R. v. 7363—8 Ed. Urr.] It is not usual, at least, to cite MSS. by the leaf and the page. But if this citation was really made from a printed book, the Pilgrim's tale must have been written after Mr. Thynne's edition, for Chaucer's translation of the Romant of the Rose was first printed in that edition. Another passage will fix the date of this composition still more clearly. In fol. xxxix. xl. are the following lines:

Perkin werbeck and Jak straw
And now of late our cobbler the dawe.

One would not expect to find any mention of *Perkin Warbeck* in a work attributed to Chaucer; but, passing that over, I think it is plain, that *our cobbler*, in the second line, means the leader of the Lincolnshire rebels in 1536, who, as Hollinshed tells us, p. 241. "called himself *Captaine Cobler*, but was indeed a monk, named Doctor Mackarell." The *Pilgrim's tale* therefore was not written till after 1536, and consequently could not possibly be in Mr. Thynne's first Edition, which, as has been shewn above, was printed at latest in 1532.

* The copy, of which I speak, is in the black letter, and seems to have once made part of a volume of miscellaneous poems in 8vo. The first leaf is numbered xxxi. and the last xiv. The *Pilgrim's tale* begins about the middle of fol. xxxi. vers. and continues to the end of the fragment, where it breaks off imperfect. The first leaf has a running title—*Venus The Court of*—and contains the ten last lines of one poem, and another whole poem of twenty lines, before the *Pilgrim's tale*.

This curious fragment was purchased at the Auction of Mr. West's library, in a lot (N^o 1040) of *Sundry fragments of old black-letter books*, by Mr. Herbert of Guelston's Square, who very obligingly permitted me to examine it.

1602. With respect to the *Canterbury Tales*, I am under a necessity of observing, that, upon the whole, they received no advantage from the edition of 1532. Its material variations from Caxton's second edition are all, I think, for the worse. It confounds the order of the *Squire's*^f and the *Franklein's*^g tales, which Caxton, in his second Edition, had set right. It gives the *Franklein's* Prologue to the *Merchant*, in addition to his own proper Prologue^h. It produces for the first time two Prologues, the one to the *Doctor's*, and the other to the *Shipman's* tale, which are both evidently spuriousⁱ; and it brings back the lines of ribaldry^j in the *Merchant's* tale, which Caxton, in his second Edition, had rejected upon the authority of his good MS.

However, this Edition of 1532, with all its imperfections, had the luck, as I have said, to be considered as the standard edition, and to be copied, not only by the Booksellers, in their several Editions^k of 1542, 1546, 1555, and 1561, but also by Mr. Speght, (the first Editor in form, after Mr. Thynne, who set his name to his work,) in 1597 and 1602. In the Dedication to Sir Robert Cecil, prefixed to this last edition, he speaks indeed of having "reformed the whole work, both by old written copies and by Ma. William Thynnes praise-worthy labours," but I cannot find that he has departed in any material point from those editions, which I have supposed to be derived from Mr. Thynne's. In the very material points abovementioned, in which those editions vary from Caxton's second, he has followed them. Nor have I observed any such verbal varieties, as would induce one to believe that he had consulted any good MS. They who have read his Preface, will probably not regret, that he did not do more towards correcting the text of Chaucer.

In this state the *Canterbury Tales* remained^l till the edition undertaken by Mr. Urry, which was published, some years after his death, in 1721. I shall say but little of that edition, as a very fair and full account of it is to be seen in the modest and sensible Preface prefixed to it by Mr. Timothy Thomas^m, upon whom the charge of publishing Chaucer devolved, or rather

^f See the Discourse, &c. §. xxiii. and Note on ver. 10223.

^g See the Discourse, &c. §. xxv. and Note on ver. 10085.

^h See the same Section and Note.

ⁱ See them in all the Editts. since 1532.

^j See the Note on ver. 10227. The lines themselves are in all the common Editts.

^k There are some other Editions mentioned by Ames, without date, but it is probable that, upon inspection, they could appear to be one or other of the Editions, whose dates are here given. It seems to have been usual to print books in partnership, and for each partner to print his own name to his share of the impression. See Ames, p. 252. A Bible is said to be printed in 1551, by Nicholas Hill—"at the cost and charges of certayne honest menne of the occupacyon, whose names be upon their books."

^l It may be proper just to take notice, that Mr. Speght's Edition was reprinted in 1687, with an Advertisement at the end, in which the Editor pretended to publish from a MS. the conclusion of the *Coke's Tale* and also of the *Squire's Tale*, which in the printed books are said to be lost or never finished by the author.—These Conclusions may be seen in the Preface to Ed. Urry. Whoever the Editor was, I must do him the justice to say, that they are both really to be found in MS. The first is in MS. B. a. and the other in MS. B. 3. from which Hearne has also printed it, as a choice discovery, in his Letter to Bagford. App. to R. G. p. 601. If I thought the Reader had any relish for such supplements to Chaucer, I could treat him from MS. B. a. with at least thirty more lines, which have been inserted in different parts of the *Cook's Tale*, by the same hand that wrote this Conclusion. It seems to have been an early, though very unsuccessful, attempt to supply the deficiencies of that Tale, before any one had thought of tacking Chaucer to it.

^m I learn this from a MS. note in an interleaved copy of Urry's Chaucer, presented to the British Museum by Mr. William Thomas, a brother, as I apprehend, of Mr. T. Thomas. T. Thomas was of Christ-Church, Oxford, and died in 1731, aged lix. In another note Mr. W. Thomas informs us, that the *Life of Chaucer*, in that edition, was very uncorrectly drawn up by Mr. Dart, and corrected and enlarged by W. T. (i. e. himself.) The same Mr. W. Thomas has taken a great deal of unnecessary pains in collating that copy of Urry's Edit. with several MSS. The best part of the various

was imposed, after Mr. Urry's death. The strange licence, in which Mr. Urry appears to have indulged himself, of lengthening and shortening Chaucer's words according to his own fancy, and of even adding words of his own, without giving his readers the least notice, has made the text of Chaucer in his edition by far the worst that was ever published.

Since this there has been no complete Edition of the *Canterbury Tales*. A volume in 8vo containing the Prologue and the *Knights Tale*, with large explanatory notes, &c. was published in 1737, by a Gentleman, (as I am informed,) who has since distinguished himself by many other learned and useful publications. He appears to have set out upon the only rational plan of publishing Chaucer, by collating the best MSS. and selecting from them the genuine readings; and accordingly his edition, as far as it goes, is infinitely preferable to any of those which preceded it.

(a) A LIST OF MSS. COLLATED, OR CONSULTED, WITH THE ABBREVIATIONS BY WHICH THEY ARE CITED.

IN THE MUSEUM.

- A. MS. Harl. 7335.
- B. MS. Reg. 18 C. ii. In Urry's List, vii.
- C. MS. Harl. 7334.
- D. MS. Reg. 17 D. xv. In Urry's List, viii.
- E. MS. Harl. 7333.
- F. MS. Harl. 1758. In Urry's List, i.
- G. MS. Sloane. A. 1685. xxii. D. In Urry's List, iii.
- H. MS. Sloane. A. 1686. xxii. D. In Urry's List, iv.
- I. MS. Harl. 1239. In Urry's List, ii.

AT OXFORD.

In the *Bodleian Library*.

- B. a. No. 2527. in the printed Catalogue.
- B. c. No. 1234. Ibid.
- B. γ. No. 1476. Ibid.
- B. δ. No. 3360. Ibid.
- B. e. No. 4138. Ibid.
- B. ζ. No. 6420. Ibid.
- N C. A MS. in the Library of *New College*.

AT CAMBRIDGE.

- C. 1. In the Public Library. No. D. d. 4. 24.
- C. 2. Ibid. No. I. i. 3. 26.
- T. MS. in the Library of *Trinity College*, No. R. 3. 3.
- T t. Ibid. No. R. 3. 15.
- Ask. 1. 2. Two MSS. lent to me by the late Dr. Askew. The second has in it the *Arms of Henry* Deane, Archbishop of Canterbury. 1501—3.
- H A. A MS. lent to me by Edward Haistwell, Esq.
- W. A MS. in the possession of the late Mr. P. C. Webb.
- Ch. N. Two MSS. described in the Pref. to Ed. Urr. the one as belonging to Charles Cholmondeley, Esq., of Vale Royal, in Cheshire, and the other to Mr. Norton, of Southwick, in Hampshire. The Editor quotes them from the Collations of Mr. W. Thomas, mentioned above in this APP. A. note A.

readings serves only to correct the arbitrary innovations, which Mr. Urry had introduced into the text. He has employed himself to better purpose upon the Glossary, where he has made many emendations and additions, which may be of considerable use, if ever a new Glossary to Chaucer shall be compiled.

Of these MSS. the most credit is certainly due to the five following, viz. A C. 1. Ask. 1. 2. and II A. The four last exhibit the Tales in exactly the same order in which they are printed in this edition; and so does A. except that it wants the *Cokes Tale* [See the Discourse, &c. §. xiii.] and has the *Nonnes Tale* inserted between the *Sompnours* and the *Clerkes*. It is also unluckily very imperfect; beginning only at ver. 1204. and ending (with several intermediate breaks) at ver. 12610. in the *Pardoner's Tale*.

N.B. The Editt. of Chaucer by Caxton and Pynson are cited by these abbreviations; Ca. 1. 2. Pyns. 1. 2.—Sp. and Urr. are put for the Editt. by Speght and Urry.—M. stands for the Edit. of the *Prologue and Knight's Tale* in 1737.—The other Editt. are cited by their respective dates. If no date is mentioned, the reference is to the Edit. of 1642 by John Reyne.

(c) AN ABSTRACT OF THE HISTORICAL PASSAGES OF THE LIFE OF CHAUCER.

THE birth of Chaucer in 1328 has been settled, I suppose, from some inscription on his tomb-stone, signifying that he died in 1400, at the age of 72. Of his birth itself we have no memorial, any more than of his parents'. He calls himself a *Londenois*, or *Londoner*, in the *Testament of Love*; B. i. fol. 325. and in another passage, fol. 321. speaks of the city of London as the place of his *engendrure*.

We are more in the dark about the place of his education. In his *Court of Love*, ver. 912. he speaks of himself under the name and character of "Philogenet—of Cambridge, Clerk." This is by no means a decisive proof that he was really educated at Cambridge; but it may be admitted, I think, as a strong argument that he was not educated at Oxford; as Leland has supposed, without the shadow of a proof'. The Biographers however, instead of weighing one of these accounts against the other, have adopted both; and tell us very gravely, that he was first at Cambridge, and afterwards removed from thence to complete his studies at Oxford.

It were to be wished that Mr. Speght had given us the date of that Record in the Inner Temple, (which he says, a Mr. Buckley had seen,) where "Geffrey Chaucer was fined two shillings for beating a Franciscan frier in Fleet-street'." Leland has also told us, that our

* Mr. Speght has referred to several Records in which the name of Chaucer occurs. There is mention in the *Monast. Ang.* vol. III. p. 396. of a *Johannes le Chaucer, civis Londoniensis*, an. 1290. who may possibly have been our Poet's Grandfather. Though Leland says, that he was *nobili loco natus*, Mr. Speght informs us, that "in the opinion of some heralds—he descended not of any great house, which they gather by his Arms." I am inclined to believe the Herald, rather than Leland.

The name of Chaucer is explained [Life of Ch. Urr.] to signify a shoe-maker; but it rather means *un faiseur de chausses ou culottiers*. Dict. de Lacombe, v. *Chaucier*. According to what is said to be the old spelling of it, *Chauceir*, it might be not improbably derived from *Chaufectre*, an office, which still subsists under the title of *Chafecras*.

† The single circumstance, by which Leland has endeavoured to strengthen his supposition that Chaucer was educated at Oxford, is another supposition that he was born in Oxfordshire or Berkshire. The latter has been shewn above to be false.

‡ Though this be but a blind story, it rather inclines me to believe that Chaucer was of the Inner Temple in the early part of his life, before he went into the service of Edward III. The circumstance recorded is plainly a *postulatum*. On the contrary, Leland supposes his principal residence in the Inns of Court to have been after he had flourished in France, about the last years of Richard II.; which is totally incredible. Indeed Leland, through his whole account of our author, seems to have considered him as living at least twenty years later than he really did.

author "*collegia leguleiorum frequentavit* after his travels in France, and perhaps before." I must observe, that these travels in France rest entirely upon the authority of Leland, whose account is full of inconsistencies.

The first authentic memorial, which we have of Chaucer, is the Patent in Rymer, 41 E. III. by which that King grants to him an annuity of 20 marks, by the title of *Valetus noster*^d. He was then in the 39th year of his age. How long he had served the King in that, or any other, station, and what particular merits were rewarded by this royal bounty*, are points equally unknown.

He takes no notice of the best authenticated circumstances of Chaucer's life in the time of Edward III. and he represents him as highly esteemed by Henry IV. and his son, *qui de Gallis triumphavit*. Henry V. was scarcely twelve years of age, when Chaucer died.

^d Our Yeoman. Mr. Speght, who omits this grant, mentions one of the same purport in the 45 E. III. in which Chaucer is styled *Valetus Hospitii*, which he translates—*Grooms of the Palace*. By this he sinks our author as much too low as another writer has raised him too high, by translating the same words—*Gentlemen of the King's Privy Chamber* [Life of Ch. Urr.]. *Valet*, or *Yeoman*, was the intermediate rank between *Squier* and *Grooms*. See the note on ver. 101. See also the Will of Edward Duke of York, ap. Rymer, an. 1415. where his legacies to his mental servants are thus arranged—a un Esculier l. a. a [un] vadlet xx s. a un garo [on . . .] & a un page vi s. viii d.

Valetus is probably a corruption of *Vassalletus*, the diminutive of *Vassallus*. Hence this title was also given, not as a name of service, to young men of the highest quality, before they were knighted.

Il ot un fis de sa muller
 Ki neit pas uncore chivaler,
Valet esteit et beaus et gent.—*Roman d'Ipomedon*.

So that if Edward III. as Mr. Speght says, "did entitle Laurence Hastings, Lord of Aubarganey,—*Valectum nostrum*," I should guess, that the said Lord was not "the King's groom, page, or servant," as he supposes, or his yeoman; as Chaucer was, but his *Ward*.

* I should have been glad to have met with any ground for supposing, that this mark of Royal favour was a reward of our author's poetical merits. That Chaucer had before this time distinguished himself by his poetical performances, is almost certain. I have mentioned a suspicion [n. on ver. 1920.] that the *Assemblies of Fowles* alludes to the Courtship of Blanche of Lancaster by John of Gaunt, who married her in 1359, the 33d year of E. III. And perhaps the *Complaint of the Blacke Knight* might be written for John of Gaunt during the same Courtship. It is still more probable that his Translation of the *Roman de la Rose* and his *Troilus* were both composed before 1367, the era of which we are speaking. But I think, if the King had really patronised Chaucer as a Poet, we must have found some clear evidence of such a connection. If the one had been fond of verses, the other would certainly have given him some; especially as he might have exerted his genius in the praise of so illustrious a Patron without any necessity of flattering. If we consider further, that, a few years after, the King appointed him to be Comptroller of the Custom of Wool, &c. in the Port of London, with the following injunction in his Patent,—"*So that the said Geoffrey write with his own hand his rolls touching the said office, and continually reside there, and do and execute all things pertaining to the said office in his own proper person and not by his substitute*,"—we shall probably be of opinion, that His Majesty was either totally insensible of our author's poetical talents, or at least had no mind to encourage him in the cultivation or exercise of them. It should seem that Edward, though adorned with many Royal and Heroic virtues, had not the gift of discerning and patronising a great Poet; a gift, which, like that of genuine Poetry, if we may believe one, who perhaps spoke feelingly upon the subject, is only bestowed on the chosen few by the peculiar favour of heaven:

—neque enim, nisi carus ab ortu
 Diis superis, poterit magno favisse poetæ.

Milton's MANUSC.

I observe however, that, notwithstanding the petrifying quality, with which these Custom-house accounts might be expected to operate upon Chaucer's genius, he probably wrote his *House of Fame* while he was in that office. I gather this from B. ii. ver. 144. where the Eagle says to him,—

For when thy labour al done is,
 And hast made all thy rekenynges,
 In stede of rest and of newe thynges
 Thou goest home to thyne house anon. &c.

From this time we find frequent mention of him in various public instruments'. In the 46 E. III. [*op. Rymer.*] the King appoints him Envoy, with two others, to Genoa, by the title of *Scutifer noster*'. In the 48 E. III. he has a grant for life of a pitcher of wine daily [*op. Rymer.*]; and in the same year a grant, during pleasure, of the offices of Comptroller of the custom of wools, and Comptroller of the *parva custuma vinorum*, &c. in the Port of London. *Ibid.* In the 49 E. III. the King grants to him the Wardship of Sir Edmund Staplegate's Heir [*MSS. Rymer*, E. III. vol. xi. n. 12.], for which he received 104*l.* [*Ibid.* R. II. vol. i. n. 16.]; and in the next year some forfeited wool to the value of 71*l.* 4*s.* 6*d.* [*Life of Ch. Urr.*] In the last year of Ed. III. he was sent to France, with Sir Guichard D'Angle and Richard Stan, or *Sturly*, to treat of a marriage between the Prince of Wales, Richard, and a daughter of the French King. *Froissart*, v. i. ch. 325.

In the next year, 1 R. II. his annuity of 20 marks was confirmed to him, and another annuity of 20 marks was granted to him in lieu of the pitcher of wine daily. See the Licence to surrender these grants in the *Life of Ch. Urr.* It is probable too that he was confirmed in his Office of Comptroller, though the instrument has not been produced^b. In the 11th of R. II. he had the King's Licence to surrender his two grants of 20 marks each in favour of John Scalby'. In the 13th R. II. he appears to have been Clerk of the works at Westminster &c. and in the following year at Windsor^c. In the 17th R. II. the King granted to him a new

^a In the 44 E. III. Galf. Ch. in obsequium R. ad partes transmarinas profecturus hab. lit. R. de protectione, 20. Jun. [MSS. Harl. 6980. fol. 205.]

^b Our *Squire*; so that in the course of these five years our author had been promoted from the rank of *Yeoman*, to that of *Squire*, attendant upon the King. *Scutifer* and *Armiger*, Lat. are synonymous terms for the French *Escuier*. The Biographers thinking, I suppose, the title of *Squire* too vulgar, have changed it into *Shield-bearer*, as if Chaucer had the special office of carrying the King's shield.

Some observations have been made upon this appointment of Chaucer, as Envoy to Genoa, in the *Discourse*, &c. n. 20.

^c This is probable, I think, because Chaucer, in his *Testament of Love*, frequently alludes to his loss of Office, as one of the greatest misfortunes brought upon him by his *meddling* in those disturbances which happened in the City of London in the 7th of R. II. When he fled, to avoid being examined in relation to those disturbances (as he says, *Test. of L.* fol. 328. b.), he was probably superseded in his office.

In the Editor's MS. additions the following grants, and the dates of them, are thus specified:

1 R. II. New grant of Comptroller of Wools, 23 Jan. MSS. Harl. 6961. fol. 2.

5 R. II. New grant of Comptroller of *parva Custuma vinorum*, 20 Apr. *Ibid.* fol. 51.

6 R. II. Grant to execute the office of Comptroller by a deputy, 17 Feb. *Ibid.* fol. 74.

^d This Licence, reciting the two grants, is printed in the *Life of Ch. Urr.* and the author of that life has observed, that this surrender was probably occasioned by our Author's distressed circumstances. Either he despaired of procuring payment of his pensions, or perhaps wanted to raise a sum of ready money. The same writer has extracted from the *Testament of Love* almost all that is now to be known of the history of this distress, which he ascribes very truly to Chaucer's unfortunate engagements with that party in the city of London, of which John of Northampton was at the head. What the real designs of that party were, and how a trifling City-riot, as it seems to have been, came to be treated as a rebellion, are points of great obscurity. There is good ground to believe that Northampton was connected with the Duke of Lancaster. At his trial, in August 1384, he contended, "that he ought not to be tried in the absence of his lord the Duke:" *quo verbo* (says Walsingham, p. 310.) *suscitavit suspicionem sinistram tam vulgi quam procerum contra Ducem*. He was condemned however to perpetual imprisonment; in which he remained till July 1390, when (according to the Monk of Evesham, p. 122.) *ad instantiam Ducis Lancastrie*. Johannes Northampton — *et socii sui super de Londoniis benedicti, restituti sunt ad pristinas libertates*. The judgement against him was reversed in Parliament the next year, *Rot. Parl.* 14 R. II. n. 36. and he was restored to his lands, &c. the year following, *Rot. Parl.* 15 R. II. n. 23. This connexion of Northampton with the Duke of Lancaster will account for the part which Chaucer appears to have taken in this unhappy affair. He was very early attached to that Duke, and was at this time married to a sister of Catherine Swinford, the Duke's mistress; and it is observable, that the first mark of royal favour, which he received after his distresses, was bestowed upon him at the same time that Northampton received his pardon, and probably through the same mediation.

^e See Tanner's *Bib. Brit.* v. CHAUCER, n. c. It may justly be doubted whether these two offices together indemnified

annuity of twenty pounds [*ap. Rymer.*]¹;—in the 21st, his Protection for two years [*Ibid.*];—and in the 22d, a pipe of wine annually. *Ibid.* In the next year, the 1st H. IV. his two grants, of the annuity of 20l. and of the pipe of wine, were confirmed to him [*MSS. Rymer, H. IV. vol. i. n. 27.*], and at the same time he had an additional grant of an annuity of 40 marks. *Ibid. n. 18.* He died, according to the inscription on his tomb-stone, in the beginning of the 2 H. IV on the 25th of October, 1400.

These, I think, are the principal facts in Chaucer's life, which are attested by authentic evidences". We learn from himself, in his *Treatise on the Astrolabe*, that he had a son, called *Lowis*, who was ten years of age in 1391. It is the only circumstance, as I recollect, relating to his family, of which he has informed us. A few other historical particulars relating to himself, which may be collected from his writings, have been taken notice of already; and perhaps a more attentive examination of his works might furnish a few more. We must be cautious however, in such an examination, of supposing allusions which Chaucer never intended, or of arguing from pieces which he never wrote, as if they were his. We must not infer from his repeated commendations of the Daysie-flower, that he was specially favoured by Margaret, Countess of Pembroke"; and still less should we set him down as a *follower* of

our author for the loss of his former office in the Customs. That was probably a very lucrative one. He complains of "being berafte out of dignitie of Office, in which he made a gatheringe of worldly godes;" and in another place he speaks of himself as "once glorious in worldly welefulnesse, and havinge suche godes in welthe as maken men riche." Test. of L. fol. 326. a. b. But that he should ever have been possessed of "lands and revenues to the yearly value almost of a thousand pounds," according to the tradition repeated by Mr. Speght, is quite incredible.

¹ If Chaucer was ever possessed of Dunnington-castle in Berkshre, as his Biographers suppose he was, he must have purchased it about this time; for it appears to have been in the possession of Sir Richard Abberbury in the 16th year of R. II. *Monast. Ang.* ii. 474. We have no proof of any such purchase, and the situation of his affairs makes it highly improbable. The tradition, which Mr. Evelyn mentions in his *Sylva*, of an oak in Dunnington-park called *Chaucer's oak*, may be sufficiently accounted for without supposing that it was planted by Chaucer himself, as the Castle was undoubtedly in the hands of Thomas Chaucer for many years.

" It appears farther from the *Exitus, Pasch.* 4 R. II. [*MSS. Rymer, R. II. vol. ii. n. 3.*] that Chaucer, on the 24 May, 1391, received at the Exchequer a half-year's payment of his own two annuities of 20 marks each, and also a half-year's payment of an annuity of 10 marks, granted by E. III. and confirmed by R. II. to his wife Philippa, *super uni domicellariis Philippa, nuper Regina Anglie*. The title given to her of *domicella* proves that she was unmarried at the time of her being in the Queen's service. There is a patent in Rymer, 43 E. III. by which the King, about four months after Queen Philippa's death, grants annuities to nine of her *Domicellas*, viz. to four of them 10 marks, to two 5 pounds, and to three 5 marks. One of them is called *Philippa Pykard*, and might very well be supposed to be the lady whom Chaucer afterwards married, if it were not for two objections, 1. that the annuity granted to her is only 5 pounds, whereas Chaucer's wife appears by this record to have had one of 10 marks; and 2. that the Historians, though they own themselves totally ignorant of the Christian name of Chaucer's wife, are all agreed that her surname was *Rouet*, the same with that of her father and eldest sister, Catherine Swynford. The first objection might be got over by supposing that her annuity, though at first only 5 pounds, was increased, perhaps upon her marriage with Chaucer, to 10 marks. As to the other point, it is not impossible that the father, and the eldest sister, who was his heiress [See Pat. 13 II. IV. p. 1. m. 35. *ap. Rymer.*], might bear the name of *de Rouet*, (or *de Roelt*, as it is in the Pat. 13 II. IV. just quoted,) from some estate in their possession, and yet the younger Sister might be called by the family-name of *Pykard*.

If the records of payments at the Exchequer for the eleven years preceding 1391 are still in being, they may enable us to clear up these doubts, and also, perhaps, to ascertain very nearly the time of Chaucer's marriage, as they will probably shew when he began to receive his wife's annuity. If this last point were ascertained, we should know better what to think of the relation of Thomas Chaucer to our author. Mr. Speght informs us, "that some held opinion, that Thomas C. was not the sonne of Geoffrey," and there are certainly many circumstances which might incline us to that opinion. I was in hopes of meeting with some light upon this subject in a Poem which Lydgate is said to have written, entitled, "A Complaint upon the departure of Thomas Chaucer into France, upon the Kynges Ambassade." A Poem, with this title, is extant in MS. *Harl.* 367. 33. in the hand-writing of J. Stowe; but upon inspection I found it to be a mere love-ballad, without the least imaginable reference to Thomas Chaucer.

" I can find no other foundation for this notion. Mr. Speght, who first started it, says, that "it may appeare in divers treatises by him written: as in the *Prologue of the Legend of good Women* under the name of the Daysie; and

Alain Chartier*, because his Editors have falsely ascribed to him a translation of one of Alain's poems

likewise in a *Ballad*, beginning, *In the season of Fevrier.*" The *Ballad* is among the additions made by John Stowe to Chaucer's works in 1561, and, like the greatest part of those additions, is of *very dubious authority*, to use the gentlest terms. But supposing it genuine, there is nothing in it to make us believe that it had any reference to the Countess of Pembroke. That its commendations of the *Daysie* ought not to weigh with us is very plain from the other piece cited by Mr. Spaght: for the *Legende of good Women*, in which he imagines "the Lady Margaret to be honoured under the name of the *Daysie*," was certainly not written till at least twelve years after that Lady's death. See the *Discourse*, &c. n. 3. for the date of the *Legende*. The Countess *Margaret* must have died not later than 1370, as the Earl's son, by his second wife *Anne*, was about nineteen years of age, when he was killed in a tournament in 1361. Hollinshed, p. 471. It is possible that *le dit de la fleur de lis et de la Marguerite* by Guillaume de Machaut [*Acad. des Insc.* t. xx. p. 381.] and the *Distil de la fleur de la Margherite* by Froissart [*Ibid.* t. x. p. 660. t. xiv. hist. p. 222.] (neither of which had the least relation to the Countess of Pembroke,) might furnish us with the true key to those mystical compliments, which our poet has paid to the *Daysie-flower*.

* Leland was the first author of this story, which is totally inconsistent with Chronology. The time of Alain's birth has not been settled with precision; but he was certainly living near 60 years after Chaucer's death; which makes it morally impossible that the latter should have followed him, in his attempts to polish his native language. *La Balade de Fougieres* [*Œuvres d'Alain Chartier*, p. 717.] was written upon the taking of that place by the English in 1448. There is another piece attributed to Alain [*Ibid.* p. 773.], which is thus entitled, *Complainte faite à Paris et présentée à une dame l'an mil quatre cents cinquante deux*. Instead therefore of supposing from the translation of *La belle dame sans merci* that Chaucer imitated Alain Chartier, we should rather conclude, that he was not the author of that translation; which indeed in MS. *Hart.* 372, is expressly attributed to a *Sir Richard Hoc*.

I will just take notice of another opinion, (which has been propagated upon as little foundation,) that Chaucer imitated the Provençal poets. Mr. Rymer, who, I believe, first made the discovery, speaks only of his having borrowed from their *language* [*View of Trag.* p. 78.], but Mr. Dryden found out, that he composed *after their manner*, particularly his tale of *the Flower and the Leaf*. Prof. to Fables. Mr. Warton also thinks, that *the House of Fame* "was originally a Provençal composition." *Hist. of Eng. Po.* p. 389. 458.

How far Chaucer's *language* was borrowed, has been considered already, in the Essay, &c. Part I. I will only add here, that I have not observed in any of his writings a single phrase or word, which has the least appearance of having been fetched by him from the South of the Loire. With respect to the *manner* and *matter* of his compositions, till some clear instances of imitation be produced, I shall be slow to believe that in either he ever copied the poets of Provence, with whose works, I apprehend, he had very little, if any, acquaintance.

[The following deposition was made by Chaucer Oct. 15, 1386, in the celebrated Scrope and Grosvenor controversy. It was first printed in Godwin's *Life of Chaucer* (Appendix I.), and has more recently appeared as a portion of Sir H. Nicolas's valuable publication, *The Scrope and Grosvenor Roll* (vol. I. 178):

"Geffrey Chaucere Esquier del age de xl ans et plus armees par xxvii ans product pur la partie de mons. Richard Lescrope, jurez et examinez :

"Demandes, si les armees dasure ove un bende dor apperteignent ou deyvent apperteigner au dit mons. Richard de droit et de heritage, dist,

"Que oil; qar il les ad veu estre armees en Fraunce devant la ville de Retters, et mons. Henry Lescrope armes en memes les armees ove un label blanc et a baner et le dit mons. Richard armees en les entiers armes dasure ove un bende dor, et saint il les vist armer par tout le dit viage, tanque le dit Geffrey estoit pris :

"Demandes, par quel il aciet que les dits armes apperteignent au dit mons. Richard, dist,

"Que par oy dire des veux ohivalers et esquiers, et qils ount toutdys continuez leur possession en les dits armes, et par tout son temps par leur armees reputees com commune fame et publice vois laboure et ad labouree; et auxi il dist que quant il ad veu les dits armes en baneres, en verrures, en peyntures, en vestements, commencement appellees les armes de Lescrope :

"Demandes, s'il oiait unques parler quele estoit le primer auncestre du dit mons. Richard, q'il portast primerment les dits armes, dist,

"Que noun; ne q'il ne oiait unques autre mes qils estoient venus de veille auncestre et de des veulz gentils hommes et occupes les dits armes :

"Demandez, s'il oïst unques parler com long temps que les auncestres du dit mons. Richard ount meex les ditz armes, dist,

"Que noun; mes com il ad oy dire q'il passe la memoir de homme :

"Demandez, s'il oïst unques dascun interruption ou chalange fait par mons. Robert Grovenour, ou par ces auncestres, ou par ascun en son noun, al dit mons. Richard, ou a ascun de ces auncestres, dist,

"Que noun; mes il dist q'il estoit une foiz en Fridaystrete en Loundres, com il alast en la rewe il vist pendant hors un novell signe fait des ditz armes, et demandast quale herbergerie ceo estoit que avoit pendu hors costes armes du Scrope, et un autre luy respondist et dit, Neuy!, seigneur, ils ne sount mys pendus hors pour les armes de Scrope, ne depeyntes la pour ces armees, mes il sount depeyntes et mys la pour une chivaler del counte de Chestre, que homme appelle mons. Robert Grovenour; et ceo fuist le primer foiz que conques il oïst parler de mons. Robert Grovenour, ou de ces auncestres, ou de ascun autre portant le noun de Grovenour."

"The time of Chaucer's birth," observes Sir H. Nicolas, "has lately been much discussed in consequence of the statement in his deposition in the Scrope and Grosvenor controversy, that he was in October 1386 of the age of 'forty and upwards,' and 'had been armed twenty-seven years,' which, if strictly correct, would make him to have been born about 1348, and to have served for the first time in the field in 1369; whereas the birth of the poet has been always hitherto assigned, though without any positive evidence, to the year 1328. There are, however, strong reasons, derived from many passages in his own works and in the writings of Gower, for believing that he was born long before 1348; and the many instances which have been adduced of the mistakes that occur respecting the ages of the deponents, of whom some are stated to have been ten, and others even twenty years younger than they actually were, prevents Chaucer's deposition being conclusive on the point. It is therefore possible that he was ten or even fifteen years above forty in 1386. He had, he said, borne arms for twenty-seven years, on which subject the deponents were generally more correct, so that assuming that he was about fifty-five when examined at Westminster, he did not commence his military career until 1359, at which time he was above twenty-eight." Vol. II. p. 404.

The following entries are from the *Issue Roll of Thomas de Brantingham*, &c. (edited by Mr. Devon) :

44 Edward III.,

Thursday, the 25th day of April.

"Geoffrey Chaucer. { To Geoffrey Chaucer, the King's valet, to whom the Lord the King, by his letters patent, lately granted 20 marks annually, to be received at the Exchequer during his life, for the good service rendered by him to the same Lord the King. In money delivered to him, by the hands of Walter Walsh, in discharge of the 10 marks payable to him for this his allowance,—to wit, at Easter Term last past, by his writ of *Liberate*, amongst the mandates of this Term £6 13 4."

p. 19, (see also p. 288.)

44 Edward III.,

Wednesday, the 7th day of November.

"Philippa Chaucer. { To Philippa Chaucer, to whom the Lord the King, by his letters patent, lately granted 10 marks yearly, to be received at the Exchequer during her life, (for the good service) rendered by her to the same Lord the King. In money delivered to her by the hands of John de Hermes-thorp, in discharge of the 10 marks for this her allowance £6 13 4."

p. 208.

The following entries occur in *Issues of the Exchequer*, &c. (edited by Mr. Devon) :

Michaelmas, 51 Edward III. "27th November.—To Philippa Chaucer, one of the maids of honour of the chamber of Philippa, late Queen of England, to whom the Lord the King granted 10 marks yearly, to be received at the Exchequer during her life, or until otherwise he should provide for her estate. In money delivered to her by the hands of Geoffrey Chaucer, in discharge of the 5 marks payable to her for this her allowance,—to wit, at Michaelmas term last past. By writ of *liberate* amongst the mandates of this term,—3l. 6s. 8d."

p. 208.

Easter, 2 Richard II. "24th May.—To Geoffrey Chaucer, to whom the present Lord the King, on the 18th day of April in the first year of his reign, by his letters patent, granted 20 marks yearly, to be received at the Exchequer at the feasts of Saint Michael and Easter by equal portions, for the good services performed and hereafter to be performed by him to the same Lord the King, and in recompense of a pitcher of wine charged by the Lord King Edward, grandfather of the present King, upon the port of the city of London, by the hands of the butler of the same King Edward and his heirs, also lately granted by letters patent to be received daily during the life of the said Geoffrey. In money paid to him by assignment made this day in discharge of 12l. 4s., paid to him for this his allowance,—to wit, as well rateably from the aforesaid 18th day of April unto the feast of Saint Michael next following, as for the term of Easter last past. By writ, &c.—12l. 13s."

p. 210.

APPENDIX TO THE PREFACE.

xv

Michaelmas, 4 Richard II. "26th November.—To Geoffrey Chaucer, in money paid to his own hands in discharge of 14*l.* due upon an account made with him at the Exchequer of account, for receipt of his wages and expenses in going upon the King's message to Lombardy, in the 1st year of the reign of King Richard II. By writ of privy seal, &c.,—14*l.*"

p. 214

"6th March.—To Geoffrey Chaucer, an esquire of the King. In money paid to his own hands, by assignment made to him this day, in discharge of 22*l.*, which the Lord the King commanded to be paid him of his gift in recompense of his wages, and the charges by him incurred in going as well in the time of King Edward, grandfather of the present King, as a messenger of the same grandfather, to Mounstrell and Paris, in France, on account of a treaty of peace pending between the aforesaid grandfather and his adversary of France; as in the time of the present Lord the King, to make a communication respecting a marriage to be had between the same Lord the King and the daughter of his said enemy of France. By writ of privy seal, &c.,—22*l.*"

Richard

p. 215

Michaelmas, 13 Richard II. "7th October.—To Geoffrey Chaucer, clerk of the works of the Lord the King within the palace of Westminster, Tower of London, and diverse others the King's castles and manors. In money paid to him by assignment made this day,—to wit, by the hands of John Hermesthorp, clerk of the works near the Tower. By writ of liberate amongst the mandates of Easter term last past,—66*l.* 13*s.* 4*d.* [*Note.*—This Roll contains several other payments to Geoffrey Chaucer, as clerk of the King's works.]"

p. 239.]

AN ESSAY ON THE LANGUAGE AND VERSIFICATION OF CHAUCER.

CONTENTS.

INTRODUCTION. The different judgements of the Language and Versification of Chaucer stated. Plan of this Essay, in three parts. 1. To vindicate Chaucer from the charge of having corrupted the English Language by too great a mixture of French with it. 2. To make some observations upon the real state of our language in his time. 3. To apply those observations and others towards illustrating the real nature of his Versification.

PART THE FIRST.

§ 1. The French Language introduced into England before the Conquest; § 2. confirmed and propagated by the new establishments at the Conquest; § 3. was the ordinary language of the Court; § 4. was carried into the Provinces by the great Barons and military Commanders; § 5. and especially by the Clergy; § 6. who, both Secular and Regular, were chiefly foreigners. § 7. The French Language continued to be much used as late as the reign of Edward III. § 8. Conclusion, that the mixture of French in Chaucer's writings was not owing to any affectation of his, but to the causes above-mentioned, which in his time had generally introduced the Norman-Saxon instead of the Saxon Dialect; the same mixture being observable in other contemporary authors.

PART THE SECOND.

§ 1. The proposed observations upon the English language confined to the actual state of it in the time of Chaucer, § 2. and divided, so as to consider separately the Saxon and Norman parts of it. § 3. The Saxon part considered in grammatical order. 1. The Prepositive Article. 2. Nouns substantive and adjective. 3. Pronouns. 4. Verbs and Participles. 5. The indeclinable parts of speech. § 4. The Norman part considered generally, § 5. and more particularly with respect to Nouns, substantive and adjective, Verbs, and Participles. § 6. Additional causes of the introduction of a great number of French terms into the English Language.

PART THE THIRD.

§ 1. Preliminary observations upon English Poetry. The form of English Poetry probably borrowed from the Normans, there being no traces of Rime, or Metre, among the Saxons before the Conquest. The Metres and Rime of modern Poetry derived from the Latin. § 2. Progress of English Poetry to the reign of Henry II. Early attempts at riming. § 3. Few English Poets known between the reign of Henry II. and that of Henry III. § 4. The *Ormulum* written in verses of fifteen syllables without rime. § 5. The number of Rimers increased between the last mentioned period and the time when Chaucer began to write. § 6. State of our Poetry at that time. § 7. Account of the Metres then in use; § 8. of those used by Chaucer. § 9. The Heroic Metre probably introduced by him, either from France or Italy. § 10. A knowledge of the ancient pronunciation of our language necessary in order to form a judgement of the Versification of Chaucer. § 11. How a critic in the age of Augustus would have proceeded in judging of the Metre of Ennius. § 12. The same method recommended with respect to Chaucer. General reasons for believing that he understood and practised the ordinary rules of Metre. § 13. The offences against Metre, in an English verse, enumerated, as arising from 1. a superfluity, 2. a deficiency, of syllables; and 3. a misplacing of Accents. § 14. No *superfluity* of syllables in Chaucer's verses. § 15. The seeming *deficiencies* in his Metre may generally be supplied by restoring the ancient pronunciation of certain syllables, § 16. and especially of the *e* feminine. Reasons for believing that the final *e* in our ancient language was pronounced like the *e* feminine of the French. § 17. The third kind of irregularity, arising from a *misplacing of accents*, may be rectified, in many instances, by accenting certain words in a manner different from that now in use, and more agreeable to the French practice. Proofs that such a mode of accentuation was used by Chaucer, in words of Saxon, as well as of French original. The early poets in France and Italy not exact in the disposition of their accents. § 18. Illustration of the foregoing Theory by a Grammatical and Metrical Analysis of the first eighteen lines of the *Canterbury Tales*.

THE Language of Chaucer has undergone two very different judgements. According to one¹, he is the "well of English undefiled;" according to the other², he has corrupted and

¹ Spenser, F. Q. b. iv. c. ii. st. 32.

² Verstegan, c. 7. "Some few ages ago after [the Conquest] came the Poet Geoffrey Chaucer, who writing his

ted the English idiom by an immoderate mixture of French words. Nor do the opinions as to his versification seem to have been less discordant. His contemporaries³, and he lived nearest to his time, universally extoll him as the "chief Poete of Britaine," our of Poetes," &c. titles, which must be supposed to imply their admiration of his skill, as well as of his other poetical talents; but the later critics⁴, though they leave possession of the same sounding titles, yet they are almost unanimously agreed, that he was either totally ignorant or negligent of metrical rules, and that his verses, if they may be said, are frequently deficient, by a syllable or two, of their just measure.

In the purpose of the following Essay to throw some light upon both these questions. Knowing the fact, that the English of Chaucer has a great mixture of French in it, I hope to show that this mixture, if a crime, cannot fairly be laid to his charge. I shall then proceed to make some observations upon the most material peculiarities of the Norman-Saxon, or French Language, as it appears to have been in general use in the age of Chaucer; and lastly, applying these observations to the poetical parts of the Canterbury Tales, as they are faithfully printed in this edition from the best MSS. which I could procure, I shall leave it to the intelligent reader to determine, whether Chaucer was really ignorant of the laws, or even of the graces, of versification, and whether he was more negligent of either than the very early Poets in all languages are found to have been.

PART THE FIRST.

In order to judge, in the first place, how far Chaucer ought to be charged as the importer of many French words and phrases, which are so visible in all his writings, it will be necessary to take a short view of the early introduction and long prevalency of the French language in this country before his time. It might be sufficient, perhaps, for our purpose to view his view at the Conquest: but I cannot help observing, from a contemporary Historian, several years before that great event, the language of France had been introduced into the north of England, and from thence among the people. The account which Ingulphus gives of this matter is⁵, that Edward, commonly called the Confessor, having been educated at the

English is of some called the first illuminator of the English tongue. Of their opinion I am not, though I esteem Chaucer as an excellent Poet for his time. He was indeed a great mingler of English with French, unto the language (by like for that he was descended of French, or rather Wallon race) he carried a great

3, Etymol. L. A. Pref. "Ex hoc malesano novitatis pruritu, Belgæ Gallicas voces passim civitate sua patrii sermonis puritatem nuper non leviter inquinârunt, et CHAUCERUS poeta, pessimo exemplo, integris laustris ex eadem GALLIA in nostram linguam invecit, eam, nimis antea a Normannorum victoria adulteratam, sua nativa gratia et nitore spoliavit."

ate, Occleve, et al. See the Testimonies prefixed to Urry's Edit.

4, I only quote Dryden, Pref. to his Fables. "The verse of Chaucer, I confess, is not harmonious to us;—as he lived with him, and some time after him, thought it musical; and it continues so even in our judgment, if we attend with the numbers of Lidgate and Gower, his contemporaries;—'Tis true, I cannot go so far as he, who wrote the last edition of him [Mr. Speght]; for he would make us believe the fault is in our ears, and that there are eleven syllables in a verse where we find but nine. But this opinion is not worth confuting; 'tis so gross and an error, that common sense (which is a rule in every thing but matters of Faith and Revelation) must convince the Reader, that equality of numbers in every verse which we call Heroick, was either not known, or not practised, in Chaucer's age. It were an easy matter to produce some thousands of his verses, which are lame of half a foot, and sometimes a whole one, and which no pronunciation can make otherwise."

5, A very arbitrary decision has never since, that I know, been controverted, except by Mr. Urry, whose design of settling the metre of Chaucer by a Collation of MSS. was as laudable, as his execution of it has certainly been successful.

6, Iph. Hist. Croyl. p. 62. ed. Gale. "Rex autem Edwardus natus in Anglia, sed nutritus in Normannia et

court of his uncle Duke Richard II. and having resided in Normandy many years, became almost a Frenchman. Upon his return from thence and accession to the throne of England in 1043, he brought over with him a number of Normans, whom he promoted to the highest dignities; and, according to Ingulphus, under the influence of the King and his Norman favourites, the whole nation began to lay aside their English fashions and imitate the manners of the French in many things. In particular, he says expressly, that *all the Nobility in their courts began to speak French, as a great piece of gentility.*

§ 11. This fashion however of speaking French, having been adopted only in compliance with the caprice of the reigning prince, would not probably have spread very wide or lasted very long; but at the Revolution, which followed soon after in 1066, the language of the Norman conqueror was interwoven with the new political system⁶, and the several establishments, which were made for the support and security of the one, all contributed, in a greater or less degree, to the diffusion and permanency of the other.

§ 111. To begin with the court. If we consider that the King himself, the chief officers of state, and by far the greatest part of the nobility, were all Normans, and could probably speak no language but their own, we can have no doubt that French⁷ was the ordinary language of the court. The few Saxons, who for some time⁸ were admitted there, must have had the strongest inducements to acquire the same language as soon as possible, not merely for the sake of apprehending and answering insignificant questions in the circle, but because in that age affairs of the greatest importance were publicly transacted in the King's court, and there they might be called upon to answer for their possessions and even for their lives. In an ecclesiastical synod, held in the presence of the King in 1072, the venerable bishop of Worcester,

diutissime immoratus, pene in Gallicum transierat, adducens ac attrahens de Normannia plurimos, quos variis dignitatibus promotos in immensum exaltabat. Cepit ergo tota terra sub Rege et sub aliis Normannis introductis Anglicos ritus dimittere, et Francorum mores in multis imitari, Gallicum [scilicet] idioma omnes Magnates in suis curiis tanquam magnum gentilitium loqui, chartas et chirographa sua more Francorum conficere, et propriam consuetudinem in his et in aliis multis erubescere."

⁶ Robert Holkot (as quoted by Selden, *ad Radmer*. p. 189.) says, that the Conqueror—"deliberavit quomodo linguam Saxoniceam posset destruere, et Angliam et Normanniam in idiomate concordare."—But Holkot wrote only in the fourteenth century, and I do not find that the earlier historians impute to the King so silly a project. On the contrary Ordericus Vitalis, l. iv. p. 530, assures us that William—"Anglicam locutionem plerumque salegit ediscere: ut sine interprete querelam subjectæ legis posset intelligere, et scita rectitudinis unicuique (prout ratio dictaret) affectuose depromere. At a perceptione hujusmodi durior ætas illum compecebat, et tumultus multimodarum occupationum ad alia necessario adtraherebat."—And several of his public instruments, which are still extant in Saxon, [Hickee G. A. B. p. 164.—Pref. p. xv, xvi.] prove that he had no objection to using that language in business; so that it seems more natural to suppose, that the introduction of the French language was a consequence only, and not an object, of his policy.

⁷ I apprehend that long before this time the Danish tongue had ceased to be spoken in Normandy. It was never general there, as appears from a passage of Dudon, l. iii. p. 112. Duke William I. gives this reason for sending his son Richard to be educated at Baleux. "*Quoniam quidem Rotomagensis civitas Romanâ, potius quam Dacicâ utitur eloquentiâ, et Bajocacensis fruitur frequentius Dacicâ linguâ quam Romanâ, volo igitur ut ad Bajocacensia delectatur quantocius mania,*" &c. If we recollect, that the Danish settlers under Rollo were few in comparison with the original inhabitants, and had probably scarce any use of letters among them, we shall not be surprised that they did not preserve their language for above two or three generations.

From two other passages of the same Dudon we learn, that the Danish language, while it lasted in Normandy, was very similar to the Saxon [p. 98.], and yet different from it [p. 100.]; *qualem decet esse sororem.*

⁸ After the death of Edwin, and the imprisonment of Morcar in 1070, we do not read of any Saxon Earl, except Waltheof, and he was executed for misprision of treason about three years after. *Orderic. Vit.* l. iv. p. 538. It is singular, that Waltheof, according to the Saxon law, suffered death for the concealment of that treason, for which Roger de Breteuil, Earl of Hereford, being tried *secundum leges Normannorum*, could only be punished by a forfeiture of his inheritance and perpetual imprisonment. *Id.* p. 535. From this time (says Ingulphus, p. 70.) *Comitatus et Baronias, Episcopatus et Prælatias totius terræ suis Normannis Rex distribuit, et vis aliquem Anglicum ad honoris statum vel alienius domini principatum ascendere permittit.*

Wulstan, (whose *holy simplicity*, as the * Historian calls it, seems to have preserved him from the degradation which almost all the other English Prelates underwent) was obliged to defend the rights of his see by an interpreter, a monk (according to the same ¹⁰ Historian) of *very little eloquence, but who had a smattering of the Norman language.*

§ iv. If we consider further, that the great Barons, to whom William ¹¹ distributed a large share of his conquest, when released from their attendance in the King's court, retired to courts of their own, where they in their turn were surrounded by a numerous train of vassals, chiefly their own countrymen, we may be sure that the French language travelled with them into the most distant provinces, and was used by them, not only in their common conversation, but in their civil contracts, their judicial proceedings, and even in the promulgation of their ¹² laws. The many Castles, which William built ¹³ in different parts of the island, must also have contributed very much to the propagation of the French language among the natives, as it is probable that the Foreigners, of whom the garrisons were ¹⁴ entirely composed, would insist upon carrying on all their transactions with the neighbouring country in their own language.

§ v. But the great alteration, which, from political motives, was made in the state of the clergy at that time, must have operated perhaps more efficaciously than any other cause to give the French language a deep root in England. The Conquerour seems to have been fully apprized of the strength which the new government might derive from a Clergy more closely attached to himself by a community of interests than the native English were likely to be. Accordingly, from the very beginning of his reign, all ecclesiastical preferments, as fast as they became vacant, were given to his Norman chaplains; and, not content to avail himself of the ordinary course of succession, he contrived ¹⁵, upon various charges of real or pretended

* WILL. Malmesb. l. iii. p. 118. *Hic sancta simplicitas beati Wulstani &c.* The story which follows perfectly justifies this character. Matt. Paris, ad an. 1095, says that in another Synod there was a formal design of deposing Wulstan, and that he was saved only by a miracle. He was accused "*simplicitatis et illiteraturæ*;"—"et quasi homo *idiota*, qui linguam Gallicanam non noverat, nec regis consiliis interesse poterat, ipso Rege consentiente et hoc dicente, decessit deponendus."

¹⁰ Ibid. *Ita datâ benedictione Monacho, minimâ facundia viro, sed Normannicâ linguâ solo, rem perorans obtinuit.*

¹¹ There is a curious detail of part of this distribution in Ordericus Vitalis, l. iv. p. 821, 2. which concludes thus:—"*aliique advenis, qui sibi coheserant, magnos et multos honores contulit; et in tantum quosdam proxit, ut milites in Angliâ ditiores et potentiores haberent clientes, quam eorum in Neustriâ fuerant parentes.*" There is an account in the Monast. Angl. t. l. p. 400. of the Conquerour's giving the whole county of Cumberland to Ranulph de Meschines, and of the division which Ranulph made of it among his relations and followers, who appear to have been all foreigners.

¹² The antient Earls had a power of legislation within their Counties. William of Malmesbury, speaking of William Fitz-Osborne, Earl of Hereford, says; "*Manet in hunc diem in Comitatu ejus apud Herefordum legum quas statuit inconvulsas firmatas; ut nullus miles pro quacunque commisso plus septem solidis solvat; cum in aliis provinciis ob parvam occasiunculam in transgressionem præcepti herills, viginti vel viginti quinque pendantur.*" Lib. iii. p. 105.

¹³ Ordericus Vitalis, l. iv. p. 511. observes, that before the Conquest, "*Munitiões, quas Castella Galli nuncupant, Angliis provinciis paucissimas fuerant: et ob hoc Angli, licet bellicosi fuerint et audaces, ad resistendum tamen inimicis extiterant debiliores.*" William, at his landing, placed garrisons at *Provensey* and *Hastings*. After the battle, he took possession of *Dover*, and left a garrison there. He caused "*Armamenta quedam*" to be made at London, and built a strong citadel at *Winchester*. Upon his return from Normandy, after the first insurrection of the English, he built a castle within the city of *Exeter*; another at *Warwick*; and another at *Nottingham*. In the city of *York*, "*munitiõnem firmavit, quam delectis militibus custodiendam tradidit.*" At *Lincoln*, *Huntingdon*, and *Cambridge*, "*castra locavit et tutelam eorum fortissimis viris commendavit.*" He had also garrisons at *Montacute* in Somersetshire, and at *Shrewsbury*. He built fortifications at *Chester* and *Stafford*. We read also of castles at *Arundel* and *Stutesbury* at this time; and *Norwich* was so strong as to stand a siege of three months. Ord. Vit. p. 500—535.

¹⁴ Orderic. Vital. l. iv. p. 508. *Custodes in castellis strenuos viros ex Gallis collocauit, et opulenta benefacta, pro quibus labores et pericula libenter tolerarent, distribuit.*

¹⁵ See the transactions of the Council held at *Winchester* in the year 1070, ap. Flor. Vigorn. p. 626. Having spoken

irregularities, to remove several of the English Bishops and Abbots, whose places were in like manner immediately supplied by Foreigners. In short, in the space of a very few years, all the Sees of England were filled with Normans, or strangers naturalized, if I may so say, in Normandy, and the greatest part of the Abbeys in the kingdom were under governours of the same description.

§ vi. It must be allowed, that the confessed superiority¹⁶ in literature of the Norman clergy over the English at that time furnished the King with a specious pretext for these promotions; and it is probable, that the Prelates, who were thus promoted, made use of the same pretext to justify themselves in disposing of all their best benefices among their friends and countrymen. That this was their constant practice is certain. Nor were the new Abbots less industrious to stock their convents¹⁷ with Foreigners, whom they invited over from the Continent, partly perhaps for the pleasure of their society, and partly, as we may suppose, in expectation of their support against the cabals of the English monks. And when the great Barons, following the royal example, applied themselves to make their peace with the Church by giving her a share of their plunder, it was their usual custom to begin their religious establishments with a colony¹⁸ from some Norman Monastery.

§ vii. In this state of things, which seems to have continued¹⁹ with little variation to the

of the degradation of Stigand, Archbishop of Canterbury, and Agelmar, Bishop of the East Saxons, he proceeds thus: *Abbatem etiam aliqui ibi degradati sunt, operam dante rege ut quamplures ex Anglia suo honore privarentur, in quorum locum suis gentis personas subrogavit, ob confirmationem sui (quod noviter adquisierat) regni. Ille et nonnullus, tam episcopos quam Abbates, quos nulla evidenti causa nec concilia nec leges seculi damnabant, suis honoribus privavit, et usque ad finem vite custodia mancipatos detinuit, suspicione, ut diximus, tantum inductus novi regni.*

In confirmation of what is said here and in the text, if we examine the subscriptions to an Ecclesiastical Constitution in 1072, ap. Will. Malm. l. iii. p. 117. we find that the two Archbishops, seven Bishops out of eleven, and six Abbots out of twelve, were Foreigners: and in about five years more the four other Bishopsricks, and five at least of the other six Abbeys, were in the hands of Foreigners.

Another Ecclesiastical Constitution made at this time has very much the appearance of a political regulation. It orders "that the Bishops' seats shall be removed from towns to cities;" and in consequence of it the See of Lichfield was removed to Chester; that of Solesey to Chichester; that of Elmham to Thetford, and afterwards to Norwich; that of Shireburne to Salisbury, and that of Dorchester to Lincoln. Will. Malm. l. iii. p. 118. When the King had got a set of Bishops to his mind, he would wish to have them placed where their influence could be of most service to him.

¹⁶ Ordericus Vitalis, l. iv. p. 519. says, that the Normans at the Conquest found the English, "*agrestes et pene illiteratos*;" and he imputes, with some probability, the decay of learning among them, from the time of Bede and others, to the continual ravages and oppressions of the Danes. See also William of Malmesbury, l. iii. p. 101, 2. It may be observed too, from Continuat. Hist. Croyland, by Peter of Blois, p. 114. that the first regular lectures (of which we have any account) at Cambridge were read there by four foreign Monks, who had come over into England with Jeffrey, Abbot of Croyland, formerly Prior of St. Evroul. They are said to have read "*diversis in locis a se divisi et formam Aurelianensis studii secuti*," three of them in Grammar, Logic, and Rhetoric, and the fourth in Theology.

¹⁷ See the preceding note. There was no great harmony at first between the English monks and their new governours. See the proceedings at Glastonbury under Thurstan [Will. Malm. l. iii. p. 110], and at Canterbury against Wido. [Chron. Saxon. p. 179, 180. ed. Gibson.]

¹⁸ The Conquerour had put Golsbert, a monk of Marmontier, at the head of his new foundation of Battle Abbey-Ord. Vit. l. iv. p. 505. In like manner Roger de Montgomery, Earl of Shrewsbury, sent for Monks from Sees to begin his Abbey at Shrewsbury. Id. l. iv. p. 581. Walter Espec also brought over Monks of Clervaux to fill his two Abbeys, of Rivaux, and Wardun. Ait. Rievall. ap. X Script. p. 338.

Beside these and many other independent foundations, which were in this manner opened for the reception of foreign Monks in preference to the natives, a considerable number of Religious Houses were built and endowed, as cells to different monasteries abroad; and as such were constantly filled by detachments from the superiour society. They are frequently mentioned in our histories under the general name of the *Allen Priors*; and though several of them, upon various pretexts, had withdrawn themselves from their foreign connexions and been made denizens, no less than one hundred and forty remained in 1414, which were then all suppressed and their revenues vested in the crown. See the List, Monast. Angl. v. i. p. 1035.

¹⁹ I suppose that, during this whole period of above 250 years, the English language was continually gaining ground,

f Edward III. it is probable, that the French and English languages subsisted together hout the kingdom; the higher orders, both of the Clergy and Laity²², speaking almost

and almost imperceptible degrees, in proportion nearly as the English natives were emerging from that state of servitude in which they were placed by the Conquest. We have no reason to believe that much progress was made of these matters before the reign of King John. The loss of Normandy &c. in that reign, and the consequent loss of Henry III. and Louis IX. by which the subjects of either crown were made incapable of holding lands in fief from the other [Math. Paris, ad an. 1244], must have greatly diminished the usual confux of Normans to the English court; and the intestine commotions in this country under John and Henry III. in which so many of the great Barons lost their lives and estates, must eventually have opened a way for the English to raise themselves to independence and possessions, to which they had very rarely before been admitted to aspire.

In the year 1258, the 4th Henry III. we have a particular instance (the first, I believe, of the kind) of attention on the part of government to the English part of the community. The Letters Patent, which the King was advised to issue in support of the Oxford Provisions, were sent to each County in Latin, French, and English. [Annals, p. 418. One of them has been printed from the Patent-roll, 43 H. III. n. 40. m. 13. by Somner in his Dict. Sax. v. and by Hearne, Text. Roff. p. 391.] At the same time all the proceedings in the business of the Provisions must have been carried on in French, and the principal persons in both parties are evidently of foreign extraction. No conjecture may be allowed in a matter so little capable of proof, I should think it probable, that the necessity, to the great Barons were under at this time, of engaging the body of the people to support them in their opposition to the king, and of foreigners, chiefly Poitevins, contributed very much to abolish the invidious distinctions which had existed between the French and English parts of the nation. In the early times after the Conquest, if we may judge from the story of Henry of Huntingdon [L. vi. p. 370.] "to be called an Englishman was a reproach:" but when the Clares, the Bigods, &c. were raising armies for the expulsion of Foreigners out of the kingdom, they would not be unwilling to have themselves considered as natives of England. Accordingly Matthew Paris [p. 833.] speaks of Hugh Bigod (a brother of the Earl Marshall) *virum de terra Anglorum naturalem et ingenuum*; and in another place [p. 831.] he appropriates the title of "*alienigenæ*" to those foreigners, "*qui Regine alienigenes per eam introierunt in Angliam*:" and so perhaps the word ought generally to be understood in the transactions of that time but persons born out of England were then esteemed as Foreigners.

At the same time we find an Archbishop of York objecting to Clerks (recommended to benefices by the Pope), that they were "ignorant of the English language" [Mat. Par. p. 831.]; which seems to imply, that a knowledge of the English language was then considered among the proper qualifications of an Ecclesiastick; but that it was not necessary, even in the Parochial Clergy, appears from the great number of foreign Parsons, Vicars, &c. who had Letters of protection in the 25th year of Edward I. See the Lists in Prynne, t. i. p. 709—720.

The testimony of Robert of Gloucester (who lived in the times of H. III. and E. I.) is so full and precise to this effect that I trust the Reader will not be displeased to see it in his own words, or rather in the words of that correct MS. which Hearne has religiously followed in his edition.

Glouc. p. 364.

Thus come to ! Engeland into Normannes honde.
And the Normans ne couthe speke tho *bote her owe speche*,
And speke Frenche as *'dude alow*, and here chyl dren dude al so teche.
So that hey men of this lond, that of her blod come,
Holdeth alle thulke speche, that hil of hem nome.
' For bote a man couthe French, 'me tolde of hym wel lute;
' Ac lowe men holdeth to Englyss and to her kunde speche 'gule
Ich wene ther ne be man in world contreyes none,
That ne holdeth to her kunde speche, bote Engeland one.
Ac wel me wot vor to conne bothe wel yt ys,
Vor the more that a man con, the more worth he ys.

I throw together here a few miscellaneous facts in confirmation of this general testimony of Robert of Gloucester.

For Hugh, Bishop of Coventry, preserved by Hoveden [p. 704.] assures us, that William, Bishop of Ely, for and Prime Minister to Richard I. "*linguam Anglicanam prorsus ignorabat.*"

In the reign of Henry III. Robert of Gloucester, intending, as it should seem, to give the very words of Peter, of Hereford (whom he has just called "a Freinshe bishop"), makes him speak thus—"Par Crist," he seide, *meas, tu is mawris. Meint ben is ay fet.*" Rob. Glouc. p. 837.

It is a more pleasant instance of the familiar use of the French language by a bishop, as late as the time of H. Louis, consecrated Bishop of Durham in 1318, was unfortunately very illiterate—"lallous; Latinum non

^a But their own.

^b Did at home

^c For but ———

^d Men told.—*Mis*, little.

But kinde, natural.

^e Yet.

universally French, the lower retaining the use of their native tongue, but also frequently adding to it a knowledge of the other. The general inducements which the English had to acquire the French language have been touched upon above; to which must be added, that the children, who were put to learn Latin, were under a necessity of learning French at the same time, as it was the constant practice in all schools, from the Conquest²¹ till about the reign of Edward III. to make the scholars construe their Latin lessons into French. From the discontinuance of this practice, as well as from other causes, the use and, probably, the knowledge of French, as a separate language, received a considerable check. In the 36th year of Edward III. a law²² was made, "that all pleas, in the courts of the King or of any other Lord,

intelligens, sed cum difficultate pronunciens. Unde, cum in consecratione sua profiteri debuit, quamvis per multos dies ante instructorem habuisset, legere nescivit: et cum, auriculantibus [f. articulantibus] aliis, cum difficultate ad illud verbum *metropolitica* pervenisset, et diu anhelans pronunciare non posset, dixit in Gallico; *Selt pur dite.*—Et cum similiter celebraret ordines, nec illud verbum in *enigmate* proferre posset, dixit circumstantibus: *Par Saint Couys, il ne fu pas curteis, qui ceste parole ici escrit.*" Hist. Dunelm. ap. Wharton, Ang. Sac. t. i. p. 761.

The transactions at Norham, in 1291, the 20 Ed. I. with respect to the Scottish Succession, appear to have been almost wholly carried on in French, for which it is difficult to account but by supposing that language to have been the language of the Court in both nations. See the Roll de Superior. Reg. Angl. in Prynn, t. i. p. 487, et seq. Edward's claim of the Superiority is first made by Sir Roger Brabanson *Sermone Gallico*; and afterwards the Bishop of Bath and Wells, and the King himself, speak to the assembly of English and Scots in the same language. Ibid. * 499. 501.

The answers of the Bishop of Durham to the Pope's Nuncios in Gallico [Walt. Hemingf. ad an. 1295.] may be supposed to have been out of complaisance to the Cardinals, (though, by the way, they do not appear to have been Frenchmen;) but no such construction can be put upon the following fact related by Matthew of Westminster [ad an. 1301. p. 438.] The Archbishop of Canterbury informs the Pope, that he had presented his Holinesses letters to the King in a full court, "*quas ipse dominus rex reverenter recipiens, eas publice legi coram omnibus, et in Gallica lingua fecerat patenter exponi.*"

²¹ Ingulphus, a contemporary writer, informs us that this practice began at the Conquest, p. 71. "*Ipsam etiam, idioma [Anglicum] tantum abhorrebant [Normanni], quod leges terræ statutaque Anglicorum regum lingua Gallica tractarentur et pueris etiam in scholis principia literarum grammatica Gallice ac non Anglice traderentur; modus etiam scribendi Anglicus omittitur, et modus Gallicus in chartis et in libris omnibus admittitur.*"—And Trevisa, the translator and augmentor of Higden's Polychronicon in the reign of Richard II. gives us a very particular account of its beginning to be disused within his own memory. The two passages of Higden and Trevisa throw so much light upon the subject of our present enquiry, that I shall insert them both at length, from MS. Harl. 1900. as being more correct in several places than the MS. from which Dr. Hickes formerly printed them in his Pref. ad Thes. Ling. Septent. p. xvii.

HIGDEN'S *Polychron.* b. l. c. lix. This apayringe of the birthe tonge is by cause of tweye thinges: con is for children in scole, azenes the usage and maner of alle other nacions, beth compelled for to leve her owne langage and for to constrewe her lessouns and her thingis a Frensche, and haveth siththe that the Normans come first into England. Also gentil mennes children beth ytantz for to speke Frensche, from the tyme that thei beth rokked in her cradel, and kunneth speke and playe with a childes brooch. And uplondish men wole likne hem self to gentil men, and fondeth with grete bisynesse for to speke Frensche, for to be the more ytolde of.

TREVISA. This maner was myche yused to fore the first moreyn, and is siththe som del ychaungide. For John Cornwaile, a maistre of grammer, chaungide the lore in grammer scole and construction of Frensch into English, and Richard Penriche lerned that maner teching of him, and other men of Penriche. So that now, the zere of oure lorde a thousand thre hundred foure score and fyve, of the secunde king Rychard after the Conquest nyne, in alle the grammer scoles of Englonde children leveth Frensch, and construeth and lerneth an English, and haveth therby avauntage in con side and desavauntage in another. Her avauntage is, that thei lerneth her grammer in lasse tyme than children were wont to do. Desavauntage is, that now children of grammer scole kunneth no more Frensch than can her lifte heele. And that is harm for hem, and thei schul passe the see and travaille in strange londis and in many other places also. Also gentel men haveth now mych ylefte for to teche her children Frensch.

²² This celebrated statute is said by Walsingham [p. 179.] to have been made "*ad petitionem Communitatis*;" but no such petition appears upon the Parliament-roll: and it seems rather to have been an Act of Grace, moving from the King, who on the same day entered into the fiftieth year of his age; "*unde in suo Jubileo populo suo se exhibuit gratiorum.*" Walsing. Ibid. It is remarkable too, that the cause of summons at the beginning of this Parliament was declared by Sir Henry Greene, Chief Justice, *en Engleis* (says the Record for the first time): and the same Entry is repeated in the Records of the Parliaments 37 and 38 Edw. III. but not in those of 40 Edw. III. or of any later Parliament; either because the custom of opening the cause of summons in French was restored again after that

shall be pleaded and judged in the English tongue," and the preamble recites, "*that the French tongue* (in which they had been usually pleaded, &c.) *was too much unknown*," or disused; and yet, for near threescore years after this²² the proceedings in Parliament, with very few exceptions, appear to have been all in French, and the statutes continued to be published in the same language, for above one hundred and twenty years, till the first of Richard III.

§ VIII. From what has been said I think we may fairly conclude, that the English language must have imbibed a strong tincture of the French, long before the age of Chaucer, and consequently that he ought not to be charged as the importer of words and phrases, which he only used after the example of his predecessors and in common with his contemporaries. This was the real fact, and is capable of being demonstrated to any one, who will take the trouble of comparing the writings of Chaucer with those of²⁴ Robert of Gloucester and Robert of Brunne, who both lived before him, and with those of Sir John Mandeville and Wicliff, who lived at the same time with him. If we could for a moment suppose the contrary; if we could suppose that the English idiom, in the age of Chaucer, remained pure and unmixed, as it was spoken in the courts of Alfred or Egbert, and that the French was still a foreign, or at least a separate language; I would ask, whether it is credible, that a Poet, writing in English upon the most familiar subjects, would stuff his compositions with French words and phrases, which, upon the above supposition, must have been unintelligible to the greatest part of his readers; or, if he had been so very absurd, is it conceivable, that he should have immediately become not only the most admired, but also the most popular writer of his time and country?

short interval, or, perhaps, because the new practice of opening it in English was so well established, in the opinion of the Clerk, as not to need being marked by a special Entry.

The reasons assigned, in the preamble to this Statute, for having Pleas and Judgements in the English tongue might all have been urged, with at least equal force, for having the Laws themselves in that language. But the times were not yet ripe for that innovation. The English scale was clearly beginning to preponderate, but the slowness of its motion proves that it had a great weight to overcome.

²² All the Parliamentary proceedings in English before 1422, the first of Henry VI. are the few which follow.

The Confession of Thomas Duke of Gloucester, taken at Calais by William Rickhill and recorded in Parliament, *Inter Plea. Coron.* 21 Ric. II. n. 9. It is printed in Tyrrell, v. iii. p. 793.

Some passages in the Deposition of Richard II. printed at the end of Knighton, *int. X. Scriptores.*

The ordinance between William Lord the Roos and Robert Tirwhitt, Justice of the King's Bench. 13 Hen. IV. n. 18.

A Petition of the Commons with the King's answer. 2 Hen. V. n. 22.

A Proviso in English inserted into a French grant of a Disme and Quinzisme. 9 Hen. V. n. 10.

At the beginning of the reign of Henry VI. the two languages seem to have been used indifferently. The Subsidy of Wells, &c. was granted in English. 1 Hen. VI. n. 19. A Proviso in French was added by the Commons to the Articles for the Council of Regency, which are in English. *ibid.* n. 33. Even the Royal Assent was given to Bills in English. 2 Hen. VI. n. 54. Be it ordeined as it is asked. Be it as it is axed,—and again, n. 55.

I have stated this matter so particularly, in order to shew, that when the French language ceased to be generally understood, it was gradually disused in Parliamentary proceedings; and from thence, I think, we may fairly infer, that while it was used in those proceedings, constantly and exclusively of the English, it must have been very generally understood.

²⁴ Robert of Gloucester's Chronicle has been published by Hearne, Oxf. 1794, faithfully, I dare say, but from incorrect MSS. The author speaks of himself [p. 560.] as living at the time of the Battle of Evesham in 1065; and from another passage [p. 234.] he seems to have lived beyond the year 1278, though his history ends in 1270. See Hearne's Pref. p. lxviii.

Robert Manning of Brunne, or Bourn, in Lincolnshire, translated into English rimes, from the French of Robert Grosseteste, Bishop of Lincoln, a treatise called "*Manuel de Péchés*," as early as the year 1303. This work of his has never been printed, but is preserved among the Harleian MSS. n. 1701. and the Bodleian, n. 2323. He also translated from the French an history of England: the first part, or *Gesta Britonum*, from Master Wace: the remainder, to the death of Edward I. from Peter of Langtoft. His translation was finished in 1338. The latter part, with some extracts from the former, was printed by Hearne in 1725, from a single MS.

Sir John Mandeville's account of his Travells was written in 1356. In the last edition, Lond. 1727, the text is said to have been formed from a collation of several MSS. and seems to be tolerably correct.

Wicliff died in 1384. His translation of the New Testament was printed for the first time by Lowy, Lond. 1731. There is an immense Catalogue of other works, either really his or ascribed to him, still extant in MS. See his *Life* by Lewis; and Tanner, *Bibl. Brit.*

PART THE SECOND.

HAVING thus endeavoured to shew, in opposition to the ill-grounded censures of Verstegan and Skinner, that the corruption, or improvement, of the English language by a mixture of French was not originally owing to Chaucer, I shall proceed, in the second part of this Essay, to make some observations upon the most material peculiarities of that Norman-Saxon dialect, which I suppose to have prevailed in the age of Chaucer, and which, in substance, remains to this day the language of England.

§ 1. By what means the French tongue was first introduced and propagated in this island has been sufficiently explained above; but to ascertain with any exactness the degrees, by which it insinuated itself and was ingrafted into the Saxon, would be a much more difficult task²⁵, for want of a regular series of the writings of approved authors transmitted to us by authentic copies. Luckily for us, as our concern is solely with that period when the incorporation of the two languages was completed, it is of no great importance to determine the precise time at which any word or phrase became naturalized; and for the same reason, we have no need to enquire minutely, with respect to the other alterations, which the Saxon language in its several stages appears to have undergone, how far they proceeded from the natural mutability of human speech, especially among an unlearned people, and how far they were owing to a successive conflux of Danish and Norman invaders.

§ 11. The following observations therefore will chiefly refer to the state, in which the English language appears to have been about the time of Chaucer, and they will naturally divide themselves into two parts. The first will consider the remains of the antient Saxon mass, however defaced or disguised by various accidents; the second will endeavour to point out the nature and effects of the accessions, which, in the course of near three centuries, it had received from Normandy.

§ 111. For the sake of method it will be convenient to go through the several parts of speech in the order, in which they are commonly ranged by Grammarians.

1. The Prepositive Article *re, reo, þat*, (which answered to the *δ, ὁ, το*, of the Greeks, in all its varieties of gender, case, and number,) had been long laid aside, and instead of it *an* indeclinable *the* was prefixed to all sorts of nouns, in all cases, and in both numbers.

2. The Declensions of the Nouns Substantive were reduced from six to one; and instead of a variety of cases in both numbers, they had only a Genitive case singular, which was uniformly deduced from the Nominative by adding to it *es*; or only *s*, if it ended in an *e* feminine; and that same form was used to express the²⁶ Plural number in all its cases: as, Nom. *Shour* Gen. *Shoures*, Plur. *Shoures*. Nom. *Name*, Gen. *Names*, Plur. *Names*.

The Nouns Adjective had lost all distinction of Gender, Case, or Number.

²⁵ In order to trace with exactness the progress of any language, it seems necessary, 1. that we should have before us a continued series of authors; 2. that those authors should have been approved, as having written, at least, with purity; and 3. that their writings should have been correctly copied. In the English language, we have scarce any authors within the first century after the Conquest; of those, who wrote before Chaucer, and whose writings have been preserved, we have no testimony of approbation from their contemporaries or successors; and lastly, the Copies of their works, which we have received, are in general so full of inaccuracies, as to make it often very difficult for us to be assured, that we are in possession of the genuine words of the Author.

²⁶ It is scarce necessary to take notice of a few Plurals, which were expressed differently, though their number was greater in the time of Chaucer than it is now. Some of them seem to retain their termination in *en* from the second Declension of the Saxons; as *oxen, eyen, hosen*, &c. Others seem to have adopted it *euphonia gratia*; as *brethren, eyren*, instead of *broðru, æxru*. And a few seem to have been always irregularly declined; as *wæn, wimmen, mice, hce, feet*, &c. See Hickes, Gr. A. S. p. 11, 12.

3. The Primitive Pronouns retained one oblique case²⁷ in each number: as, *Ic*, or *I*; *We*: Obl. *Me*; *Us*—*Thou*; *Ye*: Obl. *Thee*; *You*.—*He*, *She*; *Hi*²⁸, or *They*: Obl. *Him*, *Hire*; *Hem*, or *Them*.

Their Possessives were in the same state with the Adjectives; *Min*, *This*, *His*, *Hire*; *Ours*, *Yours*, *Hir*, or *Their*²⁹.

The Interrogative and Relative *Who* had a Genitive and Accusative case, *Whos*, and *Whom*, but no variety of Number.

On the contrary, the Demonstrative, *This*, and *That*, had a Plural expression, *Thies*, and *Tho*, but no variety of case.

The other words, which are often, though improperly, placed in the class of Pronouns, were all become undeclined, like the Adjectives; except, *Eyther*, alteruter; *Neyther*, neuter; *Other*, alter; which had a Genitive case Singular, *Eytheres*, *Neytheres*, *Otheres*: *Other*, alius, had a Genitive case singular, and a Plural number, *Otheres*; and *Aller* (a corruption of *calpa*) was still in use, as the Genitive Plural of *Alls*³⁰.

²⁷ I take no notice here of the Genitive cases, *min*, *thin*, *ours*, *yours*, &c. as being at this time hardly ever distinguishable from Pronouns Possessive. How are we to know whether *min* *boke* should be rendered *liber mei*, or *liber meus*? In the Plural number however, in a few instances, the Genitive case seems to have retained its proper power. C. T. v. 823. *oure aller oek*—would be more naturally translated—*nostrum omnium gallus*, than, *noster canum*. And so in P. P. fol. cxi. *Yours aller hele*—*vestrum omnium salus*; not, *vestra*.

²⁸ It is very difficult to say from whence, or why, the Pronouns, *They*, *Them*, and *Their*, were introduced into our language. The Saxon Pronouns, *Hi*, *Hem*, and *Hir*, seem to have been in constant use in the time of Robert of Gloucester. Sir John Mandeville and Chaucer use *They*, for *Hi*; but never, as I remember, (in the MSS. of authority) *Them*, or *Their*.

²⁹ The four last of these Possessive Pronouns were sometimes expressed a little differently viz. *Hires*, *Oures*, *Yours*, and *Hirs*, or *Theirs*; as they are still, when the Noun to which they belong is understood, or when they are placed after it in a sentence. To the question, Whose book is this? we answer, *Hers*, *Ours*, *Yours*, or *Theirs*. or we declare; This book is *Hers*, *Ours*, &c. I can hardly conceive that the final *s* in these words is a mark of the Possessive (or Genitive) case, as a very able writer [Short Introduction to English Grammar, p. 35, 6.] seems to be inclined to think; because in the instances just mentioned, and in all which I have been able to find or to imagine, I cannot discover the least trace of the usual powers of the Genitive case. The learned Wallis [Gram. Ang. c. 7.] has explained the use of these Pronouns without attempting to account for their form. He only adds; "Nonnulli, *hera*, *oura*, *youra*, *hira*, dicunt, pro *hera*, *ours*, &c. sed barbarè, nec quisquam (credo) sic scribere solet." If it could be proved that these words were antiently terminated in *n*, we might be led to conjecture that they were originally abbreviations of *her own*, *our own*, &c. the *n* being afterwards softened into *s*, as it has been in many other words.

³⁰ It may be proper here to take a little notice of the Pronoun, or Pronominal Adjective, *Self*, which our best Grammarians, from Wallis downwards, have attempted to metamorphose into a Substantive. In the Saxon language, it is certain that *Sylf* was declined like other Adjectives, and was joined in construction with Pronouns Personal and Substantives, just as *ipse* is in Latin. They said, *Io sylf*, *Ego ipse*; *Min sylfes*, *mei ipedus*; *Me sylfine*, *me ipedum*, &c. *Petrus sylf*, *Petrus ipse*, &c. [See Hickes, Gr. A. S. p. 28.] In the age of Chaucer, *Self*, like other Adjectives, was become undeclined. Though he writes, *Self*, *Selve*, and *Selven*, those varieties do not denote any distinction of case or number; for he uses indifferently, *himself* and *himselven*; *hemself* and *hemselven*. He joins it with Substantives, in the sense of *ipse*, as the Saxons did. [See v. 2862. In that *selve* grove. In illo *ipso* nemore. v. 468. *Thy selve* neighebour. *Ipe tuus* vicinus.] But his great departure from the antient usage was with respect to the Pronouns Personal prefixed to *Self*. Instead of declining them through the cases which they still retained, he uses constantly, *Myself*, for, *I self*, and, *Me self*; *Thyself*, for, *Thou self*, and, *Thee self*; *Him self* and *Hire self*, for, *He self* and *She self*; and in the Plural number, *Our self*, for, *We self*, and *Us self*; *Your self*, for, *Ye self*, and *You self*; and *Hem self*, for, *They self*.

It would be vain to attempt to defend this practice of Chaucer upon any principles of reason or grammatical analogy. All that can be said for it is, that perhaps any regular practice was preferable to the confusion and uncertainty which seems to have prevailed before. Accordingly, the writers who succeeded him following his example, it became a rule, as I conceive, of the English language, that Personal Pronouns prefixed to *Self* were only used in one case in each number; viz. those of the First and Second Person in the Genitive case, according to the Saxon form, and those of the Third in the Accusative.

By degrees a custom was introduced of annexing *Self* to Pronouns in the Singular number only, and *Selves* is con-

4. The verbs, at the time of which we are treating, were very nearly reduced to the simple state in which they are at present.

They had four Modes, as now ; the Indicative, the Imperative, the Subjunctive, and the Infinitive ; and only two expressions of Time, the Present and the Past. All the other varieties of Mode and Time were expressed by Auxiliary Verbs.

In the inflexions of their Verbs, they differed very little from us, in the Singular number : *I love, Thou lovest, He loveth* : but in the Plural they were not agreed among themselves ; some²¹ adhering to the old Saxon form ; *We loveth, Ye loveth, They loveth* ; and others adopting, what seems to have been, the Teutonic ; *We loven, Ye loven, They loven*. In the Plural of the Past Tense the latter form prevailed universally : *I loved, thou lovedest, he loved ; We loveden, Ye loveden, They loveden*.

The second person Plural in the Imperative Mode regularly terminated in *eth* ; as, *Loveth ye*²² ; though the final consonants, according to the genius of the language, were frequently omitted, especially in verse.

The Saxon termination of the Infinitive in *an* had been long changed into *en* ; *to loven, to liven, &c.* and they were beginning to drop the *n* ; *to love, to live*.

The Participle of the Present Time began to be generally terminated in *ing* ; as, *loving* ; though the old form, which terminated in *ende, or ande*, was still in use ; as, *lovede, or lovande*. The Participle of the Past time continued to be formed, as the Past time itself was, in *ed* ; as, *loved* ; or in some contraction of *ed*²³ ; except among the irregular Verbs²⁴, where for the most part it terminated in *en* ; as, *bounden, founden*.

ruption, I suppose, of *Seiven*) to those in the Plural. This probably contributed to persuade our late Grammarians that *Self* was a Substantive ; as the true English Adjective does not vary in the Plural number. Another cause of their mistake might be, that they considered *my, thy, our, your*, to which *self* is usually joined, as Pronouns Possessive ; whereas I think it more probable that they were the Saxon Genitive cases of the Personal Pronouns. The metaphysical Substantive *Self*, of which our more modern Philosophers and Poets have made so much use, was unknown, I believe, in the time of Chaucer.

²¹ In the long quotation from Trevisa (which see above, n. 21.) it may be observed, that all his Plural Verbs of the Present Tense terminate in *eth* ; whereas in Sir John Mandeville and Chaucer they terminate almost as constantly in *en*.

²² Mand. p. 281. And at certeyn houres—thei seyn to certeyn officeres—*Maketh pees* (i. e. Make ye silence). And than sein the Officeres, *Now pees ! lysteneth* (i. e. listen ye)—In the following page, *Stondeth*, is used for, *Stand ye* ; and *Putteth*, for *Put ye*.

²³ The methods, by which the final *ed* of the Past Tense and its Participle was contracted or abbreviated, in the age of Chaucer, were chiefly the following :

1. By throwing away the *d*.

This method took place in Verbs, whose last Consonant was *t*, preceded by a Consonant. Thus, *caste, coste, hurte, putte, sille*, were used instead of, *casted, costed, hurted, putted, silled*.

2. By transposing the *d*.

This was very generally done in Verbs, whose last Consonant was *d*, preceded by a Vowel. Thus, instead of, *reded, leded, spreaded, bleded, feded*, it was usual to write, *redde, ledde, spreadde, bledde, fedde*.—And this same method of transposition, I apprehend, was originally applied to shorten those words which we now contract by Syncope ; as, *lov'd, liv'd, smil'd, hear'd, fear'd*, which were antiently written *lovde, livde, smilde, herde, ferde*.

3. By transposing the *d* and changing it into *t*.

This method was used 1, in Verbs, whose last Consonant was *t*, preceded by a Vowel. Thus, *leted, sweeted, meted*, were changed into, *lette, sweette, mette*.—2, in Verbs, whose last Consonant was *d* preceded by a Consonant. Thus, *bended, bileded, girded*, were changed into, *bente, bille, girtle*.—And generally, in Verbs, in which *d* i changed into *t*, I conceive that *d* was first transposed ; so that *dwellded, passed, dremed, feded, kepted*, should be supposed to have been first changed into, *dwellde, passed, dremde, felde, keptde*, and then into, *dwellte, pastte, dremte, feltte, keptte*.

4. The last method, together with a change of the radical vowel, will account for the analogy of a species of Verb, generally reputed anomalous, which form their Past Time and its Participle, according to modern orthography, in *ght*. The process seems to have been thus. *Bring, bringed, brongde, brogde, brogte* ; *Think, thinked, thenkde, thokde, thokte* ; *Teche, teched, tachte, tachte, &c.* Only *fought*, from *fghted*, seems to have been formed, by throwing

The greatest part of the Auxiliary Verbs were only in use in the Present and Past Tenses of their Indicative and Subjunctive Modes. They were inflected in those tenses like other Verbs, and were prefixed to the Infinitive Mode of the Verb to which they were Auxiliary. I *shall* loven; I *will*, or *woll*, loven; I *may*, or *moȝe*, loven; I *can*, or *con*, loven, &c. We *shullen* loven; We *willen*, or *wollen*, loven; We *mouen* loven; We *connen* loven, &c. In the Past tense, I *shulde* loven; I *wolde* loven; I *mighte*, or *moughte* loven; I *coude* loven, &c. We *shulden*, we *wolden*, we *mighten*, or *moughten*, we *couden* loven, &c.

The Auxiliary *To Have* was a complete Verb, and, being prefixed to the Participle of the Past time, was used to express the Proterperfect and Preterpluperfect Tenses. I *have* loved, Thou *harest*, or *hast* loved, He *hareth*, or *hath* loved; We *haven*, or *han* loved, &c. I *hadde*²¹ loved, thou *haddest* loved, he *hadde* loved; We, ye, they, *hadden* loved.

The Auxiliary *To be* was also a complete Verb, and being prefixed to the Participle of the Past time, with the help of the other Auxiliary Verbs, supplied the place of the whole Passive voice, for which the Saxon language had no other form of expression. I *am*, thou *art*, he *is* loved; We, ye, they, *aren*, or *ben* loved. I *was*, thou *wast*, he *was* loved; We, ye, they, *weren* loved²².

6. With respect to the indeclinable parts of Speech, it will be sufficient to observe here, that many of them still remained pure Saxon: the greatest number had undergone a slight change of a letter or two; and the more considerable alterations, by which some had been disfigured, were fairly deducible from that propensity to abbreviation, for which the inhabitants of this island have been long remarkable, though perhaps not more justly so than their neighbours.

§ 17. Such was, in general, the state of the Saxon part of the English language when Chaucer began to write; let us now take a short view of the accessions, which it may be supposed to have received at different times from Normandy.

As the language of our Ancestors was complete in all its parts, and had served them for the purposes of discourse and even of composition in various kinds, long before they had any intimate acquaintance with their French neighbours, they had no call from necessity, and

sway the *d* (according to method 1.) and changing the radical Vowel. See instances of similar contractions in the Francic language. Hickes, Gramm. Fr. Th. p. 66.

²¹ I consider those verbs only as irregular, in which the Past Time and its Participle differ from each other. Their varieties are too numerous to be particularly examined here; but I believe there are scarce any, in which the deviations from the regular form will not appear to have been made by some method of contraction, or abbreviation, similar to those which have been pointed out in the last note among the Regular Verbs. The common termination of the Participle in *en* is clearly a substitution for *ed*, probably for the sake of a more agreeable sound; and it is often shortened, as *ed* has been shewn to be, by transposition. Thus, *drawen*, *knownen*, *boren*, *stolen*, were changed into *drawne*, *knowne*, *borne*, *stolne*.

²² *Shulde* and *Wolde* are contracted from *Shulled*, and *Wolled*, by transposing the *d*, according to method 2. *Mighte* and *Moughte* are formed from *maghed* and *moghed*, according to method 3. *Maghed*, *maghe*, *maghte*; *Moghed*, *moghde*, *moghle*.

Coude is from *conned*, by transposition of the *d*, and softening the *n* into *w*. It is often written *couthe*, and always so, I believe, when it is used as a Participle. In the same manner Bishop Douglas, and other Scottish writers, use *Begouth* as the Preterit of *Begin*. *Begonned*, *begonde*, *begoude*, *begouth*.

²³ *Hadde* is contracted from *Haved*, as *made* is from *maked*. See Hickes, Gram. Fr. Th. p. 66.

²⁴ The verb *To do* is considered by Wallis, and other later Grammarians, as an Auxiliary Verb. It is so used, though very rarely, by Chaucer. [See v. 14742, 4.] He more commonly uses it transitively: [v. 10074. *Do stripen me. Fais me despoillier.*—v. 10076. *Do me drenche. Fais me noyer.*] but still more frequently to save the repetition of a verb. [v. 289.

His eyen twikeled in his hed aright,
As don the sterres in a frosty night.]

Dr. Hickes has taken notice that *do* was used in this last manner by the Saxons: [Gr. A. E. p. 77.] and so was *faisre* by the French, and indeed is still. It must be confessed, that the exact power, which *do*, as an auxiliary, now has in our language, is not easy to be defined, and still less to be accounted for from analogy.

consequently no sufficient inducement, to alter its original and radical constitutions, or even its customary forms. Accordingly, we have just seen, that, in all the essential parts of Speech, the characteristic features of the Saxon idiom were always preserved; and we shall see presently, that the crowds of French words, which from time to time were imported, were themselves made subject, either immediately or by degrees, to the laws of that same idiom.

§ v. The words which were thus imported, were chiefly Nouns Substantive, Adjectives, Verbs, and Participles. The Adverbs, which are derived from French Adjectives, seem to have been formed from them after they were Anglicised, as they have all the Saxon termination *lick* or *ly*²⁸, instead of the French *ment*. As to the other indeclinable parts of Speech, our language, being sufficiently rich in its own stores, has borrowed nothing from France, except perhaps an Interjection or two.

The Nouns Substantive in the French language (as in all the other languages derived from the Latin) had lost their Cases long before the time of which we are treating; but such of them as were naturalised here, seem all to have acquired a Genitive case, according to the corrupted Saxon form, which has been stated above. Their Plural number was also new modelled to the same form, if necessary; for in Nouns ending in *e* feminine, as the greater part of the French did, the two languages were already agreed. Nom. *Flour*. Gen. *Floures*. Plur. *Floures*. Nom. *Dame*. Gen. *Dames*. Plur. *Dames*.

On the contrary, the Adjectives, which at home had a distinction of Gender and Number, upon their naturalisation here, seem to have been generally stript of both, and reduced to the simple state of the English Adjective, without Case, Gender, or Number.

The French Verbs were obliged to lay aside all their differences of Conjugation. *Accorder*, *souffrir*, *recevoir*, *descendre*, were regularly changed into—*accorden*, *suffren*, *receiven*, *descenden*. They brought with them only two Tenses, the Present and the Past; nor did they retain any singularity of Inflection, which could distinguish them from other Verbs of Saxon growth.

The Participle indeed of the Present time, in some Verbs, appears to have still preserved its original French form; as, *usant*, *suffisant*, &c.

The Participle of the Past time adopted, almost universally, the regular Saxon termination in *ed*; as *accorded*, *suffred*, *received*, *descended*. It even frequently assumed the prepositive particle *ge*, (or *y*, as it was latterly written,) which, among the Saxons, was very generally, though not peculiarly, prefixed to that Participle.

§ vi. Upon the whole, I believe it may be said with truth, that, at the time which we are considering, though the form of our Language was still Saxon, the matter was in a great measure French. The novelties of all kinds, which the Revolution in 1066 had introduced, demanded a large supply of new terms; and our Ancestors very naturally took what they wanted, from the Language which was already familiar to a considerable part of the Community. Our Poets in particular, who have generally the principal share in modelling a Language, found it their interest to borrow as many words as they conveniently could from France. As they were for a long time chiefly Translators, this expedient saved them the trouble of hunting for correspondent terms in Saxon. The French words too, being the remains of a polished language, were smoother and slid easier into metre than the Saxon, which had never undergone any regular cultivation: their final syllables chimed together with more frequent consonancies, and their Accents were better adapted to Riming Poetry. But more of this in the next Part.

²⁸ As rarely, continually, veraily, bravely, &c. which correspond to the French adverbs, rarement, continuellement, veraiment, bravement, &c.

PART THE THIRD.

BEFORE we proceed in the third and last part of this Essay, in which we are to consider the Versification of Chaucer, it may be useful to premise a few observations upon the state of English Poetry antecedent to his time.

§ 1. That the Saxons had a species of writing, which differed from their common prose, and was considered by themselves as Poetry³⁹, is very certain; but it seems equally certain, that their compositions of that kind were neither divided into verses of a determinate number of syllables, nor embellished with what we call Rime⁴⁰. There are no traces, I believe, to be

³⁹ The account which Bede has given of Cadmon [Ecc. Hist. l. iv. c. 24.] is sufficient to prove this. He repeatedly calls the compositions of Cadmon *carmina*—*poemata*—and in one place, *versus*; which words in the Saxon translations are rendered *Leop*,—*Leop ronzef*, or *ronzef*—and *pepf*: and *ars canendi* is translated, *Leop pæpf* or *fang cneft*.

As also, in his Life of Alfred, speaks of *Saxonica poemata* and *Saxonica carmina* [p. 16. 43.] and most probably the *Canthabæ per successiones temporum detrita*, which Malmesbury cites in his History, l. 11. p. 52. were in the Saxon language. The same writer [l. v. de Pontif. edit. Gale.] mentions a *Carmen triviale* of Aldhelm (the author of the Latin Poem de Virginitate, who died in 709,) as *adhuc vulgo cantitatum*; and he quotes the testimony of King Alfred, in his *Liber manualis*, or *Hand-book*, as saying, "that no one was ever equal to Aldhelm in English Poetry."

⁴⁰ Both these circumstances are evident from the most cursory view of the several specimens of Saxon Poetry, which Hickes has exhibited in his Gram. Ang. Sax. c. xxi. and they are allowed by that learned writer himself. Unwilling however, as it should seem, to leave his favourite language without some system of versification, he supposes, that the Saxons observed the quantity of syllables in their verses, "though perhaps," he adds, "not so strictly as the Heroic Greek and Latin Poets."

He gives three reasons for this supposition. 1. Because they did not use Rime. 2. Because they transposed their words in such an unnatural manner. "*Hoc autem cur facerent Anglo-Saxonum Poetæ, nulla, ut videtur, alia assignari causa potest, quam quæ, ut idem facerent, Græcos et Latinos poetas coegit; nempe Metri Lex.*" 3. Because they had a great number of disyllable and polysyllable words, which were fit for metrical feet.

However specious these reasons may appear, they are certainly far from conclusive, even if we had no monuments of Saxon Poetry remaining; but in the present case, I apprehend, the only satisfactory proof would have been to have produced, out of the great heap of Poetical compositions in the Saxon language, some regular metrical verses; that is, some portions of words, similar to each other in the nature and order of their component syllables, and occurring either in a continued series, or at stated intervals. If all external proofs of the nature of the Roman Poetry were lost, a few verses of Virgil or Horace would be sufficient to convince us, that their metres were regulated by the quantity of syllables; and if Cadmon had really written in a metre regulated by the quantity of syllables, a few of his lines must have afforded us the same conviction with respect to the general laws of his versification.

For my own part, I confess myself unable to discover any material distinction of the Saxon Poetry from Prose, except a greater pomp of diction, and a more stately kind of march.

Our ancestors affected a certain pomp of style in all their compositions. Angli (says Malmesbury, l. i. p. 13.) *perpetuas dicere amant*. And this affectation, I suspect, was the true cause of their so frequently inverting the natural order of their words, especially in Poetry. The obscurity arising from these inversions had the appearance of Pomp. That they were not owing to the constraint of any metrical Laws (as Hickes supposes) may be presumed from their being commonly used in Prose, and even in Latin Prose, by Saxon writers. Ethelwerd, an Historian descended in the fifth degree from King Ethelred [Inter Script. post Bedam, p. 831—850.], is full of them. The following passage of his history, if literally translated, would read very like Saxon poetry. "*Abstrahuntur tunc | ferventes aë | anno in eodem | Hibernia stirpe | tres viri lecti | furim consuunt lembum | taurinis byrals | alimentum sibi | hebdomadarii suppleunt | elewant dies | per vela septem totidemque noctes,*" &c.

We do not see any marks of studied alliteration in the old Saxon Poetry; so that we might attribute the introduction of that practice to the Danes, if we were certain, that it made a part of the Scaldic versification at the time of the Danish settlements in England.

However that may have been, Giraldus Cambrensis [Deser. Camb. p. 889.] speaks of *Annemination*, which he describes to be what we call *Alliteration*, as the favourite rhetorical figure of both the Welsh and English in his time. "*Adco igitur hoc verborum ornatu due nationes, Angliæcil. et Cambri, in omni sermone exquisito utuntur ut nihil ab his eleganter dictum, nullum nisi rude et agreste censetur eloquium, si non schematis hujus limâ plene fuerit expolitur.*" It is plain that Alliteration must have had very powerful charms for the ears of our ancestors, as we

found of either Rime or Metre in our language, till some years after the Conquest; so that I should apprehend we must have been obliged for both to the Normans, who very early⁴¹ distinguished themselves by poetical performances in their Vulgar tongue.

The Metres which they used, and which we seem to have borrowed from them, were plainly copied from the Latin⁴² rythmical verses, which, in the declension of that language, were current in various forms among those, who either did not understand, or did not regard, the true quantity of syllables; and the practice of Riming⁴³ is probably to be deduced from the

find that the Saxon Poetry, by the help of this embellishment alone, even after it had laid aside its pompous phraseology, was able to maintain itself, without Rime or Metre, for several centuries. See Dr. Percy's Essay on the Metre of Pierce Plowman's Visions. Rel. of Antient Poetry, vol. ii.

⁴¹ I cannot find that the French Antiquaries have been able to produce any Poetry in any of the dialects of their language, of an earlier date than the Conquest of England, or indeed than the beginning of the XIIIth Century. However we read of a Thibaud de Vernun, Canon of Rouen, who, before the year 1053, "multorum gesta Sanctorum, sed et S^{ci} Wandregesilli, a sua latinitate transtulit, atque in communis linguae usum satis facunde refudit, ac sic, ad quamdam tinnuli rythmi similitudinem, urbanas ex illis cantilenas edidit. [De Mirac. S^{ci} Vulframmi Auctore Monacho Fontanell. tempt. Will. I. ap. Dacherii Acta SS. Ord. Ben. t. iii. p. 379.] It is probable too, that the "vulgares cantus," which, according to Raimond de Agiles [Gesta Dei, p. 180.], were composed against Arnoulph, a Chaplain of the Duke of Normandy, in the first Croisade, were in the French language; and there can be little doubt that William IX, Duke of Aquitaine, upon his return from Jerusalem, in 1101, made use of his native tongue, when "miseras captivitatibus suar, ut erat jocundus et lepidus, multotiens retulit rythmicis versibus cum facili modulationibus." Ord. Vital. l. x. p. 793. The History of the taking of Jerusalem, which is said to have been written by the Chevalier Gregoire Bechada, of Tours in Limoges, *materna lingua, rythmo vulgari, ut populus pleniter intelligeret,*" [Labbe, Bibl. Nov. t. ii. p. 296.] has not yet been brought to light; so that probably the oldest French Poem of any length now extant is a translation of *Bestiarius* by Philippe de Thann, it being addressed to Alix (Adeliza of Louvain) the second Queen of our Henry I.

There is a copy of this Poem among the Cotton MSS. Nero. A. v. The authors of the *Histoire Littéraire de la France*, t. ix. p. 173—90. suppose it to have been written about 1125, that is, thirty years before *Le Brut*, which Fauchet had placed at the head of his list of French Poems.

I shall take occasion in another place to shew, that the real author of *Le Brut* was Wace (the same who wrote the *Roman de Rou*), and not Wistace, as Fauchet calls him.

⁴² The Latin Rythmical verses resembled the Metrical in the number of syllables only, without any regard to quantity. "Arma cano virumque qui primus Trojæ ab oris" would pass for a very good Rythmical Hexameter. The greatest part however of these compositions were in imitation of the Iambic and Trochaic metres; and in them, if the Accents fell luckily, the unlearned ear would often be as well pleased as if the laws of Quantity were observed. The two Rythmical Hymns quoted by Bede [De Metris, edit. Putsch. p. 2380.] are sufficient to prove this. The first, he observes, "*ad instar Iambici metri pulcherrime factus est.*"

O rex æternæ Domine
Rerum creator omnium, &c.

The other is "*ad formam metri Trochaici.*"

Apparebit repentina dies magna Domini
Fur obcurâ velut nocte improvisos occupans.

In the former of these Hymns, "*Domine*," to a modern ear at least, sounds as well as "*nomine*;"—and in the latter, "*dies*" and "*velut*," being accented upon their first Syllables, affect us no other wise than "*dices*" and "*velum*" would have done.

From such Latin Rythms, and chiefly those of the Iambic form, the present Poetical measures of all the nations of Roman Europe are clearly derived. Instead of long and short Syllables, the Feet of our Poetry are composed of Syllables accented and unaccented, or rather of Syllables strongly and less strongly accented; and hence it is, that we have so little variety of Feet, and consequently of Metres; because the possible combinations of Syllables accented and unaccented are, from the nature of speech, much more limited in point of number, than the combinations of long and short Syllables were in the Greek and Latin languages.

⁴³ We see evident marks of a fondness for Rime in the Hymns of S. Ambrosius and S. Damasus, as early as the fourth Century. One of the Hymns of Damasus, which begins,

"Martyris ecce dies Agathæ
Virginis emicat eximie," &c.

is regularly rimed throughout. Prudentius, who had a more classical taste, seems studiously to have avoided Rimes;

iginal, as we find that practice to have prevailed in Ecclesiastical Hymns, and other imitations, in Latin, some centuries before Otfrid of Weissenberg, the first known Rimer in the vulgar European dialects.

I wish it were in my power to give a regular history of the progress which our ancestors made in this new style of versification; but⁴, except a few lines in the Saxon cle upon the death of William the Conquerour, which seem to have been intended for of the Modern fashion, and a short Canticle, which, according to Matthew Paris⁴, the

lius and Fortunatus, in the fifth and sixth Centuries, use them frequently in their Hymns. See their works, [ymn of the latter ap. Fabric. Bib. Med. Ætat. v. FORTUNATUS.

urned Muratori, in his Dissertation *de Rhythmicis Veterum Poetis*, [Antiq. Med. Ævi, Dissert. xl.] has collected a vast heap of examples, which prove that Rimes were very generally used in Hymns, Sequences, and other compositions in Latin, in the VIIth, VIIIth, and IXth Centuries; so that for my own part I think it as probable as the Poets in the vulgar languages (who first appeared about the IXth Century) borrowed their Rimes from Latin Poetry of that age, as it is evident that they did the forms of their versification.

of Weissenberg, the earliest Rimer that is known in any of the modern Languages, about the year 870, calls the style of the Latin Grammarians, *Schema onæoteleuton* [Præf. ad Liutbert. ap. Schilter. Thea. Antiq. t. i. p. 11.] And when the Monk, who has been cited in n. 41. says, that Thibaud de Verriun composed his *id quendam tinnuli rythmi similitudinem*, he must mean, I think, that he composed them "in imitation of Ingling Rythm." I say, Latin, or at least some foreign, Rythm, because otherwise he would rather have said *o tinnulo*. The addition of the epithet *tinnulus* seems to shew plainly enough, that *Rythmus* alone did not signify what we call Rime.

Ham of Malmesbury [de Gest. Pont. Angl. l. iii. p. 271.] has preserved two Riming verses of Aldred, Archbishop of York, which that Prelate threw out against one Urse, Sheriff of Worcestershire, not long after the Conquest. thou Urse—Have thou God's curse." "*Vocaris Ursus—Habeas Dei maledictionem.*" Malmesbury says, that in this English, "*quod Latina verba non sicut Anglica concinnitati respondent.*" The Concinnity, I suppose, consisted in the Rime, and would hardly have been thought worth repeating, if Rime in English had not been a novelty.

see in the Saxon Chronicle, to which I mean to refer, are in p. 191. ed. Gibb. The passage begins,

Lartelar he let pypcean.
jeapme men jþiþe jþencean—

imes are not in Rime; but I shall set down a few, in English characters, which I think could not have chimed so exactly by mere accident.

Thet he nam be rihte
And mid mycelan un-rihte
Of his leode
For litle neode—
He sætte mycel deor-frith,
And he lægde laga thet with—
He forbæd tha heortas,
Swylce eac tha baras;
Swa awithe he lufode tha hsa-deor
Swylce he wære heora fæder.
Eac he sætte be tham haran,
That hi mosten freo faran—

cluding lines are—

Se æl-mihtiga God
Kithe his saule mild-heortnessa
And do him his synna forgifnessa.

riter of this part of the Chronicle (as he tells us himself, p. 189., had seen the Conquerour.

t. Angl. p. 100. Godric died in 1170, so that, according to tradition, the Canticle was prior to that period. The *usa* being incorrectly printed, I shall only transcribe the last.—

Seinte Marie, Cristes bur,
Meidenes clenhad, moderes fur,
Dille mine sennen, rise in min mod,
Bringe me to winne with selfe God—

blessed Virgin was pleased to dictate to Godric, an Hermite near Durham, I have not been able to discover any attempts at Riming Poetry, which can with probability be referred to an earlier period than the reign of Henry the second. In that reign Layamon⁴⁶, a Priest of Ernleye near Severn, as he calls himself, translated (chiefly) from the French of Wace⁴⁷, a

Hec Canticum (says M. F.) potest hoc modo in Latinum transferri.

*Sancta Maria, Christi thalamus,
virginalis puritas, matris flos,
dele mea crimina, regna in mente meo,
duc me ad felicitatem cum solo Deo.*

Upon the authority of this translation I have altered *pinne* (as it is in the print) to *seune*. The Saxon *p* is often mistaken for a *p*.

⁴⁶ This work of Layamon is extant among the Cotton MSS. Cal. A. ix. A much later copy, in which the author, by a natural corruption was called *Lawman*, was destroyed by the fire. There is an account of both copies in Wanley's Cat. MSS. Septent. p. 228, and p. 237.

The following short extract from fol. 7, 8. containing an account of the Sirens, which Brutus met with in his voyage, will serve to support what is said in the text of this Author's intermixing Rimes with his prose.

Ther heo funden the Merminnen,
That beoth deor of muchele ginnen.
Wismen hit thunchet ful iwis,
Bineothes thon gurdle hit thunoeth fise.
Theos habbeth swa murie song,
Ne beo tha dai na swa long.
Ne biþ na man weri
Heora songes to heran—

⁴⁷ The French Clerk, whom Layamon professes to have followed in his history, is called by Wanley [Cat. MSS. Sept. p. 228.] *Wace*; as if poor *Maistre Wace* were doomed to have his name perpetually mistaken. Fauchet, and a long string of French Antiquaries, have agreed to call him *Wistace*. I shall here, in justice to *Maistre Wace*, (for whom I have a great respect, not only as a very antient but as a very ingenious Rimer, state my reasons shortly for believing, that he was the real author of that translation in French verse of Geoffrey of Monmouth's Romance, which is commonly called *Le Brut*.

In the first place his name is distinctly written in the text of three MSS. of very considerable antiquity. Two of them are in the Museum, viz. Cotton. Vitell. A. x. and Reg. 13 A. xxi. The third is at Cambridge, in the Library of Bennet College, n. 58. In a fourth MS. also in the Museum, Harl. 6508. it is written *Gasce*, and *Gace*, by a substitution of G for W, very usual in the French language.

Secondly, in the MS. abovementioned of Layamon's history Cal. A. ix. if I may trust my own eyes, the name is *Wace*; and not *Wale*, as Wanley read it. The Saxon *ƿ* is not very unlike a *c*. What Layamon has said further, 'that this Wace was a French Clerk, and presented his book to Alienor, the Queen of Henry' [the Second,] agrees perfectly well with the date of *Le Brut* (in 1155, according to all the copies) and with the account which Wace himself, in his *Roman de Rou*, has given of his attachment to Henry.

Thirdly, in a subsequent translation of *Le Brut*, which was made by Robert of Brunne in the beginning of the XIVth Century, he repeatedly names *Nayster Wace*, as the author (or rather translator from the Latin) of the French History. See Hearn's App. to Pref. to *Peter Langtoft*, p. xcviil.

In opposition to this strong evidence in favour of *Wace*, we have nothing material, except the MS. of *Le Brut* quoted by Fauchet [*de la Langue Françoise*, l. ii.]; in which, according to his citation, the author is called *Wistace*. The later French writers, who have called him so, I apprehend, have only followed Fauchet. The Reader will judge, whether it is not more probable, that the writer of the MS. or even Fauchet himself, may have made a little slip in this matter, than that so many MSS. as I have quoted above, and the successive testimonies of LAYAMON and ROBERT OF BRUNNE, should have concurred in calling the author of *Le Brut* WACE, if that had not been his true name.

I will just add, that *La vie de Saint Nicholas*, which is frequently quoted by Hickee [Gr. A. 8. p. 146. 149. et al.] was probably a work of this same *Wace*, as appears from the following passage. [MS. Bodl. 1687. v. 17. from the end.]

Ci faut le livre mestre Guace,
Qui ad de Saint Nicholas fait,
De Latin en Romaunz estreit
A Osberd le fix Thlout,
Qui Saint Nicholas mout amout.—

And I should suspect, that *Le Martire de St. George en vers François* par Robert Guaco, mentioned by M. Labaef as

fabulous history of the Britons, entitled "Le Brut," which Wace himself, about the year 1155, had translated from the Latin of Geoffrey of Monmouth. Though the greatest part of this work of Layamon resemble the old Saxon Poetry, without Rime or metre, yet he often intermixes a number of short verses, of unequal lengths but riming together pretty exactly, and in some places he has imitated not unsuccessfully the regular octosyllable measure of his French original.

§ III. It may seem extraordinary, after these proofs, that the art of Riming was not unknown or unpractised in this country in the time of Henry II, that we should be obliged to search through a space of above an hundred years, without being able to meet with a single maker of English Rimes, whom we know to have written in that interval. The case I suspect to have been this. The scholars of that age (and there were many who might fairly be called so, in the English dominions abroad⁴⁸ as well as at home) affected to write only⁴⁹ in Latin, so that we do not find that they ever composed, in verse or prose, in any other language. On the other hand they, who meant to recommend themselves by their Poetry to the favour of the great, took care to write in French, the only language which their patrons understood; and hence it is, that we see so many French poems⁵⁰, about that time, either addressed directly to the principal persons at the English court, or at least written on such subjects as we may suppose to have been most likely to engage their attention. Whatever therefore of English Poetry was produced, in this infancy of the art, being probably the work of illiterate authors

extent in the Bibl. Colbert. Cod. 3745 [Mem. de l'Acad. D. J. et B. L. t. xvii. p. 731.] ought to be ascribed to the same author, as *Guace* is a very strange name. The Christian name of Wace was *Robert*. See Huet, *Orig. de Caen*, p. 412.

⁴⁸ The following passage of Roger de Hoveden [p. 672.] gives a striking description of the extent of the English dominions in the time of Richard I. *Sciendum est quod tota terra, quæ est ab Anglia usque in Hispaniam, secus mare, videlicet Normannia, Britannia, Picavia, est de dominio Regis Angliæ.* The Kings of France at that time were not possessed of an inch of territory upon the coasts of the Ocean.

⁴⁹ It will be sufficient to name John of Salisbury, Peter of Blois, Joseph of Exeter, Gerald Barry, Nigell Wireker, Geoffrey Vinnuf. I should add to this list Walter Map, if there were not a tradition, not entirely destitute of probability, that he was the author of the *Roman de Saint Graal* in French. I find this in an old MS. of Tristan, Bib. Reg. 20. D. ii. p. antep. *Quant Boort ot conte laventure del Saint Graal, teles come eles estoient avenues, eles furent mises en escrit, gardées en lamers de Salibieres, dont Mestre Gallier Map festrest a faire son liure du Saint Graal, por lemer du roy Herri son seignior, qui fist le storie tralater del Latin en Romans.* The adventure of the *Saint Graal*, is plainly written upon a very different plan from the other Romances of the Round Table, and is likely enough to have come from an Ecclesiastick, though rather, I confess, from a graver one than Walter Map may be supposed to have been. The French Romance, from which our Romance called "*Mort d'Arthur*" is translated, seems to be an injudicious jumble of *Le Brut*, *Lancelot*, *Tristan*, the *Saint Graal*, and some other Romances of less note, which were all, I apprehend, originally separate works.

⁵⁰ *Le Bestiaire*, by Philippe de Thawn, addressed to Queen Adella; *Le Brut* and *Le Roman de Rou*, by Ware, have been mentioned above. Besides the *Roman de Rou*, there is another Chronicle of Normandy in French verse by *Meistre Benett*, compiled by order of Henry II. MS. Harl. 1717. The same *Benett* was, perhaps, the author of the *Vie de St. Thomas*, MS. Harl. 3775. though he there calls himself

"Frere Benett, le pecheour,
"ove les neirs drus"—

At the end of a copy of *Le Brut*, Bib. Reg. 13 A. xxi. there is a Continuation of the History to the death of William II., in the same Metre, by a *Geoffrei Gaimar*, which escaped the observation of Mr. Caaley; and at the end of another copy, *Vell. A. x.* the History is continued by an anonymous author to the accession of King John.

Richard I. composed himself in French. A specimen of his Poetry has been published by Mr. Walpole, Cat. of Royal Authors, v. i. And his Chancellor, William Bishop of Ely (who, as has been observed before, "was totally ignorant of the English language"), was by no means behindhand with his Master in his encouragement of French Poets; for of this Bishop the passage in Hoveden is to be understood, which Mr. Walpole has applied to the King himself. It is part of a letter of Hugh Bishop of Coventry, who, speaking of the Bishop of Ely, says that he, "*ut augmentum et famam sui nominis, emendicata carmina et rhythmos adulatorios comparabat, et de regno Francorum cantores et jocularores muneribus allegerat, ut de illo canerent in plateis; et jam dicebatur ubique, quod non erat tulle in orbe.*" Hoveden, p. 102.

and circulating only among the vulgar⁵¹, we need not be much surprised that no more of it has been transmitted down to posterity.

§ iv. The learned Hickee, however, has pointed out to us two very curious pieces, which may with probability be referred to this period. The first of them is a Paraphrase of the Gospel Histories, entitled *Ormulum*⁵², by one *Orm*, or *Ormin*. It seems to have been considered as mere Prose by Hickee and by Wanley, who have both given large extracts from it; but, I apprehend, every reader, who has an ear for metre, will easily perceive that it is written very

⁵¹ To these causes we may probably impute the loss of those Songs upon Hereward (the last perhaps of the Saxon heroes,) which, according to Ingulphus, "were sung about the streets" in his time. Hist. Croyl. p. 68. Robert of Brunne also mentions "a Rime" concerning Gryme the Fisher, the founder of Grymesby; Haneok the Dane; and his wife Goldesburgh, daughter to a King Athelwold; who all now, together with their bard,

—Macrymables
Urgetur ignotique longa
Nocte.—

See Translation of Peter of Langtoft, p. 25. and Camden's Brit. p. 569.

⁵² The *Ormulum* seems to be placed by Hickee among the first writings after the Conquest [Gram. Ang. Sax. c. xxii. p. 165.], but, I confess, I cannot conceive it to have been earlier than the reign of Henry II. There is a peculiarity in the author's orthography, which consists in doubling the Consonants; e. g. brother, he writes, *brotherr*; after, *afterr*, &c. He has done this by design, and charges those who shall copy his book to be very careful to write those letters twice, which he has written so, as otherwise, he assures them, "they will not write the word right." Hickee has taken notice of this peculiarity, but has not attempted to explain the author's reasons for it; and indeed, without a more perfect knowledge than we now probably can have of the Saxon pronunciation, they seem totally inexplicable. In the few lines, which I think it necessary to quote here as a specimen of the Metre, I shall venture (first begging Ormin's pardon for disregarding his injunction) to leave out the superfluous letters, and I shall also for my own ease as well as that of the reader transcribe them in modern characters. The first lines of Wanley's extract from MSS. Bod. Junius. 1. [Cat. Codd. MSS. Septent. p. 59.] will answer my purpose as well as any other.

Nu, brother Walter, brother min after the fleshes kinde,
And brother min I Cristendom thurh fulluht and thurh trowthe,
And brother min I Godes hus yet o the thride wise,
Thurh that wit hafren taken ba an reghel boc to folghen
Under kanunkes-had and lif swa sum Sant Awstin sette,
Ic hafe don swa sum thu bad, and *forbed* to thin wille,
Ic hafe wend intil English godspelles halighe lare,
After that litte wit that me min Drihten hafeth lened—

The reader will observe, that, in calling these verses of fifteen syllables, I consider the words—*kinde*, *trowthe*, *wise*, *sette*, *wille*, *lare*—as dissyllables.

The laws of Metre require that they should be so considered, as much as *folghen* and *lened*: and for the same reason *thride* in ver. 3 and *hafe* in ver. 6 and 7. are to be pronounced as consisting of two syllables.

It is the more extraordinary that neither Hickee nor Wanley should have perceived that Ormin wrote in Metre, as he himself mentions his having added words for the sake of *filling* his *Rime*, or *Verse*, for he calls it by both those names in the following passages:

Ic hafe sett her o this boc among Godspelles wordes
All thurh me selfen manig word, the *Rime* swa to *fillen* —

And again,

And ic ne mihte noht min *fers* ay with Godspelles wordes
Wel *fillen* all, and all forthi sholde ic wel ofte nede
Among Godspelles wordes don min word, min *fers* to *fillen*—

It is scarce necessary to remark, that *Rime* is here to be understood in its original sense, as denoting the whole verse, and not merely the consonancy of the final syllables. In the second quotation *fers*, or *verse*, is substituted for it as a synonymous term. Indeed I doubt whether, in the time of Ormin, the word *Rime* was, in any language, used singly to convey the idea of Consonant terminations.

exactly in verses of fifteen syllables, without Rime, in imitation of the most common species of the Latin Tetrameter Iambic. The other piece⁶³, which is a moral Poem upon old age, &c. is in Rime, and in a metre much resembling the former, except that the verse of fifteen syllables is broken into two, of which the first should regularly contain eight and the second seven syllables; but the metre is not so exactly observed, at least in the copy which Hickes has followed, as it is in the *Ormulum*.

§ v. In the next interval, from the latter end of the reign of Henry III, to the middle of the fourteenth century, when we may suppose Chaucer was beginning to write, the number of English Rimers seems to have increased very much. Besides several, whose names we know⁶⁴, it is probable that a great part of the anonymous Authors, or rather Translators⁶⁵, of the

⁶³ A large extract from this Poem has been printed by Hickes [Gram. Ang. Sax. c. xxiv. p. 222.], but evidently from very incorrect MSS. It begins thus:

Ic am nu elder thanne ic wes
A wintre and ec a lore;
Ic ealdi more thanne ic dede,
Mi wit oghte to bi more.

⁶⁴ Robert of Gloucester and Robert of Brunne have been mentioned already.

To these may be added Richard Rolle, the hermit of Hampole, who died in 1348, after having composed a large quantity of English rimes. See Tanner, Bib. Brit. Art. HAMPOL.—Laurence Minot, who has left a collection of Poems upon the principal events of the former part of the reign of Edward III. MS. Cotton. Galba. E. ix.—Within the same period flourished the two Poets, who are mentioned with great commendations by Robert of Brunne [App. to Pref. to Peter Langt. p. xcix.] under the names "Of Erceuldoun and of Kendale." We have no memorial, that I know, remaining of the latter, besides this passage; but the former I take to have been the famous Thomas Leirmouth, of Erceuldoun (or Erailton, as it is now called, in the shire of Merch,) who lived in the time of Edward I, and is generally distinguished by the honourable addition of "The Rhymour." As the learned Editor of "Ancient Scottish Poems, Edinburgh, 1770," has, for irrefragable reasons, deprived this Thomas of a Prophecy in verse, which had usually been ascribed to him, [see Mackenzie, Art. THOMAS RHYMOUR,] I am inclined to make him some amends by attributing to him a Romance of "Sir Tristrem;" of which Robert of Brunne, an excellent Judge! [in the place above cited] says,

Over gastes it has th'esteom,
Over all that is or was,
If men is sayd as made THOMAS.

⁶⁵ See Dr. Percy's curious *Catalogue of English Metrical Romances*, prefixed to the third Volume of *Reliques of ancient Poetry*. I am inclined to believe that we have no English Romance, prior to the age of Chaucer, which is not a translation or imitation of some earlier French Romance. The principal of those, which, being built upon English stories, bid the fairest for having been originally composed in English, are also extant in French. A considerable fragment of *Hornchilde*, or *Dan Horn* as he is there called, is to be found in French Alexandrines in MS. Harl. 187. The first part of *Guy of Warwick* is in French, in the octosyllable metre, in MS. Harl. 3775. and the last part in the same language and metre in MS. Bib. Reg. 8 F. ix. How much may be wanting I have not had opportunity to examine. I have never seen *Bevis* in French; but Du Fresnoy, in his *Biblioth. des Romans*, t. ii. p. 241. mentions a MS. of *Le Roman de Beuves de Hantonne*, and another of *Le Roman de Beuves et Rosiane, en Rime*; and the Italiane, who were certainly more likely to borrow from the French than from the English language, had got among them a Romance of *Buovo-d'Antona* before the year 1348. Quadrio, Storia della Poesia, t. vi. c. 542.

However, I think it extremely probable that these three Romances, though originally written in French, were composed in England, and perhaps by Englishmen; for we find that the general currency of the French language here engaged several of our own countrymen to use it in their compositions. Peter of Langtoft may be reckoned a dubious instance, as he is said by some to have been a Frenchman; but Robert Grosseteste, the famous Bishop of Lincoln in the time of Henry III, was a native of Suffolk, and yet he wrote his *Chateau d'Amours*, and his *Manuel des Pechies* in French. [Tanner's Bib. Brit. and Hearne's Pref. to Rob. of Gloucester, p. lviii.]—There is a translation of *Cato* in French verse by *Helis de Guineestre*, L. a. Winchester, MS. Harl. 4368. and a Romance also in French verse, which I suppose to be the original of the English *Ipomedon* [Percy's Cat. n. 22.] by *Iluc de Roislande*, is to be found in MS. Cotton. Vesp. A. vii.—A French Dialogue in verse, MS. Bod. 3904. entitled, "*La plainte par entre mis Sire Henry de Lucy Comte de Nichole et Sire Wauter de Byblesworth pur la croiserie en la terre Seinte*," was most probably composed by the latter, who has also left us another work in French prose. [See his article in Tanner, Bibl. Brit.]—Even as late as the time of Chaucer, Gower wrote his *Speculum meditantis* in French, but whether in verse or prose is uncertain. John Stowe, who was a diligent searcher after MSS. had never seen this work [Annals, p. 366.]; nor does

popular Poems, which (from their having been originally written in the Roman, or French, language) were called Romances, flourished about this time. It is unnecessary to enter into particulars here concerning any of them, as they do not appear to have invented, or imported from abroad, any new modes of Versification, by which the Art could be at all advanced⁶⁶, or even to have improved those which were before in use. On the contrary, as their works were intended for the ear more than for the eye, to be recited rather than read, they were apt to be more attentive to their Rimes than to the exactness of their Metres, from a presumption, I suppose, that the defect, or redundancy, of a syllable might be easily covered in the recitation, especially if accompanied, as it often was, by some musical instrument.

§ vi. Such was, in general, the state of English Poetry at the time when Chaucer probably made his first essays. The use of Rime was established; not exclusively (for the Author of

either Bale or Pits set down the beginning of it, as they generally do of the books which they have had in their hands. However, one French Poem of Gower's has been preserved. In MS. Harl. 3669. It is connected with the *Confessio Amantis* by the following rubric: "Puisqu'il ad dit cidevant en Englois par vole d'essamble la sotie de celui qui par amours aime par especial, dirra ore apres en Francois a tout le monde en general une traitie selonc les ancours, pour essembler les amants marries, au fin q'ile la foi de leurs seints espousailles pourront par fine loialte garder, et al honneur de dieu salvement tenir." Pr. *Le createur de toute creature*. It contains 17 Stanzas of 7 verses each, in the last of which is the following apology for the language:

"Al' universite de tout le monde
Jehan Gower ceste Balade envoie,
Et si jeo nai de Francois la faconde,
Pardonetz moi qe jeo de ceo forsvole;
Jeo suis Englois, si quier par tiele voie
Estre excuse———

Chaucer himself seems to have had no great opinion of the performances of his countrymen in French. [Prol. to Test. of Love, ed. 1542.] "Certes (says he) there ben some that speke theyr poyry mater in Frenche, of whyche speche the Frenche men have as good a fantasye, as we have in hearing of French mennes Englyshe." And he afterwards concludes, with his usual good sense. "Let then Clerkes endyten in Latyn, for they have the properte of science and the knowinge in that facultye; and lette Frenchmen in theyr Frenche also endyte theyr queynt termes, for it is kyndly to theyr mouthes; and let us shewe our fantasies in suche wordes as we lerneden of our dames tonge."

⁶⁶ It was necessary to qualify the assertion, that the Rimers of this period "did not invent or import from abroad any new modes of Versification," as, in fact, Robert of Brunne (in the passage referred to in n. 54.) has mentioned three or four sorts of verse, different from any which we have hitherto met with, and which appear to have been much cultivated, if not introduced, by the writers who flourished a little before himself. He calls them *Courvre-Strangere*, *Enterlace*, and *Baston*. Mr. Bridges, in a sensible letter to Thomas Hearne [App. to Pref. to Peter Lang t. p. ciii.] pointed out these terms as particularly "needing an explanation;" but Thomas chose rather to stuff his book with accounts of the *Nunnery at Little Gidding*, &c. which cost him only the labour of transcribing. There can be little doubt, I think, that the Rimes called *Couvre* and *Enterlace* were derived from the *Versus Caudati* and *Interlaqueati* of the Latin Rimers of that age. Though Robert of Brunne in his Prologue professes not to attempt these elegancies of composition, yet he has intermixed several passages in Rime *Couvre*; [see p. 266. 273, 6, 7, 8, 9, et al.] and almost all the latter part of his work from the Conquest is written in Rime *Enterlace*, each couplet riming in the middle as well as at the end. [This was the nature of the *Versus interlaqueati*, according to the following specimen, MS. Harl. 1002.

Plausus Grecorum | lux cecis et via claudis |
Incola celorum | virgo dignissima laudis.]

I cannot pretend to define the exact form of the Rime called *Baston*, but I dare say it received its appellation from the Carmelite, Robert Baston, a celebrated Latin Rimer in the reigns of Edward I. and II. [See Tanner, Bibl. Brit. in v. and Hearne's Pref. to Fordun, p. cccxvi. et seq.] His verses upon the battle of Bannockburn, in 1313, are printed in the Appendix to Fordun, p. 1570. They afford instances of all the whimsical combinations of Rimes which can well be conceived to find a place in the Latin heroic metre.

As to Rime *Strangere*, I suspect (upon considering the whole passage in Robert of Brunne) that it was rather a general name, including all sorts of uncommon Rimes, than appropriated to any particular species.

Upon the whole, if this account of these new modes of Versification shall be allowed to be any thing like the truth, I hope I shall be thought justified in having added, "that the Art could not be at all advanced by them"

the "Visions of Pierce Ploughman" wrote after the year 1350⁵⁷ without Rime,) but very generally; so that in this respect he had little to do but to imitate his predecessors. The Metrical part of our Poetry was capable of more improvement, by the polishing of the measures already in use as well as by the introducing of new modes of versification; and how far Chaucer actually contributed to the improvement of it, in both or either of these particulars, we are now to consider.

§ VII. With respect to the regular Metres then in use, they may be reduced, I think, to four. First, the long Iambic Metre⁵⁸, consisting of not more than fifteen, nor less than fourteen syllables, and broken by a *Cæsura* at the eighth syllable. Secondly, the Alexandrin Metre⁵⁹,

⁵⁷ This is plain from fol. 68. edit. 1550. where the year 1350 is named, as a year of great scarcity. Indeed, from the mention of the Kitten in the tale of the Rattons, fol. iii. liii. I should suspect that the author wrote at the very end of the reign of Edward III, when Richard was become heir apparent.

The Visions of (i. e. concerning) Pierce Ploughman are generally ascribed to one Robert Langland; but the best MSS. that I have seen, make the Christian name of the author *William*, without mentioning his surname. So in MS. Cotton. Vesp. B. xvi. at the end of p. 1. is this rubric. "Hic incipit secundus passus de visione *Willemi* de Petro Ploughman." And in ver. 5. of p. 2. instead of, "And sayde; sonne, sleepest thou?" the MS. has, "And sayde; Wille, sleepest thou?" See also the account of MS. Harl. 2376. in the Harleian Catalogue.

I cannot help observing, that these Visions have been printed from so faulty and imperfect a MS. that the author, whoever he was, would find it difficult to recognize his own work. However, the judgement of the learned Doctors, Hickes and Percy, [Gram. A. S. p. 217.—Rel. of Anc. Poet. v. ii. p. 260.] with respect to the laws of his versification, is confirmed by the MSS. Each of his verses is in fact a distich, composed of two verses, after the Saxon form, without Rime, and not reducible to any certain Metre. I do not mean to say, that a few of his verses may not be picked out, consisting of fourteen and fifteen syllables, and resembling the metre used in the *Ormulum*; and there are still more of twelve and thirteen syllables, which might pass for very tolerable Alexandrines: but then, on the other hand, there is a great number of his verses (warranted for genuine by the best MSS.) which cannot, by any mode of pronunciation, be extended beyond nine or ten syllables; so that it is impossible to imagine, that his verse was intended to consist of any determinate number of syllables. It is as clear that his Accents, upon which the harmony of modern Rhythms depends, are not disposed according to any regular system. The first division of a verse is often Trochaic, and the last Iambic; and *vice versa*. The only rule, which he seems really to have prescribed to himself, is what has been taken notice of by his first Editor, viz. "to have three wordes at the leaste in every versu whiche begins with some one letter." Crowley's Pref. to Edit. 1550.

⁵⁸ The most perfect example of this metre has been given above, n. 52, from the *Ormulum*. Each verse is composed of fifteen syllables, and broken by a *Cæsura* at the eighth, which always terminates a word. The accents are so disposed upon the even syllables, particularly the eighth and fourteenth, as to produce the true Iambic Cadence.

The learned reader will recollect, that the *Political verses*, as they are called, of Tzetzes, and others, who wrote when the Greek versification was become Rhythmical instead of Metrical, are chiefly of this form. See Du Cange, v. *POLITICI VERBUS*. And it is remarkable, that, about the time of our Orm, Ciullo d'Alcamo, a Poet of Sicily, where the Greek was still a living language, [Montf. Palæogr. Gr. l. vi.] made use of these verses of fifteen syllables, intermixed with Hemdecasyllables, in the only production of his which has been preserved. *Raccolta dell' Allacci*, p. 408—16. The first Stanza is quoted by Crescimbeni, [Istor. d. V. P. l. i. p. 3.] who however labours very much to persuade us that the verses in question ought not to be considered as verses of fifteen syllables, but as containing each of them two verses, the one of eight and the other of seven syllables. If this were allowed, the nature of the verse would not be altered: [See before, p. xxxv.] but the supposition is highly improbable, as by that distribution there would be three verses in each Stanza not riming. In what follows, Crescimbeni shews very plainly that he had not adverted to the real nature of Ciullo's measure, for he compares it with the noted tetrameter, "*Gallias Cæsar subegit, Nicomedes Cæsarem*," which is a Trochaic, whereas these verses of Ciullo are evidently Iambic, like those of Orm.

I suspect, that, if we could recover the genuine text of Robert of Gloucester, he would be found to have written in this Metre. It was used by Warner, in his *Albions England* (another Chronicle in verse) in the latter end of Q. Elizabeth's reign; and Gascoigne about the same time [Instruction concerning the making of verse in Eng. Signature U. ii.] speaks of the couplet, consisting of one verse of twelve and another of fourteen syllables, as the common sort of verse then in use. It may be proper to observe, that the metre, which Gascoigne calls a verse of fourteen syllables, is exactly the same with what is called above a verse of fifteen syllables; just as the French Alexandrin may be composed indifferently of twelve or thirteen syllables, and the Italian Hemdecasyllable of ten, eleven, or even twelve. The general rule in all these kinds of verse is, that, when they consist of the greater number of syllables, the superfluous syllables, as they may be called, are never accented.

⁵⁹ Robert of Brunne, in his translation of *Petrarch*, seems to have used the Alexandrin verse in imitation

consisting of not more than thirteen syllables, nor less than twelve, with a *Cæsura* at the sixth. Thirdly, the Octosyllable Metre; which was in reality the antient Dimeter Iambic. Fourthly, the Stanza of six verses; of which the first, second, fourth, and fifth, were in the complete Octosyllable Metre; and the third and last catalectic, i. e. wanting a syllable, or even two.

§ viii. In the first of these Metres it does not appear that Chaucer ever composed at all, (for, I presume, no one can imagine that he was the author of Gamelyn,) or in the second; and in the fourth we have nothing of his but the Rime of Sire Thopas, which, being intended to ridicule the vulgar Romancers, seems to have been purposely written in their favourite Metre. In the third, or Octosyllable Metre⁶⁰, he has left several compositions; particularly,

of his Original; but his Metre (at least in Hearn's copy) is frequently defective, especially in the latter part of his work, where he affects to rime at the *Cæsura* as well as at the end of his verse.

The Alexandrin metre is generally agreed to have been first used in the *Roman d'Alexandre*, by Lambert II Cors and Alexandre de Bernay, toward the latter end of the twelfth Century. Du Verdier, Bibl. p. 780. Fruchet, l. ii. A late French Antiquary (M. L'Eveque de la Ravallere,) in his history *Des Revolutions de la Langue Françoise*, p. 163. has combated this opinion, upon the authority of some Alexandrin verses, which he has discovered, as he supposes, in the *Roman de Rou*. I shall only observe, that no such verses are to be found in a very good MS. of the *Roman de Rou*, Bib. Reg. 4 C. xl. and I very much suspect that upon an accurate examination they will appear to have been not the work of Wace, but of some later author. A similar mistake of an interpolation, or continuation, for the original work has led another very able Antiquary of the same nation to place the *Roman de Rou* in the fourteenth Century. Mem. de l'Acad. des I. et B. L. tom. xv. p. 582. There can be no doubt, that Wace wrote the *Roman de Rou* about the middle of the twelfth Century. See before, n. 47.

They who attend only to the length of the Alexandrin verse, will naturally derive it from the Trimeter Iambic rhythms, which were in frequent use in the beginning of the twelfth Century. See Orderic. Vital. l. ii. p. 404. 409. 410. 415. et al. But when it is considered, that the *Cæsura* at the sixth syllable, so essential to the Alexandrin metre, was hardly ever observed in the Trimeter Iambic, it will seem more probable, I think, that the inventor of the Alexandrin took for his model, what has been called above, the long Iambic, but, for some reason or other, retrenched a foot, or two syllables, in the first hemistich.

⁶⁰ Though I call this the Octosyllable Metre from what I apprehend to have been its original form, it often consists of nine and sometimes of ten syllables; but the eighth is always the last accented syllable.

The oldest French poems, to the latter end of the twelfth Century, are all in this metre; but upon the invention of the Alexandrin, the octosyllable verse seems by degrees to have been confined to the several species of lighter compositions in which it is still used. Here in England, Robert of Brunne, in his Preface to his translation of *Le Brut* [App. to Pref. to Peter Langtoft, p. c.] calls it "*light rime*," in contradistinction to "*strange rime*," of which he has just enumerated several sorts (see n. 55.); and says, that he wrote in it "for luf of the loved man;" and Chaucer himself speaks of it in nearly the same terms in the beginning of the third book of the *House of Fame*.

"God of science and of light,
Apollo, thurgh thy grete might
This little last book now thou gye;
Not that I will for maystrye
Here art potential be shewde;
But, for the ryme is *light and lewde*,
Yet make it somewhat agreable,
Though some verse fayle in a syllable."

The learned Editor of a part of the *Canterbury Tales* [London, 1737, 8vo.] has quoted this passage [Pref. p. xxv. as proving, "by Chaucer's own confession, that he did not write in equal measure."

It certainly proves, that he did not write in equal measure in *this particular poem* of the House of Fame; but it proves also, that he knew well what the laws of measure were, and that he thought that any deviation from them required an apology. Is it just to conclude, because Chaucer has owned a neglect of those laws in one work, written in light metre, and in which he formally disclaims any exertion of art [ver. 4, 5.] that therefore he has been equally negligent of them in his other works, written in the gravest metre, and in which he may reasonably be supposed to have employed his utmost skill of versification? In the *Troilus*, for instance, [b. v.] he has a solemn prayer, "that none miswrite, or *mismetre* his book." Can we suppose that it was not originally written in Metre?—But I shall not enter any further into the general argument concerning Chaucer's versification, which will more properly be discussed in the text. My business here was only to prevent the reader from coming to the question with a preconceived opinion (upon the authority of the learned Editor above-mentioned) that "Chaucer himself," in this passage of the House of Fame, "has put the matter out of dispute."

To return again to the Octosyllable Metre. Its constitution is such, that the first syllable may often be dropped without

"an imperfect Translation of the *Roman de la Rose*," which was, probably, one of his earliest performances; "the House of Fame;" "the Dethe of the Duchesse Blanche," and a poem called his "Dreme:" upon all which it will be sufficient here to observe in general, that, if he had given no other proofs of his poetical faculty, these alone must have secured to him the pre-eminence, above all his predecessors and contemporaries, in point of Versification.

§ ix. But by far the most considerable part of Chaucer's works is written in that kind of Metre which we now call the Heroic⁶¹, either in Distichs or in Stanzas; and as I have not been able to discover any instance of this metre being used by any English poet before him, I am much inclined to suppose that he was the first introducer of it into our language. It had long been practised in France, in the Northern as well as the Southern provinces; and in Italy, within the last fifty years before Chaucer wrote, it had been cultivated with the greatest assiduity and success, in preference to every other metre, by Dante, Petrarch, and Boccace. When we reflect that two of Chaucer's juvenile productions, the *Palamon* and *Arcite*, and the *Troilus*, were in a manner translated from the *Theseida* and the *Filostrato* of Boccace⁶², both

much prejudice to the harmony of the verse; and as far as I have observed, that is the syllable in which Chaucer's verses of this kind generally fail. We have an instance in the first line of the passage quoted above—

God of science and of light—

sounds as well (to my ear at least) as

Thou God of science and of light—

according to Mr. Urry's correction. The reason, I apprehend, is, that the measure, though of another sort, is still regular: instead of a Dimeter Iambic, it is a Dimeter Trochaic Catalectic.

But no such liberty can be taken in the Heroic Metre without totally destroying its harmony; and therefore when the above-mentioned learned Editor says [Pref. p. xxvi.] that the numbers of Chaucer "are always musical, whether they want or exceed their complement," I doubt his partiality for his author has carried him too far. I have no conception myself that an heroic verse, which wants a syllable of its complement, can be musical, or even tolerable. The line which he has quoted from the *Knights Tale* [ver. 1328 of this Edition],

Not in purgatory but in helle—

however you manage it; (whether you make a pause; or give two times to the first syllable, as he rather advises;)—can never pass for a verse of any form. Nor did Chaucer intend that it should. He wrote (according to the best MSS.)—

Not *only* in purgatory but in helle.

⁶¹ The Heroic Metre with us, as with the Italians, is of the Iambic form, consists of ten, eleven, or twelve syllables; the tenth, however, being in all cases the last accented syllable. The French have the same Metre; but with them it can scarce contain more than eleven syllables, as their language has few (if any) words, in which the accent is laid upon the Antepenultima. Though we have a great number of such words, we seldom use the verse of twelve syllables. The extraordinary difficulty of riming with three syllables is a sufficient reason for excluding it from all works which are written in Rime, and in Blank Metre the two unaccented syllables at the end make the close of the verse heavy and languid. Milton, for the sake of variety of measure, has inserted a very few of these verses, which the Italians call *Edrueccioli*, in his heroic poems; but they are more commonly and, I think, more properly employed in Dramatic compositions, where a continued stateliness of numbers is less requisite.

The general name for this Metre in Italy is *Endecasillabo*; and the verses of ten and twelve syllables are distinguished by additions; the former being called *Endecasillabo tronco*, and the latter *Endecasillabo edruecciolo*. This proves, I think, that the verse of eleven syllables was the primitive metre, and principally used, as it still is, in Italy; and it will appear hereafter, if I am not mistaken, that the greatest part of Chaucer's heroic verses, when properly written and pronounced, are in this measure.

⁶² It is so little a while since the world has been informed, that the *Palamon* and *Arcite* of Chaucer was taken from the *Theseida* of Boccace, that it would not have been surprising if another century had elapsed without our knowing that our countryman had also borrowed his *Troilus* from the *Filostrato* of the same author; as the *Filostrato* is more scarce, and much less famous, even in Italy, than the *Theseida*. The first suspicion which I entertained of this theft was from reading the title of the *Filostrato* at large, in *Saxii Hist. Lit. Tylog. Mediolan. ad an. 1498*, and I afterwards found, in Montfaucon's *Bibl. MSS. t. II. P. 793* among the King of France's MSS. one with this title: "*Filostrato, dell' amoresse fatiche di Troilo per Gio Boccaccio*." See also *Quadrio*, t. vi. p. 473. I had just employed a person to procure me some account of this MS. from Paris, when I had the good fortune to meet with a printed copy

written in the common Italian hendecasyllable verse, it cannot but appear extremely probable that his metre also was copied from the same original; and yet I cannot find that the form of his Stanza in the *Troilus*, consisting of seven verses, was ever used by Boccace, though it is to be met with among the poems of the King of Navarre, and of the *Provençal* Rimers⁶³. Whichever he shall be supposed to have followed, whether the French or Italians, it is certain that he could not want in either language a number of models of correct and harmonious versification; and the only question will be, whether he had ability and industry enough to imitate that part of their excellency.

§ x. In discussing this question we should always have in mind, that the correctness and harmony of an English verse depends entirely upon its being composed of a certain number of syllables, and its having the accents of those syllables properly placed. In order therefore to form any judgement of the Versification of Chaucer, it is necessary that we should know the syllabical value, if I may use the expression, of his words, and the accentual value of his syllables, as they were commonly pronounced⁶⁴ in his time; for without that knowledge, it is not more probable that we should determine justly upon the exactness of his metres, than that we should be able to cast up rightly an account stated in coins of a former age, of whose current rates and denominations we are totally ignorant.

§ xi. Let us consider a moment, how a sensible critic in the Augustan age would have proceeded, if called upon to examine a work of Ennius⁶⁵. When he found that a great pro-

in the very curious Collection of the Reverend Mr. Crofts. The title is "Il *Filostrato*, che tracta de lo innamoramento de Troilo e Gryseida: et de molte altre infinite battaglie. Impresso nella inclita cita de Milano per magistro Uldericho Scinsenzeler nell'anno m. cccc lxxxviii. a di xxvii. di mese de Septembre, in 4°." By the favour of the learned owner (who is as free in the communication, as he has been zealous in the collection, of his literary treasures) I had soon an opportunity of satisfying myself, that Chaucer was to the full as much obliged to Boccace in his *Troilus* as in his *Knights Tale*.

The doubts which Quadrio mentions [l. vi. p. 474], whether the *Filostrato* was really a work of Boccace, are sufficiently answered, as he observes, by the concurring testimony of several antient MSS. which expressly name him as the author. And it may be remarked, that Boccace himself, in his *Decameron*, has made the same honourable mention of this Poem as of the *Theseida*; though without acknowledging either for his own. In the introduction to the Sixth Day, he says, that "Dioneo insieme con Lauretta di Troilo et di *Chrisida* cominciarono cantare," just as afterwards, in the conclusion of the Seventh Day, we are told, that the same "Dioneo et la Fiammetta gran pezza cantarono insieme d'*Arcita* et di *Palamon*."

⁶³ See *Poésies du Roi de Navarre*, Chans. xvi. xviii. xxvii. xxxiii. lviii. The only difference is, that the two last verses, which in Chaucer's Stanza form a distinct couplet, are made by Thibaut to rhyme with the first and third. In a MS. of Provençal poetry (in the Collection of the Reverend Mr. Crofts), I find one piece by Folket de Marseilles, who died about 1213, in which the Stanza is formed exactly agreeable to Chaucer's.

This Stanza of seven verses, being first introduced, I apprehend, by Chaucer, was long the favourite measure of the Poets who succeeded him. In the time of Gascoigne it had acquired the name of *Rithme royall*; and surely, says he, it is a royall kinde of verse serving best for grave discourses. [Instruction concerning the making of verse. Sign. U. 1. b.] Milton, in some of his juvenile compositions, has made the last verse of this Stanza an Alexandrin.

As the *Theseida* and the *Filostrato* of Boccace are both written in the Octave Stanza, of which he is often, though improperly, called the inventor [see Pasquier, *Recherches*, l. vii. c. 3.] it seems extraordinary that Chaucer should never have adopted that Stanza. Even when he uses a Stanza of eight verses (as in the *Monkes Tale*), it is constituted very differently from the Italian Octave. I observe, by the way, that Chaucer's Stanza of eight verses, with the addition of an Alexandrin, is the Stanza in which Spenser has composed his *Faery Queen*.

⁶⁴ Mons. l'Eveque de la Ravallere, in his *Discours de l'ancienneté des Chansons Françaises*, prefixed to the *Poésies du Roi de Navarre*, has the same observation with respect to the old French poets. *Leur Poésie* (says he, p. 227.) *marque combien ils respectoient cette riple* [of exact riming]; *mais pour en juger aujourd'hui*, ainsi que de la mesure de leurs Vers, *il faut prononcer les mots comme eux*.—He is vindicating the antient French bards from an unjust and ignorant censure of Boileau, in his *Art Poet.* Chant. i. So that, it should seem, a great Poet is not of course a 'udicrous Antiquary. See above, n. 4. a censure of Chaucer's verse by our Dryden, who was certainly a great Poet.

⁶⁵ Though Ennius died not an hundred and fifty years before what may be called the age of Augustus, his language and versification are so different from those of Ovid, for instance, that I much question whether his poems were better relished, or even understood, by the vulgar Romans in that age, than the works of Chaucer are now by the

portion of the verses were strictly conformable to the ordinary rules of Metre, he would, probably, not scruple to conclude that such a conformity must have been produced by art and design, and not by mere chance. On the other hand, when he found, that in some verses the number of feet, to appearance, was either deficient or redundant; that in others the feet were seemingly composed of too few or too many syllables, of short syllables in the place of long, or of long in the place of short; he would not, I think, immediately condemn the old Bard, as having all at once forgotten the fundamental principles of his art, or as having wilfully or negligently deviated from them. He would first, I presume, enquire, whether all these irregularities were in the genuine text of his author, or only the mistakes of Copyists: he would enquire further, by comparing the genuine text with other contemporary writings and monuments, whether many things, which appeared irregular, were not in truth sufficiently regular, either justified by the constant practice, or excused by the allowed licence of the age: where authority failed, he would have recourse, but soberly, to etymology and analogy; and if after all a few passages remained, not reducible to the strict laws of Metre by any of the methods above-mentioned, if he were really (as I have supposed him) a sensible critic, he would be apt rather to expect patiently the solution of his difficulties from more correct manuscripts, or a more complete theory of his author's versification, than to cut the knot, by deciding peremptorily, that the work was composed without any regard to metrical rules.

§ xii. I beg leave to pursue the same course with respect to Chaucer. The great number of verses, sounding complete even to our ears, which is to be found in all the least corrected copies of his works, authorises us to conclude, that he was not ignorant of the laws of metre. Upon this conclusion it is impossible not to ground a strong presumption, that he intended to observe the same laws in the many other verses which seem to us irregular; and if this was really his intention, what reason can be assigned sufficient to account for his having failed so grossly and repeatedly, as is generally supposed, in an operation, which every Balladmonger in our days, man, woman, or child, is known to perform with the most unerring exactness, and without any extraordinary fatigue?

§ xiii. The offences against metre in an English verse, as has partly been observed before, must arise either from a superfluity or deficiency of syllables, or from the accents being improperly placed.

§ xiv. With respect to the first species of irregularity, I have not taken notice of any superfluities in Chaucer's verses, but what may be reduced to just measure by the usual practices⁶⁶ of even modern Poets. And this, by the way, is a strong proof of his real attention to metrical rules; for otherwise, if he had written without any restraint of that kind, a

generality of readers. However a great many of his verses are as smoothly turned as those of Ovid himself, and it is well known, that Virgil has not scrupled to incorporate several of them into his divine *Æneid*. At the same time, whoever casts an eye over the Fragments of his *Annals*, as collected by Columna, Hesselius, and others, will find frequent examples of all the seeming irregularities alluded to in the text.

⁶⁶ It is unnecessary to trouble the Reader with an enumeration of Syncope, Apostrophus, Synecphonesis, &c.

Quicquid habent telorum armamentaria vatam.

They may all, I think, be comprehended in our language under this one general principle, that an English verse, though chiefly composed of feet of two syllables, is capable of receiving feet of three syllables in every part of it, provided only one of the three syllables be accented.

In short, whoever can taste the metrical harmony of the following lines of Milton, will not be embarrassed how to dispose of the (seemingly) superfluous syllables, which he may meet with in Chaucer.

P. L. B. 123. Óminous | conjecture on the whole success.

302. A pil | lar of státe |; deep on his front engraven--

658. Celestial spir | its in bón | dage, nor the abyss--

v 495. No inconvenient di | et, nor too | light fare.

vii 122. Things not revealed, which the invis | ible King--

certain proportion of his deviations from measure must, in all probability, have been on the side of excess.

§ xv. But a great number of Chaucer's verses labour under an apparent deficiency of a syllable, or two. In some of these perhaps the defect may still be supplied from MSS. but for the greatest part I am persuaded no such assistance is to be expected⁴⁷; and therefore, supposing the text in these cases to be correct, it is worth considering whether the verse also may not be made correct, by adopting in certain words a pronunciation, different indeed from modern practice, but which, we have reason to believe, was used by the author himself.

For instance, in the Genitive case Singular and the Plural Number of Nouns (which, as has been remarked above, in the time of Chaucer had the same expression), there can be no doubt that such words as, *shoures*, ver. 1. *croppes*, ver. 7. *shires*, ver. 15. *lordes*, ver. 47, &c. were regularly pronounced as consisting of two syllables. Whenever they are used as monosyllables, it must be considered as a Poetical Licence, warranted however even then (as we may presume from the natural progress of our language) by the practice of inaccurate speakers in common conversation.

In like manner, we may be sure that *ed*, the regular termination of the Past Tense and its Participle, made, or contributed to make, a second syllable in the words, *perced*, ver. 2. *bathed*, ver. 3. *loved*, ver. 45. *wered*, ver. 75, &c.⁴⁸ The first step toward reducing words of this form to Monosyllables seems to have been to shorten the last syllable, either by transposing the final letters, as in—*wolde*, ver. 144. *saide*, ver. 763. &c. or by throwing away the *d*, as in—*coste*, ver. 1910. *caste*, ver. 2083, &c. In both these cases the words still remained of two syllables, the final *e* being sounded as an *e* feminine; but they were prepared to lose their last syllable by the easy licence of changing an *e* feminine into an *e* mute, or of dropping it entirely, according to the modern practice.

§ xvi. But nothing will be found of such extensive use for supplying the deficiencies of Chaucer's metre as the pronunciation of the *e* feminine; and as that pronunciation has been for a long time totally antiquated, it may be proper here to suggest some reasons for believing (independently of any arguments to be drawn from the practice of Chaucer himself) that the final *e* in our ancient language was very generally pronounced, as the *e* feminine is at this day by the French.

With respect to words imported directly from France, it is certainly quite natural to suppose,

⁴⁷ I would not be thought to undervalue the MSS. which I have not seen, or to discourage those who may have inclination and opportunity to consult them. I only mean to say, that, where the text is supported (as it generally is in this Edition) by the concurrence of two or three good MSS. and the sense is clear and complete, we may safely consider it as tolerably correct. In the course of the Notes, I shall have occasion to point out several passages, in which either the disagreement of the good MSS. or the obscurity of their readings, makes a further enquiry absolutely necessary in order to settle the text.

⁴⁸ It appears from the Preface to the last Edition of Chaucer's Works, Lond. 1721, that Mr. Urry, the undertaker of that Edition, had the same opinion with respect to the pronunciation of the final syllables in this and the last mentioned instance; and that it was his intention to distinguish those syllables, *whenever they were to be pronounced*, by printing them with an *i*, instead of an *e*; as, *shouris*, *shiris*, *percid*, *lorid*, &c. As such a distinction is entirely unsupported by the MSS. and must necessarily very much disfigure the orthography of the language, I cannot think that an Editor has a right to introduce it upon ever so plausible a pretence. A shorter and (in my opinion) a less exceptionable method would have been to have distinguished the syllables of this sort, *whenever they were to be contracted*, by adding a sign of Syncope, thus; *shoure's*, *shire's*, *perce'd*, *love'd*. But after all a reader, who cannot perform such operations for himself, had better not trouble his head about the Versification of Chaucer.

Mr. Urry had also discovered, that the final *e* (of which I shall treat more at large in the next Section) often made a syllable in Chaucer's verse; and (according to the Preface quoted above) he "always marked with an accent, when he judged it necessary to pronounce it; as, *swotè*, *halvè*, *smalè*, ver. 5, 8, 9." I have the same objection to this mark that I have to innovations in orthography; and besides, that it would be apt to mislead the ignorant reader (for whom only it can be intended), by making him suppose that the *e* so marked was really to be accented, whereas the true *e* feminine is always to be pronounced with an obscure evanescent sound, and is incapable of bearing any stress or accent.

that, for some time, they retained their native pronunciation; whether they were Nouns substantive, as, *hoste*, ver. 753. *face*, ver. 1580, &c.—or Adjectives, as, *large*, ver. 755. *strange*, ver. 13, &c.—or Verbs, as, *grante*, ver. 12756. *preche*, ver. 12327, &c. and it cannot be doubted, that in these and other similar words in the French language, the final *e* was always pronounced, as it still is, so as to make them dissyllables.

We have not indeed so clear a proof of the original pronunciation of the Saxon part⁶⁶ of our language; but we know, from general observation, that all changes of pronunciation are usually made by small degrees; and therefore, when we find that a great number of those words, which in Chaucer's time ended in *e*, originally ended in *a*, we may reasonably presume, that our ancestors first passed from the broader sound of *a* to the thinner sound of *e* feminine, and not at once from *a* to *e* mute. Besides, if the final *e* in such words was not pronounced, why was it added? From the time that it has confessedly ceased to be pronounced it has been gradually omitted in them, except where it may be supposed of use to lengthen or soften⁷⁰ the preceding syllable, as in—*hope*, *name*, &c. But according to the antient orthography it terminates many words of Saxon original, where it cannot have been added for any such purpose, as, *kerte*, *childe*, *olde*, *wilde*, &c. In these therefore we must suppose that it was pronounced as an *e* feminine, and made part of a second syllable; and so, by a parity of reason, in all others, in which, as in these, it appears to have been substituted for the Saxon *a*.

Upon the same grounds we may presume, that in words terminated, according to the Saxon form, in *ea*, such as the Infinitive modes and Plural numbers of Verbs, and a great variety of Adverbs and Prepositions, the *a* only was at first thrown away, and the *e*, which then became final, continued for a long time to be pronounced as well as written.

These considerations seem sufficient to make us believe, that the pronunciation of the *e* feminine is founded on the very nature of both the French and Saxon parts of our language; and therefore, though we may not be able to trace the reasons of that pronunciation in all cases so plainly as in those which have been just mentioned, we may safely, I think, conclude with the learned Wallis⁷¹, that what is generally considered as an *e* mute in our language,

⁶⁶ This is owing to the Saxons not having left us any metrical compositions, as has been observed before, p. xxix. Hakes complains [Gr. A. S. c. xxiii. §. 7.], "that it is difficult to know of how many syllables a Saxon verse sometimes consists, for this reason among others, *quod non constat quomodo voces in e feminino vel obscuro terminatae pronuntiandae sunt in carmine.*" He might, perhaps with more propriety, have complained, that it is difficult to know how words ending in *e* feminine are to be pronounced in a Saxon verse, because it is uncertain of how many syllables any of their verses consisted. I have mentioned in the text two cases of words abbreviated, in which I think we might conclude from general reasoning that the final *e* was pronounced. As this Theory, with respect to these words, is entirely confirmed by the practice of Orm (the most authentic metrical composer that we have in our antient language) it would not perhaps be unreasonable to infer, that the practice of Orm, in other words of Saxon original, in which the final *e* is pronounced, is consonant to the old Saxon usage. However that may be, the practice of Orm must certainly be admitted to prove, that such a pronunciation prevailed at least 180 years before Chaucer.

⁷⁰ In most of the words in which the final *e* has been omitted, its use in lengthening or softening the preceding syllable has been supplied by an alteration in the Orthography of that Syllable. Thus, in—*grete*, *mete*, *stele*, *rede*, *dec*,—in which the first *e* was originally long, as closing a syllable, it has (since they have been pronounced as Monosyllables) been changed either into *ea*, as in—*great*, *meat*, *steal*, *read*, *dear*; or into *ee*, as in—*greet*, *meet*, *steel*, *reed*, *dec*. In like manner the *o* in—*bote*, *folc*, *dore*, *godr*, *mone*, has been changed either into *oa*, as in—*boat*, *foal*; or into *oo*, as in—*door*, *good*, *moon*.

⁷¹ Gram. Ling. Ang. c. l. §. 2. "Originem vero hujus *e* muti, nequis miretur unde devenierit, hanc esse judico: Rempe, quod antiquitus pronuntiatum fuerit, sed obscuro sono, sicut Gallorum *e* femininum." He afterwards adds: "Certissimum autem hujus rei indicium est ex antiquis Poetis petendum; apud quos reperitur illud *e* promiscue vel constituere vel non constituere novam Syllabam, prout ratio carminis postulaverit." So that, according to this judicious writer, (who has confessedly searched much deeper into the formation of vocal sounds in general, and the pronunciation of the English language in particular, than any of our other Grammarians,) I might have assumed, as certain, the point, which I have been labouring in the text (by arguments drawn from reason and analogy) to render probable.

either at the end or in the middle of words⁷², was antiently pronounced, but obscurely, like the *e* feminine of the French.

§ XVII. The third kind of irregularity, to which an English verse is liable, is from the accents being misplaced. The restoring of Chaucer's words to their just number of syllables, by the methods which have been pointed out above, will often be of signal service in restoring his accents also to their proper places; but further, in many words, we must be cautious of concluding too hastily that Chaucer accented the same syllables that we do. On the contrary, I am persuaded that in his French words he most commonly laid his accent according to the French custom (upon the *last* syllable, or the *last but one* in words ending in *e* feminine), which, as is well known, is the very reverse of our practice. Thus in ver. 3. he uses *licoür* for *liquour*; ver. 11. *coráges* for *courages*; ver. 22. again, *coráge* for *courage*; ver. 37. *resón* for *reason*; ver. 77. *ridge* for *réage*; ver. 109, 10. *viságe*—*uságe* for *visage*—*usage*; ver. 140. *manere* for *manner*; ver. 186. *laboure* for *labour*; ver. 204. *preláte* for *prélate*; ver. 211. *langáge* for *language*; ver. 212. *mariáge* for *marriage*; ver. 216. *contre* for *country*; and so through the whole work.

In the same manner he accents the last Syllable of the Participle Present, as, ver. 885, 6. *wedding*—*comíng* for *wedding*—*comíng*; ver. 903. *licíng* for *living*; ver. 907, 8. *comíng*—*críng* for *comíng*—*críng*; ver. 998. *brénning* for *brénning*, &c. and as he does this in words of Saxon as well as of French growth, I should suppose that the old Participle of the present tense, ending in *and*, was originally accented upon that syllable, as it certainly continued to be by the Scottish Poets a long time after Chaucer. See Bp. Douglas, Virg. p. 18. ver. 18. *Sprýngánd*; ver. 51. *Beránd*; p. 27. ver. 49. *Fleánd*; p. 29. ver. 10. *Seánd*.

These instances are all taken from the Riming syllables (where a strong accent is indispensably necessary) in order to prove beyond contradiction, that Chaucer frequently accented his words in the French manner. But if he followed this practice at the end of his verses, it is more than probable that he did the same in the middle, whenever it gave a more harmonious flow to his metre; and therefore in ver. 4. instead of *vértue*, I suppose he pronounced *certúe*; in ver. 11. instead of *nátúre*, *natúre*; in ver. 25. instead of *avénture*, *aventúre*; in ver. 46. instead of *hónour*, *houóur*, &c.

There is much more to this purpose in Wallis, *loc. cit.* which I should transcribe, if I did not suppose that his book is in the hands of every one, who is likely to be curious upon this subject. I will only take notice of one passage which may be wrested to his disadvantage. From considering the gradual extinction of the *e* feminine in our language, and observing that the French, with whom he conversed, very often suppressed it in their common speech, he has been led to predict, that the pronunciation of it would *perhaps shortly* be disused among them as among ourselves. The prediction has certainly failed; but, notwithstanding, I will venture to say, that, at the time when it was made, it was not unworthy of Wallis's sagacity. Unluckily for its success, a number of eminent writers happened, at that very time, to be growing up in France, whose works, having since been received as standards of style, must probably fix for many centuries the antient usage of the *e* feminine in Poetry, and of course give a considerable check to the natural progress of the language. If the age of Edward III had been as favourable to Letters as that of Louis XIV; if Chaucer and his contemporary Poets had acquired the same authority here, that Corneille, Molière, Racine, and Boileau, have obtained in France; if their works had been published by themselves, and perpetuated in a genuine state by printing; I think it probable, that the *e* feminine would still have preserved its place in our Poetical language at least, and certainly without any prejudice to the smoothness of our versification.

⁷² The reasoning in the text concerning the final *e* is equally applicable to the same vowel in the middle of words. Indeed (as Wallis has observed, *loc. cit.*) "*vix usquam in medio dictionis reperitur e mutum, quod non ab origine fuerit finale.*" If therefore it was pronounced while final, it would probably continue to be pronounced notwithstanding the addition of a syllable. If it was pronounced in *surete*, *trewe*, *larye*, *riche*, it would be pronounced in *swetely*, *trewely*, *largely*, *richely*. [See ver. 123 and 3219, ver. 775 and 3092, ver. 2740 and 3034, ver. 1014 and 1913; In another very numerous set of words (French Verbals ending in *ment*) the pronunciation of this middle *e* is countenanced, not only by analogy, but also by the still subsisting practice in the French language. So Chaucer certainly pronounced the words, *jugement*, ver. 780. 807. 820. *commandement*, ver. 2871. 2981. *amendement*, ver. 4183. *possement*, *evitement*, ver. 4203, 6. Even Spenser in the same Canto (the 8th of B. v.) uses *atonement* and *avengement*, as words of four syllables: [84. 21. 8.—30. 5.] and Wallis takes notice that the middle *e* in *commandement* was pronounced in his time.

It may be proper however to observe, that we are not to expect from Chaucer that regularity in the disposition of his accents, which the practice of our greatest Poets in the last and the present century has taught us to consider as essential to harmonious⁷³ versification. None of his masters, either French or Italian, had set him a pattern of exactness⁷⁴ in this respect; and it is rather surprising, that, without rule or example to guide him, he has so seldom failed to place his accents in such a manner, as to produce the cadence best suited to the nature of his verse.

§ XVIII. I shall conclude this long and (I fear) tedious Essay, with a Grammatical and Metrical Analysis of the first eighteen lines of the Canterbury Tales. This will afford me an opportunity of illustrating at once a considerable part of that Theory, which I have ventured to propose in the preceding pages, with regard to the Language and Versification of Chaucer. The remainder I shall take occasion to explain in a few notes upon particular passages.

THE BEGINNING OF THE CANTERBURY TALES.

- I. 'Whanne that April with his 'shoures 'sote
- II. The droughte of March hath 'perced to the 'rote,
- III. And 'bathed every véine in 'swiche 'licour,
- IV. Of whiche 'vertue engendred is the flour;
- V. Whan Zéphirus eke with his 'sote bréthe

⁷³ It is agreed, I believe, that, in our Heroic Metre, those Verses, considered singly, are the most harmonious, in which the Accents fall upon the even Syllables; but it has never, that I know, been defined, how far a verse may vary from this its most perfect form, and yet remain a verse. On the *tenth* (or *riming*) syllable a strong Accent is in all cases indispensably required; and in order to make the line tolerably harmonious, it seems necessary that at least *two more* of the *even* syllables should be accented, the *fourth* being (almost always) one of them. Milton however has not subjected his verse even to these rules; and particularly, either by negligence or design, he has frequently put an unaccented syllable in the *fourth* place. See P. L. b. III. 38. 585. b. v. 413. 750. 874.

⁷⁴ It has been suggested above, that Chaucer probably copied his Heroic Metre from Boccaccio. But neither Boccaccio nor any of the older Italian Poets are exact in the disposition of their accents. Though their Hendecasyllable Metre is allowed by the best Critics to be derived from the Trimeter Iambic Catalectic, the perfection of it has never been determined, like that of our Heroic Metre, to consist in the conformity of its Accents to the pure Iambic measure. Quadrio, L. II. Dist. III. c. iv. Part. I. Nor does the King of Navarre always dispose his Accents more agreeably to our present notions. It is probable, I think, that some fundamental differences in the three languages may have led each of the three nations to prefer a different form of constructing the same kind of verse.

L. I. Whanne, Sax. Hwænne, is so seldom used as a *Dissyllable* by Chaucer, that for some time I had great doubts about the true reading of this line. I now believe that it is right, as here printed, and that the same word is to be pronounced as a *Dissyllable* in ver. 703.

But with these relics whanne that he fond—

Thanne, a word of the same form, occurs more frequently as a *Dissyllable*. See ver. 12260. 12266. 12721. 13024. 15222. I. Shoures, Dia. *Plural number*. See above, p. xlii.—3. Sote. See ver. v.

II. I. Perced, Dia. *Participle of the Past Time*. See above, p. xlii.—2. Rote; root.

III. I. Bathed, Dia. See II. 1.—2. Swiche, such; from *Swilke*, Sax.—3. Licour, Fa. has the accent upon the *last* Syllable, after the French mode.

IV. I. Vertue, Fa. may be accented in the same manner. There is another way of preserving the harmony of this verse, by making *whiche*, (from *whilke*, Sax.) a *Dissyllable*. See ver. 1013. 3921. 3468. 6537. *Vertue* may then be pronounced, as it is now, with the accent on the *first*; the second syllable being incorporated with the first of *engendred*.

V. I. Sote, *swete, sweet*; sweet, Dia. See ver. 3219. 3680. 3724. 3765. 3780.

- VI. *Enspired* háth in évery hólt and hétho
 VII. The téndre *cróppes*, and the *yónges* sounne,
 VIII. Háth in the Rám his *hálfes* coúrs *grónnes*,
 IX. And *smále* *foules* *máken* mélodie,
 X. That *slépen* *álle* night with ópen eye,
 XI. So príketh *hém* *natúre* in *hír* *coráges*;
 XII. Than *lóngen* fólk to *gón* on pílgimáges,
 XIII. And *pálmer'es* fór to *séken* *stráunge* stróndes,
 XIV. To *sérve* *hálwes* *coúthe* in sándry lóndes;
 XV. And spéciállý from évery *shíres* énde
 XVI. Of *Englélond* to Cánterbúry *they wénde*,
 XVII. The hóly bláful mártýr fór to séke,
 XVIII. That *hém* hath *hólpen*, whán that they were *séke*.

VI. 1. *Enspired*. Triá. Part. of Past Time.

VII. 1. *Croppes*, Dia. Pl. N. as *shoures*. I. 2.—2. *Yonges*, Dia. See ver. 213. 686. 1013. 2333, 73. It is used as a Dissyllable in the *Ormulum*. Col. 230.

That wás god bláne fól i wís tíl úre yáunge génges.

Stronge and *Longe* are pronounced in the same manner. See ver. 2375. 2640, 6. 3069. 3436. 3682.

VIII. 1. *Halfe* or *Halves*, Dia. The original word is *Halfta*. So *Solve*, from *Selven*, is a Dissyllable, ver. 2263. 4535.

2. *Yronne*; Run. Part. of the Past Time, with the Saxon prepositive article *ȝe*, which in the MSS. of Chaucer is universally expressed by *y*, or *i*. In this Edition, for the sake of perspicuity, *y* only is used.

IX. 1. *Smale* Dia. See ver. 146. 2078. 6897. 10807.—2. *Foules*, Dia. as *Shoures*. I. 2.—3. *Maken*; make. Plural Number of the Present Tense. See above, p. xxvi.

X. 1. *Slepen*, as *Maken*. IX. 3.—2. *Alle*, Dia. See ver. 76. 348. 536. 1834. 2102.

XI. 1. *Hem*; Them. It is constantly used so by Chaucer. 2. *Nature* should perhaps be accented on the last syllable (or rather the last but one, supposing it a Trisyllable), after the French manner, though in the present case the verse will be sufficiently harmonious if it be accented on the first. That Chaucer did often accent it after the French manner appears from ver. 8778. 9842. 11657. 11945. 12229. In the same manner he accents *Figure*, ver. 2037. 2045. *Mesure*, ver. 8132. 8498. *Asure*, *Slaidre*, ver. 8130, 3. *Peintdre*, ver. 11967. *Ascendre*, ver. 1188. 1237. *Creantdre*, ver. 2367. 4893. and many other words of the same form, derived from the French language.—3. *Hir*; Their. The Possessive Pronoun of the third Person Plural is variously written, *Hir*, *Hire*, *Her*, and *Hece*; not only in different MSS. but even in the same page of good MSS. There seems to be no reason for perpetuating varieties of this kind, which can only have taken their rise from the unsettled state of our Orthography before the invention of Printing, and which now contribute more than any real alteration of the language to obscure the sense of our old Authors. In this edition, therefore, *Hir* is constantly put to signify *Their*; and *Hire* to signify *Her*, whether it be the oblique case of the Personal Pronoun *She*, or the Possessive of the same Pronoun.—4. *Corages*, Fa. is to be accented on the Penultima. See before, p. xlii. and also ver. 1947. 2215. To the other instances quoted in p. xlii. add, *Avantidge*, ver. 2449. 4506. *Brocdge*, 3375. *Fordge*, ver. 3896. *Lindge*, ver. 4370. 5419. *Scrodge*, ver. 1948. 4788. *Cooldge*, ver. 5831. *Paridge*, ver. 5832.

XII. 1. *Longen* as *Maken*. IX. 3.—2. *Gon*, Infinitive Mode of *Go*, terminated in *n* according to the Saxon form. See above, p. xxvi.

XIII. 1. *Pálmer'es*, Dia. the *e* of the termination being cut out by Syncope, as it generally is in Plural Nouns of three Syllables, accented upon the first, and in the Past Tenses and their Participles of Verbs, of the same description, ending in *ed*. The reason seems to be, that, where the Accent is placed so early, we cannot pronounce the final syllables fully, without laying more stress upon them, than they can properly bear.—2. *Séken* as *Gon*. XII. 2.—3. *Strange*, Dia. Fa. See before, p. xliii.

XIV. 1. *Sérve* Dia. from *Serveen*, the *n* being thrown away before *t*. See above, p. xxvi. and xliii.—2. *Hálwes*, Sax. *palȝer*. The Saxon *ȝ* is changed into *w*, as in *servee*, *moree*, and some others; though it generally passes into *y*. The derivatives from this same word afford us instances of both forms; *Holȝness*, *Holȝday*, *All-Hallowe-day*.—3. *Couthe*; known, The Participle of the Past Time from *Connen*, to know. See before, p. 35.

XV. 1. *Shíres*, Dia. Genitive Case Sing. See before, p. xlii.

XVI. 1. *Englélond*, Trisyllable, from the Saxon *Englalanða*.—The last foot consists of three syllables

—to Cán | tərbúr | y they wénde.

See above, p. 66.

XVIII. 1. *Hem*; Them. See XI. 1.—2. *Hólpen*, the Participle of the Past Time from the Irregular Verb *Help*. See

n. 34.—3. *Seke*; *Sick*. As Chaucer usually writes this word *Sike*, we may suppose that in this instance he has the Orthography in order to make the Rime more exact; a liberty, with which he sometimes indulges himself, much more sparingly than his contemporary Poets. The Saxon writers afford authorities to justify either method, as they use both *Seoca* and *Sioca*.

We hitherto considered these verses as consisting of *ten* syllables only; but it is impossible not to observe, that, according to the rules of pronunciation established above, all of them, except the 3d and 4th, consist really of *eleven* each. This is evident at first sight in ver. 11, 12, 13, 14, and might be shown as clearly, by authority or analogy, in others; but as the *eleventh* syllable, in our versification, being unaccented, may always, I apprehend, be absent without prejudice to the metre, there does not seem to be any necessity for pointing it out in every similar instance.

INTRODUCTORY DISCOURSE

TO THE

CANTERBURY TALES.

CONTENTS.

§ 1. The Dramatic form of Novel-writing invented by Boccace. The *Decameron* a species of Comedy. § 11. The Canterbury Tales composed in imitation of the *Decameron*. Design of this Discourse to give, 1. the general Plan of them, and, 2. a Review of the parts contained in this Edition. § III. The GENERAL PLAN of the Canterbury Tales, as originally designed by Chaucer. § IV. Parts of this Plan not executed. § V. Review of the parts contained in this Edition.—THE PROLOGUE. The Time of the Pilgrimage. § VI. The Number of the Company. § VII. Their Agreement to tell Tales for their diversion upon their journey. § VIII. Their Characters. Their setting out. The Knight appointed by lot to tell the first Tale. § IX. THE KNIGHTS TALE copied from the *Thesida* of Boccace. A summary account of the *Thesida*. § X. The Monk called upon to tell a Tale; interrupted by the Miller. § XI. THE MILLER'S TALE. § XII. THE REVERE TALE. The principal incidents taken from an old French *Fabliau*. § XIII. THE COOKS TALE, imperfect in all the MSS. No foundation for ascribing the Story of Gamelyn to Chaucer. § XIV. THE PROLOGUE to the MAN OF LAWES TALE. The progress of the Pilgrims upon their journey. A reflection seemingly leveled at Gower. § XV. THE MAN OF LAWES TALE taken from Gower, who was not the inventor of it. A similar story in a Lay of *Bretagne*. § XVI. Reasons for placing the *Wife of Bathes Prologue* next to the *Man of Lawes Tale*. § XVII. THE WIFE OF BATHES PROLOGUE. § XVIII. THE WIFE OF BATHES TALE taken from the story of Florent in Gower, or from some older narrative. The fable much improved by Chaucer. § XIX. THE TALES OF THE FRERE AND THE SOMPOUR. § XX. THE CLERKES TALE said by Chaucer to be borrowed from *Petrarch*, whose work upon this subject is a mere translation from Boccace. § XXI. Reasons for changing the order of the *three last Stanzas* of the Ballade at the end of the *Clerkes Tale*, and for placing the *Prologue to the Marchants Tale* immediately after them. § XXII. THE MARCHANTS TALE. The adventure of the *Pear-tree* in the Latin fables of *Adolphus*. The *Philo* and *Proserpine* of Chaucer revived by Shakespeare under the names of *Oberon* and *Titania*. § XXIII. A new

PROLOGUE to the *SQUIRES TALE* (now first printed) connecting it with the *Marchants Tale*. § XXIV. THE SQUIRES TALE, probably never finished by Chaucer. § XXV. THE FRANKLEINS PROLOGUE, attributed to the *Marchant* in the common editions. Reasons for restoring it to the *Frankleins*. § XXVI. THE FRANKLEINS TALE taken from a Lay of *Bretagne*. The same story twice told by Boccace. § XXVII. Reasons for removing the Tales of the *Nonnes* and *Chanons Yeman* to the end of the *Nonnes Preestes Tale*. § XXVIII. Doubts concerning the Prologue to the *Doctours Tale*. § XXIX. THE DOCTOURS TALE. The story of Virginia from *Livy*. § XXX. THE PARDONERS PROLOGUE. The proper use of the Prologue in this work. The outline of the PARDONERS TALE in the *Cento Novelle Antiche*. § XXXI. Reasons for transferring to the Shipman a Prologue which has usually been prefixed to the Tale of the *Squier*. THE SHIPMAN'S TALE probably borrowed from some French *Fableau*, older than Boccace. § XXXII. THE PRIORRES PROLOGUE AND TALE. § XXXIII. Chaucer called upon for his Tale. His RIME OF SIRE THOPAS a ridicule upon the old metrical Romances. § XXXIV. His other Tale of *MELIBEE* in Prose, a translation from the French. § XXXV. THE MONKES TALE, upon the plan of Boccace's work *De Casibus virorum illustrium*. § XXXVI. THE TALE OF THE NONNES PREEST. The ground-work borrowed from a Fable of *Marie*, a French Poetess. § XXXVII. THE NONNES TALE not connected with any preceding Tale. Translated from the Life of St. *Cecilia* in the *Golden Legende*. Originally composed as a separate work. § XXXVIII. THE TALE OF THE CHANONS YEMAN, a satire against the Alchemists. § XXXIX. THE MANCIPLES PROLOGUE. The Pilgrims advanced to a place called "Bob up and down." THE MANCIPLES TALE, the fable of *Coronis* in *Ovid*. § XL. The Poem, called "The Plowman's Tale," why omitted in this edition. § XLI. THE PERSON'S PROLOGUE. The time of the day. THE PERSON'S TALE, a *Treatise on Penance*. § XLII. Remarks upon what is commonly called the RETRACTATION at the end of the *Person's Tale*. Conclusion.

§ 1. THE Dramatic form, which Boccace gave to his collection of Tales, or Novels, about the middle of the fourteenth Century¹, must be allowed to have been a capital improvement

¹ The Action of the *Decameron* being supposed in 1348, the year of the great pestilence, it is probable that Boccace did not set about his work till after that period. How soon he completed it is uncertain. It should seem from the

species of amusing composition. The Decameron in that respect, not to mention many has the same advantage over the *Cento Novelle antiche*, which are supposed to have been in point of time, that a regular Comedy will necessarily have over an equal of single unconnected Scenes. Perhaps indeed there would be no great harm, if the would permit us to consider the Decameron, and other compositions of that kind, in the light of Comedies not intended for the stage: at least we may venture to assume, that the any such composition shall copy the most essential forms of Comedy, the more natural and refined the Plan shall be; the more the Characters shall be diversified; the more the Plan shall be suited to the Characters; so much the more conspicuous will be the skill of the Author, and his work approach the nearer to perfection.

The Canterbury Tales are a work of the same nature with the Decameron, and were, probably, composed in imitation of it, though upon a different and, in my opinion, a better plan. It would be easy to shew, that, in the several points abovementioned, Chaucer has either been more judicious, or more fortunate, than his master Boccaccio: but, for the present, that disquisition, I shall proceed to the immediate object of this Discourse, which is, in the first place, to lay before the Reader the general plan of the Canterbury Tales, as it appears to have been originally designed by Chaucer; and, secondly, to give a circular review of the several parts of that work, which are come down to us, as they are published in this edition.

THE GENERAL PLAN of the Canterbury Tales may be learned in a great measure from the Prologue, which Chaucer himself has prefixed to them. He supposes there, that a company of pilgrims going to Canterbury assemble at an Inn in Southwark, and agree, that, for their amusement on the road, each of them shall tell at least one Tale in going to Canterbury, and another in coming back from thence; and that he, who shall tell the best shall be treated by the rest with a supper upon their return to the same Inn. This is the *Fable*. The *Characters* of the Pilgrims are as various as, at that time, could be found in the several departments of middle life; that is, in fact, as various as could, with any propriety, be brought together, so as to form one company; the highest and the lowest ranks being necessarily excluded. It appears further, that the design of Chaucer was not only to recite the Tales told by the Pilgrims, but also to describe their journey, *And all the*

from the Fourth Day, that a part (containing perhaps the three first Days) was published separately; for introduction he takes pains to answer the censures, which had been passed upon him by several persons, who had criticised his Novels. One of the censures is, "that it did not become *his age* to write for the amusement of women, his answer he seems to allow the fact, that he was rather an old fellow, but endeavours to justify himself by the example of "Guido Cavalcanti et Dante Alighieri *già vecchi* et Messer Cino da Pistola *vecchissimo*." It appears from the usage in the *Laberinto d'Amore* [Ed. 1723. t. iii. p. 24.], that Boccaccio considered himself as an elderly man, was a little turned of forty; and therefore the publication of the first part of the Decameron may very well be, as Salvini has fixed it, [V. Manni. Ist. del Decam. p. 144.] in 1363, when Boccaccio was just forty years of age. We consider the nature of the work, and that the Author, in his Conclusion, calls it repeatedly "*lunga*" and says, that "*molto tempo*" had passed between the commencement and the completion of it, we can hardly suppose that it was finished in less than ten years; which will bring the publication of the entire collection down, as we now have it, down to 1372.

I only just mention what appear to me to be fundamental defects in the Decameron. In the first place, the work is indefinite; not limited by its own nature, but merely by the will of the Author. It might, if he had been more judicious, have as well comprehended twenty, or a hundred days, as ten; and therefore, though some frivolous reasons are given for the return of the Company to Florence, we see too plainly, that the true reason was, that the budget of stories was exhausted. Not to mention, that every day after the first may properly be considered as containing a new story, what is worse, a repetition of the Action of the former day. The second defect is in the *Characters*, which are very resembling to each other, in age, rank, and even natural disposition, that, if they had been strictly superior, their conversation must have been incapable of that variety, which is necessary to carry the reader through so long a work. The third defect has arisen from the author's attempt to remedy the second. In order to diversify and enliven his narrations, he has made a circle of virtuous ladies and polite gentlemen hear and relate in their turns a series of stories, which cannot with any degree of probability be supposed to have been suffered in such an assembly

remenant of their pilgrimage [ver. 726.] ; including, probably, their adventures at Canterbury as well as upon the road. If we add, that the Tales, besides being nicely adapted to the Characters of their respective Relaters, were intended to be connected together by suitable introductions, and interspersed with diverting episodes ; and that the greatest part of them was to have been executed in Verse ; we shall have a tolerable idea of the extent and difficulty of the whole undertaking : and admiring, as we must, the vigour of that genius, which in an advanced age³ could begin so vast a work, we shall rather lament than be surprised that it has been left imperfect.

§ iv. In truth, if we compare those parts of the Canterbury Tales, of which we are in possession, with the sketch which has been just given of the intended whole, it will be found that more than one half is wanting. The Prologue we have, perhaps nearly complete, and the greatest part of the journey to Canterbury ; but not a word of the transactions at Canterbury, or of the journey homeward, or of the Epilogue, which, we may suppose, was to have concluded the work, with an account of the Prize-supper and the separation of the company. Even in that part which we have of the journey to Canterbury, it will be necessary, in the following Review, to take notice of certain defects and inconsistencies, which can only be accounted for upon the supposition, that the work was never finished by the Author.

§ v. Having thus stated the general Plan of the Canterbury Tales, I shall now, according to my promise, enter upon a particular Review of those parts of them, which are published in this edition, beginning with THE PROLOGUE.

It seems to have been the intention of Chaucer, in the first lines of the Prologue, to mark with some exactness the time of his supposed pilgrimage ; but unluckily the two circumstances of his description, which were most likely to answer that purpose, are each of them irreconcilable to the other. When he tells us, that "the shoures of April had perced to the rote the drought of March" [ver. 1, 2.], we must suppose, in order to allow due time for such an operation, that April was far advanced ; while on the other hand the place of the Sun, "having just run half his course in the Ram" [ver. 7, 8.], restrains us to some day in the very latter end of March ; as the Vernal Equinox, in the age of Chaucer, according to his own treatise on the Astrolabo⁴, was computed to happen on the twelfth of March. This difficulty may, and I think, should, be removed by reading in ver. 8, *the Bull*, instead of *the Ram*⁵. All the

³ Chaucer was born in 1328, and it is most probable, I think, that he did not begin his Canterbury Tales before 1382, at the earliest. My reason is this. The Queen, who is mentioned in the *Legende of Good Women*, ver. 496. was certainly Anne of Bohemia, the first Queen of Richard II. She was not married to Richard, till the beginning of 1382, so that the *Legende* cannot possibly be supposed of an earlier date than that year. In the *Legende* [ver. 329—332. ver. 417—430.] Chaucer has enumerated, I believe, all the considerable works which he had then composed. It was to his purpose not to omit any. He not only does not mention the Canterbury Tales, but he expressly names *the story of Palamon and Arcite* and *the Life of Saint Cecilia*, both which now make part of them, as separate compositions. I am persuaded therefore, that in 1382 the work of the Canterbury Tales was not begun ; and if we look further and consider the troubles in which Chaucer was involved, for the five or six following years, by his connexions with John of Northampton, we can hardly suppose that it was much advanced before 1389, the sixty-first year of the author's age.

⁴ In this particular the Editions agree with the MSS. but in general, the printed text of this Treatise is so monstrously incorrect, that it cannot be cited with any safety.

⁵ This correction may seem to be authorised, in some measure, by Lidgate, who begins his continuation of the Canterbury Tales in this manner.

"Whan bright Phebus passed was the Ram
Midde of April, and into the Bull came."

But the truth is, that Dan John wrote for the most part in a great hurry, and consequently without much accuracy. In the account which he proceeds to give of Chaucer's Tales, he not only confounds the circumstances of description of the Sompnour and Pardoner, but he speaks of the latter as—

Telling a tale to anger with the Frere.
Storye of Thebes, ver. 32—f.

parts of the description will then be consistent with themselves, and with another passage [ver. 4425.], where, in the best MSS. the *eighte and twenty* day of April is named as the day of the journey to Canterbury.

We will suppose therefore, that the preceding day, the seven and twentieth of April, was the day on which the company assembled at the Tabard. In what year this happened, Chaucer has not thought fit to inform us⁶. Either he did not think it necessary to fix that point at all; or perhaps he postponed it, till the completion of his work should enable him to assign such a date to his Fable, as should be consistent with all the historical circumstances, which he might take occasion to introduce into it.

§ vi. A second point, intended to be defined in the Prologue, is the *number of the company*; and this too has its difficulties. They are said in ver. 24. to have been *nine and twenty*, but it is not clear whether Chaucer himself is included in that number. They might therefore, according to that passage, be *thirty*; but if we reckon the several characters, as they are enumerated in the Prologue, we shall find them *one and thirty*; 1. a Knight; 2. a Squier; 3. a Yeman; 4. a Prioress; 5. an other Nonne; 6. 7. 8. Three Preestes; 9. a Monk; 10. a Frere; 11. a Marchant; 12. a Clerk of Oxenforde; 13. a Sergeant of the Lawe; 14. a Frankeleyn; 15. an Haberdasher; 16. a Carpenter; 17. a Webbe; 18. a Deyr; 19. a Tapiser; 20. a Coke; 21. a Shipman; 22. a Doctour of Physike; 23. a Wif of Bathe; 24. a Personer; 25. a Plowman; 26. a Reve; 27. a Miller; 28. a Sompnour; 29. a Pardoner; 30. a Manciple; 31. Chaucer himself. It must be observed however that in this list there is one very suspicious article, which is that of the *three Preestes*. As it appears evidently to have been the

⁶ It is clear, that, whether the Pilgrimage were real or imaginary, Chaucer, as a Poet, had a right to suppose it to have happened at the time which he thought best. He was only to take care, when the time was once fixed, that no circumstances were admitted into his Poem, which might clash, or be inconsistent with the date of it. When no particular date is assigned to a fable of this sort, we must naturally imagine that the date of the fable coincides with that of the composition; and accordingly, if we examine the Canterbury Tales, we shall not find any circumstances which do not perfectly suit with that period, which has been stated in a former note as the probable time of Chaucer's beginning to compose them. The latest historical fact mentioned in them is the Insurrection of Jakke Straw [ver. 15400.], which happened in 1381; and the earliest, in which any person of the Drama is concerned, is the siege of Algier [ver. 56, 7], which began in August 1342, and ended, with the taking of the city, in March 1344. Mariana, l. xvi. c. x., xi. The Knight therefore may very well be supposed to have been at that siege, and also upon a Pilgrimage to Canterbury in 1383, or thereabouts.

They who are disposed to believe the Pilgrimage to have been real, and to have happened in 1383, may support their opinion by the following inscription, which is still to be read upon the Inn, now called the Talbot, in Southwark. "This is the Inn where Sir Jeffrey Chaucer and the twenty-nine Pilgrims lodged in their Journey to Canterbury, Anno 1383." Though the present inscription is evidently of a very recent date, we might suppose it to have been propagated to us by a succession of faithful transcripts from the very time; but unluckily there is too good reason to be assured, that the first inscription of this sort was not earlier than the last century. Mr. Speght, who appears to have been inquisitive concerning this Inn in 1597, has left us this account of it in his Glossary, v. TABARD. "A Jaquet, or sleeveless coat, worne in times past by Noblemen in the warres, but now onely by Heraults, and is called theyre coats of Armes in servise. It is the signe of an Inne in Southwarke by London, within the which was the lodging of the Abbot of Hyde by Winchester. This was the Hostelry where Chaucer and the other Pilgrims mett together, and, with Henry Bailly their hosts, accorded about the manner of their Journey to Canterbury. And whereas through time it hath bin much decayed, it is now by Master J. Preston, with the Abbot's house thereto adjoynd, newly repaired, and with convenient roomes much encreased, for the receipt of many guests."

If any inscription of this kind had then been there, he would hardly have omitted to mention it; and therefore I am persuaded it has been put up since his time, and most probably when the sign was changed from the Tabard to the Talbot, in order to preserve the antient glory of the House notwithstanding its new title. Whoever furnished the date, must be allowed to have at least invented plausibly.

While I am upon the subject of this famous Hostelry, I will just add, that it was probably parcel of two tenements which appear to have been conveyed by William de Ludegarnale to the Abbot, &c. de Hydd *justa Winton*, in 1306, and which are described, in a former conveyance there recited, to extend in length, "*a communi fossato de Suthwerke versus Orientem, usque Regiam viam de Suthwerke versus Occidentem.*" Registrum de Hyde, MS. Harl. 1761. fol. 106-173. If we should ever be so happy as to recover the account books of the Abbey of Hyde, we may possibly learn what rent *Harry Bailly* paid for his inn, and many other important particulars.

design of Chaucer to compose his company of individuals of different ranks, in order to produce a greater variety of distinct characters, we can hardly conceive that he would, in this single instance, introduce *three*, of the same profession, without any discriminating circumstances whatever; and in fact, when the Nonne Preest is called upon to tell his tale, [ver 14814.] he is accosted by the Host in a manner, which will not permit us to suppose that two others of the same denomination were present. This must be allowed to be a strong objection to the genuineness of that article of the *three* Preestes; but it is not the only one. All the other Characters are particularly described, and most of them very much at large, whereas the whole that is said of the *other Nonne* and the *three Preestes* is contained in these two lines [ver. 163, 4.] at the end of the Prioresses character:

Another Nonne also with hire had she,
That was hire Chapellein, and Preestes thre.

Where it is also observable, that the single circumstance of description is false; for no Nonne could be a Chaplain. The chief duty of a Chaplain was to say Mass, and to hear Confession, neither of which offices could regularly be performed by a Nonne, or by any woman⁷.

It should seem therefore, that we have sufficient ground to reject these two lines, or at least the second, as an interpolation⁸; by which means we shall get rid of two of the Preestes, and the detail of the characters will agree with the gross number in ver. 24, Chaucer himself being included among the *nine and twenty*. As Novellists generally delight in even numbers, it is not improbable that the Host was intended to be the thirtieth. Though not under the same obligation with the other Pilgrims, he might nevertheless tell his Tale among them as a Volunteer.

§ VII. This leads me, in the third place, to examine what the *agreement* was, which the Pilgrims entered into, at the suggestion of the Host, with respect to the number of Tales that each person was to tell. The proposal of the Host stands thus, with very little variation, in all the MSS.

This is the point—says he, ver. 792—5.

That echo of you, to shorten with youre way,
In this viage shal tellen tales tway,
To Canterbury ward, I mene it so,
And homeward he shal tellen other two—

From this passage we should certainly conclude, that each of them was to tell *two tales* in the

⁷ It appears that some Abbesses did at one time attempt to hear the Confessions of their Nuns, and to exercise some other smaller parts of the clerical function: but this practice, I apprehend, was soon stopped by Gregory IX, who has forbidden it in the strongest terms. Decretal. l. v. tit. 38. c. x. *Nova quedam nostris sunt auribus intimata, quod Abbatisse moniales proprias benedicunt; ipsarum quoque confessiones in criminibus audiunt, et legentes Evangelium presumunt publice predicare: Cum igitur id absolum sit et pariter absurdum, Mandamus quatenus ne id de cetero fiat cunctis firmiter inhibere.* If these presumptuous Abbesses had ventured to say Mass, his Holiness would doubtless have thundered still louder against them.

⁸ My notion, I cannot call it opinion, of the matter is this; that the first of these lines did really begin the character of the Nonne, which Chaucer had originally inserted in this place together with that of the Nonne Preest, at as great length as the other characters, but that they were both afterwards expunged, either by himself, or, more probably, by those who published his work after his death, for reasons of nearly the same kind with those which occasioned the suppression of the latter part of the Cokes Tale. I suspect our Bard had been rather too gay in his description of these two Religious persons. See a little concerning the Preest, ver. 15453—65.

If it should be thought improbable that an interpolator would insert any thing so absurd and contradictory to the Author's plan as the second line, I beg leave to suggest, that it is still more improbable that such a line should have come from the Author himself; and further, I think I can promise, in the course of the following work, to point out several other undoubted interpolations, which are to the full as absurd as the subject of our present discussion.

journey to Canterbury, and *two more* in the journey homeward : but all the other passages, in which mention is made of this agreement, would rather lead us to believe, that they were to tell only *one* Tale in each journey ; and the Prologue to the Parsons Tale strongly confirms this latter supposition. The Host says there, [ver. 17327.]

—“ Now lacketh us no tales mo than on ”—

and calling upon the Parson to tell this one tale, which was wanting, he says to him, [ver. 17335.]

—“ ne breke thou not our play,
For every man, save thou, hath told his tale.”

The Parson therefore had not told any tale before, and only one tale was expected from him (and consequently from each of the others) upon that journey.

It is true, that a very slight alteration of the passage first cited would reconcile that too to this hypothesis. If it were written—

That eche of you, to shorten with youre way,
In this viage shal tellen tales tway ;
To Canterbury ward, I mene it, o,
And homeward he shal tell another to—

the original proposition of the Host would perfectly agree with what appears to have been the subsequent practice. However, I cannot venture to propose such an alteration of the text, in opposition to so many MSS. some of them of the best note ; and therefore the Reader, if he is so pleased, may consider this as one of those inconsistencies, hinted at above, which prove too plainly that the author had not finished his work.

§ VIII. The remainder of the Prologue is employed in describing the *Characters* of the Pilgrims, and their first setting out upon their journey. The little that it may be necessary to say in illustration of some of the Characters I shall reserve for the Notes. The circumstances of their setting out are related succinctly and naturally ; and the contrivance of appointing the Knight *by lot* to tell the first tale is a happy one, as it affords the Author the opportunity of giving his work a splendid opening, and at the same time does not infringe that apparent equality, upon which the freedom of discourse and consequently the ease and good humour of every society so entirely depends. The general satisfaction, which this appointment is said to give to the company, puts us in mind of a similar gratification to the secret wishes of the Grecian army, when the lot of fighting with Hector falls to Ajax ; though there is not the least probability that Chaucer had ever read the *Iliad*, even in a translation.

§ IX. THE KNIGHTS TALE, or at least a Poem upon the same subject, was originally composed by Chaucer, as a separate work. As such it is mentioned by him, among some of his other works, in the *Legende of gode women*, [ver. 420, l.] under the title of—“ al the love of Palamon and Arcite of Thebes, though the storie is knowen lite—” and the last words seem to imply that it had not made itself very popular. It is not impossible that at first it was a mere translation of the *Theseida* of Boccace, and that its present form was given it, when Chaucer determined to assign it the first place among his Canterbury tales. As the *Theseida*, upon which this tale is entirely founded, is very rarely to be met with*, it may be not

* The letter, which Boccace sent to the Fiammetta with this poem, is dated *di Napoli a 15 d'Aprile 1341*. *Lettere di xliii. Uomini illust.* Ven. 1564. I believe that date is a true one, and it is remarkable, as being the very year and month, in which Petrarch received the Laurel at Rome. See Petr. Ep. Famil. XII. 12.

The first Edition of the *Theseida*, according to Quadrio [t. vi. p. 462.], was without date, and under the mistaken title of *Amasonide*, which might have been proper enough for the first book. It was soon after however reprinted, with its true title, at Ferrara, in 1475, fol. Dr. Askew was so obliging as to lend me the only copy of this edition, which I have ever heard of, in England. The Reverend Mr. Crofts has a later edition in 4^{to}. printed at Venice, in

unpleasing to the Reader to see here a short summary of it, which will shew with what skill Chaucer has proceeded in reducing a poem of about ten thousand lines to a little more than two thousand, without omitting any material circumstance.

The Theseida is distributed into twelve Books or Cantocs.

B. I. contains the war of Theseus with the Amazons; their submission to him; and his marriage with Hippolyta.

B. II. Theseus, having spent two years in Scythia, is reprobated by Perithous in a vision, and immediately returns to Athens with Hippolyta and her sister Emilia. He enters the city in triumph; finds the Grecian Ladies in the temple of Clemenzia; marches to Thebes; kills Creon, &c. and brings home Palemone and Arcita, who are

Damnati—ad eterna precone.

B. III. Emilia, walking in a garden and singing, is heard and seen first by Arcita¹⁰, who calls Palemone. They are both equally enamoured of her, but without any jealousy or rivalryship. Emilia is supposed to see them at the window, and to be not displeased with their admiration.—Arcita is released at the request of Perithous; takes his leave of Palemone, with embraces, &c.

B. IV. Arcita, having changed his name to *Pentheon*, goes into the service of Menelaus at Mycenæ, and afterwards of Peleus at Ægina. From thence he returns to Athens and becomes a favourite servant of Theseus, being known to Emilia, though to nobody else; till after some time he is overheard making his complaint in a wood, to which he usually resorted for that purpose, by Pamphilo, a servant of Palemone.

B. V. Upon the report of Pamphilo, Palemone *begins* to be jealous of Arcita, and is desirous to get out of prison in order to fight with him. This he accomplishes with the assistance of

1538, but in that the poem has been *riveduto e emendato*, that is, in plain English, modernized. I cannot help suspecting that Salvini, who has inveighed with great bitterness against the corruptions of the printed *Theseida*, [Manni, Ist. del Decam. p. 52.] had only examined this last edition; for I observe that a Stanza which he has quoted (from some MS. as I suppose) is not near so correct as it is in the edition of 1475. As this Stanza contains Boccace's own account of the intention of his Poem, I shall transcribe it here from that edition. It is the beginning of his conclusion

Poi che le Muse nude cominciaro
Nel conspetto de gli omeni ad andare,
Gal fur de quelli che [gia] le esercitaro
Con bello stilo in *onesto* parlare,
E altri in *amoroso* lo operarò;
Ma tu, o libro, primo al lor cantare
Di *Marte* fai gli affanni sostenuti,
Nel vulgar latino mai piu non veduti.

This plainly alludes to a passage in Dante, de *Vulgari Eloquentia*, l. ii. c. ii. where, after having pointed out the three great subjects of Poetry, viz. *Arma, Amorem, et Rectitudinem*, (War, Love, and Morality,) and enumerated the illustrious writers upon each, he adds: *Arma vero nullum Italum adhuc invento poetasse*. Boccace therefore apparently prides himself upon having supplied the defect remarked by Dante, and upon being the first who taught the Italian Muses to sing of *Arms*.

Besides other variations for the worse, the fifth line in Salvini's copy is written thus.

Ed altri in *dolci modi* l'operarò—

by which means the allusion to Dante is rendered incomplete.

¹⁰ In describing the commencement of this Amour, which is to be the subject of the remainder of the poem, Chaucer has entirely departed from his author in three principal circumstances, and, I think, in each with very good reason. 1. By supposing Emilia to be seen first by Palamon, he gives him an advantage over his rival which makes the catastrophe more consonant to poetical justice. 2. The picture which Boccace has exhibited of two young princes violently enamoured of the same object, without jealousy or rivalryship, if not absolutely unnatural, is certainly very insipid and unpoetical. 3. As no consequence is to follow from their being seen by Emilia at this time, it is better, I think, to suppose, as Chaucer has done, that they are not seen by her.

Pamphilo, by changing clothes with Alimeto, a Physician. He goes armed to the wood in quest of Arcita, whom he finds sleeping. At first they are very civil and friendly to each other¹¹. Then Palemone calls upon Arcita to renounce his pretensions to Emilia, or to fight with him. After many long expostulations on the part of Arcita, they fight, and are discovered first by Emilia, who sends for Theseus. When he finds who they are, and the cause of their difference, he forgives them, and proposes the method of deciding their claim to Emilia by a combat of an hundred on each side, to which they gladly agree.

B. VI. Palemone and Arcita live splendidly at Athens, and send out messengers to summon their friends, who arrive; and the principal of them are severally described, viz. Iycurgus, Pelcus, Phocus, Telamon, &c. Agamemnon, Menelaus, Castor, and Pollux, &c. Nestor, Evander, Perithous, Ulysses, Diomedes, Pygmalion, Minos, &c. with a great display of ancient history and mythology.

B. VII. Theseus declares the laws of the combat, and the two parties of an hundred on each side are formed. The day before the combat, Arcita, after having visited the temples of all the Gods, makes a formal prayer to Mars. The Prayer, *being personified*¹², is said to go and find Mars in his temple in Thrace, which is described; and Mars, upon understanding the message, causes favourable signs to be given to Arcita. In the same manner Palemone closes his religious observances with a prayer to Venus. His Prayer, *being also personified*, sets out for the temple of Venus on Mount Citherone, which is also described; and the petition is granted. Then the sacrifice of Emilia to Diana is described; her prayer; the appearance of the Goddess; and the signs of the two fires.—In the morning they proceed to the Theatre with their respective troops, and prepare for the action. Arcita puts up a private prayer to Emilia, and harangues his troop publicly; and Palemone does the same.

¹ En siame se fer festa di bon core,
E li loro accidenti al narraro. *Thes.* l. v.

This is rarely too much in the style of Romance. Chaucer has made them converse more naturally. He has also judiciously avoided to copy Boccace in representing Arcita as more moderate than his rival.

¹² Era alor forsi Marte in exercitio
Di chiara far la parte ruginosa
Del grande suo e horribile hospitio,
Quando de Arcita LA ONATION pietosa
Pervenne li per fare il dato offitio,
Tutta ne lo aspecto lagrimosa;
La qual divene di spavento muta,
Come di Marte hebbe laca veduta. *Thes.* l. vii

As this contrivance, of *personifying* the Prayers and sending them to the several deities, is only in order to introduce a description of the respective temples, it will be allowed, I believe, that Chaucer has attained the same end by more natural fiction. It is very probable that Boccace caught the idea of making the Prayers *persons* from Homer, with whose works he was better acquainted than most of his contemporaries. In this part of the world; and there can be no doubt, I suppose, that Chaucer's imagination, in the expedient which he has substituted, was assisted by the occasional edifices which he had himself seen erected for the decoration of Turnaments.

The combat, which follows, having no foundation in ancient history or manners, it is no wonder that both poets should have admitted a number of incongruous circumstances into their description of it. The great advantage which Chaucer has over his original in this respect is, that he is much shorter. When we have read in the *Theocida* a long and learned catalogue of all the heroes of Antiquity brought together upon this occasion, we are only the more surprised to see Theseus, in such an assembly, conferring the honour of Knighthood upon the two Theban chieftains.

E senza stare con non piccolo honore
Cinse le spade a li qui scudieri,
E ad Arcita Poluce e Castore
Calciaro d'oro li sproni e volentieri,
E Diomede e Ulise di cuore
Calzati a Palemone, e cavallieri
Ambedui furono allora novelli
Li innamorati Theban damigelli. *Thes.* l. vii.

B. VIII. Contains a description of the battle, in which Palemone is taken prisoner.

B. IX. The horse of Arcita, being frightened by a Fury, sent from hell at the desire of Venus, throws him. However, he is carried to Athens in a triumphal chariot with Emilia by his side; is put to bed dangerously ill; and there by his own desire espouses Emilia.

B. X. The funeral of the persons killed in the combat Arcita, being given over by his Physicians, makes his will, in discourse with Theseus, and desires that Palemone may inherit all his possessions and also Emilia. He then takes leave of Palemone and Emilia, to whom he repeats the same request. Their lamentations. Arcita orders a sacrifice to Mercury, which Palemone performs for him, and dies.

B. XI. Opens with the passage of Arcita's soul to heaven, imitated from the beginning of the 9th Book of Lucan. The funeral of Arcita. Description of the wood felled takes up six Stanzas. Palemone builds a temple in honour of him, in which his whole history is painted. The description of this painting is an abridgement of the preceding part of the Poem.

B. XII. Theseus proposes to carry into execution Arcita's will by the marriage of Palemone and Emilia. This they both decline for some time in formal speeches, but at last are persuaded and married. The Kings, &c. take their leave, and Palemone remains—"in gioia e in diporto con la sua dona nobile e cortese."

From this sketch of the Theseida it is evident enough that Chaucer was obliged to Boccace¹⁸ for the Plan and principal incidents of the *KNIGHTS TALE*; and in the Notes upon that tale I shall point out some passages, out of many more, which are literal translations from the Italian.

§ x. When the *Knight* has finished his Tale, the *Host* with great propriety calls upon the *Monk*, as the next in rank among the men, to tell the next Tale; but, as it seems to have been the intention of Chaucer to avail himself of the variety of his Characters, in order to distribute alternate successions of Serious and Comic, in nearly equal proportions, throughout his work, he has contrived, that the *Hostes* arrangement shall be set aside by the intrusion of the *drunken Miller*, whose tale is such as might be expected from his character and condition, a complete contrast to the *Knights*.

§ xi. I have not been able to discover from whence the Story of the *MILLERS TALE* is taken; so that for the present I must give Chaucer credit for it as his own invention, though in general he appears to have built his Tales, both serious and comic, upon stories, which he found ready made. The great difference is, that in his serious pieces he often follows his author with the servility of a mere translator, and in consequence his narration is jejune and constrained; whereas in the comic, he is generally satisfied with borrowing a slight hint of his subject, which he varies, enlarges, and embellishes at pleasure, and gives the whole the air and

¹⁸ To whom Boccace was obliged is a more difficult subject of enquiry. That the Story was of his own invention, I think is scarcely credible. He speaks of it himself as *very ancient*. [Lett. alla Fiammetta. *Biblioth. Smith. App.* p. cxli.] Trovata una antichissima Storia, o al più delle genti non manifesta, in latino volgare, acciocchè più dilettaſſe e massimamente a voi, che già con sommo titolo le mie rime esaltaste, ho ridotta. He then tells her, that she will observe that what is related under the name of one of the two lovers and of Emilia, is very similar to what had actually passed between herself and him; and adds—Se forse alcune cose sopra che vi furono, il voler bene coprire ciò che non era onesto manifestare, da noi due in fuori, e'l volere la storia seguire, ne sono cagione. I am well aware however that declarations of this kind, prefixed to fabulous works, are not much to be depended upon. The wildest of the French Romances are commonly said by the Authors to be translated from some old *Latin Chronicle* at St. Denys. And certainly the Story of Palemone and Arcita, as related by Boccace, could not be *very ancient*. If it was of Greek original, as I rather suspect, it must have been thrown into its present form, after the Norman Princes had introduced the manners of Chivalry into their dominions in Sicily and Italy.

The Poem in modern Greek political verses *De nuptiis Thesei et Emiliae*, printed at Venice in 1529, is a mere translation of the *Theseida*. The Author has even translated the prefatory epistle addressed by Boccace to the Fiammetta.

colour of an original; a sure sign, that his genius rather led him to compositions of the latter kind.

§ XII. The next tale is told by the REVE (who is represented above, ver. 589. as "a cholerick man") in revenge of the *Miller's* tale. It has been generally said to be borrowed from the *Decamerone*, D. ix. N. 6. but I rather think that both Boccace and Chaucer, in this instance, have taken whatever they have in common from an old *Fabliau*, or *Conte*, of an anonymous French rimer, *De Gombert et des deux Clercs*. The Reader may easily satisfy himself upon this head, by casting his eye upon the French *Fabliau*, which has lately been printed with several others from MSS. in France. See *Fabliaux et Contes*, Paris, 1756. t. ii. p. 115—124.

§ XIII. The COKE'S TALE is imperfect in all the MSS. which I have had an opportunity of examining. In MS. A. it seems to have been entirely omitted; and indeed I cannot help suspecting, that it was intended to be omitted, at least in this place, as in the *Manciple's Prologue*, when the *Coke* is called upon to tell a tale, there is no intimation of his having told one before. Perhaps our Author might think, that three tales of *harlotrie*, as he calls it, together would be too much. However, as it is sufficiently certain, that the *Coke's* Prologue and the beginning of his Tale are genuine compositions, they have their usual place in this Edition. There was not the same reason for inserting the story of GAMELYN, which in some MSS. is annexed to the *Coke's* Tale. It is not to be found in any of the MSS. of the first authority; and the manner, style, and versification, all prove it to have been the work of an author much inferior to Chaucer. I did not therefore think myself warranted to publish it a second time among the Canterbury Tales, though as a Relique of our antient Poetry, and the foundation, perhaps, of Shakespeare's *As you like it*, I could have wished to see it more accurately printed, than it is in the only edition which we have of it.

§ XIV. In the PROLOGUE TO THE MAN OF LAWES TALE Chaucer recalls our attention to the Action, if I may so call it, of his Drama, the journey of the Pilgrims. They had set out soon after the day began to spring, ver. 824 and f. When the *Reve* was beginning to tell his tale, they were in the neighbourhood of Deptford and Greenwich, and it was *half way prime*; that is, I suppose, *half way past prime*, about half hour after seven A. M. [ver. 3904, 5.]. How much further they were advanced upon their road at this time is not said; but the hour of the day is pointed out to us by two circumstances. We are first told [ver. 4422, 3.], that

—" the Sonno

The ark of his artificial day had ronno

The fourthe part and half an hour and more; "

and secondly [ver. 4432.], that he was "five and forty degrees high;" and this last circumstance is so confirmed by the mention of a corresponding phenomenon that it is impossible to suspect any error in the number. The equality in length of shadows to their projecting bodies can only happen, when the Sun is at the height of *five and forty* degrees. Unfortunately however this description, though seemingly intended to be so accurate, will neither enable us to conclude with the MSS. that it was "*ten of the clock*," nor to fix upon any other hour; as the two circumstances just mentioned are not found to coincide in any part of the twenty-eighth, or of any other, day of April¹⁴ in this climate. All that we can conclude with certainty is, that it was *not past* ten of the clock.

¹⁴ The twenty-eighth day of April, in the time of Chaucer, answering to our 6th or 7th of May, the Sun, in the latitude of London, rose about half hour after four, and the length of the artificial day was a little more than fifteen hours. A fourth part of 15 hours (= 3 $\frac{3}{4}$. 45^m.) and half an hour and more—may be fairly computed to make together 4 hours $\frac{1}{2}$, which being reckoned from 4 $\frac{1}{2}$ A. M. give the time of day exactly 9, A. M. But the Sun was not at the altitude of 45°, till above half hour after 9. In like manner, if we take the eighteenth day (according to all the Editions and some MSS.) we shall find that the Sun indeed was 45° high at 10 A. M. exactly, but that the fourth part of the day and half an hour and more had been completed at 9, A. M.

The compliments which Chaucer has introduced upon his own writings are modest enough and quite unexceptionable; but if the reflection [ver. 4497. and f.] upon those who relate such stories as that of *Canace*, or of *Apollonius Tyrius*, was levelled at Gower, as I very much suspect, it will be difficult to reconcile such an attack to our notions of the strict friendship, which is generally supposed to have subsisted between the two bards¹⁵. The attack too at this time must appear the more extraordinary on the part of our bard, as he is just going to put into the mouth of his *Man of Lawes* a tale, of which almost every circumstance is borrowed from Gower. The fact is, that the story of *Canace* is related by Gower in his *Conf. Amant.* B. iii and the story of ¹⁶*Apollonius* (or *Apollynus*, as he is there called) in the viiith book of the same work; so that, if Chaucer really did not mean to reflect upon his old friend, his choice of these two instances was rather unlucky.

§ xv. THE MAN OF LAWES TALE, as I have just said, is taken, with very little variation from Gower, *Conf. Amant.* B. ii. If there could be any doubt, upon a cursory perusal of the two tales, which of them was written first, the following passage, I think, is sufficient to decide the question. At ver. 5506, Chaucer says,—

Som men wold sayn, how that the child Maurice
Doth this message until this Emperour :—

and we read in Gower, that Maurice is actually sent upon this message to the Emperour. We may therefore fairly conclude that in this passage Chaucer alludes to Gower, who had treated the same subject before him, but, as he insinuates, with less propriety.

I do not however suppose that Gower was the inventor of this tale. It had probably passed through several hands before it came to him. I find among the *Cotton MSS.* Cal. A. ii. fol. 69 an old English Rime, entitled "*Emare*," in which the heroine under that name goes through a series of adventures for the most part¹⁷ exactly similar to those of Constance. But neither

In this uncertainty, I have left the text as I found it in all the best MSS. Only MS. HA. does not express the how but reads thus :—

Yt was atte cloke—.

¹⁵ There is another circumstance, which rather inclines me to believe, that their friendship suffered some interruption in the latter part of their lives. In the new edition of the *Confessio Amantis*, which Gower published after the accession of Henry IV, the verses in praise of Chaucer [fol. 190. b. col. 1. ed. 1532.] are omitted. See MS. Har. 3869. Though perhaps the death of Chaucer at that time had rendered the compliment contained in those verses less proper than it was at first, that alone does not seem to have been a sufficient reason for omitting them, especially as the original date of the work, in the 16 of Richard II, is preserved. Indeed the only other alterations, which I have been able to discover, are toward the beginning and end, where every thing which had been said in praise of Richard in the first edition, is either left out or converted to the use of his successor.

¹⁶ The History of *Apollonius King of Tyre* was supposed by Mark Welser, when he printed it in 1593, to have been translated from the Greek a thousand years before. [Fabr. Bib. Gr. V. 6. p. 821.] It certainly bears strong marks of a Greek original, though it is not, that I know, now extant in that language. The Rhythmical poem, under the same title, in modern Greek, was re-translated (if I may so speak) from the Latin—*απο Λατινικης εις Ρωμαικη γλωσσαν.* Du Cange, Index Author. ad Gloss. Græc. When Welser printed it, he probably did not know that it had been published already, perhaps more than once, among the *Gesta Romanorum*. In an edition, which I have printed at Rouen in 1521, it makes the 154th chapter. Toward the latter end of the XIIth Century, *Godfrey of Viterbo* in his *Pantheon*, or universal Chronicle, inserted this Romance as part of the history of the third Antiochus, about 300 years before Christ. It begins thus [MS. Reg. 14 C. xl.] :

Filla Seleuci regis stat clara decore
Matreque defunctâ pater arsit in ejus amore.
Res habet effectum, pressa puella dolet.

The rest is in the same metre, with one Pentameter only to two Hexameters.

Gower, by his own acknowledgement, took his story from the *Pantheon*; as the Author, whoever he was, of *Pericles Prince of Tyre* professes to have followed Gower.

¹⁷ The chief differences are, that *Emare* is originally exposed in a boat for refusing to comply with the incestuous

was the author of this Rime the inventor of the story, for in fol. 70. a. he refers to his original "in *Romans*," or French; and in the last Stanza he tells us expressly—

Thys ys on of *Brytayne layes*

That was used by olde dayes.

Of the *Britayne layes* I shall have occasion to speak more at large, when I come to the *Franklin's Tale*.

§ XVI. *The Man of Lawes Tale* in the best MSS. is followed by the *Wife of Bathes Prologue and Tale*, and therefore I have placed them so here; not however merely in compliance with authority, but because, according to the common arrangement, in the *Merchant's Tale*¹⁸ there is a direct reference to the *Wife of Bathes Prologue*, before it has been spoken. Such an impropriety I was glad to remove upon the authority of the best MSS. though it had been acquiesced in by all former Editors; especially as the same MSS. pointed out to me another, I believe the true, place for both the *Merchant's* and the *Squier's Tales*, which have hitherto been printed immediately after the *Man of Lawes*. But of that hereafter.

§ XVII. The want of a few lines to introduce the WIFE OF BATHES PROLOGUE is, perhaps, one of those defects, hinted at above, which Chaucer would have supplied if he had lived to finish his work. The extraordinary length of it, as well as the vein of pleasantry that runs through it, is very suitable to the character of the speaker. The greatest part must have been of Chaucer's own invention, though one may plainly see that he had been reading the popular invectives against marriage and women in general; such as, the ROMAN DE LA ROSE; VALEMIUS AD RUFINUM *de non ducendâ uxore*; and particularly HIERONYMUS *contra Jovinianum*¹⁹.

§ XVIII. THE WIFE OF BATHES TALE seems to have been taken from the Story of Florent in Gower, *Conf. Amant*. B. i. or perhaps from an older narrative, in the *Gesta Romanorum*, or some such collection, from which the Story of Florent was itself borrowed. However that may have been, it must be allowed that Chaucer has considerably improved the fable by lopping off some improbable, as well as unnecessary, circumstances; and the transferring of the scene from Sicily to the Court of King Arthur must have had a very pleasing effect, before the fabulous majesty of that court was quite obliterated.

desires of the Emperour her father; that she is driven on the coast of *Galys*, or Wales, and married to the king of that country. The contrivances of the step-mother, and the consequences of them, are the same in both stories.

¹⁸ V. 2680, *Justine* says to his brother *January*—

The Wif of Bathe, if ye han understonde,
Of marriage, which ye now han in honde,
Declared hath ful wel in litel space—

alluding very plainly to this Prologue of the *Wife of Bath*. The impropriety of such an allusion in the mouth of *Justine* is gross enough. The truth is, that Chaucer has inadvertently given to a character in the *Merchant's Tale* an argument which the *Merchant himself* might naturally have used upon a similar occasion, after he had heard the *Wife of Bath*. If we suppose, with the Editions, that the *Wife of Bath* had not at that time spoken her Prologue, the impropriety will be increased to an incredible degree.

¹⁹ The holy Father, by way of recommending celibacy, has exerted all his learning and eloquence (and he certainly was not deficient in either) to collect together and aggravate whatever he could find to the prejudice of the female sex. Among other things he has inserted his own translation (probably) of a long extract from what he calls—"liber circulus Theophrasti de nuptiis."

Next to him in order of time was the treatise entitled "*Epistola Valerii ad Rufinum de non ducendâ uxore*." MS. A. 9. 12 D. III. It has been printed, for the similarity of its sentiments, I suppose, among the works of St. Jerome, though it is evidently of a much later date. Tanner (from Woods MS. Coll.) attributes it to *Walter Map*. Bib. Brit. V. MAP. I should not believe it to be older; as John of Salisbury, who has treated of the same subject in his *Polygraphon* l. viii. c. xl. does not appear to have seen it.

To these two books *Jean de Meun* has been obliged for some of the severest strokes in his *Roman de la Rose*; and Chaucer has transfused the quintessence of all the three works, upon the subject of Matrimony, into his *Wife of Bathes Prologue* and *Merchant's Tale*.

The old Ballad entitled "The Marriage of Sir Gawaine," [*Ancient Poetry*, vol. iii. p. 11.] which the learned Editor thinks may have furnished Chaucer with this tale, I should rather conjecture, with deference to so good a judge in these matters, to have been composed by one who had read both Gower and Chaucer.

§ XIX. THE TALES OF THE FREERE and THE SOMFNURE are well ingrafted upon that of the *Wife of Bath*. The ill humour which shews itself between those two characters is quite natural, as no two professions at that time were at more constant variance. The Regular Clergy, and particularly the Mendicant Freres, affected a total exemption from all Ecclesiastical jurisdiction, except that of the Pope, which made them exceedingly obnoxious to the Bishops, and of course to all the inferior officers of the national hierarchy.

I have not been able to trace either of these tales to any author older than Chaucer, and possibly they may both have been built upon some traditional pleasantries, which were never before committed to writing.

§ XX. THE CLERKES TALE is in a different strain from the three preceding. He tells us, in his *Prologue*, that he learned it from *Petrarch at Padua*; and this, by the way, is all the ground that I can find for the notion that Chaucer had seen Petrarch²⁰ in Italy. It is not easy to say why Chaucer should choose to own an obligation for this tale to Petrarch rather than to Boccace, from whose *Decameron*, D. x. N. 10. it was translated by Petrarch in 1373, the year before his death, as appears by a remarkable letter, which he sent with his translation to Boccace. *Opp. Petrarch*. p. 540—7. Ed. Bas. 1581. It should seem too from the same letter, that the story was not invented by Boccace, for Petrarch says, "that it had always pleased him when he heard it many years before,"²¹ whereas he had not seen the *Decameron* till very lately.

²⁰ I can find no older or better authority for this notion than the following passage in *Speght's life of Chaucer*, prefixed to the Edition in 1597. "Some write, that he with Petrarche was present at the marriage of Lionell Duke of Clarence with Violante daughter of Galeasius, Duke of Millaine: yet Paulius Jovius nameth not Chaucer; but Petrarche, he sayth, was there." It appears from an instrument in Rymer [*Liberat.* 42 E. III. m. 1.], that the Duke of Clarence passed from Dover to Calais, in his way to Milan, in the spring of 1368, with a retinue of 457 men and 1200 horses. That Chaucer might have attended the Duke upon this occasion is not impossible. He had been, probably, for some time in the king's service, and had received the year before a Grant of an annuity of 20 marks—pro bono servitio, quod dilectus Valettus noster, Galfridus Chaucer nobis impendit et impendet in futurum. *Pat.* 41 E. III. p. 1. m. 13. ap. Rymer. There is a curious account of the feast at this marriage in the *Chronica di Mantova di Ali prandi* [Murator. *Antiq. Med. Aet.* vol. v. p. 1187, & seq.], but he does not give the names of the

"Grandi Signori e Baroni Inghilese,

who were, as he says,

"Con Messere Lionell' in compagna."

The most considerable of them were probably those 26 (Knights and others) who, before their setting out for Milan, procured the King's licence to appoint Attorneys general to act for them here. *Franc.* 42 E. III. m. 8. ap. Rymer. The name of Chaucer does not appear among them.

The embassy to *Genoa*, to which Chaucer was appointed in November 1373, might possibly have afforded him another opportunity of seeing Petrarch. But in the first place, it is uncertain whether he ever went upon that Embassy. If he did, the distance from *Genoa* to *Padua*, where Petrarch resided, is considerable; and I cannot help thinking that a reverential visit from a Minister of the King of England would have been so flattering to the old man, that either he himself or some of his biographers must have recorded it. On the other hand, supposing Chaucer at *Genoa*, it is to be presumed, that he would not have been deterred by the difficulties of a much longer journey from paying his respects to the first literary character of the age: and it is remarkable, that the time of this embassy, in 1373, is the precise time at which he could have learned the story of *Griseldis* from Petrarch at *Padua*. For Petrarch in all probability made his translation in that very year, and he died in July of the year following.

The inquisitive and judicious author of *Mémoires pour la vie de Petrarque* gave us hopes [Pref. to t. ii. p. 6.], that he would shew, that Chaucer was in connexion (*en liaison*) with Petrarch. As he has not fulfilled his promise in a later (I fear, the last) volume of his very ingenious work, I suspect that his more accurate researches have not enabled him to verify an opinion, which he probably at first adopted upon the credit of some biographer of Chaucer.

²¹ —Cum et mihi semper ante multos annos audita placuisset, et tibi usque adeo placuisse perpenderem, ut vulgari eam stylo tuo censueris non indignam, et sine operis, ubi rhetorum disciplina validiora quolibet collacari jubet

In the *Ballade*, with which the *Clerk* concludes his Tale, I have changed the order of the last Stanzas, so as to make it end—

And let him *care*, and *wepe*, and wringe, and *wail*—

mediately after I have placed the MERCHANTS PROLOGUE, beginning—

Weping and wailing, care and other sorwe
I have enough—.

angement, which recommends itself at first sight, is also supported by so many MSS. of best authority, that, without great negligence or dullness, I could not have either over- or rejected it, especially as the whole turn of the *Marchant's Prologue*, and the expression of *Grisilde* in ver. 9100. demonstrate, that he is supposed to speak with the *Clerke's* style in his memory.

1. The scene of the MERCHANTS TALE is laid in Italy, but none of the names, except Justin and Justin, seem to be Italian, but rather made at pleasure; so that I doubt whether they be really of Italian growth. The adventure of the *Pear-tree* I find in a small collection of Latin fables, written by one Adolphus, in Elegiac verses of his fashion, in the year 1510. As this fable has never been printed but once, and in a book not commonly to be met with, I shall transcribe below ²² the material parts of it, and I dare say the Reader will not be anxious to see any more.

loc. cit. M. L'Abbé de Sade [*Mém. de Petr.* t. III. p. 797.] says, that the Story of Griseldis is taken from an MS. in the library of M. Foucault, entitled, *Le parement des Dames*. If this should have been said upon the authority of [ist. del Decam. p. 603.], as I very much suspect, and if Manni himself meant to refer to M. Galland's *sur quelques anciens Poètes* [*Mém. de l'Acad. des L. et B. L.* t. II. p. 686.], we must look still further for the original of the Novel. M. Galland says nothing, as I observe, of the antiquity of the MS. The title (he says) is *Le parement des Dames*, avec des explications en Prose, où l'on trouve l'histoire de Griseldis que feu M. Perrault a mise en vers; he says also expressly, that it was a work of *Olivier de la Marche*, who was not born till many years after the death of Boccaccio.

Epith. Fabulæ. ap. Leyser. Hist. Poet. Medii Ævi, p. 2008.

Fabula 1.

Cæcus erat quidam, cui pulcra virago—
— — — — —
In curtis viridi resident hi cespites quidam
Luce. Petit muller robur adire Pyri.
Vir favet, amplexens mox robur ubique lacertis.
Arbor adunca fuit, qua latuit juvenis.
Amplexatur eam dans basia dulcia. Terram
Incepit colere vomere cum proprio.
Audit vir strepitum; nam sæpe carentia sensus
Unius in reliquo, nosco, vigere solet.
Heu miser! exclamat; te lædit adulter ibidem.
Conqueror hoc illi qui dedit esse mihi.
Tunc Deus omnipotens, qui condidit omnia verbo,
Qui sua membra probat, vascula velut figulus,
Restituens aciem misero, tonat illico; Fallax
Femina, cur tantâ fraude nocere cupis?
— — — — —
Percepit illa virum. Vultu respondet alacri:
Magna dedi medicis; non tibi cura fuit.
Ast, ubi lustra sua satis uda petebat Apollo,
Candida splendescens Cynthia luce merâ,
Tunc sopor irrepit mea languida corpora: quidnam
Astittit: insonuit auribus illa meis.
Ludere cum juvene studeas in roboris alto;
Præca viro dabitur lux cito, crede mihi.

Whatever was the real original of this Tale, the Machinery of the Faeries, which Chaucer has used so happily, was probably added by himself; and indeed, I cannot help thinking, that his *Pluto* and *Proserpina* were the true progenitors of *Oberon* and *Titania*²³, or rather, that they themselves have, once at least, deigned to revisit our poetical system under the latter names.

§ XXIII. THE PROLOGUE to the *Squier's Tale* appears now for the first time in print. Why it has been omitted by all former Editors I cannot guess, except, perhaps, because it did not suit with the place, which, for reasons best known to themselves, they were determined to assign to the *Squier's Tale*, that is, after the *Man of Law's* and before the *Marchant's*. I have chosen rather to follow the MSS. of the best authority in placing the *Squier's Tale* after the *Marchant's*, and in connecting them together by this Prologue, agreeably, as I am persuaded, to Chaucer's intention. The lines which have usually been printed by way of Prologue to the *Squier's Tale*, as I believe them to have been really composed by Chaucer, though not intended for the *Squier's* Prologue, I have prefixed to the *Shipman's Tale*, for reasons, which I shall give when I come to speak of that Tale.

§ XXIV. I should have been very happy if the MSS. which have furnished the *SQUIERS* Prologue, had supplied the deficient part of his *TALE*, but I fear the judgement of Milton was too true, that this story was "*left half-told*" by the author. I have never been able to discover the probable original of this tale, and yet I should be very hardly brought to believe that the whole, or even any considerable part of it, was of Chaucer's invention.

§ XXV. We are now arrived with the common Editions, though by a different course, at the *FRANKLEINES TALE*; and here again we must be obliged to the MSS. not indeed, as in the last instance, for a *new* Prologue, but for authorising us to prefix to this Tale of the *Frankleins* a Prologue, which in the common Editions is prefixed to the Tale of the *Marchant*, together with the true Prologue of that Tale, as printed above. It is scarce conceivable how these two Prologues could ever be joined together and given to the same character, as they are not only entirely unconnected, but also in one point directly contradictory to each other; for in that, which is properly the *Marchant's*, he says expressly [ver. 9110.], that he had been married "*two monthes* and not more;" whereas in the other, the Speaker's chief discourse is about *his son*, who is *grown up*. This therefore, upon the authority of the best MSS. I have restored to the *Frankleins*; and I must observe, that the sentiments of it are much more suitable to his character than to that of the *Marchant*. It is quite natural, that a wealthy land-holder, of a generous disposition, as he is described [ver. 333--62.], who has been Sheriff, Knight of the Shire, &c. should be anxious to see his son, as we say, a *Gentleman*, and that he should talk slightly of money in comparison with polished manners and virtuous endowments; but neither the character which Chaucer has drawn of *his Marchant*, nor our general notions of the profession at that time, prepare us to expect from him so liberal a strain of thinking.

§ XXVI. THE *FRANKLEINS TALE*, as he tells us himself, is taken from a *British Lay*²⁴; and

Quod feci. Dominus ideo tibi munera lucis
Contulit: idcirco munera redde mihi.
Addidit ille fidem mulieri, de prece cuius
Se sanum credit, mittit et omne nefas.

The same story is inserted among *The Fables of Alphonsus*, printed by Caxton in English, with those of *Æsop*, *Avianus* and *Poggio*, without date; but I do not find it in the original Latin of Alphonsus, MS. Reg. 10. B. xii. or in any of the French translations of his work that I have examined.

²³ This observation is not meant to extend further than the *King and Queen of Faery*; in whose characters, I think it is plain, that Shakespeare, in imitation of Chaucer, has dignified our Gothic Elves with the manners and language of the classical Gods and Goddesses. In the rest of his Faery system, Shakespeare seems to have followed the popular superstition of his own time.

²⁴ Les premieres Chansons Françaises furent nommées des *Lais*; says M. de la Ravalliere, *Poés. du Roi de Nav.* t. I. p. 213. And so far I believe he is right. But I see no foundation for supposing with him, in the same page, that the

of persons and places, as well as the scene and circumstances of the story, make it extremely probable. The Lay itself is either lost, or buried, perhaps for ever, in

sorte d'*Elegie*, and that it was derived du mot Latin *Lessus*, qui signifie des plaintes; or [in p. 217.] that *son*—la plus majestueuse et la plus grave. It seems more probable that *Lai* in French was anciently a *lai*, answering to *Song* in English. The passage which M. de la Ravalliere has quoted from *Le Brut*,

"Molt sot de *Lais*, molt sot de notes"—

is used by our *Layamon*. [See before, *Essay*, &c. n. 46.]

Ne cuthe na mon swa muchel of *song*.

is used by Peirol d'Alvergna, MS. Crofts, fol. lxxxv. to denote the *songs of birds*, certainly not of the

Et li ausell s'en van enamoran
L'uns per l'autre, et fan vantaz (or *cantaz*) et *lais*.

For I am inclined to believe, that *Liod*, Island. *Lied*, Teuton. *Leoth*, Saxon, and *Lai*, French, are all to derive from the same Gothic original.

In its general sense, the name of *Lay* was particularly given to the French translations of certain Poems, composed in Armorican Bretagne, and in the Armorican language. I say the French translations, because (as I can find); an Armorican word, could hardly have been the name, by which a species of Poetry, not known in France, was distinguished by the first composers in Bretagne.

Perhaps the only collection of these *Lais* that is now extant, was translated into French octosyllable stanzas, who calls herself *Marie*; the same, without doubt, who made the translation of *Esope*, quoted by A. L. viii. ch. l.] and Fauchet [L. II. n. 84.], and placed by them in the reign of St. Louis, about the thirteenth century. Both her works have been preserved together in MS. Harl. 978. in a fair hand, which seems to Judge more recent than the latter end of that Century.

With which only we are at present concerned, were addressed by her to some king. Fol. 132.

En le honur de vous, noble reis,
Ki tant estes pruz e curteis,
A ki tute jole se encline,
F'en ki quoc tuz biens racine.
M'entremis des *lais* assembler,
Par rime faire e raconter.—

After, she names herself.

Oez, Seignurs, ke dit *Marie*.

The Poems in this collection, to the number of twelve, are recited in the Harleian Catalogue. They are the names of the principal persons in the several Stories, and are most of them evidently Armorican; and we can read the Stories themselves without being persuaded, that they were either really translated from the Armorican language, or at least composed by one who was well acquainted with that language and country. These Poems of Marie have of late been so little known as to have entirely escaped the researches of Fauchet and other Antiquaries, they were formerly in high estimation. Denis Piramus, a very tolerable versifier of 'St. Edmund the King' [MS. Cotton. Dom. A. xi.], allows that Dame Marie, as he calls her, had great composition of her LAYS, though they are not all true—

E si en est ele mult loee,
E la ryme par tut amee.

One of her Lays, as it should seem, into one of the Northern languages was among the books given by Gardie to the University of Upsal, under the title of *Varia Britannorum Fabulae*. See the description by Stephanus, in Cat. Libb. Septent. at the end of Hickes, Gr. A. & edit. 1689, 4^{to}, p. 180. That Chaucer thought I think extremely probable, not only from a passage in his Dreme [ver. 1820—1926.], which seems to be copied from the Lay of Elidur, but also from the manner in which he makes the Frankeleyn speak of the other compositions. See the note on ver. 11021.

In Chaucer's time, there were other British Lays extant beside this collection by Marie. Emaré has been before, § xv. An old English Ballad of Sir Gowther [MS. Reg. 17 B. xliii.] is said by the writer to be taken out of one of the Lays of Britanye: in another place he says—the first Lay of Britanye. The tale of Frankeleyn's Tale was probably a third. There were also Lays, which did not pretend to be British. Aristote, Li Lais de l'Oiselet [Fabliaux, tom. I.]. Le Lai du Corn by Robert Blyke [MS. Bod. 1687.] is said

one of those sepulchres of MSS. which, by courtesy, are called Libraries; but there are two imitations of it extant by Boccace, the first in the vth Book of his *Philopopo*, and the second in the *Decameron*, D. x. N. 5. They agree in every respect with each other, except that the scene and the names are different, and in the latter the narration is less prolix and the style less flowery than in the former, which was a juvenile work²³. The only material point, in which Boccace seems to have departed from his original, is this; instead of "the removal of the rocks" the Lady desires "a garden full of flowers and fruits of May, in the month of January;" and some such alteration was certainly necessary, when the scene came to be removed from Bretagne to Spain and Italy, as it is in Boccace's novels²⁴. I should guess that Chaucer has preserved pretty faithfully the principal incidents of the *British tale*, though he has probably thrown in some smaller circumstances to embellish his narration. The long list of virtuous women in Dorigene's Soliloquy is plainly copied from HIERONYMUS contra Jovinianum.

§ xxvii. Thus far I flatter myself I have been not unsuccessful in restoring the true order, and connexion with each other, of the *Clerkes*, the *Marchantes*, the *Squires*, and the *Frankleins* Tales, but with regard to the next step, which I have taken, I must own myself more dubious. In all the editions the Tales of the *Nonne* and the *Chanones Yeman* precede the *Doctoures*, but the best MSS. agree in removing those Tales to the end of the *Nonnes Preestes*, and I have not scrupled to adopt this arrangement, which, I think, is indisputably established by the following consideration. When the *Monk* is called upon for his Tale the Pilgrims were near Rochester [ver. 13932.], but when the *Chanon* overtakes them they were advanced to Boughton under Blee [ver. 16024.], twenty miles beyond Rochester, so that the Tale of the *Chanones Yeman*, and

by him to have been invented by *Geraduc*, who accomplished the adventure. In the Ballad, entitled "THE BOY AND THE MANTLE," [Anc. Poet. v. iii. p. 1.] which I suspect to have been made up out of *this Lay* and *Le Court Mantel*, the successful knight is called *Graddock*. Robert Bikes says further, that the Horn was still to be seen at Cirencester,

Q'ust a Cirincetre
A une haute feste,
La pureit li veir
Icest corn tout pur veir.
Ceo dist Robert Bikes—

In none of these Lays do we find the qualities attributed to that sort of composition by M. de la Ravaliera. According to these examples we should rather define the Lay to be a species of *serious* narrative poetry, of a *moderate length*, in a simple style and *light metre*. *Serious* is here opposed (not to *pleasant*, but) to *indicrous*, in order to distinguish the Lay from the *Conte* or *Fabliau*; as on the other hand its *moderate length* distinguishes it from the *Geste*, or common *Roman*. All the Lays that I have seen are in *light metre*, not exceeding eight syllables. See before, Essay, &c. n. 60.

²³ I saw once an Edition of the *Philopopo*, printed at Venice, 1503, fol. with a letter at the end of it, in which the Publisher Hieronymo Squarzaicho says (if I do not misremember,) "that this work was written by Boccace at twenty-five years of age (about 1338), while he was at Naples in the house of John Barrile." *Johannes Barrillius* is called by Boccace [*Geneal. Deor.* l. xiv. c. 19.] *magni spiritus homo*. He was sent by King Robert to attend Petrarch to his coronation at Rome, and is introduced by the latter in his second Elogue under the name of *Idæus*; ab Ida, monte Cretensi, unde et ipse oriundus fuit. *Intentiones Eclogarum Franc. Petrarcke*, MS. Bod. 558. Not knowing at present where to find that Edition, I am obliged to rely upon my memory only for this story, which I think highly probable, though it is not mentioned, as I recollect, by any of the other Biographers of Boccace. A good life of Boccace is still much wanted.

The adventures of *Florio* and *Blancaflor*, which make the principal subject of the *Philopopo*, were famous long before Boccace, as he himself informs us, l. i. p. 6. Ed. 1723. Hieronymo Squarzaicho, in the letter mentioned above, says, that the story, "anchora al nova insino ad ogi scripta in un librazolo de tristo et male composto rime—dove 12 Boccaccio ni cavo questo digno et elegante libro." *Floris* and *Blancaflor* are mentioned as illustrious lovers by *Matfres Eymengau de Besers*, a Languedocian Poet, in his *Breviari d'amor* dated in the year 1288. MS. Reg. 16 C. 5. fol. 199. It is probable however that the Story was enlarged by Boccace, and particularly I should suppose that the *Love-questions* in l. v. (the fourth of which questions contains the Novel referred to in the text) were added by him.

²⁴ The *Conte Bolardo*, the precursor and model of Ariosto, in his *Orlando innamorato*, l. l. ca. 12 has inserted a Tale upon the plan of Boccace's two novels, but with considerable alterations, which have carried the story, I apprehend, still further from its *British* original.

that of *the Nonne* to which it is annexed, cannot with any propriety be admitted till after *the Monkes Tale*, and consequently not till after *the Nonnes Preestes*, which is inseparably linked to that of *the Monk*.

§ xxviii. These two Tales therefore of *the Nonne* and *the Chanones Yeman* being removed out of the way, *the Doctoures* comes clearly next to *the Frankleines*; but how they are to be connected together, and whether at all, is a matter of doubt. What I have printed by way of *Prologue* to the *Doctoures Tale* I found in one of the best MSS. but only in one: in the others it has no *Prologue*. The first line applies so naturally and smartly to *the Frankleines* conclusion, that I am strongly inclined to believe it from the hand of Chaucer, but I cannot say so much for the five following. I would therefore only wish these lines to be received for the present, according to the Law-phrase, *de bene esse*, till they shall either be more authentically established or superseded by the discovery of the genuine *Prologue*.

§ xxix. IN THE DOCTOURES TALE, beside *Livy*, who is quoted, Chaucer may possibly have followed *Gower* in some particulars, who has also related the story of *Virginia*, *Conf. Amant.* B. vii. but he has not been a servile copyist of either of them.

§ xxx. *The Pardoner's Tale* has a *Prologue* which connects it with *the Doctoures*. There is also a pretty long preamble, which may either make part of the *Prologue*, or of the *Tale*. The MSS. differ in this point. I have chosen to throw it into the *Tale*, and to confine the *Prologue* to what I suppose to be its proper use, the introduction of the new *Speaker*. When he is once in complete possession of his office of entertaining the company, his *Prefaces* or *Digressions* should all, I think, be equally considered as parts of his *Tale*.

The mere outline of THE PARDONER'S TALE is to be found in the *Cento Novelle Antiche*. Nov. lxxxii.

§ xxxi. The *Tale of the Shipman* in the best MSS. has no *Prologue*. What has been printed as such in the common Editions is evidently spurious. To supply this defect I have ventured, upon the authority of one MS. (and, I confess, not one of the best) to prefix to this *Tale* the *Prologue*, which has usually been prefixed to the *Tale of the Squier*. As this *Prologue* was undoubtedly composed by Chaucer, it must have had a place somewhere in this Edition, and if I cannot prove that it was really intended by him for this place, I think the Reader will allow that it fills the vacancy extremely well. *The Pardoner's tale* may very properly be called "a thrifty tale," and he himself "a learned man" [ver. 12905—8.]; and all the latter part, though highly improper in the mouth of the "curteis Squier," is perfectly suited to the character of *the Shipman*.

This tale is generally supposed to be taken from the *Decameron*. D. viii. N. 1. but I should rather believe that Chaucer was obliged to some old French *Fableour*, from whom *Boccace* had also borrowed the ground-work of his *Novel*, as in the case of *the Reeves Tale*. Upon either supposition, a great part of the incidents must probably have been of his own invention.

§ xxxii. The transition from the *Tale of the Shipman* to that of *the Prioress* is happily managed. I have not been able to discover from what *Legende* of the *Miracles* of our Lady THE PRIOR-ESSES TALE is taken. From the scene being laid in Asia, it should seem, that this was one of the oldest of the many stories, which have been propagated, at different times, to excite or justify several merciless persecutions of the Jews, upon the charge of murdering Christian children²⁷. The story of *Hugh of Lincoln*, which is mentioned in the last Stanza, is placed by *Matthew Paris* under the year 1255.

²⁷ In the first four months of the *Acta Sanctorum* by Bollandus, I find the following names of Children canonized, as having been murdered by Jews: xxv Mart. *Willielmus Norwicensis*. 1144. *Richardus, Parisiensis*. 1179. xvii Apr. *Rudolphus, Bernæ*. 1287. *Wernerus, Wesaliae*. an. eod. *Albertus, Poloniae*. 1598. I suppose the remaining eight months would furnish at least as many more. See a Scottish Ballad [Rel. of Anc. Poet. v. i. p. 32.] upon one of these supposed murders. The Editor has very ingeniously conjectured that "Mirryland" in ver. 1. is a corruption of "Milan." Perhaps the real occasion of the Ballad may have been what is said to have happened at Trent, in 1475, to a boy called *Wymon*. The Cardinal Hadrian, about fifty years after, mentioning the Rocks of Trent, adds, "quo Judæi

§ xxxiii. Next to *the Prioress* CHAUCER himself is called upon for his Tale. In the *Prologue* he has dropped a few touches descriptive of his own person and manner, by which we learn, that he was used to look much upon the ground; was of a corpulent habit; and reserved in his behaviour. His *RIME OF SIRE THOPAS* was clearly intended to ridicule the "palpable gross" fictions of the common Rimers of that age, and still more, perhaps, the meanness of their language and versification. It is full of phrases taken from *Isumbras*, *Li beaus desconus*, and other Romances in the same style, which are still extant. A few of his imitations of them will be pointed out in the Notes.

§ xxxiv. For the more complete reprobation of this species of Riming, even *the Host*, who is not to be suspected of too refined a taste, is made to cry out against it, and to cut short *Sire Thopas* in the midst of his adventures. CHAUCER has nothing to say for his *Rime*, but that "it is the best he can" [ver. 13856.], and readily consents to tell another Tale; but having just laughed so freely at the bad poetry of his time, he might think it, perhaps, too invidious to exhibit a specimen of better in his own person, and therefore his other Tale is in prose, a mere translation from, *Le Livre de Meïbes et de dame Prudence*, of which several copies are still preserved in MS.²⁸ It is in truth, as he calls it, [ver. 13868.] "*a moral tale vertuous*," and was probably much esteemed in its time, but, in this age of levity, I doubt some Readers will be apt to regret, that he did not rather give us the remainder of *Sire Thopas*.

§ xxxv. THE PROLOGUE of THE MONKES Tale connects it with *Meïbes*. The Tale itself is certainly formed upon the plan of *Boccaccio's* great work *de casibus virorum illustrium*, but Chaucer has taken the several Stories, of which it is composed, from different authors, who will be particularized in the Notes.

§ xxxvi. After a reasonable number of melancholy ditties, or Tragedies, as the Monk calls them, he is interrupted by the Knight, and the Host addresses himself to *the Nonnes Preest*, to tell them "*swiche thing as may their hertes glade*."

THE TALE OF THE NONNES PREEST is cited by Dryden, together with that of *the Wife of Bath*, as of Chaucer's own invention. But that great Poet was not very conversant with the authors of which Chaucer's library seems to have been composed. *The Wife of Bathes Tale* has been shewn above to be taken from Gower, and the Fable of the Cock and the Fox, which makes the ground of *the Nonnes Preestes Tale*, is clearly borrowed from a collection of *Æsopian* and other Fables, by *Marie* a French Poetess, whose collection of *Lais* has been mentioned before in n. 24. As her Fable is short and well told, and has never been printed, I shall insert it here at length²⁹, and the more willingly, because it furnishes a convincing proof, how able Chaucer was to work up an excellent Tale out of very small materials.

ob Simonis eadem ne aspirare quidem audent. Pref. ad librum de Sermonibus. Lat. The change of the name in the Song, from *Simon* to *Hugh*, is natural enough in this country, where similar stories of *Hugh of Norwich* and *Hugh of Lincoln* had been long current.

²⁸ Two copies of this work are in the Museum, MS. Reg. 19 C. vii. and 19 C. xi. in French Prose. Du Fresnoy, *Bibliot. des Romans*, v. ii. p. 248. mentions two copies of the same work *en vers*, dans la *Bibliothèque Segulier*.

²⁹ From MS. Harl. 978. f. 74.

D un cok recunte, ki estot
Sur un femer, e si chantot.
Par de lez li vient un guplix,
Si l'apela par mus beaus diz.
Sire, fet il, murex veï bel;
Unc ne vi si gent oïsel.
C'ere volz as sur tute rien,
Fors tun pere, qe jo vi bien;
Unc oïsel meus ne chanta;
Mes il le fist meux, kar il cluna.
Si puis jeo fere, dist il cluna.
Les eles bat, les oïlz ad cïos,
Chanter quida plus clerelement.
Li gupli saut, e ail prent;

§ xxxvii. The sixteen lines, which are printed at the end of the *Nonnes Preestes Tale*, might perhaps more properly be considered as the beginning of the Prologue to the succeeding Tale, if it were certain what Tale was intended to succeed. In both Dr. Askew's MSS. the last of these lines is read thus,—

Seide unto the Nunne as ye shul heer.—

and there are six more lines to introduce her Tale; but, as these six lines are manifestly forged for the purpose, I have chosen rather to adhere to the other MSS. which acknowledge themselves defective in this part, and give us *the Nonnes Tale*, as I have done, without any introduction. It is very probable, I think, that Chaucer himself had not determined, whether he should connect *the Nonnes Tale* with that of *the Nonnes Preest*, or whether he should interpose a Tale or two, or perhaps more, between them.

THE TALE OF THE NONNE is almost literally translated from the life of St. Cecilia in the *Legenda aurea* of *Jacobus Januensis*. It is mentioned by Chaucer, as a separate work, in his *Legende of good women*, [ver. 426.] under the title of “the life of Seint Cecile,” and it still retains evident marks that it was not originally composed in the form of a Tale to be spoken by the Nonne²⁰. However there can be no doubt that Chaucer meant to incorporate it into this collection of Canterbury Tales, as the *Prologue of the Chanones Yeman* expressly refers to it.

Vers la forest od lui s'en va.
Par mi un champ, u il passa,
Curent apres tut li pastur;
Li chiens le huent tut entour.
Veit le gupil, ki le cok tient,
Mar le guaina si par ens vient.
Va, fet li cocs, si lurescriste,
Que sui tuens, ne me larras mie.
Li gupil volt parle en haut,
E li cocs de sa buche saut.
Sur un haut fust s'est muntez.
Quant li gupilz s'est reguardes,
Mut par se tient enfantillé,
Que li cocs l'ad si enginné.
De mal talent e de droit ire
La buche comence a maudire.
Ke parole quant deveroit taire.
Li cocs respunt, si del jeo faire,
Maudire l'oïl, ki volt cluiner,
Quant il deit garder e guaiter,
Que mal ne vient a lur Seignur.
Ceo funt li fol tut li plusur,
Parolent quant deivent taïser,
Teïsent quant il deivent parler.

The resemblance of Chaucer's Tale to this fable is obvious; and it is the more probable that he really copied from Marie, because no such Fable is to be found either in the Greek *Æsop*, or in any of the Latin compilations (that I have seen) which went about in the dark ages under the name of *Æsop*. Whether it was invented by Marie, or whether she translated it, with the rest of her fables, from the Anglo-Saxon version of *Æsop* by King Alfred, as she says herself, I cannot pretend to determine. Though no Anglo-Saxon version of *Æsop* be now, as I can find, extant, there may have been one formerly, which may have passed, like many other translations into that language, under the name of Alfred; and it may be urged in support of the probability of Marie's positive assertion, that she appears, from passages in her *Leis*, to have had some knowledge of English. I must observe that the name of the King, whose English Version she professes to follow, is differently stated in different MSS. In the best MS. *Hari*. 978. it is plainly *Li reis Alured*. In a later MS. *Vosp*. B. xiv. it is *Li reis Henria*. Pasquier [*Recherches*, l. viii. c. l.] calls him *Li reis Auvert*, and Du Chesne (as quoted by Menage, v. *ROMAN*) *Li reis Mires*; but all the copies agree in making Marie declare, that she translated her work “*de l'Anglois en Roman*.” A Latin *Æsop*, MS. *Reg*. 15 A. vii. has the same story of an English version by order of a *Rex Angliæ Afrus*.

²⁰ The whole Introduction is in the style of a person writing, and not of one speaking. If we compare it with the Introduction to the *Prioresses Tale*, the difference will be very striking. See particularly ver. 1554s.

§ xxxviii. The introduction of the *Chanones Yeman* to tell a Tale, at a time when so many of the original characters remain to be called upon, appears a little extraordinary. It should seem, that some sudden resentment had determined Chaucer to interrupt the regular course of his work, in order to insert a Satire against the Alchemists. That their pretended science was much cultivated about this time²¹, and produced its usual evils, may fairly be inferred from the Act, which was passed soon after, 5 H. IV. c. iv. to make it Felonie to *multiplie gold or siler, or to use the art of multiplication.*

§ xxxix. In the PROLOGUE TO THE MANCIPLES TALE, the Pilgrims are supposed to be arrived at a little town called "Bob up and down, under the blee, in Canterbury way." I cannot find a town of that name in any Map, but it must have lain between Boughton, the place last mentioned, and Canterbury. The Fable of the Crow, which is the subject of THE MANCIPLES TALE, has been related by so many authors, from Ovid down to Gower, that it is impossible to say whom Chaucer principally followed. His skill in new dressing an old story was never, perhaps, more successfully exerted.

§ xl. After the *Tale of the Manciple* the common Editions, since 1542²², place what is called

and in ver. 15530. the Relater, or rather Writer, of the Tale, in all the MSS. except one of middling authority, is called "unworthy Sone of Eve." Such little inaccuracies are strong proofs of an unfinished work. See before p. 1.

²¹ The first considerable Coinage of Gold in this country was begun by Edward III, in the year 1343, and according to Camden. [in his *Remains*, Art. *Money*] "the Alchemists did affirm, as an unwritten verity, that the Roanobles, which were coined soon after, were made by projection or multiplication Alchemical of Raymond Lully in the Tower of London." In proof of this, "besides the tradition of the Rabbies in that faculty," they alledged "the Inscription; *Jesus autem transiens per medium eorum ibat*;" which they profoundly expounded, as *Jesus passed invisible and in most secret manner by the midst of Pharisees, so that gold was made by invisible and secret art amidst the ignorant.* But others say, "that Text was the only amulet used in that credulous warfaring age to escape dangers in battles." Thus Camden. I rather believe it was an Amulet, or Charm, principally used against Thieves; upon the authority of the following passage of Sir John Mandeville, c. x. p. 137. "And an half myle fro Nazareth is the Lepe of oure Lord: for the Jewes ladden him upon an highe roche for to make him lepe down and have slayn him: but Jesu passed amonges hem, and lepte upon another roche; and yit ben the steppes of his feet sene in the roche where he allyghte. And therefore seyn sum men whan thei dredon hem of Thefes on ony weye, or of Enemyes; *Jesus autem transiens per medium illorum ibat*: that is to seyne; *Jesus for sothe passynge be the myddes of hem he wente*: in tokene and mynde, that oure Lord passed thorgho out the Jewes crueltee, and scaped safely fro hem; so surely move men passen the perile of Thefe." See also Catal. MSS. Harl. n. 2906. It must be owned, that a Spell against Thieves was the most serviceable, if not the most elegant, Inscription that could be put upon Gold Coin.

Ashmole, in his *Theatrum Chemicum*, p. 443. has repeated this ridiculous story concerning Lully with additional circumstances, as if he really believed it; though Lully by the best accounts had been dead above twenty years before Edward III began to coin Gold.

The same Author (*Mercuriophilus Anglicus*, as he styles himself) has inserted among his *Hermétique Mysteries* (p. 213.) an old English Poem, under the title of *Hermes Bird*, which (he says in his Notes, p. 467.) was thought to have been written originally by *Raymund Lully*, or at least made English by Cremer, Abbot of Westminster and Scholar to Lully, p. 465. The truth is, that the Poem is one of *Lydgate's*, and had been printed by Caxton under its true title, *The Chorie and the Bird*; and the fable, on which it is built, is related by *Petrus Alphonsus (de Clericali Disciplinâ. MS. Reg. 10 B. xii.)* who lived above two hundred years before Lully.

²² In the Edition of 1542, when the *Plowman's Tale* was first printed, it was placed after the Person's Tale. The Editor, whoever he was, had not assurance enough, it should seem, to thrust it into the body of the work. In the subsequent Editions however, as it had probably been well received by the public, upon account of its violent invectives against the Church of Rome, it was advanced to a more honourable station, next to the Manciple's Tale and before the Person's. The only account which we have of any MS. of this Tale is from Mr. Spoght, who says (Note prefixed to *Plowman's Tale*), that he had "seene it in written hand in John Stowes Librarie in a booke of such antiquitie, as seemed to have been written neare to Chaucer's time." He does not say that it was among the *Canterbury Tales*, or that it had Chaucer's name to it. We can therefore only judge of it by the internal evidence, and upon that I have no scruple to declare my own opinion, that it has not the least resemblance to Chaucer's manner, either of writing or thinking, in his other works. Though he and Boccaccio have laughed at some of the abuses of religion and the disorders of Ecclesiastical persons, it is quite incredible that either of them, or even Wicliff himself, would have

the Plowman's Tale; but, as I cannot understand that there is the least ground of evidence, either external or internal, for believing it to be a work of Chaucer's, I have not admitted it into this Edition.

§ XLI. THE PERSONES PROLOGUE therefore is here placed next to *the Manciple's Tale*, agreeably to all the MSS. which are known, and to every Edition before 1542. In this Prologue, which introduces the last Tale upon the journey to Canterbury, Chaucer has again pointed out to us the time of the day; but the hour by the clock is very differently represented in the MSS. In some it is *ten*, in others *two*: in most of the best MSS. *four*, and in one *five*. According to the phenomena here mentioned, the Sun being 29° high, and the length of the Shadow to the projecting body as 11 to 6, it was *between four and five*. As by this reckoning there were at least three hours left to sunset, one does not well see with what propriety the Host admonishes the Person to *haste him*, because "*the Sonne wol adoun*," and to be "*fructuous in litel pace*;" and indeed *the Person*, knowing probably how much time he had good, seems to have paid not the least regard to his admonition; for his Tale, if it may be so called, is twice as long as any of the others. It is entitled in some MSS. "*Tractatus de Penitentiâ, pro Fabulâ, ut dicitur, Rectoris*;" and I much suspect that it is a translation of some such treatise. I can not recommend it as a very entertaining or edifying performance at this day; but the Reader will be pleased to remember, in excuse both of Chaucer and his Editor, that, considering the Canterbury Tales as a great picture of life and manners, the piece would not have been complete, if it had not included the Religion of the time.

§ XLII. What is commonly called *the Retraction* at the end of the Person's Tale, in several MSS. makes part of that Tale; and certainly the appellation of "*litel tretise*" suits better with a single tale, than with such a voluminous work as the whole body of Canterbury Tales. But then on the other hand the recital, which is made in one part of it of several compositions of Chaucer, could properly be made by nobody but himself. I have printed it, as I found it in MS. Ask. i. with a few corrections from other MSS. and in the Notes I shall give the best account that I can of it.

Having thus gone through the several parts of the Canterbury Tales, which are printed in this Edition, it may not be improper, in the conclusion of this Discourse, to state shortly the parts which are wanting to complete the journey to Canterbury: of the rest of Chaucer's intended Plan, as has been said before, we have nothing. Supposing therefore the number of the Pilgrims to have been *twenty-nine* (see before, § vi.), and allowing the Tale of *the Chanones Yeman* to stand in the place of that which we had a right to expect from *the Knights Yeman*, the Tales wanting will be only those of the *free City-Mechanics* and the *Ploughman*. It is not likely that the Tales told by such characters would have been among the most valuable of the

called at the whole government of the Church, in the style of this *Plowman's Tale*. If they had been disposed to such an attempt, their times would not have born it; but it is probable, that Chaucer, though he has been pressed into the service of Protestantism by some zealous writers, was as good a Catholic as men of his understanding and rank in life have generally been. The necessity of auricular Confession, one of the great scandals of Popery, cannot be more strongly inculcated than it is in the following *Tale of the Person*.

I will just observe, that Spenser seems to speak of the Author of *the Plowman's Tale* as a distinct person from Chaucer, though, in compliance, I suppose, with the taste of his age, he puts them both on the same footing. In the epilogue to *the Shepherd's Calendar* he says to his book,—

Dare not to match thy pipe with *Tityrus* his stile,
Nor with the Pilgrim that *the Ploughman* plaid while.

I know that Mr. Warton, in his excellent *Observations on Spenser*, v. i. p. 125. supposes this passage to refer to *the Visions of Pierce Ploughman*; but my reason for differing from him is, that the Author of the *Visions* never, as I remember, speaks of himself in the character of a *Ploughman*.

Of *the Pilgrim's Tale*, which has also, with as little foundation, been attributed to Chaucer (*Speight's Life of Ch.*) I shall speak in another place. See App. to Pref. A. n. e. p. v.

set ; but they might, and probably would, have served to link together those which at present are unconnected ; and for that reason it is much to be regretted, that they either have been lost, or, as I rather³³ believe, were never finished by the Author.

ADDITIONS AND CORRECTIONS

TO THE

ESSAY, AND INTRODUCTORY DISCOURSE.

Essay, &c. p. xxxix. n. 61. A learned person, whose favours I have already acknowledged in the Gloss. v. Goss. cannot acquiesce in this notion, "that the greatest part of Chaucer's heroic verses, when properly written and pronounced, are verses of eleven syllables;" and for a proof of the contrary he refers me particularly to the *Nonnes Preestes Tale*, ver. 14970, and the verses following and preceding. I am sorry that by an unguarded expression I should have exposed myself to a controversy, which can only be decided by a careful examination of the final syllables of between thirty and forty thousand lines. It would answer my purpose as well to say "*a great part*," instead of "*the greatest part*," but in support of my first idea I must be permitted to observe, that I have carefully examined a hundred lines which precede, and as many which follow ver. 14970, and I find, that a clear majority of them, *as they are printed*, and in *a* feminine, and consequently, according to my hypothesis, have an eleventh syllable. I observe too, that several more *ought to have been printed* as ending with an *a* feminine; but whether the omission of it should be imputed to the defectiveness of the MSS. or to the negligence of the collator, I cannot be certain. See the concluding note of the Essay, &c. p. xiv. and xlv.

P. xxxix. n. 62. Add—It may not be improper here to observe further, that a third poem, which is mentioned in the Decameron in the same manner with the *Thessida* and the *Filicrato*, was also probably one of Boccaccio's own compositions. In the conclusion of the Third Day, it is said, that "Dionco et la Fiammetta cominciarono a cantare di *Messer Guiglielmo et della dama del Vergiu*." There is an old French Romance, upon this subject, as I apprehend, in MS. Bodl. 2386. It is entitled *Le Roman de la Chastelaine du Vergy*, and begins thus :

Une maniere de gens sont
Qui d'estre loyaux semblant font—
Ainsi qu'il avint en Bourgoigne
D'un chevalier preux et hardi
Et de la dame du Vergy.—

The story is the same, in the main, with that of the 70th Novel in the Heptameron of the Queen of Navarre, from which, I suppose, the more modern *Histoire de la Comtesse du Vergy*, Par. 1722, is taken.

I cannot find that any Italian poem upon this subject is now extant ; but the unaccountable neglect, with which the poetry of Boccaccio has been long treated by those very countrymen of his who idolize his prose, makes the supposition, I think, not improbable, that a small piece of this sort may have been suffered to perish, or even to lurk at this day, unpublished and unnoticed, in some Italian library.

DISCOURSE, &c. p. li. n. 6. l. 7. The latest historical fact.] This passage should be compared with the n. on ver. 14708, and corrected accordingly.

P. lx. § xix. Add—I am obliged to Mr. Stevens for pointing out to me a story, which has a great resemblance, in its principal incidents, to the *Freres tale*. It is quoted by D'Artigny, *Memoires d'Histoire*, &c. T. iii. p. 238. from a collection of Sermons, by an anonymous Dominican, printed about the beginning of the xvth Century, under the title of "*Sermones discipuli*."

³³ When we recollect, that Chaucer's papers must in all probability have fallen into the hands of his Son Thomas, who, at the time of his father's death, was of full age, we can hardly doubt that all proper care was taken of them ; and if the Tales in question had ever been inserted among the others, it is scarce conceivable that they should all have slipped out of all the Copies of this work, of which we have any knowledge or information. Nor is there any sufficient ground for imagining that so many Tales could have been suppressed by design ; though such a supposition may perhaps be admitted to account for the loss of some smaller passages. See above, n. 2.

THE
CANTERBURY TALES.

THE
CANTERBURY TALES.

THE PROLOGUE.

v. 1—90

ANNE that April with his shoures sote
droughte of March hath perced to the rote,
I bathed every veine in swiche licour,
whiche vertue engendred is the flour;
an Zephirus eke with his sote brethe
pired hath in every holt and hethe
tendre croppes, and the yonge sonne
h in the Ram his halfe cours yronne,
I smale foules maken melodie,
it slepen alle night with open eye,
priketh hem nature in hir corages;
in longen folk to gon on pilgrimages,
I palmeres for to seken strange strondes,
serve halwes couthe in sondry londes;
I specially, from every shires ende
Engelond, to Canterbury they wende,
a holy blisful martyr for to seke,
at hem hath holpen, whan that they were seke.
Befelle, that, in that seson on a day,
Southwerk at the Tabard as I lay,
dy to wenden on my pilgrimage
to Canterbury with devoute corage,
at night was come into that hostelrye
el nine and twenty in a compaignie
of sondry folk, by aventure yfalle
in felawship, and pilgrimes were they alle,
that toward Canterbury wolden ride.
In chambres and the stables weren wide,
and wel we weren esed atte beste.
And shortly, whan the sonne was gon to reste,
I hadde I spoken with hem everich on,
that I was of hir felawship anon,
and made forword erly for to rise,
to take oure way ther as I you devise.
But natheles, while I have time and space,
that I forther in this tale pace,
I thinketh it accordant to reson,
to tellen you alle the condition
of ech of hem, so as it semed me,
and whiche they weren, and of what degre;
and eke in what araie that they were inne;
and at a knight than wol I firste beginne.

A KNIGHT ther was, and that a worthy man,
as fro the time that he firste began
riden out, he loved chevalrie,

Trouthe and honour, fredom and curtesie.
Ful worthy was he in his lordes werre,
And therto hadde he ridden, no man ferre,
As wel in Cristendom as in Hethenesse,
And ever honoured for his worthinesse.

At Alisandre he was whan it was wonne.
Ful often time he hadde the bord begonne
Aboven alle nations in Pruce.

In Lettowes hadde he reysed and in Ruce,
No cristen man so ofte of his degre.

In Gernade at the siege eke hadde he be
Of Algesir, and ridden in Belmarie.

At Leyes was he, and at Satalie,
Whan they were wonne; and in the Grete see
At many a noble armee hadde he be.

At mortal batailles hadde he ben fiftene,
And foughten for our faith at Tramissene
In listes thries, and ay slain his fo.

This ilke worthy knight hadde ben also
Somtime with the lord of Palatio,
Agen another hethen in Turkie;
And evermore he hadde a sovereigne pris.
And though that he was worthy he was wise,
And of his port as meke as is a mayde.
He never yet no vilanie ne sayde
In alle his lif, unto no maner wight.
He was a veray parfit gentil knight.

But for to tellen you of his araie,
His hors was good, but he ne was not gaie.
Of fustian he wered a gipon,
Alle besmotred with his habergeon,
For he was late ycome fro his viage,
And wente for to don his pilgrimage.

With him ther was his sone a yonge Squier,
A lover, and a lusty bachelier,
With lockes crull as they were laide in presse.
Of twenty yere of age he was I gesse.
Of his stature he was of even lengthe,
And wonderly deliver, and grete of strengthe.
And he hadde be somtime in chevachie,
In Flaundres, in Artois, and in Picardie,
And bothe him wel, as of so litel space,
In hope to stonden in his ladies grace.

Embrouded was he, as it were a mede
Alle ful of freshe floures, white and rede.

Singing he was, or floyting alle the day,
He was as freshe as is the moneth of May.
Short was his gowne, with sleeves long and wide.
Wel coude he sitte on hors, and fayre ride.
He coude songes make, and wel endite,
Juste and eke dance, and wel pourtraie and write.
So hote he loved, that by nightertale
He slep no more than doth the nightingale.
Curteis he was, lowly, and servisable,
And carf before his fader at the table.

See. Nougat
A YEMAN hadde he, and servantes no mo
At that time, for him luste to ride so ;
And he was cladde in cote and hode of grene.
A shefe of peacock arwes bright and kene
Under his belt he bare ful thriftily.
Wel coude he dresse his takel yemanly :
His arwes drouped not with fetheres lowe.
And in his hond he bare a mighty bowe.
2. Leaf
(and shew)
A not-hed hadde he, with a broune visage.
Of wood-craft coude he wel alle the usage.
Upon his arme he bare a gaie bracer,
And by his side a sward and a bokeler,
And on that other side a gaie daggere,
Harneised wel, and sharpe as point of spere :
A Cristofre on his brest of silver shene.
An horne he bare, the baudrik was of grene.
A forster was he sothely as I gesse.

0. 122
Ther was also a Nonne, a PRIORRESSE,
That of hire smiling was ful simple and coy ;
Hire grettest othe n'as but by Seint Eloy ;
And she was cleped madame Eglentine.
Ful wel she sange the service devine,
Entuned in hire nose ful swetely ;
And Frenche she spake ful fayre and fetially,
After the scole of Stratford atte bowe,
For Frenche of Paris was to hire unknowe.
At mete was she wel ytaughte withalle ;
She lette no morsel from hire lippes falle,
Ne wette hire fingers in hire sauce depe.
Wel coude she carie a morsel, and wel kepe,
Thatte no drope ne fell upon hire brest.
In curtesie was sette ful moche hire lest.
Hire over lippe wiped she so clene,
That in hire cuppe was no ferthing sene
Of grese, whan she drenken hadde hire draught.
Ful semely after hire mete she raught.
And sikerly she was of grete disport,
And ful plesant, and amiable of port,
And peined hire to contrefeten chere
Of court, and ben estatelich of manere,
And to ben holden digne of reverence.

But for to speken of hire conscience,
She was so charitable and so pitous,
She wolde wepe if that she saw a mous
Caughte in a trappe, if it were ded or bledde.
Of smale houndes hadde she, that she fedde
With rosted flesh, and milk, and wastel brede.
But sore wept she if on of hem were dede,
Or if men smote it with a yerde smert :
And all was conscience and tendre herte.
Ful semely hire wimple ypinched was ;
Hire nose tretis ; hire eyen grey as glas ;
Hire mouth ful smale, and therto soft and red ;
But sikerly she hadde a fayre forehed.
It was almost a spanne brode I trowe ;
For hardily she was not undergrowe.

Ful fetise was hire cloke, as I was ware.
Of smale corall aboute hire arm she bare

A pair of bedes, gauded all with grene ;
And theron heng a broche of gold ful shene,
On whiche was first ywritten a crowned A,
And after, *Amor vincit omnia.*
Another Nonne also with hire hadde she,
That was hire chapelleine, and *Pammyrs* thre.
See A. 711 *p. 128*

A Monk ther was, a fayre for the maistrie,
An out-rider, that loved venerie ;
A manly man, to ben an abbot able.
Ful many a deinte hors hadde he in stable.
And whan he rode, men mighte his bridel here
Gingoling in a whistling wind as clere,
And eke as loude, as doth the chapell belle,
Ther as this lord was keper of the celle.

The reule of seint Maure and of seint Beneit,
Because that it was olde and somdele streit,
This ilke monk lette olde thinges pace,
And held after the newe world the trace.
He yave not of the text a pulled hen,
That saith, that hunters ben not holy men ;
Ne that a monk, whan he is rekkeles,
Is like to a fish that is wateries ;
This is to say, a monk out of his cloistre.
This ilke text held he not worth an oistre.
And I say his opinion was good.

What shulde he studie, and make himselfen wood
Upon a book in cloistre alway to pore,
Or swinken with his hondes, and laboure,
As Austin bit ! how shal the world be served !
Let Austin have his swink to him reserved.
Therefore he was a prickasoure a right :
Greioundes he hadde as swift as foul of flight :
Of pricking and of hunting for the hare
Was all his lust, for no cost wolde he spare.

I saw his sleeves purfled at the hond
With gris, and that the finest of the lond.
And for to fasten his hood under his chinne,
He hadde of gold ywrought a curious pinne :
A love-knotte in the greter end ther was.
His hed was balled, and shone as any glas,
And eke his face, as it hadde ben anoint.
He was a lord ful fat and in good point.
His eyen stepe, and rolling in his hed,
That stemed as a forneis of a led.
His botes souple, his hors in gret estat,
Now certainly he was a fayre prelat.
He was not pale as a forpined gost.
A fat swan loved he best of any roost.
His palfrey was as broune as is a bery.

A FRERE ther was, a wanton and a mery,
A Limitour, a ful solempne man.
In all the ordres foure is non that can
So moche of daliance and fayre langage.
He hadde ymade ful many a mariage
Of yonge wimmen, at his owen cost.
Until his ordre he was a noble post.
Ful wel beloved, and famulier was he
With frankeleins over all in his contree,
And eke with worthy wimmen of the town :
For he had power of confession,
As saide himselfe, more than a curat,
For of his ordre he was licenciat.
Ful swetely herde he confession,
And plesant was his absolution.
He was an esy man to give penance,
Ther as he wiste to han a good pitance :
For unto a poure ordre for to give
Is signe that a man is wel yshrive.

THE
CANTERBURY TALES.

THE PROLOGUE.

v. 1—90

at April with his shoures sote
ite of March hath perced to the rote,
I every veine in swiche licour,
vertue engendred is the flour;
hirus eke with his sote brethe
ath in every holt and hethe
croppes, and the yonge sonne
Ram his halfe cours yronne,
foules maken melodie,
alle night with open eye,
hem nature in hir corages;
n folk to gon on pilgrimages,
res for to seken strange strondes,
alwes couthe in sondry londes;
lly, from every shires ende
nd, to Canterbury they wende,
lisful martyr for to seke,
nath holpen, whan that they were seke.
hat, in that seson on a day,
erk at the Tabard as I lay,
nden on my pilgrimage
ury with devoute corage,
as come into that hostelrye
nd twenty in a compaignie
olk, by aventure yfalle
p, and pilgrimes were they alle,
d Canterbury wolden ride.
res and the stables weren wide,
: weren esed atte beste.
tly, whan the sonne was gon to reste,
spoken with hem everich on,
of hir felawship anon,
forword erly for to rise,
e way ther as I you devise.
eles, while I have time and space,
orther in this tale pace,
h it accordant to reson,
ou alle the condition
hem, so as it semed me,
: they weren. and of what degre;
what araic that they were inne:
night than wol I firste beginne.

r ther was, and that a worthy man,
e time that he firste began
it, he loved chevalrie,

Trouthe and honour, fredom and curtesie.
Ful worthy was he in his lordes werre,
And therto hadde he ridden, no man ferre,
As wel in Cristendom as in Hethenesse,
And ever honoured for his worthinesse.

At Alisandre he was whan it was wonne.
Ful often time he hadde the bord begonne
Aboven alle nations in Pruce.

In Lettowe hadde he reysed and in Ruce,
No cristen man so ofte of his degre.

In Gernade at the siege eke hadde he be
Of Algeisir, and ridden in Belmarie.

At Leyes was he, and at Satalie,
Whan they were wonne; and in the Grete see
At many a noble armee hadde he be.

At mortal batailles hadde he ben fiftene,
And foughten for our faith at Tramissene
In listes thries, and ay slain his fo.

This ilke worthy knight hadde ben also
Somtime with the lord of Palatio,
Agen another hethen in Turkie:
And evermore he hadde a sovereigne pris.
And though that he was worthy he was wise,
And of his port as meke as is a mayde.

He never yet no vilanie ne sayde
In alle his lif, unto no manere wight.
He was a veray parfit gentil knight.

But for to tellen you of his araic,
His hors was good, but he ne was not gaie.
Of fustian he wered a gipon,
Alle besmotred with his habergeon,
For he was late ycome fro his viage,
And wente for to don his pilgrimage.

With him ther was his sone a yonge Squier,
A lover, and a lusty bachelere,
With lockes crull as they were laide in presse.
Of twenty yere of age he was I gesse.
Of his stature he was of even lengthe,
And wonderly deliver, and grete of strengthe.
And he hadde be somtime in chevachie,
In Flaundres, in Artois, and in Picardie,
And borne him wel, as of so litel space,
In hope to stonden in his ladies grace.

Embrouded was he, as it were a mede
Alle ful of freshe floures, white and rede.

Singing he was, or floyting alle the day,
He was as freshe as is the moneth of May.
Short was his gowne, with sleeves long and wide.
Wel coude he sitte on hors, and fayre ride.
He coude songes make, and wel endite,
Juste and eke dance, and wel pourtraie and write.
So hote he loved, that by nightertale
He slep no more than doth the nightingale.
Curteis he was, lowly, and servisable,
And carf before his fader at the table.

in Novell A YEMAN hadde he, and servantes no mo
At that time, for him luste to ride so;
And he was cladde in cote and hode of grene.
A shefe of peacock arwes bright and kone
Under his belt he bare ful thriftily.
Wel coude he dresse his takel yemanly:
His arwes drouped not with fetheres lowe.
And in his hond he bare a mighty bowe.
A not-hed hadde he, with a broune visage.
Of wood-craft coude he wel alle the usage.
Upon his arme he bare a gaie bracer,
And by his side a sward and a bokeler,
And on that other side a gaie daggere,
Harneised wel, and sharpe as point of spero:
A Cristofre on his brest of silver shene.
An horne he bare, the baudrik was of grene.
A forster was he sothely as I gesse.

0. 122 Ther was also a Nonne, a PRIORESSE,
That of hire smiling was ful simple and coy;
Hire grettest othe n'as but by Seint Eloy;
And she was cleped madame Eglentine.
Ful wel she sange the service devine,
Entuned in hire nose ful swetely;
And Frenche she spake ful fayre and fetialy,
After the scole of Stratford atte bowe,
For Frenche of Paris was to hire unknowe.
At mete was she wel ytaughte withalle;
She lette no morsel from hire lippes falle,
Ne wette hire fingers in hire saunce depe.
Wel coude she carie a morsel, and wel kepe,
Thatte no drope ne fell upon hire brest.
In curtesie was sette ful moche hire lest.
Hire over lippe wiped she so clene,
That in hire cuppe was no ferthing sene
Of grece, whan she dronken hadde hire draught.
Ful semely after hire mete she raught.
And sikerly she was of grete disport,
And ful plesant, and amiable of port,
And peined hire to contrefeten chere
Of court, and ben estatelich of manere,
And to ben holden dignes of reverence.

But for to speken of hire conscience,
She was so charitable and so pitous,
She wolde wepe if that she saw a mous
Caughte in a trappe, if it were ded or bledde.
Of smale houndes hadde she, that she fedde
With rosted flesh, and milk, and wastel brede
But sore wept she if on of hem were dede,
Or if men smote it with a yerde smart:
And all was conscience and tendre herte.

Ful semely hire wimple ypinched was;
Hire nose tretis; hire eyen grey as glas;
Hire mouth ful smale, and therto soft and red;
Bat sikerly she hadde a fayre forehed.
It was almost a spanne brode I trowe;
For hardily she was not undergrowe.

Ful fetise was hire cloke, as I was ware.
Of smale corall aboute hire arm she bare

A pair of bedes, gauded all with grene;
And theron heng a broche of gold ful shene,
On whiche was first ywritten a crowned A,
And after, *Amor vincit omnia.*

Another NONNE also with hire hadde she,
That was hire chapelleine, and ~~Paresse~~ thre.
Jan. A. 111. p. 128

A MONK ther was, a fayre for the maistrie,
An out-rider, that loved venerie;
A manly man, to ben an abbot able.
Ful many a deinte hors hadde he in stable.
And whan he rode, men mighte his bridel here
Gingoling in a whistling wind as clere,
And eke as loude, as doth the chapell belle,
Ther as this lord was keeper of the celle.

The reule of seint Maure and of seint Benet,
Because that it was olde and somdele streit,
This ilke monk lette olde thinges pace,
And held after the newe world the trace.
He yave not of the text a pulled hen,
That saith, that hunters ben not holy men;
Ne that a monk, whan he is rekkeles,
Is like to a fish that is waterles;
This is to say, a monk out of his cloistre.
This ilke text held he not worth an oistre.
And I say his opinion was good.

What shulde he studie, and make himselfen wood?
Upon a book in cloistre alway to pore,
Or swinken with his hondes, and labour,
As Austin bit! how shal the world be served!
Let Austin have his swink to him reserved.
Therefore he was a prickeasoure a right:
Greihoundes he hadde as swift as foul of flight:
Of pricking and of hunting for the hare
Was all his lust, for no cost wolde he spare.

I saw his sleeves purfild at the hond
With gris, and that the finest of the lond.
And for to fasten his hood under his chinne,
He hadde of gold ywrought a curious pinne:
A love-knotte in the greter end ther was.
His hed was balled, and shone as any glas,
And eke his face, as it hadde ben anoint.
He was a lord ful fat and in good point.
His eyen stepe, and rolling in his hed,
That stemed as a forseins of a led.
His botes souple, his hors in gret estas,
Now certainly he was a fayre prelat.
He was not pale as a forpined gost.
A fat swan loved he best of any roost.
His palfrey was as broune as is a berry.

A FRERE ther was, a wanton and a mery,
A Limitour, a ful solempne man.
In all the ordres foure is non that can
So moche of daliance and fayre langage.
He hadde ymade ful many a mariage
Of yonge wimmen, at his owen cost.
Until his ordre he was a noble post.
Ful wel beloved, and familar was he
With frankeleins over all in his contree,
And eke with worthy wimmen of the toun:
For he had power of confession,
As saide himselfe, more than a curat,
For of his ordre he was licenciat.
Ful swetely herde he confession,
And plesant was his absolution.
He was an esy man to give penance,
Ther as he wiste to han a good pitance:
For unto a poure ordre for to give
Is signe that a man is wel yshrive.

ble ensample to his shepe he yaf,
 st he wrought, and afterward he taught.
 the gospel he the wordes caught,
 s figure he added yet therto,
 gold ruste, what shuld iren do !
 a preest be foule, on whom we trust,
 der is a lewed man to rust :
 me it is, if that a preest take kepe,
 a shitten shepherd, and clene shepe :
 ght a preest ensample for to yeve,
 clenenesse, how his shepe shulde live.
 tte not his benefice to hire,
 e his shepe acombred in the mire,
 unto London, unto Saint Poules,
 n him a chanterie for soules,
 a brotherhede to be withold :
 t at home, and kepte wel his fold,
 the wolf ne made it not miscarie.
 a shepherd, and no mercenarie.
 ough he holy were, and vertuous,
 to sinful men not dispitous,
 is speche dangerous ne digne,
 is teching discrete and benigne.
 en folk to heven, with fairenesse,
 ensample, was his besinesse :
 ere any persone obstinat,
 he were of highe, or low estat,
 lde he snibben sharply for the nones.
 : preest I trowe that nowher non is.
 ed after no pompe ne reverence,
 ed him no spiced conscience,
 stes lore, and his apostles twelve,
 ht, but first he folwed it himselfe.

him ther was a PLOWMAN, was his brother,
 lde ylaid of dong ful many a fother.
 swinker, and a good was he,
 n pees, and parfite charitee.
 ed he beste with alle his herte
 imes, were it gain or smerte,
 n his neighebour right as himselfe.
 le thresh, and therto dike, and delve,
 stes sake, for every poure wight,
 ten hire, if it lay in his might.
 thes paid he ful fayre and wel
 his propre swinke, and his catel.
 ard he rode upon a mere.
 was also a reve, and a millere,
 nour, and a pardonor also,
 iple, and myself, ther n'ere no mo. *

MILLER was a stout carl for the nones,
 ze he was of braun, and eke of bones ;
 oved wel, for over all ther he came,
 stling he wold bere away the ram.
 short shuldered brode, a thikke gnarre,
 as no dore, that he n'olde heve of barre,
 e it at a renning with his hede.
 d as any sowe or fox was rede,
 erto brode, as though it were a spade.
 e cop right of his nose he hade
 and theron stode a tuft of heres,
 the bristles of a sowes eres.
 e-thirles blacke were and wide.
 d and bokeler bare he by his side.
 uth as wide was as a forneis.
 a jangler, and a goliardeis,
 it was most of sinne, and harlotries.
 ude he stelen corne, and tollen thries.
 t he had a thomb of gold parde.

A white cote and a blew hode wered he.
 A baggepipe wel coude he blowe and sounne,
 And therwithall he brought us out of tounne.

A gentil MANCIPLE was ther of a temple,
 Of which achatours mighten take ensemble
 For to ben wise in bying of vitaille.
 For whether that he paide, or toke by taille,
 Algate he waited so in his achate,
 That he was ay before in good estate.
 Now is not that of God a ful fayre grace,
 That swiche a lewed mannes wit shal pace
 The wisdom of an hepe of lered men !

Of maisters had he mo than thries ten,
 That were of lawe expert and curious :
 Of which ther was a dosein in that hous,
 Worthy to ben stewardes of rent and lond
 Of any lord that is in Englelond,
 To maken him live by his propre good,
 In honour detteles, but if he were wood,
 Or live as scarcely, as him list desire ;
 And able for to helpen all a shire
 In any cas that mighte fallen or happe ;
 And yet this manciple sette hir aller cappe.

The REVE was a slendre colerike man,
 His berd was shave as neighe as ever he can.
 His here was by his eres round yshorne.
 His top was docked like a preest beforne.
 Ful longe were his legges, and ful lene,
 Ylike a staff, ther was no calf yseue.
 Wel coude he kepe a garner and a binne :
 Ther was non auditour coude on him winne.
 Wel wiste he by the drought, and by the rain,
 The yelding of his seed, and of his grain.
 His lordes shepe, his nete, and his deirre,
 His swine, his hors, his store, and his pultrie,
 Were holly in this reve governing,
 And by his covenant yave he rekening,
 Sin that his lord was twenty yere of age ;
 Ther coude no man bring him in arerage.
 Ther n'as baillif, ne herde, ne other hine,
 That he ne knew his sleight and his covine :
 They were adradde of him, as of the deth.
 His wonning was ful fayre upon an heth,
 With grene trees yshadewed was his place.
 He coude better than his lord pourchace.
 Ful riche he was ystored privily.
 His lord wel coude he plesen subtilly,
 To yeve and lene him of his owen good,
 And have a thank, and yet a cote and hood.
 In youthe he lerned hadde a good mistere.
 He was a wel good wright, a carpentere.
 This reve sate upon a right good stot,
 That was all pomeles grey, and highte Scot.
 A long surcote of perse upon he hade,
 And by his side he bare a rusty blade.
 Of Norfolk was this reve, of which I tell,
 Beside a toun, men clepen Baldeswell.
 Tucked he was, as is a frere, aboute,
 And ever he rode the hinderest of the route.

A SOWRNOUR was ther with us in that place,
 That hadde a fire-red cherubinnes face,
 For sausefleme he was, with eyen narwe.
 As hote he was, and likerous as a sparwe,
 With scalled browes blake, and pilled berd :
 Of his visage children were sore aferd.
 Ther n'as quiksilver, litarge, ne brimston,
 Boras, ceruse, ne oile of tartre non,
 Ne oinement that wolde clense or bite,

AN HARERDASHER, and a CARPENTER,
A WEBBE, a DYER, and a TAPISER,
Were alle yclothed in o liveres,
Of a solempne and grete fraternite.
Ful freshe and newe hir gere ypike was.
Hir knives were ychaped not with bras,
But all with silver wrought ful clene and wel,
Hir girdeles and hir pouches every del.
Wel semed eche of hem a fayre burgeis,
To sitten in a gild halle, on the deis.
Everich, for the wisdom that he can,
Was shapelich for to ben an alderman.
For catel hadden they ynough and rent,
And eke hir wives wolde it wel assent :
And elles certainly they were to blame.
It is ful fayre to ben ycleped madame,
And for to gon to vigiles all before,
And have a mantel reallich ybore.

6.33 A COKE they hadden with hem for the nones,
To boile the chikenes and the marie bones,
And poudre marchant, tart and galingale.
Wel coude he knowe a draught of London ale.
He coude roste, and sethe, and broile, and frie,
Maken mortrewes, and wel bake a pie.
But gret harm was it, as it thoughte me,
That on his shinne a mormal hadde he.
For blanc manger that made he with the best.

6.35 A SHIPMAN was ther, woned far by West :
For ought I wote, he was of Dertemouth.
He rode upon a rounceie, as he couthe,
All in a goune of falding to the knee.
A dagger hanging by a las hadde hee
About his nekke under his arm adoun.
The hote sommer hadde made his hewe al broun.
And certainly he was a good felaw.
Ful many a draught of win he hadde draw
From Burdeux ward, while that the chapman slepe.
Of nice conscience toke he no kepe.
If that he faught, and hadde the higher hand,
By water he sent hem home to every land.
But of his craft to reken wel his tides,
His stremes and his strands him besides,
His herberwe, his mone, and his lodemanage,
Ther was non swiche, from Hull unto Cartage.
Hardy he was, and wise, I undertake :
With many a tempest hadde his berd be shake.
He knew wel alle the havens, as they were,
Fro Gotland, to the Cape de finistere,
And every creke in Bretagne and in Spaine :
His barge ycleped was the Magdelaine.

With us ther was a DOCTOUR OF PHISIKE,
In all this world ne was ther non him like
To speke of phisike, and of chirurgie :
For he was grounded in astronomie.
He kept his patient a ful gret del
In houres by his magike naturel.
Wel coude he fortunen the ascendent
Of his images for his patient.

He knew the cause of every maladie,
Were it of cold, or hote, or moist, or drie,
And wher engendred, and of what humour,
He was a veray parfite practisour.
The cause yknowe, and of his harm the rote,
Anon he gave to the sike man his bote.
Ful redy hadde he his apothecaries
To send him dragges, and his lettuaries,
For eche of hem made other for to winne :

Hir frendship n'as not newe to beginne.
Wel knew he the old Esculapius,
And Dioscorides, and eke Rufus ;
Old Hippocras, Hali, and Gallien ;
Serapion, Rasis, and Avicen ;
Averrois, Damascene, and Constantin ;
Bernard, and Gatisden, and Gilbertin.
Of his diete mesurable was he,
For it was of no superfluitee,
But of gret nourishing, and digestible.
His studie was but litel on the Bible.
In sanguin and in perse he clad was alle
Lined with taffata, and with sendalle.
And yet he was but eay of dispence :
He kepte that he wan in the pestilence.
For gold in phisike is a cordial ;
Therefore he loved gold in special.

6.4 A good WIF was ther of beside BATHE,
But she was som del defe, and that was scathe.
Of cloth making she hadde swiche an haunt,
She passed hem of Ipres, and of Gaunt.
In all the parish wif ne was ther non,
That to the offering before hire shulde gon,
And if ther did, certain so wroth was she,
That she was out of alle charitee.
Hire coverchiefs weren ful fine of ground ;
I dorste swere, they weyeden a pound ;
That on the Sonday were upon hire hede.
Hire hosen weren of fine scarlet rede,
Ful streite yteyed, and shoon ful moist and newe
Bold was hire face, and fayre and rede of hew.
She was a worthy woman all hire live,
Housbondes at the chirche dore had she had five,
Withouten other compaignie in youthe.
But therof nedeth not to speke as nouthe.
And thries hadde she ben at Jerusalem.
She hadde passed many a strange strete.
At Rome she hadde ben, and at Boloine,
In Galice at Seint James, and at Coloine.
She coude moche of wandring by the way.
Gat-tothed was she, sothly for to say.
Upon an ambler esily she sat,
Ywimpled wel, and on hire hede an hat,
As brode as is a bokeler, or a targe.
A fote-mantel about hire hippes large,
And on hire fete a pair of spores sharpe.
In felawship wel coude she laughe and carpe
Of remedies of love she knew perchance,
For of that arte she coude the olde dance.

A good man ther was of religioun,
That was a poure PERSONE of a toun :
But riche he was of holy thought and werk.
He was also a lerned man, a clerk,
That Cristes gospel trewely wolde preche.
His parishens devoutly wolde he teche.
Benigne he was, and wonder diligent,
And in adversite ful patient :
And swiche he was yprevd often sithes.
Ful loth were him to cursen for his tithes,
But rather wolde he yeven out of doute,
Unto his poure parishens aboute,
Of his offering, and eke of his substance.
He coude in litel thing have suffisance.
Wide was his parish, and houses fer asonder,
But he ne left nought for no rain ne thonder,
In sikenesse and in mischief to visite
The ferrest in his parish, moche and lite,
Upon his fete, and in his hand a staf.

Canterbury ; God you spede,
 I martyr quite you your mede ;
 I wot, as ye gon by the way,
 I you to talken and to play :
 Ily comfort ne mirthe is non,
 Iy the way dombe as the ston :
 Iore wold I maken you disport,
 Ierst, and don you some comfort.
 I liketh alle by on assent
 I stonden at my jugement :
 I werchen as I shal you say
 I, whan ye riden on the way,
 Iy faders soule that is ded,
 I mery, smiteth of my hed.
 Iour hondes withouten more speche.
 Iseil was not longe for to seche :
 I it was not worth to make it wise,
 Ied him withouten more avise,
 Iim say his verdit, as him leste.
 Ies, (quod he) now herkeneth for the beste ;
 I t nat, I pray you, in disdain ;
 I point, to speke it plat and plain,
 I of you to shorten with youre way,
 Ige, shal tellen tales tway,
 I bury ward, I mene it so,
 Iward he shall tellen other two,
 Ires that whilom han befall.
 I of you that bereth him best of alle,
 I sayn, that telleth in this cas
 Iest sentence and most solas,
 I a souper at youre aller cost
 Iis place sitting by this post,
 I ye comen agen from Canterbury.
 I maken you the more mery,
 I elven gladly with you ride,
 I nin owen cost, and be your gide.
 I that wol my jugement withsay,
 I or alle we spenden by the way.
 I vouchesauf that it be so,
 I non withouten wordes mo,
 Ierly shapen me therfore.
 I ng was granted, and our othes swore
 I ad herte, and praiden him also,
 I old vouchesauf for to don so,
 Ie wolde ben our governour,

And of our tales juge and reportour,
 And sette a souper at a certain pris ;
 And we wol reuled ben at his devise,
 In highe and lowe : and thus by on assent,
 We ben accorded to his jugement.
 And therupon the win was fette anon.
 We dronken, and to reste wenten eche on,
 Withouten any lenger taryng.

A-morwe whan the day began to spring,
 Up rose our hoste, and was our aller cok,
 And gaderd us togeder in a flok,
 And forth we riden a litel more than pas,
 Unto the watering of Seint Thomas :
 And ther our hoste began his hors arest,
 And saide ; lordes, herkeneth if you lest.
 Ye wete your forword, and I it record.
 If even-song and morwe-song accord,
 Let se now who shal telle the first tale.
 As ever mote I drinken win or ale,
 Who so is rebel to my jugement,
 Shal pay for alle that by the way is spent.
 Now draweth cutte, or that ye forther twinne.
 He which that hath the shortest shal beginne.

Sire knight, (quod he) my maister and my lord,
 Now draweth cutte, for that is min accord.
 Cometh nere, (quod he) my lady prioressse,
 And ye, sire clerk, let be your shamefastnesse,
 Ne studieth nought ; lay hand to, every man.

Anon to drawen every wight began,
 And shortly for to tellen as it was,
 Were it by aventure, or sort, or cas,
 The sothe is this, the cutte felle on the knight,
 Of which ful blith and glad was every wight ;
 And tell he must his tale as was reson,
 But forword, and by composition,
 As ye han herd ; what nedeth wordes mo !
 And whan this good man saw that it was so,
 As he that wise was and obedient
 To kepe his forword by his free assent,
 He saide ; sithen I shal begin this game,
 What ! welcome be the cutte a goddes name.
 Now let us ride, and herkeneth what I say.

And with that word we riden forth our way ;
 And he began with right a mery chere
 His tale anon, and saide as ye shul here.

THE KNIGHTES TALE.

I as olde stories tellen us,
 I a duk that highte Theseus.
 I as he was lord and governour,
 I time swiche a conquerour,
 I as was ther non under the sonne.
 I a riche contree had he wonne.
 I his wisdom and his chevalrie,
 I and all the regne of Feminie,
 I om was ycleped Scythia ;
 I ed the fresshe quene Ipolita,
 I ght hire home with him to his contree
 I hel glorie and gret solemnitee,
 I ire yonge suster Emelie.
 I with victorie and with melodye
 I worthy duk to Athens ride,
 I a host, in armes him beside,
 I tes, if it n'ere to long to here,

I I wolde have told you fully the manere,
 I How wonnen was the regne of Feminie,
 I By Theseus, and by his chevalrie ;
 I And of the grete bataille for the nones
 I Betwix Athenes and the Amasones ;
 I And how asseged was Ipolita
 I The faire hardy quene of Scythia ;
 I And of the feste, that was at hire wedding,
 I And of the temple at hire home coming.
 I But all this thing I moste as now forbere.
 I I have, God wot, a large feld to ere ;
 I And weke ben the oxen in my plow.
 I The remenant of my tale is long ynow.
 I I wil not letten eke non of this route.
 I Let every felaw telle his tale aboute,
 I And let se now who shal the souper winne
 I Ther as I left, I wil agen beginne.

This duk, of whom I made mentioun,
 When he was comen almost to the toun,
 In all his wele and in his moste pride,
 He was ware, as he cast his eye aside,
 Wher that ther kneled in the highe way
 A compaignie of ladies, twey and twey,
 Eche after other, clad in clothes blake :
 But swiche a crie and swiche a wo they make,
 That in this world n'is creature living,
 That ever herd swiche another waimenting.
 And of this crie ne wolde they never stenten,
 Till they the reines of his bridel henten.

What folk be ye that at min home coming
 Perturben so my feste with crying !
 Quod Theseus ; have ye so grette envie
 Of min honour, that thus complaine and crie !
 Or who hath you misboden, or offended !
 Do telle me, if that it may be amended ;
 And why ye be thus clothed alle in blake,!

The oldest lady of hem all than spake,
 Whan she had swouned, with a dedly chere,
 That it was reuthe for to seen and here.
 She sayde ; lord, to whom fortune hath yeven
 Victorie, and as a conquerour to liven,
 Nought greveth us your glorie and your honour ;
 But we beseke you of mercie and socour.
 Have mercie on our woe and our distresse.
 Som drope of pitee, thurgh thy gentillesse,
 Upon us wretched wimmen let now falle.
 For certes, lord, ther n'is non of us alle,
 That she n'hath ben a duchesse or a quene
 Now be we caitives, as it is wel sene :
 I thanked be fortune, and hire false whele,
 That non estat ensureth to be wele.
 And certea, lord, to abiden your presence
 Here in this temple of the goddesse Clemence
 We han ben waiting all this fourtenight :
 Now helpe us, lord, sin it lieth in thy might.

I wretched wight, that wepe and waille thus,
 Was whilom wif to king Capaneus,
 That starfe at Thebes, cursed be that day :
 And alle we that ben in this aray,
 And maken all this lamentation,
 We losten alle our husbondes at that toun,
 While that the sege therabouten lay.
 And yet now the olde Creon, wala wa !
 That lord is now of Thebes the citee,
 Fulfilled of ire and of iniquitee,
 He for despit, and for his tyrannie,
 To don the ded bodies a vilanie,
 Of alle our lordes, which that ben yslawe,
 Hath alle the bodies on an hepe ydrawe,
 And will not suffren hem by non assent
 Neyther to ben yberied, ne ybrent,
 But maketh houndes ete hem in despite.

And with that word, withouten more respite
 They fallen groff, and crien pitously ;
 Have on us wretched wimmen som mercy,
 And let our sorwe sinken in thin herte.

This gentil duk down from his courser sterte
 With herte pitous, whan he herd hem speke.
 Him thoughte that his herte wolde all to-breke,
 Whan he saw hem so pitous and so mate,
 That whilom weren of so gret estate.
 And in his armes he hem all up hente,
 And hem comforted in ful good entente,
 And swore his oth, as he was trewe knight,
 He wolde don so ferforthly his might
 Upon the tyrant Creon hem to wreke,
 That all the peple of Grece shulde speke,

How Creon was of Theseus yserved,
 As he that hath his deth ful wel deserved.

And right anon withouten more abode
 His banner he displaide, and forth he rode
 To Thebes ward, and all his host beside :
 No nere Athenes n'olde he go ne ride,
 Ne take his ese fully half a day,
 But onward on his way that night he lay :
 And sent anon Ipolita the quene,
 And Emelie hire yonge sister shene
 Unto the toun of Athenes for to dwell :
 And forth he rit ; ther n'is no more to tell.

The red statue of Mars with spere and targe
 So shineth in his white banner large,
 That all the felde gliteren up and down :
 And by his banner borne is his penon
 Of gold ful riche, in which ther was ybete *hale*
 The Minotaure which that he slew in Crete.
 Thus rit this duk, thus rit this conquerour,
 And in his host of chevalrie the flour,
 Til that he came to Thebes, and alight
 Fayre in a feld, ther as he thought to fight.
 But shortly for to speken of this thing,
 With Creon, which that was of Thebes king,
 He fought, and slew him manly as a knight
 In plaine bataille, and put his folk to flight :
 And by assaut he wan the citee after,
 And rent adoun bothe wall and sparre, and rafter ;
 And to the ladies he restored again
 The bodies of hir housbondes that were slain,
 To don the obsequies, as was tho the gise.

But it were all to long for to devise
 The grette clamour, and the waimenting,
 Whiche that the ladies made at the brenning
 Of the bodies, and the gret honour,
 That Theseus the noble conquerour
 Doth to the ladies, whan they from him wente :
 But shortly for to telle is min entente.

Whan that this worthy duk, this Theseus,
 Hath Creon slaine, and wonnen Thebes thus,
 Still in the feld he toke all night his reste,
 And did with all the contree as him leste.
 To ransake in the tas of bodies dede,
 Hem for to stripe of harnais and of wede,
 The pillours dide hir businesse and cure, *hale - old*
 After the bataille and discomfiture.
 And so befell, that in the tas they found,
 Thurgh girt with many a grevous bloody wound,
 Two yonge knightes ligging by and by,
 Bothe in on armes, wrought ful richely :
 Of whiche two, Arcita highte that on,
 And he that other highte Palamon.
 Not fully quik, ne fully ded they were,
 But by hir cote-armure, and by hir gere,
 The heraudes knew hem wel in special,
 As tho that weren of the blod real
 Of Thebes, and of sustren two yborne.
 Out of the tas the pillours han hem torne,
 And han hem caried soft unto the tente
 Of Theseus, and he ful some hem sente
 To Athenes, for to dwellen in prison
 Perpetuel, he n'olde no raunson.
 And whan this worthy duk had thus ydon,
 He toke his host, and home he rit anon
 With laurer crowned as a conquerour ;
 And ther he liveth in joye and in honour
 Terme of his lif ; what nedeth wordes mo !
 And in a tour, in anguish and in wo,
 Dwellen this Palamon and eke Arcite,
 For evermo, ther may no gold hem quite.

Thus passeth yere by yere, and day by day,
 Till it felle ones in a morwe of May
 That Emelie, that fayrer was to sene
 Than is the lillie upon his stalke grene,
 And fresher than the May with floures newe,
 (For with the rose colour strof hire hewe;
 I n'ot which was the finer of hem two)
 Er it was day, as she was wont to do,
 She was arisen, and all redy dight.
 For May wol have no slogardie a-night.
 The season priketh every gentil herte,
 And maketh him out of his slepe to sterte,
 And sayth, arise, and do thin observance.
 This maketh Emelie han remembrance
 To don honour to May, and for to rise.
 Yclothed was she fresshe for to devise.
 Hire yelwe here was broided in a tresse,
 Behind hire back, a yerde long I gesse.
 And in the gardin at the sonne uprist
 She walketh up and down wher as hire list.
 She gathereth floures, partie white and red,
 To make a sotel gerlond for hire hed,
 And as an angel hevenlich she song.
 The grete tour, that was so thikke and strong,
 Which of the castel was the chef dongeon,
 (Wher as these knightes weren in prison,
 Of which I tolde you, and tellen shal)
 Was even joiuant to the gardin wall,
 Ther as this Emelie had hire playing.
 Bright was the sounne, and clere that morwening,
 And Palamon, this woful prisoner,
 As was his wone, by leve of his gayler
 Was risen, and romed in a chambre on high,
 In which he all the noble citee sigh,
 And eke the gardin, ful of branches grene,
 Ther as this fresshe Emelia the shene *bright*
 Was in hire walk, and romed up and down.
 This sorweful prisoner, this Palamon
 Goth in his chambre roming to and fro,
 And to himselfe complaining of his wo:
 That he was borne, ful oft he sayd, alas!
 And so befell, by aventure or cas,
 That thurgh a window thikke of many a barre
 Of yren gret, and square as any sparre,
 He cast his eyen upon Emelia,
 And therewithal he blent and cried, a!
 As though he stongen were unto the herte.
 And with that crie Arcite anon up sterte,
 And saide, cosin min, what eyeth thee,
 That art so pale and dedly for to see?
 Why cridest thou? who hath thee don offence?
 For goddes love, take all in patience
 Our prison, for it may non other be.
 Fortune hath yeven us this adversite.
 Som wikke aspect or disposition
 Of Saturne, by som constellation,
 Hath yeven us this, although we had it sworn,
 So stood the heven whan that we were born,
 We moete endure: this is the short and plain.
 This Palamon answerde, and sayde again;
 Cosin, forsooth of this opinion
 Thou hast a vaine imagination.
 This prison caused me not for to crie.
 But I was hurt right now thurghout min eye
 Into min herte, that wol my bane be.
 The fayrnesse of a lady that I se
 Yond in the gardin roming to and fro,
 Is cause of all my crying and my wo.
 I n'ot whe'r she be woman or goddesse.
 But Venus is it, sothly, as I gesse.

And therewithal on knees adoun he fill,
 And sayde: Venus, if it be your will
 You in this gardin thus to transfigure,
 Before me sorweful wretched creature,
 Out of this prison helpe that we may scape.
 And if so be our destinee be shape
 By eterne word to dien in prison,
 Of our lignage have som compassion,
 That is so low ybrought by tyrannie.
 And with that word Arcita gan espie
 Wher as this lady romed to and fro.
 And with that sight hire beautee hurt him so,
 That if that Palamon were wounded sore,
 Arcite is hurt as moche as he, or more.
 And with a sigh he sayde pitously:
 The fresshe beautee sleth me sodenly
 Of hire that rometh in the yonder place.
 And but I have hire mercie and hire grace,
 That I may seen hire at the leste way,
 I n'am but ded; ther n'is no more to say.

This Palamon, whan he these wordes herd,
 Dispitously he loked, and answerd:
 Whether sayest thou this in earnest or in play?

Nay, quod Arcite, in earnest by my fay.
 God helpe me so, me lust full yvel pley.

This Palamon gan knit his browes twey.
 It were, quod he, to thee no gret honour
 For to be false, ne for to be traytour
 To me, that am thy cosin and thy brother
 Ysworne ful depe, and eche of us to other,
 That never for to dien in the peine,
 Til that the deth departen shal us tweine,
 Neyther of us in love to hindre other,
 Ne in non other cas, my leve brother;
 But that thou shuldest trewely forther me
 In every cas, as I shuld forther thee.
 This was thin oth, and min also certain;
 I wot it wel, thou darst it not withsain.
 Thus art thou of my conseil out of doute.
 And now thou woldest falsly ben aboute
 To love my lady, whom I love and serve,
 And ever shal, til that min herte sterve.

Now certes, false Arcite, thou shalt not so.
 I loved hire firste, and tolde thee my wo
 As to my conseil, and my brother sworne
 To forther me, as I have told before.
 For which thou art ybounden as a knight
 To helpen me, if it lie in thy might,
 Or elles art thou false, I dare wel sain.

This Arcite full proudly spake again.
 Thou shalt, quod he, be rather false than I.
 And thou art false, I tell thee utterly.
 For *par amour* I loved hire first or thou.
 What wolt thou sayn? thou wisted nat right now
 Whether she were a woman or a goddesse.
 Thin is affection of holinesse,
 And min is love, as to a creature:
 For which I tolde thee min aventure
 As to my cosin, and my brother sworne.

I pose, that thou lovedest hire before:
 Wost thou not wel the olde clerkes sawe,
 That who shall give a lover any lawe?
 Love is a greter lawe by my pan,
 Then may be yeven of any erthly man:
 And therefore positif lawe, and swiche decree
 Is broken all day for love in eche degree.
 A man mooste nedes love maugre his hed,
 He may not fleen it, though he shuld be ded,
 All be she maid, or widewe, or elles wif.
 And eke it is not likely all thy lif

11.35

11.36

11.37

This duk, of whom I made mentiou,
 When he was comen almost to the toun,
 In all his wele and in his moste pride,
 He was ware, as he cast his eye aside,
 Wher that ther kneled in the highe wey
 A compaignie of ladies, twey and twey,
 Eche after other, clad in clothes blake :
 But swiche a crie and swiche a wo they make,
 That in this world n'is creature living,
 That ever herd swiche another waimenting.
 And of this crie ne wolde they never stenten,
 Till they the reines of his bridel henten.

What folk be ye that at min home coming
 Perturben so my feste with crying !
 Quod Theseus ; have ye so grete envie
 Of min honour, that thus complaine and crie !
 Or who hath you misboden, or offended !
 Do telle me, if that it may be amended ;
 And why ye be thus clothed alle in blake !

The oldest lady of hem all than spake,
 Whan she had swouned, with a dedly chere,
 That it was reuthe fur to seen and here.
 She sayde ; lord, to whom fortune hath yeven
 Victorie, and as a conquerour to liven,
 Nought greveth us your glorie and your honour ;
 But we beseke you of mercie and socour.
 Have mercie on our woe and our distresse.
 Som drope of pitee, thurgh thy gentillesse,
 Upon us wretched wimmen let now falle.
 For certes, lord, ther n'is non of us alle,
 That she n'hath ben a duchesse or a queene
 Now be we caitives, as it is wel sene :
 Thanked be fortune, and hire false whele,
 That non estat ensureth to be wele.
 And certes, lord, to abiden your presence
 Here in this temple of the goddessse Clemence
 We han ben waiting all this fourtenight :
 Now helpe us, lord, sin it lieth in thy might.

I wretched wight, that wepe and waile thus,
 Was whilom wif to king Capaneus,
 That starfe at Thebes, cursed be that day :
 And alle we that ben in this aray,
 And maken all this lamentation,
 We losten alle our husbondes at that toun,
 While that the sege therabouten lay.
 And yet now the olde Creon, wala wa !
 That lord is now of Thebes the citee,
 Fulfilled of ire and of iniquitee,
 He for despit, and for his tyrannie,
 To don the ded bodies a vilanie,
 Of alle our lordes, which that ben yslawe,
 Hath alle the bodies on an hepe ydrawe,
 And will not suffren hem by non assent
 Neyther to ben yberied, ne ybrent,
 But maketh houndes ete hem in despite.

And with that word, withouten more respite
 They fallen groff, and crien pitously ;
 Have on us wretched wimmen som mercy,
 And let our sorwe sinken in thin herte.

This gentil duk down from his courser sterte
 With herte pitous, whan he herd hem speke.
 Him thoughte that his herte wolde all to-breke,
 Whan he saw hem so pitous and so mate,
 That whilom weren of so gret estate.
 And in his armes he hem all up hente,
 And hem comforted in ful good entente,
 And swore his oth, as he was trewe knight,
 He wolde don so ferforthly his might
 Upon the tyrant Creon hem to wreke,
 That all the peple of Grece shulde speke,

How Creon was of Theseus yserved,
 As he that hath his deth ful wel deserved.

And right anon withouten more abode
 His banner he displaide, and forth he rode
 To Thebes ward, and all his host beside :
 No nere Athenes n'olde he go ne ride,
 Ne take his ese fully half a day,
 But onward on his way that night he lay :
 And sent anon Ipolita the queene,
 And Emelie hire yonge sister shene
 Unto the toun of Athenes for to dwell :
 And forth he rit ; ther n'is no more to tell.

The red statue of Mars with spere and targe
 So shineth in his white banner large,
 That all the felde gliteren up and down :
 And by his banner borne is his penon
 Of gold ful riche, in which ther was ybete
 The Minotaure which that he slew in Crete.
 Thus rit this duk, thus rit this conquerour,
 And in his host of chevalrie the flour,
 Til that he came to Thebes, and alight
 Fayre in a feld, ther as he thought to fight.
 But shortly for to speken of this thing,
 With Creon, which that was of Thebes king,
 He fought, and slew him manly as a knight
 In plaine bataille, and put his folk to flight :
 And by assaut he wan the citee after,
 And rent adoun bothe wall and sparre, and rafter =
 And to the ladies he restored again
 The bodies of hir housbondes that were slain,
 To don the obsequies, as was tho the gise.

But it were all to long for to devise
 The grete clamour, and the waimenting,
 Whiche that the ladies made at the breunning
 Of the bodies, and the gret honour,
 That Theseus the noble conquerour
 Doth to the ladies, whan they from him wente :
 But shortly for to telle is min entente.

Whan that this worthy duk, this Theseus,
 Hath Creon slaine, and wonnen Thebes thus,
 Still in the feld he toke all night his reste,
 And did with all the contree as him leste.
 To ransake in the tas of bodies dede,
 Hem for to stripe of harneis and of wede,
 The pillours dide hir businesse and cure,
 After the bataille and discomfiture.
 And so befell, that in the tas they found,
 Thurgh girt with many a grevous bloody wound,
 Two yonge knightes ligging by and by,
 Bothe in on armes, wrought ful richely :
 Of whiche two, Arcita highte that on,
 And he that other highte Palamon.
 Not fully quik, ne fully ded they were,
 But by hir cote-armure, and by hir gere,
 The heraudes knew hem wel in special,
 As tho that weren of the blod real
 Of Thebes, and of sustren two yborne.
 Out of the tas the pillours han hem torne,
 And han hem caried soft unto the tente
 Of Theseus, and he ful sone hem sente
 To Athenes, for to dwellen in prison
 Perpetuel, he n'olde no raunson.
 And whan this worthy duk had thus ydon,
 He toke his host, and home he rit anon
 With laurer crowned as a conquerour ;
 And ther he liveth in joye and in honour
 Terme of his lif ; what nedeth wordes mo !
 And in a tour, in anguish and in wo,
 Dwellen this Palamon and eke Arcite,
 For evermo, ther may no gold hem quite.

seth yere by yere, and day by day,
 ones in a morwe of May
 e, that fayrer was to sene
 lilie upon his stalke grene,
 r than the May with floures newe,
 e rose colour strof hire hewe;
 e was the finer of hem two)
 y, as she was wont to do,
 sen, and all redy dight.
 d have no slogardie a-night.
 riketh every gentil herte,
 i him out of his slepe to sterte,
 arise, and do thin observance.
 eth Emelie han remembrance
 our to May, and for to rise.
 us she freashe for to devise.
 here was broided in a tresse,
 back, a yerde long I gesse.
 gardin at the sonne uprist
 up and down wher as hire list.
 th floures, partie white and red,
 otel gerlond for hire hed,
 ngel heavenlich she song.
 our, that was so thikke and strong,
 e castel was the chef dongeon,
 ese knightes weren in prison,
 tolde you, and tellen shal)
 inant to the gardin wall.
 Emelie had hire playing.
 s the sonne, and clere that morwening,
 n, this woful prisoner,
 one, by leve of his gayler
 and romed in a chambre on high,
 all the noble citee sigh,
 gardin, ful of branches grene,
 fresshe Emelia the shene
 walk, and romed up and down.
 eful prisoner, this Palamon
 chambre roming to and fro,
 selfe complaining of his wo:
 borne, ful oft he sayd, alas!
 fell, by aventure or cas,
 a window thikke of many a barre
 t, and square as any sparre,
 eyen upon Emelia,
 hal he blent and cried, a!
 e stongen were unto the herte.
 that crie Arcite anon up sterte,
 osin min, what eyleth thee,
 pale and dedly for to see?
 thou? who hath thee don offence?
 love, take all in patience
 for it may non other be.
 h yeven us this adversite.
 aspect or disposition
 by som constellation,
 us this, although we had it sworn,
 heaven whan that we were born,
 ndure: this is the short and plain.
 mon answerde, and sayde again;
 h of this opinion
 vaine imagination.
 caused me not for to crie.
 ert right now thoroughout min eye
 rte, that wol my bane be.
 se of a lady that I se
 gardin roming to and fro,
 all my crying and my wo.
 she be woman or goddesse.
 a it, sothly, as I gesse.

And therewithall on knees adoun he fill,
 And sayde: Venus, if it be your will
 You in this gardin thus to transfigure,
 Beform me sorweful wretched creature,
 Out of this prison helpe that we may scape.
 And if so be our destinee be shape
 By eterne word to dien in prison,
 Of our lignage have som compassion,
 That is so low ybrought by tyrannie.

And with that word Arcita gan espie
 Wher as this lady romed to and fro.
 And with that sight hire beautee hurt him so,
 That if that Palamon were wounded sore,
 Arcite is hurt as moche as he, or more.
 And with a sigh he sayde pitously:
 The fresshe beautee sleth me sodenly
 Of hire that rometh in the yonder place.
 And but I have hire mercie and hire grace,
 That I may seen hire at the leste way,
 I n'am but ded; ther n'is no more to say.

This Palamon, whan he these wordes herd,
 Dispitously he loked, and answerd:
 Whether sayest thou this in earnest or in play?

Nay, quod Arcite, in earnest by my fay.
 God helpe me so, me lust full yvel pley.

This Palamon gan knit his browes twey.
 It were, quod he, to thee no gret honour
 For to be false, ne for to be traytour
 To me, that am thy cosin and thy brother
 Ysworne ful depe, and eche of us to other,
 That never for to dien in the peine,
 Til that the deth departen shal us tweine,
 Neyther of us in love to hindre other,
 Ne in non other cas, my leve brother;
 But that thou shuldest trewely forther me
 In every cas, as I shuld forther thee.

This was thin oth, and min also certain;
 I wot it wel, thou darst it not withsain.
 Thus art thou of my conseil out of doute.
 And now thou woldest falsly ben aboute
 To love my lady, whom I love and serve,
 And ever shal, til that min herte sterve.

Now certes, false Arcite, thou shalt not so.
 I loved hire firste, and tolde thee my wo
 As to my conseil, and my brother sworne
 To forther me, as I have told beforne.
 For which thou art ybounden as a knight
 To helpen me, if it lie in thy might,
 Or elles art thou false, I dare wel sain.

This Arcita full proudly spake again.
 Thou shalt, quod he, be rather false than I.
 And thou art false, I tell thee utterly.
 For *par amour* I loved hire first or thou.
 What wolt thou sayn? thou wisted nat right now
 Whether she were a woman or a goddesse.

Thin is affection of holinesse,
 And min is love, as to a creature:
 For which I tolde thee min aventure
 As to my cosin, and my brother sworne.

I pose, that thou lovedest hire beforne:
 Wost thou not wel the olde clerkes sawe,
 That who shall give a lover any lawe?
 Love is a greter lawe by my pan,
 Then may be yeven of any erthly man:
 And therefore positif lawe, and swiche decree
 Is broken all day for love in eche degree.
 A man moste nedes love maugre his hed.
 He may not fleen it, though he shuld be ded,
 All be she maid, or widewe, or elles wif.

And eke it is not likely all thy lif

1123

Hole

Hole

Broke
here

To stonden in hire grace, no more shal I :
For wel thou wost thyselfen veraily,
That thou and I be damned to prison
Perpetuel, us gaineth no raunson.

We strive, as did the boundes for the bone,
They fought all day, and yet hir part was none.
Ther came a kyte, while that they were so wrothe,
And bare away the bone betwix hem bothe.
And therfore at the kinges court, my brother,
Eche man for himself, ther is non other.
Love if thee lust; for I love and ay shal :
And sothly, leve brother, this is al.
Here in this prison mosten we endure,
And everich of us take his aventure.

Gret was the strif, and long betwix hem twey,
If that I hadde leiser for to sey :
But to th' effect. It happed on a day,
(To tell it you as shortly as I may)
A worthy duk that highte Perithous,
That felaw was to this duk Theseus
Sin thiike day that they were children lite,
Was come to Athenes, his felaw to visite,
And for to play, as he was wont to do,
For in this world he loved no man so :
And he loved him as tendrely again.
So wel they loved, as olde bokes sain,
That than that on was ded, sothly to telle,
His felaw wente and sought him doun in helle :
But of that storie list me not to write.

Duk Perithous loved wel Arcite,
And had him knowe at Thebes yere by yere :
And finally at request and praiere
Of Perithous, withouten any raunson
Duk Theseus him let out of prison,
Frelly to gon, wher that him list over all,
In swiche a gise, as I you tellen shall.

This was the forword, plainly for to endite,
Betwixen Theseus and him Arcite :
That if so were, that Arcite were yfound
Ever in his lif, by day or night, o stound
In any contree of this Theseus,
And he were caught, it was accorded thus,
That with a swerd he shulde lese his hed ;
Ther was non other remedie ne rede.
But taketh his leve, and homeward he him spedde ;
Let him beware, his nekke lieth to wedde.

How gret a sorwe suffereth now Arcite !
The deth he feleth thurgh his herte smite ;
He wepeth, wailleth, crieth pitously ;
To sleen himself he waiteth prively.
He said ; Alas the day that I was borne !
Now is my prison worse than beforne :
Now is me shape eternally to dwelle
Not only in purgatorie, but in helle.
Alas ! that ever I knew Perithous.
For elles had I dwelt with Theseus
Yfetered in his prison evermo.
Than had I ben in blisse, and not in wo.
Only the sight of hire, whom that I serve,
Though that I never hire grace may deserve,
Wold have sufficed right ynough for me.

O dere cosin Palamon, quod he,
Thin is the victorie of this aventure.
Ful blisful in prison maigest thou endure :
In prison ! certes nay, but in paradise.
Wel hath fortune yturned thee the dise,
That hast the sight of hire, and I th' absence :
For possible is, sin thou hast hire presence,
And art a knight, a worthy and an able,
That by som cas, sin fortune is changeable,

Thou maigest to thy desir som time atteine.
But I that am exiled, and barreine
Of alle grace, and in so gret despair,
That ther n'is erthe, water, fire, ne aire,
Ne creature, that of hem maked is,
That may me hele, or don comfort in this,
Wel ought I sterve in wanhope and distresse.
Farewel my lif, my lust, and my gladnesse.

Alas, why plainen men so in communo
Of purveyance of God, or of fortune,
That yeveth hem ful oft in many a gise
Wel better than they can hemself devise !
Som man desirith for to have richesse,
That cause is of his murdre or gret siknesse.
And som man wold out of his prison fayn,
That in his house is of his meinie slain.
Infinite harmes ben in this matere.
We wote not what thing that we praien here.
We faren as he that dronke is as a mous.
A drunken man wot wel he hath an hous,
But he ne wot which is the right way thider,
And to a drunken man the way is alider.
And certes in this world so faren we.

We seken fast after felicitye,
But we go wrong ful often trewely.
Thus we may sayen alle, and namely I,
That wende, and had a gret opinion,
That if I might escapen fro prison
Than had I ben in joye and parfite hele,
Ther now I am exiled fro my wele.
Sin that I may not seen you, Emelis,
I n'am but ded ; ther n'is no remedie.

Upon that other side Palamon,
Whan that he wist Arcite was agon,
Swiche sorwe he maketh, that the grete tour
Resounded of his yelling and clamour.
The pure fetters on his shinnes grete
Were of his bitter salte teres wele.

Alas ! quod he, Arcite cosin min,
Of all our strif, God wot, the frute is thin.
Thou walkest now in Thebes at thy large,
And of my wo thou yvest litel charge.
Thou maist, sith thou hast wisdom and manhede,
Assemblen all the folk of our kinrede,
And make a werre so sharpe on this contree,
That by som aventure, or som trettee,
Thou maist have hire to lady and to wif,
For whom that I must nedes lese my lif.
For as by way of possibilitee,
Sith thou art at thy large of prison free,
And art a lord, gret is thin advantage,
More than is min, that sterve here in a cage.
For I may wepe and waille, while that I live,
With all the wo that prison may me yeve,
And eke with peine that love me yeveth also,
That doubleth all my tourment and my wo.

Therwith the fire of jalousie up sterte
Within his brest, and hent him by the herte
So woody, that he like was to behold
The box-tree, or the ashen ded and cold.
Than said he ; O cruel goddess, that governe
This world with binding of your word eterne,
And writen in the table of athamant
Your parlement and your eterne grant,
What is mankind more unto you yhold
Than is the shepe, that rouketh in the fold !
For slain is man, right as another beest,
And dwelleth eke in prison, and arrest,
And hath siknesse, and gret adversite,
And oftentimes gilteles parde.

governance is in this prescience,
 eles turmenteth innocence ?
 encreseth this all my penance,
 n is bounden to his observance
 des sake to leten of his will,
 a beest may all his lust fulfill.
 in a beest is ded, he hath no peine ;
 after his deth mote wepe and pleine,
 in this world he have care and wo :
 en doute it maye stonden so.
 nswer of this lete I to divines,
 I wote, that in this world gret pine is.
 see a serpent or a thefe,
 ny a trewe man hath do meschefe,
 is large, and wher him lust may turn.
 oste ben in prison thurgh Saturn,
 thurgh Juno, jalous and eke wood,
 h wel neye destrued all the blood
 es, with his waste walles wide.
 us sleeth me on that other side
 usie, and fere of him Arcite.
 wol I stent of Palamon a lite,
 n him in his prison still dwelle,
 Arcite forth I wol you telle.
 ommer passeth, and the nightes long
 n double wise the peines strong
 the lover, and of the prisoner.
 hich hath the wofuller mistere.
 rtly for to say, this Palamon
 elly is damned to prison,
 es and in fetters to ben ded ;
 cite is exiled on his hed
 rmore as out of that contree,
 r more he shal his lady see.
 overs axe I now this question,
 th the werse, Arcite or Palamon ?
 may so his lady day by day,
 rison moste he dwellen alway.
 er wher him lust may ride or go,
 his lady shal he never mo.
 neth as you liste, ye that can,
 ol tell you forth as I began.
 that Arcite to Thebes comen was,
 a day he swelt and said alas,
 his lady shal he never mo.
 rtly to concluden all his wo,
 el sorwe hadde never creature,
 or shal be, while the world may dure.
 e, his mete, his drinke is him byraft,
 e he wex, and drie as is a shaft.
 a holwe, and grisly to behold,
 e falwe, and pale as ashen cold,
 itary he was, and ever alone,
 iling all the night, making his mone.
 e herde song or instrument,
 old he wepe, he mighte not be stent.
 were his spirites, and so low,
 nged so, that no man coude know
 he ne his vois, though men it herd.
 his gere, for all the world he ferd
 only like the lovers maladie
 s, but rather ylike manie,
 red of humours melancolike,
 his hed in his celle fantastike.
 rtly turned was all up so doun
 bit and eke dispositioun
 , this woful lover, dan Arcite.
 huld I all day of his wo endite ?
 he endured had a yere or two
 el torment, and this peine and wo,

At Thebes, in his contree, as I said,
 Upon a night in slepe as he him laid,
 ifim thought how that the winged god Mercury
 Beforne him stood, and bad him to be mery.
 Ifis slepy yerde in hond he bare upright ;
 An hat he wered upon his heres bright.
 Arraied was this god (as he toke kepe)
 As he was whan that Argus toke his slepe ;
 And said him thus : To Athenes shalt thou wen'de
 Ther is thee shapen of thy wo an ende.

And with that word Arcite awoke and stert.
 Now trewely how sore that ever me smert,
 Quod he, to Athenes right now wol I fare.
 Ne for no drede of deth shal I not spare
 To so my lady, that I love and serve ;
 In hire presence I rekke not to sterve.
 And with that word he caught a gret mirrour,
 And saw that changed was all his colour,
 And saw his visage all in another kind.
 And right anon it ran him in his mind,
 That sith his face was so disfigured
 Of maladie the which he had endured,
 He mighte wel, if that he bare him lowe,
 Live in Athenes evermore unknowe,
 And sen his lady wel nigh day by day.
 And right anon he changed his aray,
 And clad him as a poure labourer.
 And all alone, save only a squier,
 That knew his privitee and all his cas,
 Which was disguised pourely as he was,
 To Athenes is he gon the nexte way.
 And to the court he went upon a day,
 And at the gate he proffered his service,
 To drugge and draw, what so men wold devise.
 And shortly of this matere for to sayn,
 He fell in office with a chamberlain,
 The which that dwelling was with Emelie.
 For he was wise, and coude sone espie
 Of every servant, which that served hire.
 Wel coude he hoven wood, and water bere,
 For he was yonge and mighty for the nones,
 And therto he was strong and big of bones
 To don that any wight can him devise.

A yere or two he was in this service,
 Page of the chambre of Emelie the bright ;
 And Philostrate he sayde that he hight.
 But half so wel beloved a man as he,
 Ne was ther never in court of his degre.
 He was so gentil of condition,
 That thurghout all the court was his renoun.
 They sayden that it were a charite
 That Theseus wold enhaunsen his degre,
 And putten him in worshipful service,
 Ther as he might his vertues exercise.
 And thus within a while his name is spronge
 Both of his dedes, and of his good tonge,
 That Theseus hath taken him of ner
 That of his chambre he made him a squier,
 And gave him gold to mainteine his degre ;
 And eke men brought him out of his contre
 Fro yere to yere ful prively his rent.
 But honestly and sleighly he it spent,
 That no man wondred how that he it hadde.
 And thre yere in this wise his lif he ladde,
 And bare him so in pees an eke in werre,
 Ther n'as no man that Theseus hath derre.
 And in this blisse let I now Arcite,
 And speke I wol of Palamon a lite.

In derkenesse and horrible and strong prison
 This seven yere hath sitten Palamon,

Forpined, what for love and for distresse.
Who feleth double sorwe and hevynesse
But Palamon ? that love distraineth so,
That wood out of his wit he goth for wo,
And eke therto he is a prisoner
Perpetuell, not only for a yere.

Who coude rime in English properly
His martirdom ? forsoth it am not I,
Therefore I passe as lightly as I may.
It fell that in the seventh yere in May
The thridde night, (as olde boke sayn,
That all this storie tellen more plain)
Were it by aventure or destinee,
(As, whan a thing is shapen, it shal be),
That sone after the midnight, Palamon
By helping of a frend brake his prison,
And fleeth the cite faste as he may go,
For he had yeven drinke his gayler so
Of a clarre, made of a certain wine,
With Narcotikes and Opie of Thebes fine,
That all the night though that men wold him shake,
The gailer slept, he mighte not awake.
And thus he fleeth as faste as ever he may.

The night was short, and faste by the day,
That nedes cost he moste himselven hide.
And to a grove faste ther beside
With dredful foot than stalketh Palamon.
For shortly this was his opinion,
That in that grove he wold him hide all day,
And in the night than wold he take his way
To Thebes ward, his frendes for to preie
On Theseus to helpen him werreie.
And shortly, eyther he wold lese his lif,
Or winnen Emelie unto his wif.
This is the effect, and his entente plein.

Now wol I turnen to Arcite agein,
That litel wist how neighe was his care,
Til that fortune had brought him in the snare.
The besy lark, the messenger of day,
Salewith in hire song the morwe gray ;
And fry Phebus riseth up so bright,
That all the orient laugheth of the sight,
And with his stremes drieth in the greves
The silver drops, hanging on the leves,
And Arcite, that is in the court real
With Theseus the squier principal,
Is risen, and loketh on the mery day.
And for to don his observance to May,
Remembring on the point of his desire,
He on his courser, sterting as the fire,
Is ridden to the felde him to pley,
Out of the court, were it a mile or twey.
And to the grove of which that I you told,
By aventure his way he gan to hold,
To maken him a gerlond of the greves,
Were it of woodbind er of hauthorn leves,
And loud he song agen the sonne shene.

O Maye, with all thy floures and thy grene,
Right welcome be thou faire freshe May,
I hope that I some grene here gotten may.
And from his courser, with a lusty herte
Into the grove ful hastily he sterte,
And in a path he romed up and down,
Ther as by aventure this Palamon
Was in a bush, that no man might him se,
For sore afered of his deth was he.
Nothing ne knew he that it was Arcite.
God wot he wold have trowed it ful lite.
But soth is said, gon sithen are many yeres,
That feld hath eyen, and the wood hath eres.

It is ful faire a man to bere him even,
For al day meten men at unset steven.
Ful litel wote Arcite of his felaw,
That was so neighe to herken of his saw,
For in the bush he sitteth now ful still.

Whan that Arcite had romed all his fill,
And songen all the roundel lustily,
Into a studie he fell sodenly,
As don these lovers in hir queinte geres,
Now in the crop, and now down in the breres,
Now up, now down, as boket in a well.
Right as the Friday, sothly for to tell,
Now shineth it, and now it raineth fast,
Right so can gery Venus overcast
The hertes of hire folk, right as hire day
Is gerfull, right so changeth she aray.
Selde is the Friday all the weke ylike.

Whan Arcite had ysonge, he gan to sike,
And set him down withouten any more :
Alas ! (quod he) the day that I was bore !
How longe, Juno, thurgh thy crueltee
Wilt thou werreien Thebes the citee !
Alas ! ybrought is to confusion
The blood real of Cadme and Amphion :
Of Cadmus, which that was the firste man,
That Thebes built, or firste the toun began,
And of the citee firste was crowned king.
Of his linage am I, and his ofspring
By veray line, as of the stok real :
And now I am so caitif and so thral,
That he that is my mortal enemy,
I serve him as his squier pourely.
And yet doth Juno me wel more shame,
For I dare not beknowe min owen name,
But ther as I was wont to highte Arcite,
Now highte I Philostrate, not worth a mite.
Alas ! thou fell Mars, alas ! thou Juno,
Thus hath your ire our linage all fordo,
Save only me, and wretched Palamon,
That Theseus martireth in prison.
And over all this, to slen me utterly,
Love hath his fry dart so breningly
Ystiked thurgh my trewe careful hert,
That shapen was my deth erst than my shert.
Ye slen me with your eyen, Emelie ;
Ye ben the cause wherfore that I die.
Of all the remenant of min other care
Ne set I not the mountance of a tare,
So that I coude don ought to your plesance.

And with that word he fell down in a trance
A longe time ; and afterward up sterte
This Palamon, that thought thurghout his herte
He felt a colde sward sodenly glide :
For ire he quoke, no lenger wolde he hide.
And whan that he had herd Arcites tale,
As he were wood, with face ded and pale,
He sterte him up out of the bushes thikke,
And sayde : False Arcite, false traitour wike,
Now art thou hent, that lovest my lady so,
For whom that I have all this peine and wo,
And art my blood, and to my conseil sworn,
As I ful oft have told thee herebeforn,
And hast bejaped here duk Theseus,
And falsely changed hast thy name thus ;
I wol be ded, or elles thou shalt die.
Thou shalt not love my lady Emelie,
But I wol love hire only and no mo.
For I am Palamon thy mortal fo.
And though that I no wepen have in this place,
But out of prison am astert by grace,

ght, that eyther thou shalt die,
 shalt nat loven Emelie.
 thou wol't, for thou shalt not asterte.
 te tho, with ful disputous herte,
 m knew, and had his tale herd,
 leon, pulled out a swerd,
 hus; By God that sitteth above,
 t thou art sike, and wood for love,
 t thou no wepen hast in this place,
 st never out of this grove pace,
 e shuldest dien of min hond.
 the suretee and the bond,
 thou saist that I have made to thee.
 y fool, thinke wel that love is free,
 ove hire maugre all thy might.
 u art a worthy gentil knight,
 to darraine hire by bataille, x
 ny trouth, to-morwe I will not faille,
 veting of any other wight,
 wol be founden as a knight,
 harneis right ynough for thee;
 he beste, and leve the werste for me.
 nd drinke this night wol I bring
 thee, and clothes for thy bedding.
 that thou my lady win,
 in this wode, ther I am in,
 wel have thy lady as for me.
 mon answerd, I grant it thee.
 ey ben departed til a-morwe,
 of hem hath laid his faith to borwe.
 out of alle charitee!
 it wol't no felaw have with thee! +
 sayde, that love ne lordship
 thanks, have no felawship.
 that Arcite and Palamon.
 ridden anon unto the toun,
 morwe, or it were day light,
 two harneis hath he dight,
 nt and mete to darreine x
 in the feld betwix hem tweine.
 hors, alone as he was borne,
 all this harneis him beforne;
 grove, at time and place ysette,
 and this Palamon ben mette.
 gan the colour of hir face.
 hunter in the regne of Trace +
 th at a gappe with a spere,
 d is the lion or the bere,
 him come rushing in the greves,
 bothe the boughes and the leves,
 h, here cometh my mortal enemy,
 faille, he must be ded or I;
 I mote slen him at the gappe;
 slen me, if that me mishappe:
 ey, in changing of hir hewe,
 ther of hem ever knewe.
 o good day, ne no saluing.
 ithouten wordes rehersing,
 sem halpe to armen other,
 as he were his owen brother.
 at, with sharpe speres strong
 en eche at other wonder long.
 est vnen, that this Palamon
 ng were as a wood leon,
 el tigre was Arcite:
 res gan they togeder smite,
 white as fome for ire wood.
 cle foughte they in hir blood,
 wise I let hem fighting dwelle,
 wol of Theseus you telle.

The destinee, ministre general,
 That executeth in the world over al
 The purveiance, that God hath sen beforne;
 So strong it is, that though the world had sworne
 The contrary of a thing by ya or nay,
 Yet sometime it shall fallen on a day
 That falleth nat este in a thousand yere.
 For certainly our appetites here,
 Be it of werre, or pees, or hate, or love,
 All is this ruled by the sight above.
 This mene I now by mighty Theseus,
 That for to huntun is so desirous,
 And namely at the grete hart in May,
 That in his bed ther daweth him no day,
 That he n'is clad, and redy for to ride
 With hunte and horne, and houndes him beside.
 For in his hunting hath he swiche delite,
 That it is all his joye and appetite
 To ben himself the grete hartes bane,
 For after Mars he serveth now Diane.

Clerc was the day, as I have told or this,
 And Theseus, with alle joye and blis,
 With his Ipolita, the fayre quene,
 And Emelie, yclothed all in grene,
 On hunting ben they ridden really.
 And to the grove, that stood ther faste by,
 In which ther was an hart as men him told,
 Duk Theseus the streite way hath hold.
 And to the launde he rideth him ful right,
 Ther was the hart ywont to have his flight,
 And over a brooke, and so forth on his wey.
 This duk wol have a cours at him or twey
 With houndes, swiche as him lust to commaunde.
 And when this duk was comen to the launde,
 Under the sonne he loked, and anon
 He was ware of Arcite and Palamon,
 That foughten breme, as it were bolles two.
 The brighto swerdes wenten to and fro
 So hidously, that with the leste stroke
 It semed that it wolde felle an oke.
 But what they weren, nothing he no wote.
 This duk his courser with his sporres smote,
 And at a stert he was betwix hom two,
 And pulled out a swerd and cried, ho!
 No more, up peine of lesing of your hed.
 By mighty Mars, he shal anon be ded,
 That smiteth any stroke, that I may sen.
 But telleth me what mistere men ye ben,
 That ben so hardy for to fighten here
 Withouten any juge other officers,
 As though it were in listes really.

This Palamon answered hastily,
 And saide: Sire, what nedeth wordes mo!
 We have the deth deserved bothe two.
 Two woful wretches ben we, two caitives,
 That ben accombred of our owen lives,
 And as thou art a rightful lord and juge,
 No yeve us neyther mercie ne refuge.
 And sle me first, for seinte charitee.
 But sle my felaw eke as wel as me.
 Or sle him first; for, though thou know it lite
 This is thy mortal fo, this is Arcite,
 That fro thy lond is banished on his hed,
 For which he hath deserved to be ded.
 For this is he that came unto thy gate
 And sayde, that he highte Philostrate.
 Thus hath he japed thee ful many a yere,
 And thou hast maiked him thy chief squire,
 And this is he, that loveth Emelie.

For sith the day is come that I shal die

I make plainly my confession,
That I am thilke woful Palamon,
That hath thy prison broken wilfully.
I am thy mortal fo, and it am I
That loveth so hot Emelie the bright,
That I wold dien present in hire sight.
Therefore I axe deth and my jewise.
But ale my felaw in the same wise,
For both we have deserved to be slain.

This worthy duk answerd anon again,
And sayd, This is a short conclusion,
Your owen mouth, by your confession
Hath damned you, and I wol it recorde.
It nedeth not to peine you with the corde.
Ye shul be ded by mighty Mars the rede.

The quene anon for veray womanhede
Gan for to wepe, and so did Emelie,
And all the ladies in the compaignie.
Gret pite was it, as it thought hem alle,
That ever swiche a chance shulde befallie.
For gentil men they were of gret estat,
And nothing but for love was this debat.
And sawe hir bloody woundes wide and sore ;
And alle criden bothe lease and more,
Have mercie, Lord, upon us wimmen alle.
And on hir bare knees adoun they falle,
And wold have kist his feet ther as he stood,
Till at the last, aslaked was his mood ;
(For pitee renneth sone in gentil herte)
And though he first for ire quoke and sterite,
He hath considered shortly in a clause
The trespass of hem both, and eke the cause :
And although that his ire hir gilt accused,
Yet in his reson he hem both excused ;
As thus ; he thoughte wel that every man
Wol helpe himself in love if that he can,
And eke deliver himself out of prison.
And eke his herte had compassion
Of wimmen, for they wepten ever in on :
And in his gentil herte he thoughte anon,
And soft unto himself he sayed : fie
Upon a lord that wol have no mercie,
But be a leon both in word and dede,
To hem that ben in repentance and drede,
As wel as to a proud dispitous man,
That wol mainteinen that he first began.
That lord hath litel of discretion,
That in swiche cas can no division :
But weigheth pride and humblesse after on.
And shortly, whan his ire is thus agon,
He gan to loken up with eyen light,
And spake these same wordes all on hight.

The god of love, a *benedicite*,
How mighty and how grete a lord is he !
Again his might ther gainen non obstacles,
He may be cleped a God for his miracles.
For he can maken at his owen gise
Of everich herte, as that him list devise.

Lo here this Arcite, and this Palamon,
That quietly weren out of my prison,
And might have lived in Thebes really,
And weten I am hir mortal enemy,
And that hir deth lith in my might also,
And yet hath love, maugre hir eyen two,
Ybrought hem hither bothe for to die.
Now loketh, is not this an heigh folie ?
Who maye ben a fool, but if he love ?
Behold for Goddes sake that sitteth above,
Se how they blede ! be they not wel araied ?
Thus hath hir lord, the god of love, hem paid

Hir wages, and hir fees for hir service.
And yet they wenen for to be ful wise,
That serven love, for ought that may befallie.
And yet is this the beste game of alle,
That she, for whom they have this jolite,
Con hem therfore as mochel thank as me.
She wot no more of alle this hote fare
By God, than wot a cuckow or an hare.
But all mote ben assaied hote or cold ;
A man mote ben a fool othere yonge or old ;
I wot it by myself ful yore agon :
For in my time a servant was I on.
And therefore sith I know of loves peine,
And wot how sore it can a man destreine,
As he that oft hath ben caught in his las,
I you foryeve all holly this trespass,
At request of the quene that kneleth here,
And eke of Emelie, my suster dere.
And ye shul bothe anon unto me sware,
That never mo ye shul my contree dere,
Ne maken werre upon me night ne day,
But ben my frendes in alle that ye may.
I you foryeve this trespass every del.
And they him sware his axing fayr and wel,
And him of lordship and of mercie praid,
And he hem granted grace, and thus he said :

To speke of real linage and richesse,
Though that she were a quene or a princeesse,
Eche of you bothe is worthy douteles
To wedden whan time is, but natheles
I speke as for my suster Emelie,
For whom ye have this strif and jalousie,
Ye wot yourself, she may not wedden two
At ones, though ye fighten evermo :
But on of you, al be him loth or lefe,
He mot gon pipen in an ivy lefe :
This is to say, she may not have you bothe,
Al be ye never so jalous, ne so wrothe.
And forthy I you put in this degree,
That eche of you shall have his destinee,
As him is shape, and herkneith in what wise ;
Lo here your ende of that I shal devise.

My will is this for plat conclusion
Withouten any replication,
If that you liketh, take it for the beste,
That everich of you shal gon wher him leste
Freely withouten raunson or dangere ;
And this day fifty wekes, ferre ne nere,
Everich of you shal bring an hundred knightes,
Armed for listes up at alle rightes
Alle redy to darrein hire by bataille.
And this behete I you withouten faille
Upon my trouth, and as I am a knight,
That whether of you bothe hath that might,
This is to sayn, that whether he or thou
May with his hundred, as I spake of now,
Sle his contrary, or out of listes drive,
Him shall I yeven Emelie to wive,
To whom that fortune yeveth so fayr a grace.

The listes shal I maken in this place,
And God so wisly on my soule rewe,
As I shal even juge ben, and trewe.
Ye shal non othere ende with me maken
That on of you ne shal be ded or taken.
And if you thinketh this is wel ysaid,
Saith your avis, and holdeth you apaid.
This is your ende, and your conclusion.

Who loketh lightly now but Palamon ?
Who springeth up for joye but Arcite ?
Who coud it tell, or who coud it endite,

is maked in the place
 us hath don so fayre a grace
 knees went every manere wight,
 him with all hir hertes might,
 these Thebanes often sith,
 with good hope and with herte blith
 hir leve, and homeward gan they ride
 with his olde walles wide.
 en wolde deme it negligence,
 to tellen the dispence
 that goth so besily
 the listes really,
 a noble theatre as it was,
 yn, in all this world ther n'as.
 a mile was aboute,
 one, and diked all withoute.
 he shape, in manere of a compas
 es, the hight of sixty pas,
 man was set on o degree
 his felaw for to see.
 stood a gate of marbel white,
 ght swiche another in th' opposite.
 to concluden, swiche a place
 n erthe, in so litel a space,
 and ther n'as no craftes man,
 rie, or arismetrike can,
 r, no kerver of images,
 s ne yaf him mete and wages
 for to maken and devise.
 don his rite and sacrifice,
 hath upon the gate above,
 f Venus goddess of love,
 a auter and an oratorie ;
 rd in the miunde and in memorie
 maked hath right swiche another,
 rgely of gold a fother. *smaller*
 urd, in a touret on the wall,
 white and red corall
 riche for to see,
 f Diane of chastitee,
 us don wrought in noble wise.
 d I forgetten to devise
 erving, and the portreitures,
 he contenance of the figures
 in these oratories three.
 e temple of Venus maist thou see
 the wall, ful pitous to beholde,
 slepes, and the sikes colde,
 eres, and the waimentinges,
 kes of the desiringes,
 ervants in this lif enduren ;
 hat hir covenants assuren.
 l hope, desire, foolhardinesse,
 youthe, baudrie and richesse,
 l force, lesinges and flaterie,
 sinesse, and jalousie,
 of yelwe goldes a gerlond,
 a cuckow sitting or hire hond,
 uments, and caroles and dances,
 ay, and all the circumstances
 ch that I reken and reken shall,
 ren painted on the wall,
 n I can make of mention.
 ll the mount of Citheron,
 hath hire principal dwelling,
 on the wall in purtreying,
 gardin, and the lustinesse.
 forgetten the porter idelnesse,
 s the fayre of yore agon,
 olie of king Salomon,

Ne yet the grete strengthe of Hercules,
 Th' enchantment of Medea and Circes,
 Ne of Turnus the hardy fiers corage,
 The riche Cresus caitif in servage.
 Thus may ye seen, that wisdom ne richesse,
 Beaute ne sleighte, strengthe ne hardinesse,
 Ne may with Venus holden champartie,
 For as hire liste the world may she gie.
 Lo, all these folk so caught were in hire las
 Til they for wo ful often said alas.
 Sufficeth here ensamples on or two,
 And yet I coude reken a thousand mo.
 The statue of Venus glorious for to see
 Was naked fleting in the large see,
 And fro the navel down all covered was
 With wawes grene, and bright as any glas.
 A citole in hire right hand hadde she,
 And on hire hed, ful semely for to see,
 A rose gerlond fressh, and wel smelling,
 Above hire hed hire doves fleckering.
 Before hire stood hire sone Cupido,
 Upon his shoulders winges had he two ;
 And blind he was, as it is often sene ;
 A bow he bare and arwes bright and kene.

Why shulde I not as wel eke tell you all
 The purtreiture, that was upon the wall
 Within the temple of mighty Mars the rede !
 All painted was the wall in length and brede
 Like to the estres of the grisly place, *the temple of Mars*
 That highte the gret temple of Mars in Trace, *of a build*
 In thilke colde and frosty region,
 Ther as Mars hath his sovereigne mansion.

First on the wall was painted a forest,
 In which ther wonneth neyther man ne best.
 With knotty knarry barrein trees old
 Of stubbes sharpe and hidous to behold ;
 In which ther ran a romble and a swough,
 As though a storme shuld bresten every bough
 And downward from an hill under a bent,
 Ther stood the temple of Mars armipotent,
 Wrought all of burned stele, of which th' entree
 Was longe and streite, and gastly for to see.
 And therout came a rage and swiche a vise,
 That it made all the gates for to rise.
 The northern light in at the dore shone,
 For window on the wall ne was ther none,
 Thurgh which men mighten any light discerne.
 The dore was all of athamant eterne,
 Yclenched overthwart and endelong
 With yren tough, and for to make it strong,
 Every piler the temple to sustene
 Was tonne-gret, of yren bright and shene.

Ther saw I first the derke imagining
 Of felonie, and alle the compassing ;
 The cruel ire, red as any glede,
 The pikepurse, and eke the pale drede ;
 The smiler with the knif under the cloke,
 The shepen brenning with the blake smoke ;
 The treson of the mording in the bedde,
 The open werre, with woundes all bebledde ;
 Conteke with bloody knif, and sharp manace.
 All full of chirking was that sory place.
 The sleer of himself yet saw I there,
 His herte-blood hath bathed all his here :
 The naile ydriven in the shode on hight,
 The colde deth, with mouth gaping upright.
 Amiddes of the temple sate mischance,
 With discomfort and sory contenance.
 Yet saw I woodnesse laughing in his rage,
 Armed complaint, outhees, and fiers outrage ;

The carraine in the bush, with throte yecorven,
 A thousānd slain, and not of qualme ystorven;
 The tirant, with the prey by force yraft;
 The toun destroyed, ther was nothing laft.
 Yet saw I brent the shippes hoppesteres,
 The hunte ystrangled with the wilde beres:
 The sow freting the child right in the cradel;
 The coke yscalld, for all his long ladel.
 Nought was foryete by th' infortune of Marte;
 The carter overridden with his carte;
 Under the wheel ful low he lay adoun.

Ther were also of Martes divisioun,
 Th' armerer, and the bowyer, and the smith,
 That forgeth sharpe swerdes on his stith.
 And all above depeinted in a tour
 Saw I conquest, sitting in gret honour,
 With thilke sharpe sward over his hed
 Yhanging by a subtil twined thred.
 Depeinted was the slaughter of Julius,
 Of gret Nero, and of Antonius:
 All be that thilke time they were unborne,
 Yet was hir deth depeinted therbefore,
 By manacing of Mars, right by figure,
 So was it shewed in that purtreiture
 As is depeinted in the cercles above,
 Who shal be alaine or elles ded for love.
 Sufficeth on ensample in stories olde,
 I may not reken hem alle, though I wolde.

The statue of Mars upon a carte stood
 Armed, and loket grim as he were wood,
 And over his hed ther shinen two figures
 Of sterres, that ben cleped in scriptures,
 That on Puella, that other Rubens.
 This god of armes was araied thus:
 A wolf ther stood before him at his fete
 With eyen red, and of a man he ete:
 With subtil pensil painted was this storie,
 In redouting of Mars and of his glorie.

Now to the temple of Diane the chaste
 As shortly as I can I wol me haste,
 To tellen you of the descripcioun,
 Depeinted by the walles up and doun,
 Of hunting and of shamefast chastitee.
 Ther saw I how woful Calistope,
 Whan that Diane agreved was with here,
 Was turned from a woman til a bere,
 And after was she made the lodesterre:
 Thus was it peinted, I can say no ferre;
 Hire sone is eke a sterre as men may see.
 Ther saw I Dane yturned til a tree,
 I mene not hire the goddesse Diane,
 But Peneus daughter, which that highte Dane.
 Ther saw I Atteon an hart ymaked,
 For vengeance that he saw Diane all naked:
 I saw how that his houndes have him caught,
 And freten him, for that they knew him naught.
 Yet peinted was a litel forthermore,
 How Athalante hunted the wilde bore,
 And Meleagre, and many another mo,
 For which Diane wroughte hem care and wo.
 Ther saw I many another wonder storie,
 The which me liste not drawn to memorie.

This goddesse on an hart ful heyte sete,
 With smale houndes all aboute hire fete,
 And underne the hire feet she hadde a mone,
 Wexing it was, and shulde wanen sone.
 In gaudy grene hire statue clothed was,
 With bow in hond, and arwes in a cas.
 Hire eyen caste she ful low adoun,
 Ther Pluto hath his derke regioun.

A woman travailing was hire before,
 But for hire childe so longe was unborne
 Ful pitously Lucina gan she call,
 And sayed; helpe, for thou mayst beste of all.
 Wel coude he peinten lifly that it wrought,
 With many a florein he the hewes bought.

Now ben these listes made, and Theseus
 That at his grete cost arraied thus
 The temples, and the theatre everidel,
 Whan it was don, him liked wonder wel.
 But stint I wol of Theseus a lite,
 And speke of Palamon and of Arcite.

The day approacheth of hir returning,
 That everich shuld an hundred knyghtes bring,
 The bataille to darreine, as I you told;
 And til Athenes, hir covenant for to hold,
 Hath everich of hem brought an hundred knyghtes
 Wel armed for the werre at alle rightes.
 And sikerly ther trowed many a man,
 That never, sithen that the world began,
 As for to speke of knighthood of hir hond,
 As fer as God hath maked see and lond,
 N'as, of so fewe, so noble a compaignie.
 For every wight that loved chevalrie,
 And wold, his thanks, han a passant name, *etc*
 Hath praied, that he might ben of that game,
 And wel was him, that therto chosen was.
 For if ther fell to-morwe swiche a cas,
 Ye knowen wel, that every lusty knight,
 That loveth *par amour*, and hath his might,
 Were it in Englelond, or elleswher,
 They wold, hir thanks, willen to be ther.
 To fight for a lady, a *benedicite*,
 It were a lusty sighte for to se.

And right so ferden they with Palamon.
 With him ther wenten knyghtes many on.
 Som wol ben armed in an habergeon,
 And in a brest plate, and in a gipon;
 And som wol have a pair of plates large;
 And som wol have a *Pruce* sheld, or a targe;
 Som wol ben armed on his legges wele,
 And have an axe, and som a mace of steele.
 Ther n'is no newe guise, that it n'as old.
 Armed they weren, as I have you told,
 Everich after his opinion.

Ther maist thou se coming with Palamon
 Licurge himself, the grete king of Trace:
 Blake was his berd, and manly was his face.
 The cercles of his eyen in his hed
 They gloweden betwixen yelwe and red,
 And like a griffon loket he about,
 With kemped heres on his browes stout;
 His limmes gret, his braunes hard and stronge,
 His shouldres brode, his armes round and longe.
 And as the guise was in his contree,
 Ful highe upon a char of gold stood he,
 With foure white bolles in the traie.
 Insteede of cote-armure on his harnais,
 With nayles yelwe, and bright as any gold,
 He hadde a beres skin, cole-blake for old.
 His longe here was kempt behind his bak,
 As any ravens fether it shone for blake.
 A wreth of gold arm-gret, of huge weight,
 Upon his hed sate ful of stones bright,
 Of fine rubins and of diamants.
 About his char ther wenten white alauns, *(2)*
 Twenty and mo, as gret as any stee,
 To huntun at the leon or the dere,
 And folwed him, with mosel fast ybound,
 Colored with gold, and torettes filed round.

An hundred lordes had he in his route
Armed full wel, with hertes sterne and stoute.

With Arcita, in stories as men find,
The gret Emetrius the king of Inde,
Upon a stede bay, trapped in stele,
Covered with cloth of gold diapred wele,
Came riding like the god of armes Mars.
His cote-armure was of a cloth of Tars,
Couched with perles, white, and round and grete.

His sadel was of brent gold new ybete;
A mantelet upon his shouldres hanging
Bret-ful of rubies red, as fire sparkling.
His crisepe here like ringes was yronne,
And that was yelwe, and glitered as the sonne.
His nose was ligh, his eyen bright citrin,
His lippes round, his colour was sanguin,
A fewe fraknes in his face yspreint,
Betwixen yelwe and blake somdel ymeint,
And as a leon he his loking caste.

Of five and twenty yere his age I caste.
His berd was wel begonnen for to spring;
His vois was as a trompe thundering.

Upon his hed he wered of laurer grene
A gerlond fresshe and lusty for to sene.
Upon his hond he bare for his deduit
Au egle tame, as any lily whit.

An hundred lordes had he with him there,
All armed save hir hedes in all hir gere,
Ful richely in alle manere thinges.

For trusteth wel, that erles, dukes, kinges
Were gathered in this noble compaignie,
For love, and for encrease of chevalrie.

About this king ther ran on every part
Ful many a tame leon and leopart.

And in this wise, these lordes all and some
Ben on the Sonday to the citee come
Abouten prime, and in the toun alight.

This Theseus, this duk, this worthy knight,
Whan he had brought hem into his citee,
And inned hem, everich at his degree,
He festeth hem, and doth so gret labour
To esen hem, and don hem all honour,
That yet men wenen that no mannes wit
Of non estat ne coud amenden it.

The ministralcie, the service at the feste,
The grete yeftes to the most and leste,
The riche array of Theseus paleis,

Ne who sate first ne last upon the deis,
What ladies fayrest ben or best dancing,
Or which of hem can carole best or sing,

Ne who most felingly speketh of love;
What haukes sitten on the perche above,
What houndes ligen on the floor adoun,

Of all this now make I no mentiou;
But of the effect; that thinketh me the beste;
Now cometh this point, and herkeneth if you leste.

The Sonday night, or day began to spring,
Whan Palamon the lark herde sing,

Although it n'ere not day by houres two,
Yet sang the lark, and Palamon right tho
With holy herte, and with an high corage

He rose, to wenden on his pilgrimage
Unto the blisful Citherea benigne,
I mene Venus, honourable and digne.

And in hire houre, he walketh forth a pas
Unto the listes, ther hire temple was,
And doun he kneleth, and with humble chere

And herte sore, he sayde as ye shul here.

Fayrest of fayre, o lady min Venus,
Daughter to Jove, and spouse of Vulcanus,

Thou glader of the mount of Citheron,
For thilke love thou haddest to Adon
Have pitee on my bitter teres smert,
And take myn humble praiere at thin herte.

Aias! I ne have no langage to tell
The effecte, ne the torment of min hell;
Min herte may min harmes not bewrey;
I am so confuse, that I cannot say.
But mercy, lady bright, that knowest wele
My thought, and seest what harmes that I fele,
Consider all this, and rue upon my sore,
As wisly as I shall for evermore,

Emforth my might, thy trewe servant be,
And holden werre alway with chastite:
That make I min avow, so ye me helpe.

I kepe nought of armes for to yelpe,
Ne axe I nat to-morwe to have victorie,
Ne renoun in this cas, ne vaine glorie

Of pris of armes, blowen up and doun,
But I wold have fully possessioun
Of Emelie, and die in hire servise;

Find thou the manere how, and in what wise.
I rekke not, but it may better be,
To have victorie of hem, or they of me,

So that I have my lady in min armes.
For though so be that Mars is god of armes,
Your vertue is so grete in heaven above,

That if you liste, I shal wel have my love.
Thy temple wol I worship evermo,
And on thin auter, wher I ride or go,

I wol don sacrifice, and fires bete.
And if ye wol not so, my lady swete,
Than pray I you, to-morwe with a spere

That Arcita me thurgh the herte bere.
Than rekke I not, whan I have lost my lif,
Though that Arcita win hire to his wif.

This is the effecte and ende of my praiere;
Yeve me my love, thou blisful lady dere.

Whan the orison was don of Palamon,
His sacrifice he did, and that anon,
Ful pitously, with alle circumstanes,

All tell I not as now his observances.
But at the last the statue of Venus shoke,
And made a signe, wherby that he toke,

That his praiere accepted was that day.
For though the signe shewed a delay,
Yet wist he wel that granted was his bone;

And with glad herte he went him home ful sone.
The thridde houre inequal that Palamon
Began to Venus temple for to gon,

Up rose the sonne, and up rose Emelie,
And to the temple of Diane gan hie.
Hire maydens, that she thider with hire ladde,

Ful redily with hem the fire they hadde,
Th'encense, the clothes, and the remenant all,
That to the sacrifice longen shall.

The hornes ful of mede, as was the gise,
Ther lakked nought to don hire sacrifice.
Smoking the temple, ful of clothes fayre,

This Emelie with herte debonaire
Hire body wesshe with water of a well.
But how she did hire rite I dare not tell;

But it be any thing in general;
And yet it were a game to heren all;
To him that meneth wel it n'ere no charge,

But it is good a man to ben at large.
Hire bright here kembred was, untressed all.
A coroune of a grene oke cerial

Upon hire hed was set ful fayre and mete.
Two fires on the auter gan she bete.

And did hire tninges, as men may behold
In Stace of Thebes, and theses bokes old.

Whan kindled was the fire, with pitous chere
Unto Diane she spake, as ye may here.

O chaste goddess of the wodes grene,
To whom both heven and erthe and see is sene,
Queene of the regne of Pluto, derke and lowe,
Goddess of maydens, that min herte hast knowe
Ful many a yere, and wost what I desire,
As kepe me fro thy vengeance and thin ire,
That Atteon aboute cruelly :
Chaste goddess, wel wotest thou that I
Desire to ben a mayden all my lif,
Ne never wol I be no love ne wif.
I am (thou wost) yet of thy compaignie,
A mayde, and love hunting and venerie,
And for to walken in the wodes wilde,
And not to ben a wif, and be with childe.
Nought wol I knowen compaignie of man.
Now helpe me, lady, sith ye may and can,
For tho three formes that thou hast in thee.
And Palamon, that hath swiche love to me,
And eke Arcite, that loveth me so sore,
This grace I prae the withouten more,
As sende love and pees betwix hem two :
And fro me torne away hir hertes so,
That all hir hote love, and hir desire,
And all hir besy torment, and hir fire
Be queinte, or torned in another place.
And if so be thou wolt not do me grace,
Or if my destinee be shapen so,
That I shall nedes have on of hem two,
As sende me him that most desireth me.

Behold, goddess of clepe chastite,
The bitter teres, that on my chekes fall.
Sin thou art mayde, and keper of us all,
My maydenhed thou kepe and wel conserve,
And while I live, a mayde I wol thee serve.

The fires brenne upon the auter clere,
While Emelie was thus in hire priere :
But sodenly she saw a sighte queinte.
For right anon on of the fires queinte,
And quiked again, and after that anon
That other fire was queinte, and all agon :
And as it queinte, it made a whisteling,
As don these brondes wet in hir brenning.
And at the brondes ende outran anon
As it were bloody dropes many on :
For which so sore agast was Emelie,
That she was wel neigh mad, and gan to crie,
For she ne wiste what it signified ;
But only for the fere thus she cried,
And wept, that it was pitee for to here.

And therewithall Diane gan appere
With bowe in hond, right as an hunteresse
And sayde ; doughter, stint thin heviness.
Among the goddesses highe it is affirmed,
And by eterne word written and confirmed,
Thou shalt be wedded unto on of tho,
That han for thee so mochel care and wo :
But unto which of hem I may not tell.
Farewel, for here I may no longer dwell.
The fires which that on min auter brenne,
Shal thee declaren er that thou go henne,
Thin aventure of love, as in this cas.

And with that word, the arwes in the cas
Of the goddess clatteren fast and ring,
And forth she went, and made a vanishing,
For which this Emelie astonied was,
And sayde ; what amounteth this, alas !

I putte me in thy protection,
Diane, and in thy disposition.

And home she goth anon the nexte way.
This is the effecte, ther n'is no more to say.

The nexte houre of Mars folwing this
Arcite unto the temple walked is
Of fierce Mars, to don his sacrifice
With all the rites of his payen wise.
With pitous herte and high devotion,
Right thus to Mars he sayde his orison.

O stronge god, that in the regnes cold
Of Trace honoured art, and lord yhold,
And hast in every regne and every lond
Of armes all the bridel in thin hond,
And hem fortunest as thee list devise,
Accept of me my pitous sacrifice.
If so be that my youthe may deserve,
And that my might be worthy for to serve
Thy godhed, that I may ben on of thine,
Than prae I thee to rewe upon my pine,
For thilke peine, and thilke hote fire,
In which thou whilom brendest for desire
Whanne that thou usedest the beantee
Of fayre yonge Venus, freshe and free,
And haddest hire in armes at thy wille :
Although thee ones on a time misfille,
Whan Vulcanus had caught thee in his las,
And fond the ligging by his wif, alas !
For thilke sorwe that was tho in thin herte,
Have reuthe as wel upon my peines smerte.

I am yonge and unkonning, as thou wost,
And, as I trow, with love offended most,
That ever was ony lives creature :
For she, that doth me all this wo endure,
Ne recceeth never, whether I sinke or flete.
And wel I wot, or she me mercy hete,
I moste with strengthe win hire in the place :
And wel I wot, withouten helpe or grace
Of thee, ne may my strengthe not availle :
Than helpe me, lord, to-morwe in my bataille,
For thilke fire that whilom brenned thee,
As wel as that this fire now brenneth me ;
And do, that I to-morwe may han victorie.
Min be the travaille, and thin be the glorie.
Thy souveraine temple wol I most honouren
Of ony place, and alway most labouren
In thy plesance and in thy craftes strong.
And in thy temple I wol my baner hong,
And all the armes of my compaignie,
And evermore, until that day I die,
Eterne fire I wol beforen thee finde,
And eke to this avow I wol me binde.
My berd, my here that hangeth long adoun,
That never yet felt non offension
Of rasour ne of shere, I wol thee yewe,
And ben thy trewe servant while I live.
Now, lord, have reuthe upon my sorwes sure,
Yewe me the victorie, I axe thee no more.

The praeir stint of Arcite the stronge,
The ringes on the temple dore that hong,
And eke the dores clattereden ful faste,
Of which Arcite somewhat him agaste.
The fires brent upon the auter bright,
That it gan all the temple for to light ;
A swete smell anon the ground up yaf,
And Arcite anon his hond up haf,
And more encense into the fire he cast,
With other rites mo, and at the last
The statue of Mars began his hauberke ring ;
And with that soun he herd a murmuring

d dim, that sayde thus, Victorie.
 he yaf to Mars honour and glorie.
 s with joye, and hope wel to fare,
 a unto his inne is fare,
 foul is of the brighte sonne. *a bird*
 it anon swiche strif ther is begonne
 granting, in the heven above,
 Venus the goddesse of love,
 the sterne god armipotent,
 er was besy it to stent :
 paie Saturnus the colde,
 so many of adventures olde,
 olde experience and art,
 sone hath plesed every part.
 sayd, elde hath gret advantage,
 bothe wisdom and usage :
 he old out-renne, but not out-rede. *(1)*
 anon, to stenten strif and drede,
 it it is again his kind, *nature*
 strif he gan a remedy find.
 daughter Venus, quod Saturne,
 that hath so wide for to turne,
 power than wot any man.
 drenching in the see so wan,
 prison in the derke cote,
 strangel and hanging by the throte,
 ire, and the cherles rebelling,
 ng, and the prive empoysoning.
 uce and pleine correction,
 ell in the signe of the leon.
 ruine of the highe halles,
 of the toures and of the walles
 inour, or the carpenter :
 pson in shaking the piler.
 so the maladies colde,
 tresons, and the castes olde :
 as the fader of pestilence.
 no more, I shal do diligence,
 ion, that is thin owen knight,
 is lady, as thou hast him hight.
 s shal help his knight yet nathelies.
 ou thier mot somtime be pees :
 ot of o complexion,
 h all day swiche division.
 yel, redy at thy will ;
 no more, I shal thy lust fulfill.
 I stenten of the goddess above,
 id of Venus goddesse of love,
 you as plainly as I can
 fect, for which that I began.
 the feste in Athenes thilke day,
 e lusty seson of that May
 wight to ben in swiche plesance,
 t monday justen they and dance,
 n it in Venus highe servise.
 cause that they shulden rise
 we for to seen the fight,
 ste wenten they at night.
 morwe than the day gan spring,
 l harneis noise and clattering
 the hostelries all aboute :
 paleis rode ther many a route
 upon stedes and palfreys.
 yst thou see devising of harneis
 and so riche, and wrought so wele
 dury, of brouding, and of stele ;
 s brighte, testeres, and trappures ;
 helines, hauberkes, cote-armures ;
 arementes on hir courseres,
 retenue, and eke squieres,

Nailing the speres, and helmes bokeling,
 Gniding of sheldes, with lainers lacing ; *Rebelling - st*
 Ther as nede is, they weren nothing idel :
 The fomy stedes on the golden bridel
 Gnawing, and fast the armureres also
 With file and hammer priking to and fro ;
 Yemen on foot, and communes many on
 With shorte staves, thicke as they may gon ;
 Pipes, trompes, nakeres, and clariounes, *begin do*
 That in the bataille blowen bloody sounes ;
 The paleis ful of peple up and down,
 Here three, ther ten, holding hir questiuon,
 Devining of these Theban knightes two.
 Som sayden thus, som sayde it shal be so ;
 Som helden with him with the blacke berd,
 Som with the balled, soni with the thick herd ;
 Som saide he loked grim, and wolde fighte :
 He hath a sparth of twenty pound of wightes.

Thus was the halle full of devining
 Long after that the sonne gan up spring.
 The gret Theseus that of his slepe is waked
 With minstralcie and noise that was made,
 Held yet the chambre of his paleis riche,
 Til that the Theban knightes bothe yliche
 Honoured were, and to the paleis fette.

Duk Theseus is at a window sette,
 Araied right as he were a god in trone :
 The peple preseth thiderward ful sone
 Him for to seen, and don high reverence,
 And eke to herken his heste and his sentence.

An heraud on a scaffold made an o,
 Til that the noise of the peple was ydo :
 And whan he saw the peple of noise al still,
 Thus shewed he the mighty dukes will.

The lord hath of his high discretion
 Considered, that it were destruction
 To gentil blood, to fighten in the gise
 Of mortal bataille now in this emprise :
 Wherfore to shapen that they shul not die,
 He wol his firste purpos modifie.

No man therfore, up peine of losse of lif,
 No maner shot, ne pollax, ne short knif
 Into the listes send, or thider bring.
 Ne short sward for to stike with point biting
 No man ne draw, ne bere it by his side.
 Ne no man shal unto his felaw ride
 But o cours, with a sharpe ygrounden spere :
 Foin if him list on foot, himself to were. *Thou - def*
 And he that is at meschief, shal be take,
 And not slaine, but be brought unto the stake,
 That shal ben ordeined on eyther side,
 Thider he shal by force, and ther abide.
 And if so fall, the chevetain be take
 On eyther side, or elles sleth his make,
 No longer shal the tourneying ylast.
 God spede you ; goth forth and lay on fast.
 With longe sward and with mase fighteth your fill
 Goth now your way ; this is the lordes will.

The vois of the peple touched to the heven,
 So loude crieden they with mery steven :
 God save swiche a lord that is so good,
 He wilneth no destruction of blood.

Up gon the trompes and the melodie,
 And to the listes rit the compaignie
 By ordinance, thurghout the cite large,
 Hanged with cloth of gold, and not with sarge.
 Ful like a lord this noble duk gan ride,
 And these two Thebans upon eyther side :
 And after rode the quene and Emelie,
 And after that another compaignie o 2

Of on and other, after hir degree.
And thus they passen thurghout the citee,
And to the listes comen they be time :
It n'as not of the day yet fully prime.

Whan set was Theseus ful rich and hie,
Ipolita the quene, and Emelie,
And other ladies in degrees aboute,
Unto the setes preseth all the route.
And westward, thurgh the gates under Mart,
Arcite, and eke the hundred of his part,
With baner red, is entred right anon ;
And in the selve moment Palamon
Is, under Venus, estward in the place,
With baner white, and hardy chere and face.
In all the world, to seken up and doun,
So even without variatioun
Ther n'ere swiche compaignies never twey.
For ther was non so wise that coude sey,
That any hadde of other advantage
Of worthinesse, ne of estat, ne age,
So even were they chosen for to gesse.
And in two renges fayre they hem dresse.
Whan that hir names red were everich on,
That in hir nombre gile were ther non,
Tho were the gates ahette, and cried was loude ;
Do now your devoir, yonge knightes proude.

The heraudes left hir priking up and doun.
Now ringen trompes loud and clarioun.
Ther is no more to say, but est and west
In gon the speres sadly in the rest ;
In goth the sharpe spore into the side.
Ther see men who can juste, and who can ride.
Ther shiveren shaftes upon sheldes thicke ;
He feleth thurgh the herte-spone the pricke.
Up springen speres twenty foot on highte ;
Out gon the swardes as the silver brighte.
The helmes they to-hewen, and to-shrede ;
Out brest the blod, with sterne stremes rede.
With mighty maces the bones they to-breeste.
He thurgh the thickest of the throng gan threeste.
Ther stomblen stedes strong, and doun goth all.
He rolleth under foot as doth a ball.
He foineth on his foo with a tronchoun,
And he him hurtleth with his hors adoun.
He thurgh the body is hurt, and sith ytake
Maugre his hed, and brought unto the stake,
As forword was, right ther he must abide.
Another lad is on that other side.
And somtime doth hem Theseus to rest,
Hem to refresh, and drinken if hem lest.

Ful oft a day han thilke Thebanes two
Togeder met, and wrought eche other wo :
Unhorsed hath eche other of hem twey.
Ther n'as no tigre in the vale of Galaphey,
Whan that hire whelpes stole, whan it is lite,
So cruel on the hunt, as is Arcite
For jalous herte upon this Palamon :
Ne in Belmarie ther n'is so fell leon,
That hunted is, or for his hunger wood,
Ne of his prey desireth so the blood,
As Palamon to sleen his foo Arcite.
The jalous strokes on hir helmes bite ;
Out renneth blood on both hir sides rede.

Somtime an ende ther is of every dede.
For er the sonne unto the reste went,
The stronge king Emetrius gan hent
This Palamon, as he fought with Arcite,
And made his sward depe in his flesh to bite.
And by the force of twenty is he take
Unyolden, and ydrawen to the stake.

And in the rescous of this Palamon
The stronge king Licurgus is borne adoun :
And king Emetrius for all his strengthe
Is borne out of his sadel a swardes lengthe,
So hitte him Palamon or he were take :
But all for nought, he was brought to the stake .
His hardy herte might him helpen naught,
He moste abiden, whan that he was caught,
By force, and eke by composition.

Who sorweth now but woful Palamon ?
That moste no more gon again to fight.
And whan that Theseus had seen that sight,
Unto the folk that foughten thus eche on,
He cried, ho ! no more, for it is don.
I wol be trewe juge, and not partie.
Arcite of Thebes shal have Emelie,
That by his fortune hath hire fayre ywonne.

Anon ther is a noise of peple begonne
For joye of this, so loud and high withall,
It semed that the listes shulden fall.

What can now fayre Venus don above ?
What saith she now ! what doth this quene of love
But wepeth so, for wanting of hire will,
Til that hire teres in the listes fill :
She sayde : I am ashamed doutelees.

Saturnus sayde : Daughter, hold thy pees.
Mars hath his will, his knight hath all his bone.
And by min hed thou shalt ben eesed sone.

The trompoures with the loude minstrelcie,
The heraudes, that so loude yell and crie,
Ben in hir joye for wele of Dan Arcite.
But herkeneth me, and stenteth noise a lite,
Whiche a miracle ther befell anon.

This fierce Arcite hath of his helme ydon,
And on a courser for to shew his face
He priketh endelong the large place,
Loking upward upon this Emelie ;
And she again him cast a frendlich eye,
(For women, as to speken in commune,
They folwen all the favour of fortune)
And was all his in chere, as his in herte.
Out of the ground a fury infernal sterte,
From Pluto sent, at requeste of Saturne,
For which his hors for fere gan to turne,
And lepte aside, and foundred as he lepe :
And er that Arcite may take any kepe,
He pight him on the pomel of his hed,
That in the place he lay as he were ded,
His brest to-brosten with his sadel bow.
As blake he lay as any cole or crow,
So was the blood yronnen in his face.

Anon he was yborne out of the place
With herte sore, to Theseus paleis.
Tho was he corren out of his harnais,
And in a bed ybrought ful fayre and blive,
For he was yet in memorie, and live,
And alway crying after Emelie.

Duk Theseus, with all his compaignie,
Is comen home to Athenes his citee,
With alle blisse and gret solemnpnite.
Al be it that this aventure was falle,
He n'olde not discomforten hem alle.
Men sayden eke, that Arcite shal not die,
He shal ben heled of his maladie.
And of another thing they were as fayn,
That of hem alle was ther non yalain,
Al were they sore yhurt, and namely on,
That with a spere was thirled his brest bone.
To other woundes, and to broken armes,
Som hadden salves, and som hadden charmes :

And fermacies of herbes, and eke *sage* *Jage*.
 They dronken, for they wold hir lives have.
 For which this noble duk, as he wel can,
 Comforteth and honoureth every man,
 And made revel all the longe night,
 Into the strange lordes, as was right.
 Ne ther n'as holden no discomfoting,
 Bet as at justes or a tourneyng;
 For sothly ther n'as no discomfiture,
 For falling n'is not but an aventure.
 Ne to be lad by force unto a stake
 Unyolden, and with twenty knightes take,
 O person all alone, withouten mo,
 And haried forth by armes, foot, and too,
 And eke his stede driven forth with staves,
 With footmen, bothe yemen and eke knaves,
 It was acreted him no vilanie:
 Ther may no man clepen it cowardie.
 For which anon duk Theseus let crie,
 To setten alle rancour and envie,
 The *grec* as well of o side as of other,
 And eyther side ylike, as others brother:
 And yave hem giftes after hir degree,
 And helde a feste fully dayes three:
 And conveyed the kinges worthily
 Out of his toun a journee largely.
 And home went every man the righte way,
 Ther n'as no more, but farewel, have good day.
 Of this bataille I wol no more endite,
 But speke of Palamon and of Arcite.
 Swelleth the brest of Arcite, and the sore
 Encreaseth at his herte more and more.
 The clotered blood, for any leche-craft,
 Corrupteth, and is in his *bouke* ylast,
 That neyther veine-blood, ne ventousing,
 Ne drinke of herbes may ben his helping.
 The vertue expulsif, or animal,
 Fro thilke vertue cleped natural,
 Ne may the venime voiden, ne expell.
 The pipes of his longes gan to swell,
 And every *lacerte* in his brest adoun
 Is shent with venime and corruptioun.
 Him gaineth neyther, for to get his lif,
 Vomit upward, ne downward laxatif;
 All is to-brosten thilke region;
 Nature hath now no domination.
 And certainly ther nature wol not werche,
 Farewel physike; go bere the man to cherche.
 This is all and som, that Arcite moste die.
 For which he sendeth after Emelie,
 And Palamon, that was his cosin dere.
 Than sayd he thus, as ye shuln after here.
 Nought may the woful spirit in myn herte
 Declare o point of all my sorwes smerte
 To you, my lady, that I love most;
 But I bequethe the service of my gost
 To you aboven every creature,
 Suu that my lif ne may no lenger dure.
 Alas the wo! alas the peines strange,
 That I for you have suffered, and so longe!
 Alas the deth! alas min Emelie!
 Alas departing of our compaignie!
 Alas min hertes quene! alas my wif!
 Min hertes ladye, ender of my lif!
 What is this world! what axen men to have!
 Now with his love, now in his colde grave
 Alone withouten any compaignie.
 Farewel my swete, farewel min Emelie,
 And softe take me in your armes twey,
 For love of God, and herkeneth what I sey.

I have here with my cosin Palamon
 Had strif and rancour many a day agon
 For love of you, and for my jalousie.
 And Jupiter so wis my soule gie, *X truly - guide*
 To speken of a servant properly,
 With alle circumstances trewely,
 That is to sayn, trouth, honour, and knighthede
 Wisdom, humblesse, estat, and high kinrede.
 Fredom, and all that longeth to that art,
 So Jupiter have of my soule part,
 As in this world right now ne know I non,
 So worthy to be loved as Palamon,
 That serveth you, and wol don all his lif.
 And if that ever ye shal ben a wif,
 Foryete not Palamon, the gentil man.
 And with that word his speche faille began.
 For from his feet up to his brest was come
 The cold of deth, that had him overnome.
 And yet moreover in his armes two
 The vital strength is lost, and all ago.
 Only the intellect, withouten more,
 That dwelled in his herte sike and sore,
 Gan faillen, whan the herte felte deth;
 Dusked his eyen two, and failled his breth.
 But on his ladye yet cast he his eye;
 His laste word was; Mercy, Emelie!
 His spirit changed hous, and wente ther,
 As I came never I cannot tellen wher.
 Therefore I stent, I am no divinistre;
 Of soules find I not in this registre.
 Ne me lust not th' opinions to telle
 Of hem, though that they writen wher they dwellle.
 Arcite is cold, ther Mars his soule gie. *x*
 Now wol I speken forth of Emelie.
 Shright Emelie, and houleth Palamon,
 And Theseus his sister toke anon
 Swouning, and bare hire from the corps away.
 What helpeth it to tarien forth the day,
 To tellen how she wep both even and morwe!
 For in swiche cas wimmen have swiche sorwe,
 Whan that hir housbonds ben fro hem ago,
 That for the more part they sorwen so,
 Or elles fallen in swiche maladie,
 That atte laste certainly they die.
 Infinite ben the sorwes and the teres
 Of olde folk, and folk of tendre yeres,
 In all the toun for deth of this Theban:
 For him ther wepeth bothe childe and man.
 So gret a weping was ther non certain,
 Whan Hector was ybrought, all fresh yalain
 To Troy, alas! the pitee that was there,
 Cratching of chekes, rending eke of here.
 Why woldest thou be ded! thise women crie,
 And haddest gold ynough, and Emelie.
 No man might gladen this duk Theseus,
 Saving his olde fader Egeus,
 That knew this worldes transmutatioun,
 As he had seen it chaungen up and doun,
 Joye after wo, and wo after gladnesse;
 And shewed him ensample and likenesse.
 Right as ther died never man (quod he)
 That he ne lived in ertle in som degree,
 Right so ther lived never man (he seyde)
 In all this world, that somtime he ne deyde.
 This world n'is but a thurghfare ful of wo,
 And we ben pilgrimes, passing to and fro:
 Deth is an end of every worldes sore.
 And over all this yet said he mochel more
 To this effect, ful wisely to enhort
 The peple, that they shuld hem recomfort.

Duk Theseus with all his besy cure
 He casteth now, wher that the sepulture
 Of good Arcite may best ymaked be,
 And eke most honourable in his degree.
 And at the last he toke conclusion,
 That ther as first Arcite and Palamon
 Hadden for love the bataille hem betwene,
 That in that selve grove, sote and grene,
 Ther as he hadde his amorous desires,
 His complaint, and for love his hote fires,
 He wolde make a fire, in which the office
 Of funeral he might all accomplise ;
 And lete anon commande to hack and hewe
 The okes old, and lay hem on a row
 In culpons, wel araied for to brenne.
 His officers with swifte feet they renne
 And ride anon at his commandement.
 And after this, this Theseus hath sent
 After a bere, and it all overspradde
 With cloth of gold, the richest that he hadde ;
 And of the same suit he cladde Arcite.
 Upon his hondes were his gloves white,
 Eke on his hed a crowne of laurer grene,
 And in his hond a swerd ful bright and kene.
 He laid him bare the visage on the bere,
 Therwith he wept that pitee was to here.
 And for the peple shulde seen him alle,
 Whan it was day he brought him to the halle,
 That roreth of the crying and the soun.

The came this woful Theban Palamon
 With flotery berd, and ruggy ashy heres,
 In clothes blake, ydropped all with teres,
 And (passing over of weping Emelie)
 The reufullest of all the compaignie.

And in as much as the service shuld be
 The more noble and riche in his degree,
 Duk Theseus let forth three stedes bring,
 That trapped were in stele all glittering,
 And covered with the armes of Dan Arcite.
 And eke upon these stedes gret and white
 Ther saten folk, of which on bare his sheld,
 Another his spere up in his hondes held ;
 The thridde bare with him his bow Turkeis,
 Of brent gold was the cas and the harneis :
 And riden forth a pas with sorweful chere
 Toward the grove, as ye shul after here.

The noblest of the Grekes that ther were
 Upon hir shuldres carrieden the bere,
 With slacke pas, and eyen red and wete,
 Thurghout the citee, by the maister strete,
 That sprad was all with black, and wonder hie
 Right of the same is all the strete ywrie.
 Upon the right hand went olde Egeus,
 And on that other side duk Theseus,
 With vessels in hir hond of gold ful fine,
 All ful of hony, milk, and blood, and wine ;
 Eke Palamon, with ful gret compaignie :
 And after that came woful Emelie,
 With fire in hond, as was that time the gise.
 To don the office of funeral service.

High labour, and ful gret apparailing
 Was at the service of that fire making,
 That with his grene top the heven raught,
 And twenty fadom of brede the armes straight :
 This is to sain, the boughes were so brode.
 Of stre first ther was laied many a lode.

But how the fire was makid up on highte.
 And eke the names how the trees highte,
 As oke, fir, birch, aspe, alder, holm, poplere,
 Wilow, elm, plane, ash, box, chestein, lind, laurere,

Maple, thorn, beche, hasel, ew, whipultré.
 How they were feld, shal not be told for me ;
 Ne how the goddes rannen up and doun
 Disherited of hir habitacioun,
 In which they woueden in rest and pces,
 Nimphes, Faunes, and Amadriades ;
 Ne how the bestes, and the briddes alle
 Fledden for fere, whan the wood gan falle,
 Ne how the ground agast was of the light,
 That was not wont to see the sonne bright :
 Ne how the fire was couched first with stre,
 And than with drie stickes cloven a-thre,
 And than with grene wood and spicerie,
 And than with cloth of gold and with perrie,
 And gerlonds hanging with ful many a flour,
 The mirre, th'encense also with swete odour.
 Ne how Arcite lay among all this,
 Ne what richesse about his body is ;
 Ne how that Emelie, as was the gise,
 Put in the fire of funeral service ;
 Ne how she swouned whan she made the fire,
 Ne what she spake, ne what was hir desir ;
 Ne what jewelles men in the fire caste,
 Whan that the fire was gret and brente faste ;
 Ne how som cast hir sheld, and som hir spere,
 And of hir vestimentes, which they were,
 And cuppes full of wine, and milk, and blood,
 Into the fire, that brent as it were wood ;
 Ne how the Grekes with a huge route
 Three times riden all the fire aboute
 Upon the left hond, with a loud shouting,
 And thries with hir speres clatering ;
 And thries how the ladies gan to crie ;
 Ne how that led was homeward Emelie ;
 Ne how Arcite is brent to ashen cold ;
 Ne how the liche-wake was yhold
 All thilke night, ne how the Grekes play.
 The wake-plaies ne kepe I not to say :
 Who wrestled best naked, with oile enoint,
 Ne who that bare him best in no disjoint.
 I woll not tellen eke how they all gon
 Home til Athenes whan the play is don ;
 But shortly to the point now wol I wende,
 And maken of my longe tale an ende.

By processe and by lengthe of certain yeres
 All stenten is the mourning and the teres
 Of Grekes, by on general assent.
 Than semeth me ther was a parlement
 At Athenes, upon certain points and cas :
 Amonges the which points yspoken was
 To have with certain contrees alliance,
 And have of Thebanes fully obeisance.
 For which this noble Theseus anon
 Let senden after gentil Palamon,
 Unwist of him, what was the cause and why :
 But in his blacke clothes sorwefully
 He came at his commandement on hie ;
 Tho sente Theseus for Emelie.

Whan they were set, and husht was al the place,
 And Theseus abiden hath a space,
 Or any word came from his wise brest
 His eyen set he ther as was his lest,
 And with a sad visage he sikid still,
 And after that right thus he sayd his will.

The firste mover of the cause above
 Whan he firste made the fayre chaine of love,
 Gret was th'effect, and high was his entent ;
 Wel wist he why, and what therof he ment :
 For with that fayre chaine of love he bond
 The fire, the air, the watre, and the lond

in bondes, that they may not flee :
 ne prince and mover eke (quod he)
 blisht, in this wretched world adoun,
 of dayes and duration
 at are engendred in this place,
 which day they ne mow not pace,
 they yet dayes wel abrege.
 leth non autoritee allege,
 preved by experience,
 me lust declaren my sentence.
 y men by this ordre wel discerne,
 like mover stable is and eterne.
 y men knowen, but it be a fool,
 ry part deriveth from his hool.
 ure hath not taken his beginning
 rtie ne cautel of a thing,
 thing that parfit is and stable,
 ing so, til it be corruptable.
 rfore of his wise purveyance
 so wel beset his ordinance,
 ces of thinges and progressions
 enduren by successions,
 eterne, withouten any lie :
 iest thou understand and seen at eye.
 ke, that hath so long a norishing
 time that it ginneth first to spring,
 h so long a lif, as ye may see,
 ne laste wasted is the tree.
 eth eke, how that the harde stone
 ur feet, on which we tredre and gon,
 th, as it lieth by the wey.
 le river sometime wexeth drey.
 e tounes see we wane and wende.
 y ye see that all thing hath an ende.
 and woman see we wel also,
 les in on of the termes two,
 o sayn, in youthe or elles age,
 be ded, the king as shall a page ;
 is bed, som in the depe see,
 he large feld, as ye may see :
 peth nought, all goth that ilke wey :
 y I sayn that alle thing mote dey.
 aketh this but Jupiter the king !
 ch is prince, and cause of alle thing,
 ng alle unto his propre wille,
 icht it is derived, soth to telle.
 e-againes no creature on live
 gree availleth for to strive.
 it wisdom, as it thinketh me,
 n vertue of necessite,
 e it wel, that we may not eschewe,
 rely that to us all is dewe.
 o grutcheth ought, he doth folie,
 el is to him that all may gie.
 ainly a man hath most honour
 in his excellence and flour,
 e is siker of his goode name.
 th he don his frend, ne him, no shame :

And glader ought his frend ben of his deth,
 Whan with honour is yolden up his breth,
 Than whan his name appalled is for age ;
 For all foryetten is his vassallage.
 Than is it best, as for a worthy fame,
 To dien whan a man is best of name.
 The contrary of all this is wilfulness.
 Why grutchen we ! why have we heviness,
 That good Arcite, of chivalry the flour,
 Departed is, with dutee and honour,
 Out of this foule prison of this lif !
 Why grutchen here his cosin and his wif
 Of his welfare, that loven him so wel !
 Can he hem thank ! nay, God wot, never a del,
 That both his soule, and eke himself offend,
 And yet they mow hir lustes not amend.

What may I conclude of this longe serie,
 But after sorwe I rede us to be merie,
 And thanken Jupiter of all his grace.
 And er that we departen from this place,
 I rede that we make of sorwes two
 O parfit joye lasting evermo :
 And loketh now wher most sorwe is herein,
 Ther wol I firste amenden and begin.

Sister, (quod he) this is my full assent,
 With all th'avis here of my parlement,
 That gentil Palamon, your owen knight,
 That serveth you with will, and herte, and might,
 And ever hath don, sin ye first him knew,
 That ye shall of your grace upon him rew,
 And taken him for husbond and for lord :
 Lene me your hand, for this is oure accord.

Let see now of your womanly pitee.
 He is a kinges brothers sone pardee,
 And though he were a poure bachelere,
 Sin he hath served you so many a yere,
 And had for you so gret adversite,
 It moste ben considered, leveth me.
 For gentil mercy oweth to passen right.

Than sayd he thus to Palamon the knight ;
 I trow ther nedeth litel sermoning
 To maken you assenten to this thing.
 Cometh ner, and take your lady by the hond.

Betwixen hem was makid anon the bond,
 That highte matrimoine or mariage,
 By all the conseil of the baronage.
 And thus with alle blisse and melodie
 Hath Palamon ywedded Emelie.
 And God that all this wide world hath wrought,
 Send him his love, that hath it dere ybought.
 For now is Palamon in alle wele,
 Living in blisse, in richesse, and in hele,
 And Emelie him loveth so tendrely,
 And he hiro serveth al so gentilly,
 That never was ther no word hem betwene
 Of jalousie, ne of non other tene.

Thus endeth Palamon and Emelie ;
 And God save all this fayre compaignie.

max. pite.
valour.

ought

THE MILLERES TALE.

THE MILLERES PROLOGUE.

WHAN that the Knight had thus his tale told,
In all the compaignie n'as ther yong ne old,
That he ne said it was a noble storie,
And worthy to be drawn to memorie ;
And namely the gentiles everich on.
Our Hoste lough and swore, So mote I gon,
This goth aright ; unboked is the male ;
Let see now who shal tell another tale :
For trewely this game is wel begonne.
Now telleth ye, sire Monk, if that ye conne,
Somwhat, to quiten with the knyghtes tale.

The Miller that for-dronken was all pale.
So that unethes upon his hors he sat,
He n'old avalen neither hood ne hat,
Ne abiden no man for his curtesie,
But in Pilates vois he gan to crie,
And swore by armes, and by blood, and bones,
I can a noble tale for the nones,
With which I wol now quite the knyghtes tale.

Our Hoste saw that he was dronken of ale,
And sayd ; abide, Robin, my leve brother,
Som better man shall tell us first another :
Abide, and let us werken thriftily.

By Goddes soule (quod he) that wol not I,
For I wol speke, or elles go my way.

Our Hoste answerd ; Tell on a devil way ;
Thou art a fool ; thy wit is overcome.

Now herkeneth, quod the Miller, all and some :
But first I make a protestacioun,
That I am dronke, I know it by my soun :
And therefore if that I misspeke or say,
Wite it the ale of Southwerk, I you pray :
For I wol tell a legend and a lif
Both of a carpenter and of his wif,
How that a clerk hath set the wrightes cappe.

The Reve answerd and saide, Stint thy clappe.
Let be thy lewed dronken harlotrie.

It is a sinne, and eke a gret folie
To apeiren any man, or him defame,
And eke to bringen wives in swiche a name.
Thou mayst ynough of other thinges sain.

This dronken Miller spak ful sone again,
And sayde ; Leve brother Oscebold,
Who hath no wif, he is no cokewold.
But I say not therfore that thou art on ;
Ther ben ful goode wives many on.
Why art thou angry with my tale now ?
I have a wif parde as wel as thou,
Yet n'olde I, for the oxen in my plough,
Taken upon me more than ynough
As demen of myself that I am on ;
I wol beleven wel that I am non.
An husbond shuld not ben inquisitif
Of Goddes privity, ne of his wif.
So he may finden Goddes foison there,
Of the remenant nedeth not to enquire.

What shuld I more say, but this Millere
He n'olde his wordes for no man forbere,

But told his cherles tale in his manere,
Me thinketh, that I shal rehearse it here.
And therfore every gentil wight I pray,
For Goddes love as deme not that I say
Of evil entent, but that I mote rehearse
Hir tales alle, al be they better or werse,
Or elles falsen som of my matere.
And therfore who so list it not to here,
Turne over the leef, and chese another tale,
For he shal find ynow bothe gret and smale,
Of storial thing that toucheth gentillesse,
And eke moralite, and holinesse.
Blameth not me, if that ye chese amis.
The Miller is a cherl, ye know wel this,
So was the Reve, (and many other mo)
And harlotrie they tolden bothe two.
Aviseth you now, and put me out of blame
And eke men shuld not make ernest of game.

THE MILLERES TALE.

WHILON ther was dwelling in Oxenforde
A riche gnof, that gestes helde to borde,
And of his craft he was a carpenter.
With him ther was dwelling a poure scolere,
Had lerned art, but all his fantasie
Was turned for to lerne astrologie,
And coude a certain of conclusions
To demen by interrogations,
If that men asked him in certain houres,
Whan that menshulde have drougt or elles shoures
Or if men asked him what shulde falle
Of every thing, I may not reken alle.

This clerk was cleped bendy Nicholas ;
Of derne love he coude and of solas ;
And therto he was slie and ful prive,
And like a maiden meke for to se.
A chambre had he in that hostellerie
Alone, withouten any compaignie,
Ful fetisly ydight with herbes sote,
And he himself was swete as is the rote
Of licoris, or any setewale.
His almageste, and bokes gret and smale,
His astrelabre, longing for his art,
His augrim stones, layen faire apart
On shelves couched at his beddes hed,
His presse ycovered with a falding red.
And all above ther lay a gay sautrie,
On which he made ou nightes melodie,
So swetely, that all the chambre rong :
And *Angelus ad virginem* he song.
And after that he song the kinges note ;
Ful often blessed was his mery throte.
And thus this swete clerk his time spent
After his frendes finding and his rent.

This carpenter had wedded new a wif,
Which that he loved more than his lif :
Of eightene yere she was I gesse of age.
Jalous he was, and held hire narwe in cage.

was wild and yonge, and he was old,
 med himself belike a cokewold.
 w not Caton, for his wit was rude,
 de a man shulde wedde his similitude.
 ulden wedden after hir estate,
 the and elde is often at debate.
 en he was fallen in the snare,
 t endure (as other folk) his care.
 e was this yonge wif, and therewithal
 wesel hire body gent and smal.
 she wered, barred all of silk,
 e-cloth eke as white as morwe milk
 ire lendes, ful of many a gore.
 vas hire smok, and brouded all before
 e behiind on hire colere aboute
 black silk, within and eke withoute.
 es of hire white volupere
 f the same suit of hire colere ;
 et brode of silk, and set full hie :
 erly she had a likerous eye.
 d ypullen were hire browes two,
 y were bent, and black as any slo.
 wel more blisful on to see
 the newe perjenete tree ;
 ter than the wolle is of a wether.
 by hire girdel heng a purse of lether,
 d with silk, and perled with latoun.
 is world to seken up and down
 is no man so wise, that coude thenche
 a popelot, or swiche a wenche.
 ghter was the shining of hire hewe,
 the tour the noble yforged newe.
 ire song, it was as loud and yerne,
 swallow sitting on a berne.
 she coude skip, and make a game,
 kid or calf following his dame.
 outh was swete as braket or the meth,
 l of apples, laid in hay or heth.
 she was, as is a joly colt,
 a mast, and upright as a bolt.
 e she bare upon hire low colere,
 le as is the bosse of a bokelere.
 oon were laced on hire legges hie ;
 s a primerole, a piggesnie,
 lord to liggen in his bedde,
 for any good yeman to wedde.
 sire, and eft sire, so befell the cas,
 a day this hendy Nicholas
 a this yonge wif to rage and pleye,
 hat hire husboud was at Oseney,
 kes ben ful subtil and ful queint
 ively he caught hire by the queint,
 yde : Ywis, but if I have my will,
 ne love of thee, lemman, I spill.
 lde hire faste by the hanche bones,
 yde ; Lemman, love me wel at ones,
 al dien, al so God me save.
 she sprong as a colt doth in the trave :
 th hire hed she writhled faste away,
 yde : I wol not kisse thee by my fay.
 t be, (quod she) let be, Nicholas,
 al crie out harow and alas.
 your hondes for your curtesie.
 Nicholas gan mercy for to crie,
 ake so faire, and profered him so fast,
 e hire love him granted at the last,
 ore hire oth by Seint Thomas of Kent,
 e wold ben at his commandement,
 that she may hire leiser wel espie.
 zabond is so ful of jealousy,

That but ye waiten wel, and be prive,
 I wot right wel I n'am but ded, quod she.
 Ye mosten be ful derne as in this cas.

Nay, therof care you not, quod Nicholas :
 A clerk had litherly beset his while,
 But if he coude a carpenter begile.
 And thus they were accorded and ysworne
 To waite a time, as I have said before.
 Whan Nicholas had don thus every del,
 And thacked hire about the lendes wel,
 He kissed hire swete, and taketh his sautrie,
 And plaieith fast, and maketh melodie.

Than fell it thus, that to the parish cherche
 (Of Cristes owen werkes for to werche)
 This good wif went upon a holy day :
 Hire forehed shone as bright as any day,
 So was it washen, whan she lete hire werk.

Now was ther of that chirche a parish clerk,
 The which that was ycleped Absolon.
 Crulle was his here, and as the gold it shon,
 And strouted as a fanne large and brode ;
 Ful streight and even lay his joly shode.
 His rode was red, his eyen grey as goos,
 With Poules windowes corven on his shooes.
 In hosen red he went ful fetisly.
 Yclad he was ful smal and proprely.

All in a kirtel of a light waget ;
 Ful faire and thicke ben the pointes set.
 And therupon he had a gay surplise,
 As white as is the blosme upon the rise.

A mery child he was, so God me save ;
 Wel coude he leten blod, and clippe, and shavo,
 And make a chartre of lond, and a quittance.
 In twenty manere coude he trip and dance,
 (After the scole of Oxenforde tho)
 And with his legges casten to and fro ;
 And playen songes on a smal ribible ;
 Therto he song somtime a loud quynible.
 And as wel coude he play on a giterne.
 In all the toun n'as brewhous ne taverne,
 That he ne visited with his solas,
 Ther as that any gaillard tapstere was.
 But soth to say he was somdel squimous
 Of farting, and of speche dangerous.

This Absolon, that joly was and gay,
 Goth with a censer on the holy day,
 Censing the wives of the parish faste ;
 And many a lovely loke he on hem caste,
 And namely on this carpenteres wif :
 To loke on hire him thought a mery lif.
 She was so propre, and swete, and likerous.
 I dare wel sain, if she had ben a mous,
 And he a cat, he wolde hire hente anon.

This parish clerk, this joly Absolon,
 Hath in his herte swiche a love-longing,
 That of no wif toke he non offering ;
 For curtesie, he sayd, he n'olde non.

The moone at night ful clere and brighte shon
 And Absolon his giterne hath ytake,
 For paramours he thoughte for to wake.
 And forth he goth, jolif and amorous,
 Til he came to the carpenteres hous,
 A litel after the cockes had ycrow,
 And dressed him up by a shot window,
 That was upon the carpenteres wal.
 He singeth in his vois gentil and smal ;
 Now, dere lady,—if thy wille be,
 I pray you that ye—wol rewe on me ;
 Ful wel accordant to his giterning.

This carpenter awoke, and herd him sing,

And spake unto his wif, and said anon,
 What, Alison, heres thou not Absolon,
 That chanteth thus under our boures wal?
 And she answerd hire husbond therewithal;
 Yes, God wot, John, I here him every del.

This passeth forth; what wol ye bet than wel?
 Fro day to day this joly Absolon
 So loveth hire, that him is wo-begon.
 He waketh all the night, and all the day,
 He kembeth his lockes brode, and made him gay.
 He woeth hire by menes and brocage,
 And swore he wolde ben hire owen page.
 He singeth brokking as a nightingale.
 He sent hire pinnes, methes, and spiced ale,
 And wafres piping hot out of the glede:
 And for she was of toun, he profered mede.
 For som folk wol be wommen for richesse,
 And som for strokes, and som with gentillesse.

Somtime to shew his lightnesse and maistrise
 He plaith Herode on a skaffold hie.
 But what availeth him as in this cas?
 So loveth she this hendy Nicholas,
 That Absolon may blow the buckes horne:
 He ne had for his labour but a scorne.
 And thus she maketh Absolon hire ape,
 And all his earnest tourneth to a jape.
 Ful soth is this proverbe, it is no lie;
 Men say right thus alway; the neighe slie
 Maketh oft time the fer leef to be lothe.
 For though that Absolon be wood or wrothe,
 Because that he fer was from hire sight,
 This neighe Nicholas stood in his light.

Now bere thee wel, thou hendy Nicholas,
 For Absolon may waile and sing alas.

And so befell that on a Saturday,
 This carpenter was gon to Osenay,
 And hendy Nicholas and Alison
 Accorded ben to this conclusion,
 That Nicholas shal shapen him a wile
 This sely jealous husbond to begile;
 And if so were the game went aright,
 She shuld slepe in his armes alle night,
 For this was hire desire and his also.
 And right anon, withouten wordes mo,
 This Nicholas no longer wolde tarie,
 But doth ful soft unto his chambre carie
 Both mete and drinke for a day or twey.

And to hire husbond bad hire for to sey,
 If that he axed after Nicholas,
 She shulde say, she n'iste not wher he was;
 Of all the day she saw him not with eye.
 She trowed he was in som maladie,
 For for no crie hire maiden coude him calle
 He n'olde answer, for nothing that might falle.

Thus passeth forth all thilke Saturday,
 That Nicholas still in his chambre lay,
 And ete, and slept, and dide what him list
 Til Sunday, that the sonne goth to rest.

This sely carpenter hath gret mervaille
 Of Nicholas, or what thing might him aile,
 And said; I am adrad by Seint Thomas
 It stondeh not aright with Nicholas:
 God shilde that he died sodenly.
 This world is now ful tikel sikerly.

I saw to-day a corps yborne to cherche,
 That now on Monday last I saw him werche

Go up (quod he unto his knave) anon,
 Clepe at his dore, or knocke with a ston:
 Loke how it is, and tell me boldely.

This knave goth him up ful sturdely,

And at the chambre dore while that he stood,
 He cried and knocked as that he were wood:
 What how! what do ye, maister Nicholas?
 How may ye slepen all the longe day?
 But all for nought, he herde not a word.
 An hole he fond ful low upon the bord,
 Ther as the cat was wont in for to crepe,
 And at that hole he loked in ful depe,
 And at the last he had of him a sight.

This Nicholas sat ever gaping upright,
 As he had kyked on the newe mone.

Adoun he goth, and telleth his maister sothe,
 In what array he saw this ilke man.

This carpenter to blissen him began,
 And said; Now helpe us Seinte Frideswide.
 A man wote litel what shal him betide.
 This man is fallen with his astronomie
 In som woodnesse or in som agonie.

I thought ay wel how that it shulde be.
 Men shulde not knowe of Goddes privetoe.
 Ya blessed be alway a lewed man,
 That nought but only his beleve can.
 So ferd another clerk with astronomie;
 He walked in the felde for to prie
 Upon the sterres, what ther shuld befall,
 Til he was in a marlepit yfalle.

He saw not that. But yet by Seint Thomas
 Me reweth sore of hendy Nicholas:
 He shal be rated of his studying,
 If that I may, by Jesus heven king.

Get me a staf, that I may underspore
 While that thou, Robin, herest of the dore:
 He shal out of his studying, as I gesse.
 And to the chambre dore he gan him dresse.
 His knave was a strong carl for the nones,
 And by the haspe he haf it of at ones;
 Into the flore the dore fell anon.

This Nicholas sat ay as stille as ston,
 And ever he gaped upward into the eire.

This carpenter wend he were in despire,
 And hent him by the shuldurs mightily,
 And shoke him hard, and cried spitously;
 What, Nicholas! what how man! I loke adoun:
 Awake, and thinke on Cristes passioun.

I crouche thee from elves, and from wighetes.
 Therwith the nightspel said he anon rightes,
 On foure halves of the hous aboute,
 And on the threswold of the dore withoute.
 Jesu Crist, and Seint Benedight,
 Blisse this hous from every wicked wight,
 Fro the nightes mare, the wite Pater-noster;
 Wher wonest thou Seint Peters suster!

And at the last this hendy Nicholas
 Gan for to siken sore, and said; Alas!
 Shal all the world be lost eftsones now!

This carpenter answered; What saiest thou?
 What? thinke on God, as we do, men that swinke.

This Nicholas answered; Fetch me a drinke;
 And after wol I speke in privetee
 Of certain thing that toucheth thee and me:
 I wol tell it non other man certain.

This carpenter goth down, and cometh again,
 And brought of mighty ale a large quart;
 And whan that ech of hem had dronken his part,
 This Nicholas his dore faste shette,
 And down the carpenter by him he sette,
 And saide; John, min hoste lefe and dere,
 Thou shalt upon thy trouthe swere me here,
 That to no wight thou shalt my conseil wrey:
 For it is Cristes conseil that I say,

And if thou tell it man, thou art forelore :
For this vengeance thou shalt have therfore,
That if thou wreye me, thou shalt be wood.

Nay, Crist forbode it for his holy blood,
Quod tho this sely man ; I am no labbe,
No though I say it, I n'am not lefe to gabbe.
Say what thou wolt, I shal it never telle
To child ne wif, by him that harwed helle.

Now, John, (quod Nicholas) I wol not lie,
I have yfoundede in min astrologie,
As I have loked in the moone bright,
That now on Monday next, at quarter night,
Shal fall a rain, and that so wild and wood
That half so gret was never Noes flood.
This world (he said) in lesse than in an houre
Shal al be dreint, so hidous is the shoure :
Thus shal mankinde drenche, and lese hir lif.

This carpenter answerd ; Alas my wif !
And shal she drenche ! alas min Alisoun !
For sorwe of this he fell almost adoun,
And said ; Is ther no remedy in this cas !

Why yes, for God, quod hendy Nicholay ;
If thou wolt werken after lore and rede ;
Thou maist not werken after thin owen hede.
For thus saith Salomon, that was ful trewe ;
Werke all by conseil, and thou shalt not rewe.
And if thou werken wolt by good conseil,
I undertake, withouten mast or seyl,
Yet shal I saven hire, and thee and me.
Hast thou not herd how saved was Noe,
Whan that our Lord had warned him beforne,
That al the world with water shuld be lorne ?

Yes, (quod this carpenter) ful yore ago.
Hast thou not herd (quod Nicholas) also
The sorwe of Noe with his felawship,
Or that he might get his wif to ship ?
Him had be lever I dare wel undertake,
At thilke time, than all his wethers blake,
That she had had a ship hireself alone.
And therfore woost thou what is best to done ?
This axeth hast, and of an hastif thing
Men may not preche and maken taryng.
Anon go get us fast into this in
A kneding trough or elles a kemelyn,
For eche of us ; but loke that they ben large,
In which we mowen swimme as in a barge :

And have therin vitaille suffisant
But for a day ; fie on the remenant ;
The water shal aslake and gon away
Abouten prime upon the nexte day.
But Robin may not wete of this, thy knave,
Ne eke thy mayden Gille I may not save :
Axe not why : for though thou axe me,
I wol not tellen Goddes privetee.
Sufficeth thee, but if thy wittes madde,
To have as gret a grace as Noe hadde.
Thy wif shal I wel saven out of doute.

Go now thy way, and spede thee hereabout.
But whan thou hast for hire, and thee, and me,
Ygeten us these kneding tubbes thre,
Than shalt thou hang hem in the roof ful hie,
That no man of our purveyance espie :
And whan thou hast don thus as I have said,
And hast our vitaille faire in hem yiaid,
And eke an axe to smite the cord a-two
Whan that the water cometh, that we may go,
And breke an hole on high upon the gable
Unto the gardin ward, over the stable,
That we may frely passen forth our way,
Whan that the grete shoure is gon away.

Than shal thou swim as mery, I undertake,
As doth the white doko after hire drake :
Than wol I clepe, How Alison, how John,
Be mery : for the flood wol passe anon.
And thou wolt sain, Haile maister Nicholay,
Good morwe, I see thee wel, for it is day.
And than shall we be lordes all our lif
Of all the world, as Noe and his wif.
But of o thing I warne thee ful right,
Be wel avised on that ilke night,
That we ben entred into shippes bord,
That non of us ne speke not o word,
Ne clepe ne erie, but be in his priere,
For it is Goddes owen heste dere.

Thy wif and thou moste hangen for a-twiunc,
For that betwixen you shal be no sinne,
No more in loking than ther shal in dede.
This ordinance is said ; go, God thee spede.
To-morwe at night, whan men ben all aslepe,
Into our kneding tubbes wol we crepe,
And sitten ther, abiding Goddes grace.
Go now thy way, I have no lenger space
To make of this no lenger sermoning :
Men sain thus : send the wise, and say nothing :
Thou art so wise, it nedeth thee nought teche.
Go, save our lives, and that I thee besecche.

This sely carpenter goth forth his way,
Ful oft he said alas, and wala wa,
And to his wif he told his privetee,
And she was ware, and knew it bet than he
What all this queinte cast was for to sey.
But natheles she ferde as she wold dey,
And said ; Alas ! go forth thy way anon.
Helpe us to scape, or we be ded eche on.
I am thy trewe veray wedded wif ;
Go, dere spouse, and helpe to save our lif.

Lo, what a gret thing is affection,
Men may die of imagination,
So depe may impression be take.
This sely carpenter beginneth quake :
Him thinketh veraily that he may see
Noes flood comen walwing as the see
To drenchen Alison, his hony dere.
He wepeth, waileth, maketh sory chere ;
He siketh, with ful many a sory swough.
He goth, and geteth him a kneding trough,
And after a tubbe, and a kemelin,
And prively he sent hem to his in :
And heng hem in the roof in privetee.
His owen hond than made he ladders thre,
To climben by the renges and the stalkes
Unto the tubbes honging in the balkes ;
And vitailled bothe kemelin, trough and tubbe,
With bred and chese, and good ale in a jubbe,
Sufficing right ynow as for a day.

But er that he had made all this array,
He sent his knave, and eke his wenche also
Upon his nede to London for to go.
And on the Monday, whan it drew to night,
He shette his dore, withouten candel light,
And dressed all thing as it shulde bee.
And shortly up they clomben alle thre.
They sitten stille wel a furlong way.
Now, *Pater noster*, clum, said Nicholay,
And clum, quod John, and clum, said Alison :
This carpenter said his devotion,
And still he sit, and biddeth his priere,
Awaiting on the rain, if he it here.

The dede aslepe, for very besinesse,
Fell on this carpenter, right as I gesse,

Abouten curfew-time, or litel more.
For travaille of his gost he groneth sore,
And eft he routeth, for his hed mislay.
Doun of the ladder stalketh Nicholas,
And Alison ful soft adoun hire spedde.
Withouten wordes mo they went to bedde,
Ther as the carpenter was wout to lie;
Ther was the revel, and the melodie.
And thus lith Alison, and Nicholas,
In besinesse of mirthe and in solas,
Til that the bell of *laudes* gan to ring,
And freres in the chancel gon to sing.

This parish clerk, this amorous Absolon,
That is for love alway so wo-begon,
Upon the Monday was at Osenay
With compaignie, him to disport and play;
And asked upon cas a cloisterer
Ful prively after John the carpenter;
And he drew him apart out of the chirche.
He said, I n'ot; I saw him not here wirche
Sith Saturday; I trow that he be went
For timbre, ther our abbot hath him sent.
For he is wont for timbre for to go,
And dwellen at the Graunge a day or two:
Or elles he is at his hous certain.

Wher that he be, I cannot sothly sain.
This Absolon ful joly was and light,
And thoughte, now is time to wake al night,
For sikerly, I saw him nat stirring
About his dore, sin day began to spring.
So mote I thrive, I shal at cockes crow
Ful prively go knocke at his window,
That stant ful low upon his boures wall:
To Alison wol I now tellen all
My love-longing; for yet I shall not misse,
That at the leste way I shal hire kisse.
Some maner comfort shal I have parfay,
My mouth hath itched all this longe day:
That is a signe of kissing at the leste.
All night me mette eke, I was at a feste.
Therefore I wol go slepe an houre or twey,
And all the night than wol I wake and play.

Whan that the firste cock hath crowe, anon
Up rist this joly lover Absolon,
And him arayeth gay, at point devise.
But first he cheweth grein and licorise,
To smellen sote, or he had spoke with here.
Under his tonge a trewe love he bere,
For therby wend he to ben gracious.
He cometh to the carpenteres hous,
And still he stant under the shot window;
Unto his brest it raught, it was so low;
And soft he cougheth with a semisoun.

What do ye honycombe, swete Alisoun?
My faire bird, my swete sinamome,
Awaketh, lemman min, and speketh to me.
Ful litel thinken ye upon my wo,
That for your love I swete ther as I go.
No wonder is though that I swelte and swete.
I mourne as doth a lamb after the tete.
Ywis, lemman, I have swiche love-longing,
That like a turtel trewe is my mourning.
I may not ete no more than a maid.

Go fro the window, jacke fool, she said:
As helpe me God, it wol not be, compame,
I love another, or elles I were to blame,
Wel bet than thee by Jesu, Absolon.
Go forth thy way, or I wol cast a ston;
And let me slepe; a twenty divel way.

Alas! (quod Absolon) and wala wa!

That trewe love was ever so yvel beasette:
Than kisse me, sin that it may be no bette,
For Jesus love, and for the love of me.

Wilt thou than go thy way therwith? quod she.
Ya certes, lemman, quod this Absolon.
Than make thee redy, (quod she) I come anon.

This Absolon doun set him on his knees,
And saide; I am a lord at all degrees:
For after this I hope ther cometh more;
Lemman, thy grace, and, swete bird, thyn ore.

The window she undoth, and that in haste.
Have don, (quod she) come of, and spele thee
faste,

Lest that our neighebouren thee espie.

This Absolon gan wipe his mouth ful drie.
Derke was the night, as pitch or as the cole,
And at the window she put out hire hole,
And Absolon him felle ne bet ne wers,
But with his mouth he kist hire naked ers
Ful savorly, er he was ware of this.

Abak he sterde, and thought it was amis,
For wel he wist a woman hath no berd.
He felt a thing all rowe, and long yherd,
And saide; fy, alas! what have I do!

Te he, quod she, and clapt the window to;
And Absolon goth forth a sory pas.

A berd, a berd, said hendy Nicholas;
By goddes *corpus*, this goth faire and wel.

This sely Absolon herd every del,
And on his lippe he gan for anger bite;
And to himself he said, I shal thee quite.
Who rubbeth now, who frotheth now his lippes
With dust, with sond, with straw, with cloth, with
chippes,

But Absolon? that saith full oft, alas!
My soule betake I unto Sathanas,
But me were lever than all this toun (quod he)
Of this despit awroken for to be.
Alas! alas! that I ne had ybent.

His hote love is cold, and all yqueint.
For fro that time that he had kist hire ers,
Of paramours ne raught he not a kers,
For he was heled of his maladie;
Ful often paramours he gan defie,
And wepe as doth a child that is ybete.
A softe pas he went him over the strete
Until a smith, men callen dan Gerveis,
That in his forge smithed plow-harneis;
He sharpeth share and culure besily.
This Absolon knocketh all esily,
And said; Undo, Gerveis, and that anon.

What, who art thou? It am I Absolon.
What! Absolon, what! Cristes swete tre,
Why rise ye so rath? ey *benedicite*,
What eileth you? some gny girle, God it wote,
Hath brought you thus upon the viretote:
By Seint Neote, ye wote wel what I mene.

This Absolon ne raughte not a bene
Of all his play; no word again he yaf.
He hadde more tawe on his distaf
Than Gerveis knew, and saide; Frend so dere,
That hote culter in the chemicene here
As lene it me, I have therwith to don:
I wol it bring again to thee ful sone.

Gerveis answered; Certes, were it gold,
Or in a poke nobles all untold,
Thou shuldest it have, as I am trewe smith.
Ey, Cristes foot, what wol ye don therwith?
Therof, quod Absolon, be as be may;
I shal wel tellen thee another day:

History of the Canterbury Tales

And caught the culter by the colde stele.
Ful soft out at the dore he gan to stele,
And went unto the carpenteres wall.
He coughed first, and knocked therewithall
Upon the window, right as he did er.

This Alison answered; Who is ther
That knocketh so? I warrant him a thefe.

Nay, nay, (quod he) God wot, my swete lefe,
I am thin Absolon, thy dereling.
Of gold (quod he) I have thee brought a ring,
My mother yave it me, so God me save,
Ful fine it is, and therto wel ygrave:
This wol I yeven thee, if thou me kisse.

This Nicholas was risen for to pisse,
And thought he wolde amenden all the jape,
He shulde kisse his ers er that he scape:
And up the window did he hastily,
And out his ers he putteth prively
Over the buttoke, to the hanche bon.
And therewith spake this clerk, this Absolon,
Speke swete bird, I n'ot not wher thou art.

This Nicholas anon let fleen a fart,
As gret as it had ben a thonder dint,
That with the stroke he was wel nie yblint:
And he was redy with his yren hote,
And Nicholas amid the ers he smote.

Off goth the skinne an hondbrede al aboute.
The hote culter brenned so his toute,
That for the smert he wened for to die;
As he were wood, for wo he gan to crie,
Help, water, water, help for Goddes herte.

This carpenter out of his slomber sterte,
And herd on cris water, as he were wood,
And thought, alas, now cometh Noes flood.
He set him up withouten wordes mo,

And with his axe he smote the cord atwo;
And doun goth all; he fond neyther to selie
Ne breed ne ale, til he came to the selle,
Upon the flore, and ther aswoune he lay.

Up sterten Alison and Nicholay,
And crieden, out and harow! in the strete.

The neigheboures bothe smale and grette
In rannen, for to gauren on this man,
That yet aswoune lay, bothe pale and wan:
For with the fall he brosten hath his arm.
But stonden he must unto his owen harm,
For whan he spake, he was anon bore doun
With hendy Nicholas and Alisoun.

They tolden every man that he was wood;
He was agaste so of Noes flood
Thurgh fantasie, that of his vanitee
He had ybought him kneding tubbes thre,
And had hem honged in the roof above;
And that he praied hem for Goddes love
To sitten in the roof *par compaignie*.

The folk gan laughen at his fantasie.
Into the roof they kyken, and they gape,
And turned all his harm into a jape.
For what so that this carpenter answered,
It was for nought, no man his reson herd.
With othes gret he was so sworne adoun,
That he was holden wood in all the toun.
For everich clerk anon right held with other;
They said, the man was wood, my leve brother
And every wight gan laughen at this strif.

Thus swived was the carpenteres wif,
For all his keping, and his jalousie;
And Absolon hath kist hire nether eye;
And Nicholas is scalded in the tonte.
This tale is don, and God save all the route.

THE REVES TALE.

THE REVES PROLOGUE.

WHAN folk han laughed at this nice cas
Of Absolon and hendy Nicholas,
Diverse folk diversely they saide,
But for the more part they lought and plaide;
Ne at this tale I saw no man him greve,
But it were only Osowold the Reve.
Because he was of carpenteres craft,
A litel ire is in his herte ylaft;
He gan to grutch and blamen it a lite.
So the ik, quod he, ful wel coude I him quite
With blering of a proude milleres eye,
If that me list to speke of ribaudrie.
But ik am olde; me list not play for age;
Graas time is don, my foddre is now forage.
This white top writeth min olde yeres;
Min herte is also mouled as min heres;
But if I fare as doth an open-ers;
That ilke fruit is ever lenger the wers,
Till it be roten in mullok, or in stre.
We olde men, I drede, so faren we,
Til we be roten, can we not be ripe;
We hoppe alway, while that the world wol pipe;

For in our will ther stiketh ever a nayl,
To have an hore hed and a grene tayl,
As hath a leke; for though our might be gon,
Our will desireth folly ever in on:
For whan we may not don, than wol we speke2,
Yet in our ashen cold is fire yreken.

Fourre gledes han we, which I shal devise,
Avaunting, lying, anger, and covetise.
These fourre sparkes longen unto elde.
Our olde limes mow wel ben unwelde,
But will ne shal not faillen, that is sothe.
And yet have I alway a coltes tothe,
As many a yere as it is passed henne,
Sin that my tappe of lif began to renne.
For sikerly, whan I was borne, anon
Deth drow the tappe of lif, and let it gon;
And ever sith hath so the tappe yronne,
Til that almost all empty is the tonne.
The streme of lif now droppeth on the chimbe.
The sely tonge may wel ringe and chimbe
Of wretchednesse, that passed is ful yore:
With olde folk, save dotage, is no more.

Whan that our Hoste had herd this sermon
ing,
He gan to speke as lordly as a king,

*See Note
Reve*

*See Note
Reve*

And sayde; What amounteth all this wit !
What ! shall we speke all day of holy writ !
The diuel made a Reve for to preche,
Or of a souter a shipman, or a leche.

Say forth thy tale, and tary not the time :
Lo Depeford, and it is half way prime :
Lo Grenewich, ther many a shrew is inne.
It were al time thy tale to beginne.

Now, sires, quod this Osewold the Reve,
I pray you alle, that ye not you greve,
Though I anwere, and somdel set his howe,
For leful is with force force off to showe.

This dronken Miller hath ytolde us here,
How that begiled was a carpentore,
Paraventure in scorne, for I am on :
And by your leve, I shal him quite anon.
Right in his cherles termes wol I speke.
I pray to God his necke mote to-breke.
He can wel in min eye seen a stalk,
But in his owen he cannot seen a balk.

THE REVES TALE.

At Trompington, not fer fro Cantebritte,
Ther goth a brook, and over that a brigg,
Upon the whiche brook ther stont a melle.
And this is veray sothe, that I you telle.
A miller was ther dwelling many a day,
As any peacock he was proude and gay :
Pipen he coude, and fishe, and nettes bete,
And turnen cuppes, and wrastlen wel, and shete.
Ay by his belt he bare a long pavade,
And of a swerd ful trenchant was the blade.
A joly popper bare he in his pouche ;
Ther n'as no man for peril dorst him touche.
A Shesfeld thwitel bare he in his hose.
Round was his face, and camuse was his nose.
As pillid as an ape was his skull.
He was a market-beter at the full.
Ther dorste no wight hond upon him legge,
That he ne swore he shuld anon abegge.

A thefe he was forsoth, of corn and mele,
And that a slie, and usant for to stele.
His name was hoten deinous Simekin.
A wif he hadde, comen of noble kin :
The person of the toun hire father was.
With hire he yaf ful many a paune of bras,
For that Simkin shuld in his blood allie.
She was yfostered in a nonnerie :
For Simkin wolde no wif, as he sayde,
But she were wel ynourished, and a mayde,
To saven his estat of yemanrie :
And she was proud, and pert as is a pie.
A ful faire sight was it upon hem two.
On holy dayes beforen hire wold he go
With his tipet ybounde about his hed ;
And she came after in a gite of red,
And Simkin hadde hosen of the same.
Ther dorste no wight clepen hire but dame :
Was non so hardy, that went by the way,
That with hire dorste rage or ones play,
But if he wold be slain of Simekin
With pavade, or with knif, or bodekin.
(For jalous folk ben perilous evermo :
Algate they wold hir wives weuden so.)
And eke for she was somdel smoterlich,
She was as digne as water in a dich,

And al so ful of hoker, and of bismare.
Hire thoughte that a ladie shuld hire spare,
What for hire kinrede, and hire notelrie,
That she had lerned in the nonnerie.

A doughter hadden they betwix hem two
Of twenty yere, withouten any mo,
Saving a child that was of half yere age,
In cradle it lay, and was a propre page.
This wenche thicke and wel ygrowen was,
With camuse nose, and eyen grey as glas ;
With buttokes brode, and brestes round and his ;
But right faire was hire here, I wol nat lie.

The person of the toun, for she was faire,
In purpos was to maken hire his haire
Both of his catel, and of his mesuage,
And strange he made it of hire mariage.
His purpos was for to bestowe hire hie
Into som worthy blood of ancestrie.
For holy chirches good mote ben despended
On holy chirches blood that is descendid.
Therefore he wolde his holy-blood honour,
Though that he holy chirche shuld devoure.

Gret soken hath this miller out of doute
With whete and malt, of all the land aboute ;
And namely ther was a gret college
Men clepe the Soler hall at Cantebregge,
Ther was hir whete and eke hir malt yground.
And on a day it happed in a stound,
Sike lay the manciple on a maladie,
Men wenden wisly that he shulde die.
For which this miller stale both mele and corn
An hundred times more than befor.
For therleorn he stale but curteisly,
But now he was a thefe outrageously.
For which the wardein chidde and made fare,
But therof set the miller not a tare ;
He craked bost, and swore it n'as not so.

Than were ther yonge poure scoleres two,
That dwelten in the halle of which I say ;
Testif they were, and lusty for to play ;
And only for hir mirth and revelrie
Upon the wardein besily they crie,
To yeve hem leve but a litel stound,
To gon to mille, and seen hir corn yground :
And hardily they dorsten lay hir necke,
The miller shuld not stele hem half a pecke
Of corn by sleighte, no by force hem reve.

And at the last the wardein yave hem leave :
John highte that on, and Alein highte that other,
Of o toun were they born, that highte Strother,
Fer in the North, I can not tellen where.

This Alein maketh redy all his gere,
And on a hors the sak he cast anon :
Forth goth Alein the clerk, and also John,
With good swerd and with bokeler by hir side.
John knew the way, him neded not no guide,
And at the mille the sak adoun he laith.

Alein spake first ; All haile, Simond, in faith,
How fares thy faire doughter, and thy wif !

Alein, welcome (quod Simkin) by my lif,
And John also : how now, what do ye here !
By God, Simond, (quod John) nede has no pere.
Him behoves serve himself that has na swain,
Or elles he is a fool, as clerkes sain.
Our manciple I hope he wol be ded,
Swa werkes ay the wauges in his hed :
And therefore is I come, and eke Alein,
To grind our corn and cary it hame agayn :
I pray you spede us henen that ye may.

It shal be don (quod Simkin) by my fay.

What wol ye don while that it is in hand !
By God, right by the hopper wol I stand,
(Quod John) and seen how that the corn gas in.
Yet saw I never by my fader kin,
How that the hopper waggis til and fra.

Alein answered ; John, and wolt thou swa !
Than wol I be benethe by my croun,
And see how that the mele falles adoun
In til the trogh, that shal be my disport :
For, John, in faith I may ben of your sort ;
I is as ill a miller as is ye.

This miller smiled at hir nicetee,
And thought, all this n'is don but for a wile.
They wenen that no man may hem begile,
But by my thrift yet shal I bliere hir eie,
For all the sleighte in hir philosophie.
The more queinte knakkes that they make,
The more wol I stele whan that I take.
In stede of flour yet wol I yeve hem bren.
The gretest clerkes ben not the wisest men,
As whilom to the wof thus spake the mare :
Of all hir art ne count I not a tare.

Out at the dore he goth ful prively,
Whan that he saw his time, softly.
He loketh up and doun, til he hath found
The clerkes hors, ther as he stood ybound
Behind the mille, under a levesell :
And to the hors he goth him faire and well,
And stripeth of the bridel right anon.

And whan the hors was laus, he gan to gon
Toward the fen, ther wilde mares renne,
And forth, with wehee, thurgh thick and thinne
This miller goth again, no word he said,
But doth his note, and with these clerkes plaid,
Till that hir corn was faire and wel yground.
And whan the mele is sacked and ybound,
This John goth out, and fint his hors away,
And gan to crie, harow and wala wa !
Our hors is lost : Alein, for Goddes banes,
Step on thy feet ; come of, man, al at aunes :
Alas ! our wardein has his palfrey lorn.

This Alein al forgat both mele and corn ;
Al was out of his mind his lushandrie :
What, whilke way is he gon ? he gan to crie.
The wif came leping inward at a renne,
She said ; Alas ! youre hors goth to the fenne
With wilde mares, as fast as he may go.
Unthank come on his hand that bond him so,
And he that better shuld have knit the rein.

Alas ! (quod John) Alein, for Christes peyn
Lay doun thy sward, and I shal min alsawa.
I is ful wight, God wate, as is a ra.
By Goddes saule he shal not scape us bathe.
Why ne had thou put the capel in the lathe !
Ill haile, Alein, by God thou is a fonne.

These sely clerkes han ful fast yronne
Toward the fen, bothe Alein and eke John :
And whan the miller saw that they were gon,
He half a bushel of hir flour hath take,
And bad his wif go kneede it in a cake.
He said ; I trow, the clerkes were aferde.
Yet can a miller make a clerkes berde,
For all his art. Ye, let hem gon hir way.
Lo wher they gon. Ye, let the children play :

They get him not so lightly by my croun.
These sely clerkes rennen up and doun
With kepe, kepe ; stand, stand ; jossa, warderere.
Ga whistle thou, and I shal kepe him here.
But shortly, til that it was veray night
They coude not, though they did all hir might,

Hir capel catch, he ran alway so fast :
Til in a diche they caught him at the last.

Wery and wet, as bestes in the rain,
Cometh sely John, and with him cometh Alein.
Alas (quod John) the day that I was borne !
Now are we driven til hething and til scorne.
Our corn is stolne, men wol us fannes calle,
Both the wardein, and eke our felawes alle,
And namely the miller, wala wa !

Thus plaineth John, as he goth by the way
Toward the mille, and bayard in his hond.
The miller sitting by the fire he fond,
For it was night, and forther might they nought,
But for the love of God they him besought
Of herberwe and of ese, as for hir peny.

The miller saide agen, if ther be any,
Swiche as it is, yet shull ye have your part.
Myn hous is streit, but ye have lerned art ;
Ye can by arguments maken a place
A mile brode, of twenty foot of space.
Let see now if this place may suffice,
Or make it roume with speche, as is your gise.
Now, Simond, (said this John) by Seint Cuthberd
Ay is thou mery, and that is faire answerd.
I have herd say, man sal take of twa thinges,
Slike as he findes, or slike as he bringes.
But specially I pray thee, hoste dere,
Gar us have mete and drinke, and make us chere,
And we sal paien trewely at the full :
With empty hand, men may na haukes tull.
Lo here our silver redy for to spend.

This miller to the toun his doughter send
For ale and bred, and rosted hem a goos,
And bond hir hors, he shuld no more go loos :
And in his owen chambre hem made a bedde,
With shetes and with chalons faire yspredde,
Nat from his owen bed ten foot or twelve :
His doughter had a bed all by hireselve,
Right in the same chambre by and by :
It mighte be no bet, and cause why,
Ther was no roumer herberwe in the place.
They soupen, and they speken of solace,
And drinken ever strong ale at the best.
Abouten midnight wente they to rest.

Wel hath this miller vernished his hed,
Ful pale he was, for-dronken, and nought red.
He yoxeth, and he speketh thurgh the nose,
As he were on the quakke, or on the pose.
To bed he goth, and with him goth his wif ;
As any jay she light was and jolif,
So was hire joly whistle wel ywette.
The cradel at hire beddes feet was sette,
To rocken, and to yeve the child to souke.
And whan that dronken was all in the crouke
To bedde wente the doughter right anon,
To bedde goth Alein, and also John.
Ther n'as no more ; nedeth hem no dwaic.
This miller hath so wisly bibbed ale,
That as an hors he snorteth in his slepe,
Ne of his tail behind he toke no kepe.
His wif bare him a burdon a ful strong ;
Men might hir routing heren a furlong.
The wenche routeth eke *par compaignie*.

Alein the clerk that herd this melodie,
He poketh John, and sayde : Slepest thou ?
Herdest thou ever slike a song er now !
Lo whilke a complin is ymell hem alle.
A wilde fire upon hir bodies falle,
Wha herked ever slike a ferly thing ?
Ye, they shall have the flour of yvel ending.

This lange night ther tides me no reste.
But yet ~~na~~ force, all shal be for the beste.
For, John, (sayd he) as ever mote I thrive,
If that I may, yon wenche wol I swive.
Som esement has lawe yshapen us.
For, John, ther is a lawe that saith thus,
That if a man in o point be agreved,
That in another he shal be releved.
Our corn is stoine, sothly it is ~~na~~ nay,
And we han had an yvel fit to-day.
And sin I shal have nan amendement
Again my losse, I wol have an esement :
By Goddes saule, it shal nan other be.

This John answered ; Alein, avise thee :
The miller is a perilous man, he sayde.
And if that he out of his slepe abraide,
He mighte don us bathe a vilanie.
Alein answered ; I count him nat a fie.
And up he rist, and by the wenche he crept.
This wenche lay upright, and faste slept,
Til he so nigh was, er she might espie,
That it had ben to late for to crie :
And shortly for to say, they were at on.
Now play, Alein, for I wol speke of John.

This John lith still a furlong way or two,
And to himself he maketh routh and wo.
Alas ! (quod he) this is a wicked jape ;
Now may I say, that I is but an ape.
Yet has my felaw somwhat for his harme ;
He has the millers daughter in his arme :
He aunted him, and hath his nedes spedde,
And I lie as a draf-sak in my bedde ;
And whan this jape is tald another day,
I shal be halden a daffe or a cokenay :
I wol arise, and aunte it by my fay :
Unhardy is ~~unsel~~, thus men say.

And up he rose, and softly he went
Unto the cradel, and in his hand it hent,
And bare it soft unto his beddes fete.
Sone after this the wif hire routing lete,
And gan awake, and went hire out to pisse,
And came again, and gan the cradel misse,
And groped here and ther, but she fond non.
Alas ! (quod she) I had almost misgon.
I had almost gon to the clerkes bedde.
Ey *benedicite*, than had I foule yspedde.
And forth she goth, til she the cradel fond.
She gropeth alway forther with hire hond,
And fond the bed, and thoughte nat but good,
Because that the cradel by it stood,
And n'iste wher she was, for it was derk,
But faire and wel she crept in by the clerk,
And lith ful still, and wold han caught a slepe.
Within a while this John the clerk up lepe,
And on this goode wif he laieth on sore ;
So mery a fit ne had she nat ful yore.

He priketh hard and depe, as he were mad.
This joly lif han these two clerkes lad,
Til that the thridde cok began to sing.
Alein wex werie in the morwening,
For he had swonken all the longe night,
And sayd ; Farewel, Malkin, my swete wight.
The day is come, I may no longer hide,
But evermo, wher so I go or ride,
I is thin awen clerk, so have I hele.
Now, dere lemman, quod she, go farewele :
But or thou go, o thing I wol thee tell.
Whan that thou wendest homeward by the mell,
Right at the entree of the dore behind
Thou shalt a cake of half a bushel find,

That was ymaked of thin owen mele,
Which that I halpe my fader for to stele.
And goode lemman, God thee save and kepe.
And with that word she gan almost to wepe.

Alein uprist and thought, er that it daw
I wol go crepen in by my felaw :
And fond the cradel at his hand anon.
By God, thought he, all wrang I have misgon :
My hed is tottie of my swink to-night,
That maketh me that I go nat aright.
I wot wel by the cradel I have misgo ;
Here lith the miller and his wif also.
And forth he goth a twenty divel way
Unto the bed, ther as the miller lay.
He wend have crepen by his felaw John,
And by the miller in he crept anon,
And caught him by the nekke, and gan him shab
And sayd ; Thou John, thou swinshed awake
For Cristes saule, and here a noble game :
For by that lord that called is Saint Jame,
As I have thries as in this short night
Swived the millers daughter bolt-upright,
While thou hast as a coward ben agast.

Ye, false harlot, quod the miller, hast !
A false traitour, false clerk, (quod he)
Thou shalt be ded by Goddes dignitee,
Who dorste be so bold to disparage
My doughter, that is come of swiche linage.
And by the throte-bolle he caught Alein,
And he him hent despitously again,
And on the nose he smote him with his fist ;
Doun ran the bloody streme upon his brest :
And in the flore with nose and mouth to-broke
They walwe, as don two pigges in a poke.
And up they gon, and doun again anon,
Til that the miller sporned at a ston,
And doun he fell backward upon his wif,
That wiste nothing of this nice strif :
For she was fall aslepe a litel wight
With John the clerk, that waked had all night :
And with the fall out of hire slepe she braide.
Helpe, holy crois of Bromeholme, (she sayde)
In manus tuas, Lord, to thee I call.
Awake, Simond, the fend is on me fall ;
Myn herte is broken ; helpe ; I n'am but ded ;
Ther lith on up my wombe and up myn hed.
Helpe, Simkin, for the false clerkes fight.
This John stert up as fast as ever he might,
And graspeth by the walles to and fro
To find a staf, and she stert up also,
And knew the *estres* bet than did this John,
And by the wall she toke a staf anon :
And saw a litel shemering of a light,
For at an hole in shone the mone bright,
And by that light she saw hem bothe two,
But sikerly she n'iste who was who,
But as she saw a white thing in hire eye.
And whan she gan this white thing espie,
She wend the clerk had wered a *volupere* ;
And with the staf she drow ay nere and nere,
And wend han hit this Alein atte full,
And smote the miller on the pillid skull,
That doun he goth, and cried, harow ! I die.
Thise clerkes bete him wel, and let him lie,
And greithen hem, and take hir hors anon,
And eke hir mele, and on hir way they gon :
And at the mille dore eke they toke hir cake
Of half a bushel flour, ful wel ybake.

Thus is the proude miller wel ybete,
And hath ylost the grinding of the whete,

ied for the souper every del
n and of John, that bete him wel ;
is swived, and his daughter als ;
che it is a miller to be fals.
erfore this proverbe is sayd ful soth,

Him thar not winnen wel that evil doth .
A gilour shal himself begiled be :
And God that siteth hie in magestie
Save all this compaignie, gret and smale.
Thus have I quit the miller in my tale.

THE COKES TALE.

THE COKES PROLOGUE

ke of London, while the Reve spake,
e (him thought) he clawed him on the bak :
quod he) for Cristes passion,
iller had a sharpe conclusion,
his argument of herbergeage.
yde Salomon in his langage,
ig not every man into thin hous,
rberwing by night is perilous.
ght a man avised for to be
that he brought into his privetee.
to God so yeve me sorwe and care,
; sithen I highte Hodge of Ware,
a miller bet ysette a-werk ;
l a jape of malice in the derk.
God forbede that we stinten here,
erfore if ye vouchen sauf to here
of me that am a poure man,
ou tell as wel as ever I can
jape that fell in our citee.
Hoste answerd and sayde ; I grant it thee :
ll on, Roger, and loke that it be good,
any a pastee hast thou letten blood,
any a Jacke of Dover hast thou sold,
ath been twies hot and twies cold.
y a pilgrim hast thou Cristes curse,
thy perselee yet fare they the worse,
ey han eten in thy stoble goos :
thy shop goth many a fle loos.
ll on, gentil Roger by thy name,
t I pray thee be not wroth for game ;
may say ful soth in game and piay.
i sayst ful soth, quod Roger, by my fay ;
th play *quade spel*, as the Fleming saith :
erfore, Herry Bailly, by thy faith,
u not wroth, or we departen here,
t that my tale be of an hostelere.
theles, I wol not telle it yet,
we part, ywis thou shalt be quit.
erwithal he lough and made chere,
yd his tale, as ye shul after here.

THE COKES TALE.

his whilom dwelt in our citee,
a craft of vitaillers was he :
d he was, as goldfinch in the shawe,
as a bery, a propre short felawe :
okkes blake, kembed ful fetisly.
he coude so wel and jolly,

That he was cleped Perkin Revelour.
He was as ful of love and paramour,
As is the hive ful of hony swete ;
Wel was the wenche with him mighte mete.
At every bridale would he sing and hoppe ;
He loved bet the tavernne than the shoppe.
For whan ther any riding was in Chepe,
Out of the shoppe thider wold he lepe,
And til that he had all the sight ysein,
And danced wel, he wold not come agein ;
And gadred him a meinie of his sort,
To hoppe and sing, and maken swiche disport :
And ther they setten steven for to mete
To plaien at the dis in swiche a strete.
For in the toun ne was ther no prentis,
That fairer coude caste a pair of dis
Than Perkin coude, and therto he was fre
Of his dispence, in place of privetee.
That fond his maister wel in his chaffare,
For often time he fond his box ful bare.

For sothly, a prentis, a revelour,
That hanteth dis, riot and paramour,
His maister shal it in his shoppe abie,
Al have he no part of the minstralcie.
For theft and riot they ben convertible,
Al can they play on giterne or ribible.
Revel and trowth, as in a low degree,
They ben ful wroth all day, as men may see.

This joly prentis with his maister abode,
Til he was neigh out of his prentishode,
Al were he snibbed bothe erly and late,
And somtime lad with revel to Newgate.
But at the last his maister him bethought
Upon a day, whan he his paper sought,
Of a proverbe, that saith this same word ;
Wel bet is roten appel out of hord,
Than that it rote alle the remenant :
So fareth it by a riotous servant ;
It is wel lasse harm to let him pace,
Than he shende all the servants in the place.
Therefore his maister yaf him a quittance,
And bad him go, with sorwe and with meschance
And thus this joly prentis had his leve :
Now let him riot all the night or leve.

And for ther n'is no thefe without a louke,
That helpeth him to wasten and to souke
Of that he briben can, or borwe may,
Anon he sent his bed and his array
Unto a compere of his owen sort,
That loved dis, and riot, and disport ;
And had a wif, that he'd for contenance
A shoppe, and swived for hire sustenance.

* * * * *

THE MAN OF LAWES TALE.

THE MAN OF LAWES PROLOGUE.

Our Hoste saw wel, that the brighte sonne
The ark of his artificial day had ronned
The fourthe part, and half an houre and more ;
And though he were not depe expert in lore,
He wiste it was the eighte and twenty day
Of April, that is messenger to May ;
And saw wel that the shadow of every tree
Was as in lengthe of the same quantitee
That was the body erect, that caused it ;
And therefore by the shadow he toke his wit,
That Phebus, which that shone so clere and bright,
Degrees was five and fourty clombe on hight ;
And for that day, as in that latitude,
It was ten of the klok, he gan conclude ;
And sodenly he plight his hors aboute.

Lordings, quod he, I warne you all this route,
The fourthe partie of this day is gon.
Now for the love of God and of Saint John
Leseth no time, as ferforth as ye may.
Lordings, the time it wasteth night and day,
And steleth from us, what prively sleping,
And what thurgh negligence in our waking,
As doth the streme, that turneth never again,
Descending fro the montaigne into a plain.
Wel can Senek and many a philosophe
Bewailen time, more than gold in coffre.
For losse of catel may recovered be,
But losse of time shendeth us, quod he.
It wol not come again withouten drede,
No more than wol Malkins maidenhede,
Whan she hath lost it in hire wantonnesse.
Let us not moulten thus in idlenesse.

Sire man of Lawe, quod he, so have ye blis,
Tell us a tale anon, as forword is.
Ye ben submitted thurgh your free assent
To stonde in this cas at my jugement.
Acquiteth you now, and holdeth your behest ;
Than have ye don your devoir at the lest.

Hoste, quod he, *de par dieux jeo assente*,
To breken forword is not min entente.
Behest is dette, and I wold hold it fayn
All my behest, I can no better sayn.
For swiche lawe as man yeveth another wight,
He shuld himselven usen it by right.
Thus wol our text : but natheles certain
I can right now no thrifty tale sain,
But Chaucer (though he can but lewedly
On metres and on riming craftily)
Hath said hem, in swiche English as he can,
Of olde time, as knoweth many a man.
And if he have not said hem, leve brother,
In o book, he hath said hem in another.
For he hath told of lovers up and down,
Mo than Ovide made of inentionoun
In his *Epistolis*, that ben ful olde.
What shuld I tellen hem, sin they ben tolde !
In youthe he made of Ceys and Alcyon,
And sithen hath he spoke of everich on

Thise noble wives, and thise lovers eke.
Who so that wol his large volume seke
Cleped the seintes legende of Cupide :
Ther may he se the large woundes wide
Of Lucrece, and of Babylon Thisbe ;
The swerd of Dido for the false Ence ;
The tree of Phillis for hire Demophon ;
The plaint of Deianire, and Hermion,
Of Adriane, and Ysiphilee ;
The barreine ile standing in the see ;
The dreint Leandre for his fayre Hero ;
The teres of Heleine, and eke the wo
Of Briseide, and of Lodomia ;
The crueltee of thee, quene Medea,
Thy litel children hanging by the hals,
For thy Jason, that was of love so fals.
O Hipermestra, Penelope, Alceste,
Your wifhood he commendeth with the beste.

But certainly no word ne writeth he
Of thilke wicke ensample of Canace,
That loved hire owen brother sinfully ;
(Of all swiche cursed stories I say fy)
Or elles of Tyrius Appolonius,
How that the cursed king Antiochus
Beraft his daughter of hire maidenhede,
That is so horrible a tale for to rede,
Whan he hire threw upon the pavement.
And therefore he of ful avisement
N'old never write in non of his sermons
Of swiche unkinde abhominacions ;
Ne I wol non reherse, if that I may.
But of my tale how shal I don this day !
Me were loth to be likened douteles
To Muses, that men clepe Pierides,
(*Metamorphoseos* wote what I mene)
But natheles I recche not a bene,
Though I come after him with hawebake,
I speke in prose, and let him rimes make.
And with that word, he with a sobre chere
Began his tale, and sayde, as ye shull here.

THE MAN OF LAWES TALE.

O SCATHFUL harm, condition of poverte,
With thirst, with cold, with hunger so confounde
To asken helpe thee shameth in thin herte,
If thou non ask, so sore art thou ywounded,
That veray nede unwrappeth al thy wound hid.
Maugre thin hed thou must for indigence
Or stele, or begge, or borwe thy dispence.

Thou blamest Crist, and sayst ful bitterly,
He misdeparteth richesse temporal ;
Thy neighebour thou witeest sinfully,
And sayst, thou hast a litel, and he hath all :
Parfay (sayst thou) somtime he reken shall,
Whan that his tayl shal bredden in the glede,
For he nought helpeth needful in hir nede.

Herken what is the sentence of the wise,
 Bet is to dien than have indigence.
 Thy selve neighbeour wol thee despise,
 If thou be poure, farewell thy reverence.
 Yet of the wise man take this sentence,
 Alle the dayes of poure men ben wicke,
 Beware therfore or thou come to that pricke.

If thou be poure, thy brother hateth thee,
 And all thy frendes fleeen fro thee, alas !
 O riche marchants, ful of wele ben ye,
 O noble, o prudent folk, as in this cas,
 Your bagges ben not filled with ambes as,
 But with aie cink, that renneeth for your chance ;
 At Cristenmasse mery may ye dance.

Ye seken lond and see for your winninges,
 As wise folk ye knowen all th'estat
 Of regnes, ye ben fathers of tidinges,
 And tales, both of pees and of debat :
 I were right now of tales desolat,
 N'ere that a marchant, gon in many a yere,
 Me taught a tale, which that ye shull here.

In **SURRIE** whilom dwelt a compaignie
 Of chapmen rich, and therto sad and trewe,
 That wide where senten hir spicerie,
 Clothes of gold, and satins riche of hewe.
 Hir chaffare was so thriftly and so newe,
 That every wight hath deintee to chaffare
 With hem, and eke to sellen hem hir ware.

Now fell it, that the maisters of that sort
 Han shapen hem to Rome for to wende,
 Were it for chapmanhood or for disport,
 Non other message wold they thider sende,
 But comen hemself to Rome, this is the ende :
 And in swiche place as thought hem advantage
 For hir entente, they taken hir herbergage.

Sojourned han these marchants in that toun
 A certain time, as fell to hir plesance :
 And so befell, that the excellent renoun
 Of the emperoures doughter dame Custance
 Reported was, with every circumstance,
 Unto these Surrien marchants, in swiche wise
 Fro day to day, as I shal you devise.

This was the comun vois of every man :
 Our emperour of Rome, God him se,
 A doughter hath, that sin the world began,
 To reken as wel hire goodnesse as beaute,
 N'as never swiche another as is she :
 I pray to God in honour hire sustene,
 And wold she were of all Europe the quene.

In hire is high beaute withouten pride,
 Youthe, withouten grenehed or folie :
 To all hire werkis vertue is hire guide ;
 Humblesse hath alaien in hire tyrannie :
 She is mirrour of alle curtesie,
 Hire herte is veray chambre of holinesse,
 Hire hond ministre of fredom for almesse.

And al this vois was seth, as God is trewe,
 But now to purpos let us turne agein.
 These marchants han don fraught hir shippes newe,
 And whan they han this blisful maiden sein,
 Home to Surrie ben they went ful fayn,
 And don hir noded, as they han don yore,
 And liven in wele, I can say you no more.

Now fell it, that these marchants stood in grace
 Of him that was the Soudan of Surrie :
 For whan they came from any strange place
 He wold of his benigne curtesie
 Make hem good chere, and besily espie
 Tidings of sundry regnes, for to lere
 The wonders that they mighte seen or here.

Amonges other thinges specially
 These marchants han him told of dame Custance
 So gret noblesse, in earnest seriously,
 That this Soudan hath caught so gret plesance
 To han hire figure in his remembrance,
 That all his lust, and all his besy cure
 Was for to love hire, while his lif may dure.

Paraventure in thilke large book,
 Which that men clepe the heven, ywritten was
 With sterres, whan that he his birthe took,
 That he for love shuld han his deth, alas !
 For in the sterres, clerer than is glas,
 Is writen, God wot, who so coud it rede,
 The deth of every man withouten drede.

In sterres many a winter therbefore
 Was writ the deth of Hector, Achilles,
 Of Pompey, Julius, or they were born ;
 The strif of Thebes ; and of Hercules,
 Of Sampson, Turnus, and of Socrates
 The deth ; but mennes wittes ben so dull,
 That no wight can wel rede it at the full.

This Soudan for his prive counsel sent,
 And shortly of this matere for to pace,
 He hath to hem declared his entent,
 And sayd hem certain, but he might have grace
 To han Custance, within a litel space,
 He n'as but ded, and charged hem in his
 To shapen for his lif som remedie.

Diverse men, diverse thinges saiden ;
 They argumentes casten up and down ;
 Many a subtil reson forth they laiden ;
 They spoken of magike, and abusion ;
 But finally, as in conclusion,
 They cannot seen in that non advantage,
 Ne in non other way, save mariage.

Than saw they therin swiche difficultee
 By way of reson, for to speke all plain,
 Because ther was swiche diversitee
 Betwene hir bothe lawes, that they sayn,
 They trowen that no cristen prince wold fayn
 Wedden his child under our lawe swete,
 That us was yeven by Mahound our propheta

And he answered : Rather than I lese
 Custance, I wol be cristened douteles :
 I mote ben hires, I may non other chese,
 I pray you hold your arguments in pees,
 Saveth my lif, and beth not reccheles
 To gotten hire that hath my lif in cure,
 For in this wo I may not long endure.

What nedeth greter dilatation ?
 I say, by tretise and ambassatrie,
 And by the popes mediation,
 And all the chirche, and all the chevalrie,
 That in destruction of Maumetrie,
 And in encrease of Cristes lawe dere,
 They ben accorded so as ye may here ;

How that the Soudan and his baronage,
And all his lieges shuld yeristened be,
And he shal han Custance in mariage,
And certain gold, I no't what quantitee,
And hereto finden suffisant suretee.
The same accord is sworne on eyther side ;
Now, fair Custance, almighty God thee gide.

Now wolden som men waiten, as I gesse,
That I shuld tellen all the purveiance,
The which that the emperour of his noblesse
Hath shapen for his doughter dame Custance.
Wel may men know that so gret ordinance
May no man tellen in a litel clause,
As was arraied for so high a cause.

Bishopes ben shapen with hire for to wende,
Lordes, ladies, and knightes of renoun,
And other folk ynow, this is the end.
And notified is thurghout al the toun,
That every wight with gret devotioun
Shuld prayen Crist, that he this mariage
Receive in gree, and spede this viage.

The day is comen of hire departing,
I say the woful day fatal is come,
That ther may be no longer tarying,
But forward they hem dressen all and some.
Custance, that was with sorwe all overcome,
Ful pale arist, and dresseth hire to wende,
For wel she soth ther n'is non other ende.

Alas ! what wonder is it though she wept ?
That shal be sent to straunge nation
Fro frendes, that so tendrely hire kept,
And to be bounde under subjection
Of on, she knoweth not his condition.
Housbondes ben all good, and han ben yore,
That knowen wives, I dare say no more.

Fader, (she said) thy wrocted child Custance,
Thy yonge doughter, fostered up so soft,
And ye, my moder, my soveraine plesance
Over all thing, (out taken Crist on left)
Custance your child hire recommendeth oft
Unto your grace ; for I shal to Surrie,
Ne shal I never seen you more with eye.

Alas ! unto the Barbare nation
I muste gon, sin that it is your will :
But Crist, that starfe for our redemption,
So yeve me grace his hestes to fulfill,
I wretched woman no force though I spill ;
Women arn borne to thraldom and penance,
And to ben under mannes governance.

I trow at Troye whan Pirrus brake the wall,
Or Ilion brent, or Thebes the citee,
Ne at Rome for the harm thurgh Hanniball,
That Romans hath venqueshed times three,
N'as herd swiche tendre weping for pitee,
As in the chambre was for hire parting,
But forth she mote, wheder she wepe or sing.

O firste moving cruel firmament,
With thy diurnal swegh that croudest ay,
And hurtest all from Est til Occident,
That naturally wold hold another way ;
Thy crouding set the heven in swiche array
At the beginning of this fierce viage,
That cruel Mars hath slain this marriage.

Infortunat ascendent tortuous,
Of which the lord is helples fall, alas !
Out of his angle into the derkest hous.
O Mars, o Atyzar, as in this cas ;
O feble Mone, unhappy ben thy pas,
Thou knittest thee ther thou art not received,
Ther thou were wel fro thennes art thou weired.

Imprudent emperour of Rome, alas !
Was ther no philosopre in al thy toun ?
Is no time bet than other in swiche cas !
Of viage is ther non electioun,
Namely to folk of high conditioun,
Nat whan a rote is of a birth yknowe !
Alas ! we ben to lewed, or to slow.

To ship is brought this woful faire maid
Solempnely, with every circumstance :
Now Jesu Crist be with you all, she said.
Ther n'is no more, but farewel fair Custance.
She peineth hire to make good countenance,
And forth I let hire sayle in this manere,
And turne I wol againe to my matere.

The mother of the Soudan, well of vices,
Espied hath hire sones pleine entente,
How he wol lete his olde sacrifices :
And right anon she for her conseil sente,
And they ben comen, to know what she mente,
And whan assembled was this folk in fere,
She set hire doun, and sayd as ye shul here.

Lordes, (she sayd) ye knownen everich on,
How that my sone in point is for to lete
The holy lawes of our Alkaron,
Yeven by Goddes messenger Mahomete :
But on avow to grete God I hete,
The lif shal rather out of my body sterte,
Than Mahometes lawe out of myn herte.

What shuld us tiden of this newe lawe
But thraldom to our bodies and penance,
And afterward in helle to ben drawe,
For we reneied Mahound our creance !
But, lordes, wol ye maken assurance,
As I shal say, assenting to my lore !
And I shal make us sauf for evermore.

They swornen, and assented every man
To live with hire and die, and by hire stond :
And everich on, in the best wise he can,
To strengthen hire shal all his frendes fond.
And she hath this emprise ytaken in hond,
Which ye shull heren that I shal devise,
And to hem all she spake right in this wise.

We shul first feine us cristendom to take ;
Cold water shal not greve us but a lite :
And I shal swiche a feste and revel make,
That, as I trow, I shal the Soudan quite.
For tho his wif be cristened never so white,
She shal have nede to wash away the rede,
Though she a font of water with hire lede.

O Soudannesse, rote of iniquitee,
Virago thou Semyramee the second,
O serpent under femininitee,
Like to the serpent depe in helle ybound :
O feined woman, all that may confound
Vertue and innocence, thurgh thy malice,
Is bred in thee, as nest of every vice.

han envious, sin thilke day
 ou were chased from our heritage,
 west thou to woman the olde way.
 idest Eva bring us in servage,
 It fordon this cristen mariage :
 trument so (wala wa the while !)
 thou of women whan thou wolt begile.

oudannesse, whom I thus blame and warrie,
 ely hire conseil gon hir way :
 ould I in this tale longer tarie !
 th to the Soudan on a day,
 d him, that she wold reneie hire lay,
 tendom of prestes hondes fong,
 ig hire she hethen was so long ;

ning him to don hire that honour,
 might han the cristen folk to fest :
 n hem I wol do my labour.
 dan saith, I wol don at your hest,
 ling, thanked hire of that request ;
 e was, he n'iste not what to say,
 hire sone, and home she goth hire way.

ed ben these cristen folk to londe
 e, with a gret solempne route,
 tily this Soudan sent his sonde,
 his mother, and all the regne aboute,
 l, his wif was comen out of doute,
 ide hem for to riden again the quene,
 our of his regne to sustene.

vas the presse, and riche was th'array
 ens and Romanes met in farr.
 her of the Soudan riche and gay
 l hire with all so glad a chere,
 nother might hire daughter dere :
 he nexte citee ther beside
 as solempnely they ride.

it trow I, the triumph of Julius,
 that Lucan maketh swiche a bost,
 ller, or more curious,
 s th'assemblee of this blisful host :
 is scorpion, this wicked gost,
 dannede, for all hire flattering
 er this ful mortally to sting.

oudan cometh himself sone after this
 ; that wonder is to tell :
 cometh hire with alle joye and blis.
 s in mirth and joye I let hem dwell.
 t of this matere is that I tell.
 me came, men thought it for the best
 el stint, and men go to hir rest.

me come is, this olde Soudannesse
 l hath the feste of which I tolde,
 he feste cristen folk hem dresse
 al, ya bothe yonge and olde.
 y men fest and realtee beholde,
 stees mo than I can you devise,
 o dere they bought it or they rise.

en wo, that ever art successour
 dly blis, spreint is with bitternesse
 e of the joye of our worldly labour :
 spieth the fyn of our gladnesse.
 this conseil for thy sikernessee :
 y glade day have in thy minde
 vare wo of harm, that cometh behinde.

For shortly for to tellen at a word,
 The Soudan and the cristen everich on
 Ben all to-hewe, and stiked at the bord,
 But it were only dame Custance alone.
 This olde Soudannesse, this cursed crone,
 Hath with hire frendes don this cursed dede,
 For she hireself wold all the contree lede.

Ne ther was Surrien non that was converted,
 That of the conseil of the Soudan wot,
 That he n'as all to-hewe, er he asterted :
 And Custance han they taken anon fote-hot,
 And in a ship all stereles (God wot)
 They han hire set, and bidden hire lerne sayle
 Out of Surrie againward to Itaille.

A certain tresor that she thither ladde,
 And soth to sayn, vitaille gret plentee,
 They han hire yeven, and clothes eke she hadde,
 And forth she sayleth in the salte see :
 O my Custance, ful of benignitee,
 O emperoures yonge doughter dere,
 He that is lord of fortune be thy stere.

She blesseth hire, and with ful pitous vois
 Unto the crois of Crist thus sayde she,
 O clere, o weleful auter, holy crois,
 Red of the lambes blood ful of pitee,
 That wesh the world fro the old inquitee,
 Me fro the fende, and fro his clawes kepe,
 That day that I shal drenchen in the depe.

Victorious tree protection of trewe,
 That only worthy were for to bere
 The king of heven, with his woundes newe,
 The white lamb, that hurt was with a spere ;
 Flemer of fendes, out of him and here
 On which thy limmes faithfully extenden,
 Me kepe, and yeve me might my lif to amenden.

Yeres and dayes fleet this creature
 Thurghout the see of Grece, unto the straites
 Of Maroc, as it was hire aventure :
 On many a sory mele now may she baite,
 After hire deth ful often may she waite,
 Or that the wilde waves wol hire drive
 Unto the place ther as she shal arive.

Men mighten asken, why she was not slain !
 Eke at the feste who might hire body save !
 And I answer to that demand again,
 Who saved Daniel in the horrible cave,
 Ther every wight, save he, master or knave,
 Was with the leon frette, or he asterte !
 No wight but God, that he bare in his herte.

God list to shew his wonderful miracle
 In hire, for we shuld seen his mighty werkis :
 Crist, which that is to every harm triacle,
 By certain menes oft, as knowen clerkes,
 Doth thing for certain ende, that ful derke is
 To mannes wit, that for our ignorance
 Ne can nat know his prudent purveiance.

Now sith she was not at the feste yslawe,
 Who kepte hire fro the drenching in the see !
 Who kepte Jonas in the fishes mawe,
 Til he was spouted up at Ninivee !
 Wel may men know, it was no wight but he
 That kept the peple Ebraike fro drenching,
 With drye feet thurghout the see passing.

Who bade the foure spirits of tempest,
That power han to anyen lond and see,
Both north and south, and also west and east,
Anoyen neyther see, ne lond, ne tree ?
Sothly the commander of that was he
That fro the tempest ay this woman kepte,
As wel whan she awoke as whan she slepte.

Wher might this woman mete and drinke have ?
Three yere and more, how lasteth hire, vitaille ?
Who fed the Egyptian Mary in the cave
Or in desert ? no wight but Crist *sans faille*.
Five thousand folk it was as gret marvaille
With loves five and fishes two to fede :
God sent his foyson at hire grete nede.

She driveth forth into our Ocean
Thurghout our wide see, til at the last
Under an hold, that nempnen I ne can,
Fer in Northumberlond, the wave hire cast,
And in the sand hire ship stiked so fast,
That thennes wolde it not in all a tide :
The wille of Crist was that she shulde abide.

The constable of the castle down is fare
To seen this wrcke, and al the ship he sought,
And fond this wery woman ful of care ;
He fond also the treasure that she brought :
In hire langage mercy she besought,
The lif out of hire body for to twinne,
Hire to deliver of wo that she was inne.

A maner Latin corrupt was hire speche,
But algate therby was she understonde.
The constable, whan him list no lenger seche,
This woful woman brought he to the londe.
She kneleth down, and thanketh Goddes sonde ;
But what she was, she wolde no man seye
For foule ne faire, though that she shulde deye.

She said, she was so mased in the see,
That she forgate hire minde, by hire trouthe.
The constable hath of hir so gret pitee
And eke his wif, that they wepen for routh :
She was so diligent withouten slouth
To serve and plesen everich in that place,
That all hire love, that loken in hire face.

The constable and dame Hermegild his wif
Were payenes, and that contree every wher ;
But Hermegild loved Custance as hire lif ;
And Custance hath so long sojourned ther
In orisons, with many a bitter tere,
Til Jesu hath converted thurgh his grace
Dame Hermegild, constableness of that place.

In all that lond no cristen dorste route ;
All cristen folk ben fled fro that contree
Thurgh payenes, that conquereden all aboute
The places of the North by lond and see.
To Wales fled the cristianitee
Of olde Bretons, dwelling in this ile ;
Ther was hir refuge for the mene while.

But yet n'ere cristen Bretons so exiled,
That ther n'ere som which in hir privitee
Honoured Crist, and hethen folk begiled ;
And neigh the castle swiche ther dwelten three :
That on of hem was blind, and might not see,
But it were with thilke eyen of his minde,
With which men mowen see whan they ben blinde.

Bright was the sonne, as in that somer day,
For which the constable and his wif also
And Custance, han ytake the righte way
Toward the see, a furlong way or two,
To plaien, and to romen to and fro ;
And in hir walk this blinde man they mette,
Croked and olde, with eyen fast yahette.

In the name of Crist (cried this blinde Breton),
Dame Hermegild, yeve me my sight again.
This lady wexe afraid of that soun,
Lest that hire husbond, shortly for to main,
Wold hire for Jesu Cristes love have slain,
Til Custance made hire bold, and bad hire wene
The will of Crist, as doughter of holy cherehe.

The constable wexe abashed of that sight,
And sayde ; What amounteth all this fare ?
Custance answered ; Sire, it is Cristes might,
That helpeth folk out of the fendes snare ;
And so ferforth she gan our lay declare,
That she the constable, er that it were eve,
Converted, and on Crist made him beleve.

This constable was not lord of the place
Of which I speke, ther as he Custance fond,
But kept it strongly many a winter space,
Under Alla, king of Northumberlond,
That was ful wise, and worthy of his hond
Againe the Scottes, as men may wel here ;
But tourne I wol againe to my matere.

Sathan, that ever us waiteth to begile,
Saw of Custance all hire perfectioun,
And cast anon how he might quite hire while,
And made a younge knight, that dwelt in that town,
Love hire so hote of foule affectioun,
That veraily him thought that he shuld spille,
But he of hire might ones han his wille.

He woeth hire, but it availleth nought,
She wolde do no sinne by no wey :
And for despit, he compassed his thought
To maken hire on shameful deth to dey.
He waiteth whan the constable is away,
And prively upon a night he crepte
In Hermegildes chambre while she slepte.

Wery, forwaked in hire orisons,
Slepeth Custance, and Hermegilde also.
This knight, thurgh Sathanas temptations,
All softely is to the bed ygo,
And cut the throte of Hermegilde atwo,
And layd the bloody knif by dame Custance,
And went his way, ther God yeve him mischance.

Sone after cometh this constable home again,
And eke Alla, that king was of that lond,
And saw his wife despitously yslein,
For which ful oft he wept and wrong his hond ;
And in the bed the bloody knif he fond
By dame Custance, alas ! what might she say !
For veray wo hire wit was all away.

To king Alla was told all this mischance,
And eke the time, and wher, and in what wise,
That in a ship was fonden this Custance,
As here before ye han herd me devise :
The kinges herte of pitee gan agrise,
Whan he saw so benigne a creature
Falle in disese and in misaventure.

For as the lamb toward his deth is brought,
So stant this innocent befor the king :
This false knight, that hath this treson wrought,
Dereth hire in hond that she hath don this thing :
But natheles ther was gret murmuring
Among the peple, and sayn they cannot gesse
That she had don so gret a wickednesse.

For they han seen hire ever so vertuous,
And loving Hermegild right as hire lif :
Of this bare witness everich in that hous,
Save he that Hermegild slow with his knif :
This gentil king hath caught a gret motif
Of this witness, and thought he wold enquire
Deper in this cas, trouthe for to lere.

Alas ! Custance, thou hast no champion,
Ne fighten canst thou not, so wala wa !
But he that starf for our redemption,
And bond Sathan, and yet lith ther he lay,
So be thy stronge champion this day :
For but if Crist on thee miracle kithe,
Withouten gilt thou shalt be slaine as swithe.

She set hire down on knees, and thus she sayde ;
Immortal God, that savedest Susanne
Fro false blame, and thou merciful mayde,
Mary I mene, daughter to seint Anne,
Beforn whos child angels singen Osanne,
If I be gilteles of this felonie,
My socour be, or elles shal I die.

Have ye not seen somtime a pale face
(Among a prees) of him that hath ben lad
Toward his deth, wher as he geteth no graca.
And swiche a colour in his face hath had,
Men mighten know him that was so bestad,
Amonges all the faces in that route,
So stant Custance, and loketh hire aboute.

O quenes living in prosperitee,
Duchesses, and ye ladies everich on,
Haveth som routhe on hire adversitee ;
An emperoures daughter stant alone ;
She hath no wight to whom to make hire mone ;
O blood real, that stondest in this drede,
Fer ben thy frendes in thy grete nede.

This Alla king hath swiche compassioun,
As gentil herte is fulfilled of pitee,
That fro his eyen ran the water down.
Now hastily do fecche a book, quod he ;
And if this knight wol sweren, how that she
This woman slow, yet wol we us avise,
Whom that we wol that shal ben our justice.

A Breton book, written with Evangelies,
Was fet, and on this book he swore anon
She giltif was, and in the mene whiles
An hond him smote upon the nekke bone,
That doun he fell at ones as a stone :
And both his eyen brost out of his face
In sight of every body in that place.

A vois was herd, in general audience,
That sayd ; Thou hast desclandred gilteles
The daughter of holy chirche in high presence ;
Thus hast thou don, and yet hold I my pees.
Of this mervaille agast was all the prees,
As mased folk they stonden everich on
For drede of wreche, save Custance alone.

Gret was the drede and eke the repentance
Of hem that hadden wronge suspicion
Upon this sely innocent Custance ;
And for this miracle, in conclusion,
And by Custances mediation,
The king, and many another in that place,
Converted was, thanked be Cristes grace.

This false knight was slain for his untrouthe
By judgement of Alla hastily ;
And yet Custance had of his deth gret routhe ;
And after this Jesus of his mercy
Made Alla wedden ful solempnely
This holy woman, that is so bright and shene,
And thus hath Crist ymade Custance a queene.

But who was woful (if I shal not lie)
Of this wedding but Donegild and no mo,
The kinges mother, ful of tyrannie !
Hire thoughte hire cursed herte brast atwo ;
She wolde not that hire sone had do so ;
Hire thoughte a despit, that he shulde take
So strange a creature unto his make.

Me list not of the chaf ne of the stre
Maken so long a tale, as of the corn.
What shulde I tellen of the realtee
Of this mariage, or which cours goth befor,
Who bloweth in a trompe or in an horn !
The fruit of every tale is for to say ;
They ete and drinke, and dance, and sing, and play.

They gon to bed, as it was skill and right,
For though that wives ben ful holy thinges,
They mosten take in patience a night
Swiche maner necessities, as ben plesinges
To folk that han ywedded hem with ringes,
And lay a lite hir holinesse aside
As for the time, it may no bet betide.

On hire he gat a knave childe anon,
And to a bishop, and his constable eke
He toke his wif to kepe, whan he is gon
To Scotland ward, his fomen for to seke.
Now faire Custance, that is so humble and meke,
So long is gon with childe til that still
She halt hire chambre, abiding Cristes will.

The time is come, a knave child she bere ;
Mauricius at the fontstone they him calle.
This constable doth forth come a messenger,
And wrote unto his king that cleped was Alle,
How that this blisful tiding is befalla,
And other tidings spedeful for to say.
He hath the lettre, and forth he goth his way.

This messenger, to don his advantage,
Unto the kinges mother rideth swithe,
And salueth hire ful faire in his langage.
Madame, quod he, ye may be glad and blithe,
And thanken God an hundred thousand sithe ;
My lady quene hath child, withouten doute,
To joye and blisse of all this regne aboute.

Lo here the lettre seled of this thing,
That I most bere in all the hast I may :
If ye wol ought unto your sone the king,
I am your servant bothe night and day.
Donegilde answerd, As now at this time may ;
But here I wol all night thou take thy rest,
To-morwe wol I say thee what me lest.

This messenger drank sadly ale and wine,
And stolen were his lettres prively
Out of his box, while he slept as a swine ;
And contrefeted was ful subtilly
Another lettre, wrought ful sinfully,
Unto the king directe of this matere
Fro his constable, as ye shal after here.

This lettre spake, the quene delivered was
Of so horrible a fendliche creature,
That in the castle non so hardy was
That any while dorste therein endure :
The mother was an elfe by aventure
Ycome, by charmes or by sorcerie,
And everich man hateth hire compaignie.

Wo was this king whan he this lettre had sein,
But to no wight he told his sorwes sore,
But of his owen hand he wrote again ;
Welcome the sonde of Crist for evermore
To me, that am now lerned in this lore :
Lord, welcome be thy lust and thy plesance,
My lust I put all in thy ordinance.

Kepeth this child, al be it foule or faire,
And eke my wif, unto min home coming :
Crist whan him list may senden me an heire,
More agreable than this to my liking.
This lettre he seled, prively weping,
Which to the messenger was taken sone,
And forth he goth, ther is no more to done.

O messenger, fulfilled of dronkenesse,
Strong is thy breth, thy limmes faltren ay,
And thou bewreicest alle secerenesse ;
Thy mind is lorne, thou janglest as a jay ;
Thy face is tourned in a new array ;
Ther dronkenesse regneth in any route,
Ther is no conseil hid withouten doute.

O Donegild, I ne have non English digne
Unto thy malice, and thy tirannie :
And therefore to the fende I thee resigne,
Let him enditen of thy traitorie.
Fy mannish, fy ; o nay by God I lie ;
Fy fendliche spirit, for I dare wel telle,
Though thou here walke, thy spirit is in helle.

This messenger cometh fro the king again,
And at the kinges modres court he light,
And she was of this messenger ful fayn,
And plesed him in all that ever she might.
He dranke, and wel his girdel underpight ;
He slepeth, and he snoreth in his gise
All night, until the sonne gan arise.

Eft were his lettres stolen everich on,
And contrefeted lettres in this wise.
The king commanded his constable anon
Up peine of hanging and of high jewise,
That he ne shulde soffren in no wise
Custance within his regne for to abide
Three daies, and a quarter of a tide ;

But in the same ship as he hire fond,
Hire and hire yonge sone, and all hire gere
He shulde put, and croude hire fro the lond,
And charge hire, that she never eft come there.
O my Custance, wel may thy ghost have fere,
And sleping in thy dreame ben in penance,
Whan Donegild cast all this ordinance.

This messenger on morwe whan he awoke,
Unto the castel halt the nexte way ;
And to the constable he the lettre toke ;
And whan that he this pitous lettre sey,
Ful oft he sayd alas, and wala wa ;
Lord Crist, quod he, how may this world endure
So ful of sinne is many a creature.

O mighty God, if that it be thy will,
Sin thou art rightful juge, how may it be
That thou wolt soffren innocence to spill,
And wicked folk regne in prosperitee !
A good Custance, alas ! so wo is me,
That I mote be thy turmentour, or dey
On shames deth, ther is non other wey.

Wepen both yong and old in al that place,
Whan that the king this cursed lettre sent :
And Custance with a dedly pale face
The fourthe day toward the ship she went :
But natheles she taketh in good entent
The will of Crist, and kneeling on the strond
She sayde, Lord, ay welcome be thy sond.

He that me kepte fro the false blame,
While I was in the lond amonges you,
He can me kepe fro harme and eke fro shame
In the salt see, although I se not how :
As strong as ever he was, he is yet now,
In him trust I, and in his mother dere,
That is to me my sail and eke my stere.

Hire litel child lay weping in hire arm,
And kneeling pitously to him she said,
Pees, litel sone, I wol do thee no harm :
With that hire couverchief of hire hed she braid,
And over his litel eyen she it laid,
And in hire arme she lullet it ful fast,
And into the heven hire eyen up she cast.

Mother, quod she, and mayden bright Marie,
Soth is, that thurgh womannes eggement
Mankind was lorne, and damned ay to die,
For which thy child was on a crois yrent :
Thy blisful eyen saw all his turment,
Than is ther no comparison betwene
Thy wo, and any wo man may sustene.

Thou saw thy child yslain before thin eyen,
And yet now liveth my litel child parfay :
Now, lady bright, to whom all woful crien,
Thou glory of womanhed, thou faire may,
Thou haven of refute, bright sterre of day,
Rew on my child, that of thy gentillesse
Rewest on every rewful in distresse.

O litel child, alas ! what is thy gilt,
That never wroughtest sinne as yet parde !
Why wol thin harde father have thee spilt !
O mercy, dere constable, (quod she)
As let my litel child dwell here with thee :
And if thou darst not saven him fro blame,
So kisse him ones in his fadres name.

Therwith she loketh backward to the lond,
And saide ; Farewel, housbond routeles !
And up she rist, and walketh doun the strond
Toward the ship, hire foloweth all the prees :
And ever she praieth hire child to hold his peas,
And taketh hire leve, and with an holy entent
She blesseth hire, and into the ship she went.

led was the ship, it is no drede,
 antly for hire a ful long space :
 er necessaries that shuld nede
 ynow, heried be Goddes grace :
 d and wether, almighty God purchace,
 ng hire home, I can no better say,
 he see she driveth forth hire way.

he king cometh home sone after this
 : castel, of the which I told,
 eth wher his wif and his child is ;
 stable gan about his herte cold,
 inly all the matere he him told
 in herd, I can tell it no better,
 wed the king his sele and his letter ;

ayde ; Lord, as ye commanded me
 e of deth, so have I don certain.
 ssager turmented was, til he
 eknowe, and tellen plat and plain,
 it to night in what place he had lain .
 s by wit and subtil enquering
 d was by whom this harm gan spring.

and was knownen that the lettre wrote,
 the venime of this cursed dede ;
 what wise, certainly I n'ot.
 ct is this, that Alla out of drede
 ler slew, that moun men plainly rede,
 : she traitour was to hire ligeance :
 deth this old Donegild with meschance.

orwe that this Alla night and day
 for his wif and for his child also,
 no tonge that it tellen may.
 ' wol I agen to Custance go,
 teth in the see in peine and wo
 e and more, as liked Cristes sonde,
 hire ship approached to the londe.

: an hethen castel at the last,
 :h the name in my text I not find)
 e and eke hire child the see up cast.
 y God, that saved all mankind,
 : Custance and on hire child som mind,
 len is in hethen hond eftone
 to spill, as I shal tell you sone.

fro the castel cometh ther many a wight
 en on this ship, and on Custance :
 rtly fro the castel on a night,
 les steward (God yeve him meschance)
 that had reneyed our creance,
 to the ship alone, and said, he wolde
 uman be, whether she wolde or n'oldo.

as this wretched woman tho begon,
 lde cried, and she cried pitously :
 ful Mary halpe hire right anon,
 : hire strogling wel and mightily
 :f fell over bord al sodenly,
 he see he drenched for vengeance,
 a hath Crist unwemmed kept Custance.

le lust of luxurie, lo thin ende,
 : that thou faintest mannes mind,
 aily thou wolt his body shende.
 of thy werk, or of thy lustes blind,
 laining : how many may men find,
 t for werk somtime, but for th'entent
 this sinne, ben other slain or shent.

How may this weke woman han the strength
 Hire to defend again this renegade !
 O Goliath, unmesurable of length,
 How mighte David maken thee so mate !
 So yonge, and of armure so desolate,
 How dorst he loke upon thy dredful face !
 Wel may men seen it was but Goddes grace.

Who yaf Judith corage or hardinesse
 To sleen him Holofernes in his tent,
 And to deliver out of wretchednesse
 The peple of God ! I say for this entent,
 That right as God spirit of vigour sent
 To hem, and saved hem out of meschance,
 So sent he might and vigour to Custance.

Forth goth hire ship thurghout the narwe month
 Of Jubaltare and Septe, driving alway,
 Somtime West, and somtime North and South,
 And sometime Est, ful many a wery day :
 Til Cristes moder (blessed be she ay)
 Hath shapen thurgh hire endeles goodnesse
 To make an end of all hire hevinesse.

Now let us stint of Custance but a throw,
 And speke we of the Romane emperour,
 That out of Surrie hath by lettres knowe
 The slaughter of cristen folk, and dishonour
 Don to his daughter by a false traitour,
 I mene the cursed wicked Soudannesse,
 That at the fest let sleen both more and lesse.

For which this emperour hath sent anon
 His senatour, with real ordinance,
 And other lordes, God wote, many on,
 On Surriens to taken high vengeance :
 They brennen, sleen, and bring hem to meschance
 Ful many a day : but shortly this is th'ende,
 Homward to Rome they shapen hem to wende.

This senatour repaireth with victorie
 To Rome ward sayling ful really,
 And met the ship driving, as saith the storie,
 In which Custance sitteth ful pitously :
 Nothing ne knew he what she was, ne why
 She was in swiche array, ne she wil sey
 Of hire estat, though that she shulde dey.

He bringeth hire to Rome, and to his wif
 He yaf hire, and hire yonge sone also :
 And with the senatour she lad hire lif.
 Thus can our lady bringen out of wo
 Woful Custance, and many another mo :
 And longe time dwelled she in that place,
 In holy werkes ever, as was hire grace.

The senatoures wif her aunte was,
 But for all that she knew hire never the more :
 I wol no longer tarien in this cas,
 But to king Alla, which I spake of yore,
 That for his wif wepeth and siketh sore,
 I wol returne, and let I wol Custance
 Under the senatoures governance.

King Alla, which that had his moder slain,
 Upon a day fell in swiche repentance,
 That if I shortly tellen shal and plain,
 To Rome he cometh to receive his penance,
 And putte him in the popes ordinance
 In high and low, and Jesu Crist besought,
 Foryeve his wicked werkes that he had wrought

The fame anon thurghout the toun is born,
How Alla king shal come on pilgrimage,
By herbergeours that wenten him befor,
For which the senatour, as was usage,
Rode him againe, and many of his linage,
As wel to shewen his high magnificence,
As to don any king a reverence.

Gret chere doth this noble senatour
To king Alla, and he to him also;
Everich of hem doth other gret honour;
And so befell, that in a day or two
This senatour is to king Alla go
To fest, and shortly, if I shal not lie,
Custances sone went in his compaignie.

Som men wold sain at requeste of Custance
This senatour hath lad this child to feste:
I may not tellen every circumstance,
Be as be may, ther was he at the leste:
But soth is this, that at his mothers heste
Befor Alla, during the metes space,
The child stood, loking in the kinges face.

This Alla king hath of this child gret wonder,
And to the senatour he said anon,
Whos is that faire child that stondeth yonder?
I no't, quod he, by God and by Seint John;
A moder he hath, but fader hath he non,
That I of wote: but shortly in a stound
He told Alla how that this child was found.

But God wot, quod this senatour also,
So vertuous a liver in all my lif
Ne saw I never, as she, ne herd of mo
Of worldly woman, maiden, widewe or wif:
I dare wel sayn hire hadde lever a knif
Thurghout hire brest, than ben a woman wikke,
Ther is no man coude bring hire to that prikke.

Now was this child as like unto Custance
As possible is a creature to be:
This Alla hath the face in remembrance
Of dame Custance, and theron mused he,
If that the childes moder were aught she
That is his wif, and prively he sighte,
And sped him fro the table that he mighte.

Parfay, thought he, fantome is in min hed.
I ought to deme of skilful jugement,
That in the salte see my wif is ded.
And afterward he made his argument;
What wot I, if that Crist have hider sent
My wif by see, as wel as he hire lent
To my contree, fro thennes that she went?

And after noon home with the senatour
Goth Alla, for to see this wonder chance.
This senatour doth Alla gret honour,
And hastily he sent after Custance:
But trusteth wel, hire luste not to dance.
Whan that she wiste wherfore was that sonde,
Unnethe upon hire feet she mighte stonde.

Whan Alla saw his wif, faire he hire grette,
And wept, that it was routhe for to see,
For at the firste look he on hire sette
He knew wel veraily that it was she:
And she for sorwe, as domb stant as a tree:
So was hire herto shette in hire distresse,
Whan she remembered his unkindenesse.

Twies she swouneth in his owen sight,
He wepeth and him excuseth pitously:
Now God, quod he, and all his halwes bright
So wisly on my soule as have mercy,
That of youre harme as gilteles am I,
As is Maurice my sone, so like your face,
Elles the fend me fetche out of this place.

Long was the sobbing and the bitter peine,
Or that hir woful hertes mighten cese,
Gret was the pitee for to here hem pleine,
Thurgh whiche pleintes gan hir wo encrease.
I pray you all my labour to relese,
I may not tell hir wo until to-morwe,
I am so wery for to speke of sorwe.

But finally, whan that the soth is wist,
That Alla gilteles was of hire wo,
I trow an hundred times han they kist,
And swiche a blisse is ther betwix hem two,
That save the joye that lasteth evermo,
Ther is non like, that any creature
Hath seen or shal, while that the world may dreme.

Tho praied she hire husbond mekely
In releef of hire longe pitous pine,
That he wold pray hire fader specially,
That of his magestee he wold encline
To vouchesauf som day with him to dine:
She praied him eke, he shulde by no way
Unto hire fader no word of hire say.

Som men wold sayn, how that the child Maurice
Doth this message until this emperour:
But as I gesse, Alla was not so nice,
To him that is so souveraine of honour,
As he that is of cristen folk the flour,
Send any child, but it is bet to deme
He went himself, and so it may wel seme.

This emperour hath granted gentilly
To come to dinner, as he him besoughte:
And wel rede I, he loked besily
Upon this child, and on his daughter thought.
Alla goth to his inne, and as him ought
Arraied for this feste in every wise,
As ferforth as his conning may suffice.

The morwe came, and Alla gan him dresse,
And eke his wif, this emperour to mete:
And forth they ride in joye and in gladnesse,
And whan she saw hire fader in the strete,
She light adoun and falleth him to fete.
Fader, quod she, your yonge child Custance
Is now ful clene out of your remembrance.

I am your daughter, your Custance, quod she,
That whilom ye han sent into Surrie;
It am I, fader, that in the salte see
Was put alone, and dampned for to die.
Now, goode fader, I you mercy crie,
Send me no more into non hethenesse,
But thanketh my lord here of his kindenesse.

Who can the pitous joye tellen all
Betwix hem thre, sin they ben thus ymette!
But of my tale make an ende I shal,
The day goth fast, I wol no longer lette.
Thise glade folk to dinner ben ysette,
In joy and blisse at mete I let hem dwell,
A thousand fold wel more than I can tell.

hild Maurice was sithen emperour
the pope, and lived cristenly,
as chirche did he gret honour :
all his storie passen by,
nce is my tale specially,
de Romane gestes men may find
lif, I bere it not in mind.

ing Alla, whan he his time sey,
Custance, his holy wif so swete,
and ben they come the righte wey,
they live in joye and in quiete.
while it lasteth I you hete,
his world for time wol not abide,
to night it changeth as the tide.

ived ever in swiche delite o day,
ne meved other conscience,
talent, or som kin affray,
pride, or passiou, or offence ?
but for this end this sentence,
l while in joye or in plesance
the blisse of Alla with Custance.

For deth, that taketh of hie and low his rente,
Whan passed was a yere, even as I gesse,
Out of this world this king Alla he hente,
For whom Custance hath ful gret hevinesse.
Now let us praien God his soule blesse :
And dame Custance, finally to say,
Toward the toun of Rome goth hire way.

To Rome is come this holy creature,
And findeth ther hire frendes hole and sound :
Now is she scaped all hire aventure :
And whan that she hire fader hath yfound,
Down on hire knees falleth she to ground,
Weping for tendernesse in herte blithe
She herieth God an hundred thousand sith.

In vertue and in holy almesse dede
They liven alle, and never asonder wende ;
Till deth departeth hem, this lif they lede :
And fareth now wel, my tale is at an ende.
Now Jesu Crist, that of his might may sende
Joye after wo, governe us in his grace,
And kepe us alle that ben in this place.

THE WIF OF BATHES TALE.

THE WIF OF BATHES PROLOGUE.

nce, though non auctoritee
this world, is right ynough for me
of wo that is in mariage :
lings, sin I twelf yere was of age,
d be God that is eterne on live)
les at chirche dore have I had five,
often might han wedded be)
were worthy men in hir degree.
e was told, not longe time agon is,
en Crist ne went never but onis
ing, in the Cane of Galilee,
that ilke ensample taught he me,
e shulde wedded be but ones.
e eke, which a sharpe word for the nones,
welle Jesu, God and man,
reprehe of the Samaritan :
st yhadde five husbonds, sayde he ;
ke man, that now hath wedded thee,
yn husbond : thus said he certain ;
at he ment therby, I can not sain.
I aske, why that the fiftre man
husbond to the Samaritan ?
ny might she have in mariage ?
I never tellen in min age
is noumbre diffinition ;
y devine, and glosen up and doun.
el I wot, expresse withouten lie
us for to wex and multiplie ;
til text can I wel understand.
I wot, he sayd, that min husbond
ve fader and moder, and take to me ;
o noumbre mention made he,
nie or of octogamie ;
uld men than speke of it vilanie ?

Lo here the wise King Dan Salomon,
I trow he hadde wives mo than on,
(As wolde God it leful were to me)
To be refreshed half so oft as he)
Which a gift of God had he for alle his wives ?
No man hath swiche, that in this world on live is.
God wot, this noble king, as to my witte,
The firste night had many a mery fitte
With eche of hem, so wel was him on live.
Blessed be God that I have wedded five,
Welcome the sixthe whan that ever he shall.
For sith I wol not kepe me chaste in all,
Whan min husbond is fro the world ygon,
Som cristen man shal wedden me anon.
For than the apostle saith, that I am fre
To wedde, a' goddes half, wher it liketh me.
He saith, that to be wedded is no sinne ;
Better is to be wedded than to brinne.

What rekketh me though folk say vilanie
Of shrewed Lamech, and his bigamie ?
I wot wel Abraham was an holy man,
And Jacob eke, as fer as ever I can,
And eche of hem had wives mo than two,
And many another holy man also.
Wher can ye seen in any maner age
That highe God defended mariage
By expresse word ? I pray you telleth me,
Or wher commanded he virginitee ?
I wot as wel as ye, it is no drede,
The apostle, whan he spake of maidenhede,
He said, that precept therof had he non :
Men may conseilte a woman to ben on,
But conseilling is no commandement ;
He put it in our owen jugement.

For hadde God commanded maidenhede,
Than had he dampned wedding out of drede ;
And certes, if ther were no sede ysowe,
Virginitee than wherof shuld it growe ?

Pou'e dorste not commanden at the lest
 A thing, of which his maister yaf non heest.
 The dart is sette up for virginitee,
 Catch who so may, who renneth best let see.
 But this word is not take of every wight,
 But ther as God wol yeve it of his might.
 I wot wel that the apostle was a maid,
 But natheles, though that he wrote and said,
 He wold that every wight were swiche as he,
 All n'is but conseil to virginitee.
 And for to ben a wif he yaf me leve,
 Of indulgence, so n'is it non repreve
 To wedden me, if that my make die,
 Withoute exception of bigamie ;
 All were it good no woman for to touche,
 (He ment as in his bed or in his couche)
 For peril is both fire and tow to assemble ;
 Ye know what this ensample may resemble.

This is all and som, he held virginitee
 More parfit than wedding in freelte :
 (Freelte clepe I, but if that he and she
 Wold lede hir lives all in chastitee)
 I graunt it wel, I have of non envie,
 Who maidenhed preferre to bigamie ;
 It liketh hem to be cleene in body and gost :
 Of min estat I wol not maken bost.

For wel ye know, a lord in his houshold
 Ne hath nat every vessell all of gold :
 Som ben of tree ; and don hir lord service.
 God clepeth folk to him in sondry wise,
 And everich hath of God a propre gift,
 Som this, som that, as that him liketh shift.
 Virginitee is gret perfection,
 And continence eke with devotion :
 But Crist, that of perfection is welle,
 Ne bade not every wight he shulde go selle
 All that he had, and yeve it to the poure,
 And in swiche wise folow him and his lore :
 He spake to hem that wold live parfitly,
 And, lordings, (by your leve) that am nat I ;
 I wol bestow the flour of all myn age
 In th' actes and the fruit of mariage.

Tell me also, to what conclusion
 Were membres made of generation,
 And of so parfit wise a wight ywrought ?
 Trusteth me wel, they were nat made for nought.
 Glose who so wol, and say bothe up and down,
 That they were made for purgatioun
 Of urine, and of other thinges smale,
 And eke to know a female from a male :
 And for non other cause I say ye no !
 The experience wot wel it is not so.
 So that the clerkes be not with me wroth,
 I say this, that they maked ben for both,
 This is to sayn, for office, and for ese
 Of engendrure, ther we not God displese.
 Why shuld men elles in hir bookes sette,
 That man shal yelden to his wif hire dette ?
 Now wherwith shuld he make his payement,
 If he ne used his sely instrument ?
 Than were they made upon a creature
 To purge urine, and eke for engendrure.

But I say not that every wight is hold,
 That hath swiche harneis as I to you told,
 To gon and usen hem in engendrure ;
 Than shuld men take of chastitee no cure.
 Crist was a maide, and shapen as a man,
 And many a seint, sith that this world began,
 Yet lived they ever in parfit chastitee.
 I n'll envie with no virginitee.

Let hem with bred of pured whete be fed,
 And let us wives eten barly bred.
 And yet with barly bred, Mark tellen can,
 Our Lord Jesu refreshed many a man.
 In swiche estat as God hath cleped us,
 I wol persever. I n'am not precious,
 In wifhode wol I use min instrument
 As frely as my maker hath it sent.
 If I be dangerous God yeve me sorwe,
 Min husbond shal it have both even and morwe,
 Whan that him list come forth and pay his dette.
 An husbond wol I have, I wol not lette,
 Which shal be both my dettour and my thrall,
 And have his tribulation withall
 Upon his flesh, while that I am his wif.
 I have the power during all my lif
 Upon his propre body, and nat he ;
 Right thus the apostle told it unto me,
 And bad our husbands for to love us wel ;
 All this sentence me liketh every del.

Up stert the pardoner, and that anon ;
 Now, dame, quod he, by God and by Seint John,
 Ye ben a noble prechour in this cas.
 I was about to wed a wif, alas !
 What ! shuld I bie it on my flesh so dere ?
 Yet had I lever wed no wif to-yere.

Abide, quod she, my tale is not begonne.
 Nay, thou shalt drinken of another tonne
 Er that I go, shal savour worse than ale.
 And whan that I have told thee forth my tale
 Of tribulation in mariage,
 Of which I am expert in all min age,
 (This is to sayn, myself hath ben the whippe)
 Than maiest thou chesen wheder thou wolt sippe
 Of thilke tonne, that I shal abroche.
 Beware of it, er thou to neigh approche.
 For I shal tell ensamples mo than ten :
 Who so that n'll beware by other men
 By him shal other men corrected be :
 Thise same wordes writeth Ptholomee,
 Rede in his Almageste, and take it there.

Dame, I wold pray you, if your will it were,
 Sayde this pardoner, as ye began,
 Tell forth your tale, and spareth for no man,
 And techeth us yonge men of your practike.
 Gladly, quod she, sin that it may you like.
 But that I pray to all this compaignie,
 If that I speke after my fantasie,
 As taketh not a greefe of that I say,
 For min entente is not but for to play.

Now, sires, than wol I tell you forth my tale.
 As ever mote I drinken win or ale
 I shal say soth, the husbondes that I had
 As three of hem were good, and two were bad.
 The three were goode men and riche and olde.
 Unethes mighten they the statute holde,
 In which that they were bounden unto me.
 Ye wot wel what I mene of this parde.
 As God me helpe, I laugh whan that I think,
 How pitously a-night I made hem swinke,
 But by my fay, I tolde of it no store :
 They had me yeven hir lond and hir tresore,
 Me neded not do lenger diligence
 To win hir love, or don hem reverence.
 They loved me so wel by God above,
 That I ne tolde no deintee of hir love.
 A wise woman wol besie hire ever in on
 To geten hir love, ther as she hath non.
 But sith I had hem hollv in min hond,
 And that they hadde yeven me all hir lond,

Ild I taken kepe hem for to plesce,
 are for my profit, or min ese !
 I so a-werke by my fay,
 ny a night they songen wala wa.
 n was not fet for hem, I trow,
 men have in Essex at Donmow.
 ed hem so wel after my lawe,
 e of hem ful blisful was and fawe
 en me gay thinges fro the feyre.
 e ful glade whan I spake hem fayre,
 it wot, I chidde hem spytously.
 eneth how I bare me proprely.
 e wives, that can understand,
 I ye speke, and bere hem wrong on hond,
 so boldely can ther no man
 nd lien as a woman can.
 t this by wives that ben wise,
 be whan they hem misavise.)
 if if that she can hire good,
 n hem on hond the cow is wood,
 n witnesse of hire owen mayd
 sent : but herkeneth how I sayd.
 de kaynard, is this thin aray !
 ny neigheboures wif so gay !
 noured over al wher she goth,
 ome, I have no thrifty cloth.
 st thou at my neigheboours hous ?
 faire ! art thou so amorous !
 wnest thou with our maide ? *benedicite*,
 lechour, let thy japes be.
 I have a gossib, or a frend,
 ten gilt) thou chidest as a fend,
 walke or play unto his hous.
 comest home as drunken as a mous,
 chest on thy benche, with evil prefe :
 st to me, it is a gret meschiefe
 poure woman, for costage :
 at she be riche of high parage,
 st thou, that it is a tourmentrie
 hire pride and hire melancolie.
 at she be faire, thou veray knave,
 st that every holour wol hire have.
 no while in chastitee abide,
 assailed upon every side.
 st som folk desire us for richesse,
 our shape, and som for our fairnesse,
 , for she can other sing or dance,
 , for gentillesse and daliance,
 hire hondes and hire armes smale :
 h all to the devil by thy tale.
 st, men may not kepe a castel wal,
 o long assailed be over al.
 at she be foul, thou sayst, that she
 every man that she may see ;
 spaniel, she wol on him lepe,
 nay finden som man hire to chepe.
 so grey goos goth ther in the lake,
 t thou) that wol ben withoute a make.
 st, it is an hard thing for to welde
 that no man wol, his thanks, helde.
 sayst thou, lorel, whan thou gost to bed,
 : no wise man nedeth for to wed,
 an that entendeth unto heven.
 ide thonder dint and fry leven
 r welked nekke be to-broke.
 sayst, that dropping houses, and eke smoke,
 ling wives maken men to flee
 ir owen hous ; a, *benedicite*,
 leth swiche an old man for to chide ?
 sayst, we wives wol our vices hide,

Til we be fast, and than we wol hem shewe.
 Wel may that be a proverbe of a shrewe.

Thou sayst, that oxen, asses, horn, and houndes,
 They ben assuied at diverse stoundes,
 Basines, lavoures, or that men hem bie,
 Spones, stooles, and all swiche husbandrie,
 And so ben pottes, clothes, and aray,
 But folk of wives maken non assay,
 Til they ben wedded, olde dotard shrewe !
 And than, sayst thou, we wol our vices shewe.

Thou sayst also, that it displeseth me,
 But if that thou wolt preisen my beautee,
 And but thou pore alway upon my face,
 And clepe me faire dame in every place ;
 And but thou make a feste on thilke day
 That I was borne, and make me fresh and gay,
 And but thou do to my norice honour,
 And to my chamberere within my bour,
 And to my faders folk, and myn allies ;
 Thus sayst thou, olde barel ful of lies.

And yet also of our prentis Jankin,
 For his criske here, shining as gold so fin,
 And for he squiereth me both up and down,
 Yet hast thou caught a false suspicion :
 I wol him nat, though thou were ded to-morwe.

But tell me this, why hidest thou with sorwe
 The keies of thy chest away fro me !
 It is my good as wel as thin parde.
 What, wenest thou make an idiot of our dame !
 Now by that Lord that cleped is Seint Jame,
 Thou shalt nat bothe, though that thou were wood,
 Be maister of my body and of my good,
 That on thou shalt forgo maugre thin eyen.
 What helpeth it of me to enquire and spien !
 I trow thou woldest locke me in thy cheste.
 Thou shuldest say, Fayr wif, go wher thee leste ;
 Take your disport ; I wol nat leve no tales ;
 I know you for a trewe wif, dame Ales.

We love no man, that taketh kepe or charge
 Wher that we gon, we wol be at our large.
 Of alle men yblessed mote he be
 The wise astrologien Dan Ptholomee,
 That sayth this proverbe in his Almageste :
 Of alle men his wisdom is higheste,
 That rekketh not who liath the world in hond.

By this proverbe thou shalt wel understound,
 Have thou ynough, what thar thee rekke or care
 How merily that other folkes fare !
 For certes, olde dotard, by your leve,
 Ye shullen have queint right ynough at eve.
 He is to gret a nigard that wol werne
 A man to light a candel at his lanterne ;
 He shal have never the lesse light parde.
 Have thou ynough, thee thar not plainen thee.

Thou sayst also, if that we make us gay
 With clothing and with precious array,
 That it is peril of our chastitee.
 And yet, with sorwe, thou enforcest thee,
 And sayst these wordes in the apostles name :
 In habit made with chastitee and shame
 Ye women shul appareile you, (quod he)
 And nat in tressed here, and gay perrie,
 As perles, ne with gold, ne clothes riche.

After thy text, ne after thy rubriche
 I wol not work as mochel as a gnat.

Thou sayst also, I walke out like a cat ;
 For who so wolde sengo the cattes skin,
 Than wol the cat wel dwellen in hire in ;
 And if the cattes skin be sleke and gay,
 She wol nat dwellen in hous half a day,

But forth she wol, or any day be dawed,
To shew hire skin, and gon a caterwawed.
This is to say, if I be gay, sire shrewe,
I wol renne out, my borel for to shewe.
Sire olde fool, what helpeth thee to spien ?
Though thou pray Argus with his hundred eyen
To be my wardecorpe, as he can best,
In faith he shal not kepe me but me lest :
Yet coude I make his berd, so mote I the.

Thou sayest eke, that ther ben thinges three,
Which thinges gretly troublen all this erthe,
And that no wight ne may endure the ferthe :
O lefe sire shrewe, Jesu short thy lif.

Yet prechest thou, and sayst, an hateful wif
Yrekened is for on of thise meschances.
Be ther non other maner resemblances
That ye may liken your parables to,
But if a sely wif be on of the ?

Thou likenest eke womans love to helle,
To barrien lond, ther water may not dwelle.

Thou likenest it also to wilde fire ;
The more it brenneth, the more it hath desire
To consume every thing, that brent wol be.

Thou sayest, right as wormes shende a tre,
Right so a wif destroioeth hir husband ;
This knowen they that ben to wives bond.

Lordings, right thus, as ye han understond,
Bare I stifly min old husbondes on hond,
That thus they saiden in hir dronkenness ;
And all was false, but as I toke witness
On Jankin, and upon my nece also.
O Lord, the peine I did hem, and the wo,
Ful gilteles, by Goddes swete pine ;
For as an hors, I coude bite and whine ;
I coude plain, and I was in the gilt,
Or elles oftentime I had ben spilt.
Who so first cometh to the mill, first grint ;
I plained first, so was our werre ystint.
They were ful glad to excusen hem ful blive
Of thing, the which they never agilt hir live.
Of wenches wold I beren hem on hond,
Whan that for sike unnethes might they stond,
Yet tikeled I his herte for that he
Wend that I had of him so gret chiertee :
I swore that all my walking out by night
Was for to espien wenches that he dight :
Under that colour had I many a mirth.
For all swiche wit is yeven us in our birth ;
Deceite, weping, spinning, God hath yeven
To women kindly, while that they may liven.
And thus of o thing I may avauten me,
At th'ende I had the beter in eche degree,
By sleight or force, or by som maner thing,
As by continual murmur or grutching,
Namely a-bed, ther hadden they meschance,
Ther wold I chide, and dou hem no plesance :
I wold no lenger in the bed abide,
If that I felt his arme over my side,
Til he had made his raunson unto me,
Than wold I soffre him do his nicetee.
And therefore every man this tale I tell,
Winne who so may, for all is for to sell :
With empty hond men may no haukes lure,
For winning wold I all his lust endure,
And maken me a feined appetit,
And yet in bacon had I never delit :
That maketh me that ever I wold hem chide.
For though the pope had sitten hem beside,
I wold not spare hem at hir owen bord,
For by my trouthe I quitte hem word for word.

As helpe me veray God omnipotent,
Tho I right now shuld make my testament,
I ne owe hem not a word, that it n'is quit,
I brought it so abouten by my wit,
That they must yeve it up, as for the best,
Or elles had we never ben in rest.
For though he loked as a wood leon,
Yet shuld he faille of his conclusion.

Than wold I say, now, goode lefe, take kepe,
How mekely loketh Wilkin oure shepe !
Come ner my spouse, and let me be thy cheke.
Ye shulden be al patient and meke,
And han a swete spiced conscience,
Sith ye so preche of Jobes patienca.
Suffreth alway, sin ye so wel can preche,
And but ye do, certain we shal you teche
That it is faire to han a wif in pees.

On of us two moste bowen douteles :
And, sith a man is more reasonable
Than woman is, ye mosten ben suffrable.
What aileth you to grutchen thus and grone ?
Is it for ye wold have my queint alone ?
Why take it all : lo, have it every del.
Peter, I shrew you but ye love it wel.
For if I wolde sell my *belle chose*,
I coude walke as fresshe as is a rose,
But I wol kepe it for your owen toth.

Ye be to blame, by God, I say you soth.
Swiche maner wordes hadden we on bond.
Now wol I speken of my fourthe husband.

My fourthe husbonde was a revellour,
This is to sayn, he had a paramour,
And I was yonge and ful of ragerie,
Stibborne and strong, and joly as a pie.
Tho coude I dancen to an harpe smale,
And sing ywis as any nightingale,
Whan I had dronke a draught of swete wine.
Metellius, the foule cherle, the swine,
That with a staf beraft his wif hire lif
For she drank wine, though I had ben his wif,
Ne shuld he not have daunted me fro drinke :
And after wine of Venus most I thinke.
For al so siker as cold engendreth hayl,
A likerous mouth most han a likerous tayl.
In woman vinolent is no defence,
This knowen lechours by experience.

But, lord Crist, whan that it remembreth me
Upon my youth, and on my jolitee,
It tikleth me about myn herte-rote.
Unto this day it doth myn herte bote,
That I have had my world as in my time.
But age, alas ! that all wol envenime,
Hath me beraft my beautee and my pith :
Let go, farewell, the devil go therwith.
The flour is gon, ther n'is no more to tell,
The bren, as I best may, now moste I sell.
But yet to be right mery wol I fond.
Now forth to tellen of my fourthe husband.

I say, I had in herte gret despit,
That he of any other had delit ;
But he was quit by God and by Seint Joco :
I made him of the same wood a croce,
Not of my body in no foule manere,
But certainly I made folk swiche chere,
That in his owen grese I made him frie
For anger, and for veray jalousie.
By God, in erth I was his purgatorie,
For which I hope his soule be in glorie.
For, God it wote, he sate ful oft and songe,
Whan that his sho ful bitterly him wronge.

s no wight, save God and he, that wiste
 a wise how sore that I him twiste.
 whan I came fro Jerusalem,
 ygrave under the rode-beem :
 toombe not so curious
 he sepulchre of him Darius,
 hat Appelles wrought so sotelly.
 wast to bury hem preciously.
 farewell, God give his soule rest,
 w in his grave and in his chest.
 f my fifthe husbonde wol I telle :
 his soule never come in helle.
 was he to me the moeste shrew,
 : I on my ribbes all by rew,
 r shal, unto min ending day.
 ur bed he was so fresh and gay,
 rwithall he coude so wel me glose,
 at he wolde han my *belle chose*,
 ough he had me bet on every bon,
 e win agen my love anon.
 love him the bet, for he
 his love so dangerous to me.
 men han, if that I shal not lie,
 atere a quiteinte fantasie.
 hat thing we may nat lightly have,
 r wol we cry all day and crave.
 us thing, and that desiren we ;
 us fast, and thanne wol we flee.
 iger uttren we all our chaffare ;
 es at market maketh dere ware,
 ret chepe is holden at lital prise ;
 weth every woman that is wise.
 the husbonde, God his soule blesse,
 at I toke for love and no richesse,
 me was a clerk of Oxenforde,
 left scole, and went at home at borde
 gossib, dwelling in oure toun :
 hire soule, hire name was Alisoun.
 r my herte and all my privetee,
 our parish preest, so mote I the.
 ewried I my conseil all ;
 my husband pissed on a wall,
 thing that shuld have cost his lif,
 and to another worthy wif,
 y nece, which that I loved wel,
 ve told his conseil every del.
 did ful often, God it wote,
 le his face ful often red and hote
 y shame, and blamed himself, for he
 to me so gret a privetee.
 befell that ones in a Lent,
 times I to my gossib went,
 yet I loved to be gay,
 o walke in March, April, and May
 us to hous, to heren sondry tales)
 kin clerk, and my gossib dame Ales,
 yself, into the felde went.
 bond was at London all that Lent ;
 : better leiser for to pleic,
 o see, and eke for to be seie
 folk ; what wist I wher my grace
 en for to be, or in what place I
 made I my visitations
 s, and to processions,
 ings eke, and to thise pilgrimages,
 of miracles, and mariages,
 ed upon my gay skarlet gites.
 rmes, ne thise mothes, ne thise mites
 paraille frett hem never a del,
 t thou why I for they were used wel.

Now wol I tellen forth what happed me :
 I say, that in the felde walked we,
 Till trewely we had swiche daliance
 This clerk and I, that of my purveance
 I spake to him, and said him how that he,
 If I were widewe, shulde wedden me.
 For certainly, I say for no bobance,
 Yet was I never without purveance
 Of mariage, ne of other thinges eke :
 I hold a mouses wit not worth a leke,
 That hath but on hole for to starten to,
 And if that faille, than is all ydo.
 I bare him on hond he had enchanted me ;
 (My dame taughte me that subtiltee)
 And eke I sayd, I mette of him all night,
 He wold han slain me, as I lay upright,
 And all my bed was full of veray blood ;
 But yet I hope that ye shuln do me good :
 For blood betokeneth gold, as me was taught.
 And al was false, I dremed of him right naught,
 But as I folwed ay my dames lore,
 As wel of that as of other thinges more.
 But now, sire, let me see, what shall I sain !
 A ha, by God I have my tale again.
 Whan that my fourthe husbonde was on bere,
 I wept algate and made a sory chere,
 As wives moten, for it is the usage ;
 And with my covercheffe covered my visage ;
 But, for that I was purveyed of a make,
 I wept but smal, and that I undertake.
 To chirche was myn husband born a-morwe
 With neigheboours that for him maden sorwe,
 And Jankin oure clerk was on of tho :
 As helpe me God, whan that I saw him go
 After the bere, me thought he had a paire
 Of legges and of feet, so clene and faire,
 That all my herte I yave unto his hold.
 He was, I trow, a twenty winter old,
 And I was fourty, if I shal say soth,
 But yet I had alway a coltes toth.
 Gat-tothed I was, and that became me wele,
 I had the print of Seinte Venus sele.
 As helpe me God, I was a lusty on,
 And faire, and riche, and yonge, and wel begon :
 And trewely, as min husbondes tolden me,
 I had the beste queint that mighte be.
 For certes I am all venerian
 In feling, and my herte is marcian :
 Venus me yave my lust and likerousnesse,
 And Mars yave me my sturdy hardinesse.
 Min ascendent was Taure, and Mars therinne :
 Alas, alas, that ever love was sinne !
 I folwed ay min inclination
 By vertue of my constellation :
 That made me that I coude nat withdraw
 My chambre of Venus from a good felaw.
 Yet have I Martes merke upon my face,
 And also in another privee place.
 For God so wisely be my salvation,
 I loved never by no discretion,
 But ever folwed min appetit,
 All were he shorte, longe, blacke, or white,
 I toke no kepe, so that he liked me,
 How poure he was, ne eke of what degree
 What shuld I save ! but at the monthes ende
 This joly clerk Jankin, that was so hende,
 Hath wedded me with gret solempnitee,
 And to him yave I all the lond and fee,
 That ever was me yeven therbefore :
 But afterward repented me ful sore.

He n'olde suffre nothing of my list.
By God he smote me ones with his fist,
For that I root out of his book a lefe,
That of the stroke myn ere wex al defe.
Stibborne I was, as is a leonesse,
And of my tonge a veray jangleresse,
And walke I wold, as I had don beforn,
Fro hous to hous, although he had it sworn :
For which he oftentimes wolde preche,
And me of olde Romaine gestes teche.

How he Sulpitius Gallus left his wif,
And hire forsoke for terme of all his lif,
Not but for open-heded he hire say
Loking out at his dore upon a day.

Another Romaine told he me by name,
That, for his wif was at a sommer game
Without his weting, he forsoke hire eke.

And than wold he upon his Bible seke
That ilke proverbe of Ecclesiaste,
Wher he commandeth, and forbedeth faste,
Man shal not suffer his wif go roule aboute.

Than wold he say right thus withouten doute :
Who so that bildeth his hous all of salwes,
And pricketh his blind hors over the falwes,
And suffereth his wif to go seken halwes,
Is worthy to be honged on the galwes.

But all for nought, I sette not an hawe
Of his proverbes, ne of his olde sawe ;
Ne I wold not of him corrected be.
I hate hem that my vices tellen me,
And so do mo of us (God wote) than I.
This made him wood with me all utterly ;
I n'olde not forbere him in no cas.

Now wol I say you soth by Seint Thomas,
Why that I rent out of his book a lefe,
For which he smote me, so that I was defe.

He had a book, that gladly night and day
For his disport he wolde it rede alway,
He cleped it Valerie, and Theophrast,
And with that book he lough alway ful fast.
And eke ther was a clerk somtime at Rome,
A cardinal, that highte Seint Jerome,
That made a book again Jovinian,
Which book was ther, and eke Tertullian,
Crisippus, Trotula, and Helowis,
That was abbesse not fer fro Paris ;
And eke the paraboles of Salomon,
Ovides art, and bourdes many on ;
And alle thise were bonden in o volume.

And every night and day was his custume
(Whan he had leiser and vacation
From other worldly occupation)
To reden in this book of wikked wives.
He knew of hem mo legendes and mo lives,
Than ben of goode wives in the Bible.

For trusteth wel, it is an impossible,
That any clerk wol speken good of wives,
(But if it be of holy seintes lives)
Ne of non other woman never the mo.
Who painted the leon, telleth me, who t
By God, if wimmen hadden written stories,
As clerkes han, within hir oratories,
They wold have writ of men more wikkednesse,
Than all the merke of Adam may redresse.
The children of Mercury and of Venus
Ben in hir werking ful contrarious.
Mercury loveth wisdom and science,
And Venus loveth riot and dispenche.
And for hir divers disposition,
Eche falleth in others exaltation.

As thus, God wote, Mercury is desolat
In Pisces, wher Venus is exaltat,
And Venus falleth wher Mercury is reised.
Therefore no woman of no clerk is preised.
The clerk whan he is old, and may nought do
Of Venus werkes not worth his old sho,
Than sitteth he doun, and writeth in his dotage,
That wimmen cannot kepe hir mariage.
But now to purpos, why I tolde thee,
That I was beten for a book parde.

Upon a night Jankin, that was our sire,
Red on his book, as he sate by the fire,
Of Eva first, that for hire wikkednesse
Was all mankinde brought to wretchednesse,
For which that Jesu Crist himself was slain,
That bought us with his herte-blood again.

Lo here expresse of wimmen may ye find,
That woman was the losse of all mankind.

Tho redde he me how Sampson lost his heres
Sleping, his lemman kitte hem with hire sheres.
Thurgh whiche treson lost he both his eyen.

Tho redde he me, if that I shal not lien,
Of Hercules, and of his Deianire,
That caused him to set himself a-fire.

Nothing forgat he the care and the wo,
That Socrates had with his wives two ;
How Xantippa cast pisse upon his hed.
This sely man sat still, as he were ded,
He wiped his hed, no more dorst he sain,
But, er the thonder stint ther cometh rain.

Of Pasiphae, that was the queene of Crete,
For shrewednesse him thought the tale swete.
Fie, speke no more (it is a grisely thing)
Of hire horrible lust and hire liking.

Of Clitemnestra for hire lecherie
That falsely made hire husbond for to die,
He redde it with ful good devotion.

He told me eke, for what occasion
Amphiorax at Thebes lost his lif :
My husbond had a legend of his wif
Eriphile, that for an ouche of gold
Hath prively unto the Grekes told,
Wher that hire husbond hidde him in a place.
For which he had at Thebes sory grace.

Of Lima told he me, and of Lucie :
They bothe made hir husbondes for to die,
That on for love, that other was for hate.
Lima hire husbond on an even late
Empoysoned hath, for that she was his fo :
Lucia likerous loved hire husbond so,
That for he shuld alway upon hire thinke,
She yave him swiche a maner love-drinke,
That he was ded er it were by the morwe :
And thus algates husbondes hadden sorwe.

Than told he me, how on Latumeus
Complained to his felaw Arius,
That in his gardin growed swiche a tree,
On which he said how that his wives three
Honged himself for hertes despitous.
O leve brother, quod this Arius,
Yeve me a plant of thilke blessed tree,
And in my gardin planted shal it be.

Of later date of wives hath he redde,
That som han slain hir husbonds in hir bedde,
And let hir lechour dight hem all the night,
While that the corps lay in the flore upright :
And som han driven nailes in hir brain,
While that they slepe, and thus they han hem slau~~n~~
Som han hem yeven poyson in hir drink :
He spake more harm than herte may tethinke.

erwithall he knew of mo proverbes,
his world ther growen gras or herbes.
(quod he) thin habitation
leon, or a foule dragon,
a woman using for to chide.
(quod he) high in the roof abide,
an angry woman down in the hous,
so wikked and contrarious :
m, that hir husbonds loven ay.
yd, a woman cast hire shame away,
cast of hire smock ; and forthermo,
oman, but she be chast also,
gold ring in a sowes nose.
ude wene, or who coude suppose
at in min herte was, and the pine ?
I saw he n'olde never fine
on this cursed book all night,
three leves have I plight
book, right as he redde, and eke
fist so toke him on the cheke,
ire fire he fell bakward adoun.
sterne, as doth a wood leoun,
his fist he smote me on the hed,
e flure I lay as I were ded.
he saw how stille that I lay,
past, and wold have fled away,
last out of my ewough I brayde.
ou slain me, false thief ! I sayde,
y lond thus hast thou mordred me !
ed, yet wol I kissen thee.
he came, and kneled faire adoun,
; dere suster Alisoun,
ne God I shal thee never smite :
ve don it is thyself to wite,
me, and that I thee beseke.
stones I hitte him on the cheke,
; thee, thus much am I awreke.
die, I may no longer speke.
he last, with mochel care and wo
corded by ourselven two :
e all the bridel in min hond
e governance of hous and lond,
s tonge, and of his hond also,
him brenne his book anon right tho.
an that I had gotten unto me
e all the soverainetee,
ne sayd, min owen trewe wif,
list, the terme of all thy lif,
honour, and kepe eke min estat ;
day we never had debat.
me so, I was to him as kinde,
fro Denmark unto Inde,
trewe, and so was he to me :
God that sit in majestee
is soule, for his mercy dere.
say my tale if ye wol here.
e lough whan he had herd all this :
, quod he, so have I joye and blis,
ng preamble of a tale.
an the Sompnour herd the frere gale,
this Sompnour) Goddes armes two,
d entermete him evermo :
men, a flie and eke a frere
every dish and eke matere.
est thou of preambulation ?
ible or trot ; or pees, or go sit doun :
st our disport in this matere.
:thou so, Sire Sompnour ! quod the frere ;
y faith I shal, er that I go,
sompnour swiche a tale or two,

That all the folk shal laughen in this place.

Now elles, frere, I wol beahrewe thy face,
(Quod this Sompnour) and I beahrewe me,
But if I telle tales two or three
Of freres, or I come to Sidenborne,
That I shal make thin herte for to morne :
For wel I wot thy patience is gon.

Our hoste cried ; pees, and that anon ;
And sayde ; let the woman tell hire tale.
Ye fare as folk that dronken ben of ale.
Do, dame, tell forth your tale, and that is best.
Al redy, sire, quod she, right as you lest,
If I have licence of this worthy frere.

Yes, dame, quod he, tell forth, and I wol here.

THE WIF OF BATHES TALE.

In olde dayes of the king Artour,
Of which that Bretons speken gret honour,
All was this lond fulfilled of faerie ;
The Elf-quene, with hire joly compaignie,
Danced ful oft in many a grene mede.
This was the old opinion as I rede ;
I speke of many hundred yeres ago ;
But now can no man see non elves mo,
For now the grete charites and prayeres
Of limitoures and other holy freres,
That serchen every land and every streme,
As thikke as motes in the sonne-beme,
Blissing halles, chambres, kichenes, and boures.
Citees and burghes, castles highe and toures,
Thropes and bernes, shepenes and dairies,
This maketh that ther ben no faeries :
For ther as wont to walken was an elf,
Ther walketh now the limitour himself,
In undermeles and in morweninges,
And sayth his Matines and his holy thinges,
And he goth in his limitatioun.
Women may now go safely up and doun,
In every bush, and under every tree,
Ther is non other incubus but he,
And he ne will don hem no dishonour.

And so befell it, that this king Artour
Had in his hous a lusty bachelor,
That on a day came riding fro river :
And happed, that, alone as she was borne,
He saw a maiden walking him beforne,
Of which maid he anon, maugre hire hed,
By veray force beraft hire maidenhed :
For which oppression was swiche clamour,
And swiche pursuite unto the king Artour,
That damned was this knight for to be ded
By cours of lawe, and shuld have lost his hed,
(Paraventure swiche was the statute tho,)
But that the quene and other ladies mo
So longe praieden the king of grace,
Til he his lif him granted in the place,
And yaf him to the quene, all at hire will
To chese whether she wold him save or spill.

The quene thanketh the king with al hire might,
And after this thus spake she to the knight,
Whan that she saw hire time upon a day.

Thou standest yet (quod she) in swiche array,
That of thy lif yet hast thou no seuretee ;
I grant thee lif, if thou canst tellen me,

What thing is it that women most desiren :
Beware, and kepe thy nekke-bone from yren.
And if thou canst not tell it me anon,
Yet wol I yeve thee leve for to gon
A twelvemonth and a day, to seke and lere
An answer sufficient in this matere.
And seuretee wol I have, or that thou pace,
Thy body for to yelden in this place.

Wo was the knight, and sorwefully he siketh ;
But what ! he may not don all as him liketh.
And at the last he chese him for to wende,
And come agen right at the yeres ende
With swiche answer, as God wold him purvay :
And taketh his leve, and wendeth forth his way.

He seketh every hous and every place,
Wher as he hopeth for to finden grace,
To lernen what thing women loven moste :
But he ne coude ariven in no coste,
Wher as he mighte find in this matere
Two creatures according in fere.
Som saiden, women loven best richesse,
Som saiden honour, som saiden jolinesse,
Som riche array, som saiden lust a-bedde,
And oft time to be widewe and to be wedde.

Some saiden, that we ben in herte most esed
Whan that we bon yflatered and ypreised
He goth ful nigh the sothe, I wol not lie ;
A man shal winne us best with flaterie ;
And with attendance, and with businessse
Ben we ylymed bothe more and lesse.

And som men saiden, that we loven best
For to be free, and do right as us leet,
And that no man repreve us of our vice,
But say that we ben wise, and nothing nice.
For trewely ther n'is non of us all,
If any wight wol claw us on the gall,
That we n'ill kike, for that he saith us soth :
Assay, and he shal find it, that so doth.

For be we never so vicious withinne,
We wol be holden wise and clene of sinne.

And som saiden, that gret delit han we
For to be holden stable and eke secre,
And in o purpos stedfastly to dwell,
And not bewreyen thing that men us tell.
But that tale is not worth a rake-stele.
Parde we women connen nothing hele,
Witnessse on Mida ; wol ye here the tale !

Ovide, amonges other thinges smale,
Said, Mida had under his longe heres
Growing upon his hed two asses eres ;
The whiche vice he hid, as he beste might,
Ful subtilly from every mannes sight,
That, save his wif, ther wist of it no mo ;
He loved hire most, and trusted hire also ;
He praised hire, that to no creature
She n'olde tellen of his disfigure.

She swore him, nay, for all the world to winne,
She n'olde do that vilanie, ne sinne,
To make hire husband han so foule a name :
She n'olde not tell it for hire owen shame.
But natheles hire thoughte that she dide,
That she so longe shuld a conseil hide ;
Hire thought it swal so sore aboute hire herte,
That nedely som word hire must asterte ;
And sith she dorst nat telle it to no man,
Doun to a mareis faste by she ran,
Til she came ther, hire herte was a-fire :
And as a bitore bumbleth in the mire,
She laid hire mouth unto the water doun.
Bewrey me not, thou water, with thy soun,

Quod she, to thee I tell it, and no mo,
Min husbond hath long asses eres two.
Now is min herte all hole, now is it out,
I might no lenger kepe it out of dout.
Here may ye see, though we a time abide,
Yet out it moste, we can no conseil hide.
The remenant of the tale, if ye wol here,
Redeth Ovide, and ther ye may it lere.

This knight, of which my tale is specially,
Whan that he saw he might not come therby,
(This is to sayn, what women loven most)
Within his brest ful sorweful was his gost.
But home he goth, he mighte not sojourne,
The day was come, that homward must he turne.
And in his way, it happed him to ride
In all his care, under a forest side,
Wheras he saw upon a dance go
Of ladies foure and twenty, and yet mo.
Toward this ilke dance he drow ful yerne,
In hope that he som wisdom shulde lerne ;
But certainly, er he came fully there,
Yvanished was this dance, he n'iste not wher ;
No creature saw he that bare lif,
Save on the grene he saw sitting a wif,
A fouler wight ther may no man devise.
Againe this knight this olde wif gan arise,
And said ; sire knight, here forth ne lith no way.
Tell me what that ye seken by your fay.
Paraventure it may the better be :
These olde folk con mochel thing, quod she.

My leve mother, quod this knight, certain,
I n'am but ded, but if that I can sain,
What thing it is that women most desire :
Coude ye me wisse, I wold quite wel your hire.
Plight me thy trouthe here in myn hond, quod she,
The nexte thing that I requere of thee
Thou shalt it do, if it be in thy might,
And I wol tell it you or it be night.

Have here my trouthe, quod the knight, I grannte.

Thanne, quod she, I dare me wel avaunte
Thy lif is sauf, for I wol stond therby,
Upon my lif the queene wol say as I :
Let see, which is the proudest of hem alle,
That wereth on a kerchief or a calle,
That dare sayn nay of that I shal you teche.
Let us go forth withouten lenger speche.

Tho rowned she a pistel in his ere,
And bad him to be glad, and have no fere.

Whan they ben comen to the court, this knight
Said, he had hold his day, as he had hight,
And redy was his answer, as he saide.
Ful many a noble wif, and many a maide,
And many a widewe, for that they ben wise,
(The queene hireself sitting as a justice)
Assembled ben, his answer for to here,
And afterward this knight was bode appere.

To every wight commanded was silence,
And that the knight shuld tell in audience,
What thing that worldly women loven best.
This knight ne stood not still, as doth a best,
But to this question anon answered
With manly vois, that all the court it herd.

My liege lady, generally, quod he,
Women desiren to han souverainete,
As well over hir husbond as hir love,
And for to ben in maistrie him above.
This is your most desire, though ye me kille,
Doth as you list, I am here at your wille.

In all the court ne was ther wif ne maide,
Ne widewe, that contraried that he saide,

he was worthy to han his lif.
 ith that word up stert this olde wif,
 at the knight saw sitting on the grene.
 quod she, my souveraine lady quene,
 our court depart, as doth me right.
 this answer unto this knight,
 h he plighte me his trouthe there,
 e thing I wold of him requere,
 it do, if it lay in his might.
 is court than pray I thee, sire knight,
 , that thou me take unto thy wif,
 thou wost, that I have kept thy lif :
 false, say nay upon thy fay.
 night answered, alas and wala wa !
 ht wel that swiche was my behest.
 les love as chese a new request :
 my good, and let my body go.
 an, quod she, I shrewe us bothe two.
 gh that I be olde, foule, and pore,
 or all the metal ne the ore,
 er erthe is grave, or lith above,
 y wif I were and eke thy love.
 e I quod he, nay, my dampnation.
 at any of my nation
 er so foule disparaged be.
 or nought ; the end is this, that he
 ed was, he nedes must hire wed,
 th this olde wif, and goth to bed.
 olden som men sayn paraventure,
 my negligence I do no cure
 you the joye and all the array,
 he feste was that ilke day.
 ch thing shortly answeren I shal :
 r was no joye ne feste at al,
 but hevynesse and mochel sorwe :
 ly he wedded hire on the morwe,
 ay after hid him as an oule,
 a him, his wif lokod so foule.
 as the wo the knight had in his thought
 was with his wif a-bed ybrought,
 sth, and he turneth to and fro.
 de wif lay smiling evermo,
 : O dere husbond, *benedicite*,
 very knight thus with his wif as ye !
 e lawe of king Artoures hous !
 knight of his thus dangerous !
 r owen love, and eke your wif,
 , which that saved hath your lif,
 as yet did I you never unright.
 ye thus with me this firste night !
 like a man had lost his wit.
 ny gilt ! for Goddes love tell it,
 al ben amended, if I may.
 ed ! quod this knight, alas ! nay, nay,
 t ben amended never mo ;
 so lothly, and so olde also,
 to comen of so low a kind,
 wonder is though I walwe and wind ;
 God, min herte wolde brest.
 quod she, the cause of your unrest !
 tainly, quod he, no wonder is.
 re, quod she, I coude amend all this,
 e list, er it were dayes three,
 mighten bere you unto me.
 ye spoken of swiche gentillesse,
 ended out of old richesse,
 fore shullen ye be gentilmen ;
 rogance n'is not worth an hen.
 ho that is most vertuous alway,
 l apert, and most entendeth ay

To do the gentil dedes that he can,
 And take him for the gretest gentilman.
 Crist wol we claime of him our gentillesse,
 Not of our elders for hir old richesse.
 For though they yeve us all hir heritage,
 For which we claime to ben of high parage,
 Yet may they not bequethen, for no thing,
 To non of us, hir vertuous living,
 That made hem gentilmen called to be,
 And bade us folwen hem in swiche degree.
 Wel can the wise poet of Florence,
 That highte Dant, speken of this sentence :
 Lo, in swiche maner rime is Dantes tale.
 Ful selde up riseth by his branches smale
 Prowesse of man, for God of his goodnesse
 Wol that we claime of him our gentillesse :
 For of our elders may we nothing claime
 But temporel thing, that man may hurt and maine
 Eke every wight wot this as wel as I,
 If gentillesse were planted naturelly
 Unto a certain linage down the line,
 Prive and apert, than wold they never fine
 To don of gentillesse the faire office,
 They mighten do no vilanie or vice.
 Take fire and bere it into the derkest hous
 Betwix this and the mount of Caucasus,
 And let men shette the dores, and go thenne,
 Yet wol the fire as faire lie and brenne
 As twenty thousand men might it behold ;
 His office naturel ay wol it hold,
 Up peril of my lif, til that it die.
 Here may ye see wel, how that genterie
 Is not annexed to possession,
 Sith folk ne don hir operation
 Alway, as doth the fire, lo, in his kind.
 For God it wot, men moun ful often find
 A lordes sone do shame and vilanie.
 And he that wol han pris of his genterie,
 For he was boren of a gentil hous,
 And had his elders noble and vertuous,
 And n'ill himselven do no gentil dedes,
 Ne folwe his gentil auncestrie, that ded is,
 He n'is not gentil, be he duk or erl ;
 For vilains sinful dedes make a cherl.
 For gentillesse n'is but the renomée
 Of thin auncestres, for hir high bountee,
 Which is a strange thing to thy persone :
 Thy gentillesse cometh fro God alone.
 Than cometh our veray gentillesse of grace,
 It was no thing bequethed us with our place.
 Thinketh how noble, as saith Valerius,
 Was thilke Tullius Hostilius,
 That out of poverté rose to high noblesse.
 Redeth Sénec, and redeth eke Boece,
 Ther shull ye seen expresse, that it no dred is,
 That he is gentil that doth gentil dedis.
 And therefore, leve husbond, I thus conclude ;
 Al be it that min auncestres weren rude,
 Yet may the highe God, and so hope I,
 Granten me grace to liven vertuously :
 Than am I gentil, whan that I beginne
 To liven vertuously, and weiven ainne.
 And ther as ye of poverté me repreve,
 The highe God, on whom that we beleve,
 In wilful poverté chese to lede his lif :
 And certes, every man, maiden, or wif
 May understond, that Jesus heven king
 Ne wold not chese a vicious living.
 Glad poverté is an honest thing certain.
 This wol Sénec and other clerkcs sain.

Who so that halt him paid of his poverté,
I hold him rich, al had he not a sherte.
He that covelteth is a poure wight,
For he wold han that is not in his might.
But he that nought hath, ne coveteth to have,
Is riche, although ye hold him but a knave.
Veray poverté is sinne proprely.

Juvenal saith of poverté merily :
The poure man whan he goth by the way,
Beforn the theves he may sing and play.
Poverté is hateful good ; and, as I gesse,
A ful gret bringer out of besinesse ;
A gret amender eke of sapience
To him, that taketh it in patience.
Poverté is this, although it seme elenge,
Possession that no wight wol challenge.
Poverté ful often, whan a man is low,
Maketh his God and eke himself to know :
Poverté a spectakel is, as thinketh me,
Thurgh which he may his veray frendes see.
And therfore, sire, sin that I you not greve,
Of my poverté no more me repreve.

Now, sire, of elde, that ye repreven me :
And certes, sire, though non auctoritee
Were in no book, ye gentiles of honour
Sain, that men shuld an olde wight honour,
And clepe him fader, for your gentillesse ;
And auctours shal I finden, as I gesse.

Now thir ye sain that I am foule and old,
Than drode ye not to ben a cokewold.
For filthe, and elde also, so mote I the,
Ben grete wardeins upon chastitee.
But natheles, sin I know your delit,
I shal fulfill your worldly appetit.

Cheese now (quod she) on of thise thinges twey,
To han me foule and old til that I dey,
And be to you a trewe humble wif,
And never you displese in all my lif :
Or elles wol ye han me yonge and faire,
And take your aventure of the reparaie,

That shal be to your hous because of me,
Or in som other place it may wel be !
Now chese yourselfen whether that you liketh.

This knight aviseth him, and sore siketh,
But at the last he said in this manere ;
My lady and my love, and wif so dere,
I put me in your wise governance,
Cheseth yourself which may be most plesance
And most honour to you and me also,
I do no force the whether of the two :
For as you liketh, it sufficeth me.

Than have I got the maisterie, quod she,
Sin I may chese and governe as me lest.
Ye certes, wif, quod he, I hold it best.

Kisse me, quod she, we be no lenger wrothe,
For by my trouth I wol be to you bothe,
This is to sayn, ye bothe faire and good.
I pray to God that I mote sterren wood,
But I to you be al so good and trewe,
As ever was wif, sin that the world was newe ;
And but I be to-morwe as faire to seen,
As any lady, emperice, or queene,
That is betwix the Est and eke the West,
Doth with my lif and deth right as you lest.
Cast up the curtein, loke how that it is.

And whan the knight saw veraily all this,
That she so faire was, and so yonge therto,
For joye he hent hire in his armes two :
His herte bathed in a bath of blisse,
A thousand time a-row he gar hire kisse .
And she obeyed him in every thing,
That mighte don him plesance or liking.
And thus they live unto hir lives ende
In parfit joye, and Jesu Crist us sende
Husbondes meke and yonge, and fresch a-bed,
And grace to overlive hem that we wed.

And eke I pray Jesus to short hir lives,
That wol not be governed by hir wives,
And old and angry nigards of dispence,
God send hem sone a veray pestilence.

THE FRERES TALE.

THE FRERES PROLOGUE.

f. 2
This worthy limitour, this noble Frere,
He made alway a maner louring chere
Upon the Sompnour, but for honestee
No vilains word as yet to him spake he :
But at the last he said unto the wif ;
Dame, (quod he) God yeve you right good lif,
Ye have here touched, all so mote I the, *the*
In scole matere a ful gret difficultee.
Ye han said mochel thing right wel, I say :
But, dame, here as we riden by the way,
Us nedeth not to speken but of game,
And let auctoritees in Goddes name
To preching, and to scole eke of clergie.
But if it like unto this compaignie,
I wol you of a Sompnour tell a game ;
Parde ye may wel knowen by the name,

That of a Sompnour may no good be said ;
I pray that non of you be evil apaid ;
A Sompnour is a renner up and doun
With mandemens for fornicacioun,
And is ybete at every tounes ende.

Tho spake our hoste ; A, sire, ye shuld ben hend
And curteis, as a man of your estat,
In compaignie we wiln have no debat :
Telleth your tale, and let the Sompnour be.
Nay, quod the Sompnour, let him say by me
What so him list ; whan it cometh to my lot,
By God I shal him quiten every grot.
I shal him tellen which a gret honour
It is to be a flatering limitour,
And eke of many another maner crime,
Which nedeth not reheresen at this time,
And his office I shal him tell ywis.
Our hoste answered ; pees, no more of this.
And afterward he said unto the Frere,
Tell forth your tale, min owen maister dere.

THE FRERES TALE.

a ther was dwelling in my cntree
 dedeken, a man of high degree,
 Idely did execution
 shing of fornication,
 hecraft, and eke of bauderie,
 mation, and avouterie,
 che-reves, and of testaments,
 racts, and of lack of sacraments,
 re, and of simonie also ;
 tes lechours did he grettest wo ;
 ulden singen, if that they were hent ;
 ale titheres weren foule yschent,
 ersonne wold upon hem plaine,
 ight astert hem no pecunial peine.
 ale tithes, and smale offering,
 le the peple pitously to sing ;
 the bishop hent hem with his crook
 eren in the archedekens book ;
 ad he thurgh his jurisdiction
 to don on hem correction.
 ad a Sompnour redy to his hond,
 boy was non in Englelond ;
 otily he had his espaille,
 ught him wel wher it might ough availle.
 de spare of lechours on or two,
 en him to foure and twenty mo.
 ough this Sompnour wold be as an hanc,
 his harlotrie I wol not spare,
 ben out of hir correction,
 an of us no jurisdiction,
 er shul have, terme of all hir lives.
 r, so ben the women of the stives,
 his Sompnour, yput out of our cure.
 , with mischance and with misaventure,
 ste said, and let him tell his tale.
 lleth forth, and let the Sompnour gale,
 reth not, min owen maister dere.
 false thief, this Sompnour, quod the frere,
 way baudes redy to his hond,
 hauke to lure in Englelond,
 old him all the secree that they knewe,
 r acquaintance was not come of newe ;
 veren his approvers prively.
 ke himself a gret profit therby :
 ister knew not alway what he wan.
 uten mandement, a lewed man
 ide sompne, up peine of Cristes curse,
 ey were inly glad to fille his purse,
 aken him gret festes at the nale.
 ight as Judas hadde purses smale
 as a thief, right swiche a thief was he,
 aster hadde but half his duetee.
 s (if I shal yeven him his laud)
 f, and eke a Sompnour, and a baud.
 had eke wenches at his retenue,
 whether that sire Robert or sire Hue,
 kke, or Rauf, or who so that it were
 ay by hem, they told it in his cre.
 was the wenche and he of on assent.
 e wold fecche a feined mandement,
 ompne hem to the chapitre bothe two,
 ill the man, and let the wenche go.
 wold he say ; frend, I shal for thy sake
 ike thee out of oure lettres blake ;
 thar no more as in this cas travaille ;
 thy frend ther I may thee availle.

Certain he knew of briboures many mo,
 Than possible is to tell in yeres two :
 For in this world n'is dogge for the bowe,
 That can an hurt dere from an hole yknowe,
 Bet than this Sompnour knew a slie lechour,
 Or an avouter, or a paramour :
 And for that was the fruit of all his rent,
 Therefore on it he set all his entent.

And so befell, that ones on a day —
 This Sompnour, waiting ever on his pray,
 Rode forth to sompne a widewe, an olde ribbe,
 Feining a cause, for he wold han a bribe.
 And happed that he saw befor him ride
 A gay yeman under a forest side :
 A bow he bare, and arwes bright and kene,
 He had upon a courtpey of grene,
 An hat upon his hed with frenges blake.

Sire, quod this Sompnour, haile and wel atake.

Welcome, quod he, and every good felaw ;
 Whider ridest thou under this grene shaw !
 (Saide this yeman) wolt thou fer to-day !

This Sompnour him answerd, and saide, nay.
 Here faste by (quod he) is min entent
 To riden, for to reisen up a rent,
 That longeth to my lordes duetee.

A, art thou than a baillif ! Ye, quod he.
 (He dorste not for veray filth and shame
 Say that he was a Sompnour, for the name.)

De par dieux, quod this yeman, leve brother,
 Thou art a baillif, and I am another.
 I am unknown, as in this cntree.

Of thin acquaintance I wol prayen thee,
 And eke of brotherhed, if that thee list.
 I have gold and silver lying in my chist ;
 If that thee hap to come in to our shire,
 Al shal be thin, right as thou wolt desire.

Grand mercy, quod this Sompnour, by my faith.
 Everich in others hond his trouthe laith,
 For to be sworne brethren til they dey.
 In daliaunce they riden forth and play.

This Sompnour, which that was as ful of jangles,
 As ful of venime ben thise variangles,
 And ever enquering upon every thing,
 Brother, quod he, wher is now your dwelling,
 Another day if that I shuld you seche !

This yeman him answerd in softe speche ;
 Brother, quod he, fer in the North contree,
 Wheras I hope sometime I shal thee see.
 Or we depart I shal thee so wel wisse,
 That of min hous ne shalt thou never misse.

Now brother, quod this Sompnour, I you pray,
 Teche me, while that we riden by the way,
 (Sith that ye ben a baillif as am I)
 Som subtiltee, and tell me faithfully
 In min office how I may moste winne.
 And spareth not for conscience or for sinne,
 But, as my brother, tell me how do ye.

Now by my trouthe, brother min, said he,
 As I shal tellen thee a faithful tale.
 My wages ben ful streit and eke ful smale ;
 My lord is hard to me and dangerous,
 And min office is ful laborious ;
 And therefore by extortion I leve,
 Forsoth I take all that men wol me yeve.
 Algates by sleighte or by violence
 Fro yere to yere I win all my dispence ;
 I can no better tellen faithfully.

Now certes, (quod this Sompnour) so fare I ;
 I spare not to taken, God it wote,
 But if it be to hevry or to hote.

What I may gete in conseil prively,
No maner conscience of that have I.
N'ere min extortion, I might not liven,
Ne of swiche japes wol I not be shriven.
Stomak ne conscience know I non;
I shrew thise shrifte-faders everich on.
Wel be we met by God and by Seint Jame.
But leve brother, tell me than thy name,
Quod this Sompnour. Right in this mene while
This yeman gan a litel for to smile.

Brother, quod he, wolt thou that I thee telle?
I am a fend, my dwelling is in helle,
And here I ride about my purchasing,
To wote wher men wol give me any thing.
My purchas is th'effect of all my rente.
Loke how thou ridest for the same entente
To winnen good, thou rekkest never how,
Right so fare I, for riden wol I now
Unto the worldes ende for a praye.

A, quod this Sompnour, *benedicite*, what say ye?
I wend ye were a yeman trewely.
Ye have a mannes shape as wel as I.
Have ye than a figure determinat
In helle, ther ye ben in your estat?

Nay certainly, quod he, ther have we non,
But whan us liketh we can take us on,
Or elles make you wene that we ben shape
Somtime like a man, or like an ape;
Or like an angel can I ride or go;
It is no wonder thing though it be so,
A lousy jogelour can deceiven thee,
And parde yet can I more craft than he.

Why, quod the Sompnour, ride ye than or gon
In sondry shape, and not alway in on?

For we, quod he, wol us swiche forme make,
As most is able our prey to take.

What maketh you to han al this labour?

Ful many a cause, leve sire Sompnour,
Saide this fend. But alle thing hath time;
The day is short, and it is passed prime,
And yet ne wan I nothing in this day;
I wol entend to winning, if I may,
And not entend our thinges to declare:
For, brother min, thy wit is al to bare
To understand, although I told hem thee.
But for thou axest, why labouren we:
For sometime we be Goddes instruments,
And menes to don his commandements,
Whan that him list, upon his creatures,
In divers actes and in divers figures:
Withouten him we have no might certain,
If that him list to stonden theragain.
And sometime at our praiere han we leve,
Only the body, and not the soule to greve:
Witnesse on Job, whom that we diden wo.
And sometime han we might on bothe two,
This is to sain, on soule and body eke.
And sometime be we suffered for to seke
Upon a man, and don his soule unreste
And not his body, and all is for the beste.
Whan he withstandeth our temptation,
It is a cause of his salvation,
Al be it that it was not our entente
He shuld be sauf, but that we wold him hente.
And sometime be we servants unto man,
As to the archbishop Seint Dunstan,
And to the apostle servant eke was I.

Yet tell me, quod this Sompnour, faithfully,
Make ye you newe bodies thus alway
Of elements! The fend answered, nay:

Somtime we feine, and sometime we arise
With dede bodies, in ful sondry wise,
And speke as renably, and faire, and wel,
As to the Phitoness did Samuel:
And yet wol som men say it was not he.
I do no force of your divinites.
But o thing warne I thee, I wol not jape,
Thou wolt algates wete how we be shape:
Thou shalt hereafterward, my brother dere,
Come, wher thee nedeth not of me to lere,
For thou shalt by thin owen experience
Conne in a chaire rede of this sentence,
Bet than Virgile, while he was on live,
Or Dant also. Now let us riden blive,
Fer I wol holden compaignie with thee,
Til it be so that thou forsake me.

Nay, quod this Sompnour, that shal never betide—
I am a yeman known is ful wide;
My trouthe wol I hold, as in this cas.
For though thou were the devil Sathanas,
My trouthe wol I hold to thee, my brother,
As I have sworne, and eche of us to other,
For to be trewe brethren in this cas,
And bothe we gon abouten our purchas.
Take thou thy part, what that men wol thee yev e,
And I shal min, thus may we bothe leve.
And if that any of us have more than other,
Let him be trewe, and part it with his brother.

I graunte, quod the devil, by my fay.
And with that word they riden forth hir way,
And right at entring of the tounes ende,
To which this Sompnour shope him for to wende,
They saw a cart, that charged was with hay,
Which that a carter drove forth on his way.
Depe was the way, for which the carts stood:
The carter smote, and cried as he were wood,
Heit scot, heit brok, what spare ye for the stones?
The fend (quod he) you fecche body and bones,
As ferforthly as ever ye were foled,
So mochel wo as I have with you tholed.
The devil have al, bothe hors, and cart, and hay.

The Sompnour sayde, here shal we have a pray;
And nere the fend he drow, as nought ne were,
Ful prively, and rouned in his ere:
Herken my brother, herken, by thy faith,
Herest thou not, how that the carter saith?
Hent it anon, for he hath yeve it thee,
Both hay and cart, and eke his caples three.

Nay, quod the devil, God wot, never a del,
It is not his entente, trust thou me wel,
Axe him thyself, if thou not trowest me,
Or elles stint a while and thou shalt see.

This carter thakketh his hors upon the croupe,
And they begonne to drawen and to stoupe.
Heit now, quod he, ther Jesu Crist you blesse,
And all his hondes werk, both more and lease:
That was wel twight, min owen liard boy,
I pray God save thy body and Seint Eloy.
Now is my cart out of the slough parde.

Lo, brother, quod the fend, what told I thee?
Here may ye seen, min owen dere brother,
The cherl spake o thing, but he thought another
Let us go forth abouten our viage;
Here win I nothing upon this cariage.

Whan that they comen somewhat out of toun,
This Sompnour to his brother gan to rounne;
Brother, quod he, here woneth an old rebekke,
That had almost as lefe to lese hire nekke,
As for to yeve a peny of hire good.
I wol have twelf pens though that she be wool.

somone hire to our office ;
 God wot, of hire know I no vice.
 ou canst not, as in this contree,
 y cost, take here ensample of me.
 mpnour clappeth at the widewes gate ;
 he sayd, thou olde very trate ;
 u hast som frere or preest with thee.
 ppeth ? said this wif, *benedicite*,
 you, sire, what is your swete will ?
 quod he, of somons here a bill.
 of cursing, loke that thou be
 before the archedekenes knee,
 e to the court, of certain thinges.
 d, quod she, Crist Jesu, king of kinges,
 elpe me, as I ne may.
 i sike, and that ful many a day.
 go so fer (quod she) ne ride,
 led, so prike it in my side.
 axe a libel, sire Sompnour,
 re ther by my procuratour
 thing as men wold apposen me !
 d this Sompnour, pay anon, let see,
 s to me, and I wol thee acquite.
 rofit han therby but lite :
 r hath the profit and not I.
 nd let me riden hastily ;
 welf pens, I may no lenger tarie.
 ens, quod she, now lady Seinte Marie
 elpe me out of care and sinne,
 world though that I shuld it winne,
 not twelf pens within my hold.
 i wel that I am poure and old ;
 almesse upon me poure wretche.
 a, quod he, the foule fend me fetche,
 excuse, though thou shuldest be spilt.
 uod she, God wot, I have no gilt.
 quod he, or by the swete Seinte Anne
 ere away thy newe panne
 which thou owest me of old,
 thou madest thyn husband cokewold,
 home for thy correction.
 st, quod she, by my salvation,
 never or now, widew ne wif,
 into your court in all my lif ;

Ne never I n'as but of my body trewe.
 Unto the devil rough and blake of hewe
 Yeve I thy body and my panne also.

And whan the devil herd hire cursen so
 Upon hire knees, he sayd in this manere ;

Now, Mahily, min owen moder dere,
 Is this your will in earnest that ye sey ?

The devil, quod she, so fetche him or he dey,
 And panne and all, but he wol him repent.

Nay, olde stot, that is not min entent,
 Quod this Sompnour, for to repenten me
 For any thing that I have had of thee ;
 I wold I had thy smok and every cloth.

Now brother, quod the devil, be not wroth ;
 Thy body and this panne ben min by right.
 Thou shalt with me to helle yet to-night,
 Wher thou shalt knownen of our privetee
 More than a maister of divinitee.

And with that word the foule fend him hent.
 Body and soule, he with the devil went,
 Wher as thise Sompnours han hir heritage ;
 And God that maketh after his image

Mankinde, save and gide us all and some,
 And lene this Sompnour good man to become.

Lordings, I coude have told you, (quod this frere)

Had I had leiser for this Sompnour here,
 After the text of Crist, and Poule, and John,

And of oure other doctours many on,
 Swiche peines, that your hertes might agriso,

Al be it so, that no tonge may devise,
 Though that I might a thousand winter telle,

The peines of thilke cursed hous of helle.
 But for to kepe us fro that cursed place,

Waketh, and prayeth Jesu of his grace,
 So kepe us fro the temptour Sathanas.

Herkneeth this word, beware as in this cas.

The leon sit in his awaite alway

To sle the innocent, if that he may.

Disposeth ay your hertes to withstond

The fend, that you wold maken thral and bond ;

He may not tempten you over your might,

For Crist wol be your champion and your knight ;

And prayeth, that this Sompnour him repent

Of his misedees, or that the fend him hent.

THE SOMPNOURES TALE.

SOMPNOURES PROLOGUE.

nour in his stirops high he stood,
 Frere his herte was so wood,
 n aspen leef he quoke for ire :
 quod he, but o thing I desire,
 che, that of your curtesie,
 herd this false Frere lie,
 se me, I may my tale telle.
 re boasteth that he knoweth helle,
 it wot, that is but litel wonder,
 fendes ben but litel asonder.
 le, ye han often time herd telle,
 a Frere ravished was to helle

In spirit ones by a visioun,
 And as an angel lad him up and down,
 To shewen him the peines that ther were,
 In all the place saw he not a Frere,
 Of other folk he saw ynow in wo.

Unto this angel spake the Frere tho ;
 Now, sire, quod he, han Freres swiche a grace,
 That non of hem shal comen in this place !

Yes, quod this angel, many a millioun :
 And unto Sathanas he lad him down.

(And now hath Sathanas, saith he, a tayl
 Broder than of a carrike is the sayl)

Hold up thy tayl, thou Sathanas, quod he,

Shew forth thin ers, and let the Frere see

Wher is the nest of Freres in this place.

And er than half a furlong way of space,

Right so as bees out swarmen of an hive,
Out of the devils ers ther gonnien drive
A twenty thousand Freres on a route.
And thurghout hell they swarmed al aboute,
And com agen, as fast as they may gon,
And in his ers they crepen everich on :

He clapt his tayl agen, and lay ful still.
This Frere, whan he loked had his fill
Upon the turments of this sory place,
His spirit God restored of his grace
Into his body agen, and he awoke ;
But natheles for fere yet he quoike,
So was the devils ers ay in his mind,
That is his heritage of veray kind.

God save you alle, save this cursed frere ;
My prologue wol I end in this manere.

THE SOMPNOURES TALE.

LORDINGS, ther is in Yorkshire, as I gesse,
A merah contree ycalled Holderneshe,
In which ther went a limitour aboute
To preche, and eke to beg, it is no doute.
And so befell that on a day this frere
Had preched at a chirche in his manere,
And specially aboven every thing
Excited he the peple in his preching
To trentale, and to yeve for Goddes sake,
Wherwith men mighten holy houses make,
Ther as divine service is honoured,
Not ther as it is wasted and devoured,
Ne ther it nedeth not for to be yeven,
As to possessioners, that mowen leven
(Thanked be God) in wele and abundance.
Trentals, sayd he, deliveren fro penance
Hir frendes soules, as wel olde as yonge,
Ye, whan that they ben hastily ysonge,
Not for to hold a preest jolif and gay,
He singeth not but o masse on a day.
Delivereth out (quod he) anon the soules.
Ful hard it is, with fleshhook or with oules
To ben yclawed, or to bren or bake :
Now spede you hastily for Cristes sake.

And whan this frere had said all his entent,
With *qui cum paire* forth his way he went.
Whan folk in chirche had yeve him what hem lest,
He went his way, no lenger wold he rest,
With scrippe and tipped staf, ytucked hic :
In every hous he gan to pore and prie,
And begged mele and chese, or elles corn.
His felaw had a staf tipped with horn,
A pair of tables all of ivory,
And a pointel ypolished fetialy,
And wrote alway the names, as he stood,
Of alle folk that yave hem any good,
Askaunce that he wolde for hem preye.
Yeve us a bushel whete, or malt, or reye,
A Goddes kichel, or a trippe of chese,
Or elles what you list, we may not chese ;
A Goddes halfpeny, or a masse peny ;
Or yeve us of your braun, if ye have any,
A dagon of your blanket, leve dame,
Our suster dere, (lo here I write your name)
Bacon or beef, or swiche thing as ye find.

A sturdy harlot went hem ay behind,
That was hir hostes man, and bare a sakke,
And what men yave hem, laid it on his bakke.

And whan that he was out at dore, anon
He planed away the names everich on,
That he before had written in his tables :
He served hem with niffes and with fables.

Nay, therthouliest, thou Sompnour, quod the frere.
Pees, quod our hoste, for Cristes moder dere,
Tell forth thy tale, and spare it not at all.

So thrive I, quod this Sompnour, so I shall.

So long he went fro hous to hous, til he
Came to an hous, ther he was wont to be
Refreshed more than in a hundred places.
Sike lay the husband man, whos that the place is,
Bedred upon a couche low he lay :

Deus hic, quod he, O Thomas frend, good day,
Sayde this frere all curtisly and soft.

Thomas, quod he, God yelde it you, ful oft
Have I upon this benche faren ful wele,
Here have I eten many a mery mele.

And fro the benche he drove away the cat,
And laied adoun his potent and his hat,
And eke his scrip, and set himself adoun :
His felaw was ywalked into toun
Forth with his knave, into that hostellerie,
Wher as he shope him thilke night to lie.

O dere maister, quod this sike man,
How have ye faren sin that March began ?
I saw you not this fourtene night and more.

God wot, quod he, laboured have I ful sore,
And specially for thy salvation

Have I sayd many a precious orison,
And for our other frendes, God hem blesse.

I have this day ben at your chirche at messe,
And said a sermon to my simple wit,
Not all after the text of holy writ,
For it is hard to you, as I suppose,
And therefore wol I teche you ay the glose.

Glosing is a ful glorious thing certain,
For letter sleth, so as we clerkes sain.

Ther have I taught hem to be charitable,
And spend hir good ther it is resonable.
And ther I saw our dame, a, wher is she !

Yonder I trow that in the yard she be,
Sayde this man, and she wol come anon.

Ey maister, welcome be ye by Seint John,
Sayde this wif, how fare ye hertily !

This frere ariseth up ful curtisly,
And hire embraceth in his armes narwe,
And kiseth hire swete, and chirketh as a sparrow
With his lippes : dame, quod he, right wel,
As he that is your servant every del.
Thanked be God, that you yaf soule and lif,
Yet saw I not this day so faire a wif
In all the chirche, God so save me.

Ye, God amende defautes, sire, quod she,
Algates welcome be ye, by my fay.

Grand mercy, dame, that have I found alway.

But of your grete goodnesse, by your leve,
I wolde pray you that ye not you greve,
I wol with Thomas speke a litel throw :
Thise curates ben so negligent and slow
To gropen tendrely a conscience.

In shrift, in preching is my diligence
And study, in Peters wordes and in Poules,
I walke and fishe Cristen mennes soules,
To yeld our Lord Jesu his propre rent ;
To sprede his word is sette all min entent.

Now by your faith, o dere sire, quod she,
Chideth him wel for Seinte Charitee.

He is ay angry as is a pissemire,
Though that he have all that he can desire,

I him wrie a-night, and make him warm,
 r him lay my leg and eke min arm,
 eth as our bore, lith in our stie :
 sport of him right non have I,
 ot plesse him in no maner cas.
 mas, *jeo vous die*, Thomas, Thomas,
 keth the fend, this muste ben amended.
 thing that high God hath defended,
 rof woi I speke a word or two.
 maister, quod the wif, er that I go,
 ol ye dine ! I wol go therabout.
 fame, quod he, *jeo vous die sanz doute*,
 nat of a capon but the liver,
 our white bred nat but a shiver,
 r that a roasted pigges hed,
 e wolde for me no beest were ded)
 d I with you homly suffisance.
 an of litel sustenance.
 t hath his fostring in the Bible.
 is ay so redy and so penible
 n, that my stomak is destroyed.
 ou, dame, that ye be nought annoied,
 I so frendly you my conseil shewe ;
 I n'old have told it but a fewe.
 ure, quod she, but o word er I go.
 is ded within these wekes two,
 r that ye went out of this toun.
 th saw I by revelatioun,
 is frere, at home in our dortour.
 el sain, that er than half an hour
 deth, I saw him borne to blisse
 vision, so God me wisse.
 ir sextein, and our fermerere,
 ben trewe freres fifty yere ;
 y now, God be thanked of his lone,
 ir jubilee, and walke alone.
 I arose, and all our covent eke,
 ny a tere trilling on our cheke,
 en noise or clatering of belles,
 was our song, and nothing elles,
 t to Crist I bade an orison,
 g him of my revelation.
 and dame, trusteth me right wel,
 ons ben more effectuel,
 e we seen of Cristes secree thinges,
 el, folk although that they be kinges.
 in poverté, and in abstinence,
 ol folk in richesse and dispence
 and drinke, and in hir foule delit.
 this worldes lust all in despit.
 d Dives liveden diversely,
 rs guerdon hadden they therby.
 wol pray, he must fast and be clene,
 is soule, and make his body lene.
 as sayth the apostle ; cloth and food
 us, though they be not ful good.
 enesse and the fasting of us freres,
 hat Crist accepteth our praieres.
 oises forty daies and forty night
 r that the high God ful of might
 th him in the mountagne of Synay :
 pty wombe of fasting many a day,
 he the lawe, that was writen
 ddes finger ; and Eli, wel ye witen,
 t Oreb, er he had any speche
 he God, that is our lives leche,
 l long, and was in contemplance.
 , that had the temple in governance,
 the other preestes everich on,
 temple than they shulden gon

To praien for the peple, and do servise,
 They n'olden drinken in no maner wise
 No drinke, which that might hem dronken make,
 But ther in abstinence pray and wake,
 Lest that they deiden : take heed what I say—
 But they be sobre that for the peple pray—
 Ware that I say—no more : for it suffice'h.
 Our Lord Jesu, as holy writ deviseth,
 Yave us ensample of fasting and praieres :
 Therefore we mendians, we sely freres,
 Ben wedded to poverté and continence,
 To charitee, humblesse, and abstinence,
 To persecution for rightwisesse,
 To weping, misericorde, and to clenenesse.
 And therefore may ye see that our praieres
 (I speke of us, we mendians, we freres)
 Ben to the highe God more acceptable
 Than youre, with your festes at your tabla.

Fro Paradis first, if I shal not lie,
 Was man out chased for his glotonie,
 And chast was man in Paradis certain.
 But herken now, Thomas, what I shal saiz.
 I have no text of it, as I suppose,
 But I shal find it in a maner glose ;
 That specially our swete Lord Jesus
 Spake this by freres, whan he sayde thus.
 Blessed be they that poure in spirit ben.
 And so forth all the gospel may ye sen,
 Whether it be liker our profession,
 Or hirs that swimmen in possession,
 Fie on hir pompe, and on hir glotonic,
 And on hir lewednesse : I hem defie.
 Me thinketh they ben like Jovinian,
 Fat as a whale, and walken as a swan ;
 Al vinolent as botel in the spence ;
 Hir praier is of ful gret reverence ;
 Whan they for soules say the Psalm of Dav^{id} ;
 Lo, buf they say, *Cor meum eructavit*.

Who foloweth Cristes gospel and his lore
 But we, that humble ben, and chast, and pore.
 Workers of Goddes word, not auditours !
 Therefore right as an hauke upon a sours
 Up springeth into the aire, right so praieres
 Of charitable and chast besy freres,
 Maken hir sours to Goddes eres two.
 Thomas, Thomas, so mote I ride or go,
 And by that lord that cleped is Seint Ive,
 N'ere thou our broder, shuldest thou not thrive
 In our chapitre pray we day and night
 To Crist, that he thee sende hele and might
 Thy body for to welden hastily.

God wot, quod he, nothing therof fele I,
 As help me Crist, as I in fewe yeres
 Have spended upon divers maner freres
 Ful many a pound, yet fare I never the bot ;
 Certain my good have I almost beset :
 Farewel my good, for it is al ago.

The frere answered, O Thomas, dost thou so !
 What nedeth you diverse freres to seche !
 What nedeth him that hath a parfit leche,
 To sechen other leches in the toun !
 Your inconstance is your confusion.
 Hold ye than me, or elles our covent,
 To pray for you ben insufficient !
 Thomas, that jape n'is not worth a mite ;
 Your maladie is for we han to lite.
 A, yeve that covent half a quarter otes ;
 And yeve that covent four and twenty grotes ;
 And yeve that frere a peny, and let him go :
 Nay, nay, Thomas, it may no thing be so.

What is a ferthing worth parted on twelve ?
Lo, eche thing that is oued in himselve
Is more strong than whan it is yscatered.
Thomas, of me thou shalt not ben yflatered,
Thou woldest han our labour al for nought.
The highe God, that all this world hath wrought,
Saith. that the workman worthy is his hire.
Thomas, nought of your tresor I desire
As for myself, but that all our covent
To pray for you is ay so diligent :
And for to bilden Cristes owen chirche.
Thomas, if ye wol lernen for to wirche,
Of bilding up of chirches may ye finde
If it be good, in Thomas lif of Inde.

Ye ligen here ful of anger and of ire,
With which the devil set your herte on fire,
And chiden here this holy innocent
Your wif, that is so good and patient.
And therefore throw me, Thomas, if thee lest,
Ne strive not with thy wif, as for the best.
And bere this word away now by thy faith,
Touching swiche thing, lo, what the wise saith :

Within thy hous ne be thou no leon ;
To thy suggets do non oppression ;
Ne make thou not thin acquaintance to flee.

And yet, Thomas, eftsones charge I thee,
Beware from ire that in thy bosom slepeth,
Ware fro the serpent, that so slyly crepeth
Under the gras, and stingeth subtilly.
Beware, my sone, and herken patiently,
That twenty thousand men han lost hir lives
For striving with hir lemmans and hir wives.
Now sith ye han so holy and meek a wif,
What nedeth you, Thomas, to maken strif ?
Ther n'is ywis no serpent so cruel,
Whan man tredeth on his tail, ne half so fel,
As woman is, whan she hath caught an ire ;
Veray vengeance is than all hire desire.

Ire is a sinne, on of the grete seven,
Abhominable unto the God of heven,
And to himself it is destruction.
This every lewed vicar and parson
Can say, how ire engendreth homicide ;
Ire is in soth executour of pride.

I coud of ire say so mochel sorwe,
My tale shulde lasten til to-morwe.
And therefore pray I God both day and night,
An irous man God send him litel might.
It is gret harm, and certes gret pitee
To sette an irous man in high degree.

Whilom ther was an irous potestat,
As saith Senek, that during his estat
Upon a day out riden knightes two.
And, as fortune wold that it were so,
That on of hem came home, that other nought.
Anon the knight before the juge is brought,
That saide thus ; thou hast thy felaw slain,
For which I deme thee to the deth certain.
And to another knight commanded he ;
Go, lede him to the deth, I charge thee.
And happed, as they wenten by the way
Toward the place ther as he shulde dey,
The knight came, which men wenden had be dede.
Than thoughten they it was the beste rede
To lede hem bothe to the juge again.
They saiden, lord, the knight ne hath not slain
His felaw, here he stondeh hol alive.

Ye shul be ded, quod he, so mot I thrive,
That is to say, both on, and two, and three.
And to the firste knight right thus spake he.

I damned thee, thou must algate be ded :
And thou also must nedes lese thyn hed,
For thou art cause why thy felaw deyeth.
And to the thridde knight right thus he seyeth,
Thou hast not don that I commanded thee.
And thus he did do alen hem alle three.

Irous Cambises was eke dronkelew,
And ay delighted him to ben a shrew.
And so befell, a lord of his meinie,
That loved vertuous moralitee,
Sayd on a day betwix hem two right thus :
A lord is lost, if he be vicious ;
And dronkenesse is eke a foule record
Of any man, and namely of a lord.
Ther is ful many an eye and many an ere
Awaiting on a lord, and he n'ot wher.
For Goddes love drinke more attemperly :
Win maketh man to lessen wretchedly
His mind, and eke his limmes everich on.
The revers shalt thou see, quod he, anon,
And preve it by thyn owen experience,
That win ne doth to folk no swiche offence.
Ther is no win bereveth me my might
Of hond, ne foot, ne of min eyen sight.
And for despit he dranke mochel more
An hundred part than he had don before,
And right anon, this cursed irous wretche
This knightes sone let before him fetcche,
Commanding him he shuld before him stond :
And sodenly he took his bow in hond,
And up the streng he pulled to his ere,
And with an arwe he slow the child right ther.

Now whether have I a siker hond or non ?
Quod he, Is all my might and minde agon ?
Hath win bereved me min eyen sight ?

What shuld I tell the answer of the knight ?
His son was slain, ther is no more to say.
Beth ware therfore with lordes for to play,
Singeth *Placebo*, and I shal if I can,
But if it be unto a poure man :
To a poure man men shuld his vices telle,
But not to a lord, though he shuld go to helle.

Lo, irous Cirus, thilke Persien,
How he destroyed the river of Gisen,
For that an hors of his was dreint therin,
Whan that he wente Babilon to win :
He made that the river was so smal,
That wimmen might it waden over al.
Lo, what said he, that so wel techen can ?
Ne be no felaw to non irous man,
Ne with no wood man walke by the way,
Lest thee repent ; I wol no further say.

Now, Thomas, leve brother, leve thin ire,
Thou shalt me find as just, as is a squire ;
Hold not the devils knif ay to thin herte,
Thin anger doth thee all to sore smerte,
But shew to me all thy confession.

Nay, quod the sike man, by Seint Simon
I have ben shriven this day of my curat ;
I have him told al holly min estat.
Nedeth no mo to speke of it, sayth he,
But if me list of min humilitee.

Yeve me than of thy gold to make our cloistre,
Quod he, for many a muscle and many an oistre,
Whan other men han ben ful wel at ese,
Hath been our food, our cloistre for to rese :
And yet, God wot, uneth the fundament
Parfourmed is, ne of our pavement
N'is not a tile yet within our wones :
By God we owen fourty pound for stores.

elp, Thomas, for him that harwed helle,
 es mote we oure bokes selle,
 ye lacke oure predication,
 oth this world all to destruction.
 so so fro this world wold us bereve,
 I me save, Thomas, by your leve,
 ld bereve out of this world the sonne.
 so can teche and worken as we conne
 at is not of litel time, (quod he)
 hen Elie was, and Elisee,
 eres ben, that find I of record,
 ritee, ythanked be our Lord.
 Thomas, help for Seinte Charitee.
 down anon he sette him on his knee.
 sike man woxe wel neigh wood for ire,
 lde that the frere had ben a-fire
 is false dissimulation.
 he thing as is in my possession,
 e, that may I yeve you and non other :
 me thus, how that I am your brother.
 tes, quod this frere, ye, trusteth wel ;
 our dame the letter of our sele.
 wel, quod he, and somewhat shal I yeve
 our holy covent while I live ;
 thin hond thou shalt it have anon,
 condition, and other non,
 ou depart it so, my dere brother,
 very frere have as moche as other :
 alt thou swere on thy profession
 sten fraud or cavilation.
 ere it, quod the frere, upon my faith.
 erwithall his hond in his he layth ;
 e my faith, in me shal be no lak.
 put thin hond adoun right by my bak,
 his man, and grope wel behind,
 e my buttock, ther thou shaite find
 g, that I have hid in privetee.
 ight this frere, that shal go with me.
 un his hond he launcheth to the clifte,
 e for to finden ther a gifte.
 whan this sike man felte this frere
 his towel gropen ther and here,
 is hond he let the frere a fart ;
 'is no capel drawing in a cart,
 ight han let a fart of swiche a soun.
 frere up sterte, as doth a wood leoun :
 cherl, quod he, for Goddes bones,
 at thou in despit don for the nones :
 halt abie this fart, if that I may.
 neinie, which that herden this affray,
 eping in, and chased out the frere,
 rth he goth with a ful angry chere,
 his felaw, ther as lay his store :
 ed as it were a wilde bore,
 inte with his teeth, so was he wroth.
 ly pas down to the court he goth,
 as ther woned a man of gret honour,
 m that he was alway confessor :
 orthy man was lord of that village.
 ere came, as he were in a rage,
 as this lord sat eting at his bord :
 es might the frere speke o word,
 last he saide, God you see.
 lord gan loke, and saide, *Benedicite !*
 frere John, what maner world is this ?
 el that som thing ther is amis ;
 en as the wood were ful of theves.
 n anon, and tell me what your greve is,
 shal ben amended, if I may.
 ve, quod he, had a despit to-day,

God yelde you adoun, in your village,
 That in this world ther n'is so poure a page,
 That he n'olde have abhominatioun
 Of that I have received in youre toun :
 And yet ne greveth me nothing so sore,
 As that the olde cherl, with lokkes hore,
 Blaspheved hath oure holy covent eke.

Now, maister, quod this lord, I you beseeke.

No maister, sire, quod he, but servitour,
 Though I have had in scole that honour.
 God liketh not, that men us Rabi call,
 Neither in market, ne in your large hall.

No force, quod he, but tell me all your grefe.

Sire, quod this Frere, an odious meschefe
 This day betid is to min ordre, and me,
 And so *per consequens* to ech degree
 Of holy chirche, God amende it sone.

Sire, quod the lord, ye wot what is to don :
 Distempere you not, ye ben my confessor.
 Ye ben the salt of the erthe, and the savour ;
 For Goddes love your patience now hold ;
 Telle me your grefe. And he anon him told
 As ye han herd before, ye wot wel what.

The lady of the hous ay stille sat,
 Til she had herde what the Frere said.

Ey, goddes moder, quod she, blisful maid,
 Is ther ought elles ? tell me faithfully.
 Madame, quod he, how thinketh you therby ?
 How that me thinketh ? quod sho ; so God me spede,
 I say, a cherle hath don a cherles dede.
 What shuld I say ! God let him never the ;
 His sike hed is ful of vanitee ;
 I hold him in a maner frenesie.

Madame, quod he, by God I shal not lie,
 But I in other wise may ben awreke,
 I shal diffame him over all, ther I speke ;
 This false blasphemour, that charged me
 To parten that wol not departed be,
 To every man ylike, with meschance.

The lord sat stille, as he were in a trance,
 And in his herte he rolled up and doun,
 How had this cherl imaginatioun
 To shewen swiche a probleme to the frere.
 Never erst or now ne herd I swiche matere :
 I trow the Devil put it in his mind.
 In all Arismetrike shal ther no man find
 Beforn this day of swiche a question.
 Who shulde make a demonstration,
 That every man shuld han ylike his part
 As of a soun or savour of a fart ?
 O nice proude cherl, I shrewe his face.

Lo, sires, quod the lord, with harde grace,
 Who ever herd of swiche a thing or now !
 To every man ylike ! tell me how.
 It is an impossible, it may not be.

Ey, nice cherl, God let him never the.
 The rombling of a fart, and every soun,
 N'is but of aire reverberatioun,
 And ever it wasteth lite and lite away ;
 Ther n'is no man can demen, by my fay,
 If that it were departed equally.
 What ! lo my cherl, lo yet how shrewedly
 Unto my confessor to-day he spake ;
 I hold him certain a demoniake.
 Now ete your mete, and let the cherl go play,
 Let him go honge himself a devil way.

Now stood the lordes squier atte bord,
 That carf his mete, and herde word by word
 Of all this thing, of which I have you sayd.

My lord, quod he, be ye not evil apaid,

I coude telle for a gounne-cloth
To you, sire frere, so that ye be not wroth,
How that this fart shuld even ydeled be
Amonge your covent, if it liked thee.

Tell, quod the lord, and thou shalt have anon
A gounne-cloth, by God and by seint John.

My lord, quod he, whan that the weder is faire,
Withouten winde, or pertourbing of aire,
Let bring a cart-whele here into this hall,
But loke that it have his spokes all;
Twelf spokes hath a cart-whele comunly;
And bring me than twelf freres, wete ye why?
For threttene is a covent as I gesse:
Your confessor here for his worthinesse
Shal parfournme up the noubre of his covent.
Than shull they knele adoun by on assent,
And to every spokes end in this manere
Ful sadly lay his nose shal a frere;
Your noble confessor, ther God him save,
Shal hold his nose upright under the nave.
Than shal this cherl, with bely stif and tought
As any tabour, hider ben ybrought;
And set him on the whele right of this cart
Upon the nave, and make him let a fart,

And ye shull seen, up peril of my lif,
By veray preef that is demonstratif,
That equally the soun of it wol wende,
And eke the stinke, unto the spokes ende,
Save that this worthy man, your confessor,
(Because he is a man of gret honour)
Shal han the firste fruit, as reson is.
The noble usage of freres yet it is,
The worthy men of hem shul first be served.
And certainly he hath it wel deserved;
He hath to-day taught us so mochel good,
With preching in the pulpit ther he stood,
That I may vouchesauf, I say for me,
He hadde the firste smel of fartes three,
And so wold all his brethren hardly,
He bereth him so faire and holy.

The lord, the lady, and ech man, save the frere,
Sayden, that Jankin spake in this matere
As wel as Euclide, or elles P'tholomee.
Touching the cherl, they sayden, subtiltee
And highe wit made him speken as he spake;
He n'is no fool, ne no demoniake.
And Jankin hath ywonne a newe gounne;
My tale is don, we ben almost at tounne.

THE CLERKES TALE.

THE CLERKES PROLOGUE.

SIRE Clerk of Oxenforde, our hoste said,
Ye ride as stille and coy, as doth a maid,
Were newe spoused, sitting at the bord:
This day ne herd I of your tonge a word.
I trow ye studie abouten som sophime:
But Salomon saith, that every thing hath time.
For Goddes sake as beth of better chere,
It is no time for to studien here.
Tell us som mery tale by your fay;
For what man that is entred in a play,
He nedes most unto the play assent.
But precheth not, as freres don in Lent,
To make us for our olde sinnes wepe,
No that thy tale make us not to slepe.
Tell us som mery thing of adventures,
Your termes, your coloures, and your figures,
Kepe hem in store, til so be ye endite
Hie stile, as whan that men to kinges write.
Speketh so plain at this time, I you pray,
That we may understonden what ye say.

This worthy Clerk benignely answerde;
Hoste, quod he, I am under your yerde,
Ye have of us as now the governance,
And therefore wolde I do you obeysance,
As fer as reson asketh hardly:
I wol you tell a tale, which that I
Lerned at Padowe of a worthy clerk,
As preved by his wordes and his werk.
He is now ded, and nailed in his cheste,
I pray to God so yeve his soule reste.

Fraunceis Petrark, the laureat poete,
Highte this clerk, whos rethorike swete
Enlumined all Itaille of poetrie,
As Lynvan did of philosophie,

Or law, or other art particulere:
But deth, that wol not suffre us dwellen here,
But as it were a twinkling of an eye,
Hem both hath slaine, and alle we shul dye.

But forth to tellen of this worthy man,
That taughte me this tale, as I began,
I say that first he with hie stile enditeth
(Or he the body of his tale writeth)
A proheme, in the which describeth he
Piemont, and of Saluces the contree,
And speketh of Apennin the lilles hie,
That ben the boundes of west Lumbardie.
And of mount Vesulus in special,
Wher as the Poo out of a welle smal
Taket his firste springing and his sour,
That estward ay encreseth in his cours
To Emelie ward, to Ferare, and Venise,
The which a longe thing were to devise.
And trewely, as to my jugement,
Me thinketh it a thing impertinent,
Save that he wol conveyen his matere:
But this is the tale which that ye mow here.

THE CLERKES TALE.

THER is right at the West side of Itaille
Doun at the rote of Vesulus the cold,
A lusty plain, habundant of vitaille,
Ther many a toun and tour thou maist behold
That founded were in time of fathers old,
And many another delitable sighte,
And Saluces this noble contree highte.

*There is a certain place in the world without any further
except in the world of the knowledge of*

rkis whilom lord was of that lond,
his worthy elders him before,
ysant, ay redy to his hond,
I his lieges, bothe lesse and more :
delit he liveth, and hath don yore,
and drad, thurgh favour of fortune,
his lordes, and of his commune.

with he was, to spoken of linage,
tilest yborne of Lumbardie,
person, and strong, and yong of age,
of honour and of curtesie :
ynough, his contree for to gie,
som thinges that he was to blame,
lter was this yonge lordes name.

ae him thus, that he considered nought
coming what might him betide,
is lust present was all his thought,
to hauke and hunt on every side :
gh all other cures let he slide,
he n'old (and that was worst of all)
no wif for ought that might befall.

hat point his peple bare so sore,
sknel on a day to him they went,
of hem, that wisest was of lore,
that the lord wold best assent
shuld tell him what the peple ment,
coud he wel shew swiche matere)
e markis said as ye shull here.

le markis, your humanitee
us and yeveth us hardinesse,
time is of necessitee,
to you mow tell our hevinesse :
h, lord, than of your gentillesse,
with pitous herte unto you plaine,
your eres nat my vois disdaine.

ve I not to don in this matere
n another man hath in this place,
us moch as ye, my lord so dere,
ay shewed me favour and grace,
ve better aske of you a space
nce, to shewen our request,
my lord, to don right as you lest.

rtes, lord, so wel us liketh you
our werke, and ever have don, that we
n not ourself devisen how
ten live in more felicitie :
ing, lord, if it your wille be,
to be a wedded man you lest,
re your peple in soverain hertes rest.

h your nekke under the blisful yok
untie, and not of servise,
nat men clepen spousaile or wedlok :
keth, lord, among your thoughtes wise,
t our dayes passe in sondry wise ;
gh we slepe, or wake, or rome, or ride,
the time, it wol no man abide.

ough your grene youthe floure as yet,
th age alway as still as ston,
manaseth every age, and smit
estat, for ther escapeth nou :
o certain, as we knowe eche on
shul die, as uncertain we all
nat day whan deth shal on us fall.

Accepteth than of us the trewe entent,
That never yet refuseden your hest,
And we wol, lord, if that ye wol assent,
Chese you a wife in short time at the mest,
Borne of the gentillest and of the best
Of all this lond, so that it oughte seme
Honour to God and you, as we can deme.

Deliver us out of all this besy drede,
And take a wif, for highe Goddes sake :
For if it so befell, as God forbede,
That thurgh your deth your linage shulde slake,
And that a strange successour shuld take
Your heritage, o ! we were us on live :
Wherfore we pray you hastily to wive.

Hir meke praiere and hir pitous chere
Made the markis for to han pitee.
Ye wol, quod he, min owen peple dere,
To that I never er thought constrainen me.
I me rejoiced of my libertee,
That selden time is found in mariage ;
Ther I was free, I moste ben in servage.

But natheles I see your trewe entent,
And trust upon your wit, and have don ay :
Wherfore of my free will I wol assent
To wedden me, as sone as ever I may.
But ther as ye han profred me to-day
To chesen me a wif, I you relese
That chois, and pray you of that profer osee.

For God it wot, that children often ben
Unlike hir worthy eldres hem before,
Bountee cometh al of God, not of the stren,
Of which they ben ygendred and ybore :
I trust in Goddes bountee, and therfore
My mariage, and min estat, and rest
I him betake, he may don as him lest.

Let me alone in chesing of my wif,
That charge upon my bak I wol endure :
But I you pray, and charge upon your lif,
That what wif that I take, ye me assure
To worship hire while that hire lif may dure,
In word and werk both here and elles where,
As she an emperoures doughter were.

And furthermore this shuln ye swere, that ye
Again my chois shul never grutch ne strive.
For sith I shal forgo my libertee
At your request, as ever mote I thrive,
Ther as min herte is set, ther wol I wive :
And but ye wol assent in swiche manere,
I pray you speke no more of this matere.

With hertly will they sworn and assenten
To all this thing, ther saide not o wight nay :
Beseeching him of grace, or that they wenten,
That he wold granten hem a certain day
Of his spousaile, as sone as ever he may,
For yet alway the peple somewhat dred,
Lest that this markis wolde no wif wed.

He granted hem a day, swiche as him lest,
On which he wold be wedded sikerly,
And said he did all this at hir request ;
And they with humble herte ful buxumly
Kneling upon hir knees ful reverently
Him thonken all, and thus they han an end
Of hir entente, and home agen they wend.

Save this she praied him, if that he might,
Hire litel sone he wold in erthe grave,
His tendre limmes, delicat to sight,
Fro foules and fro bestes for to save.
But she non answer of him mighte have,
He went his way, as him no thing ne rought,
But to Boloigne he tendrely it brought.

This markis wondreth ever lenger the more
Upon hire patience, and if that he
Ne hadde sothly knowen therfore,
That partly hire children loved she,
He wold han wend that of som subtiltee
And of malice, or for cruel corage,
That she had suffred this with sad visage.

But wel he knew, that next himself, certain
She loved hire children best in every wise.
But now of women wold I asken fayn,
If this assaies mighten not suffice;
What could a sturdy husbond more devise
To preve hire wifhood, and hire stedfastnesse,
And he continuing ever in sturdinesse!

But ther ben folk of swiche condition,
That, whan they han a certain purpos take,
They can not stint of hir intention,
But, right as they were bounden to a stake,
They wol not of hir firste purpos slake:
Right so this markis fully hath purposed
To tempt his wif, as he was first disposed.

He waiteth, if by word or contenance
That she to him was changed of corage:
But never could he finden variance,
She was ay on in herte and in visage,
And ay the further that she was in age,
The more trewe (if that it were possible)
She was to him in love, and more penible.

For which it semed thus, that of hem two
Ther was but o will; for as Walter leet,
The same lust was hire plesance also;
And God be thanked, all fell for the best.
She shewed wel, for no worldly unrest
A wif, as of hireself, no thing ne sholde
Wille in effect, but as hire husbond wolde.

The sclandre of Walter wonder wide spradde,
That of a cruel herte he wikkedly,
For he a poure woman wedded hadde,
Hath murdred both his children prively:
Swich murmur was among hem comunly.
No wonder is: for to the peples ere
Ther came no word, but that they murdred were.

For which ther as his peple therfore
Had loved him wel, the sclandre of his diffame
Made hem that they him hateden therfore:
To ben a murdrour is an hateful name.
But natheles, for earnest ne for game,
He of his cruel purpos n'olde stente,
To tempt his wif was sette all his entente.

Whan that his doughter twelf yere was of age,
He to the court of Rome, in subtil wise
Enformed of his will, sent his message,
Commanding him, swiche billes to devise,
As to his cruel purpos may suffice,
How that the pope, as for his peples rest,
Bade him to wed another, if him leet.

I say he bade, they shulden contrefete
The popes bulles, making mention
That he hath leve his firste wif to lete,
As by the popes dispensation,
To stinten rancour and dissension
Betwix his peple and him: thus spake the bull,
The which they han published at the full.

The rude peple, as no wonder is,
Wenden ful wel, that it had ben right so:
But whan thise tidings came to Grisildis,
I deme that hire herte was ful of wo;
But she ylike sad for evermo
Disposed was, this humble creature,
The adversitee of fortune al to endure;

Abiding ever his lust and his plesance,
To whom that she was yeven, herte and al,
As to hire veray worldly suffisance.
But shortly if this storie tell I shal,
This markis writen hath in special
A lettre, in which he sheweth his entente,
And secretly he to Boloigne it sente,

To the erl of Pavie, which that hadde tho
Wedded his suster, prayed he specially
To bringen home agein his children two
In honourable estat al openly:
But o thing he him prayed utterly,
That he to no wight, though men wold enquire,
Shulde not tell whos children that they were,

But say, the maiden shuld ywedded be
Unto the markis of Saluces anon.
And as this erl was prayed, so did he,
For at day sette he on his way is gon
Toward Saluces, and lordes many on
In rich arraie, this maiden for to gide,
Hire yonge brother riding hire beside.

Arraied was toward hire mariage
This fresche maiden, ful of gemmes clere,
Hire brother, which that seven yere was of age,
Arraied eke ful fresh in his manere:
And thus in gret noblesse and with glad chere
Toward Saluces shaping hir journey
Fro day to day they riden in hir way.

PARS QUINTA.

Among al this, after his wicked usage,
This markis yet his wif to tempten more
To the uttereste prefe of hire corage,
Fully to have experience and lore,
If that she were as stedfast as before,
He on a day in open audience
Ful boistously hath said hire this sentence:

Certes, Grisilde, I had ynough plesance
To han you to my wif, for your goodnesse,
And for your trouthe, and for your obeysance,
Not for your linage, ne for your richesse,
But now know I in veray sothfastnesse,
That in gret lordship, if I me wel avise,
Ther is gret servitude in sondry wise.

I may not don, as every ploughman may:
My peple me constreinet to take
Another wif, and crien day by day;

ee, and specially therfore
at point, that I have said before,
u wolt unto this purpos drawe,
ie as for thy son in lawe.

en cas this man astoned so,
e wex, abaist, and al quaking
nnethes said he wordes mo,
us ; Lord, quod he, my willing
l, ne ageins your liking
ing, min owen lord so dere,
ou list, governeth this matere.

I I, quod this markis softly,
r chambre, I, and thou, and she,
lation, and wost thou why I
ask hire, if it hire wille be
wif, and reule hire after me :
s shal be don in thy presence,
peke out of thin audience.

he chambre, while they were aboute
which as ye shul after here,
ame into the hous withoute,
ed hem, in how honest manere
she kept hire fader dere :
r Grisildis wonder might,
erst ne saw she swiche a sight.

er is though that she be astoned,
ret a gest come in that place,
was to nou swiche gestes woned,
she loket with ful pale face.
r forth this matere for to chace,
he wordes that the markis said
igne, veray, faithful maid.

he said, ye shuln wel understand,
your fader and to me,
wedde, and eke it may so stonde
se, ye wol that it so be :
lemaundes aske I first (quod he)
shal be don in hasty wise,
ent, or elles you avise !

s, be ye redy with good herte
lust, and that I freely may
: thinketh do you laugh or smerte,
ye to grutchen, night ne day,
han I say ya, ye say not nay,
word, ne frowning countenance !
and here I swere our alliance.

upon this thing, quaking for drede,
Lord, indigne and unworthy
bilke honour, that ye me bede,
wol yourself, right so wol I :
I swere, that never willingly
e thought, I n'll you disobeie
ded, though me were loth to deie.

mough, Grisilde min, quod he.
he goth with a ful sobre chere,
dore, and after than came she,
: peple he said in this manere :
wif, quod he, that stondeh here.
her, and loveth hire, I pray,
e loveth, ther n'is no more to say.

that nothing of hire olde gere
: bring into his hous, he bad
en shuld despoilen hire right there,

Of which thise ladies weren nothing glad
To handle hire clothes wherin she was clad :
But natheles this maiden bright of hew
Fro foot to hed they clothed han all new.

Hire heres han they kempt, that lay untressed
Ful rudely, and with hir fingres smal
A coroune on hire hed they han ydressed,
And sette hire ful of pouches gret and smal :
Of hire array what shuld I make a tale !
Unneth the peple hire knew for hire fairnesse,
Whan she transmewed was in swiche richesse.

This markis hath hire spoused with a ring
Brought for the same cause, and than hire sette
Upon an hors snow-white, and wel ambling,
And to his paleis, or he lenger lette,
(With joyful peple, that hire lad and mette)
Conveyed hire, and thus the day they spende
In revel, til the sonne gan descende.

And shortly forth this tale for to chace,
I say, that to this newe markiesse
God hath swiche favour sent hire of his grace,
That it ne semeth not by likeliness
That she was borne and fed in rudenesse,
As in a cote, or in an oxes stall,
But nourished in an emperoures hall.

To every wight she waxen is so dere,
And worshipful, that folk ther she was bore,
And fro hire birthe knew hire yere by yere,
Unnethes trowed they, but dorst han swore,
That to Janicle, of which I spake before,
She doughter n'as, for as by conjecture
Hem thoughte she was another creature.

For though that ever vertuous was she,
She was encreased in swiche excellence
Of thewes good, yset in high bountee,
And so discrete, and faire of eloquence,
So benigne, and so digne of reverence,
And coude so the peples herte enbrace,
That eche hire loveth that loketh on hire face.

Not only of Saluces in the toun
Published was the bountee of hire name,
But eke beside in many a regioun,
If on saith wel, another saith the same :
So spredeth of hire his bountee the fame,
That men and women, yong as wel as old,
Gon to Saluces upon hire to behold.

Thus Walter lowly, nay but really,
Wedded with fortunat honestete,
In Goddes pees liveth ful esily
At home, and grace ynough outward had he :
And for he saw that under low degree
Was honest vertue hid, the peple him held
A prudent man, and that is seen ful seld.

Not only this Grisildis thurgh hire wit
Coude all the fete of wify homlinessse,
But eke whan that the cas required it,
The comune profit coude she redresse :
Ther n'as discord, rancour, ne hevinessse
In all the lond, that she ne coude appese,
And wisely bring hem all in hertes esse.

Though that hire husbond absent were or non,
If gentilmen, or other of that contree
Were wroth, she wolde bringen hem at on-

No pompe, no semblant of realtee ;
But ful of patient benignitee,
Discrete, and prideles, ay honourable,
And to hire husband ever meke and stable.

Men speke of Job, and most for his humblesse,
As clerkes, whan hem list, can wel endite,
Namely of men, but as in sothfastnesse,
Though clerkes preisen women but a lite,
Ther can no man in humblesse him acquite
As woman can, ne can be half so trewe
As women ben, but it be falle of newe.

~~~~~  
PARS SEXTA.

Fro Boloigne is this erl of Pavie come,  
Of which the fame up sprang to more and lease :  
And to the peples eres all and some  
Was couthe eke, that a newe markisesse  
He with him brought, in swiche pomp and richesse,  
That never was ther seen with mannes eye  
So noble array in al West Lumbardie.

The markis, which that shope and knew all this,  
Er that this erl was come, sent his message  
For thilke poure sely Grisildis ;  
And she with humble herte and glad visage,  
Not with no swollen thought in hire corage,  
Came at his hest, and on hire knees hire sette,  
And reverently and wisely she him grette.

Grisilde, (quod he) my will is utterly,  
This maiden, that shal wedded be to me,  
Received be to-morwe as really  
As it possible is in myn hous to be :  
And eke that every wight in his degree  
Have his estat in sitting and service,  
And high plesance, as I can best devise.

I have no woman suffisant certain  
The chambres for to array in ordinance  
After my lust, and therefore wolde I fain,  
That thin were all swiche manere governance :  
Thou knowest eke of old all my plesance ;  
Though thin array be bad, and evil besey,  
Do thou thy devoir at the leste wey.

Not only, lord, that I am glad (quod she)  
To don your lust, but I desire also  
You for to serve and plesse in my degree,  
Withouten fainting, and shal evermo :  
Ne never for no wele, ne for no wo,  
Ne shal the gost within myn herte stente  
To love you best with all my trewe entente.

And with that word she gan the hous to dight,  
And tables for to sette, and beddes make,  
And peined hire to don all that she might,  
Praying the chambereres for Goddes sake  
To hasten hem, and faste awepe and shake,  
And she the moste serviceable of all  
Hath every chambre arraied, and his hall.

Abouten undern gan this erl alight,  
That with him brought thise noble children twey ;  
For which the peple ran to see the sight  
Of hir array, so richely besey :  
And than at erst amonges hem they sey,  
*That Walter was no fool, though that him lest  
To change his wif ; for it was for the best.*

For she is fairer, as they demen all,  
Than is Grisilde, and more tendre of age,  
And fairer fruit betwene hem shulde fall,  
And more plesant for hire high linage :  
Hire brother eke so faire was of visage,  
That hem to seen the peple hath caught plesance,  
Commending now the markis governance.

O stormy peple, unsad and ever untrew,  
And undiscrete, and changing as a faue,  
Delighting ever in rombel that is newe,  
For like the mone waxen ye and wane :  
Ay ful of clapping, dere ynough a jane,  
Your dome is fals, your constance evil preveth,  
A ful gret fool is he that on you leveth.

Thus saiden sade folk in that citee,  
Whan that the peple gased up and down :  
For they were glad, right for the noveltee,  
To have a newe lady of hir toun.  
No more of this make I now mentioun,  
But to Grisilde agen I wol me dresse,  
And telle hire constance, and hire besinesse.

Ful besy was Grisilde in every thing,  
That to the feste was appertinent ;  
Right naught was she abaist of hire clothing,  
Though it were rude, and somdel eke to-rent,  
But with glad chere to the yate is went  
With other folk, to grete the markisesse,  
And after that doth forth hire besinesse.

With so glad chere his gastes she receiveth,  
And conningly everich in his degree,  
That no defaute no man apperceiveth,  
But ay they wondren what she mighte be,  
That in so poure array was for to see,  
And coude swiche honour and reverence,  
And worthily they preisen hire prudence.

In all this mene while she ne stent  
This maide and eke hire brother to commend  
With all hire herte in ful benigne entent,  
So wel, that no man coude hire preise amend .  
But at the last whan that thise lordes wend  
To sitten down to mete, he gan to call  
Grisilde, as she was besy in the hall.

Grisilde, (quod he, as it were in his play)  
How liketh thee my wif, and hire beautee ?  
Right wel, my lord, quod she, for in good fay,  
A fairer saw I never non than she :  
I pray to God yeve you prosperitee ;  
And so I hope, that he wol to you send  
Plesance ynough unto your lives end.

O thing beseeche I you and warne also,  
That ye ne prikke with no turmenting  
This tendre maiden, as ye han do mo :  
For she is fostred in hire norishing  
More tendrely, and to my supposing  
She mighte not adversitee endure,  
As coude a poure fostred creature.

And whan this Walter saw hire patience,  
Hire glade chere, and no malice at all,  
And he so often hadde hire don offence,  
And she ay sade and constant as a wall,  
Continuing ever hire innocence over all,  
This sturdy markis gan his herte dresse  
To rewe upon hire wify stedefastnesse.

r us died upon a crois of tree :  
le, litel child, I him betake,  
night shalt thou dien for my sake.

v that to a norice in this cas  
en hard this routhe for to see :  
ght a moder than han cried alas,  
heles so sad stedfast was she,  
e endured all adversitee,  
the sergeant mekely she sayde,  
re agen your litel yonge mayde.

now (quod she) and doth my lordes hest :  
hing wold I pray you of your grace,  
ny lord forbade you at the lest,  
this litel body in som place,  
stes ne no briddes it to-race.  
no word to that purpos wold say,  
e the child and went upon his way.

sergeant came unto his lord again,  
Griaildes wordes and hire chere  
him point for point, in short and plain,  
n presented with his daughter dere.  
it this lord hath routhe in his manere,  
heles his purpos held he still,  
as don, whan they wol have hir will,

bad this sergeant that he prively  
this child ful softe wind and wrappe,  
le circumstances tendrely,  
ry it in a cofre, or in a lappe ;  
n peine his hed of for to swappe  
man shulde know of his entent,  
as he came, ne whider that he went ;

at Boloigne, unto his suster dere,  
ilke time of Pavie was countesse,  
d it take, and shew hire this matere,  
ng hire to don hire besinesse  
ild to fostren in all gentillesse,  
os child that it was he bade hire hide  
very wight, for ought that may betide.

sergeant goth, and hath fulfild this thing.  
his marquis now retorne we ;  
v goth he ful fast imagining,  
s wives chere he mighte see,  
ire wordes apperceive, that she  
hanged, but he never coud hire finde,  
r in on ylike sad and kinde.

ad, as humble, as besy in service  
e in love, as she was wont to be,  
e to him, in every maner wise ;  
ire daughter not a word spake she :  
ident for non adversitee  
en in hire, ne never hire daughters name  
ned she, for earnest ne for game.

#### PARS QUARTA.

is estat ther passed ben foure yere  
with childe was, but, as God wold,  
e childe she bare by this Waltere  
scious, and fair for to behold :  
han that folk it to his fader told,  
ly he, but all his contree mery  
r this childe, and God they thonke and hery.

Whan it was two yere old, and from the brest  
Departed of his norice, on a day  
This markis caughte yet another lest  
To tempte his wif yet offer, if he may.  
O ! nedeles was she tempted in assay.  
But wedded men ne connen no mesure,  
Whan that they finde a patient creature.

Wif, quod this markis, ye han herd or this  
My peple sikely beren our mariage,  
And namely sin my sone yboren is,  
Now is it wese than ever in al our age :  
The murmur sleth myn herte and my corage,  
For to myn eres cometh the vois so amerte,  
That it wel nie destroyed hath myn herte.

Now say they thus, whan Walter is agon,  
Than shal the blood of Janicle succede,  
And ben our lord, for other han we non :  
Swiche wordes sayn my peple, it is no drede.  
Wel ought I of swiche murmur taken hede,  
For certainly I drede al swiche sentence,  
Though they not plainen in myn audience.

I wolde live in pees, if that I might :  
Wherfore I am disposed utterly,  
As I his suster served er by night,  
Right so thinke I to serve him prively.  
This warne I you, that ye not sodenly  
Out of yourself for no wo shuld outraie,  
Beth patient, and therof I you prais.

I have, quod she, sayd thus and ever shal,  
I wol no thing, ne n'll no thing certain,  
But as you list : not greveth me at al,  
Though that my doughter and my sone be alain  
At your commandement : that is to sayn,  
I have not had no part of children twein,  
But first sikenesse, and after wo and peine.

Ye ben my lord, doth with your owen thing  
Right as you list, asketh no rede of me :  
For as I left at home al my clothing  
Whan I came first to you, right so (quod she)  
Left I my will and al my libertee,  
And toke your clothing : wherfore I you prey,  
Doth your plesance, I wol youre lust obey.

And certes, if I hadde prescience  
Your will to know, er ye your lust me told,  
I wold it do withouten negligence :  
But now I wote your lust, and what ye wold,  
All your plesance ferme and stable I hold,  
For wist I that my deth might do you ese,  
Right gladly wold I dien, you to ples.

Deth may not maken no comparisoun  
Unto your love. And whan this markis say  
The constance of his wif, he cast adoun  
His eyen two, and wondreth how she may  
In patience suffer al this array :  
And forth he goth with drery contenance,  
But to his herte it was ful gret plesance.

This ugly sergeant in the same wise  
That he hire daughter caughte, right so he  
(Or wese, if men can any wese devise)  
Hath hent hire sone, that ful was of beauteo :  
And ever in on so patient was she,  
That she no chere made of hevynesse,  
But kist hire sone and after gan it bleme.

Save this she praid him, if that he might,  
Hire litel sone he wold in erthe grave,  
His tendre limmes, delicat to sight,  
Fro foules and fro bestes for to save.  
But she non answer of him mighte have,  
He went his way, as him no thing ne rought,  
But to Boloigne he tendrely it brought.

This markis wondreth ever lenger the more  
Upon hire patience, and if that he  
Ne hadde sothly knownen therbefore,  
That parfily hire children loved she,  
He wold han wend that of som subtiltee  
And of malice, or for cruel corage,  
That she had suffred this with sad visage.

But wel he knew, that next himself, certain  
She loved hire children best in every wise.  
But now of women wold I asken fayn,  
If this assaies mighten not suffice;  
What could a sturdy husbond more devise  
To preve hire wifhood, and hire stedfastnesse,  
And he continuing ever in sturdinesse?

But ther ben folk of swiche condition,  
That, whan they han a certain purpos take,  
They can not stint of hir intention,  
But, right as they were bounden to a stake,  
They wol not of hir firste purpos slake:  
Right so this markis fully hath purposed  
To tempt his wif, as he was first disposed.

He waiteth, if by word or contenance  
That she to him was changed of corage:  
But never could he finden variance,  
She was ay on in herte and in visage,  
And ay the further that she was in age,  
The more trewe (if that it were possible)  
She was to him in love, and more penible.

For which it semed thus, that of hem two  
Ther was but o will; for as Walter lest,  
The same lust was hire plesance also;  
And God be thanked, all fell for the best.  
She shewed wel, for no worldly unrest  
A wif, as of hireself, no thing ne sholde  
Wille in effect, but as hire husbond wolde.

The sclandre of Walter wonder wide spradde,  
That of a cruel herte he wikkedly,  
For he a poure woman wedded hadde,  
Hath murdred both his children prively:  
Swich murmur was among hem comunly.  
No wonder is: for to the peples ere  
Ther came no word, but that they murdred were.

For which ther as his peple therbefore  
Had loved him wel, the sclandre of his diffame  
Made hem that they him hateden therfore:  
To ben a murdrour is an hateful name.  
But natheles, for earnest ne for game,  
He of his cruel purpos n'olde stente,  
To tempt his wif was sette all his entente.

Whan that his daughter twelf yere was of age,  
He to the court of Rome, in subtil wise  
Enformed of his will, sent his message,  
Commanding him, swiche billes to devise,  
As to his cruel purpos may suffice,  
How that the pope, as for his peples rest,  
Bade him to wed another, if him lest

I say he bade, they shulden contrefete  
The popes bulles, making mention  
That he hath leve his firste wif to lete,  
As by the popes dispensation,  
To stinten rancour and dissension  
Betwix his peple and him: thus spake the bull,  
The which they han publishsh at the full.

The rude peple, as no wonder is,  
Wenden ful wel, that it had ben right so:  
But whan thise tidings came to Grisilde,  
I deme that hire herte was ful of wo;  
But she ylike sad for evermo  
Disposed was, this humble creature,  
The adversitee of fortune al to endure;

Abiding ever his lust and his plesance,  
To whom that she was yeven, herte and al,  
As to hire veray worldly suffisance.  
But shortly if this storie tell I shal,  
This markis writen hath in special  
A lettre, in which he sheweth his entente,  
And secretly he to Boloigne it sente,

To the erl of Pavia, which that hadde the  
Wedded his suster, prayed he specially  
To bringen home agein his children two  
In honourable estat al openly:  
But o thing he him prayed utterly,  
That he to no wight, though men wold enquire,  
Shulde not tell whos children that they were,

But say, the maiden shuld ywedded be  
Unto the markis of Saluces anon.  
And as this erl was prayed, so did he,  
For at day sette he on his way is gon  
Toward Saluces, and lordes many on  
In rich arraie, this maiden for to gide,  
Hire yonge brother riding hire beside.

Arraied was toward hire mariage  
This fresshe maiden, ful of gemmes clere,  
Hire brother, which that seven yere was of age,  
Arraied eke ful fresh in his manere:  
And thus in gret noblesse and with glad chere  
Toward Saluces shaping hir journey  
Fro day to day they riden in hir way.

#### PARS QUINTA.

Among al this, after his wicked usage,  
This markis yet his wif to tempten more  
To the uttereste prefe of hire corage,  
Fully to have experience and lore,  
If that she were as stedfast as before,  
He on a day in open audience  
Ful boistously hath said hire this sentence:

Certes, Grisilde, I had ynough plesance  
To han you to my wif, for your goodnesse,  
And for your trouthe, and for your obeysance,  
Not for your linage, ne for your richesse,  
But now know I in veray sothfastnesse,  
That in gret lordship, if I me wel avise,  
Ther is gret servitude in sondry wise.

I may not don, as every ploughman may:  
My peple me constreinet for to take  
Another wif, and crien day by day;

like and hole, as is his make !  
 she n'ill him not forsake :  
 ery him to love and serve,  
 e lie bedrede til that he sterue.  
 clerkes sain, it is not so,  
 neophrast is on of tho :  
 ough Theophrast list for to lie ?  
 vif, quod he, for husbandrie,  
 in houshold thy dispence :  
 it doth more diligence  
 pe, than doth thin owen wif,  
 aimen half part al hire lif.  
 u be sike, so God me save,  
 ides or a trewe knave  
 bet than she, that waiteth ay  
 , and hath don many a day.  
 e, and an hundred things werse  
 an ther God his bones curse.  
 pe of al swiche vanitee,  
 rast, and herkeneth me.  
 ldes yefte veraily ;  
 r yeftes hardly,  
 es, pasture, or commune,  
 ben yeftes of fortune,  
 a shadow on the wall :  
 t not, if plainly speke I shal,  
 and in thin hous endure,  
 in thee list paraventure.  
 ful gret sacrament ;  
 hath no wif I hold him shent ;  
 les, and all desolat :  
 c in seculer estat)  
 why, I say not this for nought,  
 for mannes help ywrought.  
 , whan he had Adam maked,  
 d alone belly naked,  
 e goodnesse saide than,  
 ke an helpe unto this man  
 f, and than he made him Eve.  
 e see, and hereby may ye preve,  
 annes helpe and his comfort,  
 restre and his disport :  
 so vertuous is she,  
 edes live in unitee :  
 n, and o flesh, as I gesse,  
 erte in wele and in distress.  
 einte Marie, *benedicite*,  
 nan have any adversite  
 f ! certes I cannot seye.  
 which that is betwix hem tweye  
 onge telle or herte thinke.  
 , she helpeth him to swinke ;  
 good, and wasteth never a del ;  
 usbond doth, hire liketh wel ;  
 ones may, whan he saith ye ;  
 he ; al redy, sire, saith she.  
 ire, o wedlok precious,  
 ery, and eke so vertuous,  
 nded, and approved eke,  
 n that holt him worth a leke,  
 knees ought all his lif  
 od, that him hath sent a wif,  
 o God him for to send  
 into his lives end.  
 f is set in sikeruesse,  
 e deceived, as I gesse,  
 che after his wives rede ;  
 boldly beren up his hede,  
 ewe, and therewithal so wise.  
 thou wilt werchen as the wise,

Do alway so, as women wol thee rede.

Lo how that Jacob, as thise clerkes rede,  
 By good conseil of his mother Rebekke  
 Bounde the kiddes akin about his nekke ;  
 For which his fadres benison he wan.

Lo Judith, as the storie eke tell can,  
 By good conseil she Goddes peple kept,  
 And slow him Holofernes while he slept.

Lo Abigail, by good conseil how she  
 Saved hire husbond Nabal, whan that he  
 Shuld han be slain. And loke, Hester also  
 By good conseil delivered out of wo  
 The peple of God, and made him Mardochee  
 Of Assuere enhaunsed for to be.

Ther n'is no thing in gree superlatif  
 (As saith Senek) above an humble wif.  
 Suffer thy wives tonge, as Caton bit,  
 She shal command, and thou shalt suffren it,  
 And yet she wol obey of curtesie.

A wif is keper of thin husbandrie :  
 Wel may the sike man bewaile and wepe,  
 Ther as ther is no wif the hous to kepe.  
 I warne thee, if wisely thou wilt werche,  
 Love wel thy wif, as Crist loveth his cherche :  
 If thou lovest thyself, love thou thy wif.  
 No man hateth his flesh, but in his lif  
 He fostreth it, and therefore bid I thee  
 Cherish thy wif, or thou shalt never the.  
 Husband and wif, what so men jape or play,  
 Of worldly folk holden the siker way :  
 They ben so knit, ther may non harm betide,  
 And namely upon the wives side.

For which this January, of whom I told,  
 Considered hath within his dayes old  
 The lusty lif, the vertuous quite,  
 That is in mariage hony-swete.  
 And for his frendes on a day he sent  
 To tellen hem th' effect of his entent.

With face sad, his tale he hath hem told :  
 He sayde, frendes, I am hore and old,  
 And almost (God wot) on my pites brinke,  
 Upon my soule somewhat most I thinke.  
 I have my body folly dispended,  
 Blessed be God that it shal ben amended :  
 For I wol ben certain a wedded man,  
 And that anon in all the hast I can.  
 Unto som maiden, faire and tendre of age,  
 I pray you shapeth for my mariage  
 All sodenly, for I wol not abide :  
 And I wol fonde to espien on my side,  
 To whom I may be wedded hastily.  
 But for as moche as ye ben more than I,  
 Ye shullen rather swiche a thing espien  
 Than I, and wher me beste were to allien.

But o thing warn I you, my frendes dere,  
 I wol non old wif han in no manere :  
 She shal not passen twenty yere certain.  
 Old fish and yonge flesh wold I have fain.  
 Bet is (quod he) a pike than a pikerel,  
 And bet than old beef is the tendre veel.  
 I wol no woman thirty yere of age,  
 It is but benestraw and gret forage.  
 And eke thise olde widewes (God it wote)  
 They connen so moch craft on Wades bote,  
 So mochel broken harm whan that hem leat,  
 That with hem shuld I never live in rest.  
 For sondry scoles maken subtil clerkes ;  
 Woman of many scoles half a clerk is.  
 But certainly, a yong thing men may gie,  
 Righ: as men may warn wax with bandes pite.

Wherefore I say you plainly in a clause,  
I wol non old wif han right for this cause.

For if so were I hadde swiche meschance,  
That I in hire ne coude have no plesance,  
Than shuld I lede my lif in avoutrie,  
And so streight to the devil whan I die.  
Ne children shuld I non upon hire geten:  
Yet were me lever houndes had me eten,  
Than that min heritage shulde fall  
In straunge hondes: and this I tell you all.  
I dote not, I wot the cause why  
Men shulden wedde: and furthermore wot I,  
Ther speketh many a man of mariage,  
That wot no more of it than wot my page,  
For which causes a man shuld take a wif.  
If he ne may not liven chast his lif,  
Take him a wif with gret devotion,  
Because of leful procreation  
Of children, to the honour of God above,  
And not only for paramour or love;  
And for they shulden lecherie eschue,  
And yeld hir dette whan that it is due:  
Or for that eche of hem shuld helpen other  
In meschefe, as a suster shal the brother,  
And live in chastitee ful holily.

But, sires, (by your leve) that am not I,  
For God be thanked, I dare make avaunt,  
I fele my limmes stark and suffisant  
To don all that a man belongeth to:  
I wot myselven best what I may do.  
Though I be hoor, I fare as doth a tre,  
That blometh er the fruit ywoxen be;  
The blommy tre n'is neither drie ne ded:  
I fele me no wher hoor but on my hed.  
Min herte and all my limmes ben as grene,  
As laurer thurgh the yere is for to sene.  
And sin that ye han herd all min entent,  
I pray you to my will ye wolde assent.

Diverse men diversely him told  
Of mariage many ensamples old;  
Som blamed it, som praised it certain;  
But atte laste, shortly for to sain,  
(As all day falleth altercation  
Betwixen frendes in disputacion)  
Ther fell a strif betwix his brethren two,  
Of which that on was cleped Placebo,  
Justinus sothly called was that other.

Placebo said; O January brother,  
Ful litel nede han ye, my lord so dere,  
Conseil to aske of any that is here:  
But that ye ben so ful of sapience,  
That you ne liketh for your high prudence,  
To weiven fro the word of Salomon.  
This word said he unto us everich on;  
Werke alle thing by conseil, thus said he,  
And than ne shalt thou not repenten thee.  
But though that Salomon spake swiche a word,  
Min owen dere brother and my lord,  
So wisely God my soule bringe at rest,  
I hold your owen conseil is the best.

For, brother min, take of me this motif,  
I have now ben a court-man all my lif,  
And God it wot, though I unworthy be,  
I have stonden in ful gret degree  
Abouten lordes of ful high estat:  
Yet had I never with non of hem debat,  
I never hem contraried trewely.  
I wot wel that my lord can more than I;  
What that he saith, I hold it firme and stable  
I say the same, or elles thing semblable

A ful gret fool is any conseilour,  
That serveth any lord of high honour,  
That dare presume, or ones thinken it,  
That his conseil shuld passe his lordes wit.  
Nay, lordes be no foolles by my fay.  
Ye han yourselven shewed here to-day  
So high sentence, so holily, and wel,  
That I consent, and confirme every del  
Your wordes all, and your opinioun.  
By God ther n'is no man in all this toun  
Ne in Itaille, coud bet han yaayd:  
Crist holt him of this conseil wel apaid.  
And trewely it is an high corage  
Of any man that stopen is in age,  
To take a young wif, by my fader kin:  
Your herte hongeth on a joly pin.  
Doth now in this matere right as you lest,  
For finally I hold it for the best.

Justinus, that ay stille sat and herd,  
Right in this wise he to Placebo answerd.  
Now, brother min, be patient I pray,  
Sin ye han said, and herkneþ what I say.

Senek among his other wordes wise  
Saith, that a man ought him right wel avise  
To whom he yeveth his lond or his catel.  
And sith I ought avisen me right wel,  
To whom I yeve my good away fro me,  
Wel more I ought avisen me, parde,  
To whom I yeve my body: for alway  
I warne you wel it is no childes play  
To take a wif without avisement.  
Men must enqueren (this is min assent)  
Wheder she be wise and sobere, or dronkelewe,  
Or proud, or elles other waies a shrew,  
A chidester, or a wastour of thy good,  
Or riche or poure, or elles a man is wood.  
Al be it so, that no man finden shal  
Non in this world, that trotteth hol in al,  
Ne man, ne beste, swiche as men can devise,  
But natheles it ought ynough suffice  
With any wif, if so were that she had  
Mo goode thewes, than hire vices bad:  
And all this axeth leiser to enquire.  
For God it wot, I have wept many a tere  
Ful prively, sin that I had a wif.  
Praise who so wol a wedded mannes lif,  
Certain I find in it but cost and care,  
And observances of alle blisses bare.  
And yet, God wot, my neighebour's aboute,  
And namely of women many a route,  
Sain that I have the moste stedefast wif,  
And eke the mekest on that bereth lif.  
But I wot best, wher wringeth me my sho.  
Ye may for me right as you liketh do.  
Aviseth you, ye ben a man of age,  
How that ye entren into mariage;  
And namely with a yong wif and a faire.  
By him that made water, fire, erthe, and aire,  
The yongest man, that is in all this route,  
Is besy ynow to bringen it aboute  
To han his wif alone, trusteth me:  
Ye shul not plesen hire fully yeres three,  
This is to sain, to don hire ful plesance.  
A wif axeth ful many an observance.  
I pray you that ye be not evil apaid.  
Wel, quod this January, and hast thou saide!  
Straw for Senek, and straw for thy proverbes,  
I counte not a panier ful of herbes  
Of scole termes; wiser men than thou,  
As thou hast herd, assented here right now

I wot what that May thought in hire herte,  
 he him saw up sitting in his sherte  
 ight cap, and with his necke lene :  
 iseth not his playing worth a bene.  
 yd he thus ; my reste wol I take  
 y is come, I may no lenger wake ;  
 in he layd his hed and slept til prime.  
 erward, whan that he saw his time,  
 h January, but freshe May  
 re in chambre til the fourthe day,  
 e is of wives for the beste.  
 ry labour somtime moste han reste,  
 longe may he not endure ;  
 o say, no lives creature,  
 fish, or brid, or best, or man.  
 wol I speke of woful Damian,  
 gureth for love, as ye shul here ;  
 I speke to him in this manere.  
 sely Damian, alas !  
 to this demand, as in this cas,  
 lt thou to thy lady freshe May  
 y wo ? She wol alway say nay ;  
 ion speke, she wol thy wo bewreine ;  
 hin help, I can no better sein.  
 ike Damian in Venus fire  
 uth, that he dieth for desire ;  
 ch he put his lif in aventure,  
 er might he in this wise endure,  
 ely a penner gan he borwe,  
 llettre wrote he all his sorwe,  
 re of a complaint or a lay,  
 faire freshe lady May.  
 purse of silk, heng on his sherte,  
 it put, and layd it at his herte.  
 one that at none was thilke day  
 uary hath wedded freshe May  
 Taure, was into Cancer gliden ;  
 nath Maius in hire chambre abiden,  
 me is unto these nobles alle.  
 shal not eten in the halle,  
 s four or three dayes at the leste  
 ben, than let hire go to feste.  
 the day complete fro none to none,  
 at the highe messe was ydone,  
 sat this January and May,  
 as is the brighte somers day.  
 efel, how that this goode man  
 red him upon this Damian,  
 de ; Seinte Marie, how may it be,  
 mian entendeth not to me ?  
 ike ? or how may this betide ?  
 uiers, which that stoden ther beside,  
 him, because of his siknesse,  
 tted him to don his besinesse :  
 er causo mighte make him tary.  
 ne forthinketh, quod this January ;  
 gentil squier by my trouthe,  
 e died, it were gret harme and routhie.  
 wise, discret, and as secree,  
 nan I wote of his degree,  
 to manly and eke servisable,  
 to ben a thrifty man right able.  
 r mete as sone as ever I may  
 selfe visite him, and eke May,  
 im all the comfort that I can.  
 that word him blessed every man,  
 his bountee and his gentillesse  
 e so comforten in siknesse  
 er, for it was a gentil dede.  
 , quod this January, take good hede,

At after mete, ye with your women alle,  
 (Whan that ye ben in chambre out of this halle)  
 That all ye gon to see this Damian :  
 Doth him disport, he is a gentil man,  
 And telleth him that I wol him visite,  
 Have I no thing but rested me a lite :  
 And spede you faste, for I wol abide  
 Til that ye slepen faste by my side.  
 And with that word he gan unto him calle  
 A squier, that was marshal of his halle,  
 And told him certain thinges that he wolde.

This freshe May hath streight hire way yholde  
 With all hire women unto Damian.  
 Doun by his beddes side sit she than,  
 Comforting him as goodly as she may.

This Damian, whan that his time he say,  
 In secree wise, his purse, and eke his bill,  
 In which that he ywritten had his will,  
 Hath put into hire hond withouten more,  
 Save that he siked wonder depe and sore,  
 And softly to hire right thus sayd he ;  
 Mercie, and that ye nat discover me :  
 For I am ded, if that this thing be kid.

This purse hath she in with hire bosome hid,  
 And went hire way ; ye get no more of me ;  
 But unto January ycome is she,  
 That on his beddes side sate ful soft.  
 He taketh hire, and kisseth hire ful oft :  
 And layd him doun to slepe, and that anon.  
 She feined hire, as that she muste gon  
 Ther as ye wote that every wight mot nede ;  
 And whan she of this bill hath taken hede,  
 She rent it all to cloutes at the last,  
 And in the privee softly it cast.

Who studieth now but faire freshe May ?  
 Adoun by olde January she lay,  
 That slepte, til the cough hath him awaked :  
 Anon he prayed hire stripen hire al naked,  
 He wold of hire, he said, have som plesance ;  
 And said, hire clothes did him encombrance.  
 And she obeieth him, be hire lefe or loth.  
 But lest that precious folk be with me wroth,  
 How that he wrought, I dare nat to you tell,  
 Or wheder hire thought it paradis or hell ;  
 But ther I let hem werken in hir wise  
 Til evesong rang, and that they must arisc.

Were it by destinee, or a venture,  
 Were it by influence, or by nature,  
 Or constellation, that in swiche estat  
 The heven stood at that time fortunat,  
 As for to put a bill of Venus werkis  
 (For alle thing hath time, as sayn thise clerkes)  
 To any woman for to get hire love,  
 I cannot say, but grete God above,  
 That knoweth that non act is causeles,  
 He deme of all, for I wol hold my pees.  
 But soth is this, how that this freshe May  
 Hath taken swiche impression that day  
 Of pitee on this sike Damian,  
 That fro hire herte she ne driven can  
 The remembrance for to don him ese.  
 Certain (thought she) whom that this thing displese  
 I rekke not, for here I him assure,  
 To love him best of any creature,  
 Though he no more hadde than his sherte.

Lo, pitee renneth sone in gentil herte.  
 Here may ye seen, how excellent franchisee  
 In women is whan they hem narwe vise.  
 Som tyraunt is, as ther ben many on,  
 That hath an herte as hard as any ston,



Which wold han lette him sterven in the place  
Wel rather than han granted him hire grace :  
And hem rejoycen in hir cruel pride,  
And rekken not to ben an homicide.

This gentil May, fulfilled of pitee,  
Right of hire hond a lettre maketh she,  
In which she granteth him hire veray grace ;  
There lacked nought, but only day and place,  
Wher that she might unto his lust suffice :  
For it shall be, right as he wol devise.

And whan she saw hire time upon a day  
To visiten this Damian goth this May,  
And sotilly this lettre doun she threst  
Under his pilwe, rede it if him leet.  
She taketh him by the hond, and hard him twist  
So secretly, that no wight of it wist,  
And bade him ben all hol, and forth she went  
To January, whan he for hire sent.

Up riseth Damian the nexte morwe,  
Al passed was his siknesse and his sorwe.  
He kembeth him, he proineth him and piketh,  
He doth all that his lady lust and liketh ;  
And eke to January he goth as love,  
As ever did a dogge for the bowe.  
He is so plesant unto every man,  
(For craft is all, who so that don it can)  
That every wight is fain to speke him good ;  
And fully in his ladies grace he stood.

Thus let I Damian about his nede,  
And in my tale forth I wol procede.

Som clerkes holden that felicitee  
Stant in delit, and therefore certain he  
This noble January, with all his might  
In honest wise as longeth to a knight,  
Shope him to liven ful deliciously.  
His housing, his array, as honestly  
To his degree was makid as a kinges.  
Amonges other of his honest thinges  
He had a gardin walled all with ston,  
So fayre a gardin wote I no wher non.  
For out of doute I verily suppose,  
That he that wrote the Romant of the Rose,  
Ne coude of it the beautees wel devise :  
Ne Priapus ne mighte not suffice,  
Though he be god of gardins, for to tell  
The beautees of the gardin, and the well,  
That stood under a laurer alway grene.  
Ful often time he Pluto and his quene  
Proserpina, and alle hir faerie,  
Disporten hem and maken melodie  
About that well, and daunced, as men told.

This noble knight, this January the old  
Swiche deintee hath in it to walke and pley,  
That he wol suffre no wight bere the key,  
Sauf he himself, for of the smal wicket  
He bare alway of silver a cliket,  
With which whan that him list he it unshette.  
And whan that he wold pay his wives dette  
In somer seson thider wold he go,  
And May his wif, and no wight but they two ;  
And thiuges which that were not don a-bedde,  
He in the gardin parfourned hem and spedde.

And in this wise many a mery day  
Lived this January and freshe May,  
But worldly joye may not alway endure  
To January, ne to no creature.

O soden hap, o thou fortune unstable,  
Like to the Scorpion so deceivable,  
That flatrest with thy hed whan thou wolt sting ;  
Thy tayl is deth, thurgh thin enveniming.

O brotel joye, o swete poyson queinte,  
O monstre, that so sotilly canst peinte  
Thy giftes, under hewe of stedfastnesse,  
That thou deceivest bothe more and lesse,  
Why hast thou January thus deceived,  
That haddest him for thy ful frend received !  
And now thou hast beraft him both his eyen,  
For sorwe of which desireth he to dyen.

Alas ! this noble January free,  
Amidde his lust and his prosperitee  
Is waxen blind, and that al sodenly.  
He wepeth and he wailleth pitously ;  
And therewithall, the fire ofalousie  
(Lest that his wif shuld fall in som folie)  
So brent his herte, that he wolde fain,  
That som man had both him and hire ylain ;  
For nother after his deth, ne in his lif,  
Ne wold he that she were no love ne wif,  
But ever live as a widewe in clothes blake,  
Sole as the turtle that hath lost hire make.  
But at the last, after a moneth or tway  
His sorwe gan asswagen, soth to say.  
For whan he wist it might non other be,  
He patiently toke his adversitee :  
Save out of doute he ne may nat forgon,  
That he n'as jalous ever more in on :  
Which jalousie it was so outrageous,  
That neither in halle, ne in non other hous,  
Ne in non other place never the mo  
He n'olde suffre hire for to ride or go,  
But if that he had honde on hire alway.  
For which ful often wepeth freshe May,  
That loveth Damian so brengningly,  
That she moste either dien sodenly,  
Or elles she moste han him as hire lest :  
She waited whan hire herte wold to-brest.

Upon that other side Damian  
Becomen is the sorwefullest man  
That ever was, for neither night ne day  
Ne might he speke a word to freshe May,  
As to his purpos of no swiche matere,  
But if that January must it here,  
That had an hand upon hire evermo.  
But natholes, by writing to and fro,  
And privee signes, wist he what she ment,  
And she knew eke the fin of his entent.  
O January, what might it thee avail,  
Though thou might seen, as fer as shippes sail !  
For as good is blind to deceived be,  
As be deceived, whan a man may see.  
Lo Argus, which that had an hundred eyen,  
For all that ever he coude pore or prien,  
Yet was he blent, and, God wot, so ben mo,  
That wenen wisly that it be not so :  
Passe over is an ese, I say no more.

This freshe May, of which I spake of yore,  
In warm wex hath enprented the cliket,  
That January bare of the smal wicket,  
By which into his gardin oft he went ;  
And Damian that knew all hire entent  
The cliket contrefeted prively ;  
Ther n'is no more to say, but hastily  
Som wonder by this cliket shal betide,  
Which ye shul heren, if ye wol abide.

O noble Ovide, soth sayest thou, God wote,  
What sleight is it if love be long and hote,  
That he n'll find it out in som manere !  
By Pyramus and Thisbe may men lere ;  
Though they were kept ful long and streit over all,  
They ben accorded, rowning thurgh a wall,

wight coude han founden swiche a sleighte.  
 v to purpos; er that daies eighte  
 assed of the month of Juil, befill,  
 nuary hath caught so gret a will,  
 egging of his wif, him for to play  
 ardin, and no wight but they tway,  
 a morwe unto this May said he;  
 , my wif, my love, my lady free;  
 tles vois is herd, myn owen swete;  
 ster is gon, with all his raines wete.  
 irth now with thin eyen columbine.  
 rer ben thy breasts than ony wine.  
 din is enclosed all aboute;  
 irth, my white spouse, for out of doute,  
 at me wounded in myn herte, o wif:  
 in thee n'as never in all thy lif.  
 irth, and let us taken our disport,  
 thee for my wif and my comfort.  
 ie olde lewed wordes used he.  
 nian a signe made she,  
 shuld go before with his cliket.  
 nian hath opened the wicket,  
 he stert, and that in swiche manere,  
 wight might him see neyther yhere,  
 l he sit under a bush. Anon  
 nuary, as blind as is a ston,  
 aius in his hand, and no wight mo,  
 s freshe gardin is ago,  
 pped to the wicket sodenly.  
 wif, quod he, here n'is but thou, and I,  
 t the creature that I best love:  
 that lord that sit in heaven above,  
 lever dien on a knif,  
 ee offenden, dere trewe wif.  
 ldes sake, thinke how I thee chees,  
 no covetise douteles,  
 y for the love I had to thee.  
 ough that I be old and may not see,  
 me trewe, and I wol tell you why;  
 hree thinges shal ye win therby;  
 ve of Crist, and to yourself honour,  
 min heritage, toun and tour.  
 t you, maketh chartres as you lest:  
 l be don to-morwe er sonne rest,  
 God my soule bring to blisse;  
 ou on this covenant ye me kisse.  
 ough that I be jealous, wite me nought;  
 so depe enprinted in my thought,  
 an that I consider your beautee,  
 rwithall the unlikely elde of me,  
 ot certes, though I shulde die,  
 : to ben out of your compaignie  
 ay love; this is withouten doute:  
 se me, wif, and let us rome aboute.  
 freshe May, whan she thise wordes herd,  
 ly to January answerd,  
 t and forward she began to wepe:  
 quod she, a soule fur to kepe  
 as ye, and also min honour,  
 my wifhood thilke tendre flour,  
 that I have assured in your hond,  
 hat the preest to you my body bond  
 re I wol answer in this manere,  
 ve of you, myn owen lord so dere.  
 y to God that never daw that day,  
 ne sterve, as foule as woman may,  
 I do unto my kin that shame,  
 I empeire so my name,  
 be false; and if I do that lakke,  
 pen me and put me in a sakke,

And in the nexte river do me drenchie:  
 I am a gentil woman, and no wenche.  
 Why speke ye thus! but men ben ever untrew,  
 And women han reprefe of you ay newe.  
 Ye con non other daliance, I leve,  
 But speke to us as of untrust and repreve.  
 And with that word she saw wher Damian  
 Sat in the bush, and coughen she began;  
 And with hire finger a signe made she,  
 That Damian shuld climbe up on a tre,  
 That charged was with fruit, and up he went:  
 For veraily he knew all hire entent,  
 And every signe that she coude make,  
 Wel bet than January hire owen make.  
 For in a lettre she had told him all  
 Of this matere, how that he werken shall.  
 And thus I let him sitting in the pery,  
 And January and May roming ful mery.  
 Bright was the day, and blew the firmament;  
 Phebus of gold his streines doun hath sent  
 To gladen every flour with his warmnesse;  
 He was that time in *Geminis*, I gesse,  
 But litel fro his declination  
 Of Cancer, Joves exaltation.  
 And so befell in that bright morwe tide,  
 That in the gardin, on the fether side,  
 Pluto, that is the king of Faerie,  
 And many a ladie in his compaignie  
 Folwing his wif, the queene Proserpina,  
 Which that he ravished out of Ethna,  
 While that she gadred floures in the mede,  
 (In Claudian ye may the story rede,  
 How that hire in his grisely carte he fette)  
 This king of Faerie adoun him sette  
 Upon a benche of turves freshe and grene,  
 And right anon thus said he to his queene.  
 My wif, quod he, ther may no wight say nay,  
 The experience so preveth it every day,  
 The treson which that woman doth to man.  
 Ten hundred thousand stories tell I can  
 Notable of your untrouth and brotelnesse.  
 O Salomon, richest of all richesse,  
 Fulfilled of sapience, and worldly glorie,  
 Ful worthy ben thy wordes to memorie  
 To every wight, that wit and reson can;  
 Thus praiseth he the bountee yet of man;  
 Among a thousand men yet fond I on,  
 But of all women fond I never non.  
 Thus saith this king, that knewe your wikkednesse;  
 And Jesus, *Filius* Sirach, as I gesse,  
 He speketh of you but selden reverence.  
 A wilde fire, a corrupt pestilence,  
 So fall upon your bodies yet to-night:  
 Ne see ye not this honourable knight!  
 Because, alas! that he is blind and old,  
 His owen man shal make him cokewold.  
 Lo, wher he sit, the lechour, in the tree.  
 Now wol I graunten of my majestee  
 Unto this olde blinde worthy knight,  
 That he shal have again his eyen sight,  
 Whan that his wif wol don him vilanie;  
 Than shal he knownen all hire harlotrie,  
 Both in reprefe of hire and other mo.  
 Ye, sire, quod Proserpine, and wol ye so!  
 Now by my modre Ceres soule I swere,  
 That I shall yeve hire suffisant answerc,  
 And alle women after for hire sake;  
 That though they ben in any gilt ytake,  
 With face bold they shul hemselve excuse,  
 And bere hem doun that wolden hem accuse.

Wherefore I say you plainly in a clause,  
I wol non old wif han right for this cause.

For if so were I hadde swiche meschance,  
That I in hire ne coude have no plesance,  
Than shuld I lede my lif in avoutrie,  
And so straight to the devil whan I die.  
Ne children shuld I non upon hire geten :  
Yet were me lever houndes had me eten,  
Than that min heritage shulde fall  
In straunge hondes : and this I tell you all.  
I dote not, I wot the cause why  
Men shulden wedde : and furthermore wot I,  
Ther speketh many a man of marriage,  
That wot no more of it than wot my page,  
For which causes a man shuld take a wif.  
If he ne may not liven chast his lif,  
Take him a wif with gret devotion,  
Because of leful procreation  
Of children, to the honour of God above,  
And not only for paramour or love ;  
And for they shulden lecherie eschue,  
And yeld hir dette whan that it is due :  
Or for that eche of hem shuld helpen other  
In meschefe, as a suster shal the brother,  
And live in chastitee ful holly.

But, sires, (by your leve) that am not I,  
For God be thanked, I dare make avaunt,  
I fele my limmes stark and suffisant  
To don all that a man belongeth to :  
I wot myselfen best what I may do.  
Though I be hoor, I fare as doth a tre,  
That blosmeth er the fruit ywoven be ;  
The blosmy tre n'is neither drie ne ded :  
I fele me no wher hoor but on my hed.  
Min herte and all my limmes ben as grene,  
As laurer thurgh the yere is for to sene.  
And sin that ye han herd all min entent,  
I pray you to my will ye wolde assent.

Diverse men diversely him told  
Of marriage many ensamples old ;  
Som blamed it, som praised it certain ;  
But atte laste, shortly for to sain,  
(As all day falleth altercation  
Betwixen frendes in disputison)  
Ther fell a strif betwix his brethren two,  
Of which that on was cleped Placebo,  
Justinus sothly called was that other.

Placebo said ; O January brother,  
Ful litel nede han ye, my lord so dere,  
Conseil to aske of any that is here :  
But that ye ben so ful of sapience,  
That you ne liketh for your high prudence,  
To weiven fro the word of Salomon.  
This word said he unto us everich on ;  
Werke alle thing by conseil, thus said he,  
And than ne shalt thou not repenten thee.  
But though that Salomon spake swiche a word,  
Min owen dere brother and my lord,  
So wisely God my soule bringe at rest,  
I hold your owen conseil is the best.

For, brother min, take of me this motif,  
I have now ben a court-man all my lif,  
And God it wot, though I unworthy be,  
I have stonden in ful gret degree  
Abouten lordes of ful high estat :  
Yet had I never with non of hem debat,  
I never hem contraried trewely.  
I wot wel that my lord can more than I ;  
What that he saith, I hold it firme and stable  
I say the same, or elles thing semblable

A ful gret fool is any conseilour,  
That serveth any lord of high honour,  
That dare presume, or ones thinken it,  
That his conseil shuld passe his lordes wit.  
Nay, lordes be no foolen by my fay.  
Ye han yourselven shewed here to-day  
So high sentence, so holly, and wel,  
That I consent, and confirme every del  
Your wordes all, and your opinioun.  
By God ther n'is no man in all this toun  
Ne in Itaille, coud bet han ysaid :  
Crist holt him of this conseil wel apaid.  
And trewely it is an high corage  
Of any man that stopen is in age,  
To take a young wif, by my fader kin :  
Your herte hongeth on a joly pin.

Doth now in this matere right as you lest,  
For finally I hold it for the best.

Justinus, that ay stille sat and herd,  
Right in this wise he to Placebo answerd.  
Now, brother min, be patient I pray,  
Sin ye han said, and herkneth what I say.

Senek among his other wordes wise  
Saith, that a man ought him right wel avise  
To whom he yeveth his lond or his catel.  
And sith I ought avisen me right wel,  
To whom I yeve my good away from me,  
Wel more I ought avisen me, parde,  
To whom I yeve my body : for alway  
I warne you wel it is no childes play  
To take a wif without avisement.  
Men must enqueren (this is min assent)  
Wheder she be wise and sobere, or dronkelewe,  
Or proud, or elles other waies a shrew,  
A chidester, or a wastour of thy good,  
Or riche or poure, or elles a man is wood.  
Al be it so, that no man finden shal  
Non in this world, that trotteth hol in al.  
Ne man, ne beste, swiche as men can devise,  
But natheles it ought ynough suffice  
With any wif, if so were that she had  
Mo goode thewes, than hire vices bad :  
And all this axeth leiser to enquire.  
For God it wot, I have wept many a tere  
Ful privily, sin that I had a wif.  
Praise who so wol a wedded mannes lif,  
Certain I find in it but cost and care,  
And observances of alle blisses bare.  
And yet, God wot, my neighebour aboute,  
And namely of women many a route,  
Sain that I have the moste stedefast wif,  
And eke the mekest on that bereth lif.  
But I wot best, wher wriugeth me my sho.  
Ye may for me right as you liketh do.

Aviseth you, ye ben a man of age,  
How that ye entren into marriage ;  
And namely with a yong wif and a faire.  
By him that made water, fire, erthe, and aire,  
The yongest man, that is in all this route,  
Is besy ynow to bringen it aboute  
To han his wif alone, trusteth me :  
Ye shul not plesen hire fully yeres three,  
This is to sain, to don hire ful plesance.  
A wif axeth ful many an observance.  
I pray you that ye be not evil apaid.

Wel, quod this January, and hast thou saide !  
Straw for Senek, and straw for thy proverbes,  
I counte not a panier ful of herbes  
Of scole termes ; wiser men than thou,  
As thou hast herd, assented here right now

purpos : Placebo, what saye ye !  
 it is a cursed man, quod he,  
 teth matrimoine sikerly.  
 th that word they risen sodenly,  
 n assented fully, that he sholde  
 ded whan him list, and wher he wolde.  
 fantasie and curious besinesse  
 y to day gan in the soule empresse  
 uary about his mariage.  
 faire shap, and many a faire visage  
 asseth thurgh his herte night by night.  
 so toke a mirroure polished bright,  
 t it in a comune market place,  
 huld he see many a figure pace  
 mirroure, and in the same wise  
 uary in with his thought devise  
 dens, which that dwelten him beside :  
 te not wher that he might abide.  
 that on have beautee in hire face,  
 rstont so in the peples grace  
 e sadnesse and hire benignitee,  
 the peple the grettest vois hath she :  
 m were riche and hadden a bad name.  
 theles, betwix earnest and game,  
 he last appointed him on on,  
 t all other from his herte gon,  
 ees hire of his owen auctoritee,  
 e is blind all day, and may not see.  
 han that he was in his bed ybrought,  
 tried in his herte and in his thought  
 eshe beautee, and hire age tendre,  
 iddel smal, hire armes long and sclendre,  
 ise governance, hire gentillesse,  
 omanly bering, and hire sadnesse.  
 whan that he on hire was condescended,  
 ought his chois it might not ben amended ;  
 an that he himself concluded had,  
 ought eche other mannes wit so bad  
 npossible it were to replie  
 his chois ; this was his fantasie.  
 rendes sent he to, at his instance,  
 aied hem to don him that plesance,  
 astily they wolden to him come ;  
 de abregge hir labour all and some :  
 no more to hem to go ne ride,  
 appointed ther he wolde abide.  
 ebo came, and eke his frendes sone,  
 derfirst he bade hem all a bone,  
 on of hem non argumentes make  
 the purpos that he hath ytake :  
 purpos was plesant to God (said he)  
 ray ground of his prosperitee.  
 aid, ther was a maiden in the toun,  
 that of beautee hadde gret renoun,  
 e it so, she were of smal degree,  
 th him hire youth and hire beautee :  
 maid (he said) he wold han to his wif  
 : in ese and holinesse his lif :  
 anked God, that he might han hire all,  
 o wight with his blisse parten shall :  
 aied hem to labour in this nede,  
 apen that he faille not to spede.  
 au, he sayd, his spirit was at ese ;  
 s (quod he) nothing may me displese,  
 thing pricketh in my conscience,  
 ich I wol reherse in your presence.  
 ve (quod he) herd said ful yore ago,  
 nay no man han parfitte blisses two,  
 to say, in erthe and eke in heven.  
 ough he kepe him fro the sinnes seven,

And eke from every branch of thilke tree,  
 Yet is ther so parfit felicitee,  
 And so gret ese and lust in mariage,  
 That ever I am agast now in min age,  
 That I shal leden now so mery a lif,  
 So delicat, withouten we or strif,  
 That I shal han min heven in erthe here.  
 For sin that veray heven is bought so dere  
 With tribulation and gret penanco,  
 How shuld I than, living in swiche plesance  
 As alle wedded men don with hir wives,  
 Come to the blisse, ther Crist eterne on live is !  
 This is my drede, and ye, my brethren tweic,  
 Assoileth me this question I preie.

Justinus, which that hated his folie,  
 Answerd anon right in his japerie ;  
 And for he wold his longe tale abregge,  
 He wolde non auctorites allege,  
 But sayde, sire, so ther be non obstacle  
 Other than this, God of his his miracle,  
 And of his mercy may so for you werche,  
 That er ye have your rights of holy cherche,  
 Ye may repent of wedded mannes lif,  
 In which ye sain ther is no wo ne strif :  
 And elles God forbede, but if he sent  
 A wedded man his grace him to repent  
 Wel often, rather than a single man.  
 And therefore, sire, the best rede that I can,  
 Despeire you not, but haveth in memorie,  
 Paraventure she may be your purgatorie ;  
 She may be Goddes mene and Goddes whippe ;  
 Than shal your soule up unto heven skippe  
 Swifter than doth an arow of a bow.  
 I hope to God hereafter ye shal know,  
 That ther n'is non so gret felicitee  
 In mariage, ne never more shal be,  
 That you shal let of your salvation,  
 So that ye use, as skill is and reson,  
 The lustes of your wif attemprely,  
 And that ye plesse hire nat to amorously :  
 And that ye kepe you eke from other sinne.  
 My tale is don, for my wit is but thinne.  
 Beth not agast hereof, my brother dere,  
 But let us waden out of this matere.  
 The wif of Bathe, if ye han understonde,  
 Of mariage, which ye now han in honde,  
 Declared hath ful wel in litel space :  
 Fareth now wel, God have you in his grace.

And with this word this Justine and his brothes  
 Han take hir leve, and eche of hem of other.  
 And whan they saw that it must nedes be,  
 They wroughten so by sleighte and wise trectee,  
 That she this maiden, which that Maius hight,  
 As hastily as ever that she might,  
 Shal wedded be unto this January.  
 I trow it were to longe you to tary,  
 If I you told of every script and bond,  
 By which that she was feoffed in his lond ;  
 Or for to rekken of hire rich array.  
 But finally ycomen is the day,  
 That to the chirche bothe ben they went,  
 For to receive the holy sacrament.  
 Forth cometh the preest, with stole about his nekke,  
 And bade hire be like Sara and Rebekke,  
 In wisdom and in trouthe of mariage :  
 And sayd his orisons, as is usage,  
 And crouched hern, and bade God shuld hem bleasae,  
 And made all siker ynow with holinesse.  
 Thus ben they wedded with solemnpnitee ;  
 And at the feste sitteth he and she

With other worthy folk upon the deis.  
 Al ful of joye and blisse is the paleir,  
 And ful of instruments, and of vitaille,  
 The moste deinteous of all Itaille.  
 Beforn hem stood swiche instruments of soun,

That Orpheus, ne of Thebes Amphion,  
 Ne maden never swiche a melodie.

At every cours in came loude minstralcie,  
 That never Joab tromped for to here,  
 Ne he Theodomas yet half so clere

At Thebes, whan the citee was in doute.

Bacchus the win hem skinketh al aboute,

And Venus laugheth upon every wight,

(For January was become hire knight,

And wolde bothe assaien his corage

In libertee, and eke in mariage)

And with hire firebrond in hire hond aboute

Danceth before the bride and all the route.

And certainly I dare right wel say this,

Ymeneus, that God of wedding is,

Saw never his lif so mery a wedded man.

Hold thou thy pees, thou poet Marcian,

That writest us that like wedding mery

Of hire Philologie and him Mercurie,

And of the songes that the Muses songe :

To smal is both thy pen and eke thy tonge

For to descriven of this mariage.

Whan tendre youth hath wedded stouping age,

Ther is swiche mirth that it may not be writen ;

Assaieth it yourself, than may ye witen

If that I lie or non in this matere.

Maius, that sit with so benigne a chere,

Hire to behold it semed faerie,

Queene Hester loked never with swiche an eye

On Assuere, so meke a look hath she,

I may you not devise all hire beautee ;

But thus moch of hire beautee tell I may,

That she was like the brighte morwe of May

Fulfilled of all beautee, and plesance.

This January is ravished in a trance,

At every time he loketh in hire face,

But in his herte he gan hire to manace,

That he that night in armes wold hire streine

Harder than ever Paris did Heleine.

But natheles yet had he gret pitee

That thiike night offendeu hire must he,

And thought, alas, o tendre creature,

Now wolde God ye mighten wel endure

All my corage, it is so sharpe and kene ;

I am agast ye shal it nat sustene.

But God forbode, that I did all my might.

Now wolde God that it were waxen night,

And that the night wold lasten ever mo.

I wold that all this peple were ago.

And finally he doth all his labour,

As he best mighte, saving his honour,

To haste hem fro the mete in subtil wise.

The time came that reson was to rise,

And after that men dance, and drinken fast,

And spices all about the hous they cast,

And ful of joye and blisse is every man,

All but a squier, that highte Damian,

Which carf befor the knight ful many a day :

He was so ravisht on his lady May,

That for the veray peine he was nie wood ;

Almost he swelt, and swooneth ther he stood :

So sore hath Venus hurt him with hire brond,

As that she bare it dancing in hire hond.

And to his bed he went him hastily ;

No more of him as at this time speke I ;

But ther I let him wepe ynow and plaine,  
 Til freshe May wol rewen on his peine.

O perilous fire, that in the bedstraw bredeth !

O famuler fo, that his service bedeth !

O servant traitour, false of holy hewe,

Like to the nedder in bosom alie untrewe,

God shelde us alle from your acquaintance !

O January, dronken in plesance

Of mariage, see how thy Damian,

Thin owen squier and thy boren man,

Entendeth for to do thee vilanie :

God grante thee thin homly fo to espie.

For in this world n'is werse pestilence,

Than homly fo, all day in thy presence.

Parformed hath the sonne his arke diurne,

No longer may the body of him sojourne

On the orizont, as in that latitude :

Night with his mantel, that is derke and rude,

Gan oversprede the Hemisperie aboute :

For which departed is this lusty route

Fro January, with thank on every side.

Home to hir houses lustily they ride,

Ther as they don hir thinges, as hem leest,

And whan they saw hir time gon to rest.

Sone after that this hastif January

Wol go to bed, he wol no longer tary.

He drinketh Ipcoras, clarre, and vernage

Of spices hot, to encreasen his corage :

And many a letuarie had he ful fine,

Swiche as the cursed monk dan Constantine

Hath written in his book of *Coitu* ;

To ete hem all he wolde nothing eschue :

And to his privee frendes thus sayd he :

For Goddes love, as sone as it may be,

Let voiden all this hous in curteis wise.

And they han don right as he wol devise.

Men drinken, and the travers drawe anon ;

The bride is brought a-bed as still as ston ;

And whan the bed was with the preest yblessed,

Out of the chambre hath every wight him dressed,

And January bath fast in armes take

His freshe May, his paradis, his make.

He lulleth hire, he kisseth hire ful oft ;

With thicke briestes of his berd unsoft,

Like to the skin of houndfish, sharp as brere,

(For he was shave al newe in his manere)

He rubbeth hire upon hire tendre face,

And soyde thus ; Alas ! I mote trespace

To you, my spouse, and you gretly offend,

Or time come that I wol down descend.

But natheles considereth this, (quod he)

Ther n'is no werkman, whatsoever he be,

That may both werken wel and hastily :

This wol be don at leiser parfily.

It is no force how longe that we play ;

In trewe wedlok coupled be we tway ;

And blessed be the yoke that we ben inne,

For in our actes may ther be no sinne.

A man may do no sinne with his wif,

Ne hurt himselfen with his owen knif :

For we have leve to play us by the lawe.

Thus laboureth he, til that the day gan dawe,

And than he taketh a sop in fine clarre,

And upright in his bed than sitteth he.

And after that he sang ful loud and clere,

And kist his wif, and maketh wanton chere.

He was al coltish, ful of ragerie,

And ful of jergon, as a flecked pie.

The slacke skin about his necke shaketh,

While that he sang, so chanteth he and craketh

d wot what that May thought in hire herte,  
 she him saw up sitting in his sherte  
 night cap, and with his necke lene :  
 iseth not his playing worth a bene.  
 yd he thus ; my reste wol I take  
 y is come, I may no lenger wake ;  
 un he layd his hed and slept til prime.  
 erward, whan that he saw his time,  
 th January, but freshe May  
 re in chambre til the fourthe day,  
 re is of wives for the beste.  
 ry labour somtime moste han reste,  
 longe may he not endure ;  
 to say, no lives creature,  
 fish, or brid, or best, or man.  
 wol I speke of woful Damian,  
 gureth for love, as ye shul here ;  
 e I speke to him in this manere.  
 sely Damian, alas !  
 to this demand, as in this cas,  
 alt thou to thy lady freshe May  
 hy wo ! She wol alway say nay ;  
 hou speke, she wol thy wo bewrein ;  
 thin help, I can no better sein.  
 sike Damian in Venus fire  
 neth, that he dieth for desire ;  
 ich he put his lif in aventure,  
 er might he in this wise endure,  
 vely a penner gan he borwe,  
 a lettre wrote he all his sorwe,  
 ere of a complaint or a lay,  
 s faire freshe lady May.  
 a purse of silk, heng on his sherte,  
 it put, and layd it at his herte.  
 none that at none was thilke day  
 nuary hath wedded freshe May  
 f Taure, was into Cancer gliden ;  
 hath Maius in hire chambre abiden,  
 one is unto thise nobles alle.  
 shal not eten in the halle,  
 s four or three dayes at the leste  
 l ben, than let hire go to feste.  
 rthe day complete fro none to none,  
 hat the highe messe was ydone,  
 sat this January and May,  
 s as is the brighte somers day.  
 befel, how that this goode man  
 bred him upon this Damian,  
 de ; Seinte Marie, how may it be,  
 unian entendeth not to me ?  
 sike ! or how may this betide ?  
 quiers, which that stoden ther beside,  
 l him, because of his siknesse,  
 letted him to don his besinesse :  
 er cause mighte make him tary.  
 me forthinketh, quod this January ;  
 gentil squier by my trouthe,  
 e died, it were gret harme and routhe.  
 wise, discret, and as secree,  
 man I wote of his degree,  
 rto manly and eke servisable,  
 to ben a thrifty man right able.  
 r mete as sone as ever I may  
 yselfe visite him, and eke May,  
 him all the comfort that I can.  
 that word him blessed every man,  
 his bountee and his gentillesse  
 le so comforten in siknesse  
 ier, for it was a gentil dede.  
 , quod this January, take good hede,

At after mete, ye with your women alle,  
 (Whan that ye ben in chambre out of this halle)  
 That all ye gon to see this Damian :  
 Doth him disport, he is a gentil man,  
 And telleth him that I wol him visite,  
 Have I no thing but rested me a lite :  
 And spede you faste, for I wol abide  
 Til that ye slepen faste by my side.  
 And with that word he gan unto him calle  
 A squier, that was marshal of his halle,  
 And told him certain thinges that he wolde.  
 This freshe May hath streight hire way yholde  
 With all hire women unto Damian.  
 Doun by his beddes side sit she than,  
 Comforting him as goodly as she may.  
 This Damian, whan that his time he say,  
 In secree wise, his purse, and eke his bill,  
 In which that he ywritten had his will,  
 Hath put into hire hond withouten more,  
 Save that he siked wonder depe and sore,  
 And softly to hire right thus sayd he ;  
 Mercie, and that ye nat discover me :  
 For I am ded, if that this thing be kid.  
 This purse hath she in with hire bosome hid,  
 And went hire way ; ye get no more of me ;  
 But unto January ycome is she,  
 That on his beddes side sate ful soft.  
 He taketh hire, and kiseth hire ful oft :  
 And layd him doun to slepe, and that anon.  
 She feined hire, as that she muste gon  
 Ther as ye wote that every wight mot nede ;  
 And whan she of this bill hath taken hede,  
 She rent it all to cloutes at the last,  
 And in the privree softly it cast.  
 Who studieth now but faire freshe May !  
 Adoun by olde January she lay,  
 That slepte, til the cough hath him awaked :  
 Anon he prayed hire stripen hire al naked,  
 He wold of hire, he said, have som plesance ;  
 And said, hire clothes did him encombrance.  
 And she obeieth him, be hire lefe or loth.  
 But lest that precious folk be with me wroth,  
 How that he wrought, I dare nat to you tell,  
 Or wheder hire thought it paradis or hell ;  
 But ther I let hem werken in hir wise  
 Til evesong rang, and that they must arise.  
 Were it by destinee, or aventure,  
 Were it by influence, or by nature,  
 Or constellation, that in swiche estat  
 The heven stood at that time fortunat,  
 As for to put a bill of Venus werkes  
 (For alle thing hath time, as sayn thise clerkes)  
 To any woman for to get hire love,  
 I cannot say, but grete God above,  
 That knoweth that non act is causeles,  
 He deme of all, for I wol hold my pees.  
 But soth is this, how that this freshe May  
 Hath taken swiche impression that day  
 Of pitee on this sike Damian,  
 That fro hire herte she ne driven can  
 The remembrance for to don him ese.  
 Certain (thought she) whom that this thing displeas  
 I rekke not, for here I him assure,  
 To love him best of any creature,  
 Though he no more hadde than his sherte.  
 Lo, pitee renneth sone in gentil herte.  
 Here may ye seen, how excellent franchise  
 In women is whan they hem narwe avise.  
 Som tyraunt is, as ther ben many on,  
 That hath an herte as hard as any ston,

Which wold han lette him sterven in the place  
Wel rather than han granted him hire grace :  
And hem rejoycen in hir cruel pride,  
And rekken not to ben an homicide.

This gentil May, fulfilled of pitee,  
Right of hire hond a lettre maketh she,  
In which she granteth him hire veray grace ;  
There lacked nought, but only day and place,  
Wher that she might unto his lust suffice :  
For it shall be, right as he wol devise.

And whan she saw hire time upon a day  
To visiten this Damian goth this May,  
And sotilly this lettre doun she threst  
Under his pilwe, rede it if him leest.  
She taketh him by the hond, and hard him twist  
So secretly, that no wight of it wist,  
And bade him ben all hol, and forth she went  
To January, whan he for hire sent.

Up riseth Damian the nexte morwe,  
Al passed was his siknesse and his sorwe.  
He kembeth him, he proineth him and piketh,  
He doth all that his lady lust and liketh ;  
And eke to January he goth as lowe,  
As ever did a dogge for the bowe.  
He is so pleasant unto every man,  
(For craft is all, who so that don it can)  
That every wight is fain to speke him good ;  
And fully in his ladies grace he stood.

Thus let I Damian about his nede,  
And in my tale forth I wol procede.

Som clerkes holden that felicitee  
Stant in delit, and therefore certain he  
This noble January, with all his might  
In honest wise as longeth to a knight,  
Shope him to liven ful deliciously.  
His housing, his array, as honestly  
To his degree was makid as a kinges.  
Amonges other of his honest thinges  
He had a gardin walled all with ston,  
So fayre a gardin wote I no wher nou.  
For out of doute I veraily suppose,  
That he that wrote the Romant of the Rose,  
Ne coude of it the beautee wel devise :  
Ne Priapus ne mighte not suffice,  
Though he be god of gardins, for to tell  
The beautee of the gardin, and the well,  
That stood under a laurer alway grene.  
Ful often time he Pluto and his quene  
Proserpina, and alle hir faerie,  
Disporten hem and maken melodie  
About that well, and daunced, as men told.

This noble knight, this January the old  
Swiche deintee hath in it to walke and pley,  
That he wol suffre no wight bere the key,  
Sauf he himself, for of the smal wiket  
He bare alway of silver a kliket,  
With which whan that him list he it unshette.  
And whan that he wold pay his wives dette  
In somer seson thider wold he go,  
And May his wif, and no wight but they two ;  
And thinges which that were not don a-bedde,  
He in the gardin parfoumed hem and spedde.

And in this wise many a mery day  
Lived this January and freshe May,  
But worldly joye may not alway endure  
To January, ne to no creature.

O soden hap, o thou fortune unstable,  
Like to the Scorpion so deceivable,  
That flatrest with thy hed whan thou wolt sting ;  
Thy tayl is deth, thurgh thin evenimeng.

O brotel joye, o swete poyson queinte,  
O monstre, that so sotilly canst peinte  
Thy giftes, under hewe of stedfastnesse,  
That thou deceivest bothe more and leese,  
Why hast thou January thus deceived,  
That haddest him for thy ful frend received !  
And now thou hast beraft him both his eyes,  
For sorwe of which desireth he to dyen.

Alas ! this noble January free,  
Amidde his lust and his prosperitee  
Is waxen blind, and that al sodenly.  
He wepeth and he waileth pitously ;  
And therewithall, the fire of jalousie  
(Lest that his wif shuld fall in som folie)  
So brent his herte, that he wolde fain,  
That som man had both him and hire yelain ;  
For nother after his deth, ne in his lif,  
Ne wold he that she were no love ne wif,  
But ever live as a widewe in clothes blake,  
Sole as the turtle that hath lost hire make.  
But at the last, after a moneth or tway  
His sorwe gan asswagen, soth to say.  
For whan he wist it might non other be,  
He patiently toke his adversitee :  
Save out of doute he ne may nat forgon,  
That he n'as jalous ever more in on :  
Which jalousie it was so outrageous,  
That neither in halle, ne in non other hous,  
Ne in non other place never the mo  
He n'olde suffre hire for to ride or go,  
But if that he had honde on hire alway.  
For which ful often wepeth freshe May,  
That loveth Damian so brenningly,  
That she moste either dien sodenly,  
Or elles she moste han him as hire lest :  
She waited whan hire herte wold to-brest.

Upon that other side Damian  
Becomen is the sorwefullest man  
That ever was, for neither night ne day  
Ne might he speke a word to freshe May,  
As to his purpos of no swiche matere,  
But if that January must it here,  
That had an hand upon hire evermo.  
But natheles, by writing to and fro,  
And privee signes, wist he what she ment,  
And she knew eke the fin of his entent.  
O January, what might it thee avail,  
Though thou might seen, as fer as shippes sail !  
For as good is blind to deceived be,  
As be deceived, whan a man may see.  
Lo Argus, which that had an hundred eyen,  
For all that ever he coude pore or prien,  
Yet was he blent, and, God wot, so ben mo,  
That wenen wisly that it be not so :  
Passe over is an ese, I say no more.

This freshe May, of which I spake of yore,  
In warm wex hath enprinted the kliket,  
That January bare of the smal wiket,  
By which into his gardin oft he went ;  
And Damian that knew all hire entent  
The kliket contrefeted prively :  
Ther n'is no more to say, but hastily  
Som wonder by this kliket shal betide,  
Which ye shul heren, if ye wol abide.

O noble Ovide, soth sayest thou, God wote,  
What sleight is it if love be long and hote,  
That he n'ill find it out in som manere !  
By Pyramus and Thisbe may men lere ;  
Though they were kept ful long and streit over all—  
They ben accorded, rowning thurgh a wall,

wight coude han founden swiche a sleighte.

to purpos ; er that daies eighte  
 used of the month of Juil, befill,  
 nuary hath caught so gret a will,  
 egging of his wif, him for to play  
 ardin, and no wight but they tway,  
 a morwe unto this May said he ;  
 my wif, my love, my lady free ;  
 les vois is herd, myn owen swete ;  
 ter is gon, with all his raines wete.  
 rth now with this eyen columbine.  
 er ben thy brests than ony wine.  
 lin is enclosed all aboute ;  
 rth, my white spouse, for out of doute,  
 st me wounded in myn herte, o wif :  
 in thee n'as never in all thy lif.  
 rth, and let us taken our disport,  
 thee for my wif and my comfort.  
 e olde lewed wordes used be.  
 ian a signe made she,  
 shuld go before with his cliket.  
 mian hath opened the wicket,  
 ie stert, and that in swiche manere,  
 wight might him see neyther yhere,  
 he sit under a bush. Anon  
 uary, as blind as is a ston,  
 ius in his hand, and no wight mo,  
 freshe gardin is ago,  
 pped to the wicket sodenly.  
 wif, quod he, here n'is but thou, and I,  
 the creature that I best love :  
 hat lord that sit in heaven above,  
 lever dien on a knif,  
 e offenden, dere trewe wif.  
 des sake, thinke how I thees chees,  
 no covetise douteles,  
 for the love I had to thee.  
 ugh that I be old and may not see,  
 me trewe, and I wol tell you why ;  
 ree thinges shal ye win therby ;  
 e of Crist, and to yourself honour,  
 min heritage, toun and tour.  
 ; you, maketh chartres as you lest :  
 I be don to-morwe er sonne rest,  
 God my soule bring to blisse ;  
 ou on this covenant ye me kisse.  
 ugh that I be jealous, wite me nought ;  
 so depe enprented in my thought,  
 an that I consider your beautee,  
 rwithall the unlikely elde of me,  
 ot certes, though I shulde die,  
 to ben out of your compaignie  
 y love ; this is withouten doute :  
 e me, wif, and let us rome aboute.  
 reshe May, whan she thise wordes herd,  
 ly to January answerd,  
 and forward thike began to wepe :  
 quod she, a soule fur to kepe  
 as ye, and also min honour,  
 ny wifhood thike tendre flour,  
 hat I have assured in your hond,  
 at the preest to you my body bond  
 e I wol answer in this manere,  
 re of you, myn owen lord so dere.  
 to God that never daw that day,  
 e sterve, as foule as woman may,  
 I do unto my kin that shame,  
 I empeire so my name,  
 e false ; and if I do that lakke,  
 en me and put me in a sakke,

And in the nexte river do me drenche :  
 I am a gentil woman, and no wenche.  
 Why speke ye thus ? but men ben ever untrew,  
 And women han reprepe of you ay newe.  
 Ye con non other daliance, I leve,  
 But speke to us as of untrust and repreve.

And with that word she saw wher Damian  
 Sat in the bush, and coughen she began ;  
 And with hire finger a signe made she,  
 That Damian shuld climbe up on a tre,  
 That charged was with fruit, and up he went :  
 For veraily he knew all hire entent,  
 And every signe that she coude make,  
 Wel bet than January hire owen make.  
 For in a lettre she had told him all  
 Of this matere, how that he werken shall.  
 And thus I let him sitting in the pery,  
 And January and May roming ful mery.

Bright was the day, and blew the firmament ;  
 Phebus of gold his streemes doun hath sent  
 To gladen every flour with his warnnesse ;  
 He was that time in *Geminis*, I gesse,  
 But litel fro his declination  
 Of Cancer, Joves exaltation.

And so befell in that bright morwe tide,  
 That in the gardin, on the fether side,  
 Pluto, that is the king of Faerie,  
 And many a ladie in his compaignie  
 Folwing his wif, the quene Proserpina,  
 Which that he ravished out of Ethna,  
 While that she gadred floures in the mede,  
 (In Claudian ye may the story rede,  
 How that hire in his grisely carte he fette)  
 This king of Faerie adoun him sette  
 Upon a benche of turves freshe and grene,  
 And right anon thus said he to his quene.

My wif, quod he, ther may no wight say nay,  
 The experience so preveth it every day,  
 The treason which that woman doth to man.  
 Ten hundred thousand stories tell I can  
 Notable of your untrouth and brotelnesse.

O Salomon, richest of all richesse,  
 Fulfilled of sapience, and worldly glorie,  
 Ful worthy ben thy wordes to memorie  
 To every wight, that wit and reson can.  
 Thus praiseth he the bountee yet of man ;  
 Among a thousand men yet fond I on,  
 But of all women fond I never non.  
 Thus saith this king, that knewe your wikkednesse ;  
 And Jesus, *Filius* Sirach, as I gesse,  
 He speketh of you but selden reverence.  
 A wilde fire, a corrupt pestilence,  
 So fall upon your bodies yet to-night :  
 Ne see ye not this honourable knight ?  
 Because, alas ! that he is blind and old,  
 His owen man shal make him cokewold.  
 Lo, wher he sit, the lechour, in the tree.  
 Now wol I graunten of my majestee  
 Unto this olde blinde worthy knight,  
 That he shal have again his eyen sight,  
 Whan that his wif wol don him vilanie ;  
 Than shal he knowen all hire harlotric,  
 Both in reprepe of hire and other mo.

Ye, sire, quod Proserpine, and wol ye so !  
 Now by my inodre Ceres soule I swere,  
 That I shall yeve hire suffisant answer,  
 And alle women after for hire sake ;  
 That though they ben in any gilt ytake,  
 With face bold they shul hemselfe excuse,  
 And bere hem doun that wolden hem accuse.



For lacke of answer, non of us shal dien.  
Al had ye seen a thing with bothe youre eyen,  
Yet shul we so visage it hardly,  
And wepe and swere and chiden subtilly,  
That ye shul ben as lewed as ben gees.

What rekketh me of your auctoritees ?  
I wote wel that this Jewe, this Salomon,  
Foud of us women fooles many on :  
But though that he ne foud no good woman,  
Ther hath yfonden many an other man  
Women ful good, and trewe, and vertuous ;  
Witnesse on hem that dwelte in Cristes hous,  
With martyrdom they preved hir constance.  
The Romain gestes maken remembrance  
Of many a veray trewe wif also.

But, sire, ne be not wroth, al be it so,  
Though that he said he foud no good woman,  
I pray you take the sentence of the man :  
He went thus, That in soverain bountee  
N'is non but God, no, nouthur he ne she.

Ey, for the veray God that n'is but on,  
What maken ye so moche of Salomon ?  
What though he made a temple, Goddes hous ?  
What though he riche were and glorious ?  
So made he eke a temple of false goddes,  
How might he don a thing that more forbode is ?  
Parde as faire as ye his name emplastre,  
He was a lechour, and an idolastre,  
And in his elde he veray God forsoke.  
And if that God ne hadde (as saith the boke)  
Spared him for his fathers sake, he sholde  
Han lost his regne rather than he wolde.

I sete nat of all the vilanie,  
That he of women wrote, a boterflie.  
I am a woman, nedes moste I speke,  
Or swell unto that time min herte breke.  
For sin he said that we ben jangleresses,  
As ever mote I brouken hole my tresses,  
I shal nat spereu for no curtesie  
To speke him harm, that sayth us vilanie.

Dame, quod this Pluto, be no lenger wroth,  
I yeve it up : but sin I swore min oth,  
That I wold graunten him his sight again,  
My word shal stand, that warne I you certain :  
I am a king, it sit me not to lie.  
And I, quod she, am queene of Faerie.  
Hire answer she shal han I undertake,  
Let us no more wordes of it make.  
Forsooth, quod he, I wol you not contrary.

Now let us turne again to January,  
That in the gardin with his faire May  
Singeth wel merier than the poppingay :  
You love I best, and shal, and other non.

So long about the alleys is he gon,  
Til he was comen again to thilke pery,  
Wher as this Damian sitteth ful mery  
On high, among the freshe leves grene.

This freshe May, that is so bright and shene,  
Gan for to sike, and said ; alas my side !  
Now, sire, quod she, for ought that may betide  
I moste have of the peres that I see,  
Or I moste die, so sore longeth me  
To eten of the smale peres grene :  
Help for hire love that is of heven quene.  
I tell you wel a woman in my plit  
May have to fruit so gret an appetit,  
That she may dien, but she of it have.

Alas ! quod he, that I n'adde here a knave,  
That coude climbe, alas ! alas ! (quod he)  
For I am blinde. Ye, sire, no force, quod she ;

But wold ye vouchesauf for Goddes sake,  
The pery in with your armes for to take,  
(For wel I wot that ye mistrusten me)  
Than wold I climben wel ynough, (quod she)  
So I my fote might setten on your back.

Certes, said he, therin shal be no lack,  
Might I you helpen with min herte blood.

He stoupeth doun, and on his back she stood,  
And caught hire by a twist, and up she goth.

(Ladies, I pray you that ye be not wroth,  
I can nat glose, I am a rude man :)

And sodenly anon this Damian  
Gan pullen up the smock, and in he throng.

And whan that Pluto saw this grete wrong,  
To January he yaf again his sight,  
And made him see as wel as ever he might.  
And whan he thus had caught his sight again,  
Ne was ther never man of thing so fain :  
But on his wif his thought was ever mo.

Up to the tree he cast his eyen two,  
And saw how Damian his wife had dressed  
In swiche manere, it may not ben expressed,  
But if I wolde speke uncurteisly.  
And up he yaf a roring and a cry,  
As doth the mother whan the child shal die ;  
Out ! helpe ! alas ! harow ! he gan to cry ;  
O stronge lady store, what doest thou !

And she answered : sire, what aileth you ?  
Have patience and reson in your minde,  
I have you holpen on both your eyen blinde.  
Up peril of my soule, I shal nat lien,  
As me was taught to helpen with your eyen,  
Was nothing better for to make you see,  
Than stroggle with a man upon a tree :  
God wot, I did it in ful good entent.

Stroggle ! quod he, ye, algate in it went.  
God yeve you both on shames deth to dien !  
He swived thee ; I saw it with min eyen ;  
And elles be I honged by the halse.

Than is, quod she, my medicine al false.  
For certainly, if that ye mighten see,  
Ye wold not say thise wordes unto me.  
Ye have som glimsing, and no parfit sight.

I see, quod he, as wel as ever I might,  
(Thanked be God) with both min eyen two,  
And by my feith me thought he did thee so.

Ye mase, ye masen, goode sire, quod she ;  
This thank have I for I have made you see :  
Alas ! quod she, that ever I was so kind.

Now, dame, quod he, let al passe out of mind ;  
Come doun, my lefe, and if I have missaid,  
God helpe me so, as I am evil apaid.  
But by my fadres soule, I wende have sein,  
How that this Damain had by thee lein,  
And that thy smock had lein upon his breast.

Ye, sire, quod she, ye may wene as you lest :  
But, sire, a man that waketh of his slepe,  
He may not sodenly wel taken kepe  
Upon a thing, ne seen it parfitly,  
Til that he be adawed veraily.

Right so a man, that long hath blind ybe,  
He may not sodenly so wel ysee,  
First whan his sight is newe comen agein,  
As he that hath a day or two ysein.  
Til that your sight yeaete be a while,  
Ther may ful many a sighte you begile.  
Beware, I pray you, for by heven king  
Ful many a man weneth to see a thing,  
And it is all another than it semeth :  
He which that misconceiveth oft misdemeeth.

to word she lep down fro the tree.  
 ho is glad but he ?  
 , and clippeth hire ful oft,  
 mbe he stroketh hire ful soft ;

And to his paleis home he hath hire lad.  
 Now, goode men, I pray you to be glad.  
 Thus endeth here my tale of Januarie,  
 God blesse us, and his moder Sainte Marie.

## THE SQUIERES TALE.

### SQUIERES PROLOGUE.

cy, sayde oure Hoste tho,  
 if I preie God kepe me fro.  
 htes and subtilitees  
 for ay as besy as bees  
 y men for to deceive,  
 ne wol they ever weive.  
 ntes tale it preveth wel.  
 trewe as any stele,  
 ough that she poure be ;  
 ge a labbing shrewe is she ;  
 h an hepe of vices mo.  
 ; let all swiche thinges go.  
 at ! in conseil be it seyde,  
 I am unto hire teyde ;  
 le rekene every vice,  
 hath, ywis I were to nice ;  
 it shulde reported be  
 of som of this compaignie,  
 leth not for to declare,  
 en utter swiche chaffare)  
 sufficeth not therto  
 herfore my tale is do.  
 ner, if it youre wille be,  
 at of love, for certes ye  
 as moche as any man.  
 he, but swiche thing as I can  
 le, for I wol not rebelle  
 t, a tale wol I telle.  
 ed if I speke amis ;  
 i ; and lo, my tale is this.

### SQUIERES TALE.

e lond of Tartarie,  
 ng that werreied Russie,  
 her died many a doughty man :  
 was cleped Cambuscan,  
 ne was of so gret renoun,  
 so wher in no regioun,  
 ord in alle thing :  
 ght that longeth to a king,  
 of which that he was borne.  
 to which he was ysworne,  
 as hardy, wise, and riche,  
 just, and alway yliche ;  
 rd, benigne and honourable ;  
 any centre stable ;  
 d strong, in armes desirous,  
 r of all his hous.  
 ie was, and fortunate,  
 so wel real estat,

That ther n'as no wher swiche another man.

This noble king, this Tartre Cambuscan,  
 Hadde two sones by Elfeta his wif,  
 Of which the eldest ~~some~~ highte Algarsif,  
 That other was ycleped Camballo.

A doughter had this worthy king also,  
 That youngest was, and highte Canace :  
 But for to tellen you all hire beautee,  
 It lith not in my tonge, ne in my counning,  
 I dare not undertake so high a thing :  
 Min English eke is unsufficient,  
 It muste ben a Rethor excellent,  
 That coude his colours longing for that art,  
 If he shuld hire descriven ony part :  
 I am not swiche, I mote speke as I can.

And so befell, that whan this Cambuscan  
 Hath twenty winter borne his diademe,  
 As he was wont fro yere to yere I deme,  
 He let the feste of his nativitee  
 Don crien, thurghout Sarra his citee,  
 The last Idus of March, after the yere.

Phebus the sonne ful jolif was and clere,  
 For he was nigh his exaltation  
 In Martes face, and in his mansion (Mars)

In Aries, the colerike hote signe :  
 Ful lusty was the wether and benigne,  
 For which the foules again the sonne shene,  
 What for the seson and the yonge grene,  
 Ful loude songen hir affections :  
 Hem semed han gotten hem protections  
 Again the swerd of winter kene and cold.

This Cambuscan, of which I have you told,  
 In real vestiments, sit on his deis  
 With diademe, ful high in his paleis ;  
 And holt his feste so solempne and so riche,  
 That in this world ne was ther non it liche.

Of which if I shal tellen all the array,  
 Than wold it occupie a somers day ;  
 And eke it nedeth not for to devise  
 At every cours the order of hir service.

I wol not tellen of hir strange sewes, *dekes*  
 Ne of her swannes, ne hir heronsewes.  
 Eke in that lond, as tellen knightes old,  
 Ther is som mete that is ful deintee hold,  
 That in this lond men recche of it ful smal :

Ther n'is no man that may reporten al.  
 I wol not tarien you, for it is prime,  
 And for it is no fruit, but losse of time,  
 Unto my purpose I wol have recours.

And so befell that after the thridde cours  
 While that this king sit thus in his nobley,  
 Herking his ministralles hir thinges play  
 Before him at his bord deliciously,  
 In at the halle dore al sodenly  
 Ther came a knight upon a stede of bras,  
 And in his hond a brod mirrour of glas ;  
 Upon his thombe he had of gold a ring,  
 And by his side a naked swerd hanging :

And up he rideth to the highe bord.  
In all the halle ne was ther spoke a word,  
For mervaille of this knight ; him to behold  
Ful besily they waiten yong and old.

This strange knight that come thus sodenly  
Al armed save his hed ful richely,  
Salueth king and queene, and lordes alle  
By order, as they saten in the halle,  
With so high reverence and observance,  
As wel in speche as in his contenance,  
That Gawain with his olde curtesie,  
Though he were come agen out of faerie,  
Ne coude him not amenden with a word.  
And after this, befor the highe bord  
He with a manly vois sayd his message,  
After the forme used in his langage,  
Withouten vice of sillable or of letter.  
And for his tale shulde seme the better,  
Accordant to his wordes was his chere,  
As techeth art of speche hem that it lere.  
Al be it that I cannot sounne his stile,  
Ne cannot climben over so high a stile,  
Yet say I this, as to comun entent,  
Thus much amounteth all that ever he ment,  
If it so be that I have it in mind.

He sayd ; The king of Arabie and of Inde,  
My liege lord, on this solempne day  
Salueth you as he best can and may,  
And sendeth you in honour of your feste  
By me, that am al redy at your heste,  
This stede of bras, that esily and wel  
Can in the space of a day naturel,  
(This is to sayn, in four and twenty houres)  
Wher so you list, in drought or elles shoures,  
Beren your body into every place,  
To which your herte willeth for to pace,  
Withouten wemme of you, thurgh foule or faire.  
Of if you list to fleen as high in the aire,  
As doth an egle, whan him list to sore,  
This same stede shal bere you evermore  
Withouten harme, till ye be ther you lest,  
(Though that ye slepen on his back or rest)  
And turne again, with writhing of a pin.  
He that it wrought, he coude many a gin ;  
He waited many a constellation,  
Or he had don this operation,  
And knew ful many a sele and many a bond.

This mirrour eke, that I have in min hond,  
Hath swiche a might, that men may in it sec,  
Whan ther shal falle ony adversitee  
Unto your regne, or to yourself also,  
And openly, who is your frend or fo.  
And over all this, if any lady bright  
Hath set hire herte on any maner wight,  
If he be false, she shal his treson see,  
His newe love, and all his subtiltee  
So openly, that ther shal nothing hide.

Wherefore again this lusty somer tide  
This mirrour and this ring, that ye may se,  
He hath sent to my lady Canace,  
Your excellent doughter that is here.

The vertue of this ring, if ye wol here,  
Is this, that if hire list it for to were  
Upon hire thombe, or in hire purse it bere,  
Ther is no foule that fleeth under heaven,  
That she ne shal wel understond his steven,  
And know his mening openly and plaine,  
And answer him in his langage again :  
And every gras that groweth upon rote  
*She shal eke know, and whom it wol do bote,*

All be his woundes never so depe and wide.

This naked sword, that hangeth by my side,  
Swiche vertue hath, that what man that it smite,  
Thurghout his armure it wol kerve and bite,  
Were it as thicke as is a braunched oke :  
And what man that is wounded with the stroke  
Shal never be hole, til that you list of grace  
To stroken him with the platte in thilke place  
Ther he is hurt ; this is as much to sain,  
Ye moten with the platte swerd again  
Stroken him in the wound, and it wol close.  
This is the veray soth withouten glose,  
It failleth not, while it is in your hold.

And whan this knight hath thus his tale told,  
He rideth out of halle, and doun he light :  
His stede, which that shone as sonne bright,  
Stant in the court as stille as any ston.  
This knight is to his chambre ladde anon,  
And is unarmed, and to the mete ysette.  
Thise presents ben ful richelich yfette,  
This is to sain, the swerd and the mirrour,  
And borne anon into the highe tour,  
With certain officers ordained therfore ;  
And unto Canace the ring is bore  
Solempnely, ther she sat at the table ;  
But sikerly, withouten any fable,  
The hors of bras, that may not be remued ;  
It stant, as it were to the ground yglued ;  
Ther may no man out of the place it drive  
For non engine, of windas, or polive :  
And cause why, for they con not the craft,  
And therfore in the place they han it left,  
Til that the knight hath taught hem the manere  
To voiden him, as ye shal after here.

Gret was the prees, that swarmed to and fro  
To gauren on this hors that stonde so :  
For it so high was, and so brod and long,  
So wel proportioned for to be strong,  
Right as it were a stede of Lumbardie ;  
Therwith so homely, and so quik of eye,  
As it a gentil Poileis coursere were :  
For certes, fro his tayl unto his ere  
Nature ne art ne coud him not amend  
In no degree, as all the peple wend.

But evermore hir moste wonder was,  
How that it coude gon, and was of bras ;  
It was of faerie, as the peple semed.  
Diverse folk diversely han demed ;  
As many heds, as many wittes ben.  
They murmured, as doth a swarme of been,  
And maden skilles after hir fantasies,  
Rehersing of the olde poetries,  
And sayd it was ylike the Pegasee,  
The hors that hadde winges for to fle,  
Or elles it was the Grekes hors Sinon,  
That broughte Troye to destruction,  
As men moun in thise olde gestes rede.

Min herte (quod on) is evermore in drede,  
I trow som men of armes ben therin,  
That shapen hem this citee for to win :  
It were right good that al swiche thing were know.  
Another rowned to his felaw low,  
And sayd, He lieth, for it is rather like  
An apparence ymade by som magike,  
As jogelours plaien at thise festes grete.  
Of sondry doutes thus they jangle and trete,  
As lewed peple demen comunly  
Of thinges, that ben made more subtilly,  
Than they can in hir lewednesse comprehende,  
They demen gladly to the badder ende.

of hem wondred on the mirrour,  
 was up in to the maister tour,  
 nighte in it swiche thinges see.  
 answerd, and sayd, it might wel be  
 y compositions  
 nd of slie reflections ;  
 hat in Rome was swiche on.  
 of Alhazen and Vitellon,  
 tle, that writen in hir lives  
 mirrours, and of prospectives,  
 they, that han hir bookes herd.  
 r folk han wondred on the swerd,  
 percen thurghout every thing :  
 speche of Telephus the king,  
 illes for his queinte spere,  
 le with it bothe hele and dere,  
 iche wise as men may with the swerd,  
 ght now ye have yourselfen herd.  
 n of sondry harding of metall,  
 of medicines therwithall,  
 nd whan it shuld yharded be,  
 know algates unto me.  
 en they of Canacées ring,  
 all, that swiche a wonder thing  
 rings herd they never non,  
 e Moises and king Salomon  
 ame of conning in swiche art.  
 he peple, and drawn hem apart.  
 eles som saiden that it was  
 maken of ferne ashen glas,  
 glas nought like ashen of ferne,  
 y han yknown it so ferne,  
 seth hir jangling and hir wonder.  
 wondren som on cause of thunder,  
 d floud, on gossomer, and on mist,  
 thing, til that the cause is wist.  
 glen they, and demen and devise,  
 king gan fro his bord arise.  
 ath left the angle meridional,  
 ending was the beste real,  
 Leon, with his Aldrian,  
 this Tartre king, this Cambuscan,  
 his bord, ther as he sat ful hie :  
 n goth the loude minstrelcie,  
 e to his chambre of parements,  
 y sounden divers instruments,  
 ike an heven for to here.  
 ncen lusty Venus children dere :  
 fish hir lady set ful hie,  
 on hem with a frendly eye.  
 le king is set upon his trone ;  
 ge knight is fet to him ful sone,  
 daunce he goth with Canace.  
 he revell and the jolitee,  
 able a dull man to devise :  
 an known love and his servise,  
 festlich man, as fresh as May,  
 e you devisen swiche array.  
 ide tellen you the forme of daunces  
 y, and so freshe contenaunces,  
 til lokings and dissimulings,  
 f jealous mennes apperceivings ?  
 it Launcelot, and he is ded.  
 passe over all this lustyhed,  
 ore, but in this jolinesse  
 , til men to the souper hem dresse.  
 ard bit the spices for to hie  
 e win, in all this melodie ;  
 and the squerie ben gon,  
 and the win is come anon :

They ete and drinke, and whan this had an end,  
 Unto the temple, as reson was, they wend :  
 The service don, they soupen all by day.

What nedeth you rehersen hir array ?  
 Eche man wot wel, that at a kinges fest  
 Is plentee, to the most and to the lest,  
 And dcintees mo than ben in my knowing.

At after souper goth this noble king  
 To seen this hors of bras, with all a route  
 Of lordes and of ladies him aboute.  
 Swiche wondring was ther on this hors of bras,  
 That sin the gret assege of Troye was,  
 Ther as men wondred on an hors also,  
 Ne was ther swiche a wondring, as was tho.  
 But finally the king asketh the knight  
 The vertue of this courser, and the might,  
 And praied him to tell his governaunce.

This hors anon gan for to trip and daunce,  
 Whan that the knight laid hond up on his rein,  
 And saide, sire, ther n'is no more to sain,  
 But whan you list to riden any where,  
 Ye moten trill a pin, stant in his ere,  
 Which I shal tellen you betwixt us two,  
 Ye moten nempne him to what place also,  
 Or to what contree that you list to ride.

And whan ye come ther as you list abide,  
 Bid him descend, and trill another pin.  
 (For therin lieth the effect of all the gin)  
 And he wol doun descend and don your will,  
 And in that place he wol abiden still :  
 Though al the world had the contrary swore,  
 He shal not thennes be drawe ne be bore.  
 Or if you list to bid him thennes gon,  
 Trille this pin, and he wol vanish anon  
 Out of the sight of every maner wight,  
 And come agen, be it by day or night,  
 Whan that you list to clepen him again  
 In swiche a guise, as I shal to you sain  
 Betwixen you and me, and that ful sone.  
 Ride whan you list, ther n'is no more to done.

Enfourmed whan the king was of the knight,  
 And hath conceived in his wit aright  
 The maner and the forme of all this thing,  
 Ful glad and blith, this noble doughty king  
 Repaireth to his revel, as beforne.  
 The bridel is in to the tour yborne,  
 And kept among his jewels lefe and dere :  
 The hors vanisht, I n'ot in what manere,  
 Out of hir sight, ye get no more of me :  
 But thus I lete in lust and jolitee  
 This Cambuscan his lordes festeyng,  
 Til that wel nigh the day began to spring.

#### PARS SECUNDA.

THE notice of digestion, the slepe,  
 Gan on hem winke, and bad hem taken kepe,  
 That mochel drinke, and labour wol have rest :  
 And with a galping mouth hem all he kest,  
 And said, that it was time to lie adoun,  
 For blood was in his domination :  
 Cherisheth blood, natures frend, quod he.

They thanken him galping, by two by three ;  
 And every wight gan drawe him to his rest,  
 As slepe hem bade, they toke it for the best.

Hir dremes shul not now be told for me ;  
 Ful were hir hedes of fumositee,  
 That causeth dreame, of which ther is no charge.  
 They slepen til that it was prime large.

392

The moeste part, but it were Canace ;  
 She was ful meurable, as women be.  
 For of hire father had she take hire leve  
 To gon to rest, sone after it was eve ;  
 Hire liste not appalled for to be,  
 Nor on the morwe unfestliche for to see ;  
 And slept hire firste slepe, and than awoke.  
 For swiche a joye she in hire herte toke  
 Both of hire queinte ring, and of hire mirroure,  
 That twenty time she chaunged hire colour ;  
 And in hire slepe right for the impression  
 Of hire mirroure she had a vision.

Wherefore, or that the sonne gan up glide,  
 She clepeth upon hire maistresse hire beside,  
 And saide, that hire luste for to arise.

Thise olde women, that ben gladly wise,  
 As is hire maistresse, answerd hire anon,  
 And said ; Madame, whider wol ye gon  
 Thus erly ! for the folk ben all in rest.

I wol, quod she, arisen (for me leest  
 No longer for to slepe) and walken aboute.

Hire maistresse clepeth women a gret route,  
 And up they risen, wel a ten or twelve ;  
 Up riseth freshe Canace hireselve,  
 As rody and bright, as the yonge sonne,  
 That in the ram is foure degrees yronne ;  
 No higher was he, whan she redy was ;  
 And forth she walketh easly a pas,  
 Arrayed after the lusty secon sote  
 Lightly for to playe, and walken on fote,  
 Nought but with five or sixe of hire meinie ;  
 And in a trenche forth in the park goth she.

The vapour, which that fro the erthe glode,  
 Maketh the sonne to seme rody and brode :  
 But natheles, it was so faire a sight,  
 That it made all hir hertes for to light,  
 What for the secon, and the morwening,  
 And for the foules that she herde sing.  
 For right anon she wiste what they ment  
 Right by hir song, and knew al hir entent.

The knotte, why that every tale is tolde,  
 If it be taried til the lust be colde  
 Of hem, that han it herkened after yore,  
 The savour passeth ever longer the more,  
 For fulsumnesse of the prolixitee :  
 And by that same reson thinketh me  
 I shuld unto the knotte condescende,  
 And maken of hire walking sone an ende.

Amidde a tree for-dry, as white as chalk,  
 As Canace was playing in hire walk,  
 Ther sat a faucon over hire hed ful hie,  
 That with a pitous vois so gan to crie,  
 That all the wood resounded of hire cry,  
 And beten had hireself so pitously  
 With bothe hire wings, til the rede blood  
 Ran endelong the tree, ther as she stood.  
 And ever in on alway she cried and shrighit,  
 And with hire bek hireselven she so twighit,  
 That ther n'is tigre, ne no cruel best,  
 That dwelleth other in wood, or in forest,  
 That n'olde han wept, if that he wepen coude,  
 For sorwe of hire, she shrighit alway so loude.

For ther was never yet no man on live,  
 If that he coude a faucon wel describe,  
 That herde of swiche another of fayrenesse.  
 As wel of plumage, as of gentilese,  
 Of shape, of all that might yrekened be.  
 A faucon peregrine semed she  
 Of fremde lond, and ever as she stood,  
 She swouned now and now for lack of blood,

Til wel neigh is she fallen fro the tree.

This faire kinges daughter Canace,  
 That on hire finger bare the queinte ring,  
 Thurgh which she understood wel every thing  
 That any foule may in his leden sain,  
 And coude answer him in his leden again,  
 Hath understanden what this faucon seyde,  
 And wel neigh for the routhe almost she deyde :  
 And to the tree she goth ful hastily,  
 And on this faucon loketh pitously,  
 And held hire lap abrode, for wel she wist  
 The faucon muste fallen from the twist  
 Whan that she swouned next, for faute of blood.  
 A longe while to waiten hire she stood,  
 Til at the last she spake in this manere  
 Unto the hawk, as ye shul after here.

What is the cause, if it be for to tell,  
 That ye ben in this furial peine of hell !  
 Quod Canace unto this hawk above ;  
 Is this for sorwe of deth, or losse of love !  
 For as I trow, thise be the causes wo,  
 That causen most a gentil herte wo.  
 Of other harme it nedeth not to speke,  
 For ye yourself upon yourself awreke,  
 Which preveth wel, that other ire or drede  
 Mote ben encheson of your cruel dede,  
 Sin that I se non other wight you chace.  
 For the love of God, as doth yourselfen grace :  
 Or what may be your helpe ! for west ne est  
 Ne saw I never er now no brid ne best,  
 That ferde with himself so pitously.  
 Ye sle me with your sorwe veraily,  
 I have of you so gret compassion.  
 For Goddes love come fro the tree adoun ;  
 And as I am a kinges daughter trewe,  
 If that I veraily the causes knewe  
 Of your disease, if it lay in my might,  
 I wold amend it, or that it were night,  
 As wisly help me the gret God of kind.  
 And herbes shal I right ynough yfind,  
 To helen with your hurtes hastily.

The shrighit this faucon yet more pitously  
 Than ever she did, and fell to ground anon,  
 And lith aswouned, as ded as lith a ston,  
 Til Canace hath in hire lappe hire take,  
 Unto that time she gan of swouned awake :  
 And after that she out of swouned abraide,  
 Right in hire haukes leden thus she sayde.

That pitee renneth sone in gentil herte  
 (Feling his similitude in peines smerte)  
 Is proved alle day, as men may see,  
 As wel by werke as by auctoritee,  
 For gentil herte kitheth gentillesse.  
 I see wel, that ye have on my distresse  
 Compassion, my faire Canace,  
 Of veray womanly benignitee,  
 That nature in your principles hath set.  
 But for non hopo for to fare the bet,  
 But for to obey unto your herte free,  
 And for to maken other yware by me,  
 As by the whelpe chastised is the leon,  
 Right for that cause and that conclusion,  
 While that I have a leiser and a space,  
 Min harme I wol confessen er I pace.  
 And ever while that on hire sorwe told,  
 That other wept, as she to water wold,  
 Til that the faucon bad hire to be still,  
 And with a sike right thus she said hire till.

Ther I was bred, (alas that ilke day !)  
 And fostred in a roche of marble gray

ly, that nothing ailed me.  
 not what was adversitee,  
 I flee ful high under the skie.  
 elled a tercelet me faste by,  
 and welles of alle gentillesse,  
 e ful of treson and falsenesse.  
 wrapped under humble chere,  
 r hew of trouthe in swiche manere,  
 sance, and under besy peine,  
 ight coud have wend he coude feine,  
 greyn he died his coloures.  
 serpent hideth him under floures,  
 y see his time for to bite ;  
 his god of loves hypocrite  
 is ceremonies and obeisance,  
 th in semblaunt alle his observance,  
 eth unto gentillesse of love.  
 ombre is all the faire above,  
 r is the corps, swiche as ye wote ;  
 us this hypocrite both cold and hote,  
 is wise he served his entent,  
 the fend, non wiste what he ment ;  
 ong had weped and complained,  
 r a yere his service to me fained,  
 nin herte, to pitous and to nice,  
 it of his crowned malice, *arrested*  
 of his deth, as thoughte me,  
 othes and his seuretee,  
 him love, on this condition,  
 mo min honour and renoun  
 ed, bothe privee and apert ;  
 say, that, after his desert,  
 n all min herte and all my thought,  
 , and he, that other wayes nought)  
 his herte in change of min for ay.  
 s said, gon eithen is many a day,  
 ight and a thief thinken not on.  
 an he saw the thing so fer ygon,  
 d granted him fully my love,  
 a guise as I have said above,  
 n him my trewe herte as free  
 re that he yaf his herte to me,  
 tigre, ful of doublenesse,  
 s knees with so gret humblesse,  
 igh reverence, as by his chere,  
 gentil lover of manere,  
 d, as it semed, for the joye,  
 r Jason, ne Paris of Troye,  
 rtes, ne never other man,  
 ch was, that alderfirst began  
 two, as writen folk beforne,  
 sithen the first man was borne,  
 man by twenty thousand part  
 the sophimes of his art ;  
 vorthy to unboche his galoche,  
 ennesse of faining shuld approche,  
 so thanke a wight, as he did me.  
 r was an heven for to see  
 man, were she never so wise ;  
 I he and kempt, at point devise,  
 s wordes, as his contenance.  
 loved him for his obeisance,  
 he trouthe I demed in his herte,  
 were that any thing him smerte,  
 t never so lite, and I it wist,  
 ht I felt deth at myn herte twist.  
 tly, so ferforth this thing is went,  
 will was his willes instrument ;  
 say, my will obeyed his will  
 ing, as fer as reson fill *fall to think*

Keping the boundes of my worship ever :

Ne never had I thing so lefe, ne lever,  
 As him, God wot, ne never shal no mo.

This lasteth lenger than a yere or two,  
 That I supposed of him nought but good.

But finally, thus at the last it stood,  
 That fortune wolde that he muste twin  
 Out of that place, which that I was in.

Wher me was wo, it is no question ;

I cannot make of it description.

For o thing dare I tellen boldly,

I know what is the peine of deth therby,  
 Swiche harme I felt, for he ne might *byleve*.

So on a day of me he toke his leve,

So sorweful eke, that I wend veraily,

That he had felt as mochel harme as I,

Whan that I herd him speke, and saw his hewe.

But natheles, I thought he was so trewe,

And eke that he repairen shuld again

Within a litel while, soth to sain,

And reson wold eke that he muste go

For his honour, as often happeth so,

That I made vertue of necessitee,

And toke it wel, sin that it muste be.

As I best might, I hid fro him my sorwe,

And toke him by the hond, Seint John to borwe,

And said him thus ; lo, I am youre all,

Beth swiche as I have ben to you and shall.

What he answerd, it nedeth not reherse ;

Who can say bet than he, who can do werse ?

Whan he hath al wel said, than hath he done.

Therefore behoveth him a ful long sponse,

That shal ete with a fend ; thus herd I say.

So at the last he muste forth his way,

And forth he fleeth, til he come ther him leet.

Whan it came him to purpos for to rest,

I trow that he had thilke text in mind,

That alle thing repairing to his kind

Gladeth himself ; thus sain men as I gesse :

Men loven of propre kind newefangelnesse,

As briddes don, that men in cages fede.

For though thou night and day take of hem hede,

And strew hir cage faire and soft as silke,

And give hem sugre, hony, bred, and milke,

Yet right anon as that his dore is up,

He with his feet wol spurnen down his cup,

And to the wood he wol, and wormes ete ;

So newefangel ben they of hir mete,

And loven noveltees of propre kind ;

No gentillesse of blood ne may hem bind.

So ferd this tercelet, alas the day !

Though he were gentil borre, and fresh, and gay,

And goodly for to seen, and humble, and free,

He saw upon a time a kite flee,

And sodenly he loved this kite so,

That all his love is clene fro me ago :

And hath his trouthe falsed in this wise.

Thus hath the kite my love in hire service,

And I am lorn withouten remedy.

And with that word this faucon gan to cry,

And swouneth eft in Canacees barne.

Gret was the sorwe for that haukes harme,

That Canace and all hire women made ;

They n'isten how they might the faucon glade.

But Canace hom bereth hire in hire lap,

And softly in plastres gan hire wrap,

Ther as she with hire bek had hurt hireselve.

Now cannot Canace but herbes delve

Out of the ground, and maken salves newo

Of herbes precious and fine of hewe.

To helen with this hawk ; fro day to night  
 She doth hire besinesse, and all hire might.  
 And by hire beddes hed she made a mew,  
 And covered it with velouettes blew  
 In signe of trouth, that is in woman .ene ;  
 And all without the mew is peinted grene,  
 In which were peinted all thise false foules,  
 As ben thise tidifes, tercelettes, and owles ;  
 And pies, on hem for to cry and chide,  
 Right for despit were peinted hem beside.

Thus lete I Canace hire hawk keping.  
 I wol no more as now speke of hire ring,  
 Til it come eft to purpos for to sain,  
 How that this faucon gat hire love again  
 Repentant, as the story telleth us,  
 By mediation of Camballus

The kinges sone, of which that I you told.  
 But hennesforth I wol my processe hold  
 To speke of adventures, and of batailles,  
 That yet was never herd so gret mervailles.

First wol I tellen you of Cambuscan,  
 That in his time many a citee wan :  
 And after wol I speke of Algarisif,  
 How that he wan Theodora to his wif,  
 For whom ful oft in gret peril he was,  
 Ne had he ben holpen by the hors of bras.  
 And after wol I speke of Camballo,  
 That fought in listes with the brethren two  
 For Canace, er that he might hire winne,  
 And ther I left I wol again beginne.

## THE FRANKLEINES TALE.

### THE FRANKLEINES PROLOGUE.

In faith, Squier, thou hast thee wel yquit  
 And gentilly, I preise wel thy wit,  
 Quod the Frankelein ; considering thin youthe,  
 So felingly thou spekest, sire, I aloue the  
 As to my dome, ther is non that is here,  
 Of eloquence that shal be thy pere,  
 If that thou live ; God yeve thee goode chance,  
 And in vertue send thee continuance,  
 For of thy speking I have gret deintee.  
 I have a sone, and by the Trinitee  
 It were me lever than twenty pound worth lond,  
 Though it right now were fallen in my hond,  
 He were a man of swiche discretion,  
 As that ye ben : fie on possession,  
 But if a man be vertuous withal.  
 I have my sone snibbed, and yet shal,  
 For he to vertue listeth not to entend,  
 But for to play at dis, and to dispend,  
 And lese all that he hath, is his usage ;  
 And he had lever talken with a page,  
 Than to commune with any gentil wight,  
 Ther he might leren gentillesse aright.

Straw for your gentillesse, quod our hoste.  
 What ! Frankelein, parde, sire, wel thou wost,  
 That eche of you mote tellen at the lest  
 A tale or two, or breken his behest.  
 That know I wel, sire, quod the Frankelein,  
 I pray you haveth me not in disdein,  
 Though I to this man speke a word or two.

Tell on thy tale, withouten wordes mo.  
 Gladly, sire hoste, quod he, I wol obey  
 Unto your will ; now herkeneth what I sey ;  
 I wol you not contrarien in no wise,  
 As fer as that my wites may suffice.  
 I pray to God that it may plesen you,  
 Than wot I wel that it is good ynow.

Thise olde gentil Bretons in hir dayes  
 Of diverse adventures maden layes,  
 Rimeyed in hir firste Breton tonge ;  
 Which layes with hir instrumenta they songe,

Or elles reddeden hem for hir plesance,  
 And on of hem have I in remembrance,  
 Which I shal sayn with good wille as I can.  
 But, sires, because I am a borel man,  
 At my beginning first I you besече  
 Have me excused of my rude speche.  
 I lerned never rhetorike certain ;  
 Thing that I speke, it mote be bare and plain.  
 I slept never on the mount of Pernaso,  
 Ne lerned Marcus Tullius Cicero.  
 Colours ne know I non, withouten drede,  
 But swiche colours as grownen in the mede,  
 Or elles swiche as men die with or peinte ;  
 Colours of rhetorike ben to me queinte ;  
 My spirit feleth not of swiche matere.  
 But if you lust my tale shul ye here.

### THE FRANKLEINES TALE.

In Armorike, that called is Bretagne,  
 Ther was a knight, that loved and did his peine  
 To serve a ladie in his beste wise ;  
 And many a labour, many a gret emprise  
 He for his lady wrought, or she were wonne :  
 For she was on the fairest under sonne,  
 And eke therto comen of so high kinrede,  
 That wel unnethes durst this knight for drede  
 Tell hire his wo, his peine, and his distreace.  
 But at the last, she for his worthinesse,  
 And namely for his meke obeysance,  
 Hath swiche a pitee caught of his penance,  
 That prively she fell of his accord  
 To take him for hire husbond and hire lord ;  
 (Of swiche lordship as men han over hir wives)  
 And, for to lede the more in blisse hir lives,  
 Of his free will he swore hire as a knight,  
 That never in all his lif he day ne night  
 Ne shulde take upon him no maistrie  
 Agains hire will, ne kithe hire jalouseie,  
 But hire obey, and folwe hire will in al,  
 As any lover to his lady shal :

t the name of soverainetee  
 ld he han for shame of his degree.  
 kked him, and with ful gret humblesse  
 e ; sire, sin of your gentillesse  
 en me to have so large a reine,  
 e God never betwix us tweine,  
 y gilt, were either werre or strif :  
 wol be your humble trewe wif,  
 re my trouth, till that myn herte breste.  
 n they both in quiete and in reste.  
 thing, sires, sauflly dare I seie,  
 ndes everich other must obeie,  
 wol longe holden compaignie.  
 I not be constreined by maistrie.  
 aistrie cometh, the God of love anon  
 is winges, and farewell, he is gon.  
 i thing, as any spirit, free.  
 of kind desiren libertee,  
 to be constreined as a thral ;  
 on men, if soothly I say shal.  
 o that is most patient in love,  
 his advantage all above.  
 is an high vertue certain,  
 nquisheth, as thise clerkes sain,  
 that rigour never shulde atteine.  
 y word men may not chide or pleine.  
 to suffren, or, so mote I gon, *here endeth*  
 it lerne whether ye wol or non.  
 is world certain no wight ther is,  
 ne doth or sayth somtime amis.  
 nesse, or constellation,  
 or changing of complexion,  
 ful oft to don amis or speken :  
 wrong a man may not be wroken.  
 time must be temperance  
 wight that can of governance.  
 fore hath this worthy wise knight  
 in ese) suffrance hire belight ;  
 to him ful wisly gan to swere,  
 er shuld ther be defaute in here.  
 nay men seen an humble wise accord :  
 h she take hire servant and hire lord,  
 in love, and lord in mariage.  
 s he both in lordship and servage !  
 I nay, but in lordship al above,  
 ath both his lady and his love :  
 certes, and his wif also,  
 th that law of love accordeth to.  
 n he was in this prosperitee,  
 ith his wif he goth to his cuntrye,  
 ro Penmark, ther his dwelling was,  
 he liveth in blisse and in solas.  
 oude tell, but he had wedded be,  
 , the ese, and the prosperitee,  
 etwix an husband and his wif !  
 und more lasteth this blisful lif,  
 this knight, of which I spake of thus,  
 Cairrud was cleped Arviragus,  
 m to gon and dwelle a yere or twaine  
 lond, that cleped was eke Bretaigne,  
 in armes worship and honour :  
 his lust he set in swiche labour)  
 lte ther two yere ; the book saith thus.  
 wol I stint of this Arviragus,  
 ke I wol of Dorigene his wif,  
 eth hire husband as hire hertes lif.  
 bsence wepeth she and siketh,  
 hise noble wives whan hem liketh ;  
 neth, waketh, waileth, fasteth, plaineth ;  
 his presence hire so distraineth,

That all this wide world she set at nought.  
 Hire frendes, which that knew hire hevly thought  
 Comforten hire in all that ever they may ;  
 They prechen hire, they telle hire night and day,  
 That causeles she sleth hireself, alas !  
 And every comfort possible in this cas  
 They don to hire, with all hir besinesse,  
 Al for to make hire leve hire hevynesse.

By processe, as ye knowen everich on,  
 Men mowe so longe graven in a ston,  
 Til som figure therin emprented be :  
 So long han they comforted hire, til she  
 Received hath, by hope and by reson,  
 The emprenting of hir consolation,  
 Thurgh which hire grette sorwe gan assuage ;  
 She may not alway duren in swiche rage.  
 And eke Arviragus, in all this care,  
 Hath sent his lettres home of his welfare,  
 And that he wol come hastily again,  
 Or elles had this sorwe hire herte alain.

Hire frendes saw hire sorwe gan to slake,  
 And preiden hire on knees for Goddes sake  
 To come and romen in hir compaignie,  
 Away to driven hire derke fantasie :  
 And finally she granted that request,  
 For wel she saw that it was for the best.

Now stood hire castel faste by the see,  
 And often with hire frendes walked she,  
 Hire to disporten on the bank an hie,  
 Wher as she many a ship and barge sie,  
 Sailing hir cours, wher as hem list to go.  
 But than was that a parcel of hire wo,  
 For to hireself ful oft, alas ! said she,  
 Is ther no ship, of so many as I see,  
 Wol bringen home my lord ! than were my herte  
 Al warished of his bitter peines smerte.

Another time wold she sit and thiinke,  
 And cast her eyen downward fro the brinke ;  
 But whan she saw the grisly rockes blake,  
 For veray fere so wold hire herte quake,  
 That on hire feet she might hire not suston.  
 Than wold she sit adoun upon the grene,  
 And pitously into the see behold,  
 And say right thus, with careful sikkes cold.

Eterne God, that thurgh thy purveance  
 Ledest this world by certain governance,  
 In idel, as men sain, ye nothing make.  
 But, lord, thise grisly fendly rockes blake,  
 That semen rather a foule confusion  
 Of werk, than any faire creation  
 Of swiche a parfit wise God and stable,  
 Why han ye wrought this werk unreasonab ?  
 For by this werk, north, south, ne west, ne est,  
 Ther n'is yfostred man, ne brid, ne best :  
 It doth no good, to my wit, but anoyeth.  
 See ye not, lord, how mankind it destroyeth ?  
 An hundred thousand bodies of mankind  
 Han rockes slain, al be they not in mind ;  
 Which mankind is so faire part of thy werk,  
 Thou madest it like to thyn owen merk.  
 Than, semeth it, ye had a gret chertee  
 Toward mankind ; but how than may it be,  
 That ye swiche menes make it to destroyen !  
 Which menes don no good, but ever anoyen.

I wote wel, clerkes wol sain as hem leat  
 By arguments, that all is for the best,  
 Though I ne can the causes nought yknow ;  
 But thilke God that made the wind to blow,  
 As kepe my lord, this is my conclusion :  
 To clerkes lete I all disputison.



But wolde God, that all thise rockes blake  
Were sonken into helle for his sake.  
Thise rockes slee min herte for the fere.  
Thus wold she say with many a pitous tere.

Hire frendes saw that it was no disport  
To romen by the see, but discomfort,  
And shape hem for to plaie somwher elles.  
They leden hire by rivers and by welles,  
And eke in other places delitable ;  
They dancen and they play at ches and tables.

So on a day, right in the morwe tide,  
Unto a gardin that was ther beside,  
In which that they had made hir ordinance  
Of vitaille, and of other purveance,  
They gon and plaie hem all the longe day:  
And this was on the sixte morwe of May,  
Which May had peinte with his softe shoures  
This gardin ful of leves and of floures :  
And craft of mannes hond so curiously  
Arrayed had this gardin trewely,  
That never was ther gardin of swiche pris,  
But if it were the veray paradis.  
The odour of floures, and the freshe sight,  
Wold han ymaked any herte light  
That ever was born, but if to gret sikenesse  
Or to gret sorwe held it in distresse,  
So ful it was of beautee and plesance.

And after dinner gonnen they to dance  
And sing also, sauf Dorigene alone,  
Which made alway hire complaint and hire mone,  
For she ne saw him on the dance go,  
That was hire husbond, and hire love also :  
But natheles she must a time abide,  
And with good hope let hire sorwe slide.

Upon this dance, amonges other men,  
Danced a squier before Dorigen,  
That fresher was and jolier of array,  
As to my dome, than is the month of May.  
He singeth, danceth, passing any man,  
That is or was sin that the world began ;  
Therwith he was, if men shuld him discrive,  
On of the beste faring men on live,  
Yong, strong, and virtuous, and riche, and wise,  
And wel beloved, and holden in gret prise.  
And shortly, if the soth I tellen shal,  
Unweting of this Dorigene at al,  
This lusty squier, servant to Venus,  
Which that ycleped was Aurelius,  
Had loved hire best of any creature  
Two yere and more, as was his aventure :  
But never dorst he tell hire his grevance,  
Withouthen cup he dranke all his penance.  
He was dispeired, nothing dorst he say,  
Sauf in his songes somewhat wold he wray  
His wo, as in a general complaining ;  
He said, he loved, and was beloved nothing.  
Of swiche matere made he many layes,  
Songes, complaintes, roundels, virelayes ;  
How that he dorste not his sorwe telle,  
But languisheth, as doth a furie in helle ;  
And die he must, he said, as did Ecco  
For Narcissus, that dorst not tell hire wo.

In other maner than ye here me say,  
Ne dorst he not to hire his wo bewray,  
Sauf that paraventure somtime at dances,  
Ther yonge folk kepen hir observances,  
It may wel be he lokod on hire face  
In swiche a wise, as man that axeth grace,  
But nothing wiste she of his entent.  
Natheles it happed, or they thennes went,

Because that he was hire neighbeour,  
And was a man of worship and honour,  
And had yknowen him of time yore,  
They fell in speche, and forth ay more and more  
Unto his purpos drow Aurelius ;  
And whan he saw his time, he saide thus.  
Madame, quod he, by God that this world made,  
So that I wist it might your herte glade,  
I wold that day, that your Arviragus  
Went over see, that I Aurelius  
Had went ther I shuld never come again ;  
For wel I wot my service is in vain,  
My guerdon n'is but bresting of min herte.  
Madame, rueth upon my peines smerte,  
For with a word ye may me sleen or save.  
Here at your feet God wold that I were grave.  
I ne have as now no leiser more to sey :  
Have mercy, swete, or ye wol do me dey.

She gan to loke upon Aurelius ;  
Is this your will (quod she) and say ye thus ?  
Never erst (quod she) ne wist I what ye ment :  
But now, Aurelie, I know your entent.  
By thilke God that yaf me soule and lif,  
Ne shal I never ben an untrewed wif  
In word ne werk, as fer as I have wit,  
I wol ben his to whom that I am knit :  
Take this for final answer as of me.  
But after that in play thus saide she.

Aurelie, (quod she) by high God above  
Yet wol I granten you to ben your love,  
(Sin I you see so pitously complaine)  
Loke, what day that endelong Breteigne  
Ye remue all the rockes, ston by ston,  
That they ne letten ship ne bote to gon,  
I say, whan ye han made the cost so clene  
Of rockes, that ther n'is no ston ysene,  
Than wol I love you best of any man,  
Have here my trowth, in all that ever I can ;  
For wel I wote that it shal never betide.  
Let swiche folie out of your herte glide.  
What deintee shuld a man have in his lif  
For to go love another mannes wif,  
That hath hire body whan that ever him liketh !

Aurelius ful often sore siketh ;  
Is ther non other grace in you ? quod he.

No, by that lord, quod she, that maked me.  
Wo was Aurelie whan that he this herd,  
And with a sorweful herte he thus answerd.

Madame, quod he, this were an impossible.  
Than moste I die of soden deth horrible.  
And with that word he turned him anon.

Tho come hire other frendes many on,  
And in the alleyes romed up and doun,  
And nothing wist of this conclusioun,  
But sodenly begonnen revel newe,  
Til that the brighte sonne had lost his hewe,  
For the orizont had reft the sonne his light ;  
(This is as much to sayn as it was night)  
And home they gon in mirthe and in solas ;  
Sauf only wrecche Aurelius, alas !  
He to his hous is gon with sorweful herte.  
He saith, he may not from his deth asterte.  
Him semeth, that he felt his herte cold.  
Up to the heven his hondes gan he hold,  
And on his knees bare he set him doun,  
And in his raving said his orisoun.  
For veray wo out of his wit he braide,  
He n'iste what he spake, but thus he saide :  
With pitous herte his plaint bath he begonne  
Unto the goddes, and first unto the soune.

He said ; Apollo, God and governour  
Of every plante, herbe, tree, and flour,  
That yevest after thy declination  
To eche of hem his time and his seson,  
As that thin herbergh changeth low and hie ;  
Lord Phebus, cast thy merciable eie  
On wrecche Aurelie, which that am but lorne.  
Lo, lord, my lady hath my deth ysworne  
Withouten gilt, but thy benigntee  
Upon my dedly herte have som pitee.  
For wel I wot, lord Phebus, if you lest,  
Ye may me helpen, sauf my lady, best.  
Now voucheth sauf, that I may you devise  
How that I may be holpe and in what wise.

Your blisful suster, Lucina the shene,  
That of the see is chief goddesse and quene,  
Though Neptunus have deitee in the see,  
Yet emperice aboven him is she :  
Ye knowe wel, lord, that right as hire desire  
Is to be quiked and lighted of your fire,  
For which she solveth you ful besily,  
Right so the see desireth naturally  
To folwen hire, as she that is goddesse  
Both in the see and rivers more and lense.  
Wherefore, lord Phebus, this is my request,  
Do this miracle, or do min herte brest ;  
That now next at this opposition,  
Which in the signe shal be of the Leon,  
As preyeth hire so gret a flood to bring,  
That five fadome at the lest it overspring  
The highest rock in Armorique Bretaigne,  
And let this flood enduren yeres twaine :  
Than certes to my lady may I say,  
Holdeth your hest, the rockes ben away.  
Lord Phebus, this miracle doth for me,  
Prey hire she go no faster cours than ye ;  
I say this, preyeth your suster that she go  
No faster cours than ye thise yeres two :  
Than shal she ben even at ful alway,  
And spring-flood lasten bathe night and day.  
And but she vouchesauf in swiche manere  
To graunten me my sovaine lady dere,  
Prey hire to sinken every rock adoun  
Into hire owen derke regioun  
Under the ground, ther Pluto dwelleth in,  
Or nevermo shal I my lady win.

Thy temple in Delphos wol I barefoot seke.  
Lord Phebus, see the teres on my cheke,  
And on my peine have som compassioun.  
And with that word, in sorwe he fell adoun,  
And longe time he lay forth in a trance.  
His brother, which that knew of his penance,  
Up caught him, and to bed he hath him brought.  
Dispeired in this turment and this thought  
Let I this woful creature lie,  
Chese he for me whether he wol live or die.

Arviragus with hele and gret honour  
(As he that was of chevalrie the flour)  
Is comen home, and other worthy men :  
O, blisful art thou now, thou Dorigen,  
That hast thy lusty husbond in thin armes,  
The freshe knight, the worthy man of armes,  
That loveth thee, as his owen hertes lif :  
Nothing list him to be imaginatif,  
If any wight had spoke, while he was oute,  
To hire of love ; he had of that no doute ;  
He not entendeth to no swiche matere,  
But dancoth, justeth, and maketh mery chere.  
And thus in joye and blisse I let hem dwell,  
And of the sike Aurelius wol I tell.

In langour and in turment furious  
Two yere and more lay wrecche Aurelius,  
Er any foot on erthe he mighte gon ;  
Ne comfort in this time ne had he non,  
Sauf of his brother, which that was a clerk.  
He knew of all this wo and all this werk ;  
For to non other creature certain  
Of this matere he dorste no word sain ;  
Under his brest he bare it more secree,  
Than ever did Pamphilus for Galathee.  
His brest was hole withouten for to seen,  
But in his herte ay was the arwe kene,  
And wel ye knowe that of a sursanure *a wound*  
In surgerie is perilous the cure, *part. 11*  
But men might touch the arwe or come therby.

His brother wepeth and waileth prively,  
Til at the last him fell in remembrance,  
That while he was at Orleunce in France,  
As yonge clerke, that ben likerous  
To reden artes that ben curious,  
Seken in every halke and every herne  
Particular sciences for to lerne,  
He him remembred, that upon a day  
At Orleunce in studie a book he say  
Of Magike naturel, which his felaw,  
That was that time a bachelere of law,  
Al were he ther to lerne another craft,  
Had prively upon his desk ylaft ;  
Which book spake moche of operations  
Touching the eight and twenty mansions  
That longen to the Mone, and swiche folie  
As in our dayes n'is not worth a fie :  
For holy cherches feith, in our beleve,  
Ne suffreth non illusion us to greve.  
And whan this book was in his remembrance,  
Anon for joye his herte gan to dance,  
And to himself he saied prively ;

My brother shal be warished hastily : *correct*  
For I am siker that ther be sciences,  
By which men maken divers apparences,  
Swiche as thise subtil tregetours play.  
For oft at festes have I wel herd say,  
That tregetours, within an halle large,  
Have made come in a water and a barge,  
And in the halle rowen up and doun.  
Somtime hath semed come a grim leoun,  
And somtime floures spring as in a mede,  
Somtime a vine, and grapes white and rede,  
Somtime a castel al of lime and ston,  
And whan hem liketh voideth it anon :  
Thus semeth it to every mannes sight.

Now than conclude I thus, if that I might  
At Orleunce som olde felaw find,  
That hath thise Mones mansions in mind,  
Or other Magike naturel above,  
He shuld wel make my brother have his love.  
For with an apparence a clerk may make  
To mannes sight, that all the rockes blake  
Of Bretaigne were yvoided everich on,  
And shippes by the brinke comen and gon,  
And in swiche forme endure a day or two :  
Than were my brother warished of his wo,  
Than must she nedes holden hire behest,  
Or elles he shal shame hire at the lest.

What shuld I make a leuger tale of this ?  
Unto his brothers bed he comen is,  
And swiche comfort he yaf him, for to gon  
To Orleunce, that he up stert anon,  
And on his way forthward than is he fare,  
In hope for to ben lissed of his care.

Whan they were come almost to that citee,  
But if it were a two furlong or three,  
A yonge clerk roming by himself they mette,  
Which that in Latine thriftily hem grette.  
And after that he sayd a wonder thing ;  
I know, quod he, the cause of your coming :  
And or they forther any foote went,  
He told hem all that was in hir entent.

This Breton clerk him axed of felawes,  
The which he had yknowen in olde dawes,  
And he answered him that they dede werc,  
For which he wept ful often many a tere.

Doun of his hors Aurelius light anon,  
And forth with this magicien is gon  
Home to his hous, and made hem wel at ese :  
Hem lacked no vitaille that might hem plesse.  
So wel arraied hous as ther was on,  
Aurelius in his lif saw never non.

He shewed him, or they went to soupere,  
Forestes, parkes ful of wilde dere.  
Ther saw he hartes with hir hornes hie,  
The gretest that were ever seen with eie.  
He saw of hem an hundred slain with houndes,  
And som with arwes blede of bitter woundes.  
He saw, whan voided were the wilde dere,  
Thise fauconers upon a faire rivere,  
That with hir haukes han the heron slain.

Tho saw he knyghtes justen in a plain.  
And after this he did him swiche plesance,  
That he him shewed his lady on a dance,  
On which himselven danced, as him thought.  
And whan this maister, that this magike wrought,  
Saw it was time, he clapped his hondes two,  
And farewel, al the revel is ago.  
And yet remued they never out of the hous,  
While they saw all thise sightes merveillous ;  
But in his studie, ther his bookes be,  
They saten still, and no wight but they thre.

To him this maister called his squier,  
And sayd him thus, may we go to souper ?  
Almost an houre it is, I undertake,  
Sin I you bade our souper for to make,  
Whan that thise worthy men wenten with me  
Into my studie, ther my bookes be.

Sire, quod this squier, whan it liketh you,  
It is al redy, though ye wol right now.

Go we than soupe, quod he, as for the best,  
Thise amorous folk sometime moste han rest.

At after souper fell they in trettee  
What summe shuld this maisters guerdon be,  
To remue all the rockes of Bretagne,  
And eke from Gerounde to the mouth of Saine.

He made it strange, and swore, so God him save,  
Lesse than a thousand pound he wold not have,  
Ne gladly for that summe he wold not gon.

Aurelius with blisful herte anon  
Answered thus ; fie on a thousand pound :  
This wide world, which that men sayn is round,  
I wold it yeve, if I were lord of it.  
This bargaine is ful-drive, for we ben knit ;  
Ye shul be paied trewely by my trouth.  
But loketh, for non negligence or slouth,  
Ye tarie us here no lenger than to morwe.

Nay, quod this clerk, have here my faith to borwe.  
To bed is gon Aurelius whan him lest,  
And wel nigh all that night he had his rest,  
What for his labour, and his hope of blisse,  
His woful herte of penance had a lisse.

Upon the morwe whan that it was day,  
To Bretagne token they the righte way,

Aurelie, and this magicien him beside,  
And ben descended ther they wold abide :  
And this was, as the bookes me remember,  
The colde frosty seson of December.

Phebus waxe old, and hewed like laton,  
That in his hote declination  
Shone as the burned gold, with streemes bright ;  
But now in Capricorne adoun he light,  
Wher as he shone ful pale, I dare wel sain.  
The bitter frostes with the sleet and rain  
Destroyed han the grene in every yerd.  
Janus sit by the fire with double berd,  
And drinketh of his bugle horn the wine :  
Beforn him stant braune of the tusked swine,  
And *nowel* crieth every lusty man.

Aurelius in all that ever he can,  
Doth to his maister chere and reverence,  
And praieth him to don his diligence  
To bringen him out of his peines smerte,  
Or with a swerd that he wold slit his herte.

This sotil clerk swiche routh hath on this man,  
That night and day he spedeth him, that he can,  
To wait a time of his conclusion ;  
This is to sayn, to make illusion,  
By swiche an apparence or joglerie,  
(I can no termes of Astrologie)  
That she and every wight shuld wene and say,  
That of Bretagne the rockes were away,  
Or elles they were sonken under ground.  
So at the last he hath his time yfound  
To make his japes and his wretchednesse  
Of swiche a superstitious cursednesse.  
His tables Toletanes forth he brought  
Ful wel corrected, that ther lacked nought,  
Nother his collect, ne his expans yeres,  
Nother his rotes, ne his other geres,  
As ben his centres, and his argumentes,  
And his proportionel convenientes  
For his equations in every thing.

And by his eighte speres in his werking,  
He knew ful wel how fer Alnath was shove  
Fro the hed of thilke fix Aries above,  
That in the ninthe spere considered is.  
Ful sotilly he calculated all this.  
Whan he had found his firste mansion,  
He knew the remenant by proportion ;  
And knew the rising of his mone wel,  
And in whos face, and terme, and every del ;  
And knew ful wel the mones mansion  
Accordant to his operation ;  
And knew also his other observances,  
For swiche illusions and swiche meschances,  
As hethen folk used in thilke daies.  
For which no lenger maketh he delaies,  
But thurgh his magike, for a day or tway,  
It semed all the rockes were away.

Aurelius, which that despaired is,  
Whether he shal han his love, or fare amis,  
Awaiteth night and day on this miracle :  
And whan he knew that ther was non obstacle,  
That voided were thise rockes everich on,  
Doun to his maisters feet he fell anon,  
And sayd ; I woful wretch Aurelius,  
Thanke you, my lord, and lady min Venus,  
That me han holpen fro my cares cold.  
And to the temple his way forth hath he hold,  
Theras he knew he shuld his lady see.  
And whan he saw his time, anon right he  
With dredful herte and with ful humble chere  
Salued hath his souveraine lady dere

ntful lady, quod this woful man,  
most drede, and love, as I best can,  
st were of all this world displese,  
hat I for you have swiche disease,  
st die here at your foot anon,  
old I tell how me is wo begon.  
s other must I die or plaine;  
gilteles for veray peine.  
deth though that ye han no routh,  
ou, or that ye breke your trouth:  
you for thilke God above,  
sle, because that I you love.  
me, wel ye wote what ye have hight;  
I challenge any thing of right  
y souveraine lady, but of grace;  
gardin yond, in swiche a place,  
ight wel what ye behighten me,  
yn hond your trouthe plighen ye,  
e best; God wote ye saied so,  
that I unworthy be therto;  
I speke it for the honour of you,  
to save my hertes lif right now:  
n so as ye commanded me,  
vouchesauf, ye may go see.  
ou list, have your behest in mind,  
or ded, right ther ye shul me find:  
h all to do me live or dey,  
wote the ruckes ben away.  
th his leve, and she astonied stood;  
e face n'as o drope of blood:  
I never han come in swiche a trappe.  
quod she, that ever this shuld happe!  
I never by possibilitee,  
he a monstre or mervaille might be;  
the processe of nature.  
e she goth a sorweful creature,  
ere unnethes may sie go.  
th, waileth all a day or two,  
neth, that it routhe was to see:  
it was, to no wight tolde she,  
f toun was gon Arviragus.  
eself she spake, and saied thus,  
pale, and with ful sory chere,  
omplaint, as ye shul after here.  
quod she, on thee, fortune, I plain,  
are hast me wrapped in thy chain:  
to escapen, wote I no soccour,  
deth, or elles dishonour:  
e two beloved me to chese.  
les, yet had I lever lese  
an of my body have a shame,  
myselven false, or lese my name;  
my deth I may be quit ywis.  
not many a noble wif or this,  
y a maid yslaine hireself, alas!  
an with hire body don trespas!  
s; lo, these stories bere witnesse.  
thirty tyrants ful of cursednesse  
Phidon in Athens at the fest,  
manded his doughtren for to arrest,  
gen hem beforne hem in despit  
to fulfill hir foule delit;  
r fadres blood they made hem dance  
pavement. God yve hem meschance.  
h these woful maidens ful of drede,  
ar they wold lese hir maidenhede,  
ely ben stert into a welle,  
at hemselven, as the bookes telle.  
f Messene let enquire and seke  
omie fifty maidens eke,

On which they wolden don hir lecherie:  
But ther was non of all that compaignie  
That she n'as slaine, and with a glad entent  
Chees rather for to dien, than assent  
To ben oppressed of hire maidenhede.  
Why shuld I than to dien ben in drede!

Lo eke the tyrant Aristoclides,  
That loved a maid hight Stimphalides,  
Whan that hire father slaine was on a night,  
Unto Dianas temple goth she right,  
And hente the image in hire handes two,  
Fro which image wold she never go,  
No wight hire handes might of it arrace,  
Til she was slaine right in the selve place.

Now sin that maidens hadden swiche despit  
To be defouled with mannes foule delit,  
Wel ought a wif rather hireselven sle,  
Than be defouled, as it thinketh me.

What shal I sayn of Hasdrubales wif,  
That at Cartage beraft hireself hire lif!  
For whan she saw that Romans wan the toun,  
She toke hire children all, and skipt adoun  
Into the fire, and chees rather to die,  
Than any Romain did hire vilanie.

Hath not Lucrece yslaine hireself, alas!  
At Rome, whan that she oppressed was  
Of Tarquine! for hire thought it was a shame  
To liven, whan she hadde lost hire name.

The seven maidens of Milesie also  
Han slaine hemself for veray drede and wo,  
Rather than folk of Gaule hem shuld oppresse.

Mo than a thousand stories, as I gesse,  
Coude I now tell as touching this matere.

Whan Abradate was slain, his wif so dere  
Hireselven slow, and let hire blood to glide  
In Abradates woundes, depe and wide,  
And sayd, my body at the leste way  
Ther shal no wight defoulen, if I may.

What shuld I mo ensamples hereof sain!  
Sin that so many han hemselven slain  
Wel rather than they wold defouled be,  
I wol conclude that it is bet for me  
To sle myself than be defouled thus.  
I wol be trewe unto Arviragus,  
Or elles sle myself in some manere,  
As did Demotiones doughter dere,  
Because she wolde not defouled be.

O Sedasus, it is ful gret pitee  
To reden how thy doughtren died, alas!  
That slowe hemselven for swiche maner cas.

As gret a pitee was it or wel more,  
The Theban maiden, that for Nichanore  
Hireselven slow, right for swiche manere wo.  
Another Theban mayden did right so,  
For on of Macedoine had hire oppressed,  
She with hire deth hire maidenhed redressed.

What shal I sain of Nicerates wif,  
That for swiche cas beraft hireself hire lif!

How trewe was eke to Alcibiades  
His love, that for to dien rather chees,  
Than for to suffre his body unburied be!  
Lo, which a wif was Alceste eke! (quod she;  
What sayth Homere of good Penelope!  
All Grece knoweth of hire chastitee.

Parde of Laodomin is written thus,  
That whan at Troye was slain Prothesilaus,  
No lenger wolde she live after his day.

The same of noble Portia tell I may;  
Withouten Brutus coude she not live,  
To whom she had all hol hire herte yve.

*See p. 1*

The parfit wifhood of Artemisie  
Honoured is thurghout all Barbarie.

O Teuta quene, thy wify chastitee  
To alle wives may a mirroure be.

Thus plained Dorigene a day or twey,  
Purposing ever that she wolde dey ;  
But natheles upon the thridde night  
Home came Arviragus, the worthy knight,  
And axed hire why that she weep so sore :  
And she gan wepen ever lenger the more.

Alas, quod she, that ever I was yborne !  
Thus have I said, (quod she) thus have I sworne.  
And told him all, as ye have herd before :  
It nedeth not reherse it you no more.

This husbond with glad chere in frendly wise  
Answerd and sayd, as I shal you devise.  
Is ther ought elles, Dorigene, but this ?

Nay, nay, quod she, God helps me so, as wis  
This is to much, and it were Goddes will.

Ye, wif, quod he, let slepen that is still,  
It may be wel paraventure yet to-day.

Ye shal your trouthe holden by my fay.  
For God so wisly have mercy on me,  
I had wel lever stiked for to be,  
For veray love which that I to you have,  
But if ye shuld your trouthe kepe and save.  
Trowth is the hiest thing that man may kepe.  
But with that word he brast anon to wepe,  
And sayd ; I you forbode on peine of deth,  
That never while you lasteth lif or breth,  
To no wight tell ye this misaventure.

As I may best I wol my wo endure.  
Ne make no contenance of hevinesse,  
That folk of you may demen harme or gesse.  
And forth he cleped a squier and a maid.  
Goth forth anon with Dorigene, he said,  
And bringeth hire to swiche a place anon.  
They take hir leve, and on hir way they gon :  
But they ne wisten why she thider went,  
She n'olde no wight tellen hire entent.

This squier, which that highte Aurelius,  
On Dorigene that was so amorous,  
Of aventure happed hire to mete  
Amid the toun, right in the quikkest strete,  
As she was boun to go the way forthright  
Toward the gardin, ther as she had hight.  
And he was to the gardinward also ;  
For wel he spied whan she wolde go  
Out of hire hous, to any maner place :  
But thus they met of aventure or grace,  
And he salueth hire with glad entent,  
And axeth of hire whiderward she went.

And she answered, half as she were mad,  
Unto the gardin, as myn husbond bad,  
My trouthe for to hold, alas ! alas !

Aurelius gan wondren on this cas,  
And in his herte had gret compassion  
Of hire, and of hire lamentation,  
And of Arviragus the worthy knight,  
That bad hire holden all that she had hight,  
So loth him was his wif shuld breke hire trouthe.  
And in his herte he caught of it gret routhe,  
Considering the best on every side,  
That fro his lust yet were him lever abide,  
Than do so high a cherlish wretchednesse  
Ageins fraunchise, and alle gentillesse ;  
For which in fewe wordes sayd he thus.

Madame, say to your lord Arviragus,  
That sin I see the grete gentillesse  
Of him, and eke I see wel your distresse,

That him were lever have shame (and that were  
routhe)

Than ye to me shuld breken thus your trouthe,  
I hadde wel lever ever to suffren wo,  
Than to depart the love betwix you two.  
I you release, madame, into your hond  
Quit every seurement and every bond,  
That ye han made to me, as herebeforne,  
Sin thilke time that ye were yborne.

Have here my trouthe, I shal you never reprew  
Of no behest, and here I take my leve,  
As of the trewest and the beste wif,  
That ever yet I knew in all my lif.  
But every wif beware of hire belest ;  
On Dorigene remembreth at the lest.  
Thus can a squier don a gentil dede,  
As wel as can a knight, withouten drede.

She thanketh him upon hire knees bare,  
And home unto hire husbond is she fare,  
And told him all, as ye han herd me sayd :  
And, trusteth me, he was so wel apayd,  
That it were impossible me to write.

What shuld I lenger of this cas endite ?  
Arviragus and Dorigene his wif  
In soveraine blisse leden forth hir lif,  
Never eft ne was ther anger hem betwene ;  
He cherished hire as though she were a quene,  
And she was to him trewe for evermore :  
Of this two folk ye get of me no more.

Aurelius, that his cost hath all forlorne,  
Curseth the time, that ever he was borne.

Alas ! quod he, alas that I behight  
Of pured gold a thousand pound of wight  
Unto this philosopre ! how shal I do ?  
I see no more, but that I am fordo.

Min heritage mote I nedes sell,  
And ben a begger, here I n'll not dwell,  
And shamen all my kinrede in this place,  
But I of him may geten better grace.  
But natheles I wol of him assay  
At certaiu daies yere by yere to pay,  
And thanke him of his grete curtesie.  
My trouthe wol I kepe, I wol not lie.

With herte sore he goth unto his cofre,  
And broughte gold unto this philosopre,  
The value of five hundred pound I gesse,  
And him besecheth of his gentillesse  
To graunt him daies of the remenaunt,  
And saydo ; maister, I dare wel make avaunt,  
I failed never of my trouthe as yet.

For sikerly my dette shal be quit  
Towardes you, how so that ever I fare  
To gon a begging in my kirtle bare :  
But wold ye vouchen sauf upon seurttee  
Two yere or three for to respiten me,  
Than were I wel, for elles mote I sell  
Min heritage, ther is no more to tell.

This Philosopre sobely answerd,  
And saied thus, whan he thise wordes herd ;  
Have I not holden covenant to thee ?

Yes certes, wel and trewely, quod he.  
Hast thou not had thy lady as thee liketh ?  
No, no, quod he, and sorwefully he siketh.  
What was the cause ? tell me if thou can.

Aurelius his tale anon began,  
And told him all as ye han herd before,  
It nedeth not reherse it any more.  
He sayd, Arviragus of gentillesse  
Had lever die in sorwe and in distresse,  
Thau that his wif were of hire trouthe fals.

orwe of Dorigene he told him als,  
oth hire was to ben a wicked wif,  
hat she lever had lost that day hire lif;  
at her trouth she swore thurgh innocence;  
ver erst hadde herd speke of apparence:  
nade me han of hire so gret pitee,  
ight as freely as he sent hire to me,  
ely sent I hire to him again:  
s all and som, ther n'is no more to sain.  
Philosophre answerd; leve brother,  
h of you did gentilly to other:  
art a squier, and he is a knight,  
od forbode for his blisful might,  
a clerk coud don a gentil dede

As wel as any of you, it is no drede.  
Sire, I relese thee thy thousand pound,  
As thou right now were crope out of the ground,  
Ne never er now ne hadde known me.  
For, sire, I wol not take a peny of thee  
For all my craft, ne nought for my travaille:  
Thou hast ypaied wel for my vitaille.  
It is ynough, and farewel, have good day.  
And toke his hors, and forth he goth his way.  
Lordings, this question wold I axen now,  
Which was the moste free, as thinketh you?  
Now telleth me, or that ye further wende.  
I can no more, my tale is at an ende.

## THE DOCTOURES TALE.

### THE DOCTOURES PROLOGUE.

at that passen, quod oure Hoste, as now.  
doctour of Physike, I prey you,  
s a tale of som honest matere.  
hal be don, if that ye wol it here,  
his doctour, and his tale began anon.  
good men, quod he, herkeneth everich on.

### THE DOCTOURES TALE.

was, as telleth Titus Livius,  
ght, that cleped was Virginius,  
ed of honour and worthinesse.  
rong of frendes, and of gret richesse.  
s knight a daughter hadde by his wif.  
ildren had he mo in all his lif.  
was this maid in excellent beautee  
n every wight that man may see:  
sture hath with souveraine diligence  
ed hire in so gret excellence,  
ugh she wolde sayn, lo, I nature,  
an I forme and peint a creature,  
that me list; who can me contrefete  
lion? not, though he ay forge and bete,  
ve, or peinte: for I dare wel sain,  
s, Xeuxis, shulden werche in vain,  
to grave, or peinte, or forge, or bete,  
presumed me to contrefete.  
s that is the former principal,  
naked me his vicair general  
me and peinten erthly creatures  
as me list, and eche thing in my cure is  
the mone, that may wane and waxe.  
or my werk right nothing wol I axe;  
rd and I ben ful of on accord.  
s hire to the worship of my lord;  
I all min other creatures,  
colour that they han, or what figures.  
emeth me that nature wolde say,  
s maid of age twelf yere was and tway,

In which that nature hadde swiche delit.  
For right as she can peint a lily whit  
And red a rose, right with swiche peinture  
She peinted hath this noble creature  
Er she was borne, upon hire limmes free,  
Wheras by right swiche colours shulden be:  
And Phebus died hath hire tresses grete,  
Like to the stremes of his burned hete.  
And if that excellent were hire beautee,  
A thousand fold more vertuous was she.  
In hire ne lacked no condition,  
That is to preise, as by discretion.  
As wel in gost as body, chast was she:  
For which she floured in virginitee,  
With all humilitee and abstinence,  
With all attemperance and patience,  
With mesure eke, of bering and array.  
Discrete she was in answering alway,  
Though she were wise as Pallas, dare I sain,  
Hire facounde eke ful womanly and plain,  
No contrefeted termes hadde she  
To semen wise; but after hire degree  
She spake, and all hire wordes more and leese  
Souning in vertue and in gentillese.  
Shamefast she was in maidens shamefastnesse,  
Constant in herte, and ever in besinesse  
To drive hire out of idel slogardie:  
Bacchus had of hire mouth right no maistrie.  
For wine and youthe don Venus encrease,  
As men in fire wol casten oile and grese.  
And of hire owen vertue unconstrained,  
She hath hireself ful often sike yfeined,  
For that she wolde fleen the compaignie,  
Wher likely was to treten of folie,  
As is at festes, at revels, and at dances,  
That ben occasions of daliances.  
Swiche thinges maken children for to be  
To sone ripe and bold, as men may see,  
Which is ful perilous, and hath ben yore:  
For al to sone may she lernen lore  
Of boldnesse, whan she woxen is a wif.  
And ye maistresses in your olde lif,  
That lordes daughters han in governance,  
Ne taketh of my wordes displeaunce:  
Thinketh that ye ben set in governinges  
Of lordes daughters, only for two thinges

Other for ye han kept your honestee,  
Or elles for ye han fallen in freltee,  
And knowen wel ynough the olde dance,  
And han forsaken fully swiche meschance  
For evermo : therfore for Cristes sake  
To teche hem vertue loke that ye ne slake

A thief of venison, that hath forlaft  
His likerousnesse, and all his olde craft,  
Can kepe a forest best of any man :  
Now kepeth hem wel, for if ye wol ye can.  
Loke wel, that ye unto no vice assent,  
Lest ye be damned for your wikke entent,  
For who so doth, a traytour is certain :  
And taketh kepe of that I shal you sain ;  
Of alle treson souveraine pestilence  
Is, whan a wight betrayeth innocence.

Ye fathers, and ye mothers eke also,  
Though ye han children, be it on or mo,  
Your is the charge of all hir surveance,  
While that they ben under your governance.  
Beth ware, that by ensample of your living,  
Or by your negligence in chastising,  
That they ne perish : for I dare wel saye,  
If that they don, ye shul it dere abeye.  
Under a shepherd soft and negligent,  
The wolf hath many a shepe and lamb to-rent.

Sufficeth this ensample now as here,  
For I mote turne agen to my matere.

This maid, of which I tell my tale expresse,  
She kept hireself, hire neded no maistresse ;  
For in hire living maidens mighten rede,  
As in a book, every good word and dede,  
That longeth to a maiden vertuous :  
She was so prudent and so bounteous.  
For which the fame out sprong on every side  
Both of hire beautee and hire bountee wide :  
That thurgh the lond they praised hire ech one,  
That loved vertue, sauf envie alone,  
That sory is of other mannes wele,  
And glad is of his sorwe and his unhele.  
The doctour maketh this descriptioun.

This maiden on a day went in the toun  
Toward a temple, with hire mother dere,  
As is of yonge maidens the manere.

Now was ther than a justice in that toun,  
That governour was of that region :  
And so befell, this juge his even cast  
Upon this maid, avising hire ful fast,  
As she came forth by ther this juge stood :  
Anon his herte changed and his mood,  
So was he caught with beautee of this maid,  
And to himself ful prively he said,  
This maiden shal be min for any man.

Anon the fend into his herte ran,  
And taught him sodenly, that he by sleight  
This maiden to his purpos winnen might.  
For certes, by no force, ne by no mede,  
Him thought he was not able for to spede ;  
For she was strong of frendes, and eke she  
Confermed was in swiche souveraine bountee,  
That wel he wist he might hire never winne,  
As for to make hire with hire body sinne.  
For which with gret deliberatioun  
He sent after a cherl was in the toun,  
The which he knew for sotil and for bold.  
This juge unto this cherl his tale hath told  
In secree wise, and made him to ensure,  
He shulde tell it to no creature,  
And if he did, he shulde lese his hede.  
And whan assented was this cursed rede,

Glad was the juge, and made him gret chere,  
And yaf him yeftes precious and dere.

Whan shapen was all hir conspiracie  
Fro point to point, how that his lecherie  
Parformed shulde be ful sotilly,  
As ye shul here it after openly,  
Home goth this cherl, that highte Claudius.  
This false juge, that highte Appius,  
(So was his name, for it is no fable,  
But known for an historial thing notable :  
The sentence of it soth is out of doute)  
This false juge goth now fast aboute  
To hasten his delit all that he may.

And so befell, sone after on a day  
This false juge, as telleth us the storie,  
As he was wont, sat in his consistorie,  
And yaf his domes upon sondry cas ;  
This false cherl came forth a ful gret pas,  
And saide ; lord, if that it be your will,  
As doth me right upon this pitous bill,  
In which I plaine upon Virginus.  
And if that he wol sayn it is not thus,  
I wol it preve, and finden good witnesse,  
That soth is that my bille wol expresse.

The juge answerd, of this in his absence  
I may not yeve diffinitif sentence.

Let don him call, and I wol gladly here ;  
Thou shalt have right, and no wrong as now here

Virginus came to wete the juges will,  
And right anon was red this cursed bill ;  
The sentence of it was as ye shul here.

To you, my lord sire Appius so dere,  
Sheweth your poure servant Claudius,  
How that a knight called Virginus,  
Agein the lawe, agein all equitee,  
Holdeth, expresse agein the will of me,  
My servant, which that is my thral by right,  
Which from min hous was stolen on a night  
While that she was ful yong, I wol it preve  
By witnesse, lord, so that it you not greve ;  
She n'is his daughter nought, what so he say  
Wherfore to you, my lord the juge, I pray ;  
Yelde me my thral, if that it be your will.  
Lo, this was all the sentence of his bill.

Virginus gan upon the cherl behold ;  
But hastily, er he his tale told,  
And wold han preved it, as shuld a knight,  
And eke by witnessing of many a wight,  
That all was false, that said his adversary,  
This cursed juge wolde nothing tary,  
Ne here a word more of Virginus,  
But yave his jugement, and saide thus.

I deme anon this cherl his servant have.  
Thou shalt no lenger in thin hous hire save.  
Go bring hire forth, and put hire in our warl.  
The cherl shal have his thral ; thus I award.

And whan this worthy knight Virginus,  
Thurgh sentence of this justice Appius,  
Muste by force his dere daughter yeven  
Unto the juge, in lecherie to liven,  
He goth him home, and set him in his hall,  
And let anon his dere daughter call :  
And with a face ded as ashen cold,  
Upon hire humble face he gan behold,  
With fadres pitee stiking thurgh his herte,  
Al wold he from his purpos not converte.

Doughter, quod he, Virginia by thy name,  
Ther ben two waies, other deth or shame,  
That thou must suffre, alas that I was bore  
For never thou deservedest wherfore

with a swerd or with a knif.  
 daughter, ender of my lif,  
 I have fostred up with swiche plesance,  
 ou were never out of my remembrance ;  
 iter, which that art my laste wo,  
 my lif my laste joye also,  
 ie of chastitee, in patience  
 ou thy deth, for this is my sentence ;  
 e and not for hate thou must be ded,  
 us hond must smiten of thin hed.  
 at ever Appius thee say !  
 th he falsely juged thee to-day.  
 d hire all the cas, as ye before  
 rd, it nedeth not to tell it more.  
 rey, dere father, quod this maid.  
 h that word she both hire armes laid  
 is necke, as she was wont to do,  
 res brast out of hire eyen two,)  
 d, O goode father, shal I die ?  
 no grace ? is ther no remedie ?  
 rtes, dere daughter min, quod he.  
 ve me leiser, father min, quod she,  
 r for to complaine a litel space :  
 de Jepte yave his daughter grace  
 complaine, or he hire slow, alas !  
 d it wot, nothing was hire trespas,  
 she ran hire father first to see,  
 ome him with gret solempnitee.  
 h that word she fell aswoun anon,  
 er, whan hire swouning was agon,  
 th up, and to hire father said :  
 be God, that I shall die a maid.  
 e my deth, or that I have a shame.  
 th your child your wille a goddes name.  
 h that word she praied him ful oft,

That with his swerd he wolde smite hire soft ;  
 And with that word, aswoun again she fell.  
 Hire father, with ful sorweful herte and will,  
 Hire hed of smote, and by the top it hent,  
 And to the juge he gan it to present,  
 As he sat yet in dome in consistorie.

And whan the juge it saw, as saith the storie,  
 He bad to take him, and anhang him fast.  
 But right anon a thousand peple in thrast  
 To save the knight, for routh and for pittee,  
 For knowen was the false iniquitee.

The peple anon had suspect in this thing  
 By maner of the cherles chalenging,  
 That it was by the assent of Appius ;  
 They wisten wel that he was lecherous.  
 For which unto this Appius they gon,  
 And caste him in a prison right anon,  
 Wheras he slow himself : and Claudius,  
 That servant was unto this Appius,  
 Was demed for to hange upon a tree ;  
 But that Virginius of his piteo  
 So prayed for him, that he was exiled,  
 And elles certes had he ben begiled :  
 The remenant were anhangd, more and lesse,  
 That were consentant of this cursednesse.

Here men may see how sin hath his merite :  
 Beth ware, for ne man wot whom God wol smite  
 In no degree, ne in which maner wise  
 The worme of conscience may agrie  
 Of wicked lif, though it so prives be,  
 That no man wote therof, sauf God and he :  
 For be he lewed man or elles lered,  
 He n'ot how sone that he shal ben afered.  
 Therfore I rede you this conseil take,  
 Forsaketh sinne, or sinne you forsake.

## THE PARDONERES TALE.

### HE PARDONERES PROLOGUE.

ste gan to swere as he were wood ;  
 (quod he) by nailes and by blood,  
 s a false cheri, and a false justice.  
 eful deth, as herte can devise,  
 these juges and hir advocas.  
 his sely maide is slain, alas !  
 o dere abought she hire beautee.  
 re I say, that al day man may see,  
 ftes of fortune and of nature  
 se of deth to many a creature.  
 autee was hire deth, I dare wel sain ;  
 o pitously as she was slain.  
 e yeffes, that I speke of now,  
 n ful often more for harm than prow.  
 rewely, min owen maister dere,  
 s a pitous tale for to here :  
 heles, passe over, is no force.  
 o God so save thy gentil corps,  
 e thyn urinals, and thy jordanes,

Thin Ypocras, and eke thy Galianes,  
 And every boist ful of thy letuarie,  
 God blesse hem and our lady Seinte Marie.  
 So mote I the, thou art a propre man,  
 And like a prelat by Seint Ronian ;  
 Said I not wel ? I cannot speke in terme ;  
 But wel I wot, thou dost min herte to erme,  
 That I have almost caught a cardiale :  
 By *corpus domini* but I have triacle,  
 Or elles a draught of moist and corny ale,  
 Or but I here anon a mery tale,  
 Myn herte is lost for pitee of this maid.  
 Thou *bel amy*, thou pardoner, he said,  
 Tel us som mirth of japes right anon.

It shal be don, quod he, by Seint Ronion.  
 But first (quod he) here at this ale-stake  
 I wol both drinke, and biten on a cake.  
 But right anon these gentiles gan to crie ;

Nay, let him tell us of no ribaudrie.  
 Tell us som moral thing, that we mow iere,  
 Som wit, and thaune wol we gladly here.  
 I graunte ywis, quod he, but I must thinke  
 Upon som honest thing, while that I drinke.



## THE PARDONERES TALE.

LORDINGS, quod he, in chirche whan I preche,  
I peine me to have an hautein speche,  
And ring it out, as round as goth a bell,  
For I can all by rote that I tell.  
My teme is alway on, and ever was ;  
*Radix malorum est cupiditas.*

First I pronounce whennes that I come,  
And than my bulles shew I all and some :  
Our liege lordes sele on my patente,  
That shew I first my body to warrente,  
That no man be so bold, ne preest ne clerk,  
Me to disturbe of Cristes holy werk.  
And after that than tell I forth my tales.  
Bulles of popes, and of cardinales,  
Of patriarkes, and bishoppes I shewe,  
And in Latin I speke a wordes fewe,  
To saffron with my predication,  
And for to stere men to devotion.  
Than shew I forth my longe cristal stones,  
Ycrammed ful of cloutes and of bones,  
Relikes they ben, as wenen they echon.

Than have I in laton a shulder bone,  
Which that was of an holy Jewes shepe.

Good men, say I, take of my wordes kepe :  
If that this bone be washe in any well,  
If cow, or calf, or shepe, or oxe swell,  
That any worm hath ete, or worm ystonge,  
Take water of that well, and wash his tonge,  
And it is hole anon : and furthermore  
Of pockes, and of scab, and every sore  
Shal every shepe be hole, that of this well  
Drinketh a draught ; take kepe of that I tell.

If that the good man, that the bestes oweth,  
Wol every weke, er that the cok him croweth,  
Fasting ydrinken of this well a draught,  
As thilke holy Jew our eldres taught,  
His bestes and his store shal multiplie.  
And, sires, also it heleth jalousie.  
For though a man be falle in jalous rage,  
Let maken with this water his potage,  
And never shal he more his wif mistrist,  
Though he the soth of hire defaute wist ;  
Al had she taken preestes two or three.

Here is a mitaine eke, that ye may see :  
He that his hand wol put in this mitaine,  
He shal have multiplying of his graine,  
Whan he hath sownen, be it whete or otes,  
So that he offer pens or elles grotes.

And, men and women, o thing warne I you :  
If any wight be in this chirche now,  
That hath don sinne horrible, so that he  
Dare not for shame of it yshriven be :  
Or any woman, be she yong or old,  
That hath ymade hire husband cokewold,  
Swiche folk shul han no power no no grace  
To offer to my relikes in this place.  
And who so findeth him out of swiche blame,  
He wol come up and offer in Goddes name,  
And I assoyle him by the auctoritee,  
Which that by bulle ygranted was to me.

By this gaude have I wonnen yere by yere  
An hundred mark, sin I was pardonere.  
I stonde like a clerk in my pulpet,  
And whan the lewed peple is doun yset,  
I preche so as ye han herd before,  
And tell an hundred false japes more.  
Than peine I me to stretchen forth my necke,

And est and west upon the peple I becke,  
As doth a dove, sitting upon a berne :  
Myn hondes and my tonge gon so yerne,  
That it is joye to see my besinesse.  
Of avarice and of swiche cursednesse  
Is all my preching, for to make hem free  
To yeve hir pens, and namely unto me.  
For min entente is not but for to winne,  
And nothing for correction of sinne.  
I recke never whan that they be beried,  
Though that hir soules gon a blake beried.

For certes many a predication  
Cometh oft time of evil entention ;  
Som for plesance of folk, and flaterie,  
To ben advanced by hypocresie ;  
And som for vaine glorie, and som for hate.  
For whan I dare non other wayes debate,  
Than wol I sting him with my tonge smerte  
In preching, so that he shal not asterte  
To ben defamed falsely, if that he  
Hath trespassed to my brethren or to me.  
For though I telle not his propre name,  
Men shal wel knownen that it is the same  
By signes, and by other circumstances.  
Thus quite I folk, that don us displeances :  
Thus spit I out my venime under hewe  
Of holinesse, to seme holy and trewe.  
But shortly min entente I wol devise,  
I preche of nothing but for covetise.  
Therefore my teme is yet, and ever was,  
*Radix malorum est cupiditas.*

Thus can I preche again the same vice  
Which that I use, and that is avarice.  
But though myself be gilty in that sinne,  
Yet can I maken other folk to twinne  
From avarice, and sore hem to repente.  
But that is not my principal entente ;  
I preche nothing but for covetise.  
Of this matere it ought ynough suffice.

Than tell I hem ensamples many on  
Of olde stories longe time agon.  
For lewed peple loven tales olde ;  
Swiche thinges can they wel report and holde  
What ? trowen ye, that whiles I may preche  
And winnen gold and silver for I teche,  
That I wol live in povertie wilfully ?  
Nay, nay, I thought it never trewely.  
For I wol preche and beg in sondry londes,  
I wol not do no labour with min hondes,  
Ne make baskettes for to live therby,  
Because I wol not beggen idelly.

I wol non of the apostles contrefete :  
I wol have money, wolles, chese, and whete,  
Al were it yeven of the pourest page,  
Or of the pourest widewe in a village :  
Al shulde hire children sterven for famine.  
Nay, I wol drinke the licour of the vine,  
And have a joly wenche in every toun.

But herkeneth, lordings, in conclusioun,  
Your liking is that I shal tell a tale.  
Now I have dronke a draught of corny ale,  
By God I hope I shal you tell a thing,  
That shal by reson ben at your liking :  
For though myself be a ful vicious man,  
A moral tale yet I you tellen can,  
Which I am wont to prechen, for to winne.  
Now hold your pees, my tale I wol beginne.

In Flandres whilom was a compaignie  
Of yonge folk, that hauntened folie,

ard, riot, stewes, and tavernes;  
 with harpes, lutes, and giternes,  
 once and plaie at dis bothe day and night,  
 also, and drinke over hir might;  
 which they don the devil sacrifice  
 the devils temple, in cursed wise,  
 rfluitee abhominable.  
 es ben so gret and so damnable,  
 is grisly for to here hem swere.  
 sful lordes body they to-tere;  
 ought the Jewes rent him not ynough;  
 ie of hem at others sinne lough.  
 ight anon in comen tombesteres  
 id smale, and yonge fruitesteres,  
 with harpes, baudes, wafereres,  
 ben the veray devils officeres,  
 le and blow the fire of lecherie,  
 annexed unto glotonie.  
 y writ take I to my witnesse,  
 kurie is in wine and dronkenesse.  
 ow that dronken Loth unkindely  
 his daughters two unwetingly,  
 ke he was he n'iste what he wrought.  
 des, who so wel the stories sought,  
 ie of wine replete was at his feste,  
 t his owen table he yave his heste  
 1 the Baptist John ful gilteles.  
 a saith a good word douteles:  
 1 he can no difference find  
 a man that is out of his mind,  
 nan whiche that is dronkelew:  
 t woodnesse, yfallen in a shrew,  
 reth lenger than doth dronkenesse.  
 tonie, full of cursednesse;  
 first of our confusion,  
 al of our damnation,  
 t had bought us with his blood again.  
 how dere, shortly for to sain,  
 t was thilke cursed vanitie:  
 was all this world for glotonie.  
 1 our father, and his wif also,  
 radis, to labour and to wo,  
 riven for that vice, it is no drede.  
 le that Adam fasted, as I rede,  
 in Paradis, and whan that he  
 he fruit defended on a tree,  
 e was out cast to wo and peine.  
 ie, on thee wel ought us plaine.  
 st a man how many maladies  
 of excesse and of glotonies,  
 le ben the more mesurable  
 liete, sitting at his table.  
 he shorte throte, the tendre mouth,  
 that Est and West, and North and South,  
 e, in air, in water, men to-swinke,  
 a gloton deintee mete and drinke.  
 matere, O Poule, wel canst thou trete.  
 to wombe, and wombe eke unto mete  
 d destroien bothe, as Paulus saith.  
 1 foule thing is it by my faith  
 this word, and fouler is the dede,  
 nan so drinketh of the white and rede,  
 his throte he maketh his privce  
 thilke cursed superfluitee.  
 Apostle saith weping ful pitously,  
 alken many, of which you told have I,  
 now weping with pitous vois,  
 ey ben enemies of Cristes crois:  
 he the end is deth, womb is hir God.  
 be, O belly, stinking is thy cod,

Fulfilled of dong and of corruption;  
 At either end of thee foule is the soun  
 How gret labour and cost is thee to find!  
 Thise cokes how they stamp, and strein, and grind,  
 And turnen subSTANCE into accident,  
 To fulfill all thy likerous talent!  
 Out of the harde bones knocken they  
 The mary, for they casten nought away,  
 That may go thurgh the gullet soft and sote:  
 Of spicerie, of leef, of barke, and rote,  
 Shal ben his cause ymaked by delit  
 To make him yet a newer appetit.  
 But certes he, that hauntheth swiche delices,  
 Is ded, while that he liveth in tho vices.  
 A lecherous thing is wine, and dronkenesse  
 Is ful of striving and of wretchednesse.  
 O dronken man, disfigured is thy face,  
 Sour is thy breth, foul art thou to embrace:  
 And thurgh thy dronken nose semeth the soun,  
 As though thou saidest ay, Sampson, Sampson:  
 And yet, God wot, Sampson dronk never no wine.  
 Thou fallest, as it were a stiked swine:  
 Thy tonge is lost, and all thin honest cure,  
 For dronkenesse is veray sepulture  
 Of mannes wit, and his discretion.  
 In whom that drinke hath domination,  
 He can no conseil kepe, it is no drede.  
 Now kepe you fro the white and fro the rede,  
 And namely fro the white wine of Lepe,  
 That is to sell in Fishstrete and in Chepe.  
 This wine of Spaigne crepeth subtilly  
 In other wines growing faste by,  
 Of which ther riseth swiche fumositee,  
 That whan a man hath dronken draughtes thre,  
 And weneth that he be at home in Chepe,  
 He is in Spaigne, right at the toun of Lepe,  
 Not at the Rochell, ne at Burdeaux toun;  
 And thanne wol he say, Sampson, Sampson.  
 But herkeneth, lordings, o word, I you pray,  
 That all the souveraine actes, dare I say,  
 Of victories in the Olde Testament,  
 Thurgh veray God, that is omnipotent,  
 Were don in abstinence and in prayere:  
 Loketh the Bible, and ther ye mow it lere.  
 Loke Attila, the grete conquerour,  
 Died in his slepe, with shame and dishonour,  
 Bleding ay at his nose in dronkenesse:  
 A capitaine schulde live in sobrenesse.  
 And over all this, aviseth you right wel,  
 What was commanded unto Lamuel;  
 Not Samuel, but Lamuel say I.  
 Redeth the Bible, and find it expresly  
 Of wine yeving to hem that have justice.  
 No more of this, for it may wel suffice.  
 And now that I have spoke of glotonie,  
 Now wol I you defenden hasardrie.  
 Hasard is veray moder of lesinges,  
 And of deceite, and cursed forsweringes:  
 Blaspheming of Crist, manslaughter, and wast also  
 Of catel, and of time; and forthermo  
 It is reprove, and contrary of honour,  
 For to ben hold a comun hasardour.  
 And ever the higher he is of estat,  
 The more he is holden desolat.  
 If that a Prince useth hasarderie,  
 In alle governance and policie  
 He is, as by comun opinion,  
 Yhold the lesse in reputation.  
 Stilbon, that was a wise embassadour,  
 Was sent to Corinth with ful gret nonour

Fro Calidone, to maken hem alliance :  
 And whan he came, it happed him *par chance*,  
 That all the grettest that were of that loud  
 Yplaying atte hasard he hem fond.  
 For which, as sone as that it mighte be,  
 He stale him home agein to his contree,  
 And sayde ther, I wol not lese my name,  
 Ne wol not take on me so gret defame,  
 You for to allie unto non hasardours.  
 Sendeth som other wise embassadours,  
 For by my trouthe, me were lever die,  
 Than I you shuld to hasardours allie.  
 For ye, that ben so glorious in honours,  
 Shal not allie you to non hasardours,  
 As by my wille, ne as by my treetee.  
 This wise philosophre thus sayd he.

Loke eke how to the king Demetrius  
 The king of Parthes, as the book sayth us,  
 Sent him a pair of dis of gold in scorne,  
 For he had used hasard therbefore :  
 For which he held his glory and his renoun  
 At no value or reputacioun.  
 Lordes may finden other maner play  
 Honest ynough to drive the day away.

Now wol I speke of others false and grette  
 A word or two, as olde bookes trette.  
 Gret swering is a thing abhominable,  
 And false swering is yet more reprevable.  
 The highe God forbad swering at al,  
 Witnesse on Mathew : but in special  
 Of swering sayth the holy Jeremie,  
 Thou shalt swere soth thin othes, and not lie ;  
 And swere in dome, and eke in rightwisesse ;  
 But idel swering is a cursednesse.

Behold and see, that in the firste table  
 Of highe Goddes hestes honourable,  
 How that the second hest of him is this,  
 Take not my name in idel or amis.  
 Lo, rather he forbedeth swiche swering,  
 Than homicide, or many an other thing.  
 I say that as by ordre thus it stondeth ;  
 This knoweth he that his hestes understondeth,  
 How that the second hest of God is that.  
 And furthermore, I wol thee tell all plat,  
 That vengeance shal not parten from his hous  
 That of his othes is outrageous.  
 By Goddes precious herte, and by his nailes,  
 And by the blood of Crist, that is in Hailes,  
 Seven is my chance, and thin is cink and treye :  
 By Goddes armes, if thou falsely pleye,  
 This dagger shal thurghout thin herte go.  
 This fruit cometh of the bicchel bones two,  
 Forswering, ire, falsenesse, and homicide.

Now for the love of Crist that for us dide,  
 Leteth your othes, bothe gret and smale.  
 But, sires, now wol I tell you forth my tale.

This riotours three, of which I tell,  
 Long erst or prime rong of any bell,  
 Were set hem in a tavern for to drinke :  
 And as they sat, they herd a belle clinke  
 Before a corps, was caried to his grave :  
 That on of hem gan callen to his knave,  
 Go bet, quod he, and axe redily,  
 What corps is this, that passeth here forth by :  
 And loke that thou report his name wel.

Sire, quod this boy, it nedeth never a del ;  
 It was me told or ye came here two houres ;  
 He was parde an old felaw of youre,  
 And sodenly he was yslein to-night,  
 Jordonke as he sat on his benche upright,

Ther came a privee thief, men clepen Deth,  
 That in this contree all the peple sleth,  
 And with his spere he smote his herte atwo,  
 And went his way withouten wordes mo.  
 He hath a thousand slain this pestilence :  
 And, maister, or ye come in his presence,  
 Me thinketh that it were ful necessarie,  
 For to beware of swiche an adversarie :  
 Beth redy for to mete him evermore.  
 Thus taughte me my dame, I say no more.

By Seinte Marie, sayd this tavernere,  
 The child sayth soth, for he hath slain this yere  
 Hens over a mile, within a gret village,  
 Both man and woman, child, and hyne, and page :  
 I trowe his habitation be there :  
 To ben avised gret wisdom it were,  
 Or that he did a man a dishonour.

Ye, Goddes armes, quod this riotour,  
 Is it swiche peril with him for to mete ?  
 I shal him seke by stile and eke by strote.  
 I make a vow by Goddes digne bones.  
 Herkeneth, felawes, we three ben all ones :  
 Let eche of us hold up his hond to other,  
 And eche of us becomen others brother,  
 And we wol slen this false traitour deth :  
 He shal be slain, he that so many sleth,  
 By Goddes dignitee, or it be night.

Togeder han thise three hir trouthes plight  
 To live and dien eche of hem for other,  
 As though he were his owen boren brother.  
 And up they stert al dronken in this rage,  
 And forth they gon towards that village,  
 Of which the taverner had spoke befor,  
 And many a grisly oth than have they sworn,  
 And Cristes blessed body they to-rent ;  
 Deth shal be ded, if that we may him hent.

Whan they han gon not fully half a mile,  
 Right as they wold han troden over a stile,  
 An olde man and a poure with hem mette.  
 This olde man ful mekely hem grette,  
 And sayde thus ; Now, lordes, God you see.

The proudest of thise riotours three  
 Answerd agen ; What ! cherl, with sory grace,  
 Why art thou all forwrapped save thy face !  
 Why livest thou so longe in so gret age !

This olde man gan loke in his visage,  
 And sayde thus ; For I ne cannot finde  
 A man, though that I walked into Inde,  
 Neither in citee, ne in no village,  
 That wolde change his youthe for min age ;  
 And therefore mote I han min age still  
 As longe time as it is Goddes will.

Ne deth, alas ! ne will not han my lif.  
 Thus walke I like a resteles caitif,  
 And on the ground, which is my modres gate,  
 I knocke with my staf, erlich and late,  
 And say to hire, Leve mother, let me in.  
 Lo, how I vanish, flesh, and blood, and skin.  
 Alas ! whan shul my bones ben at reste !  
 Mother, with you wold I changen my cheste,  
 That in my chambre longe time hath be,  
 Ye, for an heren clout to wrap in me.  
 But yet to me she wol not don that grace,  
 For which ful pale and welked is my face.

But, sires, to you it is no curtesie  
 To speke unto an olde man vilanie,  
 But he trespass in word or elles in dede.  
 In holy writ ye moun yourselven rede ;  
 Ageins an olde man, hore upon his hede,  
 Ye shuld arise : therfore I yeve you rede,

h unto an olde man non harm now,  
re than that ye wold a man did you  
if that ye may so long abide.  
od be with you, wher ye go or ride.  
go thider as I have to go.  
olde cherl, by God thou shalt not so,  
this other hasardour anon;  
artest not so lightly by Seint John.  
pake right now of thilke traitour deth,  
this contree all our frendes sleth;  
ere my trouth as thou art his espie;  
er he is, or thou shalt it abie,  
I and by the holy Sacrement;  
hly thou art on of his assent  
us yonge folk, thou false thefe.  
sires, quod he, if it be you so lefe  
en deth, tourne up this croked way,  
that grove I left him by my fay  
a tree, and ther he wol abide;  
your bost he wol him nothing hide.  
hat oke! right ther ye shuln him find.  
ve you, that bought agen mankind,  
u amende; thus sayd this olde man.  
everich of these riotoures ran,  
y came to the tree, and ther they found  
vins fine of gold ycoined round,  
gh an eighte bushels, as hem thought.  
ger as than after dethe they sought,  
ie of hem so glad was of the sight,  
it the floireins ben so faire and bright,  
un they sette hem by the precious hord.  
rste of hem he spake the firste word.  
hren, quod he, take kepe what I shal say;  
is gret, though that I bourde and play.  
esour hath fortune unto us yeven  
h and jolitee our lif to liven,  
htly as it cometh, so wol we spend.  
ddes precious dignitee, who wend  
, that we shuld han so faire a grace!  
ght this gold be caried fro this place  
o myn hous, or elles unto youres,  
I I wote that all this gold is oures)  
were we in high felicitee.  
wely by day it may not be;  
lden say that we were theeves strong,  
our owen tresour don us hong.  
esour must yearied be by night  
ly and as sleighly as it might.  
re I rede, that cut among us alle  
we, and let see wher the cut wol falle:  
that hath the cut, with herte blith,  
nnen to the toun, and that ful swith,  
ing us bred and win ful prively:  
o of us shal kepen subtilly  
esour wel: and if he wol not tarien,  
it is night, we wol this tresour carien  
assent, wher as us thinketh best.  
on of hem the cut brought in his fest,  
d hem drawe and loke wher it wold falle,  
fell on the yongest of hem alle:  
rth toward the toun he went anon.  
so sone as that he was agon,  
of hem spake thus unto that other:  
rotest wel thou art my sworn brother,  
ofte wol I tell thee right anon.  
rotest wel that our felaw is agon,  
re is gold, and that ful gret plentee,  
ial departed ben among us three.  
theles, if I can shape it so,  
departed were among us two,

Had I not don a frendes turn to thee?

That other answerd, I n'ot how that may be:  
He wote wel that the gold is with us tweye.

What shuln we don! what shuln we to him seye

Shal it be conseil! sayd the firste shrewe;

And I shal tellen thee in wordes fewe

What we shul don, and bring it wel aboute.

I grante, quod that other, out of doute,

That by my trouth I wol thee not bewreie.

Now, quod the first, thou wost wel we ben twele

And tweie of us shul strenger be than on.

Loke, whan that he is set, thou right anon

Arise, as though thou woldest with him play;

And I shal rive him thurgh the sides tway,

While that thou stroglest with him as in game,

And with thy dagger loke thou do the same;

And than shal all this gold departed be,

My dere frend, betwixen thee and me:

Than moun we bothe our lustes al fulfillle,

And play at dis right at our owen wille.

And thus accorded ben this shrewes tweye,

To slen the thridde, as ye han herd me seye.

This yongest, which that wente to the toun,

Ful oft in herte he rolleth up and doun

The beautee of thise floireins newe and bright.

O Lord, quod he, if so were that I might

Have all this tresour to myself alone,

Ther n'is no man that liveth under the trone

Of God, that shulde live so mery as I.

And at the last the fend our enemy

Putte in his thought, that he shuld poison beye,

With which he mighte slen his felaws tweye.

For why, the fend fond him in swiche living,

That he had leve to sorwe him to bring.

For this was outrely his ful entente

To slen hem both, and never to repente.

And forth he goth, no lenger wold he tary,

Into the toun unto a Potecary,

And praied him that he him wolde sell

Som poison, that he might his ratouns quell.

And eke ther was a polkat in his hawe,

That, as he sayd, his capons had yslawe:

And fayn he wolde him wreken, if he might,

Of vermine, that destroyed hem by night.

The Potecary answerd, Thou shalt have

A thing, as wisly God my soule save,

In all this world ther n'is no creature,

That ete or dronke hath of this confecture,

Not but the mountance of a corne of whete,

That he ne shal his lif anon forlete;

Ye, sterve he shal, and that in leese while,

Than thou wolt gon a pas not but a mile:

This poison is so strong and violent.

This cursed man hath in his hond yhent

This poison in a box, and swithe he rau

Into the nexte strete unto a man,

And borwed of him large botelles three;

And in the two the poison poured he;

The thridde he kepte cleene for his drinke,

For all the night he shope him for to swinke

In caryng of the gold out of that place.

And whan this riotour, with sory grace,

Hath filled with win his grete botelles three,

To his felawes agen repaireth he.

What nedeth it therof to sermon more?

For right as they had cast his deth before,

Right so they han him slain, and that anon.

And whan that this was don, thus spake that on

Now let us sit and drinke, and make us mery,

And afterward we wiln his body bery.

And with that word it happed him *par cas*,  
To take the botelle, ther the poison was,  
And dronke, and yave his felaw drinke also,  
For which anon they storne bothe two.

But certes I suppose that Avicenne  
Wrote never in no canon, ne in no fenne,  
Mo wonder signes of empoisoning,  
Than had thise wretches two or hir ending.  
Thus ended ben thise homicides two,  
And eke the false empoisoner also.

O cursednesse of alle cursednesse !  
O traitours homicide ! O wickednesse !  
O glotonie, luxurie, and hasardrie !  
Thou blasphemour of Crist with vilanie,  
And othes grete, of usage and of pride !  
Alas ! mankinde, how may it betide,  
That to thy Creatour, which that thee wrought,  
And with his precious herte-blood thee bought,  
Thou art so false and so unkind, alas !

Now, good men, God foryeve you your trespass,  
And ware you fro the sinne of avarice.  
Min holy pardon may you all warice,  
So that ye offre nobles or starlinges,  
Or elles silver broches, spones, ringes.  
Boweth your hed under this holy Bulle.  
Cometh up, ye wives, and offreth of your wolles ;  
Your names I entre here in my roll anon ;  
Into the blisse of heven shul ye gon :  
I you assoile by min high powere,  
You that wiln offre, as clene and eke as clere  
As ye were borne. Lo, sires, thus I preche ;  
And Jesu Crist, that is our soules leche,  
So graunte you his pardon to receive ;  
For that is best, I wol you not deceive.

But, sires, o word forgate I in my tale ;  
I have relikes and pardon in my male,  
As faire as any man in Englelond,  
Which were me yeven by the Popes hond.  
If any of you wol of devotion  
Offren, and han min absolution,  
Cometh forth anon, and kneleth here adoun,  
And mekely receiveth my pardoun.

Or elles taketh pardon, as ye wende,  
Al newe and freshe at every townes ende,  
So that ye offren alway newe and newe,  
Nobles or pens, which that ben good and trewe.  
It is an honour to everich that is here,  
That ye moun have a sufficient pardonere  
To assoilen you in contree as ye ride,  
For aventure, which that moun betide.  
Paraventure ther may falle on, or two,  
Doun of his hors, and breke his necke atwo.  
Loke, which a seurtee is it to you alle,  
That I am in your felawship yfalle,  
That may assoile you bothe more and lasse,  
Whan that the soule shal fro the body passe.  
I rede that our hoste shal beginne,  
For he is most enveloped in sinne.  
Come forth, sire hoste, and offre first anon,  
And thou shalt kisse the relikes everich on,  
Ye for a grote ; unbokel anon thy purse.

Nay nay, quod he, than have I Cristes curse.  
Let be, quod he, it shal not be, so the ich.  
Thou woldest make me kisse thin olde brech,  
And swere it were a relike of a seint,  
Though it were with thy foundement depeint.  
But by the crois, which that Seint Heleine fond,  
I wolde I had thin coils in min hond,  
Instede of relikes, or of seintuarie.  
Let cut hem of, I wol thee help hem carie ;  
They shul be shrined in an hogges tord.

This Pardoner answered not a word ;  
So wroth he was, no word ne wolde he say.

Now, quod our hoste, I wol no lenger play  
With thee, ne with non other angry man.

But right anon the worthy knight began,  
(Whan that he saw that all the peple lough)  
No more of this, for it is right ynough.  
Sire Pardoner, be mery and glad of chere ;  
And ye, sire hoste, that ben to me so dese,  
I pray you that ye kisse the Pardoner ;  
And, Pardoner, I pray thee draw thee ner,  
And as we diden, let us laugh and play.  
Anon they kissed, and riden forth hir way.

## THE SHIPMANNES TALE.

### THE SHIPMANNES PROLOGUE.

Our hoste upon his stirrops stode anon,  
And saide ; Good men, herkeneth everich on,  
This was a thrifty tale for the nones.  
Sire parish preest, quod he, for Goddes bones,  
Tell us a tale, as was thy forward yore :  
I see wel that ye lerned men in lora  
Can mochel good, by Goddes dignitee.

The Person him answerd, *Benedicite !*  
What eileth the man, so sinfully to swere !

Our hoste answerd, O Jankin, be ye there !  
Now, good men, quod our hoste, herkneth to me.  
I smell a loller in the wind, quod he.  
Abideth for Goddes digne passion,  
For we shul han a predication :

This loller here wol prechen us somewhat.

Nay by my father's soule, that shal he nat,  
Sayde the Shipman, here shal he nat preche,

He shal no gospel glosen here ne teche.  
We leven all in the gret God, quod he.  
He wolde sowen som difficultee,  
Or springen cockle in our clene corne.  
And therfore, hoste, I warne thee beforne,  
My joly body shal a tale telle,  
And I shal clinken you so mery a belle,  
That I shal waken all this compaignie :  
But it shal not ben of philosophie,  
Ne of physike, ne termes queinte of lawe ;  
Ther is but litel Latin in my mawe.

### THE SHIPMANNES TALE.

A MARCHANT whilom dwelled at Seint Denise,  
That riche was, for which men held him wise.  
A wif he had of excellent beautee,  
And compaignable, and revelous was she,

is a thing that causeth more dispence,  
 worth is all the chere and reverence,  
 men hem don at festes and at dances.  
 salutations and contencences  
 as doth a shadwe upon the wall :  
 is him that payen mote for all.  
 ly husbond algate he mote pay,  
 te us clothe and he mote us array  
 his owen worship richely :  
 ch array we dancen jolily.  
 that he may not paraventure,  
 a lust not swiche dispence endure  
 inketh it is wasted and ylost,  
 note another payen for our cost,  
 us gold, and that is perilous.  
 noble Marchant held a worthy hous,  
 rich he had all day so gret repaire  
 largesse, and for his wif was faire,  
 onder is : but herkeneth to my tale.  
 nges all thise gastes gret and smale,  
 as a Monk, a faire man and a bold,  
 a thritty winter he was old,  
 ver in on was drawing to that place.  
 nge Monk, that was so faire of face,  
 nted was so with this goode man,  
 that hir firste knowlege began,  
 his hous as familer was he,  
 ossible is any frend to be.  
 r as mochel as this goode man  
 ce this Monk, of which that I began,  
 bothe two yborne in o village,  
 onk him claimeth, as for cosinage,  
 again him sayd not ones nay,  
 as glad therof, as foule of day ;  
 his herte it was a gret plesance.  
 ben they knit with eterne alliance,  
 he of hem gan other for to ensure  
 therhed, while that hire lif may dure.  
 was Dan John, and namely of dispence  
 hat hous, and ful of diligence  
 plesance, and also gret costage :  
 forgate to yewe the leste page  
 that hous ; but, after hir degree,  
 re the lord, and sithen his meinee,  
 that he came, som maner honest thing ;  
 rich they were as glad of his coming  
 le is fayn, whan that the sonne up riseth.  
 re of this as now, for it sufficeth.  
 so befell, this Marchant on a day  
 him to maken redy his array  
 d the toun of Brugges for to fare,  
 n ther a portion of ware :  
 rich he hath to Paris sent anon  
 sager, and praied hath Dan John  
 e shuld come to Seint Denis, and pleie  
 him, and with his wif, a day or tweie,  
 to Brugges went, in alle wise.  
 noble Monk, of which I you devise,  
 f his Abbot, as him list, licence,  
 use he was a man of high prudence,  
 ce ar officer out for to ride,  
 n hir granges, and hir bernes wide)  
 nto Seint Denis he cometh anon.  
 was so welcome as my lord Dan John,  
 re cousin, ful of curtesie !  
 him he brought a jubbe of Malvesie,  
 ce another ful of fine Vernage,  
 platile, as ay was his usage :  
 us I let hem ete, and drinke, and pleye,  
 marchant and this monk, a day or tweie.

The thridde day this marchant up ariseth,  
 And on his nedes sadly him aviseth :  
 And up into his countour hous goth he,  
 To reken with himselfen, wel may be,  
 Of thilke yere, how that it with him stood,  
 And how that he dispended had his good,  
 And if that he encreased were or non.  
 His bookes and his bagges many on  
 He layth befor him on his counting bord.  
 Ful riche was his tresour and his hord ;  
 For which ful fast his countour dore he shet ;  
 And eke he n'olde no man shuld him let  
 Of his accountes, for the mene time :  
 And thus he sit, til it was passed prime.

Dan John was risen in the morwe also,  
 And in the gardin walketh to and fro,  
 And hath his thinges sayd ful curteisly.

This goode wif came walking prively  
 Into the gardin, ther he walketh soft,  
 And him salueth, as she hath don oft :  
 A maiden child came in hire compaignie,  
 Which as hire lust she may governe and gie,  
 For yet under the yerde was the maide.

O dere cosin min Dan John, she saide,  
 What aileth you so rathe for to arise !

Nece, quod he, it ought ynough suffice  
 Five houres for to slepe upon a night :  
 But it were for an olde *appalled* wight,  
 As ben thise wedded men, that lie and dare,  
 As in a fourme sitteth a wery hare,  
 Were al forstraught with houndes gret and small  
 But, dere nece, why be ye so pale !  
 I trowe certes, that our goode man  
 Hath you laboured, sith this night began,  
 That you were nede to resten hastily.  
 And with that word he lough ful merily,  
 And of his owen thought he wexe all red.

This faire wif gan for to shake hire hed,  
 And saied thus ; Ye, God wote all, quod she.  
 Nay, cosin min, it stant not so with me.  
 For by that God, that yave me soule and lif,  
 In all the reame of Fraunce is ther no wif,  
 That lasse lust hath to that sory play ;  
 For I may singe alas and wala wa  
 That I was borne, but to no wight (quod she)  
 Dare I not tell how that it stant with me.  
 Wherefore I thinke out of this lond to wende,  
 Or elles of myself to make an ende,  
 So ful am I of drede and eke of care.

This monk began upon this wif to stare,  
 And sayd, Alas ! my nece, God forbede,  
 That ye for any sorwe, or any drede,  
 Fordo yourself : but telleth me your grefe,  
 Paraventure I may in your mischefe  
 Conseile or helpe : and therefore telleth me  
 All your annoy, for it shal ben secree.  
 For on my Portos here I make an oth,  
 That never in my lif, for lefe ne loth,  
 Ne shal I of no conseil you bewray.

The same agen to you, quod she, I say.  
 By God and by this Portos I you swere,  
 Though men me wolden all in peces tere,  
 Ne shal I never, for to gon to helle,  
 Bewrey o word of thing that ye me tell,  
 Nought for no cosinage, ne alliance,  
 But veraily for love and affiance.  
 Thus ben they sworne, and hereupon they kiste,  
 And eche of hem told other what hem liste.

Cosin, quod she, if that I had a space,  
 As I have non, and namely in this place,

Than wold I tell a legend of my lif,  
What I have suffred sith I was a wif  
With min husbond, al be he your cosin.

Nay, quod this monk, by God and Seint Martin,  
He n'is no more cosin unto me,  
Than is the leef that hangeth on the tree :  
I clepe him so by Seint Denis of France  
To han the more cause of acquaintance  
Of you, which I have loved specially  
Aboven alle women sikerly,  
This swere I you on my professioun :  
Telleth your grefe, lest that he come adoun,  
And hasteth you, and goth away anon.

My dere love, quod she, o my Dan John,  
Ful lefe were me this conseil for to hide,  
But out it mote, I may no lenger abide.

Myn husbond is to me the werste man,  
That ever was sith that the world began :  
But sith I am a wif, it sit not me  
To tellen no wight of our privtee,  
Neither in bed, ne in non other place ;  
God shilde I shulde it tellen for his grace ;  
A wif ne shal not sayn of hire husbond  
But all honour, as I can understand ;  
Save unto you thus moch I tellen shal :  
As helpe me God, he is nought worth at all,  
In no degree, the value of a fle.

But yet me greveth most his nigardie :  
And wel ye wot, that women naturally  
Desiren thinges sixe, as wel as I.  
They wolden that hir husbondes shulden be  
Hardy, and wise, and riche, and therto free,  
And buxome to his wif, and fresh a-bedde.

But by that ilke Lord that for us bledde,  
For his honour myselven for to array,  
A sonday next I muste nedes pay  
An hundred franks, or elles am I lorne.  
Yet were me lever that I were unborne,  
Than me were don a sclandre or vilanie.  
And if min husbond eke might it espie,  
I n'ere but lost ; and therefore I you prey  
Lene me this summe, or elles mote I dey.  
Dan John, I say, lene me this hundred frankes ;  
Parde I wol not faille you my thankes,  
If that you list to do that I you pray.  
For at a certain day I wol you pay,  
And do to you what plesance and service  
That I may don, right as you list devise :  
And but I do, God take on me vengeance,  
As foule as ever had Genelon of France.

This gentil monk answerd in this manere ;  
Now trewely, min owen lady dere,  
I have (quod he) on you so grete a routhe,  
That I you swere, and plighte you my trouthe,  
That whan your husbond is to Flandres fare,  
I wol deliver you out of this care,  
For I wol bringen you an hundred frankes.  
And with that word he caught hire by the flanke,  
And hire embraced hard, and kiste hire oft.  
Goth now your way, quod he, al stille and soft,  
And let us dine as sone as that ye may,  
For by my kalender it is prime of day :  
Goth now, and beth as trewe as I shal be.

Now elles God forbede, sire, quod she ;  
And forth she goth, as joly as a pie,  
And bad the cokes that they shuld hem hie,  
So that men mighten dine, and that anon.  
Up to hire husbond is this wif ygon,  
And knocketh at his countour boldly.  
*Qui est la ?* quod he. Peter, it am I,

Quod she. What, sire, how longe wol ye fast ?  
How longe time wol ye reken and east  
Your summes, and your bookes, and your thinges !  
The devil have part of all swiche rekeninges.  
Ye han ynough parde of Goddes sonde.  
Come doun to-day, and let your bagges stonde.  
Ne be ye not ashamed, that Dan John  
Shal fasting all this day elenge gon !  
What ! let us here a masse, and go we dine.

Wif, quod this man, litel canst thou divine  
The curious besineesse that we have :  
For of us chapmen, all so God me save,  
And by that lord that cleped is Seint Ive,  
Scarsly amonges twenty ten shul thrive  
Continuently, lasting unto oure age.  
We moun wel maken chere and good visage,  
And driven forth the world as it may be,  
And kepen oure estat in privtee,  
Til we be ded, or elles that we play  
A pilgrimage, or gon out of the way.  
And therfore have I gret necessitee  
Upon this queinte world to avisen me.  
For evermore mote we stond in drede  
Of hap and fortune in our chapmanhede.

To Flandres wol I go to-morwe at day,  
And come agein as sone as ever I may :  
For which, my dere wif, I thee beseeke  
As be to every wight buxom and meke,  
And for to kepe our good be curious,  
And honestly governe wel our hous.  
Thou hast ynough, in every maner wise,  
That to a thrifty household may suffice.  
Thee lacketh non array, ne no vitaille ;  
Of silver in thy purse shalt thou not faille.  
And with that word his countour dore he shette,  
And doun he goth ; no lenger wold he lette ;  
And hastily a masse was ther saide,  
And spedily the tables were ylaide,  
And to the diner faste they hem spedde,  
And richely this monk the chapman fedde.

And after diner Dan John sobriely  
This chapman toke apart, and prively  
He said him thus ; Cosin, it stondeth so,  
That, wel I see, to Brugges ye wol go,  
God and Seint Austin spede you and guide.  
I pray you, cosin, wisely that ye ride ;  
Governe you also of your diete  
Attemprely, and namely in this hete.  
Betwix us two nedeth no strange fare ;  
Farewel, cosin, God shilde you fro care.  
If any thing ther be by day or night,  
If it lie in my power and my might,  
That ye me wol command in any wise,  
It shal be don, right as ye wol devise.

But o thing or ye go, if it may be,  
I wolde prayen you for to lene me  
An hundred frankes for a weke or tweye,  
For certain bestes that I muste beye,  
To storen with a place that is oures :  
(God helpe me so, I wold that it were youres)  
I shal not faille surely of nay day,  
Not for a thousand frankes, a mile way.  
But let this thing be secree, I you prey ;  
For yet to-night these bestes mote I beye.  
And fare now wel, min owen cosin dere.  
*Grand mercy* of your cost and of your chere.

This noble marchant gentilly anon  
Answerd and said, O cosin min Dan John,  
Now sikerly this is a smal requeste :  
My gold is youres, whan that it you leste,

only my gold, but my chaffare :  
 at you lest, God shilde that ye spare.  
 ing is, ye know it wel ynough  
 nen, that hir money is hir plough.  
 in creancen while we han a name,  
 fles for to ben it is no game.  
 gen, whan it lith in your esc ;  
 y might ful fayn wold I you plesse.  
 hundred frankes fet he forth anon,  
 vely he toke hem to Dan John :  
 it in al this world wist of this lone,  
 his marchant, and Dan John alone.  
 inke, and speke, and rome a while and pleye,  
 Dan John rideth to his abbeye.  
 sorwe came, and forth this marchant rideth  
 dres ward, his prentis wel him gideth,  
 ame in to Brugges merily.  
 h this marchant faste and besily  
 is nede, and bieth, and creanceth ;  
 er playeth at the dis, ne danceth ;  
 marchant, shortly for to tell,  
 th his lif, and ther I let him dwell.  
 onday next the marchant was agon,  
 t Denis yemen is Dan John,  
 one and berde all fresh and newe yshave.  
 re hous ther n'as so litel a knave,  
 ight elles, that he n'as ful fain,  
 : my lord Dan John was come again.  
 ertly to the point right for to gon,  
 re wif accordeth with Dan John,  
 : these hundred frankes he shuld all night  
 ire in his armes bolt-upright :  
 : accord performed was in dede.  
 : all night a besy lif they lede  
 us day, that Dan John yede his way,  
 d the meinie farewel, have good day.  
 of hem, ne no wight in the toun,  
 Dan John right non suspectioun ;  
 th he rideth home to his abbey,  
 him liste, no more of him I sey.  
 marchant, whan that ended was the faire,  
 : Denis he gan for to repaire,  
 h his wif he maketh feste and chere,  
 eth hire that chaffare is so dere,  
 des muste he make a chevisaunce,  
 was bonde in a recogniaunce,  
 n twenty thousand sheldes anon.  
 ch this marchant is to Paris gon  
 e of certain frendes that he hadde  
 n frankes, and som with him he ladde.  
 an that he was come in to the toun,  
 : chiertee and gret affectioun  
 in John he goth him first to pleye ;  
 to axe or borwe of him moneye,  
 to wete and seen of his welfare,  
 to tellen him of his chaffare,  
 les don, whan they ben mette in fore.  
 John him maketh feste and mery chere ;  
 him tolde agen ful specially,  
 had wel ybought and graciously  
 d be God) all hote his marchandise :  
 at he must in alle manere wise  
 a chevisaunce, as for his beste :  
 in he shulde ben in joye and reste.  
 in answered, Certes I am fain,  
 in hele be comen home again :  
 hat I were riche, as have I blisse,  
 ty thousand sheldes shuld ye not misse,  
 so kindly this other day  
 re gold, and as I can and may

I thanke you, by God and by Seint Jame.  
 But natheles I toke unto our Dame,  
 Your wif at home, the same gold again  
 Upon your benche, she wote it wel certain,  
 By certain tokenes that I can hire tell.  
 Now by your leve, I may no lenger dwell ;  
 Our abbot wol out of this toun anon,  
 And in his compaignie I muste gon.  
 Grete wel our dame, min owen nece swete,  
 And farewel, dere cosin, til we mete.

This marchant, which that was ful ware and wise,  
 Creanced hath, and paide eke in Paris  
 To certain Lumbardes redy in hir hond  
 The summe of gold, and gate of hem his bond,  
 And home he goth, mery as a popingay.  
 For wel he knew he stood in swiche array,  
 That nedes muste he winne in that viage  
 A thousand frankes, above all his costage.

His wif ful redy mette him at the gate,  
 As she was wont of old usage algate :  
 And all that night in mirthe they ben sette,  
 For he was riche, and clerely out of dette.  
 Whan it was day, this marchant gan embrace  
 His wif all newe, and kiste hire in hire face,  
 And up he goth, and maketh it ful tough.  
 No more, quod she, by God ye have ynough :  
 And wantonly agen with him she plaide,  
 Til at the last this marchant to hire saide.

By God, quod he, I am a litel wrothe  
 With you, my wif, although it be me lothe :  
 And wote ye why ? by God, as that I gesse,  
 That ye han made a manere strangenesse  
 Betwixen me and my cosin Dan John.  
 Ye shuld have warned me, or I had gon,  
 That he you had an hundred frankes paide  
 By redy token : and held him evil apaide,  
 For that I to him spake of chevisaunce :  
 (Me semed so as by his contenance)  
 But natheles by God our heaven king,  
 I thoughte not to axe of him no thing.  
 I pray thee, wif, ne do thou no more so.  
 Tell me alway, er that I fro thee go,  
 If any dettour hath in min absence  
 Ypaide thee, lest thurgh thy negligence  
 I might him axe a thing that he hath paide.

This wif was not aferde ne affraide,  
 But boldly she saide, and that anon ;  
 Mary I defie that false monk Dan John,  
 I kepe not of his tokenes never a del :  
 He toke me certain gold, I wote it wel.  
 What ? evil thedome on his monkes snoute !  
 For, God it wote, I wend withouten doute,  
 That he had yeve it me, because of you,  
 To don therwith min honour and my prow,  
 For cosinage, and eke for *belle chere*,  
 That he hath had ful often times here.  
 But sith I see I stonde in swiche disjoint,  
 I wol answers you shortly to the point.

Ye have mo slakke dettours than am I :  
 For I wol pay you wel and redily  
 Fro day to day, and if so be I faille,  
 I am your wif, score it upon my taile,  
 And I shal pay as sone as ever I may.  
 For by my trowth, I have on min array,  
 And not in waste, bestowed it every del.  
 And for I have bestowed it so wel  
 For your honour, for Goddes sake I say,  
 As beth not wrothe, but let us laugh and play.  
 Ye shal my joly body han to wedde :  
 By God I n'll not pay you but a-bedde :



Foryeve it me, min owen spouse dere ;  
Turne hitherward and maketh better chere.

This marchant saw ther was no remedy :  
And for to chide, it n'ere but a foly,  
Sith that the thing may not amended be.

Now, wif, he said, and I foryeve it thee ;  
But by thy lif ne be no more so large ;  
Kepe bet my good, this yeve I thee in charge.  
Thus endeth now my tale, and God us sende  
Taling ynough, unto our lives ende.

## THE PRIORESSES TALE.

### THE PRIORESSES PROLOGUE.

WEL said by *corpus Domini*, quod our Hoste,  
Now longe mote thou sailen by the coste,  
Thou gentil Maister, gentil Marinere.  
God give the monke a thousand last quad yere.  
A ha, felawes, beth ware of swiche a jape.  
The monke put in the mannes hode an ape,  
And in his wifes eke, by Seint Austin.  
Draweth no monkes more into your in.

But now passe over, and let us seke aboute,  
Who shal now tellen first of all this route  
Another tale : and with that word he said,  
As curteisly as it had ben a maid,

My lady Prioress, by your leve,  
So that I wist I shuld you not agreve,  
I wolde demen, that ye tellen shold  
A tale next, if so were that ye wold.  
Now wol ye vouchesauf, my lady dere !

Gladly, quod she, and saide as ye shul here.

### THE PRIORESSES TALE.

O LORD our lord, thy name how merveillous  
Is in this large world ysprad ! (quod she)  
For not al only thy laude precious  
Parfourmed is by men of dignitee,  
But by the mouth of children thy bountee  
Parfourmed is, for on the brest souking  
Sontime shewen they thin heryng.

Wherefore in laude, as I can best and may,  
Of thee and of the white lily flour,  
Which that thee bare, and is a maide alway,  
To tell a storie I wol do my labour ;  
Not that I may encreasen hire honour,  
For she hireselven is honour and rote  
Of bountee, next hire sone, and soules bote.

O mother maide, o maide and mother fre,  
O bushe unbrent, brenning in Moyses sight,  
That ravishedest doun fro the deitee,  
Thurgh thin humblesse, the gost that in thee alight :  
Of whos vertue, whan he thin herte light,  
Conceived was the fathers sapience :  
Helps me to tell it in thy reverence.

Lady, thy bountee, thy magnificence,  
Thy vertue and thy gret humilitee,  
Ther may no tonge expresse in no science :  
For sometime, lady, or men pray to thee,  
Thou gost befor of thy benignitee,  
And getest us the light, of thy prayere,  
To giden us unto thy sone so dere.

My conning is so weke, o blisful queene,  
For to declare thy grette worthinesse,  
That I ne may the weighte not sustene :  
But as a child of twelf moneth old or lesse,  
That can unnethes any word expresse,  
Right so fare I, and therefore I you pray,  
Gideth my song, that I shal of you say.

THER was in Asie, in a gret citee,  
Amonges Cristen folk a Jewerie,  
Sustened by a lord of that contree,  
For foule usure, and lucre of vilanie,  
Hateful to Crist, and to his compaignie :  
And thurgh the strete men mighten ride and wende—  
For it was free, and open at eyther ende.

A litel scole of Cristen folk ther stood  
Doun at the ferther ende, in which ther were  
Children an hepe comen of Cristen blood,  
That lerned in that scole yere by yere,  
Swiche manere doctrine as men used there :  
This is to say, to singen and to rede,  
As smale children don in hir childhede.

Among these children was a widewe sone,  
A litel clergion, sevene yere of age,  
That day by day to scole was his wone,  
And eke also, wheras he sey the image  
Of Cristes moder, had he in usage,  
As him was taught, to knele adoun, and say  
*Ave Marie*, as he goth by the way.

Thus hath this widewe hire litel sone ytaught  
Our blisful Lady, Cristes moder dere,  
To worship ay, and he forgate it naught :  
For sely childe wol alway sone lere.  
But ay, whan I remembre on this matere,  
Seint Nicholas stant ever in my presence,  
For he so young to Crist did reverence.

This litel childe his litel book lerning,  
As he sate in the scole at his primere,  
He *Alma redemptoris* herde sing,  
As children lered hir antiphonere :  
And as he dorst, he drow him nere and nere,  
And herkened ay the wordes and the note,  
Til he the firste vers coude al by rote.

Nought wist he what this Latin was to say,  
For he so yonge and tendre was of age ;  
But on a day his felaw gan he pray  
To expounden him this song in his langage,  
Or telle him why this song was in usage :  
This prayde he him to construe and declare.  
Ful often time upon his knees bare.

His felaw, which that elder was than he,  
Answerd him thus : This song, I have herd say,  
Was maked of our blisful Lady fre,  
Hire to salve, and eke hire for to prey  
To ben our help, and socour whan we dey.  
I can no more expound in this matere :  
I lerne song, I can but smal grammere.

And is this song maked in reverence  
Of Cristes moder ! said this innocent ;  
Now certes I wol don my diligence  
To conne it all, or Cristemasse be went,  
Though that I for my primer shal be shent,  
And shal be beten thries in an houre,  
I wol it conne, our Ladie for to honoure.

His felaw taught him homeward prively  
Fro day to day, til he coude it by rote,  
And than he song it wel and boldly  
Fro word to word according with the note :  
Twies a day it passed thurgh his throte,  
To scoleward and homeward whan he wente :  
On Cristes moder set was his entente.

As I have said, thurghout the Jewerie  
This litel child as he came to and fro,  
Ful merily than wold he sing and crie,  
O *Alma redemptoris*, ever mo :  
The swetenesse hath his herte persed so  
Of Cristes moder, that to hire to pray  
He cannot stint of singing by the way.

Our firste fo, the serpent Sathanas,  
That hath in Jewes herte his waspes nest,  
Up wale and said, O Ebraike peple, alas !  
Is this to you a thing that is honest,  
That swiche a boy shal walken as him leste  
In your despit, and sing of swiche sentence,  
Which is again our lawes reverence ?

From thennesforth the Jewes han conspired  
This innocent out of this world to chace :  
An homicide therto han they hired,  
That in an aleye had a privee place,  
And as the child gan forthby for to pace,  
This cursed Jew him hent, and held him fast,  
And cut his throte, and in a pit him cast.

I say that in a wardrope they him threwe,  
Wher as thise Jewes purgen hir entraille.  
O cursed folk, of Herodes alle newe,  
What may your evil entente you availle !  
Mordre wol out, certain it wol not faille,  
And namely ther the honour of God shal sprede :  
The blood out crieth on your cursed dede.

O martyr souted in virginitee,  
Now maist thou singe, and solwen ever in on  
The white lamb celestial, quod she,  
Of which the gret Evangelist Seint John  
In *Fathmos* wrote, which sayth that they that gon  
Beforem this lamb, and singe a song al newe,  
That never fleshly woman they ne knewe.

This poure widewe awaiteth al that night  
After hire litel childe, and he came nought :  
For which as sone as it was dayes light,  
With face pale of drede and besy thought,  
She hath at scole and elleswher him sought,  
Til finally she gan so fer اسپه,  
That he last seen was in the Jewerie.

With modres pitee in hire brest enclosed  
She goth, as she were half out of hire mind,  
To every place, wher she hath supposed  
By likelihood hire litel child to finde :  
And ever on Cristes moder meke and kinde  
She cried, and at the laste thus she wrought,  
Among the cursed Jewes she him sought.

She freyneth, and she praieth pitously  
To every Jew that dwelled in thilke place,  
To telle hire, if hire child went ought forthby :  
They sayden, Nay ; but Jesu of his grace  
Yave in hire thought, within a litel space,  
That in that place after hire sone she cride,  
Ther he was casten in a pit beside.

O grete God, that parformest thy laude  
By mouth of innocentes, lo here thy might !  
This gemme of chastitee, this emeraude,  
And eke of martirdome the rubie bright,  
Ther he with throte ycorven lay upright,  
He *Alma redemptoris* gan to singe  
So loude, that all the place gan to ringe.

The Cristen folk, that thurgh the strete wente,  
In comen, for to wondre upon this thing :  
And hastify they for the provost sente.  
He came anon withouten taryng,  
And herieth Crist, that is of heven king,  
And eke his moder, honour of mankind,  
And after that the Jewes let he binde.

This child with pitous lamentation  
Was taken up, singing his song alway :  
And with honour and gret procession,  
They carien him unto the next abbey.  
His moder swounning by the bere lay ;  
Unnethes might the peple that was there  
This newe Rachel bringen fro his bere.

With turment, and with shameful deth eche on  
This provost doth thise Jewes for to sterve,  
That of this morder wiste, and that anon ;  
He n'olde no swiche cursednesse observe :  
Evil shal he have, that evil wol deserve.  
Therefore with wilde hors he did hem drawe,  
And after that he heng hem by the lawe.

Upon his bere ay lith this innocent  
Beforem the auter while the masse last :  
And after that, the abbot with his covent  
Han spedde hem for to berie him ful fast :  
And whan they holy water on him cast,  
Yet spake this child, whan spreint was the holy water  
And sang, o *Alma redemptoris mater*.

This abbot, which that was an holy man,  
As monkes ben, or elles ought to be,  
This yonge child to conjure he began,  
And said ; O dere child, I halse thee  
In vertue of the holy Trinitee,  
Tell me what is thy cause for to sing,  
Sith that thy throte is cut to my seming.

My throte is cut unto my nekke-bou,  
Saide this child, and as by way of kinde  
I shuld have deyed, ye longe time agon :  
But Jesu Crist, as ye in bookes finde,  
Wol that his glory last and be in minde,  
And for the worship of his moder dere,  
Yet may I sing o *Alma* loude and clere.

This welles of mercie, Cristes moder swete,  
I loved alway, as after my conning :  
And whan that I my lif shulde forlete,  
To me she came, and bad me for to sing  
This antem veraily in my dying,  
As ye han herde, and, whan that I had songe,  
Me thought she laid a grain upon my tonge.

Wherfore I sing, and sing I mote certain  
In honour of that blisful maiden free,  
I'll fro my tonge of taken is the grain.  
And after that thus saide she to me ;  
My litel child, than wol I fetchen thee,  
Whan that the grain is fro thy tong ytake :  
Be not agaste, I wol thee not forsake.

This holy monk, this abbot him mene I,  
His tonge out caught, and toke away the grain ;  
And he yave up the gost ful softly.  
And whan this abbot had this wonder sein,

His salte teres trilled adoun as reyne :  
And groff he fell al platte upon the ground,  
And still he lay, as he had ben ybound.

The covent lay eke upon the pavement  
Weping and heryng Cristes moder dere.  
And after that they risen, and forth ben went,  
And toke away this martir fro his bere,  
And in a tombe of marble stones clere  
Enclosen they his litel body swete :  
Ther he is now, God lene us for to mete.

O yonge Hew of Lincoln, slain also  
With cursed Jewes, as it is notable,  
For it n'is but a litel while ago,  
Pray eke for us, we sinful folk unstable,  
That of his mercy God so merciable  
On us his grete mercie multiplie,  
For reverence of his moder Marie.

## THE RIME OF SIRE THOPAS.

### PROLOGUE TO SIRE THOPAS.

WHAN said was this miracle, every man  
As sober was, that wonder was to see,  
Til that our hoste to jape he began,  
And than at erst he loked upon me,  
And saide thus ; What man art thou ? quod he.  
Thou lokest, as thou woldest finde an hare,  
For ever upon the ground I see thee stare.

Approche nere, and loke up merily.  
Now ware you, sires, and let this man have place.  
He in the waste is shapen as wel as I :  
This were a popet in an arme to embrace  
For any woman, smal and faire of face.  
He semeth elvish by his contenance,  
For unto no wight doth he daliance.

Say now somewhat, sin other folk han saide ;  
Tell us a tale of mirthe and that anon.  
Hoste, quod I, ne be not evil apaide,  
For other tale certes can I non,  
But of a rime I lerned yore agon.  
Ye, that is good, quod he, we shullen here  
Som deintee thing, me thinketh by thy chere.

### THE RIME OF SIRE THOPAS.

LISTENETH, lordinges, in good entent,  
And I wol tell you *verament*  
Of mirthe and of solas,  
Al of a knight was faire and gent  
In bataille and in turnament,  
His name was sire Thopas.

Yborne he was in fer contree,  
In Flandres, al beyonde the sec,  
At Popering in the place,  
His father was a man ful free,  
And lord he was of that contree,  
As it was Goddes grace.

Sire Thopas was a doughty swain,  
White was his face as paindemain  
His lippes red as rose.  
His ruddy is like scarlet in grain,  
And I you tell in good certain  
He had a semely nose.

His here, his berde, was like safroun,  
That to his girdle raught adoun,  
His shoon of cordewane ;  
Of Brugges were his hosen broun ;  
His robe was of ciclatoun,  
That coste many a jane.

He coude hunt at the wilde dere,  
And ride on hauking for the rivere  
With grey goshauc on honde :  
Therto he was a good archere,  
Of wrastling was ther non his pere,  
Ther only ram shuld stonde.

Ful many a maide bright in bour  
They mourned for him *par amour*,  
Whan hem were bet to slepe ;  
But he was chaste and no lechour,  
And swete as is the bramble flour,  
That bereth the red hepe.

And so it fell upon a day,  
Forsoth, as I you tellen may,  
Sire Thopas wold out ride ;  
He worth upon his stede gray,  
And in his hond a launcegray,  
A long sward by his side.

He priketh thurgh a faire forest,  
Therin is many a wilde best,  
Ye bothe buck and hare,  
And as he priked North and Est,  
I telle it you, him had almeste  
Betidde a sory care.

Ther springen herbes grete and smale,  
The licoris and the setewale,  
And many a cloue gilofre,  
And notemuge to put in ale,  
Whether it be moist or stale,  
Or for to lain in cofre.

The briddes singen, it is no nay,  
The sperhawk and the poppingay,  
That joye it was to here,  
The throstel cok made eke his lay,  
The wode dove upon the spray  
He sang ful loude and clere.

Sire Thopas fell in love-longing  
Al whan he herd the throstel sing,  
And priked as he were wood ;  
His faire stede in his priking  
So swatte, that men might him wring,  
His sides were al blood.

Sire Thopas eke so wery was  
For priking on the softe gras,  
So fiers was his corage,  
That doun he laid him in that place  
To maken his stede som solace,  
And yaf him good forage.

A. Seinte Mary, *benedicite*,  
What aileth this love at me  
To binde me so sore !  
Me dremed all this night parde,  
An elf-quene shal my lemman be,  
And slepe under my gore.

An elf-quene wol I love ywis,  
For in this world no woman is  
Worthy to be my make || in toun,—  
All other women I forsake,  
And to an elf-quene I me take  
By dale and eke by doun.

Into his sadel he clombe anon,  
And priked over stile and ston  
An elf-quene for to espie,  
Til he so long had ridden and gone,  
That he fond in a privee wone  
The contree of Faerie.

Wherin he soughte North and South,  
And oft he spied with his mouth  
In many a forest wilde,  
For in that contree n'as ther non,  
That to him dorat ride or gon,  
Neither wif ne childe.

Til that ther came a gret geaunt,  
His name was Sire Oliphaunt,  
A ferilous man of dede,  
He sayde, Child, by Termagaunt,  
But if thou prike out of myn haunt,  
Anon I slee thy stede || with mace--

Here is the Quene of Faerie,  
With harpe, and pipe, and simphonie,  
Dwelling in this place.

The child sayd, Al so mote I the,  
To morwe wol I meten thee,  
Whan I have miu armoure,  
And yet I hope *par ma fay*,  
That thou shalt with this launcegay  
Abien it ful sours ; || thy mawe—  
Shal I perce, if I may,  
Or it be fully prime of the day,  
For here thou shalt be slawe.

Sire Thopas drow abak ful fast ;  
This geaunt at him stones cast  
Out of a fel staffe sling :  
But faire escaped child Thopas,  
And all it was thurgh Goddes grace,  
And thurgh his faire bering.

Yet listeneth, lordings, to my tale,  
Merier than the nightingale,  
For now I wol you rounne,  
How Sire Thopas with sides smale,  
Priking over hill and dale,  
Is comen agein to tounne.

His mery men commandeth he,  
To maken him bothe game and gle,  
For nedes must he fighte,  
With a geaunt with hedes three,  
For paramour and jolitee  
Of on that shone ful brighte.

Do come, he sayd, my minestrales  
And gestours for to tellen tales  
Anon in min arming,  
Of romaunces that ben reales,  
Of popes and of cardinales,  
And eke of love-longing.

They fet him first the swete win,  
And mede eke in a maelin,  
And real spicerie,  
Of ginger-bred that was ful fin,  
And licoris and eke comin,  
With suger that is trie.

He hidde next his white lere  
Of cloth of lake fin and clere  
A breche and eke a sherte,  
And next his shert an haketon,  
And over that an habergeon,  
For percing of his herte,

And over that a fin hauberk,  
Was all ywrought of Jewes werk,  
Ful strong it was of plate,  
And over that his cote-armoure,  
As white as is the lily floure,  
In which he wold debate.

His sheld was all of gold so red,  
And therin was a bores hed,  
A charboucle beside ;  
And ther he swore on ale and bred  
How that the geaunt shuld be ded,  
Betide what so betide.

His jambeux were of cuirbouly,  
His swerdes sheth of ivory,  
His helme of latoun bright,  
His sadel was of rewel bone,  
His bridel as the sonne shone,  
Or as the mone light.

His spere was of fin cypres,  
That bodeth werre, and nothing pees,  
The hed ful sharpe yground.  
His stede was all dapple gray,  
It goth an aumble in the way  
Ful softly and round || in londe—  
Lo, Lordes min, here is a fit ;  
If ye wol any more of it,  
To telle it wel I fond.

Now hold your mouth *pour charite*,  
Bothe knight and lady fre,  
And herkeneth to my spell,  
Of bataille and of chevalrie,  
Of ladies love and druerie,  
Anon I wol you tell.

Men spoken of romaunces of pris,  
Of Hornchild, and of Ipotis,  
Of Bevis, and Sire Guy,  
Of Sire Libeux, and Pleindamour,  
But Sire Thopas, he bereth the flour  
Of real chevalrie

His goode stede he al bestrode,  
And forth upon his way he glode,  
As sparcle out of bronde ;  
Upon his crest he bare a tour,  
And therein stiked a lily flour,  
God shulde his corpe fro shonde.

And for he was a knight auntrous,  
He n'olde slepen in non hous,  
But ligen in his hood,  
His brighte helm was his wanger,  
And by him baited his destrur  
Of herbes fin and good.

Himself drank water of the well,  
As did the knight Sire Percivell  
So worthy under wede,  
Til on a day—

## THE TALE OF MELIBEUS.

### PROLOGUE TO MELIBEUS.

No more of this for Goddes dignitee,  
Quod oure hoste, for thou makest me  
So wery of thy veray lewednesse,  
That al so wisly God my soule blesse,  
Min eres aken of thy drafty speche.  
Now swiche a rime the devil I betече ;  
This may wel be rime dogerel, quod he.  
Why so ? quod I, why wolt thou letten me  
More of my tale, than an other man,  
Sin that it is the beste rime I can ?

By God, quod he, for plainly at o word,  
Thy drafty riming is not worth a tord :  
Thou dost nought elles but dispendest time.  
Sire, at o word, thou shalt no lenger rime.  
Let see wher thou canst tellen ought in geste,  
Or tellen in prose somewhat at the leste,  
In which ther be som mirthe or som doctrine.

Gladly, quod I, by Goddes swete pine  
I wol you tell a litel thing in prose,  
That oughte liken you, as I suppose,  
Or elles certes ye be to dangerous.  
It is a moral tale vertuous,  
Al be it told somtime in sondry wise  
Of sondry folk, as I shal you devise.

As thus, ye wote that every Evangelist,  
That telleth us the peine of Jesu Crist,  
Ne saith not alle thing as his felaw doth :  
But natheles hir sentence is al sooth,  
And alle accorden as in hir sentence,  
Al be ther in hir telling difference :  
For som of hem say more, and som say less,  
Whan they his pitous passion expresse ;  
I mene of Mark and Mathew, Luke and John,

But douteles hir sentence is all on.  
Therefore, lordinges all, I you besече,  
If that ye thinke I vary in my speche,  
As thus, though that I telle som del more  
Of proverbes, than ye han herde before  
Comprehended in this litel tretise here,  
To enforcen with the effect of my matere,  
And though I not the same wordes say  
As ye han herde, yet to you allo I pray  
Blameth me not, for, as in my sentence,  
Shul ye nowher finden no difference  
Fro the sentence of thilke tretise lite,  
After the which this mery tale I write.  
And therefore herkeneth what I shal say,  
And let me tellen all my tale I pray.

### THE TALE OF MELIBEUS.

A YONGE man called Melibeus, mighty and riche,  
begate upon his wif, that called was Prudence, a  
doughter which that called was Sophie.

Upon a day befell, that he for his disport is went  
into the felde him to playe. His wif and eke his  
doughter hath he laft within his hous, of which  
the dores weren fast yshette. Foure of his olde  
foos han it espied, and setten ladders to the walles  
of his hous, and by the windowes ben entred, and  
beten his wif, and wounded his doughter with five  
mortal woundes, in five sondry places ; this is to  
say, in hire feet, in hire hondes, in hire eres, in  
hire nose, and in hire mouth ; and leften hire for  
dede, and wenten away.

Whan Melibeus returned was into his hous, and

seyal this meschief, he, like a mad man, rending his clothes, gan to wepe and crie.

Prudence his wif, as fer forth as she dorste, besought him of his weping for to stint : but not forthy he gan to crie and wepen ever lenger the more.

This noble wif Prudence remembred hire upon the sentence of Ovide, in his book that cleped is the Remedie of love, wheras he saith ; he is a fool that distourbeth the moder to wepe, in the deth of hire childe, til she have wept hire fille, as for a certain time : and than shal a man don his diligence with amiable wordes hire to reconforte and preye hire of hire weping for to stinte. For which reson this noble wif Prudence suffred hire housbond for to wepe and crie, as for a certain space ; and whan she saw hire time, she sayde to him in this wise. Alas ! my lord, quod she, why make ye yourself for to be like a fool ! Forsothe it apperteineth not to a wise man, to maken swiche a sorwe. Yourre daughter, with the grace of God, shal warish and escape. And al were it so that she right now were dede, ye ne ought not as for hire deth youreself to destroye. Senek saith ; the wise man shal not take to gret discomfort for the deth of his children, but certes he shulde suffren it in patience, as wel as he abideth the deth of his owen propre persone.

This Melibeus answered anon and saide : what man (quod he) shulde of his weping stinte, that hath so gret a cause for to wepe ! Jesu Crist, our Lord, himself wepte for the deth of Lazarus his frend. Prudence answered ; certes wel I wote, attempre weping is nothing defended, to him that sorwful is, among folk in sorwe, but it is rather granted him to wepe. The Apostle Poule unto the Romaines writeth ; man shal rejoyce with hem that maken joye, and wepen with swiche folk as wepen. But though attempre weping be tyrant, outrageous weping certes is defended. Mesure of weping shulde be considered, after the lore that techeth us Senek. Whan that thy frend is dede (quod he) let not thin eyen to moiste ben of teres, ne to muche drie : although the teres comen to thin eyen, let hem not falle. And whan thou hast forgon thy frend, do diligence to get agein another frend : and this is more wisdom than for to wepe for thy frend, which that thou hast lorne, for therin is no bote. And therefore if ye governe you by sapience, put away sorwe out of youre herte. Remembreth you that Jesus Sirak sayth ; a man that is joyous and glad in herte, it him conserveth flourishing in his age : but anthy a sorwful herte maketh his bones drie. He saith eke thus, that sorwe in herte sleeth ful many a man. Salomon sayth, that right as mouthes in the shepes fleese anoieth to the clothes, and the smale wormes to the tree, right so anoieth sorwe to the herte of man. Wherefore us ought as wel in the deth of oure children, as in the losse of oure goodes temporel, have patience.

Remembre you upon the patient Job, whan he hadde lost his children and his temporel substance, and in his body endured and received ful many a grevous tribulation, yet sayde he thus : Oure Lord hath yewe it to me, oure Lord hath beraft it me ; right as oure Lord hath wold, right so is it don ; yblessed be the name of oure Lord. To this foresaide thinges answered Melibeus unto his wif Prudence : all thy wordes

(quod he) ben trewe, and therto profitable, but twerely min herte is troubled with this sorwe so greuously, that I n'ot what to don. Let calle (quod Prudence) thyn trewe frendes alle, and thy linage, which that ben wise, and telleth to hem your cas, and herkeneth what they saye in conseilling, and governe you after hir sentence. Salomon saith ; werke all thinges by conseil, and thou shalt never repent.

Than, by conseil of his wif Prudence, this Melibeus let callen a gret congregation of folk, as surgiens, phisiciens, olde folk and yonge, and som of his olde enemies reconciled (as by hir semblant) to his love and to his grace : and therewithal ther comen some of his neighebores, that diden him reverence more for drede than for love, as it happeth oft. Ther comen also ful many subtil flaterers, and wise Advocats lerned in the lawe.

And whan thise folk togeder assembled weren, this Melibeus in sorwful wise shewed hem his cas, and by the manere of his speche, it semed that in herte he bare a cruel ire, redy to don vengeance upon his foos, and sodeinly desired that the werre shulde beginne, but natheles yet axed he his conseil upon this matere. A surgien, by licence and assent of swiche as weren wise, up rose, and unto Melibeus sayde, as ye moun here.

Sire, (quod he) as to us surgiens apperteineth, that we do to every wight the beste that we can, wher as we ben withholden, and to our patient that we do no damage : wherfore it happeth many time and ofte, that whan twey men han everich wounded other, o same surgien heleth hem both, wherfore unto our art it is not pertinent to norice werre, ne parties to supporte. But certes, as to the warishing of youre daughter, al be it so that perilously she be wounded, we shuln do so ententif besinesse fro day to night, that with the grace of God, she shal be hole and sound, as sone as is possible. Almost right in the same wise the phisiciens answerden, save that they saiden a fewe wordes more : that right as maladies ben cured by hir contraries, right so shal man warishe werre. His neighebores ful of envie, his feined frendes that semed reconciled, and his flaterers, maden semblant of weping, and empeired and aggregated muchel of this matere, in preysing gretly Melibeus of might, of power, of richesse, and of frendes, despising the power of his adversaries : and saiden outrely, that he anon shulde wrenken him on his foos, and begynnen werre.

Up rose than an Advocat that was wise, by leve and by conseil of other that were wise, and sayde : Lordinges, the nede for the which we ben assembled in this place, is a ful hevie thing, and an heigh matere, because of the wrong and of the wikkednesse that hath be don, and eke by reson of the grete damages, that in time coming ben possible to fallen for the same cause, and eke by reson of the gret richesse and power of the parties bothe, for the which reasons, it were a ful gret peril to erren in this matere. Wherefore, Melibeus, this is oure sentence ; we counseile you, aboven alle thing, that right anon thou do thy diligence in keeping of thy propre persone, in swiche a wise that thou ne want non espie ne watche, thy body for to save. And after that, we counseile that in thin hous thou sette sufficient garnison, so that they moun as wel thy body as thy hous defende. But certes fur to meeven werre, ne sodeinly for to

do vengeance, we moun not deme in so litel time that it were profitable. Wherefore we axen leiser and space to have deliberation in this cas to deme; for the comune proverbe saith thus; He that sone demeth, sone shal repente. And eke men sain, that thilke juge is wise, that sone understandeth a matere, and jugeth by leiser. For al be it so, that al taryng be anoiful, algates it is not to repreve in yeving of jugement, ne in vengeance taking, whan it is suffisant and resonable. And that shewed our Lord Jesu Crist by ensample, for whan that the woman that was taken in advoutrie, was brought in his presence to knowen what shuld be don with hire persone, al be it that he wist wel himself what that he wolde answer, yet ne wolde he not answer sodeinly, but he wolde have deliberation, and in the ground he wrote twies; and by these causes we axen deliberation: and we shuln than by the grace of God conseil the thing that shal be profitable.

Up sterte than the yonge folk at ones, and the most partie of that compaignie han scorned this olde wise man, and begunnen to make noise and saiden; Right so as while that iren is hot men shulde smite, right so men shuln do wroken hir wronges, while that they ben freshe and newe: and with loud voys they criden werre, werre. Up rose tho on of these olde wise, and with his hand made countenance that men shuld holde hem stille, and yeve him audience. Lordinges, (quod he) ther is ful many a man that crieth werre, werre, that wote ful litel what werre amounteth. Werre at his beginning hath so gret an entring and so large, that every wight may enter whan him liketh, and lightly find werre: but certes what end that shal befall, it is not light to know. For sothly whan that werre is ones begonne, ther is ful many a child unborne of his moder, that shal sterve yong, by cause of thilke werre, other elles live in sorwe, and dien in wretchednesse: and therefore or that any werre be begonne, men must have gret conseil and gret deliberation. And whan this olde man wende to enforchen his tale by resons, wel nic alle at ones begonne they to rise, for to breken his tale, and bidden him ful oft his wordes for to abregge. For sothly he that precheth to hem that listen not heren his wordes, his sermon hem anoieith. For Jesu Sirak sayth, that musike in weping is a noious thing. This is to sayn, as muche availleth to speke beforn folk to which his speche anoieith, as to singe beforne him that wepeth. And whan this wise man saw that him wanted audience, al shamefast he sette him down agein. For Salomon saith: ther as thou ne mayst have non audience, enforche thee not to speke. I see wel, (quod this wise man) that the comune proverbe is soth, that good conseil wanteth, whan it is most nede.

Yet had this Melibeus in his conseil many folk, that prively in his ere counselled him certain thing, and counselled him the contrary in general audience. Whan Melibeus had herd that the grettest partie of his conseil were accorded that he shulde make werre, anon he consented to hire conseil, and fully affirmed hir sentence. Than dame Prudence, whan that she saw how that hire hosbonde shope him for to awake him on his foon, and to beginne werre, she in ful humble wise, whan she saw hire time, sayde him these wordes: my lord, (quod she) I you beseeche as hertly as I dare and can, ne haste you not to faste,

and for alle guerdons as yeve me audience. For Piers Alphonse sayth; who so that doth to thee outhir good or harme, haste thee not to quite it, for in this wise thy frend wol abide, and thin enemy shal the lenger live in drede. The proverbe sayth; he hasteth wel that wisely can abide: and in wikked hast is no profite.

This Melibee answered unto his wif Prudence: I purpose not (quod he) to werken by thy conseil, for many causes and resons: for certes every wight wold hold me than a fool; this is to sayn, if I for thy conseil wolde change thinges, that ben ordeined and affirmed by so many wise men. Secondly, I say, that all women ben wicke, and non good of hem all. For of a thousand men, saith Salomon, I found o good man: but certes of alle women good woman found I never. And also certes, if I governed me by thy conseil, it shulde seme that I had yeve thee over me the maistrie: and God forbede that it so were. For Jesu Sirak sayth, that if the wif have the maistrie, she is contrarious to hire husbond. And Salomon sayth: never in thy lif to thy wif, ne to thy childe, ne to thy frend, ne yeve no power over thy self: for better it were that thy children axe of thee thinges that hem nedeth, than thou see thy self in the handes of thy children. And also if I wol werche by thy conseil, certes it must be somtime secree, til it were time that it be knowen: and this ne may not be, if I shulde be counselled by thee. [For it is written; the janglerie of women ne can no thing hide, save that which they wote not. After the Philosophie sayth; in wikked conseil women venquishen men: and for these resons I ne owe not to be counselled by thee.]

Whan dame Prudence, ful debonairly and with gret pacience, had herd all that hire husbonde liked for to say, than axed she of him licence for to speke, and sayde in this wise. My lord, (quod she) as to your first reson, it may lightly ben answered: for I say that it is no folie to change conseil whan the thing is chaunged, or elles whan the thing semeth otherwise than it semed afore. And moreover I say, though that ye have sworne and belight to performe your emprise, and nevertheles ye weive to performe thilke same emprise by just cause, men shuld not say therefore ye were a lyer, ne forsworn: for the book sayth, that the wise man maketh no lesing, whan he turneth his corage for the better. And al be it that your emprise be established and ordeined by gret multitude of folk, yet thar you not accomplish thilke ordinance as you liketh: for the trouthe of thinges, and the profit, ben rather founden in fewe folk that be wise and ful of reson, than by gret multitude of folk, ther every man cryeth and clattereth whan him liketh: sothly swiche multitude is not honest. As to the second reson, wheras ye say, that alle women ben wicke: save your grace, certes ye despise alle women in this wise, and he that all despiseth, as saith the book, all displeseth. And Senek saith, that who so wol have sapience, shal no man dispreise, but he shal gladly teche the science that he can, without presumption or pride: and swiche thinges as he nought can, he shal not ben ashamed to lere hem, and to enquera of less folk than himself. And, Sire, that ther hath ben ful many a good woman, may lightly be preved for certes, Sire, our Lord Jesu Crist n'olde never han descended to be borne of a woman, if all women

had be wicked. And after that, for the gret bountee that is in women, our Lord Jesu Crist whan he was risen from deth to lif, appered rather to a woman than to his Apostles. And though that Salomon sayde, he found never no good woman, it folweth not therefore, that all women be wicked : for though that he ne found no good woman, certes many another man hath founde many a woman ful good and trewe. Or elles peraventure the entent of Salomon was this, that in soveraine bountee he found no woman ; this is to say, that ther is no wight that hath soveraine bountee, save God alone, as he himself recordeth in his Evangelies. For ther is no creature so good, that him ne wanteth somewhat of the perfection of God that is his maker. Yourre thridde reson is this ; ye say that if that ye governe you by my conseil, it shulde seme that ye had yewe me the maistrie and the lordship of your person. Sire, save your grace, it is not so ; for if so were that no man shulde be conseilled but only of hem that han lordship and maistrie of his person, men n'olde not be conseilled so often : for sothly thilke man that asketh conseil of a purpos, yet hath he free chois whether he wol werke after that conseil or non. And as to your fourth reson, ther as ye sain that the janglerie of women can hide thinges that they wot not ; as who so sayth, that a woman can not hide that she wote ; Sire, thise wordes ben understoude of women that ben jangleresses and wicked ; of which women men sain that thre thinges driven a man out of his hous, that is to say, smoke, dropping of raine, and wicked wives. And of swiche women Salomon sayth, That a man were better dwell in desert, than with a woman that is riotous. And, sire, by your leve, that am not I ; for ye have ful often assaied my gret silence and my gret patience, and eke how wel that I can hide and hele thinges, that men oughten secretly to hidden. And sothly as to your fiftre reson, wheras ye say, that in wicked conseil women venquish men ; God wote that thilke reson stant here in no stede : for understandeth now, ye axen conseil for to do wickednesse ; and if ye wol werken wickednesse, and your wif restraineth thilke wicked purpos, and overcometh you by reson and by good conseil, certes your wif ought rather to be preised than to be blamed. Thus shulde ye understonde the philosophre that sayth, In wicked conseil women venquish hir husbondes. And ther as ye blamen all women and hir resons, I shal shewe you by many ensamples, that many women have been ful good, and yet ben, and hir conseil holesome and profitable. Eke som men han sayd, that the conseil of women is either to dere, or elles to litel of pris. But al be it so that ful many a woman be bad, and hire conseil vile and nought worth, yet han men founden ful many a good woman, and discrete and wise in conseil. Lo, Jacob, thurgh the good conseil of his mother Rebecke, wan the benison of his father, and the lordship over all his brethren. Judith, by hire good conseil, delivered the citee of Bethulie, in which she dwelt, out of the honde of Holofern, that had it beseged, and wolde it al destroye. Abigail delivered Nabal hire husbond fro David the king, that wolde han slain him, and appesed the ire of the king by hire wit, and by hire good conseil. Hester by hire conseil enhaunced gretly the peple of God, in the regne of Assuerus the king. And the same bountee in good conseil of many a good woman

moun men rede and tell. And further more, whan that oure Lord had created Adam oure forme father, he sayd in this wise ; it is not good to be a man allone : make we to him an helpe semblable to himself. Here moun ye see that if women weren not good, and hir conseil good and profitable, oure Lord God of heven wolde neither han wrought hem, ne called hem helpe of man, but rather confusion of man. And ther sayd a clerk ones in two vers ; what is better than gold ? Jaspre. What is better than jaspre ? Wisdom. And what is better than wisdom ? Woman. And what is better than a good woman ? Nothing. And, Sire, by many other resons moun ye seen, that many women ben good, and hir conseil good and profitable. And therefore, Sire, if ye wol troste to my conseil, I shal restore you your daughter hole and sound : and I wol don to you so muche, that ye shuln have honour in this cas.

Whan Melibee had herd the wordes of his wif Prudence, he sayd thus : I se wel that the word of Salomon is soth ; for he saith, that wordes, that ben spoken discretly by ordinaunce, ben honie-combes, for they yeven swetenesse to the soule, and holsomnesse to the body. And, wif, because of thy swete wordes, and eke for I have preved and assaied thy gret sapience and thy gret trouthe, I wol governe me by thy conseil in alle thing.

Now, Sire, (quod dame Prudence) and sin that ye vouchesafe to be governed by my conseil, I wol enforme you how that ye shuln governe yourself, in chesing of youre conseilours. Ye shuln first in alle your werkes mekely besechen to the heigh God, that he wol be your conseilour : and shapeth you to swiche entente that he yewe you conseil and comforte, as taught Tobie his sone ; at alle times thou shalt blesse God, and preie him to dresse thy wayes ; and loke that alle thy conseilors ben in him for evermore. Seint James eke sayth ; if any of you have nede of sapience, axe it of God. And afterwarde, than shullen ye take conseil in yourself, and examine wel your owen thoughtes, of swiche thinges as you thinketh that ben best for your profit. And than shuln ye drive fro your herte three thinges that ben contrarious to good conseil ; that is to sayn, ire, coveitise, and hastinesse.

First, he that axeth conseil of himself, certes he must be withouten ire, for many causes. The first is this : he that hath gret ire and wrath in himself, he weneth alway that he may do thing that he may not do. And secondly, he that is irous and wroth, he may not wel deme : and he that may not wel deme, may not wel conseil. The thridde is this ; he that is irous and wroth, as sayth Senek, ne may not speke but blameful thinges, and with his vicious wordes he stirreth other folk to anger and to ire. And eke, Sire, ye must drive coveitise out of your herte. For the Apostle sayth, that coveitise is the rote of alle harmes. And trosteth wel, that a coveitous man ne can not deme ne thinke, but only to fulfill the ende of his coveitise ; and certes that ne may never ben accomplished ; for ever the more haboundance that he hath of richesse, the more he desireth. And, Sire, ye must also drive out of youre herte hastinesse : for certes ye ne moun not deme for the beste a soden thought that falleth in youre herte, but ye must avise you on it ful ofte : for as ye have herde herebefore, the commune proverbe is this ; he that sone demeth, sone repenteth.

Sire, ye ne be not alway in like disposition, for



certes som thing that sometime semeth to you that it is good for to do, another time it semeth to you the contrarie.

And whan ye han taken conseil in yourself, and han demed by good deliberation swiche thing as you semeth beste, than rede I you that ye kepe it secree. Bewreye not your conseil to no persone, but if so be that ye wenen sikerly, that thurgh youre bewreying youre condition shal ben to you more profitable. For Jesus Sirak saith: neither to thy foo ne to thy frend discover not thy secree, ne thy folie: for they woln yeve you audience and loking, and supportation in youre presence, and scorn you in youre absence. Another clerk saith, that scarcely shalt thou finden any persone that may kepe thy conseil secretly. The book saith; while that thou kepest thy conseil in thin herte, thou kepest it in thy prison: and whan thou bewreyst thy conseil to any wight, he holdeth thee in his snare. And therefore you is better to hide your conseil in your herte, than to preye him to whom ye han bewreyed youre conseil, that he wol kepe it close and stille. For Seneca saith: if so be that thou ne mayst not thin owen conseil hide, how darest thou preyen any other wight thy conseil secretly to kepe! but natheles, if thou wene sikerly that thy bewreying of thy conseil to a persone wol make thy condition to stonden in the better plight, than shalt thou telle him thy conseil in this wise. First, thou shalt make no semblant whether thee were lever pees or werre, or this or that; ne shewe him not thy will ne thin entente: for truste wel that communly these conseilours ben flaterers, namely the conseilours of grette lordes, for they enforcen hem alway rather to speken plesant wordes enclining to the lordes lust, than wordes that ben trewe or profitable: and therefore men sayn, that the riche man hath selde good conseil, but if he have it of himself. And after that thou shalt consider thy frendes and thin enemies. And as touching thy frendes, thou shalt consider which of hem ben most faithful and most wise, and eldest and most apprevd in conseil: and of hem shalt thou axe thy conseil, as the cas requireth.

I say, that first ye shuln clepe to youre conseil youre frendes that ben trewe. For Salomon saith: that right as the herte of a man deliteth in savour that is swote, right so the conseil of trewe frendes yeveth swetenesse to the soule. He saith also, ther may nothing be likened to the trewe frend: for certes gold ne silver ben not so muche worth as the good will of a trewe frend. And eke he saith, that a trewe frend is a strong defence; who so that it findeth, certes he findeth a gret tresor. Than shuln ye eke consider if that your trewe frendes ben discrete and wise: for the book saith, axe alway thy conseil of hem that ben wise. And by this same reson shuln ye clepen to youre conseil youre frendes that ben of age, swiche as han seyn and ben expert in many thinges, and ben apprevd in conseilinges. For the book saith, in olde men is al the sapience, and in longe time the prudence. And Tullius saith, that grette thinges ne ben not ay accomplished by strengthe, ne by delivernesse of body, but by good conseil, by auctoritee of persones, and by science: the which three thinges ne ben not feble by age, but certes they enforcen and encreasen day by day. And than shuln ye kepe this for a general reule.

First ye shuln clepe to youre conseil a fewe of youre frendes that ben especial. For Salomon saith; many frendes have thou, but among a thousand chese thee on to be thy conseilour. For al be it so, that thou first ne telle thy conseil but to a fewe, thou mayest afterwarde tell it to mo folk, if it be nede. But loke alway that thy conseilours have thilke three conditions that I have sayd before; that is to say, that they be trewe, wise, and of olde experience. And werke not alway in every nede by on conseilour allone: for sometime behoveth it to be counselled by many. For Salomon saith; salvation of thinges is wher as ther ben many conseilours.

Now sith that I have told you of which folk ye shulde be counselled: now wol I teche you which conseil ye ought to eschue. First ye shuln eschue the conseilung of foolis; for Salomon saith, Take no conseil of a fool: for he ne can not conseil but after his owen lust and his affection. The book saith, the propretee of a fool is this: He troweth lightly harme of every man, and lightly troweth all bountee in himself. Thou shalt eke eschue the conseilung of all flaterers, swiche as enforcen hem rather to preisen youre persone by flaterie, than for to tell you the sothfastnesse of thinges.

Wherefore Tullius saith, Among alle the pestilences that ben in frendship, the grettest is flaterie. And therefore it is more nede that thou eschue and drede flaterers, than any other peple. The book saith, Thou shalt rather drede and flee fro the swete wordes of flatering preisers, than fro the egre wordes of thy frend that saith thee sothes. Salomon saith, that the wordes of a flaterer is a snare to cacchen innocentes. He saith also, He that speketh to his frend wordes of swetenesse and of plessaunce, he setteth a net beforne his feet to cacchen him. And therefore saith Tullius, Encline not thin eres to flaterers, ne take no conseil of wordes of flaterie. And Caton saith, Advise thee wel, and eschue wordes of swetenesse and of plessaunce. And eke thou shalt eschue the conseilung of thin olde enemies that ben reconciled. The book saith, that no wight retourneth safely into the grace of his olde enemy. And Ysaie saith, Ne trost not to meite, to which thou hast sometime had werre or enmittee, ne telle hem not thy conseil. And Senek telleth the cause why. It may not be, saith he, ther as gret fire hath long time endured, that ther ne dwelleth som vapour of warnnesse. And therefore saith Salomon, In thin olde foo trost thou never. For sikerly, though thin enemy be reconciled, and maketh thee chere of humilitee, and louteth to thee with his hed, ne trost him never: for certes he maketh thilke feined humilitee more for his profite, than for any love of thy persone; because that he demeth to have victorie over thy persone by swiche feined contenance, the which victorie he might not have by strif of werre. And Peter Alphonse saith; Make no felawship with thin olde enemies, for if thou do hem bountee, they wollen perverten it to wickednesse. And eke thou must eschue the conseilung of hem that ben thy servaunts, and beren thee gret reverence: for paraventure they fein it more for drede than for love. And therefore saith a philosopre in this wise: Ther is no wight partly trewe to him that he to sore dredeth. And Tullius saith, Ther n'is no might so gret of any emperor that longe may

endure, but if he have more love of the peple than drede. Thou shalt also eschue the conseeilling of folk that ben dronkelewe, for they ne can no conseil hide. For Salomon sayth, Ther n'is no privetee ther as regneth dronkenness. Ye shuln also have in suspect the conseeilling of swiche folk as conseeille you o thing prively, and conseeille you the contrarie openly. For Cassiodore sayth, That it is a manere sleighte to hinder his enemy whan he sheweth to don a thing openly, and werketh prively the contrary. Thou shalt also have in suspect the conseeilling of wicked folk, for hir conseil is alway ful of fraude. And David sayth; Blisful is that man that hath not folwed the conseeilling of shrewes. Thou shalt also eschue the conseeilling of yonge folk, for hir conseeilling is not ripe, as Salomon saith.

Now, Sire, sith I have shewed you of which folk ye shullen take youre conseil, and of which folk ye shullen eschue the conseil, now wol I teche you how ye shuln examine your conseil after the doctrine of Tullius. In examining than of your conseilours, ye shuln considre many thinges. Alderfirst thou shalt considre that in thilke thing that thou purposest, and upon what thing that thou wolt have conseil, that veray trouthe be said and conserved; this is to say, telle trewely thy tale: for he that sayth false, may not wel be conseeilled in that cas, of which he lieth. And after this, thou shalt considre the thinges that accorden to that thou purposest for to do by thy conseilours, if reson accord therto, and eke if thy might may atteine therto, and if the more part and the better part of thin conseilours accorden therto or no. Than shalt thou considre what thing shal folwe of that conseeilling; as hate, pees, werre, grace, profite, or damage, and many other thinges: and in alle thinges thou shalt chese the beste, and weive alle other thinges. Than shalt thou considre of what roote is engendred the matere of thy conseil, and what fruit it may conceive and engendre. Thou shalt eke considre alle the causes, from whennes they ben sprongen. And whan thou hast examined thy conseil, as I have said, and which partie is the better and more profitable, and hast apprevd it by many wise folk and olde, than shalt thou considre, if thou mayst performe it and maken of it a good ende. For certes reson wol not that any man shulde beginne a thing, but if he mighte performe it as him oughte: ne no wight shulde take upon him so hevye a charge, that he might not beren it. For the proverbe sayth; he that to muche embraceth distreineth litel. And Caton saith; assay to do swiche thinges as thou hast power to don, lest the charge oppresse thee so sore, that thee behoveth to weive thing that thou hast begonne. And if so be that thou be in doute, whether thou mayst performe a thing or non, chese rather to suffre than to beginne. And Peter Alphonse sayth; If thou hast might to don a thing, of which thou must repente, it is better nay than ya: this is to sayn, that thee is better to holde thy tonge stille than for to speke. Than mayst thou understonde by stronger resons, that if thou hast power to performe a werk, of which thou shalt repente, than is thee better that thou suffre than beginne. Wel sain they that defenden every wight to assaye a thing of which he is in doute, whether he may performe it or non. And after whan ye han examined youre conseil,

as I have said beforne, and knowen wel that ye moun performe your emprise, conferme it than sadly til it be at an ende.

Now is it reson and time that I shewe you whan, and wherfore, that ye moun chaunge your conseil, withouten repreve. Sothly, a man may change his purpos and his conseil, if the cause ceseth, or whan a newe cas betideth. For the lawe saith, that upon thinges that newly betiden, behoveth newe conseil. And Seneca sayth; if thy conseil is comen to the eres of thin enemies, chaunge thy conseil. Thou mayst also chaunge thy conseil, if so be that thou find that by error, or by other cause, harme or damage may betide. Also if thy conseil be dishoneste, other elles come of dishoneste cause, chaunge thy conseil: for the lawes sain, that all behestes that ben dishoneste ben of no value: and eke, if so be that it be impossible, or may not goodly be performed or kept.

And take this for a general reule, that every conseil that is affermed so strongly, that it may not be chaunged for no condition that may betide, I say that thilke conseil is wicked.

This Melibeus, whan he had herd the doctrine of his wif dame Prudence, answered in this wise. Dame, quod he, as yet unto this time ye han wel and covenably taught me, as in general, how I shal governe me in the chesing and in the withholding of my conseilours: but now wold I fain that ye wold condescend in especial, and telle me how liketh you, or what semeth you by oure conseilours that we han chosen in oure present nede.

My lord, quod she, I beseeche you in alle humblesse, that ye wol not wilfully replie agein my resons, ne distempre your herte, though I speke thing that you displese; for God wote that, as in min entente, I speke it for your beste, for youre honour and for youre profite eke, and sothly I hope that youre benigneite wol taken it in patience. And trosteth me wel, quod she, that youre conseil as in this cas ne shulde not (as to speke proprely) be called a conseeilling, but a motion or a meying of folie, in which conseil ye han erred in many a sondry wise.

First and forward, ye han erred in the assembling of youre conseilours; for ye sholde first han cleped a fewe folk to your conseil, and after ye mighte han shewed it to mo folk, if it hadde be nede. But certes ye han sodeinly cleped to your conseil a gret multitude of peple, ful chargeant and ful anyouys for to here. Also ye han erred, for ther as ye shulde han only cleped to youre conseile youre trewe frendes, olde and wise, ye han cleped straunge folk, yonge folk, false flaterers, and enemies reconciled, and folk that don you reverence withouten love. And eke ye han erred, for ye han brought with you to youre conseil ire, covetise, and hastifnesse, the which three thinges ben contrary to every conseil honest and profitable: the which three thinges ye han not anientissed or destroyed, neither in youreself ne in youre conseilours, as you ought. Ye han erred also, for ye han shewed to youre conseilours youre talent and youre affections to make werre anon, and for to do vengeance, and they han espied by youre wordes to what thing ye ben enclined: and therfore han they conseeilled you rather to youre talent, than to youre profite. Ye han erred also, for it semeth that you sufficeth to han ben conseeilled by thise conseilours only, and with litel avis, wheras in so high and so gret a nede, it had ben necessarie me

conseillours, and more deliberation to performe your emprise. Ye han erred also, for ye han not examined your conseil in the foresaid manere, ne in que manere, as the cas requireth. Ye han erred also, for ye han maked no division betwix youre conseilours; this is to sayn, betwix youre trewe frendes and youre feined conseilours: ne ye han not knowe the wille of your trewe frendes, olde and wise, but ye han cast alle hir wordes in an hoche pot, and enclined your herte to the more part and to the greter nombre, and ther be ye condescended; and sith ye wot wel that men shuln alway finde a greter nombre of fooles than of wise men, and therfore the conseilings that ben at congregations and multitudes of folk, ther as men take more regard to the nombre, than to the sapience of persones, ye seen wel, that in swiche conseilings fooles han the maistrie. Melibeus answered and said agein: I graunte wel that I have erred; but ther as thou hast told me herebefore, that he n'is not to blame that chaungeth his conseil in certain cas, and for certain and just causes, I am al redy to chaunge my conseil right as thou wolt devise. The proverbe sayth; for to don sinne is mannish, but certes for to persevere long in sinne is werke of the Divil.

To this sentence answered anon dame Prudence, and saide; examineth (quod she) wel your conseil, and let us see the which of hem han spoken most resonably, and taught you best conseil. And for as muche as the examination is necessarie, let us beginne at the Surgiens and at the Physiens, that first spaken in this mater. I say that Physiens and Surgiens han sayde you in youre conseil discretly, as hem oughte: and in hir speche saiden ful wisely, that to the office of hem apperteineth to don to every wight honour and profite, and no wight to anye, and after hir craft to don gret diligence unto the cure of hem which that they han in hir governaunce. And, Sire, right as they han answered wisely and discretly, right so reie I that they be highly and souverainly guerdoned for hir noble speche, and eke for they shuldon do the more ententif besinesse in the curation of thy dere doughter. For al be it so that they ben youre frendes, therfore shullen ye not suffren, that they serve you for nought, but ye oughte the rather guerdone hem, and shewe hem youre largesse. And as touching the proposition, which the Physiens entreteden in this cas, this is to sain, that in maladies, that a contrarie is warished by another contrarie; I wold fain knowe how ye understonde thilke text, and what is youre sentence. Certes, quod Melibeus, I understond it in this wise; that right as they han don me a contrarie, right so shulde I don hem another; for right as they han venged hem upon me and don me wrong, right so shal I venge me upon hem, and don hem wrong, and than have I cured a contrarie by another.

Lo, lo, quod dame Prudence, how lightly is every man enclined to his owen desire and his owen plessaunce! certes (quod she) the wordes of the Physiens ne shulden not han ben understonden in that wise; for certes wickednesse is not contrarie to wickednesse, ne vengeance to vengeance, ne wrong to wrong, but they ben semblable: and therfore a vengeance is not warished by another vengeance, ne a wrong by another wrong, but everich of hem encreseth

and aggreggeth other. But certes the wordes of the Physiens shulden ben understonde in this wise; for good and wickednesse ben two contraries, and pees and werre, vengeance and suffraunce, discord and accord, and many other thinges: but certes, wickednesse shal be warished by goodnesse, discord by accord, werre by pees, and so forth of other thinges. And hereto accordeth Seint Poule the Apostle in many places: he sayth, ne yelde not harme for harme, ne wicked speche for wicked speche, but do wel to him that doth to thee harme, and blesse him that saith to thee harme. And in many other places he amonesteth pees and accord. But now wol I speke to you of the conseil, which that was yeven to you by the men of lawe, and the wise folk, and old folke, that sayden alle by on accord as ye han herd before, that over alle thinges ye shuld do youre diligence to kepe youre persone, and to warnestore your house: and saiden also, that in this cas you oughte for to werchen ful avisely and with gret deliberation. And, Sire, as to the first point, that toucheth the keping of youre persone, ye shuln understond, that he that hath werre, shal ever more devoutly and mekely preien before alle thinges, that Jesu Crist of his mercie wol han him in his protection, and ben his sovereigne helping at his nede: for certes in this world ther is no wight that may be conseilled ne kept sufficiently, withoute the keping of oure lord Jesu Crist. To this sentence accordeth the Prophete David that sayth: if God ne kepe the citee, in idel waketh he that kepeth it. Now, Sire, than shuln ye committe the keping of youre persone to youre trewe frendes, that ben apprevd and yknowe, and of hem shuln ye axen helpe, youre persone for to kepe. For Caton saith: if thou have nede of helpe, axe it of thy frendes, for ther n'is non so good a Physicien as thy trewe frend. And after this than shuln ye kepe you fro alle straunge folk, and fro lieres, and have alway in suspect hir compaignie. For Piers Alphonse sayth: ne take no compaignie by the way of a straunge man, but if so be that thou have knowen him of longer time: and if so be that he falle into thy compaignie paraventure withouten thin assent, enquire than, as subtilly as thou maist, of his conversation, and of his lif before, and feine thy way, saying thou wolt go thider as thou wolt not go: and if he bere a spere, hold thee on the right side, and if he bere a sword, hold thee on his left side. And after this than shuln ye kepe you wisely from all swiche manere peple as I have sayed before, and hem and hir conseil eschue. And after this than shuln ye kepe you in swiche manere, that for any presumption of youre strengthe, that ye ne despise not, ne account not the might of your adversary so lite, that ye let the keping of youre persone for your presumption; for every wise man dredeth his enemy. And Salomon sayth; welfall is he that of alle hath drede; For certes he that thurgh the hardnesse of his herte, and thurgh the hardnesse of himself, hath to gret presumption, him shal evil betide. Than shuln ye evermo countrewaite emboysesments, and alle espiaile. For Senek sayth, that the wise man that dredeth harmes, eschueh harmes; ne he ne falleth into perils, that perils eschueh. And al be it so, that it seme that thou art in siker place, yet shalt thou alway do thy diligence in keping of thy persone;

this is to sayn, ne be not negligent to kepe thin persone, not only for thy grettest enemy, but also for thy leste enemy. Senek sayth ; a man that is wel avised, he dredeth his leste enemy. Ovide sayth, that the litel wesel wol slee the gret boll and the wilde hart. And the book sayth ; a litel thorne may prikke a king ful sore, and a litel bound wol hold the wilde bore. But natheles, I say not thou shalt be so coward, that thou doute wher as is no drede. The book saith, that som men [han taught hir deceivour, for they han to muche dreded] to be deceived. Yet shalt thou drede to be empoysoned; and [therefore shalt thou] kepe thee from the compaignie of scorners : for the book sayth, with scorners ne make no compaignie, but flee hir wordes as venime.

Now as to the second point, wheras youre wise conseilours conseyled you to warnestore your hous with gret diligence, I wolde fain knowe how that ye understode thilke wordes, and what is youre sentence.

Melibeus answered and saide ; Certes I understond it in this wise, that I shal warnestore min hous with toures, swiche as han castelles and other manere edifices, and armure, and artelries, by which thinges I may my persone and myn hous so kepen and defenden, that min enemies shuln ben in drede min hous for to approche.

To this sentence answered anon Prudence. Warnestoring (quod she) of heighe toures and of grete edifices, is with grete costages and with grete travaille ; and whan that they ben accomplished, yet ben they not worth a stre, but if they ben defended by trewe frendes, that ben olde and wise. And understonde wel, that the gretteste and strongeste garneson that a riche man may have, as wel to kepen his persone as his goodes, is, that he be beloved with his subgets, and with his neighbores. For thus sayth Tullius, that ther is a maner garneson, that no man may venquish ne discomfite, and that is a lord to be beloved of his citeizins, and of his peple.

Now, Sire, as to the thridde point, wheras youre olde and wise conseilours sayden, that you ne oughte not sodeinly ne hastily proceden in this nede, but that you oughte purveyen and appareilen you in this cas, with gret diligence and gret deliberation ; trewely, I trowe, that they sayden right wisely and right soth. For Tullius sayth : in every nede er thou beginne it, appareile thee with gret diligence. Than say I, that in vengeance taking, in werre, in bataille, and in warnestoring, er thou beginne, I rede that thou appareile thee therto, and do it with gret deliberation. For Tullius sayth, that longe appareiling tofore the bataille, maketh short victorie. And Cassiodorus sayth : the garneson is stronger, whan it is longe time avised.

But now let us speken of the conseil that was accorded by youre neighbores, swiche as don you reverence withouten love ; youre olde enemies reconciled ; your flatereres, that conseyled you certain thinges prively, and openly conseyled you the contrarie ; the yonge folk also, that conseyled you to venge you, and to make werre anon. Certes, Sire, as I have sayde beforen, ye han gretly erred to han cleped swiche maner folk to youre conseil, which conseilours ben ynough reproved by the reasons aforezaid. But natheles, let us now descende to the special. Ye shal first proceden after the doctrine of Tullius.

Certes the trouthe of this matere or of this conseil nedeth not diligently to enquire, for it is wel wist, which they ben that han don to you this trespas and vilanie, and how many trespasours, and in what manere they han don to you all this wrong, and all this vilanie. And after this, than shuln ye examine the second condition, which that the same Tullius addeth in this matere. For Tullius putteth a thing, which that he clepeth consenting : this is to sayn, who ben they, and which ben they, and how many, that consenten to thy conseil in thy wilfulness, to don hastif vengeance. And let us conside also who ben they, and how many ben they, and which ben they, that consenteden to youre adversaries. As to the first point, it is wel known which folk they be that consenteden to youre wilfulness. For trewely, all tho that conseileden you to maken sodein werre, ne ben not youre frendes. Let us now conside which ben they that ye holden so gretly youre frendes, as to youre persone : for al be it so that ye be mighty and riche, certes ye ne ben but allone : for certes ye ne han no child but a doughter, ne ye ne han no brethren, ne cosins germaines, ne non other nigh kinrede, wherfore that youre enemies for drede shulde stinte to plede with you, or to destroye youre persone. Ye known also, that your richesses moten ben dispended in diverse parties ; and whan that every wight hath his part, they ne wollen taken but litel regard to venge youre deth. But thin enemies ben three, and they han many brethren, children, cosins, and other nigh kinrede : and though so were, that thou haddest slain of hem two or three, yet dwellen ther ynow to wreken hir deth, and to slee thy persone. And though so be that youre kinrede be more stedefast and siker than the kin of your adversaries, yet natheles youre kinrede is but a fer kinrede ; they ben but litel sibbe to you, and the kin of youre enemies ben nigh sibbe to hem. And certes as in that, hir condition is better than youre. Than let us conside also of the conseyling of hem that conseyled you to take sodein vengeance, whether it accorde to reson : and certes, ye knowe wel, nay ; for as by right and reson, ther may no man taken vengeance on no wight, but the juge that hath the jurisdiction of it, whan it is ygraunted him to take thilke vengeance hastily, or attemptrely, as the lawe requireth. And yet moreover of thilke word that Tullius clepeth consenting, thou shalt conside, if thy might and thy power may consente and suffice to thy wilfulness, and to thy conseilours : and certes, thou mayest wel say, that nay ; for sikerly, as for to speke proprely, we moun do nothing but only swiche thing as we moun don rightfully : and certes rightfully ye ne mowe take no vengeance, as of your propre autoritees. Than mowe ye sen that your power ne consenteth not, ne accordeth not to youre wilfulness. Now let us examine the thridde point, that Tullius clepeth consequent. Thou shalt understonde, that the vengeance that thou purposest for to take, is the consequent, and therof folweth another vengeance, peril, and werre, and other damages withouten nombre, of which we ben not ware, as at this time. And as touching the fourthe point, that Tullius clepeth engendring, thou shalt consider, that this wrong which that is don to thee, is engendred of the hate of thin enemies, and of the vengeance taking

upon that wold engender another vengeance, and muchel sorwe and wasting of riches, as I sayde ere.

Now, sire, as to the point, that Tullius clepeth causes, which that is the last point, thou shalt understonde, that the wrong that thou hast received, hath certaine causes, which that clerkes elepen *oriens*, and *efficiens*, and *causa longinqua*, and *causa propinqua*, this is to sayn, the fer cause, and the nigh cause. The fer cause is almighty God, that is cause of alle thinges: the ner cause, is thin three enemies; the cause accidental was hate; the cause material, ben the five woundes of thy doughter; the cause formal, is the maner of hir werking, that brougten ladders, and clomben in at thy windowes; the cause final was for to slee thy doughter; it letted not in as muche as in hem was. But for to speke of the fer cause, as to what ende they shuln come, or what shal finally betide of hem in this cas, ne can I not deme, but by conjecting and supposing: for we shuln suppose, that they shuln come to a wicked ende, because that the book of Decrees sayth: Selden or with gret peine ben causes ybrought to a good ende, when they ben badly begonne.

Now, Sire, if men wold axen me, why that God suffred men to do you this vilanie, certes I can not wel answer, as for no sothfastnesse. For the Apostle sayth, that the sciences, and the jugements of oure Lord God Almighty ben ful depe; ther may no man comprehend ne serche hem suffisantly. Natheles, by certain presumptions and conjectings, I hold and beleve, that God, which that is ful of justice and of rightwisenesse, hath suffered this betide, by just cause resonable.

Thy name is Melibee, this is to sayn, a man that drinketh hony. Thou hast dronke so muche hony of swete temporel riches, and delices, and honours of this world, that thou art dronken, and hast forgotten Jesu Crist thy creatour: thou ne hast not don to him swiche honour and reverence as thee ought, ne thou ne hast wel ytaken kepe to the wordes of Ovide, that sayth: Under the hony of the goodes of thy body is hid the venime that sleth the soule. And Salomon sayth: If thou hast founden hony, etc of it that sufficeth; for if thou ete of it out of mesure, thou shalt spewe, and be neddy and poure. And peraventure Crist hath thee in despit, and hath tourned away fro thee his face, and his eres of misericorde; and also he hath suffred, that thou hast ben punished in the manere that thou hast ytrespassed. Thou hast don sinne again oure Lord Crist, for certes the three enemies of mankind, that is to sayn, the flesh, the fend, and the world, thou hast suffred hem entre into thin herte wilfully, by the windowes of thy body, and hast not defended thyself suffisantly again hir assautes, and hir temptacions, so that they han wounded thy soule in five places, this is to sayn the dedly sinnes that ben entred into thyn herte by thy five wittes: and in the same manere our Lord Crist hath wold and suffred, that thy three enemies ben entred into thyn hous by the windowes, and han ywounded thy doughter in the foresayd manere.

Certes, quod Melibee, I see wel that yo enforce you muchel by wordes to overcomen me, in swiche manere, that I shal not venge me on mine enemies, shewing me the perils and the evils that mighten falle of this vengeance: but who so wolde considro

in alle vengeance the perils and evils that mighten sue of vengeance taking, a man wold never take vengeance, and that were harme: for by the vengeance taking ben the wicked men dissevered fro the goode men. And they that han will to do wickednesse, restreinen hir wicked purpos, whan they sen the punishing and the chastising of the trespasours. [To this answered dame Prudence: Certes, quod she, I graunte you that of vengeance taking cometh muche evil and muche good; but vengeance taking apperteineth not to everich oon, but only to juges, and to hem that han the jurisdiction over the trespasours;] and yet say I more, that right as a singuler persone sinneth in taking vengeance of another man, right so sinneth the juge, if he do no vengeance of hem that it han deserved. For Senek sayth thus: That maister (he sayth) is good, that preveth shrewes. And Cassiodore saith: A man dredeth to do outrages, whan he wot and knoweth, that it displeaseth to the juges and souveraines. And another sayth: The juge that dredeth to do right, maketh men shrewes. And Seint Poule the Apostle sayth in his Epistle, whan he writeth unto the Romaines, that the juges beren not the spere withouten cause, but they beren it to punishe the shrewes and misdoers, and for to defende the goode men. If ye wilt than take vengeance of youre enemies, ye shuln retourne or have your recours to the juge, that hath the jurisdiction upon hem, and he shal punishe hem, as the laws axeth and requireth.

A, sayd Melibee, this vengeance liketh me nothing. I bethink me now, and take hede how that fortune hath norished me fro my childhode, and hath holpen me to passe many a stronge pas: now wol I assayen hire, trowing, with Goddes helpe, that she shal helpe me my shame for to venge.

Certes, quod Prudence, if ye wol werke by my conseil, ye shuln not assaye fortune by no way: ne ye ne shuln not lene or bowe unto hire, after the wordes of Senek; for thinges that ben folily don, and tho that ben don in hope of fortune, shuln never come to good ende. And as the same Senek sayth: The more clere and the more shining that fortune is, the more brotel and the soner broke she is. Trusteth not in hire, for she n'is not stedefast ne stable: for whan thou trowest to be most siker and seure of hire helpe, she wol faille and deceive thee. And wheras ye sayn, that fortune hath norished you fro youre childhode, I say that in so muchel ye shuln the lesse truste in hire, and in hire wit. For Senek sayth: What man that is norished by fortune, she maketh him a gret fool. Now than sin ye desire and axe vengeance, and the vengeance, that is don after the laws and before the juge, ne liketh you not, and the vengeance, that is don in hope of fortune, is perilous and uncertain, than have ye non other remedie, but for to have your recours unto the souveraine juge, that vengeth alle vilanies, and wronges; and he shal venge you, after that himself witnesseth, wheras he saith; Leveth the vengeance to me, and I shal do it.

Melibee answered: If I ne venge me of the vilanie that men han don to me, I sompne or warne hem, that han don to me vilanie, and alle other, to do me another vilanie. For it is written; If thou take no vengeance of an olde vilany, thou sompnest thin adversaries to do thee a newe vilanie: and also for my suffraunce, men wolden do me so

much vilanie, that I might neither bere it ne susteine; and so shulde I ben put and holden over lowe. For som men sain, In muchel suffering shul many thinges falle unto thee, which thou shalt not mowe suffre.

Certes, quod Prudence, I graunte you wel, that overmuchel suffraunce is not good, but yet ne folweth it not therof, that every persone to whom men don vilanie, shuld take of it vengeance: for that apperteineth and longeth all only to the juges, for they shul venge the vilanies and injuries: and therefore the two auctoritees, that ye han sayd above, ben only understonden in the juges: for whan they suffren overmuchel the wronges and vilanies to be don, withouten punishing, they sompne not a man all only for to do newe wronges, but they commaunden it: al so as a wise man sayth, that the juge that correcteth not the sinner, commaundeth and biddeth him do sinne. And the juges and souveraines mighten in hir lond so muche suffre of the shrewes and misdoers, that they shulden by swiche suffraunce, by proces of time, wexen of swiche power and might, that they shuld putte out the juges and the souveraines from hir places, and atte laste maken hem lese hir lordshippes.

But now let us putte, that ye have leve to venge you: I say ye be not of might and power, as now to venge you: for if ye wol maken comparison unto the might of youre adversaries, ye shuld finde in many thinges, that I have shewed you er this, that hir condition is better than youre, and therefore say I, that it is good as now, that ye suffre and be patient.

Furthermore ye knowen wel, that after the commune saw, it is a woodnesse, a man to strive with a stronger, or a more mighty man than he is himself; and for to strive with a man of even strengthe, that is to say, with as strong a man as he is, it is peril; and for to strive with a weaker man, it is folie; and therefore shulde a man flee striving, as muchel as he mighte. For Salomon sayth: It is a gret worship to a man to kepe him fro noise and strif. And if it so happe, that a man of greter mighte and strengthe than thou art, do thee grevaunce: studie and besie thee rather to stille the same grevaunce, than for to venge thee. For Senek sayth, that he putteth him in a grete peril, that striveth with a greter man than he is himself. And Caton sayth; If a man of higher estat or degree, or more mighty than thou, do thee anye or grevaunce, suffre him: for he that ones hath greved thee, may another tyme releve thee and helpe thee. Yet sette I cas, ye have bothe might and licence for to venge you, I say that ther ben ful many thinges that shuld restraine you of vengeance taking, and make you for to encline to suffre, and for to han patience in the wronges that han ben don to you. First and forward, if ye wol conside the defaultes that ben in youre owen persone, for which defaultes God hath suffred you have this tribulation, as I have sayd to you herebefore. For the Poete sayth, that we oughten patiently taken the tribulations that comen to us, whan that we thinken and consideren, that we han deserved to have hem. And Seint Gregorie sayth, that whan a man considereth wel the nombre of his defaultes and of his sinnes, the peines and the tribulations that he suffereth wemen the lesse unto him. And in as muche as

him thinketh his sinnes more hevy and grevous, in so muche semeth his peine the lighter and the esier unto him. Also ye owen to encline and bowe youre herte, to take the patience of oure Lord Jesu Crist, as sayth Seint Peter in his Epistles. Jesu Crist (he saith) hath suffred for us, and yeven ensample to every man to folwe and sue him, for he dide never sinne, ne never came ther a vilains word out of his mouth. Whan men cursed him, he cursed hem nought; and whan men beten him, he manaced hem nought. Also the gret patience, which Seintes, that ben in Paradis, han had in tribulations that they han suffred, withouten hir desert or gilt, oughte muchel stirre you to patience. Furthermore, ye shulde enforce you to have patience, considering that the tribulations of this world but litel while endure, and sone passed ben and gon, and the joye that a man seketh to han by patience in tribulations is perdurable; after that the Apostle sayth in his Epistle; the joye of God, he sayth, is perdurable, that is to sayn, everlasting. Also troweth and beleveth stedfastly, that he n'is not wel ynorished ne wel ytaught, that cannot have patience, or wol not receyve patience. For Salomon sayth, that the doctrine and wit of a man is knownen by patience. And in another place he sayeth, that he that is patient, governeth him by gret prudence. And the same Salomon saith: The angrie and wrathful man maketh noises, and the patient man attempteth and stilleth hem. He saith also, It is more worth to be patient than for to be right strong. And he that may have the lordshipe of his owen herte, is more to preise, than he that by his force or strengthe taketh gret citees. And therefore sayth Seint James in his Epistle, that patience is a gret vertue of perfection.

Certes, quod Melibee, I graunte you, Dame Prudence, that patience is a gret vertue of perfection, but every man may not have the perfection that ye seken, ne I am not of the nombre of the right parfit men: for min herte may never be in pees, unto the time it be venged. And al be it so, that it was gret peril to min enemies to dome a vilanie in taking vengeance upon me, yet token they non hede of the peril, but fulfilleden hir wicked will and hir corage: and therefore me thinketh men oughten not repreve me, though I put me in a litel peril for to venge me, and though I do a gret excesse, that is to sayn, that I venge on outrage by another.

A, quod Dame Prudence, ye sayn your will and as you liketh; but in no cas of the world a man shulde not don outrage ne excesse, for to vengen him. For Cassiodore sayth, that as evil doth he that vengeth him by outrage, as he that doth the outrage. And therefore ye shuln venge you after the ordre of right, that is to sayn, by the lawe, and not by excesse, ne by outrage. And also if ye wol venge you of the outrage of youre adversaries, in other manere than right commaundeth, ye sinnen. And therefore sayth Senek, that a man shal never venge shrewednesse by shrewednesse. And if ye say that right axeth a man to defende violence by violence, and fighting by fighting: certes ye say soth, whan the defence is don withouten intervale, or withouten taryng or delay, for to defende him, and not for to venge. And it behoveth, that a man putte swiche attemperance in his defence, that men have no cause ne mater

to reprove him, that defendeth him, of outrage and excesse, for elles were it againe reson. Parde ye knowen wel, that ye maken no defence as now, for to defende you, but for to venge you : and so sheweth it, that ye han no will to do youre dede attemprely : and therefore me thinketh that patience is good. For Salomon sayth, that he that is not patient, shal have gret harme.

Certes, quod Melibee, I graunte you, that whan a man is impatient and wrothe of that that toucheth him not, and that apperteineth not unto him, though it harme him it is no wonder. For the lawe saith, that he is coupable that entremeteth or medleth with swiche thing, as apperteineth not unto him. And Salomon saith, that he that entremeteth of the noise or strif of another man, is like to him that taketh a straunge hound by the eres : for right as he that taketh a straunge hound by the eres is otherwhile bitten with the hound, right in the same wise, it is reson that he have harme, that by his impatience medleth him of the noise of another man, wheras it apperteineth not unto him. But ye knowe wel, that this dede, that is to sayn, my greif and my diseese, toucheth me right nigh. And therefore though I be wroth and impatient, it is no merveille : and (saying your grace) I cannot see that it might gretly harme me, though I took vengeance, for I am richer and more mighty than min enemies ben : and wel knowe ye, that by money and by having grete possessions, ben alle thinges of this world governed. And Salomon sayth, that alle thinges obeye to money.

Whan Prudence had herd hire husbond avaunte him of his riches and of his money, dispreising the power of his adversaries, she spake and sayd in this wise : Certes, dere Sire, I graunte you that ye ben riche and mighty, and that riches ben good to hem that han wel ygeten hem, and that wel conne usen hem. For right as the body of a man may not liven withouten soul, no more may it liven withouten temporel goodes, and by riches may a man gete him grete frendes. And therefore sayth Pamphilus : If a netherdes doughter (he sayth) be riche, she may chese of a thousand men, which she wol take to hire husbond : for of a thousand men on wol not forsaken hire ne refusen hire. And this Pamphilus saith also : If thou be right happy, that is to sayn, if thou be right riche, thou shalt finde a gret nombre of felawes and frendes ; and if thy fortune chaunge, that thou wexe poure, fewelwe frendshipe and felawshipe, for thou shalt be al allone withouten any compaignie, but if it be the compaignie of poure folk. And yet sayth this Pamphilus moreover, that they that ben bond and thralle of linage, shuln be made worthy and noble by riches. And right so as by riches comen many goodes, right so by povert come ther many harmes and eviles : for gret povert constreinet a man to do many eviles. And therefore clepeth Cassiodore povert the moder of ruine, that is to sayn, the moder of overthrowing or falling down. And therefore sayth Piers Alphonse : on of the grettest adversites of this world, is whan a free man by kinde, or of birthe, is constrained by povert to eten the almesse of his enemy. And the same sayth Innocent in on of his bookes : he sayth, that sorwful and mishappy is the condition of a poure hagg, for if he axe not his mete, he dieth for hunger, and if he axe, he dieth for shame : and

algates necessitee constreinet him to axe. And therefore sayth Salomon, that better it is to die, than for to have swiche povert. And as the same Salomon sayth : Better it is to die of bitter deth, than for to liven in swiche wise. By this reason that I have said unto you, and by many other reasons that I coude saye, I graunte you that riches ben good to hem that wel geten hem, and to hem that wel usen tho riches : and therefore wol I shewe you how ye shuln behave you in gadering of youre riches, and in what manere ye shuln usen hem.

First, ye shuln geten hem withouten gret desir, by good leiser, sokingly, and not over hastily, for a man that is to desiring to gete riches, abandoneth him first to thefte and to alle other eviles. And therefore sayth Salomon : He that hasteth him to besily to wexe riche, he shal be non innocent. He sayth also, that the riches that hastily cometh to a man, some and lightly goeth and passeth from a man, but that riches that cometh litel and litel, wexeth alway and multiplieth. And, Sire, ye shuln gete riches by youre wit and by youre travaille, unto your profite, and that withouten wrong or harme doing to any other persone. For the lawe sayth : Ther maketh no man himself riche, if he do harme to another wight ; this is to say, that nature defendeth and forbedeth by right, that no man make himself riche, unto the harme of another persone. And Tullius sayth, that no sorwe, ne no drede of deth, ne nothing that may falle unto a man, is so muchel ageins nature, as a man to encrease his owen profite, to harme of another man. And though the grete men and the mighty men geten riches more lightly than thou, yet shalt thou not ben idel ne slowe to do thy profite, for thou shalt in alle wise flee idelnesse. For Salomon sayth, that idelnesse techeth a man to do many eviles. And the same Salomon sayth, that he that travaillith and besieth him to tillen his lond, shal ete bred : but he that is idel, and casteth him to no businesse ne occupation, shal falle into povert, and die for hunger. And he that is idel and slow, can never find covenable time for to do his profite. For ther is a versifour sayth, that the idel man excuseth him in Winter, because of the grete cold, and in Summer by excuseson of the hete. For these causes, sayth Caton, waketh, and enclinet you not over muchel to slepe, for over muchel reste noriseth and causeth many vices. And therefore sayth Seint Jerome ; Doeth som good dedes, that the devil which is oure enemy, ne finde you not unoccupied, for the devil ne taketh not lightly unto his working swiche as he findeth occupied in goode werkes.

Than thus in geting riches ye musten flee idelnesse. And afterward ye shuln usen the riches, which ye han geten by youre wit and by youre travaille, in swiche manere, that men holde you not to scarce ne to sparing, ne fool-large, that is to say, over large a spender : for right as men blamen an avaricious man, because of his scarcitee and chineherie, in the same wise is he to blame, that spendeth over largely. And therefore saith Caton : Use (sayth he) the riches that thou hast ygeten in swiche manere, that men have no matere ne cause to calle thee nother wretche ne chinche : for it is a gret shame to a man to have a poure herte and a riche purse. He sayth also : the goodes that thou hast ygeten,

use hem by mesure, that is to sayn, spende mesurably; for they that folly wasten and dispenden the goodes that they han, whan they han no more propre of hir owen, than they shapen hem to take the goodes of another man. I say than that ye shuln flee avarice, using youre riches in swiche manere, that men sayn not that your riches ben yberied, but that ye have hem in youre might, and in youre welding. For a wise man repreveth the avaricious man, and sayth thus in two vers. Wherto and why berieth a man his goodes by his gret avarice, and knoweth wel, that nedes must he die, for deth is the end of every man, as in this present lif! and for what cause or encheson joineth he him, or knitteth he him so fast unto his goodes, that alle his wittes mown not disseven him, or departen him from his goodes, and knoweth wel, or oughte to knowe, that whan he is ded, he shal nothing bere with him out of this world! And therefore sayth Saint Augustine, that the avaricious man is likened unto helle, that the more it swalweth, the more desir it hath to swalwe and devoure. And as wel as ye wolde eschue to be called an avaricious man or chinche, as wel shulde ye kepe you and governe you in swiche a wise, that men calle you not fool-large. Therefore saith Tullius: The goodes of thin hous ne shulde not ben hid ne kept so close, but that they might ben opened by pitee and debonairetee; that is to sayn, to yeve hem part that han gret nede; ne thy goodes shulden not ben so open, to be every mannes goodes. Afterward, in geting of youre riches, and in using of hem, ye shuln alway have three thinges in youre herte, that is to say, oure Lord God, conscience, and good name. First, ye shuln have God in youre herte, and for no riches ye shuln do no thing, which may in any manere displese God that is your creatour and maker. For after the word of Salomon, it is better to have a litel good with love of God, than to have muchel good, and lese the love of his Lord God. And the Prophete sayth, That better it is to ben a good man, and have litel good and tresor, than to be holden a shrewe, and have grete riches. And yet I say furthermore, that ye shulden alway do youre besinesse to gete you riches, so that ye gete hem with good conscience. And the Apostle sayth, that ther n'is thing in this world of which we shulden have so gret joye, as whan oure conscience bereth us good witnesse. And the wise man sayth: The substance of a man is ful good, whan sinne is not in mannes conscience. Afterward, in geting of youre riches, and in using of hem, ye must have gret besinesse and gret diligence, that youre good name be alway kept and conserved. For Salomon sayth, that beter it is, and more it availleth a man to have a good name, than for to have grete riches: and therefore he sayth in another place: Do grete diligence (saith Salomon) in keping of thy frendes, and of thy good name, for it shal lenger abide with thee, than any tresor, be it never so precious. And certes, he shulde not be called a Gentilman, that after God and good conscience, alle thinges left, ne doth his diligence and besinesse, to kepen his good name. And Cassiodore sayth, that it is a signe of a gentil herte, whan a man loveth and desireth to have a good name. And therefore sayth Saint Augustine, that ther ben two thinges that arn right necessarie and

nedeful; and that is good conscience, and good los; that is to sayn, good conscience to thin owen persone inward, and good los for thy neighebour outward. And he that troseth him so muchel in his good conscience, that he despiseth and setteth at nought his good name or los, and recketh not though he kepe not his good name, n'is but a cruel cherl.

Sire, now have I shewed you how ye shulden do in geting riches, and how ye shuln usen hem: and I see wel that for the trust that ye han in youre riches, ye wiln meve werre and bataille. I conseilte you that ye beginne no bataille ne werre, in trust of youre riches, for they ne sufficen not werres to mainteine. And therefore sayth a Philosophie: That man that desireth and wol algates han werre, shal never have suffisaunce: for the richer that he is, the greter dispences must he make, if he wol have worship and victorie. And Salomon saith, that the greter riches that a man hath, the mo dispendours he hath. And, dere Sire, al be it so, that for your riches ye moun have muchel folk, yet behoveth it not, ne it is not good to beginne werre, wheras ye moun in other manere have pees, unto youre worship and profite: for the victorie of batailles that ben in this world, lith not in gret nombre or multitude of peple, ne in the vertue of man, but it lith in the will and in the hond of oure Lord God almighty. And therefore Judas Machabeus, which was Goddes knight, whan he shulde fighte again his adversarie, that hadde a greter nombre and a greter multitude of folk, and stronger than was the peple of this Machabee, yet he recomforted his litel compaignie, and sayde right in this wise: Al so lightly (sayde he) may our Lord God almighty yeve victorie to a fewe folk, as to many folk; for the victorie of a bataille cometh not by the gret nombre of peple, but it cometh from oure Lord God of heven. And, dere Sire, for as muchel as ther is no man certaine, if it be worthy that God yeve him victorie or not, after that Salomon sayth, therefore every man shulde gretly drede werres to beginne: and because that in batailles fallen many perils, and it happeth other while, that as sone is the gret man slain, as the litel man; and, as it is ywritten in the second book of Kinges, the dedes of batailles ben aventurous, and nothing certain, for as lightly is on hurt with a spere as another; and for ther is gret peril in werre; therefore shulde a man flee and eschue werre in as muchel as a man may goodly. For Salomon sayth: He that loveth peril, shal falle in peril.

After that dame Prudence had spoken in this manere, Melibee answerd and saide: I see wel, dame Prudence, that by youre faire wordes and by youre resons, that ye han shewed me, that the werre liketh you nothing: but I have not yet herd your conseil, how I shal do in this nede.

Certes, quod she, I conseilte you that ye accorde with youre adversaries, and that ye have pees with hem. For Saint James sayth in his Epistle, that by concorde and pees, the smale riches wexen grete, and by debat and discorde grete riches fallen down. And ye knowen wel, that on of the gretest and moste souveraine thing, that is in this world, is unitee and pees. And therefore sayde oure Lord Jesu Crist to his Apostles in this wise: Wel happy and blessed ben they that loven and purchasen pees, for they ben called the children of



to reprove him, that defendeth him, of outrage and excoese, for elles were it againe reson. Parde ye knowen wel, that ye maken no defence as now, for to defende you, but for to venge you : and so sheweth it, that ye han no will to do youre dede attemprely : and therefore me thinketh that patience is good. For Salomon sayth, that he that is not patient, shal have gret harme.

Certes, quod Melibee, I graunte you, that whan a man is impatient and wrothe of that that toucheth him not, and that apperteineth not unto him, though it harme him it is no wonder. For the lawe saith, that he is coupable that entremeteth or medleth with swiche thing, as apperteineth not unto him. And Salomon saith, that he that entremeteth of the noise or strif of another man, is like to him that taketh a strange hound by the eres : for right as he that taketh a strange hound by the eres is otherwhile bitten with the hound, right in the same wise, it is reson that he have harme, that by his impatience medleth him of the noise of another man, wheras it apperteineth not unto him. But ye knowe wel, that this dede, that is to sayn, my greif and my disese, toucheth me right nigh. And therefore though I be wroth and impatient, it is no mervaille : and (saying your grace) I cannot see that it might gretly harme me, though I took vengeance, for I am richer and more mighty than min enemies ben : and wel knowe ye, that by money and by having grete possessions, ben alle thinges of this world governed. And Salomon sayth, that alle thinges obeye to money.

Whan Prudence had herd hire husbond avaunte him of his riches and of his money, dispreising the power of his adversaries, she spake and sayd in this wise : Certes, dere Sire, I graunte you that ye ben riche and mighty, and that riches ben good to hem that han wel ygeten hem, and that wel conne usen hem. For right as the body of a man may not liven withouten soul, no more may it liven withouten temporel goodes, and by riches may a man gete him grete frendes. And therefore sayth Pamphilus : If a netherdes doughter (he sayth) be riche, she may chese of a thousand men, which she wol take to hire husbond : for of a thousand men on wol not forsaken hire ne refusen hire. And this Pamphilus saith also : If thou be right happy, that is to sayn, if thou be right riche, thou shalt finde a gret nombre of felawes and frendes ; and if thy fortune change, that thou wexe poure, farewell frendshipe and felawshipe, for thou shalt be al allone withouten any compaignie, but if it be the compaignie of poure folk. And yet sayth this Pamphilus moreover, that they that ben bond and thralle of linage, shuln be made worthy and noble by riches. And right so as by riches ther comen many goodes, right so by poverté come ther many harmes and eviles : for gret poverté constreinet a man to do many eviles. And therefore clepeth Cassiodore poverté the moder of ruine, that is to sayn, the moder of overthrowing or falling down. And therefore sayth Piers Alphonse : on of the grettest adversites of this world, is whan a free man by kinde, or of birth, is constreined by poverté to eten the almesse of his enemy. And the same sayth Innocent in on of his bookes : he sayth, that sorwful and mishappy is the condition of a poure begger, for if he axe not his mete, he dieth for hunger, and if he axe, he dieth for shame : and

algates necessitee constreinet him to axe. And therefore sayth Salomon, that better it is to die, than for to have swiche poverté. And as the same Salomon sayth : Better it is to die of bitter deth, than for to liven in swiche wise. By this reson that I have said unto you, and by many other reson that I coude saye, I graunte you that riches ben good to hem that wel geten hem, and to hem that wel usen tho riches : and therefore wol I shewe you how ye shuln behave you in gadering of youre riches, and in what manere ye shuln usen hem.

First, ye shuln geten hem withouten gret desir, by good leiser, sokingly, and not over hastily, for a man that is to desiring to gete riches, abandoneth him first to thefte and to alle other eviles. And therefore sayth Salomon : He that hasteth him to beily to wexe riche, he shal be non innocent. He sayth also, that the riches that hastily cometh to a man, sone and lightly goeth and passeth from a man, but that riches that cometh litel and litel, wexeth alway and multiplieth. And, Sire, ye shuln gete riches by youre wit and by youre travaille, unto your profite, and that withouten wrong or harme doing to any other persone. For the lawe saith : Ther maketh no man himself riche, if he do harme to another wight ; this is to say, that nature defendeth and forbedeth by right, that no man make himself riche, unto the harme of another persone. And Tullius sayth, that no sorwe, ne no drede of deth, ne nothing that may falle unto a man, is so muchel ageins nature, as a man to encrese his owen profite, to harme of another man. And though the grete men and the mighty men geten riches more lightly than thou, yet shalt thou not ben idel ne slowe to do thy profite, for thou shalt in alle wise flee idelnesse. For Salomon sayth, that idelnesse techeth a man to do many eviles. And the same Salomon sayth, that he that travailleth and besieth him to tillen his lond, shal ete bred : but he that is idel, and casteth him to no besinesse ne occupation, shal falle into poverté, and die for hunger. And he that is idel and slow, can never find covenable time for to do his profite. For ther is a versifour sayth, that the idel man excuseth him in Winter, because of the grete cold, and in Summer by encheson of the hete. For these causes, sayth Caton, waketh, and enclineth you not over muchel to slepe, for over muchel reste noriseth and causeth many vices. And therefore sayth Saint Jerome ; Doeth som good dedes, that the devil which is oure enemy, ne finde you not unoccupied, for the devil ne taketh not lightly unto his werking swiche as he findeth occupied in goode werkis.

Than thus in geting riches ye musten flee idelnesse. And afterward ye shuln usen the riches, which ye han geten by youre wit and by youre travaille, in swiche manere, that men holde you not to scarce ne to sparing, ne fool-large, that is to say, over large a spender : for right as men blamen an avaricious man, because of his scarcitee and chinerie, in the same wise is he to blame, that spendeth over largely. And therefore saith Caton : Use (sayth he) the riches that thou hast ygeten in swiche manere, that men have no matere ne cause to calle thee nother wretche ne chinche : for it is a gret shame to a man to have a poure herte and a riche purse. He sayth also : the goodes that thou hast ygeten,

use hem by mesure, that is to sayn, spende mesurably; for they that folly wasten and dispenden the goodes that they han, whan they han no more propre of hir owen, than they shapen hem to take the goodes of another man. I say than that ye shuln flee avarice, using youre riches in swiche manere, that men sayn not that your riches ben yberied, but that ye have hem in youre might, and in youre welding. For a wise man repreve the avaricious man, and sayth thus in two vers. Wherto and why berieth a man his goodes by his gret avarice, and knoweth wel, that nedes must he die, for deth is the end of every man, as in this present lif! and for what cause or encheson joineth he him, or knitteth he him so fast unto his goodes, that alle his wittes mown not disceveren him, or departen him from his goodes, and knoweth wel, or oughte to knowe, that whan he is ded, he shal nothing bere with him out of this world! And therefore sayth Seint Augustine, that the avaricious man is likened unto helle, that the more it swalweth, the more desir it hath to swalwe and devoure. And as wel as ye wolde eschue to be called an avaricious man or chynche, as wel shulde ye kepe you and governe you in swiche a wise, that men calle you not fool-large. Therefore saith Tullius: The goodes of thin hous ne shulde not ben hid ne kept so close, but that they might ben opened by pitee and debonairtee; that is to sayn, to yeve hem part that han gret nede; ne thy goodes shulden not ben so open, to be every mannes goodes. Afterward, in geting of youre riches, and in using of hem, ye shuln alway have three thinges in youre herte, that is to say, oure Lord God, conscience, and good name. First, ye shuln have God in youre herte, and for no riches ye shuln do no thing, which may in any manere displese God that is your creatour and maker. For after the word of Salomon, it is better to have a litel good with love of God, than to have muchel good, and lese the love of his Lord God. And the Prophete sayth, That better it is to ben a good man, and have litel good and tresor, than to be holden a shrew, and have grete riches. And yet I say furthermore, that ye shulden alway do youre businesse to gete you riches, so that ye gete hem with good conscience. And the Apostle sayth, that ther n'is thing in this world of which we shulden have so gret joye, as whan oure conscience bereth us good witenesse. And the wise man sayth: The substance of a man is ful good, whan sinne is not in mannes conscience. Afterward, in geting of youre riches, and in using of hem, ye must have gret businesse and gret diligence, that youre good name be alway kept and conserved. For Salomon sayth, that beter it is, and more it availeth a man to have a good name, than for to have grete riches: and therefore he sayth in another place: Do grete diligence (saith Salomon) in keping of thy frendes, and of thy good name, for it shal lenger abide with thee, than any tresor, be it never so precious. And certes, he shulde not be called a Gentilman, that after God and good conscience, alle thinges left, ne doth his diligence and businesse, to kepen his good name. And Cassiodore sayth, that it is a signe of a gentil herte, whan a man loveth and desireth to have a good name. And therefore sayth Seint Augustine, that ther ben two thinges that arn right necessarie and

nedeful; and that is good conscience, and good los; that is to sayn, good conscience to thin owen persone inward, and good los for thy neighebour outward. And he that trosteth him so muchel in his good conscience, that he despiseth and setteth at nought his good name or los, and recketh not though he kepe not his good name, n'is but a cruel cherl.

Sire, now have I shewed you how ye shulden do in geting riches, and how ye shuln use hem: and I see wel that for the trust that ye han in youre riches, ye wiln meve werre and bataille. I conseilte you that ye beginne no bataille ne werre, in trust of youre riches, for they ne sufficen not werres to mainteine. And therefore sayth a Philosopre: That man that desireth and wol algates han werre, shal never have suffisaunce: for the richer that he is, the greter dispences must he make, if he wol have worship and victorie. And Salomon saith, that the greter riches that a man hath, the mo dispendours he hath. And, dere Sire, al be it so, that for your riches ye moun have muchel folk, yet behoveth it not, ne it is not good to beginne werre, wheras ye moun in other manere have pees, unto youre worship and profite: for the victorie of batailles that ben in this world, lith not in gret nombre or multitude of peple, ne in the vertue of man, but it lith in the will and in the hond of oure Lord God almighty. And therefore Judas Machabeus, which was Goddes knight, whan he shulde fighte again his adversarie, that hadde a greter nombre and a greter multitude of folk, and stronger than was the peple of this Machabee, yet he recomforted his litel compaignie, and sayde right in this wise: Al so lightly (sayde he) may our Lord God almighty yeve victorie to a fewe folk, as to many folk; for the victorie of a bataille cometh not by the gret nombre of peple, but it cometh from oure Lord God of heven. And, dere Sire, for as muchel as ther is no man certaine, if it be worthy that God yeve him victorie or not, after that Salomon sayth, therefore every man shulde gretly drede werres to beginne: and because that in batailles fallen many perils, and it lappeth other while, that as sone is the gret man slain, as the litel man; and, as it is ywritten in the second book of Kinges, the dedes of batailles ben aventurous, and nothing certain, for as lightly is on hurt with a spere as another; and for ther is gret peril in werre; therefore shulde a man flee and eschue werre in as muchel as a man may goodly. For Salomon sayth: He that loveth peril, shal falle in peril.

After that dame Prudence had spoken in this manere, Melibee answerd and saide: I see wel, dame Prudence, that by youre faire wordes and by youre resons, that ye han shewed me, that the werre liketh you nothing: but I have not yet herd your conseil, how I shal do in this nede.

Certes, quod she, I conseilte you that ye accorde with youre adversaries, and that ye have pees with hem. For Seint James sayth in his Epistle, that by concorde and pees, the smale riches wexen grete, and by debat and discorde grete riches fallen down. And ye knowen wel, that on of the gretest and moste sovaine thing, that is in this world, is unitee and pees. And therefore sayde oure Lord Jesu Crist to his Apostles in this wise: Wel happy and blessed ben they that loven and purchasen pees, for they ben called the children of

## CANTERBURY TALES.

And yet shal he not only besie him in his good name, but he shal also enforcen way to do som thing, by which he may re-  
his good name : for it is written, that the good los, or good name, of a man is sone gon passed, whan it is not newed. And as touch-  
that ye sayn, that ye wol exile your advers-  
s, that thinketh me muchel agein reson, and of mesure, considered the power that they han  
en you upon himself. And it is written, that is worthy to lese his privilege, that misuseth  
e might and the power that is yeven him. And sette cas, ye might enjoinen hem that peine by  
ght and by lawe, (which I trowe ye mowe not  
so) I say, ye might not putte it to execution per-  
venture, and than it were like to retourne to the werre, as it was befor. And therefore if ye wol  
that men do you obeisaunce, ye must deme more curteisly, that is to sayn, ye must yeve more esie  
sentences and jugements. For it is written : he that most curteisly commandeth, to him men most  
obeyen. And therefore I pray you, that in this necessitee and in this neede ye caste you to over-  
come youre herte. For Senek sayth, that he that overcometh his herte, overcometh twies. And  
Tullius saith : ther is nothing so commendable in a gret lord, as whan he is debonaire and meke,  
and appeseth him lightly. And I pray you, that ye wol now forbere to do vengeance, in swiche a  
manere, that your good name may be kept and conserved, and that men mown have cause and  
matere to preise you of pitee and of mercy ; and that ye have no cause to repente you of thing that  
ye don. For Senek saith : he overcometh in an evil manere, that repenteth him of his victorie.

Wherfore I pray you let mercy be in youre herte, to the effect and entente, that God almighty have mercy upon you in his last jugement : for seint James saith in his Epistle : jugement withoute mercy shal he do to him, that hath no mercy of another wight.

Whan Melibee had herd the grette skilles and resons of dame Prudence, and hire wise informations and techinges, his herte gan encline to the will of his wif, considering hire trewe entente, enforced him anon and assented fully to werken after hire conseil, and thanked God, of whom procedeth all goodnesse and all vertue, that him sent a wif of so gret discretion. And whan the day came that his adversaries shulde appere in his presence, he spake to hem ful goodly, and saide in this wise  
Al be it so, that of youre pride and high presumption and folie, and of youre negligence and uncon-  
ning, ye have miaborne you, and trespassed unto me, yet for as muchel as I see and behold youre grette humilitee, and that ye ben sory and repentant of youre giltes, it constreineith me to do you grace and mercy : wherfore I receive you into my grace, and foryeve you outrely alle the offences, injuries, and wronges, that ye have don agein me and mine, to this effect and to this ende, that God of his endeles mercie wol at the time of oure dying foryeve us oure giltes, that we han trespassed to him in this wretched world : for douteles, if we be sory and repentant of the sinnes and giltes, which we han trespassed in the sight of oure Lord God, he is so free and so merciable, that he wol for-  
yeven us oure giltes, and bringen us to the blisse that never hath ende. Amen.

## THE MONKES TALE.

### THE MONKES PROLOGUE.

WHAN ended was my tale of Melibee,  
And of Prudence and hire benignitee,  
Our hoste saide ; as I am faithful man,  
And by the precious *corpus Madrian*,  
I hadde lever than a barell of ale,  
That goode lefe my wif had herde this tale :  
For she n'is no thing of swiche patience,  
As was this Melibeus wif Prudence.

By Goddes bones, whan I bete my knaves,  
She bringeth me the grette clobbered staves,  
And cryeth ; see the dogges everich on,  
And breke hem bothe bak and every bon.

And if that any neighbeour of mine  
Wol not in chirche to my wif encline,  
Or be so hardy to hire to trespassce,  
Whan she cometh home she rampeth in my face,  
And cryeth ; false coward, wreke thy wif :  
By *corpus Domini*, I wol have thy knif,  
And thou shalt have my distaf, and go spinne.  
Fro day til night right thus she wol beginne.

Alas, she saith, that ever I was yshape  
To wed a vilksop, or a coward ape,

That wol ben overladd with every wight !  
Thou darst not stonden by thy wives right.

This is my lif, but if that I wol fight,  
And out at dore anon I mote me dight,  
Or elles I am lost, but if that I  
Be like a wilde leon, fool-hardy.

I wote wel she wol do me slege som day  
Som neighbeour, and thanne go my way,  
For I am perilous with knif in honde,  
Al be it that I dare not hire withstoude :  
For she is bigge in armes by my faith,  
That shal he finde, that hire misdoth or saith.  
But let us passe away fro this matere.

My iord the Monk, quod he, be mery of chere,  
For ye shul telle a tale trewely.

Lo, Roucheester stondeth here faste by.  
Ride forth, min owen lord, breke not our game.  
But by my trouthe I can not telle youre name ;  
Whether shal I call you my lord Dan John,  
Or Dan Thomas, or elles Dan Albon ?  
Of what hous be ye, by your fader kin ?  
I vow to God, thou hast a ful faire skin ;  
It is a gentil pasture ther thou gost ;  
Thou art not like a penaunt or a gost.

Upon my faith thou art som officer,  
Som worthy sextein, or som celerer.

For by my fadres soule, as to my dome,  
 Thou art a maister, whan thou art at home ;  
 No poure cloisterer, ne non novice,  
 But a governour bothe ware and wise,  
 And therewithal of braunes and of bones  
 A right wel faring persone for the nones.  
 I pray to God yeve him confusion,  
 That first thee brought into religion.  
 Thou woldest han ben a trede-foul a right,  
 Haddest thou as grete leve, as thou hast might,  
 To parfourme all thy lust in engendrure,  
 Thou haddest begeten many a creature.  
 Alas ! why werest thou so wide a cope !  
 God yeve me sorwe, but, and I were pope,  
 Not only thou but every mighty man,  
 Though he were shore ful high upon his pan,  
 Shuld have a wif, for al this world is lorn ;  
 Religion hath take up all the corn  
 Of treading, and we borel men ben shrimpes :  
 Of feble trees ther comen wretched imper.  
 This maketh that our heires ben so sclendre  
 And feble, that they moun not wel engendre.  
 This maketh that our wives wol assaye  
 Religious folk, for they moun better paye  
 Of Venus payementes than mowen we :  
 God wote, no lusheburghes payen ye.  
 But be not wroth, my lord, though that I play :  
 Ful oft in game a sothe have I herd say.  
 This worthy Monke toke all in patience,  
 And saide ; I wol don all my diligence,  
 As fer as souneth into honestee,  
 To tellen you a tale, or two or three.  
 And if you list to herken hiderward,  
 Wol you sayn the lif of Seint Edward ;  
 Or elles tragedies first I wol telle,  
 Of which I have an hundred in my celle.  
 Tragedie is to sayn a certain storie,  
 As olde bookes maken us memorie,  
 Of him that stood in gret prosperitee,  
 And is yfallen out of high degree  
 In to miserie, and endeth wretchedly.  
 And they ben versified comunly  
 Of six feet, which men clepen exametron :  
 In prose eke ben endited many on,  
 And eke in metre, in many a sondry wise.  
 Lo, this declaring ought ynough suffice.  
 Now herkeneth, if you liketh for to here.  
 But first I you beseeche in this matere,  
 Though I by ordre telle not thise thinges,  
 Be it of popes, emperoures, or kinges,  
 After hir ages, as men written finde,  
 But telle hem som before and som behinde,  
 As it now cometh to my remembrance,  
 Have me excused of min ignorance.

## THE MONKES TALE.

I wol bewaile in manere of tragedie  
 The harm of hem, that stode in high degree,  
 And fellen so, that ther n'as no remedie  
 To bring hem out of hir adversitee.  
 For certain whan that fortune list to flee,  
 Ther may no man of hire the cours withholde :  
 Let no man trust on blinde prosperitee ;  
 Beth ware by thise ensamples trewe and olde.

## LUCIFER.

At Lucifer, though he an angel were  
 And not a man, at him I wol beginne.  
 For though fortune may non angel dere,  
 From high degree yet fell he for his sinne  
 Down into helle, wheras he yet is inne.  
 O Lucifer, brightest of angels alle,  
 Now art thou Sathanas, that maist not twinne  
 Out of miserie, in which that thou art falle

## ADAM.

Lo Adam, in the feld of Damascene  
 With Goddes owen finger wrought was he,  
 And not begeten of mannes sperme unclene,  
 And welte all Paradis saving o tree :  
 Had never worldly man so high degree  
 As Adam, til he for misgovernance  
 Was driven out of his prosperitee  
 To labour, and to helle, and to meschance.

## SAMPSON.

Lo Sampson, which that was annunciat  
 By the angel, long or his nativitee :  
 And was to God Almighty consecrat,  
 And stode in noblesse while he mighte see :  
 Was never swiche another as was he,  
 To speke of strength, and therto hardinesse :  
 But to his wives tolde he his secree,  
 Thurgh which he slow himself for wretchednesse.

Sampson, this noble and mighty champion,  
 Withouten wepen, save his handes twey,  
 He slow and all to-rente the leon,  
 Toward his wedding walking by the wey :  
 His false wif coude him so plesse, and pray,  
 Til she his conseil knewe ; and she untrew  
 Unto his foos his conseil gan bewray,  
 And him forsoke, and toke another newe.

Three hundred foxes toke Sampson for ire,  
 And all hir tayles he togeder bond :  
 And set the foxes tayles all on fire,  
 For he in every tayl had knit a bond.  
 And they brent all the cornes in that lond,  
 And all hir oliveres, and vines eke.  
 A thousand men he slow eke with his hond,  
 And had no wepen, but an asses cheke.

Whan they were slain, so thursted him, that he  
 Was wel nie lorne, for which he gan to preye,  
 That God wold on his peine han som pitee,  
 And send him drinke, or elles moste he deye :  
 And of this asses cheke, that was so dreye,  
 Out of a wang toth sprang anon a welle,  
 Of which he dranke ynough, shortly to seye.  
 Thus halp him God, as *Judicum* can telie.

By veray force at Gasa on a night,  
 Maugre the Philistins of that citee,  
 The gates of the toun he hath up plight,  
 And on his bak ycaried hem hath he  
 High on an hill, wher as men might hem se.  
 O noble mighty Sampson, lefe and dere,  
 Haddest thou not told to women thy secree,  
 In all this world ne had ther ben thy pere.

This Sampson never sider drank ne wine,  
 Ne on his hed came rasour non ne shere,  
 By precept of the messenger divine,  
 For all his strengthes in his heres were :

And fully twenty winter yere by yere  
He hadde of Israel the governance :  
But sone shal he wepen many a tere,  
For women shuln him bringen to meschance.

Unto his lemman Dalida he told,  
That in his heres all his strengthe lay,  
And falsely to his fomen she him sold ;  
And sleping in hire barme upon a day  
She made to clip or shere his here away,  
And made his fomen all his craft espien ;  
And whan that they him fond in this array,  
They bond him fast, and putten out his eyen.

But or his here was clipped or yshave,  
Ther was no bond, with which men might him bind,  
But now is he in prison in a cave,  
Wheras they made him at the querne grinde.  
O noble Sampson, strongest of mankind,  
O whilom juge in glory and richesse,  
Now mayest thou wepen with thin eyen blind,  
Sith thou fro wele art falle in wretchednesse.

The ende of this caitif was, as I shal seye :  
His fomen made a feste upon a day,  
And made him as hir fool before hem pleye :  
And this was in a temple of gret array.  
But at the last he made a foule affray,  
For he two pillars shoke, and made hem falle,  
And doun fell temple and all, and ther it lay,  
And slow himself, and eke his fomen alle.

This is to sayn, the princes everich on,  
And eke three thousand bodies were ther slain  
With falling of the gret temple of ston.  
Of Sampson now wol I no more sain :  
Beth ware by this ensample old and plain,  
That no men tell hir conseil to hir wives  
Of swiche thing, as they wold han secree fain,  
If that it touch hir limmes or hir lives.

#### HERCULES.

Of Hercules the souverain conquerour  
Singen his werkes laude, and high renoun ;  
For in his time of strength he was the flour.  
He slow and raft the skinne of the leon ;  
He of Centaures laid the bost adoun ;  
He Harpies slow, the cruel briddes felle ;  
He golden apples raft fro the dragon ;  
He drow out Cerberus the hound of helle.

He slow the cruel tirant Busirus,  
And made his hors to fret him flesh and bon ;  
He slow the firy serpent venomous ;  
Of Achelous two hornes brake he on.  
And he slow Cacus in a cave of ston ;  
He slow the geaunt Anteus the strong ;  
He slow the grisely bore, and that anon ;  
And bare the hevne on his necke long.

Was never wight sith that the world began,  
That slow so many monstres, as did he ;  
Thurghout the wide world his name ran,  
What for his strength, and for his high bounteo ;  
And every reaume went he for to see,  
He was so strong that no man might him let ;  
At bothe the worldes endes, saith Trophee,  
In stede of boundes he a pillar set.

A lemman had this noble champion,  
That highte Deianire, as fresh as May ;  
And as thise clerkes maken mention,  
She hath him sent a sherte fresh and gay :  
Alas ! this sherte, alas and wala wa !  
Evenimed was sotilly withalle,  
That or that he had wered it half a day,  
It made his flesh all from his bones falle.

But natheles som clerkes hire excusen  
By on, that highte Nessus, that it maked ;  
Be as may be, I wol hire not accusen ;  
But on his bak this sherte he wered all naked,  
Til that his flesh was for the venim blaked :  
And whan he saw non other remedie ;  
In hote coles he hath himselven raked,  
For with no venime deigned him to die.

Thus starf this worthy mighty Hercules.  
Lo, who may trust on fortune any throw ?  
For him that folweth all this world of preas,  
Or he be ware, is oft ylaid ful lowe :  
Ful wise is he, that can himselven knowe.  
Beth ware, for whan that fortune list to glose,  
Than waiteth she hire man to overthrowe  
By swiche a way, as he wold lest suppose.

#### NABUCHODONOSOR.

The mighty trone, the precious tresor,  
The glorious sceptre, and real majestee,  
That hadde the king Nebuchodonosor,  
With tonge unnethes may deserved be.  
He twies wan Jerusalem the citee,  
The vessell of the temple he with him ladde ;  
At Babiloine was his souverain see,  
In which his glorie and his delit he hadde.

The fayrest children of the blood real  
Of Israel he did do gelde anon,  
And maked ech of hem to ben his thral.  
Amonges other Daniel was on,  
That was the wisest child of everich on ;  
For he the dremes of the king expouned,  
Wher as in Caldeo clerk ne was ther non,  
That wiste to what fin his dremes souned.

This proude king let make a statue of gold  
Sixty cubites long, and seven in brede,  
To which image bothe yonge and old  
Commanded he to loute, and have in drede,  
Or in a fourneis, ful of flames rede,  
He shuld be brent, that wolde not obeye :  
But never wold assenten to that dede  
Daniel, ne his yonge felawes tweye.

This king of kinges proud was and elat ;  
He wend that God, that sit in majestee,  
Ne might him nat bereve of his estat :  
But sodenly he lost his dignitee,  
And like a best him semed for to be,  
And ete hey as an oxe, and lay therout :  
In rain with wilde bestes walked he,  
Til certain time was ycome about.

And like an egles fethers wex his heres,  
His neyles like a briddes clawes were,  
Til God relesed him at certain yerea,  
And yaf him wit, and than with many a tere

He thanked God, and ever his lif in fere  
Was he to don amis, or more trespase ;  
And til that time he laid was on his bere,  
He knew that God was ful of might and grace.

#### BALTHASAR.

His sone, which that highte Balthasar,  
That held the regne after his fadres day,  
He by his fader coude not beware,  
For proude he was of herte, and of array :  
And eke an ydolaster was he ay.  
His high estat assured him in pride ;  
But fortune cast him down (and ther he lay)  
And sodenly his regne gan devide.

A feste he made unto his lordes alle  
Upon a time, and made hem blithe be,  
And than his officeres gan he calle ;  
Goth, bringeth forthe the vessels, quod he,  
Which that my fader in his prosperitee  
Out of the temple of Jerusalem beraft,  
And to our highe goddes thanke we  
Of honour, that our eldres with us laft.

His wif, his lordes, and his concubines  
Ay drunken, while hir appetites last,  
Out of thise noble vessels sondry wines.  
And on a wall this king his eyen cast,  
And saw an hand armles, that wrote ful fast,  
For fere of whiche he quoke, and siked sore.  
This hand, that Balthasar so sore agast,  
Wrote *Mane techel phares*, and no more.

In al that lond Magicien was non,  
That coude expounen what this lettre ment,  
But Daniel expouned it anon,  
And said ; O king, God to thy fader lent  
Glorie and honour, regne, tresour, and rent ;  
And he was proud, and nothing God ne dradde ;  
And therefore God gret wreche upon him sent,  
And him beraft the regne that he hadde.

He was out cast of mannes compaignie,  
With asses was his habitation ;  
And ete hey, as a best, in wete and drie,  
Til that he knew by grace and by reson,  
That God of heven hath domination  
Over every regne, and every creature :  
And than had God of him compassion,  
And him restored his regne and his figure.

Eke thou, that art his sone, art proud also,  
And knowest all thise thinges veraily ;  
And art rebel to God, and art his fo.  
Thou drank eke of his vessels boldely,  
Thy wif eke, and thy wenches sinfully  
Dranke of the same vessels sondry wines,  
And heried false goddes cursedly,  
Therefore to thee yshapen ful gret pine is.

This hand was sent fro God, that on the wall  
Wrote *Mane techel phares*, trusteth me ;  
Thy regne is don, thou weyest nought at all ;  
Divided is thy regne, and it shal be  
To Medes and to Perses yeven, quod he.  
And thilke same night this king was slawe ;  
And Darius occupied his degree,  
Though he therto had neither right ne lawe.

Lordinges, ensample hereby moun ye take,  
How that in lordship is no sikernesse :  
For whan that fortune wol a man forsake,  
She bereth away his regne and his riches,  
And eke his frendes, bothe more and lesse.  
For what man that hath frendes thurgh fortune,  
Mishap wol make hem enemies, I gesse.  
This proverbe is ful soth, and ful commune.

#### ZENOBIA.

Zenobia, of Palmerie the quene,  
(As writen Persiens of hire noblesse)  
So worthy was in armes, and so keene,  
That no wight passed hire in hardnesse,  
Ne in linage, ne in other gentillesse.  
Of kinges blood of Perse is she descended ;  
I say not that she hadde most fairenesse,  
But of hire shape she might not ben amended.

From hire childhode I finde that she fledde  
Office of woman, and to wode she went ;  
And many a wilde hartes blood she shadde  
With arwes brode that she to hem sent ;  
She was so swift, that she anon hem hent.  
And whan that she was elder, she wold kille  
Leons, leopards, and beres al to-rent,  
And in hire armes weld hem at hire wille.

She dorst the wilde bestes dennes seke,  
And rennen in the mountaignes all the night,  
And slepe under the bush ; and she coude eke  
Wrastlen by veray force and veray might  
With any yong man, were he never so wight ;  
Ther mighte nothing in hire armes stonde ;  
She kept hire maidenhode from every wight,  
To no man deigned hire for to be bonde.

But at the last hire frendes han hire married  
To Odenate, a prince of that contree ;  
Al were it so, that she hem longe taried.  
And ye shul understonden, how that he  
Hadde swiche fantasies as hadde she ;  
But natheles, whan they were knit in fere,  
They lived in joye, and in felicitee,  
For eche of hem had other lefe and dere.

Save o thing, that she n'olde never assente,  
By no way, that he shulde by hire lie  
But ones, for it was hire plaine entente  
To have a childe, the world to multiplie :  
And al so sone as that she might espie,  
That she was not with childe with that dede,  
Than would she suffer him don his fantasie  
Eftsone, and not but ones out of drede.

And if she were with child at thilke cast,  
No more shuld he playen thilke game  
Till fully fourty dayes weren past :  
Than wold she ones suffre him do the same.  
Al were this Odenate wild or tame,  
He gate no more of hire, for thus she sayde,  
It was to wives lecherie and shame,  
In other cas if that men with hem playde.

Two sones by this Odenate had she,  
The which she kept in vertue and lettrure,  
But now unto our tale turne we :  
I say, so worshipful a creature,

And wise therewith, and large with measure,  
So penible in the werre, and curteis eke,  
Ne more labour might in werre endure,  
Was non, though al this world men shulden seke.

Hire riche array ne mighte not be told,  
As wel in vessell as in hire clothing :  
She was al clad in pierrie and in gold,  
And eke she lefte not for non hunting  
To have of sondry tonges ful knowing,  
Whan that she leiser had, and for to entend  
To lernen bookes was all hire liking,  
How she in vertue might hire lif dispend.

And shortly of this storie for to trete,  
So doughty was hire husbond and eke she,  
That they conquered many regnes grete  
In the Orient, with many a faire citee,  
Appertenaunt unto the majestee  
Of Rome, and with strong hand held hem ful fast,  
Ne never might hir fomen don hem flee,  
Ay while that Odenates dayes last.

Hire batailles, who so list hem for to rede,  
Againe Sapor the king, and other mo,  
And how that all this processe fell in dede,  
Why she conquered, and what tittle therto,  
And after of hire mischefe and hire wo,  
How that she was beseged, and ytake,  
Let him unto my maister Petrark go,  
That writeth ynough of this, I undertake.

Whan Odenate was ded, she mightily  
The regnes held, and with hire propre hond  
Agains hire fos she fought so cruelly,  
That ther n'as king ne prince in all that lond,  
That he n'as glad, if he that grace fond  
That she ne wolde upon his lond werreye :  
With hire they maden alliaunce by bond  
To ben in pees, and let hire ride and playe.

The emperour of Rome Claudius,  
Ne, him befor, the Romain Galien  
Ne dorste never be so corageous,  
Ne non Ermin, ne non Egiptien,  
Ne Surrien, ne non Arabien  
Within the feld ne dorste with hire fight,  
Lest that she wold hem with hire hondes slen,  
Or with hire meinie putten hem to flight.

In kinges habite went hire sones two,  
As heires of hir fadres regnes alle,  
And Heremanno and Timolao  
Hir names were, as Persiens hem calle.  
But ay fortune hath in hire hony galle :  
This mighty quene may no while endure,  
Fortune out of hire regne made hire falle  
To wretchednesse, and to misaventure.

Aurelian, whan that the governance  
Of Rome came into his hondes tway,  
He shope upon this quene to do vengeance,  
And with his legions he toke his way  
Toward Zenobie, and shortly for to say,  
He made hire flee, and atte last hire hent,  
And fettred hire, and eke hire children tway,  
And wan the lond, and home to Rome he went.

Amonges other thinges that he wan,  
Hire char, that was with gold wrought and pierrie,  
This grete Romain, this Aurelian  
Hath with him lad, for that men shuld it see.  
Beforen his triumphe walketh she  
With gilte chaines on hire necke honging,  
Crouned she was, as after hire degree,  
And ful of pierrie charged hire clothing.

Alas fortune ! she that whilom was  
Dredeful to kinges and to emperoures,  
Now guareth all the peple on hire, alas !  
And she that helmed was in starke stoures,  
And wan by force tounes stronge and toures,  
Shal on hire hed now were a vitremite :  
And she that bare the sceptre ful of flouris,  
Shal bere a distaf hire cost for to quite.

#### NERO.

Although that Nero were as vicious,  
As any fend, that lith ful low adoun,  
Yet he, as telleth us Suetonius,  
This wide world had in subjection,  
Both Est and West, South and Septentrioun.  
Of rubies, saphires, and of perles white  
Were all his clothes brouded up and down,  
For he in gemmes gretly gan delite.

More delicat, more pompous of array,  
More proude, was never emperour than he ;  
That ilke cloth that he had wered o day,  
After that time he n'olde it never see ;  
Nettes of gold threde had he gret plentee  
To fish in Tiber, whan him list to play ;  
His lustes were as law, in his degree,  
For fortune as his frend wold him obey.

He Rome brente for his delicacie ;  
The senatours he slow upon a day,  
To heren how that men wold wepe and crie ;  
And slow his brother, and by his suster lay.  
His moder made he in pitous array,  
For he hire wombe let slitten, to behold  
Wher he conceived was, so wala wa !  
That he so litel of his moder told.

No tere out of his eyen for that sight  
Ne came, but sayd, a faire woman was she.  
Gret wonder is, how that he coud or might  
Be domesman of hire dede beautee :  
The wine to bringen him commanded he,  
And drank anon, non other wo he made.  
Whan might is joined unto crueltee,  
Alas ! to depe wol the venime wade.

In youthe a maister had this emperour  
To techen him lettrure and curtesie,  
For of moralitee he was the flour,  
As in his time, but if bookes lie.  
And while this maister had of him maistrie,  
He makid him so conning and so souple,  
That longe time it was, or tyrannie,  
Or any vice dorst in him uncouple.

This Seneka, of which that I devise,  
Because Nero had of him swiche drede,  
For he fro vices wold him ay chastise  
Discretly, as by word, and not by dede.

Sire, he wold say, an emperour mote nede  
Be vertuous, and haten tyrannie.  
For which he made him in a bathe to blede  
On bothe his armes, till he muste die.

This Nero had eke of a custumaunce  
In youth ageins his maister for to rise ;  
Which afterward him thought a gret grevaunce,  
Therefore he made him dien in this wise.  
But natheles this Seneka the wise  
Chees in a bathe to die in this manere,  
Rather than han another turmentise :  
And thus hath Nero slain his maister dere.

Now fell it so, that fortune list no longer  
The highe pride of Nero to cherice :  
For though that he were strong, yet was she stronger.  
She thoughte thus ; by God I am to nice  
To set a man, that is fulfilled of vice,  
In high degree, and emperour him calle :  
By God out of his sete I wol him trice,  
Whan he lest weneth, sonest shal he falle.

The peple rose upon him on a night  
For his defeaute, and whan he it espied,  
Out of his dores anon he hath him dight  
Alone, and ther he wend han ben allied,  
He knocked fast, and ay the more he cried,  
The faster shetten they hir dores alle :  
Tho wist he wel he had himself misgied,  
And went his way, no longer dorst he calle.

The peple cried and rombled up and down,  
That with his eres herd he how they sayde,  
Wher is this false tyrant, this Neroun ?  
For fere almost out of his wit he brayde,  
And to his goddes pitously he preide  
For socour, but it mighte not betide :  
For drede of this him thoughte that he deide,  
And ran into a gardin him to hide.

And in this gardin fond he cherles tweye  
That saten by a fire gret and red,  
And to thise cherles two he gan to preye  
To slen him, and to girden of his hed,  
That to his body, whan that he were ded,  
Were no despit ydon for his defame.  
Himself he slow, he coud no better rede,  
Of which fortune lough and hadde a game.

#### HOLOFERNES.

Was never capitaine under a king,  
That regnes mo put in subiectioun,  
Ne strengre was in feld of alle thing  
As in his time, ne greter of renoun,  
Ne more pompous in high presumptioun,  
Than Holoferne, which that fortune ay kist  
So likerously, and lad him up and down,  
Til that his hed was of, or that he wist.

Not only that this world had him in awe  
For lesing of richesse and libertee ;  
But he made every man reneie his lawe.  
Nabuchodonosor was God, sayd he ;  
Non other God ne shulde honoured be.  
Ageins his heste ther dare no wight trespass,  
Save in Bethulia, a strong citee,  
Wher Eliachim a preest was of that place.

But take kepe of the deth of Holoferne :  
Amid his host he dronken lay a night  
Within his tente, large as is a berne ;  
And yet for all his pompe and all his might,  
Judith, a woman, as he lay upright  
Sleping, his hed of smote, and fro his tente  
Ful prively she stole from every wight,  
And with his hed unto hire toun she wente.

#### ANTIOCHUS.

What nedeth it of king Antiochus  
To tell his high and real majestee,  
His gret pride, and his werkes venomous ?  
For swiche another was ther non as he ;  
Redeth what that he was in Machabe.  
And redeth the proud wordes that he seid,  
And why he fell from his prosperitee,  
And in an hill how wretchedly he deid.

Fortune him had enhaunsed so in pride,  
That veraily he wend he might attaine  
Unto the sterres upon every side,  
And in a balaunce weyen eche mountaine,  
And all the floodes of the see restraine :  
And Goddes peple had he most in hate,  
Hem wold he sleen in turment and in peine,  
Wening that God ne might his pride abate.

And for that Nichanor and Timothee  
With Jewes were venquished mightily,  
Unto the Jewes swiche an hate had he,  
That he bad greithe his char ful hastily,  
And swore and sayde ful despitously,  
Unto Jerusalem he wold eftsoone  
To wreke his ire on it ful cruelly,  
But of his purpos was he let ful sone.

God for his manace him so sore smote,  
With invisible wound, ay incurable,  
That in his guttes carfe it so and bote,  
Til thatte his peines weren importable ;  
And certainly the wreche was reasonable,  
For many a mannes guttes did he peine ;  
But from his purpos, cursed and damnable,  
For all his smerte, he n'olde him not restraine :

But bade anon apparailen his host.  
And sodenly, or he was of it ware,  
God daunted all his pride, and all his tost ;  
For he so sore fell out of his chare,  
That it his limmes and his skinne to-tare,  
So that he neither mighte go ne ride ;  
But in a chaire men about him bare,  
Alle forbrused bothe bak and side.

The wreche of God him smote so cruelly,  
That thurgh his body wicked wormes crept,  
And therewithal he stanke so horribly,  
That non of all his meinie that him kept,  
Whether so that he woke or elles slept,  
Ne mighte not of him the stinke endure.  
In this mischiefe he wailed and eke wept,  
And knew God, Lord of every creature.

To all his host, and to himself also  
Ful wlatson was the stinke of his careine ;  
No man ne mighte him beren to ne fro.  
And in this stinke, and this horrible peine,



He starf ful wretchedly in a mountaine.  
Thus hath this robbour, and this homicide,  
That many a man made to wepe and pleine,  
Swiche guerdon, as belongeth unto pride.

#### ALEXANDER.

The storie of Alexandre is so commune,  
That every wight, that hath discretioun,  
Hath herd somewhat or all of his fortune.  
This wide world, as in conclusioun,  
He wan by strength, or for his high renoun  
They weren glad for poes unto him sende.  
The pride of man and boost he layd adoun,  
Wher so he came, unto the worldes ende.

Comparison might never yet be maked  
Betwix him and another conquerour,  
For al this world for drede of him hath quaked ;  
He was of knighthode and of fredome flour ;  
Fortune him maked the heir of hire honour.  
Save wine and women, nothing might asswage  
His high entente in armes and labour,  
So was he ful of leonin corage.

What pris were it to him, though I you told  
Of Darius, and an hundred thousand mo,  
Of kinges, princes, dukes, erles bold,  
Which he conquered, and brought hem into wo !  
I say, as fer as man may ride or go  
The world was his, what shuld I more devise !  
For though I wrote or told you ever mo  
Of his knighthode, it mighte not suffice.

Twelf yere he regned, as saith Machabe ;  
Philippus sone of Macedoine he was,  
That first was king in Grece the contree.  
O worthy gentil Alexandre, alas  
That ever shuld thee fallen swiche a cas !  
Enpoisoned of thyn owen folke thou were ;  
Thy sis fortune hath turned into an as,  
And yet for thee ne wept she never a tere.

Who shal me yeven teres to complaine  
The deth of gentillesse, and of fraunchise,  
That all this world welded in his demaine,  
And yet him thought it mighte not suffice !  
So ful was his corage of high emprise.  
Alas ! who shal me helpen to endite  
False fortune, and poison to despise !  
The whiche two of all this wo I wite.

#### JULIUS CESAR.

By wisdom, manhode, and by gret labour,  
From humblehede to real majestee  
Up rose he Julius the conquerour,  
That wau all the occident, by lond and see,  
By strengthe of hond, or elles by trettee,  
And unto Rome made hem tributarie ;  
And sith of Rome the emperour was he,  
Til that fortune wexe his adversarie.

O mighty Cesar, that in Thessalie  
Ageins Pompeius father thin in lawe,  
That of the orient had all the chivalrie,  
As fer as that the day beginneth dawe,  
Thou thurgh thy knighthode hast hem take and slawe,  
Save fewe folk, that with Pompeius fledde,  
Thurgh which thou put all the orient in awe,  
Thanke fortune, that so wel thee spedde.

But now a litel while I wol bewaile  
This Pompeius, this noble governour  
Of Rome, which that fled at this bataille.  
I say, on of his men, a false traitour,  
His hed of smote, to winnen him favour  
Of Julius, and him the hed he brought :  
Alas, Pompeie, of the orient conquerour,  
That fortune unto swiche a fin thee brought !

To Rome again repaireth Julius  
With his triumphe laureat ful hie,  
But on a time Brutus and Cassius,  
That ever had of his high estat envie,  
Ful prively had made conspiracie  
Ageins this Julius in sotil wise :  
And cast the place, in which he shulde die  
With bodekins, as I shal you devise.

This Julius to the capitolie wente  
Upon a day, as he was wont to gon,  
And in the capitolie anon him hente  
This false Brutus, and his other foon,  
And stiked him with bodekins anon  
With many a wound, and thus they let him lie :  
But never gront he at no stroke but on,  
Or elles at two, but if his storie lie.

So manly was this Julius of herte,  
And so wel loved estatly honestee,  
That though his dedly woundes sore smerte,  
His mantel over his hippees caste he,  
For no man shulde seen his privetee :  
And as he lay of dying in a trance,  
And wiste veraily that ded was he,  
Of honestee yet had he remembrance.

Lucan, to thee this storie I recomende,  
And to Sueton, and Valerie also,  
That of this storie writen word and ende :  
How that to thise gret conqueroures two  
Fortune was first a frend, and sith a fo.  
No man ne trust upon hire favour long,  
But have hire in await for evermo ;  
Witnesse on all thise conqueroures strong.

#### CÆSUS.

The riche Cresus, whilom king of Lide,  
Of whiche Cresus, Cirus sore him dradde,  
Yet was he caught amidde all his pride,  
And to be brent men to the fire him ladde :  
But swiche a rain down from the welken shadde,  
That slow the fire, and made to him escape :  
But to beware no grace yet he hadde,  
Til fortune on the galwes made him gape.

Whan he escaped was, he can not stint  
For to beginne a newe werre again :  
He wened wel, for that fortune him sent  
Swiche hap, that he escaped thurgh the rain,  
That of his foos he mighte not be slain ;  
And eke a sweven upon a night he mette,  
Of which he was so proud, and eke so fain,  
That in vengeance he all his herte sette.

Upon a tree he was, as that him thought,  
Ther Jupiter him wesshe, both bak and side ;  
And Phebus eke a faire towail him brought  
To drie him with, and therefore wex his pride.

And to his doughter that stood him beside,  
Which that he knew in high science habound,  
He bad hire tell him what it signified,  
And she his dreame began right thus expound.

The tree (quod she) the galwes is to mene,  
And Jupiter betokeneth snow and rain,  
And Phebus with his towail clere and clene,  
Tho ben the sonnes stremes, soth to sain :  
Thou shalt anhangd be, fader, certain ;  
Rain shal thee wash, and sonne shal thee drie.  
Thus warned him ful plat and eke ful plain  
His doughter, which that called was Phanie.

Anhangd was Cresus the proude king,  
His real trone might him not availle :  
Tragedie is non other maner thing,  
Ne can in singing crien ne bewaile,  
But for that fortune all day wol assaille  
With unware stroke the regnes that ben proude :  
For whan men trusten hire, than wol she faille,  
And cover hire bright face with a cloude.

#### PETER OF SPAINNE.

O noble, o worthy Petro, glorie of Spaine,  
Whom fortune held so high in majestee,  
Wel oughten men thy pitous deth complaine.  
Out of thy lond thy brother made thee flee,  
And after at a sege by sotiltee  
Thou were betraied, and lad unto his tent,  
Wher as he with his owen hond slow thee,  
Succeeding in thy regne and in thy rent.

The feld of snow, with th'egle of blak therin,  
Caught with the limerod, coloured as the glede,  
He brewed this cursednesse, and all this sinne ;  
The wicked neste was werker of this dede ;  
Not Charles Oliver, that toke ay hede  
Of trouthe and honour, but of Armorique  
Genilon Oliver, corrupt for mede,  
Broughte this worthy king in swiche a brike.

#### PETRO, KING OF CYPRE.

O worthy Petro king of Cypre also,  
That Alexandrie wan by high maistrie,  
Ful many an hethen wroughtest thou ful wo,  
Of which thin owen lieges had envie :  
And for no thing but for thy chivalrie,  
They in thy bed han slain thee by the morwe ;  
Thus can fortune hire whele governe and gie,  
And out of joye bringen men to sorwe.

#### BARNABO VISCOUNT.

Of Milane grete Barnabo Viscount,  
God of delit, and scourge of Lumbardie,  
Why shuld I not thin infortune account,  
Sith in estat thou clomben were so high !  
Thy brothers sone, that was thy double allie,  
For he thy nevew was, and sone in lawe,  
Within his prison made he thee to die,  
But why, ne how, n'ot I that thou were slawe.

#### HUGELIN OF PISE.

Of the erl Hugelin of Pise the langour  
Ther may no tonge tellen for pitee.  
But litel out of Pise stant a tour,  
In whiche tour in prison yput was he,  
And with him ben his litel children three,  
The eldest scarcely five yere was of ago :  
Alas ! fortune, it was gret crueltee  
Swiche briddes for to put in swiche a cage.

Dampned was he to die in that prison,  
For Roger, which that bishop was of Pise,  
Had on him made a false suggestion,  
Thurgh which the peple gan upon him rise,  
And put him in prison, in swiche a wise,  
As ye han herd ; and mete and drinke he had  
So smale, that wel unnethe it may suffice,  
And therwithal it was ful poure and bad.

And on a day befell, that in that houre,  
Whan that his mete wont was to be brought,  
The gailer shette the dores of the toure ;  
He hered it wel, but he spake right nought.  
And in his herte anon ther fell a thought,  
That they for hunger wolden do him dien ;  
Alas ! quod he, alas that I was wrought !  
Therwith the teres fellen fro his eyen.

His yonge sone, that threo yere was of age,  
Unto him said, fader, why do ye wepe !  
Whan will the gailer bringen our potage !  
Is ther no morsel bred that ye do kepe !  
I am so hungry, that I may not slepe.  
Now wolde God that I might alepen ever,  
Than shuld not hunger in my wombe crepe ;  
Ther n'is no thing, sauf bred, that me were lever.

Thus day by day this childe began to crie,  
Til in his fadres barme adoun it lay,  
And saide ; farewell, fader, I mote die ;  
And kist his fader, and dide the same day.  
And whan the woful fader did it sey,  
For wo his armes two he gan to bite,  
And saide, alas ! fortune, and wala wa !  
Thy false whele my wo all may I wite.

His children wenden, that for hunger it was  
That he his armes gnowe, and not for wo,  
And sayden : fader, do not so, alas !  
But rather ete the flesh upon us two.  
Our flesh thou yaf us, take our flesh us fro,  
And ete ynough : right thus they to him seide,  
And after that, within a day or two,  
They laide hem in his lappe adoun, and deide.

Himself dispeired eke for hunger starf.  
Thus ended is this mighty Erl of Pise :  
From high estat fortune away him carf.  
Of this tragedie it ought ynough suffice ;  
Who so wol here it in a longer wise,  
Redeth the grete poete of Itaille,  
That highte Dante, for he can it devise  
Fro point to point, not o word wol he faille.

## THE NONNES PREESTES TALE.

## THE NONNES PREESTES PROLOGUE.

Ho ! quod the knight, good sire, no more of this :  
That ye han said, it right ynough ywis,  
And mochel more ; for litel hevinessse  
Is right ynough to mochel folk, I gesse.  
I say for me, it is a gret disese,  
Wher as men have ben in gret welth and ese,  
To heren of hir soden fall, alas !  
And the contrary is joye and gret solas,  
As whan a man hath ben in poure estat,  
And climbeth up, and wexeth fortunat,  
And ther abideth in prosperitee :  
Swiche thing is gladsom, as it thinketh me,  
And of swiche thing were goodly for to telle.

Ye, quod our hoste, by Saint Poules belle,  
Ye say right soth ; this monk hath clapped loudes :  
He spake, how fortune covered with a cloude  
I wote not what, and als of a tragedie  
Right now ye herd : and parde no remedie  
It is for to bewailen, ne complaine  
That that is don, and als it is a paine,  
As ye han said, to here of hevinessse.  
Sire monk, no more of this, so God you blesse ;  
Your tale anyeth all this compaignie ;  
Swiche talking is not worth a boterflie,  
For therin is ther no disport ne game :  
Therefore, sire monk, dan Piers by your name,  
I pray you hertely, tell us somwhat elles,  
For sikerly, n'ere clinking of your belles,  
That on your bridel hange on every side,  
By heaven king, that for us alle dide,  
I shuld er this have fallen doun for slepe,  
Although the slough had ben never so depe :  
Than hadde your tale all ben tolde in vain.  
For certainly, as that thise clerkes sain,  
Wher as a man may have non audience,  
Nought helpeth it to tellen his sentence.  
And wel I wote the substance is in me,  
If any thing shal wel reported be.

Sire, say somewhat of hunting, I you pray.

Nay, quod this Monk, I have no lust to play :  
Now let another telle as I have told.

Than spake our hoste with rude speche and bold,  
And sayd unto the Nonnes Preest anon,  
Come nere, thou preest, come hither, thou Sire  
John,

Telle us swiche thing, as may our hertes glade.  
Be blithe, although thou ride upon a jade.  
What though thyn horse be bothe foule and lene,  
If he wol serve thee, recke thee not a bene :  
Loke that thyn herte be mery evermo.

Yes, hoste, quod he, so mote I ride or go,  
But I be mery, ywis I wol be blamed.  
And right anon his tale he hath attamed ;  
And thus he said unto us everich on,  
This swete preest, this goodly man Sire John.

## THE NONNES PREESTES TALE.

A poure widewe somdel stoupen in age,  
Was whilom dwelling in a narwe cotege,  
Beside a grove, standing in a dale.  
This widewe, which I tell you of my tale,  
Sin thilke day that she was last a wif,  
In patience led a ful simple lif.  
For litel was hire catel and hire rente :  
By husbandry of swiche as God hire sente,  
She found hireself, and eke hire doughtren two.  
Three large sowes had she, and no mo :  
Three kine and eke a sheep that highte Malle.  
Ful sooty was hire boure, and eke hire halle,  
In which she ete many a slender mele.  
Of poinant sauce ne knew she never a dele.  
No deintee morsel passed thurgh hire throte ;  
Hire diete was accordant to hire cote.  
Replecion ne made hire never sike ;  
Attempre diete was all hire physike,  
And exercise, and hertes suffisance.  
The goute let hire nothing for to dance,  
No apoplexie shente not hire hed.  
No win ne dranke she, neyther white ne red :  
Hire bord was served most with white and black,  
Milk and broun bred, in which she fond no lack,  
Seinde bacon, and sometime an ey or twey ;  
For she was as it were a maner dey.

A yerd she had, enclosed all about  
With stickes, and a drie diche without,  
In which she had a cok highte Chaunteclere,  
In all the land of crowing n'as his pere.  
His vois was merier than the mery orgon,  
On masse daies that in the chirches gon.  
Wel sikerer was his crowing in his loge,  
Than is a klok, or any abbey orloge.  
By nature he knew eche ascencion  
Of the equinoctial in thilke toun ;  
For whan degrees fiftene were ascended,  
Than crew he, that it might not ben amended.

His combe was redder than the fin corall,  
Enbattelled, as it were a castel wall.  
His bill was black, and as the jet it shone ;  
Like asure were his legges and his tone ;  
His nailes whiter than the lily flour,  
And like the burned gold was his colour.

This gentil cok had in his governance  
Seven hennes, for to don all his plesance,  
Which were his susters and his paramoures,  
And wonder like to him, as of colours.  
Of which the fairest lewed in the throte,  
Was cleped faire damoselle Pertelote.  
Curteis she was, discrete, and debonaire,  
And compenable, and bare hireself so faire,  
Sithen the day that she was sevennight old,  
That trewelich she hath the herte in hold  
Of Chaunteclere, loken in every lith :  
He loved hire so, that wel was him therwith.  
But swiche a joye it was to here hem sing,  
Whan that the brighte sonne gan to spring,

rd : my lefe is fare in lond.  
ime, as I have understand,  
iddes couden speke and sing.  
ll, that in a dawening,  
re among his wives alle  
rche, that was in the halle,  
sate his faire Pertelote,  
lere gan gronen in his throte,  
u his dreme is dretched sore.  
t Pertelote thus herd him rore,  
, and saide, herte dere,  
ou to grone in this manere ?  
y slepe, fy for shame.  
wered and sayde thus ; madame,  
at ye take it not agrefe :  
ette I was in swiche mischefe  
at yet min herte is sore afright.  
d he) my sweven recche aright,  
body out of foule prisoun.  
ow that I romed up and doun  
rde, wher as I saw a beste,  
ound, and wold han made areste  
y, and han had me ded.  
s betwix yelwe and red ;  
as his tail, and both his eres  
nlike the remenant of his heres.  
smal, with glowing eyen twey :  
ce almost for fere I dey :  
ie my groning douteles.  
she, fy on you herteles.  
he, for by that God above  
st myn herte and all my love ;  
a coward by my faith.  
at so any woman saith,  
i, if it mighte be,  
isbond, hardy, wise and free,  
nd non niggard no no fool,  
s agast of every tool,  
our by that God above.  
ye for shame say to your love,  
g might maken you aferde ?  
unces herte, and han a berde ?  
a ye ben agast of swevenis ?  
anitee, god wote, in sweven is  
ngendren of repletions,  
ne, and of complexions,  
rs ben to habundant in a wight.  
eme, which ye han met to-night,  
grete superfluitee  
colera parde,  
h folk to dreden in hir dremes  
of fire with rede lemes,  
s, that they wol hem bite,  
id of waspes gret and lite ;  
umour of melancolie  
any a man in slepe to crie,  
lles, and of beres blake,  
blake devils wol hem take.  
mours coud I telle also,  
many a man in slepe moch wo :  
se, as lightly as I can.  
which that was so wise a man,  
us ? Ne do no force of dremes.  
quod she, whan we flee from the bemes,  
ve, as take som laxatif :  
y soule, and of my lif,  
the best, I wol not lie,  
coler, and of melancolie  
; and for ye shul not tarie,  
a toun be non apotecarie,

I shal myself two herbes techen you,  
That shal be for your hele, and for your prow ;  
And in our yerde, the herbes shall I finde,  
The which han of hir propretee by kinde  
To purgen you benethe, and eke above.  
Sire, forgete not this for Goddes love ;  
Ye ben ful colerike of complexion ;  
Ware that the sonne in his ascencion  
Ne finde you not replete of humours hote :  
And if it do, I dare wel lay a grote,  
That ye shul han a fever tertiane,  
Or elles an ague, that may be your bane.  
A day or two ye shul han digestives  
Of wormes, or ye take your laxatives,  
Of laureole, centaurie, and fumetere,  
Or elles of ellebor, that groweth there,  
Of catapuce, or of gaitre-beries,  
Or herbe ive growing in our yerd, that mery is :  
Picke hem right as they grow, and ete hem in.  
Beth mery, husbond, for your fader kin ;  
Dredeth no dreme ; I can say you no more,

Madame, quod he, *grand mercy* of your lore.  
But natheles, as touching dan Caton,  
That hath of wisdom swiche a gret renoun,  
Though that he bade no dremes for to drede,  
By God, men moun in olde bookes rede,  
Of many a man, more of auctoritee  
Than ever Caton was, so mote I the, *there*  
That all the revers sayn of his sentence,  
And han wel founden by experience,  
That dremes ben significacions  
As wel of joye, as tribulations,  
That folk enduren in this lif present.  
Ther nedeth make of this non argument ;  
The veray preve sheweth it inde.

On of the grettest auctours that men rede,  
Saith thus ; that whilom twey felawes wente  
On pilgrimage in a ful good entente ;  
And happed so, they came into a toun,  
Wher ther was swiche a congregatioun  
Of peple, and eke so streit of herbergage,  
That they ne founde as moche as a cotege,  
In which they bothe might ylogged be :  
Wherefore they musten of necessitee,  
As for that night, departen compaignie ;  
And eche of hem goth to his hostelrie,  
And toke his logging as it wolde falle.

That on of hem was logged in a stalle,  
Fer in a yerd, with oxen of the plough ;  
That other man was logged wel ynough,  
As was his aventure, or his fortune,  
That us governeth all, as in commune.

And so befell, that, long or it were day,  
This man met in his bed, ther as he lay, *cl. came*  
How that his felaw gan upon him calle,  
And said, alas ! for in an oxes stalle  
This night shal I be mordred, ther I lie.  
Now helpe me, dere brother, or I die ;  
In alle haste come to me, he saide.

This man out of his slepe for fere abraido ;  
But whan that he was waked of his slepe,  
He turned him, and toke of this no kepe ;  
Him thought his dreme was but a vanitee.  
Thus twies in his sleeping dremed he.

And at the thridd time yet his felaw  
Came, as him thought, and said, I now am slaw :  
Behold my bloody woundes, depe and wide.  
Arise up erly, in the morwe tide,  
And at the West gate of the toun (quod he)  
A carte ful of donge ther shalt thou see,

In which my body is hid prively.  
Do thilke carte arresten holdely.  
My gold caused my mordre, soth to sain.  
And told him every point how he was slain  
With a ful pitous face, pale of hewe.  
And trusteth wel, his dreme he found ful trewe.  
For on the morwe, as sone as it was day,  
To his felawes inne he toke his way :  
And whan that he came to this oxes stalle,  
After his felaw he began to calle.

The hosteler answered him anon,  
And saide, Sire, your felaw is agon,  
As sone as day he went out of the toun.

This man gan fallen in suspicioun  
Remembring on his dremes that he mette, *dreamed*  
And forth he goth, no lenger wold he lette,  
Unto the West gate of the toun, and fond  
A dong carte, as it went for to dong lond,  
That was arraied in the same wise  
As ye han herde the dede man devise :  
And with an hardy herte he gan to crie,  
Vengeance and justice of this felonie :  
My felaw mordred is this same night,  
And in this carte he lith, gaping upright.  
I crie out on the ministres, quod he,  
That shulden kepe and reulen this citee :  
Harow ! alas ! here lith myfelaw slain.

What shuld I more unto this tale sain ?  
The peple-out stert, and cast the cart to ground,  
And in the middel of the dong they found  
The dede man, that mordred was all newe.

O blisful God, that art so good and trewe,  
Lo, how that thou bewreyest mordre alway.  
Mordre wol out, that see we day by day.  
Mordre is so wlatson and abhominable  
To God, that is so just and resonable,  
That he ne wol not suffre it hyllid be : *hiddelen*  
Though it abide a yere, or two, or three,  
Mordre wol out, this is my conclusioun.

And right anon, the ministres of the toun  
Han hent the carter, and so sore him pined,  
And eke the hosteler so sore engined,  
That they beknew hir wickednesse anon,  
And were anhangid by the necke bon.

Here moun ye see that dremes ben to drede.  
And certes in the same book I rede,  
Right in the nexte chapitre after this,  
(I gabbe not, so have I joye and blis)  
Two men that wold han passed over the see  
For certain cause in to a fer contree,  
If that the wind ne hadde ben contrarie,  
That made hem in a citee for to tarie,  
That stood ful mery upon an haven side.  
But on a day, agein the even tide,  
The wind gan change, and blew right as hem lest.  
Jolif and glad they wenten to hir rest,  
And casten hem ful erly for to saile ;  
But to that o man fell a gret mervaille.

That on of hem in sleping as he lay,  
He mette a wonder dreme, again the day :  
Him thought a man stood by his beddes side,  
And him commanded, that he shuld abide,  
And said him thus ; if thou to-morwe wende,  
Thou shalt be dreint ; my tale is at an ende.

He woke, and told his felaw what he met,  
And praied him his viage for to let,  
As for that day, he prayd him for to abide.

His felaw that lay by his beddes side,  
Gan for to laugh, and scorned him ful faste.  
No dreme, quod he, may so my herte agaste,

That I wol leten for to do my thinges.  
I sette not a straw by thy dreminges,  
For awevens ben but vanitees and japes.  
Men dreme al day of oules and of apes, *hild fancey*  
And eke of many a mase therewithal ;  
Men dreme of thing that never was, ne shal  
But sith I see that thou wolt here abide,  
And thus forslouthen wilfully thy tide,  
God wot it reweth me, and have good day.

And thus he took his leve, and went his way.  
But or that he had half his cours ysailed,  
N'ot I not why, ne what meschance it ailed,  
But casuelly the shippes bottom rente,  
And ship and man under the water wente  
In sight of other shippes ther beside,  
That with him sailed at the same tide.

And therefore, faire Pertelote so dere,  
By swiche ensamples olde maist thou lere,  
That no man shulde be to reccheles  
Of dremes, for I say thee douteles,  
That many a dreme ful sore is for to drede.

Lo, in the lif of saint Kenelme, I rede,  
That was Kenulphus sone, the noble king  
Of Mercenrike, how Kenelm mette a thing.  
A litel or he were mordred on a day,  
His mordre in his avision he say.  
His norice him expouned every del  
His aweven, and bade him for to kepe him wel  
Fro treson ; but he n'as but seven yere old,  
And therefore litel tale hath he told  
Of any dreme, so holy was his herte.  
By God I hadde lever than my sherte,  
That ye had red his legend, as have I.

Dame Pertelote, I say you trewely,  
Macrobius, that writ the avision  
In Affrike of the worthy Scipion,  
Affirmeth dremes, and sayth that they ben  
Warning of thinges, that men after seen.

And furthermore, I pray you loketh wel  
In the olde Testament, of Daniel,  
If he held dremes any vanitee.

Rede eke of Joseph, and ther shuln ye see  
Wher dremes ben sometime (I say not alle)  
Warning of thinges that shuln after falle.

Loke of Egipt the king, dan Pharaao,  
His baker and his boteler also,  
Wheder they ne felten non effect in dremes.  
Who so wol seken actes of sondry remes,  
May rede of dremes many a wonder thing.

Lo Cresus, which that was of Lydie king,  
Mette he not that he sat upon a tree,  
Which signified he shuld anhangid be !

Lo hire Andromacha, Hector's wif,  
That day that Hector shulde lese his lif,  
She dremed on the same night beforene,  
How that the lif of Hector shuld be lorne,  
If thilke day he went into bataille :  
She warnid him, but it might not availle ;  
He went forth for to fighten natheles,  
And was yslein anon of Achilles.

But thilke tale is al to long to telle,  
And eke it is nigh day, I may not dwelle.  
Shortly I say, as for conclusion,  
That I shal han of this avision  
Adversitee : and I say furthermore,  
That I ne tell of laxatives no store,  
For they ben venomous, I wot it wel :  
I hem defie, I love hem never a del.

But let us speke of mirthe, and stinte all this ;  
Madame Pertelote, so have I blis,

Of o thing God hath sent me large grace :  
 For whan I see the beautee of your face,  
 Ye ben so scarlet red about your eyen,  
 It maketh all my drede for to dien,  
 For, al so siker as *In principio*,

*Mulier est hominis confusio.*

(Madame, the sentence of this Latine is,  
 Woman is mannes joye and mannes blis.)  
 For whan I fele a-night your softe side,  
 Al be it that I may not on you ride,  
 For that our perche is made so narwe, alas!  
 I am so ful of joye and of solas,  
 That I defie bothe sweven and dreame.

And with that word he flew doun fro the beme,  
 For it was day, and eke his hennes alle;  
 And with a chuk he gan hem for to calle,  
 For he had found a corn, lay in the yerd.  
 Real he was, he was no more aferd;  
 He fethered Pertelote twenty time,  
 And trade hire eke as oft, er it was prime.  
 He loketh as it were a grim leoun;  
 And on his toos he rometh up and doun,  
 Him deigned not to set his feet to ground:  
 He chukketh, whan he hath a corn yfound,  
 And to him rennen than his wives alle.

Thus real, as a prince is in his halle,  
 Leve I this Chaunteclere in his pasture;  
 And after wol I tell his aventure.

Whan that the month in which the world began,  
 That highte March, whan God first maked man,  
 Was complete, and ypassed were also,  
 Sithen March ended, thritty dayes and two,  
 Befell that Chaunteclere in all his pride,  
 His seven wives walking him beside,  
 Cast up his eyen to the brighte sonne,  
 That in the signe of Taurus hadde yronne  
 Twenty degrees and on, and somwhat more:  
 He knew by kind, and by non other lore,  
 That it was prime, and crew with blisful steven.

The sonne, he said, is clomben up on heven  
 Twenty degrees and on, and more ywis.  
 Madame Pertelote, my worldes blis,  
 Herkeneth thise blisful briddes how they sing,  
 And see the freshe floures how they spring;  
 Ful is min herte of revel, and solas.

But sodenly him fell a sorweful cas;  
 For ever the latter ende of joye is wo:  
 God wote that worldly joye is sone ago:  
 And if a rethor coude faire endite,  
 He in a chronicle might it saufly write,  
 As for a souveraine notabilitee.

Now every wise man let him herken me:  
 This story is al so trewe, I undertake,  
 As is the book of Launcelot du lake,  
 That women holde in ful gret reverence.  
 Now wol I turne agen to my sentence.

A gol fox, ful of sleigh iniquitee,  
 That in the grove had wonned yeres three,  
 By high imagination forecast,  
 The same night thurghout the hegges brast  
 Into the yerd, ther Chaunteclere the faire  
 Was wont, and eke his wives, to repaire:  
 And in a bedde of wortes stille he lay,  
 Till it was passed undern of the day,  
 Waiting his time on Chaunteclere to falle:  
 As gladly don thise homicides alle,  
 That in await ligen to mordre men.

O false morderour, rucking in thy den!  
 O newe Scariot, newe Genelon!  
 O false dissimulour, o Greek Sinon,

That broughtest Troye al utterly to sorwe!  
 O Chaunteclere, accursed be the morwe,  
 That thou into thy yerd flew fro the bemes:  
 Thou were ful wel ywarned by thy dremes,  
 That thilke day was perilous to thee.  
 But what that God forewote most nedes be,  
 After the opinion of certain clerkes.  
 Witnesse on him, that any parfit clerk is,  
 That in scole is gret alteration  
 In this matere, and gret disputison,  
 And hath ben of an hundred thousand men.  
 But I ne cannot bould it to the bren,  
 As can the holy doctour Augustin,  
 Or Boece, or the bishop Bradwardin,  
 Whether that Goddes worthy foreweting  
 Streineth me nedely for to don a thing,  
 (Nedely clepe I simple necessitee)  
 Or elles if free choise be granted me  
 To do that same thing, or do it nought,  
 Though God forewot it, or that it was wrought;  
 Or if his wetting streineth never a del,  
 But by necessitee condicionel.  
 I wol not han to don of swiche matere;  
 My tale is of a cok, as ye may here,  
 That took his conseil of his wif with sorwe  
 To walken in the yerd upon the morwe,  
 That he had met the dreame, as I you told.  
 Womennes conseiles ben ful often cold;  
 Womannes conseil brought us first to wo,  
 And made Adam fro paradis to go,  
 Ther as he was ful mery, and wel at ese.  
 But for I n'ot, to whom I might displese,  
 If I conseil of women wolde blame,  
 Passe over, for I said it in my game.  
 Rede auctours, wher they trete of swiche matere,  
 And what they sayn of women ye mown here.  
 Thise ben the Cokkes wordes, and not mine;  
 I can non harme of no woman devine.

Faire in the sond, to bath hire merily,  
 Lith Pertelote, and all hire susters by,  
 Agein the sonne, and Chaunteclere so free  
 Sang merier than the Mermaid in the see,  
 For Phisiologus sayth sikerly,  
 How that they singen wel and merily.  
 And so befell that as he cast his eye  
 Among the wortes on a boterflie,  
 He was ware of this fox that lay ful low.  
 Nothing ne list him thanne for to crow,  
 But cried anon cok, cok, and up he sterte,  
 As man that was affraid in his herte.  
 For naturally a beest desireth flee  
 Fro his contrarie, if he may it see,  
 Though he never erst had seen it with his eye.

This Chaunteclere, whan he gan him espie,  
 He wold han fled, but that the fox anon  
 Said; gentil sire, alas! what wol ye don?  
 Be ye affraid of me that am your frend?  
 Now certes, I were wese than any fend,  
 If I to you wold harme or vilanie.  
 I n'am not come your conseil to espie.  
 But trewely the cause of my coming  
 Was only for to herken how ye sing:  
 For trewely ye han as mery a steven,  
 As any angel hath, that is in heven;  
 Therwith ye han of musike more feling,  
 Than had Boece, or any that can sing.  
 My lord your fader (God his soule blesse)  
 And eke your moder of hire gentillesse  
 Han in myn hous yben, to my gret ese:  
 And certes, sire, ful fain wold I you plesse.

But for men speke of singing, I wol sey,  
 So mote I brouken wel min eyen twey,  
 Save you, ne herd I never man so sing,  
 As did your fader in the morwening.  
 Certes it was of herte all that he song.  
 And for to make his vois the more strong,  
 He wold so peine him, that with both his eyen  
 He muste winke, so loud he wolde crien,  
 And stonden on his tiptoon therewithal,  
 And stretchen forth his necke long and smal.  
 And eke he was of swiche discretion,  
 That ther n'as no man in no region,  
 That him in song or wisdom mighte passe.  
 I have wel red in dan Burnel the asse  
 Among his vers, how that ther was a cok,  
 That, for a preestes sone yave him a knok  
 Upon his leg, while he was yonge and nice,  
 He made him for to lese his benefice.  
 But certain ther is no comparison  
 Betwix the wisdom and discretion  
 Of youre fader, and his subtilitee.  
 Now singeth, sire, for Seinte Charitee,  
 Let see, can ye your fader contrefete?

This Chaunteclere his wings gan to bete,  
 As man that coud not his treson espie,  
 So was he ravished with his flaterie.

Alas! ye lordes, many a false flatour  
 Is in your court, and many a losengeour,  
 That pleseth you wel more, by my faith,  
 Than he that sothfastnesse unto you saith.  
 Redeth Ecclesiast of flaterie,  
 Beth ware, ye lordes, of hire trecherie.

This Chaunteclere stood high upon his toos  
 Stretching his necke, and held his eyen cloos,  
 And gan to crowen loude for the nones:  
 And dan Russel the fox stert up at ones,  
 And by the gargat hente Chaunteclere,  
 And on his back toward the wood him bere.  
 For yet ne was ther no man that him sued.

O destinee, that maist not ben eschued!  
 Alas, that Chaunteclere flew fro the bemes!  
 Alas, his wif ne raughte not of dremes!  
 And on a Friday fell all this meschance.

O Venus, that art goddess of plesance,  
 Sin that thy servant was this Chaunteclere,  
 And in thy service did all his powere,  
 More for delit, than world to multiplie,  
 Why wolt thou suffre him on thy day to die?

O Gaufride, dere maister sovereign,  
 That, whan thy worthy king Richard was slain  
 With shot, complainedest his deth so sore,  
 Why ne had I now thy science and thy lore,  
 The Friday for to chiden, as did ye!  
 (For on a Friday sothly slain was he)  
 Than wold I shew you how that I coud plaine,  
 For Chauntecleres drede, and for his paine.

Certes swiche cry, ne lamentation  
 N'as never of ladies made, whan Ilion  
 Was wonne, and Pirrus with his streite swerd  
 Whan he had hent king Priam by the berd,  
 And slain him, (as saith us *Eneidos*)  
 As maden all the hennes in the cloos,  
 Whan they had seen of Chaunteclere the sight.  
 But soverainly dame Pertelote shrighit,  
 Ful louder than did Hasdruballes wif,  
 Whan that hire husband hadde ylost his lif,  
 And that the Romaines hadden brent Cartage,  
 She was so ful of turment and of rage,  
 That wilfully into the fire she sterte,  
 And brent hireselven with a stedfast herte.

O woful hennes, right so criden ye,  
 As, whan that Nero brente the citee  
 Of Rome, cried the senatoures wives,  
 For that hir husbonds losten alle hir lives;  
 Withouten gilt this Nero hath hem slain.

Now wol I turne unto my tale again.  
 The sely widewe, and hire doughtren two,  
 Herden thise hennes crie and maken wo,  
 And out at the dores sterten they anon,  
 And saw the fox toward the wode is gon,  
 And bare upon his back the cok away:  
 They crieden, out! harow and wala wa!  
 A ha the fox! and after him they ran,  
 And eke with staves many another man;  
 Ran Colle our dogge, and Talbot, and Gerlond,  
 And Malkin, with hire distaf in hire hond;  
 Ran cow and calf, and eke the veray hogges  
 So fered were for berking of the dogges,  
 And shouting of the men and women eke,  
 They ronnen so, hem thought hir hertes breke.  
 They yelleden as fendes don in helle:  
 The dokes crieden as men wold hem *quelle*: *hice*  
 The gees for fere flew over the trees,  
 Out of the hive came the swarme of bees,  
 So hidous was the noise, a *benedicite*!  
 Certes he Jakke Straw, and his meinie,  
 Ne maden never shoutes half so shrille,  
 Whan that they wolden any Fleming kille,  
 As thilke day was made upon the fox.  
 Of bras they broughten beemes and of box,  
 Of horn and bone, in which they blew and pouped  
 And therewithal they shriked and they houped;  
 It semed, as that the heaven shulde falle.

Now, goode men, I pray you herkeneth alle;  
 Lo, how fortune turneth sodenly  
 The hope and pride eke of hire enemy.  
 This cok that lay upon the foxes bake,  
 In all his drede, unto the fox he spake,  
 And sayde; sire, if that I were as ye,  
 Yet wolde I sayn, (as wisely God helpe me)  
 Turneth agein, ye proude cherles alle;  
 A veray pestilence upon you falle.  
 Now am I come unto the wodes side,  
 Maugre your hed, the cok shal here abide;  
 I wol him ete in faith, and that anon.

The fox answered, in faith it shal be don:  
 And as he spake the word, al sodenly  
 The cok brake from his mouth deliverly,  
 And high upon a tree he flew anon.

And whan the fox saw that the cok was gon,  
 Alas! quod he, o Chaunteclere, alas!  
 I have (quod he) ydon to you trespass,  
 In as moche as I maked you aferd,  
 Whan I you hente, and brought out of your yerd;  
 But, sire, I did it in no wikke entente:  
 Come doun, and I shal tell you what I mente.  
 I shal say sothe to you, God helpe me so.

Nay than, quod he, I shrewe us bothe two.  
 And first I shrewe myself, bothe blood and bones,  
 If thou begile me oftener than ones.  
 Thou shalt no more thorough thy flaterie  
 Do me to sing and winken with myn eye.  
 For he that winketh, whan he shulde see,  
 Al wilfully, God let him never *the*. *thre*

Nay, quod the fox, but God yeve him meschance,  
 That is so indiscrete of governance,  
 That jangleth, whan that he shuld hold his *poes*  
 Lo, which it is for to be reccheles  
 And negligent, and trust on flaterie.  
 But ye that holden this tale a folio

fox, or of a cok, or hen,  
the moralitee therof, good men.  
nt Poule sayth, That all that writen is,  
doctrine it is ywritten ywis.  
the fruit, and let the chaf be stille.  
goode God, if that it be thy wille,  
h my Lord, so make us all good men ;  
ing us to thy highe blisse. Amen.

Nonnes Preest, our hoste sayd anon,  
d be thy breche and every ston ;  
is a mery tale of Chaunteclere.  
my trouthe, if thou were seculere,

Thou woldest ben a tredefoule a right : *crab.*  
For if thou have corage as thou hast might,  
Thee were nede of hennes, as I wene,  
Ye mo than seven times seventene.  
Se, whiche braunes hath this gentil preest,  
So gret a necke, and swiche a large breest !  
He loketh as a sparhawk with his eyen ;  
Him nedeth not his colour for to dien  
With Brasil, ne with grain of Portingale.  
But, sire, faire falle you for your tale.  
And after that, he with ful mery chere  
Sayd to another, as ye shulen here.

\* \* \* \*

## THE SECOND NONNES TALE.

nistre and the norice unto vices,  
that men clepe in English idelnesse,  
rter at the gate is of delices,  
uen, and by hire contrary hire oppresse,  
to sain, by leful businesse,  
ghte we to don al our entente,  
at the fend thurgh idelnesse us hente.

ie that with his thousand cordes alie  
elly us waiteth to beclappe,  
ie may man in idelnesse espie,  
so lightly cacche him in his trappe,  
a man be hent right by the lappe,  
not ware the fend hath him in hond :  
ght us werche, and idelnesse withstond.

though men dradden never for to die,  
men wel by reson douteles,  
elnesse is rote of slogardie,  
h ther never cometh no good encrees,  
that slouthes holdeth hem in a lees,  
slepe, and for to ete and drinke,  
devouren all that other swinke.

for to put us from swiche idelnesse,  
use is of so gret confusion,  
here don my feithful businesse  
ie Legende in translation  
f thy glorious lif and passion,  
ith thy gerlond, wrought of rose and lillie,  
ene I, maid and martir Seinte Cecilie.

thou, that arte floure of virgines all,  
m that Bernard list so wel to write,  
at my beginning first I call,  
mfort of us wretches, do me endite  
idens deth, that wan thurgh hire merite  
rnal lif, and over the fend victorie,  
may after reden in hire storie.

maide and mother, daughter of thy son,  
ell of mercy, sinful soules cure,  
m that God of bountee chees to won ;  
umble and high over every creature,  
bledest so fer forth our nature,  
desdaine the maker had of kinde  
in blood and flesh to clothe and winde.

Within the cloystre blisful of thy sides,  
Toke mannes shape the eternal love and pees,  
That of the trine compas Lord and gide is,  
Whom erthe, and see, and heven out of releas  
Ay herien ; and thou, virgine wemmeles,  
Bare of thy body (and dweltest maiden pure)  
The creatour of every creature.

Assembled is in thee magnificence  
With mercy, goodnesse, and with swiche pitie,  
That thou, that art the sonne of excellence,  
Not only helpeth hem that praien thee,  
But oftentime of thy benignitee  
Ful freely, or that men thin helpe beseeche,  
Thou goest beforne, and art hir lives leche.

Now helpe, thou meke and blisful faire maide,  
Me flemed wretch, in this desert of galle ;  
Thinke on the woman Cananee, that saide  
That whelpes eten som of the cromes alle  
That from hir Lordes table ben yfalle ;  
And though that I, unworthy sone of Eve,  
Be sinful, yet accepteth my beleve.

And for that feith is ded withouten werkes,  
So for to werken yeve me wit and space,  
That I be quit from thennes that most derke is  
O thou, that art so faire and ful of grace,  
Be thou min advocat in that high place,  
Ther as withouten ende is songe Osanne,  
Thou Cristes mother, daughter dere of Anne.

And of thy light my soule in prison light,  
That troubled is by the contagion  
Of my body, and also by the wight  
Of erthly lust, and false affection :  
O haven of refute, o salvation  
Of hem that ben in sorwe and in distresse,  
Now help, for to my werk I wol me dresse.

Yet pray I you that reden that I write,  
Foryeve me, that I do no diligence  
This ilke storie subtilly to endite.  
For both have I the wordes and sentence  
Of him, that at the seintes reverence  
The storie wrote, and folowed hire legende,  
And pray you that ye wol my werk amende.



First wol I you the name of Seinte Cecilie  
Expoune, as men may in hire storie see :  
It is to sayn in English, Hevens lillie,  
For pure chastnesse of virginitee,  
Or for she whitenesse had of honestee,  
And grene of conscience, and of good fame  
The swote savour, Lillie was hire name.

Or Cecilie is to sayn the way to blinde,  
For she ensample was by good teching ;  
Or elles Cecilie, as I writen finde,  
Is joined by a maner conjoining  
Of heven and *Lia*, and here in figuring  
The heven is set for thought of holinesse,  
And *Lia*, for hire lasting besinesse.

Cecilie may eke be sayd in this manere,  
Wanting of blindnesse, for hire grete light  
Of sapience, and for hire thewes clere.  
Or elles lo, this maidens name bright  
Of heven and *Leos* cometh, for which by right  
Men might hire wel the heven of peple calle,  
Ensampl of good and wise werkis alle :

For *Leos* peple in English is to say ;  
And right as men may in the heven see  
The sonne and mone, and sterres every way,  
Right so men gostly, in this maiden free  
Sawen of faith the magnanimittee,  
And eke the clerenesse hole of sapience,  
And sondry werkis, bright of excellence.

And right so as thise Philosophres write,  
That heven is swift and round, and eke brenning,  
Right so was faire Cecilie the white  
Ful swift and besy in every good werking,  
And round and hole in good persevering,  
And brenning ever in charitee ful bright :  
Now have I you declared what she hight.

This maiden bright Cecile, as hire lif saith,  
Was come of Romaines and of noble kind,  
And from hire cradle fostred in the faith  
Of Crist, and bare his Gospel in hire mind :  
She never cessed, as I writen find,  
Of hire prayere, and God to love and drede,  
Beseeching him to kepe hire maidenhede.

And whan this maiden shuld until a man  
Ywedded be, that was ful younge of age,  
Which that ycleped was Valerian,  
And day was comen of hire marriage,  
She ful devout and humble in hire corage,  
Under hire robe of gold, that sat ful faire,  
Had next hire flesh yclad hire in an haire.

And while that the organs maden melodie,  
To God alone thus in hire hert song she ;  
O Lord, my soule and eke my body gie  
Unwemmed, lest that I confounded be.  
And for his love that died upon the tree,  
Every second or thridde day she fast,  
Ay bidding in hire orisons ful fast.

The night came, and to bedde must she gon  
With hire husbond, as it is the manere,  
And prively she said to him anon ;  
O swete and wel beloved spouse dere,  
Ther is a conseil, and ye wol it here,  
Which that right fayn I wold unto you saie,  
So that ye swere, ye wol it not bewraie.

Valerian gan fast unto hire swere,  
That for no cas, ne thing that mighte be,  
He shulde never to non bewraien here ;  
And than at erst thus to him saide she ;  
I have an Angel which that loveth me,  
That with gret love, wher so I wake or slepe,  
Is redy ay my body for to kepe ;

And if that he may felen out of drede,  
That ye me touch or love in vilanie,  
He right anon wol sleen you with the dede,  
And in your youthe thus ye shulden die.  
And if that ye in clene love me gie,  
He wol you love as me, for your clenenesse,  
And shew to you his joye and his brightnesse.

This Valerian, corrected as God wold,  
Answerd again, if I shal trusten thee,  
Let me that angel seen, and him behold ;  
And if that it a veray angel be,  
Than wol I don as thou hast prayed me ;  
And if thou love another man, forsothe  
Right with this swerd than wol I slee you both.

Cecile answerd anon right in this wise ;  
If that you list, the angel shul ye see,  
So that ye trowe on Crist, and you baptise ;  
Goth forth to Via Apia (quod she)  
That fro this toun ne stant but miles thre,  
And to the poure folkes that ther dwellen  
Say hem right thus, as that I shal you tellen.

Tell hem, that I Cecile you to hem sent  
To shewen you the good Urban the old,  
For secree nedes, and for good entent ;  
And whan that ye Seint Urban han behold,  
Tell him the wordes whiche I to you told ;  
And whan that he hath purged you fro sinne,  
Than shal ye seen that angel er-ye twinne.

Valerian is to the place gon,  
And right as he was taught by hire lerning,  
He fond this holy old Urban anon  
Among the seintes buriels louting :  
And he anon withouten taryng  
Did his message, and whan that he it tolde,  
Urban for joye his hondes gan upholde.

The teres from his eyen let he falle ;  
Almighty Lord, o Jesu Crist, quod he,  
Sower of chast conseil, hierde of us alle,  
The fruit of thilke seed of chastitee  
That thou hast sow in Cecile, take to thee :  
Lo, like a besy bee withouten gile  
Thee serveth ay thin owen thral Cecile.

For thilke spouse, that she toke but newe  
Ful like a fiers leon, she sendeth here  
As meke as ever was any lambe to ewe.  
And with that word anon ther gan apere  
An old man, clad in white clothes clere,  
That had a book with lettres of gold in hond,  
And gan beforne Valerian to stond.

Valerian, as ded, fell doun for drede,  
Whan he him saw ; and he up hent him tho,  
And on his book right thus he gan to rede ;  
On Lord, on faith, on God withouten mo,  
On Cristendom, and fader of all also  
Aboven all, and over all every wher :  
Thise wordes all with gold ywriten were.

this was red, than said this olde man,  
 thou this thing or no? say ye or nay.  
 This thing, quod Valerian,  
 er thing than this, I dare wel say,  
 he heven no wight thinken may.  
 shed the olde man, he n'iste wher,  
 e Urban him cristened right ther.

an goth home, and fnt Cecilie  
 is chambre with an angel stonde :  
 el had of roses and of lillie  
 two, the which he bare in honde,  
 to Cecile, as I understonde,  
 at on, and after gan he take  
 er to Valerian hire make.

ody clene, and with unwemmed thought  
 y wel thise corones two, quod he,  
 radis to you I have hem brought,  
 mo ne shul they roten be,  
 ir swete savour, trusteth me,  
 wight shal seen hem with his eye,  
 e chaste, and hate vilanie.

ou, Valerian, for thou so sone  
 est to good conseil, also  
 thee list, and thou shalt han thy bone.  
 brother, quod Valerian tho,  
 his world I love no man so,  
 ou that my brother may have grace  
 the trouth, as I do in this place.

angel said ; God liketh thy request,  
 he with the palme of martirdome  
 en come unto his blisful rest.  
 that word, Tiburce his brother come.  
 n that he the savour undernome,  
 at the roses and the lilies cast,  
 is herte he gan to wonder fast,

id ; I wonder this time of the yere  
 that swete savour cometh so  
 and lilies, that I smelle here ;  
 gh I had hem in min hondes two,  
 ur might in me no deper go :  
 e smel, that in min herte I find,  
 nged me all in another kind.

in saide ; two corones han we  
 ite and rose-red, that shinen clere,  
 at thin eyen han no might to see :  
 hou smellest hem thurgh my praiere,  
 thou seen hem, leve brother dere,  
 e thou wolt withouten slouthe  
 right, and know the veray trouthe.

e answered ; saiest thou this to me  
 esse, or in dreame herken I this ?  
 as, quod Valerian, han we be  
 time, brother min, ywis :  
 at erst in trouthe our dwelling is.  
 t thou this, quod Tiburce, in what wise ?  
 lerian ; that shal I thee devise.

angel of God hath me the trouth ytaught,  
 thou shalt seen, if that thou wilt reney  
 as, and be clene, and elles naught.  
 the miracle of thise corones tway  
 brose in his preface list to sey ;  
 sly this noble doctour dere  
 deth it, and saith in this manere.

The palme of martirdome for to receive,  
 Seinte Cecilie, fulfilled of Goddes yeft,  
 The world and eke hire chambre gan she weive ;  
 Witnesse Tiburces and Ceciles shrift,  
 To which God of his bountee wolde shift  
 Corones two, of floures wel smelling,  
 And made his angel hem the corones bring.

The maid hath brought thise men to bliase above  
 The world hath wist what it is worth certain  
 Devotion of chastitee to love.]  
 Tho shewed him Cecile all open and plain,  
 That all idoles n'is but a thing in vain,  
 For they ben dombe, and therto they ben deve,  
 And charged him his idoles for to leve.

Who so that troweth not this, a best he is,  
 Quod this Tiburce, if that I shal not lie.  
 And she gan kisse his brest whan she herd this,  
 And was ful glad he coude trouth espie :  
 This day I take thee for min allie,  
 Saide this blisful faire maiden dere ;  
 And after that she said as ye may here.

Lo, right so as the love of Crist (quod she)  
 Made me thy brothers wif, right in that wise  
 Anon for mine allie here take I thee,  
 Sithen that thou wolt thin idoles despise.  
 Goth with thy brother now and thee baptise,  
 And make thee clene, so that thou maist behold  
 The angels face, of which thy brother told.

Tiburce answered, and saide ; brother dere,  
 First tell me whither I shal, and to what man.  
 To whom ? quod he ; come forth with goode chere  
 I wol thee lede unto the pope Urban.  
 To Urban ? brother min Valerian,  
 Quod tho Tiburce, wilt thou me thider lede ?  
 Me thinketh that it were a wonder dede.

Ne menest thou not Urban (quod he tho)  
 That is so often damned to be ded,  
 And woneth in halkes alway to and fro,  
 And dare not oues putten forth his hed ?  
 Men shuld him brennen in a fire so red,  
 If he were found, or that men might him spie,  
 And we also, to bere him compaignie.

And while we seken thilke divinitee,  
 That is yhid in heven prively,  
 Algate ybrent in this world shuld we be.  
 To whom Cecile answered boldly ;  
 Men mighten dreden wel and skilfully  
 This lif to lese, min owen dere brother,  
 If this were living only and non other.

But ther is better lif in other place,  
 That never shal be lost, ne drede thee nought :  
 Which Goddes sone us tolde thurgh his grace,  
 That fadres sone which alle thinges wrought ;  
 And all that wrought is with a skilful thought,  
 The gost, that from the fader gan proceede,  
 Hath souied hem withouten any drede.

By word and by miracle he Goddes sone,  
 Whan he was in this world, declared here,  
 That ther is other lif ther men may wone.  
 To whom answerd Tiburce ; o suster dere,  
 Ne saidest thou right now in this manere,  
 Ther n'as but o God, lord in sothfastnesse,  
 And now of three how mayst thou bere witnesse ?

That shall I tel, quod she, or that I go.  
Right as a man hath sapiences three,  
Memorie, engine, and intellect also,  
So in o being of divinites  
Three persones mowen ther righte wel be.  
Tho gan she him ful besily to preche  
Of Cristes sonde, and of his peines teche,

And many pointes of his passion ;  
How Goddes sone in this world was withhold  
To don mankinde pleine remission,  
That was ybound in sinne and cares cold.  
All this thing she unto Tiburce told,  
And after this Tiburce in good entent,  
With Valerian to pope Urban he went,

That thanked God, and with glad herte and light  
He cristened him, and made him in that place  
Parfitte in his lerning and Goddes knight.  
And after this Tiburce gat swiche grace,  
That every day he saw in time and space  
The angel of God, and every maner bone  
That he God axed, it was sped ful sone.

It were ful hard by ordre for to sain  
How many wonders Jesus for hem wrought.  
But at the last, to tellen short and plain,  
The sergeaunts of the toun of Rome hem sought,  
And hem before Almache the prefect brought,  
Which hem apposed, and knew all hire entent,  
And to the image of Jupiter hem sent ;

And said ; who so wol nought do sacrifice,  
Swap of his hed, this is my sentence here.  
Anon thise martyrs, that I you devise,  
On Maximus, that was an officere  
Of the prefectes, and his corniculere,  
Hem hent, and whan he forth the seintes lad,  
Himself he wept for pitee that he had.

Whan Maximus had herd the seintes lore,  
He gate him of the turmentoures leve,  
And lad hem to his hous withouten more ;  
And with hir preching, or that it were eve,  
They gonnen fro the turmentours to reve,  
And fro Maxime, and fro his folk eche on  
The false faith, to trowe in God alone.

Cecilie came, whan it was waxen night,  
With preestes, that hem cristened all yfere ;  
And afterward, whan day was waxen light,  
Cecilie hem said with a ful stedfast chere ;  
Now, Cristes owen knightes leve and dere,  
Caste all away the werkes of derkenesse,  
And armeth you in armes of brightnesse.

Ye han forsoth ydon a gret bataille ;  
Your cours is don, your faith han ye conserved ;  
Goth to the croune of lif that may not faille ;  
The rightful juge, which that ye han served,  
Shal yeve it you, as ye han it deserved.  
And whan this thing was said, as I devise,  
Men ledde hem forth to don the sacrifice.

But whan they weren to the place ybrought,  
To tellen shortly the conclusioun,  
They n'olde encense, ne sacrifice right nought,  
But on hir knees they setten hem adoun,  
With humble herte and sad devotioun,  
And losten bothe hir hedes in the place ;  
Hir soules wenten to th' king of grace.

This Maximus, that saw this thing betide,  
With pitous teres told it anon right.  
That he hir soules saw to heven glide  
With angels, ful of clerenesse and of light ;  
And with his word converted many a wight.  
For which Almachius did him to-bete  
With whip of led, til he his lif gan lete.

Cecile him toke, and buried him anon  
By Tiburce and Valerian softly,  
Within hir burying place, under the ston.  
And after this Almachius hastily  
Bad his ministres fetchen openly  
Cecile, so that she might in his presence  
Don sacrifice, and Jupiter encense.

But they converted at hire wise lore  
Wepten ful sore, and yaven ful credence  
Unto hire word, and crieden more and more ;  
Crist, Goddes sone, withouten difference  
Is veray God, this is all our sentence,  
That hath so good a servant him to serve :  
Thus with o vois we trowen though we sterve.

Almachius, that herd of this doing,  
Bad fetchen Cecile, that he might hire see :  
And alderfirst, lo, this was his axing ;  
What maner woman arte thou ? quod he.  
I am a gentilwoman borne, quod she.  
I axe thee, quod he, though it thee greve,  
Of thy religion and of thy beleve.

Why than began your question folily,  
Quod she, that woldest two answers conclude  
In o demand ! ye axen lewedly.  
Almache answerd to that similitude,  
Of whennes cometh thin answering so rude !  
Of whennes ? (quod she, whan that she was freined)  
Of consience, and of good faith unfeined.

Almachius said ; ne takest thou non hede  
Of my power ! and she him answerd this ;  
Your might (quod she) ful litel is to drede ;  
For every mortal mannes power n'is  
But like a bladder ful of wind ywis :  
For with a needles point, whan it is blow,  
May all the bost of it be laid ful low.

Ful wrongfully begonnest thou, (quod he)  
And yet in wrong is al thy perseverance :  
Wost thou not how our mighty princes free  
Have thus commanded and made ordinance,  
That every cristen wight shal han penaunce  
But if that he his Cristendome withseye,  
And gon al quite, if he wol it reneye ?

Your princes erren, as your nobley doth,  
Quod tho Cecile, and with a wood sentence  
Ye make us gilty, and it is not soth :  
For ye that knowen wel our innocence,  
For as moche as we don ay reverence  
To Crist, and for we bere a Cristen name,  
Ye put on us a crime and eke a blame.

But we that knowen thilke name so  
For vertuous, we may it not withseye.  
Almache answered ; chese on of thise two,  
Do sacrifice, or Cristendom reneye,  
That thou mow now escapen by that wey.  
At which this holy blisful fayre maid  
Gan for to laughe, and to the juge said :

O juge confuse in thy nicetee,  
Woldest thou that I reneye innocence?  
To maken me a wicked wight (quod she)  
Lo, he dissimuleth here in audience,  
He stareth and wodeth in his advertence.  
To whom Almachius said; Unsely wretch,  
Ne wost thou not how far my might may strotch!

Han not our mighty princes to me yeven  
Ya bothe power and eke auctoritee  
To maken folk to dien or to liven!  
Why spekest thou so proudly than to me?  
I ne speke nought but stedfastly, quod she,  
Not proudly, for I say, as for my side,  
We haten dedly thilke vice of pride.

And if thou drede not a soth for to here,  
Than wol I shewe al openly by right,  
That thou hast made a ful gret lesing here.  
Thou saist, thy princes han thee yeven might  
Both for to slee and for to quiken a wight,  
Thou that ne maist but only lif bereve,  
Thou hast non other power ne no leve.

But thou maist sayn, thy princes han thee maked  
Ministre of deth; for if thou speke of mo,  
Thou liest; for thy power is ful naked.  
Do way thy boldnesse, said Almachius tho,  
And sacrifice to our goddes, er thou go.  
I reeke not what wrong that thou me proffre,  
For I can suffre it as a philosopre.

But thilke wronges may I not endure,  
That thou spekest of our goddes here, quod he.  
Cecile answerd; o nice creature,  
Thou saidest no word sin thou spake to me,  
That I ne knew therewith thy nicetee,  
And that thou were in every maner wise  
A lewed officer, a vain justice.

Ther lacketh nothing to thin utter eyen  
That thou n'art blind; for thing that we seen alle  
That is a ston, that men may wel espie,  
That ilke ston a god thou wolt it calle.  
I rede thee let thin hond upon it falle,  
And tast it wel, and ston thou shalt it find.  
Sin that thou seest not with thin eyen blind.

It is a shame that the peple shal  
So scornen thee, and laugh at thy folie:  
For comunly men wot it wel over al,  
That mighty God is in his hevens hie;

And thise images, wel maist thou espie,  
To thee ne to hemself may not profite,  
For in effect they be not worth a mite.

Thise and swiche other wordes saide she,  
And he wex wroth, and bade men shuld hire lede  
Home til hire house, and in hire hous (quod he)  
Brenne hire right in a bath, with flames rede.  
And as he bade, right so was don the dede;  
For in a bathe they gonne hire faste shetten,  
And night and day gret fire they under betten.

The longe night, and eke a day also,  
For all the fire, and eke the bathes hete,  
She sate al cold, and felt of it no wo,  
It made hire not a drope for to swete:  
But in that bath hire lif she muste lete.  
For he Almache, with a ful wicke entent,  
To sleen hire in the bath his sonde sent.

Three strokes in the nekke he smote hire tho  
The turmentour, but for no maner chance  
He mighte not smite all hire nekke atwo:  
And for ther was that time an ordinaunce  
That no man shulde don man swiche penance,  
The fourthe stroke to smiten, soft or sore,  
This turmentour ne dorste do no more;

But half ded, with hire nekke ycorven ther  
He left hire lie, and on his way is went.  
The cristen folk, which that about hire were,  
With shetes han the blood ful faire yhent:  
Three dayes lived she in this turment,  
And never cessed hem the faith to teche,  
That sho had fostred hem, she gan to preche.

And hem she yaf hire mebles and hire thing,  
And to the pope Urban betoke hem tho,  
And said; I axed this of heven king,  
To have respit three dayes and no mo,  
To recommend to you, or that I go,  
Thise soules lo, and that I might do werch:  
Here of min hous perpetuellich a cherche.

Seint Urban, with his dekenes prively  
The body fette, and buried it by night  
Among his other seintes honestly:  
Hire hous the cherche of seinte Cecile hight  
Seint Urban halowed it, as he wel might,  
In which unto this day in noble wise  
Men don to Crist and to his seinte servise.

## THE CHANONES YEMANNES TALE.

### THE CHANONES YEMANNES PROLOGUE.

WHAN that tolde was the lif of seinte Cecile,  
Er we had ridden fully five mile,  
At Boughton under blee us gan atake  
A man, that clothed was in clothes blake,  
And underne the he wered a white surplis.  
His hakeney, which that was al pomelee gris,

So swatte, that it wonder was to see,  
It semed as he had priked miles three.  
The horse eke that his yeman rode upon,  
So swatte, that unnethes might he gon.  
About the peytrel stood the fome ful hie,  
He was of fome as flecked as a pic.  
A male tweifold on his croper lay,  
It semed that he caried litel array,  
Al light for somer rode this worthy man.  
And in my herte wondren I began

What that he was, til that I understode,  
 How that his cloke was sowed to his hode ;  
 For which whan I had long avised me,  
 I demed him some chanon for to be.  
 His hat heng at his back doun by a las,  
 For he had ridden more than trot or pas,  
 He had ay priked like as he were wode.  
 A clote-lefe he had laid under his hode  
 For swete, and for to kepe his hed fro hete.  
 But it was joye for to seen him swete ;  
 His forehed dropped, as a stillatorie  
 Were ful of plantaine or of paritorie.  
 And whan that he was come, he gan to crie,  
 God save (quod he) this joly compaignie.  
 Fast have I priked (quod he) for your sake,  
 Because that I wolde you atake,  
 To riden in this mery compaignie.

His yeman was eke ful of curteisie,  
 And saide ; Sires, now in the morwe tide  
 Out of your hostelrie I saw you ride,  
 And warned here my lord and soverain,  
 Which that to riden with you is ful fain,  
 For his disport ; he loveth daliance.  
 Frend, for thy warning God yeve thee good chance,  
 Than said our hoste ; certain it wolde seme  
 Thy lord were wise, and so I may wel deme ;  
 He is ful joconde also dare I leye :  
 Can he ought tell a mery tale or tweie,  
 With which he gladen may this compaignio ?

Who, sire ! my lord ! Ye, sire, withouten lie,  
 He can of mirth and eke of jolitee  
 Not but ynough ; also, sire, trusteth me,  
 And ye him knew al so wel as do I,  
 Ye wolden wondre how wel and craftily  
 He coude werke, and that in sondry wise.  
 He hath take on him many a gret emprise,  
 Which were ful harde for any that is here  
 To bring about, but they of him it lere.  
 As homely as he rideth amonges you,  
 If ye him knew, it wold be for your prow :  
 Ye wolden not forgon his acquaintance  
 For mochel good, I dare lay in balance  
 All that I have in my possession.  
 He is a man of high discrecion,  
 I warne you wel, he is a passing man.

Wel, quod our hoste, I pray thee tell me than,  
 Is he a clerk, or non ? tell what he is.

Nay, he is greter than a clerk ywis,  
 Saide this yeman, and in wordes fewe,  
 Hoste, of his craft somewhat I wol you shewe.

I say, my lord can swiche a subtiltee,  
 (But all his craft ye moun not wete of me,  
 And somewhat help I yet to his werking)  
 That all the ground on which we ben riding  
 Til that we come to Canterbury toun,  
 He coud al clene turnen up so doun,  
 And pave it all of silver and of gold.

And whan this yeman had this tale ytolde  
 Unto our hoste, he said ; *benedicite*,  
 This thing is wonder mervailous to me,  
 Sin that thy lord is of so high prudence,  
 Because of which men shulde him reverence,  
 That of his worship rekketh he so lite ;  
 His overest sloppe it is not worth a mite  
 As in effect to him, so mote I go ;  
 It is all bawdy and to-tore also.  
 Why is thy lord so sluttish I thee preye,  
 And is of power better cloth to beye,  
 If that his dede accorded with thy speche ?  
 Telle me that, and that I thee besече.

Why ! quod this yeman, wherto axe ye me !  
 God helpe me so, for he shal never the :  
 (But I wol not avowen that I say,  
 And therefore kepe it secree I you pray)  
 He is to wise in faith, as I beleve.  
 Thing that is overdon, it wol not preve  
 Aright, as clerkes sain, it is a vice ;  
 Wherefore in that I hold him lewed and nice,  
 For whan a man hath overgret a wit,  
 Ful oft him happeth to misusen it :  
 So doth my lord, and that me greveth sore.  
 God it amende, I can say now no more.

Therof no force, good yeman, quod our host,  
 Sin of the conning of thy lord thou wost,  
 Telle how he doth, I pray thee hertily,  
 Sin that he is so crafty and so sly.  
 Wher dwellen ye, if it to tellen be ?  
 In the subarbes of a toun, quod he,  
 Lurking in hernes and in lanes blinde,  
 Whereas these robbours and these theves by kinde  
 Holden hir privee fereful residence,  
 As they that dare not shewen hir presence,  
 So faren we, if I shal say the sothe.

Yet, quod our hoste, let me talken to the ;  
 Why art thou so discoloured of thy face ?

Peter, quod he, God yeve it harde grace,  
 I am so used the hote fire to blow,  
 That it hath changed my colour I trow ;  
 I n'am not wont in no mirroure to prie,  
 But swinke sore, and lerne to multiple.  
 We blundren ever, and poren in the fire,  
 And for all that we faille of our desire,  
 For ever we lacken our conclusion.  
 To mochel folk we don illusion,  
 And borwe gold, be it a pound or two,  
 Or ten or twelve, or many sommes mo,  
 And make hem wenen at the leste wey,  
 That of a pound we connen maken twey,  
 Yet is it false ; and ay we han good hope  
 It for to don, and after it we grope :  
 But that science is so fer us beforene,  
 We mowen not, although we had it sworne,  
 It overtake, it slit away so fast ;  
 It wol us maken beggers at the last.

While this yeman was thus in his talking,  
 This Chanon drow him nere, and herd all thing  
 Which this yeman spake, for suspicion  
 Of mennes speche ever had this Chanon :  
 For Caton sayth, that he that gilty is,  
 Demeth all thing be spoken of him ywis :  
 That was the cause, he gan so nigh him drawe  
 To his yeman, to herken all his sawe,  
 And thus he saide unto his yeman tho ;  
 Hold thou thy pees, and speke no wordes mo :  
 For if thou do, thou shalt it dere abie.  
 Thou sclaudrest me here in this compaignie,  
 And eke discoverest that thou shuldest hide.

Ye, quod our hoste, tell on, what so betide ;  
 Of all his threkening recke not a mite.

In faith, quod he, no more I do but lite.  
 And whan this Chanon saw it wold not be,  
 But his yeman wold tell his privetee,  
 He fled away for veray sorwe and shame.

A, quod the yeman, here shal rise a game :  
 All that I can anon I wol you telle,  
 Sin he is gon ; the foule fend him quelle ;  
 For never hereafter wol I with him mete  
 For peny ne for pound, I you behete.  
 He that me broughte first unto that game,  
 Er that he die, sorwe have he and shame.

For it is earnest to me by faith ;  
That fele I wel, what that any man saith ;  
And yet for all my smert, and all my grief,  
For all my sorwe, labour, and meschief,  
I coude never leve it in no wise.  
Now wolde God my wit mighte suffice  
To tellen all that longeth to that art ;  
But natheles, yet wol I tellen part ;  
Sin that my lord is gon, I wol not spare,  
Swiche thing as that I know, I wol declare.

### THE CHANONES YEMANNES TALE.

With this Chanon I dwelt have seven yere,  
And of his science am I never the nere :  
All that I had, I have ylost therby,  
And God wot, so han many mo than I.  
Ther I was wont to be right fresh and gay  
Of clothing, and of other good array,  
Now may I were an hose upon min hed ;  
And wher my colour was both fresh and red,  
Now is it wan, and of a leden hewe ;  
(Who so it useth, so shal he it rewe)  
And of my swinke yet blered is min eye ;  
Lo which advantage is to multiplie !  
That sliding science hath me made so bare,  
That I have no good, wher that ever I fare ;  
And yet I am endetted so therby  
Of gold, that I have borwed trewely,  
That while I live, I shal it quiten never ;  
Let every man be ware by me for ever.  
What maner man that casteth him therto,  
If he continue, I hold his thrift ydo ;  
So help me God, therby shal he nat winne,  
But empte his purse, and make his wites thinne.  
And whan he, thurgh his madnesse and folie,  
Hath lost his owen good thurgh jupartie,  
Than he exciteth other folk therto,  
To lese hir good as he himself hath do.  
For unto shrewes joye it is and ese  
To have hir felawes in peine and disece.  
Thus was I ones lerned of a clerk ;  
Of that no charge ; I wol speke of our werk.

Whan we be ther as we shuln exercise  
Our elvish craft, we semen wonder wise,  
Our termes ben so clerghial and queinte.  
I blow the fire til that myn herte feinte.  
What shuld I tellen eche proportion  
Of thinges, whiche that we werchen upon,  
As on five or six unces, may wel be,  
Of silver, or som other quantitee !  
And besie me to tellen you the names,  
As orpiment, brent bones, yren squames,  
That into poudre grounden ben ful smal !  
And in an erthen pot how put is al,  
And salt yput in, and also pepere,  
Beform thise poudres that I speke of here,  
And wel yecovered with a lampe of glas !  
And of moche other thing which that ther was !  
And of the pottes and glasses engluting,  
That of the aire might passen out no thing !  
And of the esy fire, and smert also,  
Which that was made ! and of the care and wo,  
That we had in our materes subliming,  
And in amalgaming, and calcening  
Of quiksilver, ycleped mercurie crude !  
For all our sleighthes we can not conclude.

Our orpiment, and sublimed mercurie,  
Our grounden litarge eke on the porphurie,  
Of eche of these of unces a certain  
Not helpeth us, our labour is in vain.  
Ne, neyther our spiritres ascentioun,  
Ne our materes that lien al fix adoun,  
Mown in our werking nothing us availle ;  
For lost is all our labour and travaille,  
And all the cost a twenty devil way  
Is lost also, which we upon it lay.

Ther is also ful many another thing,  
That is unto our craft appertaining,  
Though I by ordre hem nat rehersen can,  
Because that I am a lewed man,  
Yet wol I telle hem, as they come to minde,  
Though I ne cannot set hem in hir kinde,  
As bole armoniak, verdegrese, boras ;  
And sondry vessels made of erthe and glas,  
Our urinales, and our descensories,  
Viols, croslettes, and sublimatories,  
Cucuribtes, and alembikes eke,  
And other swiche gere, dere ynough a leke,  
What nedeth it for to rehearse hem alle !  
Wateres rubifying, and bolles galle,  
Arsenik, sal armoniak, and brimston !  
And herbes coude I tell eke many on,  
As egreinoine, valerian, and lunarie,  
And other swiche, if that me list to tarie ;  
Our lampes brenning bothe night and day,  
To bring about our craft if that we may ;  
Our fourneis eke of calcination,  
And of wateres albification,  
Unslekked lime, chalk, and gleire of an ey,  
Poudres divers, ashes, dong, pisse, and cley,  
Sered pokettes, sal peter, and vitriole ;  
And divers fires made of wode and colo ;  
Sal tartre, alcaly, and salt preparat,  
And combust materes, and coagulat ;  
Cley made with hors and mannes here, and oile  
Of tartre, alum, glns, berme, wort, and argoile,  
Rosalgat, and other materes enbibing ;  
And eke of our materes incorporeing,  
And of our silver citrination,  
Our cementing, and fermentation,  
Our ingottes, testes, and many thinges mo.

I wol you tell as was me taught also  
The foure spiritres, and the bodies sevenne  
By ordre, as oft I herd my lord hem nevane.  
The firste spirit quiksilver cleped is ;  
The second orpiment ; the thridde ywis  
Sal armoniak, and the fourth brimston.

The bodies sevenne eke, lo hem here anon.  
Sol gold is, and Luna silver we threpe ;  
Mars iren, Mercurie quiksilver we clepe ;  
Saturnus led, and Jupiter is tin,  
And Venus coper, by my fader kin.

This cursed craft who so wol exercise,  
He shal no good have, that him may suffice,  
For all the good he spendeth therabout  
He lesen shal, therof have I no doute.  
Who so that listeth uttren his folie,  
Let him come forth and lermen multiplie :  
And every man that hath ought in his cofre,  
Let him appere, and wex a philosopre,  
Ascaunce that craft is so light to lere.  
Nay, nay, God wot, al be he monk or frere,  
Preest or chanon, or any other wight,  
Though he sit at his book both day and night  
In lerning of this elvish nice lore,  
All is in vain, and parde mochel more

To lerne a lewed man this subtiltee ;  
Fie, speke not therof, for it wol not be.  
And conne he letterure, or conne he non,  
As in effect, he shal finde it all on ;  
For bothe two by my salvation  
Concluden in multiplication  
Ylike wel, whan they have all ydo ;  
This is to sain, they failen bothe two.

Yet forgate I to maken rehersaile  
Of waters corosif, and of limaile,  
And of bodies mollification,  
And also of hir induration,  
Oiles, abusions, metal fusible,  
To tellen all, wold passen any bible,  
That o wher is ; wherefore as for the best  
Of all this names now wol I me rest ;  
For as I trow, I have you told ynow  
To reise a fend, al loke he never so row.

A, nay, let be ; the philosophres ston,  
Elixer cleped, we seken fast eche on,  
For had we him, than were we siker ynow ;  
But unto God of heven I make avow,  
For all our craft, whan we han all ydo,  
And all our sleight, he wol not come us to.  
He hath ymade us spenden mochel good,  
For sorwe of which almost we waxen wood,  
But that good hope crepeth in our herte,  
Supposing ever, though we sore smerte,  
To ben releved of him afterward.  
Swiche supposing and hope is sharpe and hard.  
I warne you wel it is to seken ever.  
That future *temps* hath made men dissever,  
In trust therof, from all that ever they had,  
Yet of that art they conne not waxen sad,  
For unto hem it is a bitter swete ;  
So semeth it ; for ne had they but a shete  
Which that they might wrappen hem in a-night,  
And a bratt to walken in by day-light,  
They wold hem sell, and spend it on this craft ;  
They conne not stinten, til no thing be laft.  
And evermore, wher ever that they gon,  
Men may hem kennen by smell of brimston ;  
For all the world they stinken as a gote ;  
Hir savour is so rammish and so hote,  
That though a man a mile from hem be,  
The savour wol enfect him, trusteth me.

Lo, thus by smelling and thred-bare array,  
If that men list, this folk they knowen may.  
And if a man wol axe hem prively,  
Why they be clothed so unthriftily,  
They right anon wol rounen in his ere,  
And saien, if that they espied were,  
Men wolde hem sle, because of hir sciencen :  
Lo, thus thise folk betraien innocence.

Passen over this, I go my tale unto.  
Er that the pot be on the fire ydo  
Of metals with a certain quantitee,  
My lord hem tempereth, and no man but he ;  
(Now he is gon, I dare say boldly)  
For as men sain, he can don craftily ;  
Algate I wote wel he hath swiche a name,  
And yet ful oft he renneth in a blame ;  
And wete ye how ! ful oft it falleth so,  
The pot to-breketh, and farewel all is go.  
Thise metales ben of so gret violence,  
Our walles may not make hem resistance,  
But if they weren wrought of lime and ston ;  
They percen so, that thurgh the wall they gon ;  
And som of hem sinke down into the ground,  
(Thus have we lost by times many a pound)

And som are scatered all the flore about ;  
Som lepen into the roof withouten doute.  
Though that the fend not in our sight him shewe,  
I trow that he be with us, thilke shrewe,  
In helle, wher that he is lord and sire,  
Ne is ther no more wo, rancour, ne ire.  
Whan that our pot is broke, as I have sayde,  
Every man chit, and holt him evil apayde.  
Som sayd it was long on the fire-making ;  
Som sayd nay, it was long on the blowing ;  
(Than was I ferd, for that was min office)  
Straw, quod the thridde, ye ben lewed and nice.  
It was not tempred as it ought to be.  
Nay, quod the fourthe, stint and herken me ;  
Because our fire was not made of beche,  
That is the cause, and other non, so the iche.  
I can not tell wheron it was along,  
But wel I wot gret strif is us among.

What ! quod my lord, ther n'is no more to don—  
Of thise perils I wol beware eftsoone.  
I am right siker, that the pot was crased.  
Be as be may, be ye no thing amased.  
As usage is, let swepe the flore as swithe ;  
Plucke up your hertes and be glad and blithe.

The mullok on an hope yeweped was,  
And on the flore ycast a canevas,  
And all this mullok in a sive ythrowe,  
And sifted, and ypicked many a throwe.

Parde, quod on, somewhat of our metall  
Yet is ther here, though that we have not all.  
And though this thing mishapped hath as now,  
Another time it may be wel ynow.

We mosten put our good in aventure ;  
A marchant parde may not ay endure,  
Trusteth me wel, in his prosperitee :  
Somtime his good is drenched in the see,  
And somtime cometh it sauf unto the lond.

Pees, quod my lord, the next time I wol fond  
To bring our craft all in another plite,  
And but I do, sires, let me have the wite :  
Ther was defeaute in somewhat, wel I wote.

Another sayd, the fire was over hote.  
But be it hote or cold, I dare say this,  
That we concluden ever more amis :  
We faille alway of that which we wold have,  
And in our madnesse evermore we rave.

And whan we be together everich on,  
Every man semeth a Salomon.  
But all thing, which that shineth as the gold,  
Ne is no gold, as I have herd it told ;  
Ne every apple that is faire at eye,  
Ne is not good, what so men clap or crie.  
Right so, lo, fareth it amonges us.  
He that semeth the wisest by Jesus  
Is most fool, whan it cometh to the prefe ;  
And he that semeth trewest, is a thefe.  
That shal ye know, or that I from you wende,  
By that I of my tale have made an ende.

Ther was a chanon of religioun  
Amonges us, wold enfect all a toun,  
Though it as gret were as was Ninive,  
Rome, Alisaundre, Troie, or other thre.  
His sleighes and his infinite falsenesse  
Ther coude no man writen, as I gesse,  
Though that he mighte live a thousand yere ;  
In all this world of falsenesse n'is his pere.  
For in his termes he wol him so winde,  
And speke his wordes in so slie a kinde,  
Whan he comunen shal with any wight,  
That he wol make him doten anon right,

But it a fend be, as himselven is.  
 Ful many a man hath he begiled er this,  
 And wol, if that he may live any while :  
 And yet men gon and riden many a mile  
 Him for to seke, and have his acquaintance,  
 Not knowing of his false governance.  
 And if you lust to yewe me audience,  
 I wol it tellen here in your presence.

But, worshipful Chanons religious,  
 Ne demeth not that I slander your hous,  
 Although that my tale of a Chanon be.  
 Of every order som shrew is parde :  
 And God forbede that all a compaignie  
 Shuld rewe a singuler mannes folie.  
 To slander you is no thing min entent,  
 But to correcten that is mis I ment.  
 This tale was not only told for you,  
 But eke for other mo : ye wote wel how  
 That among Cristes aposteles twelve  
 Ther was no traitour but Judas himselve :  
 Than why shuld al the remenant have blame,  
 That giltles were ? by you I say the same.  
 Save only this, if ye wol herken me,  
 If any Judas in your covent be,  
 Removeth him betimes, I you rede,  
 If shame or los may causen any drede.  
 And be no thing displeysed I you pray,  
 But in this cas herkeneth what I say.

In London was a preest, an annuellere,  
 That therin dwelled hadde many a yere,  
 Which was so plesant and so servisable  
 Unto the wif, ther as he was at table,  
 That she wold suffer him no thing to pay  
 For borde ne clothing, went he never so gay ;  
 And spending silver had he right ynow :  
 Therof no force ; I wol proceed as now,  
 And tellen forth my tale of the Chanon,  
 That broughte this preest to confusion.

This false Chanon came upon a day  
 Unto the preestes chambre, ther he lay,  
 Beseeching him to lene him a certain  
 Of gold, and he wold quite it him again.  
 Lene me a marke, quod he, but dayes three,  
 And at my day I wol it quiten thee.  
 And if it so be, that thou finde me false,  
 Another day hang me up by the halse.

This preest him toke a marke, and that as  
 swith,

And this Chanon him thanked often sith,  
 And toke his leve, and wente forth his wey :  
 And at the thridde day brought his money ;  
 And to the preest he toke his gold again,  
 Wherof this preest was wonder glad and fain.

Certes, quod he, nothing ancieth me  
 To lene a man a noble, or two, or three,  
 Or what thing were in my possession,  
 Whan he so trewe is of condition,  
 That in no wise he breken wol his day :  
 To swiche a man I can never say nay.

What ! quod this Chanon, shuld I be untrewed ?  
 Nay, that were thing fallen al of the newe.  
 Trough is a thing that I wol ever kepe  
 Unto the day in which that I shal crepe  
 Into my grave, and elles God forbede :  
 Beleveth this as siker as your crede.  
 God thanke I, and in good time be it sayde,  
 That ther n'as never man yet evil payde  
 For gold ne silver that he to me lent,  
 Ne never falschede in min herte I ment.

And, sire, (quod he) now of my privetee,  
 Sin ye so goodlich have ben unto me,  
 And kithed to me so gret gentiltesse,  
 Somwhat, to quiten with your kindenesse,  
 I wol you shewe, and if you lust to lere  
 I wol you techen plainly the manere,  
 How I can werken in filosofie.  
 Taketh good heed, ye shuln wel sen at eye,  
 That I wol do a maistrie or I go.

Ye ! quod the preest, ye, sire, and wol ye so !  
 Mary therof I pray you hertily.

At your commandement, sire, trewely,  
 Quod the Chanon, and elles God forbede.  
 Lo, how this thefe coude his service bede.

Ful soth it is that swiche profered service  
 Stinketh, as witnessen thise olde wise ;  
 And that ful sone I wol it verifie  
 In this Chanon, rote of all trecherie,  
 That evermore delight hath and gladnesse  
 (Swiche fendly thoughtes in his herte empresses)  
 How Cristes peple he may to meschief bring.  
 God kepe us from his false dissimuling.  
 Nought wiste this preest with whom that he delt  
 Ne of his harme coming nothing he felt.

O sely preest, o sely innocent,  
 With covetise anon thou shalt be blent ;  
 O graceles, ful blind is thy conceite,  
 For nothing art thou ware of the disceite,  
 Which that this fox yshapen hath to thee ;  
 His wily wrenches thou ne mayst not flee.  
 Wherefore to go to the conclusion  
 That referreth to thy confusion,  
 Unhappy man, anon I wol me hie  
 To tellen thin unwit and thy folie,  
 And eke the falsenesse of that other wretch,  
 As ferforth as that my conning wol stretch.

This Chanon was my lord, ye wolden wene ;  
 Sire hoste, in faith, and by the heven quene,  
 It was another Chanon, and not he,  
 That can an hundred part more subtiltee.  
 He hath betraied folkes many a time ;  
 Of his falsenesse it dulleth me to rime.  
 Ever whan that I speke of his falschede  
 For shame of him my chekes waxen rede ;  
 Al gates they begynnen for to glowe,  
 For rednesse have I non, right wel I knowe,  
 In my visage, for fumes diverse  
 Of metals, which ye have herd me reherse,  
 Consumed han and wasted my rednesse.  
 Now take hede of this Chanons cursednesse.

Sire, quod the Chanon, let your yeman gon  
 For quiksilver, that we it had anon ;  
 And let him bringen unces two or three ;  
 And whan he cometh, as faste shul ye see  
 A wonder thing, which ye saw never er this.

Sire, quod the preest, it shal be don ywis.  
 He bad his servant fetchen him this thing,  
 And he al redy was at his bidding,  
 And went him forth, and came anon again  
 With this quiksilver, shortly for to saun,  
 And toke thise unces three to the Chanoun ;  
 And he hem laide wel and faire adoun,  
 And bad the servant coles for to bring,  
 That he anon might go to his werking.

The coles right anon weren yfet,  
 And this Chanon toke out a croselet  
 Of his bosome, and shewed it to the preest.  
 This instrument, quod he, which that thou seest,  
 Take in thyn hond, and put thyself therin  
 Of this quiksilver an unce, and here begin



In the name of Crist to wex a philosopre.  
 Ther be ful fewe, which that I wolde profre  
 To shewen hem thus muche of my science :  
 For here shul ye see by experience,  
 That this quiksilver I wol mortifie,  
 Right in your sight anon withouten lie,  
 And make it as good silver and as fine,  
 As ther is any in your purse or mine,  
 Or elles wher ; and make it malliable ;  
 And elles holdeth me false and unable  
 Amonges folk for ever to appere.

I have a powder here that cost me dere,  
 Shal make all good, for it is cause of all  
 My conning, which that I you shewen shall.  
 Voideth your man, and let him be therout ;  
 And shet the dore, while we ben about  
 Our privetee, that no man us espie,  
 While that we werke in this philosophie.

All, as he bade, fulfilled was in dede.  
 This ilke servant anon right out yede,  
 And his maister shette the dore anon,  
 And to hir labour speedily they gon.

This preest at this cursed Chanons bidding,  
 Upon the fire anon he set this thing,  
 And blew the fire, and besied him ful fast.  
 And this Chanon into the crosselet cast  
 A powder, n'ot I never wherof it was  
 Ymade, other of chalk, other of glas,  
 Or somwhat elles, was not worth a fle,  
 To blinden with this preest ; and bade him hie  
 The coles for to couchen all above  
 The crosselet ; for in tokening I thee love  
 (Quod this Chanon) thine owen hondes two  
 Shal werken all thing which that here is do.

*Grand mercy*, quod the preest, and was ful glad,  
 And couched the coles as the Chanon bad.  
 And while he besy was, this fendly wretch,  
 This false Chanon (the foule fend him fetch)  
 Out of his bosom toke a bechen cole,  
 In which ful subtilly was made an hole,  
 And therin put was of silver limaile  
 An unce, and stopp'd was withouten failo  
 The hole with wax, to kepe the limaile in.

And understandeth, that this false gin  
 Was not made ther, but it was made before ;  
 And other thinges I shal tell you more  
 Hereafterward, which that he with him brought ;  
 Er he came ther, him to wegile he thought,  
 And so he did, or that they went atwin :  
 Til he had torned him, could he not blin.  
 It dulleth me, whan that I of him speke ;  
 On his falschede fain wold I me awreke,  
 If I wist how, but he is here and ther,  
 He is so variaunt, he abit no wher.

But taketh hede, sires, now for Goddes love.  
 He toke his cole, of which I spake above,  
 And in his hond he bare it prively,  
 And whiles the preest couched besily  
 The coles, as I tolde you er this,  
 This Chanon sayde ; frend, ye don amis ;  
 This is not couched as it ought to be,  
 But sone I shal amenden it, quod he.  
 Now let me meddle therwith but a while,  
 For of you have I pitee by Seint Gile.  
 Ye ben right hot, I see wel how ye swete ;  
 Have here a cloth and wipe away the wete.

And whiles that the preest wiped his face,  
 This Chanon toke his cole, with sory grace,  
 And laied it above on the midward  
 Of the crosselet, and blew wel afterward,

Til that the coles gonnen fast to bren.

Now yeve us drinke, quod this Chanon then,  
 As swithe all shal be wel, I undertake.  
 Sitte we doun, and let us mery make.  
 And whanne that this Chanones bechen cole  
 Was bren, all the limaile out of the hole  
 Into the crosselet anon fell adoun ;  
 And so it muste nedes by resoun,  
 Sin it above so even couched was ;  
 But therof wist the preest nothing, alas !  
 He demed all the coles ylike good,  
 For of the sleight he nothing understood.

And whan this Alkymistre saw his time,  
 Riseth up, sire preest, quod he, and stondeth by me  
 And for I wote wel ingot have ye non,  
 Goth, walketh forth, and bringeth a chalk ston ;  
 For I wol make it of the same shap,  
 That is an ingot, if I may have hap.  
 Bring eke with you a bolle or elles a panne  
 Ful of water, and ye shul wel see thanne  
 How that our besinesse shal thrive and preve.  
 And yet, for ye shul have no misbeleve  
 No wrong conceit of me in your absence,  
 I ne wol not ben out of your presence,  
 But go with you, and come with you again.

The chambre dore, shortly for to sain,  
 They opened and shet, and went hir wey,  
 And forth with hem they caried the key,  
 And camen again withouten any delay.  
 What shuld I tarien all the longe day !  
 He toke the chalk, and shope it in the wise  
 Of an ingot, as I shal you devise ;  
 I say, he toke out of his owen sleve  
 A teine of silver (yvel mote he cheve)  
 Which that ne was but a just unce of weight.  
 And taketh heed now of his cursed sleight ;  
 He shop his ingot, in length and in brede  
 Of tilke teine, withouten any drede,  
 So sili, that the preest it not espide ;  
 And in his sleve again he gan it hide ;  
 And from the fire he toke up his matere,  
 And in the ingot it put with mery chere :  
 And in the water-vessel he it cast,  
 Whan that him list, and bad the preest as fast,  
 Loke what ther is : put in thin hond and grupe ;  
 Thou shalt ther finden silver as I hope.  
 What, divel of helle ! shuld it elles be !  
 Shaving of silver, silver is parde.

He put his hond in, and toke up a teine  
 Of silver fine, and glad in every veine  
 Was this preest, whan he saw that it was so.  
 Goddes blessing, and his mothers also,  
 And alle Halwes, have ye, sire Chanon,  
 Sayde this preest, and I hir malison,  
 But, and ye vouchesauf to techen me  
 This noble craft and this subtiltee,  
 I wol be your in all that ever I may.

Quod the Chanon, yet wol I make assay  
 The second time, that ye mow taken hede,  
 And ben expert of this, and in your nede  
 Another day assay in min absence  
 This discipline, and this crafty science.  
 Let take another unce, quod he tho,  
 Of quiksilver, withouten wordes mo,  
 And do therwith as ye have don er this  
 With that other, which that now silver is.

The preest him besieth all that ever he can  
 To don as this Chanon, this cursed man.  
 Commandeth him, and faste blew the fire,  
 For to come to the effect of his desire.

And this Chanon right in the mene while  
 Al redy was this preest eft to begile,  
 And for a countenance in his hond bare  
 An holow stikke, (take kepe and beware)  
 In the ende of which an unce and no more  
 Of silver limaille put was, as before  
 Was in his cole, and stopped with wax wel  
 For to kepe in his limaille every del.  
 And while this preest was in his businesse,  
 This Chanon with his stikke gan him dresse  
 To him anon, and his powder cast in,  
 As he did erst, (the devil out of his skin  
 Him torne, I pray to God, for his falshe,de,  
 For he was ever false in thought and dede)  
 And with his stikke, above the crosselet,  
 That was ordained with that false get,  
 He stirreth the coles, til relenten gan  
 The wax again the fire, as every man,  
 But he a fool be, wote wel it mote nede.  
 And all that in the stikke was out yede,  
 And in the crosselet hastily it fell.

Now, goode sires, what wol ye bet than wel ?  
 Whan that this preest was thus begiled again,  
 Supposing nought but trouthe, soth to saine,  
 He was so glad, that I can not expresse  
 In no manere his mirth and his gladnesse,  
 And to the Chanon he profered eftone  
 Body and good : ye, quod the Chanon, sone,  
 Though poure I be, crafty thou shalt me finde :  
 I warne thee wel, yet is ther more behinde.

Is ther any coper here within ? sayd he.

Ye, sire, quod the preest, I trow ther be.

Elles go beie us som, and that as swithe.

Now, goode sire, go forth thy way and his the.

He went his way, and with the coper he came,

And this Chanon it in his hondes name,

And of that coper weyed out an unce.

To simple is x y tonge to propounce,

As minister of my wit, the doublenesse

Of this Chanon, rote of all cursednesse.

He semed frendly, to hem that knew him nought,

But he was fendly, both in werk and thought.

It werieth me to tell of his falsenesse ;

And natheles yet wol I it expresse,

To that entent men may beware therby,

And for non other cause trewely.

He put this coper into the crosselet,

And on the fire as swithe he hath it set,

And cast in powder, and made the preest to blow,

And in his werking for to stoupen low,

As he did erst, and all n'as but a jape ;

Right as him list the preest he made his ape.

And afterward in the ingot he it cast,

And in the panne put it at the last

Of water, and in he put his owen hond ;

And in his sleve, as ye beforen hond

Herde me tell, he had a silver teine ;

He slily toke it out, this cursed heine,

(Unweting this preest of his false craft)

And in the pannes botome he it laft.

And in the water rombleth to and fro,

And wonder prively toke up also

The coper teine, (not knowing thilke preest)

And hid it, and him hente by the brest,

And to him spake, and thus said in his game ;

Stoupen adoun ; by God ye be to blame ;

Helpeth me now, as I did you whilere ;

Put in your hond, and loketh what is there.

This preest toke up this silver teine anon ;

And thanne said the Chanon. let us gon

With thise three teines which that we han wrought,  
 To som goldsmith, and wete if they ben ought :  
 For by my faith I n'olde for my hood  
 But if they weren silver fine and good,  
 And that as swithe wel preved shal it be.

Unto the goldsmith with thise teines three  
 They went anon, and put hem in assay  
 To fire and hammer : might no man say nay,  
 But that they weren as hem ought to be.

This soted preest, who was gladder than he ;  
 Was never brid gladder agains the day,  
 Ne nightingale in the seson of May  
 Was never non, that list better to sing,  
 Ne lady lustier in carolling,  
 Or for to speke of love and womanhede,  
 Ne knight in armes don a hardy dede  
 To stonden in grace of his lady dere,  
 Than hadde this preest this craft for to lere ;  
 And to the Chanon thus he spake and seid ;  
 For the love of God, that for us alle deid,  
 And as I may deserve it unto you,  
 What shal this receit cost ? telleth me now.

By our lady, quod this Chanon, it is dere.

I warne you wel, that, save I and a frere,

In Englelond ther can no man it make.

No force, quod he ; now, sire, for Goddes sake,

What shall I pay ? telleth me, I you pray.

Ywis, quod he, it is ful dere I say.

Sire, at o word, if that you list it have,

Ye shal pay fourty pound, so God me save ;

And n'ere the frendship that ye did er this

To me, ye shulden payen more ywis.

This preest the sum of fourty pound anon

Of nobles fet, and toke hem everich on

To this Chanon, for this ilke receit.

All his werking n'as but fraud and deceit.

Sire preest, he said, I kepe for to have no loos

Of my craft, for I wold it were kept clove ;

And as ye love me, kepeth it secree :

For if men knewen all my subtiltee,

By God they wolden have so gret envie

To me, because of my philosophie,

I shuld be ded, ther were non other way.

God it forbede, quod the preest, what ye say.

Yet had I lever spenden all the good

Which that I have, (and elles were I wood)

Than that ye shuld fallen in swiche meschefe.

For your good will, sire, have ye right good prefe,

Quod the Chanon, and farewel, *grand mercy*.

He went his way, and never the preest him sey

After that day : and whan that this preest shold

Maken assay, at swiche time as he wold,

Of this receit, farewel, it n'olde not be.

Lo, thus bejaped and begiled was he :

Thus maketh he his introduction

To bringen folk to hir destruction.

Considereth, sires, how that in eche estat

Betwixen men and gold ther is debat,

So ferforth that unnethes is ther non.

This multiplying so blint many on,

That in good faith I trowe that it be

The cause gretest of swiche scarsitee.

Thise philosophres speke so mistily

In this craft, that men cannot come therby,

For any wit that men have now adayes.

They mow wel chateren, as don thise jayes,

And in hir termes set hir lust and peine,

But to hir purpos shul they never atteine.

A man may lightly lerne, if he have ought,

To multiplie, and bring his good to nought.

Lo, swiche a lucre is in this lusty game ;  
 A mannes mirth it wol turne al to grame,  
 And emptien also gret and hevye purses,  
 And maken folk for to purchasen curses  
 Of hem, that han therto hir good ylent.  
 O, fy for shame, they that han be brent,  
 Alas ! can they not flece the fires hete ?  
 Ye that it use, I rede that ye it lete,  
 Lest ye lese all ; for bet than never is late :  
 Never to thripen, were to long a date.  
 Though ye prolle ay, ye shul it never find :  
 Ye ben as bold as is Bayard the blind,  
 That blondereth forth, and peril casteth non :  
 He is as bold to renne agains a ston,  
 As for to go besides in the way :  
 So faren ye that multiplen, I say.  
 If that your eyen cannot seen aright,  
 Loketh that youre mind lacke not his sight.  
 For though ye loke never so brode and stare,  
 Ye shul not win a mite on that chaffare,  
 But wasten all that ye may rape and renne.  
 Withdraw the fire, lest it to faste brenne ;  
 Medleth no more with that art, I mene ;  
 For if ye don, your thrift is gon ful clene.  
 And right as swithe I wol you tellen here  
 What philosophres sain in this matere.  
 Lo, thus saith Arnolde of the newe toun,  
 As his Rosarie maketh mentioun,  
 He saith right thus, withouten any lie ;  
 Ther may no man Mercurie mortifie,  
 But it be with his brothers knowleching.  
 Lo, how that he, which firste said this thing,  
 Of philosophres fader was Hermes :  
 He saith, how that the dragon douteles  
 Ne dieth not, but if that he be slain  
 With his brother. And this is for to sain,  
 By the dragon Mercury, and non other,  
 He understood, and brimstone by his brother,  
 That out of Sol and Luna were ydrawe.  
 And therefore, said he, take heed to my sawe.

Let no man besie him this art to seche,  
 But if that he the entencion and speche  
 Of philosophres understanden can ;  
 And if he do, he is a lewed man.  
 For this science and this conning (quod he)  
 Is of the secree of secrees parde.  
 Also ther was a disciple of Plato,  
 That on a time said his maister to,  
 As his book Senior wol bere witnesse,  
 And this was his demand in sothfastnesse :  
 Telle me the name of thilke privee ston.  
 And Plato answerd unto him anon ;  
 Take the ston that Titanos men name.  
 Which is that ? quod he. Magnetia is the same  
 Saide Plato. Ye, sire, and is it thus ?  
 This is *ignotum per ignotius*.  
 What is Magnetia, good sire, I pray ?  
 It is a water that is made, I say,  
 Of the elementes foure, quod Plato.  
 Tell me the rote, good sire, quod he tho,  
 Of that water, if that it be your will.  
 Nay, nay, quod Plato, certain that I n'll.  
 The philosophres were sworne everich on,  
 That they ne shuld discover it unto non,  
 Ne in no book it write in no manere ;  
 For unto God it is so lefe and dere,  
 That he wol not that it discovered be,  
 But wher it liketh to his deitees  
 Man for to enspire, and eke for to defende  
 Whom that him liketh ; lo, this is the ende.  
 Than thus conclude I, sin that God of heven  
 Ne wol not that the philosophres neven,  
 How that a man shal come unto this ston,  
 I rede as for the best to let it gon.  
 For who so maketh God his adversary,  
 As for to werken any thing in contrary  
 Of his will, certes never shal he thrive,  
 Though that he multiply terme of his live.  
 And ther a point ; for ended is my tale.  
 God send every good man bote of his bale.

## THE MANCIPLES TALE.

### THE MANCIPLES PROLOGUE.

WERE ye not wher stondeth a litel toun,  
 Which that cyleped is Bob up and doun,  
 Under the blee, in Canterbury way ?  
 Ther gan our hoste to jape and to play,  
 And sayde ; sires, what ? Dun is in the mire.  
 Is ther no man for praierne ne for hire,  
 That wol awaken our felaw behind ?  
 A thefe him might ful lightly rob and bind.  
 See how he nappeth, see, for cockes bones,  
 As he wold fallen from his hors atones.  
 Is that a coke of London, with meschance ?  
 Do him come forth, he knoweth his penance ;  
 For he shal tell a tale by my fey,  
 Although it be not worth a botel hey.  
 Awake thou coke, quod he, God yewe thee sorwe,  
 What aileth thee to slepen by the morwe ?

Hast thou had fleen al night, or art thou dronke ?  
 Or hast thou with som quene al night yswonke,  
 So that thou mayst not holden up thin hed ?  
 This coke, that was ful pale and nothing red,  
 Sayd to our hoste ; so God my soule bleese,  
 As ther is falle on me swiche hevinesse,  
 N'ot I nat why, that me were lever to slepe,  
 Than the best gallon wine that is in Chepe.  
 Wel, quod the Manciple, if it may don ese  
 To thee, sire Coke, and to no wight displese,  
 Which that here rideth in this compaignie,  
 And that our hoste wol of his curtesie,  
 I wol as now excuse thee of thy tale ;  
 For in good faith thy visage is ful pale :  
 Thine eyen dasen, sothly as me thinketh,  
 And wel I wot, thy breth ful soure stinketh,  
 That sheweth wel thou art not wel disposed :  
 Of me certain thou shalt not ben yglosed.  
 See how he galpeth, lo, this dronken wight,  
 As though he wold us swallow anon right.

Hold close thy mouth, man, by thy father kin :  
The devil of helle set his foot therin !  
Thy cursed breth enfecten woll us alle :  
Fy stinking swine, fy, foul mote thee befall.  
A, taketh heed, sires, of this lusty man,  
Now, swete sire, wol ye just at the fan ?  
Therto, me thinketh, ye be wel yshape.  
I trow that ye have drunken win of ape,  
And that is whan men playen with a straw.

And with this speche the coke waxed all wraw,  
And on the Manciple he gan nod fast  
For lacke of speche ; and doun his hors him cast,  
Wher as he lay, til that men him up toke.  
This was a faire chivachee of a coke :  
Alas that he ne had hold him by his ladel !  
And er that he agen were in the sadel,  
Ther was gret shoving bothe to and fro  
To lift him up, and mochel care and wo,  
So unwelky was this sely palled goet :  
And to the Manciple than spake our host.

Because that drinke hath domination  
Upon this man, by my salvation  
I trow he lewedly wol tell his tale.  
For were it win, or old or moisty ale,  
That he hath dronke, he speketh in his nose,  
And aneseth fast, and eke he hath the pose.  
He also hath to don more than ynough  
To kepe him on his capel out of the slough :  
And if he falle from of his capel eftsoone,  
Than shul we alle have ynough to done  
In lifting up his hevvy drunken cors.

Tell on thy tale, of him make I no force.  
But yet, Manciple, in faith thou art to nice,  
Thus openly to reprove him of his vice :  
Another day he wol paraventure  
Recleimen thee, and bring thee to the lure :  
I mene, he spoken wol of smale thinges,  
As for to pinchen at thy rekeninges,  
That were not honest, if it came to prefe.

Quod the Manciple, that were a gret meschefe :  
So might he lightly bring me in the snare.  
Yet had I lever payen for the mare,  
Which he rit on, than he shuld with me strive.  
I wol not wrathen him, so mote I thrive ;  
That that I spake, I sayd it in my bourd.  
And wete ye what ? I have here in my gourd  
A draught of win, ye of a ripe grape,  
And right anon ye shul seen a good jape.  
This coke shal drinke therof, if that I may ;  
Up peine of my lif he wol not say nay.

And certainly, to tellen as it was,  
Of this vessel the coke dranke fast, (alas !  
What nedeth it ? he dranke ynough beforene)  
And whan he hadde pouped in his horne,  
To the Manciple he toke the gourd again,  
And of that drinke the coke was wonder fain,  
And thonked him in swiche wise as he coude.

Than gan our hoste to laughen wonder loude,  
And sayd ; I see wel it is necessary  
Wher that we gon good drinke with us to cary ;  
For that wol turnen rancour and disese  
To accord and love, and many a wrong apese.

O Bacchus, Bacchus, blessed be thy name,  
That so canst turnen earnest into game ;  
Worship and thouke be to thy deitee.  
Of that matere ye get no more of me.  
Tell on thy tale, Manciple, I thee pray.

Wel, sire, quod he, now herkeneth what I say.

### THE MANCIPLES TALE.

WHAN Phebus dwelled here in erth adoun,  
As olde bookes maken mentioun,  
He was the moste lusty bachelier  
Of all this world, and eke the best archer.  
He slow Phiton the serpent, as he lay  
Sleping agains the sonne upon a day ;  
And many another noble worthy dede  
He with his bow wrought, as men mowen rede.

Playen he coude on every minstrelcie,  
And singen, that it was a melodie  
To heren of his clere vois the soun.  
Certes the king of Thebes, Amphion,  
That with his singing walled the citee,  
Coud never singen half so wel as he.  
Therto he was the semelieste man,  
That is or was, sithen the world began ;  
What nedeth it his feture to descryve ?  
For in this world n'is non so faire on live.  
He was therewith fulfilled of gentillesse,  
Of honour, and of parfite worthinesse.

This Phebus, that was flour of bachelerie,  
As wel in fredom, as in chivalrie,  
For his disport, in signe eke of victorie  
Of Phiton, so as telleth us the storie,  
Was wont to beren in his hond a bowe.  
Now had this Phebus in his hous a crowe,  
Which in a cage he fostred many a day,  
And taught it spoken, as men teche a jay.  
Whit was this crowe, as is a snow-whit swan,  
And contrefete the speche of every man  
He coude, whan he shulde tell a tale.  
Therewith in all this world no nightingale  
Ne coude by an hundred thousand del  
Singen so wonder merily and wel.

Now had this Phebus in his hous a wif,  
Which that he loved more than his lif,  
And night and day did ever his diligence  
Hire for to plesse, and don hire reverence :  
Save only, if that I the soth shal sain,  
Jelous he was, and wold have kept hire fain,  
For him were loth yjaped for to be ;  
And so is every wight in swiche degree ;  
But all for nought, for it availleth nought.  
A good wif, that is clene of werk and thought,  
Shuld not be kept in non await certain :  
And trewely the labour is in vain  
To kepe a shrewe, for it wol not be.  
This hold I for a veray nicetee,  
To spillen labour for to kepen wives ;  
Thus writen olde clerkes in hir lives.

But now to purpos, as I first began.  
This worthy Phebus doth all that he can  
To plesen hire, wening thurgh swiche plesance,  
And for his manhood and his governance,  
That no man shulde put him from hire grace  
But God it wote, ther may no man embracc  
As to destreine a thing, which that nature  
Hath naturelly set in a creature.

Take any brid, and put it in a cage,  
And do all thin entente, and thy corage,  
To foster it tendrely with mete and drinke  
Of alle deintees that thou canst bethinke,  
And kepe it al so clenely as thou may ;  
Although the cage of gold be never so gay,  
Yet had this brid, by twenty thousand fold,  
Lever in a forest, that is wilde and cold,

Gon eten wormes, and swiche wretchednesse.  
For ever this brid will don his businesse  
To escape out of his cage whan that he may :  
His libertee the brid desiareth ay.

Let take a cat, and foster hire with milke  
And tendre flesh, and make hire couche of silke,  
And let hire see a mous go by the wall,  
Anon she weiveth milke and flesh, and all,  
And every deintee that is in that hous,  
Swiche appetit hath she to ete the mous.  
Lo, here hath kind hire domination,  
And appetit flemeth discretion.

A she-wolf hath also a vilains kind ;  
The lewedeste wolf that she may find,  
Or lest of reputation, wol she take  
In time whan hire lust to have a make.

All these ensamples speke I by these men  
That ben untrewes, and nothing by women.  
For men have ever a likerous appetit  
On lower thing to parfornen hir delit  
Than on hir wives, be they never so faire,  
Ne never so trewe, ne so debonaire.  
Flesh is so newefangle, with meschance,  
That we ne con in nothing have plesance  
That souneth unto vertue any while.

This Phebus, which that thought upon no gile,  
Disceiued was for all his jolitee :  
For under him another hadde she,  
A man of litel reputation,  
Nought worth to Phebus in comparison :  
The more harme is ; it happeth often so ;  
Of which ther cometh moche harme and wo.

And so befell, whan Phebus was absent,  
His wif anon hath for hire lemman sent.  
Hire lemman ! certes that is a knavish speche.  
Foryeve it me, and that I you beseche.

The wise Plato sayth, as ye now rede,  
The word must nede accorden with the dede,  
If men shul tellen proprely a thing,  
The word must cosin be to the werking.  
I am a boistous man, right thus say I ;  
Ther is no difference trewely  
Betwix a wif that is of high degree,  
(If of hire body dishonest she be)  
And any poure wenche, other than this,  
(If it so be they werken both amis)  
But, for the gentil is in estat above,  
She shal be cleped his lady and his love ;  
And, for that other is a poure woman,  
She shal be cleped his wenche and his lemman :  
And God it wote, min owen dere brother,  
Men lay as low that on as lith that other.

Right so betwix a titleles tiraunt  
And an outlawe, or elles a thefe erraunt,  
The same I say, ther is no difference,  
(To Alexander told was this sentence)  
But, for the tyrant is of greter might  
By force of meinie for to sle down right,  
And brennen hous and home, and make all plain,  
Lo, therefore is he cleped a capitain ;  
And, for the outlawe hath but smale meinie,  
And may not do so gret an harme as he,  
Ne bring a contree to so gret meschiefe,  
Men clepen him an outlawe or a thefe.

But, for I am a man not textuel,  
I wol not tell of textes never a del ;  
I wol go to my tale, as I began.

Whan Phebus wif had sent for hire lemman,  
Anon they wroughten all hir lust volage.  
This white crowe, that heng ay in the cage,

Beheld hir werke, and sayde never a word :  
And whan that home was come Phebus the lord,  
This crowe song, cuckow, cuckow, cuckow.

What ! brid, quod Phebus, what song singest  
thou now !

Ne were thou wont so merily to sing,  
That to my herte it was a rejoysing  
To here thy vois ! alas ! what song is this !

By God, quod he, I singe not amis.  
Phebus, (quod he) for all thy worthinesse,  
For all thy beautee, and all thy gentillesse,  
For all thy song, and all thy minstralcie,  
For all thy waiting, blered is thin eye,  
With on of litel reputation,  
Not worth to thee as in comparison  
The mountance of a gnat, so mote I thrive ;  
For on thy bedde thy wif I saw him swive.

What wol you more ! the crowe anon him tolde  
By sode tokenes, and by wordes bold,  
How that his wif had don hire lecherie  
Him to gret shame, and to gret vilanie ;  
And told him oft, he sawe it with his eyen.

This Phebus gan awayward for to wrien ;  
Him thought his woful herte brast atwo.  
His bowe he bent, and set therin a flo ;  
And in his ire he hath his wif yslain :  
This is the effect, ther is no more to sain.  
For sorwe of which he brake his minstralcie,  
Both harpe and lute, giterne, and sautrie ;  
And eke he brake his arwes, and his bowe ;  
And after that thus spake he to the crowe.

Traitour, quod he, with tonge of scorpion,  
Thou hast me brought to my confusion :  
Alas that I was wrought ! why n'ere I dede !

O dere wif, o gemme of lustyhede,  
That were to me so sode, and eke so trewe,  
Now liest thou ded, with face pale of hewe,  
Ful gilteles, that durst I swere ywis.

O rakel hond, to do so foule a mis.

O troubled wit, o ire reccheles,  
That unavised smitest gilteles.  
O wantrust, ful of false suspecion,  
Wher was thy wit and thy discretion !

O, every man beware of rakelnesse,  
Ne trowe no thing withouten strong witnessse.  
Smite not to sone, er that ye weten why,  
And beth avised wel and sikerly,  
Or ye do any execution  
Upon your ire for suspecion.

Alas ! a thousand folk hath rakel ire  
Fully fardon, and brought hem in the mire.  
Alas ! for sorwe I wol myselfen sle.

And to the crowe, o false thefe, said he,  
I wol thee quite anon thy false tale.  
Thou song whilom, like any nightingale,  
Now shalt thou, false thefe, thy song forgon,  
And eke thy white fethers, everich on,  
Ne never in all thy lif ne shalt thou speke ;  
Thus shul men on a traitour ben awreke.  
Thou and thin ofspring ever shul be blake,  
Ne never swete noise shul ye make,  
But ever crie ageins tempest and rain,  
In token, that thurgh thee my wif is slain.

And to the crowe he stert, and that anon,  
And pulled his white fethers everich on,  
And made him blak, and raft him all his song  
And eke his speche, and out at dore him flog  
Unto the devil, which I him betake ;  
And for this cause ben alle crows blake.

Lordings, by this ensamp e, I you pray,

Beth ware, and taketh kepe what that ye say;  
 Ne telleth never man in all your lif;  
 How that another man hath dight his wif;  
 He wol you haten mortally certain.  
 Dan Salomon, as wise clerkes sain,  
 Techeth a man to kepe his tonge wel;  
 But as I sayd, I am not textuel.  
 But natheles thus taughte me my dame;  
 My sone, thinke on the crowe a Goddes name.  
 My sone, kepe wel thy tonge, and kepe thy frend;  
 A wicked tonge is werse than a fend:  
 My sone, from a fende men may hem blesse.  
 My sone, God of his endeles goodnesse  
 Walled a tonge with teeth, and lippes eke,  
 For man shuld him avisen what he speke.  
 My sone, ful often for to mochel speche  
 Hath many a man ben spilt, as clerkes teche;  
 But for a litel speche avisidly  
 Is no man shent, to speken generally.  
 My sone, thy tonge shuldest thou restraine  
 At alle time, but whan thou dost thy peine  
 To speke of God in honour and prayere.  
 The firste vertue, sone, if thou wolt lere,  
 Is to restraine, and kepen wel thy tonge;  
 Thus lere children, whan that they be yonge.  
 My sone, of mochel speking evil avisid,  
 Ther lesse speking had ynough sufficed,

Cometh mochel harme; thus was me told and taught:  
 In mochel speche sinne wanteth naught.  
 Wost thou wherof a rakel tonge serveth?  
 Right as a swerd forcutteth and forkerveth  
 An arme atwo, my dere sone, right so  
 A tonge cutteth frendship all atwo.  
 A jangler is to God abhominable.  
 Rede Salomon, so wise and honourable,  
 Rede David in his Psalmes, rede Senek.  
 My sone, speke not, but with thyn hed thou beek,  
 Dissimule as thou were defe, if that thou here  
 A janglour speke of perilous matere.  
 The Fleming sayth, and lerne if that thee lest,  
 That litel jangling causeth mochel rest.  
 My sone, if thou no wicked word hast said,  
 Thee thar not dreden for to be bewraid;  
 But he that hath missayd, I dare wel sain,  
 He may by no way clepe his word again.  
 Thing that is sayd is sayd, and forth it goth,  
 Though him repent, or be him never so loth,  
 He is his thral, to whom that he hath sayd  
 A tale, of which he is now evil apaid.  
 My sone, beware, and be non auctour newe  
 Of tidings, whether they ben false or trewe;  
 Wher so thou come, amonges high or lowe,  
 Kepe wel thy tonge, and thinke upon the crowe.

## THE PERSONES TALE.

### THE PERSONES PROLOGUE.

By that the Manciple had his tale ended,  
 The sonne fro the south line was descended  
 So lowe, that it ne was not to my sight  
 Degrees nine and twenty as of hight.  
 Foure of the klok it was tho, as I gesse,  
 For enleven foot, a litel more or lesse,  
 My shadow was at thilke time, as there,  
 Of swiche feet as my lengthe parted were  
 In six feet equal of proportion.  
 Therwith the mones exaltation,  
 In mene Libra, alway gan ascende,  
 As we were entring at the thorpes ende.  
 For which our hoste, as he was wont to gie,  
 As in this cas, our jolly compaignie,  
 Said in this wise; lordings, everich on,  
 Now lacketh us no tales mo than on.  
 Fulfilled is my sentence and my decree;  
 I trowe that we han herd of eche degree.  
 Almost fulfilled is myn ordinance;  
 I pray to God so yeve him right good chance,  
 That telleth us this tale lustily.  
 Sire preest, quod he, art thou a vicary?  
 Or art thou a Person? I say both by thy fay.  
 Be what thou be, ne breke thou not our play;  
 For every man, save thou, hath told his tale.  
 Unbokel, and shew us what is in thy male.  
 For trewely me thinketh by thy chere,  
 Thou shuldest knitte up wel a gret matere.  
 Tell us a fable anon, for cockes bones.  
 This Person him answered al at ones;

Thou getest fable non ytold for me,  
 For Poule, that writeth unto Timothe,  
 Repreveth hem that weiven sothfastnesse,  
 And tellen fables, and swiche wretchednesse.  
 Why shuld I sowen draf out of my fist,  
 Whan I may sowen whete, if that me list?  
 For which I say, if that you list to here  
 Moralitee, and vertuous matere,  
 And than that ye wol yeve me audience,  
 I wold ful fain at Cristes reverence  
 Don you plesance leful, as I can.  
 But trusteth wel, I am a sotherne man,  
 I cannot geste, rom, ram, ruf, by my letter,  
 And, God wote, rime hold I but litel better.  
 And therefore if you list, I wol not glose,  
 I wol you tell a litel tale in prose,  
 To knitte up all this feste, and make an ende;  
 And Jesu for his grace wit me sende  
 To shewen you the way in this viage  
 Of thilke parfit glorious pilgrimage,  
 That hight Jerusalem celestial.  
 And if ye vouchesauf, anon I shal  
 Beginne upon my tale, for which I pray  
 Tell your avis, I can no better say.  
 But natheles this meditation  
 I put it ay under correction  
 Of clerkes, for I am not textuel;  
 I take but the sentence, trusteth me wel.  
 Therefore I make a protestation,  
 That I wol standen to correction.  
 Upon this word we han assented sone:  
 For, as us semed, it was for to don,  
 To enden in som vertuous sentence,  
 And for to yeve him space and audience;

And bade our hoste he shulde to him say,  
That alle we to tell his tale him pray.

Our hoste had the wordes for us alle :  
Sire preest, quod he, now faire you befall ;  
Say what you list, and we shul gladly here.  
And with that word he said in this manere ;  
Telleth, quod he, your meditacioun,  
But hasteth you, the sonne wol adoun.  
Beth fructuous, and that in litel space,  
And to do wel God sende you his grace.

### THE PERSONES TALE.

Our swete Lord God of heven, that no man wol perissh, but wol that we comen all to the knowleching of him, and to the blisful lif that is pardurable, amonesteth us by the Prophet Jeremie, that sayth in this wise : Stondeth upon the wayes, and seeth and axeth of the olde pathes ; that is to say, of olde sentences ; which is the good way : and walketh in that way, and ye shul finde refreshing for your soules. Many ben the wayes spirituel that leden folk to our Lord Jesu Crist, and to the regne of glory : of which wayes, ther is a ful noble way, and wel covenable, which may not faille to man ne to woman, that thurgh sinne hath misgon fro the right way of Jerusalem celestial ; and this way is cleped penance ; of which man shuld gladly herken and enqueren with all his herte, to wete, what is penance, and whennes it is cleped penance, and how many maneres ben of actions or werkings of penance, and how many spices ther ben of penance, and which thinges apperteynen and behoven to penance, and which thinges distroublen penance.

Seint Ambrose sayth, That penance is the plaining of man for the gilt that he hath don, and no more to do any thing for which him ought to plaine. And som doctour sayth : Penance is the waymenting of man that sorweth for his sinne, and peineth himself, for he hath misdoun. Penance, with certain circumstances, is veray repentance of man, that holdeth himself in sorwe and other peine for his giltes : and for he shal be veray penitent, he shal first bewailen the sinnes that he hath don, and stedfastly purposen in his herte to have shrift of mouth, and to don satisfaction, and never to don thing, for which him ought more to newayle or complaine, and to continue in good werkes : or elles his repentance may not avale. For as Seint Isidor sayth ; he is a japer and a gabber, and not veray repentant, that eftsones doth thing, for which him oweth to repent. Weping, and not for to stint to do sinne, may not avale. But natheles, men shuld hope, that at every time that man falleth, be it never so oft, that he may arise thurgh penance, if he have grace : but certain, it is gret doute. For as saith Seint Gregorie ; unnetheles ariseth he out of sinne, that is charged with the charge of evil usage. And therefore repentant folk, that stint for to sinne, and forlete sinne or that sinne forlete hem, holy chirche holdeth hem siker of hir salvation. And he that sinneth, and verailly repenteth him in his last day, holy chirche yet hopeth his salvation, by the grette mercy of our Lord Jesu Crist, for his repentance : but take ye the siker and certain way.

And now sith I have declared you, what thing is penance, now ye shul understand, that ther ben three actions of penance. The first is, that a man be baptised after that he hath sinned. Seint Augustine sayth ; but he be penitent for his old sinful lif, he may not beginne the newe clene lif : for certes, if he be baptised without penitence of his old gilt, he receiveth the marke of baptisme, but not the grace, ne the remission of his sinnes, til he have veray repentance. Another defaute is, that men don dedly sinne after that they have received baptisme. The thridde defaute is, that men fall in venial sinnes after hir baptisme, fro day to day. Therof sayth Seint Augustine, that penance of good and humble folk is the penance of every day.

The spices of penance ben three. That on of hem is solempe, another is commune, and the thridde privee. Thilke penance, that is solempe, is in two maneres ; as to be put out of holy chirche in lenton, for slaughter of children, and swiche maner thing. Another is whan a man hath sinned openly, of which sinne the fame is openly spoken in the contree : and than holy chirche by jugement distreyneth him for to do open penance. Commun penance is, that preestes enjoinen men in certain cas : as for to go paraventure naked on pilgrimage, or bare foot. Privee penance is thilke, that men don all day for privee sinnes, of which we shrive us prively, and receive privee penance.

Now shalt thou understand what is behoveful and necessary to every parfit penance : and this stont on three thinges ; contrition of herte, confession of mouth, and satisfaction. For which sayth Seint John Chrisostome : penance distreineth a man to accept benignely every peine, that him is enjoined, with contrition of herte, and shrift of mouth, with satisfaction, and werking of all maner humilitee. And this is fruitful penance ayenst tho three thinges, in which we wrathen our Lord Jesu Crist : this is to say, by delit in thinking, by rechelesnesse in speking, and by wicked sinful werking. And ayenst these wicked giltes is penance, that may be likened unto a tree.

The rote of this tree is contrition, that hideth him in the herte of him that is veray repentant, right as the rote of the tree hideth him in the erthe. Of this rote of contrition springeth a stalke, that bereth branches and leves of confession, and fruit of satisfaction. Of which Crist sayth in his gospel ; doth ye digne fruit of penitence ; for by this fruit mow men understonde and knowe this tree, and not by the rote that is hid in the herte of man, ne by the branches, ne the leves of confession. And therefore our Lord Jesu Crist saith thus ; by the fruit of hem shal ye knowe hem. Of this rote also springeth a seed of grace, which seed is moder of sikernes, and this seed is eger and hote. The grace of this seed springeth of God, thurgh remembrance on the day of dome, and on the peines of helle. Of this matere saith Salomon, that in the drede of God man foreletteth his sinne. The hete of this sede is the love of God, and the desiring of the joye perdurable. This hete draweth the herte of man to God, and doth him hate his sinne. For sothly, ther is nothing that savoureth so acete to a child, as the milke of his norice, ne nothing is to him more abhominable than that milke, whan it is

meddled with other mete. Right so the sinful man that loveth his sinne, him semeth, that it is to him most swete of any thing; but fro that time that he loveth sadly our Lord Jesu Crist, and desireth the lif perdurable, ther is to him nothing more abhominable. For sothly the lawe of God is the love of God. For which David the prophet sayth; I have loved thy lawe, and hated wickednesse: he that loveth God, kepeth his lawe and his word. This tree saw the prophet Daniel in spirit, upon the vision of Nabuchodonosor, when he counselled him to do penance. Penance is the tree of lif, to hem that it receiven: and he that holdeth him in veray penance, is blisful, after the sentence of Salomon.

In this penance or contrition man shal understand foure thinges; that is to say, what is contrition; and which ben the causes that moven a man to contrition; and how he shuld be contrite; and what contrition availeth to the soule. Than is it thus, that contrition is the veray sorwe that a man receiveth in his herte for his sinnes, with sad purpos to shriven him, and to do penance, and never more to don sinne. And this sorwe shal be in this maner, as sayth Seint Bernard; it shal ben hevye and grevous, and ful sharpe and poinant in herte; first, for a man hath agited his Lord and his creatour; and more sharpe and poinant, for he hath agited his father celestial; and yet more sharpe and poinant, for he hath wrathed and agited him that boughte him, that with his precious blod hath delivered us fro the bondes of sinne, and fro the crueltee of the devil, and fro the peines of helle.

The causes that ought to meve a man to contrition ben sixe. First, a man shal remembre him of his sinnes. But loke that that remembrance ne be to him no delit, by no way, but grette shame and sorwe for his sinnes. For Job sayth, sinful men don werkes worthy of confession. And therefore sayth Ezechiel; I wol remembre me all the yeres of my lif, in the bitternesse of my herte. And God sayth in the Apocalipse; remembre you fro whens that ye ben fall, for before the time that ye sinned, ye weren children of God, and limmes of the regne of God; but for your sinne ye ben waxen thral and foule; membres of the fende; hate of angels; sclauder of holy chirche, and fode of the false serpent; perpetuel matere of the fire of helle; and yet more foule and abhominable, for ye trespassen so oft times, as doth the bound that torneth again to ete his owen spewing; and yet fouler, for your long continuing in sinne, and your sinful usage, for which ye be roten in your sinnes, as a beest in his clonge. Swiche manere thoughtes make a man to have shame of his sinne, and no delit; as God saith, By the Prophet Ezechiel; ye shul remembre you of your wayes, and they shul displese you. Sothly, sinnes ben the waies that lede folk to hell.

The second cause that ought to make a man to have disdeigne of sinne is this, that, as sayth Seint Peter, who so doth sinne, is thral to sinne, and sinne putteth a man in gret thraldom. And therefore sayth the Prophet Ezechiel; I went sorweful, and had disdeigne of myself. Certes, wel ought a man have disdeigne of sinne, and withdrawe him fro that thraldom and vilany. And lo, what sayth Senek in this mater. He saith thus; though I wist, that neither God ne man shuld never knowe, yet wold I have disdeigne for to do sinne. And

the same Senek also sayth: I am borne to greter thinges, than to be thral to my body, or for to make of my body a thral. Ne a fouler thral may no man, ne woman, make of his body, than for to yeve his body to sinne. Al were it the foulest chorle, or the foulest woman that liveth, and lest of value, yet is he than more foule, and more in servitude.

Ever fro the higher degree that man falleth, the more is he thral, and more to God and to the world vile and abhominable. O good God, wel ought a man have disdeigne of sinne, sith that thurgh sinne, ther he was free, he is made bond. And therefore sayth Seint Augustine: if thou hast disdeigne of thy servant, if he offend or sinne, have thou than disdeigne, that thou thy self shuldest do sinne. Take reward of thin owen value, that thou ne be to foule to thyself. Alas! wel oughten they than have disdeigne to be servants and thralls to sinne, and sore to be ashamed of hemself, that God of his endles goodnesse hath sette in high estat, or yeve hem witte, strength of body, hele, beautee, or prosperitee, and bought hem fro the deth with his herte blood, that they so unkindly agains his gentillesse, quiten him so villainly, to slaughter of hir owen soules. O good God! ye women that ben of gret beautee, remembreth you on the proverbe of Salomon, that likeneth a faire woman, that is a fool of hire body, to a ring of gold that is worne in the groine of a sowe: for right as a sowe wrotheth in every ordure, so wrotheth she hire beautee in stinking ordure of sinne.

The thridde cause, that ought to meve a man to contrition, is drede of the day of dome, and of the horrible peines of helle. For as Seint Jerome sayth: at every time that me remembreth of the day of dome, I quake: for whan I ete or drinke, or do what so I do, ever semeth me that the trompe sowneth in min eres: riseth ye up that ben ded, and cometh to the jugement. O good God! moche ought a man to drede swiche a jugement, ther as we shul be alle, as Seint Poule sayth, before the streit jugement of oure Lord Jesu Crist; whereas he shal make a general congregation, whereas no man may be absent; for certes ther availleth non essoine ne non excusation; and not only, that our defautes shul be juged, but eke that all our werkes shul openly be knownen. And, as sayth Seint Bernard, ther ne shal no pleting availe, ne no sleight: we shal yeve rekening of everich idle word. Ther shal we have a juge that may not be deceived ne corrupt; and why? for certes, all our thoughtes ben discovered, as to him: ne for prayer, ne for mede, he wil not be corrupt. And therefore sayth Salomon: the wrath of God ne wol not spare no wight, for prayer ne for yeft. And therefore at the day of dome ther is non hope to escape. Wherefore, as sayth Seint Anselme, ful gret anguish shal the sinful folk have at that time: ther shal be the sterne and wroth juge sitting above, and under him the horrible pitte of helle open, to destroy him that wolde not bekennen his sinnes, which sinnes shullen openly be shewed before God and before every creature: and on the left side, mo Divels than any herte may thinke, for to hary and drawe the sinful soules to the pitte of helle: and within the hertes of folk shal be the biting conscience, and without forth shal be the world all brenning. Whither than shal the wretched soule flee to hide him? Certes he may not hide him, he must come forth and shewe him. For certes, as sayth Seint



Jerome, the erth shal cast him out of it, and the see, and also the aire, that shal be ful of thonder clappes and lightnings. Now sothly, who so wil remembre him of these thinges, I gesse that his sinnes shal not torne him to delit, but to grete sorwe, for drede of the peine of helle. And therfore saith Job to God : suffer, Lord, that I may a while bewaile and bewepe, or I go without returning to the derke londe, ycovered with the derkenesse of deth ; to the londe of misese and of derkenesse, wheras is the shadowe of deth ; wheras is non ordre ne ordinance, but grisly drede that ever shal last. Lo, here may ye see, that Job prayed respite a while, to bewepe and waile his trespas : for sothly on day of respite is better than all the tresour of this world. And for as moche as a man may acquite himself before God by penitence in this world, and not by tresour, therfore shuld he pray to God to yeve him respite a while, to bewepen and bewailen his trespas : for certes, all the sorwe that a man might make fro the beginning of the world, n'is but a litel thing, at regard of the sorwe of helle. The cause why that Job clepeth helle the londe of derkenesse ; understondeth, that he clepeth it londe or erth, for it is stable and never shal faile ; and derke, for he that is in helle hath defaute of light naturel ; for certes the derke light, that shal come out of the fire that ever shal brenne, shall torne hem all to peine that be in helle, for it sheweth hem the horrible Divels that hem turmenten. Covered with the derkenesse of deth ; that is to say, that he that is in helle, shal have defaute of the sight of God ; for certes the sight of God is the lif perdurable. The derkenesse of deth, ben the sinnes that the wretched man hath don, which that distroublen him to see the face of God, right as a derke cloud betwene us and the sonne. It is londe of misese, because that ther ben three maner of defaultes ayenst three thinges that folk of this world han in this present lif ; that is to say, honoures, delites, and riches. Ayenst honour have they in helle shame and confusion : for wel ye wote, that men clepen honour the reverence that man doth to man ; but in helle is non honour ne reverence ; for certes no more reverence shal be don ther to a king, than to a knave. For which God sayth by the Prophet Jeremie ; the folk, that me despisen, shal be in despite. Honour is also cleped gret lordeship. Ther shal no wight serven other, but of harme and turment. Honour is also cleped gret dignitee and highnesse ; but in helle shal they be alle fortroden of divels. As God saith ; the horrible Divels shul gon and comen upon the hedes of dampned folk : and this is, for as moche as the higher that they were in this present lif, the more shul they be abated and defouled in helle. Ayenst the riches of this world shul they have misese of poverté, and this poverté shal be in four thinges : in defaute of tresour ; of which David sayth ; the riche folk that enbraceden and oneden all hir herte to tresour of this world, shul siepe in the sleping of deth, and nothing ne shul they find in hir hondes of all hir tresour. And moreover, the misese of helle shal be in defaute of mete and drink. For God sayth thus by Moyses : they shul be wasted with honger, and the briddes of helle shul devoure hem with bitter deth, and the gall of the dragon shal ben hir drinke, and the venime of the dragon hir morsels. And further

over hir misese shal be in defaute of clothing, for they shul be naked in body, as of clothing, save the fire in which they brenne, and other filthes ; and naked shul they be in soule, of all maner vertues, which that is the clothing of the soule. Wher ben. than the gay robes, and softe shetes, and the fyn shertes ! Lo, what sayth God of heven by the Prophet Esaie, that under hem shul be strewed mothes, and hir covertures shul ben of wormes of helle. And further over hir misese shal be in defaute of frendes, for he is not poure that hath good frendes : but ther is no frend ; for neither God ne no good creature shal be frend to hem, and everich of hem shal hate other with dedly hate. The sonnes and the daughters shal rebel ayenst father and mother, and kinred ayenst kinred, and chiden and despisen eche other, both day and night, as God sayth by the Prophet Micheas. And the loving children, that whilom loveden so fleshly, everich of hem wold eten other if they might. For how shuld they love togeder in the peines of helle, whan they hated eche other in the prosperitee of this lif ! For truste wel, hir fleshly love was dedly hate. As saith the Prophet David : who so that loveth wickednesse, he hateth his owen soule, and who so hateth his owen soule, certes he may love non other wight in no manere : and therfore in helle is no solace ne no frendship, but ever the more kiuredes that ben in helle, the more cursing, the more chiding, and the more dedly hate ther is among hem. And further over ther they shul have defaute of all maner delites, for certes delites ben after the appetites of the five wittes, as sight, hering, smelling, savouring, and touching. But in helle hir sight shal be ful of derkenesse and of smoke, and hir eyen ful of teres ; and hir hering ful of waimenting and grunting of teeth, as sayth Jesu Crist : hir nosethirles shul be ful of stinking ; and, as saith Esay the Prophet, hir savouring shal be ful of bitter galle ; and touching of all hir body, shal be covered with fire that never shal quenche, and with wormes that never shal die, as God sayth by the mouth of Esay. And for as moche as they shul not wene that they mow dien for peine, and by deth flee fro peine, that mow they understonde in the word of Job, that sayth ; Ther is the shadow of deth. Certes a shadowe hath likenesse of the thing of which it is shadowed, but shadowe is not the same thing of which it is shadowed : right so fareth the peine of helle ; it is like deth, for the horrible anguish ; and why ! for it peineth hem ever as though they shuld die anon ; but certes they shul not dien. For as sayth Seint Gregory ; To wretched caitifes shal be deth withouten deth, and ende withouten ende, and defaute withouten failing ; for hir deth shal alway live, and hir ende shal ever more beginne, and hir defaute shal never faile. And therfore sayth Seint John the Evangelist ; They shul folow deth, and they shul not finde him, and they shul desire to die, and deth shal flee from hem. And eke Job saith, that in helle is non ordre of rule. And al be it so, that God hath create all thing in right ordre, and nothing withouten ordre, but all thinges ben ordred and nombred, yet natheles they that ben dampned ben nothing in ordre, ne hold non ordre. For the erth shal bere hem no fruite ; (for, as the Prophet David sayeth, God shal destroy the fruite of the erth, as fro hem) ne water shal yeve hem no moisture, ne the aire no refreshing,

ne the fire no light. For as sayth Seint Basil ; The brenning of the fire of this world shal God yeve in helle to hem that ben dampned, but the light and the clerenesse shal be yeve in heven to his children ; right as the good man yeveth flesh to his children, and bones to his houudes. And for they shul have non hope to escape, sayth Job at last, that ther shal horroure and grisly drede dwellen withouten ende. Horroure is alway drede of harme that is to come, and this drede shal alway dwell in the hertes of hem that ben dampned. And therefore han they lorne all hir hope for seven causes. First, for God that is hir juge shal be withouten mercie to hem ; and they may not plesse him ; ne non of his halwes ; ne they may yeve nothing for hir raunsom ; ne they have no vois to speke to him ; ne they may not flee fro peine ; ne they have no goodnesse in hem that they may shew to deliver hem fro peine. And therefore sayth Salomon ; The wicked man dieth, and when he is ded, he shal have non hope to escape fro peine. Who so than wold wel understonde these peines, and bethinke him wel that he hath deserved these peines for his sinnes, certes he shulde have more talent to sighen and to wepe, than for to singe and playe. For as sayth Salomon ; Who so that had the science to know the peines that ben established and ordeined for sinne, he wold forsake sinne. That science, saith Seint Austin, maketh a man to waimenten in his herte.

The fourthe point, that oughte make a man have contrition, is the sorfeful remembrance of the good dedes that he hath lefte to don here in erthe, and also the good that he hath lorne. Sothly the good werkes that he hath lefte, either they be the good werkes that he wrought er he fell into dedly sinne, or elles the good werkes that he wrought while he lay in sinne. Sothly the good werkes that he did before that he fell in dedly sinne, ben all mortified, astoned, and dilled by the eft sinning : the other werkes that he wrought while he lay in sinne, they ben utterly ded, as to the lif perdurable in heven. Than thiike good werkes that ben mortified by eft sinning, which he did while he was in charitee, noun never quicken ayen without veray penitence. And therof sayth God by the mouth of Ezechiel ; If the rightful man retorne again fro his rightnesse and do wickednesse, shal he liven ? nay ; for all the good werkes that he hath wrought, shul never be in remembrance, for he shal die in his sinne. And upon thiike chapitre sayth Seint Gregorie thus ; that we shal understonde this principally, that when we don dedly sinne, it is for nought than to remembre or drawe into memorie the good werkes that we have wrought befor : for certes in the working of dedly sinne, ther is no trust in no good werk that we have don befor ; that is to say, as for to have therby the lif perdurable in heven. But natheles, the good werkes quicken again and comen again, and helpe and avale to have the lif perdurable in heven, when we have contrition : but sothly the good werkes that men don while they ben in dedly sinne, for as moche as they were don in dedly sinne, they may never quicken : for certes, thing that never had lif, may never quicken : and natheles, al be it so that they availen not to have the lif perdurable, yet availen they to abreggen the peine of helle, or elles to get temporal rich-

esses, or elles that God wol the rather enlumine or light the herte of the sinful man to have repentance ; and eke they availen for to usen a man to do good werkes, that the fende have the lesse power of his soule. And thus the curteis Lord Jesu Crist ne wold that no good werk that men don be loste, for in somewhat it shal avale. But for as moche as the good werkes that men don while they ben in good lif, ben all amortised by sinne folowing, and eke sith all the good werkes that men don while they ben in dedly sinne, ben utterly ded, as for to have the lif perdurable, wel may that man, that no good werk ne doth, sing thiike newe Frenshe song, *J'ay tout perdu mon temps, et mon labour*. For certes sinne bereveth a man both goodnesse of nature, and eke the goodnesse of grace. For sothly the grace of the holy gost fareth like fire that may not ben idle ; for fire faileth anon as it forletteth his working, and right so grace faileth anon as it forletteth his working. Than leseth the sinful man the goodnesse of glorie, that only is hight to good men that labouren and werken wel. Wel may he be sory than, that oweth all his lif to God, as long as he hath lived, and also as long as he shal live, that no goodnesse ne hath to paie with his dette to God, to whom he oweth all his lif : for trust wel he shal yeve accomptes, as sayth Seint Bernard, of all the goodes that han ben yeven him in this present lif, and how he hath been dispended, in so moche that ther shal not perishe an here of his hed, ne a moment of an houre ne shal not perishe of his time, that he ne shal yeve therof a rekening.

The fifthe thing, that ought to meve a man to contrition, is remembrance of the passion that our Lord Jesu Crist suffered for our sinnes. For as sayth Seint Bernard, While that I live, I shal have remembrance of the travailes that our Lord Jesu Crist suffered in preching, his werinesse in traveling, his temptations when he fasted, his long wakinges when he prayed, his teres when he wept for pitee of good people : the wo and the shame, and the filthe that men sayden to him : of the foule spitting that men spitten in his face, of the buffettes that men yave him : of the foule mouthees and of the foule reprees that men saiden to him : of the nayles with which he was nailed to the crosse ; and of all the remenant of his passion, that he suffred for mannes sinne, and nothing for his gilte. And here ye shul understand that in mannes sinne is every maner order, or ordinance, tourned up so down. For it is soth, that God and reson, and sensualitee, and the body of man, ben ordained, that everich of these foure thinges shuld have lordship over that other : as thus ; God shuld have lordship over reson, and reson over sensualitee, and sensualitee over the body of man. But sothly when man sinneth, all this ordre, or ordinance, is turned up so down ; and therefore than, for as moche as reson of man ne wol not be subget ne obeisant to God, that is his lord by right, therefore leseth it the lordship that it shuld have over sensualitee, and eke over the body of man ; and why ? for sensualitee rebelleth than ayenst reson : and by that way leseth reson the lordship over sensualitee, and over the body. For right as reson is rebel to God, right so is sensualitee rebel to reson, and the body also. And certes this disordnance, and this rebellion, our

Lord Jesu Crist about upon his precious body ful dere : and herkeneth in whiche wise. For as moche as reson is rebel to God, therfore is man worthy to have sorwe, and to be ded. This suffred our Lord Jesu Crist for man, after that he had be betrayed of his disciple, and distreined and bounde, so that his blood braut out at every nail of his hondes, as saith Seint Augustin. And ferthermore, for as moche as reson of man wol not daunt sensualitee whan it may, therfore is man worthy to have shame : and this suffered our Lord Jesu Crist for man, whan they spitten in his visage. And fertherover, for as moche as the caitif body of man is rebel both to reson and to sensualitee, therfore it is worthy the deth : and this suffered our Lord Jesu Crist upon the crosse, wheras ther was no part of his body free, without grete peine and bitter passion. And all this suffred our Lord Jesu Crist that never forfeited ; and thus sayd he : To mochel am I peined, for thinges that I never deserved : and to moche defouled for shendship that man is worthy to have. And therfore may the sinful man wel say, as sayth Seint Bernard : Accursed be the bitternesse of my sinne, for whiche ther must be suffered so moche bitternesse. For certes, after the divers discordance of our wickednesse was the passion of Jesu Crist ordeined in divers thinges ; as thus. Certes sinful mannes soule is betrayed of the devil, by covetise of temporel prosperitee ; and scorned by disceits, whan he cheseth fleshly delites ; and yet it is turmented by impatience of adversitee, and beset by servage and subjection of sinne ; and at the last it is slain finally. For this discordance of sinful man, was Jesu Crist first betrayed ; and after that was he bounde, that came for to unbinde us of sinne and of peine. Than was he bescorned, that only shuld have ben honoured in alle thinges and of alle thinges. Than was his visage, that ought to be desired to be seen of all mankind (in which visage angels desiren to loke) villainously bespet. Than was he scourged that nothing had trespassed ; and finally, than was he crucified and slain. Than were accomplished the wordes of Esaie : He was wounded for our misdeds, and defouled for our felonies. Now sith that Jesu Crist toke on himself the peine of all our wickednesse, moche ought sinful man to wepe and to bewaile, that for his sinnes Goddes some of heven shuld all this peine endure.

The sixte thing, that shuld move a man to contrition, is the hope of three thinges, that is to say, foryevnesse of sinne, and the yest of grace for to do wel, and the glorie of heven, with whiche God shal guerdon man for his good dedes. And for as moche as Jesu Crist yeveth us thise yestes of his largenesse, and of his souveraine bountee, therfore he is cleped, *Jesu Nazarenus Rex Judaeorum*. Jesus is for to say, saviour or salvation, on whom men shul hopen to have foryevnesse of sinnes, which that is properly salvation of sinnes. And therfore sayd the Angel to Joseph, Thou shalt clepe his name Jesus, that shal saven his peple of hir sinnes. And hereof saith Seint Peter ; Ther is non other name under heven, that is yeven to any man, by which a man may be saved, but only Jesus. Nazarenus is as moche for to say, as flourishing, in which a man shal hope, that he, that yeveth him remission of sinnes, shal yeve him also grace wel for to do : for in the flour is

hope of fruit in time coming, and in foryevnesse of sinnes hope of grace wel to do. I was at the dore of thin herte, sayth Jesus, and cleped for to enter. He that openeth to me, shal have foryevnesse of his sinnes, and I wol enter into him by my grace, and soupe with him by the good werkes that he shal don, which werkes ben the food of God, and he shal soupe with me by the gret joye that I shal yeve him. Thus shal man hope, that for his werkes of penance God shal yeve him his regne, as he behight him in the Gospel.

Now shal man understande, in which maner shal be his contrition. I say, that it shal be universal and total ; this is to say, a man shal be veray repentant for all his sinnes, that he hath don in delite of his thought, for delite is perilous. For ther ben two maner of consentinges ; that on of hem is cleped consenting of affection, whan a man is moved to do sinne, and than deliteth him longe for to thinke on that sinne, and his reson apperceiveth it wel, that it is sinne ayenst the lawe of God, and yet his reson refraineth not his foule delite or talent, though he see wel apertly, that it is ayenst the reverence of God ; although his reson consent not to do that sinne indede, yet sayn som doctours, that swiche delite that dwelleth longe is ful perilous, al be it never so lite. And also a man shuld sorow, namely for all that ever he hath desired ayenst the lawe of God, with parfite consenting of his reson, for therof is no doute, that it is dedly sinne in consenting : for certes ther is no dedly sinne, but that it is first in mannes thought, and after that in his delite, and so forth into consenting, and into dede. Wherefore I say, that many men ne repent hem never of swiche thoughtes and delites, ne never shriven hem of it, but only of the dede of gret sinnes outward : wherefore I say, that swiche wicked delites ben subtil begilers of hem that shul be dampned. Moreover man ought to sorwen for his wicked wordes, as wel as for his wicked dedes : for certes repentance of a singular sinne, and not repentant of all his other sinnes ; or elles repenting him of all his other sinnes, and not of a singular sinne, may not availle. For certes God Almighty is all good ; and therfore, either he foryeveth all, or elles right nought. And therfore sayth Seint Augustin : I wote certainly, that God is enemy to every sinner : and how than ! he that observeth on sinne, shal he have foryevnesse of the remenant of his other sinnes ! Nay. And furtherover contrition shuld be wouder sorweful and anguious : and therfore yeveth him God plainly his mercie : and therfore whan my soule was anguious, and sorweful within me, than had I remembrance of God, that my praier might come to him. Furtherover contrition muste be continuel, and that man have stedfast purpose to shrive him, and to amend him of his lif. For sothly, while contrition lasteth, man may ever hope to have foryevnesse. And of this cometh hate of sinne, that destroyeth sinne bothe in himself, and eke in other folk at his power. For which sayth David ; they that love God, hate wickednesse : for to love God, is for to love that he loveth, and hate that he hateth.

The last thing that men shul understand in contrition is this, wherof availleth contrition. I say, that contrition somtime delivereth man fro sinne : of which David saith ; I say, (quod

David) I purposed fermely to shrive me, and thou Lord reledest my sinne. And right so as contrition availeth not without sad purpos of shrift and satisfaction, right so litel worth is shrift or satisfaction withouten contrition. And moreover contrition destroyeth the prison of helle, and maketh weke and feble all the strengthes of the Devils, and restoreth the yettes of the holy gost, and of all good vertues, and it cleneth the soule of sinne, and delivereth it fro the peine, of helle, and fro the compaignie of the Devil, and fro the servage of sinne, and restoreth it to all goodes spirituel, and to the compaignie and communion of holy chirche. And furthermore it maketh him, that whilom was sone of ire, to be the sone of grace: and all these thinges ben preved by holy writ. And therefore he that wold set his entent to these thinges, he were ful wise: for sothly he ne shuld have than in all his lif corage to sinne, but yeve his herte and body to the service of Jesu Crist, and therof do him homage. For certes our Lord Jesu Crist hath spared us so benignely in our folies, that if he ne had pitee on mannes soule, a sory song might we alle singe.

*Explicit prima pars penitentiae; et incipit pars secunda.*

The second part of penitence is confession, and that is signe of contrition. Now shul ye understonde what is confession; and whether it ought nedes to be don or non: and which thinges ben covenable to veray confession.

First shalt thou understande, that confession is veray shewing of sinnes to the precat; this is to saie veray, for he must confesse him of all the conditions that belongen to his sinne, as ferforth as he can: all must be sayd, and nothing excused, ne hid, ne forwrapped; and not avaunt him of his good werkes. Also it is necessarie to understande whennes that sinnes springen, and how they encreasen, and which they ben.

Of springing of sinnes saith Seint Poule in this wise: that right as by on man sinne entred first into this world, and thurgh sinne deth, right so deth entreth into alle men that sinnen: and this man was Adam, by whom sinne entred into this world, whan he brake the commandement of God. And therefore he that first was so mighty, that he ne shuld have died, became swiche on that he must nedes die, whether he wold or no; and all his progenie in this world, that in thilke maner sinnen, dien. Loke that in the estat of innocence, whan Adam and Eve weren naked in paradise, and no thing ne hadden shame of hir nakednesse, how that the serpent, that was most wily of all other bestes that God had made, sayd to the woman: why commanded God you, that ye shuld not ete of every tree in Paradise? The woman answered: of the fruit, sayd she, of the trees of Paradise we feden us, but of the fruit of the tree that is in the middel of Paradise God forbode us for to eten, ne to touche it, lest we shuld die. The serpent sayd to the woman: nay, nay, ye shul not dien of deth; for soth God wote, that what day that ye ete therof your eyen shul open, and ye shul be as goddes, knowing good and harme. The woman saw that the tree was good to feding, and faire to the eyen, and delectable to the sight; she toke of the fruit of the tree and did ete, and yave

to hire husbond, and he ete; and anon the eyen of hem both opened: and whan they knewe that they were naked, they sowed of a fig-tree leves in maner of breches, to hidden hir members. Here mow ye seen, that dedly sinne hath first suggestion of the fende, as sheweth here by the adder; and afterward the delit of the flesh, as sheweth here by Eve; and after that the consenting of reson, as sheweth by Adam. For trust wel, though as it were, that the fende tempted Eve, that is to say, the flesh, and the flesh had delit in the beautee of the fruit defended, yet certes til that reson, that is to say, Adam, consented to the eting of the fruit, yet stode he in the state of innocence. Of thilke Adam toke we thilke sinne original; from him fleshly descended be we all, and engendred of vile and corrupt mater: and whan the soule is put in our bodies, right anon is contract original sinne; and that, that was erst but only peine of concupiscence, is afterward both peine and sinne: and therefore we ben all yborne sonnes of wrath, and of dampnation perdurable, if we were Baptisme that we receive, which benimeth us the culpe: but forsoth the peine dwelleth with us as to temptation, which peine hight concupiscence. This concupiscence, whan it is wrongfully disposed or ordeined in man, it maketh him coveit, by coveitise of flesh, fleshly sinne by sight of his eyen, as to earthly thinges, and also coveitise of highnesse by pride of herte.

Now as to speke of the first coveitise, that is concupiscence, after the lawe of our membres, that were lawfully ymaked, and by rightful judgement of God, I say, for as moche as a man is not obeisant to God, that is his Lord, therefore is his herte to him disobeisant thurgh concupiscence, which is called nourishing of sinne, and occasioun of sinne. Therefore, all the while that a man hath within him the peine of concupiscence, it is impossible, but he be tempter somtime, and moved in his flesh to sinne. And this thing may not faile, as long as he liveth. It may wel waxe feble by vertue of Baptisme, and by the grace of God thurgh penitence; but fully ne shal it never quenche, that he ne shal somtime be moved in himselfe, but if he were refrained by sikennesse, or malefice of sorcerie, or cold drinkes. For lo, what sayth Seint Poule! the flesh coveiteth ayenst the spirit, and the spirit ayenst the flesh: they ben so contrarie and so striven, that a man may not alway do as he wold. The same Seint Poule, after his gret penance, in water and in lond; in water by night and by day, in gret peril, and in gret peine; in lond, in grete famine and thurst, cold and clothles, and ones stoned almost to deth; yet sayd he, alas! I caitif man, who shal deliver me fro the prison of my caitif body! And Seint Jerom, whan he long time had dwelled in desert, wheras he had no compaignie but of wilde bestes; wher as he had no mete but herbes, and water to his drinke, ne no bed but the naked erth, wherfore his flesh was black, as an Ethiopian, for hete, and nie destroyed for cold: yet sayd he, that the brenning of lecherie boiled in all his body. Wherfore I wot wel sikerly that they be deceived that say, they be not tempted in hir bodies. Witness. Seint James that said, that every wight is tempted in his owen conscience; that is to say, that ech of us hath mater and occasion to be tempted of the nourishing of sinne, that is in his body. And

therfore sayth Seint John the Evangelist : if we say that we ben without sinne, we deceive ourself, and truth is not in us.

Now shul ye understonde, in what maner sinne wexeth and encreseth in man. The first thing is that nourishing of sinne, of which I spake before, that is concupiscence : and after that cometh suggestion of the diel, this is to say, the diels belous, with which he bloweth in man the fire of concupiscence : and after that a man bethinketh him, whether he wol do or no that thing to which he is tempted. And than if a man withstond and weive the first enticing of his flesh, and of the fend, than it is no sinne : and if so be he do not, than feleth he anon a flame of delit, and than it is good to beware and kepe him wel, or elles he wol fall anon to consenting of sinne, and than wol he do it, if he may have time and place. And of this mater sayth Moyses by the devil, in this maner : the fend sayth, I wol chace and pursue man by wicked suggestion, and I wol hent him by meving and stirring of sinne, and I wol depart my pris, or my prey, by deliberation, and my lust shal be accomplished in delit ; I wol draw my sward in consenting : (for certes, right as a sward departeth a thing in two peces, right so consenting departeth God fro man) and than wol I sle him with my hond in dede of sinne. Thus sayth the fend ; for certes, than is a man al ded in soule ; and thus is sinne accomplished, by temptation, by delit, and by consenting : and than is the sinne actual.

Forsoth sinne is in two maners, either it is venial, or dedly sinne. Sothly, whan a man loveth any creature more than Jesu Crist our creatour, than it is dedly sinne : and venial sinne it is, if a man love Jesu Crist lesse than him ought. Forsoth the dede of this venial sinne is ful perilous, for it amenuseth the love that man shuld have to God, more and more. And therfore if a man charge himself with many swiche venial sinnes, certes, but if so be that he somtime discharge him of hem by shrift, they may wel lightly amenuse in him all the love that he hath to Jesu Crist : and in this wise skippeth venial sinne into dedly sinne. For certes, the more that a man chargeth his soule with venial sinnes, the more he is enclined to fall into dedly sinne. And therfore let us not be negligent to discharge us of venial sinnes. For the proverbe sayth, that many smal maken a gret. And herken this ensample : A gret wave of the see cometh somtime with so gret a violence, that it drencheth the ship : and the same harme do somtime the smal dropes of water, that enteren thurgh a litel crevis in the thurrok, and in the botom of the ship, if men ben so negligent, that they discharge hem not by time. And therfore although ther be difference betwix these two causes of drenching, algates the ship is dreint. Right so fareth it somtime of dedly sinne, and of anoius venial sinnes, whan they multiplie in man so gretly, that thilke worldly thinges that he loveth, thurgh which he sinneth venially, is as gret in his herte as the love of God, or more : and therfore the love of every thing that is not beset in God, ne don principally for Goddes sake, although that a man love it lesse than God, yet is it venial sinne ; and dedly sinne is, whan the love of any thing weigheth in the herte of man, as moche as the love of God, or more. Dedly sinne, as sayth Seint Augustine, is, whan a man tourneth his

herte fro God, whiche that is veray soveraine bountee, that may not change, and yeveth his herte to thing that may change and flitte : and certes, that is every thing save God of heven. For soth is, that if a man yeve his love, which that he oweth to God with all his herte, unto a creature, certes, as moche of his love as he yeveth to the same creature, so moche he bereveth fro God, and therfore doth he sinne : for he, that is dettoure to God, ne yeldeth not to God all his dette, that is to sayn, all the love of his herte.

Now sith man understandeth generally, which is venial sinne, than is it covenable to tell specially of sinnes, whiche that many a man peraventure demeth hem no sinnes, and shriveth him not of the same, and yet natheles they be sinnes sothly, as thise clerkes writen ; this is to say, at every tyme that man eteth and drinketh more than sufficeth to the sustenance of his body, in certain he doth sinne ; eke whan he speketh more than it nedeth, he doth sinne ; eke whan he herkeneth not benignely the complaint of the poure ; eke whan he is in hele of bodv. and wo' not fast whan other folk fast, without cause resonable ; eke whan he slepeth more than nedeth, or whan he cometh by that encheson to late to chirche, or to other werkes of charitee ; eke whan he useth his wif withouten soveraine desire of engendrure, to the honour of God, or for the entent to yeld his wif his dette of his body ; eke whan he wol not visite the sike, or the prisoner, if he may ; eke if he love wif or child, or other worldly thing, more than reson requireth ; eke if he flater or blandise more than him ought for any necessitee ; eke if he amenuse or withdrawe the almesse of the poure ; eke if he appaile his mete more deliciously than nede is, or ete it to hastily by likerousnesse ; eke if he talke vanitees in the chirche, or at Goddes service, or that he be a taler of idle wordes of foly or vilanie, for he shal yeld accomptes of it at the day of dome ; eke whan he behighteth or assureth to don thinges that he may not performe ; eke whan that he by lightnesse of foly misseyeth or scorneth his neighbour ; eke whan he hath ony wicked suspencion of thing, ther he ne wote of it no sothfastnesse : thise thinges and mo withouten nombre be sinnes, as sayth Seint Augustine. Now shul ye understonde, that al be it so that non erthly man may eschewe al venial sinnes, yet may he refreine him, by the brenning love that he hath to our Lord Jesu Crist, and by prayer and confession, and other good werkes, so that it shal but litel grieve. For as sayth Seint Augustine ; if a man love God in swiche maner, that all that ever he doth is in the love of God, or for the love of God veraily, for he brenneth in the love of God, loke how moche that o drope of water, which falleth into a fourneis ful of fire, anoieth or greveth the brenning of the fire, in like mauor anoieth or greveth a venial sinne unto that man, whiche is stedfast and parfito in the love of our Saviour Jesu Crist. Furthermore, men may also refreine and put away venial sinne, by receiving worthily the precious body of Jesu Crist ; by receivng eke of holy water ; by almes dede ; by general confession of *Confiteor at Masse*, and at prime, and at complin, and by blessing of Bishoppes and Preestes, and by other good werkes.

*De septem peccatis mortalibus.*

Now it is behovely to tellen whiche ben dedly sinnes, that is to say, chiefetaines of sinnes; for as moche as all they ren in o lees, but in divers maners. Now ben they cleped chiefetaines, for as moche as they be chiefe, and of hem springen all other sinnes. The rote of these sinnes than is pride, the general rote of all harmes. For of this rote springen certain braunches: as ire, envie, accidie or slouthe, avarice or coveitise, (to commun understanding) glotonie, and lecherie: and eche of these chief sinnes hath his braunches and his twigges, as shal be declared in hir chapitres folowing.

*De superbia.*

And though so be, that no man knoweth utterly the nombre of the twigges, and of the harmes that comen of pride, yet wol I shew a partie of hem, as ye shul understand. Ther is inobedience, avaunting, ipocrisie, despit, arrogance, impudence, swelling of herte, insolence, elation, impatience, strif, contumacie, presumption, irreverence, pertinacie, vaine glorie, and many other twigges that I cannot declare. Inobedient is he that disobeyeth for despit to the commandements of God, and to his souveraines, and to his gostly fader. Avauntour, is he that boasteth of the harme or of the bountee that he hath don. Ipocrite, is he that hideth to shew him swiche as he is, and sheweth him to seme swiche as he is not. Despitous, is he that hath disdain of his neighebour, that is to sayn, of his even Cristen, or hath despit to do that him ought to do. Arrogant, is he that thinketh that he hath those bountees in him, that he hath not, or weneth that he shulde have hem by his deserving, or elles that demeth that he be that he is not. Impudent, is he that for his pride hath no shame of his sinnes. Swelling of herte, is whan man rejoyceth him of harme that he hath don. Insolent, is he that despiseth in his judgement all other folk, as in regarde of his value, of his conning, of his speking, and of his bering. Elation, is whan he ne may neither suffre to have maister ne felawe. Impatient, is he that wol not be taught, ne undernome of his vice, and by strif werrieth truth wetingly, and defendeth his foly. *Contumax*, is he that thurgh his indignation is ayenst every auctoritee or power of hem that ben his souveraines. Presumption, is whan a man undertaketh an emprise that him ought not to do, or elles that he may not do, and this is called surquidrie. Irreverence, is whan man doth not honour ther as him ought to do, and waiteth to be revered. Pertinacie, is whan man defendeth his foly, and trusteth to moche in his owen wit. Vaine-glorie, is for to have pompe, and delit in his temporel highnesse, and glorie him in his worldly estate. Jangling, is whan man speketh to moche before folk, and clappeth as a mille, and taketh no kepe what he sayth.

And yet ther is a privee spice of pride, that waiteth first to be sawled, or he wol sawle, all be he lesse worthy than that other is; and eke he waiteth to sit, or to go above him in the way, or kisse the pax, or ben encensed, or gon to offering before his neighebour, and swiche semblable thinges, ayenst his duetee peraventure, but that

he hath his herte and his entente, in swiche a proude desire, to be magnified and honoured befor the peple.

Now ben ther two maner of prides; that on of hem is within the herte of a man, and that other is without. Of swiche sothly these foresayd thinges, and mo than I have sayd, apperteinen to pride, that is within the herte of man; and ther be other spices of pride that ben withouten: but natheles, that on of these spices of pride is signe of that other, right as the gay levesell at the Taverne is signe of the win that is in the celler. And this is in many thinges: as in speche and contenance, and outrageous array of clothing: for certes, if ther had ben no sinne in clothing, Crist wold not so sone have noted and spoken of the clothing of thilke rich man in the gospel. And, as Seint Gregory sayth, that precious clothing is culpable for the derthe of it, and for his softnesse, and for his strangenesse and disguising, and for the superfluitee, or for the inordinate scantnesse of it, alas! may not a man see as in our daies, the sinneful costlewe array of clothing, and namely in to moche superfluitee, or elles in to disordinate scantnesse?

As to the firste sinne in superfluitee of clothing, whiche that maketh it so dere, to the harme of the peple, not only the coste of the enbrouding, the disguising, endenting, or barring, ounding, paling, winding, or bending, and semblable wast of cloth in vanitee; but ther is also the costlewe furring in hir gounes, so moche pounsoning of chesel to maken holes, so moche dagging of sheres, with the superfluitee in length of the foresaide gounes, trailing in the dong and in the myre, on hors and eke on foot, as wel of man as of woman, that all thilke trailing is veraily (as in effect) wasted, consumed, thredbare, and rotten with dong, rather than it is yeven to the poure, to gret damage of the foresayd poure folk, and that in sondry wise: this is to sayn, the more that cloth is wasted, the more must it cost to the poure peple for the scarcenesse; and furthermore, if so be that they wolden yeve swiche pounsoned and dagged clothing to the poure peple, it is not convenient to were for hir estate, ne suffisant to bote hir necessitee, to kepe hem fro the distemperance of the firmament. Upon that other side, to speke of the horrible disordinat scantnesse of clothing, as ben these cutted sloppes or hansellines, that thurgh hir shortenesse cover not the shameful membres of man, to wicked entente; alas! som of hem shewen the bosse and the shape of the horrible swollen membres, that semen like to the maladie of Hernia, in the wrapping of hir hosen, and eke the buttockes of hem behinde, that faren as it were the hinder part of a she ape in the ful of the mone. And moreover the wretched swollen membres that they shew thurgh disguising, in departing of hir hosen in white and rede, semeth that half hir shameful privee membres were flaine. And if so be that they departe hir hosen in other colours, as is white and blew, or white and blake, or blake and rede, and so forth; than semeth it, as by variance of colour, that the half part of hir privee membres ben corrupt by the fire of Seint Anthonie, or by cancre, or other swiche mischance. Of the hinder part of hir buttockes it is ful horrible for to see, for certes in that partie of hir body ther as they

purgen hir stinking ordure, that foule partie shewe they to the peple proudly in despite of honestee, whiche honestee that Jesu Crist and his frendes observed to shewe in hir lif. Now as to the outrageous array of women, God wote, that though the visages of som of hem semen ful chaste and debonaire, yet notifieth they, in hir array of attire, likerousnesse and pride. I say not that honestee in clothing of man or woman is uncovenable, but certes the superfluitee or disordinat scarcitee of clothing is reproveable. Also the sinne of ornament, or of appailla, is in thinges that apperteine to riding, as in to many delicat hors, that ben holden for delit, that ben so faire, fatte, and costlewe; and also in many a vicious knave, that is susteined because of hem; in curious harnais, as in saddes, cropera, peitrels, and bridles, covered with precious cloth and rich, barred and plated of gold and silver. For which God sayth by Zacharie the Prophet, I wol confounde the riders of swiche hors. These folke taken litel regard of the riding of Goddes sone of heven, and of his harnais, whan he rode upon the asse, and had non other harnais but the poure clothes of his disciples, ne we rede not that ever he rode on any other beste. I speke this for the sinne of superfluitee, and not for honestee, whan reason it requireth. And moreover, certes pride is gretly notified in holding of gret meinie, whan they ben of litel profite or of right no profite, and namely whan that meinie is felonous and damageous to the peple by hardinesse of high lordeship, or by way of office; for certes, swiche lordes sell than hir lordeship to the Devil of helle, whan they susteine the wickednesse of hir meinie. Or elles, whan thise folk of low degree, as they that holden hostelries, susteine thefte of hir hostellers, and that is in many maner of deceites: thilke maner of folk ben the flies that folowen the hony, or elles the houndes that folowen the caraine. Swiche foresayde folk stranglen spirituelli hir lordeshipes; for which thus saith David the Prophet; wicked deth mot come unto thilke lordeshipes, and God yeve that they mot descend into helle, all down; for in hir houses is iniquitee and shrewednesse, and not God of heven. And certes, but if they don amendement, right as God yave his benison to Laban by the service of Jacob, and to Pharaos by the service of Joseph, right so God wol yeve his malison to swiche lordeshipes as susteine the wickednesse of hir servants, but they come to amendement. Pride of the table appereth eke ful oft; for certes riche men be cleped to festes, and poure folk be put away and rebuked; and also in excesse of divers metes and drinks, and namely swiche maner bake metes and dishe metes brenning of wilde fire, and peinted and castelled with paper, and semblable wast, so that it is abusion to thinke. And eke in to gret preciousnesse of vessell, and curiositee of minstralcie, by which a man is stirred more to the delites of luxurie, if so be that he sette his herte the lesse upon oure Lord Jesu Crist, it is a sinne; and certainly the delites might ben so gret in this cas, that a man might lightly fall by hem into dedly sinne. The spices that sourden of pride, sothly whan they sourden of malice imagined, avised, and forecaste, or elles of usage, ben dedly sinnes, it is no doute. And whan they warden by freelte unavised sodenly, and sodenly

withdraw again, al be they grevous sinnes, I gesse that they be not dedly. Now might men aske, wherof that pride sourdeth and springeth. I say that somtime it springeth of the goodes of nature, somtime of the goodes of fortune, and somtime of the goodes of grace. Certes the goodes of nature stonden only in the goodes of the body, or of the soule. Certes, the goodes of the body ben hele of body, strength, deliverance, beautee, gentrie, franchise; the goodes of nature of the soule ben good wit, sharpe understanding, subtil engine, vertue naturel, good memorie: goodes of fortune ben riches, high degrees of lordshipes, and preisinges of the peple: goodes of grace ben science, power to suffre spirituel travaille, benignitee, vertuous contemplation, withstanding of temptation, and semblable thinges: of which foresayd goodes, certes it is a gret folie, a man to priden him in ony of hem all. Now as for to speke of goodes of nature, God wote that somtime we have hem in nature as moche to our damage as to our profite. As for to speke of hele of body, trewely it passeth ful lightly, and also it is ful ofte encheson of sikennesse of the soule: for God wote, the flesh is a gret enemy to the soule: and therefore the more that the body is hole, the more be we in peril to falle. Eke for to priden him in his strength of body, it is a gret folie: for certes the flesh coveiteth ayenst the spirite: and ever the more strong that the flesh is, the sorer may the soule be: and over all, this strength of body, and worldly hardinesse, causeth ful oft to many man peril and mischance. Also to have pride of gentrie is right gret folie: for oft time the gentrie of the body benimeth the gentrie of the soule: and also we ben all of c fader and of o moder: and all we ben of o nature rotten and corrupt, both riche and poure. Forsoth o maner gentrie is for to preise, that appareilleth mannes corage with vertues and moralitees, and maketh him Cristes child; for trusteth wel, that over what man that sinne hath maistrie, he is a veray cherl to sinne.

Now ben ther general signes of gentillesse; as eschewing of vice and ribaudrie, and servage of sinne, in word, and in werk and contenance, and using vertue, as courtesie, and clennesse, and to be liberal; that is to say, large by mesure; for thilke that passeth mesure, is folie and sinne. Another is to remember him of bountee, that he of other folk hath received. Another is to be benigne to his subgettes; wherfore saith Seneke; ther is nothing more covenable to a man of high estate, than debonairete and pitee: and therefore thise flies that men clepen bees, whan they make hir king, they chesen on that hath no pricke, wherwith he may sting. Another is, man to have a noble herte and a diligent, to atteine to high vertuous thinges. Now certes, a man to priden him in the goodes of grace, is eke an outrageous folie: for thilke yestes of grace that shuld have touned him to goodnesse, and to medicine, tourneth him to venime and confusion, as sayth Seint Gregorie. Certes also, who so prideth him in the goodnesse of fortune, he is a gret fool: for somtime is a man a gret lord by the morwe, that is a caitife and a wretch or it be night: and somtime the riches of a man is cause of his deth: and somtime the delites of a man ben cause of grevous maladie, thurgh which he dieth. Certes, the commendation of the peple is ful false and brotel for to trust: this

day they preise, to-morwe they blame. God wote, desire to have commendation of the peple hath caused deth to many a besy man.

*Remedium Superbia.*

Now sith that so is, that ye have understand what is pride, and which be the spices of it, and how mennes pride sourdeth and springeth; now ye shul understand which is the remedie ayenst it. Humilitee or mekenesse is the remedie ayenst pride; that is a vertue, thurgh which a man hath veray knowlege of himself, and holdeth of himself no deintee, ne no pris, as in regard of his desertes, considering ever his freelte. Now ben ther three maner of humilitees; as humilitee in herte, and another in the mouth, and the thridde in werkes. The humilitee in herte is in foure maners: that on is, whan a man holdeth himself as nought worth before God of heven: the second is, whan he despiseth non other man: the thridde is, whan he ne recketh nat though men holde him nought worth: and the fourth is, whan he is not sory of his humiliation. Also the humilitee of mouth is in foure thinges; in attemperat speche; in humilitee of speche; and whan he confesseth with his owen mouth, that he is swiche as he thinketh that he is in his herte: another is, whan he preieth the bountee of another man and nothing therof amenuseth. Humilitee eke in werkes is in foure maners. The first is, whan he putteth other men before him; the second is, to chese the lowest place of all; the thridde is, gladly to assent to good conseil; the fourth is, to stond gladly to the award of his souveraine, or of him that is higher in degree: certain this is a gret werk of humilitee.

*De Invidia.*

After pride wol I speke of the foule sinne of Envie, which that is, after the word of the philosopher, sorwe of other mennes prosperitee; and after the word of Saint Augustine, it is sorwe of other mennes wele, and joye of other mennes harme. This foule sinne is platly ayenst the holy gost. Al be it so, that every sinne is ayenst the holy gost, yet natheles, for as moche as bountee apperteineth proprely to the holy gost, and envie cometh proprely of malice, therefore it is proprely ayenst the bountee of the holy Gost. Now hath malice two spices, that is to say, hardnesse of herte in wickednesse, or elles the flesh of man is so blind, that he considereth not that he is in sinne, or recketh not that he is in sinne; which is the hardnesse of the divel. That other spice of envie is, whan that a man werrieth trowth, whan he wot that it is trowth, and also whan he werrieth the grace of God that God hath yve to his neighbour: and all this is by envie. Certes than is envie the werst sinne that is; for sothly all other sinnes be somtime only ayenst on special vertue: but certes envie is ayenst al maner vertues and alle goodnesse; for it is sory of all bountee of his neighbour: and in this maner it is divers from all other sinnes; for wel unnethe is ther any sinne that it ne hath som delit in himself, save only envie, that ever hath in himself anguish and sorwe. The spices of envie ben these. Ther is first sorwe of other mennes goodnesse and of hir prosperitee; and prosperitee ought to be kindly mater of joye; than is envie a sinne ayenst kinde. The seconde spice of envie is joye of other mennes harme; and that

is proprely like to the divel, that ever rejoyseth him of mannes harme. Of thise two spices cometh backbiting; and this sinne of backbiting or detracting hath certain spices, as thus: som man preieth his neighbour by a wicked entente, for he maketh alway a wicked knotte at the laste ende: alway he maketh a *but* at the last ende, that is digne of more blame, than is worth all the preising. The second spice is, that if a man be good, or doth or sayth a thing to good entente, the backbiter wol turne all that goodnesse up so down to his shrewde entente. The thridde is to amenuse the bountee of his neighbour. The fourthe spice of backbiting is this, that if men speke goodnesse of a man, than wol the backbiter say; Parfay swiche a man is yet better than he; in dispreising of him that men preise. The fifth spice is this, for to consent gladly to herken the harme that men speke of other folk. This sinne is ful gret, and ay encreaseth after the wicked entent of the backbiter. After backbiting cometh grutching or murmurance, and somtime it springeth of impatience ayenst God, and somtime ayenst man. Ayenst God it is whan a man grutcheth ayenst the peine of helle, or ayenst poverté, or loese of catel, or ayenst rain or tempest, or elles grutcheth that shrewes have prosperitee, or elles that good men have adversitee: and all these thinges shuld men suffre patiently, for they comen by the rightful jugement and ordinance of God. Somtime cometh grutching of avarice, as Judas grutcheth ayenst the Magdeleine, whan she anointed the hed of our Lord Jesu Crist with hire precious oynement. This maner murmuring is swiche as whan man grutcheth of goodnesse that himself doth, or that other folk don of hir owen catel. Somtime cometh murmur of pride, as whan Simon the Pharisee grutcheth ayenst the Magdeleine, whan she approached to Jesu Crist and wept at his feet for hire sinnes: and somtime it sourdeth of envie, whan men discover a mannes harme that was privee, or bereth him on hond thing that is false. Murmur also is oft among servants, that grutchen whan hir souveraines bidden hem do leful thinges; and for as moche as they dare not openly withsay the commandement of hir souveraines, yet wol they say harme and grutche and murmure prively for veray despit; which wordes they call the divels *Pater noster*, though so be that the divel had never *Pater noster*, but that lewed folke yeven it swiche a name. Somtime it cometh of ire or prives hate, that noriseth rancour in the herte, as afterward I shal declare. Than cometh eke bitternesse of herte, thurgh which bitternesse every good dede of his neighbour semeth to him bitter and unsavory. Than cometh discord that unbinderth all maner of frendship. Than cometh scorning of his neighbour, al do he never so wel. Than cometh accusing, as whan a man seketh occasion to annoyen his neighbour, which is like the craft of the divel, that waiteth both day and night to accusen us all. Than cometh malignitee, thurgh which a man annoieth his neighbour prively if he may, and if he may not, algate his wicked will shal not let, as for to hrenne his hous prively, or enpoison him, or sle his bestes, and semblable thinges.

*Remedium Invidia.*

Now wol I speke of the remedie ayenst this foule sinne of envie. Firste is the love of God



principally, and loving of his neighbour as himself: for sothly that on ne may not be without that other. And trust wel, that in the name of .hy neighbour thou shalt understande the name of thy brother; for certes all we have on fader fleshy, and on moder; that is to say, Adam and Eve; and also on fader spirituel, that is to say, God of heven. Thy neighbour art thou bounde for to love, and will him all goodnesse, and therefore sayth God; Love thy neighbour as thyself; that is to say, to salvation both of lif and soule. And moreover thou shalt love him in word, and in benigne amonesting and chastising, and comfort him in his anyoes, and praye for him with all thy herte. And in dede thou shalt love him in swiche wise that thou shalt do to him in charites, as thou woldest that it were don to thin owen person: and therefore thou ne shalt do him no damage in wicked word, ne harme in his body, ne in his catel, ne in his soule by entising of wicked ensample. Thou shalt not desire his wif, ne non of his thinges. Understonde eke that in the name of neighbour is comprehended his enemy: certes mau shal love his enemy for the commandment of God, and sothly thy frend thou shalt love in God. I say thin enemy shalt thou love for Goddes sake, by his commandment: for if it were reson that man shulde hate his enemy, forsoth God n'olde not receive us to his love that ben his enemies. Ayenst three maner of wronges, that his enemy doth to him, he shal do three thinges, as thus: ayenst hate and rancour of herte, he shal love him in herte: ayenst chiding and wicked wordes, he shal pray for his enemy: ayenst the wicked dede of his enemy he shal do him bountee. For Crist sayth: Love your enemies, and prayeth for hem that speke you harme, and for hem that chasen and pursuen you: and do bountee to hem that haten you. Lo, thus comandeth us our Lord Jesu Crist to do to our enemies: forsoth nature driveth us to love our frendes, and parfay our enemies have more nede of love than our frendes, and they that more nede have, certes to hem shal men do goodnesse. And certes in thilke dede have we remembrance of the love of Jesu Crist that died for his enemies: and in as moche as thilke love is more grevous to performe, so moche is more gret the merite, and therefore the loving of our enemy hath confounded the venime of the divel. For right as the divel is confounded by humilitee, right so is he wounded to the deth by the love of our enemy: certes than is love the medicine that casteth out the venime of envie fro mannes herte.

#### *De Ira.*

After envy wol I declare of the sinne of Ire: for sothly who so hath envy upon his neighbour, anon comunly wol finde him mater of wrath in word or in dede ayenst him to whom he hath envie. And as wel cometh Ire of pride as of envie, for sothly he that is proude or envious is lightly wroth.

This sinne of Ire, after the discribing of Seint Augustin, is wicked will to be avenged by word or by dede. Ire, after the Philosophie, is the fervent blode of man yquickened in his herte, thurgh which he wold harme to him that he hateth: for certes the herte of man by enchaufing and meving of his blood waxeth so troubled, that it is out of all

maner judgement of reson. But ye shul understonde that Ire is in two maners, that on of hem is good, and that other is wicked. The good ire is by jalousie of goodnesse, thurgh the which man is wroth with wickednesse, and again wickednesse. And therefore saith the wise man, that ire is better than play. This ire is with debonairete, and it is wrothe without bitternesse: not wrothe ayenst the man, but wrothe with the misdede of the man: as saith the Prophet David; *Irascimini, & nolite peccare*. Now understand that wicked ire is in two maners, that is to say, soden ire or hasty ire without avisement and consenting of reson; the mening and the sense of this is, that the reson of a man ne consenteth not to that soden ire, and than it is venial. Another ire is that is ful wicked, that cometh of felonie of herte, avised and cast before, with wicked will to do vengeance, and therto his reson consenteth: and sothly this is dedly sinne. This ire is so displeant to God, that it troubleth his hous, and chaseth the holy Gost out of mannes soule, and wasteth and destroyeth that likenesse of God, that is to say, the vertue that is in mannes soule, and putteth in him the likenesse of the devil, and benimeth the man fro God that is his rightful Lord. This ire is a ful gret pleasaunce to the devil, for it is the devils forneis that he enchaufeth with the fire of helle. For certes right so as fire is more mighty to destroye erthly thinges, than any other element, right so ire is mighty to destroye all spirituel thinges. Loke how that fire of smal gledes, that ben almost ded under ashen, wol quicken ayen whan they ben touched with brimstone, right so ire wol evermore quicken ayen, whan it is touched with pride that is covered in mannes herte. For certes fire ne may not come out of no thing, but if it were first in the same thing naturally: as fire is drawne out of flintes with stele. And right so as pride is many times mater of ire, right so is rancour norice and keper of ire. Ther is a maner tree, as sayth Seint Isidore, that whan men make a fire of the saide tree, and cover the coles of it with ashen, sothly the fire therof wol last all a yere or more: and right so fareth it of rancour, whan it is ones conceived in the herte of som men, certes it wol lasten peraventure from on Easterne day until another Easterne day, or more. But certes the same man is ful fer from the mercie of God all thilke while.

In this foresaid devils forneis ther forgen three shrewes; pride, that ay bloweth and encreseth the fire by chiding and wicked wordes: than stondesth envie, and holdeth the hot yren upon the herte of man, with a pair of longe tonges of longe rancour: and than stondesth the sinne of contumelie or strif and cheste, and battereth and forgeth by vilains reprevings. Certes this cursed sinne annoyeth both to the man himself, and eke his neighbour. For sothly almost all the harme or damage that any man doth to his neighbour cometh of wrath: for certes, outrageous wrathe doth all that ever the foule fende willet or commandeth him; for he ne spareth neyther for our Lord Jesu Crist, ne his swete moder; and in his outrageous anger and ire, alas! ful many on at that time, feleth in his herte ful wickedly, both of Crist, and also of all his halwes. Is not this a cursed vice! Yes certes. Alas! it benimeth fro man his witte and his reson, and au his debonaire lif

spirituel, that shuld kepe his soule. Certes it benimeth also Goddes due lordship (and that is mannes soule) and the love of his neighbours: it striveth also all day ayenst trouth; it reveth him the quiet of his herte, and subverteth his soule.

Of ire comen thise stinking engendures; first, hate, that is olde wrnth: discord, thurgh which a man forsaketh his olde frend that he hath loved ful long: and than cometh werre, and every maner of wrong that a man doth to his neighbour in body or in catel. Of this cursed sinne of ire cometh eke manslaughter. And understondeth wel that homicide (that is, manslaughter) is in divers wise. Som maner of homicide is spirituel, and som is bodily. Spirituel manslaughter is in six thinges. First, by hate, as sayth St. John: He that hateth his brother, is an homicide. Homicide is also by backbiting; of which backbitours sayth Salomon, that they have two swerdes, with which they slay hir neighbours: for sothly as wicked it is to benime of him his good name as his lif. Homicide is also in yeving of wicked conseil by fraude, as for to yeve conseil to arise wrongful custumes and talages; of which sayth Salomon: A lion roring, and a bere hungrie, ben like to cruel Lordes, in withholding or abregging of the hire or of the wages of servantes, or elles in usurie, or in withdrawing of the almesse of poure folk. For which the wise man sayth: Fedeth him that almost dieth for hunger; for sothly but if thou fede him thou sleest him. And all thise ben dedly sinnes. Bodily manslaughter is whan thou sleest him with thy tonge in other maner, as whan thou commandest to sle a man, or elles yevest conseil to sle a man. Manslaughter in dede is in foure maners. That on is by lawe, right as a justice dampneth him that is culpable to the deth: but let the justice beware that he do it rightfully, and that he do it not for delit to spill blood, but for keping of rightwisenesse. Another homicide is don for necessitee, as whan a man sleeth another in his defence, and that he ne may non other wise escapen fro his owen deth: but certain, and he may escape withouten slaughter of his adversarie, he doth sinne, and he shal bere penance as for dedly sinne. Also if a man by cas or aventure shete an arowe or cast a stone, with which he sleeth a man, he is an homicide. And if a woman by negligence overlyeth hire child in hire slepe, it is homicide and dedly sinne. Also whan a man disturbleth conception of a childe, and maketh a woman barein by drinke of venomous herbes, thurgh which she may not conceive, or sleeth hire child by drinke, or elles putteth certain material thing in hire secret place to sle hire child, or elles doth unkinde sinne, by which man, or woman, shedeth his nature in place ther as a childe may not be conceived: or elles if a woman hath conceived, and hurteth hireself, and by that mishappe the childe is slaine, yet is it homicide. What say we eke of women that murder hir children for drede of worldly shame? Certes, it is an horrible homicide. Eke if a man approche to a woman by desir of lecherie, thurgh which the childe is perished; or elles smiteth a woman wetingly, thurgh which she leseth hire child; all thise ben homicides, and horrible dedly sinnes. Yet comen ther of ire many mo sinnes, as wel in worde, as in thought and in dede; as he that arreteth upon God, or blameth God of the thing of which he is himself

gilty; or despiseth God and all his halwes, as don thise cursed hasardours in divers contrees. This cursed sinne don they, whan they felen in hir herte ful wickedly of God and of his halwes: also whan they treten unreverently the sacrament of the auter, thilke sinne is so gret, that unneth it may be releasid, but that the mercy of God passeth all his werkes, it is so gret, and he so benigne. Than cometh also of ire atry anger, whan a man is sharply amonested in his shrift to leve his sinne, than wol he be angry, and answer hokerly and angerly, to defend or excusen his sinne by unstedfastnesse of his fleshe; or elles he did it for to hold compaignie with his felawes; or elles he sayeth the fend enticed him; or elles he did it for his youthe; or elles his complexion is so courageous that he may not forbere; or elles it is his destinee, he sayth, unto a certain age; or elles he sayth it cometh him of gentillesse of his auncestres, and semblable thinges. All thise maner of folke so wrappen hem in hir sinnes, that they ne wol not deliver hemself; for sothly, no wight that excuseth himself wilfully of his sinne, may not be delivered of his sinne, til that he mekely beknoweth his sinne. After this than cometh swering, that is expresse ayenst the commandement of God: and that befallith often of anger and of ire. God sayth; Thou shalt not take the name of thy Lord God in idel. Also our Lord Jesu Crist sayth by the word of Saint Mathew; Ne shal ye not swere in all manere, neyther by heven, for it is Goddes trone: ne by erthe, for it is the benche of his feet: ne by Jerusalem, for it is the citee of a gret King: ne by thin hed, for thou ne mayst not make an here white ne black: but he sayth, be your word, ye, ye, nay, nay; and what that is more, it is of evil. Thus sayth Crist. For Cristes sake swere not so sinnefully, in dismembing of Crist, by soule, herte, bones, and body: for certes it semeth, that ye thinke that the cursed Jewes dismembred him not ynough, but ye disembre him more. And if so be that the lawe compell you to swere, than reuleth you after the lawe of God in your swering, as sayth Jeremie; Thou shalt kepe three conditions; thou shalt swere in trouth, in dome, and in rightwisenesse. This is to say, thou shalt swere soth; for every lesing is ayenst Crist; for Crist is very trouth: and thinke wel this, that every gret swerer, not compelled lawfully to swere, the plage shal not depart fro his hous, while he useth unfeilful swering. Thou shalt swere also in dome, whan thou art constreined by the domesman to witnesse a trouth. Also thou shalt not swere for envie, neyther for favour, ne for mede, but only for rightwisenesse, and for declaring of trouthe to the honour and worship of God, and to the aiding and helping of thin even Cristen. And therefore every man that taketh Goddes name in idel, or falsely swereth with his mouth, or elles taketh on him: the name of Crist, to be called a Cristen man, and liveth agenst Cristes living and his teching: all they take Goddes name in idel. Loke also what sayth Saint Peter; *Actuum iv. Non est aliud nomen sub celo, &c.* Ther is non other name (sayth Saint Peter) under heven yeven to men, in which they may be saved; that is to say, but the name of Jesu Crist. Take kepe eke how precious is the name of Jesu Crist, as sayth Saint Poule, *ad Philipenses ii. In nomine Jesu, &c.* that in the name of Jesu every knee of hevenly creature, or

erthly, or of neie, shuld bowen ; for it is so high and so worshipful, that the cursed fend in helle shuld tremble for to here it named. Than semeth it, that men that swere so horribly by his blessed name, that they despise it more boldely than did the cursed Jewes, or elles the divel, that trembleth when he hereth his name.

Now certes, sith that swering (but if it be lawfully don) is so highly defended, moche worse is for to swere falsely, and eke nedeles.

What say we eke of hem that deliten hem in swering, and hold it a genterie or manly dede to swere gret othes ! And what of hem that of veray usage ne cese not to swere gret othes, al be the cause not worth a strawe ! Certes this is horrible sinne. Swering sodenly without avise-ment is also a gret sinne. But let us go now to that horrible swering of adjuration and conjuration, as don thise false enchauntours and nigromancers in basins ful of water, or in a bright sward, in a cerele, or in a fire, or in a sholder bone of a shepe : I cannot sayn, but that they do cursedly and damnably ayenst Crist, and all the feith of holy chirche.

What say we of hem that beleven on divinales, as by flight or by noise of briddes or of bestes, or by sorte of geomancie, by dremes, by chirking of dories, or craking of houses, by gnawing of rattes, and swiche maner wretchednesse ! Certes, all thise thinges ben defended by God and holy chirche, for which they ben accursed, till they come to amendement, that on swiche filth set hir beleve. Charmes for woundes, or for maladies of men or of bestes, if they take any effect, it may be peraventure that God suffreth it, for folk shuld yve the more feith and reverence to his name.

Now wol I speke of lesinges, which generally is false signifiante of word, in entent to deceive his even Cristen. Some lesing is, of which ther cometh non avantage to no wight ; and som lesing turneth to the profite and ese of a man, and to the damage of another man. Another lesing is, for to saven his lif or his catel. Another lesing cometh of delit for to lie, in which delit, they wol forge a long tale, and peint it with all circumstances, wher all the ground of the tale is false. Some lesing cometh, for he wol sustein his word : and som lesing cometh of recchelesnesse withouten avisement, and semblable thinges.

Let us now touche the vice of flaterie, which ne cometh not gladly, but for drede, or for covetise. Flaterie is generally wrongful preising. Flaterers ben the devils nourices, that nourish his children with milke of losengerie. Forsoth Salomon sayth, That flaterie is werse than detraction : for sometime detraction maketh an hautein man be the more humble, for he dredeth detraction, but certes flaterie maketh a man to enhance his herte and his contenance. Flaterers ben the devils enchauntours, for they maken a man to wenen himself be like that he is not like. They be like to Judas, that betrayed God ; and thise flaterers betrayen man to selle him to his enemy, that is the devil. Flaterers ben the devils chappeleines, that ever singen *Placebo*. I reken flaterie in the vices of ire : for oft time if a man be wroth with another, than wol he flater som wight, to susteine him in his quarrel.

Speke we now of swiche cursing as cometh of

irous herte. Malison generally may be said every maner power of harme : swiche cursing bereveth man the regne of God, as sayth Seint Poule. And oft time swiche cursing wrongfully retorneth again to him that curseth, as a bird retorneth again to his owen nest. And over all thing men ought eschew to curse hir children, and to yeve to the devil hir engendrure, as fer forth as in hem is : certes it is a grete peril and a grete sinne.

Let us than speke of chiding and repreving, which ben ful grete woundes in mannes herte, for they unsow the seames of frendship in mannes herte : for certes, unnethes may a man be plainly accorded with him, that he hath openly reviled, repreved, and disclaundred : this is a ful grisly sinne, as Crist sayth in the Gospel. And take ye kepe now, that he that repreveth his neighbour, either he repreveth him by som harme of peine, that he hath upon his bodie, as, Mesel, croked harlot ; or by som sinne that he doth. Now if he repreveth him by harme of peine, than turneth the repreve to Jesu Crist : for peine is sent by the rightwys sonde of God, and by his suffrance, be it meselrie, or maimie, or maladie : and if he repreveth him uncharitably of sinne, as, thou holour, thou dronkelewe harlot, and so forth ; than apperteineth that to the rejoicing of the devil, which ever hath joye that men don sinne. And certes, chiding may not come but out of a vilains herte, for after the habundance of the herte speketh the mouth ful oft. And ye shul understond, that loke by any way, whan any man chastiseth another, that he beware fro chiding or repreving : for trewely, but he beware, he may ful lightly quicken the fire of anger and of wrath, which he shuld quench : and peraventure sleth him, that he might chastise with benignitee. For, as sayth Salomon, the amiable tonge is the tree of lif ; that is to say, of lif spirituel. And sothly, a dissolute tonge sleth the spirit of him that repreveth, and also of him which is repreved. Lo, what sayth Seint Augustine : Ther is nothing so like the devils child, as he which oft chideth. A servant of God behoveth not to chide. And though that chiding be a vilains thing betwix all maner folk, yet it is certes most uncovenable betwene a man and his wif, for ther is never rest. And therfore sayth Salomon ; An hous that is uncovered in rayn and dropping, and a chiding wif, ben like. A man, which is in a dropping hous in many places, though he eschew the dropping in o place, it droppeth on him in another place : so fareth it by a chiding wif ; if she chide him not in o place, she wol chide him in another : and therfore, better is a morsel of bred with joye, than an hous filled ful of delices with chiding, sayth Salomon. And Seint Poule sayth ; O ye women, beth ye subgettes to your husbands, as you behoveth in God ; and ye men loveth your wives.

Afterward speke we of scorning, which is a wicked sinne, and namely, whan he scorneth a man for his good werkes : for certes, swiche scornors faren like the foule tode, that may not endure to smell the swete savour of the vine, whan it flourisheth. Thise scornors ben parting felawes with the devil, for they have joye whan the devil winneth, and sorwe if he leseth. They ben adversaries to Jesu Crist, for they hate that he loveth ; that is to say, salvation of soule.

Speke we now of wicked conseil, for he that

wicked conseil yeveth is a traitour, for he de-  
ceiveth him that trusteth in him. But natheles,  
yet is wicked conseil first ayenst himself: for,  
as sayth the wise man, every false living hath  
this propertee in himself, that he that wol annoy  
another man, he annoyeth first himself. And men  
shul understond, that man shal not take his con-  
seil of false folk, ne of angry folk, or grevous folk,  
ne of folk that loven specially hir owen profit, ne  
of to moche worldly folk, namely, in conseilng of  
mannes soule.

Now cometh the sinne of hem that maken dis-  
cord among folk, which is a sinne that Crist  
hateth utterly; and no wonder is; for he died  
for to make concord. And more shame don they  
to Crist, than did they that crucified: for  
God loveth better, that frendship be amonges folk,  
than he did his owen body, which that he yave for  
unitee. Therefore ben they likened to the devil,  
that ever is about to make discord.

Now cometh the sinne of Double tonge, swiche  
as speke faire before folk, and wickedly behind;  
or elles they make semblaunt as though they  
spake of good entencion, or elles in game and  
play, and yet they speken of wicked entente.

Now cometh bewreyng of conseil, thurgh which  
a man is defamed: certes unneth may he restore  
the damage. Now cometh manace, that is an open  
folie: for he that oft manaceth, he threteth more  
than he may performe ful oft time. Now comen  
idel wordes, that be without profite of him that  
speketh the wordes, and eke of him that herkeneth  
the wordes: or elles idel wordes ben tho that ben  
nedeles, or without entente of naturel profit. And  
al be it that idel wordes be somtime venial sinne,  
yet shuld men doute hem, for we shul yve  
rekening of hem before God. Now cometh jang-  
ling, that may not come withouten sinne: and  
as sayth Salomon, it is a signe of apert folie.  
And therefore a philosopre sayd, whan a man  
axed him how that he shuld plesse the peple, he  
answered; Do many good werkes, and speke few  
jangelinges. After this cometh the sinne of japeres,  
that ben the devils apes, for they make folk to  
laugh at hir japerie, as folk don at the gaudes  
of an ape: swiche japes defendeth Seint Poule.  
Loke how that vertuous wordes and holy comforten  
hem that travaillen in the service of Crist, right  
so comforten the vilains wordes, and the knakkes  
of japeres, hem that travaillen in the service of  
the devil. These ben the sinnes of the tonge, that  
comen of ire, and other sinnes many mo.

#### *Remedium Iræ.*

The remedie ayenst Ire, is a vertue that cleped  
is mansuetude, that is Debonairtee: and eke  
another vertue, that men clepen patience or suf-  
ferance.

Debonairtee withdraweth and refreineth the  
stirrings and meevings of mannes corage in his  
herte, in swich maner, that they ne skip not out  
by anger ne ire. Sufferance suffereth swetely all  
the annoyance and the wrong that is don to man  
outward. Seint Jerome sayth this of debonairtee,  
That it doth no harme to no wight, ne sayth: ne  
for no harme that men do ne say, he ne chafeth  
not ayenst reson. This vertue somtime cometh  
of nature; for, as sayth the philosopre, a man is  
a quick thing, by nature debonaire, and trefable to

goodnesse: but whan debonairtee is enformed of  
grace, than it is the more worth.

Patience is another remedie ayenst ire, and is a  
vertue that suffereth swetely every mannes good-  
nesse, and is not wroth for non harme that is don  
to him. The philosopre sayth, that patience is  
the vertue that suffreth debonairly al the outrage  
of adversitee, and every wicked word. This  
vertue maketh a man like to God, and maketh  
him Goddes owen childe: as sayth Crist. This  
vertue discomfiteth thin enemies. And therefore  
sayth the wise man; if thou wolt vanquish thin  
emie, see thou be patient. And thou shalt  
understond, that a man suffereth foure maner of  
grevances in outward thinges, ayenst the which  
foure he must have foure maner of patience.

The first grevance is of wicked wordes. Thilke  
grevance suffred Jesu Crist, without grutcheng,  
ful patiently, whan the Jewes despised him and re-  
proved him ful oft. Suffer thou therefore patiently,  
for the wise man saith: if thou strive with a foole,  
though the foole be wroth, or though he laugh,  
algate thou shalt have no reste. That other  
grevance outward is to have damage of thy catel.  
Therayenst suffred Crist ful patiently, whan he  
was despoiled of al that he had in this lif, and  
that n'as but his clothes. The thridde grevance  
is a man to have harme in his body. That suffred  
Crist ful patiently in all his passion. The fourthe  
grevance is in outrageous labour in werkes: wher-  
fore I say, that folk that make hir servants to  
travaille to grevously, or out of time, as in holy  
dayes, sothly they do gret sinne. Hereayenst  
suffred Crist ful patiently, and taught us patience,  
whan he bare upon his blessed sholders the crosse,  
upon which he shuld suffer despitous deth. Here  
may men lerne to be patient; for certes, not only  
cristen men be patient for love of Jesu Crist, and  
for guerdon of the blisful lif that is perdurable, but  
certes the old Payenes, that never were cristened,  
commendeden and useden the vertue of patience.

A philosopre upon a time, that wold have  
beten his disciple for his gret trespass, for which  
he was gretly moved, and brought a yerde to bete  
the childe, and whan this child sawe the yerde,  
he sayd to his maister: what thinke ye to do! I  
wol bete thee, sayd the maister, for thy correction.  
Forsooth, sayd the childe, ye ought first correct  
yourself, that have lost all your patience for the  
offence of a child. Forsooth, sayd the maister all  
weping, thou sayest soth: have thou the yerde,  
my dere sone, and correct me for min impatience.  
Of patience cometh obedience, thurgh which a man  
is obedient to Crist, and to all hem to which he ough-  
t to be obedient in Crist. And understand wel, that  
obedience is parfite, whan that a man doth gladly and  
hastily, with good herte entirely, all that he shuld  
do. Obedience generally is to performe hastily the  
doctrine of God, and of his soveraines, to which  
him ought to be obeisant in all rightwisenesse.

#### *Ite Accidie.*

After the sinne of wrath, now wol I speke of  
the sinne of accidie, or slouth: for envie blindeth  
the herte of a man, and ire troubleth a man, and  
accidie maketh him hevvy, thoughtful, and wrawe.  
Envie and ire maketh bitterness in herte, which  
bitternesse is mother of accidie, and benimeth  
him the love of alle goodnesse; than is accidie the

anguish of a trouble herte. And Seint Augustine sayth: It is annoye of goodnesse and annoye of harme. Certes this is a damnable sinne, for it doth wrong to Jesu Crist, in as moche as it benimeth the service that men shulde do to Crist with alle diligence, as sayth Salomon: but accidie doth non swiche diligence. He doth all thing with annoye, and with wrawnesse, slaknesse, and excusation, with idelnesse and unlust. For which the book sayth: Accursed be he that doth the service of God negligently. Than is accidie enemy to every estate of man. For certes the estate of man is in three maners: either it is the estate of innocence, as was the estate of Adam, before that he fell into sinne, in which estate he was holden to werk, as in heryng and adoring of God. Another estate is the estate of sinful men: in which estate men ben holden to labour in praying to God, for amendement of hir sinnes, and that he wold graunt hem to rise out of hir sinnes. Another estate is the estate of grace, in which estate he is holden to werkes of penitence: and certes, to all this thinges is accidie enemy and contrary, for he loveth no besinesse at all. Now certes, this foule sinne of accidie is eke a ful gret enemy to the livelode of the body; for it ne hath no purveance ayenst temporel necessitees; for it forsloutheth, forsluggeth, and destroieth all goodes temporel by recchelesnesse.

The fourth thing is that accidie is like hem that ben in the peine of helle, because of hir slouth and of hir heviness: for they that be damned, ben so bound, that they may neyther do wel ne think wel. Of accidie cometh first, that a man is annoied and accombred to do any goodnesse, and that maketh that God hath abhominacion of swiche accidie, as sayth Seint John.

Now cometh slouth, that wol not suffre no hardnesse ne no penance: for sothly, slouth is so tendre and so delicat, as sayth Salomon, that he wol suffre non hardnesse ne penance, and therefore he shendeth all that he doth. Ayenst this roten sinne of accidie and slouth shuld men exercise himself, and use himself to do good werkes, and manly and vertuously cachen corage wel to do, thinking that our Lord Jesu Crist quiteth every good deed, be it never so lite. Usage of labour is a gret thing: for it maketh, as sayth Seint Bernard, the labourer to have strong armes and hard sinewes: and slouth maketh hem feble and tendre. Than cometh drede for to beginne to werke any good werkes: for certes, he that enclineth to sinne, him thinketh it is to gret an emprise for to undertake the werkes of goodnesse, and casteth in his herte, that the circumstances of goodnesse ben so grevous and so chargeant for to suffre, that he dare not undertake to do werkes of goodnesse, as sayth Seint Gregorie.

Now cometh wanhope, that is, despire of the mercy of God, that cometh somtime of to moche outrageous sorwe, and somtime of to moche drede, imagining that he hath do so moche sinne, that it wolde not availle him, though he wolde repent him, and forsake sinne: thurgh which despire or drede, he abandoneth all his herte to every maner sinne, as sayth Seint Augustine. Which dampnable sinne, if it continue unto his end, it is cleped the sinne of the holy gost. This horrible sinne is so perilous, that he that is despaired, ther n'is no felonie, ne no sinne, that he douteth for to do, as

shewed wel by Judas. Certes, aboven all sinnes than is this sinne most displeant and most adversarie to Crist. Sothly, he that despireth him, is like to the coward champion recreant, that flieth withouten nede. Alas! alas! nedeles is he recreant, and nedeles despaired. Certes, the mercy of God is ever redy to the penitent person, and is above all his werkes. Alas! cannot a man bethinke him on the Gospel of Seint Luke, chap. xv. wheras Crist sayeth, that as wel shal ther be joye in heaven upon a sinful man that doth penitence, as upon ninety and nine rightful men that neden no penitence! Loke further, in the same Gospel, the joye and the feste of the good man that had lost his sone, whan his sone was retourned with repentance to his fader. Can they not remembre hem also, (as sayth Seint Luke, chap. xxiii.) how that the thefe that was honged beside Jesu Crist, sayd, Lord, remembre on me, whan thou comest in thy regne? Forsooth, said Crist, I say to thee, to-day shalt thou be with me in paradis. Certes, ther is non so horrible sinne of man, that ne may in his lif be destroyed by penitence, thurgh vertue of the passion and of the deth of Crist. Alas! what nedeth man than to be despaired, eith that his mercy is so redy and large! Axe and have. Than cometh sompnolence, that is, sluggy slumbring, which maketh a man hevry, and dull in body and in soule, and this sinne cometh of slouth: and certes, the time that by way of reson man shuld not slepe, is by the morwe, but if ther were cause resonable. For sothly in the morwe tide is most covenable to a man to say his prayers, and for to think on God, and to honour God, and to yeve almesse to the poure that comen first in the name of Jesu Crist. Lo, what sayth Salomon! Who so wol by the morwe awake to seke me, he shal find me. Than cometh negligence or recchelesnesse that recketh of nothing. And though that ignorance be mother of all harmes, certes, negligence is the notice. Negligence ne doth no force, whan he shal do a thing, whether he do it wel or badly.

The remedie of thise two sinnes is, as sayth the wise man, that he that dredeth God, spareth not to do that him ought to do; and he that loveth God, he wol do diligence to plesse God by his werkes, and abandon himself, with all his might, wel for to do. Than cometh idelnesse, that is the yate of all harmes. An idel man is like to a place that hath no walles; theras deviles may enter on every side, or shoot at him at discoverte by temptation on every side. This idelnesse is the thurrok of all wicked and vilains thoughtes, and of all jangeles, trifles, and all ordure. Certes heaven is yeven to hem that will labour, and not to idel folk. Also David sayth, they ne be not in the labour of men, ne they shul not ben whipped with men, that is to say, in purgatorie. Certes than semeth it they shul ben tormented with the devil in helle, but if they do penance.

Than cometh the sinne that men clepen *Tarditas*, as whan a man is latered, or taryed or he wol tourn to God: and certes, that is a gret folie. He is like him that falleth in the diche, and wol not arise. And this vice cometh of false hope, that thinketh that he shal live long, but that hope failleth ful oft.

Than cometh Lachesse, that is, he that whan he beginneth any good werk, anon he wol forlete it and stint, as don they that have any wight to governen, and ne take of him no more kepe, anon as

they find any contrary or any annoy. Thise ben the newe shepherdes, that let hir shepe wetingly go renne to the wolf, that is in the breres, and do no force of hir owen governance. Of this cometh povertie and destruction, both of spirituel and temporel thinges. Than cometh a maner coldnesse, that freseth all the herte of man. Than cometh undevotion, thurgh which a man is so blont, as sayth Seint Bernard, and hath swiche langour in his soule, that he may neyther rede ne sing in holy chirche, ne here ne thinke of no devotion, ne travaile with his houndes in no good werk, that it n'is to him unsavory and all apalled. Than wexeth he sluggish and slombry, and sone wol he be wroth, and sone is enclined to hate and to envie. Than cometh the sinne of worldly sorwe swiche as is cleped *Tristitia*, that sleth a man, as sayth Seint Poule. For certes swiche sorwe werketh to the deth of the soule and of the body also, for therof cometh, that a man is annoied of his owen lif. Wherefore swiche sorwe shorteth the lif of many a man, or that his time is come by way of kinde.

#### *Remedium Accidie.*

Ayenst this horrible sinne of accidie, and the branches of the same, ther is a vertue that is called *fortitudo* or strength, that is, an affection, thurgh which a man despiseth noyous thinges. This vertue is so mighty and so vigorous, that it dare withstond mightily, and wrastle ayenst the assautes of the devil, and wisely kepe himself fro periles that ben wicked; for it enhaunseth and enforceth the soule, right as accidie abateth and maketh it feble: for this *fortitudo* may endure with long sufferance the travailes that ben covenable.

This vertue hath many spices; the first is cleped magnanimitie, that is to say, gret corage. For certes ther behoveth gret corage ayenst accidie, lest that it swalowe the soule by the sinne of sorwe, or destroy it with wanhope. Certes, this vertue maketh folk to undertake hard and grevous thinges by hir owen will, wisely and resonably. And for as moche as the devil fighteth ayenst man more by quaintise and sleight than by strength, therefore shal a man withstond him by wit, by reson, and by discretion. Than ben ther the vertues of feith, and hope in God and in his seintes, to achieve and accomple the good werkes, in the which he purposeth fermely to continue. Than cometh seuretee or sikernes, and that is whan a man ne douteth no travaille in time coming of the good werkes that he hath begonne. Than cometh magnificence, that is to say, whan a man doth and performeth gret werkes of goodnesse, that he hath begonne, and that is the end why that men shuld do good werkes. For in the accomplishing of good werkes lieth the gret guerdon. Than is ther constance, that is stableness of corage, and this shuld be in herte by stedfast feith, and in mouth, and in bering, in chere, and in dede. Eke ther ben mo special remedies ayenst accidie, in divers werkes, and in consideration of the peines of helle and of the joyes of heven, and in trust of the grace of the holy gost, that will yeve him might to performe his good entent.

#### *De Avaritia.*

After accidie wol I speke of avarice, and of covetise. Of which sinne Seint Poule sayth:

The rote of all harmes is covetise. For sothly, whan the herte of man is confounded in itself and troubled, and that the soule hath lost the comfort of God, than seketh he an idel solas of worldly thinges.

Avarice, after the description of Seint Augustine, is a likerousnesse in herte to have erthly thinges. Som other folk sayn, that avarice is for to purchase many erthly thinges, and nothing to yeve to hem that han nede. And understand wel, that avarice standeth not only in land ne catel, but som time in science and in glorie, and in every maner outrageous thing is avarice. And the difference betwene avarice and covetise is this: covetise is for to covet swiche thinges as thou hast not; and avarice is to withhold and kepe swiche thinges as thou hast, without rightful nede. Sothly, this avarice is a sinne that is ful dampnable, for all holy writ curseth it, and speketh ayenst it, for it doth wrong to Jesu Crist; for it bereveth him the love that men to him owen, and tourneth it backward ayenst all reson, and maketh that the avaricious man hath more hope in his catel than in Jesu Crist, and doth more obeerance in keping of his tresour, than he doth in the service of Jesu Crist. And therefore sayth Seint Poule, That an avaricious man is the thraldome of idolatrie.

What difference is ther betwix an idolastre, and an avaricious man? But that an idolastre peraventure ne hath, not but o maumet or two, and the avaricious man hath many: for certes, every florein in his coffre is his maumet. And certes, the sinne of maumetrie is the first that God defended in the ten commandments, as bereth witnesse, *Exod. Cap. xx.* Thou shalt have no false goddes before me, ne thou shalt make to thee no graven thing. Thus is an avaricious man, that loveth his tresour before God, an idolastre. And thurgh this cursed sinne of avarice and covetise cometh thise hard lordships, thurgh which men ben distreined by tallages, customes and cariages, more than hir dutee or reson is: and eke take they of hir bondmen amercementes, which might more resonably be called extortions than amercementes. Of which amercementes, or raunsoming of bondmen, som lordes stewardes say, that it is rightful, for as moche as a cherl hath no temporel thing, that it ne is his lordes, as they say. But certes, thise lordshippes don wrong, that bereven hir bondmen thinges that they never yave hem. *Augustinus de Civitate Dei, Libro ix.* Soth is, that the condition of thraldom, and the first cause of thraldom was for sinne. *Genesis v.*

Thus may ye see, that the gilt deserved thraldom, but not nature. Wherefore thise lordes ne shuld not to moche glorifie hem in hir lordshippes, sith that they by naturel condition ben not lordes of hir thralles, but that thraldom came first by the deserte of sinne. And furthermore, ther as the lawe sayth, that temporel goodes of bondfolk ben the goodes of hir lord: ye, that is for to understand, the goodes of the emperour, to defend hem in hir right, but not to robbe hem ne to reve hem. Therefore sayth Seneca: The prudent shuld live benignly with the thral. Tho that thou clepest thy thralles, ben Goddes peple: for humble folk ben Cristes frendes; they ben contubernial with the Lord thy king.

Thinke also, that of swiche seed as cherles springen of swiche seed springen lordes : as wel may the cherl be saved as the Lord. The same deth that taketh the cherl, swiche deth taketh the Lord. Wherefore I rede, do right so with thy cherl as thou woldest that thy Lord did with thee, if thou were in his plight. Every sinful man is a cherl to sinne : I rede thee, thou Lord, that thou reule thee in swiche wise, that thy cherles rather love thee than drede thee. I wote wel, that ther is degree above degree, as reson is, and skill is, that men do hir devoir, ther as it is due : but certes, extortion, and despit of your underlinges, is dampnable.

And furthermore understond wel, that thise conquerours or tyrantes maken ful oft thralles of hem, that ben borne of as royal blood as ben they that hem conqueren. This name of Thraldom was never erst couthe, til that Noe sayd, that his sone Cham shuld be thrall to his brethren for his sinne. What say we than of hem that pille and don extortions to holy Chirche ! Certes, the swerd that men yeven first to a knight whan he is newe dubbed, signifieth, that he shuld defend holy Chirche, and not robbe it ne pille it : and who so doth is traitour to Crist. As saith Seint Augustine, Tho ben the devils wolves, that strangelen the shepe of Jesu Crist, and don worse than wolves : for sothly, whan the wolf hath full his wombe, he stinteth to strangle shepe : but sothly, the pillours and destroyers of holy Chirches goodes ne do not so, for they ne stint never to pille. Now as I have sayd, sith so is, that sinne was first cause of thraldom, than is it thus, that at the time that all this world was in sinne, than was all this world in thraldom, and in subjection : but certes, sith the time of grace came, God ordeined, that som folk shuld be more high in estate and in degree, and som folk more lowe, and that everich shuld be served in his estate and his degree. And therefore in som contrees ther as they ben thralles, whan they have tourned hem to the feith, they make hir thralles free out of thraldom : and therefore certes the Lord oweth to his man, that the man oweth to the Lord. The Pope clepeth himself servant of the servants of God. But for as moche as the estate of holy Chirche ne might not have ben, ne the commun profite might not have be kept, ne pees ne rest in erthe, but if God had ordeined, that som men have higher degree, and som men lower ; therefore was soveraintee ordeined to kepe, and mainteine, and defend hire underlinges or hire subjectes in reson, as ferforth as it lieth in hire power, and not to destroy hem ne confound. Wherefore I say, that thilke lordes that ben like wolves, that devour the possessions or the catel of poure folk wrongfully, withouten mercy or mesure, they shul receive by the same mesure that they have mesured to poure folk the mercy of Jesu Crist, but they it amende. Now cometh deceit betwix marchant and marchant. And thou shalt understond, that marchandise is in two maners, that on is bodily, and that other is gostly : that on is honest and leful, and that other is dishonest and uneful. The bodily marchandise, that is leful and honest, is this : that ther as God hath ordeined, that a regne or a contree is sufficient to himself, than it is honest and leful, that of the haboundance of this contree men helpe another

contree that is nedy : and therefore ther must be marchanta to bring fro on contree to another hir marchandise. That other marchandise, that men haunten with fraude, and trecherie, and deceit, with lesinges and false othes, is right cursed and dampnable. Spirituel marchandise is properly simonie, that is, ententif desire to buy thing spirituel, that is, thing which appertineth to the seintuarie of God, and to the cure of the soule. This desire, if so be that a man do his diligence to performe it, al be it that his desire ne take non effect, yet it is to him a dedly sinne : and if he be ordered, he is irreguler. Certes simonie is cleped of Simon Magus, that wold have bought for temporel catel the yefte that God had yeven by the holy gost to Seint Peter, and to the Apostles : and therefore understond ye, that both he that selleth and he that byeth thinges spirituel ben called Simoniackes, be it by catel, be it by procuring, or by fleshly prair of his frendes fleshly frendes, or spirituel frendes, fleshly in two maners, as by kinrede or other frendes : sothly, if they pray for him that is not worthy and able, it is simonie, if he take the benefice ; and if he be worthy and able, ther is non. That other maner is, whan man, or woman, prayeth for tolk to avancen hem only for wicked fleshly affection which they have unto the persons, and that is foule simonie. But certes, in service, for which men yeven thinges spirituel unto hir servants, it must be understonde, that the service must be honest, or elles not, and also, that it be without bargaining, and that the person be able. For (as sayth Seint Damascen) all the sinnes of the world, at regard of this sinne, ben as thing of nought, for it is the grettest sinne that may be after the sinne of Lucifer and of Anticrist : for by this sinne God foreleth the chirche and the soule, which he bought with his precious blood, by hem that yeven chirches to hem that ben not digne, for they put in theves, that stelen the soules of Jesu Crist, and destroyen his patrimonie. By swiche undigne preestes and curates, han lewed men lesse reverence of the sacramentes of holy chirche : and swiche yevers of chirches put the children of Crist out, and put into chirches the divels owen sones : they sellen the soules that lambes shuld kepe to the wolf, which stranglenth hem : and therefore shall they never have part of the pasture of lambes, that is, in the blisse of heven. Now cometh hasardrie with his apertenautes, as tables and rafles, of which cometh deceit, false othes, chidings, and all raving, blaspheming, and reneying of God, hate of his neyghbours, wast of goodes, mispending of time, and somtime manslaughter. Certes, hasardours ne mow not be without grete sinne. Of avarice comen eke lesinges, theft, false witnessse, and false othes : and ye shul understonde, that these be gret sinnes, and expresse ayenst the commandements of God, as I have sayd. False witnessse is eke in word, and in dede : in word, as for to bereve thy neyghbours good name by thy false witnessse, or bereve him his catel or his heritage by thy false witnessing, whan thou for ire, or for mede, or for envie, berest false witnessse, or accusest him, or excusest thyself falsely. Ware ye questmongers and notaries : certes, for false witnessing, was Susanna in ful gret sorwe and peine, and many another mo. The sinne of theft is also expresse ayenst Goddes hest, and that is

two maners, temporel, and spirituel: the temporel theft is, as for to take thy neighbours catel ayenst his will, be it by force or by sleight; be it in meting or mesure; by steling; by false endite-ments upon him; and in borrowing of thy neighbours catel, in entent never to pay it ayen, and semblable thinges. Spirituel theft is sacrilege, that is to say, hurting of holy thinges, or of thinges sacred to Crist, in two maners; by reson of the holy place, as chirches or chirches hawes; (for every vilains sinne, that men don in swiche places, may be called sacrilege, or every violence in semblable places) also they that withdrawe falsely the rentes and rightes that longen to holy chirche; and plainly and generally, sacrilege is to reue holy thing fro holy place, or unholy thing out of holy place, or holy thing out of unholy place.

#### *Remedium Avaritie.*

Now shul ye understond, that relieving of avarice is misericorde and pitee largely taken. And men might axe, why that misericorde and pitee are relieving of avarice; certes, the avaricious man beweth no pitee ne misericorde to the nedeful man. For he deliteth him in the keping of his treasour, and not in the rescuing ne relieving of his even Cristen. And therefore speke I first of misericorde. Than is misericorde (as sayth the Philosophie) a vertue, by which the courage of man is stirred by the misese of him that is misused. Upon which misericorde foloweth pitee, in performing and fulfilling of charitable werkes of mercie, helping and comforting him that is misused. And certes, this meveth a man to misericorde of Jesu Crist, that he yave himself for our offence, and suffred deth for misericorde, and foryaf us our original sinnes, and therby released us fro the peine of hell, and amenused the peines of purgatory by penitence, and yeveth us grace wel to do, and at last the blisse of heaven.

The spices of misericorde ben for to lene, and eke for to yeve, and for to foryeve and relese, and for to have pitee in herte, and compassion of the mischefe of his even Cristen, and also to chastise ther as nede is. Another maner of remedy ayenst avarice, is resonable largesse: but sothly, here behoveth the consideration of the grace of Jesu Crist, and of the temporel goodes, and also of the goodes perdurable that Jesu Crist yave to us, and to have remembrance of the deth which he shal receive, he wote not whan: and eke that he shal forgon all that he hath, save only that which he hath dispended in good werkes.

But for as moche as som folk ben unmesurable, men oughten for to avoid and eschue fool-largesse, the whiche men clepen waste. Certes, he that is fool-large, he yeveth not his catel, but he leseth his catel. Sothly, what thing that he yeveth for vaine-glory, as to minstrels, and to folk that bere his renome in the world, he hath do sinne therof, and non almesse: certes, he leseth foule his good, that he seketh with the yefte of his good nothing but sinne. He is like to an hors that seketh rather to drink drovy or troubled water, than for to drink water of the clere well. And for as moche as they yeven ther as they shuld nat yeven, to hem apperteineth thilke malison, that Crist shal yeve at the day of dome to hem that shul be dampned.

#### *De Gula.*

After avarice cometh glotonie, which is expresse ayenst the commandement of God. Glotonie is unmesurable appetit to ete or to drinke: or elles to do in ought to the unmesurable appetit and disordeined covetise to ete or drinke. This sinne corrupted all this world, as is wel shewed in the sinne of Adam and of Eve. Loke also what sayth Seint Poule of glotonie. Many (sayth he) gon, of which I have ofte said to you, and now I say it weping, that they ben the enemies of the crosse of Crist, of which the end is deth, and of which hir wombe is hir God and hir glorie; in confusion of hem that so serven erthly thinges. He that is usant to this sinne of glotonie, he ne may no sinne withstond, he must be in servage of all vices, for it is the devils horde, ther he hideth him and resteth. This sinne hath many spices. The first is dronkenesse, that is the horrible sepulture of mannes reson: and therefore whan a man is dronke, he hath lost his reson: and this is dedly sinne. But sothly, whan that a man is not wont to strong drinks, and peraventure ne knoweth not the strength of the drinke, or hath feblennesse in his hed, or hath travailled, thurgh which he drinketh the more, al be he sodenly caught with drinke, it is no dedly sinne, but venial. The second spice of glotonie is, that the spirit of a man waxeth all trouble for dronkenesse, and bereveth a man the discretion of his wit. The thridde spice of glotonie is, whan a man devourereth his mete, and hath not rightful maner of eting. The fourthe is, whan thurgh the gret abundance of his mete, the humours in his body ben distempered. The fifthe is, foryetfulness by to moche drinking, for which somtime a man forgeteth by the morwe, what he did over eve.

In other maner ben distinct the spices of glotonie, after Seint Gregorie. The first is, for to ete before time. The second is, whan a man geteth him to delicat mete or drinke. The thridde is, whan men taken to moche over mesure. The fourth is curiositee, with gret entent to maken and appareille his mete. The fifth is, for to ete gredily. Thise ben the five fingers of the devils hond, by which he draweth folk to the sinne.

#### *Remedium Gula.*

Ayenst glotonie the remedie is abstinence, as sayth Galien: but that I holde not meritorie, if he do it only for the hele of his body. Seint Augustine wol that abstinence be don for vertue, and with patience. Abstinence (sayth he) is litel worth, but if a man have good will therto, and but it be enforced by patience and charitee, and that men don it for Goddes sake, and in hope to have the blisse in heaven.

The felawes of abstinence ben attemperance, that holdeth the mene in alle thinges; also shame, that escheweth all dishonestee; suffisance, that seketh no riche metes ne drinkes, ne doth no forces of non outrageous appareilling of mete; mesure also, that restraineth by reson the unmesurable appetit of eting: sobernesse also, that restraineth the outrage of drinke; sparing also, that restraineth the delicat ese, to sit long at mete, wherfore som folk standen of hir owen will whan they ete, because they wol ete at lease leiser.



*De Lusuŕiâ.*

After glotonie cometh lecherie, for thise two sinnes ben so nigh cosins, that oft time they wol not depart. God wote this sinne is ful displeant to God, for he said himself; Do no lecherie. And therefore he putteth gret peine ayenst this sinne. For in the old lawe, if a woman thrall were taken in this sinne, she shuld be beten with staves to the deth: and if she were a gentilwoman, she shuld be slain with stones: and if she were a bishoppes daughter, she shuld be brent by Goddes commandement. Moreover, for the sinne of lecherie God dreint all the world, and after that he brent five citees with thonder and lightning, and sanke hem down into hell.

Now let us speke than of the said stinking sinne of lecherie, that men clepen avoutrie, that is of wedded folk, that is to say, if that on of hem be wedded, or elles both. Seint John sayth, That avouterers shul ben in helle in a stacke brenning of fire and of brimstone, in fire for hir lecherie, in brimstone for the stenche of hir ordure. Certes the breking of this sacrament is an horrible thing: it was made of God himself in Paradis, and conferred by Jesu Crist, as witnesseth Seint Mathew in the Gospel: a man shal let fader and moder, and take him to his wif, and they shal be two in on flesh. This sacrament betokeneth the knitting together of Crist and holy chirche. And not only that God forbade avoutrie in dede, but also he commanded, that thou shuldest not covet thy neighboures wif. In this heste (sayth Seint Augustine) is forboden all maner covetise to do lecherie. Lo, what sayth Seint Mathew in the Gospel, That who so seeth a woman, to covetise of his lust, he hath don lecherie with hire in his herte. Here may ye see, that not only the dede of this sinne is forboden, but eke the desire to don that sinne. This cursed sinne annoyeth grievously hem that it haunt: and first to the soule, for he obligeth it to sinne and to peine of deth, which is perdurable; and to the body annoyeth it grievously also, for it drieth him and wasteth, and shent him, and of his blood he maketh sacrifice to the fend of helle: it wasteth eke his catel and his substance. And certes, if it be a foule thing a man to waste his catel on women, yet is it a fouler thing, whan that for swiche ordure women dispenden upon men hir catel and hir substance. This sinne, as sayth the Prophet, bereveth man and woman hir good fame and all hir honour, and it is ful pleasant to the devil: for therby winneth he the moste partie of this wretched world. And right as a marchant deliteth him most in that chaffare which he hath most advantage and profite of, right so deliteth the fend in this ordure.

This is that other hond of the devil, with five fingers, to cacche the peple to his vilanie. The first fingre is the foole loking of the foole woman and of the foole man, that sleth right as the Basilicok sleth folk by venime of his sight: for the covetise of the eyen foloweth the covetise of the herte. The second fingre is the vilains touching in wicked maner. And therefore sayth Salomon, that who so toucheth and handleth a woman, he fareth as the man that handleth the scorpion, which stingeth and sodenly sleth thurgh his enveniming; or as who so that toucheth warme pitch it shendeth his fingers. The thridde is foule

wordes, whiche fareth like fire, which right anon brenneth the herte. The fourth finger is kissing: and trewely he were a gret foole that wold kisse the mouthe of a brenning oven or of a fourneis; and more foolen ben they that kissen in vilanie, for that mouth is the mouth of helle; and namely thise olde dotardes holoure, which wol kisse, and flicker, and besie himself, though they may nought do. Certes they ben like to houndes: for an hound whan he cometh by the roser, or by other busches, though so be that he may not pisse, yet wol he heve up his leg and make a contenance to pisse. And for that many man weneth that he may not sinne for no likerousnesse that he doth with his wif, trewely that opinion is false: God wote a man may slee himself with his owen knif, and make himself drouken of his owen tonne. Certes be it wif, be it childe, or any worldly thing, that he loveth before God, it is his maunet, and he is an idolastre. A man shuld love his wif by discretion, patiently and attempely, and than is she as though it were his suster. The fifth fingre of the divels hond, is the stinking dede of lecherie. Trewely the five fingers of glotonie the fend putteth in the wombe of a man: and with his five fingers of lecherie he gripeth him by the reines, for to throwe him into the fourneis of helle, ther as they shul have the fire and the wormes that ever shul lasten, and weping and wayling, and sharpe hunger and thurst, and grislinesse of divels, whiche shul all-to-trede hem withouten respite and withouten ende. Of lecherie, as I sayd, souden and springen divers spices: as fornication, that is betwene man and woman which ben not married, and is dedly sinne, and ayenst nature. All that is enemy and destruction to nature, is ayenst nature. Parfay the reson of a man eke telleth him wel that it is dedly sinne; for as moche as God forbad lecherie. And Seint Poule yeveth hem the regne, that n'is dewe to no wight but to hem that don dedely sinne. Another sinne of lecherie is, to bereven a maid of hire maidenhed, for he that so doth, certes he casteth a mayden out of the highest degree that is in this present lif, and bereveth hire thilke precious fruit that the book clepeth the hundreth fruit. I ne can say it non otherwise in English, but in Latine it hight *Centesimus fructus*. Certes he that so doth, is the cause of many damages and vilanies, mo than any man can reken: right as he somtime is cause of all dammages that bestes do in the feld, that breketh the hedge of the closure, thurgh which he destroyeth that may not be restored: for certes no more may maidenhed be restored, than an arme, that is smitten fro the body, may returne ayen and wexe: she may have mercy, this wote I wel, if that she have will to do penitence, but never shal it be but that she is corrupte. And all be it so that I have spoke somewhat of avoutrie, it is good to shewe the periles that longen to avoutrie, for to eschewe that foule sinne. Avoutrie, in Latine, is for to saye, approching of another mannes bedde, thurgh whiche tho, that somtime were on fleshe, abandone hir bodies to other persons. Of this sinne, as sayth the wise man, folow many harmes: firste breking of feith; and certes feith is the key of Cristendom, and whan that key is broken and lorne, sothly Cristendom is lorne. and stont vaine and without fruit. This sinne also is theft, for theft generally is to rove a wight

his thinges ayenst his will. Certes, this is the foulest theft that may be, whan that a woman steleth hire body from hire husbond, and yeveth it to hire holour to defoule it: and steleth hire soule fro Crist, and yeveth it to the devil: this is a fouler theft than for to breke a chirche and stele away the chalice, for these avouterers breken the temple of God spirituelli, and stelen the vessell of grace; that is the body and the soule: for which Criste shal destroy hem, as sayth Seint Poule. Sothly of this theft doubted gretly Joseph, whan that his Lordes wif prayed him of villainie, whan he sayde: Lo, my Lady, how my Lord hath take to me under my warde all that he hath in this world, ne nothing is out of my power, but only ye that ben his wif: and how shuld I than do this wickednesse, and sinne so horribly ayenst God, and ayenst my Lord? God it forbode. Alas! all to litel is swiche trouth now yfounde. The thridd harme is the filth, thurgh which they breke the commandement of God, and defoule the auter of matrimonies, that is Crist. For certes, in so moche as the sacrament of mariage is so noble and so digne, so moche is it the greter sinne for to breke it: for God made mariage in Paradis in the estate of innocencie, to multiplie mankind to the service of God, and therefore is the breking therof the more grevous, of which breking come false heires oft time, that wrongfully occupien folkes heritages: and therefore wol Crist put hem out of the regne of heven, that is heritage to good folk. Of this breking cometh eke oft time, that folk unware wedde or sinne with hir owen kinrede: and namely these harlottes, that haunten bordelles of these foule women, that may be likened to a comune gong, wheras men purge hir ordure. What say we also of putours, that live by the horrible sinne of puterie, and constreine women to yelde hem a certain rent of hir bodily puterie, ye, somtime his owen wif or his childe, as don these baudes? certes, these ben cursed sinnes. Understood also, that avoutrie is set in the ten commandements betwene theft and manslaughter, for it is the grettest theft that may be, for it is theft of body and of soule, and it is like to homicide, for it kerveth atwo and breketh atwo hem that first were made on flesh. And therefore by the old lawe of God they shuld be slaine, but nathelesse, by the lawe of Jesu Crist, that is the lawe of pitee, whan he sayd to the woman that was found in avoutrie, and shuld have be slain with stones, after the will of the Jewes, as was hir lawe; Go, sayd Jesu Crist, and have no more will to do sinne; sothly, the vengeance of avoutrie is awarded to the peine of helle, but if so be that it be discombered by penitence. Yet ben ther mo spices of this cursed sinne, as whan that en of hem is religious, or elles both, or of folk that ben entred into ordre, as sub-deken, deken, or preest, or hospitalers: and ever the higher that he is in ordre, the greter is the sinne. The thinges that gretly agrege hir sinne, is the breking of hir avow of chastitee, whan they received the ordre: and moreover soth is, that holy ordre is chefe of all the tresorie of God, and is a special signe and marke of chastitee, to shew that they ben joined to chastitee, which is the moste precious lif that is: and these ordered folk ben specially titled to God, and of the special meinie of God: for which, whan they don dedly sinne, they ben the special traitours of God and of his

peple, for they live by the peple to praye for the peple, and whiles they ben swiche traitours hir prayeres availe not to the peple. Preestes ben as angels, as by the mysterie of hir dignitee: but forsoth Seint Poule saith, That Sathanas transfourmeth him in an angel of light. Sothly, the preest that haunteth dedly sinne, he may be likened to an angel of derkenesse, transfourmed into an angel of light: he semeth an angel of light, but for soth he is an angel of derkenesse. Swiche preestes be the sones of Hely, as is shewed in the book of Kinges, that they were the sones of Belial, that is, the divel. Belial is to say, withouten juge, and so faren they; hem thinketh that they be free, and have no juge, no more than hath a free boll, that taketh which cow that him liketh in the toun. So faren they by women; for right as on free boll is ynough for all a toun, right so is a wicked preest corruption ynough for all a parish, or for all a countree: these preestes, as sayth the book, ne cannot minister the mysterie of preesthood to the peple, ne they knowe not God, ne they hold hem not apaid, as saith the book, of sodden flesh that was to hem offred, but they take by force the flesh that is raw. Certes, right so these shrewes ne hold hem not apaid of rosted flesh and sodden, with which the peple feden hem in gret reverence, but they wol have raw flesh as folkes wives and hir daughters: and certes, these women that consenten to hir harlotrie, don gret wrong to Crist and to holy Chirche, and to all Halowes, and to all Soules, for they bereven all these hem that shuld worship Crist and holy Chirche, and pray for Cristen soules: and therefore han swiche preestes, and hir lemmans also that consenten to hir lecherie, the malison of the court Cristen, til they come to amendement. The thridd spice of avoutrie is somtime betwix a man and his wif, and that is, whan they take no regard in hir assembling but only to hir fleshly delit, as saith Seint Jerome, and ne reckon of nothing but that they ben assembled because they ben married; all is good ynough, as thinketh to hem. But in swiche folk hath the divel power, as said the angel Raphael to Tobie, for in hir assembling, they putten Jesu Crist out of hir herte, and yeven hemself to all ordure. The fourth spice is of hem that assemble with hir kinrede, or with hem that ben of on affinitee, or elles with hem with which hir fathers or hir kinred have deled in the sinne of lecherie: this sinne maketh hem like to houndes, that taken no kepe of kinrede. And certes, parentele is in two maners: eyther gostly or fleshly: gostly, is for to delen with hir god-sibbes: for right so as he that engendreth a child, is his fleshly father, right so is his godfather his father spirituel: for which a woman may in no lesse sinne assemble with hire godsib, than with hir owen fleshly broder. The fifte spice is that abhominable sinne, of which abhominable sinne no man unneth ought to speke ne write, natheles it is openly rehersed in holy writ. This cursednesse don men and women in diverse entent and in diverse maner: but though that holy writ speke of horrible sinne, certes holy writ may not be defouled, no more than the sonne that shineth on the myxene. Another sinne apperteineth to lecherie, that cometh in aleping, and this sinne cometh often to hem that ben maidens, and eke to hem that ben corrupt; and this sinne men call

pollution, that cometh of foure maners; somtime it cometh of languishing of the body, for the humours ben to ranke and haboundant in the body of man; somtime of infirmitie, for febleness of the vertue retentif, as phisike maketh mention; somtime of surfet of mete and drinke; and somtime of vilains thoughtes that ben enclosed in mannes minde whan he goth to slepe, which may not be withouten sinne; for whiche men must kepe hem wisely, or elles may they sinne ful greuously.

#### *Remedium Luxuria.*

Now cometh the remedy ayenst lecherie, and that is generally chastitee and continence, that restrineth all disordinate mevings that comen of fleshly talents: and ever the greter merite shal he have that most restrineth the wicked euchaufing or ardure of this sinne; and this is in two maners: that is to say, chastitee in mariage, and chastitee in widewhood. Now shalt thou understonde, that matrimony is leful assembling of man and woman, that receiven by vertue of this sacrament the bonde, thurgh whiche they may not be departed in all hir lif, that is to say, while that they live bothe. This, as saith the book, is a ful gret sacrament; God made it (as I have said) in paradis, and wold himself be borne in mariage; and for to halowe mariage he was at a wedding, wheras he tourned water into wine, whiche was the first miracle that he wrought in erthe before his disciples. The trewe effect of mariage clenseth fornication, and replenisheth holy chirche of good lignage, for that is the ende of mariage, and chaungeth dedly sinne into venial sinne betwene hem that ben wedded, and maketh the hertes all on of hem that ben ywedded, as wel as the bodies. This is veray mariage that was established by God, er that sinne began, whan naturel lawe was in his right point in paradis; and it was ordeined, that o man shuld have but o woman, and o woman but o man, as sayth Seint Augustine, by many reasons.

First, for mariage is figured betwix Crist and holy chirche; and another is, for a man is hed of the woman; (algate by ordinance it shuld be so;) for if a woman had mo men than on, than shuld she have mo hedes than on, and that were an horrible thing before God; and also a woman mighte not plesse many folk at ones: and also ther shuld never be pees ne rest among hem, for everich of hem wold axe his owen right. And furthermore, no man shuld knowe his owen engendrure, ne who shuld have his heritage, and the woman shuld be the lesse beloved for the time that she were conjunct to many men.

Now cometh how that a man shuld bere him with his wif, and namely in two thinges, that is to say, in suffrance and in reverence, and this sheweth Crist whan he firste made woman. For he ne made hire of the hed of Adam, for she shuld not claime to gret lordshippe; for ther as the woman hath the maistrie, she maketh to moche disarray: ther nede non ensamples of this, the experience that we have day by day ought ynough suffice. Also certes, God ne made not woman of the foot of Adam, for she shuld not be holden to lowe, for she cannot patiently suffer: but God made woman of the rib of Adam, for

woman shuld be felaw unto man. Man shuld bere him to his wif in feith, in trouthe, and in love; as sayth Seint Poule, that a man shuld love his wif, as Crist loved holy chirche, that loved it so wel that he died for it: so shuld a man for his wif, if it were nede.

Now how that a woman shuld be subget to hire husbond, that telleth Seint Peter; first in obedience. And, eke as sayth the decree, a woman that is a wif, as long as she is a wif, she hath non auctoritee to swere ne bere witnesse, without leve of hire husbonde, that is hire lord; algate he shuld be so by reson. She shuld also serve him in all honestee, and ben attemptre of hire array. I wete wel that they shuld set hir entent to plesse hir husbonds, but not by quaintise of hir array. Seint Jerom sayth: wives that ben appareilled in silke and precious purple, ne mow not cloth hem in Jesu Crist. Seint Gregorie sayth also: that no wight seketh precious array, but only for vain glorie to be honoured the more of the peple. It is a gret folie, a woman to have a faire array outward, and hireself to be foule inward. A wif shuld also be mesurable in loking, in bering, and in laughing, and discrete in all hire wordes and hire dedes, and above all worldly thinges, she shulde love hire husbonde with all hire herte, and to him be trewe of hire body: so shuld every husbond eke be trewe to his wif: for sith that all the body is the husbonds, so shuld hire herte be also, or elles ther is betwix hem two, as in that, no parfit mariage. Than shul men understond, that for three thinges a man and his wif fleshly may assemble. The first is, for the entent of engendrure of children, to the service of God, for certes that is the cause final of matrimonie. Another cause is, to yelde eche of hem to other the dettes of hir bodies: for neyther of hem hath power of his owen bodie. The thridde is, for to eschew lecherie and vilanie. The fourth is for soth dedly sinne. As to the first, it is meritorie: the second also, for, as sayth the decree, she hath merite of chastitee, that yeldeth to hire husbond the dette of hire body; ye though it be ayenst hire liking, and the lust of hire herte. The thridde maner is venial sinne; trewely, scarcely may any of thise be without venial sinne, for the corruption and for the delit therof. The fourth maner is for to understond, if they assemble only for amorous love, and for non of the foresaid causes, but for to accomplish hir brenning delit, they recke not how oft, sothly it is dedly sinne: and yet, with sorwe, som folk wol peine hem more to do, than to hir appetit suffice.

The second maner of chastitee is for to be a clene widew, and eschue the embracing of a man, and desire the embracing of Jesu Crist. This ben tho that have ben wives, and have forgon hir husbonds, and eke women that have don lecherie, and ben releved by penance. And certes, if that a wif could kepe hire all chast, by licence of hire husbond, so that she yave no cause ne non occasion that he agited, it were to hire a gret merite. This maner of women, that observe chastitee, must be clene in herte as wel as in body, and in thought, and mesurable in clothing and in contenance, abstinent in eting and drinking, in speking, and in dede, and than is she the vessel or the boiste of the blessed Magdeleine, that filleth holy chirche of good odour. The thridde

maner of chastitee is virginitee, and it behoveth that she be holy in herte, and cleane of body, than is she the spouse of Jesu Crist, and she is the lif of angels : she is the preising of this world, and she is as thise martirs in egalitee : she hath in hire, that tonge may not telle, ne herte thinke. Virginitee bare our Lord Jesu Crist, and virgin was himself.

Another remedie against lecherie is specially to withdraw swiche thinges, as yeven occasion to that vilanie : as ese, eting, and drinking : for certes, whan the pot boileth strongly, the best remedie is to withdraw the fire. Sleeping long in gret quiet is also a gret nourice to lecherie.

Another remedie ayenst lecherie is, that a man or a woman eschewe the compaignie of hem, by which he douteth to be tempted : for all be it so that the dede be withstonden, yet is ther gret temptation. Sothly a white wall, although it ne brenne not fully with sticking of a candle, yet is the wall black of the leyte. Ful oft time I rede, that no man trust in his owen perfection, but he be stronger than Sampson, or holier than David, or wiser than Salomon.

Now after that I have declared you as I can of the seven dedly sinnes, and som of hir branches, and the remedies, sothly, if I coude, I wold tell you the ten commandments, but so high doctrine I lete to divinea. Natheles, I hope to God they ben touched in this tretise everich of hem alle.

Now for as moche as the second part of penitence stont in confession of mouth, as I began in the first chapitre, I say Seint Augustine saith : Sinne is every word and every dede, and all that men covetein ayenst the law of Jesu Crist ; and this is for sinne, in herte, in mouth, and in dede, by the five wittes, which ben sight, hering, smelling, tasting or savouring, and feling. Now is it good to understand the circumstances, that agreen moche every sinne. Thou shalt consider what thou art that dost the sinne, whether thou be male or female, yonge or olde, gentil or thrall, free or servant, hole or sike, wedded or single, ordered or unordered, wise or foole, clerk or secular ; if she be of thy kinred, bodily or gostly, or non ; if any of thy kinred have sinned with hire or no, and many mo thinges.

Another circumstance is this, whether it be don in fornication, or in advoutrie, or no, in maner of homicide or non, a horrible gret sinne or smal, and how long thou hast continued in sinne. The thridde circumstance is the place, ther thou hast don sinne, whether in other mennes houses, or in thin owen, in feld, in chirche, or in chirchhawe, in chirche dedicate, or nou. For if the chirche be halowed, and man or woman spille his kinde within that place, by way of sinne or by wicked temptation, the chirche were enterdited til it were reconciled by the Bishop ; and if it were a preest that did swiche vilanie, the terme of all his lif he shuld no more sing Masse : and if he did, he shuld do deldy sinne, at every time that he so song Masse. The fourth circumstance is, by whiche mediatour, as by messagers, or for enticement, or for consentment, to bere compaignie with felawship ; for many a wretche, for to bere felawship, wol go to the divel of helle. Wherefore, they that eggen or consenten to the sinne, ben partners of the sinne, and of the dampnation of the sinner. The fifth circumstance is, how many times that

he hath sinned, if it be in his minde, and how oft he hath fallen. For he that oft falleth in sinne, he despiseth the mercy of God, and encreseth his sinne, and is unkind to Crist, and he waxeth the more feble to withstand sinne, and sinneth the more lightly, and the later ariseth, and is more slow to shrive him, and namely to him that hath ben his confessour. For which that folk, whan they fall ayen to hir old folies, either they foreleten hir old confessour al utterly, or elles they departen hir shrift in divers places : but sothly swiche departed shrift deserveth no mercie of God for hir sinnes. The sixte circumstance is, why that a man sinneth, as by what temptation ; and if himself procure thilke temptation, or by exciting of other folk ; or if he sinne with a woman by force or by hire owen assent ; or if the woman maugre hire hed have ben enforced or non, this shal she tell, and wheder it were for covetise or povertie, and if it were by hire procuring or non, and swiche other thinges. The seventh circumstance is, in what maner he hath don his sinne, or how that she hath suffered that folk have don to hire. And the same shal the man tell plainly, with all the circumstances, and wheder he hath sinned with commun bordel women or non, or don his sinne in holy times or non, in fasting times or non, or before his shrift, or after his later shrift, and hath peraventure broken therby his penance enjoined, by whos helpe or whos conseil, by sorcerie or crafte, all must be told. All thise thinges, after that they ben gret or smale, engregen the conscience of man or woman. And eke the preest that is thy juge, may the better be avised of his jugement in yeving of penance, and that shal be after thy contrition. For understand wel, that after the time that a man hath defouled his baptism by sinne, if he wol come to salvation, ther is non other way but by penance, and shrifte, and satisfaction ; and namely by the two, if ther be a confessour to whom he may shrive him, and that he first be veray contrite and repentant, and the thridde if he have lif to performe it.

Than shal a man loke and consider, that if he wol make a trewe and a profitable confession, ther must be foure condicions. First it must be in sorowful bitternesse of herte, as sayth the King Ezechiel to God ; I wol remember all the yeres of my lif in the bitternesse of my herte. This condicion of bitternesse hath five signes ; The first is, that confession must be shamefast, not for to coveren ne hide his sinne, but for he hath agilted his God and defouled his soule. And hereof sayth Seint Augustin : the herte travaileth for shame of his sinne, and for he hath gret shamfastnesse he is digne to have gret mercie of God. Swiche was the confession of the Publican, that wold not heve up his eyen to heaven for he had offended God of heven : for which shamfastnesse he had anon the mercy of God. And therefore saith Seint Augustine : That swiche shamefast folk ben next foryevenesse and mercy. Another signe, is humilitee in confession : of whiche sayth Seint Peter ; Humbleth you under the might of God : the head of God is mighty in confession, for therby God foryeveth thee thy sinnes, for he alone hath the power. And this humilitee shal be in herte, and in signe outwarde : for right as he hath humilitee to God in his herte, right so shuld he humble his body outward to the preest, that sitteth in Goddes

place. For which in no maner, sith that Crist is soveraine, and the preest mene and mediatour betwix Crist and the sinner, and the sinner is last by way of reson, than shuld not the sinner sitte as high as his confessour, but knele before him or at his feet, but if maladie distrouble it : for he shal not take kepe who sitteth ther, but in whos place he sitteth. A man that hath trespassed to a Lord, and cometh for to axe mercie and maken his accorde, and setteth him doun anon by the Lord, men wolde holde him outrageous, and not worthy so sone for to have remission ne mercy. The thridde signe is, that the shrift shuld be ful of teres, if men mowen wepe, and if they mowe not wepe with hir bodily eyen, than let hem wepe in hir herte. Swiche was the confession of Seint Peter ; for after that he had forsake Jesu Crist, he went out and wept ful bitterly. The fourth signe is, that he ne lete not for shame to shrive him and shewe his confession. Swiche was the confession of Magdeleine, that ne spared, for no shame of hem that weren at the feste, to go to our Lord Jesu Crist and beknowe to him hire sinnes. The fifthe signe is, that a man or a woman be obeisant to receive the penance that hem is enjoined. For certes Jesu Crist for the gilt of man was obedient to the deth.

The second condition of veray confession is, that it be hastily don : for certes, if a man hadde a dedly wound, ever the lenger that he tarieth to warishe himself, the more wold it corrupt and haste him to his deth, and also the wound wold be the werse for to hele. And right so fareth sinne, that longe time is in a man unshewed. Certes a man ought hastily to shewe his sinnes for many causes ; as for drede of deth, that cometh oft sodenly, and is in no certain what time it shal be, ne in what place ; and eke the drenching of o sinne draweth in another : and also the lenger that he tarieth, the ferther is he fro Crist. And if he abide to his last day, scarcely may he shrive him or remembre him of his sinnes, or repent him for the grevous maladie of his deth. And for as moche as he ne hath in his lif herkened Jesu Crist, whan he hath spoken unto him, he shal crie unto our Lord at his last day, and scarcely wol he herken him. And understonde that this condition muste have foure thinges. First that the shrift be purveyed afore, and avised, for wicked hast doth not profite ; and that a man con shrive him of his sinnes, be it of pride, or envie, and so forth, with the spices and circumstances ; and that he have comprehended in his minde the nombre and the gretnesse of his sinnes, and how longe he hath lien in sinne ; and eke that he be contrite for his sinnes, and be in stedfast purpose (by the grace of God) never efte to fall into sinne ; and also that he drede and countrewaite himself, that he flee the occasions of sinne, to whiche he is inclined. Also thou shalt shrive thee of all thy sinnes to o man, and not parcelmele to o man, and parcelmele to another ; that is to understonde, in entent to depart thy confession for shame or drede, for it is but strangling of thy soule. For certes, Jesu Crist is entierly all good, in him is not imperfection, and therefore either he foryeveth all parfitly, or elles never a dele. I say not that if thou be assigned to thy penitencer for certain sinne, that thou art bounde to shewe him all the remenant of thy sinnes, of whiche thou hast ben shriven of thy

curat, but if it like thee of thyn humilitee ; this is no departing of shrift. Ne I say not, ther as I speke of division of confession, that if thou have licence to shrive thee to a discrete and an honest preest, and wher thee liketh, and by the licence of thy curat, that thou ne mayest wel shrive thee to him of all thy sinnes : but lete no blot be behind : lete no sinne be untolde as fer as thou hast remembrance. And whan thou shalt be shriven of thy curat, tell him eke all the sinnes that thou hast don sith thou were laste shriven. This is no wicked entente of division of shrift.

Also the veray shrift axeth certain conditions. First that thou shrive thee by thy free will, not constriened, ne for shame of folk, ne for maladie, or swiche other thinges : for it is reson, that he that trespasseth by his free will, that by his free will he confesse his trespass ; and that non other man telle his sinne but himself : ne he shal not nay, ne deny his sinne, ne wrath him ayenst the preest for amonesting him to lete his sinne. The second condition is, that thy shrift be lawful, that is to say, that thou that shrivest thee, and eke the preest that hereth thy confession, be veraily in the feith of holy chirche, and that a man ne be not despaired of the mercie of Jesu Crist, as Cain and Judas were. And eke a man muste accuse himself of his owen trespass and not another : but he shal blame and wite himselfe of his owen malice and of his sinne, and non other : but natheles, if that another man be encheson or enticer of his sinne, or the estate of the person be swiche by which his sinne is aggregated, or elles that he may not plainly shrive him but he tell the person with whiche he hath sinned, than may he tell, so that his entent ne be not to backbite the person, but only to declare his confession.

Thou ne shalt not also make no lesinges in thy confession for humilitee, peraventure, to say that thou hast committed and don swiche sinnes, of which that thou ne were never guilty. For Seint Augustine sayth ; if that thou, because of thyn humilitee, makest a lesing on thyself, though thou were not in sinne before, yet arte thou than in sinne thurgh thy lesing. Thou must also shew thy sinne by thy propre mouth, but thou be dombe, and not by no letter : for thou that hast don the sinne, thou shalt have the shame of the confession. Thou shalt not eke peint thy confession, with faire and subtil wordes, to cover the more thy sinne : for than begilest thou thyself, and not the preest : thou must tell it plainly, be it never so foule ne so horrible. Thou shalt eke shrive thee to a preest that is discrete to conseilte thee : and eke thou shalt not shrive thee for vaine glorie, ne for ypocrisie, ne for no cause, but only for the doute of Jesu Crist, and the hele of thy soule. Thou shalt not eke renne to the preest al sodenly, to tell him lightly thy sinne, as who telleth a jape or a tale, but avisedly and with good devotion ; and generally shrive thee ofte : if thou ofte fall, ofte arise by confession. And though thou shrive thee ofte than ones of sinne which thou hast be shriven of, it is more merite : and, as sayth Seint Augustine, thou shalt have the more lightly relese and grace of God, both of sinne and of peine. And certes ones a yere at the lest way it is lawful to be houseled, for sothely ones a yere all thinges in the erthe renovenen.

*Explicit secunda pars Penitentia: et sequitur tertia pars.*

Now have I told you of veray confession, that is the seconde part of penitence: The thridde part is satisfaction, and that stont most generally in almesse dede and in bodily peine. Now ben ther three maner of almesse: contrition of herte, wher a man offreth himself to God: another is, to have pitee of the defaute of his neighbour: and the thridde is, in yeving of good conseil, gostly and bodily, wher as men have nede, and namely in sustenance of mannes food. And take kepe that a man hath nede of these thinges generally, he hath nede of food, of clothing, and of herberow, he hath nede of charitable consailing and visiting in prison and in maladie, and sepulture of his ded body. And if thou maiest not visite the nedefull in prison in thy person, visite hem with thy message and thy yefes. These ben generally the almesses and werkes of charitee, of hem that have temporel riches, or discretion in consailing. Of these werkes shalt thou heren at the day of dome.

This almesse shuldest thou do of thy propre thinges, and hastily, and prively if thou mayest: but natheles, if thou mayest not do it prively, thou shalt not forbere to do almesse, though men see it, so that it be not don for thanke of the world, but only to have thanke of Jesu Crist. For, as witnesseth Seint Mathewe, *Cap. v. a citee* may not be hid that is sette on a mountaine, ne men light not a lanterne, to put it under a bushell, but setten it upon a candlesticke, to lighten the men in the hous: right so shal your light lighten before men, that they mowe see your good werkes, and glorifie your Fader that is in heven.

Now as for to speke of bodily peine, it stont in praiers, in waking, in fasting, and in vertuous teching. Of orisons ye shul understand, that orisons or prayers, is to say, a pitous will of herte, that setteth it in God, and expresseth it by word outward, to remeve harmes, and to have thinges spirituel and perdurable, and sometime temporel thinges. Of which orisons, certes in the orison of the *Paternoster* hath Jesu Crist enclosed most thinges. Certes it is privileged of three thinges in his dignitee, for whiche it is more digne than any other prayer: for that Jesu Crist himself made it: and it is short, for it shuld be coude the more lightly, and to hold it the more esie in herte, and helpe himself the ofter with this orison, and for a man shuld be the lesse wery to say it, and for a man may not excuse him to lerne it, it is so shorte and so esie: and for it comprehendeth in himself all good prayers. The exposition of this holy prayer, that is so excellent and so digne, I betake to the maisters of theologie, save thus moche wol I say, that whan thou prayest, that God shuld foryeve thee thy gyltes as thou foryevest hem that have agilted thee, be wel ware that thou be not out of charitee. This holy orison amenuseth eke venial sinne, and therefore it apperteineth specially to penitence.

This prayer must be trewely sayd, and in perfect teith, and that men prayen to God ordinately, discretely, and devoutly: and alway a man shal put his will to be subgette to the will of God. This orison must eke be sayd with gret humblesse and ful pure, and honestly, and not to the annoyance of any man or woman. It must eke be con-

tinued with werkes of charitee. It availleth eke ayenst the vices of the soule: for, as sayth Seint Jerome, by fasting ben saved the vices of the flesh, and by prayer the vices of the soule.

After this thou shalt understande, that bodily peine stont in waking. For Jesu Crist sayth: wake ye and pray ye, that ye ne enter into wicked temptation. Ye shul understand also, that fasting stont in three thinges: in forbering of bodily mete and drinke, in forbering of worldly jolitee, and in forbering of dedly sinne: this is to say, that a man shall kepe him fro dedly sinne with all his might.

And thou shalt understande also, that God ordeined fasting, and to fasting apperteineth foure thinges. Largenesse to poure folk: gladnesse of herte spirituel: not to be angry ne annoied, ne grutch for he fasteth: and also resonable houre for to ete by mesure, that is to say, a man shal not ete in untyme, ne sit the longer at the table, for he fasteth.

Than shalt thou understande, that bodily peine stont in discipline, or teching, by word, or by writing, or by ensample. Also in wering of here or of stamin, or of habergeons on hir naked flesh for Cristes sake; but ware thee wel that swiche maner penances ne make not thin herte bitter or angry, ne annoied of thyself; for better is to cast away thin here than to cast away the swetenesse of our Lord Jesu Crist. And therefore sayth Seint Poule: clothe you, as they that ben chosen of God in herte, of misericorde, debonairete, suffrance, and swiche maner of clothing, of whiche Jesu Crist is more plesed than with the heres or habergeons.

Than is discipline eke, in knocking of thy brest, in scourging with yerdes, in kneling, in tribulation, in suffring patiently wronges that ben don to thee, and eke in patient suffring of maladies, or lesing of worldly entel, or wif, or child, or other frendes.

Than shalt thou understand, which thinges distourben penance, and this is in foure maners, that is drede, shame, hope, and wanhope, that is, desperation. And for to speke first of drede, for which he weneth that he may suffre no penance, ther ayenst is remedie for to thinke, that bodily penance is but short and litel at regard of the peine of helle, that is so cruel and so longe, that it lasteth withouten ende.

Now ayenst the shame that a man hath to shrive him, and namely these Ipocrites, that wold be holden so parfit, that they have no nede to shrive hem, ayenst that shame shuld a man thinke, that by way of reson, he that hath not ben ashamed to do foule thinges, certes him ought not be ashamed to do faire thinges, and that is confessions. A man shuld also thinke, that God seeth and knoweth al his thoughtes, and al his werkes, and to him may nothing be hid ne covered. Men shuld eke remembre hem of the shame that is to come at the day of dome, to hem that ben not penitent in this present lif: for all the creatures in heven, and in erthe, and in helle, shul see apertly all that they hidden in this world.

Now for to speke of the hope of hem, that ben so negligent and slowe to shrive hem: that stondeh in two maners. That on is, that he hopeth for to live long, and for to purchas

moche richesse for his delit, and than he wol shrive him : and, as he sayeth, he may, as him semeth, than timely ynough come to shrift : another is, the surquedrie that he hath in Cristes mercie. Ayenat the first vice, he shal thinke that our lif is in no sikernessee, and eke that all the richesse in this world ben in aventure, and passen as a shadowe on a wall ; and, as sayth Seint Gregorie, that it apperteineth to the gret rightwisesse of God, that never shal the peine stinte of hem, that never wold withdrawe hem from sinne, hir thankes, but ever continue in sinne : for thilke perpetuel will to don sinne shall they have perpetuel peine.

Wanhope is in two maners. The first wanhope is, in the mercie of God : that other is, that they think that they ne might not long persever in goodnesse. The first wanhope cometh of that, he demeth that he hath sinned so gretly and so oft, and so long lyen in sinne, that he shal not be saved. Certes ayenst that cursed wanhope shulde he thinke, that the passion of Jesu Crist is more stronge for to unbinde, than sinne is strong for to binde. Ayenat the second wanhope he shal thinke, that as often as he falleth, he may arisen again by penitence : and though he never so longe hath lyen in sinne, the mercie of Crist is alway redy to receive him to mercie. Ayenst that wanhope that he demeth he shuld not longe persever in goodnesse, he shal think, that the feblenesse of the devil may nothing do, but if men wol suffre him : and eke he shal have strength of the helpe of Jesu Crist, and of all his chirche, and of the protection of angels, if him list.

Than shul men understonde, what is the fruit of penance ; and after the wordes of Jesu Crist, it is an endeles blisse of heven, ther joye hath no contrariositee of wo ne grevance ; ther all harmes ben passed of this present lif ; ther as is sikernessee from the peines of helle ; ther as is the blisful compaignie, that rejoycen hem ever mo everich of others joye ; ther as the body of man, that whilom was foule and derke, is more clere than the sonne ; ther as the body that whilom was sike and freele, feble and mortal, is immortal, and so strong and so hole, that ther ne may nothing appeire it ; ther as is neither hunger, ne thurst, ne colde, but every soule replenished with the sight of the parfit

knowing of God. This blisful regne mowe men purchase by poverte spirituel, and the glorie by lowlinesse, the plentee of joye by hunger and thurst, and the reste by travaille, and the lif by deth and mortification of sinne : to which life he us bring, that bought us with his precious blood. Amen.

Now preye I to hem alle that herken this litel tretise or reden it, that if ther be any thing in it that liketh hem, that therof they thanken our Lord Jesu Crist, of whom procedeth all witte and all godenesse ; and if ther be any thing that displeth hem, I preye hem also that they arrette it to the defeaute of myn unkonning, and not to my wille, that wold fayn have seyde better if I hadde had konning ; for oure boke seyth, all that is writen is writen for oure doctrine, and that is myn entente. Wherefore I beseke you mekely for the mercie of God that ye preye for me, that Crist have mercie of me and foryeve me myn giltes, [and namely of myn translations and enditinges of worldly vanitees, the which I revoke in my Retractions, as the boke of Troilus, the boke also of Fame, the boke of the five and twenty Ladies, the boke of the Duchesse, the boke of Seint Valentines day of the Parlement of briddes, the tales of Canterbury, thilke that sounen unto sinne, the boke of the Leon, and many an other boke, if they were in my remembraunce, and many a song and many a lecherous lay, Crist of his grette mercie foryeve me the sinne. But of the translation of Boes of consolation, and other bokes of legendes of Seints, and of Omelies, and moralite, and devotion, that thanke I oure Lord Jesu Crist, and his blisful mother, and alle the Seintes in heven, beseking hem that they fro hensforth unto my lyves ende sende me grace to bewaile my giltes, and to stodien to the savation of my soule,] and graunte me grace of verray penance, confession and satisfaction to don in this present lif, thorgh the benigne grace of him, that is king of kinges and preste of alle prestes, that bought us with the precious blode of his herte, so that I mote ben on of hem atte the laste day of dome that shullen be saved ; *qui cum Deo patre et Spiritu sancto vivi et regnas Deus per omnia secula. Amen.*

# NOTES

## ON THE CANTERBURY TALES.

For a Grammatical and Metrical Analysis of the first eighteen lines, see the Essay &c. p. xlv—xlvii.

Ver. 8. Hath in the Ram] Rather, *the Bollé*. See the reasons in the Introductory Discourse, p. 1.

Ver. 13. And Palmeres] The different sorts of Pilgrims are thus distinguished by Dante, *Vita nuova*, p. 80. *Chiamansi Palmieri, inquanto vanno oltra mare, laonde molte volte recano la palma;—Peregrini, inquanto vanno alla casa di Galizia;—Romei, inquanto vanno a Roma*. But he speaks as an Italian. Chaucer seems to consider all Pilgrims to foreign parts as Palmers.

Ver. 30. the Tabard] See Mr. Speght's note, as cited in the Discourse &c. n. 6.

Ver. 29. Wel—esed] *Bien aisé*. The later French usage of *aïse* Sing. and *aïses* Plur. unaccented, seems to be a corruption.

Ver. 33. And made forward] More properly, *forword*. See below, ver. 831, 50, 54, from the Sax. *Fore-word*, promise. *Made*, contracted from *maked*, is a Dissyllable. See ver. 4361.

Ver. 43. A Knight] The course of adventures of our Knight may be illustrated by those of a real Knight of Chaucer's age, who, for any thing that appears to the contrary, might have been upon this very pilgrimage. His Epitaph is in *Leland's Itin.* v. iii. p. cxi. *Icy gist le noble et vaillant Chevalier Matheu de Gournay &c.—qui en sa vie fu a la bataille de Benamaryn, et ala apres a la siege d'Algezir sur les Sarazines et aussi a les batailles de L'Escluse, de Cressy, de Deyngenesse, de Peyteres, de Nazare, d'Ozrey et a plusieurs autres batailles et assages en les quez il gaigna noblement graunt los et honour—* He died in 1406 at the age of 96. Why Chaucer should have chosen to bring his Knight from Alexandria and Lettow rather than from Cressy and Poitiers, is a problem difficult to resolve, except by supposing, that the slightest services against Infidels were in those days more honourable than the most splendid victories over Christians.

Ver. 48. ferre] *L. e. ferer*, the Comparative of *fer*, far. So Chaucer uses *derre*, for *derer*, the Compar. of *dere*, dear, ver. 1450. "Ther n'as no man that Theseus hath *derre*." *Ferrer* is used at length by Peter of Langtoft; and *Ferret*, the Superl. below, ver. 496.

Ver. 51. At Alisandre] *Alexandria* in Egypt was won, and immediately after abandoned, in 1365, by Pierre de Lusignan, King of Cyprus. The same Prince, soon after his accession to the throne in 1352, had taken *Satalie*, the ancient Attalia; and in another expedition about 1367 he made himself master of the town of *Layas* in Armenia. Compare 11 *Memoire sur les ouvrages de Guillaume de Machaut*. Acad. des Ins. t. xx. p. 426, 432, and *Memoire sur la vie de Philippe de Matieres*, t. xvii. p. 493. See also Froissart, v. iii. p. 21. Walsingham mentions the taking of Alexandria, p. 180. and adds; *Interfuerunt autem huic captioni cum rege Cyprie plures Anglici et Aquitanici, referentes tam in Angliam quam in Aquitaniam pannos aureos et holosericos, splendoresque gemmarum exoticos, in testimonium tante victorie.*

Ver. 52. he had the bord begonne—in Pruse] *He had been placed at the head of the table*; the usual compliment to extraordinary merit; as the Commentators very properly explain it. When our military men wanted employment, it was usual for them to go and serve in *Pruse*, or *Prussia*, with the Knights of the Teutonic order, who were in a state of constant warfare with their heathen neighbours in *Lettow* (Lithuania) *Ruse* (Russia), and elsewhere. A pagan King of *Lettow* is mentioned by Walsingham, p. 180, 343.

Ver. 54. reysed] This is properly a German word. Kilian. in v. *Reysen*, iter *facere*—et Ger. *Militare, facere stipendium*. The Editions (except M.) and several MSS. have changed it into *ridden*; which indeed seems to have been used by Chaucer in the same sense, ver. 48.

Ver. 56. In Gernade] The city of Algezir was taken from the Moorish King of Granada in 1344. Mariana, L. xvi. c. xi. among other persons of distinction who came to assist at the siege in 1343, names particularly, "*de Inglaterra, con licentia del Rey Eduardo*, los Condes de Arbid, y de Soluzber;" which I suppose we may safely interpret to mean the *Earls of Derby and Salisbury*. Knighton says, that the Earl of Derby was there. X *Script.* 2383.

Ver. 57. in Belmarie] I cannot find any country of this name in any authentic Geographical writer. Froissart, v. iv. c. xxiii, reckons it among the kingdoms of Africa: *Thunes, Bougie, Maroch, Bellemarine, Tremessen*; and Chaucer, ver. 1779, speaks of it as producing Lions. The battle of *Benamarin*, mentioned in Sir M. Gournay's epitaph, is said by a late author of *Viage de Espagna*, p. 73. n. 1. to have been so called *por haber quedado vencido en ella Albahacen, Rey de Marruecos*, del linage de *Aben Marin*. Perhaps therefore the dominions of that family in Africa might be called abusively *Benamarin*, and by a further corruption *Belmarie*.

Ver. 59. the Grete See] This is generally understood to mean the *Pontus Euxinus*; but I doubt whether the name of *Mare maggiore* was given to that Sea by any other nation beside the Italians. Sir John Mandeville, p. 89, calls that part of the Mediterranean which washes the coast of Palestine, *the grete Sea*; an appellation, which it might possibly have acquired there, to distinguish it from the two inland Seas, as they were improperly styled, the *Sea of Tiberias* and the *Dead Sea*.

In MS. T. it is *the Grekish See*; a reading, to which I should have had no objection, if I had found it confirmed by any better MS. In the middle ages, the Mediterranean Sea, from Sicily to Cyprus, was sometimes called *Mare Græcum*. Hoveden, p. 709. So Bracton speaks of *Esoligns, de ultra et de citra Mare Græcorum*: L. v. Tr. 2. c. 3. *The See of Grece* is used in the same sense by Chaucer himself, ver. 4884.—And in *Isumbras*, fol. 130. b. Tyl he come to the *Grekes See*.

Ver. 60. noble armee] I have printed this as the most intelligible reading, though I am not quite satisfied with it. The MSS. have *arme*, *aryve*, and *ryver*.

Ver. 65. the lord of Palatie] *Palathia* in *Anatolia*. Sp The nature of his Lordship may be explained from *Ver*



sart, v. iii. c. 22. He gives an account there of several *Hauts Barons* in those parts, who kept possession of their lands, paying a tribute to the Turk. He names particularly *le Sire de Sathalie, le Sire de la Palice, et le Sire de Haute-Loge*.

Ver. 84. deliver] *Nimble*. So below, ver. 15422. Deliverly; *Nimbley*. The word is plainly from the *Fa. libre*. The Italians use *suelto*, or *sciolto*, in the same sense.

Ver. 85. in chevachie] *Chevauchée*. *Fa.* It most properly means an expedition with a small party of Cavalry; but is often used generally for any military expedition. Hollinshed calls it a *rode*.

Ver. 89. Embrouded] *Embroidered*, from the *Fa. Broder*, originally *Border*.

Ver. 91. floyting] *Playing on the flute*. So in *H. F. iii. 133*.

"And many a *foile* and litleyng borne,  
And pipes made of grene corne."

The first syllable for a time retained the broad sound of its original. See Du Cange, *Flauta*. Kilian., *Fluyte*. In some copies it is changed to *floyting*.

Ver. 97. nighttale.] *Night-time*; from the *Sax. nithtern dæl; nocturna portio*. Lydgate uses *nightertyme*. Traged. fol. 141. b. 186. b.

Ver. 100. And carf before his fader] The practice of Squiers, of the highest quality, carving at their fathers' tables has been fully illustrated by M. de St<sup>e</sup> Palaye, *Acad. des Ins. t. xx. p. 604*.

Ver. 101. A Yeman hadde we] The late Editions call this character the *Squire's Yeman*, but improperly. The pronoun *we* relates to the *Knight*. Chaucer would never have given the son an attendant, when the Father had none.

*Yeman* or *Yeoman*, is an abbreviation of *Yeongeman*, as *Youthe* is of *Yeongthe*. Young men being most usually employed in service, servants have, in many languages, been denominated from the single circumstance of age; as, *παις, puer, garçon, boy, grome*. As a title of service or office, *Yoman* is used in the Stat. 37 E. III. c. 9 and 11, to denote a servant of the next degree above a *garzon*, or groom; and at this day, in several departments of the Royal Household, the attendants are distributed into three classes of *Servants or Squiers, Yeomen, and Grooms*. In the Household of the Mayor of London, some officers of the rank of *Yeoman* are still, I believe, called *Young men*. See Chamberlain's State of Great Britain.

In the Statute 20 R. II. c. 2. *Yomen* and *Vadlets* are synonymous terms. The Chanones *Yeman*, who is introduced below, ver. 16030, is a common servant. See also ver. 2730. The title of *Yeoman* was given, in a secondary sense, to people of middling rank, not in service. So the Miller, ver. 3947, is careful "To save his *estat of yemanrie*." The appropriation of the word to signify a *small landholder* is more modern, I apprehend.

Ver. 104. peacock arwes] *Arrows with peacock feathers*. See Mr. Warton's illustration of this passage. Hist. of Eng. Po. p. 450.

There is a Patent in Rymer, 15 R. II. *de artes agittandi per Valetios Regis exercendā*. The *Yeomen*, and all other Servants of the Royal household, of whatever state or office, under the degree of *Yeoman*, are ordered to carry bows and arrows with them, whenever they ride, &c. in the King's train.

Ver. 109. A not-hed] *A head like a nut*; from the hair, probably, being cut short. It has since been called a *Roundhead*, for the same reason.

Ver. 115. A Cristofre] I do not see the meaning of this ornament. By the Stat. 37 E. III. *Yomen* are forbidden to wear any ornaments of *gold or silver*.

Ver. 119. simple and coy] V. Saintré, T. iii. p. 577.

Ver. 120. St. Eloy] In Latin, *Sanctus Eligius*. I have no authority but that of Ed. Urr, for printing this Saint's name at length. In all the MSS. which I have seen, it is abbreviated, *St. Loy*, both in this place and in ver. 7146. The metre will be safe, if *othe* be pronounced as a dissyllable.

Ver. 124. And Frenche she spake] It has been mentioned before, Essay, &c. n. 55, that Chaucer thought but meanly of the English-French spoken in his time. It was proper however that the Prioress should speak some sort of French; not only as a woman of fashion, a character which she is represented to affect, ver. 139, 140, but as a religious person. The instructions from the Abbot of St. Albans to the Nuns of Sopewell, in 1338, were in the French language. See *Auct. Add. M. Paris*, p. 1171.

Ver. 127. At mete] The following circumstances of behaviour at table are copied from *Rom. de la R. 14178—14199*.

Et bien se garde qu'elle ne moelle  
Ses doys au brouet jusqu'ès jointes, &c.  
Si sagement port sa bouchée,  
Que sur son pied goutte n'en chée  
De souppe, ne de saulce noire.—  
Et doit si bien sa bouche tordre  
Tant qu'il n'y laisse gresse aherdre  
Au moins en la levre deuseure.—

Ver. 159. gauded all with grene] *Having the Gaudies green*. Some were of silver gilt. *Monast. V. iii. p. 174*. *Tris paria precularium del Corall cum le gaudrys argenti deaurata*. So in Gower, *Conf. Am. f. 190*.

A paire of bedes blacke as sable  
She toke and hynged my necke about  
Upon the gaudes all without  
Was wryte of gold, pur reposer.

Ver. 163. Another Nonne &c.] See Disc. p. 111.

Ver. 165. a fayre for the maistrie] We should say, *a fair one*; but in Chaucer's time such tautology was not, I suppose, elegant. So below, ver. 189.

Therefore he was a pricknour, a right.

As to the phrase *for the maistrie*, I take it to be derived from the French *pour la maistrie*, which I find, in an old book of Physick, applied to such medicines as we usually call *Sovereign*, excellent above all others. *MS. Bod. 761*. *Secreta h. Samj de Clouburnel*, fol. 17. b. *Ciroigne bone pur la maistrie a briser et a meurer apostemes &c. Medicine magistrel pur festre &c. Medicine pur la maistrie pur festre &c.* And in another treatise in the same MS. *Medulla Chirurgie Rolandi*, similar phrases are used in Latin, fol. 77. *Pocio bona pro magisterio ad vulnera sananda &c. fol. 79. Contra lupum &c. medicamen magistrale*. In the same sense the Monk is said to be *baif*, *for the maistrie*, above all others. The phrase is used by Robert of Gloucester, p. 553. *An stede he gan prikke wel vor the maistrie*. The several chemical preparations known by the name of *Magisterium* of Lead, Bismuth &c. I conceive to have originally acquired that name from their being considered at first as *masterly operations*.

Ver. 166. loved venerie] i. e. *Hunting*. If the word in Chaucer's time had borne any other sense, he would hardly have put it into the mouth of Emilia in ver. 2310. The monks of that age are represented as fond of field-sports. See below, ver. 189—192, and P. P. fol. L. a. Knighton says, that an Abbot of Leicester, who died in 1337, in *venatione leporum inter omnes regni dominos famosissimus et nominatissimus habebatur*. X. Scriptor. p. 2631. He adds indeed, that the Abbot was used to assert, what perhaps may have been partly true, *se non delectasse in hujusmodi frivolis venationibus, nisi solum pro obsequiis dominis regni præstandis, et affabilitate eorum captandis, et gratia in suis negotiis adipiscendā*.

Ver. 169. his bridel—Gingeling] See this fashion of hanging bells on bridles, &c. illustrated by Mr. Warton, Hist. of Eng. Po. p. 164. See also below, ver. 14900, 1.

Ver. 177. a pulled hen] See below, ver. 6894.

"Swiche arrogance n'is not worth an hen."

I do not see much force in the epithet *pulled*. Ca. 1. reads, *pullet*.

Ver. 179. whan he is rekkeles] MS. C reads, *Cloisterles*; to which the only objection is, that, if it had been this true reading, there would have been no occasion to explain

or paraphrase it in ver. 181. The text alluded to is attributed by Gratian, *Decret.* P. II. Cau. xvi. Q. I. c. viii. to a Pope Eugenius.—*Sicut piscis sine aqua caret vita, ita sine monasterio monachus.* In P. P. according to MS. Cotton. Vesp. B. xvi. (for the passage is omitted in the printed editions) a similar saying is quoted from Gregory.

Gregori the grete clerk garte write in boke  
The rewle of alle religioun riyful and obedient  
Riyt as fishes in a fiod whan hem falleth water  
Deien for drowthe whan thei drie liggen  
Riyt so religious roten and sterren  
That out of covent or cloistre coventen to dwelle.

As the known senses of *rekkeles*, viz. *careless*, *negligent*, by no means suit with this passage, I am inclined to suspect that Chaucer possibly wrote *reyghelles*, i. e. without rule. *Regol*, from *Regula*, was the Saxon word for a *Rule*, and particularly for a *Monastic Rule*. Hence *Regol-lyf*; *Regularis seu Monastica vita*: *Regol-lage*; *Regularium lex*: and in the quotation from *Orm*, *Essay*, &c. n. 52. an *reyghel-boe* signifies the *book of Rules*, by which the Augustinian Canons were governed.

Ver. 187. As Austin bit] i. e. biddeth. Chaucer frequently abbreviates the third person Sing. of the Present Tense in this manner. See ver. 976. 983. *Rit* for *Rideth*. ver. 4069. 18686. *Fint* for *Findeth*. ver. 4191. *Rist* for *Riseth*. ver. 5038. 5071. 5. *Stant* for *Standeth*. ver. 7239. *Sit* for *Sitteth*. ver. 7998. *Smit* for *Smiteth*.

Ver. 193. his sleeves purfild.] From the *Fa. Pourfaler*, which properly signifies, to *work upon the edge*. *Pur*, *Ewe*, and *Pour Fa.* are generally corruptions of the Latin *Pro*.

It is not clear what species of fur the *Gris* was, only that it was one of the better sorts. See Du Cange in v. *Griseum*. If it was the same with *Vair*, commonly called *Menver*, i. e. *Menu Vair*, as he supposes, it was probably next in esteem to Ermin. See the Statute 37 E. III. c. 10 and 12. One of Wolsey's ordinances for the reformation of the Augustinian monks in 1519 is directed against the foppery here described. *In manicis sub nullo modo furruris utantur aut pellibus, nisi prout his permisum est in Statutis Benedictinis.* Monast. v. II. p. 567.

Ver. 203. His booties souple] This is part of the description of a smart Abbot, by an anonymous writer of the XIII Century. *Ocreas habebat in cruribus, quasi innatæ essent, sine plicâ porrectas* MS. Bod. James. n. 6. p. 121.

Ver. 233. farsed] *Stuffed*, from the *Fa. Farcir*.

Ver. 237. Of yeddinges] This word being not understood, has been changed in some copies into *tidinges*, and *weddinges*. It probably means a *kind of Song*, from the Sax. *Geddian*, or *Giddian*, To sing. See the Saxon Boethius, cap. I. l. ult. where the words *thus singende cueth* are rendered in the Poetical Version, p. 152. *gyddode thus*. See more instances in Lye's Sax. Dict. The Saxon *ȝ* passes frequently into *y*.

Ver. 256. *in principio*] This phrase is commonly explained to refer to the Beginning of St. John's Gospel. It may also refer to the Beginning of Genesis. In an old French Romance, *l'histoire des trois Maries*, it seems to signify some passage in the conclusion of the Mass. Acad. des Ins. t. xlii. p. 521,

Moult aise sui quant audio  
Le Prestre dire *In principio*,  
Car la Messe si est finee.

It is not very material in which of these senses it is understood, either here or in ver. 15169.

Ver. 258. His pourchas was, &c.] From the *Rom. de la R.* 12288.

Mieux vault mon pourchas que ma rente.

See R. R. 6836.

Ver. 260. In Love-dayes] A day appointed for the amicable settlement of differences was called a *Love-day*. Bracton, l. v. fol. 369. si ante iudicium capiatur *Dies Amoris*.—*Rot. Parl.* 13. H. IV. n. 13. agayn the fourme of a *Love-day* taken bytween the same parties. The Glossary

calls them improperly, *Meetings for pleasure and diversion*. They were meetings for business; though it is probable that the business, when finished, was usually followed by a treat given to the Arbitrators, &c. See the *Parl. Roll*, quoted above. In P. P. fol. xxvii. Sloth, in the character of a Priest, says,

I can holde *Lovedayes*, and here a *Reves* rekenynge,  
And in Cannon or in Decretals I cannot read a lyne.

Ver. 278. The see were kept] i. e. *guarded*. The old Subsidy of Tonnage and Poundage was given to the King *pur la sauvgarde et custodie del mer*. 12 E. IV. c. 3.

Ver. 292. his overest courtpey] *His uppermost short cloke* of coarse cloth. See ver. 6964. and P. P. fol. xxxiii. b. l. ult.

And kyt her copes and courtpeies hem made.

It is a Teutonic word, from *Kort curtus*, and *Pije*, *penula coactilis*, & *villis crassioribus*. Kilian in vv.

Ver. 300. Yet hadde he] *Hadde* is here to be pronounced as a Dissyllable, the *h* in *he* being considered as a consonant. So below, ver. 388. See also ver. 9659. 11784. 11804. 12532. 12834. in all which instances, and many others, the *e* feminine is to be pronounced before *h*.

304. to scolae] to *attend school*; from the old French verb, *escoloir*. It is used in the same sense by Lydgate. *Traged.* fol. 99. So Chaucer uses to *Werreie*, ver. 10384. 14338. and to *Festeye*, ver. 10659, from *Guerroier* and *Festoier*.

Ver. 307. in forme and reverence] *with propriety and modesty*. In the next line, "*full of high sentence*" means only, I apprehend, "*full of high, or excellent, sense*."—Mr. Warton will excuse me for suggesting these explanations of this passage in lieu of those which he has given in his *Hist. of Eng. Po.* p. 451. The credit of good letters is concerned, that Chaucer should not be supposed to have made "a podantic formality," and "a precise sententious style on all subjects," the characteristics of a scholar.

Ver. 322. in suspect] *in suspicion*. See ver. 8781. 12197.

Ver. 331. a seint of silk with barres smale] It appears from our author's translation of R. R. ver. 1103. that *barres* were called *cloux* in French, and were an usual ornament of a girdle. See Mr. Warton's *Hist.* p. 377. 426. *Clavus* in Latin, from whence the *Fa. Cloux* is derived, seems to have signified not only an outward border, but also what we call a *stripe*. Montfaucon, t. III. part I. ch. vi. *A Bar* in Heraldry is a narrow *stripe*, or *Fascia*. Du Cange, in v. *CLAVARUS*, quotes the *Statut Andegav.* an. 1423. in which the Clergy, and especially the Regulars, are forbid to wear *sonas auro clavatas*.

Ver. 333. A Frankleyn] Fortescue de L. L. Ang. c. 29, describes a *Franklain* to be a *Pater familias*—*magnis ditatus possessionibus*. He is classed with, but after, the *Miles* and *Armiger*; and is distinguished from the *Libere tenentes* and *Valecti*; though, as it should seem, the only real distinction between him and other *Freeholders* consisted in the largeness of his estate. Spelman, in v. *Franklein*, quotes the following passage from Trivet's French Chronicle: MS. Bibl. R. S. n. 56. *Thomas de Brotherton, filius Edwardi I. Marcehallus Anglie, apres la mort de son pere esposâ la fille de un Francheleyn apeles Alice*. The Historian did not think it worth his while even to mention the name of the Frankleyn.

Ver. 342. Seint Julian] was eminent for providing his votaries with good lodgings and accommodation of all sorts. In the title of his *Legende*, MS. Bod. 1596. fol. 4, he is called "St. Julian, the gode herberjour." It ends thus.

Therefore yet to this day thei that over lond wende,  
Thei biddeth Seint Julian anon that gode herborw he hem sende,  
And Seint Julianes Pater noster ofte segguth also,  
For his fader soule and his moderes, that he hem bring therto.

Of the virtue of Seint Julian's Pater-noster see the *Decameron*. D. II. N. 2.

Ver. 344. envyned] *Stored with wine.* Cotgrave has preserved the French word *enviné*, in the same sense. This is the reading of MSS. Ask. 1. 2. and others. The common editions read *viendit*.

Ver. 357. At Sessions] *At the Sessions of the Peace.* The Justices, by the Stat. 34 E. III. c. 1. were to be, in each county, *un Seigneur et ovesque lui trois ou quatre des meulz vaues du countee, ensemblement ove ascuns sages de la ley.* A wealthy Frankleyn might perhaps be commissioned under this description; but I know not how he could be a Knight of the Shire; as they by 46 E. III. were to be *Chivalers et Sarjantz des meulz vaues du pais*; unless we suppose, either that the rank of *Serjant* (Esquire) was as undefined as it is now, or that his office of Justice made him an Esquire, within the meaning of the act.

Ver. 359. An anelace] See the Gloss. to M. Paris in v. *Anelacius*. It was a kind of knife, or dagger, usually worn at the girdle. In that passage of M. Paris, p. 342. where Petrus de Rivallis is mentioned as *gestans anelacium ad lumbare, quod clerici non decebat*, it may be doubted whether the wearing of an anelace simply, or the wearing of it at the girdle, was an indecent thing in the clerk. The five city-mechanics, a few lines below, are described as wearing knives, and probably at their girdles (see v. 370.) though the latter circumstance is not clearly expressed. In the picture of Chaucer, which is inserted in some copies of Oocleve's book *De regimine principis*, he is represented with a knife hanging from a button upon his breast. See MSS. Harl. 4866. Cotton. Otho. A. xviii.

Ver. 359. a gipeiere] *Fa. Gibeciére, a purse.* The mechanics, ver. 370. have also their *pouches*.

Ver. 361. a countour] This word has been changed in Ed. Urr. upon what authority I know not, to *Coroner*. The MSS. all read *Countour*, or *comptour*. At the same time it is not easy to say what office is meant. I have a notion, that the Foreman of the Inquest in the Hundred-court was called a *Countour*; but the Law Glossaries do not take notice of any such sense of the word, and I cannot at present produce any thing stronger in support of it than the following passage of R. G. p. 538. Speaking of an Hundred-court summoned by the Constable of Gloucester Castle, he says, that—

He halde this hundred mid gret folk and honour,  
And Adam of Arderne was is [his] chef *countour*.

Though this may possibly mean that Adam acted as *accountant* or *steward* of the court.

Ver. 362. vavasour] The precise import of this word is often as obscure as its original. See Du Cange in v. In this place it should perhaps be understood to mean the whole class of middling Landholders.

Ver. 372. on the deis] This word occurs so frequently in our old authors, that it may be worth the while to endeavour to give a more satisfactory explanation of it than is to be found in the Glossaries. I apprehend that it originally signified the *wooden floor* [*Dais*, *Fa. De assibus*, LAR.] which was laid at the upper end of the hall, as we still see it in College-halls, &c. That part of the room therefore, which was floored with planks, was called the *Dais*, the rest being either the bare ground or at best paved with stone; and being raised above the level of the other parts it was often called the *high Dais*. In royal halls there were more *Dais* than one, each of them probably raised above the other by one or more steps; and that where the King sat was called the *highest Dais*. At a dinner, which Charles V. of France gave to the Emperor Charles IV. in 1377, Christine de Pisan says, Hist. de Ch. V. P. iii. c. 53, *cinq dois [dais] avoit en la sale plains de Princes et de Barons, et autres tables par-tout.—et estoient les deux grans dois et les drepoiers fais de barrières a l'environ.*

As the principal table was always placed upon a *Dais*, it began very soon, by a natural abuse of words, to be called itself a *Dais*, and people were said to sit at the *Dais*, instead of at the table upon the *Dais*. It was so in the time of M. Paris. Vit. Abb. p. 1070. *Priore prandente ad uarnam mensam, quam Dais vocamus.*

Menage, whose authority seems to have led later antiquaries to interpret *Dais*, a *Canopy*, has evidently confounded *Dais* with *Ders*. *Ders* and *Derelet*, from *Dorsum*, as he observes, meant properly the hangings at the back of the company, Du Cange, v. *Donsals*; but as the same hangings were often drawn over so as to form a kind of canopy over their heads, the whole was called a *Ders*. Christine, P. iii. c. 41. *Sus chascun des trols (the Emperour and the Kings of France and Bohemia) avoit un ciel, distincte l'un de l'autre, de drap d'or a fleurs de lis, et pardessus ces trols en avoit un grant, qui couvroit tout au long de la table, et tout derriere eux pendoit, et estoit de drap d'or.* This last *ciel*, or canopy, "which covered the whole length of the table, and hung down behind the company," was a *Ders*. That it was quite a different thing from a *Dais*, appears from what follows: *A l'autre dois [dais] avplus près (she says) scott—le Dauphin and others. Et sus le chief du Dauphin avoit un ciel, et puis un autre pardessus qui toute la table couvroit.* *Dais* here plainly means a table. The Dauphin sat at the second table, and had a canopy over his own head, and another which covered the whole table. In short, one of Menage's own citations, if properly corrected, will fully establish the distinct senses of these two words. *Ceremon. de Godfrey*, p. 335. *Le Roy se vint mettre a table sur un haut Ders (read Dais) fait et préparé en la grande salle du logis Archelepisopal, sous un grand Ders, le fond du quel estoit tout d'or.* He has another citation from Martene, *de Mon. Rit* l. i. c. xi. p. 109, in which he himself allows, that *Darium*, the same as *Dais*, must signify an *estrade*, a raised floor. It appears from the same citation, that the ascent to the *Darium* was by more steps than one.

See below, ver. 2202. 9585. 10373. and Gower, *Conf. Am.* fol. 155. a. *Sittende upon the hic deis.*

Ver. 381. for the nonces] "That is, as I conceive, for the occasion. This phrase, which was very frequently, though not always very precisely, used by our old writers, I suppose to have been originally a corruption of corrupt Latin. From *pro-nunc*, I suppose, came for the *nunc*, and so for the *nonce*; just as from *ad nunc* came *a-non*. The Spanish *entonces* has been formed in the same manner from *in-tunc*."

I have repeated this note from the last Edit. of Shakespeare, Vol. 5. p. 239. as I have not found any reason to alter my opinion with respect to the original of this phrase. I will add here a list of several passages in these tales, in which it is used in the same sense. See ver. 525. 547. 3469. 13948. 15339. See also R. G. p. 285.

And he hadde vor the nones tweye suerdes by hys syde.

Ver. 383. And poudre marchant] What kind of ingredient this was I cannot tell. Cotgrave mentions a *Poudre blanche* and a *Poudre de duc*, which seem both to have been used in Cookery. I must take notice, that the epithet *tart*, in most of the MSS. is annexed to *poudre marchant*, and I rather wish I had left it there, as, for any thing that I know, it may suit that as well as *Galingale*. [See Brander's roll. n. cxlii. *For to make flaumpayne*—then take powder of pepper or *els poudour marchant*—and n. cxviii. *Veel in bukade.* Add. note. Ed. 1798.]

Ver. 384. London ale] Whether this was a different sort of ale from that of the provinces, or only better made, I know not; but it appears to have been in request above a century after Chaucer. In the account of the feast of Archbishop Warham in 1504, are the following articles. *Lel. Collect. App. P. ii. p. 30.*

De cervisia Londini iiii. dol. — vi li.

De cervisia Cant. vi. dol. prec. dol. xxv s.

De cervisia Ang. Bere xx. dol. prec. dol. xxiii s. iv d.

So that London ale was higher priced than Kentish by 5s a barrel.

Ver. 386. Maken mortrewes] Lord Bacon, in his Nat. Hist. i. 48. speaks of "a *Mortress* made with the brawn of capons stamped and strained." He joins it with the *cullice* (*teculis*) of cocks. It seems to have been a rich broth, or soupe, in the preparation of which the flesh was stamped, or beat, in a mortar; from whence it probably derived its

name, *une mortresse*; though I cannot say that I have ever met with the French word.

Ver. 388. a mortal] A cancer, or gangrene. So the Gloss. and I believe Chaucer meant no more, by his conjoining the disease to the shin. The original word, *Malum mortuum*, LAT. *Mauzmors*, FR. seems to have signified a kind of dead palsy, which took away entirely the use of the legs and feet. Du Cange, in v. *MALUM MORTUUM*. Jonson, in imitation of this passage, has described a cook with an—"old mortal on his shin." *Sad Shepherd*. A. II. S. VI.

Ver. 393. All in a gounce of falding] I have added *All*, for the sake of the verse, but perhaps unnecessarily, as some of the MSS. read—

In a gounce of falding unto v's knee.

The reader has been forewarned, Essay, &c. p. xlv., that Chaucer is not always correct in the disposition of his accents.

Ver. 400. Of nice conscience] H. Stephens informs us, that *Nice* was the old French word for *Niais*, one of the synonyms of *Sot*. *Apol. Herod.* l. i. c. 4. Our author uses it elsewhere in its original sense for foolish, ver. 6390.

But say that we ben wise, and nothing nice.

Ver. 408. His herberwe, his mone] In ver. 11347. he uses *herberwe* for the place of the Sun, which perhaps it may signify here. *Lodemange* seems to be formed, as the Gloss. observes, by adding a French termination to the SAX. *Ladman*, a Guide, or Pilot. It would have been more English to have said *Lodemanship*, as *Seamanship*, *Horsemanship*, &c. From the same property of leading, the North-star, in ver. 2061, is called the *Lodesterris*; and hence also our name of *Lodestone* for the Magnet.

Ver. 418. by his magike naturel] The same practices are alluded to in H. F. III. 175.

And clerkes eke, which coume well  
All this magike naturel,  
That craftely do her intentes  
To maken in certayne ascendentes  
Ymagis, lo! through which magike  
To maken a man ben hole or seke.

Ver. 433. Old Hippocras] Whoever is curious to know more of the Physicians mentioned in this Catalogue may consult the Account of Authors, &c. in Ed. Urr.—*Fabrio. Bibl. Med. Et.*—and the *Elench. Medicor. Vet. ap. eund.* *Bibl. Gr. t. xiii.* I shall only observe that the names of *Hippocras*, or *Ypocras*, and *Gallen* were used even by the Latin writers of the middle ages for Hippocrates and Galen. See the inscriptions in the Library at St. Albans, *Monast. t. i. p. 184.*

*Magnus-eram medicus, Hippocras sum nomine dictus.  
Alier et egregius vocitatus eram Gallenus.*

See below, ver. 12240.

Ver. 459. moist and newe] *Moist* is here used in a peculiar sense, as derived from *musteus*; for according to *Nomius*, 2. 518. *Mustum*, non solum vinum, verum etiam novellum quicquid est, recte dicitur. So in ver. 17009. *moisty ale* is opposed to *old*.

Ver. 464. as nouthe] the use of *nouthe* for *now*, in this place has so much the appearance of a botch, that it may be proper to observe that the word was in use before Chaucer's time. See R.G. p. 485, 8. In the latter instance it is in the middle of the verse.

Ver. 470. Gat-tothed] Whether we read thus, with the generality of the MSS. or *Cat-tothed*, with MSS. Ask. l. 2. or *Gep-tothed*, with Ed. Urr. I confess myself equally unable to explain what is meant by this circumstance of description. The Wife uses the phrase when speaking of herself in ver. 6185.

Ver. 588. spiced conscience] This phrase occurs again, ver. 6017. but I do not understand it. See B. and F. *Mad Lover*, Act. 3.

Ver. 599. the ram] This was the usual prize at wrestling-matches. See below, ver. 13671. and *Gamelyn*. ver. 343.

555. M. Paris mentions a wrestling-match at Westminster in the year 1222, at which a ram was the prize, p. 268.

Ver. 562. a goliardete] *Un goliardete*, FR. *Goliardus*, or *Goliardensis*, LAT. This jovial sect seems to have been so called from Gollas, the real or assumed name of a man of wit, toward the end of the xiiith Century, who wrote the *Apocalypsis Golke*, and other pieces in burlesque Latin Rimes, some of which have been falsely attributed to Walter Map. See Tanner's *Bibl. Brit.* in v. *GOLLAS*, and Du Cange in v. *GOLIARDUS*. There is a poem by one of this sect in MS. Bod. 3899. James. 32. which is entitled "*Dicta ejusdem Goliardi Anglici*," and begins thus:

Omnibus in Gallia, Anglus Goliardus,  
Obediens et humilis, frater non bastardus,  
Gollie discipulus, dolens quod tam tardus,  
Mandat salutem fratribus, nomine Richardus.

The last Stanza is this,

Summa salus omnium, filius Marie,  
Pascet, potet, vestiat pueros Gollie,  
Et conservet socios sanctis confrarie  
Ad dies usque ultimos Enoch et Elye.

In several authors of the xiiith Century, quoted by Du Cange, the *Goliardi* are classed with the *foeculatores et buffones*.

Ver. 565. a thomb of gold] If the allusion be, as is most probable, to the old proverb, *Every honest Miller has a thumb of gold*, this passage may mean, that our Miller, notwithstanding his thefts, was an honest Miller, i. e. as honest as his brethren.

Ver. 568. sette hir aller cappe] *Allee* is the Genitive of *Alle*, from the SAX. *calra*. *Hir aller* would be properly rendered in Latin *coram omnium*. See the Essay, &c. n. 27. To set a man's cap is the same as to make a fool of him. See ver. 3148.

How that a Clerk hath set the wrightes cappe.

Ver. 617. a right good stot] I take *Stot* to be put here for *Stod*, the Saxon word for a *Stallion*. A stot signified properly a *Bullock*, as it still does in the North. See the *Feroe Housh. Book*, p. 2. and *Nota*. The passage which Du Cange, in v. *Storvus*, has quoted from *Maddox*, *Form. Angl.* p. 427, to shew, that *Stottus* signifies *Equus admistrarius*, proves rather that it signifies a *Bullock*. John de Nevill leaves to his eldest son several specific legacies "et eciam cc vaccas pro stauris, cc stottos et stirkes, un bidentes," &c. *Stirke* is the Saxon name for a *heifer*, so that there can be little doubt that "cc stottos et stirkes," should be rendered "cc bullocks and heifers."

Ver. 626. cherubinnes face] H. Stephens, *Apol. Herod.* l. i. c. xxx. quotes the same thought from a French Epigram.

Nos grands docteurs as Cherubin visage, &c.

Ver. 637. sausefeme] I find this word in an old Fa. book of Physick, which I have quoted before in n. on ver. 165. "Oignement magistrel pur sausefeme et pur obscure manere de roigne."—*Roigne* signifies any scorbutic eruption. So in the *Thousand notable things*, B. l. 70. "A sausefeme or red pimpled face is helped with this medicine following."—Two of the ingredients are *Quicksilver* and *Brimstone*. In another place, B. II. 20. *Oyle of Tartar* is said "to take away cleane all spots, freckles, and filthy wheales." These last, I suppose, are what Chaucer calls *whelkes*. The Original of the word seems to be pointed out in the following passage. Vit. R. II. a Mon. Evech. p. 169. "*facies alba—interdum sanguinis fœmate viciata*."

Ver. 648. *Quentio quid juris*] This kind of Question occurs frequently in Ralph de Hengham. After having stated a case, he adds, *Quid juris?* and then proceeds to give the answer to it. See *Heng. Mag.* c. xi. *Eato autem quod reus nullo modo venerit ad hunc diem. quid juris?* &c. See also, c. xii.

Ver. 649. a gentil harlot] The name of *Harlot* was anciently given to men as well as women. See below, ver. 4396. 7335. *Herlod*, in Welsh, is said to signify

simply a *young man*, and *Heriodes*, a *young woman*. Richards, Welsh Diet. in v. With us it seems always to have been a disgraceful appellation. In R.R. ver. 6068. *King of Heriotes* is Chaucer's translation of *Roy de ribaulx*.

Ver. 664. a *Significavit*] The writ *de excommunicato capiendo*, commonly called a *Significavit*, from the beginning of the writ which is as follows: *Rex Vicecomiti L. salutem. Significavit nobis venerabilis pater H. L. Episcopus, &c. Cod. Jur. Ecc. p. 1064.*

Ver. 665. In danger hadde he] i. e. within the reach, or control, of his office. See Hist. Abbat. Pipwell. ap. Monast. Angl. t. I. p. 815. *Nec audebant Abbates eidem resistere, quia aut pro demeritis aut pro bladis semper fuerunt Abbates in dangero dicti Officialis.*

The *yonge girls*, in the next line, may signify either the *young men* or the *young women*; as *girl* was formerly an appellation common to both sexes.

Ver. 672. Of Rouncivall] I can hardly think that Chaucer meant to bring his Pardoner from *Roucnvaux* in *Navarre*, and yet I cannot find any place of that name in England. An Hospital *Beatae Marie de Rouncevalle* in *Charing, London*, is mentioned in the Monast. t. II. p. 443. and there was a *Runcival-Hall* in Oxford. Stevens, v. II. p. 262. So that perhaps it was the name of some Fraternity.

Ver. 674. Come hither, love, to me] This, I suppose, was the beginning, or the burthen, of some known song. *Love*, is here a dissyllable, as in ver. 260.

In *love-days*, ther coud he moche helpe.

and in ver. 1637.

Ful soth is slyde, that *love* ne lordshipp.

The double rime of *love*, answering to *Rome*, proves evidently that *Rome* in this place is to be pronounced as a Dissyllable. We need therefore have no scruple, I think, of pronouncing it in the same manner wherever the metre requires two syllables. See ver. 4562. 4576. 5368. 5568.

A like use may be made of other similar rimes in Chaucer for establishing the pronunciation of the *e* feminine. In ver. 16673. *by me* rimes to *time*, and in Tro. II. 991. to *time* and *prime*; and accordingly both *time* and *prime* are used in other places as dissyllables. See ver. 7884. 10837—10674. 12296.

In these cases the final monosyllable *me* transfers its accent to the preceding syllable, after the manner of the Greek enclitics, and the final *e* of course becomes a mere *e* feminine.

Ver. 675. bare—a stiff burdoun] *Sang the base*. See ver. 4163. and Du Cange in v. *Burao*.

Ver. 684. the new get] *The new fashion*. Gette, or jett, for the MSS. differ, is used in the same sense by Occleve, *de Reg. Princ.* MSS. Bod. 1504. 1786.

Also ther is another *newe gette*,  
All foule waste of cloth and excessif.—

Ver. 689. Bret-ful of pardon] This is the reading of all the MSS. and the same expression occurs, in the same sense, in v. 2166, and in F. III. 1033.

Ver. 710. a noble ecclesiast] It appears from hence that the Pardoner was an itinerant *ecclesiastick*, of much the same stamp with *Fratre Cipolla* in the Decameron. vi. 10. By the Stat. 22 H. VIII. c. 12. all *proctors* and *pardoners* going about in any country without sufficient authority are to be treated as vagabonds. Their impositions upon the credulity of the vulgar have been checked by several Councils. See Du Cange, in v. *Questuarii* and *Questionarius*, under which general names the *venders of indulgences* are included.

Ver. 743. Eke Plato sayeth] This saying of Plato is quoted again ver. 17156. Our author probably took it from Boethius, B. III. Pr. 12. See also *Rom. de la R.* ver. 7465.

Ver. 761. amonges] I have ventured to lengthen the common reading *among* by a syllable, as the metre re-

quires it, and Chaucer uses the word so lengthened in other places. See ver. 6334.

Ovide, *amonges* other thinges smale—  
and ver. 2902.

*Amonges* other of his honest thinges.

I suspect that the Sax. *gemang* had originally a termination in *an*, *gemangan*, like many other of the Saxon adverbs and prepositions.

Ver. 787. to make it wise] *To make it a matter of wisdom, or deliberation*. So in ver. 3978. 11535. *he made it strange*—signifies—he made it a matter of difficulty.

Ver. 792. This is the point] See the Discourse, &c. §. vii.

Ver. 812. and our othes swore] i. e. and we swore our othes—and praised him, &c. It is too frequent a practice with our author to omit the governing Pronoun before his verses. See below, ver. 1757. *And sawe—for—And they sawe*. Ver. 8042. *and sayn—for—and they sayn*. Ver. 8054. *and yet lith—for—and yet he lith*. Ver. 6123. *and blamed himself—for—and he blamed himself*. Ver. 6398. *And made him—for—And I made him*.

Ver. 819. In high and lowe] *In, or De alto et basso*. BARR. LAT. *Haut et bas*. Fr. were expressions of entire submission on one side, and sovereignty on the other. So P. L. p. 283. speaking of the Pope, says—*He saile at his dome set it lowe and hie*. See Du Cange, in v.

Ver. 827. a litel more than pas] *A pas*, with Chaucer, means, always, I believe, a *foot-pace*. See ver. 2899. And ridden forth a *pas*. And ver. 12900. *Than thou wolt gon a pas* not but a mile. See also ver. 16043.—more than trot or *pas*.

Ver. 837. Now draweth cutte] *Draweth* is the second person Plural of the Imperative Mode. See the Essay, &c. n. 32. The ceremony of *drawing cutte* occurs again, ver. 17797. seq. Froissart calls it *tirer a la longue paille*. V. I. c. 294.

Ver. 868. the regne of Feminie] *The kingdom of the Amazons*. So Penthesis is called by Gower *the Queen of Feminee*. Conf. Am. fol. 75. a 97. b.

Ver. 886. And of the temple] The Editions, and all the MSS. except two, read *tempest*. But the *Theocida* says nothing of any *tempest*. On the contrary it says, that the passage

*Tosto fornito fu et senza pena.*

I have therefore preferred the reading of MSS. C. I. and H.A. as Theocitus is described making his offerings, &c. upon his return, in a temple of Pallas. Theoc. I. II.

Ver 907—13] Imitated from the *Theocida*.

Chi son costoro, che a nostri lieti avanti  
Cum crini sparsi, batendosi el pecto,  
Di squalor plene in altri obscuri vestimenti,  
Tutte piangendo, come se in despecto  
Havessen la mia gloria e l'altre genti.

The 3rd line, I suspect, should be read thus:

Di squalor plene in altri vestimenti.

*Obscuri* was a gloss for *atri*.

Ver. 911. misboden] *Injured*. So in a Charter of Canute to the Church of St. Paul. Monast. v. III. p. 304. *that nan man—heom misbrode*.

Ver. 940. wala wa] I shall take the liberty of constantly representing this Interjection in this simple form, though in the MSS. it is written very differently: *welaway, wel-away, welaway, &c.* from whence the more modern vulgar *weladay*. *Wa* and *la* are both Saxon interjections of grief. The compound *Wala wa* is used in Chr. Saxon. Giba. p. 191.

Ver. 970. No nere Athenes] *Nere* is used for *Nerre*, and that for *Nerer*, the Comparative of *Ner*. So ver. 1852. *for ne nere*; ver. 13450. *nere* and *nere*; ver. 16189. *nere* the *nere*.

Ver. 981. y bete] Probably, *stamped*—that operation being anciently, I suppose, performed by the *hammes*. See ver. 11948. 11951.

Ver. 1016. And he that other] *He* is inserted for the sake of the metre. But perhaps we should rather read with some of the MSS. And that other knight *highte* Palamon. See the n. on ver. 393.

*Highte* is a Disyllable here as in other places; ver. 618. 862. 1730. 3097. et al. It is difficult to determine precisely what part of speech it is; but upon the whole, I am inclined to consider it as a word of a very singular form, a verb active with a passive signification. See ver. 1560. where *I highte* must signify *I am called*, as in the verse preceding to *highte* signifies *to be called*. According to this hypothesis in the present instance and in ver. 618. 862. 1730. where *highte* signifies *was called*, it is put for *highted*; and in ver. 3097, where it signifies *is called*, for *highteth*.

It should be observed, that the Sax. *hatan*, *vocare*, *promittere*, from whence *highte* is derived, is a verb active of the common form; and so is *highte* itself, when it signifies *to promise*. See ver. 6006. 8372.

Ver. 1063. at the sonne uprist] I should have had no objection to the reading of Ed. Urr. as the sonne *uprist*, i. e. *upriseth*, if I had found it in any MS. The common reading is supported by Lydgate, Th. fol. 364. a. where *uprist* is used for *uprising*.

Ver. 1090. he blent] This word has various senses in Chaucer, as it is derived from blinnan, cessare; blindan, cessare; or blendan, miscere. It seems here to be used in a fourth sense, the same in which Shakespeare uses the verb to *blench*, i. e. to shrink or start aside. Johnson's Dict. in v. *blench*. And so perhaps in ver. 3751. and Tro. xl. 1382.

Ver. 1135. to dien in the peine] So in Froissart, v. l. c. 206. Edward III. declares that he will not return "Juaques a tant qu'il auroit fin de guerre, ou paix a sa suffisance, ou a son grand honneur: ou il mourroit en la peine." See also R. R. 3396.

Ver. 1157. par amour I loved hire] i. e. *with love* I loved her. This is a genuine old expression. See Froissart, v. l. c. 196. Il aime adonc par amour, et depuis espouse, Madame Ysabelle de Juilliers.—and Boccaccio, Decam. x. 7. per amore amate. So below, ver. 3114. That loveth par amour.—From hence Paramour or Paramours, in one word, was used vulgarly to signify love; See ver. 3353. 4390. 13772. and a mistress; ver. 6036.

Ver. 1165. the olde Clerkes sawe] The olde Clerk is Boethius, from whose book of *Consolations* Chaucer has borrowed largely in many places. The passage alluded to is in L. iii. Met. 12.

Quis legem det amantibus?  
Major lex amor est sibi.

Ver. 1214. o stound] *One moment*. For this reading we are obliged to MS. C. l. Vulg. or stound.

Ver. 1264. A drunken man] This is also from Boethius, L. iii. Pr. 2.

Ver. 1281. The pure fetters] The *very* Fetters. So in the *Duch*. ver. 583. The pure deth. The Greeks used *καθαρος* in the same sense (*Τίμων καθαρος*. A *very* Timon: Aristoph. *Opp.* 1548.); and the Latins *purus putus*. See Froissart, v. li. c. 104. pur Anglois de courage.

Ver. 1346. exiled on his hed] So in Froissart, v. l. c. 241. orders were given *que nul sur sa teste ne s'avançast d'aller deuant*. In v. li. c. 41. he uses indifferently *sur la teste* and *sur poine de la teste*.

Ver. 1378. Beforen his hed in his celle] This is the reading of MS. E. The MSS. C. l. and H.A. read, Beforen his owen celle—and perhaps their authority ought to have been followed in the text.

Ver. 1430. Philostrate] In the *Theseida* Arcite takes the name of *Penthea*. See the Discourse, &c. p. liv. The name of Philostrate might be suggested to Chaucer, either by Boccaccio's poem entitled *Philostrate*, or by the *Decameron*, in which one of the characters is so called. In the *Midsummer Night's Dream*, of which the principal subject is plainly taken from this Tale, a Philostrate is

also introduced as a favourite servant of Theseus, and master of his sports.

Ver. 1479. That nedes cost] The sense of this passage as it stands in the MSS. is so obscure, that I am inclined to adopt the alteration proposed in Gl. Urr. v. NEDS. That nedes cast he moete himselfen hide. i. e. That he must needs *cast*, or contrive, to hide himself. But I find the same expression in L. W. 2686.

"Or nedes costs this thing mote have an ende."

Ver. 1594. feld hath eyen] An old Monkish verse to this effect is quoted in MS. Bod. James. n. 6. p. 161. Campus habet lumen, et habet nemus auris acumen.

Ver. 1537. Now shimeeth it, and now] I have printed this line so upon the credit of Edit. M. which professes to follow MSS. though perhaps we might safely read with MS. A. Now *itte* shimeeth, now—*Itte* may have been a disyllable formerly as well as *atte*.

Ver. 1568. That shapen was, &c.] See T. iii. 734. 5. 7797.

Ver. 1628. his thankes] *With his good will*. See also ver. 3109. 5854. and ver. 3116. hir thankes; *with their good will*. So in the Saxon Chron. p. 243. *sume here thanke*, and *sume here unthankes*; aliqui *libenter* et aliqui *ingratis*.

Ver. 1644. And breking] The MSS. all read, *breketh*. But it is more likely, I think, that the first transcriber should have made a mistake in that word, than that Chaucer should have offended so unnecessarily against grammar.

Ver. 1628. In his fighting were as] *As* has been inserted for the sake of the metre, but I am not satisfied with it. Perhaps we should read *fightinge*, and pronounce the final *e*. In the Saxon, Verbals of this form are said to terminate in *ange*, *inge*, *onge*, *unge*. Hickee, Gr. A.S. c. 3. xvii.

Ver. 1670. l.] So in the *Theseida*, l. v.

Ma come nul vegian venir in hora  
Cossa che in mille anni non aviene.

Ver. 1715. As though it were] The best MSS. read—*As it were* in a *listes*—which perhaps is right. See before, ver. 1014. *on armes*.—And Froissart, v. l. c. 153. *en unce lices*, qui pour celle cause furent faites.

In the preceding line *other* is the old expression for *or*.

Ver. 1749. Mars the rede] So below, ver. 1971. Boccaccio has given Mars the same epithet in the opening of his *Theseida*.

—o rubicundo Marte.

Ver. 1817. And therefore] Imitated from the *Theseida*, l. v.

Ma pero che gia innamorato fui  
E per amor sovente folegiai,  
M'e caro molto il perdonare altrui.

Ver. 1861. Eie his contrary] The terms in the *Theseida* are simply—

Chi l'altra parte caccara di fuore  
Per foras d'arme, marito li fia.

Ver. 1900. Arismetrike] So Arithmetike was commonly called in our ancient language. See below, ver. 7804. and *The seven Sages of Rome*. MS. Cotton. Galba. E. ix.

Geometrie and *ars metrike*  
Fisik and also Retorike.

Ver. 1915. Hath Theseus don wrought] This should rather be *don work*. The Participle of the Past Time is put improperly for the Infinitive Mode. But the same inaccuracy occurs again in ver. 4591.

These marchants han don fraught hir shippes newe.

Ver. 1920. the temple of Venus] In the description of this temple Chaucer has taken very little from Boccaccio, as he had already inserted a very close imitation of this part of the *Theseida* in his *Assemblies of Foules*, from ver. 183 to ver. 287. If that Poem alludes, as I suspect, to the intended marriage between John of Gaunt and Blanche of Lancaster, which took place in 1369, it will follow that

the Poem of Palamon and Arcite must have been composed after that period.

Ver. 1932. And hadde a cuckow] *Hadde* is inserted upon the authority of Ed. M. I do not recollect to have found it in any MSS.

Ver. 1942. The porter idelnesse] In the Ass. of F. ver. 261. *Richesse* is the Porter of Venus. But Idelnesse, *Dame Oyseuse*, is the Porter of the *Jardin de Deduit*. Rom. de la R. 645.

Ver. 1977. I shall throw together a few lines of the *Thesida*, which Chaucer has plainly copied in this description.

No v'era bestia ancora ne pastore—  
Cerrì—Nodost, aspri, rigidi e vetusti—  
E le porte eran de eterno adamante  
Ferrato d'ogni parte tutte quante.

Ver. 1989. The cruel ire] From the *Thesida*.

Vide vi le ire rosse come focho  
E la paura palida in quel locho.

The *pykepurse*, I am sorry to say, is Chaucer's own.

Ver. 2002. The shepen] *The stable*; from the Sax. *scypen*, which signifies the same thing. The translator of Bede renders *ad stabula jumentorum*—to *stables*. B. iv. c. 24.

Ver. 2014. outhees] *Outcry*; from *Hutesium*, a term well known in our Law. This line has usually been printed—

Armed complaint on theft and fers covage.

Ver. 2019. the shippes hoppers] It is needless to trouble the reader with the various readings and interpretations of this passage. *To hoppe*, in Saxon signified exactly the same as *to dance*, though with us it has acquired a ludicrous sense; and the termination *stere*, or *stier*, was used to denote a female, like *tris* in Latin. As therefore a female baker was called a *bakester*, a female brewer a *brewester*, a female webbe, or weaver, a *webbester*, so, I conceive, a female hopper, or dancer, was called an *hopperster*. It is well known that a ship, in most languages, is considered as a female.

Though the idea of a ship dancing on the waves be not an unpoetical one, the adjunct *hoppersteres* does not seem so proper in this place as the *bellatrix* of the *Thesida*, l. vii.

Vedevei ancor le navi bellatrici,  
In voti carri e li volti guastati.

In another respect Chaucer has improved upon his original, by representing the ships on fire. It should be observed that the principal circumstances in Boccace's description of this temple of Mars are copied from Statius, l. vii.

Ver. 2020. The hunte] *The huntsman*, from the Sax. *hunta*. See before, ver. 1680. and below, ver. 2630. I know not what to think of the two following lines. Was Chaucer serious, or did he mean, in this and some other similar passages, to ridicule the minute and often incongruous descriptions of the old Romancers? The lines are in all the MSS.

Ver. 2027. Th' armurer and the bowyer] The Editions and all the MSS. except Dr. Aakew's, read—The barbour and the bocher. I was glad to avail myself of the authority of those two MSS. to insert Th' armurer instead of The barbour, and in consequence of that emendation I have ventured, from conjecture only, to substitute the bowyer for the bocher.

Ver. 2031. With thilke sharpe sward] *Thilke* is from conjecture only. The MSS. read—*the Sharpe* is a Dissyllable in other places. See v. r. 2022. 2605. 2633.

In the next line I have also put *Yhanging* instead of *Hanging*.

Ver. 2126. Armed they wrecen] This is upon the authority of Ed. M. The MSS. read—Armed were they—

Ver. 2150. alauns] *Alano* is the Spanish name of a species of Dog, which the Dictionaries call a *Mastiff*. Sir

J. Bouchier's translation of Froissart, B. iv. c. 24. "four coursers and two *Allans* of Spayne, fayre and good."

Ver. 2154. *Torettes*] Rather, *torcles*, with the MSS. from the Fm. *Touret*, which is explained by Cotgrave to signify, among other things, "the little ring, by which a Hawkes *Lune*, or *Leash*, is fastened unto the *Jesses*." Mr. Warton has shewn, by several quotations, that *torcles* were affixed to the collars of dogs, for a similar purpose. Hist. of Eng. Po. p. 364. Our author says, that "the Ringe (of the Astrolabe) renneth in a manner of a *turet*." Tr. of Ast. fol. 291. b.

Ver. 2171. *fraknes*] The Saxon word for what we call *freckles*.

Ver. 2206. What hawkes] He alludes to the following description in the *Thesida*, l. vii.

L'aula grande d'alti cavallieri  
Tutta era piena, e di diverse gente.  
Quivi aveva singulari e ministrieri  
Di diversi atti copiosamente,  
Zifalchi, astori, falconi, e sparvieri,  
Brachi, livveri, e mastin veramente,  
Su per le stanze e in terra a giacere,  
Assai a quor sentilli belli a vedere.

Ver. 2219. And in hire houre] I cannot better illustrate Chaucer's Astrology than by a quotation from the old *Kalendar* de *Berpliers*, Edit. 1800. Sign. K. ii. b. Qui veult savoir comme bergiers scevent quel planete regne chascune heure du jour et de la nuit, doit savoir la planete du jour qui veult s'enquerir; et la premiere heure temporelle du soleil levant ce jour est pour celui planete, la seconde heure est pour la planete ensuivant. et la tierce pour l'autre, &c. in the following order, viz. Saturn, Jupiter, Mars, Sol, Venus, Mercury, Luna. To apply this doctrine to the present case. The first hour of the Sunday, reckoning from sun-rise, belonged to the Sun, the Planet of the day; the second to Venus, the third to Mercury, &c. and continuing this method of allotment, we shall find that the twenty-second hour also belonged to the Sun, and the twenty-third to Venus; so that the hour of Venus really was, as Chaucer says, two heures before sun-rise of the following day.

Accordingly, we are told in ver. 2273. that the third hour after Palamon set out for the temple of Venus, the Sun rose, and Emelis began to go to the temple of Diane. It is not said, that this was the hour of Diane, or the Moon, but it really was; for, as we have just seen, the twenty-third hour of Sunday belonging to Venus, the twenty-fourth must be given to Mercury, and the first hour of Monday falls in course to the Moon, the preëding Planet of that day.

After this Arcite is described as walking to the temple of Mars, ver. 2369. in the *nexte houre* of Mars, that is, the fourth hour of the day. It is necessary to take these words together, for the *nexte houre*, singly, would signify the second hour of the day; but that, according to the rule of rotation mentioned above, belonged to Saturn, as the third did to Jupiter. The fourth was the *nexte houre* of Mars, that occurred after the hour last named.

Ver. 2223. *Fayrest of fayre*] So Palamon in the *Thesida*.

O bella dsa, del bon Vulcan sposa,  
Per cui se allegria il monte Citharone,  
Dee i ti priego, che mi sii pietosa,  
Per quello amore che portasti ad Adone.

And again. See below, ver. 2240.

Io non te chiegio in arme aver victoria—  
Io cercho sola Emilia, la qual poi  
Donarmi, Des, se donar la mi voi.  
Il modo trova tu, ch'io non ne curo  
O ch'io sia vinto, o ch'io sia vincitore.

Ver. 2273. The thridd hour unequal] In the Astrological system, the day, from sun-rise to sun-set, and the night, from sun-set to sun-rise, being each divided into xii hours, it is plain, that the hours of the day and night were never equal, except just at the Equinoxes. The hours attributed to the Planets were of this unequal sort. See *Kalendar* de *Berg*. loc. cit. and our author's treatise on the Astrolabe.

Ver. 2283. Fu mondo il tempio e di dei drappi ornato.  
Thes. l. vii.

Ver. 2291. Hire bright here] So Emilia is described in  
Thes. l. xii.

Dicho che i suo crin parevan d'oro,  
Non con tressa restretti, ma soluti  
E petinati.

Ver. 2292. A coroune] Corona di quazra cereale. Thes.  
vii.

Ver. 2338. Shal thee declaren] This is improper, as the  
fires have already declared the event of the combat. In  
the Original, as I remember, the appearance of Diana is  
prior to the Omen.

Ver. 2372. payen] This French word is constantly used  
in the best MSS. instead of *pagan*.

Ver. 2375. O stronge god] The prayer of Arcite in the  
*Thesida* begins in the same manner.

A forte dio, che ne i regni nivosi  
Bistonil servi le tue sacre case—  
Se per alto volere la mia estate  
E le mie forze meritan, che lo  
De i toi sia detto, per quella pietate,  
Ch'ebbe Neptuno, alor che con disio  
Di Citharea usavi la beltate,  
Rinchiuso da Vulcan, ad ogni idio  
Facto palese, humilissime te priego,  
Che a li miei prieghi tu non fassi negio.  
Io son come ta vidi giovinetto, &c.

Ver. 2404. Than helpe me] So in the *Thesida*.

Dunque me ajuta per lo santo fuoco,  
Che te arse già, a come me arde hora.

I tempi tuoi eterni soneranno  
De l'armi del mio vinto compagno,  
Et ancora le mie vi penderanno—  
Eterni fochi sempre vi arderanno,  
E la barba [i. barba] e i mei con [i. crin] che offensione  
Di ferro non sentiron te imprometto.

Ver. 2451. out-reds] *Out-wit: surpass in counsel*. The  
sense of this word has been most ridiculously mistaken by  
Dryden.

For this advantage age from youth has won,  
As not to be out-riden, though out-run.

Ver. 2468. Min ben also the maladies colde] I apprehend  
that *maladies* in this verse is to be pronounced as of four  
syllables.

Min ben alsó the máladies colde.

See below, ver. 2495.

Ther was in th'hóteltries all aboute.

And ver. 2501.

Ther n'ere swiche compaignes néver twéy.

However, if any one should prefer a hobbling line with  
another syllable in it, he may read with the best MSS.  
And min ben also, &c.

Ver. 2503. Guiding of sheldes] *Rubbing*, from the Sax.  
Gnidan; *fricare*. I have not scrupled to insert this read-  
ing in the text from a single MS. (NC.) and that one of  
the least authority. Indeed both Caxton's Editions sup-  
port it, for they read *guydyng*; and as in many MSS. is  
undistinguishable from *u*. The other readings are,  
*Gynnyng*, *Gigging*, *Grigging*, *Girding*, *Gyding*, *Gryding*.

Ver. 2513. Pipes, trompes] *Thesida*, l. ii.

A una hora trombe, nachare, e tamburi  
Sonaron forte—

See Du Cange, in v. NACARA, who describes it to be a kind  
of brassen drum used in the cavalry.

Ver. 2516. Here thre] So in the *Thesida*.

Qui tre, la quatro, e qui sei adunati,  
Tra lor mostrando diverse ragione.

Ver. 2527. Held yet the chambré] So the *Thesida*.

Anchor le riche camere tenes  
Dei suo palagio.

Ver. 2538. an o] It may be doubted, whether this be an  
abbreviation of *Oyez*, or whether the Interjection *Ho* were  
used to command a cessation of noise, as well as of fight-  
ing, &c. For the latter use, see v. 1708. 2658. and Hollinshed,  
p. 495. The duke of Norfolk was not fullie set forward,  
when the King cast down his warder, and the Herald  
cried, Ho, ho.

Ver. 2552. himself to were] *To defend*. It is a Saxon  
word. See Chr. Sax. Giba. p. 57. hine wordes. *se defendit*.  
—and p. 148. See also Lydg. Troy. B. iv.

That shelde ne plate might his body were.

Ver. 2559. ylast] The prepositive *y* is an addition of my  
own, for the sake of the metre; but perhaps we might  
read "No longer shal the tourneyng last." See the n. on  
ver. 1658. I should observe that some MSS. read *tourne-  
ment*, and MS. D. *tourmentenge*, which may lead us to  
suspect that Chaucer possibly wrote, *tourneymenting*.

Ver. 2563. The vois of the peple] So the *Thesida*.

Di nobili e del popolo il romore  
Tocho le stelle, si fu alto e forte,  
Li dei, dicendo, servi tal signore  
Che de gli amici suoi fugie la morte.

Ver. 2608. the herte spone] This part of the human  
body is not mentioned in any Dictionary, that I have seen.  
The following passage of Jonson, *Sed Shepherd*, A. i.  
S. vi. would incline one to suspect, that it means the  
concave part of the breast, where the lower ribs unite with  
the cartilago *ensiformis*.

—He that undoes him, (the deer,)  
Doth cleave the bristlet bone, upon the spone  
Of which a little gristle grows—

The Gloss. supposes *spon*, to be a Participle, signifying  
*Thrust, driven, push*; from the Ir. *Spingere*.

Ver. 2617. He foyneth on his foo] I have ventured to  
substitute *foo* instead of *foot*, or *feet*, the readings of the  
MSS. *Foot* seems to have been originally introduced by a  
copyist from the preceding line, and to have been after-  
wards altered to *feet*, in order to make some sense.

Ver. 2628. the vale of Galaphey] This word is variously  
written; *Colaphey*, *Galaphey*, *Galapey*. There was a  
town called *Galapha*, in *Mauritania*, *Tingitana*, upon the  
river *Males* (Cellar. Geog. Ant. v. ii. p. 333.) which perhaps  
may have given name to the vale here meant. For  
*Reimarie*, ver. 2633, see the note on ver. 57.

Ver. 2673. The trompours] the trumpeters. So the best  
MSS. If the learned Editor of *Ancient Scottish Poems* had  
found this word in this sense in his copy of Chaucer, he  
would not, I apprehend, have looked any further for an  
explanation of it in *The Dance*, by Dunbar, St. 2. v. 10.  
p. 27.

Ver. 2677. Whiche a miracle] It is scarce necessary to  
observe that *whiche*, in our ancient language, was often  
used for *who* and *what*. It is used for *what* here, and  
again, ver. 2681. 6876.

Ver. 2685. And was all his in chere, as his in herte] I  
have patched up this verse, as well as I could, out of the  
different copies. There is no authority, as I recollect, for  
the first *in*, except Ca. 2. but it seems absolutely necessary;  
and all the copies read—as in his *herte*—which, I think, is  
evidently wrong.

Ver. 2686. a fury] Most of the copies have a *fure*. MS.  
A. reads a *fury*, from which I have made the present  
reading, as in the *Thesida* it is *Erinis*, i. e. *Eriane*, one  
of the Furies.

Ver. 2688. corven] Cut out of his harness. I suppose to  
save the time and trouble of regularly disarming him, the  
laces, &c. were cut.

Ver. 2715. And fermacies] *Pharmacies*. I have added  
the *and*, which seems as necessary to the sense as to the  
metre.

Ver. 2736. The gree] *The price; the honour of the uap*.  
So in P. P. fol. 98.

*The gre* yet hath he gotten, for al his grete wound

See H



And in that curious old Ballad, *The tournament of Tottenham*. ver. 91. Ancient Poetry, v. ii

[To] which of all the bachelorly granted is *the gres*.

And again, ver. 186.

They gathered Perkin about on every side,  
And grant him there *the gres*, the more was his pride.

It was necessary to vindicate this old phrase, as the Editions have discarded it for *They gres*.

Ver. 2740. a journey] *A day's work*, or way. Fr. To make this still clearer, the Editions, in general, read—*a dayes journey*—and spoil the verse.

Ver. 2748. bouke] *The trunk of the body*, probably; from the Sax. Buca, *crater*.

Ver. 2802. overnome] *Overtaken*; from overniman, Sax.

Ver. 2803. And yet] So in the *Theseida*, l. x.

E anchor ne lo brazza era perduta  
La vital forma, sol ne lo intelletto  
E nel core era ancora sostenuta  
La pocha vita.—

Ver. 2813. Therefore I stint] This is apparently a fling at Boccaccio's pompous description of the passage of Arcite's soul to heaven. *Thea*. l. xi. It should be observed however, that our author had already made use of the same description in his *Troilus*, v. 1806, seq. It is not in the *Philostrato*.

Ver. 2817. ther Mars his soul gie] The force of *ther* in this passage will best appear by a collation of other similar passages. See particularly ver. 5022. 7143. 9182.

Ver. 2856. He casteth] I have added *He*, to complete the verse. The use of pronouns redundantly is common in Chaucer.

Ver. 2862. in that selve grove] In the *Theseida*, Arcite is buried—*nel bosco*, ove rancuna

Aver sovente solava de amora.

Ver. 2866. Of funeral] *Of* is a conjectural supplement. Or the verse may be, perhaps better, completed, by taking in the word *fully* from MS. NC. and Ed. Ca. 2.—in which th' office

Funeral he might all *fully* accompolice.

Ver. 2872. And after this] The second *this* is from conjecture only. Some MSS. read—And after this Theseus hath *ysent*—which perhaps is right.

Ver. 2873. bare the viage] If this expression were in Milton, the Critics would not fail to call it an *elegant Grecism*. In Chaucer we can only hope that it may be allowed to be an *elegant Anglicism*. Froissart says, that the corpse of our Edward III. was carried "*tout au long de la cité de Londres, a viaire decouvert, jusques a Westminster*." V. l. c. 326.

Ver. 2883. With flotery berd] *Thea*. l. xl.

Con rabuffata brazza [or, barba] e tristo crine  
E polveroso.—

*Flotery* seems literally to mean *fluting*; as hair dishevelled (*rabuffata*) may be said to flote upon the air. *Ruggy* is rough.

Ver. 2887. And passing over] According to this reading, the sense is plain, that Palamon was the reufullest, &c. *passing over*, or *excepting*, Emelle. But all the MSS. that I have seen, read—*other*. If we adhere to that, we must dispose the Parenthesis thus:

And (passing other of weping) Emelle  
The reufullest, &c.—

and the sense will be, that with Palamon came also Emelle (passing others *of*, or *in* weping) the reufullest, &c. But such a construction would be very harsh and unlike Chaucer's usual facility; and therefore I rather believe we should read—*over*—with Ed. Urr.

Ver. 2897. his bow Turkeis] So in the *Rom. de la R. Love* is said to have *deux arcs Turquois*, ver. 924.

Ver. 2904. the malster strete] *The principal street*. *Le souverain carrefour*. Froissart, v. iv. c. 28.

Ver. 2960. the liche-wake] The custom of *watching with dead bodies* (lira. Sax.) is probably very ancient in this country. It was abused, as other Wakes and Vigils were. See Du Cange, in v. *VIGILIE*. *In vigiliis circa corpora mortuorum vetantur chorea et cantilena, seculares iudi et alii turpes et fatui*. Synod. Wigorn. an. 1240. c. 5. Chaucer seems to have confounded the Wake-plays, as they were called, of his own time with the Funeral-games of the Antients. So in *Troilus*, v. 303. *Troilus* says to Pandarus,

But of the fire and flambe funeral  
In which my body brennen shall to glade,  
And of the fete and playes palcstrol  
At my vigile I pray thee take good hede.

Ver. 2964. in no disjoint] *With no disadvantage*. So ver. 13341. in swiche disjoint; *at such disadvantage*.

Ver. 2993. that fayre chaine of love] Our author's philosophy is borrowed, as it is usually, from Boethius. L. iii. Met. 8.

Hanc rerum seriem ligat,  
Terras ac pelagus regens,  
Et celo Imperitans, amor.

See also, for what follows, L. iv. Pr. 6.

Ver. 3019. Lo the oke] So in the *Theseida*.

Li querci, che anno si lungo nutrimento  
E tanta vita quanto noi vedemo,  
Anne pur alcun tempo finimento.  
Le dure pietre ancor &c.

Ver. 3043. Than is it wisdom] From the *Theseida*.

E pero fare de la necessitate  
Virtu, quando bisogna, e sapientia,  
E il contrario e chiara vanitate.

Ver. 3068. his vassallage] *Valour, prowess*. Froissart, v. l. c. 271. a grand honneur et vassallage. See Du Cange, in v. *VASSALLICUM*.

Ver. 3078. With all th' avys] So the Statute 5 H. IV. is said in the Preamble to be made—*de l'avis et assent des Seigneurs*, &c. The same form is used in most of the Acts of that reign.

Ver. 3091. oweth] By writing this word so, according to some MSS. we preserve a proper distinction between *oweth*, the third person Sing. of the Present Tense, and *ought*, which was formerly only used in the Past Tense.

Ver. 3109. Thus endeth Palamon] Before I quit this tale, I will just take notice that the same subject has been treated twice in French verse, many years since Chaucer's time, by two Ladies. The one, *Anne de Graville*, is said by Du Verdier (*Bibl.* p. 42.) to have translated *de viell langage et prose Le beau Roman des deux amants Palamon et Arcite*. It began thus:

Victorieux en armes et amours  
Fut Theseus, apres que plusieurs jours  
Eut sejourne en l'Amasone terre,  
Ou Cupido et Mars luy firent guerre,  
Les quels vainquit et Hypolite ausi—

The other, *Jeanne de la Fontaine*, is mentioned by La Croix du Maine; and it was most probably her poem, that *Johannes Secundus* has celebrated, l. iii. Eleg. xv. as he appears to have written her Epitaph and a *Nenia* upon her death. V. *Lib. Funer.*—inter Opp. Secund.

In the New Edit. of *Les Bibliothèques Françaises*, the Poem of *Anne de Graville* is said to be still preserved in the Royal Library at Paris; and I find from a note of *M. de la Monnoye* in that Edit. that he was well apprized of our Chaucer's having borrowed this tale from the *Theseida*.

Ver. 3125. in Pilates voiz] In such a voice as Pilate was used to speak with in the Mysteries. Pilate, being an odious character, was probably represented as speaking with a harsh, disagreeable voice.

Ver. 3156. After this verse, the two following are found in so many MSS. that perhaps they ought to have been inserted in the text.

And ever a thousand good agains on hadde,  
That knowest thou wel, but if thou be madde.

Ver. 3173. as deme not] This phrase has occurred before: ver. 3304. As kepe me. Ver. 2319. As sende. I once thought that *as* in these cases was used elliptically for *do so much as*; but then the following verb must have been in the infinitive mood, whereas it is often in the imperative. See ver. 5773. As taketh. Ver. 6631. As doth. Ver. 13382. As beth. I am therefore rather inclined to understand it in the sense of *so*, according to its original etymology. *As* is an abbreviation of *als*, and that of *al oia*; *sic omnino*. See ver. 5481. 5778. 7007.

Ver. 3198. hendy Nicholas] *Hendy*, or *Hende*, as it was more commonly written, signified, *courteous*. So ver. 3668.

—A, sire, ye shuld ben hende,  
And curteis, as a man of youre estat.

Ver. 3810. augrim-stones] *Augrim* is a corruption of *Algorithm*, the Arabian term for Numeration. *Augrim-stones* therefore were the *pebbles*, or *counters*, which were anciently used in Numeration.

Ver. 3217. the kinges note] What this *note*, or *tune*, was I must leave to be explained by the Musical Antiquaries. *Angelus ad virginem*, I suppose, was *Ave Maria*, &c.

Ver. 3223. Of eightene yere] The words—I gesse—are not in the MSS. MS. A. reads, *seventene*; which perhaps may be right if *seventene* be pronounced as of four syllables. Ask. 1 and 2. would remove all difficulties by reading, *Of eightene yere* this woman was *of age*.

Ver. 3227. He knew not Caton] The calling of this author *Caton* shews, that he was more studied in French than in Latin. See below, ver. 9251. 14946. 16155. Who he was, or of what age, is uncertain; but his authority, four or five hundred years ago, seems to have been as great as if he had really been the famous Censor of Rome. However, the maxim here alluded to is not properly one of Cato's; but I find it in a kind of Supplement to the Moral Disticha, entitled *Facetus* Int. Auctores octo morales. Lugd. 1538. cap. lii.

Duc tibi prole parum sponsam morasque venustam,  
Si cum pace velis vitam deducere iustam.

The same treatise, or at least one with the same beginning and on the same subject, is mentioned in the Cat. MSS. Coll. Trin. Dublin. n. 275. under the title of *Urbanus*. It is there attributed to Daniel *Ecclesiensis* (Churches), who lived about the year 1180. See Bale. Cent. iii. 17. and Fabric. Bib. Med. Æt. in v.

Ver. 3237. many a *gore*] This word is used again in ver. 13719. I do not understand it in either place.

Ver. 3247. blisful for to see] The better MSS. read—on to see,—which I believe is right. See L. W. 2914. Lydg. Troy. B. iii. ch. xxii.

His brother *Trogius*, so goodly on to see—

and Gower, *Conf. Am.* fol. 17. b.

Tho was she fouler unto [r. on to] se.

Ver. 3248. the newe perjenete tree] Some of the MSS. read, *perjonette*, as if the word were derived from the Ital. *pero giovanetto*, rather than from the Fr. *poire*, or *pere, jeunette*. In either case it signifies a *young pear*.

Ver. 3251. perled with latoun] That is, I believe, ornamented with *latoun* in the shape of *pearls*. It is probable that some very elegant purses were embroidered with real pearls.

Ver. 3254. So gay a *popelot*] This word may either be considered as a diminutive from *Poupée*, a Puppet; or as a corruption of *Papillot*, a young butterfly.

Ver. 3268. a primerole] Old Fr. for a *Primrose*. It is used by Gower. *Conf. Am.* fol. 148.

Ibid. a *piggemie*] The Romans used *oculus* as a term of endearment, and perhaps *piggemie*, in vulgar language, only means *oculus*; the eyes of that animal being remarkably small. The word occurs again in the *Remedie of Love*, ver. 227. though I do not believe that to be a work of Chaucer.

Ver. 2228. harow] It would much exceed the limits of

these notes to recite the several opinions concerning the original of this word. The curious reader may consult Du Cange in v. and Hickes, Gr. Fr. Theot. p. 96. I rather believe it to have been derived from Har, *altus*, and Op, *clamor*, two Islandic words, which were probably once common to all the Scandinavian nations. See Gudmund. And. Lex. Island. by Resenius. Hafn. 1683. In support of this opinion, it may be observed, that the very word *Haroop*, or *Harop*, was used by some of the inhabitants of the Low-countries in the same sense in which *Harow* was by the Normans. Du Cange, in v. *Harow*.

Ver. 3308. Of Cristes] *Of* is added from conjecture only.

Ver. 3318. With Poules windows] Perhaps this means, that his shoes were cut in squares like panes of glass. Bale mentions *fenestras calceos* as making part of the habit of the Franciscans. Cent. iv. 27. and 91. They also occur in the Cistercian Statutes an. 1229. and the Monks are forbidden to wear them. Du Cange in v. *CALCEI FENESTRATI*.

Ver. 3321. of a light waget] Or, *Watchet*. Skinner explains *Watchet* to mean a *colour*, a whitish blue; but in this place it seems rather to mean some kind of *cloth*; denominated, perhaps, from the town of *Watchet*, in Somersetshire. Instead of *light*, some MSS. read *fin*; and MS. A. *whit*. This last epithet would be quite inconsistent with Skinner's explanation.

Ver. 3329. the scole of Oxenforde] The school of Oxford seems to have been in much the same estimation for its dancing, as that of Stratford for its French. See before, ver. 125. *Oxenforde* is a Quadrisyllable. *Oznaforde*. Sax.

Ver. 3336. tapstere] A *female* keeper of a tap or tavern. See n. on ver. 2019. and the Prol. to the continuation of the C. T. Ed. Urr. p. 594.

Ver. 3337. equaimous] *Esquamish*; but I know not how to make that sense agree with what follows. Robert of Brunne (in his translation of *Manuel des Pechees*, MS. Bod. 2078. fol. 46.) writes this word, *esquaimous*; which is nearer to its original, *esquamiare*, a corruption of *excambiare*.

Ver. 3338. a shot window] That is, I suppose, a window that was *shut*. It might perhaps be better to write this word, with some of the MSS. *shet*, or *shette*; as Chaucer does in other places, ver. 16605. 16610. MS. A. reads *shop*; and HA. *short*.

Ver. 3361, 2.] These two lines, containing Absolon's Song, were meant, I apprehend, to be broken into four short verses, which will rime together very harmoniously, if the accent be laid upon the last of *lady*, as it often is in such compositions.

Ver. 3362. And som for strokes] In the margin of MS. C. 1. is the following note. "Ovid. Lotibus agrestis &c."

Ver. 3384. He plaieyth Herode] This is much in character. The Parish-Clerks had always a principal share in the representation of Mysteries. See the Pref. to Dodsley's *Old Plays*, p. xii.

Ver. 3392. the neighle alle] Gower has this proverb. *Conf. Am.* B. iii. f. 58.

An olde sawe is: who that is alygh  
In place wher he may be nyghe,  
He maketh the ferre leef loth.

Ver. 3449. Seinte Frideswide] *Seint* is one of the very few French adjectives, which, after their naturalization here, retained for a considerable time, I apprehend, a distinction of Gender. See the Essay, &c. p. xxviii.

Chaucer always writes it *Seinte*, when he uses it in the feminine gender; and the final *e* is often to be pronounced, as in this place. See ver. 7186. 10292. *Seinte Marie*.—ver. 7406. 7701. *Seinte Charitee*. Of the same form are *Excellente*, ver. 10429. and *Peregrine*, ver. 10742.

There is great propriety in making the Carpenter invoke St. Frideswide, who was Patroness of a considerable Priory at Oxford, and in high estimation there.

Ver. 3457. another clerk] He alludes to a story, which is told of the famous Thales by Plato in his *Theætetus*.

P. 127. Ed. Fic. but our author probably read it in the *Cento Novelle Antiche*. N. 36. It is there entitled, *D'uno Strolago ch'ebbe, nome Milensius, che fu ripreso da una donna*.

Ver. 3479. wightes] *Witches*. In the Teutonic, *Wiltvrouwen*; but whether they were so called from their wisdom, or from their being supposed to be clothed in white, is not clear. A *widow*, in that language, is called a *wit-vrouwe*, from the latter circumstance. Kilian in v. See Keyser's *Dissertation de Mulieribus Fatidicis*, in which, with a great deal of learning and probability, he has traced the popular notions of witches and witchcraft, in the northern parts of Europe, from a very early period. The faculty of floating upon the water, so as not to be capable of being drowned, is ascribed by Pliny to a race of male-witches in Pontus. Nat. Hist. l. vii. c. 2. non posse mergi, ne quidem vestibus dagravatos.

Ver. 3480. the Night-spel] *The charm*, which follows, ver. 3483-6. is so lamely represented in all the MSS. that I have left it as I found it in the common editions. It might perhaps be a little improved by reading it thus:

Jesu Crist and Saint Benedight  
Blisse this hous from every wight,  
Fro the nightes mare. Pater-noster.  
Wher wonest thou Saint Peter's suster?

In ver. 2. *wicked* may be left out upon the authority of MS. A. and others. It is certainly an unnecessary epithet.

ver. 3. *Pater-noster* was often repeated in the middle, as well as at the end, of charms.

ver. 4. Instead of *wonest*, some copies read *wendest*. I do not understand how the Night-mare came to be allied to St. Peter.

To say the truth, I suspect this charm to be an interpolation. We have a Night-spel of another form in Gervae. Tilber. Otia Imper. l. iii. c. 93. See also the Decameron. D. vii. N. 1.

Fantasma, Fantasma,  
Che di notte val,  
A coda ritta de venisti,  
A coda ritta de n'andrai, &c.

Concerning the Night-mare, see Keyser, *Antiq. Septent.* p. 487.

Ver. 3503. no labbe] *No labb*. Labben, HOLL. Klappen, BRAZ. *blaterare*. Kilian.

Ver. 3512. harwed helle] *Harried*. SAX. *harrassed*, subdued. Our ancestors were very fond of a story of Christ's exploits in his *Descensus ad inferos*, which they called the *harroving of Helle*. They took it, with several others of the same stamp, from the Gospel of Nicodemus, Fabr. Cod. Apoc. N. T. There is a Poem upon this subject in MS. Bod. 1687.

Hou Jesu Crist herowed helle  
Of harde gastes ich wille telle.

And in the *Chester Whitun-Plays*, MS. Harl. 2013. the company of Cookies, which was to exhibit the 17th Pageant, or the *Descensus ad inferna*, is thus addressed.

You Cookies with your carriage see that you doe well,  
In pagente sett out the harrowinge of helle.

See also P. P. pass. xix. f. 101-3.

Ver. 3526. for God] *Pour dieu*. Fa.

Ver. 3533. The sorwe of Noe] It will be in vain, I apprehend, to look for this anecdote in Genesis, even in Dr. Kennicot's edition. Nicholas probably quoted it from the Mysteries, with which the Carpenter was better acquainted. The dispute between Noah and his wife upon this occasion makes a considerable part of the 3d Pageant of the *Chester Whitun-Plays* above-mentioned. MS. Harl. 2013. The following lines will shew the grounds of her refusal to embark.

Noe. Wife, come in, why standes thou there?  
Thou art ever froward, that dare I swere.  
Come in on Godes halfe; tyme it were,  
For fear lest that wee drowne.

WIFE. Yea, Sir, set up your saille,  
And rowe forth with evil halle,  
For withouten aile falle  
I will not oute of this toun;

But I have my gosepes everich one,  
One foote further I will not gone;  
They shal not drown by St. John,  
And I may save ther life.  
They loved me full well by Christ.  
But thou wilt let them into this chist,  
Ellis rowe forth, Noe, when thou list,  
And get thee a newe wife.

At last Sem, with the assistance of his brethren, fetches her on board by force, and upon Noah's welcoming her she gives him a box on the ear.

These *Plays* are said, perhaps truly, to have been first written in 1388, but the Harleian MS. represents them, as they were to be exhibited in 1600. There is a better copy of the same *Plays* in the Bodl. Lib. E. N. 118. transcribed by one William Bedford, 1604, but even in that we see but small remains of the original diction and orthography.

Ver. 3634. His owen hond] *With his own hand*. So Gower, *Conf. Am.* fol. 76. b.

The crafty Mynerve of wolfe fonde,  
And made cloth her owen honde.

See also fol. 113. a.

Thyng which he said *his owen mouth*.

Ver. 3625. the stalke] *The steps*. Gloss. Urr. but I rather believe the *remes* to mean the *steps*, and the *stalke* the upright pieces of a ladder.

Ver. 3638. clum] From the SAX. *clumian*, *mustitare*, *murmurare*.

Ver. 3692. a trewe love] What kind of thing this was to be borne under the tongue, I do not understand. [See the Gloss. in v. *Trewe-Love*.—Add. note, Ed. 1798.]

Ver. 3703. I swelte and swete] *Swellan*, SAX. signifies to die. Chaucer uses *swelle* to signify the effect of a great oppression of spirits. See ver. 1358. 9650. R. R. 2480. Hence our word *sultry* (*sweltry*) to express a suffocating heat.

Ver. 3708. it wol not be, compaigne] So MS. C. 1. It is put, for the sake of the rime, instead of the *Fa. Compaign*, *compagnon*. We use *friend* in the same sense. In MS. C. it is written *compaign*; in some of the best MSS. *com same*. The Editions read—

As helpe me God and sweet Saint Jame.

Ver. 3724. thyn ore] The Edit. have made it *thy more*. But *ore* is the right word. It signifies *grace*, *favour*, *protection*. See R. G. p. 381, *mylce and ore*, *mercy and grace*.—p. 475. in was ore ich am ido, in whose protection I am put. And *Li beaus disconus*. MS. Cotton. Cal. A. ii. fol. 49. b.

Syr Ly beaus thurstede sore,  
And seyde; Maugys, thyn ore,  
To drinks lette me go.

Where *thyn ore* must be understood to mean *with thy favour*, as in this passage of Chaucer.

Ver. 3768. the viretote] This is the reading of the best MSS. The explanation of the word I leave to the reader's sagacity.

Ver. 3772. more tawe on his distaf] So in Froissart. v. iv. p. 92. Ed. 1574. Il aura en bref temps autres *estoupes* en sa quenouille.

Ver. 3809. an hondrede al aboute] *Al* has been added for the sake of the metre, but, I believe, unnecessarily. The original phrase was *an hondres brede*, an hand's breadth; so that *hondrede*, as it is written in some MSS. would naturally continue to be pronounced as a tri-syllable.

Ver. 3819. he fond neyther to sello] This is a French phrase. Fabliaux, t. ii. p. 282.

Ainc tant come il mist a descendre  
Ne trouva point de pain a vendre.

In the next verse, *sello*, for the sake of the rime, is put for *sille*. SAX. *Syl*. *Fa. suell*. LAT. *solum*.

Ver. 3823. Whan folk han laughed] The better MSS. read—*laughen*, which therefore is probably right. Chaucer. sometimes forms the Participle of the past time in *en*

even in those verbs, of which he also uses the Participle in ed. See ver. 3311. *woshen* 7354. *fares*; for *washed*, and *fares*.

Ver. 3862. So the ik] *So the I*, so may I *the*, or *thrive*. This ancient phrase is terribly corrupted in most of the MSS. and Editt. It occurs again below, ver. 12881. 16397.

Ver. 3863. With blering] *With a trick put upon* a proud Miller. So ver. 17291. *blered* is *thyn eye*; *thou art cheated*. And R. R. ver. 3912. *almost blered* is *mine eye*; *I am almost cheated*.

Ver. 3877. As hath a leke] Boccaccio has the same allusion. Decam. Intro. to D. iv. *Et quegli, che contra alla mia eta parlando vanno, mostran male che conoscano, che per che il porro habbi il capo bianco, che la coda sia verda*.

Ver. 3890. Yet in our ashen] There is so great a resemblance between this line and the following of the *Churchyard Elegy*, Dodsley's Coll. vol. 4.

Ev'n in our ashes live their wonted fires—

that I should certainly have considered the latter as an imitation, if Mr. Gray himself had not referred us to the 169 (170) Sonnet of Petrarch, as his original. *Ch' l' veggio nel pensier &c.*

Ver. 3893. the chimbe] *Kime*, *Taur.* means the prominence of the staves beyond the head of the barrel. The imagery is very exact and beautiful.

Ver. 3902. of a souter a shipman, or a leche] The proverbial expression, *Ex suture medicus*, was perhaps derived from the fable of Phædrus with that title. L. i. Fab. 14. The other, *Ex suture naulerus*, is alluded to by Fynson the printer, at the end of his Edit. of Littleton's Tenures, 1525. *Ames*, p. 488. Speaking of one Redman, another printer, he says,—“*Miror profecto unde nunc tandem se fateatur typographum, nisi forte quum Diabolus suturem naulerum, et illum calcographum fecit.*”

Ver. 3904. it is half way prime] In the Discourse, &c. §. xiv. I have supposed that this means *half way past prime*, about half hour after seven A.M. the *half way* between Prime and Terce. In the fictitious *Modus tenendi Parliamentum*, a book not much older than Chaucer, *hora media prima* seems to be used in the same sense, c. de diebus et horis Parliamenti. MS. Cotton. Nero. D. vi. On common days *Parliamentum debet inchoari hora media prime—in diebus festis hora prima propter divinum servitium*. In a contemporary French translation of this treatise, MS. Harl. 305. *hora media prime* is rendered a *la my heure le prime*; in an old English version, MS. Harl. 930. *the oure of myd prime*; and in another, MS. Harl. 1309. *midde prime time*. Our author uses *prime large* ver. 10674. to signify that prime was considerably past.

Ver. 3909. set his howve] *His hood*. So in Tr. B. iii. 775. *an howve above a cail* signifies a *hood over a cap*. And in P. P. fol. 4. Serjeants at Law are described in *howves of Silk*; but in fol. 16. it is said,

Shal no sergeant for his service were no *silke hode*.

Both words seem to be derived from the *Taur.* Hoofd; a head.

Hood and Cap being equally coverings for the head, to set a man's *howve* is the same as to set his cap. See n. on ver. 867.

Ver. 3927. a long pavade] It appears from ver. 3928, that the *pavade* was a weapon of offence. Of what sort I cannot tell, as I do not remember to have met with the word any where else. *Pavois*, Fr. in those times signified a *long shield*.

Ver. 3929. A joly popper] *A bodkin*, according to Sp. and Sk. who however produce no authority for such an interpretation. The name seems to be fitter for a pistol; though I am not prepared to prove that pistols were carried in the pocket in Chaucer's time.

Ver. 3934. a market-beter] *One that makes quarrels in markets* says the Glossary. But, according to Mr. Upton,

Pref. to Observ. on Shakesp. p. xx. “A market-beter is one who raises the price of the market.—*To beat the fire* Chaucer uses in the Knight's Tale, ver. 2255. 2294, for—*to rouse, to stir up.*” Though this explanation of Mr. Upton's be not quite satisfactory, I think it far preferable to the other. [See the Gloss. in v. Market-Beter. In a more modern author to beat the market seems to signify merely to go up and down the market. Promos and Cassandra, by Whetstone, Act iv. a. 6. a servant says,

“Wyld foule, &c. are so deere,—  
That this houre I have the market bett,  
To drive a bargayne to my most profytt.”

Add. note, Ed. 1798.;

Ver. 3939. deinous Simekin] His name was *Simon*, ver. 4020, 4. of which *Simekin* is the diminutive; and from his disdainful, insolent manners he had acquired the surname of *Deinous*, just as Nicholas, in the former tale, ver. 3190. “was cleped *Hendy*,” from the very opposite behaviour. A great number of our surnames have been derived from qualities of the mind, and it is reasonable to suppose that at the beginning they were merely *personal*, like what we call *nicknames*. It is probable that the use of hereditary surnames was not, even in Chaucer's time, fully established among the lower classes of people.

Ver. 3968. the Soler hall] This is the true reading. It means the *Hall with the Soler*. Before the students in our Universities were incorporated, they lived in lodging-houses, called *Inns*, *Halls*, and *Hostels*, which were often distinguished by names taken from some peculiarity in their construction. One at Cambridge was called *Tyled Otte*. Parker's Scel. Cantab. ap. Lel. Collect. t. v. p. 169. And at Oxford Oriel-College probably derives its name from a large Messuage, vulgarly known by the name of *Le Oriele*, upon the site of which it stands. Ayliffe's Hist. v. i. p. 287. An *Oriele*, or *Oriel*, was a Porch; (Du Cange, in v. ORIOLOM) as a *Soler* seems originally to have signified an open gallery, or balcony, at the top of the house; though latterly it has been used for any upper room, *loft*, or *garret*. (Idem, in v. SOLARIUM. Watts, Gloss. ad Mat. Par.) Froissart, v. i. c. 234. *Les femmes de la ville monterent en leurs logis et en solliers*. In the description of Cambridge above cited, p. 188. there is mentioned a *Garret-otie*. Mr. Warton strongly confirms this reading. Hist. of Eng. Po. p. 432. note n.

Ver. 4012. Strother] I cannot find any place of this name in England; there is a *Struthers*, or *Strauther*, in the Shire of Fife.

Ver. 4021. How fares] It may be observed, that Chaucer has given his Northern Clerks a Northern Dialect. I will just point out a few particulars in which their language differs from that used in the rest of his work.

1. They terminate the third person Singular, and the whole Plural number of their verbs in *es*, instead of *et*, or *en*. So, in the present instance, we have—*fares*; and in the lines immediately following—*has*; *behoves*; *has*; *weakes*; *gas*; *weages*; *fallas*.

2. They use *a* in a great number of words, which Chaucer in other places writes with *o*; as *swa* for *so*; *hame* for *home*; *fra* for *fro*. ver. 4071. 2. *banes* and *anes* for *bones* and *ones*, &c. That this was the Northern practice appears from the following note. Hist. Abbat. Pipewell. Monast. Ang. v. i. p. 816. Et sciendum quod Monachi *borcales* scripsunt in cartis nostris *Rahage*, pro *Rahave*.

3. Many of their words are of the obsolete Saxon form; as ver. 4031. *hemen* for *hennes*; ver. 4076. *weilke* for *whiche*; ver. 4083. *alsua* for *also*; ver. 4128. *stike* from *swilke*, instead of *twilke*; ver. 4130. *gar* for *make*, or *let*; &c.

4. If I am not mistaken, he has designedly given them a vulgar, ungrammatical phraseology. I do not remember in any other part of his writings such a line as ver. 4013.

*I is as ill a miller as is ye.*

See also ver. 4084. *I is*; ver. 4087. *Thou is*.

Ver. 4027. I hope] *I expect*. It signifies the mere expectation of a future event, whether good or evil. as *ἐλπίς*.

Gn. and spero LAT. often do. So in Shakespeare, Ant. and Cl.

I cannot hope

Cæsar and Anthony shall well greet together.

Ver. 4038. answered] Sax. *andnearode* is a compound word of *and*, *contra*, and *swaran*, which, in the Icelandic, signifies *dicere*. Barthol. Ant. Dan. p. 690. Thorbiorg svarar. Thorbiorga dicit. This etymology accounts for its being accented upon the middle syllable—answered. See ver. 4125.

Ver. 4053. to the wolf thus spake the mare] The story alluded to is told of a mule in *Cent. Nov. Ant. N. 91*. The Mule pretends, that his name is written upon the bottom of his hind-foot. The Wolf attempting to read it, the Mule gives him a kick on the forehead and kills him. Upon which the Fox, who was present, observes, *Ogni huomo, che sa lettera, non è savio*. There is a similar story of a Wolf and a Mare, in the most delectable *History of Reynard the Fox*. Edit. 1701. ch. xviii. but whether that story be in Caxton's edition; whether it be in the Dutch book from which Caxton translated; whether the Dutch book be an original composition or a translation; when it was written, &c., are all points, upon which I wish to be informed by some more knowing Antiquary. I will just observe that one of the foxes tricks, ch. xiv. seems to be alluded to by Richal de Berbeffeil (*Richard de Berbeffeil*) a Provençal poet, who died in 1383. *Quadrio*, t. ii. p. 144. I will cite the passage from MS. *Crafts*. fol. excli. though I do not understand the last clause.

Anc Ranart d'Isengrin  
Tan gen no sap venjar,  
Qan lo fix escornar,  
Ell dit per eschirni  
*Chapeis et ges Com eu faz no mair.*

Reynard here seems to have procured Isgrim's skin to be stript off, to make him a hood and gloves. In the English, he procures the Wolf's shoes to be pulled off and put upon his own feet.

Ver. 4059. a levesell] This word is plainly derived from the Sax. *lefo*, *folium*, and *setl*, *sedes*. *Meteel* is a word of the same form. Peter of Langt. p. 334. "*It neghed nere meteel*." It was near the time of sitting down to dinner. A *levesell* therefore signifies a leafy seat, an arbour. It may be understood in the same sense in the *Persones Tale*, p. 155. "*right as the gay levesell at the Taverne is signe of the win that is in the celer*."

Ver. 4094. make a clerkes berde] i. e. cheat him. *Faire la barbe*, Fr. is to shave, or trim the beard; but Chaucer translates the phrase literally, at least when he uses it in its metaphorical sense. See ver. 5943. and H. of F. ii. 181. Boccace has the same metaphor. *Decam.* viii. 10. Speaking of some exorbitant cheats, he says, that they applied themselves—"non a radere ma a scorticare huomini;" and a little lower—"si a soavemente la barbiere saputo menare il rasolo."

Ver. 4132. chalons] Whatever they were, they probably were so called from their being made at Chalons. The Glossary interprets them to be blankets; but a passage in the *Monast.* v. ii. p. 720. would rather lead one to suppose them coverlets:—aut pannos pictos, qui vocantur *Chalons*, loco lectisternii.

Ver. 4206. a cokenay] That this is a term of contempt, borrowed originally from the kitchen, is very probable. A Cook, in the base Latinity, was called *Cocinator* and *Cocuinarius*, from either of which *Cokenay* might easily be derived. In P. P. fol. xxxv. b.

And yet I say by my soule I have no salt bacon,  
Ne no cokeney by Criste coloppes to make.

It seems to signify a Cook. And so, perhaps, in the *Tournament of Tottenham*. Anc. Poet. t. ii. p. 94.

At that feast were they served in rich array;  
Every five and five had a cokeney.

That is, I suppose, a cook, or scullion, to attend them.

In those rimes ascribed to Hugh Bigot, which Camden has published, Brit. col. 451. (upon what authority, I know not)

"Were I in my castle of Bungey

"Upon the river of Waveney,

"I would ne care for the king of Cokeney."

The author, in calling London *Cokeney*, might possibly allude to that imaginary country of idleness and luxury, which was anciently known by the name of *Cokaigae*, or *Coragae*; a name which Hickes has shewn to be derived from *Cocquina*. Gr. A. S. p. 231. He has there published an excellent description of the country of *Cokaigae*, in old English verse, but probably translated from the French. At least the French have had the same fable among them, for Boileau plainly alludes to it. Sat. vi.

Paris est pour un riche un pais de Cocagne.

The festival of *La Cocagne* at Naples, described by Keyser, v. ii. p. 369. appears to have the same foundation. It probably commenced under the Norman government. There is a mock-heroic poem, in the Sicilian dialect, entitled *La Cuccagna conquistata*, by Gio. Battista Basilì, Palermo. 1674. in which the description of *Faima città di Cuccagna* begins thus:

Seddi Cuccagna sutta una montagna  
Di furmaggju grattatu, et havi in cima  
Di maccaruni una caudara magna.

Ver. 4318. Him (thar nof] I have restored this old word, upon the authority of the best MSS. in this and other places. See ver. 5911. 5918. 6947. 17301. It is derived from the Sax. thearlian, *neccesse habere*; and is generally used as an Impersonal. "Him bekovereth not to winne or acquire good, that doth evil." I have ventured to substitute *winne* instead of the common reading *wene*, of which I could make no sense. MS. B. 3. reads. *He may nought winne w.*

Ver. 4345. a Jacke of Dover] The general purport of this phrase is sufficiently explained in the following line; but the particular meaning I have not been able to investigate.

Ver. 4348. of thy perseelee] an old *Boke of Kokery*, which I have consulted upon this occasion, MS. *Harl.* 4016. has a receipt for "*Gose or capon farced*," but it does not mention *perseeley*. It only says in general terms, "Take yolkes of eyeron (eggs) hard yocde and hew hem amale with the herbes—and caste therto powder of ginger peper canell and salt and grapes in tyne of yere." I have lately met with another, I suppose, the true, receipt for stuffing a Goose in MS. *Harl.* 279. It begins—"Take percelly and awynis grece or swet of a shepe and parboyle hem, &c."

Ver. 4355. soth play quade spel] As this is said to have been a Flemish proverb, I have inserted *spel* from MSS. Ask. 1. 2. instead of the common reading *play*. *Spel*, in Teut. is *lulus*, as *quade*, or *quaed*, is *malus*. Sir John Harrington, in his *Apologie of Poetrie*, quotes an old saying of the same import. *Soth bourde is no bourde*.

Ver. 4375. riding—in Chepe] There were sometimes Justs in Cheapside. Hollings. v. ii. p. 348. But perhaps any procession may be meant. MSS. Ask. 1. 2. read *revel*.

Ver. 4377. And til] *And* is added.

Ver. 4394. they play] So MS. C. All the rest read *he*.

Ver. 4413. a louke] A receiver to a thief; Sp. Sk. This explanation, I believe, is a mere fancy, but I have nothing better to propose.

Ver. 4421. Our Hoste saw wel] Concerning the time of day meant to be pointed out in the following lines, see the *Discourse* &c. §. v.

Ver. 4450. Malkins maidenhede] A common phrase. P. P. fol. vii. a. b.

Ye have no more merit of masse ne of houres  
Than Malkin of hire maydenhood, that no man desireth.

Ver. 4467. But Chaucer] So MSS. C. 1. Ask. 1. 2. In the Edit. it had been strangely corrupted into *Taal*.

Ver. 4477. In youthe he made of Ceyx] The story of Ceyx and Alcyone is related in the introduction to the poem, which was for some time called "*the Dreme of Chaucer*," but which, in the MSS. *Fairf.* 16. and *Bod.* 638. is more properly entitled "*the booke of the Duchesse*." The following note, which has been prefixed to it in all the

later editions, is in MS. Fairf. in the hand-writing of John Stowe. "By the person of a mourning Knight sitting under an oke is meant John of Gaunt, Duke of Lancaster, greatly lamenting the death of one whom he entirely loved, supposed to be *Blanche the Duchesse*." I believe John is very right in his conjecture. Chaucer himself, in his *Leg. of G. W.* 418. says, that he made "the deth of *Blanche the Duchesse*;" and in the poem now under consideration he plainly alludes to her name, ver. 948.

"And faire white she hete,  
That was my lady's name right."

On the other hand, the Knight is represented, ver. 455, 6.

"Of the age of four and twenty yere,  
Upon his berde but litel here"—

whereas John of Gaunt, at the death of *Blanche* in 1369, was about nine and twenty years of age. But this perhaps was a designed misrepresentation.

I will just observe that the manner, in which Chaucer speaks of his own age at the time of this composition, is a confirmation of what has been suggested in the *Discourse* &c. n. 3. that the Canterbury Tales were the work of his latest years. When the Dutchesse *Blanche* died, he was one and forty; a time of life, which, I believe, a man seldom calls his youth, till he is advanced at least twenty years beyond it.

Ver. 4481. the Seintes legende of Cupide] In the Editt. it is called the *Legende of good women*; in MS. Fairf. 16. the *Legendis of ix gode women*. According to Lydgate, *Prolog.* to *Boccace*, the number was to have been nineteen; and perhaps the *Legende* itself affords some ground for this notion. See ver. 183. and C. L. ver. 108. But this number was probably never completed, and the last story of *Hypermetra* is seemingly unfinished.

In an imperfect copy of the *Master of the game*, dedicated to Henry, eldest son of Henry IV. (MS. Harl. 6824.) is the following passage. "As Chaucer seithe in his prolog. of xxv. good wymmen, by writing have men mynde of thynges passed." See ver. 18.

In this passage the Man of Lawe omits two Ladies, viz. *Cleopatra* and *Philomela*, whose histories are in the *Legende*; and he enumerates eight others, of whom there are no histories in the *Legende*, as we have it at present. Are we to suppose, that they have been lost?

With respect to the time of Chaucer's writing the *Legende*, see the *Discourse* &c. n. 3.

Ver. 4486. The plaint of *Deianire*] This reading is supported by several MSS. of middling authority; but the better copies read *Diane*, and MS. A. *Syane*. There is a nymph *Cyane* in Ovid, *Metam.* l. v. who weeps herself into a fountain; but not for love.

Ver. 4512. To Muses, that men clepe *Pierides*] He rather means, I think, the daughters of *Pierus*, who contended with the Muses, and were changed into Pies. Ovid, *Metam.* l. v.

Ver. 4513. with hawebake] So MS. A. The other readings are—have i bake. MSS. Ask. l. 2.—hawke bake. B. 5.—hevy bake. B. 6. i.—have wee bauke. E.—have we bake. B. 8. HA.—have ybake. Ca. 2.—the whiche hath no lak. Ca. l.—The reader may take his choice of them.

Ver. 4534. Bet is to dien] This saying of Solomon is quoted in Rom. de la Ro. 8573. Mieux vault mourir que pauvres estre.

Ver. 4617. In sterres] This passage is imitated from the *Megacosmus* of *Bernardus Sylvestris*, an eminent philosopher and poet about the middle of the xth Century. Fabric. Bibl. Med. Aetat. in v. *Bernardus Carnotensis* et *Sylvestris*. I will transcribe here the original lines from MS. Bod. 1363.

Præjacet in stellis series, quam longior ætas  
Explicet et spatii temporis ordo suis,  
Sceptra Phoronei, fratrum discordia Thebis,  
Flamma Phaethontis, Deucalionis aquæ.  
In stellis Codri paupertas, copia Croesi,  
Incestus Paridis, Hippolytique pudor.

In stellis Priami species, audacia Turni,  
Sensus Ulyssæus, Herculeusque vigor.  
In stellis pugil est Pollux et navita Typhis  
Et Cicero rhetor et geometra Thales.  
In stellis lepidum dictat Maro, Milo figurat,  
Fulgurat in Latia nobilitate Nero.  
Astra notat Persis, Ægyptus parturit artes,  
Græcia docta legit, prælia Roma gerit.

The four lines in Italics are quoted in the Margin of MS. C. l.

Ver. 4709. Or Ilon brent] There is great confusion among the MSS. in this line. I have made the best sense that I could, without departing too far from them. MS. A. reads,

"Or whanne Ilon brende Thebes the citee."

which might lead one to conjecture,

"Or whanne *Philip* brende Thebes the citee."

This last phrase is French. See *Froissart*, v. i. c. 223. dedans Rènes la cité et environ.

Ver. 4725. O Mars o Atyzar] So A. Other MSS. read, *Atasir*, *Atayser*, *Atteser*, *Atasir*. I am not Astrologer enough to determine which is the right word. *Atizar*, *SPAN.* and *attiser*, *Fr.* signify to light a fire, to inflame. But whether that sense can have any place here, I am doubtful.

Ver. 4732. is ther non electionun] In the margin of MS. C. l. is the following quotation. Omnes concordati sunt, quod Electiones sint debiles, nisi in divitibus: habent enim isti, licet debilitentur eorum electiones, radicem, i. natiuitates eorum, que confortat omnem planetam debilem in itinere, &c. It is taken from *Liber Electionum* by one *Zael*. MS. Harl. 80. Bod. 1648.

Ver. 4841. O soden wo] I shall transcribe the following passage from the Margin of MS. C. l. though I know not from what author it is borrowed, as it confirms the readings adopted in the text. *Semper mundana letitia tristitia repentina succedit. Mundana felicitas multis amaritudinibus est respersa. Extrema gaudii luctus occupat. Audi ergo salubre conitium; in die bonorum ne immemor sis malorum.* The Editt. read O Soudan, wo &c.

Ver. 4858. fote-hot] Hastily, with all expedition. See Gower, *Conf.* Am. fol. 818.

And forth with all anone fote hote  
He stale the cowe—

See also R. R. 3827. *Haut le pied*, in French, has the same signification. Cotgrave, in v. So that I should suspect *hot*, in our phrase, to be a corruption of *haut*.

Ver. 4902. The following plot of the Knight against Constance, from this ver. to ver. 5030. and also her adventure with the Steward, from ver. 5330 to ver. 5344. are both to be found, with some small variations, in a Story in the *Gesta Romanorum*, ch. 101. MS. Harl. 3270. Occleve has versified the whole story; as he has another from the same collection, *De Johnatha et muliere maid*, ch. 54. *Ibid.* (cxx. Edit.) See an excellent MS. of Occleve's works, Bib. Reg. 17 D. vi. The first poem begins,—"In the Romain jistes written is thus:—" the second,—"Some time an Emperour prudent and wise."

Ver. 5004. how he might quite hire while] *Her time, labour* &c. So in the *Leg.* of *Ariadne*, v. ult. "the divel quite him his while."

Ver. 5191. O messenger] Quid turpius ebrioso, cui factor in ore, tremor in corpore; qui prurit stulta, prodit occulta; cui mens alienatur, facies transformatur? nullum enim latet secretum ubi regnat ebrietas. Marg. C. l.

Ver. 5345. O foule lust] O extrema libidinis turpitudine, que non solum mentem effeminat, set etiam corpus enervat: semper secuntur dolor et penitentia post, &c. Marg. C. l.

Ver. 5408. Som men wold sayn] See Gower, *Conf.* Am B. ii. fol. 35. b. 2. and the *Discourse* &c. §. xv. In another circumstance, which has been introduced

with the same words, ver. 5429. our Author agrees with Gower, *ibid.* fol. 35. a. 1.

Ver. 5527. your Custance] I have added *your*, for the sake of the metre.

Ver. 5549. But litel while] In Marg. C. I. A mane usque ad vespem mutabitur tempus. tenent tympanum et gaudent ad sonum organi, &c.

Ver. 5555. Who lived ever] *Ibid.* Quis unquam unicam diem totam in sua dilectione duxit jocundam? quem in aliqua parte diei reatus conscientie, viz. impetus ire, vel motus concupiscentie non turbavit; quem livor, vel ardor avaritie, vel tumor superbie non vexavit, quem aliqua jactura, vel offensio, vel passio non commoverit, &c.

Ver. 5583. I have already given my reasons for following the best MSS. in placing this Prologue of the Wife of Bath next to the Man of Lawes Tale. Discourse, &c. § xvi. The want of a few verses to connect this Prologue with the preceding Tale was perceived long ago; and the defect was attempted to be supplied by the author of the following lines, which in MS. B. are prefixed to the common Prologue.

Oure oost gan the to loken anon.  
Gode men, quod he, herkneþ everichone,  
As evere mote I drynke wyn or ale,  
This marchant hath itold a mery tale,  
Howe Januarie hadde a lither jape,  
His wyf put in his hood an ape.  
But hereof I wil leve off as now.  
Dame wyf of Bathes, quod he, I pray you  
Telle us a tale now nexte after this.  
Sir oost, quod she, so god my soule bis,  
As I fully thereto wil consente,  
And also it is myn hole entente,  
To done yow alle disporte as that I can.  
But holde me excused; I am a woman.  
I can not reherse as these clerkes kune.  
And ryt anon she hath hir tale bygunne.  
Experience &c.

The same lines are in MSS. Bod. C and C. I print them here, in order to justify myself for not inserting them in the text.

Ver. 5626. I have wedded five] After this verse, the six following are in MSS. C. 1. H. A. C. 2. and in Edit. Ca. 2.

Of whiche I have pyked out the beste  
Bothe of here nether purs and of here cheste.  
Diverse scoles maken parlyt clerkes,  
And diverse practyk in many sondry werkis  
Maken the werkman parlyt sekirly:  
Of five husbondes scoleryng am I,  
Welcome the sixthe &c.

If these lines are not Chaucer's, they are certainly more in his manner than the generality of the imitations of him. Perhaps he wrote them, and afterwards blotted them out. They come in but awkwardly here, and he has used the principal idea in another place. March. T. ver. 9301.

Ver. 5637. The dart is sette] See Lydg. Boc. fol. xxvi.

And off it happeneth, he that hath best ron  
Doth not the spere like his desert possede.

Ver. 5677. I graunt it wel, I have non envie,  
Though maidenhed preferre bigamie] So these two verses stand, without any material difference, in all the MSS. If they are right, we must understand *preferre* to signify the same as *be preferred to*. Knowing no example of such a construction, I have ventured at an alteration of the text. It might have been as well, perhaps, to have left the first line untouched, and to have corrected the second only thus:

Though maidenhed *be preferred to* bigamie.

Ver. 5681. a lord in his household] See 2 Tim. ii. 20.

Ver. 5764. writeth Ptholomee] In the Margin of MS. C. 1. is the following quotation: *Qui per alios non corrigitur, alii per ipsum corriguntur*. But I cannot find any such passage in the *Almagest*. I suspect that the Wife of Bathes copy of Ptolemy was very different from any that

I have been able to meet with. See another quotation from him, ver. 5906.

Ver. 5799. The bacon—at Donnemow] See Blount's Ant. Tenures, p. 162. and P. P. 446. This whimsical institution was not peculiar to Donnemow. There was the same in Bretagne. "A l'Abbaie Saint Melaine, près Rennes, y a, plus de six cens ans sont, un costé de lard encore tout frais et non corrompu; et neantmoins voué et ordonné aux premiers, qui par an et jour ensemble mariez ont vescu sans debat, grondement, et sans s'en repentir." *Contes d'Eutrap*, t. ii. p. 161.

Ver. 5810. Sweren and lien] *Rom. de la R.* ver. 19013.

Car plus hardiment que nuls homes  
Certainement jurent et mentent.

Ver. 5811. (I say not this] This parenthesis seems to be rather belonging to Chaucer himself than to the Wife of Bath.

Ver. 5814. Shal beren hem on bond] *Shal make them believe falsely*, the cow is *wood*. The latter words may either signify that the cow is *mad*, or *made of wood*. Which of the two is the preferable interpretation, it will be safest not to determine, till we can discover the old story to which this phrase seems to be a proverbial allusion.

Ver. 5817. Sire olde Kaynard] *Cognard*, or *Caignard*, was a French term of reproach, which seems to have been originally derived from *Canis*. Menage, in v. In the following speech it would be endless to produce all Chaucer's imitations. The beginning is from the fragment of Theophrastus, quoted by St. Jerome, c. Jovin. l. i., and by John of Salisbury, Polycrat. l. viii. c. xi. See also *Rom. de la R.* ver. 5867. et suiv.

Ver. 5882. chamberere] *A chamber-maid*. Fr. See 6396. 6863.

Son variet et sa chambriere,  
Ainsi sa seur et sa nourrice  
Et sa mere, si moult n'est nice.

*Rom. de la R.* 14490.

Ver. 5923. in the apostles name] See 1 Tim. ii. 2.

Ver. 6042. Metellius] This story is told by Pliny, Nat. Hist. l. xiv. c. 13. of one *Meernius*; but Chaucer probably followed Valerius Maximus, l. vi. c. 3.

Ver. 6049. In woman vinolent] *Rom. de la R.* 14222.

Car pulque femme est enyvree  
El n'a point en soy de defence.—

Ver. 6065. Seint Jooce] or Joese, *Sanctus Judocus*, was a Saint of Ponthieu. *Vocab. Hagiol.* prefixed to Menage, *Etymol. Fr.*

Ver. 6137. visitations] *Rom de la R.* 12492.

Souvent voise à la mere Eglice,  
Et face visitations  
Aux nopces, aux processions,  
Aux jeux, aux festes, aux caroles.—

Ver. 6151. bobance] *Boasting, pride*. Fr. en orgueil et en bobans. Froissart, v. iv. c. 70. In the Edit. it is *boastance*. The thought in the next lines is taken from *Rom. de la R.* 13914.

Moult a souris povre recours,  
Et met en grand peril la druge,  
Qui n'a qu'ung partuy a refuge.

Ver. 6191—4. These four lines are wanting in MSS. A. Ask. l. 2. and several others. And so are the eight lines from ver. 6201. to ver. 6208. incl. They certainly might very well be spared.

Ver. 6216. with his fist] MS. A. reads—*on the lyste*—and so does Ed. Ca. 2. with the addition of (what was at first a marginal gloss) *on the Cheke*. In support of this reading it may be observed, that Sir Thomas More, among many Chaucerian phrases, has this, in his *Merry Jest of a Serjeant* &c.

And with his fist  
Upon the lyst  
He gave him such a blow.—

Ver. 6327. open-headed] This is literally from Val. Max. l. vi. c. 3. uxorem dimisit, quod eam capite aperto foris versatam cognoverat. He gives the reason of this severity. Lex enim tibi meos tantum prædicit oculos, quibus formam tuam approbes. His decoris instrumenta compara: his cæto speciosa, &c.

Ver. 6330. a summer-game] This expression, I suppose, took its rise from the Summer being the usual season for Games. It is used in P. P. fol. xxvii.

I have lever here an harlotry, or a Somers game—

This story is also from Val. Max. l. vi. c. 3. P. Sempronius Sophus—conjugem repudiū notā affectit, nihil aliud quam se ignorante ludos ausum spectare.

Ver. 6353. Valerie, and Theophrast] Some account has been given of these two treatises in the Discourse &c. n. 19. As to the rest of the contents of this volume, Hieronymus contra Jovinianum, and Tertullian de Pallio are sufficiently known; and so are the letters of Eriola and Abelard, the Parables of Solomon, and Ovid's Art of Love. I know of no Trotula, but one, whose book Curandarum agnitudinum sculicbrum, ante, in, et post partum, is printed int. Medicos antiquos, Ven. 1547. What is meant by Crisippus I cannot guess.

Ver. 6258. Which book was ther] I have here departed from the MSS. which all read,—In which book ther was che.—Perhaps, however, it might be sufficient to put a full stop after Jovinian.

Ver. 6384. exaltation] In the old Astrology, a Planet was said to be in its Exaltation, when it was in that sign of the Zodiac, in which it was supposed to exert its strongest influence. The opposite sign was called its Dejection, as in that it was supposed to be weakest. To take the instance in the text, the Exaltation of Venus was in *Pisces*, (see also ver. 10687), and her Dejection of course in *Virgo*. But in *Virgo* was the Exaltation of Mercury.

She is the welthe and the rysynge  
The lust the joy and the lykynge  
Unto Mercury.—

Gower, Conf. Am. l. vii. fol. 147. So in ver. 10098. Cancer is called *Joves exaltation*.

Ver. 6303. Tho redde he] Most of the following instances are mentioned in the *Epistola Valerii ad Rufinum de non ducenda uxore*. See also Rom. de la R. 9140. 9615. et suiv.

Ver. 6399. Of Lima—and of Lucie] In the *Epistola Valerii*, &c. MS. Reg. 12. D. III. the story is told thus: Luna virum suum interfecit quem nimis odit: Lucilla eum quem nimis amavit. Illa sponte miscuit aconita: hæc decepta furorem propinavit pro amoris poculo. *Lima* and *Luna* in many MSS. are only distinguishable by a small stroke over the *i*, which may be easily overlooked where it is, and supposed where it is not.

Ver. 6336. Latumeus] In MSS. Ask. l. 2. it is *Latynius*: In the *Epistola Valerii* just cited, *Pavorinus* fens alt Arrio—

Ver. 6365. mo proverbes] For the following aphorisms see Prov. xxi. 9. 19. and xl. 22. The observation in ver. 6364. is in Herodotus. B. i. p. 5. Ed. Wesmeling.

Ver. 6414. The Sompnour herd the Frere gale] The same word occurs below, ver. 6918. “and let the Sompnour gale.” In both places it seems to be used metaphorically. *Galan*, Sax. signifies *cancer*. It is used literally in the Court of Love, ver. 1397. where the nightingale is said—to *cric* and *gale*. Hence its name, *Nightgale*, or *Nightengale*. In the *Island*, at *gala* is *utulari*, *Galli* more exclaimare; and *Hana gal*; *Gallinismus*. Gudm. And. Lex. Island.

Ver. 6436. King Artour] I hope that Chaucer, by placing his Elf-queen in the *dayes of King Artour*, did not mean to intimate that the two monarchies were equally fabulous and visionary. *Master Wace* has judged more candidly of the exploits of our British hero.

Ne tut mensonge, ne tut veir;  
Ne tut folie, ne tut aveir.  
Tant unt li contez conté,  
E li fablerz tant fablé.

Pur les contes enblecer,  
Ke tut unt fait fabler sembler.

Le Brut. MS. Cotton. Vitell. A. 7.

Ver. 6441. faerie] *Færie*, Fr. from *Fée*, the French name for those fantastical beings which in the Gothic languages are called *Alfs*, or *Elves*. The corresponding names to *Fée*, in the other Romance dialects, are *Fata*, ITAL. and *Hada*, SPAN. so that it is probable, that all three are derived from the Lat. *Fatum*, which in the barbarous ages was corrupted into *Fatus* and *Fata*. See Menage, in v. Fæ. Du Cange, in v. FADUA.

Our system of Faerie would have been much more complete, if all our ancient writers had taken the same laudable pains to inform us upon that head, that Gervase of Tilbury has done. Ot. Imp. Dec. III. c. 61, 2. He mentions two species of Demons in England, which I do not recollect to have met with in any other author. The first are those, quos Galli Neptunos, Angli Portunos nominant. Of the others he says—Est in Angliā quoddam demonum genus, quod suo idiomate Grant nominant, adinstar pulli equini anteculi, tibis erectum, oculis scintillantibus &c.

This last seems to have been a Demon sui generis, but the Portunus appears to have resembled the Gobein, as described by Orderic. Vital. l. v. p. 556. Speaking of the miracles of St. Taurinus at Evreux in Normandy, he says—Demon enim, quem de Diana phano expulit, adhuc in eadem urbe degit, et in variis frequenter formis apparet nominem ledit. Hunc vulgus Gobeinum \* appellat, et per merita Sancti Taurini ab humana latione coeritum usque hodie affirmat.

In the same manner Gervase says of the Portuni. Id illis insitum est, ut obsequi possint et obesse non possint. He adds indeed an exception. Verum unicum quasi modulum nocendi habent. Cum enim inter ambiguas noctis tenebras Angli solitarii quandoque equitant, Portunus nunquam invisus equitanti se copulat, et cum diutius comitatur euntem, tandem loris arreptis equum in lutum ad manum ducit, in quo dum infixus volutatur, Portunus exiens cæcinnum facit, et sic hujuscemodi ludibrio humanam simplicitatem deridet.—This is exactly such a prank as our Hob, or Hop, goblin was used to play. See the *Midsummer Night's Dream*. A. 2. S. 1. and Drayton's *Nymphidia* †.

It should be observed, that the Portuni, according to Gervase, were of the true Faery size, staturæ parvuli dimidium pollicis non habentes. But then indeed they were scilicet vultu, facie corrugata. In Dec. l. c. 18. he describes another species of harmless Demons, called Folletti. Esprits Follets. Fr. Foletti. ITAL.

The Incubus mentioned below, ver. 6462. was a Faery of not quite so harmless a nature. He succeeded to the ancient Fawni, and like them was supposed to inflict that oppression, which goes under the name of the Ephialtes, or Nightmare. Pliny calls the Ephialtes Fawnorum in quiete ludibria. N. H. l. 25. x. The Incubus however, as Chaucer insinuates, exerted his powers for love as well as for hate. Gervase. Tilber. Dec. l. c. 17. Vidimus quodam Demones tanto zelo mulieres amare quod ad inaudita prorumpunt ludibria, et cum ad concubitum earum accedunt mira mole eas opprimunt, nec ab illis videntur.

Ver. 6457. undermeles] The undermele, l. e. undermele, was the dinner of our ancestors. See the note on ver. 8136.

Ver. 6466. came riding fro river] Or, *fro the river*, as it is in some MSS. It means from hawking at water-fowl. Froissart, v. l. c. 140. Le Comte de Flandres estoit tousjours en riviere—un jour advint qu'il alla voler en la riviere—et gatta son fauconner un faucon apres la heron, et le Comte aussi un—So in c. 210. he says, that Edward III. had with him in his army—trente fauconniers & cheval, charges

\* Gobeinum. v. Du Cange. Gloss. Gr. v. Κοβόλος.

† I shall here correct a mistake of my own in the Discourse &c. n. 23. I have supposed that Shakespeare might have followed Drayton in his Faery system. I have since observed that *Don Quixot*, which was not published till 1605, is cited in the *Nymphidia*, whereas we have an Edition of the *Midsummer Night's Dream* in 1600. So that Drayton undoubtedly followed Shakespeare.



d'oiseaux, et bien soixante couples de forts chiens et autant de levriers: dont il alloit, chacun jour, ou en chace ou en riviére, ainsi que il luy plaisoit. Sire Thopas is described as following this knightly sport, ver. 13665.

He coude hunte at the wilde dere,  
And ride on hauking for the riviére  
With grey goshawk on honde.

or 6710. Ful seide up riseth] Dante, *Purg.* vii. 121.

Rade volte risurge per li rami  
L'humana probitate: et questo vuole  
Quel che la da, perche da se si chiama.

Ver. 6741. For gentillose] A great deal of this reasoning is copied from Boethius de Consol. l. iii. Pr. 6. See also R. R. 2180, & seq.

For villanie maketh villeine,  
And by his dedes a chorle is seine, &c.

Ver. 6777. Poverte is hateful good] In this commendation of Poverty, our author seems plainly to have had in view the following passage of a fabulous conference between the Emperor Adrian and Secundus the philosopher, reported by Vincent of Beauvais, *Spec. Histor.* l. x. c. 71. Quid est Paupertas? *Odibile bonum; sanitatis mater; remotio curarum; sapientia reperitur; negotium sine damno; possessio obsequii calumniam; sine sollicitudine felicitas.* What Vincent has there published appears to have been extracted from a larger collection of *Gnomæ* under the name of Secundus, which are still extant in Greek and Latin. See Fabric. *Bib. Gr.* l. vi. c. x. and MS. *Harl.* 399. The author of *Pierce Ploughman* has quoted and paraphrased the same passage, fol. 75.

Ver. 6781. elenge] *Strange*; probably from the old *Fa. esiolgnd.* So in the Cuckow and Nightingale, ver. 114.

Thy songes ben so elenge in good fay

And in P. P. fol. 3. b.

Where the cat is a kiten, the court is full elenge.

See also fol. 46. b. [See the Gloss. in v. Elenge. Add. note. Ed. 1798.]

Ver. 6797. For flithe, and elde alon, so] Though none of the MSS. that I have seen, authorize the insertion of the second *so*, it seems absolutely necessary.

Ver. 6858. auctoritees] *Auctoritas* was the usual word for what we call a *text* of Scripture. MS. *Harl.* 106. 10. *Expositio auctoritatis, Marus gaudium super uno peccatore.* Ibid. 21. *Expositio auctoritatis, Statr populus de longe &c.*

Ver. 6931. the nale] the *Alt-house*. P. P. fol. 32. b.

And than satten some and songe at the nale.

Skinner supposes it to be a corruption of *inn-ale*, which is not impossible. [See the Gloss. in v. Nale. Add. note. Ed. 1798.]

Ver. 6969. an old ribbe] He calls her below, ver. 7155. an olde *rebeke*. They were both names for the same musical instrument. See Menage, in v. *Rebec. Ribeba*, in the Decameron, ix. 5. is rendered by Maçon, the old French translator, *Rebec* and *Guiterne*. Chaucer uses also the diminutive *Ribible*, ver. 3331. 4395. How this instrument came to be put for an old woman, I cannot guess, unless perhaps from its shrillness. An old writer, quoted by Du Cange, in v. *Bardosa*, has the following lines in his description of a Concert.

Quidam *rebecorum* arcuabant  
*Mulicetrem vocem confingentes*

Ver. 6990. wariangles] I have nothing to say either in refutation or support of Mr. Speght's explanation of this word—"A kind of birds full of noise, and very ravenous, preying upon others, which when they have taken, they use to hang upon a thorne or pricke, and tear them in peeces, and devour them. And the common opinion is, that the thorne, whereupon they thus fasten them and eat them, is afterward poisonous. In Staffordshire and Shropshire the name is common."—except that Cotgrave, in his *Pt. Diet.* explains *Arneal* to signify *The ravenous bird called a Shrike, Nymmurder, Wariangle*. [See the Gloss. in v. Wariangles. Add. note, Ed. 1798.]

Ver. 7018. to hevry or to hote] We have nearly the same expression in Froisart, v. l. c. 229. ne l'aisolent riens a prendre, s'il n'estoit trop chaud, trop froid, ou trop pesant.

Ver. 7092. As to the Phitoness did Samuel] So MS. A. The Editt. read,

As the Phitoness did to Samuel—

which is certainly wrong. See 1 Sam. xxviii. Our author uses *Phitoness* for *Pythonesse*. H. F. iii. 171. And so does Gower, *Conf. Amant.* fol. 140.

The *Phitoness* in Samary.—

Ver. 7145. liard] A common appellation for a horse, from its grey colour, as *bayard* was from *bay*. See before, ver. 4113. P. P. fol. 92.

He lyght downe of liarde and ladde him in his hand.

Bp. Douglas, in his Virgil, usually puts *liart* for *albus, tenebris*, &c.

Ver. 7164. thou olde very trate] So MSS. C. 1. Ask. 1. 2. and Ed. Ca. 2. The later Editt. read *virtrate* in one word. We may suppose *trate* to be used for *trot*, a common term for an old woman. Keyser, *Antiq.* Sept. p. 503. refers it to the same original with the German *Drud*, or *Drut*; *Saga*.

Ver. 7200. And now hath Sathanas, with he] So MSS. C. 1. Ask. 1. 2. I have put these two lines in a parenthesis as he refers to the narrator, the Sompnour.

Ver. 7277. A twenty thousand] I have added A for the sake of the verse. Chaucer frequently prefixes it to Nouns of number. See ver. 10697.

And up they risen, wel a ten or twelve.

Ver. 7290. To trentails] *Un trentail*, *Fa.* was a service of thirty Masses, which were usually celebrated, upon as many different days, for the dead. Du Cange, in v. *TRENTALE*.

Ver. 7327. Asaunce that he wolde for hem preye] The Glossary interprets *asaunce* to mean *askew, aside, sideways; in a side view*; upon what authority I know not. It will be better to examine the other passages in which the same word occurs, before we determine the sense of it. See ver. 16306.

*Asaunce* that craft is so light to lere.

Tro. l. 285.

*Asaunce*, lo! is this not wisely spoken?

Ibid. 292.

*Asaunce*, what, may I not stonden here?

Lydg. *Trag.* fol. 136. b.

*Asaunce* I am of maners most changeable.

In the first and last instance, as well as in the text, *asaunce* seems to signify simply *as if; quasi*. In the two others it signifies a little more; *as if to say*. This latter signification may be clearly established from the third line, which in the Italian original (Pilostrato di Boccaccio, l. 1.) stands thus:

*Quasi dicessi, e no ci si puo stare?*

So that *asaunce* is there equivalent to *quasi dicessi* in Italian.

As to the Etymology of this word I must confess myself more at a loss. I observe however that one of a similar form in the Teutonic has a similar signification. *Alackes*; *Quasi, quasi vero*. Kilian. Our *as* is the same with *als*. *Teut.* and *Sax.* It is only a further corruption of *al so*. Perhaps therefore *asaunce* may have been originally *als-kanse*. *Kanse* in *Teut.* is *Chance* *Fa.* and *Ewa*.

I will just add, that this very rare phrase was also used, as I suspect, by the Author of the *Continuation of the Canterbury Tales*, first printed by Mr. Urry. *Prol.* ver. 361.

And al *asaunce* she loved him wel, she toke him by the swere.

It is printed a *staunce*.

Ver. 7329. A Goddes kichel] "It was called a Goddes kichel, because Godfathers and Godmothers used com-

monly to give one of them to their Godchildren, when they asked blessing." Sp. And so we are to suppose a Goddess halfpenny, in ver. 7331, was called for the same reason, &c. But this is all *gratis dictum*, I believe. The phrase is French, and the true meaning of it is explained by M. de la Monnoye in a note upon the *Contes de B. D. Periers*, t. II. p. 107. *Belle serrure de Dieu*] Expression du petit peuple, qui rapporte pieusement tout à Dieu.—Rien n'est plus commun dans la bouche des bonnes vieilles, que ces espèces d'Hebraïsmes: *Il m'en coûte un bel escu de Dieu; Il ne me reste que ce pauvre enfant de Dieu; Donnez moi une denrée aumône de Dieu.*

Ver. 7442. fifty yere] See Du Cange, in v. *SANCTA*. Peculiar honours and immunities were granted by the Rule of St. Benedict to those Monks, *qui quinquaginta annos in ordine exegerant, quos annum jubileum exegisse vulgo dicimus*. It is probable that some similar regulation obtained in the other Orders.

Ver. 7488. mendia[n]t] In MS. A. it is *mendinants*, both here and below, ver. 7494. which reading, though not agreeable to analogy, is perhaps the true one, as I find the word constantly so spelled in the Stat. 12 R. II. c. 7, 8, 9, 10.

Ver. 7511. Jovinian] Against whom St. Jerome wrote; or, perhaps, the supposed Emperor of that name in the *Gesta Romanorum*, c. lix. whose story was worked up into a *Morality*, under the title of *L'orgueil et présomption de "Empereur Jovinien—à 19 personnes*. It was printed at Lyons, 1581. 8vo. *sur une vieille copie*. Du Verdier, in v. *JOVINIEN*. The same story is told of a *Robert King of Sicily*, in an old English poem. MS. *Hart*. 1701. Mr. Warton has given large extracts from an Oxford MS. as I suppose, of the same poem. *Hist. of Eng. Po.* p. 184.

Ver. 7514. of ful gret reverence] The Editt. have changed this to *ful litel*; but the reading of the MSS. may stand, if it be understood ironically.

Ver. 7600. As saith Senek] This story is told by Seneca, *de ira*, l. I. c. xvi. of Cn. Piso. It is also told of an Emperor *Erastus*, *Gesta Romanorum*, cap. cxi.

Ver. 7623. Irous Cambyaes] This story is also in Seneca, l. III. c. xiv. It differs a little from one in Herodotus, l. III.

Ver. 7657. Singeth Placebo] The allusion is to an Anthem in the Romish church, from Psalm cxvi. 9. which in the Vulgate stands thus: *Placebo Domino in regione vivorum*. Hence the complacent brother in the *Merchant's Tale* is called *Placebo*.

Ver. 7662. the river of Gisen] It is called *Gyndes* in Seneca, lib. cit. c. xxi. and in Herodotus, l. I.

Ver. 7665. That wimmen] So the best MSS. agreeably to the authors just quoted. The Editt. have—

That men might ride and wade &c.

Sir J. Mandeville tells the story of the Euphrates;—"because that he had sworn, that he sholde putte the ryver in suche poynt, that a woman myghte wel passe there, withouten castynge of hys clothe." p. 49.

Ver. 7710. the letter of our sele] There is a letter of this kind in Stevens, *Supp. to Dugd.* vol. II. App. p. 370. *Fratres Prædicatorum*, Warwic. *admittunt Thomam Canonicum et uxorem ejus Agnetem ad participationem omnium honorum operum conventus ejusdem*. It is under seal of the Prior, 4 Non. Octob. An. Dom. 1347.

Ver. 7740. The remainder of this tale is omitted in MSS. B. G. and Bod. B. and instead of it they give us the following lame and impotent conclusion.

He ne had nort ellis for his sermon  
To part among his brethren when he cam home.  
And thus is this tale idon.  
For we were almost at the toun.

I only mention this to shew what liberties some Copyists have taken with our author.

Ver. 7879. Were newe spoused] It has been observed in n. upon ver. 812. that Chaucer frequently omits the governing Pronoun before his Verbs. The instances there

cited were of Personal Pronouns. In this line and some others, which I shall point out here, the Relatives *who* or *which* are omitted in the same manner. See ver. 7411. 13035. 16049.

Ver. 7910. Lynyan] or *Linian*. The person meant was an eminent Lawyer, and made a great noise, as we say, in his time. His name of late has been so little known, that I believe nobody has been angry with the Editt. for calling him *Livian*. There is some account of him in Panzirolus, *de Cl. Leg. Interpret.* l. III. c. xxv. Joannes, a *Lignano*, agri Mediolanensis vico, oriundus, et ob id *Lignanus* dictus &c. One of his works entitled, "*Tractatus de Bello*," is extant in MS. Reg. 13. B. ix. He compiled it at Bologna in the year 1360.

He was not however a mere Lawyer. Chaucer speaks of him as excelling also in *Philosophie*, and so does his epitaph, ap. Panzirol. l. c.

Gloria Lignani, titulo decoratus utroque,  
Legibus et sacro Canone dives erat,  
Alter Aristoteles, Hippocras erat et Ptolomeus—

The only specimen of his Philosophy that I have met with is in MS. *Hart*. 1006. It is an Astrological work, entitled, "*Conclusiones Judicii composite per Domnum Johannem de Lyliano (l. Lyniano) super coronacione Domni Urbani Pape VI. A. D. 1378. xviii April, &c. cum Diagrammate*." He also supported the election of Urban as a Lawyer. Panzirol. l. c. et *Annal. Eccles. a Raynaldo*, tom. xvii. He must therefore have lived at least to 1378, though in the printed epitaph he is said to have died in 1368, xvi Febr.

Ver. 7927. To Emelle ward] One of the regions of Italy was called *Æmilia*, from the *Via Æmilia*, which crossed it from Placentia to Rimini. Placentia stood upon the Po. Pitisc. *Lex. Ant. Rom.* in v. *VIA ÆMILIA*. Petrarch's description of this part of the course of the Po is a little different. He speaks of it as dividing the *Æmilian* and *Flaminian* regions from Venice—*Æmiliam atque Flaminiam Venetiamque discriminans*. But our Author's *Emelle* is plainly taken from him.

As the following Tale is almost wholly translated from Petrarch, (see the Discourse &c. §. xx.) it would be endless to cite particular passages from the original, especially as it is printed in all the Editions of Petrarch's works. It is there entitled, *De obedientia et fide uxoris Mythologia*.

Ver. 8138. The time of underne] The Glossary explains this rightly to mean *the third hour of the day, or nine of the clock*. In ver. 8837, where this word is used again, the original has—*hora tertia*. In this place it has—*hora prandii*. From whence we may collect that in Chaucer's time the *third hour, or underne*, was the usual hour of dinner.

I have never met with any Etymology of this word *underne*, but the following passage might lead one to suspect that it had some reference to *undernoon*. "In the town-book belonging to the Corporation of Stanford, 28 E. IV. it is ordeyned, that no person opyn ther sack, or set ther corn to sale afore Hour of Ten of the Bell, or els the Undernone Bell be rongyn." Peck's *Desid. Cur.* vol. i. B. vi. p. 36. In the Icelandic Dict. *Underne* is rendered *Mans diet*.

Ver. 8258. ful of nouches] The common reading is *ouches*; but I have retained the reading of the best MSS. as it may possibly assist somebody to discover the meaning of the word. I observe too that it is so written in the Inventory of the effects of Henry V. Rot. Parl. 2 H. VI. n. 31. "Item 6 *Broches et nouches* d'or garnis de divers garnades pois 31<sup>d</sup> d'or pris 35<sup>s</sup>."

Ver. 8468. of Pavis] When the text of this tale was printed, I had not sufficiently adverted to the reading of the best MSS. which is uniformly *Panik*. I have little doubt that it should be *Panik* both here and below, ver. 8640. 8814. as in Petrarch the Marquises sister is said to be married to the Count de *Panico*. In Boccaccio it is *de Panago*.

Ver. 8614. his message] His messenger. See below, ver.

8823. *Message* was commonly used for *Messenger* by the French Poets. Du Cange, in v. *Messagarius*.

Ver. 8915. as ye han do me] For, we. This is one of the most licentious corruptions of Orthography, that I remember to have observed in Chaucer. All that can be said in excuse of him is that the old Poets of other countries have not been more scrupulous. Quadrio has a long chapter, L. II. Dist. iv. cap. iv. upon the Licences taken by the Italian Poets, and especially Dante, the most licentious, as he says, of them all, *for the sake of Rime*. As long a chapter might easily be filled with the irregularities which the old French Poets committed for the same reason. It should seem, that, while Orthography was so variable, as it was in all the living European languages before the invention of Printing, the Poets thought it generally advisable to sacrifice propriety of Spelling to exactness of Rhiming. Of the former offence there were but few judges; the latter was obvious to the eye of every reader.

Ver. 9054. *Leet Chichevache*] This excellent reading is restored upon the authority of the best MSS. instead of the common one, *Chechface*. The allusion is to the subject of an old Ballad, which is still preserved in MS. *Hart.* 2251. fol. 270. b. It is a kind of Pageant, in which two Beasts are introduced, called *Bycorne* and *Chichevache*. The first is supposed to feed upon *obedient husbands*, and the other upon *patient wives*; and the humour of the piece consists in representing *Bycorne* as pampered with a superfluity of food, and *Chichevache* as half starved.

In Stow's Catalogue of Lydgate's works, at the end of Speght's Edit. of Chaucer, there is one entitled "*of two monstrous beasts Bycorne and Chichevache*." It is not improbable that Lydgate translated the Ballad now extant from some older French Poem, to which Chaucer alludes. The name of *Chichevache* is French; *Facca parca*.

Ver. 9080. *aventaille*] *The forepart of the armour*. Sk. He deduces it from *avent*. But *ventaille* was the common name for that aperture in a close helmet through which the wearer was to breathe, Nicot, in v; so that perhaps *aventaille* meant originally an helmet with such an aperture; *un heaume d'ventaille*.

Ver. 9088. and wringe, and waille] Beside the MSS. C. 1. Ask. 1. 2. and others, we have the authority of both Caxton's Edit. for concluding the *Clerkes* Tale in this manner. I say nothing of the two Edit. by Fynson, as they are mere copies of Caxton's second. But I must not conceal a circumstance, which seems to contradict the supposition that the *Marchant's* Prologue followed immediately. In those same MSS. the following Stanza is interposed.

This worthy Clerk whan ended was his tale,  
Our Hoste saide and swore by cokles bones,  
Me were lever than a barrel of ale  
My wif at home had herd this legend ones;  
This is a gentill tale for the nones,  
As to my purpos, wiste ye my wille,  
But thing that wol not be, let it be stille

Whatever may be thought of the genuineness of these lines, they can at best, in my opinion, be considered as a fragment of an *unfinished* Prologue, which Chaucer might once have intended to place at the end of the *Clerkes* tale. When he determined to connect that tale with the *Marchant's* in another manner, he may be supposed, notwithstanding, to have left this Stanza for the present uncanceled in his MS. He has made use of the thought, and some of the lines, in the Prologue which connects the *Monkes* Tale with *Melibeus*, ver. 13695—13900.

The two additional Stanzas, which were first printed in Ed. Urr. from MS. F. (II. i. in Urry's List) and which serve to introduce the *Frankleins* tale next to the *Clerkes*, are evidently, I think, spurious. They are not found, as I recollect, in any MS. except that cited by Mr. Urry and MS. B. If these two MSS. were of much greater age and authority than they really are, they would weigh but little in opposition to the number and character of those MSS. in which these Stanzas are wanting, and in which the *Marchant's* tale stands next to the *Clerkes*.

Another proof of the spuriousness of these Stanzas is,

that they are almost entirely made up of lines taken from the Prologue, which in this Edition, upon the authority of the best MSS. is prefixed to the *Squieres* Tale. See below, ver. 10301.

Ver. 9172. *Ne take no wif*] What follows to ver. 9180 incl. is taken from the *Liber aureolus Theophrasti de nuptiis*, as quoted by Hieronymus, *contra Jovinianum*, and from thence by John of Salisbury, Polycrat. l. viii. c. xi. *Quod si propter dispensationem domus, et languoris solatia, et fugam solitudinis, ducuntur uxores, nullo melius dispensat servus fidelis, &c. Assidere autem agrolanti magis possunt amici et vernulae beneficiis obligati quam illa, quae nobis imputet lachrymas suas, &c.*

Ver. 9180. *many a day*] After this verse in the common Edit. are these two,

And if thou take to thee a wife untrew  
Full oftentime it shall thee sore rew.

In MSS. A. C. and B. α. they stand thus—

And if thou take a wif be wel gywar  
Of on <sup>day</sup> which I declare ne dar.

In MSS. C. 1. HA. D. thus—

And if thou take a wif of heye lynage  
She shal be hauteyn and of gret costage.

In MS. B. β. thus—

And if thou take a wif in thin age olde  
Ful lightly mayst thou be a cokewold.

In MSS. Ask. 1. 2. E. H. B. ζ. N. c. and both Caxton's Edit. they are entirely omitted, and so I believe they should be. If any one of these couplets should be allowed to be from the hand of Chaucer, it can only be considered as the opening of a new argument, which the author, for some reason or other, immediately abandoned, and consequently would have cancelled, if he had lived to publish his work.

Ver. 9236. *Lo how that Jacob*] The same instances are quoted in *Melibeus*, p. 83.

Ver. 9250. *As saith Senek*] In Marg. C. 1. *Sicut nihil est superius benigna conjuge, ita nihil est crudelius infesta muliere*. Seneca.

Ver. 9251. *as Caton biȝ*] i. e. biddeth. See the n. on ver. 187. The line referred to is quoted in Marg. C. 1.

*Uxoris linguam, si frugi est, ferre memento.*

It is in L. iii. Dist. 25.

Ver. 9259. *If thou lovest thyself*] The allusion is to Ephes. v. 28. He that loveth his wife, loveth himself. The MSS. read—*If thou lovest thyself thou lovest thy wif*—which, I think, is certainly wrong. I have printed, from conjecture only—*love thou thy wif*. But upon reconsidering the passage, I think it may be brought still nearer to the Apostles doctrine by writing—*Thou lovest thyself, & thou lovest thy wif*.

Ver. 9298. *Wades bote*] Upon this Mr. Speght remarks as follows: "Concerning Wade and his bote called Guingelot, as also his straunge exploits in the same, because the matter is long and fabulous, I pass it over."—*Tantissime rem tam negligenter?* Mr. Speght probably did not foresee, that Posterity would be as much obliged to him for a little of this *fabulous matter* concerning Wade and his bote, as for the gravest of his annotations. The story of Wade is mentioned again by our author in his *Troilus*, iii. 615.

He songe, she playede, he tolde a tale of Wade

It is there put proverbially for any *romantic history*; but the allusion in the present passage to *Wades bote* can hardly be explained, without a more particular knowledge of his adventures, than we are now likely ever to attain.

Ver. 9348. *disputoun*] *Disputation*. So ver. 11908. 15344. See Gower, *Conf. Am.* fol. 15. b.

In great *desputoun* they were.

and fol. 150. b. 151. b.

Ver. 9409. A chidester] So MS. A. See the note on ver. 2019.

Ver. 9410. a man is wood] In MS. A. *mannishwed*; in C. 1. *mannish wood*.

Ver. 9584. Ne he Theodomas] This person is mentioned again as a famous trumpeter in the H. of F. iii. 168. but upon what authority I really do not know. I should suspect that our author met with him, and the anecdote alluded to, in some *Romantic History* of Thebes.

He is prefixed to proper names emphatically, according to the Saxon usage. See before, ver. 9242. *him* Holofernes; ver. 9247. *him* Mardochee; and below, ver. 9608.

Of *Aïre* Philologie and *Aïm* Mercury.

Ver. 9622. As that she bare it] As this line is not only in all the best MSS. but also in Edit. Ca. 2. it seems very extraordinary that the later Editions should have exchanged it for the following.

So fresh she was and thereto so licand.

Ver. 9628. his service bedeth] *Profereth*. So this word is explained in another passage, ver. 16533.

Lo, how this thefe coude *his service bede*!  
Ful soth it is, that *swiche profered service*  
Stinketh, as witnessen thise olde wise.

See also ver. 8236.

Ver. 9659. false of holy hewe] I have added *of*, from conjecture. See below, ver. 12355. *under hewe* *of holiness*.

Ver. 9681. vernage] *Vernaccia* ITAL. "Credo sic dictum (says Skinner) quasi *Vernaccia*, ab agro *Veronensi*, in quo optimum ex hoc genere vinum crecit." But the Vernage, whatever may have been the reason of its name, was probably a wine of Crete, or of the neighbouring continent. Froiss. v. iv. c. 38. De l'isle de Candie il leur venoit trebonnes *malvoisies* et grenaches (r. *germaches*) dont ils estoient largement servis et confortez. Our author in another place, ver. 13000, 1. joins together the wines of *Malveste* and *Vernage*. *Malvasia* was a town upon the eastern coast of the Morea, near the site of the ancient Epidaurus Limera, within a small distance from Crete.

Ver. 9684. Dan Constantine] *Dan*, a corruption of *Demetrius*, was a title of honour usually given to Monks, as *Dow* and *Dow* still are in France and Spain. See below, ver. 13635.

Whether shal I call you my lord *Dan* John,  
Or *Dan* Thomas, or elles *Dan* Albon?

*Dan* Constantine, according to Fabric. Bibl. Med. Æt. t. 1. p. 423. Ed. Pat. 4to. wrote about the year 1080. His works, including the treatise mentioned in the text, were printed at Basil, 1536. fol.

Ver. 9690. And they han don] This line has also been left out of the later Edit. though it is in all the best MSS. and in Edit. Ca. 2. To supply its place the following line—

So hasted Januarie it must be don—

has been inserted after ver. 9691. and the four lines have been made to rime together by adding *some* at the end of ver. 9689.

Let volden all this hous in curteis wise *some*.

Ver. 9714. Ne hurt himselfen] In the *Persones Tale* we have a contrary doctrine. "God wote, a man may alee himself with his owen knif, and make himself drunken of his owen tonne," p. 166.

Ver. 9761. In ten of Taure] The greatest number of MSS. read, *teno*, *two*, *loo*, or *to*. But the time given (*four days complete*, ver. 9767.) is not sufficient for the Moon to pass from the 2d degree of Taurus into Cancer. The mean daily motion of the Moon being  $-13^{\circ} 10' 35''$ , her motion in 4 days is  $-1^{\circ} 22' 48''$  or not quite 33 degrees; so that, supposing her to set out from the 3d of Taurus, she would not, in that time, be advanced beyond the 25th degree of Gemini. If she set out from the 10th degree of Taurus, as I have corrected the text, she might properly enough be said, in four days, to be *gliden into* Cancer.

Ver. 9888. a dogge for the bowe] a dog used in shooting See before, ver. 6061.

Ver. 9907. so brenningly] Vulg. *benignly*. MSS. Ask. 1. 2. read, *servently*; which is probably a gloss for the true word, *brenningly*. See before, ver. 1566. MS. A. reads, *benyngly*.

Ver. 9983. For as good is] The reading in the text is from MS. Ask. 1. MS. A. reads thus:

For as good is al blind deceived be.

I should not dialike

For as good is al blind deceived to be,  
As be deceived, when a man may see.

Ver. 10000. What sleight is it] These lines are a little different in MSS. C. 1. HA.

What sleight is it, *though it be long and hote*,  
That *love* n'll find it out in som manere?

Ver. 10104. Which that he ravished out of Ethna] So MS. A. In some other MSS. *Ethna*, by a manifest error of the copyist, has been changed into *Proserpina*. The passage being thus made nonsense, other transcribers left out the line, and substituted this in its stead.

"Eche after other right as ony line."

Ver. 10121. Among a thousand] Ecclesiastes vii. 28. This argument is treated in much the same manner in Melibæus, p. 108—109.

Ver. 10188. The Romain gestes] He means the collection of stories called *Gesta Romanorum*; of which I once thought to say a few words here, in order to recommend it to a little more attention than it has hitherto met with from those who have written upon the poetical inventions of the middle ages; but as many of the stories in that collection are taken from a treatise of Petrus Alphonsus, *De Clericali disciplina*, an older and still more forgotten work, I shall reserve what I have to offer upon this subject till I come to the *Tale of Melibæus*, p. 166. where *Piers Alphonsus* is quoted.

Ver. 10227. Gan pullen] After this verse, the Edit. (except Ca. 2. and Fyns. 1. 2.) have eight others of the lowest and most superfluous ribaldry that can well be conceived. It would be a mere loss of time to argue from the lines themselves, that they were not written by Chaucer, as we have this short and decisive reason for rejecting them, that they are not found in any one MS. of authority. They are not found in MSS. A. C. 1. Ask. 1. 2. HA. B. C. D. G. Bod. a. C. y. 2. 1. C. 2. T. N. Ch. In MSS. E. H. L. W. either the whole tale, or that part where they might be looked for, is wanting. The only tolerable MS. in which I have seen them is F. and there they have been added in the margin, by a later hand, perhaps not older than Caxton's first Edit.

Ver. 10240. Out! helpe!] Two lines, which follow this in the common Edit. are omitted for the reasons stated in the note upon ver. 10227. And I shall take the same liberty, upon exactly the same grounds, with four more, which have been inserted in those Edit. after ver. 10250.

Ver. 10241. O stronge lady store] As all the best MSS. support this reading, I have not departed from it, for fear *store* should have some signification that I am not aware of. Some MSS. have *stowre*. MS. G. *houre*. Edit. Ca. 2. *hore*. *Hóra*, *meretrix*. ISLAND.

Ver. 10261. Ye mase, ye mase] The final *s* has been added without authority, and unnecessarily. This line is very oddly written in MSS. Ask. 1. 2.

Ya may ya may ya quod she.

Ver. 10293. It has been said in the Discourse &c. §. xxiii. that this new Prologue has been prefixed to the Squire's tale upon the authority of the best MSS. They are, as follows; A. C. 1. Ask. 1. 2. HA. D. Bod. a. y. 2. The concurrence of the first five MSS. would alone have been more than sufficient to outweigh the authorities in favour of the other Prologue. Edit. Ca. 2. (though it has not this Prologue) agrees with these MSS. in placing the Squire's tale after the Marchants.

Ver. 10296. welve] This verb is generally used trans-

tively; to *wave*, to *relinquish* a thing. But it has also a neuter signification; to *depart*; as here. See also ver. 4728. 9357.

Ver. 10312. Sin women connen utter] MS. A. reads, *oute*; but others have *utter*; which I believe is right, though I confess that I do not clearly understand the passage. The phrase has occurred before, ver. 6103.

With danger *utters* we all our *chaffure*.

Ver. 10344. Of whiche the eldest sone] I have added *sone*, for the sake of the metre.

Ver. 10364. and in his mansion] *His* refers to Mars, and not to the Sun. "*Aries est l'exaltation du Soleil* ou xix. de gre. et si est *Aries* maison de Mars." *Calend. des Berg.* Sign. I. ult. Leo was the *Mansion of the Sun*. *Ibid.* Sig. K. 1. *Aries* is there also said to be *signe chaullit et sec*.

Ver. 10381. strange sewes] A sewer was an officer so called from his placing the dishes upon the table. *Assesour*, Fr. from *asseoir*, to place. In the establishment of the King's household there are still four *Gentlemen Sewers*. *Sewes* here seem to signify *dishes*, from the same original; as *assiette* in Fr. still signifies a *little dish*, or *plate*. See Gower, *Conf. Am.* fol. 115. b.

The fleste, whan it was so to-bewe,  
She taketh, and maketh therof a *sewe*—

Ver. 10382. heronsewen] *Heronseaus*. Fr. according to the Glossary. At the Intronzation of Archbp. Nevill, 6 Edward IV. there were *Heronseawes* illi C. lxl. Collect. vol. vi. 2. At another feast in 1530 we read of "16 *Heronsewes*, every one 12d." Peck's D. C. vol. ii. 12.

Ver. 10509. a gentil Polleis coursour] A horse of *Apulia*, which in old Fr. was usually called *Pollie*. The horses of that country were much esteemed. MS. Bod. James vi. 142. Richard, Archbp. of Armagh, in the xvth Century, says in praise of our St. Thomas, "quod nec mulus Hispanie, nec dextrarius *Apulia*, nec repedo *Æthiopie*, nec elephantus *Asie*, nec camelus *Syrie* hoo salno nostro Anglie aptior aive audentior invenitur ad prelia." He had before informed his audience, that *Thomas*, Anglice, idem est quod *Thom. Asinus*. There is a Patent in Rymer, 2 E. II. *De dextrariis* in *Lumbardia emendis*.

Ver. 10523. the Grekes hors Sinon] This is rather an awkward expression for—the horse of *Sinon the Greek*; or, as we might say, *Sinon the Greek's horse*.

Ver. 10548. Alhazen and Vitellon] *Alhazeni et Vitellonis Optica* are extant, printed at Basil, 1572. The first is supposed by his Editor to have lived about A. D. 1100, and the second to A. D. 1270.

Ver. 10561. Canacees] This word should perhaps have had an accent on the first e—*Canacées*, to shew that it is to be pronounced as of four syllables. So also below, ver. 10945.

And swouneth eft in *Canacées* barme.

Ver. 10570. y'knowen it so ferne] *Known* it so *before*. I take *ferne* to be a corruption of *forne* (foran, Sax.). So in Tro. v. 1176. *ferne yere* seems to signify *former years*. In P. P. fol. lxxx. b. *ferne ago* is used as *long ago*.

Ver. 10583. chambre de parements] *Chambre de parement*, is translated by Cotgrave, the presence-chamber; and *Lit de parement*, a bed of state. *Parements* originally signified all sorts of ornamental furniture, or clothes, from *parer*, Fr. to adorn. See ver. 2503. and Leg. of G. W. Dido, ver. 181.

To dauncing chambres, ful of parementes,  
Of riche beddes and of pavementes,  
This *Eneas* is ledde after the mete.

The Italians have the same expression. Ist. d. Cono. Trident. l. iii. li Pontefice—ritornato alla camera de' *parementi* co' Cardinali—

Ver. 10587. in the fish] See the note on ver. 6284.

Ver. 10660. Til that wel nigh] *That* has been added for the sake of the metre. We might read with some MSS.

Til wel nigh the day began for to spring.

Ver. 10663. That moche drinks and labour] So MSS. C. 1. HA. In MS. A. it is, *That mirthe and labour*. In Ask. 1. 2. *That after moche labour*. In several other MSS. and Editt. Ca. 1. 2. *That moche mete and labour*. We must search further, I apprehend, for the true reading.

Ver. 10665. bloud in domination] V. Lib. Galeus adscr. de natura &c. Ed. Charter. T. V. p. 327. *Sanguis dominatur horis septem ab hora noctis nona ad horam diei tertiam*.

Ver. 10749. A faucon peregrine] This species of Falcon is thus described in the *Tresor de Brunet Latin*, P. 1. Ch. *Des Faucons*. MS. Reg. 19. C. X. "La seconde lignie est *faucons*, qui hom apele *pelerins*, par ce que nus ne trouve son n. ains est pris autresi come en *pelerinage*, et est mult legiers, a norrir, et mult cortois, et vaillans, et de bone maniere." Chaucer adds, that this Falcon was of *fremde*, or *fremed*, lond; from a foreign country.

Ver. 10749. leden] *Language*, Sax. a corruption of *Latin*. Dante uses *Latino* in the same sense. Canz. 1.

E cantine gli angelli  
Ciascuno in suo latino.

Ver. 10840. crowned mallice] The reader of taste will not be displeased, I trust, at my having received this reading upon the authority of MS. A. only. The common reading is *cruel*.

Ver. 10921. thilke text] Boethius, l. iii. met. 2.

Repetunt proprios quosque recursum,  
Reditque suo singula gaudet—

which our author has thus translated: "All thynges seken aye to hir propre course, and all thynges rejoycen on hir retourninge agayne to hir nature." The comparison of the Bird is taken from the same place.

Ver. 10958. velouettes blew] *Felvet*, from the Fr. *Felou*, *Felouette*. See Du Cange, in v. *VILLOSA*, *VELLUTUM*. See Saintré, t. iii. p. 664.

I will just add, that as *blew* was the colour of *truth* (see C. L. ver. 248) so *green* belonged to *inconstancy*. Hence in a *Ballade upon an inconstant lady* (among Stowe's Additions to Chaucer's works, p. 551. Ed. Urry), the burden is—

Instede of blew thus may ye were al grene.

Ver. 10962. thise tidifis] The tidife is mentioned as an inconstant bird in the Leg. of G. W. ver. 154.

As doth the *tidif* for newefangelness.

Skinner supposes it to be the *Titmouze*; but he produces no authority for his supposition; nor have I any to oppose to it.

Ver. 10963. 4. are transposed from the order in which they stand in all the Editt. and MSS. that I have seen. Some of the best MSS. however read—*And ples*—which rather countenances the transposition. My only excuse for such a liberty must be, that I cannot make any good sense of them in the common order.

Ver. 10977. 8. are also transposed; but upon the authority of MSS. A. C. 1. and, I believe, some others; though, being satisfied of the certainty of the emendation, I have omitted to take a note of their concurrence. Ed. Ca. 2. agrees with those MSS. According to the common arrangement, old Cambuscan is to *wyn Theodora to his wif*; and we are not told what is to be the object of *Algarsif's* adventures.

Ver. 10981. of Camballo] MS. A. reads *Caballo*. But that is not my only reason for suspecting a mistake in this name. It seems clear from the context, that the person here intended is not a brother, but a lover of Canace.

Whe fought in listes with the *brethren* two  
For Canace, or that he might hire *winne*.

The *brethren* two are, obviously, the two brethren of Canace, who have been mentioned above, *Algarsif* and *Camballo*. In MSS. Ask. 1. 2. it is—*hir brethren* two; which would put the matter out of all doubt. *Camballo* could not fight with himself.

Again, if this *Camballo* be supposed to be the brother of Canace, and to fight in defence of her with some two

brethren, who might be suitors to her, according to Spenser's fiction, he could not properly be said to *winne* his sister, when he only prevented others from winning her.

The outline therefore of the unfinished part of this tale, according to my idea, is nearly this; the conclusion of the story of the *Falcon*,

"By mediation of *Camballus*,"

with the help of the *Ring*; the conquests of *Cambuscan*; the winning of Theodora by *Algarsi*, with the assistance of the *horse of brass*; and the marriage of Canace to some knight, who was first obliged to fight for her with her two brethren; a method of courtship very consonant to the spirit of ancient Chivalry.

Ver. 10984. and ther I left] After this verse, in MS. C. 1. and others, is the following note: "Here endeth the Squieres tale as meche as Chaucer made." The two lines, which in the Editt. and some MSS. are made to begin a third part, are wanting in all the best MSS.

"Apollo whirlieth up his chare so his  
Til that the god Mercurius house the alie."

They certainly have not the least appearance of belonging to this place. I should guess that they were originally scribbled by some vacant reader in the blank space, which is commonly left at the end of this tale, and afterwards transcribed, as Chaucer's, by some copyist of more diligence than sagacity.

Ver. 10985. In faith, Squier] The authorities for giving this Prologue to the *Frankleyn*, and for placing his tale next to the *Squieres*, are MSS. A. Ask. 1. 2. H.A. Bod. a. 7. In MS. C. 1. there is a blank of near two pages at the end of the *Squieres* tale, but the *Frankleyn's* tale follows, beginning at ver. 11066. This arrangement is also supported by Ed. Ca. 2. For the rest, see the *Discourse*, &c. §. xxv.

Ver. 11021. Thise olde gentil Bretons] Of the collection of *British Lays* by *Marie* something has been said in the *Discourse* &c. n. 24. I will here only quote a few passages from that collection, to shew how exactly Chaucer and she agree in their manner of speaking of the *Armorican bards*. The *Lay of Etidis* concludes thus: MS. Harl. 978. fol. 181.

De l'aventure de ces treis  
Li auntien Breton curteis  
Firent li lai pur remembrer,  
Qe hum nel deust pas oblier.

The *Lay of Guigemar* thus: fol. 146.

De cest cunte, ke o aves,  
Fu Guigemar le lai troves,  
Q'hum fait en harpe e en rote,  
Dont est a oir la note.

The *Lay of Chevrefoil* begins fol. 171.

Asez me plect, e bien le voil,  
Du lai qe hum nune chevrefoil  
Q'la verite vus encunt,  
Pur quoi il fu fet e dunt.  
Plusurs le me unt cunte e dit,  
E jeo l'ai trove en escrit,  
De Tristram e de la reine,  
De lur amour qui tant fu fine,  
Dunt il eurent meinte dour,  
Puis murent en un jur.

In one particular Chaucer goes further, as I remember, than *Marie*, when he says, that these *Lays* were

"Rimeyed in hir firste Breton tonge,"

If *rimeyed* be understood to mean *written in Rime*. But it may very well signify only *versified*. Indeed the Editor of the *Dictionnaire de la langue Bretonne* by Dom Pelletier seems to doubt, whether the *Armorican* language be capable of any sort of poetical harmony. "Nous ne voyons pas que nos Bretons Armoricains aient cultivé la poésie; et la langue telle qu'ils la parlent, ne parolt pas pouvoir se plier à la mesure, à la douceur et à la harmonie des vers." Pref. p. ix. A strange doubt in him, who might have found in the Dictionary, which he has published, quotations from two *Armorican* poems, viz. *les prophéties de Gwenglaw* and *la destruction de Jerusalem*, both in

Rime. See *Arabat. Bagat.* And he himself speaks in the same preface, p. viii. of *la vie de S. Gwenold, premier Abbe de Landevenec, écrite en vers*. The oldest MS. however now known in the language, according to his account, is that containing *les prophéties de Gwenglaw*, written in 1480.

Ver. 11113. Not fer fro Penmark] The best MSS. have blundered in this name. They write it *Pedmark*. But MSS. Bod. a. e. and Ed. Ca. 2. have it right—*Penmark*. The later Editt. have changed it ridiculously enough into *Denmark*.

Penmark is placed in the maps upon the western coast of Bretagne between Brest and Port L'Orient. Walsingham mentions a descent of the English in 1403, *apud Penarch* (i. Penmarch) p. 369. See Lobineau, H. de Bret. t. i. p. 503. In the same history, *de Penmarc* occurs very frequently as a family-name. The etymology of the word, from *Pen* (*caput, mons*) and *Mark* (*limes, regio*) is evidently British.

Ver. 11120. Cairrud] This word is also of British original, signifying the *Red city*; as *Cair guent* in this island signified the *White city*. *Arviragus* is a known British name from the time of Juvenal.

Ver. 11127. Dorigene] Drogen, or Dorguen, was the name of the wife of Alain I. Lobineau, t. i. p. 70. See also the index to t. ii.

Ver. 11250. Aurelius] This name, though of Roman original, was common, we may presume, among the Britons. One of the princes mentioned by Gildas was called *Aurelius Conanus*. Another British king is named *Aurelius Ambrosius* by Geoffrey of Monmouth. It may be remarked of this last author, that although he has not paid the least regard to truth in his narration of facts, he has been very attentive to probability in his names both of persons and places.

Ver. 11262. as doth a furie in belle] It is "a fire," in MSS. C. 1. Ask. 1. 2. H.A. which, perhaps, ought to have been followed: though I cannot say that I well understand either of the readings. *Fury* and *fuyr* have been confounded before, ver. 2386.

Ver. 11317. Is ther non other grace] I have inserted these two lines in this place upon the authority of MS. A. supported by MSS. E. Bod. C. They have usually been placed after ver. 11310.

Ver. 11422. Pamphilus for Galathee] Mr. Urry, misled by his classical learning, has altered this most licentiously—

"Than *Polyphemus* did for Galathee."

But the allusion is plainly to the first lines of a Latin Poem, which was very popular in the time of Chaucer, in which one *Pamphilus* gives a history of his amour with *Galatea*.

The poem begins thus: MS. Cotton. Titus A. xx.

*Liber Pamphilii.*  
Vulneror et clausum porto sub pectore telum,  
Crescit et assidue plaga dolorque mihi.  
Et ferientis adhuc non audeo dicere nomen,  
Nec sinit aspectus plaga videre suae.

This poem, by the name of *Pamphilus*, is quoted in our author's *Melibeus*, p. 116. It is extant in MS. in many libraries, and it has also been printed more than once. *Leyser. Hist. Poet. Medii Aevi*, p. 2071. (1171.) *Catal. Gaignat.* n. 2233, 2234.

Ver. 11453. tregetoures] The profession of a *Joculator* or *Juggler*, was anciently very comprehensive, as appears from this passage of the *Breviari d'Amors*. See the *Discourse* &c. n. 25.

Altressi peccan li joglar,  
Que ssabo cantar e balar,  
E ssabo tocar estrumens,  
O ssabon encantar las gens,  
O ffar autra joglayria—

In the time of Chaucer, the persons who exercised the first mentioned branches of the art were called, generally *Minstrels*; and the name of *Jogelour* was, in a manner, appropriated to those, who, by sleight of hand and

machines, produced such illusions of the senses as are usually supposed to be effected by enchantment: see above, ver. 7048. This species of *Jogelour* is here called a *Tregetour*. They are joined together in company with *Magiolans*. H. of F. iii. 168.

Ther saw I playing *Jogelours*,  
*Magiciens* and *Tregetours*,  
And *Philoneses*, *Charmeresses*—  
And *Clerkes* she which conne wel  
All this *magike naturel*.—

See also the following ver. 187—191.

If we compare the feats of the *Tregetours*, as described in this passage, with those which are afterwards performed by the *Clerkes magike*, for the entertainment of his guests, ver. 11801—11819, we shall find them very similar; and they may both be illustrated by the following account which Sir John Mandeville has given of the exhibitions before the *Grete Chan*. "And than comen *Jogelours* and *Enchantours*, that don many marvayles: for they maken to come in the ayr the Sonne and the Mone, be seminge, to every mannes sight. And after they maken the nyght so derk, that no man may see no thing. And afre they maken the day to come ayen fair and pleasant with bright Sonne to every mannes sight. And than they bringen in *daunces* of the fairest damyselles of the world and richest arrayed. And afre they maken to comen in other damyselles, bringinge coupes of gold, fulle of mylk of dyverse bestes, and yeven drynke to lordes and to ladyes. And than they make *Knyghes* to *jousten* in armes fulle lustyly; and they rennen togidre a gret randoun; and they frumohen togidre fulle ferously; and they broken here speces so rudely, that the trophouns fleen in sprotes and peeces alle aboute the Halle. And than they make to come in *Awtyng* for the Hart and for the Boor, with houndes renning with open mouthes. And many other thinges they don be craft of hir enchauntementes, that it is marveyle for to see. And suche playes of desport they make, til the taking up of the boordes." Mand. Trav. p. 288, 8. See also p. 261. "and wher it be by craft or by nygromancye, I wot nere."

The Glossary derives *Tregetour* from the *BARB. LAT. Fricator*; but the derivatives of that family are *tricheur*, *tricherie*, *trick*, &c. Nor can I find the word *Tregetour* in any language but our own. It seems clearly to be formed from *treget*, which is frequently used by Chaucer for *deceit*, *impotence*. R. R. 6367. 6312. 6823. and so is *tregetry*, ibid. 6374. 6382. From whence *treget* itself may have been derived is more difficult to say; but I observe, that *trebuchet*, the French name for a military engine, is called by Chaucer *trepetet*. R. R. 6379. and by Knighton, 2672. *treppet*; and that this same word *trebuchet*, in French, signified also a machine for catching birds. Du Cange, in v. *TARPESTR*. Hinc appellatio mansit apud nos instrumentis, aut machinulis, suspensis et lapillis, ad captandas aviculas. Has enim etiam *trebuchets* appellamus. Muratori, in his *Antiq. Med. Æ. Diss.* xxvi. p. 473, informs us, that *trabocchetto*, or *trabocchetto*, in Italian (which he explains to be the same as *trebuchet* in French) signified also another instrument of fraud, which he describes thus: *Seculis Italie turbatissimis—in usu fuere teterrima insidiarum loca, id est, in cubiculis pavementum perforatum, ac lineâ tabulâ (Ribalta) appellabant* ita caute cooperatum, ut qui improvide alteram tabulæ partem pedibus premeret, cedente ipsa in ima rueret. This was clearly a species of *trap-door*. The reader will judge whether the *Tregetour* may not possibly have been so called from his frequent use of these insidious machines in his operations.

That a great deal of machinery was requisite to produce the *apparences*, or illusions, enumerated by Chaucer in this passage, is very certain; but not long after the art of a *Tregetour* seems to have been reduced to that of a modern *Juggler*, mere sleight of hand. In Lydgate's translation of *The Dance of Macabre*, MS. Harl. 116. he has introduced a *Tregetour* speaking thus:

What may availle mankynde [f. *magike*] naturale,  
Or any craft shewed by apparence,  
Or course of sterres above celestiale,  
Or of heven all the influence,

Ayenst deth to stand at defence?  
*Lygarde de mayne* now helpeth me right nought.  
Farewell my craft and all such sapience,  
For deth hath more maistries than I have wrought.

He has also the following speech of Death to a famous *Tregetour*:

Maister John Rykell, sometime *Tregetour*  
Of noble Henri kings of Engeland,  
And of France the mighty conquerour,  
For all the sleights and turning of thyne bonde,  
Thou must come nere this dance to understonde;  
Nought may availle all thy conclusions.  
For deth shortly, nother on see nor londe,  
Is not dysceyved by noon illusions.

Ver. 11567. And nowel crieth] *Noël*, in French, is derived from *Natalis*, and signified originally a cry of joy at Christmas, *le jour natal de notre Seigneur*. Menage in v. *NOUVEL*. It was afterwards the usual cry of the people upon all occasions of joy and festivity. Hist. de Charles VII. par Chartier, p. 3. at the proclamation of Henry VI. fut crié sur la fosse de son pere à haute voix, Vive le Roy Henry. Roy de France et d'Angleterre; et avec cela fut crié *Noël*, des assistants, confortans leadits Anglois.

Ver. 11585. His tables *Toletanes*] The *Astronomical Tables*, composed by order of Alphonso X, king of Castile, about the middle of the xiii<sup>th</sup> Century, were called sometimes *Tabule Toletane*, from their being adapted to the city of Toledo. There is a very elegant copy of them in MS. Harl. 3647. I am not sufficiently skilled in the ancient Astronomy to add any thing to the explanation of the following technical terms, drawn chiefly from those tables, which has been given in the *Addit. to Glom. Urr. v. EXPANS VERES*, p. 81.

Ver. 11679. these stories bere witness] They are all taken from Hieronymus contra Jovinianum, l. i. c. 38.

Ver. 11766. To alle wives] After this verse the two following are found in several MSS.

The same thing I say of Billa,  
Of Rhodogone and of Valeria.

But as they are wanting in MSS. A. C. 1. Aak. 1. 2. HA. I was not unwilling to leave them out.

Ver. 11802. She n'olde] After this verse Ed. Ca. 2. has the six following:

Peraventure an hepe of you I wis  
Will holden him a lewed man in this,  
That he wol put his wife in jeopardy.  
Herkeneth the tale, er ye upon him crie.  
She may have better fortune than you semeth;  
And whan that ye han herde the tale demeth.

These lines are more in the style and manner of Chaucer than interpolations generally are; but as I do not remember to have found them in any MS. I could not receive them into the text. I think too, that, if they were written by him, he would probably, upon more mature consideration, have suppressed them, as unnecessarily anticipating the catastrophe of the tale.

Ver. 11807. As she was doun] *Ready*. This old word is restored from MSS. A. Aak. 1. 2. See P. L. p. 236. 291.

Ver. 11928. Which was the moeste free] The same question is stated in the conclusion of Boccaccio's *Tale. Philoc.* l. v. *Dubitali ora qual di costoro fusse maggior liberalità &c.* The Queen determines in favour of the husband.

Ver. 11929. Ye, let that passen] I have said all that I have to say, in favour of this Prologue to the Doctor's tale, in the *Discourse &c.* §. xxviii. It is only found in MS. A. In MSS. C. 1. HA. the following note is at the end of the *Frankelien's tale*: "Here endeth the Fr. T. and biginneth the *Philiciens tale* without a Prologue."

Ver. 11993. For wine and youthe] The context, I think, requires that we should read,

For wine and slouth don Venus encrease.

He is giving the reason, why she avoided *Slogardie*. *sm* did not permit Bacchus to have maistrie of hire mouth; because wine and slouth encrease the amorous inclina-

*Boccaccio has a version of this*

tions, as oil and grease do fire. I can make no sense of *youths, or thoughts*, as some MSS. read.

Ver. 12051. The doctour] Over against this line in the margin of MS. C. 1. is written "Augustinus;" which means, I suppose, that this description of Envy is taken from S. Austin. But I doubt whether Chaucer meant to quote that Saint by the title of The doctour. It rather seems to be an idle parenthesis like that, ver. 7269.

Ver. 12074. a cheri] So the best MSS. and Ed. Ca. 2. The common Editt. have *client*. In the *Rom. de la R.* where this story is told, ver. 5815-5894, Claudius is called *Sergent* of Appius: and accordingly Chaucer a little lower, ver. 12204. calls him "servant-unto-Appius."

In the *Discourse* &c. §. xxix. I forgot to mention the *Rom. de la Rose* as one of the sources of this tale; though, upon examination, I find that our author has drawn more from thence, than from either Gower or Livy.

Ver. 12159. For love] *Rom. de la R.* 5871.

*Car par amour et sans haine  
A sa belle fille Virgine  
Tantost a la teste coupee,  
Et puis au Juge presentee  
Devant tous en plain Consistoire,  
Et le Juge, selon l'histoire,  
Le commanda tantost a prendre——*

See below, v. 12190-3. The speeches of Virginus and his daughter are of Chaucer's own invention.

Ver. 12190. See P. L. 18.

Ver. 12233. Of bothe yeftes] This line is restored from MSS. C. 1. H.A. It had been supplied in the common copies by the following:

But hereof wol I not proceed as now.

Ver. 12235. a pitous tale] This is the reading of two good MSS. A. and H.A. but I believe it to be a gloss. The other copies read *erme/ful*, which is near the truth. It should be *erme/ful*. *Erme*, Sax. signifies *miser*. Hence *ermelice*, *miser*. Chr. Sax. 65. *ermthe*, *miseria*, *ibid.* 141. And a little lower, ver. 12246, *to erme* is used for *to grieve* as the Sax. *earman* is, Chr. Sax. 188. 14.

Ver. 12239. thy *Jordanes*] This word is in Walsingham, p. 298. "dum olim, quas *Jordanes* vocamus, ad ejus collum colligantur." This is part of the punishment of a pretended *Phisicus et astrologus*, who had deceived the people by a false prediction. Hollinshed calls them *two Jorden pots*, p. 440.

Ver. 12240. Thin *ypocras*] *Ypocras*, or *Hippocras*, and *Galianes*, should both have been printed, as proper names, with great initial letters. See the note on ver. 433.

Ver. 12245. Said I not wel?] All the best MSS. agree in giving this phrase to the Host in this place. It must remind us of the similar phrase, *said I well?* which occurs so frequently in the mouth of Shakespeare's *Host of the Garter*; and may be sufficient, with the other circumstances of general resemblance, to make us believe, that Shakespeare, when he drew that character, had not forgotten his Chaucer.

Ver. 12279. To *saffron*] So MS. A. and Ed. Ca. 2. I have preferred it to the common reading *savor*, as more expressive, and less likely to have been a gloss. Saffron was used to give colour as well as flavour.

The next lines are thus read in MSS. C. 1. Ask. 1. 2. H.A.

*In every village and in every toun,  
This is my tyme, and shal ever was;  
Radix malorum est cupiditas.  
Than shew I forth, &c.*

And perhaps I ought to have followed them.

Ver. 12297. Fasting ydrunken] The prepositive particle *y* has been added for the sake of the metre.

Ver. 12340. gon a blake beried] So all the MSS. I think, except Ask. 2. which reads "on blake be ryed." Skinner explains *blakeberied* to mean *in nigras et inauspicatas domos miseris*. I really cannot guess what it means

Ver. 12341. For certes] See R. R. ver. 5763.

For oft gode predicacioun  
Cometh of evil entencioun.

Ver. 12409. Hem thought the Jewes] The same thought is repeated in the *Persones Tale*, p. 159.

Ver. 12411. *tombesteres*] *Women-dancers*, from the Sax. *tumban*, to dance. He uses the word again in the *Test.* of L. B. 2. The Editt. read *tomblesteres*; which is a later word, formed, like our *tumbler*, from *tumbelan*, the frequentative of *tumban*.

With respect to the termination in *stere*, see the note on ver. 2019. and in the next line *fruitlesteres* are to be understood to be *female sellers of fruit*.

Ver. 12417. The holy writ] In marg. C. 1. *Nolite inebriari vino, in quo est luxuria*.

Ver. 12426. Seneca] Perhaps he refers to *Epist. LXXXIII.* *Extende in plures dies illum ebrii habitum: nunquid de furore dubitabis? nunc quoque non est minor sed brevior.*

Ver. 12442. For while that Adam] At this line, the margin of MS. C. 1. quotes Hieronym. c. Jovinian. *Quam diu jejunavit Adam in Paradiso fuit. Comedit et ejectus est. Statim duxit uxorem.*

Ver. 12466. Mete unto wombe] In marg. C. 1. *Reem ventri, &c.*

Ver. 12463. The Apostle saith] *Philippians*, *iii.* 18.

Ver. 12468. stinking is thy cod] So MS. C. Or we may read with MS. B. 3. *o foule stinking cod*.

Ver. 12471. to find] to supply. So ver. 14835.

*She found hireself and eke hire doughtren two.*

See also P. P. fol. lxxx.

For a frend, that *Andelth* him, falleth him never at nede.

Ver. 12473. V. D'Artigny. Vol. vi. p. 369.

Ver. 12497. the white wine of Lepe] According to the Geographers, Lepe was not far from Cadiz. This wine, of whatever sort it may have been, was probably much stronger than the Gascon wines, usually drunk in England. La Rochelle and Bourdeaux, ver. 12505, the two chief ports of Gascony, were both, in Chaucer's time, part of the English dominions.

Spanish wines might also be more alluring upon account of their greater rarity. Among the Orders of the Royal Household, in 1604, is the following. (*MS. Harl.* 293. fol. 162.) "And whereas, in tymes past, Spanish wines, called *Sackes*, were little or noe whyle used in our court, and that in later years, though not of ordinary allowance, it was thought convenient, that noblemen, &c. might have a *boule* or glass, &c. We understanding that it is now used as common drinke, &c. reduce the allowance to xii Gallons a day for the court," &c.

Ver. 12520. Redeth the Bible] *Proverbs*, xxxi. 4.

Ver. 12537. Stilbon] John of Salisbury, from whom our author probably took this story and the following, calls him *Chilon*. Polycrat. L. 1. c. 5. *Chilon Lacedæmonius, juvenis societas causa missus Corinthum, duces et seniores populi ludentes invenit in alea. Infecto litæque negotio reversus est, &c.* Accordingly in ver. 12539. MS. C. 1. reads very rightly *Lacedomys* instead of *Calidone*, the common reading. Our author has used before *Lacedomys* for *Lacedæmon*, ver. 11692.

Ver. 12542. Yplaying atte hasard] I have added the prepositive *y* for the sake of the metre. *Atte* is a dissyllable. It was originally *atten*, and is so used by R. G. p. 379. 431. It has been frequently corrupted into *at the*; but in Chaucer it may, and, I think, should almost everywhere be restored. See ver. 125. 3934. 4303. where some MSS. have preserved the true readings—*atte* Bowe; *atte* full.

Ver. 12582. his nalles] i. e. with which he was nailed to the Cross. Sir J. Mandevile, c. vii. "And thereby in the walle is the place where the 4 Nayles of our Lord weren hid; for he had 2 in his handes and 2 in his feet: and of one of theise the Emperour of Costantynoble made a brydille to his horse, to bere him in bataylle; and thorgh



vertue thereof he overcame his enemies," &c. He had said before, c. ii. that "on of the nayles that Crist was naylled with on the croos," was at Constantynoble; and "on in France, in the Kinges chapelle."

Ver. 12586. the blood—in Halles] The Abbey of Halles, in Gloucestershire, was founded by Richard, King of the Romans, brother to Henry III. This precious reliok, which was afterwards commonly called "the blood of Halles," was brought out of Germanie by the son of Richard, Edmund, who bestowed a third part of it upon his father's Abbey of Halles, and some time after gave the other two parts to an Abbey of his own foundation at Ashrug near Berkhamsted. Hollinsh. v. ii. p. 375.

Ver. 12590. the blochel bones two] The common reading is *thilke* bones. The alteration, which I have ventured to make, is not authorised entirely by any MS. but in part by several. MS. A. reads *bickel*. C. 1. *the becched*. HA. and H. *the bloched*. C. B. 5. No. Ed. Ca. 1. *the blochid*. B. a. *the bloche*. Ed. Ca. 2. *the blicked*. *Bickel*, as explained by Kilian, is *Talus*, ovillus or luscarius; and *Bickelen*, talis ludere. See also Had. Junii Nomencl. n. 213. Our dice indeed are the ancient *tesseæ*, (*кубси*) not *tali* (*αστραγαλοι*); but, both being games of hazard, the implements of one might be easily attributed to the other. It should seem from Junius, loc. cit. that the Germans had preserved the custom of playing with the natural bones, as they have different names for a game with *tali ovilli*, and another with *tali bubilli*.

Ver. 12601. Go bet] The same phrase is used in Leg. of G. W. Dido. 288.

The herd of hartes founden is anon,  
With hey, go bet, pricks thou, let gon.

where it seems to be a term of the chase.

Ver. 12686. Seint Helelne] Sir J. Mandeville, c. vii. p. 23. "and nyghe that awtler is a place undre erthe, 42 degrees of depenesse, where the Holy Croys was founden, be the wytt of Seynte Elyne, undir a roche, where the Jewes had hidde it. And that was the veray croys assayed; for they founden 3 croones; on of oure Lord and 2 of the 2 theves: and Seynte Elyne proved hem on a ded body, that aros from dethe to lyve, whan that it was leyd on it, that oure Lord dyed on." See also c. ii. p. 15.

Ver. 12914. I smell a loller] This is in character, as appears from a treatise of the time. *Hart. Catal.* n. 1696. "Now in Engeland it is a comun protectioun ayens persecutioun—if a man is custumable to swere nedeles and fals and unswayed, by the bones, nails, and sides and other membres of Crist.—And to absteyne fro othe nedeles and unfeul,—and reprove synne by way of charite, is mater and cause now, why Prelates and sum Lordes sclaudren men, and clepen hem *Lollardes*, Eretikes," &c.

Ver. 12919. Sayde the Shipman] So MS. B. 5. the one MS. (as I have said in the Discourse &c. §. xxii.) which countenances the giving of this Prologue to the Shipman. In MSS. C. and D. this passage is given to the Sompnour, but not by way of Prologue to his tale. In C. it is followed by the Wife of Bathes Prologue, and in D. by the Prologue which in this edition is prefixed to the Squires tale.

When these diversities are considered, and also that the whole passage is wanting in the five best MSS. it may perhaps appear not improbable, that these 28 lines, though composed by Chaucer, had not been inserted by him in the body of his work; that they were therefore omitted in the first copies, and were afterwards injudiciously prefixed to the Squires tale, when the true Prologue of that tale, as printed above, was become unsuitable, by reason of the tale itself being removed out of its proper place.

Ver. 12923. springen cockle] This seems to shew that Chaucer considered *Loller*, as derived from *lollum*, but Du Cange, in v. *LOLLARDUS*, rather supposes that *Lollard* was a word of German original, signifying *mussitator*; a *mussler* of prayers. See also Kilian, in v. *LOLLARD*.

Ver. 12942. He mote us clothe] In Ed. Ur. it is *them*; but all the MSS. that I have seen read *us*; which would

lead one to suspect, that this Tale was originally intended for a female character.

Ver. 13000. Malveisie] See the note on ver. 9681.

Ver. 13027. under the yerde] This was properly said of children. MS. Bod. Jun. 66. *Monachicum Colloquium*, Sax. Lat. p. 15.

Mag. *Quid manducas in die?*  
Hwæt yst thu on dæg?

Dis. *Adhuc carnibus vescor,*  
Gyt flæscmetum ic bruce,  
Guta puer sum  
Forþham cild ic eom  
sub virga depens.  
under gyrdra drohtniende.

See before ver. 7898.

Ver. 13061. on my Porties] I. e. *Breviary*. Du Cange in v. *PORTIVOARIUM*. *Portuaries* are mentioned among other prohibited books in the Stat. 3 and 4 E. VI. c. 10. And in the Parliament-roll of 7 E. IV. n. 40. there is a Petition, that the robbing of—*Porteous*—Grayell, Mannell, &c. should be made felonie without clergy; to which the King answered, *Le Roy s'aviserá*.

Ver. 13245. Haven hire] The final *s* in *Haven* has been added for the sake of the metre; but unnecessarily, as the *c* feminine may be pronounced before *h*, as before a consonant. See the n. on ver. 300.

Ver. 13368. a thousand last quad yere] *Last* in Text. is *onus*, *sarcina*. Kilian. and *quæd* in the same language is *malus*. The meaning therefore is; God give the monks a thousand last (ever so great a weight) of quad yere (bad years, misfortune). The Italians use *mal anno* in the same sense.

Ver. 13383. O Lord, our Lord] The Prioresse begins her legends with the first verses of the 8th Psalm, Domine, Dominus noster &c.

Ver. 13401. Whan he thin herte light] I. e. *lighted*; *made light*, or *pleasant*. So in Tro. B. iii. 1068.

Whan wroth is he that shold my sorrowes light.

Ver. 13444. Seint Nicholas] We have an account of the very early piety of this Saint in his Lesson, Brev. Roman. vi. Decemb. *Cujus viri sanctitas, quanta futura esset, jam ab incunabulis apparuit. Nam infans, cum reliquis diebus lac nutritis frequens suggeret, quartâ et sextâ feriâ (on Wednesdays and Fridays) semel duntaxat, idque vesperti, sugubat.*

Ver. 13509. soulded in virginitee] or (according to the better MSS.) *soulded to virginitee*. *Soulded* is from the *Fm. souldit*, and that from the Lat. *solidatus*; consolidated, fastened together. In Wicliff's N. T. Dedia. iii. *consolidata* is rendered *souldid*. The latter part of this stanza refers to Revelat. xiv. 3, 4.

Ver. 13575. I halse thee] MSS. Ask. 1. 2. read "I conjure thee"—but that seems to be a gloss. *To halse* signifies properly *to embrace round the neck*, from the Sax. *hals*, the neck. See ver. 10253. So in C.L. ver. 1290.

I stand and speke and laugh and kisse and halse.

It signifies also to salute. P. P. fol. xxii.

I halse hym hendlich, as I hys frende were.

and fol. xxxix. *to salute with reverence*.

And the eleven sterres halsed him all.

which seems to be the sense here.

Ver. 13597. than wol I fetchen thee] The best MSS. read *now*, which is scarce reconcilable to any rules of speech. Even with the correction which I have adopted, there is a greater confusion in this narration than I recollect to have observed in any other of Chaucer's stories.

Ver. 13623. to japen he began] So MS. E. Some MSS. read—*tho* began.

Ver. 13650. at Popering] *Poppering*, or *Peppering*, was the name of a parish in the Marbokes of Calais. Our famous

antiquary Leland was once Rector of it. Tanner. Bib. Brit. in v. LELAND.

Ver. 13655. *paindeimaine*] That this must have been a sort of remarkably white bread is clear enough. Skinner derives it from *Panis matutinus*, *Pain de matin*; and indeed Du Cange mentions a species of loaves or rolls called *Matinelli*. However I am more inclined to believe that it received its denomination from the province of Maine, where it was, perhaps, made in the greatest perfection. I find it twice in a Northern tale called "The freiris of Berwick." MS. Maitland.

And als that crell is full of breid of mane.

And again—The mane breid.

Ver. 13664. *ciclatoun*—Edit. 1775, *chekelatoun*] The Glossaries suppose this word to be compounded of *cheke* and *latoun*, a species of base metal like gold; but it seems rather to be merely a corruption of the Fr. *Ciclaton*, which originally signified a *circular robe of state*, from the G. L. *Cyclas*; and afterwards the *cloth of gold*, of which such robes were generally made. Du Cange in v. *CYCLAS* has produced instances enough of both senses. In fact several MSS. read *Ciclaton*; and I have no excuse for not having followed them, but that I was misled by the authority of Spenser, as quoted by Mr. Warton, Obs. on Sp. v. i. p. 194. Upon further consideration, I think it is plain that Spenser was mistaken in the very foundation of his notion, "that the quilted Irish jacket embroidered with gilded leather" had any resemblance to the "robe of Sheeklaton." He supposes, that Chaucer is here describing Sir Thopas, as he went to fight against the Giant, in his robe of Sheeklaton; whereas, on the contrary, it is evident that Sir Thopas is here described in his usual habit in time of peace. His warlike apparel, when he goes to fight against the Giant, is described below, ver. 13786 and foll. and is totally different.

Ver. 13665. a *jane*] a coin of *Janua* (*Genoa*), called in our Statutes *Galley halfpence*. See the quotations from Stow in Mr. Warton's Obs. on Sp. v. i. p. 180.

Ver. 13667. *hauling for the rivers*] See the note on ver. 6466.

Ver. 13671. *Ther only ram*] See the note on ver. 550.

Ver. 13682. a *launcegay*] The Editt. have split this improperly into two words, as if *gay* were an epithet. It occurs as one word in Rot. Parl. 29 H. VI. n. 8. "And the said Evan then and there with a *launcegay* smote the -id William Tresham threugh the body a foote and more whereof he died." Nicot describes a *Zagaye* to be a Moorish lance, longer and slenderer than a pike; from the SPAN. *ARAB. Asagaya*.

Ver. 13692. *cloue gilofre*] *Clou de girofle*. Fr. *Caryophyllus*. L. *Lat.* A clove-tree, or the fruit of it. Sir J. Mandeville, c. xxvi. describing a country beyond Cathaie, says, "And in that contree, and in other contrees thereabouten, growen many trees, that beren *cloue gilofres* and *notemuges*, and grete notes of Ynde, and of canelle and of many other spices."

But the most apposite illustration of this passage is a similar description in Chaucer's R. R. ver. 1360—73.—in the Original, ver. 1347—50. See also a note of an *ingenious correspondent* in Mr. Warton's Obs. on Sp. v. i. p. 139. Ed. 1793. where this passage is very properly adduced, to shew "that the Rime of Sire Thopas was intended as a burlesque on the old ballad romances."

Ver. 13722. *in toun*] These two last words, which are plainly superfluous, are distinguished by a mark of this kind in MS. C. 1. and the same mark is repeated in ver. 13743, 13752, and 13815. where the two final syllables are also superfluous to the metre. Whether in all these cases the words thus separated are to be considered as idle additions, for the purpose of introducing the rime which answers to them, or whether some lines, which originally connected them with the context, have been lost, it is not easy to determine. Upon the latter supposition, which, I confess, appears to me the most probable, we may imagine that, in the present instance, the three last lines of this

stanza and the three first of the following, except the words "in toun," have dropped out. In the three other instances, only two lines and the two first feet of the third may be supposed to be wanting.

In support of this hypothesis it may be observed, that in the very next Stanza, the last line, ver. 13731 and the following line, in MS. C. 1. stand thus.

The contree of Paerie so wilde  
For in that contree n'as ther non  
[That to him durst ride or gon]  
Neither wif ne childe.

Whether the two lines and part of another which I have inserted before "wilde" from other MSS. be genuine, I will not be positive; but it is very clear, I think, that something is wanting. The line between hooks, which is inserted in MS. C. 1. in a later hand, is in MSS. HA. D.

Ver. 13733. *he spied*] Ed. Urr. reads *spired*; I know not upon what authority. But the emendation is probable enough; as the expression of *spying with the mouth* seems to be too extravagantly absurd even for this composition. To *spire*, or *spere*, Gl. Doug. signifies to *enquire*, from the SAX. *spyrrian*. See P. L. p. 337. Gower, *Conf. Am.* fol. 182.

Ver. 13739. *Sire Oliphaunt*] *Sir Elephant*, a proper name for a giant. Mandeville, p. 283. "And there ben also many wyldre bestes, and nameliche of *Olyfauntes*." The very learned and ingenious author of *Letters on Chivalry*, &c. supposes, "that the *Boks of The Giant Oliphaunt and Chylde Thopas* was not a fiction of Chaucer's own, but a story of antique fame, and very celebrated in the days of chivalry." I can only say, that I have not been so fortunate as to meet with any traces of such a story of an earlier date than the Canterbury Tales.

Ver. 13741. by *Termagaunt*] This Saracen deity, in an old Romance, MS. Bod. 1624. is constantly called *Tervagan*.

De devant sei falt porter sun dragon,  
E l'estendart *tervagan* e *mahum*,  
E un ymagine *apolin* le felun.

And again.

Pleignent lur deus *tervagan* et *mahum*,  
E *apolin*, dunt il mie rien unt.

This Romance, which in the MS. has no title, may possibly be an older copy of one, which is frequently quoted by Du Cange under the title of *Le Roman de Roncevaux*. The author's name was *Turold*, as appears from the last line.

Ci falt le geste que *turold* declinet.

He is not mentioned by any of the writers of French literary history that I have seen.

Ver. 13758. a *fel staffe aling*] This is the reading of the best MSS. but what kind of *aling* is meant I know not. [See the Gloss. in v. STAFF. SING. Add. Nota. Ed. 1798.]

Ver. 13775. *gestours* for *tellen tales*] The proper business of a *gestour* was to *recite tales*, or *gestes*; which was only one of the branches of the Minstrel's profession.

*Minstrels* and *Gestours* are mentioned together in the following lines, from *William of Nassington's* Translation of a religious treatise by *John of Wadday*. MS. Reg. 17 C. viii. p. 2.

I warne you furst at the begynnynges,  
That I will make no vain carpynges  
Of dedes of armys ne of amours,  
As dus *mynstrelles* and *gestours*,  
That makys carpyng in many a place  
Of *Octoviane* and *Isebraes*,  
And of many other *festes*,  
And namely when they come to *festes*;  
Ne of the life of *Beys of Hampton*,  
That was a knight of gret renown,  
Ne of *Sir Gye of Warwyke*,  
All if it might sum men lyke—

I cite these lines to shew the species of tales related by the ancient *Gestours*, and how much they differed from what we now call *festes*.

Ver. 13777. Of *romaunces* that ben *realer*] So in the Rom. of *Ywain and Gawain* MS. Cott. Galb. E. ix.

He fund a knight under a tre;  
Upon a cloth of gold he lay;  
Byfor him sat a ful fayr may;  
A lady sat with tham in fere;  
The maiden red, that thai might here,  
A real romance in that place.—

The original of this title, which is an uncommon one, I take to have been this. When the French romances found their way into Italy (not long before the year 1300. Crescimb. T. I. p. 336.) some Italian undertook to collect together all those relating to Charlemagne and his family, and to form them into a regular body of history. The six first books of this work come down to the death of Pepin. They begin thus: Qui se comenza la hystoria el Real di Fransa comenzando a Constantino imperatore secondo molte lesende che io ho attrovate e raccolte insieme. *Edit. Mutina.* 1491. fol. It was reprinted in 1637 under this title, "I reali di Fransa, nel quale si contiene la generatione di tutti i Re, Ducl, Principi e Baroni di Fransa, e delli Paladini, colle battaglie da loro fatte &c." Quadrio, T. vi. p. 590. Salvati had seen a MS. of this work written about 1350 (Crescimb. T. I. p. 330), and I do not believe that any mention of a *Real*, or *Royal*, Romance is to be found, in French or English, prior to that date.

Ver. 13786. He didde next his white lere] *He dit*, or *put*, on next his white skin. *To don, do on, and doff, do off*, have been in use, as vulgar words, long since Chaucer's time. *Lere* seems to be used for *skin* in *Isumbras*. MS. Cott. Cal. ii. fol. 129.

His lady is white as wales bone,  
Here lere brygte to se upon,  
So faire as blozme on tre.

Though it more commonly signifies only, what we call complexion.

In the Romance of *Li beau desconus*, his arming is thus described, fol. 42.

They caste on him a scherte of selk,  
A gypell as white as melk  
In that semely sale,  
And syzt an hawberk brygt,  
That richely was adyt  
With mayles thykke and smale—

Ver. 13793. of Jewes werk] I do not recollect to have seen the Jews celebrated any where as remarkable artificers. I am therefore inclined to adopt an explanation of this word, which I find in a note of the learned Editor of *Anc. Scott. Poems*, p. 230. "This Jow," not this Jew, but this juggler or magician. The words to *jowk*, to deceive, and *jowkery-pawckry*, juggling tricks, are still in use. In Lord Hyndford's MS. p. 136. there is a fragment of a sort of fairy tale, where "Scho is the Quene of Jowis" means, "She is the queen of magicians."

According to this explanation "Jewes werk" may signify the work of magicians, or fairies.

Ver. 13800. a charboucle] *A carbuncle* (*Escarboucle*, Fa.) was a common bearing. Guillim's Heraldry, p. 109.

Ver. 13804. cuirbouly] *Cuir bouilli*, of which Sir Thopas boots were made, was also applied to many other purposes. See Froissart, v. i. c. 110. 130. and v. iv. c. 19. In this last passage, he says, the Saracens covered their targes with *cuir bouilli de Capadoce*, où nul fer ne peut prendre n'attacher; si le cuir n'est trop échaufé.

Ver. 13807. rewel bone] What kind of material this was I profess myself quite ignorant. In the *Turnament of Tottenham*, ver. 75. (*Anc. Poet.* v. ii. p. 18.) Tibbe is introduced with "a garland on her head full of *ruell bones*." The derivation in Gloss. Urr. of this word from the Fa. *riole*, diversely coloured, has not the least probability. The other, which deduces it from the Fa. *rouelle*; *rotula*; the whirl-bone, or knee-pan; is more plausible; though, as the Glossarist observes, that sense will hardly suit here.

Ver. 13823. Of ladies love and druerie] I have taken the liberty here of departing from the MSS. which read—

And of ladies love druerie

Upon second thoughts I am more inclined to throw out *love* as a gloss for *druerie*, and to read thus;

And of ladies druerie.

*Druerie* is strangely explained in Gloss. Urr. *Sobriety, modesty*. It means *courteship, gallantry*.

Ver. 13828. Of Sire Libeux] His romance is in MS. Cott. Cal. ii. In the 12th Stanza we have his true name and the reason of it. King Arthur speaks,

Now clepeth him alle thus,  
*Ly beau desconus*,  
For the love of me,  
Than may ye wete arowe,  
*The fayre unknowne*  
Certes so hatte he.

Ibid. Pleindamour] This is the reading of the MSS. and I know not why we should change it for *Blandamour*, as both names sound equally well.

Ver. 13833. As sparcle] The same simile is in *Isumbras*, fol. 130. b.

He spronge forth, as sparke on [f. of] glode.

*Glode* in the preceding verse is probably for *glowde*, *glowed*; from the Sax. *glowan, candere*.

Ver. 13844. Sire Percivell] The Romance of *Perceval le Galois*, or *de Galis*, was composed in octosyllable French verse by Chrestien de Troyes, one of the oldest and best French Romanceurs, before the year 1191. Fauchet, L. ii. c. x. It consisted of above sixty thousand verses (*Bibl. des Rom.* T. ii. p. 250) so that it would be some trouble to find the fact which is, probably, here alluded to. The Romance, under the same title, in French prose, printed at Paris, 1530, fol. can be only an abridgement, I suppose, of the original poem.

Ver. 13845. So worthy under wede] This phrase occurs repeatedly in the Romance of *Emaré*.

fol. 70. b. Than sayde that worthy unther wede.  
74. b. The childe was worthy unther wede,  
And sate upon a nobyl stede.

See also fol. 71. b. 73. a.

Ver. 13852. the devil I beteche] I *betake*, *recommend* or *give*, to the devil. See ver. 3748.

My soule betake I unto Sathana.—

and ver. 8037. 17256. where the preposition is omitted, as here. *To take*, in our old language, is also used for *To take to*; *To give*. See ver. 13334.

He toke me certain gold, I wote it wel.

And compare ver. 13224. 13286.

The change of *betake* into *betече* was not so great a licence formerly as it would be now, as *ch* and *k* seem once to have been pronounced in nearly the same manner. See ver. 3307, 8, 11, 12. where *werk* is made to rhyme to *cherche* and *clerk*. It may be observed too, that the Saxons had but one verb, *tæcau*, to signify *capere* and *docere*; and though our ancestors, even before Chaucer's time, had split that single verb into two, *To take* and *To teche*, and had distinguished each from the other by a different mode of inflexion, yet the compound verb *Betake*, which according to that mode of inflexion ought to have formed its past time *Betoke*, formed it often *Belaught*, as if no such distinction had been established. See R. R. ver. 4428. Gamelyn, 663. The regular past time *Betoke* occurs in ver. 16009.

Ver. 13879. I mene of Mark and Matthew] The conjunction *and* has been added for the sake of the metre, without authority, and perhaps without necessity; as *Mark* was probably written by Chaucer *Marke*, and pronounced as a Disyllable.

THE TALE OF MELIBEUS] Mr. Thomas has observed, that this Tale seems to have been written in *blank verse*. MSS. notes upon Chaucer, Ed. Urr. in Brit. Mus. It is certain, that in the former part of it we find a number of blank verses intermixed, in a much greater proportion than in any of our author's other prose writings. But this poetical

style is not, I think, remarkable beyond the first four or five pages.

P. 107, col. 1. l. 8. the sentence of Ovide] *Rem. Am.* 125.

Quis matrem, nisi mentis inops, in funere nati  
Flere vetet? &c.

It would be a laborious and thankless task to point out the exact places of all the quotations, which are made use of in this treatise. I shall therefore confine my observations of that kind to a few passages, which are taken from authors not commonly to be met with.

P. 108, col. 2. l. 2. Piers Alphonse] He calls himself *Petrus Alphonsi* in his *Dialogus contra Judæos*. MS. Harl. 3861. He there informs us, that he was himself originally a Jew, but converted and baptized in the year 1106, in July die natalis App. Petri et Pauli; upon which account he took the name of Peter. "Fuit autem pater meus spiritalis Alfonsus, gloriosus Hispanicus imperator, (the king of Arragon of that name and the VII of Castile) —quare, nomen eius prefato nomini meo apponens, Petrus Alfonsi mihi nomen imposui." After his conversion he wrote the Dialogue above-mentioned, and also another work, which is here quoted by Chaucer, and of which therefore I think myself obliged to give some account.

It is extant in MS. in many Libraries, but the only copy which I have had an opportunity of examining is in the Museum, Bib. Reg. 10 B. xii. It is there entitled "*Petri Adelonsi de Clericali disciplina*," and begins thus. "Dixit Petrus Adelonsus, servus xpi ihu, compositor hujus libri—Libellum compei partim ex proverbis et castigacionibus Arabicis et fabulis et versibus, et partim ex animalium et volucrum similitudinibus."—After a short proem, he enters thus upon his main subject. "Eboe igitur philosophus, qui lingua Arabica cognominatur *Edris*, dixit filio suo; Timor Domini sit tua negotiatio &c."—The work then proceeds in the form of a Dialogue between the Philosopher and his son, in which the precepts of the former are for the most part illustrated by apposite fables and examples. *Edris*, according to D'Herbelot in v. was the name of Enoch among the Arabians, who attribute to him many fabulous compositions. Whether Alfonsus had any of them in his view I know not, nor is it material. The manner and style of his work shew both many marks of an Eastern original, and one of his stories *Of a trick put upon a thief* is entirely taken from the Callih u Damnah,\* a celebrated collection of Oriental apoloques.

\* Though the exact age of the Callih u Damnah be by no means clear, we know that it was translated out of Arabic into Greek by Symeon Seth several years before Alfonsus wrote. The story mentioned here is not in that copy of Symeon's translation which Starkius has printed under the title of *Specimen Sapientie Indorum*. Berolin. 1697. 8vo. but it is in MS. Bod. 510. and in the Latin version of Symeon's book, which Poussin published by way of Appendix to the History of Pachymeres, *inter Script. Hist. Byzant.* The various titles, under which this Eastern romance has passed through Europe, may be seen in the Preface of Starkius, and in Fabric. Bib. Gr. vi. 460. and x. 324. though neither of them has taken notice of an Italian translation, or imitation, by Firenzeuola, entitled, *Discorsi degli animali*. See his *Prose*, Fir. 1548. The other Italian version, which they mention, by Doni, was translated into English, under the title of "The moral Philosophy of Doni, out of Italian, by Sir Thomas North, Knight," 4to. 1601. (Ame. p. 435) and is alluded to, I suppose, by Jonson in his *Epicæne*, p. 494. by the name of *Done's Philosophy*, though he has made the Speaker, Sir Am. La-Fool, whether designedly, or not, I am uncertain, confound it with *Reynard the fox*. Since they wrote, there has been an Edition at Paris in 1724, with this title, "Contes et fables Indiennes, de Bidpai et de Lokman, traduites D'Ali Tehelebi-Ben-Saleh, Auteur Turc. Oeuvre posthume, par M. Galland." The words "et de Lokman" in this title I suspect to have been added by the Bookseller, for I cannot find any thing of Lokman in the work itself. Perhaps M. Galland might have intended to annex the fables of Lokman, but was prevented by death. For the rest, there is no material difference between this Edition, and a former French version, which was made from the Persic and printed in 1698, except in the style. They both differ very considerably from the Greek.

I will just take notice, that one of the fables in the Greek,

In this part of the world, however, Alfonsus may be considered as an original writer. His work was very early translated into French verse. In an old copy, MS. Reg. 16. E. VIII. the translation is entitled "*Proverbes Peres Anforse*;" and there is a short Introduction by the translator, in which he says, "*Voil Peres Anfors translate*."—In a later copy, MS. Bod. 1687, the Introduction is omitted, but the poem is entitled "*le romans Peres Anfour coment il aprist et chastia son fils belement*."—In another copy, MS. Harl. 4388. there is neither introduction nor title; so that, by the mere omissions of transcribers, the French translation has put on the appearance of an original work, and is quoted as such by M. le Comte de Caylus in his *Mémoire sur les Fabliaux* (Acad. des Ins. t. xx. p. 361.) under the general title of *Le chatoement du pere au fils*. The fable of the Sheep, of which M. de Caylus has there given an abstract, is in the Latin Alfonsus, Fab. ix. I will add, that the same fable, in the *Cento Novelle Antiche*, N. xxx. is fathered upon uno novellatore di Messer Ascolino; and Cervantes, changing the Sheep for Goats, has put it into the mouth of Sancho. Don Quix. P. l. c. xx. Cervantes indeed has also altered the application of it, but, I think, not for the better.

I am inclined to believe that Hebers, the author or translator of the French romance called *Dolopatos*, in the beginning of the XIIIth Century, had read this work of Alfonsus, perhaps before it was translated into French. The story of the stone thrown into the well, Decameron, vii. 4. which Fauchet supposes Boccaccio to have taken from Hebers, is in Alfonsus, Fab. xi. It is not in the Greek *Syntipas*,† which I imagine to have been the groundwork

p. 444, has been inserted, but with great variations, by Matthew Paris in his History, ad ann. 1196. as a Parable, which Richard I, after his return from the East, was used frequently to relate *ingratos redarguendo*.

† The only copy which I have ever seen of *Syntipas* is in MS. Harl. 5580. I should guess that it agreed in substance with that which Du Cange made use of in his *Glossarium Med. et Inf. Græcitate* (see his *Index Auctorum*, p. 33.), though it seems to be of a later age, and in a more depraved dialect. They differ in this, that the Harleian copy is said to have been translated from the *Persic* (see *Index Auctorum* p. 33. us *Περσικὴ γλῶσση*), and Du Cange's from the *Syriac* (see *Index Auctorum* p. 33. us *Συριακὴ γλῶσση*). However, I would not vouch that it really was translated either from the *Persic* or *Syriac*. Among the Oriental MSS. in the Bodleian Library, the Catalogue mentions one in Turkish (Rawlinson, 31.) *De uxore Chafstini Turcarum regis et filio*, which I suspect to contain this same story, translated perhaps from the Greek, or from the Italian *Erasto*. *Syntipas* is said to have been printed at Venice, *Inquid Graecæ vulgari*. Fabric. Bib. Gr. x. 615. How that Edition may agree with the Harleian MS. I cannot say, having never seen it. To judge by the MS. only, it seems probable, that, if *Syntipas* was the groundwork of the *Dolopatos*, Hebers must have departed as much from his original, as the succeeding compilers of *Les sept Sages* and of *Erasto* have from Hebers. Neither the story mentioned in the text, nor the two others, which Fauchet refers to as borrowed by Boccaccio from Hebers, viz. Decam. iii. 2. and viii. 8. are to be found in the MS. *Syntipas*. On the other hand, the story in the Decam. vii. 6. which is said in the text to be probably copied from Alfonsus, is also in *Syntipas*, though, from the silence of Fauchet, we may presume that it was not in the *Dolopatos*.

The Plan of *Syntipas* is exactly the same with that of *Les sept Sages*, the Italian *Erasto*, the French *Eraste*, and our own little story-book, *The seven Wise Masters*; except that, instead of *Diocletian of Rome*, the King is called *Cyrus of Persia*, and, instead of one tale, each of the Philosophers tells two. This last circumstance is an argument, I think, for the originality of *Syntipas*; and another may be drawn from the insipidity of the greatest part of the tales. The only one of them, which, as I remember, is retained in the modern *Erasto*, is that of the Knight, who in a fit of groundless passion killed a faithful dog. *Eraste*, ch. viii. It is plainly borrowed from a story in the Callih u Damnah, p. 339. of the Greek translation, though there, instead of a dog, the animal is called *Νυμφη*, by some mistake, as I suspect, of the translator.

There is a translation of this Romance in English octosyllable verse, not later than Chaucer's time, as I imagine, in MS. Cotton. Galba. E. ix. It is entitled, "The proses of the seven sages," and agrees exactly with *Les sept sages de Rome* in French Prose in MS. Harl. 3860.

of the *Dolopatos*, and therefore I presume that it was inserted by Hebers, or the monk, whose Latin he translated, and possibly from Alfonsus. At least it is not more probable that Boccaccio should take it from Hebers than from Alfonsus, with whose work he appears to have been well acquainted. One of his novels, *Decam. vii. 6.* is plainly copied from thence, *Fab. viii.* and his celebrated novel of the two friends, *Tito and Gisippo*, *Decam. x. 8.* is borrowed, with hardly any variation, except in the names of persons and places, from the 2d of Alfonsus, or, which is the same thing, from the *Gesta Romanorum*; into

1 The title in the printed copies is "Ex gestis Romanorum historie notabiles collecte; de vicis virtutibusque tractantes; cum applicationibus moralisatis et mysticis." The author of this strange work is quite unknown, nor is it easy to fix with precision the time of its composition. Upon the whole I have no doubt that it is of a later date than Alfonsus, viz. the beginning of the xivth Century, and I should guess that it was composed about the end of that Century, or the beginning of the xivth.

Three complete of English verses in ch. 68, and some English names in ch. 128, which are to be found in several old MSS. (the former chapter being there numbered liii. and the latter xviii.) though they have been left out of the Editions, afford a reasonable ground for conjecturing, that one of our own countrymen was the author.

As it continued to be a popular book at the time of the invention of Printing, it was very early put to the Press, and several Editions of it were published in different places before the year 1500. The earliest Editions that I have seen agree together exactly, and contain 152 Chapters. The Edition at Rouen in 1521 contains 181 Chapters, the History of Apollonius Tyrius being the first of the additional chapters. See Discourse, &c. n. 16. An Edition of *Gesta Romanorum*, printed in 1483, (probably at Argentina, Strasbourg, agrees exactly with the Edition of 1521. In MSS. Harl. 2270, and 5250, which are both seemingly complete, the number of chapters does not exceed 102; and yet, notwithstanding there are so many more stories in the printed books, there are still several in the MSS. which, I apprehend, have never been printed. See a note upon the plot of Shakespeare's *Merchant of Venice* with the signature of T. T. vol. iii. p. 224. and an addition to it in Appendix, ii. See also a note of Mr. Farmer's in the same Appendix, where he mentions his having found the story of *The Caskets* "in an old translation of the *Gesta Romanorum* first printed by *Winkin de Worde*." As he says nothing of the story of *The Bond*, we may presume, from the known accuracy of Mr. Farmer's researches, that it is not contained in that translation.

It has been said above, that several of the fables in the *Gesta Romanorum* are taken from Alfonsus. The author has also borrowed from the Callih u Damnah, by the help, I suppose, of some Latin translation from the Greek of Symeon Seth. The originals of the greatest part of his stories are not so easy to be traced. I speak of those which are found in the MSS. for of those in the Edit. many are plainly taken from well known authors, some of which are quoted by name, as Aulus Gellius, Macrobius, Augustinus, Gervasius Tilberiensis, and others.

I will add here a few instances, which occur to me at present, of stories, which writers of the xivth Century have, or rather may have, borrowed from the *Gesta Romanorum*; for, in some of these instances, it is possible that they may have had recourse to the very books, from which the compiler of that work drew his materials. I shall cite the chapters as they are numbered in the Edition of 1521 and in MS. Harl. 2270. Where reference is made to only one of these, it should be understood that I have not observed that story in the other.

Ch. viii. MS. 96. is copied by Gower, *Conf. Am. B. v. fol. 122. b.*—Ch. lvii. MS. 16. this story is in the *ento Nouvelle Antiehe*, N. vi.—Ch. lxi. is in Gower, *Conf. Am. B. iii. fol. 54.*—Ch. lxxxix. This is the story of *The three Rings*, which has been said, but I think without any reason, to have been of use to Swift in his *Tale of a Tub*. It is in the C. N. A. *Nov. lxxi.* and in the *Decameron*, l. 3.—Ch. cix. There is a great similitude between this story and one which is told in the C. N. A. *Nov. lxxv.* and in the *Decameron*, x. 1. See also Gower, *Conf. Am. B. v. fol. 96. 7.*—Ch. cxviii. is from Alfonsus. It is repeated in the C. N. A. *Nov. lxxxiv.*—Ch. cxix. MS. 102. has been versified by Gower, *Conf. Am. B. v. fol. 110. b.* It has been mentioned in Note\* as taken originally from the *Sapientia Indorum*, p. 444.—Ch. cxxiv. MS. 20. makes the last Novel of the C. N. A.—Ch. clvii. makes the lth Novel of the C. N. A. but it may have been taken from Alfonsus.—Ch. clxxi. MS. 55. is the story of *The two Friends*, mentioned in the text.—Ch. xlviii. MS.

which collection, after a time, almost all the best fables of Alfonsus were incorporated.

This last circumstance, though certainly very honourable to Alfonsus, has been very prejudicial to his fame. For instance, a translation, as I suppose, of his last mentioned story of *the two Friends* is entitled, in a MS. of Lydgate, belonging to the late Dr. Askew, "a Tale of two Marchants of Egypt and of Baldad, *ex Gestis Romanorum*," (Mr. Farmer's Notes on the Merch. of Ven. Last Ed. of Shakesp. App. ii.) as if the tale had first appeared in that work. However somebody, not long after the invention of Printing, as I guess, did a little more justice to Alfonsus, by putting together his principal Tales, and inserting them, with his name, in a collection of the fables of *Æsop* and other eminent fabulists in Latin. This collection was soon turned into French; and from that Version Caxton made the translation into English, which has been mentioned in the Discourse, &c. n. 22. Caxton's book has been reprinted more than once. I have seen an Edition of it in 1647, and I doubt whether there has been one since.

P. 106. col. 2. l. 31. For it is written &c.] What is included between hooks is wanting in all the MSS. which I have examined. It is plainly necessary to the sense, as it shews us what the fourth and fifth reasons of Melibens were, to which Prudence replies in p. 169. I have therefore inserted as literal a translation as I imagine Chaucer might have made of the following passage in the French *Melibe*. MS. Reg. 19. C. vii. *Car il est ecrit, la gentlerie des femmes ne peut riens celer fors ce qu'elle ne sçet. Apres le philosophe dit, en mauvaie conseil les femmes vainquent les hommes, et par ces raisons je ne dois point user de ton conseil.*

P. 110. col. 2. l. 41. Advise thee well] He refers, I presume, to Cato, L. iii. Dist. 6.

Sermones blandos blaesque cavere memento.

P. 111. col. 1. l. 54. Assay to do swiche thinges] This precept of Cato is in L. iii. Dist. 16.

Quod potes id tentato; operis ne ponderes pressus  
Succumbat labor, et frustra tentata relinqua.

P. 112. col. 2. l. 37. If thou have nede] Cato, L. iv. Dist. 14.

Auxillium a notis petito, si forte laboras;  
Nec quisquam melior medicus quam fidus amicus.

P. 113. col. 1. l. 10. som men &c.] This passage which is defective in all the MSS. I have patched up, as well as I could, by adding the words between hooks from the French *Melibe*, where it stands thus. *Aucunes gens ont enseigne leur decevoir, car ils ont trop double que on ne les deceust. Apres tu te dois garder de venim, et si te ois garder de compaignie de moqueurs, car il est ecrit, Avec les moqueurs n'aies compaignie, et fuy leurs paroles comme le venim.*

P. 114. col. 2. l. 8. of the trespassours] The following passage, which the reader will see to be very material to the sense, I have translated from the French, and inserted between hooks, as before. *Et a ce respont dame Prudence. Certes, dist elle, Je t'otiroge que de vengeance vient molt de maule et de biens, mais vengeance n'appartient pas a un chascun, fors seulement aux juges et a ceulx qui ont la juridiction sur les malfaiteurs—*

contains the story of *The Caskets*, and Ch. xcix. MS. that of *The Bond*, the two principal incidents in Shakespeare's *Merchant of Venice*. It is said in the additional note, App. ii. last Ed. of Shakesp. that *Ser. Giovanni* had "worked up these two stories into one, as they are in the Play." But that is a mistake, which I beg leave to retract here. The Novel of *Ser Giovanni* (*Pecorone, Giorn. iv. Nov. 1.*) is founded only upon the story of *The Bond*. It is probable, therefore, that Shakespeare took the story of *The Caskets* from the English *Gesta Romanorum*, and ingrafted it upon the other.—Ch. xcvi. MS. is copied with very little alteration in the C. N. A. *Nov. lxxviii.*

Many more stories in Gower, which seem to be founded upon antient History, will appear upon examination to be taken from this book. It would lead me too far to particularize those which Lydgate, Occleve, and other later writers have borrowed from it. I will only mention, for the credit of the collection, that Ch. lxxx. contains the complete fable of Parnell's *Hermit*.

P. 115. col. 1. l. 51. If a man of higher estat] This prudent advice is from Cato, L. iv. Dist. 40.

Cede locum læsus, fortunæ cede potenti [f. potētis]  
Ledere qui potuit, prodere aliquando valebit.

P. 116. col. 1. l. 45. If a netherdes daughter] The Editt. have strangely corrupted this into—a *nerthes* daughter. The reading, which I have restored from the MSS. is confirmed by the original passage in *Pamphilus*. MS. Bod. 3703.

Dummodo sit dives *cu jūdām nata bubulci*,  
Eligit e mille quem libet illa virum.

P. 116. col. 2. l. 49. Waketh, &c.] I can find nothing nearer to this in Cato, than the maxim, L. iii. Dist. 7. *Segnitium fugite*.—For the quotations from the same author in the same page, l. 65 and 70. see L. iv. Dist. 17. and L. iii. Dist. 23.

Ver. 13998. corpus Madrian] The relics of St. *Materius*. Gloss. Urr. But I can find no such saint in the common *Legendaries*.

Ver. 13948. A right wel faring] I have no better authority for the insertion of *right* than Ed. Urr.

Ver. 13968. lusheburghes] Base coins, probably, first imported, as Skinner thinks, from *Luxemburg*. They are mentioned in the Stat. 25 E. III. c. 2. *la monnoie appelle* *Lucynbourg*, and in P. P. fol. 82. b.

As in *lusheburgh* is a luther alay, yet loketh like sterling.

Ver. 14013. in the feld of Damascene] So Lydgate, from Boccaccio, speaks of Adam and Eve. *Trag. B. l. c. 1.*

Of alime of the erth in *Damascene the felds*  
God made them above ech creature.

Boccaccio is much longer in relating their story, which is the first of his *Tragedies*.

Ver. 14021. Sampson] His tragedy is also in Boccaccio, B. l. c. 19. but our author seems rather to have followed the original, Judges xiv, xv, xvi.

Ver. 14080. the querne] *The mill. Kuerna, mola. Island.*

Ver. 14101. Hercules] In this account of the labours of Hercules Chaucer has evidently copied Boethius, L. iv. Met. 7. Many of the expressions he had used before in his prose translation of that author.

Ver. 14116. the hevene on his nekke longe] This is the reading of the best MSS. and is agreeable to Boethius, *loc. cit.* thus translated by Chaucer. "And the last of his labors was, that *he susteined the heven upon his nekke unbowed*." The margin of MS. C. 1. explains *longe* to mean *div*.

The Editt. read,

And bare *his hed* upon his *spere* long.

Ver. 14123. saith Trophee] As all the best MSS. agree in this reading, I have retained it, though I cannot tell what author is alluded to. The margin of C. 1. has this note. *Ille vates Chaldeorum Tropheus*.

The Editt. read—for *trophæe*.—

Ver. 14149. Nabuchodonosor] For this history, and the following of Halthasar, see Daniel, i-v. The latter only is related by Boccaccio, B. ii. c. xxiii.

Ver. 14253. Zenobia] Her story is told by Boccaccio, *De cas. Vir. L. iii. c. 7.* but more at large in his book *De claris Mulieribus*, from which our author has plainly taken almost every circumstance of his narration; though in ver. 14331. he seems to refer to Petrarch as his original. Perhaps, Boccaccio's book had fallen into Chaucer's hands under the name of Petrarch.

Ver. 14295. Till fully fourty dayes] There is a confusion in this passage, which might have been avoided, if our author had recurred to Trebellius Pollio, Trig. Tyrann. c. xxix. de Zenobia. "Quum semel concubisset, expectatis menstruis, continebat se si pragnans esset; sin minus, iterum potestatem querendis liberis dabat."

Ver. 14378. a vitremite] This word is differently written in the MSS. *vitrymite*; *vitremite*; *vitryle*. The Editt. read, *vitremite*; which is equally unintelligible.

Ver. 14385. south and septentrion] The MSS. read *north*; but there can be no doubt of the propriety of the correction, which was first made, I believe, in Ed. Urr. In the *Rom. de la R.* from whence great part of this tragedy of Nero is translated, the passage stands thus, ver. 6501.

Ce desloyal, que je te dy,  
Et d'Orient et de *Midy*,  
D'Occident, de Septentrion,  
Tint-il la jurisdiction.

Ver. 14408. domesman] *Judge*. The word in Boethius, who has also related this story, is *Censor*, L. ii. Met. vi.

Ora non tinxit lacrymis, sed esse  
Censor extincti potuit decoris—

which our author has thus rendered in his prose version. "Ne no tere wette his face, but he was so harde herted, that he might be *domesman*, or *judge*, of her dedde beautees."

Ver. 14484. Wher Eliachim] I cannot find any priest of this name in the book of Judith. The High priest of Jerusalem is called Joacim in c. iv. which name would suit the verse better than Eliachim.

Ver. 14493. Antiochus] This Tragedy is a poetical paraphrase of il. *Maccabees*, c. ix.

Ver. 14539. word and ende] Dr. Hickes in his Gr. A. S. p. 70. has proposed to read "*ord* and *end*," both here and in Tro. B. v. ver. 1668. He has shewn very clearly that *ord* and *end* was a common Saxon expression for the whole of a thing; the *beginning* and *end* of it. But all the MSS. that I have examined read *word*, and therefore I have left it in the text, as possibly the old Saxon phrase, in Chaucer's time, might have been corrupted.

Ver. 14545. Cressus] In the opening of this story, our author has plainly copied the following passage of his own version of Boethius, B. ii. Pro. 2. "*Wiste thou not how Cressus, kind of Lydiens, of whiche king Cyrus was ful sore agaste a litel before, &c.*" But the greatest part is taken from the *Rom. de la R.* ver. 6847—6912.

Ver. 14679. Tragedie is] This reflection seems to have been suggested by one which follows soon after the mention of Cressus in the passage just cited from Boethius. "What other thing bewaylen the cryinges of tragedyes but unely the dedes of fortune, that with an aukward stroke overturneth the realmes of grete nobleye?"

Ver. 14685. Peter of Spaine] This tragedie and the three following, in several MSS. are inserted before, after ver. 14380. So that the Monkes Tale ends with ver. 14684.

And cover hire bright face with a cloude.

In favour of this arrangement, it may be observed, that, when the Monk is interrupted, the Hoste alludes to this line as fresh in his memory, ver. 14788.

He spake how fortune covered with a cloude  
I wote not what, and als of a tragedie  
Right now ye herd.—

Where *tragedie* may be supposed to allude to ver. 14679.

On the other hand, though the Monk professedly disregards chronological order, these very modern stories in the midst of the ancient make an aukward appearance; and as the Hoste declares himself to have been half asleep, he may very well be supposed to speak from a confused recollection of what had been said 88 verses before. And what he says of *tragedie* may be referred to ver. 14768.

I have followed the order observed in the best MSS. C. 1. Ask. l. 2. HA.

Ver. 14697. Not Charles Oliver] Not the Oliver of Charles (Charlemagne) but an Oliver of Armorica, a second Genelon, or Ganelon. See ver. 13124. 15233. So this passage is to be understood, which in Ed. Urr. has been changed to—Not Charles, ne Oliver.—But who this *Oliver of Bretagne* was, whom our author charges as *worker* of the death of King Petro, is not so clear. According to Mariana, L. xvii. c. 13. such a charge might most properly be brought against *Bertrand* du Guesclin, a Breton, afterwards Constable of France; as it was in consequence of a private treaty with

him, that Petro came to his tent, where he was killed by his brother Henry, and partly, as some said, *con ayuda de Beltran*. But how he should come to be called *Oliver* I cannot guess; unless, perhaps, Chaucer confounded him with *Olivier de Clisson*, another famous Breton of those times, who was also Constable of France after Bertrand. Froissart mentions an *Olivier de Manny*, nephew to Bertrand du Guesclin, as receiving large rewards from King Henry; vol. i. ch. 245. but he does not represent him as particularly concerned in the death of Petro.

The person meant, whoever he was, must have been sufficiently pointed out at the time by his coat of arms, which is described in ver. 14693, 4. The "eagle of blak" in "a feld of snow" is plain enough, but the rest of the blazonry I cannot pretend to decypher.

Ver. 14701. Petro, King of Cypre] Concerning the taking of Alexandria by this prince, and his other exploits, see the note on ver. 51. and the authors there cited. He was assassinated in 1369. Acad. des Ins. T. xx. p. 439.

Ver. 14709. Barnabo Viscount] Barnabo Visconti Duke of Milan, was deposed by his nephew and thrown into prison, where he died in 1385.

I did not attend to this circumstance, when I stated the insurrection of Strawe in 1381, as the latest historical fact mentioned in these tales: Discourse, &c. n. 6. The death of Barnabo was certainly later. Fortunately however this difference of four years has no other consequence, than that it makes the supposed date of the Pilgrimage in 1383, which was before very doubtful, still more improbable. The Knight might as probably be upon a Pilgrimage in 1387 as in 1383, according to the precedent of Sir Mathew de Gournay. See note on ver. 43.

Ver. 14717. Hugelín of Pise] Chaucer himself has referred us to Dante for the original of this tragedy. See *Inferno*, c. xxxiii.

Ver. 14765, 6. These two verses in the Edit. have been transposed, to the confusion of the sense as well as of the metre.

Ver. 14811. say somewhat of hunting] For the propriety of this request, see the note on ver. 166 of the Monks Character.

Ver. 14816. thou Sire John] I know not how it has happened, that in the principal modern languages, John, or its equivalent, is a name of contempt, or at least of slight. So the Italians use *Gianni*, from whence *Zani*; the Spaniards *Juan*, as *Bobo Juan*, a foolish John; the French *Jean*, with various additions; and in English, when we call a man a *John*, we do not mean it as a title of honour. Chaucer in ver. 3708, uses *Jacke fool*, as the Spaniards do *Bobo Juan*; and I suppose *Jack ass* has the same etymology.

The title of *Sire* was usually given, by courtesy, to Priests, both secular and regular.

Ver. 14852. a maner dey] *A kind of dey*; but what a *dey* was it is not easy to determine precisely. It is mentioned, as the last species of labourers in husbandry, in the Stat. 25 Edw. III. St. i. c. 1. *Qe chescun charetter, caruer, chaceour des carues, bercher, porcher, deys, & tous autres servantz.*—And again in the Stat. 37 Edw. III. c. 14. *Item qe charetters, charuers, chaceours des carues, bovers, vachers, berchers, porchers, deys, & tous autres gardeins des bestes, bateurs des blees, & toutes maneres des gens d'estate de garson entendants a husbandrie.*—It probably meant originally a *day-labourer* in general, though it may since have been used to denote particularly the superintendent of a *Dayerie*. See Du Cange, in v. *DASERIA*. *DAYERIA*. *DAGASCALCI*.

Ver. 14857. the mery organ] This is put licentiously for *organs*, or *organs*. It is plain from *gon* in the next line that Chaucer meant to use this word as a Plural, from the Lat. *Gr. Organa*. He uses it so in ver. 15002.

And while that the organs maden melodye.

Ver. 14876. Was cleped faire damoselle Pertelote] I suspect that *faire* has been added by some one who was unnecessarily alarmed for the metre.

After this verse the Edit. (except Ca. 1.) have the two following.

He fettered her a hundred times a day,  
And she him pleaseth all that ever she may.

But as I found them in only two MSS. HA. and D., I was glad to leave them out as an injudicious interpolation. See below, ver. 15183.

Whoever wishes to see a great deal of uncertain etymology concerning the name *Pertelote*, may consult Gl. V. in v. *PARTELOT*.

Ver. 14881. loken in every lith] *Locked in every limb*. The Edit. read *loking*. *Loken* is used by Oocleve, in the first of his poems mentioned above in n. on ver. 5002.

Lefte was the Eries chamber dore unstoken,  
To which he came, and fonde it was not loken.

Ver. 14885. My lefe is fare in lond] *Fare*, or *farer*; gone. So the best MSS. Ed. Ca. 2. reads—*fer*. It is not easy to determine which of these is the true reading, unless we should recover the old song, from which this passage seems to be quoted.

Ver. 14914. Away, quod she] I have here inadvertently followed the printed copies. But instead of *Away* the best MSS. read *Avo*, which is more likely to have been used by Chaucer. The word occurs frequently in the French Fabliaux, &c. See T. ii. p. 243, 5. The Vocabulary, at the end of that volume, renders *Avo*, *Helas*; but it seems to signify no more than our *Away*! The Italians use *Via*! in the same manner. *Roman de Troie*. MS.

Lors dit Thoas, *Avo*, *avo*,  
Sire Achilles, vous dites mal.

Ver. 14946. Lo Caton] L. ii. Dist. 32. *Somnia ne cures*. I observe, by the way, that this distich is quoted by John of Salisbury, Polycrat. L. ii. c. 16. as a precept *virii sapientis*. In another place, L. vii. c. 9. he introduces his quotation of the first verse of Dist. 20. L. iii. in this manner. *Alt cel Cato, vel alius, nam autor incertus est*—

Ver. 14971. Catapuce] *Catapuzza*, ITAL. *Catapuce*, Fr. a kind of Spurge.

Ver. 14980. On of the grettest authors] Cicero, *de Divin*. L. i. c. 27. relates this and the following story; but in a contrary order; and with so many other differences, that one might be led to suspect that he was here quoted at second hand, if it were not usual with Chaucer, in these stories of familiar life, to throw in a number of natural circumstances, not to be found in his original authors.

Ver. 15116. Seint Kenelme] See his life in all the Edit. of the English Golden Legend.

Ver. 15147. Lo hire Andromacha] We must not look for this dream of Andromache in Homer. The first author who relates it is the fictitious Dares, c. xxiv. and Chaucer very probably took it from him, or from Guido de Columnis; or perhaps from Benoit de Sainte More, whose *Roman de Troie* I believe to have been that History of Dares, which Guido professes to follow, and has indeed almost entirely translated. A full discussion of this point, by a comparison of Guido's work with the *Roman de Troie*, would require more time and pains than I am inclined to bestow upon it. I will just mention a circumstance, which, if it can be verified, will bring the question to a much shorter decision. The *Versio Daretis Phrygi Gallico metro*, in the Ambrosian Library, of which Montfaucon speaks, *Diar. Ital.* p. 19. is undoubtedly the *Roman de Troie* by Benoit de Sainte More. The verses which are there quoted, differ no otherwise from the beginning of Benoit's Poem in MS. Harl. 4482. than as an old copy usually does from a more modern one. If therefore we can depend upon Montfaucon's judgment, that the MS. which he saw was written in the xth Century, it will follow, that Benoit wrote near a hundred years before Guido, whose work, in all the MSS. that I have seen or heard of, is uniformly said to have been finished in the year 1297. There can be no doubt that the later of these two writers copied from the former.

Ver. 15169. so siker as *In principio*] See the note on ver. 256.

The next line is taken from the fabulous conference

between the Emperour Adrian and Secundus the Philosopher, of which some account has been given in n. on ver. 6777. *Quid est Mulier? Hominis confusio, inamurabilis bestia* &c.

Ver. 15196. Sithen March ended] I have ventured to depart from the MSS. and Edit. in this passage. They all read *began* instead of *ended*. At the same time MS. C. 1. has this note in the margin, "1. 2<sup>d</sup> die Mail," which plainly supposes that the 32 days are to be reckoned from the end of March. As the Vernal Equinox, according to our author's hypothesis, Discourse, &c. p. 1., happened on the 15th of March, the place of the sun (as described in ver. 15200, 1) in 22° of Taurus agrees very nearly with his true place on the 2d of May, the 53d day incl. from the Equinox. MS. C. reads thus,

Syn March began tway monthes and dayes two.

which brings us to the same day, but, I think, by a less probable correction of the faulty copies.

Ver. 15205. Twenty degrees] The reading of the greatest part of the MSS. is *Fourty degrees*. But that is evidently wrong; for Chaucer is speaking of the altitude of the Sun at, or about, Prime, i. e. six o'clock A. M. See ver. 15203. When the Sun is in 22° of Taurus, he is 21° high about 9 after 6 A. M.

Ver. 15215. At the side of this verse is written in the margin of MS. C. *Petrus Comestor*, to intimate, I suppose, that this maxim is to be found in the *Historia Scholastica* of that author, who was a celebrated commentator on the Bible in the xiiith Century. See Fabricius, Bib. Med. Ætat. in v.

Ver. 15221. A col fox] Skinner interprets this a *blackish fox*, as if it were a *colt fox*. Gl. Urr. It is much easier to refute this interpretation than to assign the true one. *Colt* appears from ver. 15369 to have been a common name for a dog. In composition, it is to be taken in *malam partem*, but in what precise sense I cannot say. See Chaucer's H. of F. B. lib. 187. *Colt-tragetour*—and in the Mirr. for Mag. Leg. of Glendour, fol. 137. b. *Coleprophet* is plainly put for a *false, lying prophet*. Heywood has an Epigram *Of coleprophet*. Cent. vi. Ep. 83.

Thy prophesie poysonly to the pricke goth:  
*Coleprophet* and *coltpropon* thou art both.

And in his Proverbial Dialogues, P. 1. ch. x. he has the following lines.

*Colt* under canstyk she can plaie on both hands:  
Disimulation well she understands.

I will add an allusion of our author, in the Test. of Love, B. ii. fol. cccxxxiii. b. to a story of one *Colto*, which I cannot explain. "Busiris slewe his gastes, and he was slain of Hercules his gaste. Hugest betrayed many men, and of *Colto* was he betrayed."

Ver. 15240. But what that God] This passage has been translated into (rather elegant) Latin Iambics by Sir H. Savile, in his preface to Bradwardin, *de causis Dei*, Lond. 1618. See the Testimonies &c. prefixed to Ed. Urr. Our author has discussed this question of the divine preience &c. more at large in his *Troilus*, B. 4. from ver. 257 to ver. 1078. It is an addition of his own, of which there is no trace in the Philostrato of Boccace. See Essay &c. n. 62.

Ver. 15277. Physiologus] He alludes, I suppose, to a book in Latin metre, entitled *Physiologus de naturis xii animantium*, by one Theobaldus, whose age is not known. Fabr. Bib. Med. Æt. in v. THEOBALDUS. There is a copy of this work in MS. Harl. 3083, in which the ixth section *De Sirenis* begins thus:

*Sirenes sunt monstra maris resonantia magna  
Vocibus et modulis cantus formantia multis,  
Ad quas incaute veniunt æplissime nautæ,  
Quæ faciunt sompnum nimis dulcedine vocum &c.*

See also R. R. ver. 680.

Ver. 15318. In Dan Burnel the asse] The story alluded to is in a poem of Nigel Wireker, entitled, *Burnellus, seu Speculum stultorum*, written in the time of Richard I.

The substance of the story is in Gl. Urr. v. BURNELL. The Poem itself is in most collections of MSS. The printed copies are more rare, though there have been several editions of it. See *Leyser, Hist. Po. Med. Ævi*, p. 752, 3.

*Burnell* is used as a nickname for the ass in the Chester Whitsun Playes. MS. Harl. 3013. See the note on ver. 3539. In the pageant of Balaam, he says—

Go forth, *Burnell*, go forth, go.  
What? the devil, my asse will not go.

and again, fol. 36. b.

*Burnell*, why begilest thou me?

The original word was, probably, *Brunell*, from its brown colour; as the Fox below, ver. 15340. is called *Russell*, from his red colour, I suppose.

Ver. 15341. by the gargat] The Edit. have changed this into *gorget*; but *gargat* is an old Fr. word. *Rom. de Rou. MS. Reg. 4 C. xl*.

O grant culteals e od granz cuignes  
Lur unt les gargates trenchies.

Ver. 15353. O Gaufride] He alludes to a passage in the *Nova Poetria* of Geoffrey de Vinnauf, published not long after the death of Richard I. In this work the author has not only given instructions for composing in the different styles of Poetry, but also examples. His specimen of the plaintive kind of composition begins thus:

*Neustria, sub clypeo regis defensas Ricardi,  
Indefensas modo, gestu testare dolorem.  
Exundent oculi lacrymas; exterminet ora  
Pallor; connodet digitos tortura; cruentet  
Interiora dolor, et verberet æthera clamor:  
Tota peris ex morte sua. Mors non fuit ejus,  
Sed tua; non una, sed publica mortis origo.  
O Veneris lacrymosa dies! o sydus amarum!  
Illa dies tua non fuit, et Venus illa venenum.  
Illa dedit vulnus, &c.*

These lines are sufficient to shew the object, and the propriety, of Chaucer's ridicule. The whole poem is printed in *Leyser's Hist. Po. Med. Ævi* p. 863—978.

Ver. 15451. As sayth my Lord] Opposite to this verse, in the margin of MS. C. 1. is written "Kantuar," which means, I suppose, that some Archbishop of Canterbury is quoted.

Ver. 15468. Sayd to another] I have observed, in the Discourse, &c. §. xxxvii. that in MSS. Ask. 1. 2. this line is read thus,

Seide unto the nunne as ye shul heer.

The following are the six forged lines, which the same MSS. exhibit by way of introduction to the Nonnes tale.

Madame, and I dorste, I wolde you pray  
To telle a tale in fortherlinge of our way.  
Than mighte ye do unto us grete ese.  
Gladly, sire, quoth she, so that I might please  
You and this worthy company,  
And began hire tale riht thus ful sobrely.

Ver. 15514. out of relees] All the best MSS. concur in this reading, and therefore I have followed them, though I confess that I do not clearly understand the phrase; unless perhaps it mean *without release*; *without being ever released from their duty*. The common reading *withouten lees* is a genuine Saxon phrase. *Butan lees*; *absque falso*: without a lie.

Ver. 15518. Assembled in] This stanza is very like one in the Prioresses tale, ver. 13403—13410.

Ver. 15530. Sone of Eve.] See the Discourse, &c. §. xxxvii. n. 30.

Ver. 15536. Be thou min advocat] I have no better authority for the insertion of *thou* than Ed. Urr. The metre, perhaps, might be safe without it, considering *high* as a dissyllable, but the verse would be very rough.

Ver. 15563. First wol I] The note upon this in the margin of MS. C. 1. is—"Interpretatio &c. quam ponit Frater Jacobus Januensis in *Legenda aurea*." It has been observed in the Discourse, &c. that this whole tale is almost literally translated from the *Legenda aurea*.



Ver. 15554. louting] *l. latitanem.* Marg. MS. C. 1. from the Sax. *lutan*, or *lutian*; *latere*.

Ver. 15675. On Lord, on faith] I have adopted this reading in preference to that of the best MSS.—O Lord, O Faith, O God &c.—in order to guard against the mistake, which the Editt. have generally fallen into, of considering O, in this passage, as the sign of the vocative case. *On* and *o* are used indifferently by Chaucer to signify *one*.

Ver. 15738. And of the miracle] I should have been glad to have met with any authority for leaving out this parenthesis of fourteen lines, which interrupts the narration so awkwardly, and to so little purpose. The substance of it is in the printed Editions of the Latin *Legenda aurea*, but appears evidently to have been at first a marginal observation, and to have crept into the text by the blunder of some copyist. Accordingly it is wanting in Caxton's *Golden Legende*, and, I suppose, in the French *Legende Doree*, from which he translated. The author of the French version had either made use of an uncorrupted MS. or perhaps had been sagacious enough to discern and reject the interpolation.

Ver. 15783. And we also] It should have been *us*. I take notice of this, because Chaucer is very rarely guilty of such an offence against grammar.

Ver. 13853. Your cours is don] So all the MSS. In Ed. Urr. *don* is changed to *run*; and I believe no modern poet would have joined any other verb with *cours*, especially after he had used *yon* in the preceding line; but I am not clear that Chaucer attended to such niceties.

In the latter part of this line, the best MSS. read—your faith *has* ye conserved,—and I know not by what negligence I omitted to follow them.

Ver. 15906. thin utter eyen] *Exterioribus oculis.* Marg. MS. C. 1.

Ver. 16023. five mile] So all the MSS. except E. which reads "*half a mile*." This latter reading must certainly be preferred, if we suppose that Chaucer meant to mark the interval between the conclusion of the Nonnes tale and the arrival of the Channon. But it would be contrary to the general plan of our author's work, and to his practice upon other occasions, that the Host should suffer the company

To ridden by the way, dombe as the ston."

even for half a mile. I am therefore rather inclined to believe that *five mile* is the right reading, and that it was intended to mark the distance from *some place*, which we are now unable to determine with certainty, for want of the Prologue to the Nonnes tale.

I have sometimes suspected, that it was the intention of Chaucer to begin the journey from Canterbury with the Nonnes tale. In that case, *five mile* would mark very truly the distance from Canterbury to Boughton under blec. The circumstances too of the Chanons overtaking the pilgrims and looking, "as he had priked," or galloped, "miles three," would agree better with this supposition. It is scarce credible that he should have ridden after them from Southwark to Boughton without overtaking them; and if he had, it must have been a very inadequate representation of his condition, to say that "it seemed, he had priked *miles three*." Besides, the words of the Yeman, ver. 16056, 7.

—Now in the morwe tide  
Out of your hostellerie I saw you ride—

seem to imply, that they were overtaken in the same morning in which they set out; but it must have been considerably after noon before they reached Boughton from Southwark.

There is another way of solving these difficulties, by supposing that the Pilgrims lay upon the road, and that the Nonnes tale was the first of the second day's journey. It is most probable, that a great part of the company, not to mention their horses, would have had no objection to dividing the journey to Canterbury into two days; but if they lay only five miles on this side of Boughton, I do not see how they could spend the whole second day till

evening (see ver. 17316) in travelling from thence to Canterbury.

I must take notice too, in opposition to my first hypothesis, that the manner, in which the Yeman expresses himself in ver. 16091, 2. seems to shew that he was riding to Canterbury.

Ver. 16156. For Caton sayth] This precept of Cato is in L. 1. Dist. 17.

Ne cures si quis tacito sermone loquatur;  
Conscius ipse sibi de se putat omnia dici.

Ver. 16311. thurgh jupartie] So MS. C. 1. I have followed it, as it comes nearest to the true original of our word *jeopardie*, which our etymologists have sadly mistaken. They deduce it from *J'ai perdu*, or *Jeu perdu*; but I rather believe it to be a corruption of *Jeu parti*. A *jeu parti* is properly a game, in which the chances are exactly even. See Froissart, v. 1. c. 234. Ils n'estoient pas à *jeu parti* contre les François. v. 11. c. 2. si nous les voyons à *jeu parti*. From hence it signifies any thing uncertain, or hazardous. In the old French Poetry, the discussion of a Problem, where much might be said on both sides, was called a *Jeu parti*. See *Poésies du Roy de Navarre*, Chanson xlviii. and *Gloss.* in v. See also Du Cange in v. *Jocus PARTIUS*.

Ver. 16388. The four sprites &c.] Compare Gower, *De Conf. Am.* B. iv. fol. 76. b.

Ver. 16306. Ascaunce] See the note on ver. 7337.

Ver. 16430. But all thing] This is taken from the *Parabola of Alanus de Insulis*, who died in 1294. See *Leyser, Hist. Po. Med. Aevi*, p. 1074.

Non tenens aurum totum quod splendet ut aurum,  
Nec pulchrum pomum quodlibet esse bonum.

Ver. 16480. a preest, an annuellere] They were called *annuelleres*, not from their receiving a yearly stipend, as the Gloss. explains it, but from their being employed solely in singing *annuals*, or *anniversary Masses*, for the dead, without any cure of souls. See the Stat. 36 Edw. III. c. viii. where the *Chapelleins Parochials* are distinguished from others *chantans anuales*, et a cure des almes nient entendants. They were both to receive yearly stipends, but the former was allowed to take six marks, and the latter only five. Compare Stat. 2 H. V. St. 2. c. 2. where the stipend of the *Chapellein Parochiel* is raised to eight marks, and that of the *Chapellein annueler* (he is so named in the statute) to seven.

Ver. 16915. the secree of secreen] He alludes to a treatise, entitled, *Secreta Secretorum*, which was supposed to contain the sum of Aristotle's instructions to Alexander. See Fabric. Bibl. Gr. v. li. p. 167. It was very popular in the middle ages. Ægidius de Columna, a famous divine and bishop, about the latter end of the thirteenth Century, built upon it his book *De regimine principum*, of which our Occleve made a free translation in English verse, and addressed it to Henry V. while Prince of Wales. A part of Lydgate's translation of the *Secreta Secretorum* is printed in Ashmole's *Theat. Chem. Brit.* p. 397. He did not translate more than about half of it, being prevented by death. See MS. *Hart.* 2251. and Tanner, *Bib. Brit.* in v. *LYDGATE*. The greatest part of the viith Book of Gower's *Conf. Amant.* is taken from this supposed work of Aristotle.

Ver. 16913. As his book Senior] Ed. Urr. reads—As in his book—which I should have preferred to the common reading, if I had found it in any copy of better authority.

The book alluded to is printed in the *Theatrum Chemicum*, vol. v. p. 219. under this title, "Senioris Zadith fil. Hamuells tabula Chymica." The story which follows of Plato and his disciple is there told, (p. 249.) with some variations, of Salomon. "Dixit Salomon rex, Recipe lapidem qui dicitur *Thitarius*—Dixit sapiens, Assigna mihi illum. Dixit, est corpus *magnesie*—Dixit, quid est *magnesie*? Respondit, *magnesie* est aqua, composita," &c.

Ver. 16961. Do him come forth] So MSS. Ask. 1. 2. and some others. The common reading is—Do him *comforth*. The alteration is material, not only as it gives a clearer sense, but as it intimates to us, that the narrator of a tale

was made to come out of the crowd, and to take his place within hearing of the Host, during his narration. Agreeably to this notion, when the Host calls upon Chaucer, ver. 1328, he says,

Approche nere, and loke up merfly.  
Now ware you, Sires, and let this man have place.

It was necessary that the Host, who was to be "Juge and reportour" of the tales (ver. 816), should hear them all distinctly. The others might hear as much as they could, or as they chose of them. It would have required the lungs of a Stentor, to speak audibly to a company of thirty people trotting on together in a road of the fourteenth Century.

Ver. 16965. to asleep by the morise] This must be understood generally for the day-time; as it was then afternoon. It has been observed in the Discourse &c. §. xlii. that, in this episode of the Coke, no notice is taken of his having told a tale before.

Ver. 16991. wol ye just at the fan?] Some MSS. read—*van*. The sense of both words is the same. The thing meant is the *Quintaine*, which is called a *fan*, or *van*, from its turning round like a weather-cock. See Du Cange in v. *VANA*; Menestrier *sur les tournois*, as quoted by Menage, *Dict. Etymol.* in v. *QUINTAINE*; and Kennet's *Paroch. Antiq.*

Ver. 16993. win of ape] This is the reading of MSS. HA. D. E. and Ed. Ca. 1. and I believe the true one. The explanation in the Gloss. of this and the preceding passage, from Mr. Speght, is too ridiculous to be repeated. If *win of ape* I understand to mean the same as *vin de singe* in the old *Calendrier des Bergiers*. Sign. L. il. b. The author is treating of Physiognomy, and in his description of the four temperaments he mentions, among other circumstances, the different effects of wine upon them. The Choleric, he says, *a vin de Lyon; cest a dire, quant a bien deu seult tanser noysier et battre*—The Sanguine, *a vin de Singe; quant a plus deu tant est plus joyeux*—In the same manner the Phlegmatic is said to have *vin de mouton*, and the Melancholic *vin de porc*.

I find the same four animals applied to illustrate the effects of wine in a little Rabbinical tradition, which I shall transcribe here from Fabric. Cod. Pseudopig. V. T. vol. i. p. 275. *Vincas plantanti Nocho Satanam se junx-isse memorant, qui, dum Nos vites plantaret, mactaverit apud illas ovem, leonem, simiam et suem: Quod principia potis vini homo sit instar ovis, vinum sumptum officiat ex homine leonem, largius hauritum mulier cum in saltantem simiam, ad ebrietatem infusum transformet illum in pollutam et prostratam suem.* See also *Gesta Romanorum*, c. 159, where a story of the same purport is quoted from Josephus, in *libro de casu rerum naturalium*.

Ver. 16999. a faire chivachee] A fair expedition. See the note on ver. 85. The common Editt. read—*chevisance*.

Ver. 17112. Take any brid] This passage is too like one which has occurred before in the Squire's tale, ver. 16925. The thought is plainly taken from Boethius, L. iii. Met. 2. See also *Rom. de la R.* ver. 14717—34.

Ver. 17124. Let take a cat] This is imitated from the *Rom. de la R.* ver. 14825.

Ver. 17130. Lo, here hath kind] So MSS. Ask. 1. 2. The common Editt. read, *lust. Kind is nature*. See the next line but one, and ver. 16923, 4.

Ver. 17132. A she-wolf] This is also from the *Rom. de la R.* ver. 8142.

Tout ainsi comme fait la louve,  
Que sa folle tant empire,  
Qu'elle prend de tous loupes la pira.

Ver. 17173. or any thefe] Any is from conjecture only, instead of a, the reading of all the MSS. that I have consulted. The reading of Ed. Urr. is—or *elles a thefe*—whether from authority or conjecture I cannot tell; but even as a conjecture I should have adopted it in preference to my own, if I had taken notice of it in time.

Ver. 17278. My sone, thy tonge] In the *Rom. de la R.* ver. 7333, this precept is quoted from *Ptolemy*.

Au commencer de l'Atmageste.

See the note on ver. 5764.

Ver. 17381. The firste vertue] This precept is also quoted in the *Rom. de la R.* ver. 7415. from Cato. It is extant L. i. Dist. 3.

Virtutem primam esse puta compescere linguam.

Ver. 17390. be non auctor newe] This seems to be from Cato. L. i. Dist. 12.

Rumores fuge, ne incipias novus auctor haberi.

It looks as if Chaucer read,

Rumoris fuge ne incipias novus auctor haberi.

Ver. 17316. Fourre of the klok] See the Discourse &c. §. xli.

Ver. 17321. Therwith the mones exaltation, In mene Libra, alway gan ascend] This is a very obscure passage. Some of the MSS. read—I mene Libra. According to the reading which I have followed, *exaltation* is not to be considered as a technical term, but as signifying simply *rising*; and the sense will be, that the moon's rising, in the middle of Libra, was continually ascending, &c.

If *exaltation* be taken in its technical meaning, as explained in the note on ver. 6294, it will be impossible to make any sense of either of the readings: for the *exaltation of the moon* was not in Libra, but in Taurus. *Kalendar des Bergiers*. Sign. l. ult. Mr. Speght, I suppose, being aware of this, altered Libra into Taurus; but he did not consider, that the Sun, which has just been said to be descending, was at that time in Taurus, and that consequently Taurus must also have been descending.

Libra therefore should by no means be parted with. Being in that part of the Zodiac which is nearly opposite to Taurus, the place of the Sun, it is very properly represented as ascending above the horizon toward the time of the Sun's setting. If any alteration were to be admitted, I should be for reading—

Therwith Saturnes exaltation,  
I mene Libra, alway gan ascende—

The exaltation of Saturna was in Libra. *Kalendar des Bergiers*. Sign. K. i.

Ver. 17334. I cannot geste, rom, ram, ruf] This is plainly a contemptuous manner of describing *alliterative poetry*; and the Person's preface declaration that "he is a Southern man," would lead one to imagine, that compositions in that style were, at this time, chiefly confined to the Northern provinces. It was observed long ago by William of Malmesbury, l. iii. *Pontif. Angl.* that the language of the North of England was so harsh and unpolished, as to be scarce intelligible to a Southern man. *Quod propter viciniam barbararum gentium, et propter remotiorem regum quondam Anglorum modo Normannorum contigit, qui magis ad Austrum quam ad Aquilonem diversati noscuntur.* From the same causes we may presume, that it was often long before the improvements in the poetical art, which from time to time were made in the South, could find their way into the North; so that there the hobbling alliterative verse might still be in the highest request, even after Chaucer had established the use of the Heroic metre in this part of the island. Dr. Percy has quoted an alliterative poem by a Cheshire man on the battle of Flodden in 1513, and he has remarked "that all such poets as used this kind of metre, retained along with it many peculiar Saxon idioms." *Essay on Metre* of P. P. This may perhaps have been owing to their being generally inhabitants of the Northern counties, where the old Saxon idiom underwent much fewer and slower alterations, than it did in the neighbourhood of the capital.

To geste here is to relate geste. In ver. 13861. he has called it to *telle in geste*. Both passages seem to imply that *Gestes* were chiefly written in alliterative verse, but the latter passage more strongly than this. After the Host has told Chaucer, that he "shall no longer rime," he goes on—

"Let see wher thou canst tellen ought in *geste*,  
Or tellen in *prose* somewhat at the leste—"

*Geste* there seems to be put for a species of composition which was neither *Rime* nor *Prose*; and what that could be, except *alliterative metre*, I cannot guess. At the same time I must own, that I know no other passage which authorizes the interpretation of *Geste* in this confined sense. In the H. of F. II. 114. Chaucer speaks of himself as making—

"bokes, songes, dittes  
In *rime*, or elles in *cadence*."

where *cadence*, I think, must mean a species of poetical composition distinct from riming verses. The name might be properly enough applied to the metre used in the *Ormulum* (see the Essay, &c. n. 52.) but no work of Chaucer in any such metre, without rime, has come within my observation.

Ver. 17378. had the wordes] This is a French phrase. It is applied to the Speaker of the Commons in *Rot. Parl.* 81 E. III. n. 87. Mons. Thomas de Hungerford, Chivalier, *qi avoit les paroles par les Communes d'Angleterre en cest Parlement*, &c.

P. 148. col. 1. l. 60. forlete sinne or that sinne forlete hem] The same thought occurs, by way of precept, at the end of the Doctor's tale, ver. 12290.

*Forsaketh sinne or sinne you forsake.*

P. 154. col. 1. l. 19. sayth Moyses] I cannot tell where. Perhaps there may be some such passage in the Rabbinical histories of Moyses, which the learned Gaulmin published in the last century (Paris, 1629, 8vo.) and which, among other traditions, contain that alluded to by S. Jude, Ep. ver. 9.

P. 154. col. 1. l. 54. in the *thurrok*] The Edit. have changed this word, in this place, into *timber*, though, in another place, p. 152. col. 2. l. 52. they have left it, and Mr. Speght explains it to mean *an heap*. It is a Saxon word, which the Glossaries render *cymbe*, *caupulus*; originally perhaps *campulus*, as it was sometimes written. Du Cange, in v. *CAURULUS*. It seems to have signified any sort of keeled vessel, and from thence, what we call, the *hold* of a ship. The following explanation of it from an old book, entitled "*Our Ladyes mirroure*" (Lond. 1530. fol. 57. b.) will fully justify Chaucer's use of it in both places, in the first literally, and in the second metaphorically. "Ye shall understande that there ys a place in the bottoome of a shyppe, wherin ys gathered alle the fylthe that cometh into the shyppe—and it is called in some contre of thys londe a *thorrocke*. Other calle yt an *hamron*, and some calle yt the *bulcke* of the shyppe." I know not what to make of *hamron*.

P. 155. col. 2. l. 14. outrageous array of clothing] What follows should be read carefully by any Antiquary, who may mean to write *de Re Vestiaria* of the English nation in the 14th Century.

P. 163. col. 1. l. 28. so high doctrine I lete to divines] See before, ver. 17366—71. and below, p. 171. col. 1. l. 54. "The exposition of this—I betake to the maisters of Theologie." The secular clergy, in the time of Chaucer, being generally very ignorant, it would not have been in character, I suppose, to represent the Personne as a deep divine, though a very pious, worthy Priest. The Frere, whose brethren had the largest share of the learning which was then in fashion, is made to speak with great contempt of the Parochial Pastors, ver. 7590.

"This every *laced* Vicar and Person  
Can say &c."

And yet in the Person's Character, ver. 402. we are told, that—

"He was also a *larned* man, a clerk."

It may be doubted therefore, whether in these passages Chaucer may not speak for himself, forgetting or neglecting the character of the real speaker.

P. 172. col. 2. l. 8. Now preyte I to hem alle &c.] What follows being found, with some small variations, in all com-

plete MSS. (I believe) of the Canterbury Tales, and in both Caxton's Editions, which were undoubtedly printed from MSS. there was no pretence to leave it out in this Edition, however difficult it may be to give any satisfactory account of it.

I must first take notice, that this passage in MS. Ask. 1. is introduced by these words—

*Hert taketh the maker his leve.*

and is concluded by these—

*Hert endeth the Personys Tale.*

In MS. Ask. 2. there is a similar introduction and conclusion in Latin; at the beginning,—*Hic capit auctor licentiam*—and at the end,—*Explicit narratio Rectoris, et ultima inter narrationes hujus libri de quibus composuit Chaucer, cujus anime propicietur Deus. Amen.*

These two MSS. therefore may be considered as agreeing in substance with those MSS. mentioned in the Discourse, &c. §. xiii. in which this passage makes part of the Personne's Tale. One of them is described by Hearne, in his letter to Bagford, App. to R. G. p. 681, 2.

In Edit. Ca. 2. as quoted by Ames, p. 56. it is clearly separated from the Personne's Tale, and entitled,

*The Prayer.*

In the MSS. in which it is also separated from the Personne's tale, I do not remember to have seen it distinguished by any title, either of *Prayer* or *Revocation*; or *Retraction*, as it is called in the Preface to Ed. Urry. If we believe what is said in p. 172. col. 2. l. 22. Chaucer had written a distinct piece entitled *his Retractions*, in which he had revoked his blameable compositions.

The just inference from these variations in the MSS. is perhaps, that none of them are to be at all relied on; that different Copyists have given this passage the title that pleased them best, and have attributed it to the Personne or to Chaucer, as the matter seemed to them to be most suitable to the one or the other.

Mr. Hearne, whose greatest weakness was not his incredulity, has declared his suspicion, "that the Revocation, meaning this whole passage, is not genuine, but that it was made by the Monks." App. to R. G. p. 603. I cannot go quite so far. I think, if the Monks had set about making a Revocation for Chaucer to be annexed to the Canterbury Tales, they would have made one more in form. The same objection lies to the supposal that it was made by himself.

The most probable hypothesis which has occurred to me, for the solution of these difficulties, is to suppose, that the beginning of this passage, except the words, or *reden* it in col. 2. l. 9. and the end make together the genuine conclusion of the Personne's tale, and that the middle part which I have inclosed between hooks is an interpolation.

It must be allowed, I think, as I have observed before in the Discourse, &c. §. xiii. that the appellation of "*libel tretise*" suits better with the Personne's tale taken singly, than with the whole work. The doubt expressed in col. 2. l. 12. "if there be any thing that displeaseth &c." is very agreeable to the manner in which the Personne speaks in his Prologue, ver. 17366. See the note on p. 169. col. 1. l. 28. The mention of "*verray penance, confession and satisfaction*" in p. 172. col. 2. l. 39, seems to refer pointedly to the subject of the speaker's preceding discourse; and the title given to Christ in p. 172. col. 2. l. 42, "*Preste of all Prestes*" seems peculiarly proper in the mouth of a Priest.

So much for those parts which may be supposed to have originally belonged to the Personne. With respect to the middle part, I think it not improbable, that Chaucer might be persuaded by the Religious who attended him in his last illness, to revoke, or retract, certain of his works; or at least that they might give out, that he had made such Retractions as they thought proper. In either case, it is possible that the same zeal might think it expedient to join the substance of these Retractions to the Canterbury Tales, the antidote to the poison; and might accordingly procure the present interpolation to be made in the Epilogue to the Personne's tale, taking care at the same time, by the insertion of the words "*or reden it*" in col. 2. l. 9. to

convert that Epilogue from an address of the Persons to his *hearsers* into an address of Chaucer to his *readers*.

But, leaving these very uncertain speculations, I will say a few words upon those *enditings of worldly ravitees*, which are here supposed to have sitten heavy on our author's conscience.

P. 172. col. 2. l. 23. the boke of Troilus] It has been said in the Essay, &c. n. 62. that the Troilus is borrowed from the Filostrato of Boccace. This is evident not only from the Fable and Characters, which are the same in both poems, but also from a number of passages in the English which are literally translated from the Italian. At the same time there are several long passages, and even episodes, in the Troilus, of which there are no traces in the Filostrato. Of these therefore it may be doubted, whether Chaucer has added them out of his own invention, or taken them either from some completer copy of Boccace's poem than what we have in print, or from some copy interpolated by another hand. He speaks of himself as a translator *out of Latin*, B. II. l. 14. and in two passages he quotes his author by the name of *Lollius*, B. I. 204—409, and B. v. 1632. The latter passage is in the Filostrato, but the former, in which the 102d Sonnet of Petrarch is introduced, is not. What he says of having translated *out of Latin* need not make any difficulty, as the Italian language was commonly called *Latino volgare* (see the quotation from the Thesida, Discourse, &c. n. 3.) and Lydgate (Prol. to Boccace) expressly tells us, that Chaucer translated—"a boke which called is *Trophe*,"

In Lombard tonge, as men may rede and see."

How Boccace should have acquired the name of *Lollius*, and the *Filostrato* the title of *Trophe*, are points which I confess myself unable to explain.

*Ibid.* l. 24. the boke of Fame] Chaucer mentions this among his works in the Leg. of G. W. ver. 417. He wrote it while he was Comptroller of the Custom of wools, &c. (see B. II. ver. 144—8.) and consequently after the year 1374. See App. to Pref. C.

*Ibid.* l. 24. the boke of five and twenty Ladies] This is the reading of all the MSS. If it be genuine, it affords a strong proof that this enumeration of Chaucer's works was not drawn up by himself; as there is no ground for believing that the *Legende of Good Women* ever contained, or was intended to contain, the histories of *five and twenty Ladies*. See the note on ver. 4481. It is possible however that xxv may have been put by mistake for xix.

*Ibid.* l. 25. the boke of the Duchesse] See the note on ver. 4467. One might have imagined that this poem, written upon a particular occasion, was in all probability an original composition; but upon comparing the portrait of a beautiful woman, which M. de la Ravaliere (Poes. du R. de N. Glom. v. Bm.az) has cited from MS. du Roi, N° 7612. with Chaucer's description of his heroine (ver. 817, *et seq.*) I find

that several lines in the latter are literally translated from the former. I should not therefore be surprised, if, upon a further examination of that MS. it should appear, that our author, according to his usual practice, had borrowed a considerable part of his work from some French poet.

*Ibid.* l. 25. the boke of Seint Valentines day &c.] In the Editt. the *Assemblée of Foules*. Chaucer himself in the Leg. of G. W. ver. 419. calls it the *Parlement of Foules*. See the note on ver. 1920. and App. to Pref. C. note \*.

*Ibid.* l. 27. the tales of Canterbury &c.] If we suppose, that this passage was written by Chaucer himself, to make part of the conclusion of his Canterbury Tales, it must appear rather extraordinary, that he should mention those tales in this general manner, and in the midst of his other works. It would have been more natural to have placed them either at the beginning or at the end of his catalogue.

*Ibid.* l. 28. the boke of the Leon] This book is also ascribed to Chaucer by Lydgate, Prol. to Boccace, but no MS. of it has hitherto been discovered. It may possibly have been a translation of *Le dit du Lion*, a poem of Guillaume de Machaut, composed in the year 1342. Acad. des Ins. t. xx. p. 378. 408. Some lines from this poem, as I apprehend, are quoted in the Glossary to *Poes du Roi de N. v. ARROUSERS. BACHELER*.

Whether we suppose this list of Chaucer's exceptionable works to have been drawn up by himself, or by any other person, it is unaccountable that his translation of the *Roman de la Rose* should be omitted. If he translated the whole of that very extraordinary composition, as is most probable, he could scarce avoid being guilty of a much greater licentiousness, in sentiment as well as diction, than we find in any of his other writings. His translation, as we have it, breaks off at ver. 5370. of the original (ver. 5810. Ed. Urr.) and beginning again at ver. 11253. ends imperfect at ver. 13105. In the latter part we have a strong proof of the negligence of the first editor, who did not perceive that two leaves in his MS. were misplaced. The passage from ver. 7013 to ver. 7062 incl. and the passage from ver. 7257 to ver. 7304. incl. should be inserted after ver. 7160. The later Editors have all copied this, as well as many other blunders of less consequence, which they must have discovered, if they had consulted the French original.

A Bachelor, who dances with Franchisee, is said to resemble

"The Lerdaz sonne of Wyndesore."

R. R. ver. 1250.

This seems to be a compliment to the young Princes in general, rather than to any particular son of Edward III, who is certainly meant by the *Lord of Windsor*. In the French it is simply—*Il sembloit estre fils de Ro.*



## THE ROMAUNT OF THE ROSE.

v. 1—104

MANY menne sain that in sweveninges,  
There n'is but fables and lesinges :  
But menne may some sweven seene,  
Which hardely that false ne been,  
But afterward ben apparaunt :  
This may I drawe to warraunt  
An authour that hight Macrobes,  
That halte not dreames false ne lees,  
But undoth us the avisoun,  
That whilom mette king Cippioun.

And who so sayth, or weneth it be  
A jape, or else nicete  
To wene that dreames after fall,  
Let who so liste a foole me call.  
For this trow I, and say for me,  
That dreames signiffaunce be  
Of good and harme to many wightes,  
That dreamen in hir sleep a nightes  
Full many thinges covertly,  
That fallen after all openly.

Within my twentie yeere of age,  
When that love taketh his courage  
Of younge folke, I wente soone  
To bed, as I was wont to doone :  
And fast I slept, and in sleeping,  
Me mette such a swevening,  
That liked me wondrous wele,  
But in that sweven is never a dele  
That it n'is afterward befall,  
Right as this dreame woll tell us all.

Now this dreame woll I rime aright,  
To make your heartes gay and light :  
For love it prayeth, and also  
Commaundeth me that it be so.

And if there any aske me,  
Whether that it be he or she,  
How this booke which is here  
Shall hatte, that I rede you here :  
It is the Romaunt of the Rose,  
In which all the art of love I close.

The matter faire is of to make,  
God graunt me in gree that she it take  
For whom that it begonnen is,  
And that is she, that hath ywis  
So mokel prise, and thereto she  
So worthis is beloved to be,  
That she wel ought of prise and right,  
Be cleped Rose of everie wight.  
That it was May me thoughte tho,  
It is five yere or more ago,  
That it was May, thus dreamed me,  
In time of love and jolitie,

That all thing ginneth waxen gay :  
For there is neither buske nor hay  
In May, that it n'll shrouded bene,  
And it with newe leves wrene :  
These woodes eke recoveren grene,  
That drie in winter ben to sene,  
And the erth waxeth proud withall,  
For swote dewes that on it fall,  
And the poore estate forget,  
In which that winter had it set :  
And than become the ground so proude,  
That it wol have a newe shroude,  
And maketh so queint his robe and faire,  
That it had hewes an hundred paire,  
Of grasse and floures, of Inde and Pers,  
And many hewes full divers :  
That is the robe I mean ywis,  
Through which the ground to praisen is.

The birdes, that han left hir song,  
While they han suffred cold full strong,  
In wethers grille, and derke to sight,  
Ben in May for the Sunne bright,  
So glad, that they shew in singing,  
That in hir heart is such liking,  
That they mote singen and ben light :  
Than doth the nightingale her might,  
To maken noyse, and singen blithe :  
Than is blisfull many a sithe,  
The chelaundre, and the popingaye,  
Than younge folke entenden aye,  
For to ben gay and amorous,  
The time is then so savourous.

Harde is his heart that loveth nought  
In May, whan all this mirth is wrought,  
Whan he may on these branches here  
The smalle birdes singen clere  
Hir blisfull swete song piteous,  
And in this season delitous :  
When love affirmeth all thing,  
Me thought one night, in my sleeping,  
Right in my bed full readyly,  
That it was by the morrow early,  
And up I rose, and gan me cloth,  
Anone I wysse mine hondes both,  
A silver needle forth I drow,  
Out of an aguiler queint ynow,  
And gan this needle thread anone,  
For out of towne me list to gone,  
The sound of birdes for to heare  
That on the buskes singen clere,  
In the swete season that lefe is,  
With a thred basting my slevis.

Alone I went in my playing,  
 The smal foules song hearkening,  
 That payned hem full many a paire,  
 To sing on bowes blossomed faire :  
 Jolife and gay, full of gladnesse,  
 Toward a river gan I me dresse,  
 That I heard renne faste by,  
 For fairer playeng none saw I  
 Than playen me by the rivere :  
 For from an hill that stood there nere,  
 Come downe the stream full stiffe and bold,  
 Clere was the water, and as cold  
 As any well is, sooth to saine,  
 And somedeles lasse it was than Saine,  
 But it was straiter, welcaway,  
 And never saw I ere that day,  
 The water that so wele liked me,  
 And wonder glad was I to se  
 That lusty place, and that rivert :  
 And with that water that ran so clere,  
 My face I wyshe, tho saw I wele,  
 The bottome ypared everidele  
 With gravel, full of stones shene,  
 The meadowes softe, sote, and grene.  
 Beet right upon the water side,  
 Full clere was than the morowe tide,  
 And full attempte out of drede,  
 Tho gan I walken thorow the mede,  
 Downward aye in my playing,  
 The rivers side coösting.

And when I had a while ygone,  
 I saw a garden right anone,  
 Full long and broad, and everidele  
 Enclosed was, and walled wele,  
 With his walles enbatailed,  
 Portrayed without, and well entayled  
 With many riche portraitures,  
 And both the images and peintures,  
 Can I beholde besely,  
 And I wold tell you readyly,  
 Of thilke images the semblaunce,  
 As farre as I have remembraunce.

Amidde saw I HATE stonde,  
 That for her wrath and yre and onde,  
 Seemed to be a moveresse,  
 An angry wight, a chideresse,  
 And ful of gile, and fell courage,  
 By semblaunt was that ilke image,  
 And she was nothing wele araide,  
 But like a wode woman afraide,  
 Yfrounced foule was her viage,  
 And grinning for dispitous rage,  
 Her nose snorted up for tene,  
 Full hidous was she for to sene,  
 Full foule and rustie was she this,  
 Her head ywriten was ywis  
 Full grimly with a great towaile.

An image of another entayle,  
 Alifte halte was her fast by,  
 Her name above her head saw I,  
 And she was called FELONY.

Another image, that VILLANY  
 Ycleped was, saw I and fonde  
 Upon the wall on her right honde.  
 Villany was like somedeles  
 That other image, and trusteth wele  
 She seemed a wicked creature,  
 By countenance in portreiture,  
 She seemed be full despitous,  
 And eke full proude and outrageous.

Well coude he paint I undertake,  
 That such an image coude make :  
 Full foule and chorlych seemed she,  
 And eke villainous for to be,  
 And little coude of norture,  
 To worship any creature.

And next was painted COVETISE,  
 That eggeth folke in many a gise,  
 To take and yeve right nought againe  
 And great treasures up to laine.

And that is she, that for usure  
 Leneth to many a creature  
 The lasse for the more winning,  
 So covetous is her brenning,  
 And that is she for pennies fele,  
 That teacheth for to robbe and stele  
 These theeves, and these smale harlotes,  
 And that is routh, for by hir throtes,  
 Full many one hongeth at the last :  
 She maketh folke compasse and cast  
 To taken other folkes thing,  
 Through robberie, or miscoveting.  
 And that is she that maketh treachours,  
 And she maketh false pleadours,  
 That with hir termes and hir domes,  
 Done maidens, children, and eke gromes,  
 Her heritage to forgo :  
 Full crooked were her hondes two,  
 For covetise is ever woode,  
 To gripen other folkes goode.

Covetise, for her winning,  
 Full lefe hath other mennes thing.

Another image set saw I,  
 Nexte Covetise fast by,  
 And she was cleped AVARICE,  
 Full foule in painting was that vice,  
 Full sad and caitife was she eke,  
 And also grene as any leke,  
 So evil hewed was her colour,  
 Her seemed to have lived in langour,  
 She was like thing for hunger dead,  
 That lad her life onely by bread  
 Kneden with eisell strong and egre,  
 And thereto she was leane and megre,  
 And she was clad full poorely,  
 All in an olde torne courtpry,  
 As she were all with dogges torne,  
 And both behind and eke beforne  
 Clouted was she beggerly.

A mantle honged her faste by,  
 Upon a benche weake and small,  
 A burnette cote hong there withall,  
 Furred with no minevere,  
 But with a furre rough of heere,  
 Of lambe skinnis heavy and blake,  
 It was so old I undertake.  
 For Avarice to cloath her wele,  
 Ne hasteth her never a dele,  
 For certainly it were her loth  
 To wearen of that ilke cloth,  
 And if it were foreward, she  
 Woulde have full great nicete  
 Of clothing, er she bought her newe,  
 All were it bad of woll and hewe.

This Avarice held in her hand,  
 A purse that honged by a band,  
 And that she hid and bond so strong,  
 Men must abide wonder long,  
 Out of the purse er ther come aught,  
 For that ne commeth in her thought,

It was not certaine her entent,  
That fro that purse a peny went.  
And by that image nigh ynough,  
Was peinte Envvy, that never lough,  
Nor never well in her heart ferde  
But if she either saw or herde  
Some great mischaunce, or great disease,  
Nothing ne may so much her please  
As mischeife and misaventure,  
Or when she seeth discomfiture  
Upon any worthy man fall,  
Than liketh her right well withall.  
She is full glad in hir courage,  
If she see any great linage  
Be brought to naught in shamefull wise :  
And if a man in honour rise,  
Or by his wit, or by his prowesse,  
Of that hath she great heavinesse,  
For trusteth well she goeth nie wood,  
When any chaunce happeth good.

Envvy is of such cruelte,  
That fayth ne trouth holdeth she,  
To friend ne fellow, bad or good.  
Ne she hath kinne none of her blood  
That she n'is full hir enemye,  
She nolde, I dare saine hardely  
Her owne father fared wele,  
And sore abieth she everie dele  
Her malice, and her male talent :  
For she is in so great turment  
And hate such, when folke doth good,  
That nye she melteth for pure wood,  
Her hert kerveth and so breaketh  
That God the people well awaketh.

Envvy ywis shall never let,  
Some blame upon the folke to set.  
I trowe that if Envvy ywis,  
Knew the beste man that is,  
On this side or beyond the see,  
Yet somewhat lacken him would she :  
And if he were so hende and wise,  
That she ne might all abate his prise,  
Yet would she blame his worthinesse,  
Or by her wordes make it lesse.  
I sawe Envvy in that painting,  
Had a wonderfull looking,  
For she ne looked but awrie,  
Or overwhart, all baggingly.  
And she had a foule usage,  
She might looke in no visage  
Of man ne woman, forth right plaine,  
But shette her one eye for disdaine,  
So for envie brenned shee  
When she might any man see  
That faire, or worthy were, or wise,  
Or else stood in folkes prise.

Sorow was painted next Envvy  
Upon that wall of masonry :  
But well was seene in her colour  
That she had lived in laigour :  
Her seemed to have the jaundice,  
Not halfe so pale was Avarice,  
Ne nothing like of leannesse,  
For sorowe, thought, and great distresse,  
That she had suffred daie and night,  
Made her yellow, and nothing bright :  
Full sad, pale, and megre also,  
Was never wight yet half so wo  
As that her seemed for to be,  
Nor so fulfilled with yre as she,

I trow that no wight might her please  
Nor doe that thing that might her ease,  
Nor she ne would her sorow slake,  
Nor comfort none unto her take,  
So depe was her wo begonne,  
And eke her heart in anger ronne,  
A sorowfull thing wel seemed she :  
Nor she had nothing slowe be  
For to-scratchen all her face  
And for to-rent in many place  
Her clothes, and for to teare her swire,  
As she that was fulfilled of yre,  
And all to-torne lay eke her heere  
About her shoulders, here and thero,  
As she that had it all to-rent  
For anger and for male talent.

And eke I tell you certainly  
How that she wept full tenderly :  
In worlde n'is wight so hard of heart  
That had seene her sorowes smart  
That nolde have had of her pite,  
So wo begone a thing was she.  
She all to-dasht her selfe for wo  
And smote togider her hands two,  
To sorow was she full entente,  
That wofull retchelesse catife  
Her rought little of playing,  
Or of clipping or kissing ;  
For who so sorrowfull is in heart  
Him luste not to play ne start,  
Nor for to dauncen, ne to sing,  
Ne may his heart in temper bring  
To make joy on even or morrow,  
For joy is contrarie unto sorow.

ELDE was painted after this,  
That shorter was a foot ywis  
Than she was wont in her yonghede,  
Unneth her selfe she might fede,  
So feeble and eke so old was she  
That faded was all her beaute.  
Full salow was waxen her colour,  
Her head for hore was white as flour,  
Ywis great qualme ne were it none,  
Ne sinne, although her life were gone.  
All woxen was her body unwele  
And drie and dwined all for elde,  
A foule forwelked thing was she  
That whilom round and soft had be,  
Her heeres shoken fast withall  
As from her hedde they would fall :  
Her face frounced and forpined,  
And both her hondes lorne fordwind :  
So old she was that she ne went  
A foot, but it were by potent.  
The time that passeth night and daye,  
And restlesse travayleth aye,  
And stealeth from us so privily,  
That to us seemeth sikerly  
That it in one point dwelleth ever,  
And certes it ne resteth never,  
But goeth so fast, and passeth aye.  
That there n'is man that thinke maye  
What time that now present is,  
Asketh at these clerkes this,  
For menne thinke it readily  
Three times been passed by  
The time that may not sojourne  
But goth, and may never retourne,  
As water that down runneth aye  
But never droppe retourne may.



There may nothing as time endure,  
Metall, nor earthly creature,  
For all thing it frette and shall,  
The time eke that chaungeth all,  
And all doth waxe, and fostred be,  
And all thing destroyeth he.  
The time that eldeth our auncestours  
And eldeth kinges and emperours,  
And that us all shall overcommen  
Er that death us shall have nomen,  
The time that hath all in welde  
To elden folke, had made her elde  
So inly, that to my wetung  
She might helpe her selfe nothing,  
But tourned ayen unto childhede ;  
She had nothing her selfe to lede  
Ne wit ne pithe in her hold  
More than a childe of two yere old.

But nathelesse I trow that she  
Was faire sometime, and fresh to se,  
When she was in her rightfull age :  
But she was past all that passage  
And was a doted thing becommen :  
A furred cappe on had she nomen ;  
Well had she clad her selfe and warme,  
For cold might els doen her harme,  
These olde folke have alway cold,  
Hir kind is such, when they been old.

Another thing was down there writ,  
That seemed like an ipocrite,  
And it was cleped Pope holy,  
That ilke is she, that privily  
Ne spared never a wicked deed,  
When men of her taken none heed,  
And maketh her outward precious,  
With pale visage and piteous,  
And seemeth a simple creature,  
But ther n'is no misadventure,  
That she ne thinketh in her courage :  
Ful like to her was thilke image,  
That maked was like her semblaunce,  
She was ful simple of countenance.  
And she was clothed and eke shod,  
As she were for the love of God  
Y-olden to religion,  
Such seemed her devotion.

A psalter held she fast in hond,  
And busily she gan to fond  
To make many a faint prayere,  
To God, and to his saintes dere :  
Ne she was gay, fresh, ne jolife,  
But seemed to be full entente  
To goode workes, and to faire,  
And thereto she had on an hair.

Ne certes she was fatte nothing  
But seemed werie for fasting,  
Of colour pale and dead was she,  
From her the gates aie warned be  
Of Paradise, that blisfull place,  
For such folke maken leane hir grace :  
As Christ sayth in his Evangile,  
To get hem prise in towne a while,  
And for a little glorie vaine,  
They lesen God and eke his raigne.

And alderlast of everichone,  
Was painted POVERT all alone,  
That not a peny had in hold,  
Although she her clothes sold,  
And though she shuld an honged be,  
For naked as a worme was she,

And if the weather stormie were,  
For cold she shuld have died there.

She ne had on but a straite old sacke,  
And many a cloute on it there stacke,  
This was her cote, and her mantele,  
No more was there never a dele  
To cloath her with ; I undertake,  
Great lesur hadde she to quake :  
And she was put, that I of talke,  
Ferre fro these other, up in an halke,  
There lurked and there coured she,  
For poore thing, where so it be,  
Is shamefast, and despised aie :  
Accursed may well be that daie,  
That poore man conceived is,  
For God wote all to seld ywis  
Is any poore man well yfed,  
Or well arrayed or yeled,  
Or well beloved, in such wise,  
In honour that he may arise.

All these thinges well avised,  
As I have you er this devised,  
With gold and azure over all,  
Depainted were upon the wall.  
Square was the wall, and high somdele  
Enclosed, and ybarred wele,  
In stead of hedge, was that gardin,  
Come never shepherde therein :  
Into that gardin, well ywrought,  
Who so that me coud have brought,  
By ladders or else by degree,  
It would well have liked mee,  
For such solace, such joy, and pleie  
I trow that never man ne seie,  
As was in that place delicious :  
The gardin was not daungerous,  
To herborow birdes many one,  
So rich a yere was never none  
Of birdes song, and branches grene,  
Therein were birdes mo I wene,  
Than been in all the realme of Fraunce :  
Full blisfull was the accordaunce,  
Of swete pitous song they made,  
For all this worlde it ough glad.

And I my selfe so merry ferde,  
Whan I her blisfull songes herde,  
That for an hundred pound would I,  
If that the passage openly  
Had be unto me free  
That I couthe entren for to see  
Thassemble (God keepe it fro care)  
Of birdes, whiche therein ware,  
That songen through hir merry throtes,  
Daunces of love, and merry notes.

When I thus heard the foules sing,  
I fell fast in a waymenting,  
By which art, or by what engin,  
I might come into that gardin,  
But way I couthe finde none,  
Into that gardin for to gone,  
Ne nought wist I if that there were  
Either hole or place where,  
By which I might have entre,  
Ne there was none to teache me,  
For I was all alone ywis,  
For woe and anguishe of this,  
Till at last bethought I me,  
That by no way ne might it be,  
That there nas ladder ne way to pare  
Or hole, into so faire a place.

Tho gan I go a full great paas,  
 Environ, even in compas,  
 The closing of the square wall,  
 Till that I found a wicket small  
 So shette, that I ne might in gone,  
 And other entre was there none.

Upon this doore I gan to smite  
 That was so fetis, and so lite,  
 For other waye coud I not seke.  
 Full longe I shofe, and knocked eke,  
 And stode full long all herkening  
 If that I heard any wight comming :  
 Till that the doore of thilke entre  
 A maiden curteis opened me :  
 Her haire was as yellowe of hewe  
 As any bason scoured newe,  
 Her fleshe tender as is a chicke  
 With bente browes, smooth and slicke,  
 And by measure large were  
 The opening of her eyen clere :  
 Her nose of good proportion,  
 Her eyen graie, as is a faucon,  
 With sweete breath and well favoured,  
 Her face white and well coloured,  
 With little mouth, and round to see ;  
 A clove chinne eke had she ;  
 Her necke was of good fashion  
 In length and greatnesse by reason,  
 Without bleine, scabbe, or roine ;  
 Fro Jerusalem unto Burgoine  
 Ther n'is a fairer necke ywis  
 To fele how smooth and soft it is.  
 Her throte also white of hewe,  
 As snowe on braunche snowed newe.  
 Of bodie full well wrought was she,  
 Men neden not in no cowntre  
 A fairer bodie for to seke :  
 And of fine orfrais had she eke  
 A chapelet, so semely on,  
 Ne wered never maide upon ;  
 And faire above that chapelet  
 A rose garlonde had she set ;  
 She had a gaie mirrour  
 And with a riche gold treasour,  
 Her head was tressed quently  
 Her sleeves sewed fetously.  
 And for to keepe her hondes faire  
 Of gloves white she had a paire :  
 And she had on a coate of grene  
 Of cloth of Gaunt, withouten wene :  
 Well seemed by her appaile  
 She was not wont to great travaile.  
 For whan shee kempt was fetously  
 And well araied and richly,  
 Than had she done all her iournee,  
 For merrie and well begon was she.

She led a lustie life in May,  
 She had no thought, by night ne day  
 Of nothing, but if it were onely.  
 To graithe her well and uncouthly.

Whan that this dore had opened me  
 This maiden, seemely for to see,  
 I thonked her as I best might,  
 And asked her how that she hight :  
 And what she was, I asked eke,  
 And she to me was nought unneke  
 Ne of her answer dangerous,  
 But faire answerde, and sayed thus :

" Lo sir, my name is Idlenessse  
 So clepe men me, more and lesse :

Full mightie and full rich am I,  
 And that of one thinge namely,  
 For I entende to nothing  
 But to my joye, and my pleying.  
 And for to kembe and tresse me :  
 Acquainted am I and prive  
 With Mirthe, lord of this gardine,  
 That fro the londe of Alexandrine  
 Made the trees hither be fet,  
 That in this gardin been yset :  
 And when the trees woxen on hight,  
 This wall that stant here in thy sight,  
 Did Mirthe enclosen all about,  
 And these images all without  
 He did hem both entayle and paint,  
 That neither been jolife ne queint,  
 But they been full of sorowe and wo,  
 As thou hast seene a while ago.

" And oft time him to solace  
 Sir Mirthe commeth into this place,  
 And eke with him commeth his meinie,  
 That liven in lust and jollite :  
 And now is Mirthe therein, to here  
 The birdes how they singen clere,  
 The mavis and the nightingale,  
 And other jolly birdes smale :  
 And thus he walketh to solace  
 Him and his folke, for sweeter place  
 To playen in, he may not finde,  
 Although he sought one in tyl Inde.  
 The alther fairest folke to see  
 That in this worlde may found bee  
 Hath Mirthe with him in his rout,  
 That followen him alwaies about."

When Idlenessse had told all this,  
 And I had herkened well ywis,  
 Then said I to dame Idlenessse,  
 " Now also wisely God me blesse,  
 Sith Mirthe, that is so faire and fre,  
 Is in this yerd with his meinie,  
 Fro thilke assemble, if I may,  
 Shall no man werne me to day,  
 That I this night ne mote it see,  
 For well wene I there with him bee  
 A faire and jolie companie  
 Fulfilled of all courtesie :"  
 And forth with out wordes mo  
 In at the wicket went I tho,  
 That Idlenessse had opened mee,  
 Into that garden faire to see.

And whan I was in ywis,  
 Mine herte was full glad of this.  
 For well wened I full sikerly  
 Have been in Paradise earthly,  
 So faire it was, that trusteth well,  
 It seemed a place espirituell.  
 For certes at my devise,  
 There is no place in Paradise,  
 So good in for to dwell or be,  
 As in that garden thoughte me.  
 For there was many a bird singing,  
 Throughout the yerde all thringing,  
 In many places were nightingales,  
 Alpes, finches, and wodwales,  
 That in hir swete song delighten  
 In thilke places as they habiten.

There mighte men see many flockes  
 Of turtles and laverockes,  
 Chelaundres fele saw I there,

there

Bullfinches - there

there

That very nigh forsongen were.  
 And thrustles, terins, and mavise,  
 That songen for to win hem prise,  
 And eke to surmount in hir song  
 That other birdes hem emong  
 By note made faire servise :  
 These birdes, that I you devise,  
 They song her song as faire and well,  
 As angels doon espiituell,  
 And trusteth me, when I hem herde,  
 Full lustie and well I ferde :  
 For never yet such melodie  
 Was heard of man that mighte die.  
 Such swete song was hem emong,  
 That me thought it no birdes song,  
 But it was wonder like to bee  
 Song of meremaides of the see,  
 That for hir singen is so clere :  
 Though we meremaides clepe hem here  
 In English, as is our usaunce,  
 Men clepe hem sercins in Fraunce.

ENTENTIVE weren for to sing  
 These birdes, that not unkonning  
 Were of hir craft, and a prentise,  
 But of songes subtil and wise :  
 And certes, whan I heard hir song,  
 And sawe the grene place among,  
 In heart I wext so wonder gay,  
 That I was never, ere that day,  
 So jolife, nor so well bigo,  
 Ne merry in heart, as I was tho :  
 And than wist I, and saw full well,  
 That Idleness me served well,  
 That me put in such jolite,  
 Her frend well ought I for to be,  
 Sith she the dore of that gardin  
 Had opened, and me let in.  
 From henceforth, how that I wrought  
 I shall you tell,—as me thought :  
 First whereof Mirthe served there,  
 And eke what folke there with him were,  
 Without fable I wold discrive,  
 And that garden eke as blive ;  
 I wold you tellen after this  
 The faire fashion all ywis,  
 That well wrought was for the nones ;  
 I may not tell you all atones,  
 But as I may and can, I shall  
 By order tellen you it all.

Full faire service, and eke full swete  
 These birdes maden as they sete :  
 Laies of love, ful well souning  
 They songen in hir jargoning,  
 Some high, and some eke lowe songe  
 Upon the braunches greene yspronge :  
 The sweetness of hir melodie  
 Made all mine heart in revelrie,  
 And whan that I heard I trowe  
 These birdes singing on a rowe,  
 Then might I not withholde mee  
 That I ne went in for to see  
 Sir Mirthe, for my desiring  
 Was him to seeene over all thing,  
 His countenance and his manere ;  
 That sighte was to me full dere.

Tho went I forth on my right hond  
 Downe by a litel path I fond  
 Of mintes full, and fennell greene,

As faste by withouten wene  
 Sir Mirthe I found, and right anone  
 Unto sir Mirthe gan I gone,  
 There as ne was him to solace,  
 And with him in that lustie place,  
 So faire folke and so fresh had he,  
 That when I saw, I wondred me  
 Fro whence suche folke might come,  
 So faire they weren all and some :  
 For they weren like, as to my sight,  
 To angels, that ben fethered bright.

These folke, of which I tell you so,  
 Upon a karole wenten tho :  
 A ladie karoled hem, that hight  
 GLADNESSE, blissfull, and light,  
 Well could she sing and lustely  
 None halfe so well and seemely :  
 And couthe make in song such refraining,  
 It sate her wonder well to sing.  
 Her voice full clere was and full swete.  
 She was not rude ne unmete,  
 But couthe ynough for such doing  
 As longeth unto karolling :  
 For she was wont in every place  
 To singen first, folke to solace,  
 For singing most she gave her to,  
 No craft had she so lefe to do.

Two mightest thou karoles seene,  
 And folke daunce and merry beene,  
 And made many a faire tournyng  
 Upon the greene grasse springing.

There mightest thou see these flutours,  
 Minstrales, and eke jogelours,  
 That well to singe did hir paine :  
 Some song songes of Loraine,  
 For in Loraine hir notes be  
 Full sweeter than in this cowntre.  
 There was many a timbestere,  
 And sailours, that I dare well swere  
 Couthe hir craft full perfily :  
 The timbres up full subtilly  
 They cast, and hent full oft  
 Upon a finger faire and soft,  
 That they failed never mo.  
 Full fetis damoseles two,  
 Right yong, and full of semelyhede  
 In kirtles, and none other wede,  
 And faire tressed every tresse  
 Had Mirthe doen for his noblesse  
 Amid the carole for to daunce,  
 But hereof lieth no remembrance,  
 How that they daunced queintly :  
 That one would come all prively  
 Ayen that other, and when they were  
 Together almost, they threw yfere  
 Hir monthes so, that through hir play  
 It seemed as they kist alway :  
 To dauncen well couthe they the gise.  
 What should I more to you devise ?  
 Ne bode I never thence go,  
 Whiles that I saw hem daunce so.  
 Upon the caroll wonder fast,  
 I gan beholde, till at last  
 A ladie gan me for to espie,  
 And she was cleped COURTESIE,  
 The worshipfull, the debonaire,  
 I pray to God ever fall her faire :  
 Full courtesly she called me,  
 " What doe ye there, beau sire ? " (quod she ;

"Come, and if it like you  
To dauncen, daunceth with us now :"  
And I without tarrying  
Went into the carolling,  
I was abaashed never a dele,  
But it to me liked right wele,  
That Courtesie me cleped so,  
And bade me on the daunce go.  
For if I had durst, certaine  
I would have carolled right faine  
As man that was to daunce right blithe :  
Than gan I looken oft sithen  
The shape, the bodies, and the cheres,  
The countenance and the maneres  
Of all the folke that daunced there,  
And I shall tellen what they were.

Full faire was **MIRTHE**, full long and high,  
A fairer man I never sigh :  
As round as apple was his face,  
Full roddie and white in every place :  
Fetis he was and well besey,  
With meetly mouth and eyen gray,  
His nose by measure wrought full right,  
Crispe was his haire, and eke full bright :  
His shoulerdes of a large brede,  
And smallish in the girdlestede :  
He seemed like a purtreiture,  
So noble he was of his stature,  
So faire, so jolly, and so fetise,  
With limmes wrought at point devise  
Deliver, smert, and of great might :  
Ne saw thpu never man so light.  
Of berd unneth had he nothing,  
For it was in the firste spring,  
Full yong he was, and merry of thought  
And in samette, with birdes wrought,  
And with gold beaten full fetously,  
His bodie was clad full richely :  
Wrought was his robe in straunge gise,  
And all to slittered for queintise  
In many a place, low and hie,  
And shode he was with great maistrie,  
With shoone decoped, and with lace,  
By druerie, and by solace,  
His lefe a rosen chapelet  
Had made, and on his head it set.

And wete ye who was his lefe,  
Dame **GLADNESSE** there was him so lefe,  
That singeth so well with glad courage,  
That from she was twelve yeare of age,  
She of her love graunt him made :  
Sir **Mirthe** her by the finger hade  
Dauncing, and she him also,  
Great love was atwixt hem two :  
Both were they faire and bright of hew,  
She semed like a rose new  
Of colours, and her flesh so tender,  
That with a brere small and tender,  
Men might it cleve, I dare well say :  
Her forehead frounceles all play,  
Bent were her browes two,  
Her eyen gray, and glad also,  
That laughden aye in her semblaunt,  
First or the mouth by covenant.  
I wot not what of her nose I shall discrive,  
So faire hath no woman alive :  
Her haire was yellow, and clere shining,  
I wote no lady so liking.

Of orfraies fresh was her garland,  
I whiche seene have a thousand

Saw never ywis no garland yet,  
So well wrought of silke as it.  
And in an over gilt samite  
Clad she was, by great delite,  
Of whiche her lefe a robe werde,  
The merrier she in her heart ferde.

And next her went, on her other side,  
**THE GOD OF LOVE**, that can divide  
Love, and as him liketh it be,  
But he can chorles daunten, he,  
And many folkes pride fallen,  
And he can well these lordes thrallen,  
And ladies put at low degree  
When he may hem too proude see.

This god of love of his fashion  
Was like no knave, ne quistron :  
His beautie greatly was to prise,  
But of his robe to devise  
I drede encombred for to be,  
For not yclad in silke was he,  
But all in floures and flourettes,  
I painted all with amorettes,  
And with losenges and scochons,  
With birdes, liberdes, and lions,  
And other beastes wrought full wele ;  
His garment was every dele  
Ipurtraied and ywrought with flours,  
By divers medeling of colours :  
Floures ther were of many gise  
Yset by compasse in a sise,  
There lacked no floure to my dome,  
Ne not so much as floure of brome,  
Ne violet, ne eke pervinke,  
Ne floure none, that men can on thinke :  
And many a rose lefe full long  
Was entemedled there emong :  
And also on his head was set  
Of roses redde a chapelet.

But nightingales a full great rout  
That flien over his head about,  
The leaves felden as they flien,  
And he was all with birdes wrien,  
With popinjay, with nightingale,  
With chelaundre, and with wodewale,  
With finch, with lark, and with archangell,  
He seemed as he were an angell,  
That down were comen fro Heaven clere.

Love had with him a bachelere,  
That he made alwayes with him be,  
**SWETE LOOKING** cleped was he :  
This batcheler stode beholding  
The daunce, and in his honde holding  
Turke bowes too, full well devised had hee,  
That one of hem was of a tree  
That beareth a fruit of savour wicke,  
Full crooked was that foule sticke,  
And knottie here and there also,  
And blacke as berrie, or any slo.

That other bow was of a plant  
Without wemme, I dare warrant,  
Full even and by proportion,  
Trectes and long, of full good fashion,  
And it was painted well and thwitten,  
And over all diaped and witten  
With ladies and with bacheleres,  
Full lightsome and glad of cheres :  
These bowes two held **Sweet Looking**,  
That seemed like no gadling :  
And ten brode arrowes held he there,  
Of which five in his honde were,

But they were shaven well and dight,  
Nocked and feathered aright :  
And all they were with golde begon,  
And stronge pointed everichon,  
And sharpe for to kerven wele,  
But yron was there none ne stele :  
For all was golde, men might see,  
Out-take the feathers and the tree.

THE swiftest of these arrowes five  
Out of a bowe for to drive,  
And beste feathered for to fle,  
And fairest eke, was cleped Beautie :  
That other arrow that hurteth lesse,  
Was cleped (as I trow) Simplese :  
The thirde cleped was Fraunchise,  
That feathered was in noble wise  
With valour and with courtesie :  
The fourth was clepen Companie,  
That heave for to shooten is,  
But who so shooteth right ywis,  
May therewith doen great harme and wo :  
The fift of these, and last also,  
Faire Semblaunt men that arrow call,  
The leste grevous of hem all,  
Yet can it make a full great wound,  
But he may hope his sores sound  
That hurt is with that arrowe ywis,  
His wo the bette bestowed is :  
For he may sooner have gladnesse,  
His langour ought to be the lesse.

FIVE arrowes were of other gise,  
That been full foule to devise :  
For shaft and end, sooth for to tell,  
Were al so b'cke as fiend in Hell.  
The first of hem is called Pride,  
That other arrow next him beside,  
It was cleped Villanie,  
That arrow was with fellonie  
Envenimed, and with spitous blame :  
The third of hem was cleped Shame.  
The fourth, Wanhope cleped is,  
The fift, the Newe Thought ywis.  
These arrowes that I speake of here,  
Were all five on one mannere,  
And all were they resemblable ;  
To hem was well fitting and able,  
The foule crooked bowe hidous,  
That knottie was, and all roinoue ;  
That bowe seemed well to shete  
The arrowes five, that been unmete  
And contrary to that other five :  
But though I tell not as blive  
Of hir power, ne of hir might,  
Hereafter shall I tellen right  
The sooth, and eke signifaunce,  
As ferre as I have remembraunce :  
All shall be saied I undertake,  
Ere of this booke an end I make.  
Now come I to my tale againe :  
But alderfirst, I wolle you saine  
The fashion and the countenaunces  
Of all the folke that on the daunce is.  
The god of love jolife and light,  
Led on his honde a ladie bright,  
Of high prise, and of great degre,  
This ladie called was BEAURE,  
And an arrow, of which I told,  
Full well thewed was she hold :

Ne she was derke ne browne, but bright,  
And cleare as the moone light :  
Againe whom all the starres semen  
But small candles, as we demen :  
Her flesh was tender as dewe of floure,  
Her cheare was simple as bird in bourre,  
As white as lilly or rose in rise :  
Her face gentill and tretise :  
Fetis she was, and small to see,  
No wintred browes had shee,  
Ne popped haire, for it needed nought  
To winder her, or to paint her ought :  
Her tresses yellow, and long straughten,  
Unto her heeles downe they raughten :  
Her nose, her mouth, and eye and cheke  
Well wrought, and all the remnaunt eke.  
A full gret savour and a swote ;  
Me thoughte in mine herte rote,  
As helpe me God, when I remember,  
Of the fashion of every member,  
In world is none so faire a wight :  
For yong she was, and hewed bright  
Sore pleasant, and fetis with all,  
Gent, and in her middle small.

Beside Beaute yede RICHESSE,  
An high ladie of great noblesse,  
And great of price in every place :  
But who so durst to her trespace  
Or till her folke, in werke or dede,  
He were full hardie out of drede :  
For both she helpe and hinder may,  
And that is not of yesterday  
That riche folke have full great might  
To helpe, and eke to greve a wight.

The best and greatest of valour  
Didden Richesse full great honour,  
And busie weren her to serve,  
For that they would her love deserve ;  
They cleped her ladie, gret and small,  
This wide world her dredeth all :  
This world is all in her daungere,  
Her court hath many a losengere,  
And many a traitour envious,  
That ben full busie and curious  
For to dispraise, and to blame  
That best deserven love and name,  
To forne the folke hem to begilen,  
These losengeours hem preise and smilen.

And thus the world with word annointea,  
But afterward they prill and pointen  
The folke, right to the bare bone,  
Behinde hir backe when they ben gone,  
And foule abaten folkes prise.  
Full many a worthy man and wise  
Han hindred, and ydon to die  
These losengeours with hir flatterie,  
And maketh folke full straunge be,  
There as hem ought ben prive :  
Well evill mote they thrive and thee,  
And evill arived mote they bee  
These losengeours full of envie.  
No good man loveth hir companie.

Richesse a robe of purple on had,  
Ne trow not that I lie or mad :  
For in this world is none it liche,  
Ne by a thousand deale so riche,  
Ne none so faire, for it full wele,  
With orfreis laied was every dele,  
And purtraid in the ribanings  
Of dukes stories, and of kings,

And with a bend of gold tassiled,  
And knopes fine of gold amiled :  
About her necke of gentile entayle  
Was shet the riche chevesaile,  
In which there was full great plente  
Of stones clere, and faire to se.

Richesse a girdle had upon,  
The bokell of it was of ston,  
Of vertue great, and mokell of might :  
For who so bare the stone so bright,  
Of venim durst him nothing doubt  
While he the stone had him about :  
That stone was greatly for to love,  
And till a riche mannes belove  
Worth all the gold in Rome and Frise :  
The mourdant wrought in noble gise  
Was of a stone full precious,  
That was so fine and vertuous,  
That whole a man it couth make  
Of palsie, and of tothe ake,  
And yet the stone had such a grace,  
That he was seker in every place  
All thilke day not blind to bene,  
That fasting might that stone seene :  
The barres were of gold full fine,  
Upon a tissue of sattine  
Full hevie, great, and nothing light,  
In everiche was a besaunt light.

Upon the tresses of richesse  
Was set a circle of noblesse  
Of brende golde, that full light shone,  
So faire trow I was never none :  
But he were cunning for the nones,  
That could devise all the stones  
That in that circle shewen clere,  
It is a wonder thing to here :  
For no man could preise or gesse  
Of hem the value or richesse :  
Rubies there were, saphirs, ragounces,  
And emeraudes, more than two unces,  
But all before full subtilly  
A fine carbuncle set saw I,  
The stone so cleare was and so bright,  
That all so soone as it was night,  
Menne might seene to go for nede  
A mile or two, in length and brede.  
Such light ysprang out of the stone,  
That Richesse wonder bright yshone  
Bothe her hedde, and all her face,  
And eke about her all the place.

Dame Richesse on her hond gan lede  
A yong man full of semelyhede,  
That she best loved of any thing,  
His lust was much in housholding :  
In clothing was he full fetise,  
And loved well to have hors of prise,  
He wend to have reprovèd be  
Of theft or murder, if that he  
Had in his stable an hacknay,  
And therefore he desired aye  
To be acquainted with Richesse,  
For all his purpose, as I gesse,  
Was for to maken great dispence,  
Withouten warning or defence :  
And Richesse might it well sustaine,  
And her dispences wele maintaine,  
And him alway such plentie send  
Of gold and silver for to spend  
Withouten lacking or daungere,  
As it were pourde in a garnere.

And after on the daunce went  
Largesse, that set all her entent  
For to ben honorable and free,  
Of Alexanders kinne was shee :  
Her mooste joie was ywis,  
When that she yafe, and saied, have this.  
Not Avarice the foule catife  
Was halfe to gripe so ententife  
As Largesse is, to yeve and spend,  
And God alway ynowe her send,  
So that the more she yave away,  
The more ywis she had alway.  
Great loos hath Largesse, and great prise,  
For both wise folke and unwise  
Were wholly to her bandon brought,  
So well with yestes hath she wrought.

And if she had an enemy,  
I trowe that she couth craftely  
Make him full soone her friend to be,  
So large of yestes, and wise was she,  
Therefore she stood in love and grace  
Of rich and poore in every place.

A full great foole he is ywis,  
That both rich and poore, and niggard is.  
A lord may have no manner vice,  
That greeveth more than avarice.  
For niggard never with strength of hand  
May win him great lordship or land :  
For friendes all too few hath he  
To doen his will performed be :  
And who so woll have friendes here,  
He may not hold his treasure dere.  
For by ensample tell I this,  
Right as an adamant ywis  
Can drawn to him subtilly  
The yron that is laied thereby,  
So draweth folkes hearts ywis  
Silver and gold that yeven is.

Largesse had on a robe fresh  
Of riche purpure sarlinish :  
Well formed was her face and clere,  
And opened had she her colere,  
For she right there had in present  
Unto a lady made present  
Of a gold broche, full well wrought,  
And certes it mis-sate her nought :  
For through her smocke wrought with silke,  
The flesh was seene as white as milke :  
Largesse, that worthy was and wise,  
Held by the hond a knight of prise,  
Was sibbe to Arthour of Breteigne,  
And that was he that bare the enseigne  
Of worship, and the gosfaucoun :  
And yet he is of such renoun,  
That menne of him say faire things  
Before barons, earles, and kings.

This knight was comen all newly  
Fro tourneyng faste by,  
There had he done great chivalrie  
Through his vertue and his maistrie,  
And for the love of his lemman  
He cast downe many a doughty man.

And next him daunced dame Fraunchise,  
Arrayed in full noble gise :  
She nas not broune ne dunne of hew,  
But white as snow yfallen new :  
Her nose was wrought at point devise,  
For it was gentill and tretise,  
With eyen glad, and browes bent,  
Her haire downe to her heles went,

And she was simple as dove on tree,  
Full debonaire of hert was shee.  
She durste neither say ne do,  
But that, that her longeth to :

And if a man were in distresse,  
And for her love in heavynesse,  
Her herte would have full great pitee  
She was so amiable and free :

For were a maune for her bestad,  
She woulde ben right sore adrad,  
That she did overgreat outrage,  
But she him hope his harme t'aswage,  
Her thought it all a villany.

And she had on a suckeny,  
That not of hempe herdes was,  
So faire was none in all Arras,  
Lord, it was riddled fetily,  
There nas not a point truely  
That it nas in his right assise,

Full well yclothed was Fraunchise,  
For there n'is no cloth sitteth bette  
On damosell, than doth rokette :  
A woman well more fetise is  
In rokette, than in cote ywis,  
The white rokette riddele faire,  
Betokeneth, that full debonaire  
And swete was she that it bere.

By her daunced a bachelere,  
I cannot tellen what he hight,  
But faire he was, and of good height,  
All had he ben, I say no more,  
The lordes sonne of Windesore.  
And next that daunced Courtesie,  
That preised was of low and hie,  
For neither proud ne foole was she :  
She for to daunce called me,  
I praie God give her good grace,  
For when I came first into the place,  
She nas not nice, ne outrageous,  
But wise and ware, and vertuous,  
Of faire speech, and faire answer,  
Was never wight missaid of her :  
She bare no rancour to no wight,  
Clere browne she was, and therto bright  
Of face and body avenaunt  
I wote no lady so pleasaunt,  
She weren worthy for to bene  
An emperesse or crowned quene.

And by her went a knight dauncing  
That worthy was and well speaking,  
And full well coude he done honour :  
The knight was faire and stiffe in stour,  
And in armure a seemely man,  
And well beloved of his lemman.

Faire Idlenesse then saw I,  
That alway was me faste by,  
Of her have I withouten faile  
Told you the shape and appaile :  
For (as I said) Lo, that was she  
That did to me so great bounte.  
She the gate of that gardin  
Undid, and let me passen in,  
And after daunced as I gesse.

And she fulfilled of lustynesse,  
That n'as not yet twelve yeare of age,  
With herte wild, and thought volage.  
Nice she was, but she ne ment  
None harme ne sleight in her entent,  
But onely lust and jolite.  
For yonge folke, well weten ye,

Have little thought but on hir play.  
Her lemman was beside alway,  
In such a gise, that he her kist  
At all times that him list,  
That all the daunce might it see,  
They make no force of privetee :  
For who so spake of hem evill or wele,  
They were ashamed never adele,  
But men might seene hem kisse there,  
As it two yonge doves were,  
For yonge was thilke bachelere,  
Of beauty wot I non his pere,  
And he was right of such an age,  
As youth his lefe, and such courage.

The lusty folke that daunced there,  
And also other that with hem were  
That weren all of hir meinee  
Full hende folke, wise, and free,  
And folke of faire port truly,  
There were all comenly.

Whan I had seene the countenaunces  
Of hem that ladden thus these daunces,  
Than had I will to go and see  
The garden that so liked mee,  
And loken on these faire laureres,  
On pine trees, cedres, and ormeres,  
The daunces than al ended were,  
For many of hem that daunced there,  
Were with her loves went away  
Under the trees to have her play.

A LORD, they lived lustely,  
A great foole were he sikirly,  
That n'old his thanks such life lede :  
For this dare I saine out of drede,  
That who so mighte so well fare,  
For better life durst him not care,  
For there n'is so good paradise :  
As to have a love at his devise :  
Out of that place went I tho,  
And in that garden gan I go,  
Playing along full merely.  
The god of love full hastely  
Unto him SWEET-LOOKING clept,  
No lenger would he that she kept  
His bowe of gold, that shone so bright.  
He had him bent anon right,  
And he full soone set an end,  
And at a braide he gan it bend,  
And tooke him of his arrowes five,  
Full sharpe and ready for to drive.

Now God that sitteth in majeste  
Fro deadly woundes he keepe me,  
If so be that he had me shete,  
For if I with his arrow mete,  
It had me greeved sore ywis,  
But I, that nothing wist of this,  
Went up and downe full many a way,  
And he me followed fast alway,  
But no where would I reste me,  
Till I had in all the garden be.

THE garden was by measuring  
Right even and square in compassing,  
It as long was as it was large,  
Of fruit had every tree his charge,  
But it were any hidous tree  
Of whiche there were two or three.  
There were, and that wote I full wele,  
Of pomgranettes a full great dele,

That is a fruit full well to like,  
Namely to folke when they ben sike :  
And trees there were great foison,  
That baren nuts in hir season,  
Such as menne nutmegges call,  
That swote of savour been withall,  
And almandres great plentee,  
Figges, and many a date tree  
There weren, if menne had nede,  
Through the gardin in length and brede.

There was eke waxing many a spice,  
As clowe, gilofre, and licorice,  
Gingere, and grein de Paris,  
Canell, and setewale of pris,  
And many a spice delitable,  
To eaten when men rise fro table.

And many homely trees there were,  
That peaches, coines, and apples bere,  
Medlers, plummes, peeres, chesteinis,  
Cherise, of whiche many one faine is,  
Notes, aleis, and bolas,  
That for to seene it was solas,  
With many high laurer and pine,  
Was renged clene all that gardine,  
With cipres, and with oliveris,  
Of which that nigh no plenty here is.

There were elmes great and strong,  
Maples, ashe, oke, aspes, planes long,  
Fine ewe, popler, and lindes faire,  
And other trees full many a paire.

What should I tell you more of it ?  
There were so many trees yet,  
That I should all encombre bee,  
Ere I had reckoned every tree.

These trees were set that I devise,  
One from another in assise  
Five fadome or sixe, I trowe so,  
But they were high and great also :  
And for to keepe out well the Sunne,  
The croppes were so thicke yrunne,  
And every braunch in other knitte,  
And full of greene leaves sitte,  
That Sunne might there none descend,  
Least the tender grasses shend.  
There might menne does and roes ysee,  
And of squirrels full great plentee,  
From bough to bough alway leping,  
Connies there were also playing,  
That comen out of hir clapers  
Of sundry colours and maners,  
And maden many a tourneying  
Upon the freshe grasse springing.

In places saw I welles there,  
In whiche there no frogges were,  
And faire in shaddow was every well ;  
But I ne can the number tell  
Of strems small, that by devise  
Mirthe had done come through condise,  
Of which the water in renning  
Gan make a noise full liking.

About the brinkes of these welis,  
And by the streames over all els  
Sprang up the grasse, as thicke yset  
And softe as any velvet.  
On which men might his lemman ley,  
As on a featherbed to pley,  
For the earth was full soft and swete :  
Through moisture of the well wete  
Sprong up the sote grene gras,  
As faire, as thicke, as mister was.

But much amended it the place,  
That thearth was of such a grace  
That it of floures hath plente,  
That both in summer and winter be.

There sprang the violet all new,  
And freshe pervinke rich of hew,  
And floures yellow, white, and rede,  
Such plenty grew there never in mede :  
Full gay was all the ground and queint,  
And poudred, as men had it peint,  
With many a fresh and sundry flour,  
That casten up full good savour.

I woll nat long hold you in fable  
Of all this garden delectable,  
I mote my tongue stinten nede,  
For I ne may withouten drede  
Naght tellen you the beauteie all,  
Ne halfe the bountie therewithall.

I went on right honde and on left  
About the place, it was not left  
Till I had all the garden beene  
In the esters that men might seene.

And thus while I went in my playe,  
The god of love me followed aye.  
Right as an hunter can abide  
The beast, till he seeth his tide  
To shooten at goodnesse to the deere,  
Whan that him needeth go no neere.

And so befell, I rested mee  
Besides a well under a tree,  
Which tree in Fraunce men call a pine,  
But sith the time of king Pepine  
Ne grew there tree in mannes sight  
So faire, ne so well woxe in hight,  
In all that yard so high was none.  
And springing in a marble stone  
Had nature set, the sooth to tell,  
Under that pine tree a well,  
And on the border all without  
Was written on the stone about  
Letters small, that saiden thus,  
*Here starfe the faire Narcissus.*

Narcissus was a bachelere,  
That Love had caught in his daungere,  
And in his nette gan him so straine,  
And did him so to weepe and plaine,  
That need him must his life forgo :  
For a faire lady, that hight Echo,  
Him loved over any creature,  
And gan for him such paine endure,  
That on a time she him tolde,  
That if he her loven nolde,  
That her behoved needes die,  
There lay none other remedie.

But nathelesse, for his beaute  
So fierce and daungerous was he,  
That he nolde graunten her asking,  
For weeping, ne for faire praying.

And when she heard him werne her oo,  
She had in herte so grete wo,  
And tooke it in so grete despite,  
That she without more respite  
Was dead anon : but ere she deide,  
Ful pitously to God she proude,  
That proude hearted Narcissus,  
That was in love so daungerous,  
Might on a day ben hampered so  
For love, that ben so hote for wo,  
That never he might to joy attaine ;  
Then should he fele in very vaine



What sorrow true lovers maken,  
That ben so villainously forsaken.

This prayer was but reasonable,  
Therefore God held it firme and stable :  
For Narcissus shortly to tell,  
By aventure came to that well  
To rest him in the shaddowing  
A day, when he came from hunting.  
This Narcissus had suffred paines  
For renning all day in the plaines,  
And was for thurst in great distresse  
Of herte, and of his wearinesse,  
That had his breath almost benomen.  
Whan he was to that well ycomen,  
That shaddowed was with braunches grene,  
He thought of thilke water shene  
To drinke and fresch him wele withall,  
And downe on knees he gan to fall,  
And forth his necke and head outstraught  
To drinke of that well a draught :  
And in the water anon was sene  
His nose, his mouth, his eyen shene,  
And he thereof was all abashed,  
His owne shaddow had him betraashed,  
For well wend he the forme see  
Of a childe of great beautee,  
Well couth Love him wreke tho  
Of daungere and of pride also  
That Narcissus sometime him bere,  
He quite him well his guerdon there,  
For he mused so in the well,  
That shortely the sooth to tell,  
He loved his owne shaddow so,  
That at last he starfe for wo :  
For when he saw that he his will  
Might in no manner way fulfill,  
And that he was so faste caught  
That he him couthe comfort naught,  
He lost his wit right in that place  
And died within a little space,  
And thus his warion he tooke  
For the lady that he forsoke.

Ladies I praye ensample taketh,  
Ye that ayenst your love mistaketh :  
For if of hir death be you to wite,  
God can full well your wile quite.

When that this letter of which I tell,  
Had taught me that it was the well  
Of Narcissus in his beaute,  
I gan anon withdrawe me,  
When it fell in my remembraunce,  
That him betide such mischaunce :  
But at the laste than thought I,  
That scatheless, full sikerly,  
I might unto the welle go,  
Whereof shull I abashen so.  
Unto the welle then went I mee,  
And downe I louted for to see  
The clere water in the stone,  
And eke the gravell, which that shone  
Downe in the bottome, as silver fine :  
For of the well, this is the fine,  
In world is none so clere of hew,  
The water is ever fresch and new  
That welmeth up with waves bright  
The mountenaunce of two finger hight :  
About it is grasse springing,  
For moist so thicke and well liking,

That it ne may in winter die,  
No more than may the see be drie.

Downe at the bottome set saw I  
Two christal stones craftely  
In thilke fresch and faire well :  
But o thing soothly dare I tell,  
That ye woll hold a great mervaille  
Whan it is told withouten faille :  
For whan the Sunne clere in sight  
Cast in that well his beames bright,  
And that the heat descended is,  
Than taketh the christall stone ywis,  
Againe the Sunne an hundred hewis,  
Blew, yellow, and red, that fresch and new is :  
Yet hath the mervailous christall  
Such strength, that the place over all,  
Both foule and tree, and leaves greene,  
And all the yerd in it is seene :  
And for to done you to understond,  
To make ensample woll I fond :  
Right as a mirrour openly  
Sheweth all thing that stondesth thereby,  
As well the colour as the figure,  
Withouten any coverture :  
Right so the christall stone shining,  
Withouten any deceiving,  
The entrees of the yerd accuseth  
To him that in the water museth :  
For ever in which halfe ye bee,  
Ye may well halfe the garden see :  
And if he turne, he may right wele  
Seene the remenaunt every dele :  
For there is none so little thing  
So hid ne closed with shyting,  
That it ne is seene, as though it were  
Painted in the chrystall there.  
This is the mirrour perillous,  
In which the proude Narcissus  
Sey all his faire face bright,  
That made him sith to lie upright :  
For who so looke in that mirrour,  
There may nothing ben his succour  
That he ne shall there see something  
That shall him lede into laughing :  
Full many a worthy man hath it  
Ybleut, for folke of greatest wit  
Ben soone caught here and waited,  
Withouten respite ben they baited :  
Here commeth to folke of new rage,  
Here chaungeth many wight courage,  
Here lithe no rede ne wit thereto,  
For Venus sonne, dan Cupido,  
Hath sowne there of love the sede,  
That helpe ne lithe there none, ne rede  
So cercleth it the well about :  
His ginnes hath he set without  
Right for to catch in his panter  
These damosels and bachelers.  
Love will none other birde catch,  
Though he set either nette or lath :  
And for the seed that here was sowne,  
This well is cleped, as well is knowen,  
The Well of Love, of very right,  
Of which there hath full many wight  
Spoken in bookes diversly :  
But they shull never so verily  
Description of the well here,  
Ne eke the sooth of this matere,

As ye shull, when I have undo  
The craft that her belongeth to.

ALWAY me liked for to dwell,  
To seene the christall in the well,  
That shewed me full openly  
A thousand thinges faste by,  
But I may say in sorry houre  
Stode I to looken or to poure :  
For sithen I sore siked,  
That mirrour hath me now entriked :  
But had I first knowen in my wit  
The vertue and strengthes of it,  
I n'old not have mused there,  
Me had bette ben elsewhere,  
For in the snare I fell anone,  
That had bitreshed many one.

In thilke mirrour saw I tho,  
Among a thousand thinges mo,  
A roser charged full of rosis,  
That with an hedge about enclosis,  
Tho had I suche luste and envie,  
That for Paris ne for Pavie,  
N'old I have left to gone and see,  
There greatest heape of roses bee.  
Whan I was with that rage hent,  
That caught hath many a man and hent,  
Toward the roser gan I go,  
And whan I was not ferre therefro,  
The savour of the roses swote  
Me smote right to the heart rote,  
As I had all enbaumed be :  
And if I ne had endouted me  
To have ben hated or assailed,  
My thanks wold I not have failed  
To pull a rose of all that rout  
To beare in mine honde about,  
And smellen to it where I went,  
But ever I drede me to repent,  
And least it greved or forthought  
The lord that thilke gardin wrought.  
Of roses there were great wone,  
So faire were never in Rone :  
Of knoppes close, some saw I there,  
And some well better woxen were,  
And some there been of other moison,  
That drowe nigh to hir season,  
And sped hem faste for to spred,  
I love well such roses red :  
For brode roses, and open also,  
Ben passed in a day or two,  
But knoppes will fresh bee  
Two dayes at least, or els three.  
The knoppes greatly liked mee,  
For fairer may there no man see :  
Who so might have one of all,  
It ought him been full lefe withall :  
Might I garlonde of hem getten,  
For no richesse I wold it letten.

Amongs the knoppes I chese one  
So faire, that of the remnaunt none  
Ne preise I halfe so well as it,  
Whan I avise in my wit,  
For it so well was enlumined  
With colour red, as well fined  
As nature couth it make faire,  
And it hath leaves well fourre paire,  
That Kinde hath set through his knowing  
About the red roses springing,

The stalke was as rishe right,  
And thereon stood the knoppe upright,  
That it ne bowed upon no side,  
The swote smell sprung so wide,  
That it died all the place about.  
Whan I had smelled the savour swote,  
No will had I fro thence yet go,  
But somedele nere it went I tho  
To take it, but mine hond for drede  
Ne durst I to the rose bede,  
For thistles sharpe of many manners,  
Nettles, thornes, and hooked briers,  
For muche they distourbled me,  
For sore I drad to harmed be.

THE god of love, with bowe bent,  
That all day set had his talent  
To pursue and to spien mee,  
Was standing by a figge tree,  
And when he sawe how that I  
Had chosen so ententifly  
The bothum more unto my pey,  
Than any other that I sey :  
He tooke an arrow full sharpely whot,  
And in his bowe when it was set,  
He streight up to his eare drough  
The strong bowe, that was as tough,  
And shot at me so wonder smert,  
That through mine eye unto mine hert  
The takell smote, and deepe it went :  
And therewithall such cold me hent,  
That under clothes warme and soft,  
Sithen that day I have chivered oft.

When I was hurte thus in stound,  
I fell down plat unto the ground,  
Mine herte failed and fainted aye,  
And long time in swounne I lay :  
But when I came out of swounning,  
And had my wit, and my feeling,  
I was all mate, and wend full wele  
Of blood, have lorne a full great dele,  
But certes the arrow that in me stood,  
Of me ne drew no drop of blood,  
For why I found my wounds all drey.

Than tooke I with mine hondes twey  
The arrow, and full fast it out plight,  
And in the pulling sore I sight,  
So at the last the shaft of tree  
I drough out, with the feathers three,  
But yet the hooked head ywis,  
The whiche Beauty called is,  
Gan so deepe in mine herte pace,  
That I it might not arace,  
But in mine herte still it stood,  
All bled I not a drop of blood :  
I was both anguishous and trouble,  
For the perill that I saw double,  
I nist what to say or do,  
Ne get a leach my wounds to,  
For neither through grasse ne rote,  
Ne had I helpe of hope ne bote.  
But to the bothum evermo  
Mine herte drew, for all my wo,  
My thought was in none other thing,  
For had it been in my keeping,  
It wold have brought my life againe,  
For certes evenly, I dare well saine,  
The sight only, and the savour,  
Alegged much of my langour.

Than gan I for to drawe mee  
Toward the bothum faire to see,  
And Love had gette him in his throwe  
Another arrowe into his bowe,  
And for to shote gan him dresse,  
The arrowes name was Simplese,  
And when that love gan nigh me nere,  
He drowe it up withouten were,  
And shot at me with all his might,  
So that this arrow anon right  
Throughout eigh as it was found,  
Into mine herte hath made a wound.  
Than I anon did all my craft  
For to drawn out the shaft,  
And therewithall I sighed eft,  
But in mine herte the head was left,  
Which aye increased my desire ;  
Unto the bothum drow I nere,  
And evermo that me was wo  
The more desire had I to go  
Unto the roser, where that grew  
The fresh bothum so bright of hew,  
Better me were to have letten be,  
But it behoved nede me  
To doen right as mine herte bad :  
For ever the body must be lad  
After the herte, in wele and wo,  
Or force together they must go.  
But never this archer would fine  
To shote at me with all his pine,  
And for to make me to him meta.

The third arrow he gan to shete,  
Whan best his time he might espie,  
The which was named Courtisie,  
Into mine herte he did avale,  
A swoune I fell, both dead and pale,  
Long time I lay, and stirred nought,  
Till I abraied out of my thought.  
And faste than I avised mee  
To drawe out the shaft of tree,  
But ever the head was left behind  
For ought I couthe pull or wind,  
So sore it sticked when I was hit,  
That by no craft I might it flit,  
But anguishous and full of thought,  
I felt such wo, my wound aye wrought,  
That summoned me alway to go  
Toward the rose, that pleased me so,  
But I ne durst in no manere  
Because the archer was so nere.

For evermore gladly as I rede,  
Brent child of fire hath much drede.  
And certes yet for all my peyn,  
Though that I sigh, yet arrowes rein,  
And ground quarells sharpe of stele,  
Ne for no paine that I might fele,  
Yet might I not my selfe withhold  
The faire roser to behold,  
For Love me yave such hardement  
For to fulfill his commaundement,  
Upon my feet I rose up than  
Feeble, as a forwounded man :  
And forth to gone my might I set,  
And for the archer nold I let,  
Toward the roser fast I drowe  
But thornes sharpe, mo than ynowe  
There were, and also thistles thicke,  
And breres brimme for to pricke,  
That I ne might get grace  
The rough thornes for to pace

To seene the roses fresh of hew,  
I must abide, though it me rew,  
The hedge about so thicke was,  
That closed the roses in compas.

But o thing liked me right wele,  
I was so nigh, I might fele  
Of the bothum the swote odour,  
And also see the fresh colour,  
And that right greatly liked mee,  
That I so nere might it see,  
Such joy anon thereof had I,  
That I forgot my malady,  
To seene I had such delite,  
Of sorrow and anger I was all quite,  
And of my wounds that I had thore,  
For nothing liken me might more,  
Than dwellen by the roser aye,  
And thence never to passe awaye :  
But whan a while I had be thare,  
The god of love, which all to share  
Mine heart with his arrowes kene,  
Casteth him to yeve me woundes grene,  
He shot at me full hastily  
An arrow named Company,  
The whiche takell is full able  
To make these ladies merciable,  
Than I anone gan chaungen hew  
For grevance of my wounde new,  
That I againe fell in swouning,  
And sighed sore in complaining.

Sore I complained that my sore  
On me gan greven more and more,  
I had none hope of allegiaunce,  
So nigh I drow to disperance,  
I rought of death, ne of life,  
Whether that love would me drife,  
If me a martir would he make,  
I might his power not forsake :  
And while for anger thus I woke,  
The god of love an arrow toke,  
Full sharpe it was and pugnaut,  
And it was called Faire Semblaunt,  
The which in no wise would consent,  
That any lover him repent  
To serve his love with herte and all,  
For any perill that may befall.  
But though this arrow was cleene ground,  
As any rasour that is found,  
To cut and kerve at the point,  
The god of love it had annoint  
With a precious oyntment,  
Somedele to yeve allegement,  
Upon the woundes that he hade  
Through the body in my heart made,  
To helpe hir sores, and to cure,  
And that they may the bette endure :  
But yet this arrow, without more,  
Made in mine heart a large sore,  
That in full greate paine I abode,  
But aye the ointment went abroad  
Throughout my woundes large and wide,  
It sprede about in every side :  
Through whose vertue and whose might,  
Mine herte joyfull was and light.  
I had ben dead and all to shent  
But for the precious ointment :  
The shaft I drow out of the arrow,  
Roking for wo right wonder narrow,  
But the head, which made me smart,  
Left behinde in mine heart

With other fower, I dare well say,  
That never wold be take away,  
But the ointment halpe me wele,  
And yet such sorrow did I fele,  
That all day I chaunged hew,  
Of my woundes fresch and new,  
As men might see in my visage,  
The arrowes were so full of rage,  
So variaunt of diversitee,  
That men in everiche might see  
Both great annoy and eke sweetnesse,  
And joy meint with bitternesse :  
Now were they easie, now were they wood,  
In hem I felt both harme and good,  
Now sore without alleggement,  
Now softing with the ointement,  
It softened here, and priked there,  
Thus ease and anger together were.

THE god of love deliverly  
Come lepande to me hastely,  
And saied to me in great jape,  
" Yeeld thee, for thou may not escape,  
May no defence availle thee here :  
Therefore I rede make no daungere.  
If thou wold yeeld thee hastely,  
Thou shalt rather have mercy :  
He is a foole in sikernesse,  
That with daunger or stoutnesse  
Rebelleth there that he should please,  
In such folly is little ease.  
Be meeke, where thou must needes bowe,  
To strive ayen is not thy prow :  
Come at ones, and have ido,  
For I wold that it be so,  
Then yeeld thee here debonairly."  
And I answered full humbly,  
" Gladly sir, at your bidding,  
I wold me yeeld in all thing :  
To your service I wold me take,  
For God defend that I should make  
Ayen your bidding resistance.  
I wold not doen so great offence,  
For if I did, it were no skill,  
Ye may do with me what ye will,  
Save or spill, and also slo,  
Fro you in no wise may I go,  
My life, my death, is in your hond,  
I may not last out of your bond,  
Plaine at your list I yeeld me,  
Hoping in heart, that sometime ye  
Comfort and ese shull me send :  
Or els shortly, this is the end,  
Withouten health I mote aye dure,  
But if ye take me to your cure :  
Comfort or health, how should I have,  
Sith ye me hurt, but ye me save !  
The health of love mote be found,  
Whereas they token first hir wound :  
And if ye list of me to make  
Your prisoner, I wold it take  
Of heart and willfully at gree,  
Holy and plaine I yeeld mee  
Without feining or feintise,  
To be governed by your emprise :  
Of you I heare so much prise,  
I wold been whole at your devise  
For to fulfill your liking  
And repent for nothing,  
Hoping to have yet in some tide

Mercy, of that I abide :"

And with that covenant yeeld I mee,  
Anon downe kneeling upon my knee,  
Profering for to kisse his fete,  
But for nothing he wold me lete.

And said, " I love thee both and preise,  
Sens that thine answer doth me ese :  
For thou answered so curteisly,  
For now I wote well utterly,  
That thou art gentle by thy spech :  
For though a man ferre wold seech,  
He shuld not finden in certaine,  
No such answer of no villaine :  
For such a worde ne might nought  
Issue out of a villaines thought.  
Thou shalt not lesen of thy speche,  
For thy helping wold I eche,  
And eke encresen that I may :  
But first I wold that thou obay  
Fully for thine avauntage  
Anone to doe me here homage :  
And sithe kisse thou shalt my mouth,  
Which to no villaine was never couth  
For to approach it, ne for to touch,  
For saufe of cherles I ne vouch  
That they shall never neigh it ne ;  
For curteis, and of faire manere,  
Well taught, and full of gentlenessse  
He must be, that shall me kisse,  
And also of full high franchisee,  
That shall attaine to that emprise.

" And first of o thing warne I thee,  
That paine and great adversitee  
He mote endure, and eke travaille  
That shall me serve, without faile,  
But there againe thee to comfort,  
And with thy service to disport,  
Thou maiest full glad and joyfull bee  
So good a maister to have as mee,  
And lord of so high renoune,  
I beare of Love the gonfounne,  
Of curtesie the banere,  
For I am of the selfe manere,  
Gentle, courteous, meeke and free,  
That who ever ententive bee  
Me to honour, doute, and serve,  
And also that he him observe  
Fro trespassse and fro villanie,  
And him governe in courtesie,  
With will and entention ;  
For when he first in my prison  
Is caught, then must he utterly,  
Fro thenceforth full busily,  
Cast him gentle for to be,  
If he desire helpo of me."

Anon without more delay,  
Withouten daunger or affray,  
I become his man anone,  
And gave him thankes many a one,  
And kneled doune with hondes joint,  
And made it in my port full quaint :  
The joy went to my herte rote,  
Whan I had kised his mouth so swote,  
I had such mirth and such liking,  
It cured me of languishing.  
He asked of me than hostages,  
" I have," he sayd, " taken fele hostages  
Of one and other, where I have bene,  
Distreined oft, withouten wene,  
These felons full of falsite,

Have many sithes beguiled me,  
And through hir falsheid hir lust atchieved,  
Whereof I repent and am agreeved,  
And I hem get in my daungere,  
Hir falsheid shall they bie full dere,  
But for I love thee, I say thee plaine,  
I woli of thee be more certaine,  
For thee sore I woli now binde,  
That thou away ne shalt not winde,  
For to denien thy covenaut,  
Or done that is not avenaunt,  
That thou were false, it were great ruth,  
Sith thou seemest so ful of truth."

"Sir, if thee list to understand,  
I marvaile thee asking this demandaunt,  
For why or wherefore should ye,  
Hostages or borowes asks of me,  
Or any other sikernesce,  
Sith ye wote in sothfastnesce,  
That ye me have surprised so,  
And hold mine heart, taken me fre,  
That it woli doe for me nothing,  
But if it be at your bidding,  
Mine herte is yours, and mine right naught  
As it behoveth, in deede and thought,  
Ready in all to worke your will,  
Whether so tourne to good or ill,  
So sure it lusteth you to please,  
No man thereof may you discease,  
Ye have thereon set such justise,  
That it is werried in many wise,  
And if ye doubt it n'old obaie,  
Ye may thereof do make a kaie,  
And hold it with you for hostage."

"Now certes this is none outrage,"  
(Quoth Love) "and fully I accord,  
For of the bodie he is full lord  
That hath the heart in his treasure,  
Outrage it were to asken more."

THAN of his aumener he drough,  
A little key fetise inough,  
Which was of gold polished clere  
And sayed to me, "With this keye here,  
Thine herte to me now woli I shet,  
For all my jowel loke and knet,  
I binde under this little kay,  
That no wight may carie away."

This key is full of great poste,  
With which anone he touched me,  
Under the side full softly,  
That he mine herte sodainely,  
Without annoy had speered,  
That yet right nought it hath me deered.  
When he had done his will all out,  
And I had put him out of doubt,  
"Sir" I sayd, "I have right great will,  
Your lust and pleasure to fulfill,  
Looke ye my service take at gree,  
By thilke fayth ye owe to me,  
I say nought for recreaundise,  
For I nought doubt of your service."

"But the servaunt travaileth in vaine,  
That for to serven doth his paine  
Unto that lord, which in no wise,  
Conne him no thanke for his service."

Love sayed, "Dismaie thee nought,  
Sith thou for succour hast me sought,  
In thanke thy service woli I take,  
And high of degree woli thee make,

If wickednesse ne hinder thee,  
But (as I hope) it shall nought bee,  
To worship no wight by aventure,  
May come, but he paine endure."

"Abide and suffer thy distresse,  
That hurteth now, it shall be lesse.  
I wote my selfe what may thee save,  
What medicine thou wouldest have,  
And if thy truth to me thou keepe,  
I shall unto thine helping eke,  
To cure thy woundes and make hem clene,  
Where so they be old or grene,  
Thou shalt be holpen at wordes few,  
For certainly thou shalt well shew,  
Where that thou servest with good will,  
For to accomplishen and fulfill  
My commaundements day and night,  
Which I to lovers yeve of right."

"Ah sir, for Goddes love" (sayd I)  
"Er ye passe hence ententifely,  
Your commaundements to me say,  
And I shall keepe hem if I may,  
For hem to keepen is all my thought :  
And if so be I wote hem nought,  
Than may I unwittingly,  
Wherefore I pray you entierly,  
With all mine herte, me to lere,  
That I trespase in no manere."

The god of love then charged me  
Anon, as ye shall here and see,  
Word by word, by right emprise,  
So as the Romaunt shall devise.

The maister leseth his time to lere,  
When the disciple woli not here,  
It is but vaine on him to swinke,  
That on his learning woli not thinke,  
Who so lust love, let him entend,  
For now the Romance begiuneth to amend.

Now is good to heare in fay  
If any be that can it say,  
And point it as the reason is  
Set for other gate ywis,  
It shall nat well in all thing,  
Be brought to good understanding,  
For a reader that pointeth ill,  
A good sentence may oft spill :  
The booke is good at the ending,  
Made of newe and lustie thing :  
For who so woli the ending here,  
The craft of love he shall now lere,  
If that he woli so long abide,  
Till I this Romance maie unhide,  
And undoe the signifaunce  
Of this dreame into Romance,  
The soothfastnesce that now is hid,  
Without coverture shall be kid,  
When I undoen have this dreaming,  
Wherein no worde is of leasing.

"VILLANIE at the beginning,  
I woli," sayd Love, "over all thing  
Thou leave, if thou wolt ne be  
False, and trespase ayenst me :  
I curse and blame generally  
All hem that loven villany,  
For villanie maketh villeine  
And by his deeds a chorle is seine.

"These villaines arne without pitie,  
Friendship, love, and all bountie,  
I nill receive unto my servise

Hem that been villaines of emprise.  
 "But understound in thine entent,  
 That this is not mine entendement,  
 To clepe no wight in no ages  
 Onely gentle for his linages :  
 But who so is vertuous,  
 And in his port not outrageous,  
 When such one thou seest thee beforne,  
 Though he be not gentle borne,  
 Than maiest well seine this in sooth,  
 That he is gentle, because he doth  
 As longeth to a gentleman :  
 Of hem none other deme I can,  
 For certainly withouten drede,  
 A chorle is demed by his deede,  
 Of hye or lowe, as ye may see,  
 Or of what kinred that he bee.  
 Ne say nought for none evill will,  
 Thing that is to holden still,  
 It is no worship to mis-saie,  
 Thou mayest ensample take of Kaie,  
 That was sometime for mis-sayeng,  
 Hated both of old and yeng :  
 As ferre as Gawein the worthie,  
 Was praysed for his courtesie,  
 Kaie was hated, for he was fell,  
 Of word dispitous and cruell ;  
 Wherefore be wise and acquisiteable,  
 Goodly of word, and reasonable :  
 Both to lesse and eke to mare,  
 And when thou comest there men are,  
 Looke that thou have in custome ay,  
 First to salve hem if thou may :  
 And if it fall, that of hem somme  
 Salve the first, be not domme,  
 But quite him courtesly anone  
 Without abiding, ere they gone.

"For nothing eke thy tongue applie  
 To speake words of ribauldric,  
 To villaine speech in no degree  
 Let never thy lippe unbounden bee :  
 For I nought hold him in good faith  
 Curteis, that foule wordes saith :  
 And all women serve and preise,  
 And to thy power hir honour reise :  
 And if that any mis-sayere  
 Despise women, that thou maist here,  
 Blame him, and bid him hold him still,  
 And set thy might and all thy will  
 Women and ladies for to please,  
 And to doe thing that may hem ease,  
 That they ever speake good of thee,  
 For so thou maiest best praised bee.

"Looke fro pride thou keepe thee wele,  
 For thou maiest both perceive and feele,  
 That pride is both folly and sin,  
 And he that pride hath him within,  
 Ne may his herte in no wise,  
 Meken ne souplen to service :  
 For pride is found in everie part,  
 Contrarie unto Loves art :  
 And he that loveth truly,  
 Should him conteneine jollily,  
 Without pride in sundrie wise,  
 And him disguisen in quaintise,  
 For quaint array, without drede,  
 Is nothing proude, who taketh hede,  
 For fresh array, as men may see,  
 Without pride may ofte bee.

"Maintaine thy selfe after thy rent,

Of robe and eke of garment,  
 For many sithe faire clothing  
 A man amendeth in much thing.

"And looke alway that they be shap,  
 (What garment that thou shalt make)  
 Of him that can best do,  
 With all that pertaineth thereto,  
 Pointes and sleeves be well sittand,  
 Right and streight on the hand,  
 Of shone and bootes, new and faire,  
 Looke at the least you have a paire,  
 And that they sit so fetously,  
 That these rude may utterly  
 Marvaile, sith that they sit so plaine,  
 How they come on or off againe.  
 Weare streight gloves with aumere  
 Of silke : and alway with good chere  
 Thou yeve, if thou have richesse,  
 And if thou have nought, spend the lesse.  
 Alway be merry, if thou may,  
 But waste not thy good alway ;  
 Have hatte of floures fresch as May,  
 Chapelet of roses of Whitsunday,  
 For such arraie ne costneth but lito.  
 Thine hondes wash, thy teeth make white,  
 And let no filth upon thee bee,  
 Thy nayles blacke, if thou maiest see,  
 Voide it alwaie deliverly,  
 And kembe thine head right jollily :  
 Farce not thy visage in no wise,  
 For that of love is nat th'emprie,  
 For love doth haten, as I finde,  
 A beauteie that cometh not of Kinde :  
 Alway in herte I read thee,  
 Glad and merry for to be,  
 And be as joyfull as thou can,  
 Love hath no joy of sorrowfull man,  
 That evill is full of curtesie,  
 That knoweth in his maladie,  
 For ever of love the sicknesse  
 Is meint with sweets and bitternesse :  
 The sore of love is marvailous,  
 For now the lover is joyous,  
 Now can he plaine, now can he grone,  
 Now can he singen, now maken mone,  
 To day he plaineth for heavinesse,  
 To morrow he plaineth for jolynesse :  
 The life of love is full contrarie,  
 Which stoundemele can oft varie ;  
 But if thou canst mirthes make,  
 That men in gre woll gladly take,  
 Doe it goodly I command thee,  
 For men should, wheresoever they be,  
 Doe thing that hem fitting is,  
 For thereof cometh good loos and pris.  
 Whereof that thou be vertuous,  
 Ne be nat straunge ne dangerous :  
 For if that thou good rider be,  
 Pricke gladly that men may see ;  
 In armes also if thou conne,  
 Pursue till thou a name hast wonne :  
 And if thy voice be faire and clere,  
 Thou shalt maken no great daungere.  
 Whan to sing they goodly pray,  
 It is thy worship for to obay :  
 Also to you it longeth aye,  
 To harpe and citterne, daunce and playe,  
 For if he can well foot and daunce,  
 It may him greatly doe avance,  
 Emong eke for thy lady sake,

Songes and complaintes that thou make,  
 For that meven in her hart,  
 When they readen of thy smart.  
 Looke that no man for scarce thee hold,  
 For that may greeve thee manifold :  
 Reason wolle that a lover be  
 In his yestes more large and free  
 Than chorles that been not of loving,  
 For who thereof can any thing,  
 He shall be lefe aie for to yeve,  
 In londes lore who so wolle leve,  
 For he that through a sodain sight,  
 Or for a kissing anon right,  
 Yave hole his heart, in will and thought,  
 And to himselfe keepeth right nought,  
 After this swift, it is good reason,  
 He yeve his good in abandon.

"Now wol I shortly here rehearse,  
 Of that I have sayd in verse,  
 All the sentence by and by,  
 In wordes fewe compendiously,  
 That thou the better mayest on hem thinke,  
 Whether so it be thou wake or winke,  
 For the wordes litte greeve,  
 A man to keepe, when it is breve.

"Who so with Love wolle gone or ride  
 He mote be courteous, and voide of pride,  
 Merry and full of jollite,  
 And of largesse a loosed be.

"First I joyne thee here in penaunce  
 That ever without repentaunce,  
 Thou set thy thought in thy loving  
 To last without repenting,  
 And thinke upon thy mirthes sweet  
 That shall follow after whan ye meet.

"And for thou true to love shalt be,  
 I will and commande thee,  
 That in one place thou set all hole  
 Thine herte, without halften drole,  
 For trecherie and sikernesne,  
 For I loved never doubtenesse :  
 To many his herte that wolle depart,  
 Everich shall have but litte part,  
 But of him drede I me right nought,  
 That in one place setteth his thought :  
 Therefore in o place it set,  
 And let it never thence flet :  
 For if thou yevest it in lening,  
 I holde it but wretched thing :  
 Therefore yeve it whole and quite,  
 And thou shalt have the more merite.  
 If it be lent than after soone,  
 The bountie and the thanks is doone,  
 But in love, free yeven thing  
 Requireth a great guerdoning.

"Yeve it in yeft all quite fully,  
 And make thy gift debouairly :  
 For men that yeft holde more dere  
 That yeven is with gladsome chere.

"That gifte nought to praysen is  
 That man yeveth maugre his :  
 Whan thou hast yeven thine heart (as I  
 Have sayd) thee here openly,  
 Than adventures shull thee fall,  
 Which hard and heave been withall :  
 For oft wher thou bethinkest thee  
 Of thy loving, where so thou be,  
 Fro folke thou must depart in hie,  
 That none perceive thy inaladie,

But hide thine harme thou must alone,  
 And go forth sole, and make thy mone :  
 Thou shalt no while be in o state.  
 But whilom cold and whilom hate,  
 Now redde as rose, now yellow and fade,  
 Such sorow I trow thou never hade :  
 Cotidien, ne quarteine,  
 It is not so full of peine,  
 For often times it shall fall,  
 In love among thy paines all,  
 That thou thy selfe all holy,  
 Foryetten shalt so utterly,  
 That many times thou shalt bee,  
 Still as an image of tree,  
 Domme as a stone, without stirring  
 Of foote or honde, without speaking.

"Than soone after all thy paine,  
 To memorie shalt thou come againe,  
 A man abashed wonder sore,  
 And after sighen more and more :  
 For wite thou wele withouten wene,  
 In such a state full oft have bene,  
 That have the evill of love assaide,  
 Wher-through thou art so dismaide.

"AFTER a thought shall take thee so,  
 That thy love is too ferre the fro :  
 Thou shalt say, 'God, what may this be,  
 That I ne may my ladie see !  
 Mine heart alone is to her goe,  
 And I abide all sole in woe,  
 Departed fro mine owne thought,  
 And with mine eien se right nought.

"Alas mine eyen sene I ne may,  
 My carefull herte to convey,  
 Mine hertes guide, but they be,  
 I praise nothing what ever they se :  
 Shull they abide than, nay,  
 But gone and visiten without delay  
 That mine heart desireth so  
 For certainly, but if they go.

"A foole my selfe I may well hold,  
 When I ne se what mine hart wold,  
 Wherefore I wolle gone her to sene,  
 Or eased shall I never bene,  
 But I have some tokening."

"Then goest thou forth without dwelling,  
 But oft thou faylest of thy desire,  
 Er thou mayest come her any nere,  
 And wastest in vaine thy passage :  
 Than fastest thou in a new rage,  
 For want of sight thou ginnest mourne,  
 And homeward pensive thou dost retourne :  
 In great mischiefe than shalt thou bee,  
 For than againe shall come to thee  
 Sighes and plaintes with new wo,  
 That no itching pricketh so :  
 Who wote it nought, he may goe lere,  
 Of hem that buyen love so dere.

"Nothing thine heart appeasen may,  
 That oft thou wolt gone and assay,  
 If thou maiest seene by adventure  
 Thy lives joy, thine heartes cure,  
 So that by grace, if thou might  
 Attaine of her to have a sight,  
 Than shalt thou done none other deed,  
 But with that sight thine eyen feel :  
 That faire fresh whan thou mayst see,  
 Thine herte shall so ravished bee,  
 That never thou wouldest thy thanks leta

Ne remove, for to see that swete :  
 The more thou seest in soothfastnesse,  
 The more thou covetest of that sweetnesse :  
 The more thine herte brenneth in fire,  
 The more thine herte is in desire.  
 For who considereth everie dele,  
 It may be likened wonder wele,  
 The paine of love unto a fere,  
 For evermore thou neighnest nere,  
 Thought, or who so that it be,  
 For verie sooth I tell it thee,  
 The hotter ever shalt thou brenne,  
 As experience shall thee kenne,  
 Where so comest in any cost,  
 Who is next fire he brenneth most :  
 And yet forsooth for all thine heat,  
 Though thou for love swelte and sweat,  
 Ne for no thing thou felen may,  
 Thou shalt not willen to passe away,  
 And though thou goe, yet must thou nede,  
 Thinke all day on her faire hede,  
 Whome thou beheld with so good will,  
 And hold thy selfe beguiled ill,  
 That thou ne hadest ne hardiment,  
 To shew her ought of thine entent ;  
 Thine herte full sore thou wolt dispise,  
 And eke reprove of cowardise,  
 That thou so dull in every thing,  
 Were domme for drede, without speaking.

"Thou shalt eke thinke thou didst folly,  
 That thou were her so faste by,  
 And durst not aunte thee to say  
 Some thing er thou came away,  
 For thou hadest no more wonne,  
 To speake of her whan thou begonne :  
 But yet if she wold for thy sake,  
 In armes goodly thee have take,  
 It should have be more worth to thee,  
 Than of treasure great plente.

"Thus shalt thou mourne and eke complain,  
 And yet encheson to gone again,  
 Unto thy walke, or to thy place,  
 Where thou beheld her fleshly face,  
 And never for false suspicion,  
 Thou wouldest finde occasion,  
 For to gone unto her house,  
 So art thou than desirouse,  
 A sight of her for to have,  
 If thou thine honour mightest save,  
 Or any errand mightest make  
 Thider, for thy loves sake :  
 Full faine thou wouldest, but for drede  
 Thou goest not, least that men take heede,  
 Wherefore I read in thy going,  
 And also in thine againe coming,  
 Thou be well ware that men ne wit,  
 Feine thee other cause than it,  
 To goe that way, or fast bie,  
 To heale well is no follie :  
 And if so be it happe thee,  
 That thou thy love there mayest see,  
 In siker wise thou her salewe,  
 Wherewith thy colour wolt transmewe,  
 And eke thy bloud shall all to quake,  
 Thy hewe eke chaungen for her sake,  
 But word and wit, with chere full pale  
 Shull want for to tell thy tale,  
 And if thou mayest so ferre forth winne,  
 That thou reason durst beginne,  
 And wouldest saine three things or mo,

Thou shalt full scarcely saine the two,  
 Though thou bethinke thee never so wele,  
 Thou shalt fortyete yet some dele.

"But if thou deale with trechery,  
 For false lovers mowe all foully  
 Sain what hem lust withouten dred,  
 They be so double in hir falsched,  
 For they in herte can thinke o thing  
 And saine another, in hir speaking,  
 And when thy speech is ended all,  
 Right thus to thee it shall befall :  
 If any word than come to minde,  
 That thou to say hast left behinde,  
 Than thou shalt brenne in great martire,  
 For thou shalt brenne as any fire,  
 This is the strife and eke the affraie,  
 And the battaile that lasteth aie :  
 This bargaine end may never take,  
 But if that she thy peace will make.

"And whan the night is comen anon,  
 A thousand angres shall come upon,  
 To bed as fast thou wolt thee dight,  
 There thou shalt have but small delight,  
 For whan thou wenest for to sleepe,  
 So full of peine shalt thou creepe,  
 Stert in thy bed about full wide,  
 And turne full oft on everie side :  
 Now downeward groffe, and now upright,  
 And wallow in woe the longe night,  
 Thine armes shalt thou sprede abrede,  
 As man in warre were forwerede.  
 Than shalt the come a remembrance  
 Of her shape and her semblance,  
 Whereto none other may be pere,  
 And wete thou well without were,  
 That thee shall see sometime that night,  
 That thou hast her, that is so bright,  
 Naked betweene thine armes side,  
 All soothfastnesse as though it were ;  
 Thou shalt make castles than in Spaine,  
 And dreame of joy, all but in vaine,  
 And thee delighten of right nought,  
 While thou so slumbrest in that thought,  
 That is so sweete and delitable,  
 The which in sooth n'is but a fable,  
 For it ne shall no while last ;  
 Than shalt thou sigh and weepe fast,  
 And say ' Deere God, what thing is this,  
 My dreame is turned all amis,  
 Which was full sweet and apparent :  
 But now I wake it is all shent,  
 Now yede this merry thought away,  
 Twentie times upon a day  
 I wold this thought wold come againe  
 For it alleggeth well my paine,  
 It maketh me full of joyfull thought,  
 It sleeth me that it lasteth nought.  
 Ah Lord, why nill ye me succour ?  
 The joy I trow that I langour,  
 The death I wold me shoulde slo,  
 While I lye in her armes two,  
 Mine harme is hard withouten wene,  
 My great unesse full oft I mene.

"But woulde Love do so I might  
 Have fully joy of her so bright,  
 My paine were quit me richely,  
 Alas too great a thing aske I :  
 It is but folly, and wrong wening,



To aske so outrageous a thing,  
 And who so asketh follily,  
 He mote be warned hastily,  
 And I ne wote what I may say,  
 I am so ferre out of the way,  
 For I would have full great liking,  
 And full great joy of lasse thing,  
 For would she of her gentlenessse,  
 Withouten more, me ones kesse,  
 It were to me a great guerdon,  
 Release of all my passion :  
 But it is hard to come thereto,  
 All is but folly that I do,  
 So high I have mine herte set,  
 Where I may no comfort get,  
 I wote not where I say well or nought,  
 But this I wote well in my thought,  
 That it were bette of her alone  
 For to stint my woe and mone :  
 A looke on her I cast goodly,  
 That for to have all utterly,  
 Of another all hole the play.  
 Ah Lord, where I shall bide the day  
 That ever she shall my ladie be,  
 He is full cured, that may her see.  
 Ah God, when shall the dawning spring,  
 To ligen thus as an angrie thing,  
 I have no joy thus here to lye,  
 When that my love is not me bye :  
 A man to lyen hath great disene,  
 Which may not sleepe ne rest in ease,  
 I would it dawed, and were now day,  
 And that the night were went away,  
 For were it day, I would up rise,  
 Ah slowe Sunne, shew thine enprise,  
 Speede thee to spread thy beames bright,  
 And chase the darknesse of the night,  
 To put away the stoundes strong,  
 Which in me lasten all too long.

" The night shalt thou continue so,  
 Without rest, in paine and wo,  
 If ever thou knew of love distresse,  
 Thou shalt mo learne in that sicknesse,  
 And thus enduring shalt thou lyc,  
 And rise on morow up earlye,  
 Out of thy bed, and harnais thee  
 Er ever dawning thou maiest see :  
 All prively than shalt thou gone,  
 What whider it be, thy selfe alone,  
 For raine, or haile, for snow, for slete,  
 Thider she dwelleth that is so swete,  
 The which may fall asleepe bee,  
 And thinketh but little upon thee.  
 Than shalt thou goe, full foule aferde,  
 Looke if the gate be unsperde,  
 And waite without in woe and paine,  
 Full evill a cold in mind and raine :  
 Than shalt thou goe the dore before,  
 If thou mayest finde any shore,  
 Or hole, or reft, what ever it were,  
 Than shalt thou stoupe, and lay to eare  
 If they within a sleepe be,  
 I meane all save thy ladie free,  
 Whom waking if thou mayest espie,  
 Goe put thy selfe in jeopardie,  
 To aske grace, and thee bimine,  
 That she may wete without wene,  
 That thou all night no rest hast had,  
 So sore for her thou were bestad.

" Women well ought pitie to take

Of hem that sorrowen for hir sake.  
 And looke for love of that relike,  
 That thou thinke none other like,  
 For whan thou hast so great annoy,  
 Shall kisse thee er thou goe away,  
 And hold that in full great deintee,  
 And for that no man shall thee see  
 Before the house, ne in the way,  
 Looke thou be gon againe er day.  
 Suche comming, and suche going,  
 Such heavinesse, and such walking,  
 Maketh lovers withouten wene,  
 Under hir clothes pale and lenc,  
 For Love leaveth colour ne clearnesse,  
 Who loveth trew hath no fatnesse,  
 Thou shalt well by thy selfe see  
 That thou must needs assaied bee :  
 For men that shape hem other way  
 Falsely hir ladies to betray,  
 It is no wonder though they be fatte,  
 With false othes her loves they gatte,  
 For oft I see such losengeours  
 Fatter than abbots or priours.

" Yet with o thing I thee charge,  
 That is to say, that thou be large  
 Unto the maid, that her doth serve,  
 So best her thanke thou shalt deserve.  
 Yeve her giftee, and get her gr<sup>ace</sup>,  
 For so thou may thanke purchase,  
 That she thee worthy hold and free,  
 Thy ladie, and all that may thee see.  
 Also her servaunts worship aie,  
 And please as muche as thou maie,  
 Great good through hem may come to thee,  
 Because with her they been privee :  
 They shall her tell how they thee fand  
 Curteous and wise, and well doand,  
 And she shall praise well thee more.  
 Looke out of lond thou be not fore,  
 And if such cause thou have, that thee  
 Bohoveth to gone out of countree,  
 Leave hole thine herte in hostage,  
 Till thou againe make thy passage,  
 Thinke long to see the swete thing  
 That hath thine heart in her keeping.

" Now have I told thee, in what wise  
 A lover shall doe me servise,  
 Do it than, if thou wolte have  
 The mede that thou after crave."

WHEN Love all this had boden me,  
 I said him : " Sir, how may it be  
 That lovers may in such manere,  
 Endure the paine ye have sayd here ?  
 I marvaile me wonder fast,  
 How any man may live or last  
 In suche paine, and such brenning,  
 In sorrow and thought, and such sighing,  
 Aie unreleased woe to make,  
 Whether so it be they sleepe or wake,  
 In such annoy continually,  
 As helpe me God this marvaile I  
 How man, but he were made of steele,  
 Might live a moneth, such pains to feele."

THE God of love then sayd me,  
 " Friend, by the faith I owe to thee,  
 May no man have good, but he it buy :  
 A man loveth more tenderly  
 The thing that he hath bought most dere.

For wete thou well without were,  
 In thanke that thing is taken more,  
 For which a man hath suffred sore :  
 Certes no woe ne may attaine,  
 Unto the sore of loves paine,  
 None evill thereto ne may amount,  
 No more than a man count  
 The drops that of the water bee :  
 For drie as well the grete see  
 Thou mightest, as the harmes tell  
 Of hem that with Love dwell  
 In service, for paine hem sleeth,  
 And that eche would flee the death  
 And trowe they should never escape,  
 Nere that hope couth hem make,  
 Glad as man in prison sete,  
 And may not gotten for to ete  
 But barly bread, and water pure,  
 And lyeth in vermin and in ordure,  
 With all this yet can he live,  
 Good hope such comfort hath him yve,  
 Which maketh wene that he shall be  
 Delivered and come to libertie,  
 In fortune is full trust,  
 Though he lye in straw or dust,  
 In hope is all his sustaining :  
 And so faire lovers in her wening,  
 Which love hath set in his prison  
 Good hope is her salvation :  
 Good hope (how sore that they smart)  
 Yeveth hem both will and hart  
 To profer her body to martire,  
 For hope so sore doth hem desire  
 To suffer each harme that men devise,  
 For joy that afterward shall arise.

“ Hope in desire catch victorie,  
 In hope of love is all the glorie,  
 For hope is all that love may yve,  
 Nere hope, there should no lenger live.  
 Blessed be hope, which with desire,  
 Avaunceth lovers in such manere.  
 Good hope is curteis for to please,  
 To keepe lovers from all disease.  
 Hope keepeth his lond, and woll abide,  
 For any perill that may betide,  
 For hope to lovers, as most chiefe,  
 Doth hem endure all mischiefe,  
 Hope is hir helpe whan mistere is.  
 And I shall yve thee eke ywis,  
 Three other thinges, that great sollace  
 Doth to hem that be in my lace.

“ The firste good that may be found,  
 Is hem that in my lace be bound,  
 A swete thought, for to record  
 Thing wherewith thou canst accord  
 Best in thine herte, where she be,  
 Thinking in absence is good to thee.  
 Whan any lover doth complaine,  
 And liveth in distresse and in paine  
 Than swete thought shall come as blive,  
 Away his anger for to drive,  
 It maketh lovers to have remembrance  
 Of comfort, and of high pleasaunce,  
 That hope hath hight him for to winne,  
 For thought anone than shall beginne,  
 As farre God wote as he can finde,  
 To make a mirrour of his minde,  
 For to behold he woll not let,  
 Her person he shall afore him set,

Her laughing eyen persaunt and clere,  
 Her shape, her form, her goodly chere,  
 Her mouth that is so gracious,  
 So swete, and eke so savourous,  
 Of all her feyters he shall take heed,  
 His eyen with all her limmes feed.

“ Thus swete thinking shall aswage  
 The paine of lovers, and hir rage,  
 Thy joy shall double without gesse  
 Whan thou thinkest on her seemelnesse,  
 Or of her laughing, or of her chere  
 That to thee made thy lady dere,  
 This comfort woll I that thou take,  
 And if the next thou wolt forsake  
 Which is not lesse saverous,  
 Thou shouldest not ben too daungerous.

“ This second shall be swete spechie,  
 That hath to many one be leche,  
 To bring hem out of woe and were,  
 And helpe many a bachelere,  
 And many a ladie sent succour,  
 That have loved paramour,  
 Through speaking, whan they might heare,  
 Of hir lovers to hem so deare :  
 To me it voideth all hir smart,  
 The which is closed in hir hart.  
 In heart it maketh hem glad and light,  
 Speech, whan they mowe have sight.  
 And therefore now it commeth to mind,  
 In olde dawes as I find,  
 That clerkes writen that her knew,  
 There was a ladie fresh of hew,  
 Which of her love made a song,  
 On him for to remember among,  
 In which she sayd, ‘ Whan that I heare  
 Spoken of him that is so deare,  
 To me it voideth all smart,  
 Ywis he sitteth so nere mine hart,  
 To speake of him at eve or morrow,  
 It cureth me of all my sorrow,  
 To me is none so high pleasaunce  
 As of his person daliaunce :’  
 She wist full well that sweet speaking  
 Comforteth in full muche thing,  
 Her love she had full well assaide,  
 Of him she was full well apaide,  
 To speake of him her joy was set.  
 Therefore I read thee that thou get  
 A fellow that can well counsele,  
 And keepe thy counsaile, and welhcle  
 To whom goe shew wholly thine hart  
 Both wele and woe, joy and smart :  
 To get comfort to him thou go,  
 And prively between you two,  
 Ye shall speake of that goodly thing,  
 That hath thine heart in her keeping,  
 Of her beaute and her semblance,  
 And of her goodly countenance,  
 Of all thy state, thou shalt him say,  
 And aske him counsaile how thou may,  
 Do any thing that may her please,  
 For it to thee shall doe great ease,  
 That he may wete thou trust him so,  
 Both of thy wele and of thy wo.  
 And if his heart to love be sette,  
 His companie is much the bette,  
 For reason woll he shew to thee  
 All utterly his privite,  
 And what she is he loveth so

To thee plainly he shall undo,  
Without drede of any shame,  
Both tell her renome and her name.  
Than shall he further farre and nere,  
And namely to thy ladie dere  
In siker wise, ye every other,  
Shall helpen as his owne brother,  
In trouthe without doublenesse,  
And keepen close in sikernessee :  
For it is noble thing in fay,  
To have a man thou darste say  
Thy privie counsaile everie dele,  
For that woll comfort thee right wele,  
And thou shalt hold thee well apaide,  
When such a friend thou hast assaide.

"THE thirde good of great comfort  
That yeveth to lovers most disport,  
Commeth of sight and beholding,  
That cleped is swete looking,  
The whiche may thee none ease do,  
Whan thou art ferre thy ladie fro,  
Wherefore thou prese alway to be  
In place, where thou mayest her see :  
For it is thing most amorous  
Most delectable and savorous,  
For to asswage a mannes sorrow  
To seen his ladie by the morrow,  
For it is a full noble thing  
Whan thine eyen have meeting,  
With that relike precious,  
Whereof they be so desirous.  
But all day after sooth it is,  
They have no drede to faren amis,  
They dreden neither winde ne raine,  
Ne none other manner paine :  
For when thine eyen were thus in blisse,  
Yet of her courtesie ywissee  
Alone they cannot have hir joy,  
But to the herte they convoy  
Part of hir blisse, to him thou send,  
Of all this harme to make an end.

"The eye is a good messenger,  
Which can to the heart in such manner  
Tidinges sende, that hath sene  
To voide him of his paines clene :  
Whereof the heart rejoyseth so  
That a great partie of his wo  
Is voided, and put away to flight.  
Right as the darkenesse of the night  
Is chased with clerenesse of the moone,  
Right so is all his woe full soone  
Devoided cleane, whan that the sight  
Beholden may that fresh wight  
That the herte desireth so,  
That all his darkenesse is ago,  
For than the herte is all at ease,  
Whan they seen that may hem please.

"Now have I declared thee all out,  
Of that thou were in dread and dout,  
For I have told thee faithfully,  
What thee may curen utterly,  
And all lovers that woll be  
Faithfull, and full of stabilite,  
Good hope alway keepe by thy side,  
And sweet thought make eke abide,  
Sweet looking and sweet speche,  
Of all thine harmes they shall be lecho,  
Of everie thou shalt have great pleasaunce,  
If thou canst bide in sufferance,

And serve well without feintise,  
Thou shalt be quite of thine emprise  
With more guerdoun, if that thou live,  
But all this time this I thee yeve."

THE god of love, whan all the day  
Had taught me, as ye have heard say,  
And enformed compendously,  
He vanished away all sodainly,  
And I alone left all sole,  
So full of complaint and of dole,  
For I saw no man there me by.  
My woundes me greeved wonderly,  
Me for to curen nothing I knewe,  
Save the bothum bright of hewe,  
Whereon was sette hooly my thought,  
Of other comfort knew I nought,  
But it were through the God of Love,  
I knew nat else to my behove  
That might me ease or comfort gette,  
But if he would him entermette.

The roser was withouten dout  
Closed with an hedge without,  
As ye toforne have heard me saine,  
And fast I besied, and would faine  
Have passed the haie, if I might  
Have gotten in by any sleight  
Unto the bothum so faire to see,  
But ever I dradde blamed to bee,  
If men would have suspicion  
That I would of entencion  
Have stole the roses that there were,  
Therefore to enter I was in fere.  
But at the last, as I bethought  
Whether I should passe or nough,  
I sawe come with a glad chere  
To me, a lusty bachelere,  
Of good stature and of good height,  
And BIALACOIL forsooth he height :  
Sonne he was to Curtesie,  
And he me graunted full gladly,  
The passage of the utter hay,  
And sayd : "Sir, how that you may  
Passe, if your will bee  
The freshe roser for to see :  
And ye the swete savour fele,  
Your warrans may right wele,  
So thou thee keepe fro folly,  
Shall no man doe thee villany,  
If I may helpe you in ough,  
I shall not faine, dredeth nought,  
For I am bound to your servise,  
Fully devoid of feintise."  
Than unto Bialacoil sayd I,  
"I thanke you sir full hartely,  
And your behest take at gree,  
That ye so goodly profer mee,  
To you it commeth of great fraunchise,  
That ye me profer your servise."

Than after full deliverly,  
Through the breres anon went I,  
Whereof encombred was the haie,  
I was well pleased, the soth to saie,  
To se the bothum faire and swote,  
So freshe sprong out of the rote.

AND Bialacoil me served wele,  
Whan I so nigh me might fele  
Of the bothum the sweet odour,  
And so lusty hewed of colour :

But than a chorle, foule him betide,  
Beside the roses gan him hide,  
To keepe the roses of that rosere,  
Of whom the name was DAUNGERE:  
This chorle was hid there in the greves,  
Covered with grasse and with leves,  
To spie and take whom that he fond  
Unto that roser put an hond.

He was not sole, for there was mo,  
For with him were other two  
Of wicked manners, and evill fame,  
That one was cleped by his name,  
Wicked Tongue, God yeve him sorrow,  
For neither at eve ne at morrow,  
He can of no man good speake,  
On many a just man doth he wreake.

There was a woman that eke hight  
SHAME, that who can reckon right,  
Trespasse was her fathers name,  
Her mother Reason, and thus was Shame  
Brought of these ilke two:  
And yet had Trespasse never ado  
With Reason, ne never leie her by,  
He was hidous and so ugly,  
I meane this that Trespasse hight,  
But Reason conceiveth of a sight,  
Shame of that I spake afore.

And whan that Shame was thus borne,  
It was ordained, that Chastite,  
Should of the roser ladie be:  
Which of the bothums more and las,  
With sundrie folkes assailed was,  
That she ne wiste what to do,  
For Venus her assaileth so,  
That night and day for her she stall  
Bothums and roses over all.  
To Reason than prayeth Chastite,  
Whom Venus hath flemed over the *see*,  
That she her daughter would her leue,  
To keepe the roser fresh and grene.

Anon Reason to Chastite  
Is fully assented that it be,  
And graunted her at her request,  
That Shame, because she is honest,  
Shall keeper of the roser be:  
And thus to keepe it, there were three,  
That none should hardy be ne bold,  
(Were he young or were he old)  
Againe her will away to bere  
Bothums ne roses, that there were.  
I had well sped, had I nat been  
Awaited with these three, and seen:  
For Bialacoil, that was so faire,  
So gracious and debonaire,  
Quitte him to me full courteously,  
And me to please badde that I,  
Should drawe to the bothum nere,  
Prese in to touche the rosere  
Which bare the roses, he yave me leve,  
This graunt ne might but little greve:  
And for he saw it liked me,  
Right nigh the bothum pulled he  
A leafe all grene, and yave me that  
The which full nigh the bothum sat.  
I made of that leafe full queint,  
And whan I felt was acquieint  
With Bialacoil, and so prive,  
I wende all my will had be.  
Than wext I hardy for to tell  
To Bialacoil how me befell.

Of love, that tooke and wounded me,  
And sayd: "Sir, so mote I thee,  
I may no joy have in no wise,  
Upon no side, but it arise,  
For sithe (if I shall not faine)  
In herte I have had so great paine,  
So great annoy, and such affraie,  
That I ne wotte what I shall saie,  
I drede your wrothe to deserve,  
Lever me were, that knives kerve  
My bodie should in peces small,  
Than in any wise it should fall,  
That ye wrothed should been with me."

"Say boldely thy will" (quod he)  
"I nill be wroth if that I may,  
For nought that thou shalt to me say."

THAN sayd I, "Sir, not you displese,  
To knowen of my great unease,  
In which only love hath me brought,  
For paines great, disease and thought,  
Fro day to day it doth me drie,  
Supposeth not, sir, that I lie,  
In me five woundes did he make,  
The sore of which shall never ake,  
But ye the bothum graunt me,  
Which is moest passaunt of beaute,  
My life, my death, and my martire,  
And treasour that I moost desire."

Than Bialacoil affraied all  
Sayd "Sir, it may not fall,  
That ye desire it may not arise,  
What would ye shend me in this wise:  
A mokell foole than I were,  
If I suffred you away to beare  
The fresh bothum, so faire of sight,  
For it were neither skill ne right,  
Of the roser ye broke the rinde,  
Or take the rose afore his kinde;  
Ye are not courteous to aske it,  
Let it still on the roser sit,  
And let it grow till it amended be,  
And perfectly come to beaute,  
I nolde not that it pulled were,  
Fro the roser that it bere,  
To me it is so lefe and dere."

With that anon start out Daungere,  
Out of the place where he was hidde,  
His malice in his chere was kidde:  
Full great he was and blacke of hewe,  
Sturdy, and hidous, who so him knewe,  
Like sharpe urchons his haire was grow,  
His eyes red sparkling as the fire glow,  
His nose frounced full kyked stood,  
He come criand as he were wood,  
And sayd, "Bialacoil, tell me why  
Thou bringest hider so boldely  
Him that so nigh the rosere,  
Thou worchest in a wrong manere,  
He thinketh to dishonour thee,  
Thou art well worthy to have maugre,  
To let him of the rosere witte,  
Who serveth a felon is evill quitte."

"Thou wouldest have done great bountee,  
And he with shame would quite thee,  
Fly hence, fellow, I rede thee go,  
It wanteth little he wold thee slo,  
For Bialacoil ne knew thee nought,  
Whan thee to serve he set his thought,  
For thou wolt shame him if thou might.

Both againe reson and right,  
I wold no more in thee affie,  
That comest so slightly for t'espie :  
For it prooveth wouder wele,  
Thy sleight and treason everie dele."

I durst no more make there abode,  
For the chorle he was so wode,  
So gan he threat and menace,  
And through the haie he did me chace,  
For feare of him I trembled and quoke,  
So chorlishly his head he shoke,  
And sayd, if eft he might me take,  
I should not from his hands scape.  
Than Bialacoil is fled and mate,  
And I all soole disconsolate,  
Was left alone in paine and thought,  
Fro shame to death I was nigh brought.  
Than thought I on my high folly,  
How that my bodie utterly,  
Was yve to paine and to martire,  
And thereto had I so great ire,  
That I ne durst the haies passe,  
There was no hope, there was no grace,  
I trow never man wist of paine,  
But he were laced in Love's chaine,  
Ne no man, and sooth it is,  
But if he love, what anger is.

Love holdeth his heat to me right wele,  
Whan paine (he sayd) I should fele,  
No herte may thinke, no tongue saine,  
A quarter of my woe and paine,  
I might not with the anger last,  
Mine heart in point was for to brast,  
Whan I thought on the rose, that so,  
Was through Daunger cast me fro,  
A long while stode I in that state,  
Till that me sawe so madde and mate,  
The ladie of the high ward,  
Which from her tower looked thiderward.

Reason, men clepe that lady,  
Which from her tower deliverly,  
Come downe to me without more.  
But she was neither young, ne hore,  
Ne high ne low, ne fat ne leane,  
But best, as it were in a meane :  
Her eyen two were clere and light  
As any candle that brenneth bright,  
And on her head she had a croune,  
Her seemed well an high persoun :  
For round environ her crounet  
Was full of riche stones fret.  
Her goodly semblaunt by devise,  
I trow was made in Paradise,  
For nature had never such a grance,  
To forge a worke of such compase :  
For certain, but if the letter lye,  
God him selfe, that is so hye,  
Made her after his image,  
And yafe her sith such advantage,  
That she hath might and seignory  
To keepe men from all folly,  
Who so wold trowe her lore,  
Ne may offenden nevermore.

And while I stode this darke and pale,  
Reason began to me her tale,  
She said : " Alhaile my swete frend,  
Folly and childhood wold thee shend,  
Which thee have put in great affray,  
Thou hast bought dere time of May,  
That made thine herte merrie to be "

In evill time thou wentest to see  
The gardin, whereof Idleness  
Bare the key and was maistresse  
Whan thou yedest in the daunce  
With her, and had acquaintance :  
Her acquaintance is perillous,  
First soft, and after noyous,  
She hath thee trashed without wene,  
The god of love had thee not sene,  
Ne had Idleness thee convoid  
In the verge where Mirth him pleid,  
If Folly have surprised thee,  
Do so that it recovered be,  
And be well ware to take no more  
Counsaile, that greeveth after sore :  
He is wise, that wold himselfe chastise.

" And though a young man in any wise  
Trespasse among, and do folly,  
Let him nat tarie, but hastely  
Let him amend what so be mis,  
And eke I counsaile thee wyis,  
The god of love hooly foryet,  
That hath thee in such paine set,  
And thee in herte tormenteth so,  
I cannot seen how thou maist go  
Other waies thee to garisoun,  
For Daunger, that is so feloun,  
Felly purposeth thee to werrey,  
Which is full cruell the sooth to sey.

" AND yet of Daunger cometh no blance,  
In reward of my daughter Shame,  
Which hath the roses in her ward,  
As she that may be no musard,  
And Wicked Tongue is with these two,  
That suffreth no man thider go,  
For er a thing be do he shall,  
Where that he cometh over all,  
In fortie places, if it be sought,  
Saie thing that never was done ne wrought,  
So much treason is in his malc,  
Of falsenesse for to faine a tale :  
Thou dealest with angrie folke wyis,  
Wherefore to thee better is,  
From these folke away to fare,  
For they wold make thee live in care ;  
This is the evill that love they call,  
Wherein there is but folly all,  
For love is folly everie dele ;  
Who loveth, in no wise may do wele,  
Ne set his thought on no good werke,  
His schoole he leseth, if he be a clerke,  
Or other craft eke, if that he be,  
He shall not thrive therein, for he  
In love shall have more passioun,  
Than monke, hermite, or chanoun :  
This paine is hard out of measure,  
The joy may eke no while endure,  
And in the possession,  
Is much tribulation,  
The joye it is so short lasting,  
And but in hap is the getting ;  
For I see there many in travaue,  
That at last foule faile,  
I was nothing thy counsaile,  
Whan thou were made the homager  
Of god of love too hastely :  
Where was no wisdom but folij,  
Thine herte was jolly, but not sage,  
Whan thou were brought in such a rage,

To yelde thee so readyly,  
And to Love of his great maistric.

"I REDE thee Love away to drive,  
That maketh the recche not of thy live,  
The folly more fro day to day  
Shall growe, but thou it put away ;  
Take with thy teeth the bridle fast,  
To daunt thy herte, and eke the cast  
If that thou mayest, to get the defence  
For to redresse thy first offence.  
Who so his herte alway woll leve,  
Shall finde among that shall him greve."

Whan I heard her thus me chastise,  
I answered in full angrie wise,  
I prayed her cesse of her speach,  
Either to chastise me or teach,  
To bidde me my thought refrain,  
Which Love hath caught in his demein :  
"What wene ye Love woll consent,  
(That me assaileth with bowe bent)  
To draw mine herte out of his hond,  
Which is so quickly in his bond ?  
That ye counsaile, may never bee,  
For whan he first arested mee,  
He took mine herte so sore him till,  
That it is nothing at my will,  
He tought it so him for to obey.  
That he it sparred with a key.  
I pray you let me be all still,  
For ye may well, if that ye will,  
Your wordes wast in idleness,  
For utterly withouten gesse,  
All that ye sein is but in vaine,  
Me were lever die in the paine,  
Than Love to me ward should arette,  
Falsed or treason on me sette,  
I woll me get pris or blame,  
And love true to save my name,  
Who that me chastiseth, I him hate."

With that word, Reason went her gate,  
Whan she saw for no sermoning  
She might me fro my folly bring.  
Than dismayed I left all soole,  
Forwearie, forwandred as a foole,  
For I ne knew ne cherisaunce.  
Than fell into my remembraunce,  
How Love bad me to purvey  
A fellow, to whome I might sey  
My counsaile and my privite,  
For that shuld much availe me.

With that bethought I me, that I  
Had a fellowe faste by,  
True and siker, courteous, and hend,  
And he called was by name a frend,  
A truer fellowe was no where none,  
In hast to him I went anone,  
And to him all my woe I told,  
Fro him right nought I would withhold,  
I told him all without were,  
And made my complaint on Daungere,  
How for to see he was hidous,  
And to me ward contrarious,  
The whiche through his cruelte,  
Was in point to have meumed me,  
With Bialacoil whan he me sey  
Within the gardin walke and pley,  
Fro me he made him for to goe,  
And I be left alone in woe :  
I durst no longer with him speake,

For Daunger sayd he would be wrake,  
Whan that he sawe how I went,  
The freshe bothum for to hent,  
If I were hardie to come nere,  
Betweene the haie and the rosere.

This frend when he wist of my thought,  
He discomforted me right nought,  
But saied, "Fellow, be nat so madde.  
Ne so abashed nor bestadde,  
My selfe I know full well Daungere,  
And how he is fierce of chere,  
At prime temps, Love to manace,  
Full oft I have beene in his case ;  
A felon first though that he be,  
After thou shalt him souple see ;  
Of long passed I knew him wele,  
Ungodly first though men him fele,  
He woll meeke after in his bering  
Been, for service and obeissing :  
I shall thee tell what thou shalt do .  
Meekely I rede thou go him to,  
Of herte pray him specially  
Of thy trespass to have mercy,  
And hote him well here to please,  
That thou shalt never more him displease :  
Who can best serve of flattery,  
Shall please Daunger utterly."

My friend hath saied to me so wele,  
That he me eased hath somedele,  
And eke allegged of my tourment,  
For through him had I hardement  
Againe to Daunger for to go,  
To prove if I might meeke him so.

To Daunger came I all ashamed,  
The which aforne me had blamed,  
Desiring for to pease my wo,  
But over hedge durst I not go,  
For he forbode me the passage :  
I found him cruell in his rage,  
And in his hond a great bourdoun.  
To him I kneeled low adoun,  
Full meeke of port, and simple of chere,  
And saied, "Sir, I am comen here  
Onely to aske of you mercy,  
It greeveth me full greatly  
That ever my life I wrathed you,  
But for to amend I am come now,  
With all my might, both loud and still,  
To doen right at your owne will,  
For Love made me for to do  
That I have trespassed hiderto,  
Fro whom I ne may withdraw mine herte,  
Yet shall I never for joy ne smart  
(What so befall good or ill)  
Offende more againe your will,  
Lever I have endure disease,  
Than do that should you displease.

"I rou require, and pray that ye  
Of me have mercy and pite,  
To stint your ire that greveth so,  
That I woll sweare for evermo  
To be redressed at your liking  
If I trespass in any thing,  
Save that (I pray thee) graunt me  
A thing, that may nat warned be,  
That I may love all onely,  
None other thing of you aske I :

I shall doen all ywis,  
If of your grace ye graunt me this,  
And ye may not letten mee,  
For well wote ye that love is free :  
And I shall loven such that I will,  
Whoever like it well or ill :  
And yet ne would I not for all Fraunce  
Doe thing to do you displeasaunce."

Than Daunger fell in his entent  
For to foryeve his male talent,  
But all his wrathe yet at last  
He hath released, I praide so fast :  
"Shortly" (he saied) "thy request  
Is not too mokell dishonest,  
Ne I woll not werne it thee,  
For yet nothing engreeveth mee :  
For though thou love thus evermore,  
To me is neither soft ne sore :  
Love where that thee list, what reccheth me,  
So ferre fro my roses be :  
Trust not on me for none assaie,  
In any time to passe the haie."

Thus hath he graunted my prayere,  
Than went I forth withouten were  
Unto my frend, and told him all,  
Which was right joyfull of my tale,  
(He saied) "Now goeth well thine affaire,  
He shall to thee be debonaire,  
Though he aforne was dispitous,  
He shall hereafter be gracious :  
If he were touched on some good veine,  
He should yet rewen on thy peine,  
Suffer I rede, and no boast make,  
Til thou at goodness maist him take."

By suffraunce, and by wordes soft,  
A man may overcome oft  
Him that aforne he had in drede,  
In bookes soothly as I rede.  
Thus hath my frend with great comfort  
Avaunced me with high disport,  
Which would me good, as much as I :  
And than anon full sodainely  
I tooke my leave, and streight I went  
Unto the haie, for great talent  
I had to seene the fresh bothum,  
Wherein lay my salvation,  
And Daunger tooke keepe, if that I  
Keepe him covenant truly ;  
So sore I dread his manacing,  
I durst not breake his bidding,  
For least that I were of him shent,  
I brake not his commaundement,  
For to purchase his good will,  
It was for to come there till,  
His mercy was too ferre behind  
I kept, for I ne might it find.  
I complained and sighed sore,  
And languished evermore,  
For I durst nat overgo,  
Unto the rose I loved so,  
Throughout my deeming utterly,  
That he had knowledge certainly :  
Than Love me ladde in such a wise,  
That in me there was no feintise,  
Falschood, ne no trecherie :  
And yet he full of villanie,  
Of disdaie, and crueltie,  
On me ne would have pitie  
His cruell will for to refraine,  
Tho I wept alway, and me complaine.

AND while I was in this turment,  
Were come of grace, by God sent,  
Fraunchise, and with her Pity,  
Fulfilde the bothum of bounty :  
They go to Daunger anon right  
To ferther me with all hir might,  
And helpe in worde and in deed,  
For well they saw that it was need.

First of her grace dame Fraunchise  
Hath taken of this emprise :  
She saied, "Daunger great wrong ye do  
To worche this man so much wo,  
Or pinen him so angerly,  
It is to you great villany :  
I cannot see why ne how  
That he hath trespassed againe you,  
Save that he loveth, wherefore ye shold  
The more in charitie of him hold :  
The force of love maketh him do this,  
Who would him blame he did amis.  
He leveth more than he may do,  
His paine is hard, ye may see lo :  
And love in no wise would consent  
That ye have power to repent,  
For though that quicke ye would him also,  
Fro love his herte may nat go.

"Now swete sir, it is your case  
Him for to anger or disease.  
Alas, what may it you avaunce  
To doen to him so great greavaunce ?  
What worship is it againe him take,  
Or on your man a werre make,  
Sith he so lowly every wise  
Is ready, as ye lust devise ?  
If Love have caught him in his laas,  
You for to beye in every case,  
And been your subject at your will,  
Should ye therefore willen him ill ?  
Ye shuld him spare more all out,  
Than him that is both proud and stout :  
Courtesie would that ye succoure  
Hem that been meeke under your cure :  
His herte is hard that woll not meeke,  
Whan men of meekenesse him beseeke."

"THIS is certaine," saied Pitie,  
"We see oft that humilitie,  
Both ire, and also felonie  
Venquisheth, and also malanchollie,  
To stonde forth in such duresse  
This crueltie and wickednesse :  
Wherefore I pray you, sir Daungere  
For to maintaine no lenger here  
Such cruell warre againe your man,  
As wholly yours as ever he can,  
Nor that ye worchen no more wo  
Upon this caitefe that languisheth so,  
Which woll no more to you trespass,  
But put him wholly in your grace :  
His offence ne was but lite,  
The god of love it was to wite,  
That he your thrall so greatly is,  
And if ye harme him ye doen amis,  
For he hath had full hard pennaunce,  
Sith that ye reft him thaquaintaunce,  
Of Bialacoil, his most joie,  
Which all his paines might accoie :  
He was before annoyed sore,  
But than ye doubled him well more,  
For he of blisse hath been full bare,

Sith Bialacoil was fro him fare :  
 Love hath to him great distresse,  
 He hath no need of more duresse :  
 Voideth from him your ire I rede,  
 Ye may not winnen in this dede,  
 Maketh Bialacoil repaire againe,  
 And haveth pitie upon his paine,  
 For Fraunchise wolle, and I Pite,  
 That mercifull to him ye be,  
 And sith that she and I accorde,  
 Have upen him misericorde,  
 For I you pray, and eke moneste,  
 Nought to refusen our requeste :  
 For he is hard and fell of thought,  
 That for us two wolle doe right nought."

Daunger ne might no more endure,  
 He meeked him unto measure.  
 "I wolle in no wise," saith Daungere,  
 "Denie that ye have asked here :  
 It were too great uncourtesie,  
 I wolle be have the companie  
 Of Bialacoil, as ye devise,  
 I wolle him let in no wise."

To Bialacoil than went in his,  
 Fraunchise, and saied full curtealie :  
 "Ye have too long be deignous  
 Unto this lover, and daungerous  
 Fro him to withdraw your presence,  
 Which hath do to him great offence,  
 That ye not would upen him see,  
 Wherefore a sorrowfull man is hee :  
 Shape ye to pay him, and to please,  
 Of my love if ye wolle have ease,  
 Fulfill his will, sith that ye know  
 Daunger is daunted and brought low  
 Through helpe of me and of Pite  
 You dare no more aferde be."

"I shall do right as ye will"  
 Saith Bialacoil, "for it is skill,  
 Sith Daunger wolle that it so be :"  
 Than Fraunchise hath him sent to me.

BIALACOIL at the beginning  
 Salued me in his comming,  
 No straungenesse was in him seene,  
 No more than he had wrathed been,  
 As faire semblaunt than shewed he me,  
 And goodly, as aforne did he,  
 And by the honde without dout,  
 Within the haie right all about,  
 He lad me with right good chere,  
 All environ the vergere,  
 That Daungere had me chased fro :  
 Nor have I leave over all to go,  
 Now am I raised at my devise  
 Fro Hell unto Paradise.  
 Thus Bialacoil of gentlenesse  
 With all his paine and businesse,  
 Hath shewed me onely of grace  
 The efters of the swote place.

I saw the rose when I was nigh,  
 Was greater woxen, and more high,  
 Freshe, roddy, and faire of hew,  
 Of colour ever illiche new :  
 And whan I had it long seene,  
 I saw that through the leaves greene,  
 The rose spread to spannishing,  
 To seene it was a goodly thing,  
 But it ne was so sprede on brede,  
 That men within might know the seede,

For it covert was and close  
 Both with the leaves and with the rose,  
 The stalke was even and grene upright,  
 It was thereon a goodly sight,  
 And well the better without wene  
 For the seede was not sene,  
 Full faire it sprad, the god of blesse,  
 For such another, as I gesse,  
 Aforne ne was, ne more vermeile,  
 I was abawed for marveile,  
 For ever the fairer that it was,  
 The more I am bounden in Loves laas.  
 Long I abode there sooth to say,  
 Till Bialacoil I gan to pray,  
 Whan that I saw him in no wise  
 To me warnen his servise,  
 That he me would graunt a thing,  
 Which to remember is well fitting :  
 This is to saine, that of his grace  
 He would me yove leisure and space  
 To me that was so desirous  
 To have a kissing precious  
 Of the goodly fresh rose,  
 That so sweetly smelleth in my nose,  
 "For if it you displeased nought,  
 I wolle gladly, as I have sought,  
 Have a kiss thereof freely  
 Of your yeft, for certainly  
 I wolle none have but by your leve,  
 So loth me were you for to greve."

He saied, "Freind, so God me spede,  
 Of Chastite I have such drede,  
 Thou shouldest not warned be for me,  
 But I dare not for Chastite :  
 Againe her dare I not misdo,  
 For alway biddeth she me so  
 To yeve no lover leave to kisse,  
 For who therto may winnen ywisse,  
 He of the surplus of the prais  
 May live in hope to get some day,  
 For who so kissing may attaine,  
 Of loves paine hath (sooth to saine)  
 The best and moeste avenaunt,  
 And earnest of the remenaunt."

Of his answer I sighed sore,  
 I durst assay him tho no more,  
 I had such drede to greve him aye :  
 A man shuld not too much assaye  
 To chafe his friend out of measure,  
 Nor put his life in aventure ;  
 For no man at the first stroke  
 Ne may not fell downe an oke,  
 Nor of the reins have the wine,  
 Till grapes be ripe and well afine,  
 Be sore empressed, I you ensure.  
 And drawn out of the pressure :  
 But I forpeined wonder strong,  
 Though that I abode right long  
 And after the kisse, in paine and wo,  
 Sith I to kisse desired so :  
 Till that renning on my distresse,  
 There come Venus the goddessse  
 (Which aye werrieth Chastite)  
 Came of her grace to succour me,  
 Whose might is know ferre and wide,  
 For she is mother of Cupide,  
 The god of Love, blinde as stone,  
 That helpeth lovers many one.



THIS lady brought in her right hond  
 Of brenning fire a blasing brond,  
 Whereof the flame and hote firu  
 Hath many a lady in desire  
 Of love brought, and sore hette,  
 And in her service her herte is sette.  
 This lady was of good entayle,  
 Right wonderfull of apparaile,  
 By her attire so bright and shene,  
 Men might perceiue well and sene,  
 She was not of religioun :  
 Nor I nill make mentioun  
 Nor of robe, nor of treasure,  
 Of broche, neither of her rich attour,  
 Ne of her girdle about her side,  
 For that I nill not long abide,  
 But knoweth well, that certainly  
 She was arraid richely ;  
 Devoid of pride certaine she was,  
 To Bialacoil she went apaa,  
 And to him shortly in a clause  
 She said : " Sir, what is the cause  
 Ye ben of port so daungerous  
 Unto this lover, and dainous,  
 To graunt him nothing but a kisse ?  
 To warne it him ye done amisse,  
 Sith well ye wot, how that hee  
 Is Loves servaunt, as ye may see,  
 And hath beutie, wherthrough he is  
 Worthy of love to have the blis :  
 How he is seemely behold and see,  
 How he is faire, how he is free,  
 How he is swote and debonaire,  
 Of age young, lusty, and faire,  
 There is no lady so hautaine,  
 Duchesse, countesse, ne chastelaine,  
 That I nolde hold her ungodly,  
 For to refuse him utterly.

" His breath is also good and swete,  
 And eke his lips roddy and mete,  
 Onely to plaine, and to kisse,  
 Graunt him a kisse of gentleness.

" His teeth are also white and clene,  
 Me thinketh wrong withouten wene,  
 If ye now warne him, trusteth me,  
 To graunt that a kisse have he,  
 The lasse ye helpe him that ye haste,  
 And the more time shull ye waste."

Whan the flame of the very brond  
 That Venus brought in her right hond,  
 Had Bialacoil with his hete smetc,  
 Anone he bad me withouten letc,  
 Graunt to me the rose kisse,  
 Than of my paine I gan to lisse,  
 And to the rose anon went I,  
 And kissed it full faithfully :  
 There need no man aske if I was blith,  
 Whan the savour soft and lith  
 Stroke to mine herte without more,  
 And me alleged of my sore,  
 So was I full of joy and blisse,  
 It is faire such a floure to kisse,  
 It was so swote and saverous,  
 I might not be so anguious,  
 That I mote glad and jolly be,  
 Whan that I remembre me,  
 Yet ever among sootlyly to saine,  
 I suffer noie and muche paine.

THE see may never be so still,

That with a litle wind at will  
 Overwhelme and tourne also,  
 As it were wood in waves go,  
 After the calme the trouble soone  
 Mote follow, and chaunge as the Moone.

Right so fareth Love, that selde in one  
 Holdeth his anker, for right anone  
 Whan they in ease wene best to live,  
 They ben with tempest all fordrive :  
 Who serveth Love, can tell of wo,  
 The stoundmele joy mote overgo,  
 Now he hurteth, and now he cureth,  
 For selde in o point Love endureth.

Now is it right me to proceed,  
 How Shame gan meddle and take heed,  
 Through whom fell angers I have hade,  
 And how the strong wall was made,  
 And the castle of brede and length,  
 That god of love wan with his strength :  
 All this romance will I set,  
 And for no thing ne will I let,  
 So that it liking to her be,  
 That is the floure of beaute,  
 For she may best my labour quite,  
 That I for her love shall endite.

Wicked Tongue, that the covine  
 Of every lover can devine  
 Worst, and addeth more somele  
 (For wicked tongue saith never wele)  
 To me ward bare he right great hate,  
 Espying me early and late,  
 Till he hath seene the great chere  
 Of Bialacoil and me yfere :  
 He might not his tongue withstonde  
 Worse to reporte than he fonde,  
 He was so full of cursed rage ;  
 It sat him wele of his linage,  
 For him an irous woman bare ;  
 His tongue was filed sharpe and square,  
 Poignant and right kerving,  
 And wonder bitter in speaking ;  
 For whan that he me gan espy,  
 He swore (affirming sikerly)  
 Betweene Bialacoil and me  
 Was evill acquaintance and prive :  
 He spake thereof so folilie,  
 That he awakod Jelousie,  
 Which all afraid in his rising,  
 When that he heard jangling,  
 He ran anon as he were wood  
 To Bialacoil there that he stood,  
 Which had lever in this caas  
 Have ben at Reines or Amias,  
 For fote hote in his felonie,  
 To him thus said Jelousie :  
 " Why hast thou ben so negligent,  
 To kepen, whan I was absent,  
 This verger here left in thy ward ?  
 To me thou haddest no regard,  
 To trust (to thy confusion)  
 Him thus, to whom suspicion  
 I have right great, for it is nede,  
 It is well shewed by the dede.  
 Great fault in thee now have I found,  
 By God anon thou shalt be bound,  
 And faste locken in a toure,  
 Without refuite or succoure.

" For Shame too long hath be thee fro,  
 Oversoone she was ago,

Whan thou hast lost both drede and fere,  
It seemed well she was not here,  
She was busie in no wise,  
To keepe thee and chastise,  
And for to helpen Chastite  
To keepe the roser, as thinketh me,  
For then this boy knave so boldly,  
Ne should not have be hardy  
In this verge had such game,  
Which now me turneth to great shame."

BIALACOIL nist what to say,  
Full faine he would have fled away,  
For feare have hid, nere that he  
All suddainly tooke him with me :  
And whan I saw he had so,  
This Jelousie take us two,  
I was astonied, and knew no rede,  
But fled away for very drede.

Then Shame came forth full simply,  
She wende have trespassed full greatly,  
Humble of her port, and made it simple,  
Wearing a vaille in stede of wimple,  
As nonnes done in hir abbey :  
Because her herte was in affray,  
She gan to speake within a throw  
To Jelousie, right wonder low.

First of his grace she besought,  
And said : " Sir, ne leveth nought  
Wicked Tongue, that false espie,  
Which is so glad to faine and lie,  
He hath you made, through flattering,  
On Bialacoil a false leasing :  
His falsenesse is not now anew,  
It is too long that he him knew :  
This is not the first daie,  
For Wicked Tongue hath custome aie,  
Younge folkes to bewrie,  
And false lesings on hem lie.

" Yet neverthelesse I see among,  
That the soigne it is so long  
Of Bialacoil, hertes to lure,  
In Loves service for to endure,  
Drawing suche fulke him to,  
That he had nothing with to do,  
But in soothnesse I trowe nought,  
That Bialacoil had ever in thought  
To do trespass or villanie,  
But for his mother Curtesie  
Hath taught him ever to be  
Good of acquaintance and prive,  
For he loveth none heavinesse,  
But mirth and play, and all gladnesse ;  
He hateth all trechous,  
Soleine folke and envious :  
For ye weten how that he  
Woll ever glad and joyfull be  
Honestly with folke to play :  
I have be negligent in good fny  
To chastise him, therefore now I  
Of herte I crie you here mercy,  
That I have ben so recheles  
To tamen him withouten lees,  
Of my folly I me repent,  
Now woll I hole set mine entent  
To keepe both low and still  
Bialacoil to do your will."

" Shame, Shame" (said Jelousy)  
" To be bitrashed great drede have I.  
" Lecherie hath clombe so his

That almost bleared is mine eie,  
No wonder is, if that drede have I,  
Over all reigneth Lechery,  
Whose might groweth night and day,  
Both in cloyster and in abbay,  
Chastite is werried over all,  
Therefore I woll with siker wall  
Close both roses and roseere,  
I have too long in this manere  
Left hem unclosed wilfully :  
Wherefore I am right inwardly  
Sorrowfull, and repent me,  
But now they shall no lenger be  
Unclosed, and yet I drede sore,  
I shall repent ferthermore,  
For the game goeth all amis,  
Counsaille I must new ywis,  
I have too long trusted thee,  
But now it shall no lenger bee :  
For he may best in every cost  
Deceive that men trusten most :  
I see well that I am nigh shent,  
But if I set my full entent  
Remedye to purvay :

Wherefore close I shall the way  
From hem that woll the rose espie,  
And come to wait me villanie,  
For in good faith and in trouth  
I woll not let for no slouth  
To live the more in sikernesse,  
Do make anon a fortrease.  
Than close the roses of good savour ;  
In middes shall I make a tour .  
To put Bialacoil in prison,  
For ever I drede me of treason ;  
I trow I shall him keepe so,  
That he shall have no might to go  
About to make compaignie  
To hem that thinke of villanie,  
Ne to no such as hath ben here  
Afore, and found in him good chere,  
Which han assailed him to shend,  
And with hir trowandise to blend,  
A foole is eith to beguile,  
But may I live a little while,  
He shall forthinke his faire semblaunt "

And with that word came DREDE avaunt,  
Which was abashed, and in great fere,  
Whan he wist Jelousie was there.  
He was for drede in such affray,  
That not a worde durst he say,  
But quaking stood full still alone  
(Till Jelousie his way was gone)  
Save Shame, that him not forsoke,  
Both Drede and she full sore quoke,  
That at last Drede abraide,  
And to his cousin Shame saide.

" Shame" (he said) " in soothfastnesse,  
To me it is great heavinesse,  
That the noise so ferre is go,  
And the slaunder of us two :  
But sithe that it is befall,  
We may it not againe call,  
When once sprung is a fame :  
For many a yeare withouten blaine  
We have ben, and many a day,  
For many an April and many a May  
We han passed, not ashamed,  
Till Jelousie hath us blamed  
Of mistrust and suspencion

Causelesse, without encheson :  
Go we to Daunger hastily,  
And let us shew him openly,  
That he hath not aright wrought,  
Whan that he set not his thought  
To keepe better the purprise ;  
In his doing he is not wise.  
He hath to us do great wrong,  
That hath suffred now so long  
Bialacoil to have his will  
All his lustes to fulfill :  
He must amend it utterly,  
Or els shall he villanously  
Exiled be out of this lond :  
For he the warre may not withstond  
Of Jelousie, nor the greefe,  
Sith Bialacoil is at mischeefe."

To Daunger, Shame and Drede anon  
The right way ben gon :  
The chorle they founde hem aforne  
Ligging under an hawthorne.  
Under his head no pillow was,  
But in the stede a trusse of gras :  
He slombred, and a nappe he *take*,  
Till Shame pitously him shoke,  
And great manace on him gan make.  
"Why sleepest thou when thou should wake"  
(Quod Shame) "thou dost us villanie,  
Who trusteth thee, he doth follie,  
To keepe roses or bothums  
When they be faire in hir seasons :  
Thou art woxe too familiere  
Where thou should be straunge of chere,  
Stout of thy port, ready to greve :  
Thou dost great folly for to leve  
Bialacoil here in to call  
The yonger man to shenden us all :  
Though that thou sleepe, we may here,  
Of Jelousie great noise here,  
Art thou now late, rise up and hye,  
And stop soone and deliverye  
All the gaps of the hay ;  
Do no favour I thee pray :  
It falleth nothing to thy name,  
To make fair semblant, were thou mayst blame

"If Bialacoil be sweet and free,  
Jogged and fell thou shuldest bee,  
Froward and outrageous ywis,  
A chorle chaungeth that curteis is :  
This have I heard oft in saying,  
That man may for no daunting  
Make a sparhanke of a bosarde :  
All men hold thee for musarde,  
That debonaire have founden thee,  
It sitteth thee nought curteis to bee,  
To do men plesaunce or servise,  
In thee it is recreaundise :  
Let thy werkes ferre and nere  
Be like thy name, which is Daungere."

Then all abashed in shewing,  
Anon spake Drede, right thus saying,  
And said, "Daunger, I drede me,  
That thou ne wilt besie be  
To keepe that thou hast to keepe,  
When thou shuldest wake, thou art asleepe :  
Thou shalt be grieved certainly,  
If thee aspise Jelousy,

Or if he finde thee in blame.  
He hath to day assailed Shame,  
And chased away with great manace  
Bialacoil out of this place,  
And sweareth shortly that he shall  
Enclose him in a sturdy wall ;  
And all is for thy wickednesse,  
For that thee failleth straungenesse ;  
Thine herte I trow be failed all ;  
Thou shalt repent in speciall,  
If Jelousie the soothe knew,  
Thou shalt forthinke, and sore rew."

With that the chorle his clubbe gan shake,  
Frowning his eyen gan to make,  
And hideous chere, as man in rage,  
For ire he brent in his visage :  
Whan that he heard him blamed so,  
He said, "Out of my witte I go,  
To be discomfite I have great wrong,  
Certeas, I have now lived too long,  
Sith I may not this closer keepe,  
All quicke I would be dolven deepe,  
If any man shall more repaire  
Into this garden for foule or faire,  
Mine herte for ire gothe asere,  
That I let any entre here,  
I have doe folly now I see,  
But now it shall amended be,  
Who setteth foot here any more,  
Truly he shall repent it sore,  
For no man more into this place  
Of me to enter shall have grace,  
Lever I had with swerdes twaine,  
Throughout mine herte, in every vaine  
Perced to be, with many a wound,  
Than slouth should in me be found :  
From henceforth by night or day,  
I shall defend it if I may  
Withouten any exception  
Of eache manner condition,  
And if I it any man graunt,  
Holdeth me for recreaunt."

THEN Daunger on his feet gan stond,  
And hent a burdon in his hond,  
Wroth in his ire ne left he nought,  
But through the verger he hath sought,  
If he might find hole or trace,  
Where through that me mote forth by pace,  
Or any gappe, he did it close,  
That no man might touch a rose  
Of the roser all about,  
He shetteth every man without.

Thus day by day Daunger is wera,  
More wonderfull and more divers,  
And feller eke than ever he was,  
For him full oft I sing alas,  
For I ne may nought through his ire  
Recover that I most desire :  
Mine herte aias woll brest atwo,  
For Bialacoil I wrathed so :  
For certainly in every member  
I quake, when I me remember  
Of the bothum, which I would  
Full oft a day seene and behold,  
And when I thinke upon the kisse,  
And how muche joy and blisse,  
I had through the savour swete,  
For want of it I grone and grete :  
Me thinketh I fele yet in my nose

The swete savour of the rose.  
 And now I wote that I mote go  
 So ferre the fresh flouris fro,  
 To me full welcome were the death,  
 Absence thereof (alas) me sleeth,  
 For whylome with this rose, alas,  
 I touched nose, mouth, and face,  
 But now the death I must abide ;  
 But Love consent another tide,  
 That ones I touch may and kisse,  
 I trow my pains shall never lisse ;  
 Thereon is all my covetise,  
 Which brent my heart in many wise.  
 Now shall repaire againe sighing,  
 Long watch on nights, and no sleeping,  
 Thought in wishing, turment, and wo,  
 With many a turning to and fro,  
 That halfe my paine I cannot tell,  
 For I am fallen into Hell,  
 From paradise and wealth, the more  
 My turment greveth more and more,  
 Annoyeth now the bitternesse,  
 That I toforne have felt sweetnesse,  
 And Wicked Tongue, through his falsheode,  
 Causeth all my wo and drede,  
 On me he lieth a pitous charge,  
 Because his tongue was too large.

Now it is time shortly that I  
 Tell you something of Jelousie,  
 That was in great suspicion :  
 About him left he no mason,  
 That stone could lay, ne querroure,  
 He hired hem to make a tour :  
 And first the roses for to keepe,  
 About hem made he a ditch deepe,  
 Right wonder large, and also brode,  
 Upon the whiche also stode  
 Of squared stone a sturdy wall,  
 Which on a cragge was founded all,  
 And right great thicknesse eke it bare,  
 About it was founded square  
 An hundred fadome on every side,  
 It was all liche long and wide,  
 Least any time it were assailed,  
 Full well about it was battailed,  
 And round environ eke were set  
 Full many a rich and faire tournet,  
 At every corner of this wall  
 Was set a tour full principall,  
 And everiche had without fable  
 A portcullise defensible  
 To keepe off enemies, and to greve,  
 That there hir force would preve.

And eke amidde this purprise  
 Was made a tour of great maistrise,  
 A fairer saugh no man with sight,  
 Large and wide, and of great might,  
 They dradde none assaut,  
 Of ginne, gonne, nor skaffaut,  
 The temprure of the mortere  
 Was made of liquor wonder dere,  
 Of quicke lime persaunt and egre,  
 The which was tempered with vinegre.

The stone was hard of adamaunt,  
 Whereof they made the foundemaunt,  
 The toure was round made in compas,  
 In all this world no richer was,  
 Ne better ordained therewithall,  
 About the tour was made a wall,  
 So that betwixt that and the tour,

Roses were set of sweet savour,  
 With many roses that they bere,  
 And eke within the castle were  
 Springolds, gonnas, bowes, and archers,  
 And eke about at corners  
 Men seine over the wall stond  
 Great engines, who were nere hond,  
 And in the kernels here and there,  
 Of arblasters great plentie were.  
 None armour might hir stroke withstond,  
 It were folly to prease to hond ;  
 Without the diche were listes made,  
 With wall battailed large and brade,  
 For men and horse should not attaine  
 Too nigh the diche over the plaine.  
 Thus Jelousie hath environ  
 Sette about his garnison  
 With walles round, and diche deepe,  
 Onely the roser for to keepe,  
 And Daunger early and late  
 The keyes kept of the utter gate,  
 The which opened toward the east,  
 And he had with him at least  
 Thirtie servants echone by name.

That other gate kept Shame,  
 Which opened, as it was couth,  
 Toward the parte of the south,  
 Sergeaunts assigned were her to  
 Full many, her will for to do.  
 Than Drede had in her baillie  
 The keeping of the constablerie,  
 Toward the north I understond,  
 That opened upon the left hond,  
 The which for nothing may be sure,  
 But if she doe busie cure  
 Early on morrow and also late,  
 Strongly to shette and barre the gate :  
 Of every thing that she may see,  
 Drede is aforde, where so she bee,  
 For with a pufte of little wind,  
 Drede is astonied in her mind,  
 Therefore for stealing of the rose,  
 I rede her nat the yate unclose,  
 A foules flight would make her flee,  
 And eke a shaddow if she it see.

THAN Wicked Tongue full of envie,  
 With souldiours of Normandie,  
 As he that causeth all debate,  
 Was keeper of the fourth gate,  
 And also to the tother three,  
 He went full ofte for to see.  
 When his lotte was to walke a night,  
 His instrumentes would he dight,  
 For to blowe and make sounes,  
 Ofter than he hath enchesounes,  
 And walken oft upon the wall,  
 Corners and wickettes over all,  
 Full narrow searchen and espie ;  
 Though he nought fond, yet would he lie  
 Discordaunt ever fro armonie,  
 And dissoned from melodie,  
 Controve he would, and foule faile,  
 With hornepipes of Cornewaile.  
 In floytes made he discordanche,  
 And in his musicke with mischaunce,  
 He would seine with notes newe,  
 That he fond no woman trewe,  
 Ne that he saw never in his life,  
 Unto her husbond a trewe wife :

Ne none so full of honeste,  
That she nill laugh and merry be,  
Whan that she heareth or may espie  
A man spoken of lecherie.  
Everiche of hem hath some vice,  
One is dishonest, another is nice,  
If one be full of villanie,  
Another with a licorous eie,  
If one be full of wantonnesse,  
Another is a chideresse.

Thus Wicked tong, God yeve him shame,  
Can put hem everichone in blame,  
Without desert and causelesse,  
He lieth, though they ben guiltlesse ;  
I have pity to see the sorrow,  
That waketh both even and morrow,  
To innocents doth such grevaunce,  
I pray God yeve him evill chauce,  
That he ever so busie is,  
Of any woman to seine amis.

Eke Jelousie God confound,  
That hath made a toure so round,  
And made about a garison,  
To sette Bialacoil in prison,  
The which is shette there in the tour,  
Full long to holde there sojour,  
There for live in penaunce,  
And for to do him more grevaunce,  
Which hath ordained Jelousie,  
An olde vecke for to spie  
The manner of his governaunce,  
The which devill in her enfaunce  
Had learned of Loves art,  
And of his plays tooke her part,  
She was expert in his servise,  
She knew each wrenche and every gise  
Of love, and every wile,  
It was hard her to beguile.

Of Bialacoil she toke aye hede,  
That ever he liveth in wo and drede,  
He kept him coy and eke privee,  
Least in him she hadde see  
Any folly countenance,  
For she knew all the old daunce.

And after this, whan Jelousie  
Had Bialacoil in his baillie,  
And shette him up that was so free,  
For sure of him he would bee,  
He trusteth sore in his castell,  
The strong werke him liketh well,  
He dradde nat that no glotons  
Should steale his roses or bothoms,  
The roses weren assured all  
Defenced with the strong wall,  
Now Jelousie full well may be  
Of drede devoid in liberte,  
Whether that he sleepe or wake,  
For of his roses may none be take.

But I (alas) now mourne shall,  
Because I was without the wall,  
Full muche dole and mone I made,  
Who had wist what wo I hade,  
I trow he would have had pite,  
Love too deare had solde me  
The good that of his love had I,  
I went about it all queintly,  
But now through doubling of my paine  
I see he wold it sell againe,  
And me a new bargaine here,

The which all out the more is dere,  
For the sollace that I have lorne,  
Than I had it never aforne ;  
Certaine I am full like indeed  
To him that cast in earth his seed,  
And hath joy of the new springing,  
Whan it greeneth in the ginning,  
And is also faire and fresh of flour,  
Lustie to see, swote of odour,  
But ere he it in his sheves here,  
May fall a weather that shall it dere,  
And make it to fade and fall,  
The stalke, the greine, and floures all,  
That to the tiller is fordene,  
The hope that he had too soone :  
I drede certaine that so fare I,  
For hope and travaile sikerly  
Ben me heraft all with a storme,  
The floure nill seden of my corne,  
For Love hath so advanced me,  
When I began my privite,  
To Bialacoil all for to tell,  
Whom I ne found froward ne fell,  
But toke agree all whole my play ;  
But Love is of so hard assay,  
That all at once he reved me,  
Whan I went best aboven to have be.

It is of Love, as of Fortune,  
That chaungeth oft, and nill contune,  
Which whylome wold of folke smile,  
And glombe on hem another while,  
Now friend, now foe, shalt her feeles,  
For a twynckling tourneth her wheeles.

She can writhe her head away,  
This is the concourse of her play,  
She can arise that doeth mourne,  
And whirle adoune, and overtourne  
Who sitteth highest, but as her lust,  
A foole is he that wold her trust,  
For it is I that am come doun  
Through charge and revolutioun,  
Sith Bialacoil mote for me twin,  
Shette in her prison yonde within,  
His absence at mine herte I fele,  
For all my joy and all mine hele  
Was in him and in the rose,  
That but you will, which him doeth close,  
Open, that I may him see,  
Love wold not that I cured beo  
Of the paines that I endure,  
Nor of my cruell aventure.

Ah, Bialacoil mine owne dere,  
Though thou be now a prisonere,  
Keepe at least thine herte to me,  
And suffer nat that it daunted be,  
Ne let not Jalousie in his rage,  
Putten thine heart in no servage,  
Although he chastice thee without,  
And make thy bodie unto him lout,  
Have herte as hard as Damaunt,  
Stedfast, and naught pliaunt :  
In prison though thy bodie be  
At large keepe thine herte free,  
A true herte will not plie  
For no manace that it may drie.  
If Jelousie doeth thee paine,  
Quite him his wile thus againe,  
To venge thee at least in thought,  
If other way thou maiest nought,

And in this wise subtelly  
 Worch, and winne the maistrie.  
 But yet I am in great affray,  
 Least thou doe nat as I say,  
 I drede thou canst me great maugre,  
 That thou emprisoned art for me,  
 But that nat for my trespas,  
 For through me never discovered was  
 Yet thing that ought be secre :  
 Well more annoie is in me,  
 Than is in thee of this mischaunce,  
 For I endure more hard penaunce  
 Than any can saine or thinke,  
 That for the sorrow almost I sinke,  
 Whan I remember me of my wo,  
 Full nigh out of my witte I go.

Inward mine herte I feeble blede,  
 For comfortlesse the death I drede,  
 Owe I nat well to have distresse,  
 Whan false, through hir wickednesse,  
 And traitours, that arn envious,  
 To noien me be so coragious.

Ah, Bialacoil full well I see,  
 That they hem shape to deceive thee,  
 To make thee buxom to hir law,  
 And with hir corde thee to draw  
 Where so hem lust, right at hir will,  
 I drede they have thee brought theretill :  
 Without comfort, the thought me sleeth,  
 This game would bring me to my death,  
 For if your good will I lese,  
 I mote be dead, I may not chese,  
 And if that thou foryete me,  
 Mine herte shall never in liking be,  
 Nor elsewhere find sollace,  
 If I be put out of your grace,  
 As it shall never ben I hope,  
 Than should I fall in wanhope.

Alas, in wanhope, nay parde,  
 For I woll never dispaired be ;  
 If Hope me faile, than am I  
 Ungracious and unworthy :  
 In Hope I woll comforted be,  
 For Love, when he betaught her me,  
 Saied, that Hope where so I go,  
 Should aye be reles to my wo.

But what and she my bales bete,  
 And be to me curteis and swete !  
 She is in nothing full certaine,  
 Lovers she put in full great paine,  
 And maketh hem with wo to dele,  
 Her faire behests deceiveth fele,  
 For she woll behote sikerly,  
 And failen after utterly.

Ah, that is a full noyous thing,  
 For many a lover in loving  
 Hangeth upon her, and trusteth fast,  
 Which lese hir travaille at the last.

Of thing to comen she wot right nought,  
 Therefore if it be wisely sought,  
 Her counsaile follie is to take,  
 For many times, when she woll make  
 A full good sillogisme, I drede,  
 That afterward there shall indede  
 Follow an evill conclusion,  
 This put me in confusion.

For many times I have it seene,  
 That many have beguiled beene,  
 For trust that they have set in hope,  
 Which fell hem afterward a slope.

But nathelesse yet gladly she would,  
 That he that woll him with her hold,  
 Had all times her purpose clere,  
 Without deceit any where,  
 That she desireth sikerly ;  
 Whan I her blamed, I did folly ;  
 But what availeth her good will,  
 Whan she ne may staunch my stound ill,  
 That helpeth little that she may do,  
 Or take behest unto my wo :  
 And heste certaine in no wise,  
 Without yfete is not to preise.

When heste and deed asunder vary,  
 They doen a great contrary ;  
 Thus am I posted up and down  
 With dole, thought, and confusoun,  
 Of my desease there is no number,  
 Daunger and Shame me encumber,  
 Drede also, and Jelousie,  
 And Wicked Tongue full of envie,  
 Of which the sharpe and cruell ire  
 Full oft me put in great mattire ;  
 They have my joie fully let,  
 Sith Bialacoil they have besiet  
 Fro me in prison wickedly,  
 Whom I love so entierly,  
 That it woll my bane bee,  
 But I the sooner may him see.

And yet moreover worst of all,  
 There is set to keepe, foule her befall,  
 A rimped vecke ferre ronne in rage,  
 Frowning and yellow in her visage,  
 Which in await lieth day and night,  
 That none of him may have a sight.

Now mote my sorrow enforced be,  
 Full sooth it is, that Love yafe me  
 Three wonder yefes of his grace,  
 Which I have lorne, now in this place,  
 Sith they ne maie without drede  
 Helpen but little, who taketh hede :  
 For her availeth no Sweet Thought,  
 And Sweet Speech helpeth right nought.  
 The third was called Sweet Looking,  
 That now is lorne without lesing.

Yefes were faire, but nat for thy  
 They helpe me but simply,  
 But Bialacoil loosed bee  
 To gone at large and to be free,  
 For him my life lieth all in dout,  
 But if he come the rather out.

Alas, I trow it woll nat beene,  
 For how should I evermore him seene !  
 He may nat out, and that is wrong,  
 Because the toure is so strong,  
 How should he out, or by whose prowess  
 Of so strong a forteresse !

By me certaine it nill be do,  
 God wote I have no wit thereto,  
 But well I wote I was in rage,  
 When I to Love did homage ;  
 Who was the cause (in soothfastnesse)  
 But her selfe dame Idlenesse !  
 Which me conveide through faire priere  
 To enter into that faire vergere :  
 She was to blame me to leve,  
 The which now doeth me sore greve,  
 A foolles word is nought to trow,  
 Ne worth an apple for to low,  
 Men should hem snibbe bitterly,

At prime temps of his folly :  
I was a foole, and she me leved,  
Through whom I am right nought releved,  
She accomplished all my will,  
That now me greveth wonder ill.

REASON me saied what should fall,  
A foole my selfe I may well call,  
That love aside I had not laied,  
And trowed that dame Reason saied.  
Reason had both skill and right,  
When she me blamed with all her might  
To meddle of love, that hath me shent,  
But certaine now I woll repent.

AND should I repent ? Nay parde,  
A false traitour then should I be,  
The devils engins would me take,  
If I Love would forsake,  
Or Bialacoil falsly betray.  
Should I at mischeefe hate him ? nay,  
Sith he now for his courtesie  
Is in prison of Jelousie ;  
Courtesie certaine did he me,  
So much, that it may not yolden be,  
When he the haie passion me lete,  
To kisse the rose, faire and swete,  
Should I therefore conne him maugre ?  
Nay certainly, it shall nat be,  
For Love shall never (yeve God will)  
Here of me, through word or will,  
Offence or complaint more or lesse,  
Neither of Hope nor Idleness :  
For certes, it were wrong that I  
Hated hem for hir courtesie.  
There is not els, but suffer and thinke,  
And waken whan I should winke,  
Abide in hope, till Love through chaunce  
Send me succour or allegaunce,  
Expectaunt aye till I may mete,  
To getten mercie of that swete.

Whilome I thinke how Love to mee  
Saied he would take at gree  
My service, if unpatience  
Caused me to doen offence :  
He saied, " In thanke I shall it take,  
And high maister eke thee make,  
If wickednesse ne reve it thee,  
But soone I trow that shall nat bee."  
These were his wordes by and by,  
It seemed he loved me truly.

Now is there not but serve him wele,  
If that I thinke his thanke to fele,  
My good, mine harme, lithe hole in me,  
In Love may no default be,  
For true Love ne failed never man :  
Soothly the faute mote needs than  
As God forbide, be found in me,  
And how it commeth, I cannot see.  
Now let it gone as it may go,  
Whether Love woll succour me or *also*,  
He may do hole on me his will,  
I am so sore bound him till,  
From his service I may not fleene,  
For life and death withouten wene  
Is in his hond, I may nat chese,  
He may me doe both winne and lese,  
And sith so sore he doth me greve,  
Yet if my lust he would acheve,  
To Bialacoil goodly to be,

I yeve no force what fell on me :  
For though I die, as I mote nede,  
I pray Love of his goodlyhede,  
To Bialacoil doe gentlenessse,  
For whom I live in such distresse,  
That I mote dien for penaunce,  
But first, without repentaunce,  
I woll me confesse in good entent,  
And make in hast my testament,  
As lovers doen that feelen smart :  
To Bialacoil leave I mine herte  
All hole, without departing,  
Or doublenesse of repenting.

COMMENT RAISON VIENT A L'AMANT.

THUS as I made my passage  
In complaint, and in cruell rage,  
And I not where to finde a leche,  
That couth unto mine helping eche,  
Suddainly againe comen doun  
Out of her toure I saw Reasoun,  
Discreet and wise, and full pleasaunt,  
And of her port full avenaunt ;  
The right waie she tooke to me,  
Which stood in gret perplexite  
That was poshed in every side,  
That I n'ist where I might abide,  
Till she demurely sad of chere  
Saied to me as she came nere.

" Mine owne friend, art thou grieved,  
How is this quarrell yet atcheved  
Of Loves side ? Anone me tell,  
Hast thou not yet of love thy fill ?  
Art thou nat wearie of thy service  
That thee hath in suche wise ?

" What joy hast thou in thy loving ?  
Is it sweet or bitter thing ?  
Canst thou yet chese, let me see,  
What best thy succour might bee ?

" Thou servest a full noble lord,  
That maketh thee thrall for thy reward,  
Which aye reneweth thy tourment,  
With folly so he hath thee blent ;  
Thou fell in mischeefe thilke day,  
When thou diddest the sooth to say  
Obeisaunce and eke homage  
Thou wroughtest nothing as the sage ;  
When thou became his liege man,  
Thou diddest a great folie than ;  
Thou wistest nat what fell thereto,  
With what lord thou haddest to do,  
If thou haddest him well know  
Thou haddest nought be brought so low,  
For if thou wiste what it were,  
Thou n'oldest serve him halfe a yere,  
Nat a weeke, nor halfe a day,  
Ne yet an houre without delay :  
Ne never yloved paramours,  
His lordship is so full of shours :  
Knowest him ought ?

L'AMAUNT. " Ye, dame, parde."

RAISOUN. " Nay, nay." L'AMAUNT. " Yes I."

RAISOUN. " Wherefore let see."

L'AMAUNT. " Of that he saied I should be  
Glad to have such lord as he  
And maister of such seignorie."

RAISOUN. " Knowest him no more ?

L'AMAUNT. " Nay, certes, I,  
Save that he yafe me rules there,  
And went his way I nist where,

Which long is likely to contune,  
 Whan will and goods been in commune,  
 Grounded by Gods ordinaunce,  
 Hoole without discordaunce,  
 With hem holding commaunce  
 Of all her good in charite,  
 That there be none exception,  
 Through chaunging of ententioun,  
 That each helpe other at her nede,  
 And wisely hele both word and dede,  
 True of meaning, devoude of slouth,  
 For wit is nought without trouth :  
 So that the tone dare all his thought  
 Saine to his friend, and spare nought,  
 As to himselfe without dreding,  
 To be discovered by wreying,  
 For glad is that conjunction,  
 Whan there is none suspicion,  
 Whom they would prove  
 That true and perfite weren in love :  
 For no man may be amiable,  
 But if he be so firme and stable,  
 That fortune change him not ne blinde,  
 But that his friend alway him finde,  
 Both poore and riche in o state :  
 For if his friend through any gate,  
 Woll complaine of his poverté,  
 He should not bide so long, till he  
 Of his helping him require,  
 For good deed done through praiero  
 Is sold and bought too deere ywis  
 To herte that of great valour is.  
 For herte fulfilled of gentlenesse,  
 Can evill demeane his distresse.  
 And man that worthy is of name,  
 To asken often hath great shame.

"A good man brenneth in his thought,  
 For shame when he asketh ought,  
 He hath great thought, and dredeth aie  
 For his disease when he shall praie  
 His friend, least that he warned be  
 Till that he preve his stabilitie :  
 But when that he hath founden one  
 That trustie is and true as stone,  
 And assayed him at all,  
 And found him stedfast as a wall,  
 And of his friendship be certaine,  
 He shall him shew both joy and paine,  
 And all that he dare thinke or say,  
 Without shame, as he well may,  
 For how should he ashamed be,  
 Of such one as I told thee ?  
 For whan he wote his secret thought,  
 The third shall know thereof right nought,  
 For twey in number is bet than three,  
 In everie counsaile and secree :  
 Repreve he dredeth never a dele,  
 Who that beset his wordes wele,  
 For everie wise man out of drede,  
 Can keepe his tongue till he see nede.

"And fooles cannot hold hir tongue,  
 A fooles bell is soone ronge,  
 Yet shall a true friend doe more  
 To helpe his fellow of his sore,  
 And succour him whan he hath need  
 In all that he may done, indeed,  
 And gladder that he him pleaseth  
 Than his felowe that he easeth,  
 And if he doe not his request,  
 He shall as muche him molest

As his felowe, for that he  
 May not fulfill his volunte  
 Fully, as he hath required ;  
 If both the hertes love hath fired  
 Joy and woe they shall depart,  
 And take evenly each his part,  
 Halfe his annoy he shall have aie,  
 And comforte what that he may,  
 And of this blisse part shall he,  
 If love woll departed be.

"And whilom of this unities  
 Spake Tullius in a ditie,  
 And should maken his request  
 Unto his friend, that is honest,  
 And he goodly should it fulfill,  
 But it the more were out of skill,  
 And otherwise not graunt thereto,  
 Except onely in causes two.

"If men his friend to death would drive  
 Let him be busie to save his live.

"Also if men wollen hem assaile,  
 Of his worship to make him faile  
 And hindren him of his renoun,  
 Let him with full ententioun,  
 His dever done in each degree  
 That his friend ne shamed be.

"In this two case with his might,  
 Taking no keepe to skill nor right,  
 As farre as love may him excuse,  
 This ought no manne to refuse.

"This love that I have told to thee  
 Is nothing contrarie to mee,  
 This woll I that thou follow wele,  
 And leave the other everie dele,  
 This love to vertue all attendeth,  
 The tother fooles bleit and shendeth.

"Another love also there is,  
 That is contrarie unto this,  
 Which desire is so constrained  
 That is but will fained ;  
 Away fro trouth it doth so varie  
 That to good love it is contrarie ;  
 For it maymeth in many wise  
 Sicke hertes with covetise ;  
 All in winning and in profite,  
 Such love setteth his delite :  
 This love so hangeth in balaunce  
 That if it lese his hope percliaunce,  
 Of lucre, that he is set upon,  
 It woll faile, and quench anon,  
 For no man may be amorous,  
 Ne in his living vertuous,  
 But he love more in mood  
 Men for hem selfe than for hir good :  
 For love that profite doth abide,  
 Is false, and hideth not in no tide.  
 Love commeth of dame Fortune,  
 That little while woll contune,  
 For it shall chaungen wouders soone  
 And take eclips as the Moone  
 Whan she is from us let  
 Through Earth, that betwixt is set  
 The Sunne and her, as it may fall,  
 Be it in partie, or in all ;  
 The shadow maketh her beames merke  
 And her hornes to shew derke,  
 That part where she hath lost her light  
 Of Phebus fully, and the sight,  
 Till whan the shadow is overpast,



Mine herte foryeteth thereof right nought,  
It is so writen in my thought,  
And deepe graven it is so tender  
That all by herte I can it render,  
And rede it over communely,  
But to my selfe lewdest am I.

"But sith ye love discriven so  
And lacke and preise it bothe two  
Defineth it into this letter,  
That I may thinke on it the better :  
For I heard never defined here,  
And wilfully I would it lere."

RAISON.

"If love be searched well and sought  
It is a sicknesse of the thought  
Annexed and knedde betwixt tweine,  
With male and female with o cheine,  
So freely that bindeth, yet they n'll twinne,  
Wheder so thereof they lese or winne :  
The roote springeth through hot brenning  
Into disordinate desiring,  
For to kissen and embrace,  
And at hir lust them to solace,  
Of other thing love retcheth nought  
But setteth hir herte and all hir thought,  
More for delectatioun  
Than any procreatioun  
Of other fruit by engendrure :  
Which love, to God is not pleasure,  
For of hir body fruit to get  
They yeve no force, they are so set  
Upon delight to play in fere.  
And some have also this manere,  
To fainen hem for love seke,  
Such love I preise not at a leke.  
For paramours they doe but faine,  
To love truely they disdaine,  
They falsen ladies traitorously,  
And swerne hem othes utterly,  
With many a leasing, and many a fable,  
And all the finden deceivable.

"And when they han hir lust gotten  
The hote ernes they all foryetten ;  
Women the harme buyen full sore :  
But men thus thinken evermore,  
The lasse harme is, so mote I thee,  
Deceive them, than deceived be.  
And namely where they ne may  
Finde none other meane way :  
For I wote well in soothfastnesse,  
That who doeth now his businesse  
With any woman for to dele,  
For any lust that he may fele,  
But if it be for engendrure,  
He doth trespassse I you ensure :  
For he should setten all his will  
To gotten a likely thing him till,  
And to sustaine, if he might,  
And keepe forth by Kindes right  
His owne likenesse and semblable :  
For because all is corruptible  
And faile should succession  
Ne were there generation,  
Our sectes sterne for to save,  
Whan father or mother arn in grave,  
Her children should, whan they been dead,  
Full diligent been in hir stead  
To use that worke on such a wise.

That one may through another rise.  
Therefore set Kinde therein delight,  
For men therein should hem delight,  
And of that deede be not erke,  
But ofte sithes haunt that werke :  
For none would draw thereof a draught  
Ne were delight, which hath hem caught,  
This had subtil dame Nature :  
For none goeth right I thee ensure  
Ne hath entent hoole ne perfitte,  
For hir desire is for delite,  
The which fortene crease and eke  
The play of love, for oft seeke  
And thrall hem selfe they be so nice  
Unto the prince of everie vice :  
For of each sinne it is the roote  
Unlefull lust, though it be soote,  
And of all evill the racine,  
As Tullius can determine,  
Which in his time was full sage,  
In a booke he made of age,  
Where that more he praiseth Elde  
Though he be crooked and unwelde,  
And more of commendatioun,  
Than youth in his discriptioun :  
For youth set bothe man and wife  
In all perill of soule and life,  
And perill is, but men have grace.  
The perill of youth for to pace,  
Without any death or distresse,  
It is so full of wildnesse,  
So oft it doeth shame and damage  
To him or to his linage,  
It leadeth man, now up now down  
In mokell dissolutioun,  
And maketh him love evill companie,  
And lead his life disrullie,  
And halt him payd with none estate  
Within himselfe in such debate,  
He chaungeth purpose and entent,  
And yalte into some covent,  
To liven after hir emprise,  
And leeseth freedom and fraunchise,  
That nature in him had set,  
The which againe he may not get,  
If he there make his mausion,  
For to abide profession.  
Though for a time his herte absent  
It may not faile, he shal repent,  
And eke abide thilke day,  
To leave his abite, and gone his way,  
And leaseth his worship and his name,  
And dare not come againe for shame,  
But all his life he doth so mourne,  
Because he dare not home retourne,  
Freedom of kinde so lost hath he  
That never may recured be,  
But that if God him graunt grace  
That he may, er he hence pace,  
Conteine under obedience  
Through the vertue of patience.  
For youth set man in all follie,  
In unthrift and in ribaudrie,  
In lecherie, and in outrage,  
So oft it chaungeth of courage.  
Youth ginneth oft suche bargaine,  
That may not ende without paine.  
In great perill is set youthhede  
Delight so doeth his bridell lede,  
Delight this hangeth, drede thee nought,

Both mannes bodie and his thought,  
 Onely through youtthes chancere,  
 That to doen evill is custumere,  
 And of naught else taketh hede,  
 But onely folkes for to lede  
 Into disport and wildenesse,  
 So is froward from sadnesse,  
 But elde draweth hem therefro,  
 Who wote it not, he may well go,  
 And mo of them, that now arn old,  
 That whilom youth had in hold,  
 Which yet remembreth of tender age  
 How it him brought in many a rage,  
 And many a follie therein wrought :  
 But now that elde hath him through sought  
 They repent hem of hir follie,  
 That youth hem put in jeopardie,  
 In perill and in muche woe,  
 And made hem oft amisce to doe,  
 And sewen evill companie  
 Riot and advourtrie.

" But elde gan againe restraine  
 From such follie, and refraine  
 And set men by her ordinaunce,  
 In good rule and governaunce,  
 But evill she spendeth her servise,  
 For no man woll her love, neither preise,  
 She is hated, this wote I wele,  
 Her acquaintance would no man fele,  
 Ne han of elde companie,  
 Men hate to be of her alie,  
 For no man would becommen old,  
 Ne die, when he is young and bold,  
 And elde marvaileth right greatly,  
 When they remember hem inwardly  
 Of many a perillous emprise  
 Which that they wrought in sundry wise,  
 However they might without blame  
 Escape awaie without shame,  
 In youth without damage  
 Or reprete of her linage,  
 Losse of member, shedding of blood,  
 Perill of death, or losse of good.  
 Wost thou nat where youth abit,  
 That men so preisen in hir wit ?  
 With Delight she halt sojour,  
 For both they dwellen in o tour,  
 As long as youth is in season,  
 They dwellen in one mansion :  
 Delight, of youth woll have servise  
 To doe what so he woll devise,  
 And youth is readie evermore  
 For to obey, for smert or sore,  
 Unto Delight, and him o yeve  
 Her servise, while that she may live.

" Where elde abitte, I woll thee tell  
 Shortly, and no while dwell,  
 For thider behoveth thee to go  
 If death in youth thee not slo :  
 Of this journey thou mayst not faile,  
 With her Labour and Travaile,  
 Lodged been with Sorrow and Wo,  
 That never out of her court go :  
 Paine and Distresse, Sickenesse, and Ire,  
 And Melancholly that angrie sire,  
 Ben of her paleis senatours,  
 Groning and grutching, her herbegeours,  
 The day and night her to tourment  
 With cruell death thei her present,

And tellen her erlich and late  
 That Death stondesth armed at her gate :  
 Than bring they to her remembraunce  
 The folly deedes of her enfaunce,  
 Which causen her to mourne in wo  
 That youth hath her beguiled so  
 Which sodainly away is hasted,  
 She weeped the time that she hath wasted,  
 Complaining of the preteritte,  
 And the present, that nat abitte,  
 And of her olde vanitee  
 That but aforne her she may see,  
 In the future some succour,  
 To leggen her of her dolour  
 To graunt her time of repentaunce,  
 For her sinnes to doe penaunce,  
 And at the last so her governe  
 To winne the joy that is eterne,  
 Fro which goe backward youth he made  
 In vanitie to drowne and wade,  
 For present time abideth nought,  
 It is more swift than any thought,  
 So little while it doth endure  
 That there n'is compte ne measure.

" But how that ever the game go  
 Who list to love joy and mirth also  
 Of love, be it he or she,  
 His or lowe who it be,  
 In fruite they should hem delite,  
 Hir part they may not else quite,  
 To save hem selfe in honeste,  
 And yet full many one I see  
 Of women, soothly for to saine,  
 That desire and would saine  
 The play of love, they be so wilde  
 And not covet to go with childe:  
 And if with childe they be perchaunce,  
 They woll it hold a great mischaunce,  
 But whatsoever woe they fele,  
 They woll not plaine, but concele,  
 But if it be any foole or nice,  
 In whome that shame hath no justice,  
 For to delight each one they draw,  
 That haunt this worke both hie and law,  
 Save such that arn worth right nought,  
 That for money woll be bought,  
 Such love I preise in no wise,  
 Whan it is given for covetise ;  
 I praise no woman, though she be wood  
 That yeveth her selfe for any good  
 For little should a manne tell  
 Of her, that will her bodie sell,  
 Be she maide, be she wife,  
 That quicke woll sell her by her life,  
 How faire chere that ever she make,  
 He is a wretch I undertake  
 That loved such one, for sweete or soure,  
 Though she him called her paramoure,  
 And laugheth on him, and maketh him feast,  
 For certainly no such beest  
 To be loved is not worthie  
 Or beare the name of Druerie,  
 None should her please, but he wer wood,  
 That woll dispoile him of his good :  
 Yet nathelesse I woll not say  
 That she for solace and for play,  
 May a jewell or other thing  
 Take of her loves free yeving :  
 But that she aske it in no wise,  
 For drede of shame or covetise.

And she of hers may him certaine  
 Without slaunder yeven againe,  
 And joyne hir hearts together so  
 In love, and take and yewe also.  
 Trow not that I woll hem twinne,  
 When in hir love there is no sinne,  
 I woll that they together go,  
 And done all that they han ado,  
 As curtes should and debonaire,  
 And in hir love beren hem faire,  
 Without vice, both he and she,  
 So that alway in honeste,  
 Fro folly Love to keepe hem clere  
 That brenneth hertes with his fere,  
 And that hir love in any wise,  
 Be devoude of covetise.  
 Good love should engendred be  
 Of true herte, just, and secrete,  
 And not of such as set hir thought  
 To have hir lust, and else nought:  
 So are they caught in Loves lace,  
 Truly for bodily solace,  
 Fleahly delighe is so present  
 With thee, that set all thine entent,  
 Without more, what should I glose,  
 For to get and have the rose,  
 Which maketh thee so mate and wood  
 That thou desirest none other good;  
 But thou art not an inch the nerre,  
 But ever abidest in sorrow and werre,  
 As in thy face it is seene,  
 It maketh thee both pale and leene,  
 Thy might, thy vertue goeth away:  
 A sorry guest (in good fay)  
 Thou harbourest in thine inne  
 The god of love whan thou let inno:  
 Wherefore I read thou shette him out,  
 Or he shall greve thee out of dout,  
 For to thy profite it woll turne,  
 If he no more with thee sojourne.  
 In great mischiefe and sorrow sonken,  
 Ben hertes, that of love are drunken,  
 As thou peraventure known shall,  
 When thou hast lost the time all,  
 And spent thy thought in idlenesse,  
 In waste, and wofull lustincase:  
 If thou maiest live the time to see  
 Of love for to delivered be,  
 Thy time thou shalt beweepe sore  
 The which never thou mayest restore:  
 For time lost, as men may see,  
 For nothing may recovered be,  
 And if thou scape, yet at last,  
 Fro Love that hath thee so fast  
 Knitte and bounden in his lace,  
 Certaine I hold it but a grace,  
 For many one as it is seine  
 Have lost, and spent also in veine  
 In his servise without succour  
 Bodie and soule, good, and treasure,  
 Wit, and strength, and eke richesse,  
 Of which they had never redresse."

## L'AMANT.

Thus taught and preached hath Reason,  
 But Love spilte her sermon,  
 That was so impud in my thought,  
 That her doctrine I set at nought,  
 And yet ne sayd she never a deie,  
 That I ne understood it wele,

Word by word the matter all,  
 But unto Love I was so thrall,  
 Which calleth over all his praie,  
 He chaseth so my thought aie,  
 And holdeth mine herte under his sele,  
 As trustie and true as any stele:  
 So that no devotion  
 Ne had I in the sermon  
 Of dame Reason, ne of her rede  
 I tooke no sojour in mine hede.  
 For all yede out at one ere  
 That in that other she did lere,  
 Fully on me she lost her lore  
 Her speech me grieved wonder sore.

THAT unto her for ire I said  
 For anger, as I did abraid:  
 "Dame, and is it your will algate,  
 That I not love, but that I hate  
 All men, as ye me teach,  
 For if I doe after your speach,  
 Sith that you seine love is not good,  
 Than must I nedes say with mood  
 If I it leve, in hatred aie  
 Liven, and voide love awaie,  
 From me a sinfull wretch,  
 Hated of all that tetch,  
 I may not go none other gate,  
 For either must I love or hate,  
 And if I hate men of new,  
 More than love it woll me rew,  
 As by your preching seemeth mee,  
 For love nothing ne praiseth thee:  
 Ye yeve good counsaile sikerly  
 That precheth me all day, that I  
 Should not loves lore alowe,  
 He were a foole woude you not trowe!  
 In speech also ye han me taught,  
 Another love that knowne is naught  
 Which I have heard you not repreve,  
 To love each other by your leve,  
 If ye would diffine it mee,  
 I would gladly here to see,  
 At the least if I may lere  
 Of sundrie loves the mancre."

## RAISON.

"CERTES friend, a foole art thou  
 Whan that thou nothing wilt allow  
 That I for thy profite say:  
 Yet woll I say thee more in fay,  
 For I am readie at the leest,  
 To accomplish thy request,  
 But I not where it woll availle,  
 In vaine peraventure I shall travaile:  
 Love there is in sundrie wise,  
 As I shall thee here devise.

"For some love lefull is and good,  
 I mene not that which maketh thee wood,  
 And bringeth thee in many a fitte,  
 And ravisheth fro thee all thy witte,  
 It is so marvailous and quaint,  
 With such love be no more aquaint.

## COMMENT RAISON DIFFINIST AMITIÉ.

"Love of friendship also there is  
 Which maketh no man done amis,  
 Of will knitte betwixt two,  
 That woll not breake for wele ne wo.

Which long is likely to contune,  
 Whan will and goods been in commune,  
 Grounded by Gods ordinance,  
 Hoole without discordaunce,  
 With hem holding commounce  
 Of all her good in charite,  
 That there be none exception,  
 Through chaunging of ententioun,  
 That each helpe other at her nede,  
 And wisely hele both word and dede,  
 True of meaning, devoide of slouth,  
 For wit is nought without trouth :  
 So that the tone dare all his thought  
 Saine to his friend, and spare nought,  
 As to himselfe without dreding,  
 To be discovered by wreying,  
 For glad is that conjunction,  
 Whan there is none suspicion,  
 Whom they would prove  
 That true and perfite weren in love :  
 For no man may be amiable,  
 But if he be so firme and stable,  
 That fortune change him not ne blinde,  
 But that his friend alway him finde,  
 Both poore and riche in o state :  
 For if his friend through any gate,  
 Woll complaine of his povertie,  
 He should not bide so long, till he  
 Of his helping him require,  
 For good deed done through praiere  
 Is sold and bought too deere ywis  
 To herte that of great valour is.  
 For herte fulfilled of gentlenessse,  
 Can evill demeane his distresse.  
 And man that worthy is of name,  
 To asken often hath great shame.

" A good man brenneth in his thought,  
 For shame when he asketh ought,  
 He hath great thought, and dredeth aie  
 For his disease when he shall prae  
 His friend, least that he warned be  
 Till that he prove his stabilitie :  
 But when that he hath founden one  
 That trustie is and true as stone,  
 And assayed him at all,  
 And found him stedfast as a wall,  
 And of his friendship be certaine,  
 He shall him shew both joy and paine,  
 And all that he dare thinke or say,  
 Without shame, as he well may,  
 For how should he ashamed be,  
 Of such one as I told thee !  
 For whan he wote his secret thought,  
 The third shall know thereof right nought,  
 For twey in number is bet than three,  
 In everie counsaile and secrete :  
 Repreve he dredeth never a dele,  
 Who that beset his wordes wele,  
 For everie wise man out of drede,  
 Can keepe his tongue till he see nede.

" And foolles cannot hold hir tongue,  
 A foolles bell is soone ronge,  
 Yet shall a true friend doe more  
 To helpe his fellow of his sore,  
 And succour him whan he hath need  
 In all that he may done indeed,  
 And gladder that he him pleaseth  
 Than his felowe that he enseth,  
 And if he doe not his request,  
 He shall as muche him molest

As his felowe, for that he  
 May not fulfill his volunte  
 Fully, as he hath required ;  
 If both the hertes love hath fired  
 Joy and woe they shall depart,  
 And take evenly each his part,  
 Halfe his annoy he shall have aie,  
 And comforte what that he may,  
 And of this blisse part shall he,  
 If love woll departed be.

" And whilom of this unities  
 Spake Tullius in a ditie,  
 And should maken his request  
 Unto his friend, that is honest,  
 And he goodly should it fulfill,  
 But it the more were out of skill,  
 And otherwise not graunt thereto,  
 Except onely in causes two.

" If men his friend to death would drive  
 Let him be busie to save his live.

" Also if men wollen hem assaile,  
 Of his worship to make him faile  
 And hindren him of his renoun,  
 Let him with full ententioun,  
 His devere done in each degree  
 That his friend ne shamed be.

" In this two case with his might,  
 Taking no keepe to skill nor right,  
 As farre as love may him excuse,  
 This ought no manne to refuse.

" This love that I have told to thee  
 Is nothing contrarie to mee,  
 This woll I that thou follow wele,  
 And leave the other everie dele,  
 This love to vertue all attendeth,  
 The tother foolles blent and sheideth.

" Another love also there is,  
 That is contrarie unto this,  
 Which desire is so constrained  
 That is but will fained ;  
 Away fro trouth it doth so varie  
 That to good love it is contrarie ;  
 For it maymeth in many wise  
 Sicke hertes with covetise ;  
 All in winning and in profite,  
 Such love setteth his delite :  
 This love so hangeth in balaunce  
 That if it lese his hope perchaunce,  
 Of lucre, that he is set upon,  
 It woll faile, and quench anon,  
 For no man may be amorous,  
 Ne in his living vertuous,  
 But he love more in mood  
 Men for hem selfe than for hir good :  
 For love that profite doth abide,  
 Is false, and hideth not in no tide.  
 Love commeth of dame Fortune,  
 That little while woll contune,  
 For it shall chaungen wonders soone  
 And take eclips as the Moone  
 Whan she is from us let  
 Through Earth, that betwixt is set  
 The Sunne and her, as it may full,  
 Be it in partie, or in all ;  
 The shadow maketh her beames merke  
 And her hornes to shew derke,  
 That part where she hath lost her light  
 Of Phebus fully, and the sight,  
 Till whan the shadow is overpast,

And great nede connen expleiten,  
 And gone and gadren great pitaunces,  
 And purchase hem the acquaintaunces  
 Of men that mightie life may leden,  
 And faine hem poore, and hemselfe feden  
 With good morsels delicious,  
 And drinken good wine precious,  
 And preach us povert and distresse,  
 And fishen hemselfe great richesse,  
 With wily nettes that they cast,  
 It wold come foule out at the last.

"They ben fro cleane religion went,  
 They make the world an argument,  
 That hath a foule conclusion.  
 I have a robe of religion,  
 Than am I all religious:  
 This argument is all roignous,  
 It is not worth a crooked brere,  
 Habite ne maketh neither monke ne frere,  
 But cleane life and devotion,  
 Maketh men of good religion.

"Nathelesse, there can none answere,  
 How high that ever his head he shere,  
 With rasour whetted never so kene,  
 That guile in braunches cutte thurtene,  
 There can no wight distinct it so,  
 That he dare say a word thereto.

"But what herborow that ever I take,  
 Or what semblaunt that ever I make,  
 I menne but guile, and follow that,  
 For right no more than Gibbe our cat,  
 (That awaiteth mice and rattes to killen)  
 Ne entend I but to beguilen,  
 Ne no wight may, by my clothing.  
 Wete with what folke is my dwelling,  
 Ne be my wordes yet parde,  
 So soft and so pleasaunt they be.

"Behold the dedes that I do,  
 But thou be blind thou oughtest so,  
 For varie hir wordes fro hir deed,  
 They thinke on guile withouten dread,  
 What manner clothing that they weare,  
 Or what estate that ever they beare,  
 Lered or leud, lord or ladie,  
 Knight, squire, burgeis, or bailie."

Right thus while False Semblant sermoneth,  
 Eftsoones Love him aresoneth,  
 And brake his tale in his speaking  
 As though he had him told leasing.  
 And saied: "What devill is that I heare!  
 What folke hast thou us nempned here!  
 May menne find religioun  
 In worldly habitacioun?"

"Yea, sir, it followeth nat that they  
 Should lead a wicked life parfey,  
 Ne not therefore hir soules lese,  
 That hem to worldly clothes chese,  
 For certes it were great pitee;  
 Men may in secular clothes see,  
 Florishen holy religioun;  
 Full many a saint in field and toun,  
 With many a virgine glorious,  
 Devout, and full religious,  
 Han died, that common cloth aye beren,  
 Yet saintes neverthelesse they weren.  
 I could reckon you many a ten,  
 Yea welnigh all these holy women  
 That men in churches hery and seke,  
 Both maidens, and these wives eke,  
 That baren full many a faire child here,

Weared alway clothes seculere,  
 And in the same diden they  
 That saints weren, and ben alway.

"The nine thousand maidens dere,  
 That beren in Heaven hir cierges clere,  
 Of which men rede in church and sing,  
 Were take in secular clothing,  
 When they received martirdome,  
 And wonnen Heaven unto hir home.

"Good herte maketh the good thought,  
 The clothing yeveth ne reveth nought:  
 The good thought and the working,  
 That maketh the religion flourishing,  
 There lieth the good religioun,  
 After the right ententioun.

"Who so tooke a weathers skin,  
 And wrapped a greedy wolfe therein,  
 For he should go with lambes white,  
 Wenest thou not he wold hem bite!  
 Yes: neverthelesse as he were wood  
 He wold hem wirry, and drinke the blood,  
 And well the rather hem deceive,  
 For sith they coude nat perceive  
 His tregette, and his crueltie,  
 They wold him follow, altho he fle.

"If there be wolves of such hew,  
 Amonges these apostles new  
 Thou, holy church, thou maist be wailed,  
 Sith that thy citie is assailed  
 Through knightes of thine owne table,  
 God wot thy lordship is doutable:  
 If they enforce it to win,  
 That should defend it fro within,  
 Who might defence ayenst hem make!  
 Without stroke it mote be take,  
 Of trepeget or manganell,  
 Without displaying of peisell,  
 And if God n'ill done it succour,  
 But let renne in this colour,  
 Thou must thy hestes letten bee,  
 Than is there nought, but yeld thee,  
 Or yeve hem tribute douteles,  
 And hold it of hem to have pees:  
 But greater harme betide thee,  
 That they all maister of it bee:  
 Well con they scorne thee withill,  
 By day stuffen they the wall,  
 And all the night they minen there:  
 Nay, thou planten maust els where  
 Thine impes, if thou wolt fruit have,  
 Abide not there thy selfe to save.

"But now peace, here I turne againe,  
 I wold no more of this thing faine,  
 If I might passen me hereby,  
 For I might maken you weary;  
 But I wold heten you alway,  
 To helpe your friendes what I may,  
 So they wollen my company,  
 For they been shent all utterly,  
 But if so fall, that I be  
 Oft with hem, and they with me,  
 And eke my lemman mote they serve,  
 Or they shall not my love deserve,  
 Forsooth I am a false traitour,  
 God judged me for a theefe trechour,  
 Forsworne I am, but well nigh none  
 Wote of my guile, till it be done.

"Through me hath many one deth receivec,

Whan they from richesse arn throwe,  
 Fully to knowen without were  
 Friend of effect, and friend of chere  
 And which in love weren true and stable,  
 And which also weren variable,  
 After Fortune hir goddessse,  
 In povertie, either in richesse,  
 For all that yeveth here out of drede,  
 Unhappe beareth it indeede,  
 For infortune let not one  
 Of friendes, whan Fortune is gone,  
 I meane tho friendes that woll fle  
 Anone as entreth povertie,  
 And yet they woll not leave hem so,  
 But in each place where they go  
 They call hem wretch, scorn and blame,  
 And of hir mishappe hem diffame,  
 And namely such as in richesse,  
 Pretendeth most of stablesse  
 Whan that they saw hem set on loft,  
 And weren of hem succoured oft,  
 And most iholpe in all hir need :  
 But now they take no maner heed,  
 But saine in voice of flatterie,  
 That now appeareth hir follie,  
 Over all where so they fare,  
 And sing, Go farewell felde fare.

“ All such friendes I beahrew,  
 For of true there be too few,  
 But soothfast friendes, what so betide,  
 In every fortune wollen abide,  
 They han hir hertes in such noblesse  
 That they nill love for no richesse,  
 Nor for that Fortune may hem send  
 They wollen hem succour and defend,  
 And chaunge for softe ne for sore ;  
 For who his friend loveth evermore  
 Though men draw sword him to slo,  
 He may not hew hir love a two :  
 But in case that I shall say,  
 For pride and ire lese it he may,  
 And for reproove by nicete,  
 And discovering of privite,  
 With tongue wounding, as felon,  
 Through venomous detraction.

“ Friend in this case will gone his way,  
 For nothing grieve him more ne may,  
 And for nought else woll he fle,  
 If that he love in stabilitie.  
 And certaine he is well begone  
 Among a thousand that findeth one :  
 For there may be no richesse,  
 Ayenst friendship of worthinesse,  
 For it ne may so high attaine,  
 As may the valour, sooth to saine,  
 Of him that loveth true and well.  
 Friendship is more than is cattell,  
 For friend in court aie better is  
 Than penny in purse certis,  
 And Fortune mis-happing,  
 Whan upon men she is fabling,  
 Through misturning of her chaunce,  
 And cast hem out of balaaunce.

“ She maketh through her adversite  
 Men full clerely for to see  
 Him that is friend in existence  
 From him that is by appearance :  
 For infortune maketh anone,  
 To know thy friendes fro thy fone,  
 By experience, right as it is,

The which is more to praise ywis,  
 Than in much richesse and treasour,  
 For more deepe profite and valour,  
 Povertie, and such adversitie  
 Before, than doth prosperitie,  
 For that one yeveth conisaunce,  
 And the tother ignoraunce.

“ And thus in povertie is indeed  
 Trouth declared fro falshede,  
 For faint friendes it woll declare,  
 And true also, what way they fare.  
 For whan he was in his richesse,  
 These friendes full of doublesse  
 Offred him in many wise  
 Herte and body, and service,  
 What wold he than have you to have sought,  
 To knowen openly hir thought,  
 That he now hath so clerely seen ?  
 The lasse beguiled he should have been,  
 And he had than perceived it,  
 But richesse n'old not let him wit :  
 Well more avauntage doeth him than,  
 Sith that he maketh him a wise man,  
 The great mischief that he perceiveth  
 Than doeth richesse that him deceiveth :  
 Richesse rich ne maketh nought  
 Him that on treasour set his thought,  
 For richesse stont in suffisaunce,  
 And nothing in aboundaunce :  
 For suffisaunce all onely  
 Maketh menne to live richly.

“ For he that hath miches tweine,  
 Ne value in his demeine,  
 Liveth more at ease, and more is rich,  
 Than doeth he that is chich,  
 And in his barne hath sooth to saine,  
 An hundred mavis of wheat graine,  
 Though he be chapman or marchaunt.  
 And have of gold many besaunt :  
 For in getting he hath such wo,  
 And in the keeping drede also,  
 And set evermore his businesse  
 For to encrease, and not to lesse,  
 For to augment and multiply,  
 And though on heapes that lye him by,  
 Yet never shall make his richesse,  
 Asseth unto his greedinesse :  
 But the poore that retcheth nought,  
 Save of his livelode in his thought,  
 Which that he getteth with his travaille,  
 He dredeth nought that it shall faile,  
 Though he have little worldes good,  
 Meate and drinke, and easie food,  
 Upon his travaille and living,  
 And also suffisaunt clothing,  
 Or if in sicknesse that he fall,  
 And loath meat and drinke withall,  
 Though he have not his meat to buy,  
 He shall bethinke him hastily,  
 To put him out of all daungere,  
 That he of meat hath no mistere,  
 Or that he may with little eke  
 Be fouden, while that he is seke,  
 Or that men shull him berne in hast,  
 To live till his sicknesse be past,  
 To some maisondewe beside,  
 He cast nought what shall him betide,  
 He thinketh nought that ever he shal  
 Into any sicknesse fall.

" And though it fall, as it may be  
That all betime spare shall he  
As mokell as shall to him suffice,  
While he is sick in any wise,  
He doeth for that he wolle be  
Content with his povertie  
Without neede of any man,  
So much in little have he can,  
He is apaide with his fortune,  
And for he nill be importune  
Unto no wight, ne onerous,  
Nor of hir goodnesse covetous :  
Therefore he spareth, it may well been,  
His poore estate for to susteen.

" Or if him lust not for to spare,  
But suffereth forth, as not yet ware,  
At last it happeneth, as it may  
Right unto his laste day,  
And take the world as it would be :  
For ever in herte thinketh he  
The sooner that Death him slo,  
To paradise the sooner go  
He shall, there for to live in blisse  
Where that he shall no good misse :  
Thider he hopeth God shall him send  
After this wretched lives end.  
Pythagoras himselfe rehearses  
In a booke that the Golde Verses  
Is cleped, for the nobilitie  
Of the honourable dite :  
' Than whan thou goest thy body fro,  
Free in the ayre thou shalt up go  
And leaven all humanitie,  
And purely live in deitie,  
He is a foole withouten were  
That troweth have his cuntry here.'

" In yearth is not our cuntry,  
That may these clarkes seine and sey  
In Boece of Consolation  
Where it is makid mention  
Of our cuntry plaine at the eie,  
By teaching of philosophie,  
Where lewd men might lere wit,  
Who so that would translaten it.  
If he be such that can well live  
After his rent, may him yeve,  
And not desireth more to have,  
Than may fro povertie him save.  
A wise man saied, as we may seen,  
Is no man wretched, but he it ween,  
Be he king, knight, or ribaude,  
And many a ribaud is merrie and baude,  
That swinketh, and beareth both day and night  
Many a burthen of great might,  
The which doeth him lasse offence,  
For he suffreth in patience :  
They laugh and daunce, trippe and sing,  
And lay nought up for hir living,  
But in the taverne all dispendeth  
The winning that God hem sendeth ;  
Than goeth he fardels for to beare,  
With as good chere as he did eare ;  
To swinke and travaile he not faineth,  
For to robben he disdaineth,  
But right anon, after his swinke,  
He goeth to taverne for to drinke :  
All these are rich in aboundance,  
That can thus have suffisance  
Well more than can an usurer,

As God well knoweth, without were.  
For an usurer, so God me see,  
Shall never for richesse riche bee,  
But evermore poore and indigent,  
Scarce, and greedy in his entent.

" For sooth it is, whom it displease,  
There may no marchaunt live at ease,  
His herte in such a were is set  
That it quicke brenneth to get,  
No never shall, though he hath getten,  
Though he have gould in garners yeten,  
For to be needy he dredeth sore :  
Wherefore to getten more and more  
He set his herte and his desire ;  
So hote he brenneth in the fire  
Of covetise, that maketh him wood  
To purchase other mennes good ;  
He underfongeth a great paine,  
That undertaketh to drinke up Saine :  
For the more he drinketh aie  
The more he leaveth, the sooth to say :  
Thus is thirst of false getting,  
That last ever in coveting,  
And the anguish and distresse  
With the fire of greedinesse ;  
She fighteth with him aie, and striveth,  
That his herte asunder riveth,  
Such greedinesse him assaileth,  
That when he most hath, most he faileth.

" Phisitions and advocates  
Gone right by the same yates,  
They sell hir science for winning,  
And haunt hir craft for great getting :  
Hir winning is of such sweetnesse,  
That if a man fall in sicknesse,  
They are full glad, for hir encrease :  
For by hir will, without lease,  
Everich man shoulde be seeke,  
And though they die, they set not a leeke ;  
After whan they the gould have take,  
Full little care of hem they make ;  
They would that fortie were sick at ones,  
Yea two hundred, in flesh and bones,  
And yet two thousand, as I gesse,  
For to encreasen hir richesse.

" They wolle not worchen in no wise,  
But for lucre and covetise,  
For physicke ginneth first by (phy)  
The phisition also soothly,  
And sithen it goeth fro fie to fie,  
To trust on hem it is follie,  
For they n'ill in no manner gree,  
Doe right nought for charitee.  
Eke in the same sect are set  
All tho that preachen for to get  
Worships, honour, and richesse.  
Hir hertes arn in great distresse,  
That folke live not holily,  
But aboven all specially,  
Such as preachen vaine glorie  
And toward God have no memorie,  
But forth as ipocrites trace,  
And to hir soules death purchase  
And outward shewing holynesse,  
Though they be full of cursednesse,  
Nor lyche to the apostles twelve,  
They deceive other and hem selve :  
Beguiled is the guiler than,  
For preaching of a cursed man  
Though to other may profite

Himself it availeth not a mite :  
 For oft good predication  
 Commeth of evil entencion :  
 To him not vaileth his preaching  
 All helpe he other with his teaching,  
 For where they good example take,  
 There is he with vaine glory shake.

" But let us leaven these preachours,  
 And speake of hem which in hir tours  
 Heape up hir gould, and fast shet,  
 And sore thereon their herte set :  
 They neither love God ne drede,  
 They keepe more than it is nede,  
 And in hir bagges sore it biud  
 Out of the sunne, and of the wind :  
 They put up more than need ware,  
 Whan they seen poore folke forfare,  
 For hunger die, and for cold quake ;  
 God can wel vengeance therof take ;  
 The great mischiefes hem assaileth,  
 And thus in gadering aye travaileth ;  
 With muche paine they winne richesse,  
 And drede hem holdeth in distresse,  
 To keepe that they gather fast,  
 With sorrow they leave it at the last :  
 With sorrow they both die and live,  
 That unto richesse her hertes yeve.  
 And in defaute of love it is,  
 As it sheweth full well ywis :  
 For if these greedy, the sooth to saine,  
 Loveden, and were loved againe,  
 And good love raigned over all,  
 Such wickednesse ne should fall,  
 But he should yeve, that most good had  
 To hem that weren in neede bestad,  
 And live without false usure,  
 For charitie, full cleane and pure :  
 If they hem yeve to goodnesse  
 Defending hem from idlenesse,  
 In all this world than poore none  
 We should finde, I trow not one :  
 But chaunged is this world unstable,  
 For love is over all vendable.

" We see that no man loveth now  
 But for winning and for prov,  
 And love is thrallid in servage  
 Whan it is sold for advantage ;  
 Yet women wolle hir bodies sell :  
 Such soules goeth to the Divell of Hell."

• • • • •  
 WHEN Love had told hem his entent,  
 The baronage to counsaile went,  
 In many sentences they fill,  
 And diversly they said hir will :  
 But after discord they accorded,  
 And hir accord to Love recorded :  
 " Sir," sayden they, " we been at one,  
 By even accord of everichone,  
 Outtake Richesse all onely  
 That sworne hath full hauteinly,  
 That she the castle n'll not assaile,  
 Ne smite a stroke in this bataille,  
 With dart, ne mace, speare, ne knife,  
 For man that speaketh and beareth the life,  
 And blameth your emprise ywis,  
 And from our host departed is,  
 At least waie, as in this plite,  
 So hath she this man in despite :  
 For she sayth he ne loved her never,

And therefore she wolle hate him ever ;  
 For he wolle gather no treasure,  
 He hath her wrathe for evermore ;  
 He agilte her never in other caas,  
 Lo here all hooly his trespas.  
 She sayeth well, that this other day  
 He asked her leave to gone the way  
 That is cleped too much yeving,  
 And spake full faire in his praying :  
 But whan he prayed her, poore was he,  
 Therefore she warned him the entre,  
 Ne yet is he not thriven so  
 That he hath gotten a pennie or two,  
 That quietly is his owne in hold :  
 Thus hath Richesse us all told,  
 And whan Richesse us this recorded,  
 Withouten her we been accorded.

" And we finde in our accordaunce,  
 That False Semblaunt and Abetinaunce,  
 With all the folke of hir bataille  
 Shull at the hinder gate assaile,  
 That Wicked Tongue hath in keeping,  
 With his Normans full of jangling,  
 And with hem Courtesie and Largesse,  
 That shull shew hir hardynesse,  
 To the old wife that kept so hard  
 Faire Welcomming within her ward :  
 Than shall Delight and Well Heling  
 Fond Shame adoun to bring,  
 With all her host early and late,  
 They shull assaylen that ilke gate,  
 Against Drede shall Hardynesse  
 Assaile, and also Sikernesse,  
 With all the folke of hir leading  
 That never wist what wast slaying.

" FRAUNCHISE shall fight and eke Pite,  
 With Daunger full of cruelte,  
 Thus is your host ordained wele ;  
 Downe shall the castle every delc,  
 If everiche doe his entent,  
 So that Venus be present,  
 Your mother full of vesselage  
 That can inough of such usage ;  
 Withouten her may no wight speed  
 This worke, neither for word ne deed :  
 Therefore is good ye for her send,  
 For through her may this worke amend."

" LORDINGES, my mother, the gooddes,  
 That is my ladie, and my mistres,  
 N'is nat all at my willing,  
 Ne doth all my desiring.  
 Yet can she sometime doen labour,  
 Whan that her lust, in my succour.  
 As my neede is for to atchieve :  
 But now I thinke her not to grieve,  
 My mother is she, and of childhede  
 I both worship her, and eke drede,  
 For who that dredeth sire ne dame,  
 Shall it abie in bodie or name.  
 And nathelesse, yet can we  
 Send after her if need be,  
 And were she nigh, she comen would,  
 I trow that nothing might her hold.

" My mother is of great provesse,  
 She hath tane many a forteresse,  
 That cost hath many a pound er this,  
 There I nas not present ywis,  
 And yet men sayd it was my dedde,



But I come never in that steede,  
 Ne me ne liketh so mote I thee,  
 That such towers been take with mee,  
 For why ! Me thinketh that in no wise,  
 It may be cleped but marchaundise.  
 Go buy a courser blacke or white,  
 And pay therefore, than art thou quite,  
 The marchaunt oweth thee right nought,  
 Ne thou him whan thou it bought.  
 I woll not selling clepe yeving  
 For selling asketh no guerdoning,  
 Here lithe no thanke, ne no merite,  
 That one goeth from that other all quite,  
 But this selling is not semblable :

" For when his horse is in the stable  
 He may it sell againe parde,  
 And winnen on it, such happe may be,  
 All may the manne not lese ywis,  
 For at the least the skinne is his.

" Or else, if it so betide  
 That he woll keepe his horse to ride,  
 Yet is he lord aie of his horse :  
 But thilke chaffare is well worse,  
 There Venus entermeteth ought,  
 For who so such chaffare hath bought,  
 He shall not worchen so wisely,  
 That he ne shall lese utterly  
 Both his monney and his chaffare :  
 But the seller of the ware,  
 The prise and profite have shall,  
 Certaine the buyer shall lese all,  
 For he ne can so dere it buy  
 To have lordship and full maistry,  
 Ne have power to make letting,  
 Neither for yest ne for preaching,  
 That of his chaffare maugre his,  
 Another shall have as much ywis,  
 If he woll yeve as much as he,  
 Of what countrey so that he be,  
 Or for right nought, so happe may,  
 If he can flatter her to her pay.

" Been then suche marchautes wise !  
 No, but foolles in every wise,  
 Whan they buy such thing wilfully,  
 There as they lese hir good follily.  
 But nathelesse, this dare I say,  
 My mother is not wont to pay,  
 For she is neither so foole ne nice,  
 To entremete her of such vice,  
 But trust well, he shall paie all,  
 That repent of his bargain shall,  
 Whan Poverte put him in distresse,  
 All were he scholler to Richesse,  
 That is for me in great yerning,  
 Whan she assenteth to my willing.

" But by my mother saint Venus,  
 And by her father Saturnus,  
 That her engendred by his life,  
 But nat upon his wedded wife,  
 Yet woll I more unto you swere,  
 To make this thing the surere.

" Now by that faith, and that beaute  
 That I owe to all my brethren free,  
 Of which there n'is wight under Heaven  
 That can hir fathers names neven,  
 So divers and so many there be,  
 That with my mother have be prive,  
 Yet woll I swere for sikernesse,  
 The pole of Hell to my wisesse,

Now drinke I not this yeare clarre,  
 If that I lye, or forsworne be,  
 For of the goddes the usage is,  
 That who so him forswearith amis,  
 Shall that yeere drinke no clarre.

" Now have I sworne inough parde,  
 If I forswore me than am I lorne,  
 But I woll never be forsworne :  
 Sith Richesse hath me failed here,  
 She shall abie that trespasse dere,  
 At least way but I her harme  
 With swerd, or sparth, or gisarme.

" For certes sith she loveth not me,  
 Fro thilke time that she may see  
 The castle and the tower to shak,  
 In sorrie time she shall awake ;  
 If I may gripe a rich man  
 I shall so pull him, if I can,  
 That he shall in a fewe stoundes,  
 Lese all his markes, and his poundes.

" I shall him make his pence out sling  
 But they in his garner spring,  
 Our maidens shall eke plucke him so,  
 That him shall needen feathers mo,  
 And make him sell his lond to spend,  
 But he the bet can him defend.

" Poore men han made hir lord of me ;  
 Although they not so mightie be,  
 That they may feede me in delite,  
 I woll not have them in dispite :  
 No good man hateth hem, as I gesse,  
 For chinch and feloun is Richesse,  
 That so can chase hem and dispise,  
 And hem defoule in sundrie wise :  
 They loven full bette, so God me spede,  
 Than doeth the rich chinchly grede,  
 And been (in good faith) more stable  
 And truer, and more serviable :  
 And therefore it suffiseth me  
 Hir good herte, and hir beaute ;  
 They han on me set all their thought,  
 And therefore I foryet hem nought.

" I woll hem bring in great noblesse,  
 If that I were god of richesse,  
 As I am god of love soothly,  
 Such ruth upon hir plaint have I :  
 Therefore I must his succour be,  
 That paineth him to serven me,  
 For if he dyed for love of this,  
 Than seemeth in me no love there is."

" Sir," sayd they, " sooth is everie delc  
 That ye rehearse, and we wote welc  
 Thilke oath to hold is reasonable,  
 For it is good and covenable,  
 That ye on riche men han sworne :  
 For, sir, this wote we well beforne,  
 If rich men doen you homage,  
 That is as foolles doen outrage,  
 But ye shull not forsworne be,  
 Ne let therefore to drinke clarre,  
 Or piment maked fresh and new,  
 Ladies shull hem such pepir brew,  
 If that they fall into her laas,  
 That they for woe mow saine Alas !  
 Ladies shullen ever so courteous be,  
 That they shall quite your oath all free ;  
 Ne seeketh never other vicair,  
 For they shall speake with hem so faire  
 That ye shall hold you payd full well,

Though ye you meddle never a deale,  
 Let ladies worch with hir thinges,  
 They shall hem tell so fele tidinges,  
 And moove hem eke so many requestis  
 By flatterie, that not honest is,  
 And thereto yeve hem such thankinges,  
 What with kissing, and with talkinges,  
 That certes if they trowed be,  
 Shall never leave hem lond ne fee  
 That it n'ill as the meble fare,  
 Of which they first delivered are :  
 Now may you tell us all your will,  
 And we your hestes shall fulfill.

"But False Semblaunt dare not for drede  
 Of you, sir, meddle him of this dede,  
 For he sayth that ye been his foe,  
 He n'ot, if ye will worch him woe :  
 Wherefore we pray you all, beau sire,  
 That ye foryeve him now your ire,  
 And that he may dwell as your man  
 With Abstinence his deere lemman,  
 This our accord and our will now."

"Parfey," said Love, "I graunt it you,  
 I woll well hold him for my man,  
 Now let him come : " and he forth ran.

"False semblant," (quod Love) "in this wise  
 I take thee here to my service,  
 That thou our friendes helpe alwaie,  
 And hindreth hem neither night ne daie,  
 But doe thy might hem to relieve,  
 And eke our enemies that thou grieve,  
 Thine be this might, I graunt it thee,  
 My king of harlots shalt thou bee :  
 We woll that thou have such honour,  
 Certaine thou art a false traitour,  
 And eke a theefe ; sith thou were borne,  
 A thousand times thou art forsworne :  
 But nathelesse in our hearing,  
 To put our folke out of doubting,  
 I bidde thee teach hem, wost thou how ?  
 By some general signe now,  
 In what place thou shalt founden be,  
 If that men had mister of thee,  
 And how men shall thee best espie,  
 For thee to know is great maistrie,  
 Tell in what place is thine haunting."

"Sir I have full divers wunning,  
 That I keepe not rehearsed be,  
 So that ye would respiten me,  
 For if that I tell you the sooth,  
 I may have harme and shame both,  
 If that my fellowes wisten it,  
 My tales shoulde me be quit,  
 For certaine they would hate me,  
 If ever I knew hir cruelte,  
 For they would over all hold hem still  
 Of troth, that is againe hir will.  
 Such tales keepen they not here,  
 I might eftsoone buy it full dere,  
 If I said of hem any thing,  
 That ougth displeaseth to hir hearing,  
 For what word that hem pricketh or biteth,  
 In that word none of hem deliteth,  
 All were it gospell the evangile,  
 That would reprove hem of hir guile,  
 For they are cruell and hautain ;  
 And this thing wote I well certain,  
 If I speake ought to paire hir loos,  
 Your court shall not so well be cloos,

That they ne shall wite it at last :  
 Of good men am I nought agast,  
 For they woll taken on hem nothing,  
 Whan that they know all my meaning.  
 But he that woll it on him take,  
 He woll himselve suspicious make,  
 That he his life let covertly,  
 In guile and in hypocrisie,  
 That me engendred and yave fostring."

"They made a full good engendring,"  
 (Quod Love) "for who so soothly tell,  
 They engendred the Divell of Hell.

"But needely, howsoever it bee"  
 (Quod Love) "I will and charge thee,  
 To tell anon thy wunning placis,  
 Hearing each wight that in this place is :  
 And what life thou livest also,  
 Hide it no lenger now, whereto :  
 Thou must discover all thy worching,  
 How thou servest, and of what thing,  
 Though that thou shuldest for thy sothsay  
 Ben all to beaten and to draw,  
 And yet art thou not wont parde,  
 But nathelesse, though thou beaten be,  
 Thou shalt not be the first, that so  
 Hath for soothsawe suffred wo."

"Sir, sith that it may liken you,  
 Though that I should be slaine right now  
 I shall doen your commaundement,  
 For thereto have I great talent."

Withouten words mo, right than  
 False Semblaunt his sermon began,  
 And saied hem thus in audience,

"Barons, take heed of my sentence,  
 That wight that list to have knowing  
 Of False Semblant full of flattering,  
 He must in worldly folke him seke,  
 And certes in the cloysters eke,  
 I won no where, but in hem tway,  
 But not like even, sooth to say,  
 Shortly I woll herborow me,  
 There I hope best to hultred be,  
 And certainly, sikerest hiding  
 Is underneath humblest clothing."

"Religious folke ben full covert,  
 Secular folke ben more apert :  
 But nathelesse, I woll not blamo  
 Religious folke, ne hem diffame  
 In what habite that ever they go :  
 Religion humble, and true also,  
 Woll I not blame, ne dispise,  
 But I n'ill love it in no wise,  
 I meane of false religious,  
 That stout been, and malicious,  
 That wollen in an habite go,  
 And setten not hir herte thereto.

"Religious folke been all pitous,  
 Thou shalt not seene one dispitous  
 They loven no pride, ne no strife,  
 But humbly they woll lede hir life,  
 With which folke woll I never be,  
 And if I dwell, I faine me  
 I may well in hir habite go,  
 But me were lever my necke atwo,  
 Than let a purpose that I take,  
 What covenant that ever I make.

"I dwell with hem that proude be,  
 And full of wiles and subtelte,  
 That worship of this world coveten,

And great nede connen expleiten,  
 And gone and gadren great pitaunces,  
 And purchase hem the acquaintaunces  
 Of men that mightie life may leden,  
 And faine hem poore, and hemselfe feden  
 With good morsels delicious,  
 And drinken good wine precious,  
 And preach us povert and distresse,  
 And fishen hemselfe great richesse,  
 With wily nettes that they cast,  
 It woll come foule out at the last.

"They ben fro cleane religion went,  
 They make the world an argument,  
 That hath a foule conclusion.  
 I have a robe of religion,  
 Than am I all religious:  
 This argument is all roigious,  
 It is not worth a crooked brere,  
 Habite ne maketh neither monke ne frere,  
 But cleane life and devotion,  
 Maketh men of good religion.

"Nathelesse, there can none answere,  
 How high that ever his head he shere,  
 With rasour whetted never so kene,  
 That guile in braunches cutte thurtene,  
 There can no wight distinct it so,  
 That he dare say a word thereto.

"But what herborow that ever I take,  
 Or what semblaunt that ever I make,  
 I meane but guile, and follow that,  
 For right no more than Gibbe our cat,  
 (That awaiteth mice and rattes to killen)  
 Ne entend I but to beguilen,  
 Ne no wight may, by my clothing,  
 Wete with what folke in my dwelling,  
 Ne be my wordes yet parde,  
 So soft and so pleasaunt they be.

"Behold the deedes that I do,  
 But thou be blind thou oughtest so,  
 For varie hir wordes fro hir deed,  
 They thinke on guile withouten dreed,  
 What manner clothing that they weare,  
 Or what estate that ever they beare,  
 Lered or leud, lord or ladie,  
 Knight, squire, burgeis, or bailie."

Right thus while False Semblant sermoneth,  
 Eftsoones Love him aresoneth,  
 And brake his tale in his speaking  
 As though he had him told 'easing.  
 And saied: "What devill is that I heare?  
 What folke hast thou us nempned here?  
 May nienne find religioun  
 In worldly habitation?"

"Yea, sir, it followeth nat that they  
 Should lead a wicked life parfey,  
 Ne not therefore hir soules lese,  
 That hem to worldly clothes chese,  
 For certes it were great pitee;  
 Men may in secular clothes see,  
 Florishen holy religioun;  
 Full many a saint in field and toun,  
 With many a virgine glorious,  
 Devout, and full religious,  
 Han died, that common cloth aye beren,  
 Yet saintes neverthelesse they weren.  
 I could reckon you many a ten,  
 Yea welnigh all these holy women  
 That men in churches hery and seke,  
 Both maidens, and these wives eke,  
 That baren full many a faire child here,

Weared alway clothes seculere,  
 And in the same didn they  
 That saints weren, and ben alway.

"The nine thousand maidens dere,  
 That beren in Heaven hir cierges clere,  
 Of which men rede in church and sing,  
 Were take in secular clothing,  
 When they received martirdome,  
 And wonnen Heaven unto hir home.

"Good herte maketh the good thought,  
 The clothing yeveth ne reveth nought:  
 The good thought and the worching,  
 That maketh the religion flouring,  
 There lieth the good religioun,  
 After the right entencion.

"Who so tooke a weathers skin,  
 And wrapped a greedy wolfe therein,  
 For he should go with lambes white,  
 Wenest thou not he wold hem bite?  
 Yes: neverthelesse as he were wood  
 He wold hem wirry, and drinke the blood,  
 And well the rather hem deceive,  
 For sith they coude nat perceive  
 His tregette, and his crueltie,  
 They wold him follow, altho he fle.

"If there be wolves of such hew,  
 Amonges these apostles new  
 Thou, holy church, thou maist be wailed,  
 Sith that thy citie is assailed  
 Through knightes of thine owne table,  
 God wot thy lordship is doutable:  
 If they enforce it to win,  
 That should defend it fro within,  
 Who might defence ayenst hem make?  
 Without stroke it mote be take,  
 Of trepet or mangonell,  
 Without displaying of pensell,  
 And if God n'ill done it succour,  
 But let renne in this colour,  
 Thou must thy hestes letten bee,  
 Than is there nought, but yeeld thee,  
 Or yeve hem tribute douteles,  
 And hold it of hem to have pees:  
 But greater harme betide thee,  
 That they all maister of it bee:  
 Well con they scorne thee withall,  
 By day stuffen they the wall,  
 And all the night they minen there:  
 Nay, thou planten maust els where  
 Thine impes, if thou wolt fruit have,  
 Abide not there thy selfe to save.

"But now peace, here I turne againe,  
 I woll no more of this thing faine,  
 If I might passen me hereby,  
 For I might maken you weary;  
 But I woll heten you alway,  
 To helpe your friendes what I may,  
 So they wollen my company,  
 For they been shent all utterly,  
 But if so fall, that I be  
 Oft with hem, and they with me,  
 And eke my lemmen mote they serve,  
 Or they shall not my love deserve,  
 Forsooth I am a false traitour,  
 God judged me for a theefe treclour,  
 Forsworne I am, but well nigh none  
 Wote of my guile, till it be done.

"Through me hath many one deth receivē,

That my treget never aperceved,  
And yet receiveth, and shall receive,  
That my falsenesse shall never apperceive :  
But who so doth, if he wise be,  
Him is right good beware of me.  
But so sligh is the aperceiving  
That all to late commeth knowing ;  
For Protheus that coud him chaunge,  
In every shape homely and straunge,  
Coud never such guile ne treasoun  
As I, for I come never in toun  
There as I might knowen be,  
Though men me both might here and see.  
Full well I can my clothes chaunge,  
Take one, and make another straunge.  
Now am I knight, now chastelaine,  
Now prelate, and now chaplaine,  
Now priest, now clerke, now fostere,  
Now am I maister, now schollere  
Now monke, now chanon, now baily,  
What ever mister man am I.

" Now am I prince, now am I page,  
And can by herte every language,  
Sometime am I hoore and old,  
Now am I younge, stoute, and bold,  
Now am I Robert, now Robin,  
Now frere minor, now jacobin,  
And with me followeth my lotby,  
To done me sollace and company,  
That hight dame Abstinence, and raigne  
In many a queint array fained,  
Right as it commeth to her liking,  
I fulfill all her desiring.

" Sometime a womans clothe take I,  
Now am I a maid, now lady.

" Sometime I am religious,  
Now like an anker in an hous.

" Sometime am I prioressse,  
And now a nonne, and now abbesse,  
And go through all regions,  
Seeking all religious.

" But to what order that I am sworne,  
I take the straw and beat the corne,  
To jolly folke I enhabite,  
I aske no more but hir habite.

" What wolle ye more ? in every wise  
Right as me list I me disguise ?

" Well can I beare me under wede,  
Unlike is my word to my dede,  
Thus make I into my trappes fall  
The people, through my priviledges all,  
That ben in Christendome alive.

" I may assoile, and I may shrive,  
That no prelate may let me,  
All folke, where ever they found be :  
I n'ot no prelate may done so,  
But it the pope be, and no mo,  
That made thilke establishing,  
Now is not this a proper thing ?  
But were my sleights aperceved

As I was wont, and wost thou why :  
For I did hem a tregetry,  
But thereof yeve I a little tale,  
I have the silver and the male,  
So have I preached and eke shriven,  
So have I take, so have I yeven,  
Through hir folly, husbond and wife,  
That I lede right a jolly life,

Through simplesse of the prelacy,  
They know not all my tregetry.

" But for as much as man and wife  
Should shew hir parish priest hir life  
Ones a yere, as sayth the booke,  
Ere any wight his housel tooke,  
Than have I priviledges large,  
That may of muche thing discharge,  
For he may say right thus pardee :  
" ' Sir Priest, in shrift I tell it thee,  
That he to whom that I am shriven,  
Hath me assoiled, and me yeven  
Penance soothly for my sin,  
Which that I found me guilty in,  
Ne I ne have never entencion  
To make double confession,  
Ne rehearse eft my shrift to thee,  
O shrift is right ynough to mee,  
This ought thee suffice wele,  
Ne be not rebell never a dele,

For certes, though thou haddest it sworne,  
I wote no priest ne prelate borne  
That may to shrift eft me constraine,  
And if they done I wolle me plaine,  
For I wote where to plaine wele,  
Thou shalt not streine me a dele,  
Ne enforce me, ne not me trouble,  
To make my confession double ;

Ne I have none affection  
To have double absolution :  
The first is right ynough to mee,  
This latter assoiling quite I thee,  
I am unbound, what maist thou find  
More of my sinnes me to unbind ?  
For he that might hath in his hond,  
Of all my sinnes me unbound :  
And if thou wolt me thus constraine  
That me mote nedes on thee plaine,  
There shall no judge imperiall,  
Ne bishop, ne officiall,

Done judgement on me, for I  
Shall gone and plaine me openly  
Unto my shriftfater new,  
That hight Frere Wolfe untrew,  
And he shall chuse him for mee,  
For I trow he can hamper thee ;  
But lord he would be wroth withall,  
If men would him Frere Wolfe call,  
For he would have no patience,  
But done all cruell vengeance,  
He would his might done at the leest,  
Nothing spare for Goddes heest,  
And God so wise be my succour,  
But thou yeve me my saviour  
At Easter, whan it liketh mee,  
Without preasing more on thee,  
I wolle forth, and to him gone,  
And he shall housell me anone,  
For I am out of thy grutching,  
I keepe not deale with thee nothing.

" Thus may he shrive him, that forsalet  
His parish priest, and to me taketh.  
And if the priest wolle him refuse,  
I am full ready him to accuse,  
And him punish and hamper so,  
That he his churche shall forgo.

" But who so hath in his feeling  
The consequences of such shriving,  
Shall see, that priest may never have might

To know the conscience aright  
Of him that is under his cure :  
And this is ayenst holy scripture,  
That biddeth every herde honest  
Have very knowing of his beest.  
But poore folke that gone by strete,  
That have no gold, ne summes grete,  
Hem would I let to hir prelates,  
Or let hir priestes know hir states,  
For to me right nought yeve they,  
And why it is, for they ne may.

"They ben so bare, I take no keepe;  
But I wold have the fat sheepe ;  
Let parish priests have the lene,  
I yeve not of hir harme a bene ;  
And if that prelates grutch it,  
That oughten wroth be in hir wit,  
To lese hir fat beastes so,  
I shall yeve hem a stroke or two,  
That they shall lesen with force,  
Yea, both hir mitre and hir croce.

"Thus yape I hem, and have do long,  
My priviledges ben so strong."

False Semblant would have stinted here,  
But Love ne made him no such chere,  
That he was weary of his saw,  
But for to make him glad and faw,  
He said, "Tell on more specially,  
How that thou servest untruly.

"Tell forth, and shame thee never a dele,  
For as thine habit sheweth wele,  
Thou servest an holy hermite."

"Sooth is, but I am but an hypocrite."

"Thou goest and preacheest poverté !"

"Yea, sir, but Richesse hath poste."

"Thou preacheest abstinence also !"

"Sir, I wold fillen, so mote I go,  
My paunche, of good meat and wine,  
As should a maister of divine,  
For how that I me poore faine,  
Yet all poore folke I diadaine.

"I Love better the acquaintaunce  
Ten times of the king of Fraunce,  
Than of a poore man of mild mood,  
Though that his soule be also good.

"For whan I see beggers quaking,  
Naked on mixens all stinking,  
For hunger crie, and eke for care,  
I entremet not of hir fare,  
They ben so poore, and full of pine,  
They might not ones yeve me a dine,  
For they have nothing but hir life,  
What should he yeve that licketh his knife !  
It is but folly to entremete

To seeke in houndes nest fat mete :  
Let beare hem to the spittle anone,  
But fro me comfort get they none :  
But a rich sicke usurer  
Would I visite and draw nere,  
Him would I comfort and reheté,  
For I hope of his gold to gete,  
And if that wicked Death him have,  
I wold go with him in his grave,  
And if there any reprove me,  
Why that I let the poore be,  
Wost thou how I not ascape !  
I say and swere him full rape,  
That riche men han more tetches  
Of sinne, than han poore wretches,

And han of counsaile more mistere,  
And therefore I wold draw hem nere :  
But as great hurt, it may so be,  
Hath a soule in right great poverté,  
As soule in great richesse forsooth,  
Albeit that they hurten both,  
For richesse and mendicities  
Ben cleped two extremities,  
The meane is cleped suffisaunce,  
There lieth of vertue the aboundaunce

"For Salomon full well I wote,  
In his parables us wrote,  
As it is knowen of many a wight,  
In his thirteene chapter right,  
God thou me keepe for thy poste,  
Fro richesse and mendicite,  
For if a rich man him dresse,  
To thinke too much on richesse,  
His herte on that so ferre is sette,  
That he his creator doth foryette,  
And him that beggeth, wold aye greve,  
How should I by his word him leve,  
Unneth that he n'is a micher,  
Forsworne, or els Goddes lier,  
Thus sayth Salomon sawes.

"Ne we find written in no lawes,  
And namely in our Christen lay,  
(Who saith ye, I dare say nay)  
That Christ, ne his apostles dere,  
While that they walked in earth here,  
Were never seene hir bred begging,  
For they nolden beggen for nothing.

"And right thus were men wont to teach,  
And in this wise would it preach,  
The maisters of divinitie  
Sometime in Paris the citie.

"And if men would there gaine appose  
The naked text, and let the glose,  
It might soone assoiled bee,  
For men may well the sooth see,  
That pardie they might aske a thing  
Plainely forth without begging,  
For they weren Goddes herdes dere,  
And cure of soules hadden here,  
They nolde nothing begge hir food,  
For after Crist was done on rood,  
With their proper honds they wrought,  
And with travaile, and els nought,  
They wonnen all hir sustenance,  
And livened forth in hir penaunce,  
And the remenaunt yafe away  
To other poore folkes alway.

"They neither builden toure ne halle,  
But they in houses small with alle.

"A mighty man that can and may,  
Should with his hond and body alway,  
Winne him his food in labouring,  
If he ne have rent or such a thing ;  
Although he be religious,  
And God to serven curious,  
Thus mote he done, or do trespaas,  
But if it be in certaine caas,  
That I can rehearse, if mister bee,  
Right well, whan the time I see.

"Seeke the booke of Saint Augustine,  
Be it in paper or perchemine,  
There as he witte of these worchings,  
Thou shalt seene that none excusing  
A perfit man ne should seeke

By wordes, ne by deedes eke,  
 Although he be religious,  
 And God to serven curious,  
 That he ne shall, so mote I go,  
 With proper hondes and body also  
 Get his food in labouring,  
 If he ne have properte of thing,  
 Yet should he sell all his substaunce,  
 And with his swinke have sustenaunce,  
 If he be perfitte in bounte ;  
 Thus han the bookes told me :  
 For he that woll gone idelly,  
 And useth it aye busily  
 To haunten other mennes table,  
 He is a trechour full of fable,  
 Ne he ne may by good reason  
 Excuse him by his orison,  
 For men behoveth in some gise,  
 Ben sometime in Goddes service,  
 To gone and purchasen hir nede.

"Men mote eaten, that is no drede,  
 And sleepe, and eke do other thing,  
 So long may they leave praying.

"So may they eke hir prayer blinne,  
 While that they werke hir meat to winne,  
 Saint Austine woll thereto accord,  
 In thilke booke that I record.

"Justinian eke, that made lawes,  
 Hath thus forboden by old sawes :  
 'No man, up paine to be dead,  
 Mighty of body, to beg his bread,  
 If he may swinke it for to gete,  
 Men should him rather maime or bete,  
 Or done of him aperte justice,  
 Than suffren him in such mallice.'

"They done not well so mote I go,  
 That taken such almese so,  
 But if they have some priviledge,  
 That of the paine hem woll alledge.

"But how that is, can I not see,  
 But if the prince deceived bee,  
 Ne I ne wene not sikerly,  
 That they may have it rightfully.

"But I woll not determine  
 Of princes power, ne define,  
 Ne by my word comprehend ywis,  
 If it so ferre may stretch in this ;  
 I woll not entremete a dele,  
 But I trow that the booke sayth wale,  
 Who that taketh almesses, that bee  
 Dew to folke that men may see  
 Lame, feeble, weary, and bare,  
 Poore, or in such manner care,  
 That con winne hem nevermo,  
 For they have no power thereto,  
 He eateth his owne dampning,  
 But if he lie that made all thing.  
 And if ye such a truant find,  
 Chastise him well, if ye be kind,  
 But they would hate you parcaas,  
 If ye fellen in hir laas.

"They would eftsoones do you scathe,  
 If that they might, late or rathe,  
 For they be not full patient,  
 That han the world thus foule blent,  
 And weteth well, that God bad  
 The good man sell all that he had,  
 And follow him, and to poore it yeve :  
 He would not therefore that he live,  
 To serven him in mendience,

For it was never his sentence,  
 But he had werken whan that need is,  
 And follow him in goode deedia.

"Saint Poule that loved all holy church,  
 He bade the apostles for to wurch,  
 And winnen hir livelode in that wise,  
 And hem defended truandise,  
 And said, werketh with your honden,  
 Thus should the thing be understonden.

"He nolde ywis have bid hem begging,  
 Ne sellen gospell, ne preaching,  
 Least they beraft, with hir asking,  
 Folke of hir cattell or of hir thing.

"For in this world is many a man  
 That yeveth his good, for he ne can  
 Werne it for shame, or else he  
 Would of the asker delivered be,  
 And for he him encombreth so,  
 He yeveth him good to let him go :  
 But it can him nothing profite,  
 They lese the yeft and the merite.

"The good folke that Poule to preached,  
 Profred him oft, whan he hem teachad,  
 Some of hir good in charite,  
 But thereof right nothing tooke he,  
 But of his honde would he gette  
 Clothes to wrine him, and his mete."

"TELL me than how a man may liven,  
 That all his good to poore hath yeven,  
 And woll but onely bidde his bedes,  
 And never with hondes labour his nedes.  
 May he do so ?" "Yea sir." "And how ?"

"Sir I woll gladly tell you :  
 Saint Austen saith, a man may be  
 In houses that han properte,  
 As templers and hospitelers,  
 And as these chonons regulers,  
 Or white monkes, or these blake,  
 I woll no mo ensamples make,  
 And take thereof his susteining,  
 For therein lithe no begging,  
 But otherwaies not ywis,  
 Yet Austen gabbeth not of this,  
 And yet full many a monke laboureth,  
 That God in holy church honoureth :  
 For whan hir swinking is agone,  
 They rede and sing in church anone.

"And for there hath ben great discord,  
 As many a wight may beare record,  
 Upon the estate of mendicience,  
 I woll shortly in your presence,  
 Tell how a man may begge at need,  
 That hath not wherewith him to feed,  
 Maugre his fellowes janglings,  
 For soothfastnesse woll none hidings,  
 And yet percase I may obey,  
 That I to you soothly thus sey.

"Lo here the case especiall,  
 If a man be so bestiall,  
 That he of no craft hath science,  
 And nought desirith ignorence,  
 Than may he go a begging yerne,  
 Till he some other craft can lerne,  
 Through which without truandng,  
 He may in trouth have his living.

"Or if he may done no labour,  
 For elde, or sicknesse, or langour,

Or for his tender age also,  
 Than may he yet a begging go.  
 "Or if he have peraventure,  
 Through usago of his noriture,  
 Lived over deliciously,  
 Than oughten good folke comenly,  
 Han of his mischeefe some pite,  
 And suffren him also, that he  
 May gone about and begge his bread,  
 That he be not for hunger dead ;  
 Or if he have of craft conning,  
 And strength also, and desiring  
 To worchen, as he had what,  
 But he find neither this ne that,  
 Than may he begge till that he  
 Have gotten his necessite.

"Or if his winning be so lite,  
 That his labour wold not aquite  
 Sufficiauntly all his living,  
 Yet may he go his brede begging  
 Fro dore to dore, he may go trace,  
 Till he the remnaunt may purchase.

"Or if a man would undertake  
 Any emprise for to make,  
 In the rescous of our lay,  
 And it defenden as he may,  
 Be it with armes or lettrure,  
 Or other convenable cure,  
 If it be so he poore be,  
 Than may he begge, till that he  
 May find in trouth for to swinke  
 And get him clothe, meat, and drinke  
 Swinke he with his hondes corporell,  
 And not with hondes espirituell.

"In all this case, and in semblables,  
 If that there ben no reasonables,  
 He may begge, as I tell you here,  
 And eles not in no manere,  
 As William Saint Amour would preach,  
 And oft would dispute and teach  
 Of this matter all openly  
 At Paris full solemnely,  
 And also God my soule blesse  
 As he had in this stedfastnesse  
 The accord of the universite  
 And of the people, as seemeth me.

"No good man ought it to refuse,  
 Ne ought him thereof to excuse,  
 Be wrothe or blithe, who so be,  
 For I wold speake, and tell it thee,  
 All should I die, and be put down,  
 As was saint Poule in derko prisoun,  
 Or be exiled in this caas  
 With wrong, as maister William was,  
 That my mother Hypocrisie  
 Banished for her great envie.

"My mother flemed him Saint Amour :  
 This noble did suche labour  
 To sustene ever the loyalte,  
 That he too much aglite me :  
 He made a booke, and let it write,  
 Wherein his life he did all write,  
 And would iche renied begging,  
 And lived by my travelling,  
 If I ne had rent ne other good,  
 What weneth he that I were wood ?  
 For labour might me never please,  
 I have more will to ben at ease,  
 And have well lever, sooth to say,

Before the people patter and pray,  
 And wrie me in my foxerie  
 Under a cope of papelardie."

(Quod Love) "What divell is this that I here,  
 What wordes tellest thou me here ?"

"What, sir, falsenesse, that apert is ?"

"Than dredest thou not God ?" "No certes :

For selde in great thing shall he spede  
 In this world, that God wold drede,  
 For folke that hem to vertue yeven,  
 And truly on hir owen liven,  
 And hem in goodnesse aye content,  
 On hem is little thrift isent,  
 Such folke drinken great miscase,  
 That life may me never please.

"But see what gold han usersers,  
 And silver eke in garners,  
 Tailagiers, and these monyours,  
 Bailiffes, beadies, provost, countours,  
 These liven well nigh by ravine,  
 The small people hem mote encline,  
 And they as wolves wold hem eten :  
 Upon the poore folke they geten  
 Full much of that they spend or kope,  
 N'is none of hem that they n'ill strepe,  
 And wrine hem selfe well at full,  
 Without scalding they hem pull.

"The strong the feeble overgothe,  
 But I that weare my simple clothe,  
 Robbe both robbed, and robbours,  
 And guile guiling, and guilours :  
 By my treget, I gather and threste  
 The great treasour into my cheste,  
 That lieth with me so fast bound,  
 Mine high paleis doe I found,  
 And my delighes I fulfill,  
 With wine at feastes at my will,  
 And tables full of entremees ;  
 I wold no life, but ease and pees,  
 And winne gold to spend also,  
 For whan the greate bagge is go,  
 It commeth right with my japes,  
 Make I not well tomble mine apes :  
 To winnen is alway mine entent,  
 My purchase is better than my rent,  
 For though I should beaten be,  
 Over all I entremet me :  
 Without me maie no wight dure,  
 I walke soules for to cure,  
 Of all the world cure have I  
 In brede and length ; boldely  
 I wold both preach and eke counsaile,  
 With hondes wold I not travailen,  
 For of the pope I have the bull,  
 I ne hold not my wittes dull,  
 I wold not stinten in my live  
 These emperours for to shrive,  
 Or kinges, dukes, and lordes grete :  
 But poore folke all quite I lete,  
 I love no such shriving parde,  
 But it for other cause be :  
 I recke not of poore men,  
 Hir estate is not worth an hen.

"Where findest thou a swinker of labour  
 Have me to his confessour ?  
 But empresses, and duchesses,  
 These queenes, and eke countesses,  
 These abbesses, and eke bigines,  
 These great ladies palasins,  
 These jolly knights, and bailives,

These nonnes, and these burgeis wives  
That riche ben, and eke pleasing,  
And these maidens wel-faring,  
Where so they clad or naked be,  
Uncounselled goeth there none fro me ;  
And for hir soules safete,  
At lord and lady, and hir meine,  
I aske, whan they hem to me shrive,  
The propertie of all hir live,  
And make hem trow, both most and least,  
Hir parish priest is but a beast  
Ayenst me and my company,  
That shrewes been as great (as I)  
For which I woll not hide in hold,  
No privity that me is told,  
That I by word or signe ywis,  
Ne woll make hem know what it is,  
And they wollen also tellen me,  
They hele fro me no privity.  
And for to make you hem perceiven,  
That usen folke thus to deceiven,  
I woll you saine withouten drede,  
What men may in the Gospell rede,  
Of Saint Mathew the gospellere,  
That seieth, as I shall you say here.

" UPON the chaire of Moses  
Thus it is glosed douteles,  
(That is the olde testament,  
For thereby is the chaire ment)  
Sitte scribes and pharisen,  
That is to saine, the cursed men,  
Which that we ipocrites call :  
Doeth that they preache, I rede you all,  
But doeth not as they doen adele,  
That been not weary to say wele.  
But to doe well, no will have they,  
And they would bind on folke alway  
(That been to be beguiled able)  
Burdons that been importable ;  
On folkes shoulders things they couchen,  
That they n'ill with their fingers touchen.  
And why woll they not touch it, why !  
For hem ne list nat sikerly,  
For sadde burdons that men taken,  
Make folkes shoulders aken.

" And if they do ought that good bee,  
That is for folke it should see :  
Hir burdons larger maken they,  
And maken hir hemmes wide alwey,  
And loven seates at the table  
The first and most honourable,  
And for to han the first chairis,  
In synagogues, to hem full dere is,  
And willen that folke hem loute and grete,  
Whan that they passen through the strete,  
And wollen be cleped maister also .  
But they ne should not willen so,  
The gospell is there ayenst I gesse,  
That sheweth well hir wickednesse.

" ANOTHER custome use we  
Of hem that woll ayenst us be,  
We hate hem deadly everychone,  
And we woll werry him, as one,  
Him that one hateth, hate we all,  
And coniect how to doen him fall :  
And if we seene him winne honour,  
Richesse or preise, through his valour,

Provende, rent, or dignite,  
Full fast ywis compassen we  
By what ladder he is clomben so,  
And for to maken him downe to go,  
With treason we woll him defame,  
And doen him lese his good name.

" Thus from his ladder we him take,  
And thus his frendes foes we make,  
But word ne wete shall he none,  
Till all his frendes been his fone,  
For if we did it openly,  
We might have blame readly,  
For had he wist of our mallice,  
He had him kept, but he were nice.

" Another is this, that if so fall,  
That there be one among us all  
That doeth a good tourne, out of drede,  
We saine it is our alder dede,  
Yea sikerly, though he it fained,  
Or that him list, or that him dained  
A man through him avaunced be,  
Thereof all parteners be we,  
And tellen folke where so we go,  
That man through us is sprongen so.

" And for to have of men praising,  
We purchase through our flattering  
Of riche men of great poete  
Letters, to witnesse our bounte,  
So that man weeneth that may us see,  
That all vertue in us bee.

" And alway poore we us faine,  
But how so that we begge or plaine,  
We ben the folke without leasing,  
That all thing have without having.

" Thus be dradde of the people ywis,  
And gladly my purpose is this :

" I deale with no wight, but he  
Have gold and treasure great plente,  
Hir acquaintance well love I :  
This much my desire shortly,  
I entremet me of brocages,  
I make peace and mariages,  
I am gladly execoutour,  
And many times a procuratour,  
I am sometime messangere,  
That falleth not to my mistere.

" And many times I make enquest,  
For me that office is nat honest,  
To deale with other mennes thing,  
That is to me a great liking :  
And if that ye have ought to do  
In place that I repaire to,  
I shall it speden through my wit,  
As soone as ye have told me it,  
So that ye serve me to pay,  
My service shall be yours alway.

" But who so woll chastice me,  
Anone my love lost hath he,  
For I love no man in no gise,  
That woll me reprove or chastise,  
But I woll all folke undertake,  
And of no wight no teaching take,  
For I that other folke chastice,  
Woll not be taught fro my follie.

" I LOVE none hermitage more,  
All descertes and holtes hoore  
And grete woodes everychon,  
I let hem to the Baptist Iohn,  
I queth him quite, and him releas :



Of Egipt all the wilderness;  
Too ferre were all my mansiouns  
Fro all cities and good touns.

"My paleis and mine house make I  
There men may renne in openly,  
And say that I the world forsake,  
But all amide I build and make  
My house, and swim and play therein  
Bette than a fish doeth with his finne.

"Of Antichristes men am I,  
Of which that Christ sayeth openly,  
They have habite of holinesse,  
And liven in such wickednesse.

"Outward lamben seemen we,  
Full of goodnesse and of pite,  
And inward we withouten fable  
Been greedy wolves ravisable.

"We environ both lond and see,  
With all the world werrien wee,  
We woll ordaine of alle thing,  
Of folkes good, and hir living.

"If there be castell or cite  
Within that any bougerons be,  
Although that they of Millaine were,  
For thereof been they blamed there;  
Or if a wight out of measure,  
Would lene hir gold, and take usure,  
For that he is so covetous,  
Or if he be too lecherous,  
Or these that haunten simonie,  
Or provost full of trecherie,  
Or prelate living jollily,  
Or priest that halt his quein him by,  
Or olde hoores hostillers,  
Or other baudes or bordellera,  
Or els blamed of any vice,  
Of which men shoulde doen justice:

"By all the saintes that we prey,  
But they defend them with lamprey,  
With luce, with elis, with samons,  
With tender geese, and with capons,  
With tartes, or with cheees fat,  
With daintie flaunes, brode and flat,  
With caleweis, or with pullaile,  
With coninges, or with fine vitaile,  
That we under our clothes wide,  
Maken through our gollet glide,  
Or but he woll doe come in haat  
Roe venison bake in past,  
Whether so that he loure or groine,  
He shall have of a corde a loigne,  
With which men shall him bind and lede,  
To brenne him for his sinful dede,  
That men shull heare him crie and rore  
A mile way about and more,  
Or els he shall in prison die,  
But if he woll his friendship buy,  
Or smerten that, that he hath do,  
More than his guilt amounteth to.

"But and he counth through his sleight  
Doe maken up a toure of height,  
Nought rought I whether of stone or tree,  
Or earth, or turves though it be,  
Though it were of no vounde stone,  
Wrought with squier and scantilone,  
So that the toure were stuffed well  
With all riches temporell:

"And than that he would up dresse  
Engines, both more and lesse,

To cast at us by every side,  
To beare his good name wide:

"Such sleighthes I shall you yeven  
Barrels of wine, by sixe or seven,  
Or gold in sakes great plente,  
He shoulde soone delivered be,  
And if he have no such pitences,  
Let him studie in equivolesse,  
And lette lies and fallaces,  
If that he would deserve our graces,  
Or we shall beare him such witness  
Of sinne, and of his wretchednesse,  
And down his lose so wide renne  
That all quicke we shoulde him brenne,  
Or els yeve him such penaunce,  
That is well worse than the pitaunce.

"For thou shalt never for nothing  
Con known aright by hir clothing  
The traitours full of trecherie,  
But thou hir werkes can espie.

"And ne had the good keeping be  
Whylome of the universite,  
That keepeth the key of Christendome,  
We had been tourmentid all and some.

"Such been the stinking prophetie,  
N'is none of hem, that good prophet is,  
For they through wicked entention,  
The yere of the incarnation  
A thousand and two hundred yere,  
Five and fiftie ferther ne nere,  
Broughten a booke with sorrie grace,  
To yeven ensample in common place,  
That saied thus, though it were fable,  
This is the gospell perdurable,  
That fro the Holy Ghost is sent.  
Well were it worthe to be brent.  
Entitled was in such manere  
This booke, of which I tell here,  
There nas no wight in all Paris,  
Before our ladie at parvis,  
That they ne might the booke buy,  
The sentence pleased hem well truly.  
To the copie, if him talent tooke  
Of the evangelistes booke,  
There might he see by great traisoun  
Full many a false comparisoun.

"As much as through his grete might  
Be it of heate or of light,  
The Sunne surmounteth the Moone,  
That troubler is, and chaungeth soone,  
And the nutte kernel the shell,  
I scorne nat that I you tell:

"Right so withouten any gile  
Surmounteth this noble evangile,  
The word of any evangelist,  
And to hir title they taken Christ,  
And many such comparisoun,  
Of which I make no mentioun,  
Might menne in that booke find,  
Who so could of hem have mind.

"The universite that tho was asleepe  
Gan for to braide, and taken keepe,  
And at the noise, the head up cast,  
Ne never sithen slept it fast,  
But up it stert, and armes tooke,  
Ayenst this false horrible booke,  
All ready battaile for to make,  
And to the judge the booke they take.

"But they that broughten the booke there  
Hent it anone away for feare,

They n'olde shew it no more a dele,  
But than it kept, and kepen welc,  
Till such a time that they may see,  
That they so stronge woxen bee,  
That no wight may hem well withstond,  
For by that booke they durst not stound,  
Away they gonne it for to bere,  
For they ne durst not answeere  
By exposition no glose  
To that that clerkes woll appose  
Ayenst the cursednesse ywis  
That in that booke written is.

"Now wote I nat, ne I can nat see  
What manner end that there shall bee  
Of all this that they hide,  
But yet algate they shall abide,  
Till that they may it bette defend,  
This trow I best woll be hir end.

"Thus Antichrist abiden we,  
For we ben all of his meine,  
And what man that woll not be so,  
Right soone he shall his life forgo.  
We woll a people upon him arise,  
And through our guile doen him cease,  
And him on sharpe speares rive,  
Or other waies bring him fro live,  
But if that he woll follow ywis,  
That in our booke written is.

"Thus much woll our booke signife,  
That while Peter had maistrie  
May never Iohn shew well his might.

"Now have I you declared right,  
The meaning of the barke and rinde,  
That maketh the entencions blinde,  
But now at erst I woll begin,  
To expounse you the pith within,  
And the seculers comprehend,  
That Christes lawe woll defend,  
And should it kepen and maintainen  
Ayenst hem that all sustenen,  
And falsely to the people teachen,  
That Iohn betokeneth hem to preachen,  
That there n'is law covenable,  
But thilke gospels perdurable,  
That fro the Holy Ghost was sent  
To turne folke that ben miswent.

"The strength of Iohn they understond,  
The grace in which they say they stond,  
That doeth the sinfull folke convert,  
And hem to Jesu Christ revert,  
Full many another horriblee,  
May menne in that booke see,  
That been commaunded doubtlesse  
Ayenst the law of Rome expresse,  
And all with Antichrist they holden,  
As men may in the booke beholden.

"And than commaunden they to sleen,  
All tho that with Peter been,  
But they shall never have that might,  
And God toforne, for strife to fight,  
That they ne shall ynough find,  
That Peters law shall have in mind,  
And ever hold, and so mainteen,  
That at the last it shall be seen,  
That they shall all come thereto,  
For ought that they can speake or do.

"And thilke lawe shall not stond,  
That they by Iohn have understond,  
But maugre hem it shall adoun,

And been brought to confusioun.

"But I woll stint of this matere,  
For it is wonder long to here,  
But had that ilke booke endured,  
Of better estate I were ensured,  
And friendes have I yet pardee,  
That han me set in great degree.

"Of all this world is emperour  
Guile my father, the trechour,  
And empresse my mother is,  
Maugre the Holy Ghost ywis,  
Our mightie linage and our rout  
Reigneth in every reigne about,  
And well is worthy we ministers be,  
For all this worlde governe we,  
And can the folke so well deceive,  
That none our guile can perceive,  
And though they doen, they dare not say,  
The sooth dare no wight bewray.

"But he in Christes wrath him lendeth,  
That more than Christ my brethren dredeth,  
He n'is no full good champion,  
That dredeth such similation,  
Nor that for paine woll refusun,  
Us to correct and accusen.

"He woll not entremete by right,  
Ne have God in his eyesight,  
And therefore God shall him punice;  
But me ne recketh of no vice,  
Sithen men us loven comunably,  
And holden us for so worthy,  
That we may folke repreve echone,  
And we n'll have repreve of none:  
Whom shoulde folke worshippen so,  
But us that stinten never mo  
To patren while that folke may us see,  
Though it not so behind hem be.

"And where is more wood follie,  
Than to enhance chivalrie,  
And love noble men and gay,  
That jolly clothes wearen alway  
If they be such folke as they seemen,  
So cleane, as men hir clothes demen,  
And that hir wordes follow hir dede,  
It is great pitie out of drede,  
For they woll be none hypocritis,  
Of hem me thinketh grete spight is,  
I cannot love hem on no side.

"But beggers with these hoodes wide,  
With sleigh and pale faces leane,  
And graie clothes nat full cleane,  
But fretted full of tatarwagges,  
And high shoes knopped with dagges,  
That frounceen like a quaille pipe,  
Or bootes riving as a gipe.

"To such folke as I you devise,  
Should princes and these lordes wise,  
Take all hir landes and hir things,  
Both warre and peace in governinge,  
To such folke should a prince him jeve,  
That would his life in honour live.

"And if they be nat as they seme,  
They serven thus the world to queme.  
There would I dwell to deceive  
The folke, for they shall nat perceive.

"But I ne speake in no such wise,  
That men should humble habite disise,

So that no pride there under be,  
No man should hate, as thinketh me,  
The poore man in such clothing,  
But God ne preiseth him nothing,  
That saith he hath the world forsake,  
And hath to worldly glory him take,  
And woll of such delices use,  
Who may that begger well excuse!

"That papelarde, that him yeeldeth so,  
And woll to worldly ease go,  
And saith that he the world hath left,  
And greedily it gripeth eft,  
He is the hound, shame is to saine,  
That to his casting goeth againe.

"But unto you dare I not lie,  
But might I feelen or espie,  
That ye perceived it nothing,  
Ye should have a starke leasing:  
Right in your hond thus to beginne,  
I nolde it let for no sinne."

The god lough at the wonder tho,  
And every wight gan lough also,  
And saied: "Lo here a man right,  
For to be trustie to every wight."

"False Semblaunt," (quod Love) "say to mee,  
Sith I thus have avaanced thee,  
That in my court is thy dwelling,  
And of ribaundes shalt be my king,  
Wolt thou well holden my forwardes?"

"Yea, sir, from hence forwardes,  
Had never your father here beforne,  
Servaunt so true, sith he was borne."

"That is ayenst all nature."  
"Sir, put you in that aventure,  
For though ye borowes take of me,  
The sikerer shall ye never be  
For hostages, ne sikernesse,  
Or chartres, for to beare witness:  
I take your selfe to record here,  
That men ne may in no manere  
Tearen the wolfe out of his hide,  
Till he be slaine backe and side,  
Though men him beat and all defile,  
What wene ye that I woll beguile?"

"For I am clothed meekely,  
There under is all my treachery,  
Mine herte chaungeth never the mo  
For none habite, in which I go;  
Though I have chere of simplenesse,  
I am not wearie of shreudnesse,  
My lemman, strained Abstinence,  
Hath mister of my purveiaunce,  
She had full long ago be dede,  
Nere my counsaile and my rede;  
Let her alone, and you and mee."

And Love answered, "I trust thee  
Without borrow, for I woll none."

And False Semblaunt the thefe anon,  
Right in that ilke same place,  
That had of treason all his face,  
Right blacke within, and white without,  
Thanking him, gan on his knees lout.

"Than was there nought, but every man  
Now to assaute, that sailen can"  
(Quod Love) "and that full hardely."  
Than armed they hem comenly  
Of such armour as to hem fell.

Whan they were armed fiers and fell,  
They went hem forth all in a rout,  
And set the castle all about;  
They will not away for no dread,  
Till it so be that they ben dead,  
Or till they have the castle take,  
And foure battels they gan make,  
And parted hem in foure anone,  
And tooke hir way, and forth they gone,  
The foure gates for to assaile,  
Of which the keepers woll not faile,  
For they ben neither sickne ne dede,  
But hardie folke, and strong in dede.

Now woll I sain the countenance  
Of False Semblaunt, and Abstinence,  
That ben to Wicked Tongue went;  
But first they held hir parliament,  
Whether it to doen were,  
To maken hem be knowen there,  
Or els walken forth disguised:  
But at the last they devised,  
That they would gone in tapinage,  
As it were in a pilgrimage,  
Like good and holy folke unfained:  
And dame Abstinence streined  
Tooke of the robe of cameline,  
And gan her gratche as a bigine.

A large coverchief of thread,  
She wrapped all about her head,  
But she forgate not her psaltere.

A paire of beades eke she bere  
Upon a lace, all of white thread,  
On which that she her beades bede,  
But she ne bought hem never a dele,  
For they were given her, I wote wele,  
God wote of a full holy frere,  
That said he was her father dere,  
To whom she had after went,  
Than any frere of his covent.

And he visited her also,  
And many a sermon saied her to,  
He n'olde let for man on live,  
That he ne would her oft shrive,  
And with so great devotion  
They made her confession,  
That they had oft for the nones  
Two heades in one hood at ones.

Of faire shape I devised her thice,  
But pale of face sometime was shice,  
That false traitouresse untrew,  
Was like that sallow horse of hew,  
That in the Apocalips is shewed,  
That signifieth tho folke beshrewed,  
That been all full of trecherie,  
And pale, through hypocrisie,  
For on that horse no colour is.  
But onely dead and pale ywis,  
Of such a colour enlangoured,  
Was Abstinence ywis coloured,  
Of her estate she her repented,  
As her visage represented.

She had a burdoun all of theft,  
That Guile had yve her of his yeft,  
And a scrippe of faint distresse,  
That full was of elengenesse,  
And forth she walked soberlie:  
And False Semblaunt saynt, je vous die,  
And as it were for such mistere,  
Doen on the cope of a frere,  
With cheare simple, and full pitous,

His looking was not disdeinous,  
Ne proud, but meeke and full peesible.

About his necke he bare a Bible,  
And squierly forth gan he gon,  
And for to rest his limmes upon,  
He had of treason a portent,  
As he were feeble, his way he went,  
But in his sleve he gan to thring  
A rasour sharpe, and well biting,  
That was forged in a forge,  
Which that men clepen coupe gorge.

So long forth hir way they nomen,  
Till they to Wicked Tongue comen,  
That at his gate was sitting,  
And saw folke in the way passing.

The pilgrimes saw he fast by,  
That bearen hem full meekely,  
And humbly they with hem mette,  
Dame Abstinence first him grette,  
And sith him False Semblant salued,  
And he hem, but he not remued,  
For he ne drede him not a dele :  
For when he saw hir faces wele,  
Alway in herte him thought so,  
He should know hem both two,  
For well he knew dame Abstinence,  
But he ne knew not Constrainaunce,  
He knew nat that she was constrained,  
Ne of her theeves life fained,  
But wende she come of will all free,  
But she come in another degree,  
And if of good will she began,  
That will was failed her than.

And False Semblant had he seene also,  
But he knew nat that he was false,  
Yet false was he, but his falsenece  
Ne coud he not espie, nor gesse,  
For Semblant was so sie wrought,  
That falsenece he ne espyed nought :  
But haddest thou knowen him beforne,  
Thou wouldest on a booke have sworne,  
Whan thou him saw in thilke arraie  
That he, that whilome was so gaie,  
And of the daunce Jolly Robiu  
Was tho become a Jacobin :  
But soothly what so men him call  
Frere preachours been good men all,  
Hir order wickedly they bearen  
Such ministres if they weren.

So been Augustins, and Cordileres,  
And Carmes, and eke sacked freres,  
And all freres shode and bare,  
Though some of hem ben great and square,  
Full holy men, as I hem deem,  
Everich of hem would good man seem :  
But shalt thou never of apparence  
Seene conclude good consequence  
In none argument ywis,  
If existence all failed is :  
For men may finde alway sophemo  
The consequence to enveneme,  
Who so that hath had the subtiltee  
The double sentence for to see.

Whan the pilgrimes comen were  
To Wicked Tongue that dwelleth there,  
Hir harneis nigh hem was algate,  
By Wicked Tongue adounne they sate,  
That bad hem nere him for to come,  
And of tidinges tell him some,

And sayd hom : " What case maketh you  
To come into this place now ? "

" Sir," sayd strained Abstinence,  
" We for to drie our penance,  
With hertes pitous and devout,  
Are comen, as pilgrimes gone about,  
Well nigh on foote alway we go  
Full doughty been our heeles two,  
And thus both we ben sent  
Throughout the world that is miswent,  
To yeve ensample, and preach also,  
To fishen sinfull men we go,  
For other fishing, ne fish we,  
And, sir, for that charite,  
As we be wont, herborow we crave,  
Your life to amende Christ it save,  
And so it should you not displease,  
We woulde, if it were your ease,  
A short sermon unto you sain.

And Wicked Tongue answered again,  
" The house " (quod he) " such (as ye see)  
Shall not be warned you for me,  
Saie what you list, and I woll heare."

" Graunt mercie sweet sir deare,"  
(Quod alderfirst) dame Abstinence,  
And thus began she her sentence.

" Sir, the first vertue certaine,  
The greatest, and most souveraigne  
That may be found in any man,  
For having, or for wit he can,  
That is his tongue to refraine,  
Thereto ought every wight him paine :  
For it is better still be,  
Than for to speken harme parde,  
And he that hearkeneth it gladly,  
He is no good man sikerly.

" And sir, aboven all other sin,  
In that art thou most guiltie in :  
Thou speake a jape, not long ago.

" And sir, that was right evil do  
Of a young man, that here repaired,  
And never yet this place apaired :  
Thou saidest he awaited nothing,  
But to deceive Faire Welcoming :  
Ye sayd nothing sooth of that,  
But sir, ye lye, I tell ye plat,  
He ne cometh no more, ne goeth parde,  
I trow ye shall him never see ;  
Faire Welcoming in prison is,  
That oft hath played with you er this,  
The fairest games that he coude,  
Without filth, still or loude.  
Now dare she not her selfe solace,  
Ye han also the man doe chase,  
That he dare neither come ne go,  
What mooveth you to hate him so ?  
But properly your wicked thought,  
That many a false lesing hath thought,  
That mooveth your foule eloquence,  
That jangleth ever in audience,  
And on the folke ariseth blame,  
And doth hem dishonour and shame,  
For thing that may have no preving,  
But likelnesse, and contriving.

" For I dare saine, that Reason deemeth,  
It is not all sooth thing that seemeth,  
And it is sinne to controve  
Thing that is to reprove ;  
This wote ye wele, and sir, therefore

Ye arn to blame the more,  
 And nathelesse, he recketh lite  
 He yeveth not now thereof a mite,  
 For if he thought harme, parlay,  
 He would come and gone all day,  
 He coud himselve not absteine,  
 Now cometh he not, and that is sene,  
 For he ne taketh of it no cure,  
 But if it be through aventure,  
 And lasse than other folke algate,  
 And thou here watchest at the gate,  
 With speare in thine arest alwaie,  
 There muse musard all the daie,  
 Thou wakest night and day for thought,  
 Ywis thy travaile is for nought,  
 And Jelousie withouten faile,  
 Shall never quit thee thy travaile,  
 And skathe is, that Faire Welcoming,  
 Without any trespassing,  
 Shall wrongfully in prison be,  
 There weepeth and languisheth he,  
 And though thou never yet ywis,  
 Agiltest man no more but this,  
 Take not a groefe it were worthy  
 To put thee out of this baily,  
 And afterward in prison lie,  
 And fettred thee till that thou die ;  
 For thou shalt for this sinne dwell  
 Right in the Divels arse of Hell,  
 But if that thou repent thee :  
 Ma fay, thou lyest falsely." (Quod he)  
 "What, welcome with mischaunce now,  
 Have I therefore herboured you.  
 To say me shame, and eke reprove,  
 With sorrie happe to your behove,  
 Am I to day your herbegere  
 Go herber you elsewhere than here,  
 That han a lyer called me,  
 Two tregetours art thou and he,  
 That in mine house doe me this shame,  
 And for my sooth saw ye me blame.  
 Is this the sermon that ye make ?  
 To all the divels I me take,  
 Or else God thou me confound,  
 But er men didden this castle found,  
 It passed not ten dayes of twelve,  
 But it was told right to my selve,  
 And as they sayd, right so told I,  
 He kist the rose privily :  
 Thus sayd I now, and have sayd yore,  
 I n'ot where he did any more.  
 Why should men say me such a thing,  
 If it had been gabbing ?  
 Right so saide I, and woll say yet,  
 I trow I lyed not of it,  
 And with my bemes I woll blow  
 To all neighbours a row,  
 How he hath both comen and gone."  
 Tho spake False Semblant right anone,  
 "All is not gospell out of dout,  
 That men saine in the towne about,  
 Lay no deafe eare to my speaking,  
 I swere you, sir, it is gabbing,  
 I trow you wote well certainly,  
 That no man loveth him tenderly,  
 That saythe him harme, if he wote it,  
 All be he never so poore of wit ;  
 And sooth is also sikerly,  
 This know ye, sir, as well as I,  
 That lovers gladly woll visiten

The places there hir loves habiten :  
 This man you loveth and eke honoureth,  
 This man to serve you laboureth,  
 And clepeth you his freind so deere,  
 And this man maketh you good cheere,  
 And everie man that you meeteth,  
 He you saweweth, and he you greeteth ;  
 He preseth not so oft, that ye  
 Ought of his comming encombred be :  
 There presen other folke on you,  
 Full offer than he doth now,  
 And if his herte him strained so  
 Unto the rose for to go,  
 Ye should him seene so ofte need,  
 That ye should take him with the deed ;  
 He coud his comming not forbear,  
 Though ye him thrilled with a speare ;  
 It n'ere not than as it is now,  
 But trusteth well, I sweare it you,  
 That it is cleue out of his thought.  
 Sir, certes he ne thinketh it nought,  
 No more ne doth Faire Welcoming,  
 That sore abieth all this thing :  
 And if they were of one assent,  
 Full soone were the rose hent,  
 The maugre yours would be.

"And sir, of o thing hearkeneth me,  
 Sith ye this man, that loveth you,  
 Han sayd such harme and shame, now  
 Witteth well, if he gessed it,  
 Ye may well demen in your wit,  
 He n'olde nothing love you so,  
 Ne callen you his friend also,  
 But night and daie he woll wake,  
 The castle to destroy and take,  
 If it were sooth, as ye devise ;  
 Or some man in some manner wise  
 Might it warne him everi dele,  
 Or by himselve perceive wele,  
 For sith he might not come and gone  
 As he was whilom wont to done,  
 He might it soone wite and see,  
 But now all otherwise wote hee.

"Than have ye, sir, all utterly  
 Deserved Hell, and jollyly  
 The death of Hell doubtlesse,  
 That thrallen folke so guiltlesse."

False Semblant so prooveth this thing,  
 That he can none answering,  
 And seeth alwaie such apparaunce,  
 That nigh he fell in repentaunce,  
 And sayd him, "Sir, it may well be.  
 Semblant, a good man seemen ye,  
 And Abstinence, full wise ye seeme,  
 Of o talent you both I deeme,  
 What counsaile woll ye to me yeven ?"

"Right here anon thou shalt be shrive  
 And say thy sinne without more,  
 Of this shalt thou repent sore,  
 For I am priest, and have poste,  
 To shrive folke of most dignite  
 That ben as wide as world may dure,  
 Of all this world I have the cure,  
 And that had never yet persoun,  
 Ne vicarie of no manner toun.

"And God wote I have of thee,  
 A thousand times more pitee,  
 Than hath thy priest parochiall  
 Though he thy friend be speciall.

"I have avauntage, in o wise,

That your priests be not so wise  
Ne halfe so lettred (as am I)  
I am licensed boldly,  
In divinitie for to read,  
And to confessen out of dread.

"If ye woll you now confesse,  
And leave your sinnes more and lesse,  
Without abode, kneele doune anon,  
And you shall have absolution."

\* \* \* \* \*

## TROILUS AND CRESEIDE.

B. I. v. 1—84.

### INCIPIT LIBER PRIMUS.

THE double sorrow of Troilus to tellen,  
That was kinge Priamus sonne of Troy,  
In loving, how his adventures fellen  
From woe to wele, and after out of joy,  
My purpose is, er that I part frȳc  
Thou Theisiphona, thou helpe me for t'endite  
These wofull verses, that wepen as I write.

To thee I clepe, thou goddess of lounment  
Thou cruell furie, sorrowing ever in paine,  
Helpe me that am the sorrowfull instrument,  
That helpeth lovers, as I can complaine:  
For well sit it, the sooth for to saine,  
A wofull wight to have a drery fere,  
And to a sorrowfull tale a sorrie chere.

For I that god of loves servantes serve,  
Ne dare to love, for mine unlikelynesse,  
Prayen for speed, all shoud I therefore sterve,  
So farre am I fro his helpe in derkenesse.  
But nathelesse, if this may done gladnesse  
To any lover, and his cause availle,  
Have he my thanke, and mine be the travaile.

But ye lovers that bathen in gladnesse,  
If any droppe of pite in you be,  
Remembreth you of passed heavinesse  
That ye have felt, and on the adversite  
Of other folke, and thinketh how that ye  
Han felt, that Love durst you displease,  
Else ye han won him with too great an ease.

And prayeth for hem that been in the case  
Of Troilus, as ye may after heare,  
That he hem bring in Heaven to solace.  
And eke for me prayeth to God so deare,  
That I have might to shew in some manere,  
Such paine and woe, as Loves folke endure,  
In Troilus unsely aventure.

And biddeth eke for hem that ben dispeired  
In love, that never will recovered be:  
And eke for hem that falsely ben apeired,  
Through wicked tongues, be it he or she:  
Thus biddeth God for his beniguite,  
So grant hem some out of this world to pace  
That ben dispeired out of Loves grace.

And biddeth eke for hem that ben at ease,  
That God hem graunt aie good perseverance,  
And send hem grace hir loves for to please,  
That it to love be worship and pleasaunce:  
For so hope I my selfe best to avaunce  
To pray for hem, that Loves servaunts be,  
And write hir woe, and live in charite.

And for to have of hem compassion,  
As though I were hir owne brother dere,  
Now hearkeneth with a good ententioun,  
For now woll I go straight to my matere:  
In which ye may the double sorrowes here  
Of Troilus, in loving of Creseide,  
And how she forsoke him er that she deide.

It is well wist, how that the Greekes strong  
In armes with a thousand shippes went  
To Troie wardes, and the cite long  
Besiegeden, nigh ten yeres ere they stent,  
And how in divers wise, and one entent,  
The ravishing to wreake of queen Heleine,  
By Paris don, they wroughten all hir peine.

Now fell it so, that in the toun there was  
Dwelling a lord of great autorite  
A great divine that cleped was Calcas,  
That in science so expert was, that he  
Knew well, that Troie shold destroyed be,  
By answeere of his god, that hight thus,  
Dan Phebus, or Apollo Delphicus.

So whan this Calcas knew by calculing,  
And eke by the answeere of this god Apollo,  
That the Greekes shold such a people bring,  
Thorow the which that Troy must be fordo,  
He cast anone out of the toun to go:  
For well he wist by sort, that Troie shold  
Destroyed be, ye would who so or n'olde.

Wherefore he to departen softly,  
Tooke purpose full, this forknowing wise,  
And to the Greekes host full prively  
He stale anone, and they in courteous wise  
Did to him both worship and servise,  
In trust that he hath cunning hem to rede  
In every perill, which that was to drede.

Great rumour rose, when it was first espied,  
In all the tounes, and openly was spoken,  
That Calcas traitour fled was and alied  
To hem of Grece: and cast was to be wroken  
On him, that falsely hath his faith broken,  
And sayd, he and all his kinne atones,  
Were worthy to be brent, both fell and bones.

Now had Calcas lefte in this mischaunce,  
Unwist of this false and wicked dede,  
A daughter, whiche was in great penaunce,  
And of her life she was full sore in drede,  
And wist ne never what best was to rede:  
And as a widdow was she, and all alone,  
And n'iste to whome she might make her mone.

Creseide was this ladies name aright;  
As to my dome, in all Troies cite  
Most fairest ladie, far passing every wight;  
So angelike shone her native beaute;  
That no mortall thing seemed she:  
And therewith was she so perfect a creature,  
As she had be made in scorning of nature.

This ladie, that all day hearde at care  
Her fathers shame, falshe, and treason,  
Full nigh out of her wit for sorrow and feare,  
(In widdowes habite large of samite brown)  
Before Hector on knees she fell adown,  
And his mercy bad, her selfe excusing,  
With pitous voice, and tenderly weeping.

Now was this Hector pitous of nature,  
And saw that she was sorrowfull begone,  
And that she was so faire a creature,  
Of his goodnesse he gladed her anone,  
And said: "Let your fathers treason gone  
Forth with mischaunce, and ye your selfe in joy  
Dwellet with us while you list in Troy.

"And all the honour that men may do you have,  
As ferforth as though your father dwelt here,  
Ye shull have, and your body shull men save,  
As ferre as I may ought enquire and here:"  
And she him thanked with full humble chere,  
And after would, and it had been his will.  
She took her leve, went home, and held her still.

And in her house she abode with such meine  
As til her honour nede was to hold,  
And while she was dwelling in that cite,  
She kept her estate, and of yong and old  
Full well beloved, and men well of her told:  
But whether that she children had or none,  
I rede it nat, therefore I let it gone.

The thinges fellen as they don of werre,  
Betwixen hem of Troy and Greekes oft,  
For sometime broughten they of Troy it derre,  
And ofte the Greekes founden nothing soft  
The folke of Troy: and thus fortune aloft,  
And under ofte gan hem to whelmen both,  
After her course, aie while that they were wroth.

But how this tounes came to destruction,  
Ne falleth not to purpose me to tell,  
For it were a long digression  
Fro my matter, and you too long to dwell;  
But the Troyan jestes all as they fell,  
In Omer, or in Dares, or in Dite,  
Who so that can, may reden hem as they write.

But though the Greekes hem of Troy in shetten,  
And hir cite besieged all about,  
Hir old usages nolde they not letten,  
As to honouren hir gods full devout,  
But aldermost in honour out of dout,  
They had a relike hight Palladion, ✓  
That was hir trust aboven everychon.

And so befell, when comen was the time  
Of Aprill, whan clothed is the mede,  
With new grene, of lustie veer the prime,  
And with sweet smelling floures white and rede  
In sundrie wise shewed, as I rede,  
The folke of Troie, their observances old,  
Palladions feast went for to hold.

Unto the temple in all their best wise,  
Generally there went many a wight,  
To hearken of Palladions servise,  
And namely many a lustie knight,  
And many a ladie fresh, and maiden bright,  
Full well arraied bothe most and leas,  
Both for the season and the high feast.

Among these other folke was Creseide,  
In widdowes habite blacke: but natheles  
Right as our first letter is now an a,  
In beautie first so stood she makeles,  
Her goodly looking gladed all the prees,  
Nas never scene thing to be praised so derre,  
Nor under cloude blacke so bright a sterre,

As was Creseide, they sayden everichone,  
That her behelden in her blacke wede,  
And yet she stood full lowe and still alone  
Behinde other folke in little brede,  
And nie the dore under shames drede,  
Simple of attire, and debonaire of chere,  
With full assured looking and manere.

This Troilus, as he was wont to guide  
His yonge knightes, lad hem up and doun,  
In thilke large temple on every side,  
Beholding aie the ladies of the tounes,  
Now here now there, for no devotioun  
Had he to none, to reвен him his rest,  
But gan to praise and lacke whom him leas.

And in his walk full fast he gan to waiten,  
If knight or squier of his companie,  
Gan for to sike, or let his eyen baiten  
On any woman, that he coude espie,  
He would smile, and hold it a follie,  
And say hem thus: "O Lord she sleepeth soft  
For love of thee, whan thou turnest full oft.

"I have heard tell pardieux of your living,  
Ye lovers, and eke your lewde observances,  
And which a labour folke have in winning  
Of love, and in keeping such doutaunces,  
And whan your pray is lost, wo and penaunces:  
O, very foolles, blinde and nice be ye,  
There is not one can ware by another be."

And with that word he gan cast up the brow,  
Ascaunces, lo, is this not well yspoken,  
At which the god of love gan looken low,  
Right for despite, and shope him to be wroken.  
He kidded anone his bowe was not broken:  
For sodainly he hitte him at the full,  
And yet as proude a peacocke gan he pull.

O blinde world, o blind entencion,  
How often falleth all the effect contraire  
Of surquedrie and foule presumption,  
For caught is proud, and caught is debonaire :  
This Troilus is clomben on the staire,  
And little weneth that he mote descenden,  
But all day it faileth that fooles wenden. *inter-act*

As proud Bayard beginneth for to skippe  
Out of the way, so pricketh him his corne,  
Till he a lash have of the longe whippe,  
Than thinketh he, "Tho I prauce all beforne  
First in the traise, full fat and new yshorne,  
Yet am I but an horse, and horses law  
I must endure, and with my feeres draw."

So fared it by this fiers and proud knight,  
Though he a worthy kinges sonne were,  
And wende nothing had had suche might,  
Ayenst his will, that should his herte stere,  
Yet with a looke his herte woxe on fire,  
That he that now was most in pride above,  
Woxe sodainly most subject unto love.

Forth ensample taketh of this man,  
Ye wise, proud, and worthy folkes all,  
To scornen Love, which that so soone can  
The freedome of your hertes to him thrall,  
For ever it was, and ever it be shall,  
That Love is he that all things may bind,  
For no man may fordo the law of kind.

That this be sooth hath preved and doth yet,  
For this (I trowe) ye know all and some,  
Men reden not that folke han greater wit  
Than they that han ben most with love ynome,  
And strengest folk been therewith overcome,  
The worthyest and greatest of degree,  
This was and is, and yet man shall it see.

And trueliche that sitte well to be so,  
For alderwisest han therewith ben pleased,  
And they that han ben aldermost in wo,  
With love han ben comforted and most eased,  
And oft it hath the cruell herte appeased,  
And worthy folke made worthier of name,  
And causeth most to dreden vice and shame.

Now sith it may nat goodly be withstond,  
And is a thing so vertuous and kind,  
Refuseth nought to love for to ben bond,  
Sith as him selven list he may you bind ;  
The yerde is bette that bowen woll and wind  
Than that that brest, and therefore I you rede,  
Now followeth him, that so well can you lede.

But for to tellen forth in speciall,  
As of this kinges sonne, of which I told,  
And leuen other thing collaterall,  
Of him thinke I my tale forth to hold,  
Both of his joy, and of his cares cold,  
And his werke, as touching this matere,  
For I it gan, I woll thereto refere.

Within the temple he went him forth playing  
This Troilus, of every wight about,  
Now on this lady, and now on that looking,  
Where so she were of toune, or of without :  
And upon case befell, that through a rout  
His eye peirced, and so deepe it went  
Till on Creseide it smote, and there it stent.

And sodainly for wonder wext astonned,  
And gan her bet behold in thrifty wise :  
"O very God," thought he, "wher hast thou wouned  
That art so faire and goodly to devise !" *inter-act*  
Therewith his herte gan to spread and rise,  
And softe sighed, least men might him here,  
And caught ayen his firste playing chere.

She n'as nat with the most of her stature,  
But all her limmes so well answering  
Weren to womanhood, that creature  
Was never lasse mannish in seeming.  
And eke the pure wise of her meaning  
Shewed well, that men might in her gesse  
Honour, estate, and womanly noblesse.

Tho Troilus, right wonder well withall,  
Gan for to like her meaning and her chere,  
Which scondele deignous was, for she let fall  
Her looke a little aside, in such manere  
Ascaunces, what may I not stonden here,  
And after that her looking gan she light,  
That never thought him seen so good a sight.

And of her looke in him there gan to quicken  
So great desire, and such affection,  
That in his hertes bottomne gan to sticken  
Of her his fixe, and deepe impression:  
And though he earst had pored up and doun,  
Than was he glad his hornes in to shrinken,  
Unnethe wist he how to looke or winke.

Lo, he that lete him selven so cunning,  
And scorned hem that loves paines drien,  
Was full unaware that Love had his dwelling  
Within the subtil streames of her eyen,  
That sodainly him thought he felte dyen,  
Right with her looke, the spirite in his hert,  
Blessed be Love, that thus can folke convert.

She thus in blacke, liking to Troilus,  
Over all thing he stood for to behold :  
But his desire, ne wherefore he stood thus,  
He neither chere made, ne worde told,  
But from aserre, his manner for to hold,  
On other thing sometime his looke he cast,  
And eft on her, while that the service last :

And after this, nat fullliche all awhaped,  
Out of the temple, eselich he went,  
Repenting him that ever he had japed  
Of Loves folke, least fully the discent  
Of scorne fell on himselfe, but what he ment,  
Lest it were wist on any manner side,  
His woe he gan dissimulen and hide.

Whan he was fro the temple thus departed,  
He straight anone unto his pallace turneth,  
Right with her loke through shotten and darterd,  
All faineth he in lust that he sojourneth,  
And all his chere and speech also he bourneth,  
And aie of Loves servaunts every while  
Him selfe to wrie, at hem he gan to smile,

And saied, "Lord, so they live all in lust  
Ye lovers, for the cunningest of you,  
That serveth most ententiflich and best  
Him tite as often harme thereof as prow,  
Your hire is quit ayen, ye, God wote how,  
Not wele for wele, but scorne for good service,  
In faith your order is ruled in good wise.



"In no certaine been your observaunces,  
But it onely a sely few points be,  
Ne nothing asketh so great attendaunces,  
As doth your laie, and that know all ye:  
But that is not the worst, as mote I the,  
But told I you the worst point, I leve,  
All sayd I sooth, ye woulde at me greve.

"But take this: that ye lovers oft eschew,  
Or else done of good entencion,  
Full oft thy ladie wold it misse constrew,  
And deeme it harme in her opinion,  
And yet if she for other encheson  
Be wroth, than shalt thou have a groin anon:  
Lord, well is him that may been of you one."

But for all this, whan that he seeth his time  
He held his peace, none other bote him gained,  
For Love began his feathers so to fume,  
That well unneth unto his folke he fained,  
That other busie needes him distrained,  
So woe was him, that what to done he n'ist,  
But bad his folke to gon where as hem list.

And whan that he in chamber was alone,  
He doune upon his beddes feet him set,  
And first he gan to sike, and eft to grone,  
And thought aie on her so withouten let,  
That as he sate and woke, his spirit met  
That he her saw and temple, and all the wise  
Right of her looke, and gan it new avise.

Thus gan he make a mirroure of his mind,  
In which he saw all wholly her figure,  
And that he well coud in his herte find  
It was to him a right good aventure  
To love such one, and if he did his cure  
To serven her, yet might he fall in grace,  
Or else, for one of her servantes pace.

Imagining, that travaille nor grame  
Ne might for so goodly one be lorne  
As she, ne him for his desire no shame  
All were it wist, but in prise and up borne:  
Of all lovers, well more than before.  
Thus argued he, in his ginning,  
Full unavisd of his wo coming.

Thus took he purpose Loves craft to sewe  
And thought he would worken privily  
First for to hide his desire in mewe  
From everie wight iborne, all overly,  
But he might ought recovered been thereby,  
Remembering him, that love too wide yblowe  
Yelte bitter fruite, though sweet seed be sowe.

And over all this, full mokell more he thought  
What for to speake, and what to holden inne  
And what to arten, er to love he sought,  
And on a song anone right to beginne,  
And gan louds on his sorrow for to winne:  
For with good hope he gan fully assent,  
Creseide for to love, and nought repent.

And of his song not onely his sentence,  
As write mine authour called Lolius,  
But plainly save our tongues difference,  
I dare well say, in all that Troilus  
Sayd in his song, lo every word right thus,  
As I shall saine, and who so list it heare  
Lo this next verse, he may it finde there.

## THE SONG OF TROIUS.

"If no love is, O God, what feele I so!  
And if love is, what thing and which is he!  
If love be good, from whence cometh my wo!  
If it be wicke, a wonder thinketh me,  
Whan every torment and adversite  
That cometh of him, may to me savery think:  
For aie thurst I the more that iche it drinke.

"And if that at mine owne lust I brenne,  
From whence cometh my wailing and my plaint  
If harme agree me, whereto plaine I thenne,  
I n'ot, ne why unwery that I feint.  
O quicke death, o sweete harme so queint,  
How may of thee in me be such quantite,  
But if that I consent that it so be!

"And if that I consent, I wrongfully  
Complaine ywis: thus possed to and fro,  
All sterelasse within a bote am I  
Amidde the sea, atwixen windes two,  
That in contrary stonden ever mo.  
Alas, what is this wonder maladie!  
For heat of cold, for cold of heat I die."

And to the god of love thus sayed he  
With pitous voles; "O lord, now yours is  
My spirite, which that oughten yours to be,  
You thank I, lord, that han me brought to this:  
But whether goddessse or woman ywis  
She be, I n'ot, which that ye do me serve,  
But as her man I wold aie live and sterre.

"Ye stonden in her eyen mightily,  
As in a place to your vertue digne:  
Wherefore, lord, if my servise or I  
May liken you, so beth to me benigne,  
For mine estate royall here I resigne  
Into her honde, and with full humble cheer,  
Become her man, as to my lady deer."

In him ne deigned sparen blood royall  
The fire of love wherefro God me blesse,  
Ne him forbare in no degree, for all  
His vertue, or his excellent prowess,  
But held him as his thrall love in distresse,  
And brend him so in sundry wise aie newe,  
That sixty times a day he lost his hewe.

So mochell day fro day his owne thought  
For lust to her gan quicken and encrease,  
That everiche other charge he set at nought,  
Forty full oft, his hot fire to cease,  
To seen her goodly looke he gan to prease,  
For thereby to ben eased well he wend,  
And aie the nere he was, the more he brend.

For aie the nere the fire the hotter is,  
This (trow I) knoweth all this compaignie:  
But were he ferre or nere, I dare say this,  
By night or day, for wisdomedome or follie,  
His herte, which that is his brestes eie,  
Was aie on her, that fairer was to scene  
Than ever was Heleine, or Polixene.

Eke of the day there passed not an hour,  
That to himsele a thousand times he sayd,  
"God goodly, to whome I serve and labour  
As I best can, now wold to God Creseide  
Ye woulde on me rue, er that I deide:  
My dere herte alas, mine hele and my hew,  
And life is lost, but ye wold on me rew."

Peter  
1022  
168

All other dredes weren from him fled,  
Both of th'assiege, and his savation,  
Ne in desire none other formes bred,  
But arguments to his conclusion,  
That she on him would have compassion  
And he to ben her man, while he may dure,  
Lo here his life, and from his death his cure.

The sharpe showers fell of armes preve  
That Hector or his other brethren didden  
No made him onely therefore ones meve,  
And yet was he, where so men went or ridden,  
Found one the best, and lengest time abiden  
There perill was, and eke did such travaile  
In armes, that to thinke it was a marvaile.

But for none hate he to the Greekes had,  
Ne also for the rescous of the toun,  
Ne made him thus in armes for to mad,  
But onely lo, for this conclusion,  
To liken her the bet for his renoun :  
Fro day to day in armes so he sped,  
That all the Greekes as the death him dred.

And fro this forth tho reft him love his slepe  
And made his meate his foe, and eke his sorrow  
Gan multiply, that who so tooke keepe,  
It shewed in his hew both even and morow :  
Therefore a tite he gan him for to borow  
Of other sicknesse, least men of him wand  
That the hot fire of love him brend.

And sayd he had a fever, and fared amis,  
But were it certaine I cannot sey  
If that his lady understood not this  
Or fained her she n'ist, one of the twey :  
But well rede I, that by no manner wey  
Ne seemed it that she on him rought,  
Or of his paine, what so ever he thought.

But than felt this Troilus suche wo  
That he was welnigh wood, for aie his drede  
Was this, that she some wight loved so,  
That never of him she would han take heed :  
For which him thought he felt his herte bleed,  
Ne of his woe ne durst he nought begin  
To tellen her, for all this world to win.

But whan he had a space left from his care,  
Thus to himselfe full oft he gan to plaine :  
He sayd, " O foole, now art thou in the snare,  
That whilom japedest at lovers pain :  
Now art thou hent, now gnaw thine owne chain ;  
Thou wert aie woned ech lover reprehend  
Of thing fro which thou canst not thee defend.

" What wold now every lover saine of thee,  
If this be wist ! But ever in thine absence  
Laughen in scorn, and saine, lo there goeth he  
That is the man of greate sapience,  
That held us lovers least in reverence :  
Now thanked be God, he may gon on that daunce  
Of hem that Love list feebly aunce.

" But o, thou wofull Troilus, God would,  
(Sith thou must loven, through thy destine)  
That thou beset wer of soch one, that should  
Know all thy wo, all lacked her pitee :  
But all too cold in love towards thee  
Thy ladie is, as frost in winter Moone,  
And thou furde, as snow in fire is soone.

" God would I were arrived in the port  
Of death, to which my sorow wold me lede :  
Ah lord, to me it were a great comfort,  
Than were I quite of languishing in drede :  
For by my hidde sorrow iblowe in brede,  
I shall bejaped been a thousand time,  
More than that foole, of whose folly men rime.

" But now help God, and ye my sweet, for whom  
I plaine, ycaught ye never wight so fast :  
O mercie, deare herte, and helpe me from  
The death, for I, while that my life may last,  
More than my selfe wold love you to my last,  
And with some frendly look gladeth me swete,  
Though never more thing ye to me behete."

These wordes, and full many another mo  
He spake, and called ever in his compleint  
Her name, for to tellen her his wo,  
Til nigh that he in salte teares was dreint,  
All was for nought, she heard nat his pleint :  
And whan that he bethought on that folie,  
A thousand fold his woe gan multiplie.

Bewailing in his chamber thus alone,  
A friend of his, that called was Pandare, ✓  
Came ones in unware, and heard him grone,  
And saw his friend in such distresse and care.  
" Alas," (quod he) " who causeth all this fare !  
O mercy God, what unhappe may this mene !  
Han now thus sone the Greeks made you lene !

" Or hast thou some remorse of conscience !  
And art now fall in some devotion,  
And wailest for thy sinne and thine offence,  
And hast for ferde caught contrition !  
God save hem, that besieged han our toun,  
That so can laie our jollitie on preesse,  
And bring our lustie folke to holynesse."

These wordes said he for the nones all,  
That with such thing he might him angry maken  
And with his anger done his sorrow fall,  
As for a time, and his courage awaken :  
But well wist he, as far as tongues spoken,  
Ther nas a man of greater hardnesse  
Than he, ne more desired worthinesse.

" What cas," (quod Troilus) " or what aventure  
Hath guided thee to seen me languishing,  
That am refuse of everie creature !  
But for the love of God, at me praying  
Goe hence away, for certes my dying  
Wold thee disease, and I mote nedes deie,  
Therefore goe way, there n'is no more to seie.

" But if thou wene, I be thus sick for drede,  
It is not so, and therefore scorne nought :  
There is an other thing I take of hede,  
Welmore than ought the Grekes han yet wrought,  
Which cause is of my deth for sorow and thought :  
But though that I now tell it thee ne leat,  
Be thou not wroth, I hide it for the best."

This Pandare, that nigh malt for wo and routh,  
Full often sayd, " Alas, what may this be !  
Now friend," (quod he) " if ever love or trouth  
Hath been er this betwixen thee and me,  
Ne doe thou never such a cruelte,  
To hiden fro thy friend so great a care,  
Woet thou not well that I am Pandare !

"I woll parten with thee all thy paine,  
If it so be I doe thee no comfort,  
As it is friendes right, sooth for to saine,  
To enterparten woe, as glad disport  
I have and shall, for true or false report,  
In wrong and right yloved thee all my live,  
Hide not thy woe fro me, but tell it blive."

Than gan this sorrowfull Troilus to sike,  
And sayd him thus, "God leve it be my best  
To tellen thee, for sith it may thee like,  
Yet woll I tell it, though my herte brest,  
And well wote I, thou maigest do me no rest,  
But least thou deeme I trust not to thee  
Now hearke friend, for thus it stant with me.

"Love, ayenst the which who so defendeth  
Him selven most, him alderlest availleth,  
Wit dispaire so sorrowfully me offendeth  
That straight unto the death my herte faileth :  
Thereto desire, so brenningly me assaileth,  
That to been slaine, it were a greater joy  
To me, than king of Grece be aud of Troy.

"Suffiseth this, my full friende Pandare,  
That I have said, for now wotest thou my wo :  
And for the love of God my colde care  
So hide it well, I told it never to mo :  
For harmes mighten followen mo than two  
If it were wist, but be thou in gladnesse,  
And let me sterve unknowne of my distresse."

"How hast thou thus unkindly and long  
Hid this fro me, thou fool !" (quod Pandarus)  
"Peraventure thou maist after such one long,  
That mine avise anone may helpen us :"  
"This were a wonder thing," (quod Troilus)  
"Thou couldest never in love thy selfen wisse,  
How divell maigest thou bringen me to blisse !"

"Ye Troilus, now hearken," (quod Pandare)  
"Though I be nice, it happeth often so,  
That one that of axes doeth full evil fare,  
By good counsaill can keep his frend ther fro :  
I have my selfe seen a blinde man go  
There as he fell, that could looken wide,  
A foole may eke a wise man oft guide.

"A whetstone is no carving instrument,  
But yet it maketh sharpe kerving tolis,  
And after thou wost that I have aught miswent,  
Esclue thou that, for such thing to schole is,  
Thus often wise men bewaren by foolis :  
If thou so doe, thy wit is well bewared,  
By his contrarie is everie thing declared.

"For how might ever sweetnesse have be know  
To him, that never tasted bitternesse !  
No manne wot what gladnesse is I trow,  
That never was in sorrow, or some distresse :  
Eke white by blacke, by shame eke worthines,  
Each set by other, more for other seemeth,  
As men may seen, and so the wise it deemeth.

"Sith thus of two contraries is o love,  
I that have in love so oft assayed  
Grevances, ought connen well the more  
Counsailen thee of that thou art dismayed,  
And eke the ne ought not been evill apaid,  
Though I desire with thee for to beare  
Thine heaveie charge, it shall thee lasse deare.

"I wote well that it fared thus by me,  
As to thy brother Paris, an hierdesse,  
Which that yeteped was Oenone,  
Wrote in a complaint of her heavinesse :  
Ye saw the letter that she wrote I gesse."  
"Nay never yet ywis," (quod Troilus.)  
"Now" (quod Pandare) "hearkeneth, it was thus

"'Phebus, that first found art of medicine,'  
(Quod she) 'and coud in everie wightes care  
Remedie and rede, by herbes he knew fine,  
Yet to himselfe his cunning was full base,  
For love had him so bounden in a snare,  
All for the daughter of king Admete,  
That all his craft ne coud his sorrow bete.'

"Right so fare I, unhappie for me,  
I love one best, and that me smerteth sore :  
And yet peradventure can I reden thee  
And nat my selfe : reprove me no more,  
I have no cause I wote well for to sore,  
As doeth an hauke, that listeth for to play,  
But to thine helpe, yet somewhat can I say.

"And of o thing, right siker mayest thou be,  
That certaine for to dyen in the paine  
That I shall never mo discover thee,  
Ne by my trouth, I keepe nat to restraine  
Thee fro thy love, although it were Helleine,  
That is thy brothers wife, if iche it wist,  
Be what she be, and love her as thee list.

"Therefore as friendfullich in me assure,  
And tell me platte, what is thine encheson,  
And finall cause of woe, that ye endure :  
For doubteth nothing, mine entention  
Nas not to you of reprehension  
To speake, as now, for no wight may bereve  
A man to love, till that him list to leve.

"And weteth well, that both too been viciis,  
Mistrusten all, or else all beleve :  
But well I wote, the meane of it no vice is,  
As for to trusten some wight is a preve  
Of trouth, and forthy would I faine remove  
Thy wrong conceit, and do the some wight trust  
Thy woe to tell : and tell me if thou lust.

"The wise eke sayth, woe him that is alone,  
For and he fall, he hath none helpe to rise :  
And sith thou hast a fellow, tell thy mone,  
For this n'is nought certaine the next wise  
To winnen love, as teachen us the wise,  
To wallow and weep, as Niobe the queene,  
Whose teares yet in marble been yseene.

"Let be thy weeping, and thy drerinesse,  
And let us lesen woe with other speech,  
So may thy wofull time seeme the lesse ;  
Delighte nought in woe, thy woe to setch,  
As doen these foolles, that hir sorrowes echs  
With sorrowe, whan they han misaventurs,  
And lusten nought to sechen other cure.

"Men saine, to wretch is consolation  
To have another fellow in his paine :  
That ought well been our opinion,  
For bothe thou and I of love doe plaine,  
So full of sorrow am I, sooth to saine,  
That certainly, as now no more hard grace  
May sit on me, for why, there is no space

"If God woll, thou art nought agast of me,  
Least I would of thy ladie thee beguile :  
Thou wost thy selfe, whom that I love parde  
As I best can, gone sithen longe while,  
And sithen thou wost, I doe it for no wile,  
And sith I am he, that thou trusteth most,  
Tell me somewhat, since all my woe thou wost."

Yet Troilus, for all this no word said,  
But long he laie still, as he dead were,  
And after this, with siking he abraid,  
And to Pandarus voice he lent his eare,  
And up his eyen cast he : and than in feare  
Was Pandarus least that in frenesye,  
He should either fall or else soone deye.

And sayd, "Awake," full wonderlich and sharpe,  
"What slumbrest thou, as in a litargie ?  
Or art thou like an asse to the harpe,  
That heareth sound, whan men the stringes ply,  
But in his mind, of that no melodie  
May synke him to gladen, for that he  
So dull is, in his bestialite !"

And with this Pandarus of his wordes stent :  
But Troilus to him nothing answerde,  
For why, to tell was nought his entent  
Never to no man, for whome that he so ferde :  
For it is sayd, men maken oft a yerde  
With which the maker is himselfe ybeten  
In sundrie manner, as these wise men tretten

And nameliche in his counsaile telling,  
That toucheth love, that ought been secre .  
For of himselfe it wold inough out spring  
But if that it the bet governed be.  
Eke sometime it is craft to seeme flec  
For thing which in effect men huntun fast :  
All this gan Troilus in his herte cast.

But natheles, whan he had heard him crie,  
Awake he gan, and sike wonder sore :  
And sayd, "My friende, though that I still lie,  
I am not deefe, now peace and erie no more :  
For I have heard thy wordes and thy lore,  
But suffer me my fortune to bewailen,  
For thy proverbes may nought me availen."

"Nor other cure canst thou none for me,  
Eke I n'll not been cured, I wold die :  
What know I of the queene Niobe ?  
Let be thine old ensamples, I thee prey."  
"No friend," (quod Pandarus) "therefore I sey,  
Such is delight of fooles to beweepe  
Hir woe, but to seeken bote they ne keepe."

"Now know I that reason in thee faileth :  
But tell me, if I wiste what she were  
For whome that thee all misaventure aileth,  
Durste thou that I told it in her eare  
Thy woe, sith thou darst not thy self for fear,  
And her besought on thee to han some routh ?"  
"Why, nay," (quod he) "by God and by my trouth."

"What, not as busily" (quod Pandarus)  
"As though mine owne life lay in this need ?"  
"Why, no parde, sir," (quod this Troilus.)  
"And why ?"—"For that thou shouldest never  
speed."  
"Wost thou that well ?"—"Ye, that is out of  
dreed."

(Quod Troilus) "for all that ever ye conne,  
She wold to no such wretch as I be wonne."

(Quod Pandarus) "Alas what may this be,  
That thou dispaired art, thus causelesse ?  
What liveth nat thy ladie, benedicite ?  
How wost thou so, that thou art gracelesse ?  
Such evill is not alway botelesse :  
Why, put not thus impossible thy cure,  
Sith thing to come is oft in aventure."

"I graunt weil that thou endurest wo,  
As sharpe as doth he Tesiphus in Hell,  
Whose stomacke foules tiren evermo,  
That highten vultures, as bookes tell :  
But I may not endure that thou dwell  
In so unskillfull an opinion,  
That of thy woe n'is no curation."

"But ones n'll thou, for thy coward herte,  
And for thine yre, and foolish wilfulness,  
For wantrust tellen of thy sorrowes smert,  
Ne to thine owne helpe do businesse,  
As much as speake a word, yea more or lesse,  
But lyst as he that of life nothing retch,  
What woman living could love such a wretch ?"

"What may she demen other of thy death,  
If thou thus die, and she n'ot why it is,  
But that for feare, is yolden up thy brenth,  
For Greekes han besieged us ywis ?  
Lord, which a thank shalt thou have than of this  
Thus wold she saine, and all the tonn atones,  
The wretch is deed, the divel have his bones."

"Thou mayest alone here weepe, cry, and knele,  
And love a woman that she wote it nought,  
And she will quite it that thou shalt not feel :  
Unknow unkist, and lost that is unsought.  
What, many a man hath love full dere ybought  
Twentie winter that his ladie ne wist,  
That never yet his lady's mouth he kist."

"What, should he therfore fallen in dispair ?  
Or be recreaunt for his owne tene,  
Or slaine himselfe, all be his ladie faire ?  
Nay, nay : but ever in one be fresh and green,  
To serve and love his dere hertes queen,  
And thinke it is a guerdone her to serve  
A thousand part more than he can deserve."

And of that worde tooke heede Troilus,  
And thought anon, what fully he was in,  
And how that south him sayed Pandarus,  
That for to slaien himselfe, might he not win,  
But both doen unmanhood and a sin  
And of his death his ladie nought to wite,  
For of his woe, God wote she knew full lite.

And with that thought, he gan full sore sike,  
And sayd, "Alas, what is me best to doe ?"  
To whome Pandarus sayed, "If thee it like,  
The best is, that thou telle me thy woe,  
And have my trouth, but if thou finde it so  
I be thy boote, or it been full long,  
To peeces doe me drawe, and sithen hong."

"Yea, so sayest thou," (quod Troilus) "alas,  
But God wote it is nought the rather so :  
Full hard it were to helpen in this canne,  
For well finde I, that Fortune is my foun"

Ne all the men that ride con or go,  
May of her cruell whele the harme withstond,  
For as her list, she playeth with free and boud."

(Quod Pandarus) "Than blamest thou Fortune,  
For thou art wroth, ye now at earst I see,  
Wost thou not well that Fortun is commune  
To everie manner wight, in some degree ?  
And yet thou hast this comfort, lo parde,  
That as her joyes moten overgone,  
So mote her sorrowes passen everichone.

"For if her whele stint any thing to tourne,  
Than cesseth she Fortune anone to be :  
Now sith her whele by no way may sojourn,  
What wost thou of her mutabilitie ?  
Whether as thy self lust she wold don by thee,  
Or that she be nought ferre fro thine helping,  
Peraventure thou hast cause for to sing.

"And therefore wost thou what I thee beseech ?  
Let be thy woe, and turning to the ground :  
For who so list have healing of his leech,  
To him behooveth first unwrie his wound :  
To Cerberus in Hell aie be I bound,  
Wer it for my suster all thy sorrow,  
By my will she should be thine to morrow.

"Looke up, I say, and tell me what she is  
Anone, that I may gone about thy need :  
Know ich her aught, for my love tell me this ;  
Than would I hope rather for to speed."  
Tho gan the veine of Troilus to bleed,  
For he was hit, and woxe all redde for shame,  
"Aha," (quod Pandare) "here beginneth game."

And with that word, he gan him for to shake,  
And sayd him thus, "Thou shalt her name tell :"  
But tho gan sely Troilus for to quake,  
As though men should han had him into Hell,  
And sayed, "Alas, of all my woe the well,  
Than is my sweete foe called Creseide,"  
And well nigh with that word for feare he deide.

And whan that Pandare herd her name neven,  
Lord, he was glad, and saied, "Friend so deere,  
Now fare a right, for Joves name in Heaven,  
Love hath beset thee well, be of good cheere,  
For of good name, and wisdom, and manere  
She hath inough, and eke of gentlenessse :  
If she be faire, thou wost thy selfe, I gesse.

"Ne never seie I a more bounteous  
Of her estate, ne a gladder : ne of speech  
A friendlyer, ne more gracious  
For to doe well, ne lasse had ned to seech  
What for to doen, and all this bet to ech  
In honour to as farre as she may stretch :  
A kinges herte seemeth by hers a wretch.

"And forthy, look of good comfort thou be :  
For certainly the first point is this  
Of noble courage, and well ordaine the  
A man to have peace with himselfe ywis :  
So oughtest thou, for nought but good it is,  
To loven well, and in a worthy place,  
Thee ought not clepe it happe, but grace.

"And also thinke, and therewith glad thec,  
That sith the ladie vertuous is all,  
So followeth it, that there is some pitee

Amonges all these other in generall,  
And for they see that thou in speciall  
Require nought, that is ayen her name,  
For vertue stretcheth not himself to shame

"But well is me, that ever I was born,  
That thou beset art in so good a place :  
For by my trowth in love I durst have sworn,  
Thee should never have tidde so fair a grace,  
And wost thou why ? for thou were wont to chace  
At Love in scorn, and for dispite him call  
Saint Idiote, lord of these fooles all.

"How often hast thou made thy nice japes,  
And saied, that Loves servaunts everichone  
Of nicete ben verie goddes apes,  
And some would monche hir meat all alone,  
Ligging a bed, and make hem for to grone,  
And some thou saidest had a blaunch severe,  
And praidest God, they should never kevere.

"And some of hem took on hem for the cold,  
More than inough, so saydest thou full oft ;  
And some han fained oft time and told,  
How that they waken, whan they sleepe soft,  
And thus they would have set hem self a loft,  
And nathelesse were under at the last,  
Thus saydest thou, and japedest full fast.

"Yet saydest thou, that for the more part  
These lovers would speake in generall,  
And thoughten it was a siker art,  
For failing, for to assayen over all :  
Now may I jape of thee, if that I shall ;  
But nathelesse, though that I should deie,  
Thou art none of tho, I dare well seie.

"Now bete thy brest, and say to god of love,  
'Thy grace, lord, for now I me repent  
If I misspake, for now my selfe, I love :'  
Thus say with all thine herte, in good entent."  
(Quod Troilus) "Ah lord, I me consent,  
And pray to thee, my japes thou foryeve,  
And I shall never more while I live."

"Thou sayst wel," (quod Pandare) "and now I hope  
That thou the goddes wrath hast all appeased :  
And sith thou hast wepten many a drop,  
And saied such thing wherwith thy god is plesed,  
Now would never god, but thou were eased :  
And think well she, of whom rest all thy wo,  
Here after may thy comfort been also.

"For thilke ground, that beareth the wedes wick,  
Beareth eke these holsome herbes, as full oft  
Next the foule nettle, rough and thick,  
The rose wexeth, soote, smooth, and soft,  
And next the valey is the hill a loft,  
And next the derke night the glad morowe,  
And also joy is next the fine of sorrow.

"Now looke that attempre be thy bridell,  
And for the best aie suffer to the tide,  
Or else all our labour is on jdell,  
He hasteth well, that wisely can abide :  
Be diligent and true, and aie well hide,  
Be lustie, free, persever in thy servise,  
And all is well, if thou worke in this wise.

"But he that departed is in everie place  
Is no where hole, as writen clerkes wise :  
What wonder is, if such one have no grace ?

Eke wost thou how it fareth of some service,  
As plant a tree or herbe, in sondrie wise,  
And on the morrow pull it up as blive,  
No wonder is, though it may never thrive.

"And sith the god of love hath thee bestowed  
In place digne unto thy worthinesse,  
Stonde fast, for to good port hast thou rowed,  
And of thy selfe, for any heavinesse,  
Hope alwaie well, for but if drerinesse  
Or over-haste both our labour shend,  
I hope of this to maken a good end.

"And wost thou why, I am the lasse asered  
Of this matter with my nece to trete?  
For this have I heard say of wise lered,  
Was never man or woman yet beyete,  
That was unapt to suffer loves hete  
Celestiall, or els love of kind:  
Forthy, some grace I hope in her to find.

"And for to speake of her in speciall,  
Her beautie to bethinken, and her youth,  
It sit her nought, to been celestiall  
As yet, though that her list bothe and kouth:  
And truly it sit her well right nouth  
A worthy knight to loven and cherice,  
And but she doe, I hold it for a vice.

"Wherefore I am, and woll be aye ready  
To paine me to doe you this service,  
For both you to please, this hope I  
Here after, for that ye been both wise,  
And con counsaile keepe in such a wise,  
That no man shall the wiser of it bee,  
And so we maie ben gladded all three,

"And by my trouth I have right now of thee  
A good conceit, in my wit as I gesse:  
And what it is, I woll now that thou see,  
I thinke that sith Love of his goodnesse  
Hath thee converted out of wickednesse,  
That thou shalt been the beste post, I leve,  
Of all his lay, and most his foes greve.

"Ensample why, see now these great clerkes,  
That erren aldermost ayen a law,  
And ben converted from hir wicked werkes  
Throgh grace of God, that lest hem to withdrawe:  
They arn the folke that han God most in awe,  
And strengest faithed been, I understond,  
And con an errour alderbest withstond."

Whan Troilus had herd Pandare assented  
To ben his helpe in loving of Creseide,  
He wext of his wo, as who saith unturmented,  
But hotter wext his love, and than he said  
With sober chere, as though his herte plaid:  
"Now blisfull Venus helpe, ere that I sterve,  
Of thee Pandare I mow some thank deserve.

"But deere friend, how shall my wo be lesse,  
Till this be done! and good eke tell me this,  
How wilt thou saine of me and my distresse,  
Least she be wroth, this drede I most ywis,  
Or woll not heren all, how it is,  
All this drede I, and eke for the manere  
Of thee her Eme, she n'll no such thing here."

(Quod Pandarus) "Thou hast a full great care,  
Lest the chorle may fall out of the Moone:

Why, lord! I hate of thee the nice fare.  
Why entremete of that thou hast to doune  
For Godes love, I bid thee a boone:  
So let me alone, and it shall be thy best."  
"Why frend" (quod he) "than done right as thee  
lest.

"But herke Pandare o word, for I n'olde,  
That thou in me wendest so great follic,  
That to my lady I desiren should,  
That toucheth harme, or any villanie:  
For dredelesse me were lever to die,  
Than she of me ought els understood,  
But that, that might sownen into good."

Tho lough this Pandarus, and anon answerd:  
"And I thy borow, sie no wight doth but so,  
I raught not though she stooode and herd,  
How that thou saiest, but farwell, I woll go:  
Adieu, be glad, God speed us bothe two,  
Yeve me this labour and this businesse,  
And of my speed be thine all the sweetnesse."

Tho Troilus gan doune on knees to fall,  
And Pandare in his armes hent him fast,  
And saide, "Now sie on the Greekes all:  
Yet parde, God shall helpen at the last,  
And dredelesse, if that my life may last,  
And God toforne, lo some of hem shall smerte,  
And yet me a thinketh that this avaunt masterte."

"And now Pandare, I can no more say,  
Thou wise, thou wost, thou maist, thou art all:  
My life, my death, hole in thine hond I lay,  
Helpe me now," (quod he.) "Yes by my trouth  
I shal."

"God yeeld thee friend, and this in speciall"  
(Quod Troilus) "that thou me recommaund  
To her that may me to the death commaund."

This Pandarus tho, desirous to serve  
His full frende, he said in this manere:  
"Farewell, and thinke I woll thy thanke deserve.  
Have here my trouth, and that thou shalt here,"  
And went his way, thinking on this matere,  
And how he best might beseechen her of grace,  
And find a time thereto and a place.

For every wight that hath a house to found,  
He renneth nat the werke for to begin,  
With rakel hond, but he woll biden stound  
And send his hertes line out fro within,  
Alderfirst his purpose for to win:  
All thus Pandare in his herte thought,  
And cast his werke full wisely ere he wrought

But Troilus lay tho no lenger down,  
But anone gat upon his stede baie,  
And in the field he played the lioun,  
Wo was the Greek, that with him met that daye:  
And in the toune, his manner tho forth aye  
So goodly was, and gat him so in grace,  
That eche him loved that looked in his face.

For he became the friendliest wight,  
The gentilest, and eke the most free,  
The thriftiest, and one the best knight  
That in his time was, or els might be:  
Dead were his japes and his cruelte,  
His high port and his manner straunge,  
And each of hem gan for a vertue change.

Now let us stint of Troilus a stound,  
That fareth like a man that hurt is sore,  
And is somedele of aking of his wound  
Yllesed well, but healed no dele more :  
And as an easie patient the lore  
Abite of him that goeth about his cure,  
And thus he driveth forth his aventure.

EXPLICIT LIBER PRIMUS.

PROENE.

B. II. v. 1—109.

Our of these black wawes let us for to saile,  
O winde, now the weather ginneth clere :  
For in the sea the boate hath such travaile  
Of my conning, that unneth I it stere :  
This sea clepe I the tempestuous matere  
Of deepe despayre, that Troilus was in :  
But now of hope the kalendes begin.

O lady mine, that called art Cleo,  
Thou be my spede for this forth, and my Muse,  
To rime well this booke till I have do,  
Me needeth here none other art to use :  
For why, to every lover I me excuse,  
That of no sentement I this endite,  
But out of Latine in my tongue it write.

Wherefore I n'il have neither thank ne blame  
Of all this worke : but pray you mekely,  
Diablameth me, if any word be lame,  
For as mine authour said, so say I :  
Eke though I speake of love unfeelingly,  
No wonder is, for it nothing of new is,  
A blind man cannot judgen well in hewis.

I know, that in forme of speech is change  
Within a thousand yere, and wordes tho  
That hadden prise, now wonder nice and strange  
Thinketh hem, and yet they spake hem so,  
And spedde as well in love, as men now do :  
Eke for to winnen love, in sundry ages,  
In sondry londes sundry ben usages.

And forthy, if it happe in any wise,  
That here be any lover in this place,  
That herkeneth, as the story wold devise,  
How Troilus came to his ladies grace,  
And thinketh, so nolde I not love purchace,  
Or wondreth on his speech or his doing,  
I not, but it is to me no wondring :

For every wight, which that to Rome went,  
Halt nat o pathie, ne alway o manere :  
Eke in some lond were all the gamen shent,  
If that men farde in love, as men done here,  
As thus, in open doing or in chere,  
In visiting, in forme, or said our saws,  
Forthy men sain, ech country hath his laws.

Eke scarcely ben there in this place three,  
That have in love said like, and done in all :  
For to this purpose this may liken thee,  
And thee right nought, yet all is done or shall :  
Eke some men grave in tre, som in stone wall,  
As it betide, but sith I have begonne,  
Mine authour shall I follow, as I konne.

INCIPT LIBER SECUNDUS.

In May, that mother is of moneths glade,  
That the fresh floures, both blew, white, and rede,  
Ben quick ayen, that winter dead made,  
And full of baume is fleting every mede,  
Whan Phebus doth his brighte beames spred,  
Right in the white Bole, it so betidde,  
As I shall sing, on Mayes day the thridde,

That Pandarus, for all his wise speach,  
Felt eke his part of Loves shottes kene,  
That coud he never so well of loving preach,  
It made his hew a day full ofte grene :  
So shope it, that him fill that day a tene  
In love, for which in wo to bed he went,  
And made ere it were day full many a went.

The swallow Frogne, with a sorrowfull lay,  
Whan morrow come, gan make her waimenting  
Why she forshapen was : and ever lay  
Pandare a bed, halfe in a sloubring,  
Till she so nigh him made her waimenting,  
How Tereus gan forth her suster take,  
That with the noise of her he gan awake,

And to call, and dresse him up to rise,  
Remembring him his errand was to done  
From Troilus, and eke his great emprise,  
And cast, and knew in good plite was the Moone  
To done voiage, and tooke his way full soone  
Unto his neeces paleis there beside :  
Now Janus god of entre, thou him guide.

When he was come unto his neeces place,  
"Where is my lady," to her folke (quod he)  
And they him told, and he forth in gan pace,  
And found two other ladies sit and shee,  
Within a paved parlour, and they three  
Herden a maiden hem reden the geste  
Of the siege of Thebes, while hem leste :

(Quod Pandarus) "Madame, God you see,  
With your booke, and all the companie :"  
"Eigh, uncle mine, welcome ywis," (quod shee)  
And up she rose, and by the hond in his  
She tooke him fast, and said, "This night thrice,  
To good mote it turne, of you I met :"  
And with that word, she downe on bench him set.

"Yea, nece, ye shull faren well the bet,  
If God wold, all this yere," (quod Pandarus)  
"But I am sorry that I have you let  
To hearken of your booke, ye praisen thus :  
For Godes love what saith it, tell it us,  
Is it of love, or some good ye me lere !"  
"Uncle" (quod she) "your maistresse is nat here."

With that they gonnen laugh, and tho she seide,  
"This romaunce is of Thebes, that we rede,  
And we have heard how that king Laius deide  
Through Edippus his sonne, and al the dede :  
And here we stinten, at these letters rede,  
How the bishop, as the booke can tell,  
Amphiorax, fell through the ground to Hell."

(Quod Pandarus) "All this know I my selve,  
And all the assiege of Thebes, and the care,  
For hereof ben there makid bookes twelvo :  
But let be this, and tell me how ye fare,

Do way your barbe, and shew your face bare,  
Do way your book, rise up and let us daunce,  
And let us done to May some observaunce."

"Eigh, God forbid!" (quod she) "be ye mad!  
Is that a widdowes life, so God you save!  
By God ye maken me right sore adrad,  
Ye ben so wild, it seemeth as ye rave,  
It sat me well bet aye in a cave  
To bide, and rede on holy saintes lives:  
Let maidens gon to daunce, and yonge wives."

"As ever thrive I," (quod this Pandarus)  
"Yet could I tell o thing, to done you play:"  
"Now uncle dere," (quod she) "tell it us  
For Godes love, is than th'assiege away!  
I am of Greekes ferde, so that I dey:"  
"Nay, nay," (quod he) "as ever mote I thrive,  
It is a thing well bet than suche fye."

"Ye holy God," (quod she) "what thing is that,  
What, bet than suche fye! eigh nay ywis,  
For all this world ne can I reden what  
It shoulde ben; some jape I trow it is,  
And but your selven tell us what it is,  
My wit is for to arede it all to leane:  
As helpe me God, I n'ot what that ye meane."

"And I your borrow, ne never shall," (quod he)  
"This thing be told to you, as mote I thrive:"  
"And why, uncle mine, why so?" (quod she)  
"By God," (quod he) "that woll I tell as blive,  
For prouder woman is there none on live,  
And ye it wist, in all the tounne of Troy:  
I jape nat, so ever have I joy."

Tho gan she wondren more than before,  
A thousand fold, and downe her eyen cast:  
For never sith the time that she was bore,  
To known thing desired she so fast,  
And with a sike, she said him at the last,  
"Now uncle mine, I n'll you not displease,  
Nor asken more, that may do you disease."

So after this, with many wordes glade,  
And friendly tales, and with merry chere,  
Of this and that they speake, and gonnen wade  
In many an unkouth glad and deepe matere,  
As friendes done, whan they bethe yfere,  
Till she gan asken him how Hector ferde,  
That was the tounnes wall, and Greekes yerde.

"Full wel I thanke it God," said Pandarus,  
"Save in his arme he hath a little wound,  
And eke his ~~nece~~ brother Troilus,  
The wise worthy Hector the secound,  
In whom that every vertue list habound,  
And first all trouthe, and all gentleness,  
Wisdom, honour, freedom, and worthinesse."

"In good faith, eme," (quod she) "that liketh me,  
They faren well, God save hem both two:  
For trewliche, I hold it great deintie,  
A kinges sonne in armes well to do,  
And be of good conditions thereto:  
For great power, and morall vertue here  
Is seide isene in one persone ifere."

"In good faith, that is sooth" (quod Pandarus)  
"But by my trouth the king hath sonnes twey,  
That is to meane, Hector and Troilus,  
That certainly though that I shuld dey,

They ben as void of vices, dare I sey,  
As any men that liven under Sunne,  
Hir might is wide yknow, and what they conne.

"Of Hector needeth it no more for to tell,  
In all this world there n'is a better knight  
Than he, that is of worthinesse the well,  
And he well more vertue hath than might,  
This knoweth many a wise and worthy knight:  
And the same prisse of Troilus I sey,  
God helpe me so, I know not suche twey."

"By God," (quod she) "of Hector that is sooth,  
And of Troilus the same thing trow I:  
For dredelesse, men telleth that he dooth  
In armes day by day so worthely,  
And beareth him here at home so gently  
To every wight, that all prisse hath he  
Of hem that me were levest praised be."

"Ye say right sooth ywis," (quod Pandarus)  
"For yesterday, who so had with him been,  
Mighten have wondred upon Troilus,  
For never yet so thicke a swarme of been  
Ne flew, as Greekes from him gan fleen,  
And through the field in every wightes eare,  
There was no crie, but Troilus is there."

"Now here, now there, he hunted hem so fast,  
There nas but Greekes blood, and Troilus,  
Now him he hurt, and him all doun he cast,  
Aye where he went it was arraied thus:  
He was hir death, and shield and life for us,  
That as the day thier durst him none withstond,  
While that he held his bloody sward in hond."

"Thereto he is the friendliest man  
Of great estate, that ever I saw my live:  
And where him list, best fellowship can  
To such as him thinketh able for to thrive."  
And with that word, tho Pandarus as blive  
He toke his leave, and said, "I woll gon hen:"  
"Nay, blame have I, uncle," (quod she then.)

"What eileth you to be weary thus soone,  
And nameliche of women, woll ye so!  
Nay sitteth doune, by God I have to done  
With you, to speake of wisdoms er ye go:"  
And every wight that was about hem tho,  
That heard that, gan ferre away to stond,  
While they two had all that hem list in hond.

Whan that her tale all brought was to an end  
Of her estate, and of her governaunce,  
(Quod Pandarus) "Now time is that I wend,  
But yet I say, ariseth, let us daunce,  
And cast your widdows habit to mischaunce:  
What list you thus your selfe to disfigure,  
Sith you is tidde so glad an aventure!"

"But well bethought: for love of God," (quod she)  
"Shall I not weten what ye meane of this?"  
"No, this thing asketh leaser tho," (quod he)  
"And eke me would full much greve ywis.  
If I it told, and ye it toke amis:  
Yet were it bette my tongue to hold still,  
Than say a sooth, that were ayenst your will."

"For nece mine, by the goddesse Minerve,  
And Jupiter, that maketh the thunderring,  
And the blisfull Venus, that I serve,  
Ye ben the woman in this world living



Withouten paramours, to my weting,  
That I best love, and lothest am to greve,  
And that ye weten well your selfe, I leve."

"Ywis mine uncle," (quod she) "graunt mercy,  
Your friendship have I founden ever yet,  
I am to no man beholden truly  
So much as you, and have so little quit :  
And with the grace of God, emforth my wit  
As in my guilt, I shall you never offend,  
And if I have ere this, I woll amend."

"But for the love of God I you beseech  
As ye be he that I love most and trist,  
Let be to me your fremed manner speech,  
And say to me your nece what you list :"  
And with that word her uncle anon her kist,  
And said, "Gladly my leve nece so dere,  
Take it for good that I shall say you here."

With that she gan her eien doune to cast,  
And Pandarus to coughe gan a lite,  
And said : "Neece, alway lo, to the last,  
How so it be, that some men hem delite  
With subtle art hir tales for tendite,  
Yet for all that in hir entention,  
Hir tale is all for some conclusion."

"And sith the end is every tales strength,  
And this matter is so belovedly,  
What should I paint it or drawn it on length  
To you, that ben my friend so faithfully !"  
And with that word he gan right inwardly  
Beholden her, and looken in her face,  
And said, "On such a mirrour much good grace."

Than thought he thus, "If I my tale endite  
Ought hard, or make a processe any while,  
She shall no savour have therein but lite,  
And trow I would her in my will beguile :  
For tender wittes wenen all be wile,  
Whereas they con nat plainlich understand :  
Forthy her wit to serven woll I fond."

And looked on her in a busie wise,  
And she was ware that he beheld her so :  
"Ah lord," (quod she) "so fast ye me advise,  
Saw ye me never ere now, what say ye no !"  
"Yes, yes," (quod he) "and bet woll ere I go :  
But by my trouth I thought now, if ye  
Be fortunate : for now men shall it see."

"For every wight some goodly aventure,  
Sometime is shape, if he it can receiven :  
But if he n'll take of it no cure  
Whan that it cometh, but wilfully it weiven :  
Lo, neither case nor fortune him deceiven,  
But right his own slouth and wretchednesse :  
And such a wight is for to blame, I gesse."

"Good aventure, O belle nece, have ye  
Full lightly founden, and ye conne it take :  
And for the love of God, and eke of me,  
Catch it anone, least aventure slake :  
What should I lenger processe of it make,  
Yeve me your hond, for in this world is non,  
If that you list, a wight so well begun."

"And sith I speake of good ententioun,  
As I to you have told well here beforne,  
And love as well your honour and renoun,  
As any creature in all the world yborne :

By all the othes that I have you sworne,  
And ye be wroth therefore or wene I lie,  
Ne shall I never seene you eft with eie."

"Beth nat agast, ne quaketh nat, whereto !  
Ne chaunge nat for fere so your hew,  
For hardely the worst of this is do :  
And though my tale as now be to you new,  
Yet trust alway : ye shall me finde true,  
And were it thing that me thought unfitting,  
To you ne would I no such tales bring."

"Now, my good eme, for Godes love I prey,"  
(Quod she) "come off tell me what it is :  
For both I am agast what ye woll say,  
And eke me longeth it to wit ywis :  
For whether it be well, or be amis,  
Say on, let me not in this feare dwell."  
"So woll I done, now hearkeneth I shall tell :

"Now, nece mine, the kinges own dere soun,  
The good, wise, worthy, fresh, and free,  
Which alway for to done well is his wonne,  
The noble Troilus so loveth thee,  
That but ye helpe, it woll his bane be,  
Lo here is all, what should I more sey !  
Doth what you list, to make him live or dey"

"But if ye let him die, I woll sterven,  
Have here my trouthe, nece, I nill not lien,  
All should I with this knife my throte kerven  
With that the teares burst out of his eien,  
And said, "If that ye done us both dien  
Thus guilelesse, than have ye fished faire :  
What mend ye, though that we both apaire !"

"Alas, he which that is my lord so dere,  
That trewe man, that noble gentle knight,  
That nought desireth but your friendly chere,  
I see him dien, there he goeth upright :  
And hasteth him with all his fulle might  
For to ben alaine, if his fortune assent,  
Alas that God you such a beauteie sent."

"If it be so that ye so cruell be,  
That of his death you listeth nought to retch,  
That is so trew and worthy as we see,  
No more than of a japer or a wretch,  
If ye be such, your beaute may nat stretch,  
To make amendes of so cruell a dede :  
Avisement is good before the nede."

"Wo worth the faire gemme vertulesse,  
Wo worth that hearbe also that doth no bote,  
Wo worth the beauty that is ruthlesse,  
Wo worth that wight that trede ech under fote  
And ye that ben of beauteie croppe and rote,  
If therewithall in you ne be no routh,  
Than is it harme ye liven by my trouth."

"And also thinke well, that this is no gaud,  
For me were lever, thou, I, and he  
Were honged, than I should ben his baud,  
As high as men might on us all ysee :  
I am thine eme, the shame were to mee,  
As well as thee, if that I should assent  
Through mine abet, that he thine honour abet"

"Now understand, for I you nought requere  
To bind you to him, through no behest,  
Save onely that ye make him better chieere  
Than ye han don or this, and more feste,

So that his life be saved at the leste :  
This al and some, and plainly our entento,  
God helpe me so, I never other mente.

"Lo, this request is nought but skill ywis,  
Ne doubt of reason parde is there none :  
I set the worst, that ye dreden this,  
Men would wonder to seen him come and gone :  
There ayenst answer I thus anone,  
That every wight, but he be foole of kind,  
Woll deeme it love of frendship in his mind.

"What, who woll demen tho he see a man  
To temple gone, that he the images eateth ?  
Thinke eke, how well and wisely that he can  
Govern himselfe, that he nothing foryetteth,  
That wher he cometh, he pris and thonk him getteth ;  
And eke thereto he shal come here so seld,  
What force were it, though all the toun beheld.

"Such love of friends reigneth thorow al this toun :  
And wrie you in that mantle evermo,  
And God so wis be my salvatioun  
As I have sayd, your best is to do so :  
But, good nece, alway to stint his wo,  
So let your daunger sugred ben alite,  
That of his death ye be not all to wite."

*Creseide*, which that herd him in this wise,  
Thought, "I shall felen what he meaneth ywis :"  
"Now eme," (quod she) "what would ye devise ?  
What is your rede, I should done of this ?"  
"That is well said," (quod he) "certaine best is,  
That ye him love ayen for his loving,  
And love for love is skilfull gerdoning.

"Thinke eke how elde wasteth every liour  
In each of you a part of beaute,  
And therefore, ere that age the devour,  
Go love, for old there woll no wight of thee :  
Let this proverbe, a lore unto you bee,  
'Too late yware' (quod beaute) 'whan it past,  
And elde daunteth daunger, at the last.'

"The kinges foole is wont to crie aloud,  
Whan that he thinketh a woman bereth her hie,  
'So longe mote ye liven, and all proud,  
Till crowes feet growen under your eie,  
And send you than a mirrour in to prie,  
In which that ye may see your face a morow.'  
Nece, I bid him wish you no more sorow."

With this he stint, and caste down the head,  
And she began to brest and wepe anone,  
And said, "Alas for wo, why nere I dead,  
For of this world the faith is all agone :  
Alas, what shoulde straunge unto me done,  
Whan he that for my best frende I wend,  
Rate me to love, and should it me defend.

"Alas, I would have trusted doubteles,  
That if that I, through my disaventure,  
Had loved either him or Achilles,  
Hector, any other creature,  
Ye nolde have had mercy ne measure  
On me, but alway had me in reprev :  
This false world alas, who may it leve !

"What ! is this all the joy and all the feast ?  
Is this your rede ? is this my blisfull caas ?  
Is this the very mede of your behest ?  
Is all this painted processe said (alas)

Right for this fine ! O lady mine Pallas,  
Thou in this dredefull case for me purvey,  
For so astonied am I, that I dey."

With that she gan full sorrowfully to sike,  
"Ne may it be no bet," (quod Pandarus)  
"By God I shall no more come here this weke,  
And God toforne, that am mistrusted thus :  
I see well now ye setten light of us,  
Or of our death, alas, I wofull wretch,  
Might he yet live, of me were nought to retch.

"O cruell god, O dispitous Marte,  
O furies thre of Hell, on you I crie,  
So let me never out of this house depart,  
If that I meant harme or villanie :  
But sith I see my lord mote needes die,  
And I with him, here I me shrive and sey,  
That wickedly ye done us both to dey.

"But sith it liketh you, that I be dead,  
By Neptunus, that god is of the see,  
Fro this forth shall I never eaten bread,  
Till that I mine owne herte blood may see :  
For certaine I woll die as soone as hee."  
And up he stert, and on his way he caught,  
Till she againe him by the lappe caught.

*Creseide*, which that well nigh starf for feare,  
So as she was the fearfulest wight  
That might be, and heard eke with her eare,  
And saw the sorrowfull earnest of the knight,  
And in his praier saw eke none unright,  
And for the harme eke that might fall more,  
She gan to rew and dread her wonder sore.

And thought thus, "Unhapes do fallen thicke  
Alday for love, and in such manner caas,  
As men ben cruell in hemselfe and wicke :  
And if this man ales here himselfe, alas,  
In my presence, it n'll be no solas,  
What men would of it deme I can nat say,  
It needeth me full slightly for to play."

And with a sorowfull sigh, she said thrie,  
"Ah, Lord, what me is tidde a sorry chaunce,  
For mine estate lieth in jeopardie,  
And eke mine emee life lieth in ballaunce :  
But nathelesse, with Godes governaunce  
I shall so done, mine honour shall I keepe,  
And eke his life, and stinte for to weepe.

"Of harmes two, the losse is for to chese,  
Yet had I lever maken him good chere  
In honour, than my emes life to lese,  
Ye saine, ye nothing eles me requere."  
"No wis," (quod he) "mine owne nece so dere."  
"Now well" (quod she) "and I woll done my pweine  
I shall mine herte ayen my lust constraine.

"But that I nill nat holden him in hond,  
Ne love a man, that can I naught ne may,  
Ayenst my will, but eles woll I fonde,  
Mine honour save, plesen him fro day to day,  
Thereto nolde I not ones have said nay,  
But that I dredde, as in my fantasie :  
But cesse cause, als cesseth maladie.

"But here I make a protestacion,  
That in this processe if ye deper go,  
That certainly, for no salvation  
Of you, though that ye scriven bothe two,

Though all the world on o day be my fo,  
Ne shall I never on him have other routhes :  
" I graunt wel," (quod Pandare) by my trouthe.

" But maie I trust well to you," (quod he)  
" That of this thing that ye han hight me here  
Ye woll it holde truly unto me !"  
" Yea doubtlesse," (quod she) " mine uncle dere."  
" Ne that I shall have cause in this matere "  
(Quod he) " to plain, or after you to preach !"  
" Why no parde, what nedeth more speach."

Tho fell they in other tales glade  
Till at the last, " O good Erme," (quod she tho)  
" For love of God which that us bothe made,  
Tell me how first ye wisten of his wo :  
Wot none of it but ye !" he said " No :"  
" Can he well speake of love," (quod she) " I preic ?  
Tell me, for I the bet shall me purveie."

Tho Pandarus a litel gan to smile,  
And saied : " By my trouth I shall now tell,  
This other daie, nat gon full long while,  
Within the paleis gardin by a well  
Gan he and I, well halfe a day to dwell,  
Right for to speaken of an ordinaunce,  
How we the Grekes mighten disavaunce.

" Sone after that we gone for to lepe,  
And casten with our dartes to and fro :  
Till at the last, he saied, he would slepe,  
And on the grasse adoune he laied him tho,  
And I after gan to romen to and fro,  
Till that I heard, as I walked alone,  
How he began full wofully to grone.

" Tho gan I stalke him softly behind,  
And sikerly the sothe for to saine,  
As I can clepe ayen now to my mind,  
Right thus to love he gan him for to plain,  
He saied : ' Lorde, have routh upon my pain,  
All have I been rebell in mine entent,  
Now (mea culpa) lord I me repent.

" O God, that at thy disposicion  
Ledest the fine, by just purveiaunce  
Of every wight, my lowe confession  
Accept in gree, and sende me soche penaunce  
As liketh thee, but from me disesperaunce,  
That may my ghost departe away fro the,  
Thou be my shilde, for thy beniguite.

" For certes, lorde, so sore hath she me wounded  
That stode in blacke, with loking of hir iyen,  
Tha' to mine hertes botome it is yfounded  
Through which I wot, that I must nedes dien ;  
This is the worst, I dare me nought bewrien,  
And well the hote been the gledes rede  
That men hem wren with ashen pale and dede.'

" With that he smote his hedde adoune anone  
And gan to muttre, I na't what truly,  
And I with that gan still awaie to gone  
And lete thereof, as nothing wist had I,  
And come again anon and stode him by  
And saied, ' Awake, ye slepen all to long :  
It seemeth nought that love doth you wrong.

" That slepen so that no man maie you wake ;  
Who seie ever er this so dull a man !"  
" Ye, frende," (quod he) " doe ye your heddes ake  
For love, and let me liven as I can."

But lorde though he for wo was pale and wan ;  
Yet made he tho as fresh a countenance,  
As though he should have led the newe daunce.

" This passed forth, till now this other daie  
It fell that I come roming all alone  
Into his chambre, and founde how that he laie  
Upon his bedde : but man so sore grone  
Ne heard I never, and what was his mone  
Ne wist I nought, for as I was comming  
All sodainly he left his complaining.

" Of whiche I toke somewhat suspicion,  
And nere I come, and found him wepe sore ;  
And God so wise be my salvation,  
As never of thing had I no routh more :  
For neither with engine, ne with no lore,  
Unnethes might I fro the death him kepe,  
That yet fele I mine herte for him wepe.

" And God wot never sith that I was borne  
Was I so busie no man for to preache,  
Ne never was to wight so depe sworne,  
Er he me told, who might been his leache ;  
But not to you rehearsen all his speach,  
Or all his wofull wordes for to sewne,  
Ne bid me nought, but ye woll se me swone.

" But for to save his life, and eles nought,  
And to none harme of you, thus am I driven,  
And for the love of God that us hath wrought  
Soche chere him doth, that he and I maie liven ;  
Now have I plat to you mine herte shriven,  
And sith ye wote that mine entent is cleane  
Take hede thereof, for none evill I meane.

" And right good thrift, I pray to God have ye,  
That han socie one yeaught withouten net,  
And be ye wise, as ye be faire to se,  
Well in the ring, than is the rubie set ;  
There were never two so well ymet  
Whan ye been his all hole, as he is your :  
There mightie God yet graunt us to se the hour."

" Naie thereof spake I nat : A ha !" (quod she)  
" As helpe me God, ye shenden every dele :"  
" A mercie, dere nece, anon" (quod he)  
" What so I spake, I ment nought but wele,  
By Mars the god, that helmed is of stele :  
Now beth not wroth, my blood, my nece dere."  
" Now well," (quod she) " foryeven be it here."

With this he toke his leave, and home he went,  
Ye, Lord, how he was glad, and well bigon :  
Creseide arose, no lenger she ne shent,  
But streight into her closet went anon,  
And set her doune, as still as any stone,  
And every word gan up and doune to wind,  
That he had said as it came her to mind.

And woxe somdele astonied in her thought,  
Right for the newe case, but whan that she  
Was full avised, tho found she right nought,  
Of perill, why that she ought aferde be :  
For man may love of possibilite  
A woman so, his herte may to brest,  
And she nat love ayen, but if her lest.

But as she sat alone, and thought thus,  
Th'ascrie arose at skarmoch all without,  
And men cried in the strete, " Se Troilus  
Hath right now put to flight the Grekes rout."

With that gonne all her meine for to shout :  
 "A, go we se, cast up the gates wide,  
 For through this strete he mote to paleis ride."

For other waie is fro the gates none,  
 Of Dardanus, there open is the cheine :  
 With that come he, and all his folke anon  
 An easie pace riding, in routes twaine,  
 Right as his happy day was, soth to seine :  
 For which men saith, may not distourbed be  
 That shall betide of necessaite.

This Troilus sat on his baie stede  
 All armed save his head full richely,  
 And wounded was his horse, and gan to blede,  
 On which he rode a pace full softly :  
 But such a knightly sight truly  
 As was on him, was nat withouten faile  
 To loken on Mars, that god is of bataille.

So like a man of armes, and a knight  
 He was to seen, fulfilled of high prowesse,  
 For both he had a body, and might  
 To doen that thing, as well as hardinesse,  
 And eke to seen him in his geare dresse  
 So freshe, so yong, so welody semed he,  
 It was an heaven upon him for to se.

His helme to hewen was in twenty places,  
 That by a tissue hong, his backe behind,  
 His shelde to dashed with awerds and with maces,  
 In which men might many an arowe find,  
 That thirled had both horn, nerfe, and rind :  
 And aie the people cried, "Here cometh our joie,  
 And next his brother, holder up of Troie."

For which he wext a little redde for shame  
 When he so heard the people upon him crien.  
 That to behold it was a noble game,  
 How soberliche he cast adoun his eyen :  
 Creseide anon gan all his chere espie,  
 And let it so soft in hir herte sinke,  
 That to her self she said, "Who yave me drinke?"

For all her own thought, she woxe all redde,  
 Remembring her right thus, "Lo this is he,  
 Which that mine uncle swereth he mote dedde,  
 But I on him have mercie and pite :"  
 And with that thought, for pure ashamed she,  
 Gan in her hedde to pull, and that as fast,  
 While he and all the people forth by past.

And gan to cast, and rollen up and doun  
 Witlin her thought his excellent prowesse,  
 And his estate, and also his renoun,  
 His witte, his shape, and eke his gentilnesse,  
 But most her favour was, for his distresse  
 Was all for her, and thought it were a routh,  
 To slaen soche one, if that he meant trouth.

Now might some envious jangle thus,  
 "This was a sodain love, how might it be,  
 That she so lightly loved Troilus !  
 Right for the first sight : ye, parde !"  
 Now whoso saied so, mote he never the :  
 For every thing a ginning hath it nede  
 Er all be wrought, withouten any drede.

For I saie nat that she so sodainly  
 Yafe him her love, but that she gan encline  
 To liken him tho, and I have told you why :  
 And after that, his manhode, and his pine,

Made that love within her gan to mine :  
 For which by processe, and by good service  
 He wanne her love, and in no sodain wise.

And all so blisfull Venus wele araied  
 Satte in her seventh house of Heven tho,  
 Disposed wele, and with aspectes payed,  
 To helpe sely Troilus of his wo :  
 And sothe to sayne, she n'as nat all a foe  
 To Troilus, in his natyvyte,  
 God wote that wele the souner spede he.

Now let us stente of Troilus a throw,  
 That rideth forth, and let us tourne fast  
 Unto Creseide, that heng her hedde full low,  
 There as she satte alone, and gan to cast  
 Whereon she would appoint her at the last,  
 If it so were her eme ne would cesse,  
 For Troilus upon her for to prease.

And lorde so she gan in her thought argue  
 In this matter, of which I have you told,  
 And what to doen best were, and what eschue,  
 That plited she full oft in many fold :  
 Now was hir herte warme, now was it cold.  
 And what she thought, somewhat shall I write,  
 As mine authour listeth for t'endite.

She thought first, that Troilus person  
 She knew by sight and eke his gentelnesse :  
 And thus she said, "All were it nought to doen  
 To grant him love, yet for his worthinesse,  
 It were honor with plaie, and with gladnesse,  
 In honeste with such a lorde to deale,  
 For mine estate, and also for his heale.

"Eke well wote I, my kinges sonne is he,  
 And sith he hath to see me soch delite,  
 If I would utterliche his sight fle,  
 Paraventure he might have me in dispite,  
 Through which I might stond in wors plite :  
 Now were I wise, me hate to purchase  
 Without nede, there I may stande in grace !

"In every thing, I wot there lieth meazure :  
 For though a man forbid drunkennesse,  
 He nought forbiddeth that every creature  
 Be drinkelesse for alway, as I gesse :  
 Eke, sithe I wot for me is his distresse,  
 I ne ought not for that thing him dispie,  
 Sith it is so, he meaneth in good wise.

"And eke I know, of long time agone  
 His thewes good, and that he n'is not nice,  
 No vauntour saine men, certain he is none,  
 To wise is he to doen so great a vice :  
 Ne als I nill him never so cherice,  
 That he shall make avaunt by just cause :  
 He shall me never binde in soche a clause.

"Now set a case, the hardest is ywis,  
 Men might demen that he loveth me :  
 What dishonour were it unto me this !  
 Maie iche hem let of that ! why naie parde :  
 I know also, and alway heare and se,  
 Men loven women all this toun about,  
 Be they the wers ! Why naie withouten dout.

"I thinke eke how, he worthie is to have  
 Of all this noble toun the thriftiest,  
 That woman is, if she her honour save :  
 For out and out he is the worthiest,

Save only Hector, which that is the best,  
And yet his life lieth all now in my cure,  
But soche is love, and eke mine aventure.

"Ne me to love, a wonder is it nought :  
For well wote I my self, so God me spede,  
All woll I that no man wist of this thought,  
I am one the fairest out of drede  
And goodliest, who so that taketh hede :  
And so men saine in all the toune of Troie,  
What wonder is though he of me have joie !

"I am mine owne woman well at ease,  
I thanke it God, as after mine estate,  
Right yong, and stond untied in lustie lease,  
Withouten jelousie, and such debate :  
Shall no husbonde saine to me checke mate,  
For either they be full of jelousie,  
Or maisterfull, or loven novelrie.

"What shall I doen ? to what fine live I thus ?  
Shall I not love, in case if that me lest ?  
What pardieux I am not religious :  
And though that I mine herte set at rest  
Upon this knight, that is the worthiest,  
And kepe alway mine honor, and my name,  
✓ Ry all right it may doe me no shame."

But right as whan the Sunne shineth bright  
In March, that chaungeth oft time his face,  
And that a cloud is put with winde to flight,  
Which ~~overspradde~~ the Sunne, as for a space,  
A cloudy thought gan through her soul pace,  
That overspradde her bright thoughtes all,  
So that for feare almost she gan to fall.

That thought was this : Alas sith I am free,  
Should I now love, and put in jeopardie  
My sikernessee, and thrallen libertie !  
Alas, how durst I thinke that folie !  
May I not well in other folke aspie  
Hir dreddfull joie, hir constraint, and hir pain :  
Ther loveth none, that she ne hath why to plain.

"For love is yet the moste stormie life,  
Right of himself, that ever was begonne :  
For ever some mistrust, or nice strife,  
There is in love, some cloud over the Sunne :  
Thereto we wretched women nothing conne  
Whan us is wo, but wepe and sit and thinke,  
Our wretch is this, our owne wo to drinke.

Also wicked tongues been ay so prest  
To speake us harme : eke men ben so untrue,  
That right anon as ceased is hir lest,  
So cesseth love, and forth to love a newe :  
But harm ydoe is doen, who so it rue :  
For though these men for love hem first to rende,  
Full sharp beginning breaketh oft at ende.

"How oft time may men both rede and seen,  
The treason, that to woman hath be doe !  
To what fine is soche love, I can not seen,  
Or where becometh it, whan it is go,  
There is no wight that wote, I trowe so,  
Wher it becometh, lo, no wight on it sporneth ;  
That erst was nothing, into naught turneth.

"How busie (if I love) eke must I be  
To please hem, that jangle of love, and demen,  
And coven hem, that thei saie no harm of me :  
For though there be no cause, yet hem semen

Al be for harme, that folke hir frendes quemen :  
And who maie stoppen every wicked tong !  
Or sounne of belles, while that they been rong !"

And after that her thought gan for to clere  
And saied, "He which that nothing undertaketh  
Nothing acheveth, be him loth or dere ;"  
And with another thought her herte quaketh  
Than slepeth hope, and after drede awaketh,  
Now hote, now cold, but thus bitwixen tway  
She rist her up, and went hir for to play.

Adoun the staire anon right tho she went  
Into her gardine, with her neces three,  
And up and doun, they maden many a went  
Flexippe and she, Tarbe, and Antigone,  
To plaien, that to joie was to see,  
And other of her women a great rout  
Her followeth in the gardaine all about.

This yerde was large, and railed al the alices  
And shadowed wel, with blosomy bowes grene,  
And benched newe, and sonded all the waies  
In which she walketh arme in arme betwene,  
Till at the last Antigone the shene  
Gan on a Troian song to singen clere,  
That it an Heven was her voice to here.

✓ She saied, "O Love, to whom I have, and shall  
Been humble subject, true in mine entent  
As I best can, to you, lorde, yeye iche all  
For evermore mine hertes lust to rent :  
For never yet thy grace to no wight sent  
So blisfull cause as me, my life to lede  
In all joie and suretie, out of drede.

"The blisfull god, hath me so well beset  
In love ywis, that all that beareth life  
Imaginen ne could how to be bet,  
For, lorde, withouten jelousie or strife  
I love one, which that moste is ententif  
To serven well, unworly or unfained,  
That ever was, and lest with harme distained,

"As he that is the well of worthinesse,  
Of trouth ground, mirroure of goodlihedde,  
Of wit Apollo, stone of sikernessee,  
Of vertue roote, of luste finder and hedde,  
Through whiche is all sorrowe fro me dedde :  
Ywis I love him best, so doeth he me,  
Now good thrift have he, where so ever he be.

"Whom should I thanken but you, god of love,  
Of all this blisse, in which to bathe I ginne.  
And thanked be ye, lorde, for that I love,  
This is the right life that I am inne,  
To flemen all maner vice and sinne :  
This doeth me so to vertue for to entende  
That daie by daie I in my will amende.

"And who that saith that for to love is vice,  
Or thraldome, though he fele it in distresse,  
He either is envious, or right nice,  
Or is unmightie for his shreudnessee,  
To loven, for soch maner folke I gesse  
Diffamen Love, as nothing of him know  
They speaken, but they bent never his lowe.

"What is the Sunne worse of his kind right,  
Though that a man, for feblenesse of his eyen  
Maie not endure on it to se for bright !  
Or love the worst, that wretches on it crien !

No wele is worth, that may no sorowe drien :  
And forthy, who that hath an hedde of verre  
Fro cast of stones ware him in the werre.

"But I with all mine herte and all my might,  
As I have saied, woll love unto my last  
My owne dere herte and all mine owne knight,  
In whiche mine herte growen is so fast  
And his in me, that it shall ever last :  
All dredde I first love him to begin,  
Now wote I well there is no perill in."

And of her song right with that word she stent,  
And therewithall, "Now nece" (quod Creseide)  
"Who made this song now with so good entent ?"  
Antigone answerde anon and saide,  
"Madame ywis the goodliest maide  
Of great estate in all the tounne of Troie  
And led her life in most honour and joie."

"Forsothe so semeth it by her song."  
Quod tho Creseide, and gan therewith to sike,  
And saied : "Lorde, is there soche blisse emoug  
These lovers, as they can faire endite :"  
"Ye, wisse," quod fresh Antigone the white,  
"For all the folke that have or been on live  
Ne can well the blisse of love descrive."

"But wene ye that every wretche wote  
The parfite blisse of love ? why naie ywis :  
They wenen all be love, if one be hote :  
Do waie do waie, they wote nothing of this.  
Men mote asken of sainctes, if it is  
Ought faire in Heven, and why ? for they can tell,  
And aske fendes, if it be foule in Hell."

Creseide unto the purpose naught answerde,  
But saied, "Ywis it woll be night as fast,"  
But every worde, which that she of her herde,  
She gan to printen in her herte fast,  
And aie gan love her lasse for to agast  
Than it did erst, and sinken in her herte,  
That she waxe somewhat able to convarte.

The daies honour, and the Heavens eye,  
The nightes foe, all this clepe I thee Sonne,  
Gan westren fast, and downward for to wrie,  
As he that had his daies course yronne,  
And white thinges woxen al dimme and donne  
For lacke of light, and sterres for to apere,  
That she and all her folke in went yfere.

So whan it liked her to gon to rest,  
And voided weren they that voiden ought,  
She saied, that to slepen well her leste :  
Her women soue till her bedde her brought :  
Whan al was hyst, than lay she still and thought  
Of all this thing the maner and the wise,  
Rehearse it needeth not, for ye been wise.

A nightingale upon a cedre grene  
Under the chamber wall, there as she laie,  
Full loude song aye the Mone shene  
Paraventure, in his birdes wise, a laie  
Of love, that made her herte freshe and gaie,  
That herkened she so long in good entent,  
Till at the last the dedde sleepe her hent.

And as she slept, anon right tho her met,  
How that an egle feathered white as bone,  
Under her brest his long claws yett,  
And out her herte he rent, and that anon,

And did his herte into her brest to gon,  
Of which she nought agrose, ne nothing smart,  
And forth he fieth, with herte left for herte.

Now let her slepe, and we our tales holde  
Of Troilus, that is to paleis ridden,  
Fro the scarmishe of which I you tolde,  
And in his chamber sate, and hath abidden.  
Till two or thre of his messengers yeden  
For Pandarus, and soughten him full fast,  
Till they him found, and brought him at the last.

This Pandarus came leaping in at ones,  
And saied thus, "Who hath been well ybete  
To day with swerdes, and slong stones,  
But Troilus, that hath caught him an hete ?"  
And gan to jape, and saied, "Lord ye swete,  
But rise and let us soue, and go to reste,"  
And he answerde him, "Do we as thee leste."

With all the haste goodly as they might,  
They sped hem fro the souper, and to bedde,  
And every wight out at the doore him dight,  
And whider him list, upon his waie him sped :  
But Troilus thought that his herte bledde  
For wo, till that he heard some tiding,  
And saied, "Frende, shall I now wepe or sing ?"

(Quod Pandarus) "Be still and let me slepe,  
And doe on thy hooche, thine nedes spedde be,  
And chose if thou wolt sing, daunce, or lepe,  
At short wordes thou shalt trowe all by me,  
Sir, my nece woll doen well by thee,  
And love thee best, by God and by trothe,  
But lacke of pursute marre it in thy slothe."

"For thus ferforth I have thy werk begon,  
Fro daie to daie, till this daie by the morow,  
Hir love of frendship have I to thee won,  
And therfore hath she laid her faith to borow,  
Algate a foote is hameled of thy sorow :"  
What should I lenger sermon of it holde,  
As ye have heard before, all he him tolde.

But right as floures through the cold of night  
Ycloed, stoupen in hir stalkes lowe,  
Redressen hem aye the Sunne bright,  
And spreaden in hir kinde course by rowe,  
Right so gan tho his eyes up to throwe  
This Troilus, and saied : "O Venus dere,  
Thy might, thy grace, yheried be it here."

And to Pandarus he held up both his honde,  
And saied, "Lorde all thine be that I have,  
For I am hole, and broken been my bonds,  
A thousand Troies, who so that me yave  
Eche after other, God so wis me save,  
Ne might me so gladen, lo mine herte  
It spredeth so for joye it woll to starte."

"But lorde how shall I doen ? how shal I liven,  
Whan shall I next my dere herte se ?  
How shall this longe time away be driven ?  
Till that thou be aye at her fro me,  
Thou maist answer, abide, abide : but he  
That hangeth by the necke, sothe to saine,  
In great disease abideth for the paine."

"All easily now, for the love of Marte,"  
(Quod Pandarus) "for every thing hath time,  
So long abide, till that the night departe,  
For also siker as thou list here by me,

*Quale è fiorella del nettuno  
Ch'io non vidi mai che il sole*

And God toforne, I will be there at prime,  
And for thy werke somewhat, as I shall say,  
Or on some other wight this charge lay.

"For parde, God wot, I have ever yet  
Ben ready thee to serve, and this night  
Have I not fained, but emforthe my wit  
Doen all thy lust, and shal with al my might :  
Doe now as I shall saine, and fare aright :  
And if thou n'lte, wite all thy selfe the care,  
On me is nought along thine evill fare.

"I wote well, that thou wiser art than I  
A thousand fold : but if I were as thou,  
God helpe me so, as I would utterly  
Right of mine owne honde write her now  
A letter, in which I would her tellen how  
I farde amisse, and her beseech of routh :  
Now help thy self, and leave it for no slouth.

"And I my selfe shall therewith to her gone,  
And whan thou wost that I am with her there  
Worthe thou upon a courser right anone,  
Ye hardely, and that right in thy best gere,  
And ride forth by the place, as naught ne were,  
And thou shalt find us (if I may) sitting  
At some window, into the street looking.

"And if thee list, then mayest thou us saive,  
And upon me make thou thy countenance,  
But by thy life beware, and fast eschue  
To tarien ought, God shild us fro mischaunce :  
Ride forth thy way, and hold thy governaunce,  
And we shall speake of thee somewhat I trow  
Whan thou art gone, to doe thine eares glow.

"Touching thy letter, thou art wise inough,  
I wot thou n'lte it deigneliche endite,  
As make it with these argumentes tough,  
Ne scriveinishe or craftely thou it write,  
Heblotte it with thy teares eke alite,  
And if thou write a goodly word all soft,  
Though it be good, rehearse it not too oft.

"For though the best harpoure upon live  
Would on the best souned jolly harpe  
That ever was, with all his fingers five  
Touch aye o string, or aye o warble harpe,  
Where his nailles pointed never so sharpe,  
It should make every wight to dull,  
To heare his glee, and of his strokes full.

"Ne jombre eke no discordaunt thing yfere,  
As thus, to usen tearmes of phisicke,  
In loves tearmes hold of thy matere  
The forme alway, and doe that it be like,  
For if a painter would paint a pike  
With asses feet, and headed as an ape,  
It cordeth not, so were it but a jape."

This counsaile liked well unto Troilus,  
But as a dredefull lover he saied this :  
"Alas my dere brother Pandarus,  
I am ashamed for to write ywis,  
Least of mine innocence I saied amis,  
Or that she n'olde it for dispite receive,  
Than were I dead, there might it nothing weive."

To that Pandare answerde, "If thee leat,  
Do that I say, and let me therewith gone,  
For by that Lord that formed east and west,  
I hope of it to bring answer anone

Right of her bond, and if that thou n'lte none,  
Let be, and sorrie mote he been his live,  
Ayenst thy lust that helpeth thee to thrive."

(Quod Troilus) "Depardieu iche assent,  
Sith that thee list, I will arise and write,  
And blisfull God pray iche with good entent  
The voiage and the letter I shall endite,  
So speed it, and thou Minerva the white,  
Yeve thou me witte, my letter to devise :"  
And set him down, and wrote right in this wise.

First he gan her his right ladie call,  
His hertes life, his lust, his sorowes leche,  
His blisse, and echo these other tearmes all,  
That in such case ye lovers all seeche,  
And in full humble wise, as in his speche,  
He gan him recommaund unto her grace,  
To tell all how, it asketh mokell space.

And after this full lowly he her praied  
To be nought wroth, though he of his follie  
So hardie was to her to write, and saied  
That love it made, or eles must he die,  
And pitously gan mercie for to crie :  
And after that he saied, and lied full load,  
Himselfe was little worth, and lasse he coud.

And that she would have his conning excused,  
That little was, and eke he dradde her so,  
And his unworthinesse aye he accused :  
And after that than gan he tell his wo,  
But that was endlesse withouten ho :  
And said, he would in trouth alway him hold,  
And redde it over, and gan the letter fold.

And with his salte teares gan he bathe  
The rubie in his signet, and it sette  
Upon the wexe deliverliche and rathe,  
Therewith a thousand times, er he lette,  
He kiste tho the letter that he shette  
And sayd, "Letter, a blisfull destine  
Thee shapen is, my ladie shall thee see."

This Pandare tooke the letter, and betime  
A morrow to his neecis pallaice stert,  
And fast he swore, that it was passed prime :  
And gan to jape, and sayd, "Ywis my herte  
So fresh it is, although it sore smert,  
I may not sleepe never a Mayes morrow,  
I have a jollie woe, a lustie sorrow."

Creseide whan that she her uncle heard,  
With dreadfull herte, and desirous to heare,  
The cause of his comming, thus answerd,  
"Now by your faith, mine uncle" (quod she) "deare,  
What manner windes guideth you now here ?  
Tell us your jolly woe, and your penaunce,  
How farre forth be ye put in loves daunce."

"By God" (quod he) "I hop alway behinde,"  
And to laugh, it thought her herte brest,  
(Quod Pandarus) "Looke alway that ye finde  
Game in mine hood : but herkeneth if you leat,  
There is right now come into the toun a guest,  
A Greeke espie, and telleth newe thinges,  
For which I come to tell you new tidings.

"Into the garden go we, and ye shall heare  
All privily of this a long sermoun :"  
With that they wenten arm in arm yfere,  
Into the gardin fro the chamber down.

And whan he was so farre, that the soun  
Of that he spake, no man heren might,  
He sayd her thus, and out the letter plight.

"Lo, he that is all hooly yours free,  
Him recommaundeth lowly to your grace,  
And sent you this letter here by me,  
Aviseth you on it, whan ye han space,  
And of some goodly answeare you purchace,  
Or helpe me God so, plainly for to saine,  
He may not longe liven for his paine.

Full dredefully tho gan she stonde still,  
And tooke it not, but all her humble chere  
Gan for to chaunge, and sayd, "Scripe nor bill,  
For love of God, that toucheth such matere  
Ne bring me none: and also, uncle dere,  
To mine estate have more regard I pray  
Than to his lust, what should I more say.

"And looketh now if this be reasonable,  
And letteth not for favour ne for slouth  
To saine a sooth, now is it covenable  
To mine estate, by God and by my trowth  
To take it, or to have of him routh,  
In harming of my selfe or in reprieve:  
Beare it ayen, for him that ye on leve."

This Pandarus gan on her for to stare,  
And sayd, "Now is this the greatest wonder  
That ever I saw, let be this nice fare,  
To death mote I smiten be with thunder,  
If for the citie which that stondeth yonder,  
Would I a letter unto you bring or take,  
To harm of you: what list you thus it make.

"But thus ye faren well nigh all and some,  
That he that most desireth you to serve,  
Of him ye retch least where he become,  
And whether that he live, or else sterve:  
But for all that, that ever I may deserve,  
Refuse it not" (quod he) and hent her fast,  
And in her bosome the letter doune he thrast.

And said her, "Now cast it away anon  
That folk may seen, and gauren on us twey."  
(Qued she) "I can abide till they be gon"  
And gan to smile, and said him, "Eme I pray  
Such answer as you list your selfe purvey:  
For truly I woll no letter write:"  
"No, than woll I" (quod he) "so ye endite."

Therewith she lough, and said "Go we dine,"  
And he gan at himsele jape fast,  
And sayd, "Neece, I have so great a pine  
For love, that everich other day I fast,"  
And gan his best japes forth to cast,  
And made her for to laugh at his follie,  
That she for laughter wende for to die.

And whan that she was comen into the hall,  
"Now eme" (quod she) "we woll go dine anon,"  
And gan some of her women to her call,  
And streight into her chamber gan she gone,  
But of her businesse this was one,  
Amonges other thinges, out of drede,  
Full privily this letter for to rede.

Avised word by word in every line,  
And found no lacke, she thought he coude his good,  
And up it put, and went her in to dine,  
And Pandarus, that in a studie stood,

Ere he was ware, she tooke him by the hood,  
And said "Ye were caught ere that ye wist,"  
"I vouchsafe," (quod he) "do what you list."

Tho weshen they, and set hem down and ete,  
And after noone fall slightly Pandarus  
Gan draw him to the window nye the strete,  
And said, "Neece, who hath araided thus  
The yonder house, that stant aforeyene us?"  
"Which house?" (quod she) and gan fur to behold,  
And knew it well, and whose it was him told.

And fellen forth in spech of thinges smale,  
And saten in the window both twey:  
Whan Pandarus saw time unto his tale,  
And saw well that her folke were all away:  
"Now nece mine, tell on" (quod he) "I prey,  
How liketh you the letter that ye wot,  
Can he thereon or by my trowth I n'ot."

Therewith all rosy hewed tho woxe she,  
And gan to hum, and said, "So I trowe,"  
"Aquite him well for Gods love" (quod he)  
"My selfe to medes woll the letter sowe,"  
And held his bondes up, and sat on knowe,  
"Now good nece, be it never so lite,  
Yeve me the labour, it to sowe and plite."

"Ye, for I can so writen" (quod she) "tho,  
And eke I n'ot what I should to him say:"  
"Nay nece" (quod Pandare) "say not so,  
Yet at the least, thonketh him I pray  
Of his good will: O, doth him not to dey,  
Now for the love of me my nece dere,  
Refuseth not at this time my praire."

"Depardieux" (quod she) "God leve all be wele,  
God helpe me so, this is the first letter  
That ever I wrote, ye all or any dele,"  
And into a closet for to avise her better,  
She went alone, and gan her herte unfetter  
Out of disdaines prison, but a lite,  
And set her doune, and gan a letter write.

Of which to tell in short is mine entent  
Theffect, as ferre as I can understound:  
She thonked him, of all that he well ment,  
Towardes her, but holden him in bond  
She n'olde not, ne make her selven bond  
In love, but as his suster him to please,  
She would aye faine to done his herte an ease.

She shette it, and to Pandare into gone  
There as he sat, and looked into strete,  
And doune she set her by him on a stone  
Of jasper, upon a quisenen of gold ybete,  
And said, "As wisely helpe me God the grete,  
I never did a thing with more paine,  
Than write this, to which ye me restraine."

And tooke it him: he thonked hir, and seide,  
"God wot of thing full often lothe begonne  
Commeth end good: and nece mine Creseide,  
That ye to him of hard now ben ywonthe,  
Ought he be glad, by God and yonder sonne:  
For why, men saith impressiounes light  
Full lightly ben aye readie to the flight.

"But ye han plaid the tiraunt all too long,  
And hard was it your herte for to grave,  
Now stint, that ye no lenger on it hong,  
All woulde ye the forme of daunger save,



But hasteth you to done him joye have :  
For trusteth well, too long ydone hardnesse  
Causeth dispite full often for distresse."

And right as they declared this matere,  
Lo Troilus, right at the stretes end  
Came riding with his tenth somme yfere  
All softly, and thiderward gan bend  
Ther as they sate, as was his way to wend  
To paleis ward, and Pandare him aspide,  
And said, "Nece, ysee who commeth here ride."

"O fie not in, he seeth us I suppose,  
Least he may thinke that ye him eschue."  
"Nay, nay" (quod she) and woxe as red as rose,  
With that he gan her humbly salue  
With dredefull chere, and oft his hewes mue,  
And up his looke debonairely he cast,  
And becked on Pandare, and forth by past.

God wot if he sat on his horse aright,  
Or goodly was besene that ilke day,  
God wot where he were like a manly knight,  
What should I dretche, or tell of his array :  
Creseide, which that all those thinges sey ;  
To tell in short, her liked all yfere,  
His person, his array, his looke, his chere.

His goodly manner, and his gentillesse,  
So well, that never sith that she was borne,  
Ne had she suche routh of his distresse,  
And how so, she hath hard ben here beforne,  
To God hope I, she hath now caught a thorn,  
She shall nat pull it out this next wike,  
God send her mo such thornes on to pike.

Pandare, which that stood her faste by,  
Felt iron hot, and he began to smite,  
And said, "Nece, I pray you heartely,  
Tell me that I shall asken you alite,  
A woman that were of his death to wite  
Withouten his gilt, but for her lack of routh,  
Were it well done !" (quod she) "Nay by my trouth."

"God helpe me so" (quod he) "ye say me sooth,  
Ye feelen well your selfe that I nought lie,  
Ye, yonde he rideth : " (quod she) "Ye so he dooth : "  
"Well" (quod Pandare) "as I have told you thrie,  
Let be your nice shame, and your follie,  
And speake with him in easing of his herte,  
Let nicete nat do you bothe smert."

But thereon was to heaven and to done,  
Considering all thing, it may nat be,  
And why ? for shame, and it were eke too soone,  
To graunten him so great a liberte :  
For plainly her entent, as (said she)  
Was for to love him unwist, if she might,  
And guerdon him with nothing but with sight.

But Pandare thought, it shall nat be so,  
If that I may, this nice opinion  
Shall nat ben holden fully yeares two.  
What should I make of this a long sermon :  
He must assent on that conclusion,  
As for the time, and whan that it was eve,  
And all was well, he rose and tooke his leve.

And on his way fast homeward he spedde,  
And right for joy he felt his herte daunce,  
And Troilus he found alone abedde,  
That ay, as done these lovers in a trauce,

Betwixen hope and derke desperaunce,  
But Pandare, right at his incomming,  
He song, as who saith, "Lo, somewhat I bring."

And said, "Who is in his bedde so soone  
Yburied thus !" "It am I friend : " (quod he)  
"Who, Troilus ? nay, help me so the Moone"  
(Quod Pandarus) "thou shalt up rise and see  
A charme that was sent right now to thee,  
The which can healen thee of thine accesse,  
If thou do forthwith all thy businesse."

"Ye, through the might of God : " (quod Troilus)  
And Pandarus gan him the letter take,  
And said, "Parde God hath holpen us,  
Have here a light, and look on all these blake."  
But often gan the herte glad and quake  
Of Troilus, while he it gan to rede,  
So as the wordes yave him hope or drede.

But finally he tooke all for the best  
That she him wrote, for somewhat he beheld,  
On which he thought he might his herte rest,  
All covered she the wordes under sheld,  
Thus to the more worthy part he held,  
That what for hope, and Pandarus beheest,  
His greates wo foryede he at the lest.

But as we may all day our selven see,  
Through wood or cole kindleth the more fire,  
Right so encrease of hope, of what it be,  
Therewith full oft encreaseth eke desire,  
Or as an oke commeth of a little spire,  
So through this letter, which that she him sent,  
Encreasen gau desire of which he brent.

Wherefore I say alway, that day and night  
This Troilus gan to desiren more  
Than he did erst through hope, and did his might  
To presen on, as by Pandarus lore,  
And writen to her of his sorowes sore  
Fro day to day, he let it nought refreide,  
That by Pandare he somewhat wrot or seide.

And did also his other observaunces,  
That till a lover longeth in this caas,  
And after as his dice turned on chaunces,  
So was he either glad, or said alas,  
And held after his gastes aye his paas,  
And after such answers as he had,  
So were his daies sorry either glad.

But to Pandare alway was his recours,  
And pitously gan aye on him to plaine,  
And him besought of rede, and some socours,  
And Pandarus, that saw his wood paine,  
Wext well nigh dead for routh, sooth to saine,  
And busily with all his herte cast,  
Some of his wo to sleen, and that as fast.

And said, "Lord and friend, and brother dore,  
God wot that thy disease doth me wo,  
But wolt thou stinten all this wofull chere,  
And by my trouth, ere it be daies two,  
And God toforne, yet shall I shape it so,  
That thou shalt come into a certaine place,  
There as thou maist thy self praien her of grace.

"And certainly I n'ot if thou it wost,  
But they that ben expert in love, it say,  
It is one of these thinges forthereth most,  
A man to have a leiser for to pray,

And siler place, his wo for to bewray,  
For in good herte it mote some routh impress  
To heare and see the guiltless in distresse.

"Peraventure thinkest thou, though it be so,  
That Kind would her done for to begin,  
To have a manner routh upon my wo,  
Saith Daunger nay, thou shalt me never win :  
So ruleth her hertes ghost within,  
That though she bende, yet she stont on rote,  
What in effect is this unto my bote.

"Think here ayen, whan that the sturdy oke  
On which men hacketh ofte for the nonces,  
Received hath the happy falling stroke,  
The great swight doth it come all at ones,  
As done these great rocks or these miln stones,  
For swifter course cometh thing that is of wight  
Whan it descendeth, than done thinges light.

"But rede that boweth down for every blast,  
Full lightly cesse wind, it woll arise,  
But so n'll not an oke, whan it is cast,  
It needeth me nought longe thee forwise,  
Men shall rejoyse of a great emprise,  
Atchieved well, and stant withouten dout,  
All have men ben the lenger thereabout.

"But, Troilus, now tell me if thee lest  
A thing, which that I shall asken thee,  
Which is thy brother, that thou lovest best,  
As in thy very hertes privite !"  
"Ywis my brother Deiphebus tho" (quod he.)  
"Now" (quod Pandarus) "ere thoues twice twelve,  
He shall the ease, unwist of it himselve.

"Now let me alone, and worken as I may,"  
(Quod he) and to Deiphebus went he tho,  
Which had his lord, and great friend ben aye,  
Save Troilus no man he loved so :  
To tellen in short withouten words mo  
(Quod Pandarus) "I pray you that ye be  
Friend to a cause, which that toucheth me."

"Yes parde" (quod Deiphebus) "wel thou wotest  
All that ever I may, and God tofore,  
All n'ere it but for the man I love most,  
My brother Troilus ; but say wherefore  
It is, for sith the day that I was bore,  
I n'as, ne never mo to ben I thinke,  
Ayenst a thing that might thee forthinke."

Pandarus gan him thank, and to him seide,  
"Lo sir, I have a lady in this toun  
That is my nece, and called is Creseide,  
Which some men would done oppressioun,  
And wrongfully have her possessioun,  
Wherefore I of your lordship you beseech  
To ben our friend, withouten more speech."

Deiphebus him answerd : "O, is nat this  
That thou speakest of to me thus straungly,  
Creseide my friend !" He said him "Yes."  
"Than needeth" (quod Deiphebus) "hardely  
No more of this to speke, for trusteth well that I  
Woll be her champion with spore and yerde,  
I ne raught nat though all her foes it herde.

\* But tel me how, for thou wost this matere,  
I might best availen, now lette see !"   
(Quod Pandarus) "If ye my lord so dere  
Woulden as now do this honour to me,

To praien her to morrow, lo that she  
Came unto you, her plaints to devise,  
Her adversaries would of it agrise.

"And if I more durst praien as now,  
And chargen you to have so great travaile,  
To have some of your brethren here with you,  
That mighten to her cause bet availle,  
Than wote I well she might never faile  
For to ben holpen, what at your instance,  
What with her other friendes governaunce."

Deiphebus, which that comen was of kind  
To all honour and bounty to consent,  
Answerd, "It shall be done : and I can find  
Yet greater helpe to this mine entent :  
What woldest thou saine, if for Heleine I sent  
To speake of this ! I trow it be the best,  
For she may leden Paris as her lest.

"Of Hector, which that is my lord my brother,  
It needeth nat to praien him friend to be,  
For I have heard him o time and eke other  
Speaken of Creseide such honour, that he  
May saine no bet, such hap to him hath she,  
It needeth nat his helpes more to crave,  
He shall be such, right as we woll him have.

"Speake thou thy selfe also to Troilus  
On my behalfe, and pray him with us dine."  
"Sir all this shall be done" (quod Pandarus)  
And tooke his leave, and never gan to fine,  
But to his neeces house as straight as line  
He came, and found her fro the meat arise,  
And set him doun, and spake right in this wise :

He said, "O very God, so have I ronned,  
Lo nece mine, see ye nat how I swete !  
I n'ot where ye the more thanke me conne :  
Be ye not ware how false Poliphete  
Is now about eftsoones for to plete,  
And bring on you advocacies new !"   
"I, no" (quod she) and chaunged all her hew.

"What, is he more about me to dretche  
And done me wrong, what shall I done, alas,  
Yet of himselve nothing would I retche,  
N'ere it for Antenor and Eneas,  
That ben his friends in such manner caas :  
But for the love of God mine uncle dere,  
No force of that, let him have all yfere,

"Withouten that, I have ynough for us."  
"Nay" (quod Pandarus) "it shall nothing be as,  
For I have been right now at Deiphebus,  
At Hector, and mine other lordes mo,  
And shortly maked each of hem his fo,  
That by my thrift he shall it never win,  
For aught he can, whan so that he begin."

And as they casten what was best to done,  
Deiphebus of his owne courtesie  
Came her to pray, in his proper persone,  
To hold him on the morrow's companie  
At dinner, which she n'olde not demite,  
But goodly gan to his prayer obey,  
He thoked her, and went upon his wey.

Whan this was done, this Pandarus anon,  
To tell in short, forth he gan to wend  
To Troilus, as still as any stone,  
And all this thing he told him word and end,

And how that he Deiphebus gan to blend,  
And said him, "Now is time of that ye conne  
To bere thee well to morow, and all is wonne.

"Now speke, now pray, now pitously complain,  
Let nat for uice shame, for drede or slouth,  
Sometime a man mote tell his owne pain,  
Beleeve it, and she wolle have on thee routh,  
Thou shalt ben saved by thy faith in trouth,  
But well wot I, thou now art in a drede,  
And what it is, I lay that I can arede.

"Thou thinkest now, 'How should I don al this,  
For by my cheres mosten folke espie,  
That for her love is that I fare amis,  
Yet had I lever unwist for sorrow die :'  
Now thinke nat so, for thou hast great follie,  
For I right now have founden a manere  
Of sleight, for to coveren all thy chere.

"Thou shalt gone overnight, and that bilive,  
Unto Deiphebus house, as thee to play,  
Thy maladie away the bet to drive,  
For which thou seemeth sick, sooth to say,  
Soone after that, in thy bed thee lay,  
And say thou maist no lenger up endure,  
And lie right there, and bide thine aventure.

"Say that thy fever is wont thee for to take  
The same time, and last till a morow,  
And let see now how well thou canst it make :  
For parde sick is he that is in sorrow.  
Go now farwell, and Venus here to borow,  
I hope and thou this purpose hold ferme,  
Thy grace she shall fully there conferme."

(Quod Troilus) "Ywis thou all needlesse  
Counsaillest me, that sickeliche I me faine,  
For I am sick in earnest doubtlesse,  
So that well nigh I sterre for the paine :"  
(Quod Pandarus) "Thou shalt the better plaine,  
And hast the lesse need to counterfete,  
For him demeth men hot, that seeth him swete.

"Lo, hold thee at thy triste close, and I  
Shall well the deere unto the bow drive :"  
Therewith he tooke his leave all softly,  
And Troilus to his paleis went blive,  
So glad ne was he never in all his live,  
And to Pandarus rede gan all assent,  
And to Deiphebus hous at night he went.

What nedeth it you to tellen all the chere  
That Deiphebus unto his brother made,  
Or nis axis, or his sickeliche manere,  
How men gone him with clothes for to lade,  
Whan he was laid, and how men would him glade :  
But all for nought, he held forth aye the wise,  
That ye han heard Pandare ere this devise.

But certaine is, ere Troilus him leide,  
Deiphebus had praied him over night  
To ben a friend, and helping to Creside :  
God wot that he graunted anon right  
To ben her full friend, with all his might :  
But such a need was it to praen him thenne,  
As for to bidden a wood man to renne.

The morow came, and nighen gan the time  
Of mealtide, that the faire queene Heleine  
Shope her to ben an houre after the prime  
With Deiphebus, to whom she n'olde faine,

But as his suster, homely sooth to saine  
She came to dinner in her plaine entent,  
But God and Pandare wist all what this ment.

Came eke Creside all innocent of this,  
Antigone her nece, and Tarbe also,  
But fle we now prolixitie best is,  
For love of God, and let us fast go  
Right to theeffect, withouten tales mo,  
Why all this folke assembled in this place,  
And let us of all hir salvinges pace.

Great honour did hem Deiphebus certaine,  
And fedde hem well, with all that might like,  
But evermo alas, was his refraine :  
"My good brother Troilus the sike,  
Lithe yet," and therewithall he gan to sike  
And after that he pained him to glade  
Hem as he might, and chere good he made.

Complained eke Heleine of his sicknesse  
So faithfully, that it pitie was to here,  
And every wight gan wexen for axes  
A leche anon, and said, "In this manere  
Men curen folke, this charme I wol thee here,"  
But there sate one, all list her nat to teche,  
That thought, yet best could I ben his leche.

After complaint him gonnen they to preise,  
As folk don yet whan some wight hath begon  
To preise a man, and with preise him reise  
A thousand fold yet higher than the Sonne,  
He is, he can, that few other lordes conne,  
And Pandarus of that they would afferme,  
He nought forgate hir praising to conferme.

Herd all this thing fair Creside well enough,  
And every word gan for to notifie,  
For which with sober chere her herte lough,  
For who is that ne would her glorifie,  
To mowen such a knight done live or die ?  
But all passe I, least ye too long ydwell,  
But for o fine is all that ever I tell.

The time came, fro dinner for to rise,  
And as hem ought, arisen everychone,  
And gane a while of this and that devise,  
But Pandarus brake all this speech anone,  
And said to Deiphebus, "Woll ye gone,  
If your will be, as erst I you preide,  
To spoken of the nedes of Creside ?"

Heleine, which that by the hond her held,  
Tooke first the tale, and said, "Go we blive,"  
And goodly on Creside she beheld,  
And said, "Joves let him never thrive  
That doth you harm, and reve him sone of live,  
And yeve me sorrow, but he shall it rue,  
If that I may, and all folke be true."

"Tell thou thy nieces case" (quod Deiphebus  
To Pandarus) "for thou canst best it tell."  
"My lordes and my ladies, it stant thus,  
What should I lenger" (quod he) "do you dwell !"  
He rong hem out a proces like a bell  
Upon her foe, that hight Poliphete,  
So hainous, that men might on it spete.

Answerd of this ech worse of hem than other,  
And Poliphete they gonnen thus to warien,  
And honged be such one, were he my brother,  
And so he shall, for it ne may nought varien,

What should I lenger in this tale tarien,  
Plaineliche all at ones they her highten  
To ben her friend in all that ever they mighten.

Spake then Heleine, and said, "Pandarus,  
Wot aught my lord my brother of this mater,  
I meane Hector, or wote it Troilus!"  
He said, "Ye, but woll ye me now here,  
Me thinketh thus, sith that Troilus is here,  
It were good, if that ye would assent,  
She told him her selfe all this ere she went.

"For he wol have the more hir grefe at herte,  
Because lo, that she a lady is,  
And by your will, I woll but in right start.  
And do you wete, and that anone ywis,  
If that he sleepe, or woll aught here of this:"  
And in he lept, and said him in his ere,  
"God have thy soul, for brought have I thy bere."

To smilen of this gan tho Troilus,  
And Pandarus without reckoning,  
Out went anon to Heleine and Deiphebus,  
And said hem, "So there be no tarying  
Ne more prease, he woll well that ye bring  
Creseide my lady, that is now here,  
And as he may enduren, he woll her here.

"But well ye wote, the chamber is but lite,  
And few folke may lightly make it warme,  
Now looketh ye, for I woll have no wite  
To bring in prease, that might done him harme,  
Or him diseasen, for my better arme:  
Yet were it bette she bid till oft soonis,  
Now looke ye that knowen what to don is.

"I say for me best is, as I can know,  
That no wight in ne wende, but ye twey,  
But it were I, for I cannot in a throw  
Rehearse her case, unlike that she can sey,  
And after this she may him ones prey  
To ben good lord in short, and take her leve,  
This may not mokell of his ease him reve.

"And eke for she is straunge, he woll forbere  
His ease, which that him dare nat for you,  
Eke other thing, that toucheth nat to her,  
He woll it tell, I wote it well right now,  
That secret is, and for the townes prow:"  
And they that knew nothing of his entent,  
Without more, to Troilus in they went.

Heleine in all her goodly softe wise  
Gan him salue, and womanly to play,  
And said, "Ywis, ye mote algate arise:  
Now faire brother be all hole I pray,"  
And gan her arme right over his shoulder lay,  
And him with all her wit to recomfort,  
As she best could, she gan him to disport.

So after this (quod she) "We you beseke  
My dere brother Deiphebus and I,  
For love of God, and so doeth Pandare eke,  
To ben good lord and friend right hertely  
Unto Creseide, which that certainly  
Received wrong, as wot well here Pandare,  
That can her case well bet than I declare."

This Pandarus gan new his tong affile,  
And all her case rehearse, and that anone,  
Whan it was saied, soone after in a while,  
(Quod Troilus) "As soone as I was gone,

I wol right faine with all my might ben one,  
Have God my trouth, her cause to susteine."  
"Now good thrift have ye" (quod Helein the queen.)

(Quod Pandarus) "And it your will be,  
That she may take her leave ere that she go."  
"O eles God forbid it tho" (quod he)  
"If that she vouchsafe for to do so:"  
And with that word (quod Troilus) "ye two  
Deiphebus, and my suster lefe and dere,  
To you have I to speake of a matere,

"To been avised by your rede the better,"  
And found (as hap was) at his bedes hedde  
The copie of a treatise, and a letter  
That Hector had him sent, to asken rede  
If such a man was worthy to ben dede,  
Wote I naught who, but in a grisly wise  
He prayed hem anone on it avise.

Deiphebus gan this letter for to unfold  
In earnest great, so did Heleine the queene,  
And roming outward, fast it gonne behold  
Dounward a steire, into an herbor greene:  
This ilke thing they redded hem betwene,  
And largely the mountaunce of an houre  
They gonne on it to reden and to poure.

Now let hem rede, and tourne we anone  
To Pandarus, that gan full soft prie  
That all was well, and out he gan to gone  
Into the great chamber, and that in hie,  
And said, "God save all this companie:  
Come nece mine, my lady queene Heleine  
Abideth you, and eke my lordes tweine.

"Rise, take with you your nece Antigone,  
Or whom you list, or no force hardely,  
The lasse prease the bet, come forth with me,  
And looke that ye thonked humbly  
Hem all three, and whan ye may goodly  
Your time ysee, taketh of hem your leave,  
Least we too long his restes him bireave."

All innocent of Pandarus entent  
(Quod tho Creseide) "Go we uncle dere,"  
And arme in arme, inward with him she went,  
Avising well her wordes and her chere,  
And Pandarus in earnestfull manere,  
Saied, "All folke for Godes love I pray,  
Stinteth right here, and softly you play.

"Aviseth you what folke ben here within,  
And in what plite one is, God him amend,  
And inward thou full softly begin,  
Nece I conjure, and highly you defend  
On his halfe, which that soule us all send,  
And in the vertue of corounes twaine  
Slea nat this man, that hath for you this paine.

"Fie on the devill, thinke which one he is,  
And in what plite he lieth, come off anone,  
Think all such taried tide but lost it n'is,  
That woll ye both saine, whan ye been one:  
Secondly, there yet divineth none  
Upon you two, come off now if ye conne,  
While folke is blent, lo, all the time is wonne.

"In titiring and pursuite, and delaies  
The folke divine, at wegging of a stre,  
And though ye would han after merry daies,  
Than dare ye nat, and why! For she and she

Spake such a word, thus looked he and he :  
Least time be lost, I dare not with you deale,  
Come off therfore, and bringeth him to heale."

But now to you, ye lovers that ben here,  
Was Troilus nat in a cankedort,  
That lay, and might the wispring of hem here,  
And thought "O lord, right now renneth my sort  
Fully to die, or have anone comforte,"  
And was the first time he should her pray  
Of love, O mightie God, what shall he say !

## EXPLICIT LIBER SECUNDUS.

## PROEME.

## B. III. v. 1—105.

O BLISSFULL light, of which the bemes clere  
Adorneth all the third heaven faire,  
O sonnes lefe, O Joves daughter dere,  
Pleasaunce of love, O goodly debonaire,  
In gentle hertes aye ready to repaire,  
O very cause of heale and of gladnesse,  
Yheried be thy might and thy goodnesse.

In Heaven and Hell, in earth, and salt see,  
Is felt thy might, if that I well discerne,  
As man, and beast, fish, herbe, and grene tree,  
They fele in times with vapour eterne,  
God loveth, and to love woll naught werne,  
And in this world no lives creature,  
Withouten love is worth, or may endure.

Ye Joves first, to thilke affectes glade  
Through which that thinges liven all and be,  
Commenden, and amorous hem made  
On mortall thing, and as you list aye ye  
Yeve hem in love, ease, or adversite :  
And in a thousand formes doune hem sent  
For love in earth, and whom you list he hent.

Ye fiers Mars appeasen of his ire,  
And as you list, ye maken hertes digne :  
Algates hem that ye woll set a fire,  
They dreden shame, and vices they resigne,  
Ye doen him curteis be, fresh, and benigne,  
And high or low, after a wight entendeth  
The joies that he hath, your might it sendeth.

Ye holden reigne and house in unitie,  
Ye soothfast cause of friendship ben also  
Ye knownen all thilke covered qualitie  
Of thinges, which that folke wondren at so,  
Whan they can nat construe how it may go,  
She loveth him, or why he loveth here,  
As why this fish, and nat that commeth to were.

Ye folke a law have set in universe,  
And this know I by hem that lovers be,  
That who so striveth with you hath the werse :  
Now ladie bright, for thy benignite,  
At reverence of hem that serven thee,  
Whose clerke I am, so teacheth me devise,  
Some joy of that is felt in thy servise.

Yes, in my naked herte sentement  
In hilde, and do me shew of thy sweetnesse :  
Caliope, thy voice be now present,  
For now is need, seest thou nat my distresse,

How I mote tell anon right the gladnesse  
Of Troilus, to Venus heryng,  
To the which who nede hath, God him bring.

## INCIPT LIBER TERTIUS.

LAY all this meane while this Troilus  
Recording his lesson in this manere,  
"Mafey," thought he, "thus woll I say, and thus  
Thus woll I plaine unto my lady dere,  
That word is good, and this shall be my chere  
This n'll I nat forgetten in no wise,"  
God love him werken as he can devise.

And lord so that his herte gan to quappe,  
Hearing her come, and short for to sike,  
And Pandarus that ledde her by the lappe,  
Came nere, and gan in at the curtein pike,  
And saied, "God doe bote on all that are sike,  
See who is here you comen to visite,  
Lo, here is she that is your death to wite."

Therewith it seemed as he wept almost,  
"A, a" (quod Troilus so routhfully)  
"Whether me be wo, O mighty god thou wost  
Who is all there, I see nat truly :"  
"Sir," (quod Creseide) "it is Pandare and I"  
"Ye sweet herte alas, I may nat rise  
To kneele, and do you honour in some wise."

And dressed him upward, and she right tho  
Gan both her hondes soft upon him ley,  
"O for the love of God doe ye not so  
To me," (quod she) "eye what is this to sey !  
Sir comen am I to you for causes twey,  
First you to thonke, and of your lordship eke  
Continuaunce I wold you beseke."

This Troilus that heard his ladie pray  
Of lordship, him wox neither quick ne dedde,  
Ne might o word for shame to it say,  
Although men shouliden smiten off his hedde,  
But Lord so he wox sodainliche redde :  
And sir, his lesson that he wende conne  
To praien her, is through his wit yronne.

Creseide all this aspid well ynough,  
For she was wise, and loved him never the lasse,  
All nere he in all apert, or made it tough,  
Or was too beld to sing a foole a masse,  
But whan his shame gan somewhat to passe  
His reasons, as I may my rimes hold,  
I woll you tell, as teachen bookes old.

In chaunged voice, right for his very drede,  
Which voice eke quoke, and thereto his manere  
Goodly abasht, and now his hewes rede,  
Now pale, unto Creseide his ladie dere,  
With looke down cast, and humble iyolden chere  
Lo, the alderfirst word that him astart,  
Was twice, "Mercy, mercy, O my sweet herte."

And stint a while, and whan he might out bring  
The next word was, "God wote for I have  
As faithfully as I have had konning,  
Ben yours all, God so my soule do save,  
And shall, till that I wofull might be grave,  
And though I dare ne can unto you plaine,  
Ywis I suffer not the lasse paine."

"Thus much as now, ah, womanlike wife,  
I may out bring, and if this you displease,  
That shall I wreke upon mine owne life  
Right soone I trow, and do your herte an ease,  
If with my death your herte may appease:  
But sens that ye han heard me somewhat sey,  
Now retch I never how soone that I dey."

Therewith his manly sorrow to behold,  
It might have made an herte of stone to rew,  
And Pandare wept as he to water would,  
And poked ever his nece new and new,  
And saied, "Wo begon been hertes true,  
For love of God, make of this thing an end,  
Or alea us both at ones, ere that ye wend."

"I, what" (quod she) "by God and by my trouth  
I n'ot nat what ye wilne that I sey:"  
"Ey, what" (quod he) "that ye have on him routh  
For Goddes love, and doeth him nat to dey:"  
"Now than thus" (quod she) "I woll him prey,  
To tell me the fine of his entent,  
Yet wist I never well what that he ment."

"What that I mean, O my sweet herte dere"  
(Quod Troilus) "O goodly fresh and free,  
That with the streames of your eyen so clere  
Ye shoulde sometime friendly on me see,  
And than agreeen that I may ben hee  
Withouten branch of vice, on any wise,  
In trouth alway to do you my servise,"

"As to my lady right, and cheefe resort,  
With all my witte and all my diligence,  
And to have right as you list comfort,  
Under your yerde egall to mine offence,  
As death, if that I breake your defence,  
And that ye digne me so much honour,  
Me to commaunden aught in any hour."

"And I to ben your very humble, true,  
Secret, and in my paines patient,  
And ever to desieren freshly new  
To serven, and to ben aye like diligent,  
And with good herte all hooly your talent  
Receiven well, how sore that me smart,  
Lo this meane I, O mine owne sweet herte."

(Quod Pandarus) "Lo, here an hard request,  
And reasonable, a lady for to werne:  
Now nece mine, by Natall Joves feest,  
Were I a God, ye should sterve as yerne,  
That heren wel this man wol nothing yerne,  
But your honour, and seene him almost sterve,  
And ben so loth to suffer him you to serve."

With that she gan her eyen on him cast  
Full easily, and full debonairely  
Avising her, and hied not too fast,  
With never a word, but saied him softly,  
"Mine honour safe, I woll well truly,  
And in such forme, as I can now devise,  
Receiven him fully to my servise."

"Beseeching him for Goddes love, that he  
Would in honour of trouth and gentillesse,  
As I well meane, eke meanen well to me:  
And mine honour with wit and businesse  
Aye kepe, and if I may doen him gladnesse  
From henceforth ywis I n'ill not faine:  
Now beth all hole, no longer ye ne plaine."

"But nathelesse, this warne I you" (quod she)  
"A kinges sonne although ye be ywis,  
Ye shall no more have sovraintie  
Of me in love, than right in that case is,  
Ne n'ill forbears if that ye doen amis  
To wrath you, and while that ye me serve,  
Cherishen you, right after that ye deserve."

"And shortly, dere herte and all my knight,  
Beth glad, and draweth you to lustinesse,  
And I shall truly, withall my full might  
You bitter tournen all to sweetnesse,  
If I be she that may doe you gladnesse,  
For every wo ye shall recover a blisse,"  
And him in armes tooke, and gan him kisse.

Fell Pandarus on knees, and up his eyen  
To Heaven threw, and held his hondes hie:  
"Immortall God" (quod he) "that maigest not dien,  
Cupide I meane, of this maigest glorifie,  
And Venus, thou maigest maken melodie  
Withouten hond, me seemeth that in toune,  
For this miracle iche here eche bell sounne."

"But ho, no more now of this mattere,  
For why! This folke woll comen up anone,  
That have the letter redde, lo, I hem here,  
But I conjure thee Creseide, and one  
And two, thou Troilus whan thou maigest gone  
That at mine house ye hen at my warning,  
For I full well shall shapen your coming."

"And easeth there your hertes right nough,  
And let see which of you shall beare the bell  
To speak of love aright," and therewith he lough,  
"For there have I a leiser for to tell:"  
(Quod Troilus) "how long shall I here dwell  
Ere this bedoen I" (quod he) "Whan thou maigest rise  
This thing shall be right as you list devise."

With that Heleine and also Deiphebus  
Tho comen upward right at the staires end,  
And lord so tho gan gronen Troilus,  
His mother and his suster for to blend:  
(Quod Pandarus) "It time is that we wend,  
Take nece mine your leave at hem all thre,  
And let hem speak, and commeth forth with me"

She tooke her leave at hem full thriftely,  
As she well could, and they her reverence  
Unto the full didden hartely,  
And wonder well spoken in her absence  
Of her, in praising of her excellence,  
Her governaunce, her wit, and her manere  
Commended, that it joy was to here.

Now let her wend unto her owne place  
And tourne we unto Troilus againe,  
That gan full lightly of the letter pace,  
That Deiphebus had in the garden seine,  
And of Heleine and him he would feine  
Delivered ben, and saied, that him lest  
To slepe, and after tales have a rest.

Heleine him kist, and tooke her leave blive,  
Deiphebus eke, and home went every wight,  
And Pandarus as fast as he may drive  
To Troilus tho came, as line right,  
And on a paillet, all that glad night  
By Troilus he lay, with merry chere  
To tale, and well was hem they were yfere.

Whan every wight was voided but they two,  
And all the dores weren fast yshet,  
To tel in short, withouten words mo,  
This Pandarus, without any let  
Up rose, and on his beddes side him set,  
And gan to speken in a sober wise  
To Troilus, as I shall you devise.

" Mine alderlevest lord, and brother dere,  
God wot, and thou, that it sate me so sore,  
Whan I thee saw so languishing to here,  
For love of which thy wo woxe alway more,  
That I with all my might, and all my lore,  
Have ever sithen doen my businesse  
To bring thee to joye out of distresse.

" And have it brought to such plite as thou wost  
So that through me thou stondest now in way  
To faren well, I say it for no bost,  
And wost thou why, but shame it is to say,  
For thee have I begon a gamen play,  
Which that I never doen shall eft for other,  
All tho he were a thousand fold my brother.

" That is to say, for thee am I becomen,  
Betwixen game and earnest such a meane,  
As maken women unto men to comen,  
All say I nat, thou wost well what I meane,  
For thee have I my nece, of vices cleane,  
So fully made thy gentillesse trist,  
That all shall ben right as thy selfe list.

" But God, that all woteth, take I to witness,  
That never I this for covetise wrought,  
But only for to abredge that distresse,  
For which welnie thou didest, as me thought:  
But good brother do now as thee ought,  
For Godes love, and kepe her out of blame,  
Sins thou art wise, and save alway her name.

" For well thou wost, the name as yet of her  
Emongs the people as (who saith) halowed is.  
For that man is unbore I dare well swere,  
That ever wist that she did amis,  
But wo is me, that I that cause all this  
May thinke that she is my nece dere,  
And I hir eme, and traitour eke yfere.

" And wer it wist, that I through mine engine  
Had in mine nece yput this fantasie  
To doen thy lust, and hooly to be thine:  
Why all the world would upon it crie,  
And say, that I the worstre trecherie  
Did in this case, that ever was begon,  
And she fordene, and thou right nought ywon.

" Wherefore ere I woll further gone or paas,  
Yet eft I thee beseech, and fully say,  
That privete go with us in this caas,  
That is to saine, that thou us never wray,  
And be not wroth, though I thee ofte pray,  
To holden secree such an high mattere,  
For skilfull is, thou wost well, my praiere.

" And thinke what wo there hath betid ere this  
For making of avauntes, as men rede,  
And what mischaunce in this world yet is  
Fro day to day, right for that wicked dede,  
For which these wise clerkes that ben dede  
Have ever this proverbed to us young,  
That the first vertue is to kepe the tounge.

" And nere it that I wilne as now abredge  
Diffusion of speech, I could almost  
A thousand old stories thee alledge  
Of women lost, through false and fooles bost,  
Proverbes canst thy selfe enow, and wost  
Ayenst that vice for to been a blabbe,  
All saied men sooth, as often as they gabbe.

" O tongue alas, so often here beforne  
Hast thou made many a lady bright of hew,  
Saied " Welaway the day that I was borne,"  
And many a maidens sorrow for to new,  
And for the more part all is untrew  
That men of yelp, and it were brought to preve,  
Of kind, none avauntour is to leve.

" Avauntour and a lier, all is one,  
As thus: I pose a woman graunt me  
Her love, and saith that other woll she none,  
And I am sworne to holden it secree,  
And after I tell it two or three,  
Ywis I am a vauntour at the lest,  
And lie eke, for I breake my behest.

" Now looke than if they be not to blame,  
Such maner folk, what shall I clepe hem, what,  
That hem avaunt of women, and by name,  
That yet behight hem never this ne that,  
Ne know hem no more than mine old hat,  
No wonder is, so God me sende hele,  
Though women dreden with us men to dele.

" I say not this for no mistrust of you,  
Ne for no wise men, but for fooles nice,  
And for the harme that in the world is now,  
As well for follie oft, as for mallice,  
For well wote I, in wise folke that vice  
No woman dredeth, if she be well avisid,  
For wise been by fooles harme chastised.

" But now to purpose, leve brother dere,  
Have all this thing that I have saied in mind,  
And keep thee close, and be now of good chere  
For all thy daies thou shalt me true find,  
I shall thy processe set in such a kind,  
And God toforne, that it shall thee suffise,  
For it shall be right as thou wolt devise.

" For well I wote, thou meanest well parde,  
Therefore I dare this fully undertake,  
Thou wost eke what thy lady graunted thee,  
And day is set the charters to make,  
Have now good night, I may no lenger wake,  
And bid for me, sith thou art now in blisse,  
That God me sende death, or some lisse."

Who might tellen halfe the joy or feste  
Which that the soule of Troilus tho felt,  
Hearing theeffect of Pandarus behest:  
His old wo, that made his herte to swelt,  
Gan tho for joy wasten, and to melt,  
And all the richesse of his sighes sore  
At ones fled, he felt of hem no more.

But right so as these holtes and these hayns  
That han in winter dead ben and dry,  
Revesten him in grene, whan that May is,  
Whan every lusty best listeth to pley,  
Right in that selfe wise, sooth for to sey,  
Woxe suddainly his herte full of joy,  
That gladder was there never man in Troy.

And gan his looke on Pandarus up cast  
Full soberly, and friendly on to see,  
And saied, " Friend, in Aprill the last,  
As well thou wost, if it remember thee,  
How nigh the death for w<sup>o</sup> thou founde me,  
And how thou diddest all thy businesse  
To know of me the cause o' my distresse.

" Thou wost how long I it forbare to say  
To thee, that art the man that I best trist,  
And perill none was it to thee to bewray,  
That wist I well : but tell me if thee list,  
Sith I so loth was that thy selfe it wist,  
How durst I mo tellen of this matere !  
That quake now, and no wight may us here.

" But nathelesse, by that God I thee swere,  
That as him list may all the world governe,  
And if I lye, Achilles with his spere  
Mine herte cleave, all were my life eterne,  
As I am mortall, if I late or yerne  
Would it bewray, or durst or should conne,  
For all the good that God made under sonne.

" That rather die I would, and determine  
As thinketh me now, stocked in prison,  
In wretchednesse, in filth, and in vermine,  
Captive to cruell king Agamemnon :  
And this in all the temples of this toun,  
Upon the Godes all, I woll thee swere  
To morow day, if that thee liketh here.

" And that thou hast so much ydoen for me,  
That I ne may it nevermore deserve,  
This know I well, all might I now for thee  
A thousand times on a morow sterve,  
I can no more, but that I woll thee serve  
Right as thy slave, whether so thou wend,  
For evermore, unto my lives end.

" But here with all mine herte I thee beseech,  
That never in me thou deme such folly  
As I shall saine : me thought by thy speech,  
That this which thou me dost for companie,  
I should wenen it were a baudrie,  
I am not wood, all if I leude be,  
It is not so, that wote I well parde.

" But he that goeth for gold, or for richesse,  
On such messages, call him what ye list,  
And this that thou dost, call it gentlesse,  
Compassion, and fellowship, and trist,  
Depart it so, for wide where is wist  
How that there is diversitie required  
Betwixen things like, as I have lered.

" And that thou know I thinke not ne wene,  
That this service a shame be or jape,  
I have my faire sister Polixene,  
Cassandre, Helein, or any of the frape,  
Be she never so faire, or well yshape,  
Tell me whiche thou wilt of everyone  
To have for thine, and let me than alone.

" But sith that thou hast done me this service,  
My life to save, and for none hope of mede :  
So for the love of God, this great emprise  
Performe it out, now is the most nede  
For high and low, withouten any drede,  
I woll alway thine hestes all kepe,  
Have now good night, and let us both sleepe."

Thus held hem ech of other well apaid,  
That all the world ne might it bet amend,  
And on the morrow when they were araid,  
Ech to his owne needs gan to entend :  
But Troilus, though as the fire he brend,  
For sharpe desire of hope, and of pleasaunce,  
He not forgate his good governaunce.

But in himself, with manhood gan restrain  
Ech rakell deed, and ech unbridled chere,  
That all that liven soothe for to saine,  
Ne should have wist by word or by manere  
What that he ment, as touching this matere,  
From every wight, as ferre as is the cloud,  
He was so wise, and well dissimulen coud.

And all the while which that I now devise,  
This was his life, with all his full might :  
By day he was in Martes high servise,  
That is to saine, in armes as a knight,  
And for the more part all the long night,  
He lay and thought how that he might serve  
His lady best, her thanke for to deserve,

N'll I not sweare, although he lay soft,  
That in his thought n'as somewhat diseased,  
Ne that he tourned on his pillowes oft,  
And would of that him missed have ben eased,  
But in such case men be nat alway pleased,  
For aught I wote, no more than was he,  
That can I deeme of possibilitie.

But certaine is, to purpose for to go,  
That in this while, as written is in geste,  
He saw his lady sometime, and also  
She with him spake, whan that she durst and leste,  
And by hir both avise, as was the best,  
Appointeden full warely in this need,  
So as they durst, how they would proceed,

But it was spoken in so short a wise,  
In such awaite alway, and in such feare,  
Least any wight divinen or devise  
Would of hem two, or to it lay an care,  
That all this world so lefe to hem ne were,  
As that Cupide would hem his grace send,  
To maken of her speech right an end.

But thilke little that they spake or wrought,  
His wise ghost tooke aye of all such hede,  
It seemed her he wiste what she thought,  
Withouten word, so that it was no nede  
To bid him aught to doem, or aught forbede,  
For which she thought that love, all come it late,  
Of all joy had opened her the yate.

And shortly of this processe for to pace,  
So well his werke and wordes he beset,  
That he so full stood in his ladies grace,  
That twenty thousand times ere she let,  
She thonked God she ever with him met,  
So could he him governe in such servise,  
That all the world ne might it bet devise.

For she found him so discreet in all,  
So secret, and of such obeisaunce,  
That well she felt he was to her a wall  
Of steel, and shield of every displeasaunce,  
That to been in his good governaunce,  
So wise he was, she was no more afred,  
I meane as ferre as aught ben requered.



And Pandarus to quicke alway the fire,  
Was ever ylike preest and diligent,  
To ease his friend was set all his desire,  
He shofe aye on, he to and fro was sent,  
He letters bare, whan Troilus was absent,  
That never man, as in his friendes nede,  
Ne bare him bet than he, withouten drede.

But now peraventure some man waiten would  
That every word, or sond, look, or chere  
Of Troilus, that I rehearceen should,  
In all this while, unto his lady dere,  
I trow it were a long thing for to here,  
Or of what wight that stant in such disjoint  
His wordes all, or every looke to point.

Forsooth I have not herd it done ere this,  
In story none, ne no man here I wene,  
And though I would, I could not ywis,  
For there was some epistle hem betwene,  
That would (as saith mine autor) wel contene  
Nie half this boke, of which him list not write,  
How should I than a line of it endite?

But to the great effect, than say I thus,  
That stonden in concord and in quiete  
This ilke two, Creseide and Troilus,  
As I have told, and in this time swete,  
Save onely often might they not mete,  
Ne leisure have, hir speeches to fulfell,  
That it befell right as I shall you tell,

That Pandarus, that ever did his might,  
Right for the fine that I shall speake of here,  
As for to bringen to his house some night  
His faire nece, and Troilus yfere,  
Where as at leiser all this high matere  
Touching hir love were at the full up bound,  
Had out of doubt a time to it found.

For he with great deliberation  
Had every thing that thereto might availle  
Forne cast, and put in execution,  
And nether left for coet ne for travaille,  
Come if hem liste, hem should nothing faile,  
And for to ben in aught aspied there,  
That wist he well an impossible were.

Dredelesse it clere was in the wind  
Of every pie, and every let game,  
Now all is well, for all the world is blind  
In this matter, both fremed and tame,  
This timber is all ready up to frame,  
Us lacketh naught, but that we weten would  
A certaine houre, in which she comen should.

And Troilus, that all this purveyaunce  
Knew at the full, and waited on it aye,  
And hereupon eke made great ordinaunce,  
And found his cause, and therewith his arraye,  
If that he were missed night or day,  
They thought there while he was about this servise,  
That he was gone to done his sacrifice,

And must at such a temple alone wake,  
Answered of Apollo for to be,  
And first to sene the holy laurer quake,  
Er that Apollo spake out of the tree,  
To tellen him next whan Greeks should fle,  
And forthy let him no man, God forbede,  
Put pray Apollo helpe in this nede.

Now is there litell more for to done,  
But Pandare up, and shortly for to saine,  
Right sone upon the chaunging of the Mone,  
Whan lightlesse is the world a night or twaine,  
And that the welkin shope him for to raine,  
He streight a morrow unto his nece went,  
Ye have well herde the fine of his entent.

Whan he was comen, he gan anon to play,  
As he was wont, and of himselfe to jape,  
And finally he swore, and gan her say,  
By this and that, she should him not escape,  
No lenger done him after her to gape:  
But certainly, she must, by her lewe,  
Come soupen in his house with him at eve.

At which she lough, and gan her first excuse,  
And said: "It raineth: lo, how should I gone,"  
"Let be," (quod he) "ne stonde not thus to mune  
This mote be don, ye shal come there anone,"  
So at the last, hereof they fell at one:  
Or eles fast he swore her in her cere,  
He nolde never comen there she were.

Sone after this, she to him gan rowne,  
And asked him if Troilus were there,  
He swore her nay, for he was out of towne:  
And said, "Nece, I suppose that he were there,  
You durst never thereof have the more fere!  
For rather than men might him there aspie,  
Me were lever a thousand folde to die."

Naught list mine auctour fully to declare,  
What that she thought, whan as he said so,  
That Troilus was out of towne yfare,  
And if he said thereof soth or no,  
But that withouten awaite with him to go,  
She graunted him, sith he her that besought,  
And as his nece obeyed as her ought.

But nathelesse, yet gan she him besech,  
(Although with him to gone it was no fere)  
For to beware of gofishe peoples spech, *foolish*  
That dremen thinges, which that never were,  
And wel advise him whom he brought there:  
And said him, "Eme, sens I must on you trist,  
Loke al be wel, and do now as you list."

He swore her this by stockes and by stones,  
And by the Goddes that in Heven dwell,  
Or eles were him lever soule and bones,  
With Pluto king, as depe ben in Hell  
As Tantalus: what should I more tell!  
When al was well, he rose and toke his leve,  
And she to souper came whan it was eve.

With a certaine number of her own men,  
And with her faire nece Antigone,  
And other of her women nine or ten,  
But who was glad now, who, as trowe yee?  
But Troilus, that stode and might it see  
Throughout a litel window in a stewe, *closer*  
Ther he beseth, sith midnight, was in mewe,

Unwist of every wight, but of Pandare.  
But to the point, now whan that she was come,  
With al joy, and al her friendes in fare,  
Here eme anon in armes hath her nome,  
And than to the souper al and some,  
Whan as time was, full softe they hem set,  
God wot there was no deinte ferre to fet.

And after souper gonneth they to rise,  
At ease well, with herte full fresh and glade,  
And wel was him that coude best devise  
To liken her, or that her laughen made,  
He songe, she plaide, he told a tale of Wade :  
But at the last, as every thing hath end,  
She toke her leave, and nedes would thence wend.

But O Fortune, executrice of vierdes,  
O influences of these hevens hie,  
Soth is, that under God ye ben our hierdes,  
Though to us beestes ben the causes wrie :  
This mene I now, for she gan homeward hie ;  
But execute was all beside hir leve,  
At the goddes wil, for which she must bleve.

The bente Mone with her hornes all pale,  
Saturnus and Jove, in Cancro joynd were,  
That such a raime from Heven gan aynle,  
That every maner woman that was there,  
Had of that smoky raine a very feere :  
At which Pandare tho lough, and said thenne,  
“ Now were it time a lady to go henne.

“ But good nece, if I might ever please  
You any thing, than pray I you,” (quod he)  
“ To don mine herte as now so great an ease,  
As for to dwell here al this night with me,  
For why ? this is your owne house parde :  
For by my trouth, I say it nat in game,  
To wende as now, it were to me a shame.”

Creseide, which that could as much good  
As halfe a world, toke hede of his praire,  
And sene it rained, and al was in a fode,  
She thought, “ As good chepe may I dwel here  
And graunt it gladly with a frendes chere,  
And have a thonk, as grutch and than abide,  
For home to go it may nat well betide.”

“ I wol,” (quod she) “ mine uncle lief and dere,  
Sene that you list, it skill is to be so,  
I am right glad with you to dwellen here,  
I said but agame that I would go.”  
“ Ywis graunt mercy nece,” (quod he) “ tho .  
Were it agame or no, sothe to tell,  
Now am I glad, sene that you list to dwel.”

Thus al is wel, but tho began aright  
The newe joy, and al the fest againe,  
But Pandarus, if goodly had he might,  
He would have hied her to bedde full faine,  
And said, “ O Lord, this is an huge raine,  
This were a wether for to slepen in,  
And that I rede us soone to begin.

“ And nece, wote ye where I woll you lay,  
For that we shul not liggen ferre a sonder,  
And for ye neither shullen, dare I say,  
Here noise of raine, ne yet of thonder !  
By God right in my closet yonder,  
And I wol in that utter house alone,  
Ben wardain of your women everichone.

“ And in this middle chambre that ye se,  
Shal your women slepen, wel and soft,  
And there I said, shal your selven be :  
And if ye liggen wel to night, come oft,  
And careth not what wether is aloft.  
The wine anone, and whan so you lest,  
Go we to slepe, I trowe it be the best.”

There n'is no more, but hereafter sone  
They voide, dronke, and traveris draw anone,  
Gan every wight that hath nought to done  
More in the place, out of the chambre gone,  
And ever more so stereliche it rone,  
And blewe therwith so wonderliche loude,  
That wel nigh no man heren other coude.

Tho Pandarus her eme, right as him ought  
With women, such as were her most about,  
Ful glad unto her beddes side her brought,  
And toke his leave, and gan ful lowe lout,  
And said, “ Here at this closet dore without,  
Right overtwhart, your women liggen all,  
That whom ye list of hem, ye may sone call.

Lo, whan that she was in the closet laid,  
And al her women forth by ordinaunce,  
A bedde weren, there as I have said,  
There n'as no more to skippen nor to prauce,  
But boden go to bedde with mischaunce,  
If any wight stering were any where,  
And let hem slepen, that abedde were.

But Pandarus, that wel couth eche adele,  
The old danche, and every point therin,  
Whan that he saw that all thing was wele,  
He thought he wold upon his werke begin :  
And gan the stewe dore al soft unpin,  
As still as a stone, without lenger let,  
By Troilus adoun right he him set.

And shortly to the point right for to gone,  
Of al this werke he told him worde and end,  
And said, “ Make thee redy right anone,  
For thou shalt into Heven blisse wend.”  
“ Now blisfull Venus, thou me grace send,”  
(Quod Troilus) “ for never yet no dede,  
Had I er now, ne halfende the drede.”

(Quod Pandarus) “ Ne drede thee never a dele,  
For it shal be right as thou wolt desire,  
So thrive I, this night shall I make it wele,  
Or casten all the gruel in the fire.”  
“ Yet blisful Venus this night thou me enspire,”  
(Quod Troilus) “ as wis as I the serve,  
And ever bet and bet shall till I sterve.

“ And if I had, O Venus, ful of mirth,  
Aspectes badde of Mars, or of Saturne,  
Or thou combuste, or let were in my birth,  
Thy father pray, al thilke harme disturne  
Of grace, and that I glad ayen may turne:  
For love of him thou lovedst in the shawe,  
I mean Adon, that with the bore was slawe.

“ Jove eke, for the love of faire Europe,  
The which in forme of a bulle away thou fet :  
Now help, O Mars, thou with thy bloody cope  
For love of Cippria, thou me naught ne let :  
O Phebus, think when Daphne her selven shot  
Under the barke, and laurer wore for drede,  
Yet for her love, O help now at this nede.

“ Mercurie, for the love of her eke,  
For which Pallas was with Aglauroa wroth,  
Now helpe, and eke Diane I the beseke,  
That this viage be nat to the loth :  
O fatal sustren, which or any clothe  
Me shapen was, my destine me sponne,  
So helpeth to this werke that is begonne.”

(Quod Pandarus) "Thou wretched mouses herte,  
Art thou agast so that she will the bite!  
Why do on this furred cloke on thy sherte,  
And folow me, for I wol have the wite:  
But bide, and let me gon before alite,"  
And with that he gan undone a trappe,  
And Troilus he brought in by the lappe.

The sterne winde so loude gan for to rout  
That no wight other noise might here,  
And they that laien at the dore without,  
Ful sikerly they slepten al yfere:  
And Pandarus, with ful sobre chere,  
Goth to the dore anon withouten lett/  
There as they lay, and softly it shette.

And as he came ayen prively  
His nece awoke, and asketh, "Who goeth there?"  
"My owne dere nece," (quod he) "it am I,  
Ne wondreth not, ne have of it no fere."  
And nere he came, and said her in her eere:  
"No worde for love of God I you besech,  
Let no wight arise, and here of our spech."

"What, which way be ye comen? benedicite,"  
(Quod she) "and how unwiste of hem all!"  
"Here at this secrete trap dore," (quod he)  
(Quod tho Creseide) "Let me some wight call:"  
"Eigh, God forbid that it should so fall,"  
(Quod Pandarus) "that ye such foly wrought,  
"They might demen thing they never er thought.

"It is nat good a sleping hound to wake,  
Ne yeve a wight a cause for to devine,  
Your women alepen al, I undertake,  
So that for hem the house men might mine,  
And alepen wollen till the Sunne shine,  
And whan my tale is brought to an end,  
Unwist right as I came, so wol I wende.

"Now nece mine, ye shul well understonde,"  
(Quod he) "so as ye women demen all,  
That for to hold in love a man in honde,  
And him her lefe and dere herte to call,  
And maken him an howne above to call:  
I mene, as love an other in this mene while,  
She doth her selfe a shame, and him a gile.

"Now whereby that I tel you al this,  
Ye wote your selfe, as wel as any wight,  
How that your love al fully graunted is  
To Troilus, the worthiest wight  
One of the world, and therto trouth yplight,  
That but it were on him alone, ye n'old  
Him never falsen, while ye liven should.

"Now stonte it thus, that sith I fro you went,  
This Troilus, right platly for to seine,  
Is through a gutter by a privy went,  
Into my chambre come in al this reine:  
Unwist of every maner wight certaine,  
Save of my selfe, as wisely have I sey,  
And by the faith I owe to Priam of Troy.

"And he is come in such paine and distresse,  
That but if he be al fully wood by this,  
He sodainly mote fal into woodnesse,  
But if God helpe: and cause why is this?  
He saith him tolde is of a frende of his,  
How that ye should loven one, that hight Horast,  
For sorow of which this night shal be his last."

Creseide, which that al this wonder herle,  
Gan sodainly about her herte cold,  
And with a sigh she sorowfully answerd,  
"Alas, I wende who so ever tales told,  
My dere herte woulde me nat have hold  
So lightly faulse: alas conceites wrong,  
What harm they done, for now live I to long.

"Horaste alas, and falsen Troilus,  
I know him not, God helpe me so," (quod she)  
"Alas, what wicked spiritte told him thus,  
Now certes, eme, to morrow and I him se,  
I shal therof as full excusen me,  
As ever did woman, if him like,"  
And with that word she gan ful sore sike.

"O God," (quod she) "so worldly selinnesse  
Which clerkes callen false felicitye,  
Ymedled is with many bitternessse,  
Ful anguishous, than is, God wote," (quod she)  
"Condicion of veine prosperite,  
For either joyes comen nat yfere,  
Or eles no wight hath hem alway here.

"O brotil wele of mannes joy unstable,  
With what wight so thou be, or thou who play,  
Either he wote, that thou joy art mutable,  
Or wote it nat, it mote ben one of tway:  
Now if he wot it nat, how may he say,  
That he hath very joy and silinnesse,  
That is of ignorance aie in derkenesse?

"Now if he wote that joy is transitory,  
As every joy of worldly thing mote flee,  
Than every time he that hath in memory,  
The drede of lesing, maketh him that he  
May in no parfitte sikernes be:  
And if to lese his joy, he set a mite, *not*  
Than semeth it, that joy is worth ful lite.

"Wherefore I wol define in this matere,  
That truly for aught I can espie,  
There is no very wele in this world here.  
But O thou wicked serpent Jalousie,  
Thou misbeleved, and envious folie,  
Why hast thou Troilus made to me untrist,  
That never yet agite, that I wist!"

(Quod Pandarus) "Thus fallen is this caas."  
"Why uncle mine," (quod she) "who told him this  
And why doth my dere herte thus, alas?"  
"Ye wote, ye nece mine," (quod he) "what it is,  
I hope al shal ye wel, that is amis,  
For ye may quenche al this, if that you lest,  
And doeth right so, I hold it for the best."

"So shal I do to morrow, ywis," (quod she,  
"And God toforne, so that it shall suffice:"  
"To morow alas, that were faire," (quod he)  
"Nay, nay, it may nat stonden in this wise:  
For nece mine, this written clerkes wise,  
That peril is with dretching in drawe, *4/1*  
Nay soche abodes ben nat worth an hawe.

"Nece, all thing hath time I dare avow,  
For whan a chambre a fire is or an hall,  
Well more nede is, it sodainly rescow,  
Than to disputen and aske amonges all,  
How the candle in the strawe is fall:  
Ah benedicite, for al among that fare,  
The harme is done and farwel feld-fare.

"And nece mine, ne take it nat a grefe,  
If that ye suffre him al night in this wo,  
God helpe me so, ye had him never lefe,  
That dare I sain, now there is but we two,  
But wel I wote that ye wol nat so do,  
Ye ben to wise to done so great folie,  
To put his life al night in jeopardie."

"Had I him never lefe! By God I wene,  
Ye had never thing so lefe," (quod she.)  
"Now by my thrifte," (quod he) "that shall be sene,  
For sith ye make this ensample of me,  
If iche al night would him in sorow se,  
For al the treasour in the tounne of Troie,  
I bidde God, I never mote have joie,

"Now loke than, if ye that ben his love,  
Should put his life al night in jeopardie,  
For thing of nought: now by that God above  
Nat onely this delay cometh of folie,  
But of malice, if that I should nat lie:  
What, platly and ye suffre him in distresse,  
Ye neither bounte done ne gentillese."

(Quod tho Creseide) "Woll ye done o thing,  
And ye therwith shal stinte al his disease,  
Have here and here to him this blaw ring,  
For there is nothing might him better please,  
Save I my selfe, ne more his herte apese,  
And say, my dere herte, that his sorow,  
Is causelesse, that shal he sene to morow."

"A ring," (quod he) "ye hasel wodes shaken,  
Ye nece mine, that ring must have a stone,  
That might deed men alive all maken,  
And such a ring trowe I that yee have none:  
Discrecion out of your heed is gone,  
That fele I now," (quod he) "and that is routh:  
O time yloet, wel maigest thou cursen slouth."

"Wote ye not wel that noble and his corage  
Ne soroweth nat, ne stinteth eke for lite,  
But if a foole were in a jelous rage,  
I n'old setten at his sorow a mite,  
But feste him with a fewe wordes all white,  
Another day whan that I might him find;  
But this thing stant al in another kind."

"This is so gentle and so tender of herte,  
That with his death he wol his sorowes wreke,  
For trust it well, how sore that him smart,  
He woll to you no jelous wordes speke,  
And forthy nece, er that his herte breke,  
So speke your selfe to him of this matere,  
For with a worde ye may his herte stere."

"Now have I told what peril he is in,  
And is coming unwist is to every wight,  
Ne parde harme may there be none, ne sin,  
I wol my self be with you all this night,  
Ye know eke how it is your owne knight,  
And that by right, ye must upon him triste,  
And I al prest to fetch him whan you liste."

This accident so pitous was to here,  
And eke so like a sothe, at prime face,  
And Troilus her knight, to her so dere,  
His prive comming, and the siker place,  
That though she did him as than a grace,  
Considred all thinges as they now stood,  
No wonder is, sene he did al for good.

Creseide answerde, "As wisely God at rest  
My soule bring, as me is for him wo,  
And, eme, ywis, faine would I don the best,  
If that I grace had for to do so,  
But whether that ye dwell, or for him go,  
I am, till God me better minde send,  
At dulcarnon, right at my wittes end."

(Quod Pandarus) "Ye, nece, wol ye here,  
Dulcarnon is called fleming of wretches,  
It semeth herd, for wretches wol nought lere,  
For very slouth, or other wilfull tetches,  
This is said by hem that be not worth two fetches,  
But ye ben wise, and that ye han-on hound,  
N'is neither harde, ne skilfull to withstound."

"Than, eme," (quod she) "doeth here as you list,  
But ere he come, I wol up first arise,  
And for the love of God, sene all my trist  
Is on you two, and ye beth bothe wise,  
So werketh now, in so discrete a wise,  
That I honour may have and be plesaunce,  
For I am here, al in your governaunce."

"That is well said," (quod he) "my nece dere,  
There good thrifte on that wise gentill herte,  
But liggeth still, and taketh him right here,  
It nedeth nat no farther for him start,  
And eche of you easeth other sorowes smart,  
For love of God, and Venus I the hery,  
For sone hope I, that we shall ben mery."

This Troilus full sone on knees him sette,  
Full sobrelly, right by her beddes heed,  
And in his beste wise his lady grette:  
But lord so she woxe sodainliche reed,  
Ne though men should smiten of her heed,  
She could not o word a right out bring,  
So sodainly for his sodaine coming."

But Pandarus, that so wel coulede fele  
In every thing, to play anon began,  
And said, "Nece se how this lord gan knele:  
Now for your trouthe, se this gentil man:"  
And with that worde, he for a quishen ran,  
And said, "Kneleth now while that thou leest,  
There God your hertes bring sone at rest."

Can I naught sain, for she bad him nat rise,  
If sorow it put out of remembraunce,  
Or eles that she toke it in the wise  
Of duetie, as for his observaunce,  
But well find I, she did him this plesaunce,  
That she him kist, although she siked sore,  
And bad him sit adoun withouten more."

(Quod Pandarus) "Now woll ye well begin,  
Now doth him sitte downe, good nece dere  
Upon your beddes side, al there within,  
That ech of you the bet may other here,"  
And with that worde he drew him to the fiere,  
And toke a light, and founde his countenaunce,  
As for to loke upon an old romaunce."

Creseide that was Troilus lady right,  
And clere stode in a ground of sikernessee,  
All thought she her servant and her knight  
Ne should none untrouth in her gesse:  
That nathelesse, considered his distresse,  
And that love is in cause of such folie,  
Thus to him spake she of his jelousie.

"Lo, herte mine, as would the excellence  
Of love, ayenst the which that no man may,  
Ne ought eke goodly maken resistance,  
And eke because I felte wel and say,  
Your great trouth, and service every day :  
And that your herte al mine was, soth to saine,  
This drove me for to rewe upon your paine.

"And your goodnes have I founden alway yet,  
Of which, my dere herte, and al my knight,  
I thanke it you, as ferre as I have wit,  
Al can I nat as much as it were right,  
And I emforth my conning and my might  
Have, and aie shal, how sore that ye smert,  
Ben to you trew and hole with all mine herte.

"And dredelesse that shal be founden at prove,  
But, herte mine, what al this is to sain  
Shall well be told, so that ye nought you greve  
Though I to you right on your self complain,  
For there with meane I finally the pain,  
That halte your herte and mine in heavinesse,  
Fully to slaine, and every wrong redresse.

"My good mine, not I, for why ne how  
That jelousie alas, that wicked wivere,  
Thus causelesse is copen into you,  
The harme of which I would faine delivere :  
Alas, that he all hole or of him some alivere  
Should have his refute in so digne a place,  
That Jove, him sone out of your herte race.

"But O thou, O auctour of nature,  
Is this an honour to thy dignite,  
That folke ungitly suffren here injure,  
And who that gilty is, al quite goeth he !  
O were it leful for to plaine of the,  
That undeserved sufferest jalousie,  
O, that I would upon thee plaine and crie.

"Eke al my wo is this, that folke now usen  
To saine right thus : ye jalousie is love,  
And would a bushel of venim al excusen,  
For that a grane of love is on it shove,  
But that wote high Jove that sit above,  
If it be liker love, hate, or grame,  
And after that it ought beare his name.

"But certaine is, some maner jalousie  
Is excusable, more than some ywik,  
As whan cause is, and some such fantasie  
With pite so well expressed is,  
That it unneth doeth or saith amis,  
But goodly drinketh up al his distresse,  
And that excuse I for the gentillesse.

"And some so full of fury is, and despote,  
That it surmounteth his repression,  
But, herte mine, ye be not in that plite,  
That thonke I God, for which your passion,  
I will nat call it but illusion  
Of haboundance of love, and besie cure,  
That doth your herte this disease endure.

"Of whiche I am sorry, but not wrothe,  
But for my devoir and your hertes rest,  
Whan so you list, by ordal or by othe,  
By sorte, or in what wise so you leest,  
For love of God, let preve it for the best,  
And if that I be gilty, do me die,  
Alas, what might I more done or seie."

With that a few bright teeres new,  
Out of her eyen fel, and thus she seid,  
"Now God thou wost, in thought ne dede untrew  
To Troilus was never yet Creseid,"  
With that her heed down in the bed she leid,  
And with the shete it wrigh, and sighed sore,  
And held her pece, nat a word spake she more.

But now help God, to quench al this sorow,  
So hope I that he shall, for he best may,  
For I have sene of a full misty morow,  
Folowen ful oft a mery somers day,  
And after winter foloweth grene May,  
Men sene all day, and reden eke in stories,  
That after sharpe shoures ben victories.

This Troilus, whan he her wordes herde,  
Have ye no care, him list nat to slepe,  
For it thought him no strokes of a yerde  
To here or see Creseide his lady wepe,  
But well he felt about his herte crepe,  
For every teare which that Creseide astert,  
The crampe of death, to straine him by the herte,

And in his minde he gan the time accurse  
That he came there, and that he was borne,  
For now is wicke touned into worse,  
And all that labour he hath doen beforne,  
He wende it lost, he thought he nas but lorne,  
"O Pandarus," thought he, "alas, thy wile,  
Serveth of nought, so welaway the while."

And therewithall he hing adoun his hedde,  
And fell on knees, and sorowfully he sight,  
What might he sain ? he felt he n'as but dedde,  
For wroth was she that should his sorows light :  
But nathelesse, whan that he speaken might,  
Than said he thus, "God wote that of this game,  
Whan all is wist, than am I not to blame."

Therwith the sorow of his herte shet,  
That from his eyen fell there nat a tere,  
And every spirite his vigour in knet,  
So they astonied or oppressed were :  
The feling of sorrow, or of his fere,  
Or aught els, fledde were out of toun,  
A doune he fell all sodainly in swoune.

This was no little sorrow for to se,  
But all was husht, and Pandare up as fast,  
"O nece, peace, or we be lost" (quod he.)  
"Bethe nat agast," but certain at last,  
For this or that, he into bedde him cast,  
And saied, "O thefe, is this a mannes herte !"  
And off he rent all to his bare sherte.

And saied "Nece, but an ye helpe us now,  
Alas, your owne Troilus is forlorne."  
"Ywis so would I, and I wist how,  
Full fain" (quod she) "alas, that I was borne."  
"Ye, nece, woll ye pullen out the thorne  
That sticketh in his herte !" (quod Pandare)  
"Say all foryeve, and stint is all this fare."

"Ye, that to me" (quod she) "full lever were  
Than all the good the Sunne about goeth ;"  
And therewithall she swore him in his care,  
"Ywis my dere herte I am not wrothe,  
Have here my trouth, and many other othe,  
Now speake to me, for it am I Creseide :"  
But all for naught, yet might he nat abreide.

Therwith his pouce, and paums of his hondes  
They gan to frote, and wete his temples twain,  
And to deliver him fro bitter bondes,  
She oft him kist, and shortly for to sain,  
Him to rewaken she did all her pain,  
And at the last he gan his breath to drawe,  
And of his swough sone after that adawe.

And gan bet minde, and reason to him take,  
But wonder sore he was abashed ywis,  
And with a sigh whan he gan bet awake  
He saied, "O mercy God, what thing is this ?"  
"Why do ye with your selven thus amis ?"  
(Quod tho Creseide) "is this a mans game,  
What Troilus, woll ye do thus for shame ?"

And therwithal her arm over him she laied,  
And all foryave, and oftime him kest.  
He thonked her, and to her spake and saied  
As fell to purpose, for his hertes rest,  
And she to that answerde him as her lest,  
And with her goodly wordes him disport  
She gan and oft his sorowes to comfort.

(Quod Pandarus) "for ought I can aspien,  
This light nor I ne serven here of naught,  
Light is nat good for sike folkes eyen,  
But for the love of God, sens ye been brought  
In this good plite, let now none hevty thought  
Been hanged in the hertes of you twey,  
And bare the candle to the chimney."

Soone after this, though it no nede were,  
Whan she soche othes as her list devise  
Had of hem take, her thought tho no fere,  
Ne cause eke none, to bid him thens rise :  
Yet lesse thing than othes may suffice,  
In many a case, for every wight I gesse,  
That loveth well, meaneth but gentilnesse.

But in effect she would wete anon,  
Of what man, and eke where, and also why  
He jalous was, sens there was cause non :  
And eke the signe that he toke it by,  
She bade him that to tell her busily,  
Or eles certain she bare him on honde,  
That this was doen of malice her to fonde.

Withouten more, shortly for to sain  
He must obey unto his ladies hest,  
And for the lasse harme he must somewhat fain,  
He saied her, whan she was at soche a fest,  
She might on him have loket at the lest,  
Not I nat what, all dere ynough a rishe,  
As he that nedes must a cause out fish.

And she answerde, "Swete, all were it so  
What harme was that, sens I non evill meane ?  
For by that God that bought us bothe two,  
In all maner thing is mine entent cleane :  
Soch arguments ne be nat worth a beane :  
Woll ye the childist jalous counterfete,  
Now were it worthy that ye were ybete."

The Troilus gan sorowfully to sike  
Lest she be wroth, him thought his herte deide,  
And saied, "Alas, upon my sorowes sike,  
Have mercy, O swete herte mine Creseide :  
And if that in the wordes that I seide,  
Be any wrong, I woll no more treespace,  
Doeth what you list, I am all in your grace."

And she answerde, "Of gilt misericorde,  
That is to saine, that I foryeve all this,  
And evermore on this night you recorde,  
And bethe well ware ye do no more amis :"  
"Nay, dere herte mine, no more" (quod he) "ywis."  
"And now" (quod she) "that I have you do smart,  
Foryeve it to me, mine owne swete herte."

This Troilus with blisse of that surprised,  
Put all in Goddes hand, as he that ment  
Nothing but well, and sodainly avised  
He her in his armes fast to him hent :  
And Pandarus, with a full good entent,  
Laied him to slepe, and saied, "If ye be wise,  
Sweveneth not now, lest more folke arise."

What might or may the sely larke say,  
Whan that the sparhauke hath him in his fote,  
I can no more, but of these ilke tway,  
(To whom this tale sugre be or sote)  
Though I tary a yeere, sometime I mote,  
After mine aucthour tellen hir gladnesse,  
As well as I have told hir hevynesse.

Creseide, which that felt her thus ytake,  
(As writen clerkes in hir bokes old)  
Right as an aspen lefe she gan to quake,  
Whan she him felt her in his armes fold :  
But Troilus all hole of cares cold,  
Gan thanken tho the blisfull goddes seven,  
Through sondry pains to bring folk to Heven.

This Troilus in armes gan her straine,  
And saied "Swete, as ever mote I gone,  
Now be ye caught, here is but we twaine,  
Now yeldeth you, for other boote is none :"  
To that Creseide answerde thus anone,  
"Ne had I er now, my swete herte dere,  
Been yolde ywis, I were now not here."

O soth is saied, that healed for to be  
As of a fever, or other great sicknesse,  
Men must drinke, as we often se,  
Full bitter drinke : and for to have gladnesse  
Men drinke of pain, and great distresse :  
I meane it here by, as for this aventure,  
That through a pain hath founden al his cure.

And now swetnesse semeth far more swete,  
That bitternesse assaied was biforne,  
For out of wo in blisse now they fiete,  
Non soch they felten sens they were borne,  
Now is this bet, than both two be lorne :  
For love of God, take every woman hede,  
To werken thus, if it come to the nede.

Creseide all quite from every drede and tene,  
As she that just cause had him to trist,  
Mado him soche feast, it joy was to sene,  
Whan she his trouth and cleve entent wist :  
And as about a tree with many a twist  
Bitrent and writhe the swete wodbiinde,  
Can eche of hem in armes other winde.

And as the newe abashed nightingale,  
That stinteth first, whan she beginneth sing,  
Whan that she hearth any heerdes tale,  
Or in the hedges any wight steering,  
And after siker doeth her voice outring :  
Right so Creseide, whan that her drede stent,  
Opened her herte, and told him her entent.

And right as he that seeth his death yshapen,  
And dien mote, in aught that he may gesse,  
And sodainly rescuous doeth hem escapen,  
And from his death is brought in sikernesse :  
For all this world, in soche present gladnesse,  
Was Troilus, and bath his lady swete :  
With worse hap God let us never meta.

Her armes smal, her streight backe and soft,  
Her sides long, fleshy, smooth, and white,  
He gan to stroke, and good thrift had full oft,  
Her snowisse throte, her brestes round and lite :  
Thus in this Heaven he gan him to delite,  
And therewithall a thousand times her kist,  
That what to doen for joy unneth he wist.

Than saied he thus, " O Love, O Charite,  
Thy mother eke, Citheria the swete,  
That after thy selfe, next heried be she  
Venus I meane, the well willy planete :  
And next that, Imeneus I thee grete,  
For never man was to you goddes hold,  
As I, which ye have brought fro cares cold.

" Benigne Love, thou holy bond of thingen,  
Who so woll grace, and list thee not honouren,  
Lo, his desire woll fly withouten wingen,  
For n'oldest thou of bounte hem socouren  
That serven best, and most alway labouren,  
Yet were all lost, that dare I well sain certes,  
But if thy grace passed our desertes.

" And for thou me, that lest thonke coud deserve  
Of them that nombred been unto thy grace,  
Hast holpen, there I likely was to sterve,  
And me bestowen in so high a place,  
That thilke boundes may no blisse surpasse,  
I can no more, but laude and reverence  
Be to thy bounte and thine excellence."

And therewithall Creseide anon he kist,  
Of whiche certain she felt no disease,  
And thus saied he, " Now would God I wist,  
Mine herte swete, how I you best might please :  
What man " (quod he) " was ever thus at ease,  
As I ! On which the fairest, and the best  
That ever I seie, deinet her to rest.

" Here may men seen that mercy passeth right,  
The experience of that is felt in me,  
That am unworthy to so swete a wight,  
But herte mine, of your benigneite  
So thinke, that though I unworthy be,  
Yet mote I nede amenden in some wise,  
Right through the vertue of your hie service.

" And for the love of God, my lady dere,  
Sith he hath wrought me for I shal you serve,  
As thus I meane : woll ye be my fere,  
To do me live, if that you list, or sterve :  
So teacheth me, how that I may deserve,  
Your think, so that I through mine ignoraunce,  
Ne doe nothing that you be displeasaunce.

" For certes, freshe and womanliche wife,  
This dare I say, that trouth and diligence,  
That shall ye finden in me all my life,  
Ne I woll not certain breken your defence,  
And if I doe, present or in absence,  
For love of God, let slea me with the dede,  
If that it like unto your womanhede."

" Ywis " (quod she) " mine owne hertes lust,  
My ground of ease, and al mine herte dere,  
Graunt mercy, for on that is all my trust :  
But let us fall away fro this matere,  
For it suffiseth, this that said is here,  
And at o worde, without repentaunce,  
Welcome my knight, my peace, my suffisaunce."

Of hir delite or joies, one of the least  
Were impossible to my wit to say,  
But judgeth ye that have been at the feast  
Of soche gladnesse, if that him list play :  
I can no more but thus, these ilke tway,  
That night betwixen drede and sikernesse,  
Felten in love the greates worthinesse.

O blisfull night, of hem so long isought,  
How blithe unto hem bothe two thou were !  
Why ne had I soch feast with my soule ybought !  
Ye, or but the least joy that was there !  
Away thou foule daunger and thou fere,  
And let him in this Heaven blisse dwell,  
That is so high, that all ne can I tell.

But soth is, though I cannot tellen all,  
As can mine aucthour of his excellence,  
Yet have I saied, and God toforme shall,  
In every thing all hooly his sentence :  
And if that I, at loves reverence,  
Have any worde in eched for the best,  
Doeth therewithall right as your seiven lest.

For my wordes here, and every part,  
I speake hem all under correction  
Of you that feling have in loves art,  
And put it ail in your discrecion,  
To encrease or make diminicion  
Of my language, and that I you beseech,  
But now to purpose of my rather speech,

These ilke two that ben in armes laft,  
So lothe to hem a sonder gon it were,  
That eche from other weiden been biraft,  
Or eles lo, this was her most fere,  
That all this thing but nice dreames were,  
For which full oft eche of hem saied, " O swete,  
Clepe I you thus, or els doe I it mete."

And lord so he gan goodly on her se,  
That never his loke ne blent from her face,  
And saied, " O my dere herte, may it be  
That it be soth, that ye beene in this place !"  
" Ye herte mine, God thanke I of his grace."  
(Quod tho Creseide) and therewithall him kist,  
That where her spirite was, for joy she n'ist.

This Troilus full often her eyen two  
Gan for to kisse, and saied : " O eyen clere,  
It weren ye that wrought me soche wo,  
Ye humble nettes of my lady dere :  
Tho there be mercy written in your chere,  
God wote the text full harde is for to find,  
How coud ye withouten londe me bind !"

Therwith he gan her fast in armes take,  
And well an hundred times gan he sike,  
Not such sorrowfull sighes as men make  
For wo, or eles whan that folke be sike :  
But easie sighes, soche as been to like,  
That shewed his affection within,  
Of soche maner sighes could he not blin.

Sone after this, they spake of sondry things  
As fell to purpose of this aventure,  
And playng enterchaungen hir rings,  
Of which I can not tellen no scripture,  
But well I wot, a broche of gold and azure,  
In which a rubbie set was like an herte,  
Creseide him yave, and stacke it on his sherte.

Lord, trowe ye that a coveitous wretch,  
That blameth love, and halte of it dispite,  
That of tho pens that he can muckre and ketch  
Ever yet yave to him soche delite,  
As is in love, in o pointin some plite :  
Nay doubtlesse, for al so God me save  
So parfite joie may no nigard have.

They woll say yes, but lord so they lie,  
Tho busie wretches full of wo and drede,  
That callen love a woodnesse of follie,  
But it shall fall hem, as I shall you rede :  
They shal forgon the white and eke the rede,  
And live in wo, there God yeve hem mischaunce,  
And every lover in his trouth avaunce.

As would God tho wretches that deepise  
Service of love had eares also long  
As had Mida, full of covetise,  
And thereto drunken had as hotte and strong  
As Cresus did, for his affectes wronge  
To teachen hem, that they been in the vice,  
And lovers not, although they hold hem nice.

These ilke two, of whom that I you say,  
Whan that hir hertes well assured were,  
Tho gonnen they to speake and to play,  
And eke rehearcen how, whan, and where  
They knewe first, and every wo or fere  
That passed was, but all such heaviness,  
I thonke it God, was tourned to gladnesse.

And evermore, whan that hem fell to speake  
Of any thing of soche a time agone,  
With kissing all that tale should breake,  
And fallen into a new joy anone,  
And didden all hir might, sens they were one  
For to recoveren blisse, and been at ease,  
And praised wo with joyes counterpaise.

Reason woll not that I speake of slepe,  
For it accordeth not to my mattere,  
God wote they toke of it full little kepe,  
But lest this night that was to hem so dere  
Ne should in vaine escape in no manere,  
It was biset in joy and businesse,  
Of all that souneth unto gentillesse.

But whan the cock, commune astrologer,  
Gan on his brest to beate, and after crowe,  
And Lucifer, the daies messenger,  
Gan to rise, and out his beames throwe,  
And estward rose, to him that could it know,  
Fortuna maior, than anone Creseide  
With herte sore, to Troilus thus seide :

" Mine hertes life, my trust, all my pleasaunce,  
That I was borne alas, that me is wo,  
That day of us mote make disceverance,  
For time it is to rise, and hence go,  
Or eles I am lost for ever mo :  
O night alas, why n'ilt thou over us hove,  
As long as whan Alcmena lay by Jove.

" O blacke night, as folke in boke rede,  
That shapen art by God, this world to hide  
At certain times, with thy derke wede,  
That under that men might in rest abide,  
Wel oughten beasts to plain, and folke to chide  
That there as day with labor would us brest  
That thou thus flieth, and deinst us not rest.

" Thou doest alas, to shortly thine office,  
Thou rakle night, there God maker of kinde,  
Thee for thine hast, and thine unkind vice,  
So fast aie to our hemisperie binde,  
That nevermore under the ground thou wind,  
For now for thou so highest out of Troie,  
Have I forgone thus hastily my joie."

This Troilus, that with tho wordes felt,  
As thought him tho, for pitous distresse  
The bloodie teares from his herte melt,  
As he that yet never soche heviness,  
Assaied had, out of so great gladnesse,  
Gan therewithall Creseide his lady dere  
In armes strain, and hold in lovely manere.

" O cruell day, accuser of the joy  
That night and love have stole, and fast ywrien,  
Accursed be thy coming into Troie,  
For every bowre hath one of thy bright eyen :  
Envious day, what list thee so to spien,  
What hast thou lost, why seekest thou this place  
There God thy light so quench for his grace.

" Alas, what have these lovers thee agilt ?  
Dispitous day, thine be the paine of Hell,  
For many a lover hast thou slain, and wilt,  
Thy poring in woll no where let hem dwell :  
What profrest thou thy light here for to sell ?  
Go sell it hem that smale seales grave,  
We woll thee not, us nedeth no day have."

And eke the sonne Titan gan he chide, ✓  
And said, " O foole, well may men thee dispise,  
That hast all night the dawning by thy side,  
And sufferest her so sone up fro thee rise,  
For to disease us lovers in this wise :  
What hold your bed there, thou and thy morow,  
I bid God so yeve you bothe sorow."

Therwith ful sore he sighed, and thus he seide  
" My lady right, and of my weale or wo  
The well and roote, O goodly mine Creseide,  
And shall I rise alas, and shall I so ?  
Now fele I that mine herte mote a two ;  
And how should I my life an houre save,  
Sens that with you is all the life I have ?

" What shall I doen ? For certes I n'ot how  
Ne whan alas, I shall the time see  
That in this plite I may been eft with you,  
And of my life God wote how shall that be,  
Sens that desire right now so biteth me,  
That I am dedde anon, but I retourne,  
How should I long alas, fro you sojourne ?

" But nathelesse, mine owne lady bright,  
Were it so that I wist utterly,  
That your humble servaunt and your knight  
Were in your herte yet so fermely,  
As ye in mine : the which truly  
Me leaver were than these worlds twaine,  
Yet should I bet endure all my paine."



To that Creseide answerde right anon,  
And with a sigh she saied, "O herte dere,  
The game ywis so ferforth now is gon,  
The first shal Phebus fallen from the sphere,  
And everiche egle been the doves fere,  
And every rocke out of his place sterte,  
Er Troilus go out of Creseides herte.

"Ye been so depe within mine herte grave,  
That tho I would it turn out of my thought,  
As wisely veray God my soule save,  
To dien in the pain, I could nought :  
And for the love of God, that us hath wrought,  
Let in your brain none other fantasie  
So crepen, that it cause me to die.

"And that ye me would have as fast in mind,  
As I have you, that would I you beseeche :  
And if I wist sothly that to find  
God might not appoint my joies to ech.  
But herte mine, withouten more spech,  
Beth to me true, or else were it routh,  
For I am thine, by God and by my trouth.

"Beth glad forthy, and live in sikernesse,  
Thus saied I never er this, ne shall to mo,  
And if to you it were a great gladnesse,  
To tourne ayen sone after that ye go,  
As faine would I as ye, it were so,  
As wisely God mine herte bring to reste :"  
And him in armes toke, and ofte keste.

Ayent his will, sithe it mote nedes bee,  
This Troilus up rose and fast him cled,  
And in his armes toke his ladie free,  
An hundred times, and on his way him sped,  
And with soche wordes, as his herte bled,  
He saied : "Fare well my dere herte swete,  
That God us graunt sound and sone to mete."

To which no word for sorow she answerd,  
So sore gan his parting her distraign,  
And Troilus unto his paleis ferd,  
As wo begon as she was soth to sain,  
So hard him wrong of sharp desire the pain,  
For to been efte there he was in pleasaunce,  
That it may never out of his remembrance,

Retourned to his roiall paleis sone,  
He soft unto his hedde gan for to sinke  
To slepe long, as he was wont to doen,  
But all for naught, he may well ligge and winke,  
But slepe may there none in his herte sinke,  
Thinking how she, for whom desire him brend,  
A thousand folde was worth more than he wend.

And in his thought, gan up and down to wind  
Her wordes all, and every countenance,  
And fermely impressen in his mind  
The lest pointe that to him was pleasaunce,  
And verely of thilke remembrance,  
Desire al newe him brende, and lust to brede,  
Gan more than erst, and yet toke he none hede.

Creseide also, right in the same wise,  
Of Troilus gan in her herte shet  
His worthinesse, his lust, his dedes wise,  
His gentilnesse, and how she with him met ;  
Thinking love, he so well her beset,  
Desiring oft to have her herte dere,  
In soche a place as she durst make him chere.

Pandare a morow, which that comen was  
Unto his nece, gan her faire to grete,  
And saied, "All this night so rained it alas,  
That all my drede is, that ye, nece swete,  
Have little leiser had to slepe and mete :  
Al this night" (quod he) "hath rain so do me wake,  
That some of us I trowe hir beddes ake,"

And nere he came and saied, "How stant it now  
This merie morow, nece, how can ye fare !"  
Creseide answerde, "Never the bet for you,  
Foxe that ye been, God yeve your herte care,  
God helpe me so, ye caused all this fare,  
Trowe I," (quod she) "for all your wordes white,  
O who so seeth you, knoweth you full lite."

With that she gan her face for to wrie,  
With the shete, and woxe for shame all redde,  
And Pandarus gan under for to prie,  
And saied "Nece, if that I shall been dedde,  
Have here a sword, and smiteth of my hedde :"  
With that his arme all sodainly he thrist  
Under her necke, and at the last her kist.

I passe all that, which chargeth naught to say,  
What, God foryave his death, and she also  
Foryave : and with her uncle gan to play,  
For other cause was there none than so :  
But of this thing right to the effect to go,  
Whan time was, home to her house she went,  
And Pandarus hath fully his entent.

Now tourne we ayen to Troilus,  
That restelesse full long a bedde lay,  
And prively sent after Pandarus,  
To him to come in all the hast he may,  
He come anon, not ones saied he nay,  
And Troilus full soberly he grete,  
And doune upon the beddes side him sete.

This Troilus with all thaffection  
Of friendly love, that herte may devise,  
To Pandarus on his knees fill adoun :  
And er that he would of the place arise,  
He gan him thanken on his beste wise,  
An hundred time he gan the time blesse,  
That he was born, to bring him fro distresse.

He said, "O frend of friends, the alderbest  
That ever was, the sothe for to tell,  
Thou hast in Heaven ybrought my soul at rest,  
Fro Phlegeton the fire flood of Hell,  
That though I might a thousand times sell  
Upon a day my life in thy service,  
It might not a mote in that suffice.

"The Sonne, which that all the world may se,  
Sawe never yet, my life that dare I leie,  
So joly, faire, and goodly, as is she  
Whose I am all, and shall till that I deie,  
And that I thus am hers, dare I seie,  
That thanked be the high worthinesse  
Of love, and eke thy kinde businesse.

"Thus hast thou me no little thing iyeve,  
For why to thee obliged be for aie,  
My life, and why ? for through thine helpe I live  
Or els dedde had I been ago many a day :"  
And with that worde down in his bed he lay,  
And Pandarus full soberly him herde,  
Tili all was said, and than he him answerde.

"My dere frende, if I have doen for thee,  
In any case, God wote it is me lefe,  
And am as glad as man may of it be,  
God helpe me so, but take now not agrife,  
That I shall saine, beware of this mischiefe,  
That ther as now thou broght art to thy blis,  
That thou thy selfe ne cause it not to mis.

"For of fortunes sharpe adversite,  
The worst kind of infortune is this,  
A man that hath been in prosperite,  
And it remember, whan it passed is.  
Thou art wise inough, forthy, doe not amis,  
Be not to rakell, though thou sit warme,  
For if thou be, certain it woll thee harme.

"Thou art at ease, and hold thee well therin,  
For al so sure as redde is every fire,  
As great a crafte is to kepe well as win,  
Bridle alway well thy speach and thy desire,  
For worldly joy holdeth not by a wire,  
That preveth well, it brest alday so ofte,  
Forthy neede is to werken with it softe."

(Quod Troilus) "I hope, and God to forne,  
My dere frende, that I shall so me bere,  
That in my gift there shall nothing been lorne,  
Ne I nill not rakle, as for to greven here;  
It needeth not this matter often tere,  
For wistest thou mine herte wel Pandare,  
God wote of this thou wouldest lite care."

Tho gan he tell him of his glad night,  
And whereof first his herte dradde, and how,  
And said "Frende, as I am true knight,  
And by that faith I owe to God and you,  
I had it never halfe so hote as now,  
And aie the more that desire me bieth  
To love her best, the more it me deliteth.

"I n'ot my selfe not wisely, what it is,  
But now I feele a new qualite.  
Ye al another than I did er this."  
Pandare answerd and saied thus, "that he  
That ones may in Heaven blisse be,  
He feeleth other waies dare I lay,  
Than thilke time he first heard of it say."

This is a worde for all, that Troilus  
Was never ful to speke of this matere,  
And for to praisen unto Pandarus  
The bounte of his right lady dere,  
And Pandarus to thanke, and maken chere,  
This tale was aie span newe to begin,  
Til that the tale departed hem a twinne.

Soone after this, for that fortune it would,  
Ycomen was the blisfull time swete,  
That Troilus was warned, that he should,  
There he was erst, Creseide his lady mete:  
For which he felt his herte in joy flete,  
And faithfully gan all the goodes hery,  
And let see now, if that he can be mery,

And holden was the forme, and al the glae  
Of her comming, and of his also,  
As it was erst, which nedeth nought devise,  
But plainly to theeffect right for to go:  
In joy and surete Pandarus hem two  
Abedde brought, whan hem both lest,  
And thus they ben in quiet and in rest.

Naught nedeth it to you sith they ben met  
To aske at me, if that they blithe were,  
For if it erst was well, tho was it bet  
A thousand folde, this nedeth not enquire:  
A go was every sorow and every fere,  
And both ywis they had, and so they wend,  
As much joy as herte may comprehend.

This n'is na litel thing of for to sey,  
This passeth every wit for to devise,  
For eche of hem gan others lust obey,  
Felicite, which that these clerkes wise  
Commenden so, ne may no here suffice,  
This joy ne may not ywritten be with inke,  
This passeth al that herte may bethinke.

But esuel day, so welaway the stound,  
Gan for to aproche, as they by signes knew,  
For which hem thought felen dethes wound,  
So wo was hem, that chaungen gan hir hew  
And day they gonnen to dispise al new,  
Calling it traitour, envious and worse,  
And bitterly the daies light they corse.

(Quod Troilus) "Alas, now am I ware  
That Pirous, and tho swiftes stedes thre,  
Which that drawn forth the Sunnes chare,  
Han gon some by pathe in dispise of me,  
And maketh it so sone day to be,  
And for the Sunne him hasten thus to rise,  
Ne shall I never don him sacrifice."

But nedes day departe hem must sone,  
And whan hir speech done was, and hir chere,  
They twin anon, as they were wont to done,  
And setten time of meting eft yfere:  
And many a night they wrought in this manere  
And thus fortune a time ladde in joie  
Creseide, and eke this kinges son of Troie.

In suffisaunce, in blisse, and in singings,  
This Troilus gan all his life to lede,  
He spendeth, justeth, and maketh feestings,  
He geveth freely oft, and chaungeth wede,  
He helde about him alway out of drede  
A world of folke, as come him well of kind,  
The freshest and the best he coule find.

That such a voice was of him, and a steven,  
Throughout the world, of honour and largesse,  
That it up ronge unto the yate of Heven,  
And as in love he was in such gladnesse,  
That in his herte he demed, as I gesse,  
That there n'is lover in this world at ease,  
So wel as he, and thus gan love him please.

The goodlihede or beaute, which the kind,  
In any other lady had ysette,  
Can not the mounテナunce of a gnat unbind,  
About his herte, of al Creseides nette:  
He was so narow ymasked, and yknette,  
That is undon in any maner side,  
That n'il nat ben, for ought that may betide.

And by the hond full ofte he would take  
This Pandarus, and into gardin lede,  
And such a feest, and such a processe make  
Him of Creseide, and of her womanhede,  
And of her beaute, that withouten drede,  
It was an Heven his wordes for to here,  
And than he woulde sing in this manere:

"Love, that of erth and sea hath governaunce,  
Love, that his heestes hath in Heven hie,  
Love, that with an holosome aliaunce,  
Halte people joyued, as him list hem gie,  
Love, that knitteth law and companie,  
And couples doth in vertue for to dwell,  
Binde this accord, that I have told and tell.

"That, that the world with faith, which that is stable,  
Diverseth so his staundes according,  
That elements that beth discordable,  
Holden a bonde, perpetually during,  
That Phebus mote his rosy day forth bring,  
And that the Mone hath lordship over the nights,  
Al this doeth Love, aie heried be his mighta.

"That, that the sea, that greedy is to flowen,  
Constraineth to a certaine ende so  
His floodes, that so fiercely they ne growen  
To drenchen earth and all for evermo,  
And if that Love aught let his bridle go,  
All that now loveth asunder should lepe,  
And lost were all, that Love halt now to hepe.

"So would to God, that authour is of kind,  
That with his bond, Love of his vertue list  
To searchen hertes all, and fast bind,  
That from his bond no wight the wey out wist,  
And hertes cold, hem would I that hem twist,  
To maken hem love, and that list hem aie rew  
On hertes sore, and keep hem that ben trew."

In all needes for the townes warre . . .  
He was, and aye the first in armes dight,  
And certainly, but if that bookes erre,  
Save Hector, most ydradde of any wight,  
And this encrease of hardinesse and might  
Come him of love, his ladies thanke to win,  
That altered his spirit so within.

In time of truce on hauking would he ride,  
Or els hunt bore, beare, or lion,  
The small beastes let he gon beside,  
And whan that he come riding into the toun,  
Full oft his lady from her window down,  
As fresh as faucon, comen out of mue,  
Full redely was him goodly to salue.

And most of love and vertue was his speech,  
And in dispite had all wretchednesse,  
And doubtlesse no need was him beseech  
To honouren hem that had worthinesse,  
And easen hem that weren in distresse,  
And glad was he, if any wight well ferde  
That lover was, whan he it wist or herde.

For sooth to saine, he lost held every wight,  
But if he were in Loves high servise,  
I meane folke that aught it ben of right,  
And over all this, so well could he devise  
Of sentement, and in so uncouth wise  
All his array, that every lover thought,  
That al was wel, what so he said or wrought.

And though that he be come of blood roiall,  
Him list of pride at no wight for to chace,  
Benigne he was to ech in generall,  
For which he gate him thank in every place :  
Thus wolde Love, yheried by his grace,  
That pride, and ire, envie, and avarice,  
He gan to fle, and every other vice.

Thou lady bright, the daughter of Diane,  
Thy blind and winged son eke dan Cupide,  
Ye sustren nine eke, that by Helicone  
In hill Pernaso, listen for to abide,  
That ye thus ferre han deined me to gide,  
I can no more, but sens that ye woll wend,  
Ye heried ben for aye withouten end.

Through you have I said fully in my song  
Theffect and joy of Troilus servise,  
All be that there was some disease among.  
As mine authour listeth to devise,  
My thirde booke now end I in this wise.  
And Troilus in lust and in quiete,  
Is with Creseide his owne herte swete.

EXPLICIT LIBER TERTIUS.

PROEMK

B. IV. V. 1—39

But all too little, welaway the while  
Lasteth such joy, ythanked bee Fortune,  
That seemeth truest, whan she woll begile,  
And can to foolles her songe entune,  
That she hem hent, that blent, traitor commune :  
And whan a wight is from her whele ythrow,  
Than laugheth she, and maketh him the mowe.

From Troilus she gan her bright face  
Away to writhe, and tooke of him none hede,  
And cast him clene out of his ladies grace,  
And on her whele she set up Diomede,  
For which mine herte right now ginneth blede,  
And now my pen alas, with which I write,  
Quaketh for drede of that I must endite.

For how Creseide Troilus forsooke,  
Or at the least, how that she was unkind,  
Mote henceforth ben matter of my booke,  
As written folk through which it is in mind,  
Alas, that they should ever cause find  
To speake her harme, and if they on her lie,  
Ywis herselfe should have the villanie.

O ye Herines, nightes daughters three,  
That endelesse complaine ever in paine,  
Megera, Alecto, and eke Tesiphonee,  
Thou cruell Mars eke, father of Quirine,  
This ilke fourth booke helpe me to fine,  
So that the loos, and love, and life yfere  
Of Troilus be fully shewed here.

INCIPIT LIBER QUARTUS.

Liggino in host, as I have said ere this,  
The Greekes strong, about Troy toun,  
Befell, that whan that Phebus shining is  
Upon the breast of Hercules Lion,  
That Hector, with many a bold baron,  
Cast on a day with Greekes for to fight,  
As he was wont, to greve hem what he might.

Not I how long or short it was bitwene  
This purpose, and that day they fighten ment,  
But on a day well armed bright and shene,  
Hector and many a worship knight out went

With speare in hondo, and big bowes bent,  
And in the berde withouten lenger lette,  
Hir fomen in the field anone hem mette.

The longe day with speares sharpe yground,  
With arrows, dartes, swerds, and maces fell,  
They fight, and bringen horse and man to ground  
And with hir axes out the braines quell,  
But in the last shoure, sooth to tell,  
The folke of Troy hem selven as maleden,  
That with the worse at night home they fieden.

At whiche day was taken Anthenor,  
Maugre Polimidas, or Monestee,  
Xantippe, Sarpedon, and Palestinor,  
Polite, or eke the Troyan dan Rupheo,  
And other lasse folke, as Pheuseo,  
So that for harm that day the folk of Troy  
Dreden to lese a great part of hir joy.

Of Priamus was yeve at Grekes request  
A time of truce, and tho they gonne trete.  
Hir prisoners to chaungen most and lest,  
And for the surplus yeven sommes grete.  
This thing anon was couth in every strete.  
Both in th'assiege, in toune, and every where,  
And with the first it came to Calcas ere.

Whan Calcas knew this tretise should hold  
In consistorie among the Greekes soone  
He gan in thringe, forth with lordes old,  
And set him there as he was wont to done,  
And with a chaunged face hem bade a boone  
For love of God, to done that reverence,  
To stinten noise, and yeve him audience.

Than said he thus, "Lo, lordes mine I was  
Troyan, as it is known out of drede,  
And if that you remember, I am Calcas,  
That alderfirst yave comfort to your nede,  
And tolde well howe that you should apede,  
For dredelesse through you shall in a stound  
Ben Troy ybrent, and beaten down to ground.

"And in what forme, or in what manner wise  
This toun to shend, and all your lust atchevz,  
Ye have ere this well herde me devise:  
This know ye my lordes, as I leve,  
And for the Greekes weren me so leve,  
I came my selfe in my proper persone  
To teach in this how you was best to done.

"Having unto my treasour, ne my rent,  
Right no regard in respect of your ease,  
Thus all my good I left, and to you went,  
Wening in this you lordes for to please.  
But all that losse ne doth me no disease,  
I vouchsafe, as wisely have I joy,  
For you to lese all that I have in Troy.

"Save of a daughter that I left, alas,  
Sleeping at home, whan out of Troy I stert,  
O sterne, O cruell father that I was,  
How might I have in that so hard an herte!  
Alas, that I ne had brought her in my shert,  
For sorow of which I wol nat live to morow,  
But if ye lordes rew upon my sorow.

"For because that I saw no time ere now  
Her to deliver, iche holden have my pees,  
But now or never, if that it like you,  
I may her have right now doubtles:

O helpe and grace, among all this pees,  
Rew on this old caitife in distresse,  
Sith I through you have all this heviness.

"Ye have now caught, and fettred in prison  
Troyans enow, and if your willes be,  
My child with one may have redemption,  
Now for the love of God, and of bounte,  
One of so fele alas, so yefe him me:  
What need were it this praiser for to werne,  
Sith ye shull have both folk and toun as yerne.

"On perill of my life I shall nat lie,  
Apollo hath me told full faithfully,  
I have eke found by astronomie,  
By sort, and by augurie truely,  
And dare well say the time is fast by,  
That fire and flambe on all the toun shall sprede  
And thus shall Troy turne to ashen dede.

"For certaine, Phebus and Neptunus both,  
That makeden the walles of the toun,  
Ben with the folke of Troy alway so wroth,  
That they woll bring it to confusioun  
Right in despite of king Laomedoun,  
Because he nolde paien hem hir hire,  
The toun of Troy shall ben set on fire."

Telling his tale alway this olde grey,  
Humble in his speech and looking eke,  
The salte teares from his eyen twey,  
Full faste ronnen doune by either cheke,  
So long he gan of succour hem beseke,  
That for to heale him of his sorowes sore,  
They gave him Antenor withouten more.

But who was glad enough, but Calcas tho,  
And of this thing full soone his nedes leide  
On hem that shoulde for the treatise go  
And hem for Antenor full ofte preide,  
To bringen home king Theas and Creseide,  
And whan Priam his safegarde sent,  
Th'embassadours to Troy streight they went.

The cause I told of hir comming, the old  
Priam the king, full soone in generall,  
Let here upon his parlyment hold,  
Of which th'effect rehearsen you I shall:  
Th'embassadours ben answerde for finall,  
The eschaunge of prisoners, and all this nede  
Hem liketh well, and forth in they procede.

This Troilus was present in the place,  
When asked was for Antenor Creseide,  
For which full sone chaungen gan his face,  
As he that with the wordes well nigh deide,  
But nathelesse he no word to it seide,  
Lest men should his affection espie,  
With mannes herte he gan his sorowes drie.

And full of anguish and of grealy drede,  
Abode what other lords would to it sey,  
And if they would graunt, as God forbode,  
Th'eschaunge of her, than thought he thinges tway:  
First, how to save her honour, and what wey  
He might best th'eschaunge of her withstond,  
Full fast he cast how all this might stond.

Love him made all prest to done her bidr,  
And rather dien than she should go,  
But Reason said him on that other side,  
"Withouten assent of her do nat so,

Lest for thy werke she would be thy fo,  
And saine, that through thy medling is yblow  
Your brother love, there it was not erst know."

For which he gan deliberen for the best,  
And though the lordes would that she went,  
He would let hem graunt what hem lest,  
And tell his lady first what that they ment,  
And whan that she had said him her entent,  
Thereafter would he worken also blive,  
Tho all the world ayen it wolde strive.

Hector, which that well the Greekes hard,  
For Antenor how they would have Creseide,  
Gan it withstond, and soberly answerd :  
"Sirs, she n'is no prisoner," (he seide)  
"I n'ot on you who that this charge leide,  
But on my part, ye may eftsoones hem tell,  
We usen here no women for to sell."

The noise of people up stert than atones,  
As brimme as blase of straw yset on fire,  
For infortune it would for the nones,  
They shouliden hir confusion desire : [enspire  
"Hector," (quod they) "what ghost may you  
This woman thus to shild, and done us lese  
Dan Antenore, a wrong way now ye chese.

"That is so wise, and eke so bold baroun,  
And we have need of folke, as men may see,  
He is one of the greatest of this toun :  
O Hector, lette, thy fantasies bee,  
"O king Priam," (quod they) "thus segge wee,  
That all our voice is to forgone Creseide,"  
And to deliver Antenor they preide.

O Juvenall lord, true is thy sentence,  
That little wenen folke what is to yerne,  
That they ne finden in hir desire offence,  
For cloud of errour ne lette hem discernen  
What best is, and lo, here ensample as yerne .  
These folke desiren now deliverance  
Of Antenor, that brought hem to mischaunce.

For he was after traitour to the toun  
Of Troy alas, they quitte him out to rathe,  
O nice world, so thy discretioun,  
Creseide, which that never did hem scathe,  
Shall now no lenger in her blisse bathe,  
But Antenor, he shall come home to toun,  
And she shall out, thus said heere and houn.

For which delibered was by parlyment,  
For Antenor to yeelden out Creseide,  
And it pronouncd by the president,  
Though that Hector may full oft praid,  
And finally, what wight that it withaid,  
It was for naught, it must ben, and should,  
For substaunce of the parlyment it would.

Departed out of the parlyment echone,  
This Troilus, without wordes mo,  
Unto his chamber spedde him fast alone,  
But if it were a man of his or two,  
The which he bad out faste for to go,  
Because he would slepen, as he said,  
And hastily upon his bedde him laid.

And as in winter, leaves ben biraft  
Ech after other, till trees be bare,  
So that there n'is but barke and branch yiaf,  
Lithe Troilus, biraft of ech welfare,

Ybounden in the blacke barke of care,  
Disposed wode out of his witte to breide,  
So sore him sate the chaunging of Creseide.

He rist him up, and every dore he shette,  
And window eke, and tho this sorrowfull man  
Upon his beddes side doune him sette,  
Full like a dead image, pale and wan,  
And in his breast the heaped wo began  
Out brust, and he to worken in this wise  
In his woodnesse, as I shall you devise.

Right as the wilde bull beginneth spring  
Now here, now there, idarted to the herte,  
And of his death roreth, in complaining,  
Right so gan he about the chamber stert,  
Smiting his breast aye with his fistes smert,  
His head to the wall, his body to the ground,  
Full oft he swapt, himselven to confound.

His eyen two for pity of his herte  
Out stremeden as swift as welles twey,  
The highe sobbes of his sorrowes smert  
His speech him reft, unnethes might he sey,  
"O death alas, why n'ilt thou do me dey !  
Accursed be that day which that nature  
Shope me to ben a lives creature."

But after whan the fury and all the rage  
Which that his heart twist, and fast threst,  
By length of time somewhat gan assuage,  
Upon his bed he laid him doun to rest,  
But tho begon his teares more out to brest,  
That wonder is the body may suffice  
To halfe this wo, which that I you devise.

Than said he thus : " Fortune alas, the while  
What have I done ! what have I thee right !  
How mightest thou for routhe me begile !  
Is there no grace ! and shall I thus be spilt !  
Shall thus Creseide away for that thou wilt !  
Alas, how mightest thou in thine herte find  
To ben to me thus cruell and unkind !

"Have I thee nat honoured all my live,  
As thou well wotest, above the Gods all !  
Why wilt thou me fro joy thus deprive !  
O Troilus, what may men now thee call,  
But wretch of wretches, out of honour fall  
Into misery, in which I woll bewaile  
Creseide alas, till that the breath me faile.

"Alas, Fortune, if that my life injoy  
Displeased had unto thy foule envie,  
Why ne haddest thou my father king of Troy  
Biraft the life, or done my brethren die,  
Or slaine my selfe, that thus complaine and eric !  
Icombe world, that may of nothing serve,  
But ever dye, and never fully sterve.

"If that Creseide alone were me left,  
Naught raught I whider thou woldest me sterv,  
And her alas, than hast thou me byraft :  
But evermore, lo, this is thy manere.  
To reve a wight that most is to him dere,  
To preve in that thy gierfull violence :  
Thus am I lost, there helpeth no defence.

"O very Lord, O Love, O God alas,  
That knowest best mine herte and al my thought,  
What shal my sorrowfull life done in this case,  
If I forgo that I so dere have bought,

Sens ye Creseide and me have fully brought  
Into your grace, and both our hertes sealed,  
How may ye suffer alas, it be repealed!

"What I may done, I shal while I may dure  
On live, in turment and in cruell paine,  
This infortune, or this disaventure,  
Alone as I was borne I woll complaine,  
Ne never woll I seene it shine or raine,  
But end I woll as Edippe in derkenesse  
My sorrowfull life, and dien in distresse.

"O very ghost, that erreast to and fro,  
Why nilt thou flien out of the wofullest  
Body, that ever might on grounde go!  
O soule, lurking in this wofull neste,  
Fly forthout mine herte, and let it breste,  
And follow alway Creseide thy lady dere,  
Thy right place is now no lenger here.

"O wofull eien two, sens your disport  
Was all to seene Creseides eyen bright,  
What shall ye done, but for my discomfort  
Stoden for naught, and wepen out your sight,  
Sens she is quaint, that wont was you to light,  
In veine from this forth have I eyen tway  
Yformed, sens your vertue is away.

"O my Creseide, O lady souveraine  
Of this wofull soule that thus crieth,  
Who shall now yeven comfort to thy paine!  
Alas, no wight, but whan mine herte dieth,  
My spirit, which that so unto you hieth,  
Receive in gree, for that shall aye you serve,  
Forthy no force is, though the body sterve.

"O ye lovers, that high upon the whele  
Ben sette of Fortune in good aventure,  
God lene that ye finded aye love of stele,  
And long mote your life in joy endure,  
But whan ye comen by my sepulture,  
Remembreth that your fellow resteth there,  
For I loved eke, though I unworthy were.

"O old unholosome and mislived man,  
Calcas I meane, alas, what eiled thee  
To ben a Greek, sens thou art borne Trojan!  
O Calcas, which that wolt my bane be,  
In cursed time was thou borne for me,  
As would blissfull Jove for his joy,  
That I thee had where I would in Troy."

A thousand sighes hotter than the glede,  
Out of his breast, each after other went,  
Medled with plaint new, his wo to fede,  
For which his wofull teares never stent,  
And shortly so his sorowes him to rent,  
And woxe so mate, that joy or pennaunce  
He feeleth none, but lieth in a trauunce.

Pandare, which that in the parliment  
Had heard what every lord and burgess seid,  
And how full graunted was by one assent,  
For Antenor to yelden out Creseid:  
Gan well nigh wood out of his wit to breid,  
So that for wo he niste what he ment,  
But in a rage to Troilus he went.

A certaine knight, that for the time kept  
The chamber dore, undid it him anoue,  
And Pandare, that full tenderly wept,  
Into the derke chamber as still as stone,

Toward the bedde gan softly to gone,  
So confuse, that he n'ist what to say,  
For very wo, his wit was nigh away.

And with chere and looking all to torne,  
For sorow of this, and with his armes folden,  
He stood this wofull Troilus beforne,  
And on his pitous face he gan beholden,  
But so oft gan his herte colden,  
Seeing his friend in wo, whose heavincasse  
His herte slough, as thought him for distresse.

This wofull wight, this Troilus that felt  
His friend Pandare ycomen him to see,  
Gan as the snow ayenst the Sunne melt,  
For which this wofull Pandare of pite  
Gan for to weepe as tenderly as he:  
And speechlesse thus ben these ilke tway,  
That neither might for sorow o word say.

But at the last, this wofull Troilus,  
Nigh dead for smert, gan bresten out to rore,  
And with a sorrowfull noyse he said thus  
Among his sobbes and his sighes sore,  
"Lo, Pandare I am dead withouten more,  
Hast thou not heard at parliament," he seide,  
"For Antenor how lost is my Creseide!"

This Pandare full dead and pale of hew,  
Full pitously answerde, and said, "Yes,  
As wisely were it false as it is trew,  
That I have heard, and wote all how it is,  
O mercy God, who would have trowed this,  
Who would have wend, that in so little a throw  
Fortune our joy would have overthrow.

"For in this world there is no creature,  
As to my dome, that ever saw ruine  
Straunger than this, through case or aventure,  
But who may all eschue or all devine,  
Such is this world, forthy I thus define:  
No trust no wight to find in Fortune  
Aye property, her yetes ten commune.

"But tell me this, why thou art now so mnd  
To sorowen thus, why list thou in this wise,  
Sens thy desire all holy hast thou had,  
So that by right it ought inough suffice,  
But I that never felt in my servise  
A friendly chere or looking of an eie,  
Let me thus wepe and wailen till I die.

"And over al this, as thou wel wost thy seive,  
This tounne is full of ladies all about,  
And to my dome, fairer than such twelve  
As ever she was, shal I finden in some rout,  
Ye one or tway, withouten any dout:  
Forthy be glade mine owne dere brother,  
If she be lost, we shall recover another.

"What God forbid alway that ech pleasaunce  
In o thing were, and in none other wight,  
If one can sing, another can well daunce,  
If this be goodly, she is glad and light,  
And this is faire, and that can good aright,  
Ech for his vertue holden is for dere,  
Both heroner and faucon for riverse.

"And eke as writ Zansis, that was full wise,  
The new love out chaseth oft the old:  
And upon new case lieth new avise,  
Thinke eke thy selfe to saven art thou hold,

Such fire by processe shall of kind cold,  
For sens it is but casuall pleasaunce,  
Some case shall put it out of remembrance.

"For also sure as day commeth after night,  
The newe love, labour or other wo,  
Or eles seide seeing of a wight,  
Done old affections all overgo,  
And for thy part, thou shalt have one of tho  
To abredge with thy bitter paines smart,  
Absence of her shall drive her out of herte."

These wordes saied he for the nones all  
To helpe his friend, least he for sorow deide,  
For doubtlesse to doen his wo to fall,  
He raught nat what unthrift that he seide :  
But Troilus that nigh for sorow deide,  
Tooke little hede of all that ever he ment,  
One care it heard, at the other out it went.

But at the last he answerd, and said, "Friend,  
This lechcraft, or healed thus to be,  
Were well fitting, if that I were a fiend,  
To traie a wight, that true is unto me,  
I pray God let this counsaile never ythe,  
But doe me rather sterue anon right here,  
Ere thus I doen, as thou me wouldest lere.

"She that I serve ywis, what so thou sey,  
To whom mine herte enhabite is by right,  
Shall have me holy hers, till that I dey,  
For Pandarus, sens I have trouthe her hight,  
I woll nat ben untrue for no wight,  
But as her man I woll aye live and sterue,  
And never none other creature serve.

"And there thou saiest thou shalt as fair find  
As she, let be, make no comparison,  
To creature yformed here by kind,  
O leve Pandare, in conclusion,  
I woll nat been of thine opinion  
Touching all this, for which I thee beseech,  
So hold thy peace, thou sleest me with thy speech.

"Thou biddest me I should love another  
All freshly new, and let Creseide go,  
It lithe nat in my power, leve brother,  
And though I might, yet would I nat do so,  
But canst thou plaien raket to and fro,  
Nettle in dock out, now this, now that, Pandare?  
Now foule fall her for thy wo that care.

"Thou farest eke by me Pandarus,  
As he, that whan a wight is wo bigon,  
He commeth to him apace, and saith right thus,  
'Thinke not on smart, and thou shalt feelee none,'  
Thou maigest me first transmewen in a stone,  
And reve me my passions all,  
Or thou so lightly doe my wo to fall.

"The death may well out of my brest depart  
The life, so long may this sorow mine :  
But fro my soule shall Creseides dart  
Out nevermore, but doune with Proserpine  
Whan I am dead, I woll won in pine,  
And there I woll eternally complain  
My wo, and how that twinned be we twain.

"Thou hast here made an argument full fine,  
How that it should lasse paine be  
Creseide to forgone, for she was mine,  
And lived in ease and in felicity :

Why gabbest thou, that saidest unto me,  
That him is wors that is fro wele ithrow,  
Than he had erst none of that wele know ?

"But tel me now, sen that thee thinketh so light  
To chaungen so in love aye to and fro,  
Why hast thou nat doen busily thy might  
To chaungen her, that doth thee all thy wo ?  
Why nilt thou let her fro thine herte go ?  
Why nilt thou love another lady swete,  
That may thine herte setten in quiete ?

"If thou hast had in love aye yet mischance,  
And canst it not out of thine herte drive,  
I that lived in lust and in pleasaunce  
With her, as much as creature on live,  
How would I that forget, and that so blive ?  
O where hast thou ben hid so long in mew,  
Thou canst so well and formeliche argew.

"Nay God wot, naught worth is al thy rede,  
For which, for what that ever may befall,  
Withouten wordes mo I woll ben dede :  
O Death, that ender art of sorrowes all,  
Come now, sens I so oft after thee call,  
For sely is that death, sooth for to saine,  
That oft ycleped, commeth and endeth paine.

"Well wote I, while my life was in quiete,  
Ere thou me alue, I would have yeven hire,  
But now thy comming is to me so swete,  
That in this world I nothing so desire :  
O Death, sens with this sorow I am a fire,  
Thou either do me anone in teares drench,  
Or with thy cold stroke mine herte quench.

"Sens that thou slaiest so fele in sundry wise  
Ayenst hir will, unpraied day and night,  
Doe me at my request this servise,  
Deliver now the world, so doest thou right,  
Of me that am the wofullest wight  
That ever was, for time is that I sterue,  
Sens in this world of right naught do I serve."

This Troilus in teares gan distill  
As licour out of allambike full fast,  
And Pandarus gan hold his tongue still,  
And to the ground his eyen downe he cast,  
But nathelesse, thus thought he at last,  
"What parde, rather than my fellow dey,  
Yet shall I somewhat more unto him sey."

And said, "Friend, sens thou hast such distress,  
And sens thee list mine argumentes blame,  
Why n'ilt thy selven helpe doen redresse,  
And with thy manhood letten all this game,  
Go ravish her, ne canst thou not for shame ?  
And either let her out of toune fare,  
Or hold her still, and leave thy nice fare.

"Art thou in Troy, and hast non hardiment  
To take a wight, whiche that loveth thee,  
And would her selven been of thine assent,  
Now is nat this a nice vanite ?  
Rise up anon, and let this weeping be,  
And sith thou art a man, for in this hour  
I woll been dead, or she shall ben our."

To this answerde him Troilus full soft,  
And saied, "Ywis, my leve brother dere,  
All this have I my selfe yet thought full oft,  
And more thing than thou devisest here,

But why this thing is left, thou shalt wel here,  
And when thou hast me yeven audience,  
Thereafter mayst thou tell all thy sentence.

"First, sin thou wost this toun hath al this werre  
For ravishing of women so by might,  
It should not been suffred me to erre,  
As it stont now, ne done so great unright,  
I should have also blame of every wight,  
My fathers graunt if that I so withstood,  
Sens she is chaunged for the tounes good.

"I have eke thought, so it were her assent,  
To sake her of my father of his grace,  
Than thinke I, this were her accusation,  
Sens well I wot I may her nat purchase,  
For sens my father in so high a place  
As parliament, hath her eschaunge ensealed,  
He n'ill for me his letter be repealed.

"Yet drede I most her herte to perturbe  
With violence, if I doe such a game,  
For if I would it openly disturbe,  
It must be disclaunder to her name,  
And me were lever die than her diffame,  
As n'old God, but I should have  
Her honour, lever than my life to save.

"Thus am I lost, for aught that I can see.  
For certaine is that I am her knight,  
I must her honour lever have than me  
In every case, as lover ought of right,  
Thus am I with desire and reason twight:  
Desire for to disturben her me redeth,  
And reason n'ill not, so mine herte dredeth."

Thus weeping, that he could never cease,  
He said, "Alas, how shall I wretche fare,  
For well fele I alway my love encrease,  
And hope is lasse and lasse Pandare,  
Encreasen eke the causes of my care,  
So welaway, why n'ill mine herte brest,  
For as in love there is but little rest."

Pandare answerde, "Friend thou mayst for me  
Done as thee list, but had I it so hote,  
And thine estate, she should go with me,  
Who all this toun cried on this thing by note,  
I n'old set at all that noise a grote,  
For whan men have cried, than wol they roun,  
Eke wonder last but nine deies never in toun.

"Devine not in reason aye so deepe,  
Ne curteely, but helpe thy selfe anone,  
Bet is that other than thy selfen wepe,  
And namely, sens ye two ben al one,  
Rise up, for by mine head she shall not gone,  
And rather ben in blame a little yfound,  
Than sterve here as a gnat withouten wound.

"It is no shame unto you, ne no vice,  
Her to withholden, that ye loveth most,  
Peraventure she might hold thee for nice,  
To letten her go thus unto the Grekes hoste,  
Think eke Fortune, as well thy selven woste,  
Helpeth hardie man unto his emprise,  
And weiveth wretches for hir cowardise.

"And though thy lady would alite her greve,  
Thou shalt thy self thy peace hereafter make,  
But as to me certaine I cannot leve,  
That she would it as now for evill take.

Why should than for feare thine herte quake,  
Thinke how Paris hath, that is thy brother,  
A love, and why shal thou not have another?

"And Troilus, o thing I dare thee swer,  
That if Creseide, which that is thy lefe,  
Now loveth thee, as well as thou dost her,  
God helpe me so, she nill not take a grefe,  
Though thou do bote anon in this mischefe,  
And if she wilneth fro thee for to passe,  
Than is she false, so love her well the lasse.

"Forthy, take herte, and think right as a knight,  
Through love is broken alday every law,  
Kith now somewhat thy courage and thy might,  
Have mercie on thy selfe for any awe,  
Let not this wretched wo thine herte gnawe,  
But manly set the world on sixe and seven,  
And if thou die a martir, go to Heaven.

"I woll my selfe ben with thee at this dede,  
Though I and all my kin upon a stound,  
Should in a strete, as dogs, ligen dede,  
Through girt with many a bloodie wound,  
In every case I woll a friend be found,  
And if thee listeth here sterven as a wretch,  
Adieu, the devill speede him that retch."

This Troilus gan with tho wordes quicken,  
And saied, "Friend, graunt mercie, I assent,  
But certainly, thou mayst nat so me pricken,  
Ne paine none ne may me so torment,  
That for no case it is not mine entent,  
At shorte wordes, though I dien should,  
To ravishen her, but if her selfe it would."

"Why, so mean I" (quod Pandarus) "al this day  
But tell me than, hast thou her well assaid,  
That sorwest thus I" and he answerde him "Nay."  
"Wherof art thou" (quod Pandare) "than dismaid,  
That noste not that she woll ben evill apaid  
To ravishen her, sens thou hast not ben there,  
But if that Jove told it in thine care?

"Forthy, rise up as naught ne were, anone,  
And wash thy face, and to the king thou wend,  
Or he may wondren whider thou art gone,  
Thou must with wisdom him and other blend,  
Or upon case he may after thee send  
Or thou beware, and shortly brother dere  
Be glad, and let me werke in this mattere.

"For I shall shape it so, that sikerly  
Thou shalt this night sometime in some manere  
Come spoken with thy ladie prively,  
And by her wordes eke, as by her chere,  
Thou shalt full soone aperceive and well here  
Of her entent, and in this case the best,  
And fare now well, for in this point I rest."

The swifte fame, whiche that fals thinges  
Equal reporteth, like the thinges true,  
Was throughout Troy yfied, with prest winges,  
Fro man to man, and made his tale all new,  
How Calcas daughter with her bright hew,  
At parliament without words more,  
Ygraunted was in chaunge of Antenore.

The whiche tale anon right as Creseide  
Had heard, she, which that of her father rought  
(As in this case) right naught, ne whan he deide  
Full busily to Jupiter besought



Yeve him mischance, that this tretis brought :  
But shortly, least these tales sooth were,  
She durst at no wight asken it for fere.

As she that had her herte and all her mind  
On Troilus yset so wonder fast,  
That al this world ne might her love unbind,  
Ne Troilus out of her herte cast,  
Sne would been his while that her life may last,  
And she thus brenneth both in love and drede,  
So that she n'ist what was best to rede.

But as men seene in tounne, and all about,  
That women usen hir friends to visite,  
So to Creseide of women came a rout.  
For pitous joy, and wenden her delite,  
And with hir tales dere ynough a mite,  
These women, which that in the citie dwell,  
They set hem doune, and sayd as I shall tell.

(Quod, first that one) "I am glad truely;  
Because of you, that shall your father see,"  
Another sayd, "Ywis, so am not I,  
For all too little hath she with us be :"  
(Quod tho the third) "I hope ywis that she  
Shall bringen us the peace on every side,  
That whan she goth, almighty God her gide."

The wordes and tho womannish thinges  
She herd hem right as thogh she thence were :  
For God it wote, her herte on other thing is,  
Although the body sat emong hem there,  
Her advertence is alway els where,  
For Troilus full fast her soule sought,  
Withouten word, on him alway she thought.

These women that thus wenden her to please,  
About naught gan all hir tales spend,  
Such vanitie ne can done her none ease,  
As she that all this meane while brend  
Of other passion than they wend,  
So that she felt almost her herte die  
For wo, and werie of that companie.

For which might she no lenger restraine  
Her teares, they gan so up to well,  
That gave signes of her bitter paine,  
In which her spirit was, and must dwell,  
Remembring her from Heaven unto which Hell  
She fallen was, sens she forgo the sight  
Of Troilus, and sorrowfully she sight.

And thilke foolles, sitting her about,  
Wende that she wept and sighed sore.  
Because that she should out of the rout  
Departen, and never play with hem more,  
And they that had knowen her of yore,  
See her so wepe, and thoght it was kindnesse,  
And ech of hem wept eke for her distresse.

And busily they gonnen hir to comforten  
On thing God wot, on which she litle thoght,  
And with hir tales wenden her disporten,  
And to be glad they ofte her besought,  
But such an ease therwith they her wrought,  
Right as a man is eased for to fele,  
For ache of head, to clawen him on his hele.

But after all this nice vanitie,  
They took hir leve, and home they wenten all,  
Creseide full of sorrowfull pitie,  
Into her chamber up went out of the hall,

And on her bedde she gan for dead to fall,  
In purpose never thence for to rise,  
And thus she wrought, as I shall you devise.

Hir ownded hair, that sonniah was of bew,  
She rent, and eke her fingers long and smale  
She wrong full oft, and bad God on her rew,  
And with the death to do bote on her bale,  
Her hewe whylom bright, that tho was pale,  
Bare witness of her wo, and her constreint :  
And thus she spake, sobbing in her compleint.

"Alas," (quod she) "out of this region,  
I wofull wretch and infortunat wight,  
And borue in cursed constellatioun,  
Mote gon, and thus departen fro my knight,  
Wo worth alas, that ilke daies light,  
On which I saw him first with eyen twaine,  
That causeth me, and I him all this paine."

Therwith the teares from her eyen two  
Doun fell, as shoure in April swithe,  
Her white breast she bet, and for the wo,  
After the death she cried a thousand sithe,  
Sens he that wont her wo was for to lithe,  
She mote forgone, for which disaventure  
She held her selfe a forlost creature.

She said, "How shall he done and I also  
How should I live, if that I from him twin ?  
O dere herte eke that I love so,  
Who shall that sorow slaen, that ye ben in ?  
O Calcas, father, thine be all this sin :  
O mother mine, that cleped wert Argive,  
Wo worth that day that thou me bare on live.

"To what fine should I live and sorowen thus ?  
How should a fish withouten water dure ?  
What is Creseide worth from Troilus ?  
How should a plant or lives creature  
Live withouten his kind noriture ?  
For which full oft a by word here I sey,  
That rootlesse mote greene soone dey.

"I shal done thus, sens neither sword ne dart  
Dare I none handle, for the cruelte,  
That ilke day that I fro you depart,  
If sorow of that n'll nat my baue be,  
Than shall no meat ne drinke come in me,  
Till I my soule out of my brest unsheath,  
And thus my selven woll I done to death.

"And Troilus my clothes everychone  
Shull blacke ben, in tokening, herte swete,  
That I am as out of this world agone,  
That wont was you to set in quiete,  
And of mine order aye till death me mete,  
The observance ever in your absence,  
Shall sorrow ben complaint and abstinence.

"Mine herte and eke the woful ghost therein  
Bequeath I with your spirit to complaine  
Eternally, for they shall never twin,  
For though in yearth twinned be we twaine,  
Yet in the field of pitie, out of paine,  
That hight Eliso, shall we ben yfere,  
As Orpheus and Erudice his fere.

"Thus, herte mine, for Antenor alas,  
I soone shall be chaunged, as I wene,  
But how shull ye done in this sorrowfull cans,  
How shall your tender herte this sustene ?

But herte mine, foryet this sorow and tene,  
And me also, for soothly for to sey,  
So ye well fare, I retche not to dey."

How might it ever redde ben or ysong  
The plaint that she made in her distresse,  
I n'ot, but as for me my little tong  
If I discriven would her heaviness,  
It should make her sorrow seeme lesse  
Than that it was, and childishly deface  
Her high complaint, and therefore I it pace.

Pandare, which that sent from Troilus  
Was unto Creseide, as ye have heard devise,  
That for the best it was recorded thus,  
And he full glad to done him that servise,  
Unto Creseide in a full secret wise,  
There as she lay in tourment and in rage,  
Came her to tell all holy his message.

And fond that she her selven gan to grette  
Full pitously, for with her salte teares,  
Her breast and face ybathed was full wete,  
Her mightie tresses of her sonnish heres  
Unbroiden, hangen all about her eares,  
Which yave him very signe of matüre  
Of death, which that her herte gan desire.

When she him saw, she gan for sorrow anon  
Her tearie face atwixt her armes hide,  
For which this Pandare is so wo bigon,  
That in the hous he might unneth abide,  
As he that felt sorrow on every side,  
For if Creseide had erst complained sore,  
Tho gan she plaine a thousand times more.

And in her aspre plaint, thus she seide:  
"Pandare, first of joies more than two  
Was cause, causing unto me Creseide,  
That now transmued ben in cruell wo,  
Whether shall I say to you welcome or no?  
That alderfirst me brought unto servise  
Of love alas, that endeth in such wise.

"Endeth than love in wo? Ye or non lieth,  
And all worldly blisse, as thinketh me,  
The end of blisse aye sorrow it occupieth,  
And who trothewth not that it so be,  
Let him upon me wofull wretche see,  
That my selfe hate, and aye my birth curse,  
Feeling alway, fro wicke I go to worse.

"Who so me seeth, he seeth sorow all atonis,  
Paine, tourment, plaint, wo and distresse,  
Out of my wofull body harme there none is,  
As langour, anguish, cruell bitterness,  
Annoy, smart, drede, furie, and eke sickness,  
I trow ywis from Heaven teares raine,  
For pitie of my aspre and cruell paine."

"And thou my suster, full of discomfort,"  
(Quod Pandarus) "what thinkest thou to do?  
Why ne hast thou to thy selven some resport?  
Why wilt thou thus thy selfe alas fordo?  
Leave all this werke, and take now heed to  
That I shall saine, and herken of good entent  
This message, that by me Troilus you sent."

Tourned her tho Creseide a wo making,  
So great, that it a death was for to see,  
"Alas," (quod she) "what wordes may ye bring,  
What wold my dere herte saime to mee,

Which that I drede nevermore to see,  
Wold he have plaint or teares ere I wend?  
I have ynough, if he thereafter send."

She was right such to seene in her visage,  
As is that wight that men on beare bind,  
Her face like of Paradis the image,  
Was all ychaunged in another kind,  
The play, the laughter men were wont to find  
On hir, and eke her joyes everichone  
Ben fled, and thus lieth Creseide alone.

About her eyen two, a purple ring  
Bitrent, in soothfast tokening of her paine,  
That to behold it was a deadly thing,  
For which Pandare might nat restraine  
The teares from his eyen for to raine,  
But nathelesse as he best might he seide  
From Troilus these wordes to Creseide.

"Lo, nece, I trow ye han heard all how  
The king with other lordes for the best,  
Hath made eschaunge of Antenor and you,  
That cause is of this sorow and this unrest,  
But how this case doth Troilus molest,  
This may none earthly mannes tongue say,  
For very wo, his wit is all away.

"For which we have so sorowed, he and I,  
That into little it had us both slawe,  
But through my counsaile this day finally,  
He somewhat is fro weeping withdrawe,  
And seemeth me that he desireth fawe  
With you to ben all night for to devise  
Remedie of this, if there were any wise.

"This short and plain, theeffect of my message,  
As ferforth as my wit can comprehend,  
For ye that ben of tourment in such rage,  
May to no long prologue as now entend.  
And hereupon ye may answer him send,  
And for the love of God my nece dere,  
So leave this wo, or Troilus be here."

"Great is my wo," (quod she) and sighed sore,  
As sho that feeleth deadly sharpe distresse,  
But yet to me his sorrow is mokell more,  
That love him bet than he himselfe I gesse,  
Alas, for me hath he such heviness,  
Can he for me so pitously complaine,  
Ywis this sorow doubleth all my paine.

"Grevous to me God wot is for to twin,"  
(Quod she) "but yet it harder is to me,  
To seene that sorrow which that he is in,  
For well wot I, it wold my bane be,  
And die I wold in certaine tho" (quod she :)  
"But bid him come, er deth that thus me threteth  
Drive out the ghost which in mine herte leteth."

These wordes said, she on her armes two  
Fell gruffe, and gan to weepen pitously:  
(Quod Pandarus) "Alas, why doe ye so?  
Sens ye well wote the time is fast by  
That he shall come, arise up hastily,  
That he you nat biwopen thus ne find,  
But ye wold have him wode out of his mind.

"For wist he that ye farde in this manere,  
He wold himselfe slea: and if I wend  
To have this fare, he should not come here,  
For all the good that Priam may dispend:

For to what fine he would anon pretend,  
That know I well, and forthy yet I sey,  
So leave this sorow, or plainly he woll dey.

"And shapeth you his sorow for to abredge,  
And nat encrease, lefe nece swete,  
Beth rather to him cause of plat than edge,  
And with some wisdom ye his sorrowes bete :  
What helpeth it to weepen full a strete,  
Or though ye both in salt teares dreint ?  
Bet is a time of cure aye than of pleint.

"I meane thus, when I him hither bring,  
Sens ye be wise, and both of one assent,  
So shapeth how to distourbe your going,  
Or come ayen soone after ye be went,  
Women ben wise, in short avisement,  
And let seene how your wit shall availle,  
And what that I may helps, it shall not faile."

"Go," (quod Creseide) "and, uncle, trueiy  
I shall done all my might me to restraine  
From weeping in his sight, and busily  
Him for to glad, I shall done all my paine,  
And in my herte seeken every vaine,  
If to his sore there may ben founden salve,  
It shall nat lacke certaine on mine halve."

Goth Pandarus, and Troilus he sought,  
Fyll in a temple he found him all alone,  
As he that of his life no lenger rougt,  
But to the pitous goddes everichone,  
Full tenderly he praid, and made his mone,  
To done him soone out of the world to pace,  
For well he thocht there was none other grace.

And shortly all the soothe for to sey,  
He was so fallen in dispaire that day,  
That utterly he shope him for to dey,  
For right thus was his argument alway,  
He saied he nas but lorne, welaway,  
"For all that commeth, cometh by necessitie,  
Thus to ben lorne, it is my destinie.

"For certainly, this wote I well," he said,  
"That foresight of devine purveyaunce  
Had seen alway me to forgone Creseide,  
Sens God seethe every thing out of dountance  
And hem disposeth through his ordinaunce,  
In his merites soothly for to be,  
As they shall comen by predestine.

"But nathelesse, alas, whom shall I leve,  
For there ben grete clerkes many one,  
That destinie, through argumentes preve,  
And some saine, that nedely there is none,  
But that free choice is yeven us everychone :  
O welaway, so stigh am clerkes old,  
That I n'ot whose opinion I may hold.

"For some men sain, that God seeth all befornc,  
Ne God may nat deceived ben parde,  
Than mote it fallen, though men had it sworn,  
That purveyaunce hath seene beforne to be,  
Wherefore I say, that from eterne if he  
Hath wist beforn our thought eke as our dede,  
We have no free choice, as thesc clerkes rede.

"For other thought, nor other deed also,  
Might never been, but such as purveyaunce,  
Which may nat been deceived never mo,  
Hath feled biforne, withouten ignoraunce,

For if there might ben a variaunce  
To writen out fro Goddes purveying,  
There nere no prescience of thing comming.

"But it were rather an opinion  
Uncertaine, and no stedfast foresseeing,  
And certes that were an abusion,  
That God should have no perfite clere weting  
More than we men that have doutous wening,  
But such an errour upon God to gesse,  
Were false, and foule, and wicked cursednesse.

"Eke this is an opinion of some,  
That have hir top ful high and smooth yshore,  
They saine right thus, that thing is nat to come,  
For that the prescience hath seene before  
That it shall come, but they sain that therfore  
That it shall come, therefore the purveyaunce  
Wote it beforne withouten ignoraunce.

"And in this manner this necessite  
Retourneth in his part contrary againe,  
For needfully behoveth it nat to be,  
That thilke thinges fallen in certaine  
That ben purveied, but needfully as they saine  
Behoveth it that thinges which that fall,  
That they in certaine ben purveyed all.

"I meane as though I laboured me in this,  
To inquire which thing cause of which thing be,  
As whether that the prescience of God is  
The certaine cause of the necessite  
Of thinges that to comen be parde,  
Or if necessitie of thing comming,  
Be cause certaine of the purveying.

"But now ne enforce I me not in shewing,  
How the order of the causes stant, but well wot I  
That it behoveth, that the befalling  
Of thinges wiste before certainly,  
Be necessarie, all seeme it not thereby,  
That prescience put falling necessaire  
To thing to come, all fall it foule or taire.

"For if there sit a man yond on a see,  
Than by necessitie behoveth it,  
That certes thilke opinion sooth be,  
That wenest or conjectest that he sit,  
And further over, now ayenward yet,  
Lo right so is it on the part contrarie,  
As thus, now hearken, for I woll nat tarie.

"I say, that if the opinion of thee  
Be sooth for that he sit, than say I this,  
That he mote sitten by necessitie,  
And thus necessitie in either is,  
For in him nede of sitting is ywis,  
And in the nede of sooth, and thus forsooth  
There mote necessitie ben in you both.

"But thou maist saine the man sit nat therfore,  
That thine opinion of his sitting sooth is,  
But rather for the man sate there before,  
Therefore is thine opinion sooth ywis,  
And I say though the cause of sooth of this  
Commeth of his sitting, yet necessitee  
Is enterchaunged both in him and in thee.

"Thus in the same wise out of dountance.  
I may well maken, as it seemeth me,  
My reasoning of Goddes purveyaunce,  
And of the thinges that to comen be,

By whiche reason men may well ysee,  
That thilke thinges that in earth yfall,  
That by necessitie they comen all.

"For although that forthing shall come ywis  
Therefore is it purveyed certainly,  
Nat that it cometh, for it purveyed is,  
Yet nathelesse behoveth it needfully,  
That thing to come be purveyed truly,  
Or else thinges that purveyed be,  
That they betiden by necessite.

"And this suffiseth right ynough certaine,  
For to destroy our free choise everydell,  
But now is this abuson to saine,  
That falling of the thinges temporell,  
Is cause of the goddes prescience eternell;  
Now truely that is a false sentence,  
That thing to com shuld cause his prescience.

"What might I wene, and I had such a thought?  
But that God purveith thing that is to come,  
For that it is to come, and else nought:  
So might I wene, that thinges all and some,  
That whylome ben befall and overcome,  
Ben cause of thilke soveraine purveyaunce,  
That forwote all, withouten ignoraunce.

"And over all this, yet say I more thereto,  
That right as whan I wote there is a thing,  
Ywis that thing mote needfully be so,  
Eke right so, whan I wot a thing comming,  
So mote it come; and thus they befalling  
Of thinger that ben wist before the tide,  
They mowe not ben eschewed on no side."

Than said he thus, "Almighty Jove in trone,  
That wotest of all this thing the soothfastnesse,  
Rew on my sorrow and do me dien sone,  
Or bring Creseide and me fro this distresse."  
And while he was in all this heavinesse,  
~~Disputing with himselfe in this matere,~~  
Came Pandare in, and said as ye may here.

"O mighty God" (quod Pandarus) "in trone,  
Egh, who saw ever a wise man faren so?  
Why Troilus, what thinkest thou to done?  
Hast thou such lust to ben thine owne fo?  
~~What, parde, yet is nat Creseide ago,~~  
Why list thee so thy selfe fordone for drede,  
That in thine head thine eyen semen dede.

"Hast thou nat lived many a yere beforne  
Withouten her, and farde full well at ease?  
Art thou for her and for none other borue.  
Hath Kind thee wrought al only her to please?  
Let be and thinke right thus in thy disease,  
That in the dice right as ther fallen chauncer,  
Right so in love there come and gon plesaunce.

"And yet this is a wonder most of all,  
Why thou thus sorowest, sith thou wost nat yet  
Touching her going, how that it shall fall,  
Ne if she can her selfe disturben it,  
Thou hast nat yet assaied all her wit;  
A man may all betime his necke bede  
Whan it shall off, and sorowen at the nede.

"Forþy, take hede of all that I shall say,  
I have with her yspoke, and long ybe,  
So as accorded was betwixe us twey,  
And evermore me thinketh thus, that she

Hath somewhat in her hertes privite,  
Wherewith she can, if I shall aright rede,  
Disturbe all this, of which thou art in drede.

"For which my counsell is, whan it is night,  
Thou to her go, and make of this an end,  
And blisfull Juno, through her great might,  
Shall (as I hope) her grace unto us send,  
Mine herte seith certaine she shall nat wend,  
And forthy, put thine herte awhile in rest,  
And hold thy purpose, for it is the best."

This Troilus answerde, and sighed sore,  
"Thou saist right well, and I will do right so,"  
And what him list, he said unto him more,  
And whan that it was time for to go,  
Full prively himselfe withouten mo  
Unto her came, as he was wont to done,  
And how they wrought, I shall you tell soone.

Sooth is, that whan they gonne first to mete,  
So gan the paine hir hertes for to twist,  
That neither of hem other mighte grete,  
But hem in armes tooke, and after kist,  
The lasse wofull of hem bothe nist  
Where that he was, ne might o word outbring,  
As I said erst, for wo and for sobbing.

The wofull teares that they leten fall,  
As bitter weren out of teares kind  
For paine, as is ligne aloes, or gall,  
So bitter teares wept not as I find  
The wofull Mirra, through the barke and rind,  
That in this world there n'is so hard an herte,  
That n'olde have rewed on her paines smart.

But whan hir wofull very ghostes twaine  
Returned ben, there as hem ought to dwell,  
And that somewhat to weken gan the paine  
By length of plaint, and ebban gan the well  
Of hir teares, and the herte unawell,  
With broken voice, al horse for shright, Creseid  
To Troilus these ilke wordes seid.

"O Jove, I die, and mercy thee besech,  
Helpe Troilus:" and therewithal her face  
Upon his brest she laid, and lost her spech,  
Her wofull spirite from his proper place  
Right with the worde away in point to pace,  
And thus she lith, with hewes pale and grene,  
That whilom fresh and fairest was to sene.

This Troilus that on her gan behold,  
Cleping her name, and she lay as for deed,  
Withouten answer, and felt her limmes cold,  
Her eien throwen upward to her heed:  
This sorowful man can now non other rede,  
But oft time her colde mouth he kist,  
Where him was wo, God and himselfe it wist.

He riseth him up, and long straithe he her leide,  
For signe of life, for aught he can or may,  
Can he none finde, in nothing of Creseide,  
For which his song full oft is "Welaway:"  
But whan he saw that spechlesse she lay,  
With sorowful voice, and herte of blisse al bare,  
He said, how she was fro this world yfare.

So after that he long had her complained,  
His hondes wrong, and said that was to sey,  
And with his teeres salt her breast berained,  
He gan tho teeres wipen off full drey.

And pitously gan for the soule prey,  
And said, "Lord, that set art in thy throne,  
Rewe eke on me, for I shall folow her sone."

She coudo was, and without sentement,  
For ought he wote, for brethe felte he noue,  
And this was him a preigant argument,  
That she was forth out of this world agone :  
And whan he saw there was non other wonne,  
He gan her limmes dresse, in such manere,  
As men don hem that shall ben laide on bere.

And after this, with sterne and cruel herte,  
His swerde anon out of his sheath he twight,  
Him selfe to sleen, how sore that him smart,  
So that his soule, her soule folowen might,  
There as the dome of Minos would it dight,  
Sith love and cruel fortune it ne would,  
That in this world he lenger liven should.

Than said he thus, fulfide of high disdaine,  
"O cruel Jove, and thou Fortune adverse,  
This is all and some, that falsly have ye slaine  
Creseide, and sith ye may do me ne werse,  
Fie on your might and werkes so diverse,  
Thus cowardly ye shull me never winne,  
There shall no deth me fro my lady twinne.

"For I this world, sith ye have slain her thus,  
Woll let, and folow her spirite low or hie,  
Shal never lover saine that Troilus,  
Dare nat for feare with his lady die,  
For certaine I woll beare her companie,  
But sithe ye wol nat suffre us liven here,  
Yet suffreth that our soules ben ifere.

"And thou cite, in which I live in wo,  
And thou Priam, and brethren al ifere,  
And thou my mother, farewell, for I go,  
And Atropos make redy thou my bere :  
And thou Creseide, O swete herte dere,  
Receive now my spirite," would he sey  
With swerde at herte, all redy for to dey.

But as God would, of swough she abraide,  
And gan to sighe, and Troilus she cride,  
And he answerde, "Lady mine Creseide,  
Live ye yet?" and let his swerde doun glide :  
"Ye herte mine, that thanked be Cupide,"  
(Quod she) and therewithal she sore sight,  
And he began to glade her as he might.

Toke her in armes two and kist her oft,  
And her to glad, he did al his entent,  
For which her gost, that flikered aie a loft,  
Into her wofull herte ayen it went :  
But at the last, as that her eye glent  
Aside, anon she gan his swerde aspie,  
As it lay bare, and gan for feare crie.

And asked him why he had it out draw,  
And Troilus anon the cause her told,  
And how himself therwith he wold have slain,  
For which Creseide upon him gan behold,  
And gan him in her armes faste fold,  
And said, "O mercy God, lo, which a dede,  
Alas, how nigh we weren bothe dede.

"Than if I nadde spoken, as grace was,  
(Ye would have slain your selfe anon?" (quod she.)  
"Ye doutlesse:" and she answerde, "Alas,  
For by that ilke lorde that made me,

I n'olde a furlong way on live have be,  
After your deth, to have ben crowned quene  
Of al the londe the Sunne on shineth shene.

"But with this selve sword, which that here is  
My selfe I would have slain" (quod she) "tho :  
But ho, for we have right inough of this,  
And let us rise and strait to bedde go :  
And there let us speken of our wo,  
For by that morter, which that I see brenne,  
Know I ful well, that day is nat farre henne."

Whan they wer in hir bed in armes fold,  
Naught was it like tho nightes here beforne,  
For pitously each other gan behold,  
As they that hadden al hir blisse ylorne,  
Bewailing aie the day that they were burne,  
Til at the last, this sorowful wight Creseide,  
To Troilus these ilke wordes seide.

"Lo, herte mine, wel wote ye this" (quod she)  
"That if a wight alway his wo complaine,  
And seketh nat how holpen for to be,  
It n'is but folie, and encrease of paine :  
And sens that here assembled be we twaine,  
To finde bote of wo that we ben in,  
It were time al sone to begin.

"I am a woman, as ful wel ye wotte,  
And as I am avised sodainly,  
So wol I tel you, while it is hotte,  
Me thinketh thus, that neyther ye nor I,  
Ought halfe this wo to maken skilfully,  
For there is art inough for to redresse,  
That yet is misse, and sleen is hevinesse.

"Soth is, the wo the whiche we ben inne,  
For aught I wote, for nothing eles is,  
But for the cause that we should twinne,  
Considred al, there n'is no more amis :  
And what is than a remedy unto this ?  
But that we shape us sone for to metce,  
This al and some, my dere herte swete.

"Now that I shall wel bringen it about  
To comen ayen sone after that I go,  
Thereof am I no manner thing in dout,  
For dredelesse, within a weke or two  
I shal ben here: and that it may be so,  
By all right, and in wordes few,  
I shal you wel an heape of waies shew.

"For which I woll nat maken long sermon,  
For time ylost may not recovered be,  
But I will go to my conclusion,  
And to the best, in aught that I can see :  
And for the love of God foryeve it me,  
If I speake aught ayenst your hertes rest,  
For truely I speake it for the best.

"Making alway a protestation,  
That now these wordes which I shal say,  
N'is but to shewe you my mocion,  
To find unto our helpe the beste way,  
And take it no otherwise I pray,  
For in effect, what so ye me commaund,  
That wol I done, for that of no demaund.

"Now herkeneth this, ye have wel understand  
My going graunted is by parlyment,  
So ferforth that it may not ben withstand,  
For al this world, as by my judgement :

And siþe there helpeth none avisement,  
To letten it, lette it passe out of mind,  
And let us shape a better way to find.

"The sothe is, the twinning of us twaine,  
Wol us disease, and cruelly anoie :  
But him behoveth sometime have a paine,  
That serveth love, if that he woll have joie :  
And siþ I shall no farther out of Troie  
Than I may ride ayen on halfe a morow,  
It oughþ lasse causen us for to sorow.

"So as I shal nat so ben hid in mew,  
That day by day, mine owne herte dere,  
Sens well ye wote that it is now a trew,  
Ye shal ful wel al mine estate here :  
And er that truce is done, I shal ben here,  
Than have ye bothe Autenor ywonne,  
And me also, bethe glad now if ye conne.

"And thinke right thus, Creseide is now agon,  
But what, she shal come hastily ayen,  
And whan alas ! by God, lo, right anon  
~~Er daies ten, this daie I safely saine,~~  
And than at erate, shal we be so faine,  
So as we shal toghthers ever dwell,  
That all this world ne might our blisse tell.

"I see that oft time, there as we ben now  
That for the best, our counsaile for to hide,  
Ye speke nat with me, nor I with you  
In fourteenight, ne see you go ne ride :  
May ye nat ten daies than abide,  
For mine honour, in such aventure I  
Ywis ye mowe, or eles lite endure.

"Ye know eke how that all my kin is here,  
But if that onely it my father be,  
And eke mine other thinges al yfere,  
And namely my dere herte ye,  
Whom that I n'olde leaven for to see,  
For all this world, as wide as it hath space,  
Or eles see I never Joves face.

"Why trowe ye my father in this wise  
Coveteth so to see me, but for drede,  
Lest in this toun that folkes me dispise,  
Bicause of him, for his unhappy dede !  
What wote my father what life that I lede,  
For if he wist in Troie how well I fare,  
Us neded for my wending nat to care.

"Ye see, that every day eke more and more,  
Men treate of peace, and it supposed is,  
That men the quene Heleine shall restore,  
And Grekes us restore that is mis :  
Though there ne were comfort none but this,  
That men purposen peace on every side,  
Ye may the better at ease of herte abide.

"For if that it be peace, mine herte dere,  
The nature of the peace mote nedes drive,  
That men must entrecomune yfere,  
And to and fro eke ride and gone as blive,  
Al day as thicke as been flien from an hive,  
And every wight have liberty to bleve,  
Where as him list, the bet withouten leve.

"And tho so be that peace there may bene none,  
Yet hither, though ther never peace ne were,  
I must come, for whider should I gone,  
Or how mischaunce should I dwell there

Among tho men of armes ever in fere,  
For which, as wisely God my soule rede,  
I can nat sene wherof ye should drede.

"Have here another way, if it so be  
That all this thing ne may you not suffice,  
My father, as he knowen well parde,  
Is olde, and eke full of covetise,  
And I right now have founden al the gise,  
Withouten nette, wherwith I shal him hent,  
And herkeneth now, if that ye woll assent.

"Lo, Troilus, men saine, that ful hard it is  
The wolfe ful, and the wedder hole to have,  
This is to saine, that men full oft ywis,  
Mote spenden parte, the remnant for to save :  
For aie with gold, men may the herte grave,  
Of him that set is upon covetise,  
And how I meane, I shal it you devise.

"The moveable, which that I have in this toun,  
Unto my father shal I take, and say,  
That right for trust, and for salvatioun,  
It sent is from a frende of his or tway,  
The whiche frendes fervently him pray,  
To sende after more and that in hie,  
While that this toun stant thus in jeopardie.

"And that shall be of gold an huge quantite,  
Thus shal I saine, but lest folke it aspide,  
This may be sent by no wight but by me :  
~~I shal eke shewen him, if peace betide,~~  
What frendes that I have on every side,  
Toward the court, to don the wrathe pace,  
Of Priamus, and do him stonde in grace.

"So what for o thing and for other, awete,  
I shal him so enchaunten with my sawes,  
That right in Heven his soule is, shal he mete,  
For all Apollo, or his clerkes lawes,  
Or calculating, availeth not three hawes :  
Desire of gold shall so his soule blend,  
That as me list, I shall well make an end.

"And if he would aught by his sorte it preve,  
If that I lie, in certaine I shall fond  
To disturben him, and plucke him by the sleve,  
Making his sorte and bearen him on hond,  
He hath nat well the goddes understand,  
For goddes speke in amphibologies,  
And for o sothe, they tellen twenty lies.

"Eke drede fond first goddes, I suppose,  
Thus shall I saine, and that his coward herte,  
Made him amis the goddes text to glose,  
Whan he for ferde out of Delphos stert :  
And but I make him sone to convert,  
And done my rede, within a day or twer  
I wol to you oblige me to dey."

And truly, as written wel I find,  
That al this thing was said of good entem,  
And that her herte trewe was and kind  
Towardes him, and spake right as she ment,  
And that she starfe for wo nigh whan she went,  
And was in purpose ever to be trewe,  
Thus writen they that of her werkes knew.

This Troilus, with herte and eeres sprad,  
Herde all this thing devised to and fro,  
And verily it seemed that he had  
The selve witte, but yet to let her go

His herte misyave him evermo,  
But finally he gan his herte wrest,  
To trusten her, and toke it for the best.

For which the great fury of his penaunce,  
Wasqueint with hope, and therewith hem betwene  
Began for joye the amorous daunce,  
And as the birdes, whan the Sunne shene,  
Deliten in hir songe, in leves greene,  
Right so the wordes, that they spake yfere,  
Deliten hem, and made hir hertes chere.

But nathelesse, the wending of Creseide,  
For all this world may nat out of his mind,  
For which full oft he pitously her preide,  
That of her heste he might her trewe find :  
And said her, " Certes if ye be kind,  
And but ye come at daie set, in Troie,  
Ne shal I never have heale, honor, ne joie.

" For al so sothe as Sunne uprist to morow,  
And God so wisely thou me woful wretch  
To reste bring, out of this cruel sorow,  
I wol my selven alee, if that ye dretch :  
But of my death though little be to retch,  
Yet er that ye me causen so to smart,  
Uwel rather here, my owne swete herte.

" For truly mine owne lady dere,  
The sleightes yet, that I have herd you stere,  
Ful shapely ben to fallen all yfere,  
For thus men saith, that one thinketh the here,  
But al another thinketh the ledere,  
Your sire is wise, and said is out of drede,  
Men may the wise out renne, and not out rode.

" It is full harde to halten unespied  
Before a crepil, for he can the craft,  
Your father is in sleight as Argus eied,  
For al be it that his movable is him biraft,  
His olde sleight is yet so with him laft,  
Ye shal nat blende him for your womanhede  
Ne faine aright, and that is all my drede.

" I n'ot if peace shal evermo betide,  
But peace or no; for earnest ne for game,  
I wote sith Calcas on the Grekes aide  
Hath ones ben, and lost so foule his name,  
Ne dare no more come here ayen for shame,  
For which that we, for ought I can espie,  
To trusten on, n'is but a fantasie.

" Ye shal eke seen your father shall you glose,  
To ben a wife, and as he can well prech,  
He shal some Greke so preise and wel alose,  
That ravishen he shal you with his spech :  
Or do you done by force, as he shall tech,  
And Troilus on whom ye n'il have routh,  
Shall causelesse so sterven in his trouth.

" And over al this your father shall dispise  
Us al, and saine this cite is but lorne,  
And that th'assege never shall arise,  
For why ! the Grekes have it al sworne,  
Til we ben slaine, and doune our walles torne,  
And thus he shall you with his wordes fere,  
That aie drede I, that ye wol bleven there.

" Ye shall eke sene so many a lusty knight,  
Among the Grekes ful of worthinesse,  
And ech of hem, with herte, wit and might  
Shal plesen you, done al his businesse,

That ye shull dullen of the rudenesse  
Of sely Troians, but if routh  
Remorde you, or vertue of your trouthe.

" And this to me so grevous is to thinke,  
That fro my brest it wol my soule rende,  
Ne dredelesse, in me there may nat sinke  
O good opinion, if that ye wende,  
For why ! your fathers sleight woll us shende,  
And if ye gone, as I have tolde you yore,  
So thinke I nam but deed, withouten more.

" For which with humble, true and pitous herte  
A thousand times mercy I you pray,  
So reweth on mind aspre paines smart,  
And doth somewhat, as that I shall you say :  
And let us steale away betwixt us tway,  
And thinke that foly is, whan a man may chese  
For accident, his substaunce for to leae.

" I meane thus, that sene we mowe or day  
Wel steale away, and ben together so,  
What wit were it to putten in assay,  
(In case ye shoulde to your father go)  
If that ye mighten come ayen or no :  
Thus meane I, that were a great follie  
To put that sikernes in jeopardie.

" And vulgarly to speken of substaunce,  
Of treasour may we both with us lede,  
Ynough to live in honour and pleasaunce,  
Til unto time that we shall ben dede,  
And thus we may eschewen all this drede,  
For every other waie ye can record,  
Mine herte ywis may therewith nat acord.

" And hardely ne dredeth no povertie,  
For I have kin and frendes eles where,  
That though we comen in our bare sherte,  
Us should never lacke golde ne geere,  
But ben honoured while we dwelten there,  
And go we anone, for as in mine entent,  
This is the best, if that ye woll assent."

Creseide with a sigh, right in this wise  
Answerde, " Ywis, my dere herte trow,  
Ye may well steale away, as ye devise,  
And finden such unthrifty waies new :  
But afterward full sore it woll us rew,  
And helpe me God so at my most nede,  
As causelesse ye suffren al this drede.

" For thilke day that I for cherishing,  
Or drede of father, or for any other wight,  
Or for estate, delite, or for wedding,  
Be false to you, my Troilus, my knight,  
Saturnus daughter Juno, through her might,  
As wood as Achamante do me dwell  
Eternally with Stix in the pit of Hell.

" And this on every God celestiall  
I swere it you and eke on eche goddesse,  
On every nimphe, and deite infernall,  
On satyry and fauny more and lesse,  
That halve goddes ben of wildernesse,  
And Atropos my threde of life to brest,  
If I be false, now trowe me if you lest.

" And thou Simois, that, as an arowe, cler-  
Through Troy rennest, aie downward to the see,  
Be witnesse of this word, that saied is here,  
That thilke day that I untrew be

To Troilus, mine owne herte fre,  
That thou return backwarde to thy well,  
And I with body and soule sinke to Hell.

"But that ye speake away thus for to go,  
And letten all your frendes, God forbede,  
For any woman that ye shoulde so,  
And namely, sens Troy hath now such nedc  
Of helpe, and eke of o thing taketh hede,  
If this were wist, my life lay in ballaunce,  
And your honor, God shild us fro mischaunce.

"And if so be that peace hereafter be take,  
As all day happeth after angre game,  
Why lord the sorow and wo ye wolden make,  
That ye ne durst come ayen for shame,  
And ere that ye jeoparden so your name,  
Beth nat too hasty in this hotte fare,  
For hasty man ne wanteth never care.

"What trowe ye the people eke all about  
Would of it say! it is full light to arede,  
They wolden say, and swere it out of dout,  
That love ne drave you nat to done this dede  
But lust voluptuous, and coward drede,  
Thus were all lost ywis, mine herte dere  
Your honour, whiche that now shineth clere.

"And also thinketh on mine honeste,  
That floureth yet, how foul I should it shend,  
And with what filth it spotted shulde be,  
If in this forme I should with you wend,  
Ne though I lived unto the worldes end,  
My name should I never ayenward win,  
Thus were I lost, and that were routh and sin.

"And forthy, slee with reason all this hete,  
Men sain, the suffraunt overcommeth parde)  
Eke whoso will have lefe, he lefe mote lete,  
Thus maketh vertue of necessite  
By patience, and thinke that lord is he  
Of fortune aye, that naught wold of her retch,  
And she ne daunteth no wight but a wretch.

"And trusteth this, that certes, herte swete,  
Or Phebus suster, Lucina the shene,  
The Lion passe out of this Aritee,  
I wold been here, withouten any wene,  
I meane, as helpe me Juno, Heavens quene,  
The tenth day, but if that death me assaile  
I wold you seene, withouten any faile."

"And now so this be sooth," (quod Troilus)  
"I shall well suffer unto the tenth day,  
sens that I see that nedc it mote ben thus,  
But for the love of God, if be it may,  
So let us stealen prively away:  
For ever in one, as for to live in rest,  
Mine herte saith that it wold be the best."

"O mercy God, what life is this!" (quod she)  
"Alas, ye slea me thus for very tene,  
I see well now that ye mistrusten me,  
For by your wordes it is well ysene:  
Now for the love of Cinthia the shene,  
Mistrust me nat thus causelesse for routh,  
Sens to be true I have you plight my trouth.

"And thinketh well, that sometime it is wit  
To spend a time, a time for to win,  
Ne parde lorne am I nat fro you yet,  
Though that we ben a day or two atwin:

Drive out tho fantasies you within,  
And trusteth me, and leaveth eke your sorow,  
Or here my trouth, I wol nat live til morow.

"For if ye wist how sore it doth me smart,  
Ye would cease of this, for God thou wost  
The pure spirit weepeth in mine herte  
To seen you weepen, which that I love most,  
And that I mote gone unto the Greekes host,  
Ye, nere it that I wist a remedy  
To com ayen, right here I wolde dy.

"But certes I am not so nice a wight,  
That I ne can imaginen a way  
To come ayen that day that I have light,  
For who may holden a thing that wold away,  
My father naught, for all his queint play,  
And by my thrift, my wending out of Trey  
Another day shall tourne us all to joy.

"Forthy, with all mine herte I you besceke,  
If that you list done aught for my prayere,  
And for the love which that I love you eke,  
That ere I departe fro you here,  
That of so good a comfort and a chere  
I may you seen, that ye may bring at rest  
My herte, whiche is at point to brest.

"And over all this I pray you," (quod she tho)  
"My owne hertes soothfast suffisaunce,  
Sith I am thine all hole withouten mo,  
That while that I am absent, no pleasaunce  
Of other, do me fro your remembrance:  
For I am ever agast, for why! men rede,  
That love is thing aye full of busie drede.

"For in this world there liveth lady none,  
If that ye were untrue, as God defend,  
That so betrayed were, or wo begon,  
As I, that all trouthe in you entend:  
And doubtlesse, if that iche other wend,  
I nere but dead, and ere ye cause find,  
For Goddes love, so beth ye nat unkind."

To this answered Troilus and seide,  
"Now God to whom there n'is no cause ywrie,  
Me glad, as wis I never unto Creseide,  
Sith thilke day I saw her first with eye,  
Was false, ne never shall till that I die,  
At short wordes, well ye may me leve,  
I can no more, it shall be found at preve."

"Graunt mercy, good herte mine, ywis" (quod she)  
"And blisful Venus let me never sterve,  
Er I may stonde of pleasaunce in degre,  
To quite him well, that so well can deserve:  
And while that God my wit will me conserve  
I shall so done, so true I have you found,  
That aie honour to meward shall rebound."

"For trusteth well, that your estate royall,  
Ne vain delite, nor onely wonthinesse  
Of you in werre or turnay marciall,  
Ne pompe, array, nobley, or eke richesse:  
Ne made me to rue on your distresse,  
But moral vertue, grounded upon trouth,  
That was the cause I first had on you routh.

"Eke gentle herte, and manhood that ye had,  
And that ye had (as me thought) in dispite  
Every thing that sowned in to bad,  
As rudenesse, and peoplish appetite



And that your reason bridled your delite,  
This made at oven every creature,  
That I was yours, and shall while I may dure.

"And this may length of yeres nat fordo,  
Ne remuablest fortune deface,  
But Jupiter, that of his might may do  
The sorowfull to be glad, so yeve us grace,  
Er nightes tenne to meten in this place,  
So that it may your herte and mine suffise,  
And fareth now well, for time is that ye rise."

And after that they long yplained had,  
And oft ikist, and strait in armes fold,  
The day gan rise, and Troilus him clad,  
And rufully his lady gan behold :  
As he that felt deathes cares cold,  
And to her grace he gan him recommaund,  
Where he was wo, this hold I no demaund.

For mannes hedde imaginen ne can,  
Ne entendement consider, ne tongue tell  
The cruell paines of this sorowfull man,  
That passen every torment doune in Hell :  
For whan he sawe that she ne might dwell,  
Which that his soule out his herte rent,  
Withouten more, out of the chamber he went.

EXPLICIT LIBER QUARTUS.

INCIPIT LIBER QUINTUS.

B. V. v. 1—95

APPROCHEN gan the fatall destine,  
That Joves hath in disposicioun,  
And to you angry Parcas susteren thre,  
Committeth to done execucioun,  
For which Creseide must out of the toune,  
And Troilus shall dwell forth in pine,  
Till Lachesis his threde no lenger twine.

The golden tressed Phebus high on loft,  
Thrise had all with his beames clere  
The snowes molte, and Zephirus as oft  
Ibrought ayen the tender leaves grene :  
Sens that the sonne of Eccuba the queene  
Began to love her first, for whom his sorrow  
Was all, that she departe should a morow.

Full redy was at prime Diomede,  
Creseide unto the Grekes hoste to lede,  
For sorow of which, she felt her herte blede,  
As she that n'iste what was best to rede :  
And truly, as men in bokes rede,  
Men wiste never woman have the care,  
Ne was so lothe out of a toune to fare.

This Troilus withouten rede or lore,  
As man that hath his joies eke forlore,  
Was waiting on his lady evermore,  
As she that was sothfast croppre and more,  
Of all his lust or joyes here tofore :  
But Troilus, now farwell all thy joie,  
For shalt thou never seen her eft in Troie.

Soth is, that while he bode in this manere,  
He gan his wo full manly for to hide,  
That well unneth it seen was in his chere,  
But at the yste there she should out ride,

With certain folke he hoved her to abide,  
So wo bigon, all would he not him plain,  
That on his horse unneth he sate for pain.

For ire he quoke, so gan his herte gnaw,  
Whan Diomede on horse gan him dight,  
And sayd unto himselfe this ilke saw,  
"Alas," (quod he) "thus foule a wretchednesse  
Why suffre I it ! Why n'll I it redresse !  
Were it nat bet at ones for to die,  
Than evermore in langour thus to crie !

"Why n'll I make at ones rich and poore,  
To have inough to done er that she go !  
Why n'll I bring all Troie upon a roore !  
Why n'll I slaen this Diomede also !  
Why n'll I rather with a man or two,  
Steale her away ! Why wold I this endure !  
Why n'll I helpen to mine owne cure !"

But why he n'olde done so fell a deede,  
That shall I sain, and why him list it spare,  
He had in herte alway a maner drede,  
Lest that Creseide, in rumour of this fare,  
Should have ben slain, lo, this was al his care,  
And eles certain, as I sayed yore,  
He had it done withouten wordes more.

Creseide whan she redy was to ride,  
Full sorowfully she sighed, and sayd "Alas,"  
But forth she mote, for aught that may betide,  
And forth she rideth full sorowfully apaas :  
Ther is no other remedy in this caas :  
What wonder is, though that her sore smart  
Whan she forgoeth her owne swete herte !

This Troilus in gise of curtesie,  
With hauke on hond, and with an huge rout  
Of knightes, rode and did her companie,  
Passing all the valey ferre without,  
And fether would have ridden out of doubt,  
Full faine, and wo was him to gone so sone,  
But tourne he must, and it was eke to done.

And right with that was Antenor ycome,  
Out of the Grekes hoste, and every wight  
Was of him glad, and sayd he was welcome,  
And Troilus, al nere his herte light,  
He paind him, with all his full might  
Him to with hold of weping at least,  
And Antenor he kist, and made feast.

And therewithal he must his leave take,  
And cast his eye upon her pitously,  
And nere he rode, his cause for to make,  
To take her by the honde al soberly :  
And Lorde so she gan wepen tenderly,  
And he full soft and slightly gan her seie,  
"Now hold your day, and doe me not to deie."

With that his courser tourned he about,  
With face pale, and unto Diomede  
No worde he spake, ne none of all his rout,  
Of which the sonne of Tideus toke hede,  
As he that kouthe more than the crede,  
In soche a craft, and by the rein her hent,  
And Troilus to Troie homewardes went.

This Diomede, that lad her by the bridell,  
Whan that he saw the folke of Troy away,  
Thought, "All my labor shall not been on idell,  
If that I may, for somewhat shall I say :

For at the worst, it short maie our way,  
I have heard say eke, times twise twelve,  
He is a foole that woll foryete him selve."

But athelesse, this thought he well inough  
That "certainly I am about naught,  
If that I speake of love, or make it to tough,  
For doubtlesse, if she have in her thought,  
Him that I gesse, he may not been ybrought  
So sone away, but I shall find a meane,  
That she nat yet wete shall what I meane."

This Diomedes, as he that could his good,  
Whan this was done, gan fallen forth in spech  
Of this and that, and aske why she stood  
In soch disease, and gan her eke beseech  
That if that he encreasen might or ech  
With any thing her ease, that she should  
Commaunde it him, and said he done it would.

For truely he swore her as a knight,  
That ther n'as thing, with which he might her plesse  
That he nolde done his pain, and al his might  
To done it, for to done her herte an ease:  
And prayed her she would her sorrow appease,  
And sayd, "Ywis we Greekes can have joy  
To honouren you, as well as folke of Troy."

He said eke thus, "I wot you thinketh strange,  
No wonder is, for it is to you new,  
Th'acquaintance of these Trojans to change  
For folke of Grece, that ye never knew:  
But would never God, but if as true,  
A Greeke ye should among us all find,  
As any Trojan is, and eke as kind.

"And because I swore you right now,  
To ben your frende, and helpir to my might,  
And for that more acquaintance eke of you  
Have I had, than an other straunger wight:  
So fro this forth, I pray you day and night,  
Commaundeth me, how sore that me smart,  
To done all that may like unto your herte.

"And that ye me wold, as your brother treat,  
And taketh not my frendship in dispite,  
And though your sorowes been for thinges gret,  
Not I nat why, but out of more respite,  
Mind herte hath for to amend it great delite,  
And if I may your harmes nat redresse,  
I am right sory for your heaviness.

"For though ye Trojans with us Greekes wroth  
Have many a day been, alway yet parde,  
I got of love, in sothe we serven bothe:  
And for the love of God my lady free,  
Whom so ye hate, as beth not wroth with me,  
For truely there can no wight you serve,  
That half so loth your wrathe would deserve.

"And n'ere it that we been so nere the tent  
Of Calcas, which that seen us bothe may,  
I would of this you tell all mine entent,  
But this enseald till an other day:  
Yeve me your honde, I am and shall be aie,  
God helpe me so, while that my life may dure,  
Your owne, aboven every creature.

"Thus said I never er now to woman borne,  
For God mine herte as wisely glad so,  
I loved never woman here before,  
As paramours, no never shall no mo:

And for the love of God be not my fo,  
All can I not to you, my lady dere,  
Complain a right, for I am yet to lere.

"And wondreth nought, mine owne lady bright,  
Though that I speake of love to you thus blive,  
For I have heard or this of many a wight,  
Hath loved thing he never saw his live:  
Eke I am not of power for to strive  
Ayenst the god of love, but him obey  
I woll alway, and mercy I you pray.

"There beeth so worthy knightes in this place,  
And ye so faire, that everiche of hem all  
Woll pain him to stonden in your grace,  
But might to me so faire a grace fall  
That ye me for your servaunt would call,  
So lowly, ne so truely you serve,  
N'ill none of hem, as I shall till I sterve."

Creseide unto that purpose lite answerde,  
As she that was with sorow oppressed so,  
That in effect she naught his tales herde,  
But here and there, now here a word or two:  
Her thought her sorowfull herte brest a two,  
For whan she gan her father ferre espie,  
Well nigh doune of her hors she gan to sie.

But nathelesse she thonketh Diomedes,  
Of all his travaille and his good chere,  
And that him list his frendship to her bede,  
And she accepteth it in good manere,  
And wold do fain that is him lefe and dere,  
And trusten him she would, and well she might,  
As saied she, and from her hors she alight.

Her father hath her in his armes nome,  
And twenty times he kist his daughter swete,  
And saied: "O dere doughter mine, welcome,"  
She said eke, she was fain with him to mete:  
And stode forth muet, milde, and mansuete,  
But here I leave her with her father dwell,  
And forth I woll of Troilus you tell.

To Troy is come this wofull Troilus,  
In sorowe aboven all sorowes smert,  
With felon loke, and face dispitous,  
Tho sodainly doune from his hors he stert,  
And through his paleis with swolne herte,  
To chamber he went, of nothing toke he hede  
Ne none to him dare speke o worde for drede.

And there his sorowes that he spared had,  
He yave an issue large, and death he cride,  
And in his throwes, frenetike and mad  
He curseth Juno, Apollo, and eke Cupide,  
He curseth Bachus, Ceres, and Cipride,  
His birth, himselfe, his fate, and eke nature,  
And save his ladie, every creature.

To bed he goth, and waileth there and turneth,  
In furie, as doth he Ixion in Hell,  
And in this wise he nigh till day sojourneth,  
But tho began his herte alite unswell,  
Through teares, which that gonnep up to wol,  
And pitiously he cried upon Creseide,  
And to him self right thus he spake and seide.

"Where is mine owne lady lefe and dere?  
Where is her white brest, where is it, where?  
Where been her armes, and her eyen clere?  
That yesterday this time with me were?

Now may I wepe alone many a teare,  
And graspe about I may, but in this place  
Save a pilow, I find naught to embrace.

"How shal I doen? whan shal she come againe?  
I n'ot alas, why let I her to go?  
As would God I had as tho be slain:  
O herte mine Creseide, O swete fo,  
O lady mine, that I love and no mo,  
To whom for ever more mine herte I vowe,  
See how I die, ye n'll me not rescowe.

"Who seeth you now, my right lodesterre?  
Whan I the firste night have all this tene?  
Who sitteth right now in your presence?  
Who can comforten now your hertes werre?  
Now I am gon, whom yeve ye audience?  
Who speaketh for me right now in my absence?  
Alas, no wight, and that is all my care,  
For well wote I, as evill as I ye fare.

"How should I thus ten daies full endure,  
Whan I the firste night have all this tene?  
How shall she eke sorowfull creature,  
For tendernesse, how shall she this sustene,  
Soche wo for me! o pitous, pale, and grene,  
Shall been your freshe womanly face,  
For langour, er ye tourne unto this place."

And whan he fell in any slombringes,  
Anon begin he shoulde for to grone,  
And dreamen of the dreadfulest thinges  
That might been: as mete he were alone  
In place horrible, making aie his mone,  
Or meten that he was emonges all  
His enemies, and in hir hondes fall.

And therewithall his bodie should start,  
And with the start all sodainly awake,  
And soche a tremour fele about his herte,  
That of the feare his bodie should quake:  
And therewithall he should a noise make,  
And seme as though he should fall depe,  
From high alofe, and than he would wepe,

And rewen on himselfe so pitously,  
That wonder was to here his fantasie.  
An other time he should mightely  
Comfort himselfe, and sain it was folie,  
So causelesse, soche drede for to drie,  
And eft begin his aspre sorowes new,  
That every man might on his paines rew.

Who could tell all, or fully discrive  
His wo, his plaint, his langour, and his pinc?  
Nat all the men that han or been on live,  
Thou reader mayst thy self full well devine,  
That soche a wo my wit can not define,  
On idell for to write it should I swinke,  
Whan that my wit is werie it to thinke.

On Heaven yet the sterres weren seen  
Although full pale ywoxen was the Mone,  
And whiten gan the orisont shene,  
All eastward, as it was wont to done,  
And Phebus with his rosie carte sone,  
Gan after that to dresse him up to fare,  
Whan Troilus hath sent after Pandare.

This Pandare, that of all the day beforne  
Ne might him comen this Troilus to se,  
Although he on his hedde it had sworne,  
For with the king I'riam alday was he,

So that it lay nat in his liberte,  
No where to gon, but on the morow he went  
To Troilus, whan that he for him sent.

For in his herte he could well devine,  
That Troilus at night for sorow woke,  
And that he would tell him of his pine,  
This knew he well inough without boke:  
For which to chamber streight the way he toke,  
And Troilus tho soberly he grette,  
And on the bedde full sone he gau him sette.

"My Pandarus," (quod Troilus) "the sorow  
Which that I drie, I may not long endure,  
I trowe I shall not liven till to morow,  
For which I would alwaies on aventure  
To thee devisen of my sepulture  
The forme, and of my movable thou disport  
Right as thee seemeth best is for to doon."

"But of the fire and flambe funeral,  
In which my body brennen shall to'glede,  
And of the feast and plaies palestrail,  
At my vigile, I pray thee take good hede  
That that be well: and offer Mars my stede,  
My sword, mine helme: and leve brother dere,  
My shelde to Pallas yeve, that shlineth clere.

"The poudre in which min herte ybrend shal turr  
That pray I thee thiou take, and it conserve  
In a vessell that men clepeth an urne  
Of gold, and to my lady that I serve,  
For love of whom thus pitously I sterve,  
So yeve it her, and doe me this pleasaunce,  
To praien her to kepe it for a remembrance.

"For well I fele by my maladie,  
And by my dreames, now and yore ago,  
All certainly, that I mote nedes die:  
The oule eke, which that might Ascapilo,  
Hath after me shrighit, all these nightes two,  
And god Mercurie, now of me wofull wretch  
The soule guide, and whan thee list it fetch."

Pandare answerde and saied, "Troilus,  
My dere frende, as I have told thee yore,  
That it is follie for to sorowen thus,  
And causelesse, for which I can no more:  
But who so will not trowen rede ne lore,  
I can not seen in him no remedie,  
But let him worchen with his fantasie.

"But, Troilus, I pray thee tell me now,  
If that thou trowe er this that any wight,  
Hath loved paramours as well as thou,  
Ye, God wot, and fro many a worthy knight  
Hath his ladie gon a fourteenight,  
And he nat yet made halvendele the fare,  
What nede is the to maken all this care?

"Sens day by day thou maist thy selven see  
That from his love, or eles from his wife  
A man mote twinnen of necessitie,  
Ye though he love her as his owne life:  
Yet nill he with himself thus maken strife,  
For well thou wost, my leve brother dere,  
That alway frendes may not been yfere.

"How done this folke, that seen hir loves wedded  
By frendes might, as it beditheth full oft,  
And seen hem in hir spouses bedde ybedded?  
God wote they take it wisely faire and soft:

For why, good hope halt up hir herte aloft,  
And for they can a time of sorow endure,  
As time hem hurteyn, a time doth hem cure.

"So shouldest thou endure, and letten slide  
The time, and fonde to been glad and light,  
Ten dayes n'is not so long to abide,  
And sens she to comen thee hath behight,  
She n'll her heat broken for no wight,  
For drede thee not, that she n'll finde way  
To come ayen, my life that durst I lay.

"Thy awyrenes eke, and all such fantasie  
Drive out, and let hem faren to mischaunce,  
For they procede of thy melancolie,  
That doth thee fele in slepe all this penaunce :  
A straw for all swevenes signifaunce,  
God helpe me so, I count hem not a bean,  
There wot no man aright what dremes mean.

"For priestes of the temple tellen this,  
That dremes been the revelacions  
Of Goddes, and als well they tel ywis,  
That they been infernalles illusions  
And leches saine, that of complections  
Proceden they of fast, or glotonie,  
Who wot in sothe thus what they signifie !

"Eke other saine, that through impressions,  
As if a wight hath fast a thing in mind,  
That thereof cometh soche avisions :  
And other sain, as they in bokes find,  
That after times of the yere by kind,  
Men dreme, and that theeffect goth by the Mone,  
But leve no dreme, for it is nat to done.

Wel worth of dremes aie these old wives,  
And truly eke, augurie of these foules,  
For feare of which, men wenen lese hir lives,  
As ravens qualm, or schriching of these oules :  
To trowen on it, bothe false and foule is,  
Alas, alas, that so noble a creature  
As is a man, should drede such ordure.

"For which with al mine herte I thee beseche,  
Unto thy self, that all this thou foryove,  
And rise now up, withouten more speche,  
And let us cast how forth may best be driven  
The time, and eke how freshly we may liven,  
Whan she cometh, the which shall be right sone,  
God helpe me so, the best is thus to done.

"Rise, let us speake of lustie life in Troy  
That we have lad, and forth the time drive,  
And eke of time coming us rejoy,  
That bringen shall our bliase now to blive,  
And langour of these twise daies five  
We shall therewith so foryet or oppresse,  
That well unneth it done shall us duresse.

"This toun is full of lordes al about,  
And truce lasten all this meane while,  
Go we plaien us in some lustie rout,  
To Sarpedon, not henned but a mile,  
And thus thou shalt the time well beguile,  
And drive it forth unto that blisfull morow,  
That thou her see, that cause is of thy sorow.

"Now rise, my dere brother Troilus,  
For certes it non honour is to thee  
To wepe, and in thy bedde to rouken thus,  
For truly of o thing trust to me,

If thou thus ligge, a day, two or three,  
The folke woll wene, that thou for cowardise,  
Thee fainest sick, and that thou darst not rise."

This Troilus answerde : "O brother dere,  
This folke know that have ysuffred pain,  
That though he wepe, and make sorowful chere  
That feeleth harme and smart in every vaine,  
No wonder is : and though I ever plain  
Or alway wepe, I am nothing to blame,  
Sens that I have lost the cause of all my game.

"But sens of fine force I mote arise,  
I shall arise, as sone as ever I may,  
And God, to whom mine herte I sacrifice,  
So send us hastily the tenthe day :  
For was there never foule so faine of May  
As I shall ben, whan that she cometh in Troic,  
That cause is of my tourment and my joie.

"But whider is thy rede," (quod Troilus)  
"That we may play us best in all this toun !"  
"By God my conssaile is," (quod Pandarus)  
"To ride and play us with king Sarpedoun."  
So long of this they spoken up and down,  
Till Troilus gan at the last assent  
To rise, and forth to Sarpedon they went.

This Sarpedon, as he that honourable  
Was ever his live, and full of his prowesse,  
With all that might yserved been on table,  
That deintie was, all costs it great richeesse,  
He fedde hem day by day, that such noblesse  
As saiden both the most and eke the least,  
Was never er that day wiste at any feast.

Nor in this world there is none instrument,  
Delicious, through winde, or touche on corde,  
As ferre as any wight hath ever ywent,  
That tonge tell, or herte may recorde,  
But at that feast, it was well heard recorde :  
Ne of ladies eke so faire a companie,  
On daunce er tho, was never yseen with eye.

But what availleth this to Troilus,  
That for his sorrow, nothing of it rought,  
But ever in one, as herte pitous,  
Full busily Creseide his lady sought :  
On her was ever al that his herte thought,  
Now this, now that, so fast imaginirg,  
That glad ywis can him no feasting.

These ladies eke, that at this feast been,  
Sens that he saw his lady was away,  
It was his sorow upon hem for to seen,  
Or for to heare on instrumentes play :  
For she that of his herte hath the kay,  
Was absent, lo, this was his fantasie  
That no wight shulde maken melodie.

Nor there nas houre in al the day or night,  
Whan he was ther as no man might him here,  
That he ne sayd, "O lovesome lady bright,  
How have ye faren sins that ye were there !  
Welcome ywis mine owne lady dere."  
But welaway, all this n'as but a mase,  
Fortune his hove entended bet to glase.

The letters eke, that she of olde time  
Had him ysent, he would alone rede  
An hundred sith, atwixt noone and prime,  
Refiguring her shape, and her womanhede,

Within his herte, and every worde and dede  
That passed was, and thus he drove to an end,  
The fourth day, and saied he wol wend.

And said, "Leve brother Pandarus,  
Intendest thou that we shall here bleve,  
Til Sarpedon woll forth conveyen us,  
Yet were it fairer that we toke our leve :  
For Goddes love, let us now sone at eve  
Our leave take, and homeward let us turne,  
For trewely I nill nat thus sojourne."

Pandare answerde, "Be we comen hither  
To fetchen fire, and rennen home againe !  
God helpe me so, I can nat tellen whither  
We might gone, if I shall sothly saine :  
There any wight is of us more faine  
Than Sarpedon, and if we hence hie  
Thus sodainly, I hold it vilanie.

"Whan that we saiden we would bleve  
With him a weke, and now thus sodainly  
The fourth day to take of him our leve,  
He would wondren on it trewly :  
Let us holden forth our purpose fermely,  
And sene that ye behighten him to abide,  
Hold forward now, and after let us ride."

This Pandarus, with all pine and wo  
Made him to dwell, and at the wekes end,  
Of Sarpedon they toke hir leave tho,  
And on hir way they speden hem to wend :  
(Quod Troilus) "Now Lorde me grace send,  
That I may find at mine home comming,  
Creseide comen," and therwith gan he sing.

"Ye haselwode," thought this Pandare,  
And to himselfe ful softly he seide,  
"God wotte refroiden may this hotte fare,  
Er Calcas sende Troilus Creseide :"  
But nathelesse he japed thus and seide,  
And swore ywis, his herte him wel behight,  
She wolde come as sone as ever she might.

Whan they unto the paleis were ycomen,  
Of Troilus, they doun of horse alight,  
And to the chambre hir way have they nomen,  
And unto time that it gan to night,  
They speken of Creseide the lady bright,  
And after this, whan hem bothe lest,  
They spede hem fro the supper unto rest.

On morow as sone as day began to clere,  
This Troilus gan of his slepe to abreide,  
And to Pandarus, his own brother dere,  
"For love of God," full pitously he seide :  
"As go we sene the paleis of Creseide,  
For sene we yet may have no more feest,  
So let us sene her paleis at the leest."

And therewithall his moine for to blende,  
A cause he fonde in toun for to go,  
And to Creseides house they gan wende,  
But Lorde, this sely Troilus was wo,  
Him thought his sorrowful herte brast atwo,  
For when he saw her doores sparred all,  
Well nigh for sorow adoun he gan to fall.

Therwith whan he was ware, and gan behold  
How shot was every window of the place,  
As frost him thought his herte gan to cold,  
For which with changed deedly pale face.

Withouten worde, he forth by gan to pace,  
And as God would, he gan so faste ride,  
That no wight of his countenance aspide.

Than said he thus : "O paleis desolate,  
O house of houses, whilom best yight,  
O paleis empty and discoisolate,  
O thou lantern, of which quaint is the light,  
O paleis whilom day, that now art night,  
Wel oughtest thou to fall, and I to die,  
Sens she is went, that wont was us to gio.

"O paleis whilom crowne of houses all,  
Enlumed with Sunne of alle biase,  
O ring, of which the rubie is out fall,  
O cause of wo, that cause hast ben of biase :  
Yet sene I may no bet, fain would I kisse  
Thy colde doores, durst I for this rout,  
And farewel shrine of which the saint is out."

Therwith he cast on Pandarus his eie,  
With changed face, and pitous to behold,  
And whan he might his time aright aspide,  
Aie as he rode, to Pandarus he told  
His new sorow, and eke his joyes old,  
So pitously, and with so deed an hew,  
That every wight might on his sorow rew.

Fro thence-forth he rideth up and doune,  
And every thing came him to remembraunce,  
As he rode forth by the places of the tounne,  
In which he whilom had all his pleasaunce :  
"Lo, yonder saw I mine owne lady daunce,  
And in that temple with her eien clere,  
Me caught first my right lady dere.

"And yonder have I herde full lustely  
My dere herte laugh, and yonder play  
Saw I her ones eke ful blisfully,  
And yonder ones to me gan she say  
'Now good sweete love me well I pray,'  
And yonde so goodly gan she me behold,  
That to the death mine herte is to her hold.

"And at the corner in the yonder house,  
Herde I mine alderlevest lady dere,  
So womanly, with voice melodious,  
Singen so wel, so goodly and so clere,  
That in my soule yet me thinketh I here  
The blisful sowne, and in that yonder place  
My lady first me toke unto her grace."

Than thought he thus, "O blisful lord Cupide,  
Whan I the processe have in memory,  
How thou me hast weried on every side,  
Men might a booke make of it like a story :  
What nede is thee to seeke on me victory,  
Sens I am thine, and holy at thy will,  
What joy hast thou thine owne folke to spill !

"Wel hast thou, lord, ywroke on me thine ire,  
Thou mighty god, and dredful for to greve,  
Now mercy, lord, thou wost wel I desire  
Thy grace most, of all lustes leve,  
And live and die I wol in thy beleve,  
For which I ne aske in guerdon but a boone,  
That thou Creseide ayen me sende soone.

"Distraine her herte as faste to returne,  
As thou doest mine to longen her to see,  
Than wote I wel that she n'il nat sojourne :  
Now blisful lord, so cruel thou ne be

Which on the morrow she had him behight  
To come ayen, God wote full little rest  
Had he that night, nothing to slepe him lest.

The laurer crowned Phebus, with his heat  
Gan in his course aie upward as he went,  
To warmen of the east sea the waves wete,  
And Circes doughter song, with fresh entent,  
Whan Troilus his Pandare after sent,  
And on the walles of the towne they pleide,  
To looke, if they can seene ought of Creseide.

Till it was noone, they stoden for to see  
Who that there came, and every maner wight  
That came fro ferre, they saiden it was shee,  
Till that they coulden knowen him aright :  
Now was his herte dull, now was it light,  
And thus bejaped stoden for to stare  
About naught, this Troilus and Pandare.

To Pandarus this Troilus tho seide  
"For aught I wot, before noone sikerly,  
Into this toun ne cometh not here Creseide,  
She hath ynough to doen hardely  
To winnen from her father, so trow I,  
Her olde father wot yet make her dine  
Ere that she go, God yeve his herte pine."

Pandarus answerd, "It may well been certain  
And forthy let us dine, I thee beseech,  
And after noone than maist thou come again :"  
And home they go, without more spech,  
And comen ayen, but long may they seech,  
Ere that they finde that they after gape,  
Fortune hem bothe thinketh for to jape.

(Quod Troilus) "I see well now that she  
Is taried with her old father so,  
That ere she come, it woll nigh even be.  
Come forth, I woll unto the yate go,  
These porters ben unkonning evermo,  
And I woll done hem holden up the yate,  
As naught ne were, although she come late."

The day goth fast, and after that came eve,  
And yet came nat to Troilus Creseide,  
He looketh forth by hedge, by tree, by greve,  
And ferre his head over the wall he leide,  
And at the last he tourned him and seide,  
"By God I wote her meaning now Pandare,  
Almost wyis all newe was my care.

"Now doutelesse this lady can her good,  
I wote she commeth riding prively,  
I commend her wisdom by ruine hood,  
She woll nat maken people nicely  
Gaure on her whan she commeth, but softly  
By night into the toun she thinketh ride,  
And, dere brother, think nat long to abide,

"We have naught else for to done wyis,  
And Pandarus, now wilt thou trowen me,  
Have here my trouth, I see her, yon she is,  
Heave up thine eyen man, mayst thou nat see?"  
Pandare answerde, "Nay, so mote I the,  
Al wrong by God, what maist thou man, wher art,  
That I see yonde a farre, n'is but a cart."

"Alas, thou sayst right sooth," (quod Troilus)  
"But hardely it is not all for nought,  
That in mine herte I now rejoyce thus,  
It is ayenst some good, I have a thought,

Not I nat how, but sens that I was wrought,  
Ne felt I such a comfort dare I say,  
She cometh to night, my life that durst I lay."

Pandarus answerde, "It may be well ynough,"  
And held with him of all that ever he saied,  
But in his herte he thought, and soft he loughi,  
And to himselfe full soberly he saied,  
"From hasell wood, there jolly Robin plaid,  
Shall come all that thou abidest here,  
Ye, farwell all the snow of ferne yere."

The wardein of the yates gan to call  
The folk, which that without the yates were,  
And bad hem driven in hir beastes all,  
Or all the night they must bleven there,  
And ferre withlin the night, with many a tere,  
This Troilus gan homeward for to ride,  
For well he seeth it helpeth nat to abide.

But nathelesse, he gladded him in this,  
He thought he misacompted had his day,  
And saied, "I understand have all amis,  
For thilke night I late Creseide sey,  
She sayd, 'I shall ben here, if that I may,  
Ere that the Moone, O dere herte swete,  
The Lion passe out of this Ariete."

"For which she may yet hold all her beheist,"  
And on the morrow unto the yate he went,  
And up and doune, by west and eke by east  
Upon the walles made he many a went,  
But all for naught, his hope alway him blent,  
For which at night, in sorow and sighe sore,  
He went him home, withouten any more.

This hope all cleane out of his herte fled,  
He ne hath whereon now lenger for to hong,  
But for the paine him thought his herte bled,  
So were his throwes sharp, and wonder strong,  
For whan he saw that she abode so long,  
He n'ist what he judgen of it might,  
Sens she hath broken that she him behight.

The thirde, fourth, fiste, and sixt day  
After the dayes tennue, of which I told,  
Betwixen hope and drede his herte lay,  
Yet somewhat trusting on her hestes old,  
But whan he saw she n'olde her terme hold,  
He can now seene none other remedie,  
But for to shape him soone for to die.

Therwith the wicked spirit, God us blesse,  
Which that men clepen woode jealousye,  
Gan in him crepe, in all this hevynesse,  
For which because he would soone die,  
He ne eat ne dronke for his melancholie,  
And eke from every company he fled,  
This was the life that all this time he led.

He so defaite was, that no manner man,  
Unneth he might knowen there he went,  
So was he leane, and thereto pale and wan,  
And feeble, that he walketh by potent,  
And with his ire he thus himselfe shent :  
But who so asked him whereof him smart,  
He sayd, his harme was all about his herte.

Priam full oft, and eke his mother dere,  
His bretherne and his sustren gan him frain  
Why he so sorrowfull was in all his chere,  
And what thing was the cause of all his pain :

Her needed no teares, for to borow,  
And this was yet the worst of all her paine,  
Ther was no wight, to whom she durste plain.

Full rewfully she looked upon Troy,  
Beheld the toures high, and eke the hallis,  
"Alas," (quod she) "the pleasaunce and the joy,  
The which that now all turned into gall is,  
Have I had ofte within yonder wallis.  
O Troilus, what doest thou now?" she seide,  
"Lord, whether thou yet thinke upon Creseide.

"Alas, that I ne had ythrowed on your lore,  
And went with you, as ye me redde ere this,  
Than had I now not sighed halfe so sore:  
Who might have said, that I had done amis  
To steale away with such one as he is!  
But all too late commeth the lectuarie,  
Whan men the corse unto the grave carie.

"Too late is now to speke of that matere,  
Prudence, alas, one of thine eyen three  
Me lacked alway, ere that I came here:  
For on time passed well remembred mee,  
And present time eke could I well see,  
But future time, ere I was in the snare,  
Could I not see, that causeth now my care.

"But nathelesse, betide what betide,  
I shall to morow at night, by east or west,  
Out of this hoast steale, on some side,  
And gone with Troilus, where as him lest,  
This purpose woll I hold, and this is the best,  
No force of wicked tongues jonglerie,  
For ever on love have wretches had envie.

"For who so woll of every word take hede,  
Or rule hem by every wightes wit,  
Ne shall he never thrive out of drede,  
For that that some men blamen ever yet,  
Lo, other manner folke commenden it,  
And as for me, for all such variaunce,  
Felicite clepe I my suffisaunce.

"For which, withouten any wordes mo,  
To Troy I woll, as for conclusioun."  
But God it wote, ere fully moneths two,  
She was full ferre fro that ententioun,  
For bothe Troilus and Troiö touñ  
Shall knotlesse throughout her herte slide,  
For she woll take a purpose for to abide.

This Diomede, of whom I you tell gan,  
Goth now within himselfe aye arguing,  
With all the sleight and all that ever he can  
How he may best with shortest taryng,  
Into his nette Crescides herte bring,  
To this entent he couthe never fine,  
To fishen her, he laid out hooke and line.

But nathelesse, well in his herte he thought,  
That she nas nat without a love in Troy,  
For never sithen he her thence brought,  
Ne couthe he see her laugh, or maken joy,  
He n'is how best her herte for t'acoie,  
But for t'assay, he said nought it ne greveth,  
For he that naught assaieth, naught atcheveth.

Yet said he to himselfe upon a night,  
"Now am I nat a foole, that wote well how  
Her wo is, for love of another wight,  
And hereupon to gone assay her now,

I may well wete, it n'll nat ben my prow,  
For wise folke in bookes it expresse,  
Men shall nat wowe a wight in hevinesso.

"But who so might winnen such a flour  
Fro him, for whom she mourneth night and day,  
He might saine he were a conquerour:  
And right anone, as he that bold was aye,  
Thought in his herte, hap how hap may,  
All should I dye, I woll her herte seech,  
I shall no more lesen but my speech."

This Diomede, as bookes us declare,  
Was in his nedes yrest and courageous,  
With sterne voice, and mighty limmes square,  
Hardy, testife, strong, and chevalrous  
Of dedes like his father Tideus,  
And some men saine he was of tonge large,  
And heire he was of Calcidony and Arge.

Creseide meane was of her stature,  
Thereto of shape, of face, and eke of chere,  
There might ben no fairer creature,  
And ofte time this was her manere,  
To gone ytressed with her hairens clere  
Downe by her colere, at her backe behind,  
Which with a threde of gold she would bind.

And save her browes joyneden yfere,  
There nas no lacke, in aught I can espie,  
But for to speaken of her eyen clere,  
Lo, truely they writen that her seien,  
That Paradis stood formed in her eien,  
And with her riche beauty evermore  
Strove love in her, aie which of hem was more.

She sobre was, eke simple, and wise withall,  
The best ynorished eke that might bee,  
And goodly of her speech in generall,  
Charitable, estately, lusty, and free,  
Ne nevermore, ne lacked her pitee,  
Tender hearted, sliding of corage,  
But truely I can nat tell her age.

And Troilus well woxen was in hight,  
And complete formed by proportioun,  
So well that Kind it naught amenden might,  
Young, fresh, strong, and hardy as lioun,  
Trew as steele, in ech conditioun,  
One of the best enteched creature,  
That is or shall, while that the world may dure.

And certainly, in story as it is fond,  
That Troilus was never unto no wight  
As in his time, in no degree second,  
In daring do that longeth to a knight,  
All might a giaunt passen him of might,  
His herte aye with the first and with the best,  
Stood peregall to dare done what him lest.

But for to tellen forth of Diomede,  
It fell, that after on the tenth day,  
Sens that Creseide out of the city yede,  
This Diomede, as fresh as braunch in May,  
Came to the tente there as Calcas lay,  
And fained him with Calcas have to done,  
But what he ment, I shall you tellen sone.

Creseide at shorte wordes for to tell,  
Welcommed him, and downe him by her sette.  
And he was ethe ynough to maken dwell,  
And after this, withouten longo lette,

The spices and the wine men forth hem fette,  
And forth they speke of this and that yfere,  
As friendes done, of which some shall ye here.

He gan first fallen of the warre in speech  
Betwixen hem and the folke of Troy toun,  
And of th'assiege he gan eke her beseech,  
To tellen him what was her opinioun :  
Fro that demaund he so discendeth doun,  
To asken her, if that her straunge thought  
The Grekes gise, and werkes that they wrought !

And why her father tarieth so long  
To wedden her unto some worthy wight ?  
Creseide that was in her paines strong,  
For love of Troilus her owne knight,  
So ferforth as she cunning had or might,  
Answerde him tho, but as of his entent,  
It seemed nat she wiste what he ment.

But nathelesse, this like Diomedes  
Gan on himselfe assure, and thus he seide :  
" If I aright have taken on you hede,  
Methinketh thus, O lady mine Creseide,  
That sene I first hond on your bridle leide,  
Whan I out came of Troy by the morrow,  
Ne might I never seeue you but in sorrow.

" I can nat saine what may the cause be,  
But if for love of some Trojan it were,  
The which right sore would a thinken me,  
That ye for any wight that dwelleth there,  
Shoulde spill a quarter of a tere,  
Or pitously your selven so begile,  
For dredelesse it is nat worth the while.

" The folke of Troy, as who saith all and some,  
In prison ben, as ye your selven see,  
Fro thence shall nat one on live come,  
For all the gold atwixen sunne and see,  
Trusteth well, and understondeth mee,  
There shall nat one to mercy gone on live,  
All were he lord of worldes twise five.

" Such wrech on hem for fetcheng of Heleine  
There shall be take, ere that we hence wend,  
That Maunes, which that goddes ben of peine,  
Shall ben agast that Grekes wol hem shend,  
And men shall drede unto the worldes end  
From henceforth to ravishen any queene,  
So cruell shall our wreche on hem be seene.

" And but if Calcas lede us with ambages,  
That is to saine, with double wordes slic,  
Such as men clepen a word with two visages,  
Ye shall well knowen that I nat ne lie,  
And all this thing right sene it with your eie,  
And that anon, ye nill nat trow how soone,  
Now taketh hede, for it is for to doone.

" What wene ye your wise father would  
Have yeven Antenor for you anone,  
If he ne wiste that the city should  
Destroied ben ? why nay so mote I gone,  
He knew full well there shall nat scapen one  
That Troian is, and for the greates fere  
He durste nat that ye dwelt longer there.

" What woll ye more, O lovesome lady dere !  
Let Troy and Troians fro your herte passe,  
Drive out that bitter hope, and make good chere.  
And clepe ayen the beaute of your face,

That ye with salte teares so deface,  
For Troy is brought in such a jeopardie,  
That it to save is now no remedie.

" And thinketh well, ye shall in Grekes find  
A more perfite love, ere it be night,  
Than any Troian is, and more kind,  
And bet to serven you woll done his might,  
And if ye vouchsafe my lady bright,  
I woll ben he, to serven you my selve,  
Ye lever than be lord of Greces twelve."

And with that word he gan to waxen reed,  
And in his speech a little while he quoke,  
And cast aside a little with his heed,  
And stint a while, and afterward he woke,  
And soberly on her he threw his loke,  
And said, " I am, albeit to you no joy,  
As gentill a man as any wight in Troy.

" For if my father Tidenus " (he seide)  
" Ylived had, I had been ere this,  
Of Calcidonie and Arge a king, Creseide,  
And so hope I that I shall be ywis :  
But he was slaine alas, the more harme is,  
Unhappily at Thebes all to rathe,  
Polimite, and many a man to scathe.

" But herte mine, sithe that I am your man,  
And ben the first, of whom I seeche grace,  
To serve you as heartely as I can,  
And ever shall, while I to live have space,  
So that, ere I depart out of this place,  
Ye woll me graunte, that I may to morow  
At better leiser tell you of my sorow."

What shuld I tell his wordes that he seide !  
He spake ynough for o day at the mest  
It preveth well he spake so, that Creseide  
Graunted on the morrow at his request  
For to speake with him at the least,  
So that he wolde speake of such matere,  
And thus she to him said, as ye mowe here.

As she that had her herte on Troilus  
So fast, that there may it none arace,  
And straungely she spake, and saied thus :  
" O Diomedes, I love that ilke place  
There was I borne, and Joves of thy grace  
Deliver it soone of all that doth it care,  
God for thy might so leve it well to fare.

" That Grekes wold hir wrath on Troie wreke  
If that they might, I know it well ywis,  
But it shall naught befallen as ye speke,  
And God toforne, and farther over this,  
I wote my father wise and ready is,  
And that he me hath bought, as ye me told,  
So dere am I the more unto him hold.

" That Grekes ben of high condition,  
I wote oke well, but certaine men shall find  
As worthie folke within Troie toun,  
As conning, as perfite, and as kinde,  
As ben betwixte Orcades and Inde,  
And that ye coulede well your lady serve  
I trow eke well, her thonke for to deserve.

" But as to speake of love, ywis " (she seide)  
" I had a lord, to whom I wedded was,  
His whose mine herte was all till he deid,  
And other love, as helpe me now Pallas,



There in mine herte n'is, ne never was,  
And that ye ben of noble and high kinrede,  
I have well herde it tellen out of drede.

"And that doth me to have so great a wonder,  
That ye woll scornen any woman so,  
Eke God wote, love and I ben fer asonder,  
I am disposed bet, so mote I go,  
Unto my death plaine and make wo;  
What I shall after done, I can not say,  
But truly as yet me list nat play.

"Mine herte is now in tribulation,  
And ye in armes busie day by day,  
Hereafter whan ye women have the toun,  
Paraventure than, so it happen may,  
That whan I see that I never ere sey,  
Than woll I werke that I never ere wrought,  
This word to you ynough suffisen ought.

"To morow eke wol I speken with you faine,  
So that ye touchen naught of this matere,  
And whan you list, ye may come here againe,  
And ere ye gone, thus much I say you here,  
As helpe me Pallas, with her haires clere,  
If that I should of any Greeke have routh,  
It shulde be your selven by my trouth.

"I say nat therefore that I woll you love,  
Ne say nat nay, but in conclusioun,  
I meane well by God that sit above :"  
And therewithall she cast her eien down,  
And gan to sigh, and said, "Troilus and Troy toun  
Yet bidde I God, in quiet and in rest  
I may you seeene, or do mine herte brest."

But in effect, and shortly for to say,  
This Diomed all freshly new againe  
Gan preasen on, and fast her mercy pray,  
And after this, the soothe for to saine,  
Her glove he toke, of which he was full faine,  
And finally, whan it was woxen eve,  
And all was well, he rose and tooke his leve.

The bright Venus folowed and aie taught  
The way there brode Phebus doune alight,  
And Cithera her chare horse over raught,  
To whirle out of the Lion, if she might,  
And Signifer his candles sheweth bright,  
Whan that Creseide unto her bed went,  
Within her fathers faire bright tent.

Retourning in her soule aye up and doun  
The wordes of this suddaine Diomed,  
His great estate, and perill of the toun,  
And that she was alone, and had nede  
Of friendes help, and thus began to brede  
The cause why, the soothe for to tell,  
She tooke fully purpose for to dwell.

The morow came, and ghostly for to speke,  
This Diomed is come unto Creseide,  
And shortly, least that ye my tale breke,  
So well he for himselfe spake and seide,  
That all her sighes sore doune he leide,  
And finally, the soothe for to saine,  
He reft her the great of all her paine.

And after this, the story telleth us,  
That she him yave the faire bay stede,  
The which she ones wan of Troilus,  
And eke a brooch (and that was little nede)

That Troilus' was, she yave this Diomed,  
And eke the bet from sorow him to releve,  
She made him weare a pencell of her sleve. *(penner.)*

I find eke in stories elsewhere,  
Whan through the body hurt was Diomed  
Of Troilus, tho wept she many a tere,  
Whan that she saw his wide woundes blede,  
And that she tooke to kepen him good hede,  
And for to healen him of his smart,  
Men saine, I n'ot, that she yave him her herte.

But truly the storie telleth us,  
There made never woman more wo  
Than she, whan that she falsed Troilus,  
She said "Alas, for now is clene ago  
My name in trouth of love for evermo,  
For I have falsed one the gentillest  
That ever was, and one the worthiest.

"Alas, of me unto the worldes end  
Shall neither ben ywritten or ysong  
No good worde, for these bokes wold me shend :  
Yrolled shall I been on many a tong,  
Throughout the world my bell shall be rong,  
And wofen most woll hate me of all,  
Alas, that such a caas me should fall.

"They woll saine, in as much as in me is,  
~~I have hem done dishonour welaway,~~  
All be I not the first that did amis,  
What helpeth that, to done my blame away,  
But sens I see there is no better way,  
And that too late is now for me to rue,  
To Diomed I woll algate be true.

"But Troilus, sens I no better may,  
And sens that thus departen ye and I,  
Yet pray I God so yeve you right good day,  
As for the gentillest knight truly  
That ever I saw, to serven faithfully,  
And best can aye his ladies honour kepe,"  
And with that word she brast anon to wepe.

"And certes, you ne haten shall I never,  
And friendes love, that shall ye have of me,  
And my good word, all should I liven ever,  
And truly I would right sorrie be,  
For to seene you in adversite,  
And guiltesse I wot well I you leave,  
And all shall passe, and thus take I my leave."

But truly how long it was bitwene,  
That she forsoke him for this Diomed,  
There is none outhour telleth it I wene,  
Take every man now to his bookes hede,  
He shall no terme finden, out of drede,  
For though that he began to wowe her sone,  
Ere he her wan, yet was there more to done.

Ne me ne list this selie woman clide  
Ferther than the storie wold devise,  
Her name alas, is published so wide,  
That for her gilt it ought ynough suffice,  
And if I might excuse her in any wise,  
For she so sorrie was for her untrouth,  
Ywis I would excuse her yet for routh.

This Troilus, as I before have told,  
Thus driveth forth, as wel as he hath might,  
But ofte was his herte hote and cold,  
And namely that ilke ninthe night,

Which on the morrow she had him behight  
To come ayen, God wote full little rest  
Had he that night, nothing to slepe him lest.

Tho laurer crowned Phebus, with his heat  
Gan in his course aie upward as he went,  
To warmen of the east sea the waves wete,  
And Circes doughter song, with fresh entent,  
Whan Troilus his Pandare after sent,  
And on the walles of the towne they pleide,  
To looke, if they can seene ought of Creseide.

Till it was noone, they stooden for to see  
Who that there came, and every maner wight  
That came fro ferre, they saiden it was shee,  
Till that they coulden knowen him aright :  
Now was his herte dull, now was it light,  
And thus bejaped stooden for to stare  
About naught, this Troilus and Pandare.

To Pandarus this Troilus tho seide  
"For aught I wot, before noone sikerly,  
Into this tounne ne cometh not here Creseide,  
She hath ynough to doen hardely  
To winnen from her father, so trow I,  
Her olde father woll yet make her diue  
Ere that she go, God yeve his herte pine."

Pandarus answerd, "It may well be certain  
And forthy let us dine, I thee beseech,  
And after noone than maist thou come again :"  
And home they go, without more speech,  
And comen ayen, but long may they seech,  
Ere that they finde that they after gape,  
Fortune hem bothe thinketh for to jape.

(Quod Troilus) "I see well now that she  
Is taried with her old father so,  
That ere she come, it woll nigh even be.  
Come forth, I woll unto the yate go,  
These porters ben unknowing evermo,  
And I woll done hem holden up the yate,  
As naught ne were, although she come late."

The day goth fast, and after that came eve,  
And yet came nat to Troilus Creseide,  
He looketh forth by hedge, by tree, by greve,  
And ferre his head over the wall he leide,  
And at the last he tourned him and seide,  
"By God I wote her meaning now Pandare,  
Almost ywis all newe was my care.

"Now doubtelesse this lady can her good,  
I wote she commeth riding prively,  
I commend her wisdom by mine hood,  
She woll nat maken people nicely  
Gaure on her whan she commeth, but softly  
By night into the tounne she thinketh ride,  
And, dere brother, thinke nat long to abide,

"We have naught else for to done ywis,  
And Pandarus, now wilt thou trowen me,  
Have here my trouth, I see her, yon she is,  
Heave up thine eyen man, mayst thou nat see ?"  
Pandare answerde, "Nay, so mote I the,  
Al wrong by God, what saist thou man, wher art,  
That I see yonde afarre, n'is but a cart."

"Alas, thou sayst right sooth," (quod Troilus)  
"But hardely it is not all for nought,  
That in mine herte I now rejoyce thus,  
It is ayenat some good, I have a thought,

Not I nat how, but sens that I was wrought,  
Ne felt I such a comfort dare I say,  
She cometh to night, my life that durst I lay."

Pandarus answerde, "It may be well ynough,"  
And held with him of all that ever he saied,  
But in his herte he thought, and soft he lough,  
And to himselfe full soberly he saied,  
"From hasell wood, there jolly Robin plaied,  
Shall come all that thou abidest here,  
Ye, farwell all the snow of ferne yere."

The wardein of the yates gan to call  
The folk, which that without the yates were,  
And bad hem driven in hir beastes all,  
Or all the night they must bleven there,  
And ferre within the night, with many a tere,  
This Troilus gan homeward for to ride,  
For well he seeth it helpeth nat to abide.

But nathelesse, he gladdened him in this,  
He thought he misacompted had his day,  
And saied, "I understand have all amis,  
For thilke night I laste Creseide sey,  
She sayd, 'I shall ben here, if that I may,  
Ere that the Moone, () dere herte swete,  
The Lion passe out of this Ariete."

"For which she may yet hold all her behest,"  
And on the morrow unto the yate he went,  
And up and doune, by west and eke by east  
Upon the walles made he many a went,  
But all for naught, his hope alway him blent,  
For which at night, in sorow and sighe sore,  
He went him home, withouten any more.

This hope all cleane out of his herte fled,  
He ne hath whereon now longer for to hong,  
But for the paine him thought his herte bled,  
So were his throwes sharp, and wouder strong,  
For whan he saw that she abode so long,  
He n'ist what he judgen of it might,  
Sens she hath broken that she him behight.

The thirde, fourth, fifte, and sixt day  
After tho dayes tenne, of which I told,  
Betwixen hope and drede his herte lay,  
Yet somewhat trusting on her hestes old,  
But whan he saw she n'olde her terme hold,  
He can now seene none other remedie,  
But for to shape him soone for to die.

Therwith the wicked spirit, God us blesse,  
Which that men clepen woode jealousye,  
Gan in him crepe, in all this heviness,  
For which because he would soone die,  
He ne eat ne dronke for his melancholie,  
And eke from every company he fled,  
This was the life that all this time he led.

He so defaite was, that no manner man,  
Unneth he might knowen there he went,  
So was he leane, and thereto pale and wan,  
And feeble, that he walketh by potent,  
And with his ire he thus himselfe shent :  
But who so asked him whereof him smart,  
He sayd, his harme was all about his herte.

Priam full oft, and eke his mother dere,  
His bretherne and his sustron gan him frain  
Why he so sorrowfull was in all his chere,  
And what thing was the cause of all his pain !

But all for naught, he n'olde his cause plain,  
But sayd, he felt a grievous maladie  
About his herte, and faine he would die.

So on a day he laid him down to slepe,  
And so befell, that in slepe him thought,  
That in a forrest fast he walked to wepe  
For love of her that him these paines wrought,  
And up and doune as he that forrest sought,  
He met he saw a bore, with tuskes great,  
That slept ayenst the bright Sunnes heat.

And by this bore, fast in her armes fold  
Lay kissing aye his lady bright Creseide,  
For sorrow of which, whan he it gan behold,  
And for dispite, out of his slepe he breide,  
And loude he cried on Pandarus, and seide,  
"O Pandarus, now know I crop and root,  
I n'am but dead, there n'is none other boot.

"My lady bright Creseide hath me betrayed,  
In whom I trusted most of any wight,  
She elsewhere hath now her herte apaied,  
The blisfull goddes, through hir greate might,  
Have in my dreame yshewed it full right,  
Thus in my dreame Creseide have I behold,  
And all this thing to Pandarus he told.

"O my Creseide, alas, what subtelte!  
What newe lust! what beauty! what science!  
What wrath of juste cause have ye to me!  
What guilt of me! what fell experience  
Hath me rafte, alas, thine adverence!  
O trust, O faith, O depe assuraunce,  
Who hath me raft Creseide, all my pleasuraunce!

"Alas, why let I you from hence go!  
For which well nigh out of my wit I breide,  
Who shall now throw on any othes mo!  
God wote I wend, O lady bright Creseide,  
That every word was gospell that ye seide,  
But who may bet beguile, if him list,  
Than he on whom men wenen best to trist!

"What shall I done, my Pandarus, alas!  
I fele now so sharpe a newe paine,  
Sens that there is no remedy in this caas,  
That bet were it I with mine hondes twaine  
My selven slow than alway thus to plaine,  
For through the death my wo shuld have an end,  
There every day with life my self I shend."

Pandarus answerde and said, "Alas the while  
That I was borne, have I nat saied er this,  
That dreames many a manner man beguile!  
And why! For folke expounden hem amis:  
How darest thou saine that false thy lady is,  
For any dreame, right for thine own drede,  
Let be this thought, thou canst no dreames rede.

"Peraventure there thou dremest of this bore,  
It may so be that it may signifie  
Her father, whi h that old is and eke hore,  
Ayen the sunne lieth on point to die,  
And she for sorow ginneth wepe and crie,  
And kiseth him, there he lieth on the ground,  
Thus shuldest thou thy dreame aight expound."

"How might I then doen" (quod Troilus)  
"To know of this, yea were never so lite!"  
"Now sayst thou wisely," (quod this Pandarus)  
"My rede is this, sens thou canst well endite,

That hastily a letter thou her write,  
Through which thou shalt well bringen about  
To know a sooth of that thou art in dout.

"And see now why: for this dare I well sain,  
That if so is, that she untrue be,  
I cannot trowen that she wolle write again,  
And if she write, thou shalt full sone ysee,  
As whether she hath any liberte  
To come ayen, or els in some clause  
If she be let, she wolle assigne a cause.

"Thou hast not written to her sens she went,  
Nor she to thee, and this I durst lay,  
There may such cause ben in her entent,  
That hardly thou wolt thy selven say,  
That her abode the best is for you tway:  
Now write her than, and thou shalt fele sone  
A sooth of all, there is no more to done."

Accorded ben to this conclusioun,  
And that anon, these ilke lords two,  
And hastily sate Troilus adoun,  
And rolleth in his herte too and fro,  
How he may best descriven her his wo,  
And to Creseide his owne lady dere,  
He wrote right thus, and said as ye may here.

✓ THE COPIE OF THE LETTER.

"Riseft fresh flour, whose I have ben and shall,  
Withouten part of elsewhere servise,  
With herte, body, life, lust, thought, and all,  
I wofull wight in every humble wise  
That tong can tell, or herte may devise,  
As oft as matter occupieth place,  
Me recommaund unto your noble grace.

"Liketh it you to weten, sweete herte,  
As ye well know, how long time agon  
That ye me left in aspre paines smart,  
Whan that ye went, of which yet bote non  
Have I non had, but ever worse bigon,  
Fro day to day am I, and so mote dwell,  
While it you list, of wele and wo my well.

"For which to you, with dredefull herte trew,  
I write (as he that sorow driveth to write)  
My wo, that every houre encreaseth new,  
Complaining as I dare, or can endite,  
And that defaced is, that may ye wite,  
The teares, which that from mine eyen rain,  
That wulden speke, if that they durst, and plain

"You first beseech I, that your eyen clere  
To looke on this defouled ye nat hold:  
And over all this, that ye, my lady dere,  
Wolle vouchsafe this letter to behold,  
And by the cause eke of my cares cold,  
That slaeth my wit, if aught amis me start,  
Foryeve it me, mine owne sweet herte.

"If any servaunt durst or ought of right  
Upon his lady pitously complaine,  
Than wene I that I ought be that wight,  
Considred this, that ye these moneths twaine  
Have taried, there ye saiden sooth to saine,  
But tenne daies ye nolde in hoste sojourne,  
But in two moneths yet ye not retourne.

"But for as much as me mote nedes like  
All that you list, I dare nat plaine more,

But humbly, with sorowfull sighes sike,  
You right I mine unrestie sorowes sore,  
Fro day to day, desiring evermore  
To knowen fully, if your will it were,  
How ye have fared and don while ye be there.

"Whose welfare and heale eke God encrease  
In honour such, that upward in degree  
It grow alway, so that it never cease,  
Right as your herte aye can, my lady free,  
Devise, I pray to God so mote it be,  
And graunt it, that you soone upon me rew,  
As wisely as in all I am to you trew.

"And if you liketh knowen of the fare  
Of me, whose wo ther may no wight discrive,  
I can no more, but chest of every care,  
At writing of this letter I was on live,  
All redy out my wofull ghost to drive,  
Which I delay, and hold him yet in hond,  
Upon the sight of matter of your sond.

"Mine eyen two, in vaine with which I see,  
Of sorowfull teres salt and woxen wellis,  
My song in plaint of mine adversite,  
My good in harm, mine ease eke woxen Hell is,  
My joy in wo, I can sey now nought ellis,  
But tourned is, for which my life I warie,  
Every joy or ease in his contrarie.

"Which with you coming home ayen to Troy  
Ye may redresse, and more a thousand sithe,  
Than ever I had encreasen in me joy,  
For was there never herte yet so blithe  
To save his life, as I shall ben as swithe  
As I you see, and though no manner routh  
Can meven you, yet thinketh on your trouth.

"And if so be my gilt hath death deserved,  
Or if you list no more upon me see,  
In guerdon yet of that I have you served,  
Beseech I you, mine owne lady free,  
That hereupon ye woulde write me  
For love of God, my right lodosterre,  
That death may make an end of al my werre.

"If other cause aught doth you for to dwell,  
That with your letter ye may me recomfort,  
For though to me your absence is an Hell,  
With patience I wold my wo comfort,  
And with your letter of hope I wold disport:  
Now writeth, swete, and let me thus nat plaine,  
With hope or death delivereth me fro paine.

"Ywis, mine owne dere herte trew,  
I wote that whan ye next upon me see,  
So lost have I mine heale eke mine hew,  
Creseide shall not coume knownen me,  
Ywis, mine hertes day, my lady free,  
So thursteth aye mine herte to behold  
Your beautie, that unneth my life I hold.

"I say no more, all have I for to sey  
To you well more than I tell may,  
But whether that ye do me live or dey,  
Yet pray I God so yeve you right good day,  
And fareth well, goodly faire fresh May,  
As ye that life or death me may commaund,  
And to your trouth aye I me recommaund.

"With heale such, that but ye yeven me  
The same heale, I shall none heale have,

In you lieth, whan you list that it so be,  
The day in which me clothen shall my grave,  
And in you my life, in you might for to save  
Me fro disease of all my paines smart,  
And fare now well, mine owne sweet herte.  
"Le vostre T."

This letter forth was sent unto Creseide,  
Of which her answee in effect was this,  
Full pitously she wrote ayen, and seide,  
That all so soone as she might ywis,  
She would come, and amend all that was amis,  
And finally, she wrote and saied than,  
She would come, ye, but she nist whan.

But in her letter made she such feasts,  
That wonder was, and swore she loved him best,  
Of which he found but bottomlesse bihests.  
But Troilus thou mayst now east and west  
Pipe in an ivie leaf, if that thee list:  
Thus goth the world, God shilde us fro mischaunce,  
And every wight that meaneth trouth avaunce.

Encreasen gan the wo fro day to night  
Of Troilus, for taryng of Creseide,  
And lessen gan his hope and eke his might,  
For which all doun he in his bedde him leide,  
He ne eat, dronke, ne slept, ne worde seide,  
Imagining aye that she was unkind,  
For which wel nigh he wext out of his mind.

This dreame, of which I told have eke before,  
May never come out of his remembraunce,  
He thought aye well he had his lady lorne,  
And that Joves, of his purveyaunce,  
Him shewed had in sleepe the signifaunce  
Of her untrouth, and his disaventure,  
And that the bore was shewed him in figure.

For which he for Sibillie his suster sent,  
That called was Cassandre eke all about,  
And all his dreame he told her ere he stent,  
And her besought assoilen him the dout  
Of the strong bore, with tuskes stout,  
And finally, within a little stound,  
Cassandre him gan thus his dreame expound.

She gan first smile, and said, "O brother dere,  
If thou a sooth of this desirest to know,  
Thou must a fewe of old stories here,  
To purpose how that fortune overthrow  
Hath lordes old, through which within a throw  
Thou shalt this bore know, and of what kind  
He comen is, as men in bookes find.

"Diaphe, which that wroth was and in ire,  
For Greekes n'olde done her sacrifice,  
Ne incens upon her altar set on fire,  
She for that Greekes gon her so dispise,  
Wrake her in a wonder cruell wise,  
For with a bore as great as oxe in stall,  
She made up frete her corne and vines all.

"To slee the bore was all the country raised,  
Emong whiche there came this bore to se  
A maid, one of this world the best ypraised,  
And Melcager, lord of that countre:  
He loved so this freshe maiden free,  
That with his manhood, ere he would stent,  
This bore he slough, and her the hed he sent.

"Of whiche, as olde bookes tellen us,  
There rose a conteke and a great envie,  
And of this lord discedend Tideus  
By line, or els old bookes lie:  
But how this Meleager gan to die  
Through his mother, woll I you not tell,  
For all too long it were for to dwell."

She told eke how Tideus, ere she stent,  
Unto the strong cite of Thebes  
(To claimen kingdome of the cite) went  
For his fellowe dan Polimides,  
Of which the brother dan Ethioeles  
Full wrongfully of Thebes held the strength.  
This told she by processe all by length.

She told eke how Hemonides astart,  
Whan Tideus slough fiftle knightes stout,  
She told eke all the prophesies by herte,  
And how that seven kinges with hir rout  
Besiegeden the cite all about,  
And of the holy serpent, and the well,  
And of the furies all she gan him tell.

*Associat profugus Tideus primo Polynicem,  
Tivlea ligatum docet insidiasque secundo,  
Tertius Hæmoniden canit, et vatem latitantem,  
Quartus habet reges ineuntes prælia septem,  
Lemniadum furia quinto narrantur et anguis,  
Archemori bustum sexto ludique sequuntur.  
Dat Thebis vatem Graiorum septimus umbris,  
Oclavo cecidit Tideus, spes, vita Pelosgum,  
Hippomedon nono moritur cum Parthenopeo,  
Fulmine percussus decimo Capeneus superatur,  
Undecimo perimunt sese per vulnera fratres,  
Argivum flentem, narrat duodenus et ignem.*

Of Archinorics burying, and the plaies,  
And how Amphiorax fill through the ground,  
How Tideus was slaine, lord of Argia,  
And how Hippomedon in a little stound  
Was dreint, and dead Parthenope of wound,  
And also how Campanus the proud  
With thunder dint was slaine, that cried loud.

She gan eke tell him how that either brother  
Ethioeles and Polimides also  
At a scarmishe eche of hem slouth other,  
And of Argives weeping and her mo,  
And how the toun was brent she told eke tho,  
And tho discedend down from gestes old  
To Diomede, and thus she spake and told.

"This ilke bore betokeneth Diomede,  
Tideus son, that doun descended is  
Fro Meleager, that made the bore to blede,  
And thy lady, where so she be ywis,  
This Diomede her herte hath, and she is his:  
Weep if thou wolt or leave, for out of dout  
This Diomede is in, and thou art out."

"Thou sayst not sooth," (quod he) "thou sor-  
With all thy false ghost of prophecies, [ceresse,  
Thou wenest been a great devineresse,  
Now seest thou nat this foole of fantasie,  
I'ainen her on ladies for to lie,  
Away," (quod he) "there Joves yve the sorow,  
That shalt be fals peraventure yet to morow.

"As well thou mightest lien on good Alceste,  
That was of creatures (but men lie)  
That ever weren, kindest, and the best,

For whan her husbond was in jeopardie  
To die himselfe, but if she would die,  
She chese for him to die, and gon to Hell,  
And starfe anon, as us the bookes tell."

Cassandre goeth, and he with cruell herte  
Foryate his wo, for anger of his speech,  
And fro his bedde all suddainly he start,  
As though a hole him had ymade a leech,  
And day by day he gan require and seech  
A sooth of this, with all his full cure,  
And thus he driveth forth his aventure.

Fortune which that permutation  
Of all things hath, as it is her committed,  
Through purveyaunce and disposition  
Of high Jove, as reigues shall ben fifted  
Fro folk to folk, or whan they shal ben smitted,  
Gan pull away the feathers bright of Troy  
Fro day to day till they ben bare of joy.

Emong all this, the fine of the jeopardie  
Of Hector gan approchen wonder blive,  
The fate would his soule should unbodie,  
And shapen had a meane it out to drive,  
Ayenst which fate him helpeth not to strive,  
But on a day to fighten gan he wond,  
At which alas, he caught his lives end.

For which me thinketh every manner wight  
That haunteth armes, ought to bewaile  
The death of him that was so noble a knight:  
For as he drough a king by th'aventaile  
Unware of this, Achilles through the mailo  
And through the bodie gan him for to rive,  
And thus the worthy knight was reft of live.

For whom, as old bookes tellen us,  
Was made such wo, that tong it may nat tell,  
And namely, the sorow of Troilus,  
That next him was of worthinesse the well,  
And in this wo gan Troilus to dwell,  
That what for sorow, love, and for unrest,  
Full oft a day he bad his herte brest.

But nathelesse, tho he gon him dispaire,  
And drede aye that his lady was untrue,  
Yet aye on her his herte gan repaire,  
And as these lovers done, he sought aye new  
To get ayen Creseide bright of hew,  
And in his herte he went her excusing,  
That Calcas caused all her taryng.

And oft time he was in purpose great,  
Himselfen like a pilgrime to disguise,  
To seene her, but he may not counterfeat,  
To ben unknown of folke that weren wise,  
Ne find excuse aright that may suffice,  
If he among the Grekes known were,  
For which he wept full oft many a tere.

To her he wrote yet oft time all new,  
Full pitously, he left it nat for slouth,  
Beseeching her, sens that he was true,  
That she wold come ayen, and hold her trouth,  
For which Creseide upon a day for routh,  
I take it so, touching all this matere,  
Wrote him ayen, and said as ye may here.

"Cupides sonne, ensample of goodlihed",  
O swerde of knighthood, sours of gentilnesse,  
How might a wight in turment and in drede,

And healelesse, you send as get gladnesse,  
I hertelesse, I sickke, I in distresse,  
Sens ye with me, nor I with you may deale,  
You neither send I herte may nor heale.

"Your letters full the paper all iplained,  
Conceived hath mine hertes pite,  
I have eke seene with teares all depainted,  
Your letter, and how that ye requiren me  
To come ayen, which yet ne may not be,  
But why, least that this letter founden were,  
No mention ne make I now for fere.

"Grevous to me (God wote) is your unrest,  
Your hast, and that the Goddes ordinance  
It seemeth nat ye take it for the best,  
Nor other thing n'is in your remembrance,  
As thinketh me, but only your pleasaunce,  
But beth not wroth, and that I you beseech,  
For that I tary is all for wicked speechi.

"For I have heard well more than I wend  
Touching us two, how things have ystond,  
Which I shall with dissimuling amend,  
And beth nat wroth, I have eke understand,  
How ye ne do but holden me in hond,  
But now no force, I can nat in you gesse,  
But all trouth and all gentillesse.

"Come I woll, but yet in such disjoint  
I stond as now, that what yere or what day  
That this shall be, that can I nat appoint,  
But in effect I pray you as I may  
Of your good word, and of your friendship aye,  
For truly while that my life may dure,  
As for a friend ye may in me assure.

"Yet pray I you, no evill ye ne take  
That it is short which that I to you write,  
I dare nat there I am well letters make,  
Ne never yet ne could I well endite,  
Eke great effect, men write in place lite,  
Th'entent is all, and nat the letters space,  
And fareth well, God have you in his grace.

"La vostre C."

This Troilus thought this letter all straunge  
When he it saw, and sorowfully he sight,  
Him thought it like a kalends of eschaunge,  
But finally he full ne trowen might,  
That she ne would him holden that she hight,  
For with ful evell will list him to leve,  
That loveth well in such case, though him greve.

But nathelesse, men saine that at the last,  
For any thing, men shall the soothe see,  
And such a case betide, and that as fast,  
That Troilus well understood that she  
N'as nat so kind as that her ought to be,  
And finally, he wote now out of dout,  
That all is lost that he hath ben about.

Stood on a day in his melancholy  
This Troilus, and in suspicioun  
Of her, for whom he wend to dye,  
And so befell, that throughout Troie toun,  
As was the guise, yborne was up and doun  
A manner cote armoure, as saith the story,  
Before Deiphobe, imagine of his victory.

The whiche cote, as telleth Lollius,  
Deiphobe it hath rent fro Diomedes

The same day, and when this Troilus  
It saw, he gan to taken of it hede,  
Avising of the length and of the brede,  
And all the werke, but as he gan behold,  
Full sodainly his herte gan to cold.

As he that on the coler found within  
A brooch, that he Creseide yave at morow  
That she from Troy must nedes twin,  
In remembrance of him, and of his sorow,  
And she him laid ayen her faith to borow,  
To keepe it aye: but now full well he wist,  
His lady nas no longer on to trist.

He goth him home, and gan full soone send  
For Pandarus, and all this newe chaunce,  
And of this brooch, he told him word and end,  
Complaining of her hertes variaunce,  
His longe love, his trouth, and his pennaunce,  
And after Death, without words more,  
Full fast he cried, his rest him to restore.

Than spake he thus, "O lady mine Creseide,  
Where is your faith, and where is your behest?  
Where is your love, where is your trouth?" he seide,  
"Of Diomedes have ye now all the feast!  
Alas, I would have trowed at the least,  
That sens ye n'olde in trouthe to me stond,  
That ye thus n'olde have holden me in hond.

"Who shall now trowen on any othes mo?  
Alas, I never would have wend ere this,  
That ye, Creseide, could have chaunged so,  
Ne but I had agilt, and done amis;  
So cruell wend I nat your herte ywis,  
To slee me thus, alas, your name of trouth  
Is now fordone, and that is all my routh.

"Was there none other broche you list lete,  
To feast with your new love?" (quod he)  
"But thilke broche that I with teres wete  
You yave, as for a remembrance of me!  
None other cause alas, ne had ye,  
But for dispite, and eke for that ye ment  
All utterly to shewen your entent.

"Through which I see, that clene out of your mind  
Ye have me cast, and I ne can nor may  
For all this world within mine herte find,  
To unloven you a quarter of a day:  
In cursed time I borne was, welaway,  
That you that done me all this wo endure,  
Yet love I best of any creature.

"Now God" (quod he) "me sende yet the grace,  
That I may meten with this Diomedes,  
And truly, if I had might and space,  
Yet shall I make I hope his sides blede:  
Now God" (quod he) "that oughtest taken hede  
To forthren trouth, and wronges to punice,  
Why n'ilt thou don a vengeance of this vice.

"O Pandarus, that in dremes for to trist  
Me blamed hast, and wont art oft upbriede,  
Now mayst thou seen thy self, if that thee list,  
How trew is now thy nece, bright Creseide:  
In sundry formes (God it wote)" he seide,  
"The gods shewen both joy and tene  
In alepe, and by my dreme it is now sene.

"And certainly, withouten more speech,  
From henceforth, as ferforth as I may,

Mine owne death in armes well I seech;  
I retche nat how soone be the day,  
But truly Creseide, sweet May,  
Whom I have with all my might iserved,  
That ye thus done, I have it nat deserved."

This Pandarus, that all these thinges herd,  
And wiste well he said a sooth of this,  
He nat a word ayen to him answerd,  
For sorie of his friends sorrow he is,  
And shame for his nece hath done amis,  
And stant astonied of these causes twey,  
As still as stons, a word ne could he sey.

But at the last, thus he spake and seide,  
"My brother dere, I may do thee no more,  
What should I saine, I hate ywis Creseide,  
And God it wote, I woll hate her evermore :  
And that thou me besoughtest done of yore,  
Having unto mine honour ne my rest  
Right no regard, I did all that thee lest.

"If I did aught that might liken thee,  
It is me lefe, and of this treason now,  
God wote that it a sorrow is to me,  
And dredelesse, for hertes ease of you,  
Right faine I would amend it, wist I how :  
And fro this world, Almighty God, I pray  
Deliver her soone, I can no more say."

Great was the sorow and plaint of Troilus,  
But forth her course fortune aye gan hold,  
Creseide loveth the sonne of Tideus,  
And Troilus mote wepe in cares cold,  
Such is this world, who so it can behold,  
In eche estate is little hertes rest,  
God leve us to take it for the best.

In many cruell battaile out of drede,  
Of Troilus, this ilke noble knight,  
(As men may in these old bookes rede)  
Was seen his knighthood and his great might,  
And dredelesse his ire day and night  
Full cruelly the Grekes aye abought,  
And alway most this Diomedes, he sought.

And oft time (I finde) that they mette  
With bloody strokes, and with wordes great,  
Assaying how hir speares were whette,  
And God it wote, with many a cruell heat  
Gan Troilus upon his helme to beat,  
But nathelesse, fortune it naught ne would  
Of others hond that either dien should.

And if I had ytaken for to write  
The armes of this ilke worthy man,  
Than would I of his batailles endite,  
And for that I to writen first began  
Of his love, I have said as I can  
His worthy dedes, who so list hem here,  
Rede Dares, he can tell hem all yfere.

Beseeching every lady bright of hew,  
And every gentill woman, what she be,  
Albeit that Creseide was untrew,  
That for that gilt ye be nat wroth with me  
Ye may her gilt in other bookes see,  
And gladder I would write, if you lest,  
Penelopes trouth, and good Alceste.

Ne say I nat this all onely for these men,  
But most for women that betraied be

Through false folk, God yeve hem sorow, amen,  
That with hir great wit and subtilte  
Betraien you : and this meveth me  
To speake, and in effect you all I pray  
Beth ware of men, and hearkeneth what I say.

Go, little booke, go, my little tragedie,  
There God my maker yet ere that I die,  
So send me might to make some comedie :  
But little booke, make thou none envie,  
But subject ben unto all poesie,  
And kisse the steps whereas thou seest pace  
Of Vergil, Ovid, Homer, Lucan, and Stace.

And for there is so great diversite  
In English, and in writing of our tong,  
So pray I to God, that none miswrite thee,  
Ne the misse-metre, for default of tong :  
And redde where so thou be, or eles song,  
That thou be understand, God I beseech,  
But yet to purpose of my rather speech.

The wrath (as I began you for to sey)  
Of Troilus, the Greekes boughten dere,  
For thousandes his hondes maden dey,  
As he that was withouten any pere,  
Save in his time Hector, as I can here,  
But welaway, save onely Goddes will,  
Dispitously him slough the fierce Achill.

And whan that he was slain in this manere,  
His light ghoeste full blisfully is went  
Up to the hollownesse of the seventh sphere,  
In his place letting everiche element,  
And there he saw with full avisement  
The erratike sterres, herkening armonie,  
With sownes full of Heavens melodie.

And down from thence, fast he gan avise  
This little spot of earth, that with the see  
Enbraced is, and fully gan despise  
This wretched world, and held all vanite  
To respect of the plaine felicitye  
That is in Heaven above : and at the last,  
There he was slaine, his looking down he cast.

And in himselfe he lough, right at the wo  
Of hem that wepten for his death so fast,  
And dampned all our werkes that followeth so  
The blinde lust, whiche that may nat last,  
And shouliden all our herte on Heaven cast,  
And forth he went, shortly for to tell,  
There as Mercurie sorted him to dwell.

Such fine hath lo, this Troilus for love,  
Such fine hath all his great worthinesse,  
Such fine hath his estate royall above,  
Such fine his lust, such fine hath his noblesse,  
Such fine hath false worldes brotelnesse,  
And thus began his loving of Creseide,  
As I have told, and in this wise he deide.

O young fresh folkes, he or she,  
In which that love up groweth with your age,  
Repaireth home from worldly vanite,  
And of your hertes up casteth the visage  
To thiike God, that after his image  
You made, and thinketh all n'is but a faire,  
This world that passeth soone, as floures faire.

And loveth him the which that right for love  
Upon a crosse our soules for to bey,

First starfe and rose, and sit in Heven above,  
For he n'll falsen no wight dare I sey,  
That wol his herte all holy on him ley,  
And sens he best to love is and most meeke,  
What needeth fained loves for to seeke.

Lo, here of painems cursed olde rites,  
Lo, here what all hir goddes may availe,  
Lo, here this wretched worldes appetites,  
Lo, here the fine and guerdon for travaile,  
Of Jove, Apollo, of Mars, and such raskaile,  
Lo, here the forme of olde clerkes speech  
In poetrie, if ye hir bookes seech.

O morall Gower, this booke I direct  
To thee, and to the philosophical Stede,

To vouchsafe there need is, to correct,  
Of your benignities and zeales good,  
And to the soothfast Christ that starfe on rood,  
With all mine herte of mercy ever I pray,  
And to the Lord aright, thus I speake and say,

Thou one, two, and three, eterne on live,  
That raignest aie in thre, two, and one,  
Uncircumscrip, and all maist circumscrive,  
Us from visible and invisible fone  
Defend, and to thy mercy everichone,  
So make us, ~~Jeane~~, to thy mercy digue,  
For love of maide, and mother thine benigne.

THUS ENDETH THE FIFTH AND LANT BOOKE OF TROILUS.

## THE COURT OF LOVE.

This booke is an imitation of the Romaunt of the Rose, shewing that all are subject to love, what impediments succey to the contrary: containing also those twentie statutes which are to be observed in the Court of Love.

v. 1—70

With temerous herte, and trembling hand of drede,  
Of cunning naked, bare of eloquence,  
Unto the floure of porte in womanhede  
I write, as he that none intelligence  
Of metres hath, ne floures of sentence:  
Saufe that me list my writing to convey,  
In that I can to please her high nobley.

The blosomes fresh of Tullius gardein sote  
Present they not, my matter for to born:  
Poomes of Virgil taken here no rote,  
Ne craft of Galfride may not here sojourn:  
Why n'am I cunning! O well may I mourne  
For lacke of science, that I cannot write  
Unto the princes of my life aright.

No tearmes digue unto her excellence,  
So is she sprong of noble stirpe and high;  
A world of honour and of reverence  
There is in her, this will I testifie:  
Caliope, thou suster wise and slie,  
And thou Minerva, guide me with thy grace,  
That language rude my matter not deface.

Thy suger dropes sweet of Helicon  
Distill in me, thou gentle Muse, I pray,  
And thee Melpomene, I call anone,  
Of ignoraunce the mist to chase away:  
And give me grace so for to write and say,  
That she my lady of her worthinesse  
Accept in gree this little short treatesse,

That is entituled thus, The Court of Love:  
And ye that ben meticiens me excuse,  
I you beseech for Venus sake above,  
For what I mean in this, ye need not muse:  
And if so be my lady it refuse  
For lacke of ornate speech, I would be wo,  
That I presume to her to written so.

But my entent, and all my busie cure  
Is for to write this treatesse as I can,  
Unto my lady, stable, true, and sure,  
Faithfull and kind, sith first that she began  
Me to accept in service as her man:  
To her be all the pleasure of this booke,  
That whan her like she may it rede and look.

WHAN I was young, at eightene yeare of age,  
Lusty and light, desirous of pleasaunce,  
Approching on full sadde and ripe courage,  
Love arted me to do my observaunce  
To his estate, and done him obeisaunce,  
Commaunding me the Court of Love to see,  
Alite beside the mount of Citharee.

There Citherea goddess was and quene,  
Honoured highly for her majeste,  
And eke her sonne, the mighty god I wene,  
Cupide the blind, that for his dignitee  
A thousand lovers worship on their kuele;  
There was I bid in paine of death to pere,  
By Mercury the winged messengere.

So than I went by strange and fer cuntries,  
Enquiring aye what coast had to it drew  
The Court of Love; and thiderward as bees,  
At last I see the people gan pursue;  
And me thought some wight was there that knew  
Where that the court was holden ferre or nic,  
And after them full fast I gan me hie.

Anone as I them overtooke I said,  
"Haile friends, whither purpose ye to wend?"  
"Forsooth," (quod one) that answered liche a mail,  
"To Loves Court now go we gentle friend."  
"Where is that place," (quod I) "my fellow hend?"  
"At Citheron, sir," said he, "withoute dout,  
The king of love, and all his noble rout

*In the 'Court of Love', which little society was then  
of the Court of Love.*



"Dwelleth within a castle rially."  
So than apace I journeyed forth among,  
And as he said, so fond I there truly ;  
For I beheld the toures high and strong,  
And high pinacles, large of hight and long,  
With plate of gold bespred on every side,  
And precious stones, the stone werke for to hide.

No saphire in Inde, no rubie rich of price,  
There lacked than, nor emeraud so grene,  
Bales Turkes, ne thing to my device,  
That may the castle maken for to shene :  
Al' was as bright as starres in winter bene,  
And Phebus shone to make his peace ageine,  
For trespass done to high estates tweine,

Venus and Mars, the god and goddesse clere,  
Whan he them found in armes cheined fast ;  
Venus was than full sad of herte and chere,  
But Phebus' beams streight as is the mast,  
Upon the castle ginneth he to cast,  
To please the lady, princes of that place,  
In signe he looketh after Loves grace.

For there n'is god in Heaven or Hell ywis,  
But he hath ben right soget unto Love ;  
Jove, Pluto, or whatsoever he is,  
Ne creature in yearth, or yet above ;  
Of these the revers may no wight approve.  
But furthermore, the castle to descrie,  
Yet saw I never none so large and hie ;

For unto Heaven it stretcheth, I suppose,  
Within and out depeinted wonderly,  
With many a thousand daisies rede as rose,  
And white also, this saw I verely :  
But who tho daisies might do signifie,  
Can I not tell, save that the quenes floure,  
Alceste it was that kept there her sojoure ;

Which under Venus lady was and quene,  
And Admete king and souveraine of that place,  
To whom obeyed the ladies good ninetene,  
With many a thousand other bright of face :  
And yong men fele came forth with lusty pace,  
And aged eke, their homage to dispose,  
But what they were I could not well disclose.

Yet nere and nere forth in I gan me dress  
Into an hall of noble apparaile,  
With arras spred, and cloth of gold I gesse,  
And other silke of esier availle :  
Under the cloth of their estate, sauns faile,  
The king and quene there sat as I beheld ;  
It passed joy of Helise the field.

There saints have their comming and resort,  
To seene the king so rially beseine  
In purple clad, and eke the quene in sort,  
And on their heads saw I crownes twaine,  
With stones fret, so that it was no paine,  
Withouten meat and drink, to stand and see  
The kinges honour and the rialtee.

And for to treat of states with the king,  
That ben of counceel cheef, and with the quene ;  
The king had Danger nere to him standing,  
The quene of love, Disdain, and that was sene :  
For by the faith I shall to God, I wene,  
Was never straunger none in her degree,  
Than was the quene in casting of her eye.

And as I stood perceiving her apart,  
And eke the beames shining of her eyen,  
Me thought they weren shapen lich a dart,  
Sharpe and persing, and smal and streight of line ;  
And all her haire it shone as gold so fine,  
Dishivil crispe, downe hanging at her backe  
A yard in length : and soothly than I spake.

"O bright regina, who made thee so faire !  
Who made thy colour vermelet and white !  
Wher wonneth that god, how far above the aire !  
Great was his craft, and great was his delite.  
Now marvell I nothing that ye do hight  
The quene of love, and occupie the place  
Of Cithare : now sweet lady thy grace."

In mewet spake I so, that nought astart  
By no condition word, that might be hard ;  
But in my inward thought I gan advert,  
And oft I said "My wit is dull and hard :"  
For with her beauty thus, God wot, I ferde  
As doth the man yravished with sight,  
Whan I beheld her cristall eyen so bright ;

No respect having what was best to doone,  
Till right anone beholding here and there,  
I spied a friend of mine, and that full soone,  
A gentlewoman, was the chamberere  
Unto the quene, that hote as ye shall here,  
Philobone, that loved all her life :  
Whan she me sey, she led me forth as blife ;

And me demanded how and in what wise  
I thither come, and what my errand was !  
"To seene the court" (quod I) "and all the guise,  
And eke to sue for pardon and for grace,  
And mercy aske for all my great trespass,  
That I none erst come to the Court of Love :  
Foryeve me this, ye goddes all above."

"That is well said," (quod Philobone) "indeed :  
But were ye not assomoned to appere  
By Mercurius, for that is all my drede !"  
"Yes gentill feire," (quod I) "now am I here ;  
Ye yet what tho though that be true my drede !"  
"Of your free will ye should have come unsent ;  
For ye did not, I deme ye will be shent :

"For ye that reigne in youth and lustinesse,  
Pampired with ease, and jalous in your age,  
Your duty is, as ferre as I can gesse,  
To Loves Court to dressen your viage,  
As soone as nature maketh you so sage,  
That ye may know a woman from a swan,  
Or whan your foot is growen halfe a span

"But sith that ye by wilfull negligence'  
This eightene year hath kept your self at large,  
The greater is your trespass and offence,  
And in your neck you mote bere all the charge :  
For better were ye ben withouten barge  
Amidde the sea in tempest and in raine,  
Than biden here, receiving wo and paine

"That ordained is for such as them absent  
Fro Loves Court by yeres long and fele.  
I ley my life ye shall full soone repent,  
For Love will rive your colour, lust, and hele ;  
Eke ye must bait on many an heavy mele ;  
No force ywis : I stirred you long agone  
To draw to court" (quod) little Philobone.

"Ye shall well see how rough and angry face  
The king of love will shew, whan ye him se:  
By mine advise kneel down and ask him grace,  
Eschewing perill and adverseite,  
For well I wote, it wold none other be ;  
Comfort is none, ne counsell to your ease,  
Why will ye than the king of love displese?"

"O mercy God," (quod iche) "I me repent,  
Caitife and wretch in herte, in will, and thought,  
And after this shall be mine hole entent  
To serve and please, how dere that love be bought:  
Yet sith I have mine own pennance ysought,  
With humble sprite shall I it receive,  
Though that the king of love my life berceve.

"And though that fervent loves qualite  
In me did never worch truly, yet I  
With all obeisaunce and humilite,  
And benigne herte shall serve him till I die:  
And he that lord of might is great and hie,  
Right as him list me chastice and correct,  
And punish me with trespace thus infect."

These words said, she caught me by the lap,  
And led me forth in till a temple round,  
Both large and wide : and as my blessed hap  
And good aventure was, right soone I found  
A tabernacle raised from the ground,  
Where Venus sat, and Cupide by her side :  
Yet halfe for drede I can my visage hide ;

Yet eft againe, I looked and beheld,  
Seeing full sundry people in the place,  
And mistere folke, and some that might not weld  
Their limmes wele, me thought a wonder case :  
The temple shone with windows all of glass,  
Bright as the day with many a fair image ;  
And there I see the fresh queen of Cartage,

Dido, that brent her beauty for the love  
Of false Eneas ; and the waimenting  
Of her, Annelida, true as turtle dove  
To Arcite fals ; and there was in peinting  
Of many a prince, and many a doughty king,  
Whose martirdom was shewed about the wals,  
And how that fele for love had suffred fals.

But sore I was abashed and astonied  
Of all tho folke that there were in that tide,  
And than I askeden where they had woned :  
"In divers courts" (quod she) "here beside."  
In sundry clothing mantill wise full wide  
They were arraied, and did their sacrifice  
Unto the god and goddesse in their guise.

"Lo, yonder folke" (quod she) "that kneele in blew,  
They weare the colour aye and ever shall,  
In signe they were and ever will be trew  
Withouten chaunge ; and soothly yonder all  
That ben in black, and mourning cry and call  
Unto the gods, for their loves benc,  
Som sick, som dede, som all to sharp and kene."

"Yea, than" (quod I) "what done these priests here,  
Nonnes and hermites, freres, and all tho,  
That sit in white, in russet, and in grene ?"  
"Forsooth" (quod she) "they wailen of their wo."  
"O mercy lord, may they so come and go  
Freely to court and have such liberty ?"  
"Yea, men of each condition and degre ;

"And women eke : for, truly, there is none  
Exception made, ne never was no may ;  
This court is ope and free for everichouse,  
The king of love he will not say them nay :  
He taketh all in poore or rich array,  
That meekely sewe unto his excellence  
With all their herte and all their reverence."

And walking thus about with Philobone  
I see where come a messengere in his  
Streight from the king, which let command anone,  
Throughout the court to make an ho and cry :  
"All new come folke abide, and wote ye why ?  
The kings lust is for to seene you sone :  
Come nere let see, his will mote need be done."

Than gan I me present tofore the king,  
Trembling for fere with visage pale of hew,  
And many a lover with me was kneeling,  
Abashed sore, till unto the time they knew  
The sentence yeve of his entent full trew :  
And at the last, the king hath me behold  
With sterne visage, and seid, "What doth this oid

"Thus ferre ystope in yeres come so late  
Unto the court !" "Forsooth, my liege," (quod I)  
"An hundred time I have ben at the gate  
Afore this time, yet could I never espie  
Of mine acquaintance any in mine eie,  
And shamefastnesse away me gan to chace ;  
But now I me submit unto your grace."

"Well, all is pardoned, with condition,  
That thou be true from henceforth to thy might,  
And serven Love in thine entention ;  
Sweare this, and than, as ferre as it is right,  
Thou shalt have grace here in thy quenes sight."  
"Yes, by the faith I owe to your croun, I swere,  
Though Death therefore me thirliith with his spere."

And whan the king had seene us everychone,  
He let commaund an officer in hie  
To take our faith, and shew us, one by one,  
The statutes of the court full busily :  
Anon the booke was laid before their eie,  
To rede and see what thing we must observe  
In Loves Court, till that we die and sterve.

AND for that I was lettred, there I red  
The statutes hole of Loves Court and hall :  
The first statute that on the booke was spred,  
Was to be true in thought and deedes all  
Unto the king of love, the lord riall,  
And to the quene, as faithfull and as kind,  
As I could think with herte, will, and mind.

The second statute, secretly to kepe  
Councell of love, not blowing every where  
All that I know, and let it sinke and flete ;  
It may not sowne in every wights ere ;  
Exiling slaunder aye for drede and fere,  
And to my lady which I love and serve,  
Be true and kind her grace for to deserve.

The third statute was clerely writ also,  
Withouten chaunge to live and die the same,  
None other love to take for wele ne wo,  
For blind delite, for earnest, nor for game ;  
Without repent for laughing or for grame,  
To bidden still in full perseverance :  
All this was hole the kings ordinance.

The fourth statute, to purchase ever to here,  
 And stirren folke to love, and beten fire  
 On Venus auter, here about and there,  
 And preach to them of love and hote desire,  
 And tell how love will quiten well their hire :  
 This must be kept, and loth me to displease :  
 If love be wroth, passe : for thereby is ease.

The fifth statute, not to be dangerous,  
 If that a thought would reve me of my slepe ;  
 Nor of a sight to be over squemous ;  
 And so verely this statute was to kepe,  
 To turne and wallow in my bed and wepe,  
 Whan that my lady of her cruelty  
 Would from her herte exilen all pity.

The sixt statute, it was for me to use  
 Alone to wander, void of company,  
 And on my ladies beauty for to muse,  
 And to thinke it no force to live or die  
 And oft againe to thinke the remedie,  
 How to her grace I might anone attaine,  
 And tell my wo unto my souveraine.

The seventh statute, was to be patient,  
 Whether my lady joyfull were or wroth,  
 For words glad or heavy, diligent,  
 Wheder that she me helden lefe or loth :  
 And hereupon I put was to mine oth,  
 Her for to serve, and lowly to obey,  
 In shewing her my chere, ye, twenty sithe aday.

The eighth statute, to my remembraunce,  
 Was to speaken and pray my lady dere,  
 With hourelly labour and great entendaunce,  
 Me for to love with all her herte entere,  
 And me desire, and make me joyfull chere,  
 Right as she is surmounting every faire,  
 Of beauty well and gentle debonaire.

The ninth statute, with letters writ of gold,  
 This was the sentence, how that I, and all,  
 Should ever dread to be to overbold  
 Her to displease ; and truly, so I shall,  
 But ben content for thinge that may fall,  
 And meekely take her chastisement and yerd,  
 And to offend her ever ben aferd.

The tenth statute, was egally to discern  
 Betwene the lady and thine ability,  
 And thinke thy selfe art never like to yerne,  
 By right, her mercy nor her equity,  
 But of her grace and womanly pity ;  
 For though thy selfe be noble in thy strenge,  
 A thousand fold more noble is thy quene,

Thy lives lady and thy souveraine,  
 That hath thine herte all hole in governaunce ;  
 Thou mayst no wise it taken to disdaigne  
 To put thee humbly at her ordinaunce,  
 And give her free the reine of her plessaunce,  
 For liberty is thing that women looke,  
 And truly els the matter is a crooke.

The eleventh statute, thy signs for to know  
 With eye and finger, and with smiles soft,  
 And low to couch, and alway for to show,  
 For drede of spies, for to winken oft,  
 And secretly to bring up a sigh aloft ;  
 But still beware of overmuch resort,  
 For that paraventure spileth all thy sport.

The twelfth statute remember to observe :  
 For all the paine thou hast for love and wo,  
 All is too lite her mercy to deserve,  
 Thou musten think, wherever thou ride or go :  
 And mortall woundes suffer thou also,  
 All for her sake, and thinke it well besette  
 Upon thy love, for it may not be bette.

The thirteenth statute, whilome is to thinke  
 What thing may best thy lady like and please,  
 And in thine hertes bottome let it sinke ;  
 Some thing devise, and take for it thine ease,  
 And send it her, that may her herte appease ;  
 Some herte, or ring, or letter, or device,  
 Or precious stone, but spare not for no price.

The fourteenth statute eke thou shalt assay,  
 Formely to keepe the most part of thy life :  
 Wish that thy lady in thine armes lay,  
 And nightly dreame, thou hast thy nights hertes wife,  
 Sweetly in armes, straining her as blife ;  
 And whan thou seest it is but fantasie,  
 See that thou sing not over merely,

For too much joy hath oft a wofull end :  
 It longeth eke this statute for to hold,  
 To deme thy lady ever more thy friend,  
 And thinke thy selfe in no wise a cokold.  
 In every thing she doth but as she should :  
 Construe the best, beleve no tales new,  
 For many a lye is told, that seemeth full trew.

But thinke that she, so bounteous and faire,  
 Coud not be false ; imagine this algate :  
 And think that tonges wicked would her appaire,  
 Sclandering her name and worshipfull estate,  
 And lovers true to setten at debate :  
 And though thou seest a faut right at thine cyc,  
 Excuse it blive, and glose it pretily.

The fifteenth statute, use to swere and stare,  
 And counterfeit a lesing hardely,  
 To save thy ladies honour every where,  
 And put thy selfe for her to fight boldly :  
 Say she is good, vertuous, and ghostly,  
 Clere of entent, and herte, yea, thought and will,  
 And argue not for reason ne for skill,

Againe thy ladies pleasure ne entent ;  
 For love will not be countrepleited inde :  
 Say as she saith, than shalt thou not be shent,  
 The crow is white, ye truly so I rede :  
 And aye what thing that she thee will forbede,  
 Eschew all that, and give her soveraintee,  
 Her appetite followe in all degree.

The sixteenth statute keepe it if thou may :  
 Seven sithe at night thy lady for to please,  
 And seven at midnight, seven at morrow day,  
 And drinke a caudle earely for thine ease.  
 Do this and keep thine head from all disease,  
 And win the garland here of lovers all,  
 That ever came in court, or ever shall.

Full few, think I, this statute hold and keep :  
 But truly, this my reason giveth me fele,  
 That some lovers should rather fall asleepe,  
 Than take on hand to please so oft and wele.  
 There lay none oth to this statute adele,  
 But keep who might, as gave him his corage ;  
 Now get this garland lusty folke of age :

Now win who may ye lusty folke of youth,  
This garland fresh of floures red and white,  
Purple and blew, and colours fell uncouth,  
And I shall croune him king of all delite.  
In all the court there was not to my sight,  
A lover true, that he ne was adrede  
Whan he expresse hath heard the statute rede.

The seventeenth statute, whan age approacheth on,  
And lust is laid, and all the fire is quaint,  
As freshly than thou shalt begin to fonne  
And dote in love, and all her image paint  
In thy remembrance, till thou begin to faint,  
As in the first season thine herte began :  
And her desire, though thou ne may ne can

Performe thy living actuell and lust,  
Register this in thine remembrance :  
Eke whan thou maist not keep thy thing from rust,  
Yet speake and talke of pleasaunt daliaunce,  
For that shall make thine herte rejoice and daunce ;  
And whan thou maist no more the game assay,  
The statute bid thee pray for them that may.

The eighteenth statute, holy to commend  
To please thy lady, is that thou eschew  
With sluttishnesse thy selfe for to offend ;  
Be jollife, fresh, and fete, with thinges new,  
Courtly with manner, this is all thy due ;  
Gentill of port, and loving cleanness,  
This is the thing, that liketh thy maistresse.

And not to wander liche a dulled asse,  
Ragged and torne, disguised in array,  
Ribaud in speech, or out of measure passe,  
Thy bound exceeding ; thinke on this way ;  
For women been of tender hertes aye,  
And lightly set their pleasure in a place,  
Whan they misthinke, they lightly let it passe.

The nineteenth statute, meat and drinke forgo :  
Ech other day, see that thou fast for love,  
For in the court they live withouten mete,  
Save such as cometh from Venus all above,  
They take none hede, in pain of great reprove,  
Of meat and drinke, for that is all in vaine,  
Only they live by sight of their sovaine.

The twentieth statute, last of everichone,  
Enroll it in thine hertes privitee ;  
To wring and waile, to turne, and sigh and grone,  
Whan that thy lady absent is from thee,  
And eke renew the words all that she  
Between you twain hath said, and all the chere  
That thee hath made, thy lives lady dere.

And see thine herte in quiet, ne in rest  
Sojourne, till time thou seene thy lady eft ;  
But where she wonne, by south, or east, or west,  
With all thy force, now see it be not left ;  
Be diligent, till time thy life be raft,  
In that thou mayest, thy lady for to see :  
This statute was of old antiquitee.

An officer of high authority,  
Cleped Rigour, made us to swere anone :  
He n'as corrupt with partiality,  
Favour, prayer, ne gold that clerely shone ;  
" Ye shall " (quod he) " now sweren here echone,  
Yong and old, to kepe, in that they may,  
The statutes truly, all after this day."

O God, thought I, hard is to make this othe,  
But to my power shall I them observe :  
In all this world n'as matter halfe so lothe,  
To swere for all : for though my body sterve,  
I have no might them hole to observe.  
But herken now the case how it befell,  
After my oth was made, the troth to tell.

I tourned leaves, looking on this booke,  
Where other statutes were of women shene,  
And right forthwith Rigour on me gan looke  
Full angerly, and sayed unto the queene  
I traitour was, and charged me let been ;  
" There may no man " (quod he) " the statute know  
That long to women, hie degree ne low.

" In secret wise they kepten been full close ;  
They soune echone to liberty, my friend,  
Pleasaunt they be, and to their owne purpose ;  
There wote no wight of them, but God and fiend,  
Ne naught shall wite, unto the worlds end.  
The queen hath yeve me charge in pain to die  
Never to rede ne seene them with mine eie.

" For men shall not so nere of counsaile bene  
With womanhood, ne known of her guise,  
Ne what they think, ne of their wit thengine ;  
I me report to Salomon the wise,  
And mighty Sampson, which beguiled thrise  
With Dalida was, he wote that in a throw,  
There may no man statute of women know.

" For it peraventure, may right so befall,  
That they be bound by nature to deceive,  
And spinne, and weep, and sugre strew on gall,  
The herte of man to ravish and to reive,  
And whet their tongue as sharpe as swerde or gleve ;  
It may betide, this is their ordinance,  
So must they lowly doen their observaunce.

" And kepe the statute yeven them of kind,  
Of such as love hath yeve hem in their life.  
Men may not wete why turneth every wind,  
Nor waxen wise, nor been inquisitive  
To know secret of maid, widow, or wife,  
For they their statutes have to them reserved,  
And never man to know them hath deserved.

" Now dresse you forth, the god of love you guide,"  
(Quod Rigour than) " and seek the temple bright  
Of Cithera, goddess here beside,  
Beseech her by influence and might  
Of all her vertue, you to teach aright,  
How for to serve your ladies, and to please  
Ye that been sped, and set your herte in ease.

" And ye that ben unpurveyed, pray her eke  
Comfort you soone with grace and destiny,  
That ye may set your herte there ye may like,  
In such a place, that it to love may be  
Honour and worship, and felicity  
To you for aye, now goeth by one assent."  
" Graunt mercy, sir," (quod we) and forth we went

Devoutly, soft and easie pace, to see  
Venus the goddess image all of gold :  
And there we found a thousand on their knec,  
Some fresh and faire, some deadly to behold,  
In sundry mantils new and some were old ;  
Some painted were with flames red as fire,  
Outward, to show their inward hote desire.

With dolefull chere, ful fell in their complaint,  
Cried "Lady Venus, rew upon our sore !  
Receive our bile, with teares all bedreint !  
We may not weepe, there is no more in store,  
But wo and pain us fretteth more and more :  
Thou blisseful planet, lovers sterre so shene,  
Have routh on us, that sigh and carefull bene !

" And punish, lady, greuously we pray,  
The false untrue with counterfeit pleasaunce,  
That made their oth, be true to live or dey,  
With chere assured, and with countenance ;  
And falsely now they footen loves daunce,  
Barraine of routh, untrue of that they saied,  
Now that their lust and pleasure is alaid."

Yet eft againe, a thousand million  
Rejoycing love, leading their life in blisse,  
They sayd " Venus, redresse of all division,  
Goddesse eternell, thy name yhiere is :  
By loves bond is knit all thing ywis,  
Beast unto beast, the yearth to water wan,  
Bird unto bird, and woman unto man.

" This is the life of joy that we ben in,  
Resembling life of heavenly paradise,  
Love is exiler aye of vice and sinne,  
Love maketh hertes lusty to devise  
Honour and grace, have they in every wise,  
That been to loves law obedient ;  
Love maketh folke benigne and diligent,

" Aye stering them to drede vice and shame :  
In their degree, it maketh them honourable,  
And sweet it is of love to beare the name,  
So that his love be faithfull, true and stable :  
Love pruneth him, to semen amiable,  
Love hath no faute, there it is exercised,  
But sole with them that have all love dispised.

" Honour to thee, celestiall and clere,  
Goddesse of love, and to thy celsitude !  
That yevest us light so fer down from thy spere,  
Piercing our hertes with thy pulcritude ;  
Comparison none of similitude  
May to thy grace be made in no degree,  
That hast us set with love in unities.

" Great cause have we to praise thy name and thee,  
For thorough thee we live in joy and blisse.  
Blessed be thou, most souveraine to see !  
Thy holy court of gladnesse may not misse ;  
A thousand sithe we may rejoice in this,  
That we ben thine with herte and all yfere,  
Enflamed with thy grace and heavenly fere."

Musing of tho that spaken in this wise,  
I me bethought in my remembrance  
Mine orizon right goodly to devise,  
And pleasantly with hertes obeisaunce,  
Beseech the goddesse vouden my grevaunce,  
For I loved eke, saufe that I wist not where,  
Yet downe I set and said as ye shall here.

" Fairest of all that ever were or bee,  
Licour and light to pensive creature,  
Mine hole affiaunce, and my lady free,  
My goddesse bright, my fortune and my ure,  
I yeve and yeeld my herte to thee full sure,  
Humbly beseeching, lady, of thy grace,  
Me to bestow now in some blessed place.

" And here I row me, faithful, true, and kind,  
Without offence of mutabilitie,  
Humbly to serve, while I have wit and mind,  
Mine hole affiaunce, and my lady free,  
In thilke place, there ye me signe to be :  
And sith this thing of new is yeve me aye  
To love and serve, needly must I obey.

" Be merciable with thy fire of grace,  
And fix mine herte there beauty is and routh :  
For hote I love, determine in no place,  
Saufe onely this, by God and by my trouth  
Troubled I was, with slumber, slepe, and slounth  
This other night, and in a visoun  
I see a woman romen up and down,

" Of meane stature, and semely to behold,  
Lustie and fresh, demure of countenance,  
Yong and well shape, with hair shone as gold,  
With eyen as cristall, ferced with pleasaunce,  
And she gan stirre mine herte a lite to daunce :  
But suddainly she vanish gan right there,  
Thus I may say, I love and wote not where.

" For what she is, ne her dwelling I n'ot,  
And yet I fele that love distreinet me ;  
Might iche her know, her would I faine, God wot,  
Serve and obey with all benignitie,  
And, if that other be my destinie,  
So that no wise I shall her never see,  
Than graunt me her that best may liken me.

" With glad rejoyce to live in parfite hele,  
Devoid of wrath, repent or variance :  
And able me to doe that may be wele  
Unto my lady, with hertes hie pleasaunce :  
And mighty goddess through thy purveiaunce  
My wit, my thought, my lust and love so guide,  
That to thine honor I may me provide

" To set mine herte in place there I may like,  
And gladly serve with all affection :  
Great is the paine which at mine herte doth sticke,  
Till I be sped by thine election ;  
Helpe, lady goddesse ! that possession  
I might of her have that in all my life  
I clepen shall my quene, and hertes wife.

" And in the Court of Love to dwell for aye  
My will it is, and done thee sacrifice :  
Daily with Diane eke to fight and fraye,  
And holden werre, as might will me suffice  
That goddesse chaste I kepen in no wise  
To serve ; a figge for all her chastity,  
Her law is for religiosity."

And thus gan finish prayer, laud, and preise,  
Which that I yove to Venus on my knee,  
And in mine herte to ponder and to peise,  
I gave anone her image fresh beautie :  
" Heile to that figure sweet, and heile to thee  
Cupide," (quod I) and rose and yede my wey,  
And in the temple as I yede, I sey

A shrine surmounting all in stones rich,  
Of which the force was pleasaunce to mine ey  
With diamond or saphire, neverliche  
I have none seene, ne wrought so wonderly :  
So whan I met with Philobone in hie,  
I gan demaund, who is this sepulture !  
" Forsooth" (quod she) " a tender creature

"Is shrined there, and Pity is her name ;  
She saw an egle wreke him on a fie,  
And pluck his wing, and eke him in his game,  
And tender herte of that hath made her die :  
Eke she would weep and mourn right pitously  
To seene a lover suffer great distresse ;  
In all the court n'as none, as I do gesse,

"That coud a lover halfe so well availle,  
Ne of his wo the torment or the rage  
Asken, for he was sure withouten faile,  
That of his greef she coud the heat assuage.  
In steed of Pity, speedeth hote courage  
The matters all of court, now she is dead,  
I me report in this to womanhead.

"Forweil, and weep, and cry, and speak, and pray,  
Women would not have pity on thy plaint,  
Ne by that mean, to ease thine herte conway,  
But thee receiven for their owne talent :  
And say that Pity causeth thee in consent  
Of reuth to take thy service and thy paine,  
In that thou maist, to please thy souveraine.

"But this is counsaile, keepe it secretly,"  
(Quod she) "I n'old for all the world about,  
The queene of love it wist, and wite ye why ?  
For if by me this matter springen out,  
In court no lenger should I out of dout  
Dwellen, but shame in all my life endry,  
Now keepe it close" (quod she) "this hardely.

"Well all is well, now shall ye seen" she said,  
"The fairest lady under Sunne that is :  
Come on with me, demean you lich a maid,  
With shamefast drede, for ye shall speak ywis  
With her that is the mirrour joy and blisse :  
But somewhat strange and sad of her demean  
She is ; beware your countenance be seen,

"Nor over light, ne rechelesse, ne too bold,  
Ne malapert, ne renning with your tong,  
For she will you obeisen and behold,  
And you demand why ye were hence so long  
Out of this court, without resort among :  
And Rosiall her name is hote aright,  
Whose herte as yet is yeven to no wight.

"And ye also been, as I understond,  
With love but light advanced, by your word,  
Might ye by hap your freedom maken bond,  
And fall in grace with her, and wele accord,  
Well might ye thank the god of love and lord,  
For she that ye saw in your dreame appere,  
To love such one, what are ye than the nere ?

"Yet wote ye what, as my remembraunce  
Me yeveth now, ye faine where that ye say,  
That ye with love had never acquaintaunce,  
Save in your dream right late this other day :  
Why yes parde, my life that durst I lay,  
That ye were caught upon an heath, whan I  
Saw you complain, and sigh full pitously.

"Within an herber, and a gardein faire  
Where flowers grow and herbes vertuous,  
Of which the savour swete was and the aire,  
There were your self full hote and amorous :  
Ywis ye been too nice and daungerous,  
I would ye now repent, and love some new."  
"Nay by my trouth" I said "I never knew

"The goodly wight, whose I shall be for aye :  
Guide me the lord, that love hath made and me."  
But forth we went into a chamber gay,  
There was Rosiall, womanly to see,  
Whose streames sotell piercing of her eye,  
Mine herte gan thrill for beauty in the stound,  
"Alas," (quod I) "who hath me yeve this wound ?"

And than I drede to speake, till at the last  
I grete the lady reverently and wele,  
Whan that my sigh was gone and overpast ;  
Than doun on knees ful humbly gan I knele,  
Beseeching her my fervent wo to kele,  
For there I tooke full purpose in my mind  
Unto her grace my painfull herte to bind.

For if I shall all fully her discrive,  
Her head was round, by compasse of nature,  
Here haire as gold, she passer I all on live,  
And lilly forehed had this creature,  
With liveliche browes, flaw of colour pure,  
Betwene the which was meane disceverance  
From every brow, to shew a due distaunce.

Her nose directed streight, and even as line,  
With forme and shape thereto convenient,  
In which the goddes milk white path doth shine,  
And eke her eyen ben bright and orient,  
As is the smaragde, unto my judgement,  
Or yet these sterres Heavenly small and bright,  
Her visage is of lovely rede and white.

Her mouth is short, and shit in little space,  
Flaming some deale, not over redde I mean,  
With pregnant lips, and thicke to kisse percase,  
For lippes thinne not fat, but ever lene,  
They serve of naught, they be not worth a bean,  
For if the basse been full there is delite,  
Maximian truly thus doth he write.

But to my purpose, I say white as snow  
Been all her teeth, and in order they stond  
Of one stature, and eke her breath I trow  
Surmounteth all odours that ever I found  
In sweetnesse, and her body, face, and hond  
Been sharpely slender, so that from the head  
Unto the foot, all is but womanhead.

I hold my peace, of other thinges hidde  
Here shall my soule and not my tong bewray,  
But how she was arraied, if ye me bidde,  
That shall I well discover you and say ;  
A bend of gold and silke, full fresh and gay,  
With her intrasse, broudered full wele,  
Right smoothly kept and shining everydele.

About her necke a flower of fresh devise,  
With rubies set, that lusty were to sene,  
And she in gown was light and sunmer wise,  
Shapen full wele, the colour was of grene,  
With aureat sent about her sides clene,  
With divers stones precious and rich,  
Thus was she rayed, yet saw I never her lich.

For if that Jove had but this lady seine,  
Tho Calixto ne yet Alcmeneia  
They never hadden in his armes leine,  
Ne he had loved the faire Europa,  
Ye, ne yet Dane ne Antiopa,  
For all their beauty stood in Rosiall,  
She seemed lich a thing celestiall.

In bountie, favour, port, and seemelnesse,  
Pleasant of figure, mirrour of delite,  
Gracious to seene, and root of all gentilnesse,  
With angell visage, lusty redde and white :  
There was not lack, saufe daunger had alite  
This goodly fresh in rule and governaunce,  
And somdele strange she was for her pleasaunce.

And truly sone I took my leave and went,  
Whan she had me enquired what I was,  
For more and more impressen gan the dent  
Of Loves dart while I beheld her face,  
And eft againe I come to seeken grace,  
And up I put my bill with sentence clere,  
That followeth after, rede and ye shall here.

"O ye fresh, of beauty the root,  
That nature hath formed so wele and made  
Princes and quene, and ye that may do boot  
Of all my languor with your words glad,  
Ye wounded me, ye made me wo bestad ;  
Of grace redresse my mortall greefe, as ye  
Of all my harme the very causer be.

"Now am I caught, and unware suddainly  
With persuant streames of your eye so clere,  
Subject to been and serven you mekely,  
And all your man, ywis my lady dere,  
Abiding grace, of which I you requere,  
That mercilesse ye cause me not to sterve,  
But guerdon me liche as I may deserve.

"For by my troth, all the days of my breath  
I am and will be your in will and herte,  
Patient and meeke, for you to suffer death  
If it require, now rue upon my smart,  
And this I swere, I never shall out start  
From Loves Court for none adversitie,  
So ye would rue on my distresse and me.

"My desteny, my fate, and houre I blisse  
That have me set to been obedient  
Onely to you, the floure of all ywis ;  
I trust to Venus never to repent,  
For ever redy, glad and diligent  
Ye shall me find in service to your grace,  
Till death my life out of my body race.

"Humble unto your excellence so digne,  
Enforcing aye my wits and delite  
To serve and please with glad herte and benigne,  
And been as Troylus Troyes knight,  
Or Antonie for Cleopatre bright,  
And never you me thinkes to reney,  
This shall I keepe unto mine ending day.

"Enprint my speech in your memoriall  
Sadly my princes, salve of all my sore,  
And think, that for I would becomen thrall,  
And been your owne, as I have sayd before,  
Ye must of pity cherish more and more  
Your man, and tender after his desert,  
And give him courage for to been expert.

"For where that one hath set his herte on fire,  
And findeth neither refute ne pleasaunce,  
Ne word of comfort, death will quite his hire,  
Atas, that there is none alleageaunce  
Of all their wo, alas, the great grevaunce  
To love unloved, but ye, my lady dere,  
In other wise may governe this matere."

"Truly gramercy friend of your good will,  
And of your profer in your humble wise,  
But for your service, take and keep it still,  
And where ye say, I ought you well to cherise,  
And of your greefe the remedy devise,  
I know not why : I n'am acquainted well  
With you, ne wot not sothly where ye dwell."

"In art of love I write, and songes make,  
That may be song in honour of the king  
And quene of love, and than I undertake,  
He that is sadde shall than full merry sing,  
And daungerous not ben in every thing ;  
Beseech I you but seene my will and rede,  
And let your answers put me out of drede."

"What is your name ? rehearse it here I pray,  
Of whence and where, of what condition  
That ye been of ; let see, come off and say ;  
Faine would I know your disposition ;  
Ye have put on your old entencion,  
But what ye mean to serve me I ne wote,  
Saufe that ye say ye love me wonder hote."

"My name, alas my herte, why makes thou straunge ?  
Philogenet I calld am fer and nere,  
Of Cambridge clerk, that never think to chaunge  
Fro you that with your heavenly stremes clere  
Ravish mine herte and ghost, and all inferre,  
Since at the first I write my bill for grace,  
Me thinke I see some mercy in your face.

"And what I mene, by gods that all hath wrought,  
My bill now maketh final mention,  
That ye been lady in my inward thought  
Of all mine herte withouten offencion,  
That I best love, and sith I begon  
To draw to court, lo, than what might I say,  
I yeeld me here unto your nobley.

"And if that I offend, or wilfully  
By pomp of herte your precept disobay,  
Or done again your will unskillfully,  
Or greven you for earnest or for play,  
Correct ye me right sharply than I pray,  
As it is seene unto your womanhede,  
And rew on me, or els I n'am but dede."

"Nay, God forbede to feffe you so with grace,  
And for a word of sugred eloquence,  
To have compassion in so little space,  
Than were it time that some of us were hens,  
Ye shall not find in me such insolence :  
Eye what is this, may ye not suffre sight ?  
How may ye looke upon the candle light,

"That clerer is and hotter than mine cie ?  
And yet ye sayd the beames perse and frete,  
How shall ye than the candle light endrie ?  
For well wote ye, that hath the sharper hete ;  
And there ye bid me you correct and bete,  
If ye offend, nay, that may not be done,  
There come but few that speden here so sone.

"Withdraw your cie, withdraw from presens eke :  
Hurt not your selfe, through foly with a look,  
I would be sorry so to make you sieke,  
A woman should beware eke whom she took :  
Ye beth a clerke, go serchen well my book,  
If any women ben so light to winne ;  
Nay, bide a while ; tho ye were all my kinne,

"So sone ye may not win mine herte in truth ;  
The guise of court will seen your steadfastnesse,  
And as you done to have upon you reuth,  
Your owne desert, and lowly gentillesse,  
That will reward you joy for heavinesse ;  
And tho ye waxen pale, and grene, and dede,  
Ye must it use a while withouten drede,

"And it accept and grutchen in no wise ;  
But where as ye me heartely desire  
To lene to love, me thinke ye be not wise ;  
Cease of your language, cease I you require,  
For he that hath this twenty years ben here  
May not obtaine, than marvaile I that ye  
Be now so bold of love to treat with me."

"Ah mercy herte, my lady and my love !  
My rightwise princesse and my lives guide !  
Now may I plaine to Venus all above,  
That ruthlesse ye me gave this wound so wide ;  
What have I done ! why may it not betide,  
That for my trowth I may received be !  
Alas than, your daunger and your cruelte !

"In wofull houre I got was welaway,  
In wofull houre fostred and yfedde,  
In wofull houre yborne, that I ne may ;  
My supplication sweetly have I spedde,  
The frosty grave and cold must be my bedde,  
Without ye list your grace and mercy shewe,  
Death with his axe so fast on me doth hewe.

"So great disease and in so littell while,  
So littell joy that felte I never yet,  
And at my wo Fortune ginneth to smile,  
That never earst I felt so hard a fit :  
Confounden ben my spirites and my wit,  
Till that my lady take me to her cure,  
Which I love best of erthly creature.

"But that I like, that may I not come by,  
Of that I plain, that have I habondaunce,  
Sorrow and thought they sit me wonder nie,  
Me is withhold that might be my pleasure :  
Yet turne againe my worldly suffisaunce,  
O lady bright, and saufe your faithfull true,  
And, or I die, yet ones upon me rewe !"

With that I fell in sound and dede as stone,  
With colour slaine and wanne as ashe pale,  
And by the hand she caught me up anon,  
"Arise," (quod she) "what have ye dronken dwale !  
Why slepen ye ! it is no nightertale :"  
"Now mercy sweete," (quod I) "ywis affraied :"  
"What thing" (quod she) "hath made you so  
dismaid !

"Now wote I well that ye a lover be,  
Your hew is witness in this thing," she said :  
"If ye were secret, ye might know," (quod she)  
"Curteis and kind, all this shuld be alaid :  
And now mine herte, al that I have missaid,  
I shall amend and set your herte in ease."  
"That word it is," (quod I) "that doth me please."

"But this I charge, that ye the stents keepe,  
And breke them not for slouth nor ignorance."  
With that she gan to smile and laughen depe,  
"Ywis," (quod I) "I will do your pleasure :  
The sixteenth statute doth me great grevaunce,  
But ye must that release or modifie."  
"I graunt," (quod she) "and so I will truly."

And softly than her colour gan appere,  
As rose so red throughout her visage all,  
Wherefore me thinke it is according here,  
That she of right be cleped Rosiall :  
Thus have I won with wordes great and small  
Some goodly worde of her, that I love best,  
And trust she shall yet sette mine herte in rest.

"Goth on," she said to Philobone, "and take  
This man with you, and lede him all about  
Within the court, and shewe him for my sake  
What lovers dwell within, and all the rout  
Of officers him shew, for he is out of doubt  
A stranger yet :"—"Come on," (quod Philobone)  
"Philogeuet, with me now must ye gon."

And stalkyng soft with easie pace, I saw,  
About the kyng stonden all environ,  
Attendaunce, Diligence, and their felow  
Fortherer, Asperaunce, and many one,  
Dred to offend, there stood, and not alone,  
For there was eke the cruell adversair,  
The lovers foe that cleped is Dispair.

Which unto me spake angrely and fell,  
And said, "My lady me disceive ne shall :  
Trowest thou," (quod she) "that all that she did tell,  
Is true ! nay, nay, but under hony gall,  
Thy birth and hers they be nothing egall :  
Cast of thine herte for all her words white,  
For in good faith she loveth thee but a lite.

"And eke remembre thine habilite  
May not compare with her, this well thou wot :"  
Ye then came Hope and said, "My frend, let be,  
Beleve him not ; Dispaire he ginneth dote :"  
"Alas," (quod I) "here is both cold and hote,  
The one me biddeth love, the toder nay ;  
Thus wote I not what me is best to say.

"But well wote I, my lady graunted me  
Truly to be my woundes remedie,  
Her gentillesse may not infected be  
With doublenesse, thus trust I till I die."  
So cast I to voide Dispaire company,  
And taken Hope to counceel and to friend.  
"Yea, keep that well," (quod Philobone) "in mind."

And there beside within a bay window,  
Stod one in grene ful large of brede and length,  
His beard as black as fethers of the crow,  
His name was Lust, of wonder might and strength,  
And with Delite to argue there he think'th,  
For this was all his opinion,  
That love was sinne : and so he hath begon

To reason fast, and ledge auctoritie :  
"Nay," (quod Delite) "love is a vertue clere,  
And from the soule his progresse holdeth he :  
Blind appetite of lust doth often stere,  
And that is sinne : for reason lacketh there,  
For thou dost think thy neighbours wife to win :  
Yet thinke it well that love may not be sinne.

"For God and seint they love right verely,  
Void of all sinne and vice this know I well,  
Affection of flesh is sin truly,  
But verray love is vertue as I fele,  
For love may thy freill desiro ackele



For verray love is love, withouten sinne :  
 " Now stint," (quod Lust) " thou spekest not worth  
 a pinne."

And there I left them in their arguing,  
 Roving farther in the castell wide,  
 And in a corner Lier stode talking,  
 Of lesings fast, with Flattery there beside,  
 He said that woman were attire of pride,  
 And men were found of nature variaunt,  
 And could be false and shewen bea semblaunt.

Than Flattery bespake and said, " Y wis  
 See so she goth on patens faire and fete,  
 It doth right well : what prety man is this  
 That rometh here ! now truly drink ne mete  
 Nede I not have, mine herte for joy doth bete  
 Him to behold, so is he goodly freshe :  
 It semeth for love his herte is tender and neahe."

This is the court of lusty folke and glad,  
 And well becommeth their abite and array,  
 O why be some so sory and so sad,  
 Complaining thus in blacke and white and gray !  
 Freres they ben, and monkes in good fay :  
 Alas, for routh great dole it is to seene,  
 To see them thus bewaile and sory been.

See how they cry and wring their handes white,  
 For they so sone went to religion,  
 And eke the nonnes with vayle and wimple plight,  
 Their thought is, they ben in confusion :  
 " Alas," they sain, " we fain perfection  
 In clothes wide, and lacke our libertie,  
 But all the sinne mote on our frends be.

" For Venus wote, we wold as faine as ye,  
 That bene attired here and welbesene,  
 Desiren man and love in our degre,  
 Ferm and faithful right as wold the quene :  
 Our frends wicke in tender youth and grene,  
 Ayenst our will made us religious,  
 That is the cause we mourn and wailen thus."

Than said the monk and freres in the tide,  
 " Wel may we curse our abbes and our place,  
 Our statutes sharpe to sing in copes wide,  
 Chastely to keepe us out of loves grace,  
 And never to fele comfort ne solace :  
 Yet suffre we the heate of loves fire,  
 And after that some other haply we desire.

" O Fortune cursed, why now and wherefore  
 Hast thou," they said, " berafte us libertie,  
 Sith nature yave us instrument in store,  
 And appetite to love and lovers be !  
 Why mote we suffer such adversite,  
 Diane to serve, and Venus to refuse !  
 Ful often sithe this matters doth us muse.

" We serve and honour sore ayenst our will,  
 Of chastite the goddess and the quene,  
 Us leefe were with Venus biden still,  
 And have reward for love and soget bene  
 Unto these women courtly, fresh, and shene ;  
 Fortune we curse thy wheele of variance,  
 There we were well thou revest our plesance."

Thus leave I them with voice of plaint and care,  
 In raging wo crying full pitously,  
 And as I yede full naked and full bare,  
 Some I behold looking dispitously,

On poverty that dedly cast their eye,  
 And " Welaway," they cried, and were not faine,  
 For they ne might their glad desire attaine.

For lacke of richesse worldly and good,  
 They banne and curse, and weep, and sain, " Alas,  
 That poverty hath us hent that whilom stode  
 At hertes ease, and free and in good case,  
 But now we dare not shew our self in place,  
 Ne us embold to dwell in company,  
 There as our herte wold love right faithfully."

And yet againward shrieked every nonne,  
 The pange of love so straineth them to crie :  
 " Now wo the time," (quod they) " that we be boun  
 This hatefull ordre nise will done us die,  
 We sighe and sobbe, and bleden inwardly,  
 Freting ourself with thought and hard complaint,  
 That nie for love we waxen wood and faint."

And as I stode beholding here and there,  
 I was ware of a sort full languishing,  
 Savage and wild of loking and of chere,  
 Their mantelles and their clothes ay toring,  
 And oft they were of nature complaining,  
 For they their members lacked, foot and hand,  
 With visage wry, and blind I understand.

They lacked shape and beauty to preferre  
 Themself in love : and said that God and kind,  
 Hath forged them to worshippen the sterre,  
 Venus the bright, and leffen all behind  
 His other werkes clene and out of mind :  
 " For other have their full shape and beauty,  
 And we" (quod they) " been in deformity."

And nie to them there was a company  
 That have the susters warried and missaide,  
 I meane the three of fatal destiny,  
 That be our workers : sodenly abraide  
 Out gan they cry as they had been affraide,  
 " We curse," (quod they) " that ever hath nature,  
 Yformed us this wofull life to endure."

And there eke was Contrite and gan repent,  
 Confessing hole the wound that Cithere  
 Hath with the darte of hote desire him sent,  
 And how that he to love must subject be ;  
 Than held he all his skornes vanity,  
 And said that lovers held a blisful life,  
 Yong men and old, and widow, maid and wife.

" Bereve me goddesse," (quod he) " of thy might  
 My skornes all and skoffes, that I have  
 No power for to moken any wight,  
 That in thy service dwell : for I did rave :  
 This know I well right now so god me save,  
 And I shal be the chief post of thy faith,  
 And love uphold, the revers who so saith."

Dissemble stode not ferre from him in troth,  
 With party mantil party hode and hose,  
 And said he had upon his lady routh,  
 And thus he wound him in, and gan to glouse  
 Of his entent ful double I suppose,  
 In all the world he said he loved her wele,  
 But ay me thought he loved her nere a dele.

Eke Shamfastnesse was there as I troke hede,  
 That blushed rede, and durst nat ben aknow  
 She lover was, for thereof had she drede ;  
 She stode and hing her visage downe alow,

But such a sight it was to seene I trow,  
As of these roses rody on their stalke,  
There could no wight her spy to speak or talk.

In loves art so gan she to abashe,  
Ne durst not utter al her previty :  
Many a stripe and many a grevous lashe  
She gaven to them that wolden lovers be,  
And hindered sore the simple comonalty,  
That in no wise durst grace and mercy crave,  
For were not she they need but ask and have,

Where if they now aprochen for to speke,  
Than Shamefastnesse returneth them again :  
They thinke, if we our secrets counsel breke,  
Our ladies wil have scorn on us certain,  
And peradventure thinken great disdain :  
Thus Shamefastnesse may bringen in Dispeire,  
Whan she is dede the toder will be heire.

Come forth a Vaunter, now I ring thy bel,  
I spied him sone, to God I make a vowe,  
He loked blacke as fendes doth in Hell,  
"The first," (quod he) "that ever I did wowe,  
Within a worde she come, I wotte not how,  
So that in armes was my lady free,  
And so hath ben a thousand mo than she.

"In England, Dritain, Spain, and Picardy,  
Artois, and Fraunce, and up in hie Holand,  
In Burgoine, Naples, and Italy,  
Naverne, and Grece, and up in hethen lond  
Was never woman yet that wold withstond,  
To ben at [my] commaundement whan I wold,  
I lacked neither silver, coigne, ne gold.

"And there I met with this estate and that,  
And her I broched, her, and her I trow :  
Lo, there goeth one of mine, and wotte ye what !  
Yon fresh attired have I laid full low,  
And such one yonder eke right well I know :  
I kept the statute whan we lay yfere,  
And yet yon same hath made me right good chere."

Thus hath a Vaunter blownen every where,  
Al that he knoweth, and more a thousand fold ;  
His auncestry of kinne was to Liere,  
For first he maketh promise for to hold  
His ladies counceyl, and it not unfold,  
Wherefore the secret whan he doth unshutte,  
Than lieth he, that all the world may witte.

For falsing so his promise and beheest,  
I wonder sore he hath such fantasie,  
He lacketh wit I trow or is a beast,  
That can no bet himself with reason gie,  
By mine advise love shall be contrary  
To his availle, and him eke dishonour,  
So that in court he shall no more sojour.

"Take heed," (quod she) this little Philobone,  
"Where Envy rocketh in the corner yond,  
And sitteth dirke, and ye shall see anone  
His leane body fading both face and hond,  
Himselfe he fretteth as I understond,  
Witnessse of Ovid methamorphosoe,  
The lovers fo he is, I will not glose.

"For where a lover thinketh him promote  
Envy will grutch, repining at his wele,  
It swelleth sore about his hertes rote,  
That in no wise he cannot live in hele,

And if the faithful to his lady stele,  
Envy will noise and ring it round about,  
And sey much worse than done is out of dout."

And Privy Thought rejoycing of himselfe,  
Stood not ferre thence in abite marvellous,  
"Yon is," (thought I) "some spirit or some elfe,  
His subtiltill image is so curious :  
How is," (quod I) "that he is shaded thus  
With yonder cloth, I n'ot of what colour !"  
And nere I went and gan to lere and pore ;

And framed him a question full hard,  
"What is," (quod I) "the thing thou lovest best,  
Or what is bote unto thy paines hard !  
Me thinke thou livest here in great unrest,  
Thou wandrest aye from south to east and west,  
And east to north as ferre as I can see,  
There is no place in court may holden thee.

"Whom followest thou, where is thy herte yet !  
But my demaund asoile I thee require."  
"Me thought," (quod he) "no creature may let  
Me to ben here, and where as I desire :  
For where as absence hath done out the fire,  
My mery thought it kindeleth yet againe,  
That bodely me thinke with my soveraine

"I stand and speake, and laugh, and kisse, and halse,  
So that my thought comforteth me ful oft :  
I think god wote, though al the world be false,  
I will be true, I thinke also how soft  
My lady is in spech, and this on loft  
Bringeth min herte with joy and great gladnes,  
This privy thought alayeth mine heavines.

"And what I thinke or where to be, no man  
In all this Earth can tell ywis but I ;  
And eke there n'is no swallow swift, ne swan  
So wight of wing, ne half so yerne can fle ;  
For I can bene and that right sodenly,  
In Heven, in Hell, in Paradisc, and here,  
And with my lady whan I will desire.

"I am of counsell ferre and wide I wote,  
With lorde and lady, and their privite  
I wotte it all, and be it colde or hote,  
They shall not speake without licence of me,  
I mine in soch as seasonable be,  
For first the thing is thought within the hart,  
Ere any word out from the mouth astart."

And with the word Thought bad farewell and yedes:  
Eke forth went I to seene the courts guise,  
And at the doore came in, so God me spede,  
Twenty courteours of age and of assise  
Liche high, and brode, and as I me advise,  
The Golden Love, and Leden Love they hight,  
The tone was sad, the toder glad and light.

"Yes draw your herte with all your force and might,  
To lustinesse and ben as ye have seid,  
And thinke that I no drope of favour hight,  
Ne never had unto your desire obeid,  
Till sodenly me thought me was affraied,  
To seene you waxe so dede of countenance,  
And Pite bade me done you some pleasance.

"Out of her shrine she rose from death to live,  
And in mine eare full prively she spake,  
'Doth not your servaunt hens away to drive,  
Rosial,' (quod she) and than mine herte it brake,

For tenderiche : and where I found moche lacke,  
In your person, than I my selfe bethought,  
Andsaide, this is the man mine hearte hath sought."

"Gramercy Pity, might I but suffice,  
To yeve due laude unto thy shrine of gold,  
God wotte I would : for sith that thou did rise  
From death to live for me, I am behold  
To thanken you a thousand times told,  
And eke my lady Rosial the shene,  
Which hath in comfort set mine herte ywene.

"And here I make mine protestacion,  
And depely swere as mine power to bene  
Faithful, devoide of variacion,  
And her forbear in anger or in tene,  
And serviceable to my worldes queene,  
With al my reason and intelligence,  
To done her honour high and reverence."

I had not spoke so sone the worde, but she,  
My sovaine, did thanke me hertely,  
And said, "Abide, ye shall dwell still with me,  
Till season come of May, for than truly,  
The king of love and all his company,  
Shall hold his feste full rially and well,"  
And there I bode till that the season fell.

On May day when the larke began to rise,  
To matens went the lusty nightingale,  
Within a temple shapen hauthorn wise,  
He might not slepe in all the nightertale,  
But "*Domine labi*," gan he cry and gale,  
"My lippes open lord of love I cry,  
And let my mouth thy preising now bewry."

The egle sang "*Venite* bodies all,  
And let us joy to love that is our health,"  
And to the deske anon they gan to fall,  
And who came late he preessed in by stealth :  
Than sayd the faucon our own hertes wealth,  
"*Domine Dominus noster* I wote,  
Ye be the God that done us brenne thus hote."

"*Celi enarrant*," said the popingay,  
"Your might is told in Heaven and firmanent,"  
And than came in the gold-finch freshe and gay,  
And said this psalme with hertily glad intent  
"*Domini est terra*," this laten intent,  
The God of love hath yerth in governaunce :  
And than the wren gan skippen and to daunce.

"*Jube Domino* O lord of love, I pray  
Commaund me well this lesson for to rede,  
This legende is of all that wouldey dey  
Martires for love, God yet the souls spede :  
And to thee Venus sing we out of drede,  
By influence of all thy vertue great,  
Besechyng thee to keepe us in our heat."

The second lesson robin redebrest sang,  
"Haile to the god and goddess of our lay,"  
And to the lectorne amorously he sprong,  
"Haile now," (quod eke) "O fresh season of May,  
Our moneth glad that singen on the spray,

Haile to the floures, rede, and white, and blew,  
Which by their vertue maketh our lust new."

The third lesson the turtill dove toke up,  
And thereat lough the mavis in a scorne,  
He said, "O God, as mote I dine or suppe,  
This folish dove will give us al an horne,  
There ben right here a thousand better borne,  
To rede this lesson, which as well as he,  
And eke as hote, can love in all degree."

The turtill dove said, "Welcom, welcom May,  
Gladsom and light to lovers that ben trew :  
I thanke thee lord of love that doth purvey,  
For me to rede this lesson al of dewe,  
For in good soth of corage I pursue,  
To serve my make till death us must depart,"  
And than "*Tu autem*" sang he all apart.

"*Te deum amoris*" sang the throstel cocke ;  
Tuball himselfe the first musician,  
With key of armony coude not onlocke,  
So swete tewne as that the throstel can :  
"The lorde of love we praysen," (quod he) than,  
And so done al the foules great and lite,  
"Honour we May, in fals lovers dispite."

"*Dominus regnavit*," said the peacocke there,  
"The lord of love that mighty prince ywis,  
He is received here and every where :  
Now *Jubilate* sing :—"What meaneth this?"  
Said than the linet ; "welcome lord of blisse :"  
Out sterte the owle with "*Benedicite*,"  
"What meaneth all this mery fare?" (quod he.)

"*Laudate*," sang the larke with voice ful shril,  
And eke the kight "*O admirabile*,  
This quere wil thorow mine ears pers and thril,  
But what, welcome this May season," (quod he)  
"And honour to the lord of love mote be,  
That hath this feste so solempne and so hie,"  
"*Amen*," said al, and so said eke the pie.

And forth the cockow gan procede anon,  
With "*Benedictus*" thanking God in hast,  
That in this May would visite them echon,  
And gladden them all while the feast shal last,  
And therewithal a laughter out he brast,  
"I thanke it God that I should end the song,  
And all the service which hath ben so long."

Thus sang they all the service of the feste,  
And that was done right erly to my dome,  
And forth goth all the court both most and leste,  
To fetch the floures fresh, and braunch and blome,  
And namely hauthorn brought both page and grome  
With fresh garlants party blew and white,  
And than rejoysen in their great delite.

Eke ech at other threw the floures bright,  
The primerose, the violete, and the gold,  
So than as I beheld the royall sight,  
My lady gan me sodenly behold,  
And with a trewe love plited many a fold,  
She smote me through the very heart as blive,  
And Venus yet I thanke I am alive.

EXPLICIT.

## THE COMPLAINT OF PITIE.

### HOW PITIE IS DEAD AND BURIED IN A GENTLE HERTE

v. 1—98

PITIE that I have sought so yore agon  
With herte sore, and full of besie paine,  
That in this worlde was never wight so wo  
Without deathe, and if I shall not faine,  
My purpose was to Pitie to complaine  
Upon the cruelty and tyranny  
Of Love, that for my trowth doth me dye.

And that I by length of certaine yeares  
Had ever in one sought a time to speke,  
To Pitie ran I, all bespreint with teares,  
To prayen her on Cruelty me awreke ;  
But or I might with any word out breake,  
Or tell her any of my paines smerte,  
I found her dead and buried in an herte.

Adowne I fell, whan I saw the herse,  
Dead as a stone, while that swoone me last,  
But up I rose with colour full diverse,  
And pitously on her mine eyen I cast,  
And nearer the corse I gan preasen fast,  
And for the soule I shope me for to pray,  
I was but lorne, there was no more to say.

Thus am I slaine, sith that Pitie is dead,  
Alas, the day that ever it should fall !  
What maner man dare now hold up his head !  
To whom shall now any sorrowful herte call !  
Now Cruelty hath cast to slee us all  
In idle hope, folke rechelesse of paine,  
Sith she is dead, to whom shall we complaine !

But yet encreaseth me this wonder new,  
That no wight wote that she is dead but I,  
So many men as in her time her knew,  
And yet she deyde so suddainly,  
For I have sought her ever full busily,  
Sith I had first wit or mind,  
But she was dead, ere I could her find.

About her herse there stooden lustily  
Withouten any mo, as thoughte me,  
Bounty, perfittely well armed and richely,  
And fresh Beaute, Lust, and Jolite,  
Assured-manner, Youth, and Honeste,  
Wisdomme, Estate, Drede, and Governauce,  
Confedred both by bond and alliance.

A complaint had I written in my honde,  
To have put to Pitie, as a bill,  
But I there all this company fonde,  
That rather would all my cause spill,  
Than do me helpe : I hold my plaint still  
For to those folke withouten faile,  
Without Pitie there may no bill avail

Than leave all vertues, save only Pitie,  
Keping the corse, as ye have heard me saine,  
Confedred by honde until Crueltie,  
And be assented whan I shall be slaine ;  
And I have put my complaints up againe,  
For to my foes my bill I dare not shewe  
The effect, which saith thus in wordes fewe.

"Humblest of herte, highest of reverence,  
Benigne floure, croune of vertues all,  
Sheweth unto your royall excellence  
Your servaunt, if I durst me so call,  
His mortall harme in which he is yfall,  
And nought all only for his wofull fare,  
But for your renome, as he shall declare.

"It standeth thus, that contraire Crueltie  
Allied is ayenst your regaltie  
Under colour of womanly beautie,  
(For men should not know her tyrannie)  
With Bountie, Gentillesse, and Courtesie,  
And hath deprived you of your place,  
That is hie beautie, appertenaunt to your grace

"For Kindly, by your heritage right  
Ye be annexed ever unto Bountie,  
And verely ye ought to doe your might  
To helpe Trowth in his adversitie :  
Ye be also the croune of beautie,  
And certes, if ye want in these twaine  
The world is lore, there is no more to saine.

"Eke what availeth manner and gentillesse  
Without you, benigne creature !  
Shall Crueltie be your governerease !  
Alas, what herte may it long endure !  
Wherefore, but ye rather take cure  
To breake that perilous alliance,  
Ye sleen hem that been in your obeysaunce.

"And further, if ye suffer this,  
Your renome is fordo in a throw,  
There shall no man wete what pitie is,  
Alas, that ever your renome is fall so low !  
Ye be also fro your heritage ythrow ;  
But Crueltie, that occupieth your place,  
And we dispaired that seeken your grace.

"Have mercy on me, thou Herenus, queene,  
That you have sought so tenderly and sore ;  
Let some streame of light on me be seene.  
That love and drede you ever lenger the more ;  
For soothly to saine, I beare so sore,  
And though I be not conning for to plaine,  
For Goddes love have mercy on my paine !

" My paine is this, that nought so I desire,  
That have I not, ne nothing like thereto  
And ever setteth Desire mine herte on fire,  
Eke on that other side where that I go,  
What maner thing that may encrease my wo,  
That have I ready unsought every where,  
Me lacketh but my death, and then my bere.

" What nedeth to shew parcell of my paine !  
Sith every wo, that herte may bethinke,  
I suffer, and yet I dare not to you plaine,  
For well I wote, though I wake or winke,

Ye recke not whether I flete or sinke ;  
And nathelesse yet my trowth I shall susteine  
Unto my death, and that shall well be sene.

" This is to saine, I will be yours ever,  
Though ye me slee by Crueltie your fo,  
Algate my spirit shall never discever  
Fro your service, fro any paine or wo.  
Sith ye be yet dead, alas, that it is so !  
Thus for your death I maye wepe and plaine  
With herte sore, and full of busie paine."

EXPLICIT.

## OF QUEEN ANNELIDA AND FALSE ARCITE.

v. 1—83

" O thou fiers God of armes, Mars the rede,  
That in thy frosty cuntry called Thrace,  
Within thy grisly temples full of drede,  
Honoured art as patrone of that place,  
With thee Bellona, Pallas full of grace,  
Be present, and my song continue and gie !  
At my beginning thus to thee I crie.

" For it full depe is sonken in my minde  
With pitous herte, in English to endite  
This old story, in Latine which I finde,  
Of queene Annelida and false Arcite,  
That elde, which all can frete and bite,  
(And it hath fretten many a noble story,)  
Hath nigh devoured out of our memory.

" Be favourable eke thou Polimnia,  
On Pernaso that hath thy sisters glade,  
By Elicon, not far from Cirsea,  
Singest with voice memorial in the shade,  
Under the laurer, which that may not fade,  
And do that I my ship to haven winne !  
First follow I Stace, and after him Corinne."

*Jamque domos patrias Cithia post aspera gentis,  
Praha laurigeo subeuntem Thesea curru,  
Latifici plausus missusque ad sidera vulgi, &c.*

Whan Theseus with warres long and great,  
The aspre folke of Cithie had overcome,  
The laurer crowned in his chaire gold beat,  
Home to his country houses is ycome,  
For which the people blisful all and some,  
So criden, that to the sterres it went,  
And him to honouren did all hir entent.

Before this duke in sign of victory,  
The trompes come, and in his bauer large,  
The image of Mars, and in token of glory,  
Men might see of treasure many a charge,  
Many a bright helm, and many a spere and targe,  
Many a fresh knight, and many a blisful rout,  
On horse and on foot, in all the field about.

Ipolita his wife, the hardy queene  
Of Cithia, that he conquered had,  
With Emily her young suster shene,  
Faire in a chaire of gold he with him lad,

That all the ground about her chair she sprad  
With brightness of beauty in her face,  
Fulfilled of largesse and of grace.

With his triumph and laurer crowned thus,  
In all the floure of fortunes yeving,  
Let I this noble prince Theseus *giving*  
Toward Athenes in his way riding,  
And fonde I woll in shortly to bring *try*  
The slye way of that I gan to write, *unning*  
Of queene Annelida and false Arcite.

Mars, that through his furious course of ire,  
The old wrath of Juno to fulfill,  
Hath set the peoples hertes both on fire  
Of Thebes and Grece, and everich other to kill  
With bloody speres, rested never still,  
But throng now here, now there, among hem both  
That everich other slue, so were they wroth.

For whan Amphiorax and Tideus,  
Ipomedon and Partinope also  
Were dedde, and slain proud Campaneus,  
And whan the wretched Thebans brethren two  
Were slain, and king Adrastus home ygo,  
So desolate stood Thebes and so bare,  
That no wight could remedy his care.

And whan the old Creon gan espy  
How that the blood royal was brought adown,  
He held the citee by his tyranny,  
And did the gentils of that regioun  
To been his friends, and dwell in the town,  
So what for love of him, and what for awe,  
The noble folke were to the towne ydrawe.

Among all these, Annelida the queene  
Of Ermony was in that towne dwelling,  
That fairer was than the Sonne sheene,  
Throughout the world so gan her name spring,  
That her to see had every wight liking,  
For as of trowth, is there none her liche  
Of all the women in this world riche.

Yong was this queene, of twenty yere old,  
Of middle stature, and of soch fairnesse,  
That Nature had a joy her to behold,

And for to speaken of her stedfastnesse,  
She passed hath Penelope and Lucesse,  
And shortly if she may ben comprehended,  
In her might nothing been amended.

This Theban knight eke sothe to sain,  
Was yong, therto withall a lusty knight,  
But he was double in love, and nothing plain,  
And subtyll in that craft over any wight,  
And with his cunning wan this lady bright :  
For so ferforth he gan her trouthe assure,  
That she him trusteth over any creature.

What should I sain ! she loveth Arcite so  
That whan that he was absent any throw,  
Anone her thought her herte brast atwo,  
For in her sight to her he bare him low,  
So that she wende have all his herte yknow,  
But he was false, it n'as but fayned chere,  
As nedeth not soche craftes men to lere.

But neverthelesse, full mikell businesse  
Had he, er that he might his lady winne,  
And swore he would dien for distresse,  
Or from his witte he said he would twinne :  
Alas, the while ! for it was routh and siune,  
That she upon his sorrowes would rue,  
But nothing thinketh the false as doth the true.

Her fredome found Arcite in soch manere,  
That all was his that she hath, moch or lite,  
Ne to no creature made she cheer,  
Further than it liked to Arcite,  
There was no lack with which he might her wite,  
She was so ferforth yeven him to please,  
That all that liked him did her case.

There n'as to her no maner letter sent,  
That touched love, from any maner wight,  
That she ne shewed him, or it was brent,  
So plain she was, and did her full might,  
That she n'il hide nothing from her knight,  
Lest he of any untrouth her upbreyde ;  
Without bode his herte she obeyde.

And eke he made him jalous over her,  
That what that any man had to her sayd,  
Anon he would praien her to swere  
What was that word, or make him yvell apaid,  
Than wende she out of her wit have braid,  
But all was but sleight and flatterie,  
Without love he fained jelousie.

And all this toke she so debonairly,  
That all his will her thought it skilful thing,  
And ever the lenger she loved him tenderly,  
And did him honour as he were a king,  
Her herte was to him wedded with a ring,  
For so ferforth upon trouthe is her entent,  
That where he goth her herte with him went.

Whan she shal eat, on him is so her thought,  
That well unneth of meate toke she keepe,  
And whan she was to her rest brought,  
On him she thought alway till that she slepe,  
Whan he was absent, prively doth she wepe ;  
Thus liveth faire Annelida the queene,  
For false Arcite, that did her all this tene,

This false Arcite, of his newfanglenesse,  
For she to him so lowly was and trewe,

Tooke lesse deintee for her stedfastnesse,  
And saw another lady proude and newe,  
And right anon he clad him in her lewe,  
Wote I not whether in white, reed, or grene,  
And falsed faire Annelida the queene.

But neverthelesse, great wonder was it none  
Though he were false, for it is the kind of man,  
Sith Lamech was, that is so long agone,  
To be in love as false as ever he can,  
He was the first father that began  
To loven two, and was in bigamy.  
And he found tents first, but if men lye.

This false Arcite, somewhat must he faine,  
Whan he was false, to coveren his tratourie,  
Right as an horse, that can both bite and plaine,  
For he bare her in honde of treacherie,  
And swore he coude her doublenesse espye,  
And all was falsenesse that she to him ment ;  
Thus swore this thefe, and forth his way he went

Alas, what herte might endure it,  
For routh or wo, her sorrow for to tell !  
Or what man hath the cunning or the wit,  
Or what man might within the chambre dwell,  
If I to him rehersen shall the Hell  
That suffreth fayre Annelida the queene,  
For false Arcite, that did her all this tene !

She wepeth, waileth, and swouneth pitously,  
To ground deed she falleth as a stone  
Crampiseth her limmes crokedy,  
She speketh as her witte were all agone,  
Other colour than ashen hath she none,  
Ne none other word speketh she moch or lite,  
But " Mercy, cruell herte, mine Arcite."

And thus endureth, til that she was so mate  
That she ne hath foot, on which she may sustene  
But forth languishing ever in this estate,  
Of which Arcite hath neyther routh ne tene,  
His herte was elswere newe and grene,  
That on her wo, ne deinet him not to think,  
Him recketh never whether she flete or sinke.

This newe lady holdeth him so narowe,  
Up by the bridel, at the staves end,  
That every word he dred it as an growe.  
Her daunger made him both bowe and bend,  
And as her luste, made him turne or wend,  
For she ne graunted him in her living,  
No grace, why that he hath to sing.

But drove him forth, unneth list her know  
That he was servaunt unto her ladyship,  
But lest he were proude, she helde him lowe,  
Thus serveth he, without meate or sip,  
She sent him now to land, and now to ship,  
And for she yave him daunger all his fill,  
Therefore she had him at her owne will.

Ensample of this, ye thrifty women all,  
Take hede of Annelida and false Arcite,  
That for her list him her dere herte call,  
And was so meke, therefore he loved her lite,  
The kinde of mannes herte is to delite  
On thing that straunge is, al so God me save,  
For what they may not get, that wold they have.

Now turne we to Annelida ayen,  
That piueeth day by day in languishing,  
But whan she saw that her ne gate no geyn,  
Upon a day full sorrowfully wepying,  
She cast her for to make a complaining,  
And with her owne hand she gan it write,  
And sent it to her Theban knight Arcite.

THE COMPLAINT OF ANNELIDA TO  
FALSE ARCITE.

"So thirled with the point of remembrance,  
Theswerde of sorowe, whette with false pleasaunce,  
Mine herte bare of blisse, and black of hew  
That turned is to quaking all my daunce,  
My sewerty is a waped countenance,  
Sens it avayleth nought to ben trew :  
For who so trew is, it shall her rew,  
That serveth love, and doth her observaunce  
Alway to one, and chaungeth for no new.

"I wote my selfe as well as any wight,  
For I loved one, with all mine herte and might  
More than my self an hundred thousand sith,  
And called him my hertes life, my knight,  
And was all his, as ferre as it was right,  
And whan that he was glad, than was I blithe,  
And his disease was my death as swithe,  
And he ayen, his trouth hath me plight,  
For evermore hys lady me to kithen.

"Now is he false alas, and causeles,  
And of my wo he is so routhles,  
That with a worde him list not ones daine,  
To bring ayen my sorrowfull herte in pees,  
For he is caught up in another lees ;  
Right as him list, he laugheth at my paine,  
And I ne can mine herte not restraine  
For to love him yet alway nevertheles,  
And of all this I n'ot to whom to plaine.

"And should I plaine, alas, the hard stounde,  
Unto my foe, that yave mine herte a wounde,  
And yet desireth that mine harme be more,  
Now certes ferther wolle I never found,  
None other helpe, my sores for to sound,  
My desteny hath shaped so full yore,  
I wolle none other medicine ne lore,  
I wolle ben aye there I was ones bound,  
That I have said, be said for evermore.

"Alas, where is become your gentillesse,  
Your words full of pleasaunce and humblesse,  
Your observaunce in so lowe manere,  
Your awayting, and your besinesse,  
On me that ye called your maistresse,  
Your sovaine lady in this worlde here !  
Alas, is there neyther worde ne chere,  
Ye vouchsafe upon mine hevinesse !  
Alas, your love, I buy it all to dere.

"Now certes swete, though that ye  
Thus causelesse the cause be,  
Of my deedly adversite,  
Your manly reason ought it to respite,  
To sleepe your frende, and namely me,  
That never yet in no degre  
Offended you, as wisely he  
That all wote, of wo my soule quite.

"But for I was so playne, Arcite,  
In all my workes much and lite,  
And was so besie you to delite,  
Myne honour save, meke, kinde, and fre,  
Therefore ye put in me this wite :  
Alas, ye retche not a mite,  
Though that the swerde of sorow bite  
My wofull herte, through your cruelty.

"My sweet foe, why do ye so for shame,  
And thinke ye that furthered be your name,  
To love a newe, and ben untrew aye,  
And put you in slander now and blaine,  
And do to me adversitie and grame,  
That love you most, God thou wost, alwaye ?  
Yet turne ayen, and yet be playne some daye,  
And than shall this that now is mis, ben game,  
And all foryeve, while I lyve may.

"Lo, herte myne, al this is for to saine,  
As whether shall I pray or els plaine,  
Which is the way to done you to be trewe !  
For either mote I have you in my chaine,  
Or with the deth ye mote depart us twaine,  
There bethe none other meane wayes new,  
For God so wisely on my soule rewe,  
As verily ye alaine me with the paine,  
That mowe ye see unfained on mine lewe.

"For thus ferforth have I my deth sought,  
My selfe I murder with my privie thought,  
For sorow and routh of your unkindnesse,  
I wepe, I waille, I fast, all helpeth naught,  
I voide joy that is to speake of aught,  
I voide company, I fle gladnesse ;  
Who may avaut her better of hevinesse,  
Than I ! and to this plite have ye me brought,  
Without gilte, me needeth no witness.

"And should I pray, and weiven womanhede,  
Nay rather death, than do so foule a dede,  
And aske mercy and gillelesse, what nede !  
And if I plaine what life I lede,  
You recketh not, that know I out of drede,  
And if I unto you mine othes bede  
For mine excuse, a scorne shall be my mede,  
Your chere flourereth, but it wolle not sece,  
Full long agon I might have taken hede.

"For though I had you to morow agayne,  
I might as well hold Aprill from raine,  
As holde you to maken stedfast.  
Almighty God, of trouth the sovaine,  
Where is that trouth of man, who hath it slayn !  
She that hem loveth, shall hem find as fast,  
As in a tempest is a rotten mast ;  
Is that a tame beest, that is aye fayne  
To renne away, whan he is lest agast !

"Now morey sweete, if I missay,  
Have I aught said out of the way,  
I n'ot, my witte is all away,  
I fare as doth the songe of chantepleure,  
For now I plaine, and now I play,  
I am so mased that I dey,  
Arcite hath borne away the key  
Of all my world, and my good aventure.

"For in this world there is no creature,  
Walking in more discomfiture,  
Than I, ne more sorowe endure,

For if I sleepe a furlonge way or tway,  
Than thinketh me that your figure  
Before me stant clad in asure,  
Lfte to profre a newe assure,  
'or to ben trewe, and mercy me to pray.

"The long night, this wonder sight ydrie,  
That on the day for such affray I die,  
And of all this right naught ywis ye retche,  
Ne nevermore mine eyen two ben drye,  
And to your routh, and to your trowth I crie ;  
But well away, to ferre been they to fetch I  
Thus holdeth me my desteny a wretch,  
But me to rede out of this drede or gie,  
Ne may my wit (so weake is it) not stretch.

"Than end I thus, aith I may do no more,  
I yeve it up for now and evermore,

For I shall never este putten in balaunce  
My sikernesse, ne lerne of love the lore,  
But as the swan, I have herde say full yore,  
Ayenst his deth woll sing in his penaunce,  
So sing I here the destinie and chaunce,  
How that Arcite, Annelida so sore  
Hath thrilled with the point of remembraunce."

Whan that Annelida this wofull queene,  
Hath of her hand written in this wise,  
With face deed, betwixt pale and greene,  
She fell a swoune, and sithe she gan to rise,  
And unto Mars avoweth sacrifice  
Within the temple, with a sorowful chere,  
That shapen was, as ye may plainly here.

EXPLICIT.

## THE ASSEMBLY OF FOULES.

v. 1—70.

THE lyfe so short, the craft so long to lerne,  
Th'assay so hard, so sharpe the conquering,  
The dreadful joy alway that flit so yerne,  
All this mean I by Love, that my feeling  
Astonieth with his wonderful werkyng,  
So sore ywis, that whan I on him think,  
Naught wete I wel, whether I flete or sink.

For all be that I know not Love in dede,  
Ne wot how that he quiteth folke hir hire,  
Yet happeth me full oft in bookes rede  
Of his myracles, and of his cruell ire,  
There rede I well, he woll be lorde and sire :  
I dare not say his strokes be sore,  
But God save such a lorde, I can no more.

Of usage, what for lust and what for lore,  
On bookes rede I of, as I you told,  
Bnt wherfore speake I all this I naught yore  
Agon, it happed me to behold  
Upon a booke was ywritten with letters old,  
And thereupon a certain thing to lerne,  
The long day full fast I radde and yerue.

For out of the old fieldes, as men saithe,  
Cometh al this new corne fro yere to yere,  
And out of old bookes, in good faithe,  
Cometh all this new science that men lere,  
But now to purpose, as of this mattere,  
To rede forth it gan me so delite,  
That all that day me thought it but a lite.

This booke of which I make mencion,  
Entitled was right thus, as I shall tell,  
Tullius of the drcame of Scipion :  
Chapiters seven it had, of Heaven and Hell,  
And Earth, and soules that therein dwell,  
Of which as shortly as I can it treatre,  
Of his sentence I woll you saine the greate.

First telleth it, whan Scipion was come  
In Affricke, how he meteth Massinisee,  
That him for joy, in armes hath ynome,  
Than telleth he hir speach and all the blisse,  
That was betwixt hem til the day gan miase,  
And how his auncester Affrikan so dere,  
Gan in his slepe that night til him appere.

Than telleth it, that from a sterrie place,  
How Affrikan hath him Cartage shewed,  
And warned him before of all his grace,  
And said him, what man lered eyther lowde,  
That loveth common profite well ithewde,  
He should into a blissefull place wend,  
There as the joy is without any end.

Than asked he, if folke that here been dede  
Have life, and dwelling in another place !  
And Affrikan said Ye, without any drede,  
And how our present lives space  
Ment but a maner death, what way we trace,  
And rightfull folke, shull gon after they die  
To Heaven, and shewed him the Galaxie.

Than shewed he him the little earth that here is  
To regard of the Heavens quantite,  
And after shewed he hym the nine speris,  
And after that the melodie heard he,  
That commeth of thilke speres thriase thre,  
That welles of musicke been and melodie  
In this world here, and cause of armonie.

Than said he him, sens Earth was so lite,  
And full of tourment, and of harde grace,  
That he ne should him in this world delito :  
Than told he him, in certain yeres space,  
That every sterre should come into his place,  
There it was first, and all should out of mind,  
That in this world is done of all mankind.



Than prayed him Scipion, to tell him all  
The way to come into that Heaven blisse,  
And he said : " First know thy selfe immortall,  
And loke aie besely that thou werche and wisse  
To common profite, and thou shalt not misse  
To come swiftly unto that place dere,  
That full of blisse is, and of soules clere.

" And breakers of the law, soth to saine,  
And likerous folke, after that they been dede,  
Shall whirle about the world alway in paine  
Till many a world be passed out of drede,  
And than, foryeven all hir wicked dede,  
Than shullen they come to that blisfull place,  
To which to comen, God send thee grace."

The day gan failen, and the darke night  
That reveth beastes from hir businesse,  
Beraft me my booke for lacke of light,  
And to my bedde I gan me for to dresse,  
Fulfilled of thought and besie heavinesse,  
For both I had thyng, which that I n'old,  
And eke I ne had that thing that I wold.

But finally my spirite at last,  
Forweary of my labour all that day,  
Tooke rest, that made me to slepe fast,  
And in my sleepe I mette, as that I say,  
How Affrikan, right in the selfe aray  
That Scipion him saw, before that tide,  
Was come, and stode right at my beds side.

The wearie hunter sleeping in his bedde,  
The wood ayen his mind goeth anone,  
The judge dremeth how his ples be spedde,  
The carter dremeth how his cartes gone,  
The rich of gold, the knight fights with his sone,  
The sicke mette he drinketh of the tonne,  
The lover mette he hath his lady wonne.

Can I not saine, if that the cause were  
For I had radde of Affrikan beforne,  
That made me to mete that he stode there,  
But thus said he : " Thou hast thee so well borne  
In looking of mine old booke all to torne,  
Of which Macrobie raught not a lite,  
That some dele of thy labour would I quite."

Citherea, thou blisful lady swete,  
That with thy fire brond dauntest whan thee lest,  
That madest me this sweven for to mete,  
Be thou my helpe in this, for thou maist best,  
As wisely as I seigh the north northwest,  
Whan I began my sweven for to write,  
So yeve me might to rime it and endite.

This foresaid Affrikan me hent anone,  
And forthwith him to a gate brought,  
Right of a parke, walled with grene stone,  
And over the gate, with letters large ywrought,  
There were verse ywritten as me thought  
On either halfe, of full great difference,  
Of which I shall you say the playne sentence :

" Through me men gon into the blisful place  
Of hertes heale and dedly woundes cure,  
Through me men gon into the well of grace,  
There grene and lusty May shall ever endure,  
This is the way to all good aventure,  
Be glad thou reader, and thy sorow off cast,  
All open am I, passe in and spede thee fast."

" Through me men gon" (than spake the other side)  
" Unto the mortall strokes of the speare,  
Of which Disdaine and Danger is the gide ;  
There never tree shall fruit ne leaves beare,  
This streme you ledeth to the sorowful were,  
There as the fish in pryson is all dry,  
The eschewing is onely the remedy."

These verses of gold and asure ywritten weare,  
Of which I gan astonied to behold,  
For with that one encreased all my feare,  
And with that other gan my herte to bolde,  
That one me hette, that other did me colde,  
No wit had I for errour for to chese,  
To enter or fle, or me to save or lese.

Right as betwene adamants two,  
Of even weight, a peece of yron set  
Ne hath no might to move ne to ne fro,  
For what that one may hale that other let,  
So fared I, that I n'ist where me was bet  
To entre or leave, till Affrikan my gide,  
Me hent and shove in at the gates wide.

And said, " It standeth written in thy face,  
Thine errour, though thou tell it not me,  
But dread thee not to come into this place,  
For this writing is nothing meant by thee,  
Ne by none, but he Love's servaunt bee,  
For thou of love hast lost thy tast of gesse,  
As sicke men hath, of swete and bitternesse.

" But natheles, although thou be dull,  
That thou canst not doe, yet mayst thou see,  
For many a man that may not stand a pull,  
Yet liketh it him at the wrestlyng for to be,  
And demeth yet, whether he doe bet, or he,  
And if thou haddest connyng for t'endite,  
I shall thee shew matter of to write."

And with that my hand in his he toke anon,  
Of which I comfort caught, and went in fast,  
But Lord so I was glad, and well begon,  
For over all, where I mine eyen cast,  
Were trees clad with leaves, that aie shal last  
Eche in his kind, with colour fresh and grene,  
As emeraude, that joy it was to sene.

The bilder oke, and eke the hardy ashe,  
The pillar elme, the coffre unto caraine,  
The boxe pipe tree, holme to whippes lasshe,  
The sailing firre, the cipres death to plaine,  
The shooter ewe, the aspe for shaftes plaine,  
The olive of peace, and eke the dronken vine,  
The victor palme, the laurer too divine.

A gardein saw I full of blosomed bowis,  
Upon a river in a grene mede,  
There as sweetness evermore inough is,  
With floures white, blewe, yelow, and rede,  
And cold welle streames, nothing dede,  
That swommen full of smale fishes light,  
With finnes rede, and scales silver bright.

On every bough the birdes heard I sing,  
With voice of angell in hir armonie,  
That busied hem hir birdes forth to bring,  
The little pretty conies to hir play gan hie,  
And further all about I gan espie  
The dredeful roe, the buck, the hart, and hind,  
Squirrels, and beastes small of gentle kind.

Of instruments of stringes in accorde  
 Heard I so play a ravishing swetnesse,  
 That God, that maker is of all and Lorde,  
 Ne heard never better, as I gesse,  
 Therewith a wind, unneth it might be lesse,  
 Made in the leaves grene a noise soft  
 Accordant to the foules song on loft.

The aire of the place so attempre was,  
 That never was ther grevance of hot ne cold,  
 There was eke every holsome spice and gras,  
 Ne no man may there waxe sicke ne old,  
 Yet was there more joy o thousand fold,  
 Than I can tell or ever could or might,  
 There is ever clere day, and never night.

Under a tree beside a well I sey  
 Cupide, our lorde, his arrowes forge and file,  
 And at his feete his bowe already lay,  
 And well his doughter tempred all the while  
 The heddes in the well, with her wile  
 She couched hem after, as they should serve  
 Some to slee, and some to wound and carve.

Tho was I ware of Pleasaunce anon right,  
 And of Array, Lust, Beauty, and Curtesie,  
 And of the Craft, that can and hath the might  
 To don by force a wight to don folie :  
 Disfigured was she, I will not lie,  
 And by himsele, under an oke I gesse,  
 Sawe I Delite, that stood with Gentlenessse.

Than saw I Beauty, with a nice attire,  
 And Youth, full of game and jolitee,  
 Foole-hardinesse, Flatterie, and Desire,  
 Messagerie, Mede, and other three,  
 Hir names shall not here be told for me ;  
 And upon pillers great of jasper long,  
 I sawe a temple of brasse yfounded strong.

And about the temple daunced alway  
 Women inow, of which some there were  
 Faire of hemself, and some of hem were gay,  
 In kirtils all disheveled went they there,  
 That was their office ever, fro yere to yere ;  
 And on the temple, saw I white and faire,  
 Of doves sitting many a thousand paire.

And before the temple doore full soberly,  
 Dame Peace sat, a curtaine in her honde,  
 And her beside wonder discretly,  
 Dame Pacience, sitting there I fonde,  
 With face pale, upon an hill of sonde,  
 And alther next, within and without,  
 Behest and Arte, and of her folke a rout.

Within the temple, of sighes hote as fire,  
 I heard a swough that gan about ren,  
 Which sighes were engendred with desire,  
 That made every herte for to bren  
 Of newe flambe, and well espied I then,  
 That all the cause of sorowes that they drie  
 Come of the bitter goddess Jalousie.

The god Priapus saw I as I went  
 Within the temple, in soverain place stond,  
 In such array, as whan the asse him shent  
 With crie by night, and with sceptre in honde ;  
 Full busilie men gan assay and fonde,  
 Upon his hedde to set of sondrie hewe,  
 Garlandes full of freshe floures newe.

And in a privie corner, in disport  
 Found I Venus, and her porter Richesse,  
 That was full noble and hautein of her port,  
 Darke was that place, but after lightnesse  
 I sawe a lite, unnethes it might be lesse,  
 And on a bed of golde she lay to rest,  
 Till that the hote Sonne gan to west.

Her gylte heeres with a gold thredo  
 Ybound were, untressed as she lay,  
 And naked from the brest unto the hede,  
 Men might her see, and sothly for to saie,  
 The remnaunt, covered well to my paie,  
 Right with a little kercheffe of Valence,  
 There was no thicker clothe of defence.

The place gave a thousand savours soote,  
 And Bacchus god of wine sate her beside,  
 And Ceres next, that doeth of hunger boote,  
 And as I said, amiddes lay Cupide,  
 To whom on knees, the yonge folkes cride,  
 To be their helpe, but thus I let her lie,  
 And farther in her temple I gan espie.

That in dispite of Diane the chaste,  
 Full many a bowe ybroke hing on the wall,  
 Of maidens, such as gone hir times waste  
 In her service : and painted over all,  
 Of many a storie, of which I touch shall  
 A fewe, as of Calixte, and Athalant,  
 And many a maid, of which the name I want.

Semyramus, Candace, and Hercules,  
 Biblis, Dido, Tisbe, and Piramus,  
 Tristram, Isoude, Paris, and Achilles,  
 Helaine, Cleopatre, and Troilus,  
 Sylla, and eke the mother of Romulus,  
 All these were paynted on that other side,  
 And all hir love, and in what plite they dido.

Whan I was commen ayen into the place  
 That I of spake, that was so soote and grene,  
 Forth walked I tho, my selven to solace,  
 Tho was I ware, where there sate a quene,  
 That as of light the sommer Sunne shene  
 Passeth the sterre, right so over mesure,  
 She fairer was than any creature.

And in a launde, upon an hill of floures,  
 Was set this noble goddessse Nature,  
 Of branches were her halles and her boures  
 Ywrought, after her craft and her mesure,  
 Ne there n'as foul that cometh of engendrure,  
 That there ne were preest in her presence,  
 To take hir dome and yeve hir audience.

For this was on saint Valentines day,  
 Whan every foule cometh to chese hir make,  
 Of every kind that men thinke may,  
 And that so huge a noise gan they make,  
 That earth, sea, and tree, and every lake,  
 So full was, that unneth there was space  
 For me to stand, so full was all the place.

And right as Alain, in the Plaint of Kinde,  
 Deviseth Nature of such arais and face,  
 In suche aray men might her there finde.  
 This noble empressse full of all grace,  
 Bad every foule take hir owne place,  
 As they were wont alway, fro yere to yere,  
 On saint Valentines day, standen there.

That is to say, the foules of ravine  
Were highest set, and than the foules smale,  
That enter as that nature would incline,  
As worme or thing, of which I tell no tale,  
But water foule sat lowest in the dale,  
And foules that liveth by seed sat on the grene,  
And that so many, that wonder was to sene.

There might men the royall eagle find,  
That with his sharpe looke perseth the Son,  
And other egles of a lower kind,  
Of which that clerkes well devisen con;  
There was the tyrant with his fethers don,  
And grene, I mean the goshauke that doth pine  
To birdes, for his outrageous ravine.

The gentle faucon, that with his fete distreineth  
The kings hand, the hardy sperhauke eke,  
The quailles foe, the merlion that peineth  
Himself full oft the larks for to seke,  
There was the dove, with her eyen meke,  
The jelous swan, ayenat his deth that singeth,  
The owl eke, that of deth the bode bringeth.

The crane, the geaunt, with his trompes soun,  
The thief the chough, and the chattring pie,  
The scorning jaye, the eles foe the heroune,  
The false lapwing, full of trecherie,  
The stare, that the counsaile can bewrie,  
The tame ruddocke, and the coward kite,  
The cocke, that horiloge is of thorpes lite.

The sparowe Venus' son, and the nightingale  
That clepeth forth the fresh leaves new,  
The swalowe, murdrer of the bees smale  
That maken honie of floures fresh of hew,  
The wedded turtell, with his herte true,  
The peccocke, with his angel fethers bright,  
The fesaunt, scorner of the cocke by night.

The waker gosse, the cuckowe ever unkind,  
The poppingey, full of delicasy,  
The drake, stroier of his owne kind,  
The storke, wreker of aduouty,  
The hote cormeraunt, ful of glotony,  
The ravin and the crowe, with her voice of care,  
The throstell olde, and the frostie feldefare.

What should I say! of foules of every kind,  
That in this world have fethers and stature,  
Men might in that place assembled find,  
Before that noble goddess of Nature,  
And eche of them did his busie cure,  
Benignely to chese, or for to take  
By her accorde, his formell or his make.

But to the point: Nature held on her hound,  
A formell eagle, of shape the gentillest,  
That ever she among her workes fond,  
The most benigne, and eke the goodliest,  
In her was every vertue, at his rest  
So farforth, that Nature her selfe had blisse,  
To looke on her, and oft her becke to kisse.

Nature, the vicar of the almightie Lord,  
That hote, colde, hevie, light, moist, and drie,  
Hath knit, by even number of accord,  
In easie voice, began to speake and say,  
"Foules, take heed of my sentence I pray,  
And for your own ease, in furdryng of your need,  
As fast as I may speake, I will me speede.

"Ye knowe wel, how on Saint Valentines day,  
By my statute, and through my governance,  
Ye do chese your makes, and after fle away  
With hem, as I pricke you with plesaunce,  
But nathelesse, as by rightfull ordinaunce,  
May I not let, for all this world to win,  
But he that most worthiest is shall begin.

"The tercell eagle, as ye know full wele,  
The foule royall, above you all in degre,  
The wise and worthie, the secret true as stele,  
The which I have formed, as ye may see,  
In every parte as it best liketh mee,  
It nedeth not his shape you to devise,  
He shall first chese, and speken in his gise.

"And after him, by order shall ye chese,  
After your kind, everiche as you liketh,  
And as your hap is, shall ye win or lese,  
But which of you that love most entriketh,  
God sende him her that sorest for him siketh:"  
And therewithall, the tercell gan she call,  
And said, "My sonne, the choise is to thee fall.

"But nathelesse, in this condicion  
Must be the choise of everiche that is here,  
That she agree to his election,  
Who so he be, that should been her fere,  
This is our usage alway, fro yere to yere,  
And who so may at this time have his grace,  
In blisfull time he came into this place."

With hed enclined, and with ful humble chere,  
This roial tercell spake, and taried nought,  
"Unto my souveraine lady, and not my fere,  
I chose and chese, with will, herte, and thought,  
The formell on your hand, so wel ywrought,  
Whose I am all, and ever will her serve,  
Doe what her luste, to doe me live or sterve.

"Beseehyng her of mercy, and of grace,  
As she that is my ladie souveraine,  
Or let me die here present in this place,  
For certes long may I not live in paine,  
For in my herte is corven every vaine,  
Having regard onely to my trouthe,  
My dere herte, have on my wo some routh.

"And if I be found to her untrue,  
Disobeisaut, or wilfull negligent,  
Avauntour, or in processe love a newe,  
I pray to you this be my judgement,  
That with these foules I be all to rent,  
That ilke day that she me ever find  
To her untrue, or in my gilte unkind.

"And sith that none loveth her so well as I,  
Although she never of love me behet,  
Than ought she be mine through her mercy,  
For other bonde can I none on her knet:  
For wele nor wo never shall I let  
To serve her, how farre so that she wende,  
Say what you list, my tale is at an ende."

Right as the fresh redde rose newe  
Against the sommer Sunne coloured is,  
Right so for shame all waxen gan the hewe  
Of this formell, when she heard all this,  
Neither she answerde well, ne said amis,  
So sore abashed was she, till that Nature  
Said, "Doughter drede you not, I you assure."

Another tercell egle spake anon,  
Of lower kind, and said, "That should not be,  
I love her better than ye doe, by saint John,  
Or at the least, I love her as well as ye,  
And lenger have served her in my degree,  
And if she should have loved for long loving,  
To me alone had be the guerdoning.

"I dare eke say, if she me finde false,  
Unkind jangler, or rebell in any wise,  
Or jelous, doe me hang by the halse,  
And but I beare me in her servise  
As well as my wit can me suffice,  
Fro point to point, her honour for to save,  
Take she my life, and all the good I have."

The third tercell egle answerde tho,  
"Now sirs, ye see the little leaser here,  
For every foule crieth out to be ago  
Forth with his make, or with his lady dere :  
And eke Nature her self ne will not here  
For taryng her, not half that I would sey,  
And but I speake, I must for sorrow dey.

"Of long service avaunt I me nothing,  
But as possible is me to die to day  
For wo, as he that hath be languishing  
This twenty winter, and wel it happen may,  
A man may serve better, and more to pay,  
In half a year, although it were no more,  
Than some man doth that hath served full yore.

"I ne say not this by me, for I ne can  
Do no service that may my lady please,  
But I dare say I am her trewest man,  
As to my dome, and fainest wolde her please :  
At short wordes, till that death me cease,  
I will be hers, whether I wake or winke,  
And trewe in all that herte may bothinke."

Of al my life, sith that day I was borne,  
So gentle plee in love or other thing,  
Ne herde never no man me beforen,  
Who so that had leiser and conning  
For to rehearse their chere, and their speaking;  
And from the morrow gan this spech last,  
Till downward went the Sunne wonder fast.

The noyse of foules for to be deliverd,  
So loude rang, "Have don and let us wend,"  
That well weend I, the wood had al to shiverd :  
"Come off," they cryd, "alaa, ye will us shend,  
Whan shal your cursed pleding have an end!  
How should a judge either party leve,  
For ye or nay, without any prevel"

The goos, the duck, and the cuckowe also,  
So cried "Keke, keke, Cuckow, Queke, queke, hie,"  
Through mine eares the noise went tho.  
The goos said than "Al this n's worth a flio,  
But I can shape hereof a remedie,  
And will say my verdite, faire and swithe,  
For water foule, whoso be, wroth or blithe."

"And I for worm foule," said the fole cuckow,  
"For I will of mine own autorite,  
For common spede, take on me the charge now,  
For to deliver us it is great charite."  
"Ye may abide a while, yet perde,"  
(Quod the turtel) "if it be your will,  
A wight may speak, it were as good be still

"I am a sede foule, one the unworthiest,  
That wote I well, and leest of conning,  
But better is that a wights tonge rest,  
Than entremete him of such doing  
Of which he neither rede can nor sing,  
And who so it doth, full foule himself acloyeth,  
For office uncommitted oft annoyeth."

Nature, which that alway had an eare  
To murmure of the lewdenesse behind,  
With facond voice said, "Hold your tongues there  
And I shall soone, I hope, a counsaile find,  
You for to deliver, and fro this noyse unbind :  
I charge of every flock ye shall one call,  
To say the verdite of you foules all."

Assented were to this conclusion,  
The birdes all : and foules of ravine  
Have chosen first by plaine election,  
The tercelet of the faucon to define  
All hir sentence, and as him lust to termine,  
And to Nature him they did present,  
And she accepteth him with glad entent.

The tercelet said than in this manere,  
"Full hard it were to preve it by reason,  
Who loveth best this gentle formell here,  
For everich hath such replicatioun,  
That by skills may none be brought adoun,  
I cannot see that arguments availle,  
Than seemeth it there must be bataille."

"All ready" (quod these eagle tercelles tho :)  
"Nay sirs," (quod he) "if that I durst it say,  
Ye do me wrong, my tale is not ydo :  
For sirs, taketh nat a greefe I pray,  
It may not be as ye would, in this way,  
Ours is the voice, that have the charge in hand,  
And to the judges dome ye must stand.

"And, therefore, peace I say, as to my wit,  
Me would thinke, how that the worthiest  
Of knighthood, and lengest had used it,  
Most of estate, of blood the gentilest,  
Were fitting for her, if that her lest,  
And of these three, she wote her selfe I trow  
Which that he be, for it is light to know."

The water foules have their heads laid  
Togider, and of short avisement,  
Whan everiche had this verdite said,  
They said soothly all by one assent,  
How that the goos, with the facond gent,  
That so desirith to pronounce our nede,  
Shal tel her tale, and praid to God her spede.

And for these water foules tho began  
The goose to speake, and in her cakeling  
She said, "Peace now, take keep every man,  
And herken which a reason I shall forth bring,  
My witte is sharpe, I love no tarryng,  
I say, I rede him, tho he were my brother,  
But she will love him, let him love another."

"Lo, here a parfite reason of a goose"  
(Quod the sperhauke) "never mote she the,  
Lo, such a thing it is to have a tongue lose :  
Now parde foole, yet were it better for the  
Have held thy peace than shewd thy nicete  
It lieth nat in his wit, nor in his will,  
But sooth is said, a fole cannot be still."

The laughter arose of gentill foules all,  
And right anone the seed foules chosen had  
The turtle true, and gan her to hem call,  
And prayed her to say the sooth sad  
Of this matter, and asked what she rad !  
And she answerd, that plainly her entent  
She would shew, and soothly what she ment.

"Nay, God forbode a lover should chaunge,"  
The turtle said (and wex for shame all red)  
"Though that his lady evermore be straunge,  
Yet let him serve her alway, till he be deed,  
Forsooth, I praise not the gooses reed,  
For tho she died, I would none other make,  
I will be hers, till that the death me take."

"Well ybourded" (quod the duck) "by my hat,  
That men should love alway causelesse,  
Who can a reason find, or wit in that !  
Daunceth he merry that is wirthlesse !  
Who should recke of that is retchlesse !  
Ye queke yet," quod the duck, "full well and fair,  
There be mo sterres in the skie than a pair."

"Now fie churle," quod the gentle tercelet,  
"Out of the dunghill came that word aright,  
Thou canst not see which thing is well beset,  
Thou farest by love as owles do by light,  
The day hem blindeth, full well they see by night,  
Thy kind is of so low wretchedness,  
That what love is thou canst not see nor gess."

Tho gan the cuckow put him forth in preace,  
For foule that eateth worme, and said blive :  
"So I," quod he, "may have my make in peace,  
I retch not how long that ye strive,  
Let ech of hem be soleine all hir live,  
This is my rede, sens they may nat accord,  
This short lesson needeth not record."

"Ye, have the glutton filde his paunch  
Than are we well," said the emerlon,  
"Thou murdrer of the heysugge on the braunch  
That brought thee forth, thou ruful glutton,  
Live thou solein, wormes corruption,  
For no force is of lack of thy nature,  
Go, leude be thou while the world may dure."

"Now peace," quod Nature, "I commaunde here,  
For I have heard all your opinion,  
And in effect yet be we never the nere,  
But finally, this is my conclusion,  
That she her selfe shall have her election  
Of whom her list, who so be wrothe or blithe,  
Him that she cheseth, he shall her have as swithe."

"For sith it may not here discussed be  
Who loveth her best, as said the tercelet,  
Than woli I done this favour to her, that she  
Shall have right him on whom her herte is set,  
And he her, that his herte hath on her knet ;  
This judge I Nature, for I may not lie  
To none estate, I have none other eye."

"But as for counsaile for to chuse a make,  
If I were reason, than would I  
Counsaile you the royal tercell take,  
As said the tercelet full skilfully,  
As for the gentillest and most worthy,

Which I have wrought so wel to my plesaunce  
That to you it ought ben a suffisaunce."

With dredeful voice that formel her answerd,  
"My rightful lady, goddess of Nature,  
Sooth is, that I am ever under your yerd,  
As is everich other creature,  
And must be yours while my life may dure,  
And therefore graunt me my first boone,  
And mine entent you woli I say right soone."

"I graunt it you," quod she, and right anone  
This formel eagle spake in this degree :  
"Almighty quene, unto this year be done  
I aske respite for to avisen mee,  
And after that to have my choice all free,  
This all and some that I would speak and sey,  
Ye get no more, although you do me dey."

"I woli not serven Venus ne Cupide,  
Forsooth as yet, by no maner way."  
"Now sens it may none other ways betide"  
(Quod Nature) "here is no more to say.  
Than would I that these foules were away,  
Ech with his make, for taryng lenger here,"  
And said hem thus, as ye shall after here."

"To you speke I, ye tercelels," (quod Nature)  
"Beth of good herte, and serveth all three,  
A yeare is not so long to endure,  
And ech of you paine him in his degree,  
For to do well, for God wote quit is she  
Fro you this year, what after so befall,  
This entremes is dressed for you all."

And whan this werk brought was to an end,  
To every foule Nature yave his make,  
By even accord, and on hir way they wend,  
And Lord the blisse and joy that they make,  
For ech of hem gan other in his wings take,  
And with hir neckes ech gan other winde,  
Thanking alway the noble goddess of kinde."

But first were chosen foules for to sing,  
As yere by yere was alway hir usaunce,  
To sing a roundel at hir departing,  
To do Nature honour and plesaunce ;  
The note I trow maked was in Fraunce,  
The words were such as ye may here find,  
The next verse, as I now have in mind.  
Qui bien ayme tard oublye

"Now welcome summer, with thy sunnes soft,  
That hast this winter weathers overshake,  
Saint Valentine, thou art full high on loft,  
Which drivest away the long nights blake ;  
Thus singen smale foules for thy sake,  
Well have they cause for to gladen oft,  
Sens each of hem recovered hath his make,  
Full blisful may they sing whan they awake."

And with the shouting whan hir song was do,  
That the foules made at hir flight away,  
I woke, and other bookes took me to  
To rede upon and yet I rede alway,  
I hope ywis to rede so some day,  
That I shall mete something for to fare  
The bet, and thus to rede I nill not spare."

EXPLICIT.

## THE COMPLAINT OF THE BLACK KNIGHT.

THE HEAUIE COMPLAINT OF A KNIGHT, FOR THAT HE CANNOT WIN HIS LADIES GRACE.

v. 1—98

In May, whan Flora the fresh lusty quene,  
The soile hath cladde in grene, red, and whight,  
And Phebus gan to shede his stremes shene  
Amidde the Bulle, with all the beames bright,  
And Lucifer to chace away the night,  
Ayen the morow our orizont hath take,  
To bid all lovers out of hir slepe awake.

And hertes heavy for to recomfort  
From drierihed of heavy night sorowe,  
Nature bad hem rise and hem disport  
Ayen the goodly glad grey morowe,  
And Hope also, with saint Johan to borowe,  
Bad, in despite of daunger and dispaire,  
For to take the holsome lusty aire.

And with a sigh, I gan for to abreide  
Out of my slumber, and sodainly up starte,  
As he (alas) that nigh for sorow deide,  
My sicknesse sate aye so nie my herte;  
But for to finde succour of my smart,  
Or at the least some release of my peine,  
That me so sore halte in every veine.

I rose anone, and thought I woulde gone  
Into the woode, to heare the birdes sing,  
Whan that the misty vapour was agone,  
And cleare and faire was the morning,  
The dewe also like silver in shining  
Upon the leaves, as any baume swete,  
Till fry Titan with his persant hete

Had dried up the lusty licour new  
Upon the herbes in the grene mede,  
And that the floures of many divers hew,  
Upon hir stalkes gon for to sprede,  
And for to splay out hir leues in brede  
Againe the Sunne, gold burned in his spere,  
That doune to hem cast his beames clere.

And by a river forth I gan costay,  
Of water clere as birell or cristall,  
Till at the last, I found a little way  
Toward a parke, enclosed with a wall  
In compace rounde, and by a gate small  
Who so that woulde might freely gone  
Into this parke, walled with grene stone.

And in I went to heare the birdes song,  
Which on the braunches, both in plaine and vale,  
So loud sang that all the wood rong,  
Like as it should shiver in peeces smale  
And, as me thought, that the nightingale  
With so great might her voice gan out wrest,  
Right as her herte for love would brest.

The soile was plaine, smoth, and wonder soft,  
All oversprad with tapettes that Nature  
Had made her selfe: covered eke aloft  
With bowes greene the floures for to cure,  
That in hir beauty they may long endure  
From all assaut of Phebus fervent fere,  
Which in his sphere so hote shone and clere.

The aire attempre, and the smothe wind  
Of Zepherus, among the blosomes white,  
So holsome was, and so nourishing by kind,  
That smale budde and round blosomes lite  
In manor gan of hir brethe delite,  
To yeve us hope there fruite shall take  
Ayenst autumnne redy for to shake.

I saw the Daphene closed under rinde,  
Greene laurer, and the holsome pine,  
The mirre also that wepeth ever of kinde,  
The cedres hie, upright as a line,  
The filbert eke, that lowe doth encline  
Her bowes grene to the earth adoun,  
Unto her knight called Demophoun.

There sawe I eke the freshe hauthorne  
In white motley, that so swote doth smell,  
Ashe, firre, and oke, with many a yong acorn,  
And many a tree mo than I can tell,  
And me beforne I sawe a little well,  
That had his course, as I gan beholde,  
Under an hill, with quicke stremes colde.

The gravel gold, the water pure as glasse,  
The bankes round the well environyng,  
And soft as velvet the yonge grasse  
That thereupon lustely came springyng,  
The sute of trees about compassyng,  
Hir shadow cast, closing the well round,  
And all the herbes growing on the ground.

The water holsome was, and so vertuous,  
Through might of herbes growing beside,  
Not like the welle where as Narcissus  
Yelaine was, through vengeance of Cupide,  
Where so covertly he did hide  
The graine of death upon eche brinke,  
That death mote folow who that ever drinke

Ne like the pitte of the Pegace,  
Under Pernaso, where poets slept,  
Nor like the welle of pure chastite,  
Which that Diane with her nimphes kept  
Whan she naked into the water lepte,  
That slowe Acteon with her hondes fell;  
Onely for he came so nigh the well.

▲ ▲ ▲

But this welle that I here of rehearse,  
So holsume was, that it would asawe  
Bollen hertes, and the venim pearce  
Of pensifed with all the cruell rage,  
And overmore refresh the viage  
Of hem that were in any werinesse  
Of great labour, or fallen in distresse.

And I that had through daunger and disdain  
So drye a thurst, thought I would assay  
To taste a draught of this welle or twain,  
My bitter languor if it might alay,  
And on the banke anone doune I lay,  
And with mine hed unto the welle I raught,  
And of the water dranke I a good draught.

Whereof me thought I was refreshed welle  
Of the breynynng that sate so nigh my herte,  
That, verily, anone I gan to fele  
An huge parte released of my smart,  
And therewithall, anone, up I start,  
And thought I would walke and see more,  
Forth in the parke, and in the holtes hore.

And through a laund as I yede apace,  
And gan about fast to behold,  
I found anone a delectable place,  
That was beset with trees young and old,  
Whose names here for me shall not be told,  
Amidde of which stood an herber greene,  
That benched was, with colours new and clene.

This herber was full of floures gende,  
Into the which, as I beholde gan,  
Betwixt an hulfere and a woodbende,  
As I was ware, I saw where lay a man  
In blacke, and white colour pale and wan,  
And wonder deadly also of his hewe,  
Of hurtles grene and fresh woundes new.

And overmore, distrayned with sicknesse,  
Beside all this, he was full greuously,  
For upon him he had an hote accesse,  
That day by day him shooke full pitously,  
So that for constrayning of his malady  
And hertely wo, thus lying alone,  
It was a death for to hear him grone.

Whereof astonied, my fote I gan withdraw,  
Greatly wondring what it might be,  
That he so lay, and had no felaw,  
Ne that I could no wight with him see,  
Whereof I had routhe and eke pite,  
And gan anone, so softly as I coude,  
Among the bushes prively me to shroude.

I that I might in any wise aspy  
What was the cause of his deedly wo,  
Or why that he so pitously gan cry  
On his fortune, and on ure also,  
With all my might I laid an eare to,  
Every word to marke what he said,  
Out of his swough amonge as he abraid.

But first, if I should make mencion  
Of his person, and plainly him discrive,  
He was in sothe, without excepcion,  
To speake of manhood, one the best on live;  
There may no man ayen trouth strive,  
For of his tyme, and of his age also,  
He proved was, there men shuld have ado,

For one of the best therto of brede and length,  
So well ymade by good proporcion,  
If he had be in his deliver strength;  
But thought and sicknesse were occasion  
That he thus lay in lamentacion,  
Gruffe on the ground, in place desolate,  
Sole by himselfe, awhaped and amate.

And for me seemeth that it is fitting  
His wordes all to put in remembrance,  
To me, that heard all his complaining,  
And all the ground of his wofull chaunce,  
If there withall I may you do pleasure,  
I woll to you, so as I can, anone,  
Lyke as he sayd, rehearse everichone.

But who shall helpe me now to complain,  
Or who shall now my stile gie or lede?  
O Niobe, let now thy teares rain  
In to my penne! and helpe eke in nede,  
Thou, wofull Myrre! that felest my herte blede  
Of pitous wo, and mine hand eke quake,  
Whan that I write, for this mannes sake.

For unto wo accordeth conplayingn,  
And dolefull chere unto heavynesse,  
To sorow also, sighing and weping,  
And pitous mourning unto drerinesse,  
And who that shall write of distresse,  
In party needeth to know feelingly  
Cause and roote of all soch malady.

But I alas, that am of witte but dull,  
And have no knowing of such matere,  
For to discrive, and write at the full  
The wofull complaint, which that ye shall here,  
But even like as doth a skryvenere,  
That can no more what that he shall write,  
But as his maister beside doth endite;

Right so fare I, that of no sentement  
Say right naught in conclusion,  
But as I herde whan I was present,  
This man complaine with a pitous soun,  
For, even like, without addicioun,  
Or disencresse, eyther more or lesse,  
For to rehearse anone I woll me dresse.

And if that any now be in this place,  
That fele in love brenning of fervence,  
Or hindred were to his ladies grace  
With false tonges, that with pestilence  
Slee trewe men that never did offence  
In worde nor deed, ne in hir entent,  
If any such be here now present,

Let him of routh lay to audience,  
With doleful chere, and sobre countenance,  
To here this man, by full hye sentence,  
His mortall wo, and his perturbaunce  
Complayingn, now lying in a trauce,  
With lookes upcast and rufull chere,  
Theffect of which was as ye shall here.

“The thought oppressed with inward sighs sore,  
The painful life, the body languishing,  
The woful ghost, the herte rent and tore,  
The pitous chere pale in conplayingn,  
The deedly face, like ashes in shining,  
The salte teares that from mine eyen fall,  
Perceel declare ground of my paynes all.

" Whose herte is ground to blede in hevynesse,  
The thought receit of wo and of complaint,  
The brest is chest of dole and drerynesse,  
The body eke so feeble and so faint,  
With hote and colde mine accesse is so maine,  
That now I chiver for defaut of heat,  
And hote as glede now sodainly I sweat.

" Now hote as fire, now colde as ashes deed,  
Now hote for cold, now cold for heat againe,  
Now cold as yse, now as coles reed,  
For heate I brenne, and thus betwixe twaine,  
I possed am, and all forecast in paine,  
So that my heate plainly as I fele,  
Of grevous colde is cause every dele.

" This is the colde of inward hie disdain,  
Colde of dispite, and colde of cruell hate,  
This is the colde that ever doth his besie pain  
Aynst trouth to fight and debate,  
This is the colde that the fire abate  
Of trewe meaning, alas, the harde while,  
This is the colde that woll me begile.

" For ever the better that in trouth I ment  
With all my might faithfully to serve,  
With herte and all to be diligent,  
The lesse thanke, alas, I can deserve :  
Thus for my trouth danger doth me sterve,  
For one that should my death of mercy let,  
Hath made dispite new his swerde to whet

" Against me, and his arowes to file  
To take vengeance of wilfull cruelte ;  
And tonges false, through hir sleightly wile,  
Han gonne a werre that will not stinted be,  
And False Envie, Wrath and Enmite,  
Have conspired against all right and law,  
Of hir malice, that Trouth shall be slaw.

" And Malebouche gan first the tale tell,  
To selaunder Trouth of indignacion,  
And False-reporte so loude range the bell  
That Misbeleefe and False-suspection  
Have Trouth brought to his dampnacion,  
So that, alas, wrongfully he dieth,  
And Falsenesse now his place occupieth.

" And entred is in to Trouthes londe,  
And hath thereof the full possession.  
O rightfull God, that first the trouth fonde,  
How may thou suffre soch oppression,  
That Falsheed should have jurisdiction  
In Trouthes right to slee him giltyes !  
In his fraunchise he may not live in pees ;

" Falsly accused, and of his fone forjudged,  
Without answer, while he was absent,  
He damned was, and may not be excused,  
For Cruelte sate in judgement  
Of hastynesse without adviement,  
And badde Disdaine do execute anone,  
His judgement in presence of his fone.

" Attourney may none admitted been  
To excuse Trouth, ne a worde to speke,  
To Faith or othe the judge list not seen,  
There is no game, but he will be wreke :  
O Lord of trouth, to thee I call and clepe !  
How may thou see thus in thy presence,  
Without mercy muredred innocence !

" Now God, that art of trouth soveraine,  
And seest how I lie for trouth bound,  
So sore knit in loves fire chaine,  
Even at the death through girt with many a wound,  
That likely are never for to sound,  
And for my trouth am dampned to the death,  
And not abide, but draw along the breath :

" Consider and see in thine eternal right,  
How that mine herte professed whilom was,  
For to be trewe with all my full might,  
Onely to one the which now, alas,  
Of volunte, without any trespas,  
My accusours hath taken unto grace,  
And cherisheth hem my death to purchase.

" What meaneth this ? what is this wonder ure  
Of purveyaunce if I shall it call,  
Of god of love, that false hem so assure,  
And trewe, alas, downe of the whele ben fall,  
And yet, in sothe, this is the worst of all,  
That Falsched wrongfully of Troth hath the name,  
And Trouthayenward of Falsched beareth the blame.

" This blind chauce, this stormy aventure,  
In love hath most his experience,  
For who that doth with trouth most his cure,  
Shall for his mede finde most offence,  
That serveth love with all his diligence :  
For who can faine under lowlyhede,  
Ne fayleth not to finde grace and spede.

" For I loved one, full long sith agone,  
With all mine herte, body, and full might,  
And to be deed my herte can not gone  
From his heste, but hold that he hath hight,  
Though I be banished out of her sight,  
And by her mouth dampned that I shall dey,  
Unto my heat yet I will ever obey.

" For ever sith that the world began,  
Who so liste looke, and in story rede,  
He shall aye find that the trewe man  
Was put abacke, whereas the falsched  
Yfurthered was : for Love taketh none hede  
To slee the trew, and hath of hem no charge  
Where as the false goeth frely at hir large.

" I take record of Palamides,  
The trewe man, the noble worthy knight,  
That ever loved, and of his paine no releas,  
Notwithstanding his manhood and his might,  
Love unto him did full great unright,  
For aye the bet he did in chevalrie,  
The more he was hindred by envie.

" And aye the better he did in every place,  
Through his knighthood and busie payne,  
The ferder was he from his ladies grace,  
For to her mercy might he never attayne,  
And to his death he coude it not refrayne  
For no daungere, but aye obey and serve,  
As he best coude, plainly till he sterve.

" What was the fine also of Hercules,  
For all his conquest and his worthynesse,  
That was of strength alone peerles,  
For like as bookes of him list expresse,  
He set pillars through his hie prowesse,  
Away at Gades, for to signifie,  
That no man might him passe in chevalrie



" Thus fareth it now even by me,  
That to my foe that gave my herte a wound,  
Mote aske grace, mercy, and pite,  
And namely there where none may be found,  
For now my sore my leche will confound,  
And god of kind so hath set mine ure,  
My lives foe to have my wound in cure.

" Alas the while, now that I was borne,  
Or that I ever saw the bright Sonne !  
For now I see that full long aforne,  
Or I was borne, my desteny was sponne  
By Parcas sisterne, to slee me if they conne,  
For they my death shopen or my shert,  
Only for trouth, I may it not astert.

" The mighty goddesse, also, of Nature,  
That under God hath the governaunce  
Of worldly things committed to her cure,  
Disposed have through her wise purveiance,  
To give my lady so much suffisaunce  
Of all vertues, and therewithall purvide  
To murder Trough, hath take Danger to gide.

" For bounte, beaute, shape, and seemelihede,  
Prudence, wit, passingly fairenesse,  
Benigne port, glad chere, with lowlihede,  
Of womanhede right plenteous largenesse,  
Nature did in her fully empressse,  
Whan she her wrought, and alderlast Disdain,  
To hinder Trough, she made her chamberlain.

" Whan Mistrust also, and False-suspession,  
With Misbeleve she made for to be  
Cheefe of counsaile to this conclusion,  
For to exile Trough, and eke Pite,  
Out of her court to make Mercy flee,  
So that dispite now holdeth forth her reigne,  
Through hasty bilve of tales that men feigne.

" And thus I am for my trouth, alas,  
Murderd and slain with words sharp and kene,  
Guiltlesse, God wote, of all trespass,  
And lie and blede upon this cold grene,  
Now mercy swete, mercy my lives quene,  
And to your grace of mercy yet I prey,  
In your service that your man may dey.

" But if so be that I shall die algate,  
And that I shall none other mercy have,  
Yet of my death let this been the date,  
That by your wil I was brought to my grave,  
Or hastily, if that you list me save,  
My sharpe wounds that ake so and blede,  
Of mercy charme, and also of womanhede.

" For other charme, plainly, is there none,  
But only mercy to helpe in this case,  
For though my wounds bleed ever in one,  
My life, my death, standeth in your grace,  
And though my guilt be nothing, alas,  
I aske mercy in all my best entent,  
Ready to die, if that ye assent.

" For there against shall I never strive  
In word ne werke, plainly I ne may,  
For lever I have than to be alive,  
To die soothly, and it be to her pay,  
Ye, though it be this same day,  
Or whan that ever her list to devise,  
Sufficeth me to die in your servise.

" And God, that knowest the thought of every wight,  
Right as it is, in every thing thou maist see,  
Yet ere I die, with all my full might,  
Lowly I pray to graunt unto mee,  
That ye goodly, faire, fresh, and free,  
Which onely sle me for default of routh,  
Or that I die, ye may know my trouth.

" For that in sooth sufficeth me,  
And she it know in every circumstancee,  
And after I am well paid that she,  
If that her list, of death to do vengeance  
Unto me, that am under her ligeaunce,  
It sit me not her doome to disobey,  
But at her lust wilfully to dey.

" Without grutching or rebellion  
In will or word, holy I assent,  
Or any manner contradiction,  
Fully to be at her commaundement,  
And, if I die, in my testament  
My herte I send, and my spirit also,  
What so ever she list with hem to do.

" And alderlast, to her womanhede,  
And to her mercy me I recomaund,  
That lie now here betwixe hope and drede,  
Abiding plainly what she list commaund,  
For utterly this n'is no demaund  
Welcome to me while me lasteth breath,  
Right at her choice, where it be life or death.

" In this matter more what might I saine,  
Sith in her hand, and in her will is all,  
But life and death, my joy, and all my paine,  
And finally my best hold I shall,  
Till my spirit by desteny fatal,  
Whan that her list fro my body wend,  
Have here my trouth, and thus I make an end."

And with that word he gan sigh as sore,  
Like as his herte rive would atwaine,  
And held his peace, and spake no word more,  
But for to see his wo and mortal paine,  
The teares gonne fro mine eyen raine  
Full pitously, for very inward routh,  
That I him saw so long wishing for trouth.

And all this while my selfe I kepte close  
Among the bowes, and my selfe gonno hide,  
Till at the last the wofull man arose,  
And to a lodge went there beside,  
Where all the May his custome was t'abide,  
Sole to complaine of his paines kene,  
From yere to yere, under the bowes grene ;

And for because that it drew to the night,  
And that the Sunne his arke diurnal  
Ypassed was, so that his persaunt light,  
His bright beams and his streams all  
Were in the waves of the water fall,  
Under the bordure of our occian,  
His chaire of gold, his course so swiftly ran :

And while the twilight and the rowes rede  
Of Phebus light were deaurate a lite,  
A penne I tooke, and gan me fast spede  
The wofull plaint of this man to write,  
Word by word, as he did endite,  
Like as I heard, and coud hem tho report,  
I have here set, your hertes to disport.

If ought be misse, lay the wite on me,  
For I am worthy for to beare the blame,  
If any thing misse reported be,  
To make this ditie for to seeme lame,  
Through mine unconning, but for to sain the same,  
Like as this manne his complaint did expresse,  
I aske mercy and forgivenessse.

And as I wrote, me thought I saw aferre,  
Ferre in the west lustely appere  
Esperus the goodly bright sterre,  
So glad, so faire, so persaunt eke of chere,  
I mean Venus with her beames clere,  
That heavy hertes only to releve,  
Is wont of custome for to shew at eve.

And I as fast fell adown on my knee,  
And even thus to her gan I to prey :  
"O lady Venus, so faire upon to see,  
Let not this man for his trouth dey !  
For that joy thou haddest whan thou ley  
With Mars thy knight, whan Vulcanus fond,  
And with a chaine invisible you bond

"Togider both tway in the same while,  
That all the court above celestiall,  
At your shame gan laugh and smile :  
Ah, faire lady, willy fond at all,  
Comfort to carefull, O goddesse immortall,  
Be helping now, and do thy diligence  
To let the streames of thine influence

"Descend downe in forthering of the trouth,  
Namely of hem that lie in sorrow bound,  
Shew now thou might, and on hir wo have routh,  
Ere false daunger slee hem and confound :  
And specially let thy might be found  
For so to cover, what so that thou may,  
The true man that in the herber lay ;

"And all true forther for his sake,  
O glad sterre, O lady Venus mine,  
And cause his lady him to grace take,  
Her herte of stele to mercy so encline,  
Ere that thy bemes go up to decline,

And ere that thou now go fro us adoun,  
For that love thou haddest to Acloun."

And whan she was gone to her rest,  
I rose anone, and home to bed went,  
Forweary, me thought it for the best,  
Praying thus in all my best entent,  
That all trew, that be with daunger shent,  
With mercy may in release of hir paine,  
Recured be, ere May come eftre againe.

And for that I ne may no lenger wake,  
Farewell ye lovers all that be trew,  
Praying to God, and thus my leve I take,  
That ere the Sunne to morrow be risen new,  
And ere he have ayen rosen hew,  
That each of you may have such a grace,  
His owne lady in armes to embrace.

I meane thus, in all honesty,  
Without more ye may togider speake  
What so ye list at good liberty,  
That each may to other hir herte brele,  
On jealousies onely to be wreke,  
That hath so long of his mallice and envy  
Werred trouth with his tiranny.

## LENVOYE.

Princesse, pleaseth it to your benignitie  
This little ditie to have in mind,  
Of womanhede also for to see,  
Your man may your mercy find,  
And pity eke, that long hath be behind,  
Let him againe be provoked to grace,  
For by my trouth it is against kind  
False daunger to occupy his place.

Go little quaire unto my lives queene  
And my very hertes souveraine,  
And be right glad for she shall thee seene,  
Such is thy grace, but I alas, in paine  
Am left behind, and n'ot to whom to plaine,  
For mercy, ruth, grace, and eke pite  
Exiled be, that I may not attaine  
Recure to find of mine adversite.

EXPLICIT

## CHAUCER'S A B C

### CALLED LA PRIERE DE NOSTRE DAME.

Chaucer's A. B. C. called *La Priere de Nostre Dame*: made, as some say, at the request of Blanche, Duchess of Lancaster, as a prayer for her private use, being a woman in her religion very devout.

v. 1—80

#### A.

ALMIGHTY and all merciable queene,  
To whom all this world fleeth for succour  
To have release of sinne, of sorrow, of tene,  
Glorious Virgine of all flouris flour!  
To thee I flee, confounded in errour,  
Helpe and releve, almighty debonaire!  
Have mercy of mine perillous langour!  
Venquist me hath my cruell adversaire.

#### B.

Bounty so fixe hath in my herte his tent,  
That well I wote thou wilt my succour be,  
Thou canst not warn that with good entent,  
Axeth thine helpe, thine herte is aye so free:  
Thou art largesse of plaine felicity,  
Haven and refute of quiete and of rest;  
Lo, how that thevis seven chasen me!  
Helpe, lady bright, or that mine ship to brest!

#### C.

Comfort is none, but in you, lady dere,  
For lo, mine sinne and mine confusioun,  
Which ought not in thine presence for to apere,  
Han taken on me a grevous actioun,  
Of veray right and desperatioun,  
And, as by right, they mighten well sustene  
That I were worthy mine damnatioun,  
Nere mercy of you, blisfull quene!

#### D.

Dout is there none, queen of misericord,  
That thou n'art cause of grace and mercy here,  
God vouchedaife through thee with us to accord:  
For certis, Christ is blisful modir dere,  
Were now the bow bent in swiche manere,  
As it was first of justice and of ire,  
The rightfull God would of no mercy here:  
But through thee han we grace as we desire.

#### E.

Ever hath mine hope of refute in thee be:  
For here beforne full oft, in many a wise,  
Unto mercy hast thou received me,  
But mercy, lady, at the great assise,  
Whan we shall come before the high justise,  
So little frute shall than in me ben found,  
That but thou or that day correct me,  
Of very right mine werk will me confound.

#### F.

Flying, I flee for succour to thine tent,  
Me for to hide fro tempest full of drede,  
Beseking you, that ye you not absent,  
Though I be wicke: O help yet at this nede!  
All have I been a beast in wit and dede,  
Yet lady, thou mee close in with thine own grace!  
Thine enemy and mine, lady take hede,  
Unto mine death in point is me to chase.

#### G.

Gracious maid and modir, which that never  
Were bitter nor in earth nor in see,  
But full of sweetnesse and of mercy ever,  
Help, that mine fader be not wroth with me!  
Speake thou, for I ne dare him not see,  
So have I done in earth, alas the while,  
That certes but if thou mine succour be,  
To sinke eterne he will mine ghost exile.

#### H.

He vouchedaife, tell him, as was his will,  
Become a man as for our alliaunce,  
And with his blood he wrote that blisfull bill  
Upon the crosse, as generall acquitaunce  
To every penitent in full eriaunce:  
And, therefore, lady bright, thou for us prey,  
Than shalt thou stent all his grevaunce,  
And maken our foe to failen of his prey.

#### I.

I wote well thou wilt been our succour,  
Thou art so full of bounty in certaine,  
For whan a soule falleth in errour,  
Thine pity goeth, and haleth him againe,  
Than maketh thou his peace with his sovereign,  
And bringest him out of the crooked strete:  
Who so thee loveth shall not love in vaine,  
That shall he find, as he the life shall lete.

#### K.

Kalenderis enlumined been they,  
That in this world been lighted with thine name,  
And who so goeth with thee the right wey,  
Him that not drede in soule to been laze.  
Now, queen of comfort, sith thou art the same  
To whom I seech for my medicine,  
Let not mine fo no more mine wound entame,  
Mine hele into thine hond all I resaine.

# THE BOOKE OF THE DUTCHESE,

OR

The Death of Blanch;

COMMONLY ENTITLED, CHAUCER'S DREAM.

v. 1—100

I HAVE great wonder by this light,  
How I live, for day ne night  
I may not sleepe welnigh nought;  
I have so many an idle thought,  
Purely for default of sleepe,  
That, by my trouth, I take no keepe  
Of nothing, how it commeth or gothe.  
To me n'is nothing lefe nor lothe,  
All is yliche good to me,  
Joy or sorrow, where so it be:  
For I have feeling in nothing,  
But as it were a mased thing,  
All day in point to fall adoun,  
For sorrowfull imaginaicoun  
Is alway wholly in my minde.

And well ye wote, against kinde  
It were to liven in this wise,  
For nature would not suffice  
To none earthly creature,  
Not long time to endure  
Without sleepe, and be in sorrow:  
And I ne may, ne night ne morrow,  
Sleepe, and this melancolie  
And drede I have for to die,  
Default of sleepe and heavinesse  
Hath slaine my spirit of quickenesse,  
That I have lost all lustyhead;  
Such fantasies ben in mine head,  
So I n'ot what is best to do:  
But men might aske me why so  
I may not sleepe, and what me is!

But nathelesse, who aske this,  
Leseth his asking truly,  
My selven cannot tell why  
The sooth, but truly as I gesse,  
I hold it be a sickenesse  
That I have suffred this eight yere,  
And yet my boot is never the nere:  
For there is phisicien but one,  
That may me heale, but that is done:  
Passes we over untill este,  
That will not be mote needs be lefte;  
Our first matter is good to keepe.

So whan I saw I might not sleepe,  
Now of late this other night  
Upon my bed I sate upright,  
And bade one reach me a booke,  
A romaunce, and he it me tooke  
To rede, and drive the night away:  
For me thought it better play,

Than either at chesse or tables.

And in this booke were written fables,  
That clerkes had in old time,  
And other poets put in rime,  
To rede, and for to be in mind,  
While men loved the law of Kinde.  
This booke ne spake but of such things,  
Of queenes lives, and of kings,  
And many other things smale.  
Among all this I found a tale,  
That me thought a wonder thing.

This was the tale: There was a king  
That hight Seys, and had a wife,  
The best that might beare life,  
And this queene hight Alcione,  
So it befell, thereafter soone  
This king woll wenden over see:  
To tellen shortly, whan that he  
Was in the see, thus in this wise,  
Such a tempest gan to rise,  
That brake her mast, and made it fall,  
And cleft her ship, and dreint hem all,  
That never was found, as it tels,  
Bord, ne man, ne nothing els.  
Right thus this king Seys lost his life.

Now for to speake of Alcione his wife:

This lady that was left at home,  
Hath wonder that the king ne come  
Home, for it was a long terme:  
Anon her herte began to yerne,  
And for that her thought evermo  
It was not wele, her thought so,  
She longed so after the king,  
That certes it were a pitous thing  
To tell her heartely sorrowfull life,  
That she had, this noble wife,  
For him, alas! she loved alderbest,  
Anon she sent both east and west  
To seeke him, but they found him nought.

"Alas," (quod she) "that I was wrought,  
Whether my lord my love be dead,  
Certes I nill never eat bread,  
I make a vow to my God here,  
But I mowe of my lord here."

Such sorrow this lady to her tooke,  
That truly I that made this booke,  
Had such pitie and such routh  
To rede her sorrow, that by my trouth,  
I farde the worse all the morrow  
After, to thinken on her sorrow.

So whan this lady coud here no word  
That no man might find her lord,  
Full oft she swowned, and said "Alas!"  
For sorrow full nigh wood she was,  
Ne she coud no rede but one,  
But downe on knees she sate anone,  
And wept, that pitie were to here.

"A mercy, sweet lady dere!"  
(Quod she) to Juno her goddesse,  
"Helpe me out of this distresse,  
And yeve me grace my lord to see  
Soone, or wete where so he bee,  
Or how he fareth or in what wise,  
And I shall make you sacrifice,  
And holy yours become I shall,  
With good will, body, herte, and all;  
And but thou wilt this, lady swete,  
Send me grace to slepe and mete  
In my sleepe some certain sweven,  
Where through that I may know even  
Whether my lord be quicke or dead."

With that word she hing downe the head,  
And fell in a swowne, as cold as stone;  
Her women caught her up anone,  
And brought her in bed all naked,  
And she, forweped and forwaked,  
Was weary, and thus the dead sleepe  
Fell on her or she tooke keepe,  
Through Juno, that had heard her boone,  
That made her to slepe soone;  
For as she praide, right so was done  
Indeed, for Juno right anone  
Called thus her messengere  
To do her errand, and he come nere;

Whan he was come she bad him thus:  
"Go bet" (quod Juno) "to Morpheus,  
"Thou knowest him well, the god of sleepe,  
Now understand well, and take keepe;  
Say thus on my halfe, that hee  
Go fast into the great see,  
And bid him that on all thing  
He take up Seys body the king,  
That lieth full pale, and nothing rody,  
Bid him creepe into the body,  
And do it gone to Alcione,  
The queene, there she lieth alone,  
And shew her shortly, it is no nay,  
How it was dreint this other day,  
And do the body speake right so,  
Right as it was wonted to do,  
The whiles that it was alive;  
Go now fast, and hye thee blive."

This messenger took leve and went  
Upon his way, and never he stent  
Till he came to the darke valley  
That stant betweene rockes twey,  
There never yet grew corne ne gras,  
Ne tree, ne naught that aught was,  
Beast ne man, ne naught els,  
Save that there were a few wels  
Came renning fro the cliffes adowne,  
That made a deadly sleeping sowne,  
And rennen downe right by a cave,  
That was under a rocke ygrave  
Amid the valley wonder deepe,  
There these goddes lay asleepe,  
Morpheus and Eclympasteire,  
That was the god of sleepes heire,  
That slept, and did none other werke.

This cave was also as derke

As Hell pitte, over all about  
They had good leysse for to rout,  
To vye who might sleepe best,  
Some hing hir chin upon hir brest,  
And slept upright hir head yhed,  
And some lay naked in hir bed,  
And slept whiles their daies last.

This messenger come renning fast,  
And cried "Ho, ho, awake anone!"  
It was for nought, there heard him none.  
"Awake!" (quod he) "who lieth there!"  
And blew his horne right in hir ear,  
And cried "Awaketh!" wonder hye.

This god of sleepe, with his one eye,  
Cast up, and asked "Who clepeth there?"  
"It am I," (quod this messengere)  
"Juno bade thou shouldest gone,"  
And told him what he should done,  
As I have told you here before,  
It is no need rehearse it more,  
And went his way whan he had saide:

Anone, this god of sleepe abraide  
Out of his sleepe and gan to go;  
And did as he had bidde him do;  
Tooke up the dead body soone,  
And bare it forth to Alcione,  
His wife the queene, there as she lay,  
Right even a quarter before day,  
And stood right at her beds fete,  
And called her right as she hete  
By name, and said, "My swete wife,  
Awake! let be your sorrowfull life,  
For in your sorrow there lyeth no rede,  
For certes, sweet love, I am but dede,  
Ye shall me never on live ysee.  
But, good sweet herte, looke that yee  
Bury my body, for such a tide  
Ye move it fnd the see beside,  
And farewell sweet, my worlds blisse,  
I pray God your sorrow lisse;  
Too little while our blisse lasteth."

With that her eyen up she casteth,  
And saw naught: "Alas!" (quod she) for sorrow  
And died within the third morrow.

But what she said more in that swowe,  
I may not tell it you as now,  
It were too long for to dwell;  
My first mattere I will you tell,  
Wherefore I have told you this thing,  
Of Alcione, and Seis the king.

For thus much dare I say wele,  
I had be dolven every dele,  
And dead, right through default of sleepe,  
If I ne had red, and take kepe  
Of this tale next before,  
And I will tell you wherefore,  
For I ne might for bote ne bale  
Sleepe, or I had redde this tale  
Of this dreint Seis the king,  
And of the gods of sleeping.

Whan I had red this tale wele,  
And overlooked it everydele,  
Me thought wonder if it were so,  
For I had never heard speake or tho  
Of no gods, that coud make  
Men to sleepe, ne for to wake,  
For I ne knew never God but one,  
And in my game I said anone,  
And yet me list right evill to pley,  
Rather than that I should dey

Through default of sleeping thus,  
 I would give thilke Morpheus,  
 Or that goddesse dame Juno,  
 Or some wight els, I ne rought who,  
 To make me slepe and have some rest,  
 I will give him the alther best  
 Yeft, that ever he abode his live,  
 And here onward, right now as blive,  
 If he woll make me sleepe alite,  
 Of downe of pure doves white,  
 I woll yeve him a featherbed,  
 Raied with gold, and right well cled,  
 In fine blacke sattin d'outremere,  
 And many a pillow, and every bere,  
 Of cloth of raines to slepe on soft,  
 Him there not need to turne oft,  
 And I woll yeve him al that fals  
 To his chamber and to his hals,  
 I woll do paint with pure gold,  
 And tapite hem full manyfold,  
 Of one sute this shall he have  
 If I wist where were his cave,  
 If he can make me sleepe soone,  
 As did the goddesse queene Alcione,  
 And thus this ilke god Morpheus  
 May win of me mo fees thus  
 Than ever he wan : and to Juno,  
 That is his goddesse, I shall so do,  
 I trowe that she shall hold her paid.

I had unneth that word ysaid,  
 Right thus as I have told you,  
 That suddainly I n'ist how,  
 Such a lust anone me tooke  
 To sleepe, that right upon my booke  
 I fell a sleepe, and therewith even  
 Me mette so inly such a sweven,  
 So wonderfull, that never yet  
 I trowe no man had the wit  
 To conne well my sweven rede.

No, not Joseph without drede  
 Of Egypt, he that rad so  
 The kinges meting, Pharao,  
 No more than could the least of us.

Ne nat scarcely Macrobeus,  
 He that wrote all the avision  
 That he mette of king Scipion,  
 The noble man, the Affrican,  
 Such mervailles fortunited than,  
 I trow arede my dreames even,  
 Lo, thus it was, this was my sweven.

Me thought thus, that it was May,  
 And in the dawning there I lay,  
 Me mette thus in my bed all naked,  
 And looked forth for I was waked,  
 With smale foules a great hepe,  
 That had afraied me out of my slepe,  
 Through noise and awestnesse of hir song,  
 And as me mette, they sat among  
 Upon my chamber rooffe without  
 Upon the tyles over all about.  
 And everiche song in his wise  
 The most solemne servise  
 By note, that ever man I trow  
 Had heard, for some of hem sung low,  
 Some high, and all of one accord,  
 To tell shortly at o word,  
 Was never heard so sweet steven,  
 But it had be a thing of Heven,  
 So merry a sowne, so sweet entunes,  
 That certes for the towne of Tewnes

I n'olde but I had heard hem sing,  
 For all my chamber gan to ring,  
 Through singing of hir ermony,  
 For instrument nor melody  
 Was no where heard yet halfe so swete,  
 Nor of accord halfe so mete,  
 For there was none of hem that fained  
 To sing, for ech of hem him pained  
 To find out many crafty notes,  
 They ne spared nat hir throtes ;  
 And, sooth to saine, my chamber was  
 Full well depainted, and with glas  
 Were all the windowes well yglased  
 Full clere, and nat an hole ycrased,  
 That to behold it was great joy,  
 For holy all the story of Troy  
 Was in the glaising ywrought thus,  
 Of Hector, and of king Priamus,  
 Of Achilles, and of king Laomedon,  
 And eke of Medea and Jason,  
 Of Paris, Heleine, and of Lavine,  
 And all the wals with colours fine  
 Were paint, both text and gloce,  
 And all the Romaunt of the Rose ;  
 My windowes weren shit echone,  
 And through the glasse the Sunne shone  
 Upon my bed with bright bemes,  
 With many glad glidy stremes,  
 And eke the welkin was so faire,  
 Blew, bright, clere was the aire,  
 And full attempre, for sooth it was,  
 For neyther too cold ne hote it n'as,  
 Ne in all the welkin was no cloud.

And as I lay thus, wonder loud  
 Me thought I heard a hunte blow  
 T'assay his great horne, and for to know  
 Whether it was clere, or horse of sowne.

And I heard going both up and downe  
 Men, horse, hounds, and other thing,  
 And all men speake of hunting,  
 How they would slee the hart with strength,  
 And how the hart had upon length  
 So much enbosed, I n'ot now what.

Anon right whan I heard that,  
 How that they would on hunting gone,  
 I was right glad, and up anone,  
 Tooke my horse, and forth I went  
 Out of my chamber, I never stent  
 Till I come to the field without,  
 There overtooke I a great rout  
 Of hunters and eke forresters,  
 And many relaies and limers,  
 And highed hem to the forrest fast,  
 And I with hem, so at the last  
 I asked one lad, a lymere,  
 " Say, fellow, who shall hunte here !"  
 (Quod I) and he answered ayen,  
 " Sir, the emperour Octavien "  
 (Quod he) " and is here fast by."

" A goddes halfe, in good time," (quod I)  
 Go we fast, and gan to ride ;  
 Whan we come to the forrest aide,  
 Every man did right soone,  
 As to hunting fell to done.

The maister hunte, anone, fote hote  
 With his horne blew three mote  
 At the uncoupling of his houndis,  
 Within a while the hart found is,  
 Yhallowed, and rechased fast  
 Long time, and so, at the last,

This hart roused and stale away  
 Fro all the hounds a previe way.  
 The hounds had overahot him all,  
 And were upon a default yfall,  
 Therewith the hunte wonder fast  
 Blew a forloyn at the last ;  
 I was go walked fro my tree,  
 And as I went, there came by me  
 A ~~whelp~~, that fawned me as I stood,  
 That had yfollowed, and couod no good,  
 It came and crept to me as low,  
 Right as it had me yknow,  
 Held downe his head, and joynd his eares,  
 And laid all smooth downe his heares.

I would have caught it anone,  
 It fled and was fro me gone,  
 As I him followed, and it forth went  
 Downe by a floury grene it went  
 Full thicke of grasse, full soft and sweet,  
 With floures fele, faire under feet,  
 And little used, it seemed thus,  
 For both Flora and Zepherus,  
 They two, that make floures grow,  
 Had made hir dwelling there I trow,  
 For it was on to behold,  
 As though the earth envye wold  
 To be gayer than the heven,  
 To have mo floures such seven  
 As in the welkin sterres be,  
 It had forgot the poverte  
 That winter, through his cold morrowes,  
 Had made it suffer, and his sorrowes ;  
 All was foryeten, and that was scene,  
 For all the wood was woxen greene,  
 Sweetnesse of dewe had made it waxe.

It is no need eke for to axe  
 Where there were many greene greves,  
 Or thicke of trees so full of leves,  
 And every tree stood by himselfe  
 Fro other, well tenne foot or twelve,  
 So great trees, so huge of strength,  
 Of fortie or fiftie fadome length,  
 Cleane without bowe or sticke,  
 With croppes brode, and eke as thicke,  
 They were not an inch asunder,  
 That it was shadde over all under,  
 And many an hart and many an hind  
 Was both before me and behind,  
 Of fawnes, sowers, buckes, does,  
 Was full the wood, and many roes,  
 And many squirrels, that sete,  
 Full high upon the trees and ete,  
 And in hir manner made feasts :  
 Shortly, it was so full of beasts,  
 That though Argus, the noble countour,  
 Sate to reckon in his countour,  
 And reckon with his figures ten,  
 For by tho figures newe all ken  
 If they be craftie, reckon and nombre,  
 And tell of every thing the nombre,  
 Yet should he faile to reckon even  
 The wonders me met in my sweven :  
 But forth I romed right wonder fast  
 Downe the wood, so at the last  
 I was ware of a man in blacke,  
 That sate, and had yturned his backe  
 To an oke, an huge tree :  
 "Lord," thought I, "who may that bee ?  
 What eyleth him to sitten here ?"  
 Anon right I went nere,

Than found I sitte, even upright,  
 A wonder wel-faring knight,  
 By the manner me thought so,  
 Of good mokel, and right yonge thereto,  
 Of the age of foure and twentie yeere,  
 Upon his beard but little heere,  
 And he was clothed all in blacke.  
 I stalked even unto his backe,  
 And there I stood as still as ought,  
 The sooth to say, he saw me nought,  
 For why he hing his head adowne,  
 And with a deadly sorrowfull sowne,  
 He made of rime ten verses or twelve,  
 Of a complaint to himselfe,  
 The most pitie, the most routh,  
 That ever I heard, for, by my trouth,  
 It was great wonder that nature  
 Might suffer any creature  
 To have such sorrow, and he not ded:  
 Full pitous pale, and nothing red,  
 He said a lay, a manner song,  
 Without note, without song  
 And was this, for full well I can  
 Rehearse it, right thus it began.

"I have of sorrow so great wone,  
 That joy get I never none,  
 Now that I see my lady bright,  
 Which I have loved with all my might,  
 Is fro me dead, and is agone,  
 And thus in sorrow left me alone.  
 Alas, Death, what eyleth thee,  
 That thou n'oldest have taken me,  
 Whan that thou tooke my lady swete ?  
 Of all goodnesse she had none mete,  
 That was so faire, so fresh, so free,  
 So good, that men may well see."

Whan he had made thus his complaint,  
 His sorrowfull herte gan fast faint,  
 And his spirits wexen dead,  
 The blood was fled for pure dread  
 Down to his herte, to maken him warme,  
 For well it feeled the herte had harme,  
 To wete eke why it was adrad  
 By kinde, and for to make it glad,  
 For it is member principall  
 Of the body, and that made all  
 His hewe chaunge, and wexe grene  
 And pale, for there no blood is scene  
 In no manner limme of his.

Anon, therewith, whan I saw this,  
 He farde thus evill there he sete,  
 I went and stood right at his fete,  
 And grette him, but he spake nought  
 But argued with his owne thought,  
 And in his wit disputed fast,  
 Why, and how his life might last,  
 Him thought his sorrowes were so smart,  
 And lay so cold upon his herte.

So, through his sorrow, and holy thought,  
 Made him that he heard me nought,  
 For he had welnigh lost his minde,  
 Though Pan, that men clepeth god of kinde,  
 Were for his sorrowes never so wroth.

But at the last, to faine right sooth,  
 He was ware of me, how I stood  
 Before him and did off my hood,  
 And had ygret him, as I best couod  
 Debonairly, and nothing loud,  
 He said, "I pray thee, be not wroth,  
 I heard thee not, to saine the sooth,

Ne I saw the not, sir, truly."

"Ah, good sir, no force," (quod I)

"I am right sorry, if I have ought  
Distroubled you out of your thought,  
Foryeve me, if I have misse-take."

"Yes, thamends is light to make"

(Quod he) "for there lithe none thereto,  
There is nothing mis-saide, nor do."

Lo, how goodly spake this knight,  
As it had be another wight,  
And made it neyther tough ne queint,  
And I saw that, and gan me acqueint  
With him, and found him so tretable,  
Right wonder skillfull and reasonable,  
As me thought, for all his bale,  
Anon right I gan find a tale  
To him, to looke where I might ought  
Have more knowledging of his thought.

"Sir," (quod I) "this game is done,  
I holde that this hart be gone,  
These hunes can him no where see."

"I do no force thereof," (quod he)

"My thought is thereon never adele."

"By our lord," (quod I) "I trow you wele,

Right so me thinketh by your chere,  
But, sir, o thing woll ye here,  
Me thinketh in great sorrow I you see,

But certes, sir, if that ye

Would aught discovre me your wo,

I would, as wise God helpe me so,

Amend it, if I can or may,

Ye mowe prove it by assay,

For, by my trouthe, to make you hole,

I woll do all my power whole,

And telleth me of your sorrowes smart,

Paraunter it may ease your herte,

That semeth full sickle under your side."

With that he looked on me aside,

As who saith nay, that n'll not be.

"Graunt mercy, good friend," (quod he)

"I thanke thee that thou wouldest so,

But it may never the rather be do,

No man may my sorrow glade,

That maketh my hew to fall and fade,

And hath my understanding lorne,

That me is wo that I was borne,

May nought make my sorrowes slide,

Not all the remedies of Ovide,

Ne Orpheus, god of melodie,

Ne Dedalus with his playes slic,

Ne heale me may no phisicien,

Nought Ipcraas, ne Galien,

Me is wo that I live houres twelve,

But who so woll assay himselfe,

Whether his herte can have pite

Of any sorrow let him see me,

I wretch that death hath made all naked

Of all the blisse that ever was maked,

Ywroth werste of all wights,

That hate my dayes and my nights,

My life, my lustes, be me loth,

For all fare and I be wroth,

The pure death is so full my fo,

That I would die, it will not so,

For whan I follow it, it will fle,

I would have him, it n'll not me,

This is pain without reed,

Alway dying, and be not deed,

That Tesiphus, that lieth in Hell,

May not of more sorrow tell :

And who so wist all, by my trouthe,

My sorrow, but he had routh

And pitie of my sorrowes smart,

That man hath a fiendly herte :

For whoso seeth me first on morrow,

May saine he hath met with sorrow.

For I am sorrow, and sorrow is I,

Alas, and I will tell thee why,

My sorrow is tourned to plaining,

And all my laughter to weeping,

My glad thoughts to heavynesse,

In travaille is mine idlenesse,

And eke my rest, my wele is wo,

My good is harme, and evermo

In wrath is tourned my playing,

And my delite into sorrowing,

Mine heale is tourned into sicknesse,

In dred is all my sikernesse,

To derke is turned all my light,

My witte is foly, my day is night,

My love is hate, my slepe wakyng,

My mirth and meales is fastyng,

My countenance is nicete,

And all abawed, where so I be,

My peace pleding, and in werre

Alas, how might I fare werre !

"My boldnesse is turned to shame,

For false Fortune hath played a game

At the chesse with me, alas the while,

The trayteresse false, and full of gile,

That al behoteth, and nothing halte,

She gothe upright, and yet she halte,

That baggeth foule, and loketh fayre,

The dispitous debonaire,

That scorneth many a creature,

An ydole of false purtraiture

Is she, for she woll some wryen,

She is the monstres heed ywryen,

As filth over ystrowed with floures,

Her most worship and her floures

To lyen, for that is her nature,

Without faith, lawe, or mesure,

She false is, and ever laughing

With one eye, and that other weping,

That is brought up, she set al downe :

I liken her to the ~~scorpiowne~~,

That is a false flattering beest,

For with his head he maketh feest,

But all amid his flatering,

With his taile he will sting

And envenim, and so will she :

She is the envious Charite,

That is aye false, and semeth wele,

So turneth she her false whele

About, for it is nothing stable,

Now by the fire, now at table,

Full many one hath she thus yblent,

She is play of enchantment,

That seemeth one, and is not so,

The false thefe, what hath she do,

Trowest thou ! by our Lord, I will thee say :

At the chesse with me she gan to play,

With her false draughtes full divers

She stale on me, and toke my fers,

And whan I sawe my fers away,

Alas, I couth no longer play,

But said, "Farewell sweet ywis,

And farewell all that ever there is :"

Therewith Fortune said, "Checke here,"

And mate in the mid point of the checkere,



With a paune errant, alas,  
Full craftier to play she was  
Than Athalus, that made the game  
First of the chesse, so was his name :  
But God wolde I had ones or twice,  
Yconde, and know the jeopardise,  
That coude the Greke Pythagores,  
I shulde have plaide the bet at ches,  
And kept my fers the bet thereby,  
And though whereto, for trewly,  
I hold that wishe not worthe a stre,  
It had be never the bet for me,  
For Fortune can so many a wyle,  
There be but few can her begile,  
And eke she is the lasse to blame,  
My selfe I wolde have do the same,  
Before God, had I been as she,  
She ought the more excused be,  
For this I say yet more thereto,  
Had I be God, and might have do,  
My will, whan she my fers caught,  
I wold have drawe the same draught :  
For also wise, God give me reste,  
I dare well swere, she toke the best,  
But through that draught I have lorne  
My blisse, alas, that I was borne !  
For evermore, I trowe trewly,  
For all my will, my lust wholly  
Is turned, but ye, what to done,  
By our Lorde it is to die sone :  
For nothing I leave it nought,  
But live and die, right in this thought.  
For there n'is planet in firmament,  
Ne in ayre ne in erth none element,  
That they ne yeve me a yeff echone,  
Of weping whan I am alone :  
For whan that I advise me wele,  
And bethinke me everydele,  
How that there lieth in rekening,  
In my sorrow for nothing,  
And how there liveth no gladnesse  
May glad me of my distresse,  
And how I have lost suffisaunce,  
And thereto I have no pleasaunce,  
Than may I say, I have right nought ;  
And whan al this falleth in my thought,  
Alas, than am I overcome,  
For that is done, is not to come ;  
I have more sorrow than Tantara.

And I herde him tell this tale  
Thus pitously, as I you tell,  
Unneth might I lenger dwell :  
It did mine herte so much wo.

"A good sir," (quod I) "say nat so,  
Have some pitie on your nature,  
That fourmed you to creature,  
Remembreth you of Socrates,  
For he counted not three strees  
Of nought that Fortune coude do."

"No," (quod he) "I can not so."  
"Why, good sir, yes parde," (quod I)  
"Ne say not so for truely,  
Though ye had lost the feesers twelve  
And ye for sorrow murred your selve,  
Ye should be dampned in this cas,  
By as good right as Medea was,  
That slough her children for Jason,  
And Phyllis also for Demophon  
Hing her selfe, so welaway,  
For he had broke his terme day

To come to her: another rage  
Had Dido, the quene eke of Cartage,  
That alough her selfe for Eneas  
Was false, which a foole she was :  
And Egeo died for Narcissus  
N'olde nat love her, and right thus  
Hath many another folly done,  
And for Dalida died Sampson,  
That alough himselfe with a pillere,  
But there is no man alive here  
Would for hir fers make this wo."

"Why so I" (quod he) "it is not so,  
Thou wotest full little what thou mement,  
I have lost more than thou weneest :"

"How may that be" (quod I)

"Good sir, tell me all holy,  
In what wise, how, why and wherefore,  
That ye have thus your blisse lorn !"

"Blithely," (quod he) "come sit down,  
I tell thee upon a condition,  
That thou shalt holy with all thy wit  
Doe thine entent to hearken it."

"Yes sir :"—"Swere thy trouthe thereto,  
Gladly do, than hold here to."

"I shall right blithely, so God me save,  
Holy with all the wit I have,  
Here you as well as I can :"

"A goddes halfe," (quod he) and began.

"Sir," (quod he) "sith first I couth  
Have any manner wit fro youth,  
Or kindly understanding,  
To comprehend in any thing  
What Love was, in mine owne wit,  
Dredelesse I have ever yet  
Be tributarie, and yeve rent  
To Love holy, with good entent.  
And through pleasaunce become his thral,  
With good will, body, herte, and all,  
All this I put in his servage,  
As to my lord, and did homage,  
And full devoutly I praide him tho,  
He should beset mine herte so,  
That it pleasaunce to him were,  
And worship to my lady dere.

"And this was long, and many a yere  
(Ere that mine herte was set o where)

That I did thus, and n'ist why,  
I trowe it came me kindly,  
Paraunter I was thereto most able,  
As a white wall, or a table,  
For it is ready to catch and take  
All that men will therein make,  
Whether so men will portrey or paint,  
Be the werkes never so quaint.

"And thilke time I fared right so,  
I was able to have learned tho,  
And to have conde as well or better  
Paraunter either art or letter,  
But for love came first in my thought,  
Therefore I forgate it naught,  
I chees love to my first craft,  
Therefore it is with me left,  
For why, I tooke it of so yong age,  
That malice had my courage ;  
Not that time turned to nothing,  
Through too mokell knowledging,  
For that time youth my maistresse  
Governed me in idlenesse,  
For it was in my first youth,  
And tho full little good I couth,

For all my werkes were fitting  
That time, and all my thought varying,  
All were to me yliche good,  
That knew I tho, but thus it stood.

"It happed that I came on a day  
Into a place, there that I sey  
Truly, the fairest companie  
Of ladies, that ever man with eie  
Had seene together in o place,  
Shall I clepe it hap either grace,  
That brought me there I not but Fortune,  
That is to lien full commune,  
The false tratteresse perversee,  
God would I could clepe her werse,  
For now she wortheth me full wo,  
And I woll tell soone why so.

"Amonge these ladies thus echone,  
Sooth to saine, I saw one  
That was like none of the rout,  
For I dare swere, without dout,  
That as the summers Sunne bright  
Is fairer, clerer, and hath more light  
Than any other planet in Heven,  
The Moone, or the sterres seven,  
For all the world so had she  
Surmounten hem all of beaute,  
Of maner, and of comlinesse,  
Of stature, and of well set gladnesse,  
Of goodly heed, and so wel besey,  
Shortly what shall I more sey?  
By God and by his halowes twelve,  
It was my swete, right all her selve,  
She had so stedfast countenance,  
So noble porte, and maintenaunce:  
And Love, that well harde my bone, *delicous*  
Had espied me thus some,  
That she full soone in my thought,  
As helpe me God, so was I cought  
So sodainly, that I ne toke  
No maner counsaile, but at her loke,  
And at mine herte, for why her eyen  
So gladly I trowe mine herte seyne,  
That purely tho, mine owne thought,  
Said, it were better serve her for nought,  
Than with another to be wele.  
And it was soth, for every dele,  
I will anone right tell thee why.

"I sawe her daunce so comely,  
Carol and sing so swetely,  
Laugh, and play so womanly,  
And looke so debonairly,  
So goodly speke and so frendly,  
That certes I trowe that evermore,  
Nas sene so blisfull a tresore:  
For every heer on her heed,  
Sothe to say, it was not reed,  
Ne neither yelowne ne browne it nas,  
Me thought most like gold it was,  
And which eyen my lady had,  
Debonaire, good, glad, and and,  
Simple, of good mokel, not to wick, *delicous*  
Thereto her loke nas not aside,  
Ne overpart, but beset so wele.  
It drew and tooke up everydele  
All that on her gan behold,  
Her eyen semed anone she wold  
Have mercy, folly wenden so,  
But it was never the rather do,  
It nas no counterfete thing,  
It was her owne pure loking,

That the goddesse, dame Nature,  
Had made hem open by measure,  
And close, for were she never so glad,  
Her looking was not folish sprad,  
Ne wildely, though that she plaid,  
But ever me thought, her eyen said,  
By God my wrath is al foryeve.  
Therewith her list so well to live,  
That dulnesse was of her adrad,  
She n'as to sobre ne to glad,  
In all things more measure,  
Had never I trowe creature,  
But many one with her loke she herte,  
And that ate her full litel at herte:  
For she knew nothing of hir thought,  
But whether she knew, or knew it nought,  
Algate she ne rought of hem a stree,  
To get her love no nere n'as he  
That woued at home, than he in Inde,  
The formest was alway behinde;  
But good folke over all other,  
She loved as man may his brother,  
Of which love she was wonder large,  
In skilfull places that bere charge:  
But which a visage had she thereto,  
Alas, my herte is wonder wo,  
That I ne can discriven it;  
Mo lacketh both English and wit,  
For to undo it at the full;  
And eke my spirites bene so dull  
So great a thing for to devise;  
I have not wit that can suffice  
To comprehend her beaute,  
But thus much I dare sain, that she  
Was white, rody, fresh, and lifely hewed,  
And every day her beaute newed;  
And nigh her face was alderbest;  
For certes Nature had soch lest  
To make that faire, that truly she  
Was her chiefe patron of beaute,  
And chiefe ensample of all her werke  
And monster: for be it never so derke,  
Me thinketh I see her ever mo;  
And yet more over, though all tho  
That ever lived were now a live,  
Ne would have found to discrive  
In all her face a wicked signe,  
For it was sad, simple, and benigne.

"And soch a goodly swete speech,  
Had that swete, my lives leech,  
So frendly, and so well ygrounded  
Upon all reason, so well yfounded,  
And so tretable to all good,  
That I dare swere well by the rood,  
Of eloquence was never fonde  
So sweto a souning faconde,  
Ne trewer tonged, ne scorned lasse,  
Ne bet coude heale, that by the masse,  
I durst swere though the pope it songe,  
That there was never yet through her tonge,  
Man ne woman greatly harmid;  
As for her, was all harme hid:  
Ne lasse flattering in her worde,  
That purely her simple recorde,  
Was found as trowe as any bond,  
Or trouth of any mans hond.

"Ne chide she could never a dele,  
That knoweth all the world ful wele.  
But such a fairenesse of a necke,  
Had that swete, that bone nor breake

Nas there none seen that mis-satte,  
It was white, smoth, streight, and pure flatte,  
Without hole or canel bone,  
And by seming, she had none.

"Her throte, as I have now memoire,

Semed as a round toure of yvoire,  
Of good greatnesse, and not to grete;  
And faire white she hete,

That was my ladies name right,  
She was thereto faire and bright,  
She had not her name wrong,  
Right faire shoulders, and body long  
She had, and armes ever lith,  
Fattish, fleshy, nat great therewith,  
Right white hands, and nailes rede,  
Round brestes, and of good brede  
Her lippes were, a streight flatte backe,  
I knew on her none other lacke,  
That all her limmes n'ere pure sewing,

In as ferre as I had knowing;  
Thereto she could so well play  
What that her list, that I dare say  
That was like to torch bright,  
That every man may take of light  
Ynough, and it hath never the lesse  
Of maner and of comelinesse.

"Right so farde my lady dere,  
For every wight of her manere  
Mought catche ynough, if that he wold  
If he had eyen her to behold,  
For I dare sweare well, if that she  
Had among tenne thousand be,  
She wolde have be at the beste,  
A chefe myrrour of all the feste,  
Though they had stonde in a rowe,  
To mens eyen, that could have knowe,

For where so men had plaide or waked,  
Me thought the fellowship as naked  
Without her, that I saw ones,  
As a crowne without stones,  
Trewly, she was to mine eye,  
The solein fenix of Arabie,  
For there liveth never but one,  
Ne such as she ne know I none:

To speake of goodnesse, trewly she  
Had as moch debonaire  
As ever had Hester in the Bible,  
And more, if more were possible;  
And soth to sayne, therewithall  
She had a witte so generall,  
So whole enclined to all good,  
That al her witte was sette, by the rood,  
Without malice upon gladnesse,

And thereto I sawe never yet a lesse  
Harmefull than she was in doying,  
I say not that she ne had knowyng  
What harme was, or els she  
Had coulede no good, so thinketh me,  
And trewly, for to speake of trouth,  
But she had had, it had be routh;  
Thereof she had so moch her dele,  
And I dare saine, and swere it wele,  
That Trouth himselfe, over al and al,  
Had chose his maner principall  
In her, that was his resting place,  
Thereto she had the most grace,  
To have stedfast perseveraunce,  
And easy attempte governaunce,  
That ever I knew, or wist yet,  
So pure suffraunt was her wit;

And reason gladly she understood,  
It folowed wel, she coulede good,  
She used gladly to do wele,  
These were her maners every dele.

"Therewith she loved so wel right,  
She wrong do would to no wight,  
No wight might do her no shame,  
She loved so wel her own name.

"Her lust to hold no wight in hond,  
Ne be thou siker, she wold not fond,  
To holde no wight in balaunce,  
By halfe word ne by countenaunce;

But if men wold upon her lye,  
Ne sende men into Walakie,  
To Pruise, and to Tartarie,  
To Alissaundrie, ne into Turkie,  
And bidde him fast, anone that he  
Go hoodlesse into the drie see,  
And come home by the Carrenare.

"And sir, be now right ware,  
That I may of you here saine,  
Worship, or that ye come againe.

"She ne used no soch knackes smale,  
But therfore that I tell my tale,  
Right on this same I have said,  
Was wholly all my love laid,

For certes she was that swete wife,  
My suffisaunce, my lust, my life,  
Mine hope, mine heale, and all blesse,  
My worlds welfare, and my goddesse,  
And I wholly hers, and every dele."

"By our Lorde," (quod I) "I trowe you wele,  
Hardly, your love was wel beset,  
I n'ot how it might have do bet."

"Bet, ne not so wel," (quod he)

"I trowe sir," (quod I) "parde."

"Nay, leve it well:"—"Sir, so do I,  
I leve you wel, that trewly  
You thought that she was the best,  
And to behold the alderfairest,  
Who so had loked her with your eyen."

"With mine I nay, all that her seyen,  
Said and swore it was so,  
And though they ne had, I would tho  
Have loved best my lady free,

Though I had had al the beaute  
That ever had Alcibiades,  
And al the strength of Hercules,  
And thereto had the worthinesse  
Of Alisaunder, and all the richesse

That ever was in Babiloine,  
In Cartage, or in Macedoine,  
Or in Rome, or in Ninive,  
And thereto also hardy be

As was Hector, so have I joy,  
That Achilles slough at Troy,  
(And therfore was he slayne also  
In a temple, for both two  
Were slaine, he and Antilegius,

And so saith Dares Frigius  
For love of Polixena),  
Or ben as wise as Minerva,

I would ever, without drede,  
Have loved her, for I must nede.

"Nede I Nay, trewly I gabbe now,  
Nought nede, and I wold tellen how,  
For of good will mine herte it wold,  
And eke to love her, I was holde,  
As for the fayrest and the best,  
She was as good, so have I rest,

As ever was Penelope of Greece,  
Or as the noble wife Lucrece,  
That was the best, he telleth thus  
The Romaine, Titus Livius,  
She was as good, and nothing like,  
Though hir stories be autenlike,  
Algate she was as trewe as she.

"But wherefore that I tell thee?

Whan I first my lady sey,  
I was right yong, soth to sey,  
And full great need I had to lerne,  
Whan mine herte wolde yerne,  
To love it was a great emprise,  
But as my wit wolde best suffice,  
After my yong childely wit,  
Without drede I beset it,  
To love her in my best wise  
To do her worship and the servise  
That I coude tho, by my trouth,  
Without faining, eyther slouth,  
For wonder faine I wolde her see,  
So mokell it amended mee,  
That whan I sawe her amorowe  
I was wariashed of all my sorowe  
Of all day after, till it were eve,  
Me thought nothing might me greve,  
Were my sorowes never so smert,  
And yet she set so in mine herte,  
That by my trouth, I n'old nought  
For all this world, out of my thought  
Leave my lady, no trewly."

"Now, by my trouth, sir," (quod I)

"Me thinketh ye have such a chaunce,  
As shrift, without repentaunce."

"Repentaunce, nay fie!" (quod he)

"Shuld I now repent me  
To love, nay certes, than were I well  
Worse than was Achitofell,  
Or Antenor, so have I joy,  
The traitour that betrayed Troy:  
Or the false Ganellion,  
He that purchased the trayson  
Of Rouland and of Oliver:  
Nay, while I am alive here,  
I n'll forget her never mo."

"Now good sir," (quod I tho)

Ye have well told me here before,  
It is no need to rehearse it more,  
How ye saw her first, and where,  
But would ye tell me the manere,  
To her which was your first apoeche,  
Thereof I would you beseeche,  
And how she knew first your thought,  
Whether ye loved her or nought,  
And telleth me eke, what ye have lore,  
I herde you tell here before,  
Ye said, 'thou n'otest what thou meanest,  
I have lost more than thou weenest:'  
What losse is that?" (quod I tho)  
"N'il she not love you, is it so?  
Or have ye ought done amis,  
That she hath leftte you, is it this?  
For Goddes love tell me all."

"Before God," (quod he) "and I shall,

I say right as I have said,  
On her was all my love laid,  
And yet she n'ist it not never a dele,  
Not longe time, leve it wele,  
For by right siker, I durst nought  
For all this wrld tell her my thought,

Ne I wolde have trothed her trewly,  
For wost thou why, she was lady  
Of the body that had the herte,  
And whoso hath that may not asterte.

"But for to keepe me fro ydlenesse,  
Trewly I did my businesse  
To make songes, as I best coude,  
And oft time I song hem loude,  
And made songes, this a great dele,  
Although I coude nat make so wele  
Songes, ne knew the arte al,  
As coude Lamekes son, Tubal,  
That found out first the arte of songe,  
For as his brothers hammers ronge,  
Upon his anvelt, up and downe,  
Thereof he toke the first sowne.

"But Grekes saine of Pithagoras,  
That he the first finder was  
Of the art, Aurora telleth so,  
But thereof no force of hem two:  
Algate songes thus I made,  
Of my feling, mine herte to glade;  
And lo, this was alther first,  
I n'ot where it were the werst.

"Lord, it maketh mine herte light,  
Whan I thinke on that swete wight,  
That is so semely one to se,  
And wish to God it might so be  
That she wold hold me for her knight,  
My lady, that is so fayre and bright."

"Now have I told thee, soth to say  
My first song: upon a day,

I bethought me what wo  
And sorowe that I suffred tho,  
For her, and yet she wist it nought,  
Ne tell her durst I not my thought:  
Alas, thought I, I can no rede,  
And but I tell her I am but dede,  
And if I tel her, to say right soth,  
I am adradde she wold be wroth,  
Alas, what shal I than do?  
In this debate I was so wo,  
Me thought mine herte brast atwain,  
So at the last, sothe for to saine,  
I bethought me that Nature  
Ne formed never in creature  
So much beauty, trewly,  
And bounty without mercy.

"In hope of that, my tale I tolde,  
With sorowe, as that I never sholde,  
For nedes, and maugre mine heed  
I must have tolde her, or be deed:  
I n'ot well how that I began,  
Full yvell reherce it I can,  
And eke, as helpe me God withall,  
I trow it was in the dismall,  
That was the ten woundes of Egipt,  
For many a word I overskipt  
In my tale for pure fere,  
Lest my wordes mis-set were,  
With sorowfull herte and woundes dede,  
Soft and quaking for pure drede,  
And shame, and stinting in my tale,  
For ferde, and mine hew al pale,  
Full oft I wexte both pale and red,  
Bowing to her I hing the hed,  
I durst not ones loke her on,  
For wit, manner, and all was gone;  
I said, 'Mercy,' and no more,  
It n'as no game, it sate me sore.

"So at the last, soth to saine,  
Whan that mine herte was com againe,  
To tell shortly all my speech,  
With holt herte I gan her beseech  
That she wolde be my lady swete,  
And swore, and hertely gan her hete,  
Ever to be stedfast and trewe,  
And love her alway freshly newe,  
And never other lady have,  
And all her worship for to save,  
As I best coude, I sware her this,  
'For yours is all that ever there is,  
For evermore, mine herte swete,  
And never to false you, but I mete  
I n'il, as wise God helpe me so.'

"And whan I had my tale ydo,  
God wote, she acompted not a stre  
Of all my tale, so thought me,  
To tell shortly right as it is,  
Trewly her answer it was this,  
I can not now well countrefete  
Her wordes, but this was the grete  
Of her answer, she said nay  
All utterly ~~alas that day!~~

The sorow I suffered and the wo,  
That trewly Cassandra that so  
Bewayled the destruction  
Of Troy, and of Illion,  
Had never such sorow as I tho;  
I durst no more say thereto  
For pure feare, but stale away,  
And thus I lived full many a day,  
That trewly, I had no need,  
Fether than my beddes heed,  
Never a day to seche sorrow,  
I found it ready every morrow,  
For why I loved in no gere.

"So it befell another yere,  
I thought ones I would fonde,  
To doe her know and understonde  
My wo, and she well understood,  
That I ne wilned thing but good,  
And worship, and to keepe her name,  
Over all things, and drede her shame,  
And was so busie her to serve,  
And pitie were that I should sterve,  
Sith that I wilned no harme ywis.

"So whan my lady knew all this,  
My lady yave me all holy,  
The noble yeft of her mercy,  
Saving her worship by all ways,  
Dredelesse, I mene none other ways,  
And therewith she yave me a ring,  
I trowe it was the first thing,  
But if mine herte was ywaxe  
Glad that it is no need to axe.

"As helpe me God, I was as blive  
Raised, as fro death to live,

Of all happes the alderbest,  
The gladdest and the most at rest,  
For truly that swete wight,  
Whan I had wrong, and she the right,  
She would alway so goodly  
Foryeve me so debonairly,  
In all my youth, in all chaunce,  
~~She looke in her gouvernaunce,~~  
~~Therewith she was alway so true,~~  
Our joy was ever yliche newe,  
Our hertes were so even a paire,  
That never n'as that one contrarie  
To that other, for no wo  
For soth yliche they suffred tho.  
O blisse, and eke o sorow bothe,  
Yliche they were both glad and wrothe,  
All was us one, without were,  
And thus we lived full many a yere,  
So well, I can not tell how."

"Sir," (quod I) "where is she now?"  
"Now!" (quod he) and stinte anone,  
Therewith he woxe as dedde as stone,  
And saied, "Alas, that I was bore!  
That was the losse, that herebefore  
I tolde thee that I had lorne."

"Bethinke thee how I said here beforne,  
Thou woste full litle what thou menest,  
I have loste more than thou weneest.

"God wote alas, right that was she."  
"Alas sir, how, what may that be?" [trouth."  
"She is dedde;"—"Nay!"—"Yes, by my  
"Is that your losse? by God it is routhe."

And with that worde right anone,  
They gan to strake forth, all was done  
For that time, the hart huntynge.

With that me thought that this kyng,  
Gan homeward for to ride  
Unto a place was there beside,  
Which was from us but a lite,  
A long castell with walles white,  
By sainte Johan, on a rich hill,  
As me mette, but thus it fill.

Right thus me mette, as I yon tell,  
That in the castell there was a bell,  
As it had smitte houres twelve,  
Therewith I awoke my selve,  
And found me lying in my bedde,  
And the booke that I had redde,  
Of Alcione and Seis the kyng,  
And of the goddess of sleping,  
Yfound it in mine hond full even;  
Thought I, this is so quaint a sweven,  
That I would by processe of tyme,  
Fonde to put this sweven in ryme,  
As I can best, and that anon,  
This was my sweven, now it is done.

EXPLICIT.

## THE HOUSE OF FAME.

*in the p. 200*

In this booke is shewed how the deedes of all men and women, be they good or bad, are carried by report to posteritie

B. I. V. 1—108

God tourne us every dream to good,  
 For it is wonder thing, by the rood,  
 To my wit, what causeth swevens  
 On the morrow, or on evens,  
 And why the effect followeth of some,  
 And of some it shal never come,  
 Why that it is an avision,  
 And why this is a revelation,  
 Why this a dreame, why that a sweven,  
 And not to every man liche even;  
 Why this a fantome, why that oracles;  
 I n'ot; but whoso of these miracles  
 The causes know bet than I,  
 Define he, for I certainly  
 Ne can hem not, ne never thinko  
 To busie my wit for to swinke  
 To know of hir significations  
 The gendres, ne distinctions  
 Of the times of hem, ne the causes,  
 Or why this is more than that is,  
 Or yeve folkes complexions,  
 Make hem dreame of reflections,  
 Or else thus, as other saine,  
 For the great feeblennesse of hir brain,  
 By abstinence, or by sicknesse,  
 Prison, strife, or great distresse,  
 Or els by disordinaunce,  
 Or natural accustomaunce,  
 That some men be too curious  
 In studie, or melancolious,  
 Or thus, so inly full of drede,  
 That no man may him bote rede,  
 Or els that devotion  
 Of some, and contemplation  
 Causen such dreames oft,  
 Or that the cruell life unsoft  
 Of hem that loves leden,  
 Oft hopen much or dreden,  
 That purely hir impressions  
 Causen hem to have visions,  
 Or if spirits han the might  
 To make folke to dreame on night,  
 Or if the soule of proper kind  
 Be so perfit as men find,  
 That it wote what is to come,  
 And that he warneth all and some  
 Of everiche of hir adventures,  
 By avisions, or by figures,  
 But that our flesh hath no might  
 To understand it aright,  
 For it is warned too derkely,  
 But why the cause is, not wote I.  
 Well worth of this thing clerkes  
 That treaten of that and of other werkis,

For I of none opinion  
 N'll as now make mention,  
 But only that the holy rood  
 Tourne us every dreame to good,  
 For never sith I was borne,  
 Ne no man els me beforne,  
 Mette, I trow stedfastly,  
 So wonderfull a dreame as I.  
 The tenth day now of December,  
 The which, as I can remember,  
 I woll you tellen everydele,  
 But at my beginning, trusteth wele,  
 I woll make invocation,  
 With a devout speciall devotion,  
 Unto the god of sleepe anone,  
 That dwelleth in a cave of stone,  
 Upon a streame that commeth fro Lete,  
 That is a flood of Hell unswele,  
 Beside a fulke, that men clepe Cimerie,  
 There slepeth aye this god unmerie,  
 With his slepie thousand sonnys,  
 That alway to sleepe hir wonne is;  
 And to this god that I of rede,  
 Pray I, that he woll me spede  
 My sweven for to tell aright,  
 If every dreame stand in his might,  
 And he that mover is of all  
 That is and was, and ever shall,  
 So give hem joy that it here,  
 Or all that they dreame to yere,  
 And for to stand all in grace  
 Of hir loves, or in what place  
 That hem were levest for to stonde,  
 And shield hem from povertie and shoude,  
 And from every unhappe and disease,  
 And send hem that may hem please,  
 That taketh well and scorneth nought,  
 Ne it misdeme in hir thought,  
 Through malicious entention,  
 And who so through presumption,  
 Or hate, or scorne, or through envie,  
 Dispite, or jape, or felonie,  
 Misdeme it, pray I Jesus good,  
 Dreame he barefoot, or dreame he shood,  
 That every harme that any man  
 Hath had sith the world began,  
 Befall him thereof, or he sterve,  
 And graunt that he may it deserve.  
 Lo, with right such a conclusion,  
 As had of his avision  
 Cressus, that was king of Lide,  
 That high upon a gibbet dide,  
 This praiser shall he have of me,  
 I am no bette in charite.

Now herken, as I have you saied,  
What that I mette or I abraied,  
Of December the tenth day,  
Whan it was night, to slepe I lay,  
Right as I was wont to doone,  
And fell asleepe wonder soone,  
As he that was weary forgo  
On pilgrimage miles two  
To the corpes of saint Leonard,  
To maken lithe that erst was hard.

But as I slept, me mette I was  
Within a temple ymade of glas,  
In which there were mo images  
Of gold, standing in sundry stages,  
In mo rich tabernacles,  
And with perrie mo pinacles,  
And mo curious portraiturea,  
And queint manner of figures  
Of gold worke than I saw ever.

But certainly I n'ist never  
Where that it was, but well wist I,  
It was of Venus redely  
This temple, for in portreiture  
I saw anon right her figure  
Naked, fleeing in a see,  
And also on her head, parde,  
Her rose garland white and red,  
And her combe to kembe her hed,  
Her doves, and dan Cupido,  
Her blind sonne, and Vulcano,  
That in his face was full browne.

But as I romed up and downe,  
I found that on the wall there was  
Thus written on a table of bras.

"I woll now sing, if that I can,  
The armes, and also the man,  
That first came through his destinie  
Fugitive fro Troy the countrie,  
Into Itaille, with full much pine,  
Unto the stronds of Lavine:"  
And tho began the story anone,  
As I shall tellen you echone.

First, saw I the destruction  
Of Troy, through the Greeke Sinon,  
With his false untrue forswearings,  
And with his chere and his lesings  
Made a horse brought into Troy,  
By which Troyans lost all hir joy.

And after this was graved, alas,  
How Ilions castle assailed was  
And won, and king Priamus slaine,  
And Polites his sonne certaine,  
Dispitously of dan Pirrus.

And next that saw I how Venus,  
Whan that she saw the castle brend,  
Downe from Heaven she gan descend,  
And bad her sonne Eneas to flee,  
And how he fled, and how that he  
Escaped was from all the prees,  
And tooke his father, old Anchises,  
And bare him on his backe away,  
Crying "Alas, and welaway!"  
The which Anchises in his hand  
Bare tho the gods of the land,  
Thilke that unbrenned were.

Than saw I next all in fere,  
How Crusa, dan Eneas wife,  
Whom that he loved all his life,  
And her yong sonne lulo,  
And eke Ascanius also,

Fledden eke with dreerie chere,  
That it was pitie for to here,  
And in a forrest as they went,  
At a tournung of a went,  
How Crusa was ylost, alas!  
That rede not I, how that it was,  
How he her sought, and how her ghost  
Bad him fle the Greekes host,  
And said he must into Itaille,  
As was his destinie, sauns faile,  
That it was pitie for to heare,  
Whan her spirit gan appeare,  
The words that she to him saied,  
And for to keepe her sonne him praised

There saw I graven eke how he,  
His father eke, and his meine,  
With his ships gan to saile  
Toward the countrie of Itaille,  
As straight as they mighten go.

There saw I eke the cruell Juno,  
That art dan Jupiters wife,  
That hast yhated all thy life  
All the Troyan blood,  
Ren and cry as thou were wood  
On Eolus, the god of winds,  
To blown out of all kinds  
So loud, that he should drench  
Lord, lady, groomme, and wench  
Of all the Troyans nation,  
Without any of hir salvation.

There saw I such tempest arise,  
That every herte might agrie  
To see it painted on the wall.

There saw I eke graven withall  
Venus, how ye my lady dere,  
Weeping with full wofull chere,  
Praying Jupiter on hie  
To save and keepe that navie  
Of that Troyan Eneas,  
Sith that he her sonne was.

There saw I Joves Venus kisec,  
And graunted was the tempest lince.

There saw I how the tempest stent,  
And how with all pine he went,  
And prively tooke a rivage  
Into the countrie of Carthage,  
And on the morow how that he  
And a knight that height Achate,  
Metten with Venus that day,  
Going in a queint array,  
As she had be an hunteresse,  
With wind blowing upon her tressac,  
And how Eneas began to plaine,  
Whan he knew her, of his paine,  
And how his ships dreint were,  
Or els ylost, he n'ist where;  
How she gan him comfort tho,  
And bade him to Cartage go,  
And there he should his folke fiud,  
That in the sea were left behind,  
And shortly of this thing to pace,  
She made Eneas so in grace  
Of Dido, queene of that cowntre,  
That shortly for to tellen, she  
Became his love, and let him do  
All that wedding longeth to.  
What should I speake it more quaint,  
Or paine me my words to paint!  
To speake of love, it woll not be,  
I cannot of that faculte:

And eke to tellen of the manere  
How they first acquainted were,  
It were a long processe to tell,  
And over long for you to dwell.

There saw I grave, how Eneas  
Told to Dido every caas,  
That him was tidde upon the see.

And eft graven was how that she  
Made of him shortly at a word,  
Her life, her love, her lust, her lord,  
And did to him all reverence,  
And laid on him all the dispence,  
That any woman might do,  
Wening it had all be so,  
As he her swore, and hereby demed  
That he was good, for he such seemed.

Alas, what harme doth apparence,  
Whan it is false in existence !  
✓ For he to her a traitour was,  
Wherefore she slow her selfe, alas !

Lo, how a woman doth amis  
To love him that unknownen is,  
For by Christ, lo, thus it fareth,  
It is not all gold that glareth,  
For also brouke I well mine head,  
There may be under goodlihead  
Covered many a shreud vice,  
Therefore, be no wight so nice  
To take a love onely for chere,  
Or speech, or for friendly manere,  
For this shall every woman find,  
That some man of his pure kind  
Woll shewen outward the fairest,  
Till he have caught that what him leest,  
And than woll he causes find,  
And swere how she is unkind,  
Or false, or privie, or double was,  
All this say I by Eneas  
And Dido, and her nice leest,  
That loved all to soone a guest ;  
Wherefore, I woll say o proverbé,  
That he that fully knoweth the herbe,  
May safely lay it to his eie,  
Withouten drede this is no lie.

But let us speake of Eneas,  
How he betrayed her, alas,  
And left her full unkindly.

So whan she saw all utterly,  
That he would her of trouth faile,  
And wenden from her into Itaile,  
She gan to wring her handes two.

"Alas," (quod she) "that me is wo !  
Alas, is every man thus true,  
That every yere woll have a new,  
If it so long time endure,  
Or els three paraventure,  
And thus of one he woll have fame  
In magnifying of his owne name,  
Another for friendship sayeth he,  
And yet there shall the third be,  
That is taken for delite,  
Lo, or els for singular profite :"  
In such words gan complaine  
Dido of her great paine,  
As me mette dreaming readily,  
None other authour alledge woll I.

"Alas," (quod she) "my sweet herte,  
Have pitie on my sorrowes smart,  
And slee me not, go not away  
"O wofull Dido, welaway !"

(Quod she) unto her selfe tho :

"O Eneas, what woll ye do !  
O that your love ne your bond,  
That ye swore with your right hond,  
Ne my cruell death" (quod she)  
"May hold you still here with me !  
"O, have ye of my death no pite !  
Ywis mine owne deare herte ye  
"Now full well that never yet,  
As farre as ever I had wit,  
Agilt you in thought ne in dede.

"O, have ye men such goodlihedo  
In speech, and never a dele of trouth !  
Alas, that ever had routh  
Any woman on a false man !

"Now I see well, and tell can,  
We wretched women can no art,  
For certaine, for the more part ;  
Thus we been served everichone ;  
How sore that ye men can grone,  
Anon, as we have you received,  
Certainly we been deceived,  
For though your love last a season,  
Wait upon the conclusion,  
And eke how ye determine,  
And for the more part define,  
O welaway, that I was borne !  
For through you my name is lorne,  
And mine actes redde and song  
Over all this land in every tong.

"O wicked Fame ! for there n'is  
Nothing so swift lo, as she is,  
O sooth is, every thing is wist,  
Though it be coverde with the mist,  
Eke though I might duren over,  
That I have done recover I never,  
That it ne shall be said, alas,  
I shamed was through Eneas,  
And that I shall thus judged be :

"Lo, right as she hath done, now she  
Woll done eftsoones hardly."  
Thus say the people prively."  
But that is done, n'is not to done,  
But all her complaint ne her mone  
Certeine availeth her not a stre,  
And whan she wist soothly he  
Was forth into his ship agone,  
She into chamber went anone,  
And called on her suster Anne,  
And gan her to complaine than,  
And said, that she cause was  
That she first loved him, alas,  
And first counsailed her thereto  
But what, whan this was said and do,  
She rofte her selven to the herte,  
And deide through the wounds smart :  
But all the manner how she deide  
And all the words how she seide,  
Who so to know it hath purpose,  
Rede Virgile in Eneidos,  
Or the Pistels of Ovide,  
What that she wrote or that she dide,  
And nere it too long to erdite,  
By God, I would it here write.  
But welaway, the harme and routh  
That hath betide for such untrouth,  
As men may oft in bookes rede,  
And all day scene it yet in dede,  
That for to thinken it tene is.

Lo, Demophon, duke of Athenia.



How he forswore him falsely,  
 And 'traied Phillis wickedly,  
 That kings doughter was of Thrace,  
 And falsely gan his tearme pace,  
 And whan she wist that he was false,  
 She hong her selfe right by the halow,  
 For he had done her such untrouth,  
 Lo, was not this a wo and routh !  
 Eke, looke, how false and recheles  
 Was to Briscida Achilles,  
 And Paris to Oenone,  
 And Jason to Hipsiphile,  
 And eft Jason to Medea,  
 And Hercules to Dianira,  
 For he left her for Ioies,  
 That made him take his death, parde.

How false was eke Theseus,  
 That as the storie telleth us,  
 How he betraied Adriane,  
 The devill be his soules bauc,  
 For had he laughed or yloured,  
 He must have been all devoured,  
 If Adriane ne had be,  
 And, for she had of him pite,  
 She made him for the death escape,  
 And he made her a full false jape,  
 For after this within a while,  
 He left her sleeping in an ale,  
 Desart alone right in the see,  
 And stale away, and let her bec,  
 And tooke hir suster Phedra tho  
 With him and gan to ship go,  
 And yet he had sworne to here,  
 On all that ever he could swere,  
 That so she saved him his life,  
 He would taken her to his wife,  
 For she desired nothing els,  
 In certaine, as the booke us tels.

But for to excuse this Eneas  
 Fullliche of all his great trespas,  
 The booke saith, sauns faile,  
 The gods had him go to Itaille,  
 And leaven Affrickes regioun  
 And faire Dido and her toun.  
 Tho saw I grave how to Itaille  
 Dan Eneas gan for to saile,  
 And how the tempest all began,  
 And how he lost his steresman,  
 Which that the sterne, or he tooke kcepe,  
 Smote over the bord as he sleepe.

And also saugh I how Sibile  
 And Eneas beside an isle,  
 To Hell went for to see  
 His father Anchises the free,  
 And how he there found Palinurus,  
 And also Dido, and Deiplebus,  
 And everiche tourment eke in Hell  
 Saw he, which long is for to tell,  
 Which paines who so list to know,  
 He must rede many a row  
 In Vergile or in Claudian,  
 Or Dante, that it tellen can.

Tho saw I eke, all the arivaile  
 That Eneas had made in Itaille,  
 And with king Latin his treate,  
 And all the batailles that he  
 Was at himselfe and his knyghts,  
 Or he had all ywonne his righte,  
 And how he Turnus reft his life,  
 And wan Lavinia to his wif,

And all the marvellous signals  
 Of the gods celestials,  
 How maugre Juno, Eneas,  
 For all her sleight and her compas,  
 Acheved all his aventure,  
 For Jupiter tooke on him cure,  
 At the prayer of Venus,  
 Which I pray alway save us,  
 And us aye of our sorrowes light.

Whan I had seene all this sight  
 In this noble temple thus,  
 "Hey, lord," thought I, "that madest us,  
 Yet saw I never such noblesse  
 Of images, nor such richesse  
 As I see graven in this church,  
 But nought wote I who did hem worch,  
 Ne where I am, ne in what countree,  
 But now will I out gone and see  
 Right at the wicket if I can  
 Seene ought where sterring any man,  
 That may me tellen where I am."

Whan I out of the dore came,  
 I fast about me beheld,  
 Than saw I but a large field,  
 As farre as ever I might see,  
 Without toun, house, or tree,  
 Or bush, or grasse, or eared land,  
 For all the field was but of sand,  
 As small as men may see at eye  
 In the desart of Lybye,  
 Ne no manner creature,  
 That is yformed by nature,  
 Ne saw I, me to rede or visse :  
 "O Christ," thought I, "that are in blisse,  
 From fantome and illusion  
 Me save," and with devotion  
 Mine eyen to the Heaven I cast,  
 Tho was I ware, lo, at the last,  
 That fast by the Sunne on hye,  
 As kenne might I with mine eye,  
 Me thought I saw an egle sore,  
 But that it seemed much more  
 Than I had any egle ysein ;  
 This is as sooth as death certain,  
 It was of gold, and shone so bright,  
 That never saw men such a sight,  
 But if the Heaven had ywonne  
 All new of God another sonne,  
 So shone the egles fethers bright,  
 And somewhat downward gan it light.

EXPLICIT LIBER PRIMUS.

LIBER SECUNDUS.

B. II. V. 1-10

Now hearken every manner man  
 That English understand can,  
 And listeth of my dreame to here,  
 For now at erst shall ye here  
 So seiy and so dredefull a vision,  
 That I say neither Scipion,  
 Ne king Nabugodonosore,  
 Pharao, Turnus, ne Alcanore,  
 Ne metten such a dreame as this,  
 Now faire blisfull, O Cipria,

So be my favour at this time,  
That ye me t'endite and rime  
Helpeth, that in Pernaso dwell  
Beside Elicon the clere well.

O thought, that wrote all that I met,  
And in the tresorie it set  
Of my braine, now shall men see  
If any vertue in thee bee,  
To tell all my dreame aright ;  
Now kith thy engine and thy might !

This eagle of which I have you told,  
That with feathers shone all of gold,  
Which that so high gan to sore,  
I gan behold more and more,  
To seeme her beauty and the wonder  
But never was that dent of thunder,  
No that thing that men call soudre,  
That smite sometime a toure to poudre,  
And in his swift comming brend,  
That so swithe gan downward descend,  
As this foule, whan it beheld  
That I a rounge was in the field,  
And with his grim pawes strong,  
Within his sharpe nailes long,  
Me fleying at a swappe he hent,  
And with his sours againe up went,  
Me carying in his clawes starke,  
As lightly as I had ben a larken,  
How high I cannot tellen you,  
For I came up I n'ist never how,  
For so astonied and asweved  
Was every vertue in my heved,  
What with his sours and my dread,  
That all my feeling gan to dead,  
For why! it was a great affray.

Thus I long in his clawes lay,  
Till at the last he to me spake  
In mans voice, and said "Awake,  
And be not agast so for shame,"  
And called me tho by my name,  
And, for I should better abraid,  
Me to awake thus he said,  
Right in the same voice and stevin,  
That useth one that I can nevyn,  
And with that voice, sooth to saime,  
My mind came to me again,  
For it was goodly said to me,  
So nas it never wout to be ;  
And, herewithal, I gan to sterve,  
As he me in his feet bere,  
Till that he felt that I had heat,  
And felt eke tho mine herte beat,  
And tho gan he me to disport,  
And with gentle wordes me comfort,  
And said twice, "Saint Mary,  
Thou art a noyous thing to cary,  
And nothing needeth it, parde,  
For also, wise God helpe me,  
As thou no harme shalt have of this,  
And this case that betiddeth thee is  
For thy lore and for thy prow ;  
Let see, darst thou looke yet now !  
Be full ensured boldly,  
I am thy friend : " and there with I  
Gan for to wonder in my mind.  
O God," quod I : " that madest all kind,  
Shall I none otherwise die,  
Whether Jove will me stelliffe,  
Or what thing may this signifie !  
I am neither Enocke, ne Helie,

Ne Romulus, ne Ganimede,  
That were bore up, as men rede,  
To Heaven with dan Jupiter,  
And made the gods boteler : "  
Lo, this was tho my fantasie,  
But he that bare gan asprie  
That I so thought, and said this,  
" Thou deemest of thy selfe amis,  
For Jove is not thereabout,  
I dare thee put full out of doubt,  
To make of the yet a sterre,  
But ere I beare thee much ferre,  
I will thee tell what I am,  
And whider thou shalt, and why I came  
To do this, so that thou take  
Good herte, and not for feare quake."  
" Gladly," quod I : " Now well," quod he :  
" First, I that in my feet have the,  
Of whom thou hast feare and wonder,  
I am dwelling with the god of thonder,  
Which men callen Jupiter,  
That doth me flien full oft fer,  
To do all his commaundement,  
And for this cause he hath me sent  
To thee : herke now by thy trouth,  
Certaine he hath of thee routh,  
That thou hast so truly  
Long served ententifely  
His blind nevew Cupido,  
And faire Venus also,  
Without guerdon ever yet,  
And nathelesse hast set thy wit,  
Although in thy head full little is,  
To make bookes, songs, and dities  
In rime, or else in cadence,  
As thou best canst, in reverence  
Of Love, and of his servaunts eke,  
That have his service sought and seke,  
And painest thee to praise his art,  
Although thou haddest never part,  
Wherefore also, God me blesse,  
Jovis halt it great humblesse,  
And vertue eke, that thou wilt make  
A night full oft thine head to ake,  
In thy study so thou writest,  
And evermore of Love enditest,  
In honour of him and praisings,  
And in his folkes furtherings,  
And in hir matter all devisest,  
And not him ne his folke dispisest,  
Although thou maist go in the daunce  
Of hem that him list not avaunce ;  
Wherefore, as I said ywis,  
Jupiter considreth well this,  
And also beausire, of other things,  
That is, thou haste no tidings  
Of Loves folke, if they be glade,  
Ne of nothing else that God mado  
And not onely fro ferre countree  
That no tidings comen to thee,  
Not of thy very neighbours,  
That dwellen almost at thy dores,  
Thou hearest neither that ne this,  
For whan thy labour all done is,  
And hast made all thy rekenings,  
In stead of rest and of new things,  
Thou goest home to thine house anone,  
And also dombe as a stone  
Thou sittest at another booke,  
Till fully dased is thy looke,

And livest thus as an hermite,  
 Although thine abstinence is lite,  
 And therefore Jovis, through his grace,  
 Will that I beare thee to a place  
 Which that hight the House of Fame,  
 And to do the sport and game  
 In some recompensation  
 Of thy labour and devotion  
 That thou hast had, lo, causelesse,  
 To god Cupido the rechelesse ;  
 And thus this god through his merite  
 Will with some manner thing thee quite,  
 So that thou wilt be of good chere,  
 For trust well that thou shalt here,  
 When we ben comen there as I say,  
 Mo wonder things dare I lay,  
 And of Loves folke mo tidings,  
 Both soothsawes and lesings,  
 And mo loves new begon,  
 And long served till love is won,  
 And mo lovers casuelly,  
 That ben betide, no man wote why,  
 But as a blind man starteth an hare,  
 And more jolite and welfare,  
 While they find love of stele,  
 As thinke men, and over all wele,  
 Mo discords, and mo jealousies,  
 Mo murmures, and mo novelries,  
 And also mo dissimulations,  
 And eke fained reparations,  
 And mo berdes in two houres  
 Without rasour or sisours  
 Ymade, than graines be of sands,  
 And eke mo holding in mo hands,  
 And also mo renouelaunces  
 Of old forleten acquetaunces,  
 Mo love-daies, and mo accords  
 Than on instruments ben cords,  
 And eke of love mo exchangees,  
 Than ever corne were in graunges,  
 Unneth maigest thou trowen this,"  
 Quod he. "No, so helpe me God as wis,"  
 Quod I. "Now why?" quod he. "For it  
 Were impossible to my wit,  
 Though Fame had all the pries  
 In all a realme and all aspies,  
 How that yet he should heare all this,  
 Or they espie:"—"O yes, yes,"  
 Quod he, to me, "that can I preve  
 By reason, worthy for to leve,  
 So that thou give thine advertence  
 To understand my sentence.

"First shalt thou here where she dwelleth,  
 Right so as thine owne booke telleth,  
 Her palais standeth, as I shall say,  
 Right even amiddes of the way  
 Betweene Heaven, Earth, and see,  
 That whatsoever in all these three  
 Is spoken in prive or apert,  
 The way thereto is so overt,  
 And stant eke in so just a place,  
 That every sowne mote to it pace,  
 Or what so cometh from any tong,  
 Be rowned, red, or song,  
 Or spoken in suertie or drede,  
 Certaine it mote thider nede.  
 "Now hearken well, for why? I will  
 Tellen thee a proper skill,  
 And a worthy demonstration  
 In mine imagination.

"Geffray, thou wotest well this,  
 That every kindly thing that is,  
 Hath a kindly stede there he  
 May best in it conserved be,  
 Unto which place every thing,  
 Through his kindly enclining,  
 Meveth for to come to,  
 Whan that it is away therefro,  
 As thus, lo, how thou maist al day see,  
 Take any thing that heavie bee,  
 As stone or lead, or thing of weight,  
 And beare it never so hie on height,  
 Let go thine hand, it falleth downe.  
 Right so say I by fire or sowne  
 Or smoke, or other things light,  
 Alway they seeke upward on height,  
 Light things up, and downward charge,  
 While everich of hem be at large,  
 And for this cause thou maist well see,  
 That every river unto the see  
 Enclined is to go by kind,  
 And by these skilles, as I find,  
 Have fishes dwelling in flood and see,  
 And trees eke on the earth be ;  
 Thus every thing by his reason  
 Hath his own proper mansion,  
 To which he seeketh to repaire,  
 There as it should nat appaire.

"Lo, this sentence is knowne couth  
 Of every philosophers mouth,  
 As Aristotle and dan Platone,  
 And other clerkes many one,  
 And to confirme my reason,  
 Thou wost well that speech is soun,  
 Or else no man might it here,  
 Now herke what I wold thee here.

"Sowne is not but eyre ybroken,  
 And every speech that is spoken,  
 Loud or prive, foule or faire,  
 In his substaunce is but eyre,  
 For as flame is but lighted smoke,  
 Right so is sowne eyre ybroke,  
 But this may be in many wise,  
 Of which I will thee devise ;  
 As sowne commeth of pipe or harpe  
 For when a pipe is blown sharpe,  
 The eyre is twist with violence,  
 And rent ; lo, this is my sentence :  
 Eke, whan men harpe strings smite,  
 Wheder it be much or lite,  
 Lo, with a stroke the eyre it breketh,  
 And right so breaketh it whan men speaketh,  
 Thus, wost thou well, what thing is speech.  
 Now henceforth, I will thee teach  
 How everich speech, voice, or soun,  
 Through his multiplicatioun,  
 Though it were piped of a mouse,  
 Mote needs come to Fames House ;  
 I prove it thus, take heed now  
 By experience, for if that thou  
 Threw in a water now, a stone,  
 Well wost thou it will make, anone,  
 A little roundell as a circle,  
 Paraventure as broad as a covercle,  
 And right anone, thou shalt see wele,  
 That whele cerele wil cause another whele,  
 And that the third, and so forth brother,  
 Every cerele causing other,  
 Broader than himselfe was,  
 And thus from roundell to compas,

Ech about other going,  
 Causeth of others stering  
 And multiplying evermo,  
 Til it be so farre go  
 That it at both brinckes bee,  
 Although thou may it not see  
 Above, yet gothe it alway under,  
 Though thou thinke it a great wonder,  
 And who so saith of trouth I vary,  
 Bid him prove the contrary ;  
 And right thus every word ywis,  
 That loud or privie yspoken is,  
 Moveth first an eyre about,  
 And of his moving, out of dout,  
 Another eyre anone is moved ;  
 As I have of the water proved,  
 That every cercle causeth other,  
 Right so of eyre, my leve brother ;  
 Everich eyre in other stereth  
 More and more, and speech up beareth,  
 Or voice of noise, word or soun,  
 Aye through multiplication,  
 Till it be at the House of Fame ;  
 Take it in earnest or in game,  
 Now have I told, if thou have mind,  
 How speech or sowne, of pure kind  
 Enclined is upward to move ;  
 This maigest thou fele well by prove,  
 And that same stede ywis,  
 That every thing enclined to is,  
 Hath his kindliche stede,  
 That sheweth it without drede,  
 That kindly the mansioun  
 Of everich speche of every soun,  
 Be it either foule or faire,  
 Hath his kind place in aire,  
 And sith that every thing ywis,  
 Out of his kind place ywis,  
 Moveth thider for to go,  
 If it away be therefro,  
 As I have before proved thee.  
 It sheweth every sounne, pardu,  
 Moveth kindly to pace,  
 As up into his kind place ;  
 And this place of which I tell,  
 There as Fame list to dwell,  
 It sette amiddes of these three,  
 Heaven, Earth, and eke the see,  
 As most conservatife the soun ;  
 Than is this the conclusion,  
 That every speech of every man,  
 As I thee tell first began,  
 Moveth up on height to pace  
 Kindly to Fames place.

"Tell me this now faithfully,  
 Have I not proved thus simply,  
 Without any subtelte  
 Of speech, or great prolixite  
 Of termes of philosophy,  
 Of figures of poetry,  
 Or colours of rhetorike I  
 Perde, it ought thee to like,  
 For hard language, and hard matere  
 Is incombrous for to here  
 At ones, wost thou not well this ?"  
 And I answered and said "Yea."  
 "Ah, ah," quod he, "lo, so I can,  
 Loudly unto a leud man  
 Speke, and shew him such skilles,  
 That he may shake hem by the billes,

So palpable they shoulde be ;  
 But tel me this now pray I thee,  
 How thinketh thee my conclusioun ?"  
 "A good persuasion,"  
 Quod I, "it is, and lyke to be,  
 Right so as thou hast proved me,"  
 "By God," quod he, "and as I leve,  
 Thou shalt have it or it be eve,  
 Of every word of this sentence,  
 A profe by experience,  
 And with thine eares hearen well  
 Toppe and taile, and everidell,  
 That every word that spoken is,  
 Commeth into Fames House ywis,  
 As I have said, what wilt thou more ?"  
 And with this word upper to sore,  
 He began and said, "By saint Jame,  
 Now will we speake all of game.  
 How farrest thou now ?" quod he, to me  
 "Well," quod I. "Now sec," quod he,  
 "By thy trouth, yond adowne,  
 Where that thou knowest any towne,  
 Or house, or any other thing,  
 And whan thou hast of ought knowing,  
 Look that thou warne me,  
 And I anon shall tell thee  
 How farre that thou art now therefro."

And I adowne gan to loken tho,  
 And beheld fields and plaines,  
 Now hills, and now mountaines,  
 Now valeis, and now forcasts,  
 And now unneth great beests,  
 Now rivers, now citees,  
 Now townes, now great trees,  
 Now shippes sayling in the see.

But thus soone in a while hee,  
 Was flown fro the ground so hye,  
 That all the world, as to mine eye,  
 No more seemed than a pricke,  
 Or else was the eyre so thicke  
 That I might it not discern :  
 With that he spake to me so yerne,  
 And said : "Seest thou any token,  
 Or ought that in this world of spoken ?"

I said "Nay."—"No wonder is,"  
 Quod he, "for never halfe so hye as this,  
 N'as Alexander of Macedon  
 King, ne of Rome dan Scipion,  
 That saw in dreame at point devisc,  
 Heaven and Earth, Hell and Paradisc,  
 Ne eke the wretch Dedalus,  
 Ne his childe nice Icharus,  
 That flewe so hie that the hete  
 His wyngs molte, and he fell wete  
 In midde the sea, and there he dreint,  
 For whomf was made a great complaint.  
 "Now tourne upward," quod he, "thy face,  
 And behold this large place,  
 This eyre, but looke that thou ne bec  
 Adrad of hem that thou shalt see,  
 For in this regioun certayne,  
 Dwelleth many a citezeine,  
 Of which speaketh dan Plato,  
 These ben the cyrlike beests, lo."  
 And tho sawe I all the menie,  
 Both gone and also fle.

"Lo, quod he, cast up thyne eye,  
 See yonder lo, the galaxie,  
 The which men clepe the milky way,  
 For it is white : and some, parfay,

Callen it Watling streete,  
That ones was brent with the hete,  
When the Sunnes sonne the rede,  
That hight Pheton, would lede  
Algate his fathers cart, and gie.

"The cart horse gan well aspie,  
That he coud no governaunce,  
And gan for to leape and prauce,  
And beare him up, and now down,  
Till he saw the Scorpioun,  
Which that in Heaven a signe is yet,  
And he for fere lost his wit  
Of that, and let the reynes gone  
Of his horse, and they anone,  
Soon up to mount and downe discende,  
Till both eyre and Earth brende,  
Till Jupiter, lo, at the last,  
Him slew and fro the carte cast.

"Lo, is it not a great mischaunce  
To let a foole have governaunce  
Of things that he cannot demaine?"

And with his word, sothe for to saine,  
He gan alway upper to sore,  
And gladded me than more and more,  
So faithfully to me spake he.

Tho gan I to looke under me,  
And beheld the eyrish beests,  
Cloudes, mistes, and tempests,  
Snowes, hayles, raynes, and windes,  
And than gendring in hir kinde,  
All the way through which I came;  
"O God," quod I, "that made Adame,  
Moch is thy might and nobles!"

And tho thought I upon Boece,  
That writeth a thought may fle so hie  
With fethers of philosophy  
To passen everich element,  
And when he hath so far ywent,  
Than may be seen behind his backe,  
Cloude, and earth, and all that I of spake.

Tho gan I wexe in a were,  
And said, "I wote well I am here,  
But whether in body or in goost,  
I n'ot ywis, but God thou woost;"  
For more clere entendement,  
N'as me never yet ysent;  
And than thought I on Marcian,  
And eke of Anticlaudian,  
That sothe was hir descripcion  
Of all the Heavens region,  
As far as that I saw the preve,  
And, therefore, I can hem leve.

With that the egle gan to crie,  
"Let be," quod he, "thy fantasie,  
Wilt thou learne of sterres ought?"

"Nay certainly," quod I, "right nought."

"And why?" quod he. "For I am old."

"Or els would I thee have told,"

Quod he, "the sterres names, lo,

And all the Heavens signs to,

And which they be."—"No force," quod I.

"Yes, parde," quod he, "wost thou why?"

For whan thou redest poetry,  
How the goddes can stellify  
Birde, fishe, or him, or her,  
As the ravin and other,  
Or Ariones harpe fine,  
Castor, Polexe, or Delphine,  
Or Athalantes daughters seven,  
How all these are set in Heven,

For though thou have hem ofte in hand,  
Yet n'ost thou nat where they stand."

"No force," quod I, "it is no need,  
As well I leve, so God me speed,  
Hem that writen of this matere,  
As though I knew hir places here,  
And eke they semen here so bright,  
It should shenden all my sight,  
To look on hem:"—"That may well be,"  
Quod he, and so forth bare he me  
A while, and tho he gan to cry,  
(That never herde I thing so hie)  
"Hold up thy thine heed, for all is well,  
Saint Julian, lo, bonne hostell,  
See here the House of Fame, lo,  
Mayst thou not here that I do!"

"What?" quod I. "The great sowne"  
Quod he, "that rombleth up and downe  
In Fames House full of tidings,  
Both of fayre speech and chidings,  
And of false and sothe compouned,  
Herken well, it is not rowned.  
Herest thou not the great swough?"

"Yes, perde," quod I, "wel ynough.

"And what sowne is it like?" quod he.

"Parde, lyke the beating of the see,"

Quod I, "against the roches holow,  
Whan tempests done her shippes swolow,  
And that a man stand out of doute,  
A myle thens, and here it route.

"Or els lyke the humbling

After the clappe of a thundring,  
When Jovis hath the eyre ybete,  
But it doth me for feare swete."

"Nay, drede thee not thereof," quod he,

"It is nothing that will biten thee,  
Thou shalt have no harme truly."

And with that worde both he and I

As nigh the place arrived were,  
As men might cast with a spere,  
I n'ist how, but in a strete

He set me faire on my feete,

And said, "Walke forth a pace

And telle thine adventure and case,

That thou shalt finde in Fames place."

"Now," quod I, "while we have space

To speake, or that I go fro thee,

For the love of God tell me,

In sothe, that I will of thee lere,

If this noyse that I here

Be as I have herde thee tell,

Of folke that done in earth dwell,

And commeth here in the same wise,

As I thee herd or this devise,

And that here lives body n'is

In all that house that yonder is,

That maketh all this loude fare."

"No," quod he, "by saint Clare,

And also wisse God rede me,

But o thing I will warne thee,

Of the which thou wilt have wonder.

"Lo, to the House of Fame yonder,

Thou woste how commeth every speach,

It needeth not the efte to teach,

But understand now right well this,

When any speach yemen is,

Up to the palais anone right,

It wexeth like the same wight,

Which that the worde in earth spaks,

Re he clothed in reed or blake,

And hath so very his likenesse,  
 And spake the worde that thou wilt gesse,  
 That it the same body be,  
 Man or woman, he, or she.  
 And is not this a wonder thing !"  
 "Yes," quod I tho, "by Heaven king:"  
 And with this worde, "Farewell," quod he,  
 "And here will I abide thee,  
 And God of Heaven send thee grace  
 Some good to learne in this place:"  
 And I of him tooke leave anone,  
 And gan forth to the palais gone.

EXPLICIT LIBER SECUNDUS.

## LIBER TERTIUS.

B. III. v. 1—118

God of science and of light,  
 Apollo, through thy great might,  
 This littell last booke now thou gie,  
 Now that I will for maistris  
 Here art potencially be shewde,  
 But for the rime is light and lewde,  
 Yet make it somewhat agreeable,  
 Though some verse fayle in a sillable,  
 And that I do no diligence,  
 To shewe crafte, but sentence,  
 And if devine vertue thou  
 Wilt helpe me to shewe now,  
 That in my heed ymarked is,  
 Lo, that is for to meanen this,  
 The House of Fame for to discrive,  
 Thou shalt see me go as blive  
 Unto the next laurer I see,  
 And kisse it, for it is thy tree ;  
 Now entre in my brest, anone !

When I was from the Egle gone,  
 I gan behold upon this place,  
 And certaine, or I further passe,  
 I woll you all the shape devise,  
 Of house and citee, and all the wise  
 How I gan to this place approche,  
 That stood upon so hie a roche,  
 Hier standeth none in Spaine ;  
 But up I clambe with moch payne,  
 And though to climbe greved mec,  
 Yet I entente was to see,  
 And for to poren wondre low,  
 If I coude any wise yknow  
 What maner stone this roche was,  
 For it was like a limed glas,  
 But that it shone full more clere,  
 But of what cougeled matere  
 It was, I n'iste redely,  
 But at the last espied I,  
 And found that it was everydole,  
 A roche of yse and not of stele :  
 Thought I, "By saint Thomas of Kent,  
 This were a feeble foundement  
 To builden on a place hie,  
 He ought him little to glorifie,  
 That hereon bilte, God so me save."  
 Tho sawe I all the hall ygrave  
 With famous folkes names fele,  
 That had been in moch wele,

And hir fames wide yblow,  
 But well unneth might I know  
 Any letters for to rede  
 Hir names by, for, out of drede,  
 They weren almost of thawed so,  
 That of the letters one or two  
 Weren molte away of every name,  
 So unfamous was wexe her fame ;  
 But men say, what may ever last !

Tho gan I in mine herte cast,  
 That they were molte away for heate,  
 And not away with stormes beate,  
 For on that other side I sey,  
 Of this hill, that northward ley,  
 How it was written full of names  
 Of folke that had afore great fames,  
 Of old time, and yet they were  
 As fresh as men had written hem there  
 The self-day, or that houre  
 That I on hem gan to poure,  
 But well I wiste what it made,  
 It was conserved with the shade,  
 All the writing that I sie,  
 Of a castell that so stode on hie,  
 And stode eke in so cold a place  
 That heate might it not deface.

Tho gan I on this hill to gone,  
 And found on the coppe a wone,  
 That all the men that been on live  
 Ne han the conning to discrive  
 The beaute of that ilke place,  
 Ne coud caste no compace  
 Soch another for to make,  
 That might of beauty be his make,  
 Ne so wonderly ywrought,  
 That it astonieth yet my thought,  
 And maketh all my witte to swinke  
 On this castell for to thinke,  
 So that the great beauteie,  
 The caste, crafte, and curiositie,  
 Ne can I not to you devise,  
 My witte ne may me not suffice ;  
 But nathelesse all the substaunce  
 I have yet in my remembrance,  
 For why ! me thought, by saint Gile,  
 All was of stone of berile,  
 Both the castell and the toure,  
 And eke the hall, and every bour,  
 Without peeces or joynings,  
 But many subtell compassings,  
 As babeuries and pinnacles,  
 Imageries and tabernacles,  
 I saw, and full eke of windowes,  
 As flakes fallen in great snowes ;  
 And eke in each of the pinnacles  
 Weren sundry habitacles,  
 In which stoden, all withouten,  
 Full the castle all abouten,  
 Of all manner of minstres,  
 And jestours, that tellen tales  
 Both of weeping and of game ;  
 And of all that longeth unto Fame  
 There heard I play on an harpe,  
 That souned both well and sharpe,  
 Him Orpheus full craftely,  
 And on this side, fast by,  
 Sat the harper Orion,  
 And Gacides Chirion,  
 And other harpers many one,  
 And the Briton Glaskirion,

And smale harpers with hir glee,  
Sate under hem in divers sees,  
And gone on hem upward to gape,  
And counterfeited hem as an ape,  
Or as craft counterfeit kind.

Tho saw I standen hem behind,  
A farre from hem, all by hymselfe,  
Many a thousand times twelve,  
That made loud minstrelcies,  
In cornemuse and shalmies,  
And many another pipe,  
That craftely began to pipe,  
Both in douced and in rede,  
That ben at feasts with the brede,  
And many a floyte and liding horne,  
And pipes made of greene corne,  
As have these little heerd gromes,  
That keepen beastes in the bromes.

There saw I than dan Citharus,  
And of Athenes dan Proserus,  
And Mercia that lost her skinne,  
Both in face, body, and chinne,  
For that she would envien, lo,  
To pipen bette than Apollo.

There saw I eke famous old and yong,  
Pipers of all the Dutch tong,  
To learne love daunces, springs,  
Reyes, and the straunge things.

Tho saw I in another place,  
Standing in a large space  
Of hem that maken bloody soun,  
In trumpe beme, and clarioun,  
For in fight and bloodsheddings  
Is used gladly clarioninge.

There heard I trumpe Messenus,  
Of whom that speaketh Vergilius.

There heard I Joab trumpe also,  
Theodomas, and other mo,  
And all that used clarion,  
In Casteloigne and Aragon,  
That in hir times famous were,  
To learnen saw I trumphen there

There saw I sit in other sees,  
Playing upon other sundry glee.  
Which that I cannot neven,  
Mo than sterres ben in Heaven,  
Of which I n'll as now not rime,  
For ease of you, and losse of time :  
For time ylost, this know ye,  
By no way may recovered be.

There saw I playing jogelours,  
Magiciens, and tragetours,  
And phetonisses, charincresses,  
Old witches, sorceresses,  
That usen exorsisations,  
And eke subfumigations,  
And clerkes eke, which conno well  
All this magike naturell,  
That craftely doe hir entents  
To maken in certaine ascendents,  
Images, lo, through which magike  
To maken a man ben hole or sike.

There saw I the quene Medea,  
And Circes eke, and Calipsea.

There saw I Hermes Ballenus,  
Limote, and eke Simon Magus.

There saw I, and knew by name,  
That by such art done men have fame.

There saw I Coll Tragetour  
Upon a table of sicamour

Play an uncouth thing to tell,  
I saw him carry a wind-mell  
Under a walnote shale.

What should I make lenger tale ?  
Of all the people that I sey,  
I could not tell till domisdey.

Whan I had all this folke behold,  
And found me loose and not hold,  
And I amused a long while  
Upon this wall of berile,  
That shone lighter than a glas  
And made well more than it was,  
As kinde thing of fame is,  
And than anone, after this,  
I gan forth romen till I fonde  
The castell yate on my right honde,  
Which so well corven was,  
That never such another n'as,  
And yet it was by aventure  
Ywrought by great and subtil cure ;  
It needeth not you more to tellen  
To make you too long dwellen  
Of these yates florishiinge,  
Ne of compaces, ne of karvinge,  
Ne how the hacking in masonries,  
As corbettes, and imageries.

But Lord, so faire it was to shewe,  
For it was all with gold behewe ;  
But in I went, and that anone,  
There met I crying many one,  
" A larges, a larges, hold up well !  
God save the lady of this pell,  
Our owne gentill lady Fame,  
And hem that willen to have a name  
Of us ! " thus heard I crien all,  
And fast comen out of the hall,  
And shoke nobles and starlings,  
And crowned were as kings,  
With crownes wrought full of losinges,  
And many ribans, and many fringes  
Wore on hir clothes truly.

Tho at the last, espied I  
That pursevautes and heraudes,  
That crien riche folkes laudes,  
It weren, all and every man  
Of hem, as I you tell can,  
Had on him throwe a vesture  
Which men clepe a coate armure,  
Embroudred wonderly riche,  
As though they were not yliche,  
But nought will I, so mote I thrive,  
Be about to discrive  
All these armes that there weren,  
That they thus on hir coates weren,  
For to me were impossible,  
Men might make of hem a bible,  
Twenty foote thicke as I trowe,  
For certain who so coud know,  
Might there all the armes seen  
Of famous folke that had been  
In Affrike, Europe, and Asie,  
Sith first began chevalrie.

Lo, how should I now tell all this !  
Ne of the hall, eke what need is  
To tellen you that every wall  
Of it, and rofe and flore with all,  
Was plated halfe a foote thicke  
Of golde, and that n'as not wicke,  
But for to prove in all wise,  
As fine as ducket in Venise,

Of which to lite all in my pouche is,  
And they were set as thicke of ouches  
Fine, of the finest stones faire,  
That men reden in the lapidaire,  
Or as grasses growen in a mede,  
But it were all to long to rede  
The names, and therefore I pace,  
But in this lustie and riche place,  
That Fames hall called was,  
Full moch prees of folke there n'as,  
Ne crouding, for to moch prees,  
But all on hie above a dees,  
Satte in a see imperiall,  
That made was of rubie royall,  
Which that a carbuncle is ycalled,  
I sawe perpetually ystalled,  
A feminine creature,  
That never formed by nature  
Was such another thing I saie :  
For alderfirst, soth to saie,  
Me thought that she was so lite,  
That the length of a cubite,  
Was longer than she seemed be,  
But thus soone in a while she,  
Her self tho wonderly streight,  
That with her feet she th'erthe reight,  
And with her hedde she touched Heaven,  
There as shineth the sterres seven,  
And thereto yet, as to my wit,  
I saw a great wonder yet,  
Upon her eyen to behold,  
But certainly I hem never told,  
For as fele eyen had she,  
As fethers upon foules be,  
Or weren on the beasts four,  
That Goddes trone can honour,  
As writeth John in the Apocalips,  
Her heer that was oundie and cripe,  
As burned gold it shone to see.

And sothe to tellen, also shee  
Had also fele up standing eares,  
And tonges, as on beast been heares,  
And on her feete woxen saw I,  
Partriche winges redily.

But Lord the perrie and the richesse  
I saw sitting on the goddesse,  
And the heavenly melodie  
Of songes full of armonie  
I heard about her trone ysong,  
That all the palais wall rong,  
So song the mighty Muse, she  
That cleped is Caliope,  
And her seven sisterne eke,  
That in hir faces seemen meke,  
And evermore eternally  
They song of Fame, tho heard I,  
"Heried be thou and thy name,  
Goddes of renoun and of Fame!"

Tho was I ware at the last,  
As I mine eyen gan up cast,  
That this ilke noble queene,  
On her shoulders gan sustene  
Both the armes and the name  
Of tho that had large fame,  
Alisander, and Hercules,  
That with a sherte his life did lese,  
And thus found I sitting this goddesse,  
In noble honour and richesse,  
Of which t stinte a while now,  
Other thing to tellen you

Tho saw I stande on thotlier side,  
Streight doune to the doores wide,  
From the deis many a pillere  
Of metall, that shone not full clere,  
But though ther were of no richesse,  
Yet were they made for great noblesse,  
And in hem great sentence,  
And folke of hie and digne reverence,  
Of which to tell will I sonde.

Upon a piller sawe I stonde,  
Alderfirst there I sie,  
Upon a piller stonde on hie,  
That was of lede and of iron fine,  
Him of the secte Saturnine,  
The Ebraike Josephus the old,  
That of Jewes gestes told,  
And he bare on his shuldurs hie  
The fame up of the Jewrie,  
And by him stoden other seven,  
Wise and worthy for to neven,  
To helpen him beare up the charge,  
It was so heavy and so large,  
And for they written of battailes,  
As well as of other marvayles,  
Therefore was lo, this pillere,  
Of which I you tell here,  
Of leade and iron both ywis,  
For iron Martes metall is,  
Which that god is of battaile,  
And the leade withouten faile,  
Is lo, the metall of Saturne,  
That hath full large whele to turne,  
To stand forth on either rowe  
Of hem, which I could knowe,  
Though I by order hem not tell,  
To make you to long to dwell.

These, of which I gan rede,  
There saw I stand, out of drede,  
Upon an iron piller strong,  
That painted was all endlong  
With tigres blood in every place,  
The Tholason that height Stace,  
That bare of Thebes up the name  
Upon his shoulders, and the fame  
Also of cruell Achilles,  
And by him stode, withouten leas,  
Full wonder hie upon a piller  
Of iron, he the great Omer,  
And with him Dares and Titus  
Before, and eke he Lollius,  
And Guido eke the Colemanis,  
And English Galfride eke ywis,  
And ech of these, as I have joy,  
Was busie to beare up Troy,  
So heavy thereof was the fame,  
That for to beare it was no game,  
But yet I gan full well espie,  
Betwene hem was a little envie,  
One said that Omer made lies,  
Feyning in his poetries,  
And was to the Greekes favourable,  
Therefore held he it but fable.

Tho saw I stand on a pillere,  
That was of tinned iron clere,  
The Latine poete Virgile,  
That hath bore up a long whille  
The fame of pius Eneas.

And next him on a piller was,  
Of copper, Venus' clerke, Ovide,  
That hath sowen wondrous wide

X

See p. 270 - 1<sup>st</sup> col.



The great god of loves fame,  
And there he bare up well his name,  
Upon this pillar also hie,  
As I might see it with mine eye :  
For why this hall whereof I rede,  
Was woxe on height, length and brede,  
Well more by a thousand deale  
Than it was erst, that saw I weale.

Tho saw I on a pillar by,  
Of iron wrought full sternely,  
The great poet dan Lucan,  
That on his shoulders bare up than,  
As hie as that I might see,  
The fame of Julius and Pompee,  
And by him stoden all these clorkes,  
That write of Romes mighty werkes,  
That if I would hir names tell,  
All to long must I dwell.

And next him on a pillar stood,  
Of sulphure, liche as he were wood,  
Dan Claudian, sothe for to tell  
That bare up all the fame of Hell,  
Of Pluto, and of Proserpine,  
That queene is of the derke pine,  
What should I more tell of this !  
The hall was all full, ywis,  
Of hem that written old jestes,  
As been on trees rokes nestes,  
But it a full confuse matters  
Were all these jestes for to here,  
That they of write, and how they hight.  
But while that I beheld this sight,  
I herde a noise approchen blive,  
That fareth as bees done in an hive,  
Ayenst hir time of out flying,  
Right such a maner murmuring,  
For all the world it seemed mee.

Tho gan I looke about and see,  
That there come entring into the hall  
A right great company withall,  
And that of sondry regions,  
Of all kind of condicions,  
That dwell in yearth under the Moone,  
Poore and riche ; and all so soone  
As they were come into the hall,  
They gan on knees doune to fall,  
Before this ilke noble queene,  
And said, " Graunt us lady sheene,  
Eche of us of thy grace a bone,"  
And some of hem she graunted sone,  
And some she warned well and faire,  
And some she graunted the contraire  
Of hir asking utterly :

But this I say you truely,  
What her grace was, I n'ist,  
For of these folke full well I wist,  
They had good fame eche deserved,  
Although they were diversly served,  
Right as her sister, dame Fortune,  
Is wont to serve in commune.

Now herken how she gan to pay  
Hem that gan her of grace pray,  
And yet, lo, all this companie  
Saiden soth, and not a lie.

" Madame," said they, " we bee  
Folke that here besechen thee,  
That thou graunt us now good fame,  
And let our workes have good name,  
In full recompensacioun  
Of good worke, give us good renoun."

" I warne it you," quod she, " anone,  
Ye get of me good fame none,  
By God, and therefore go your way."

" Alas," quod they, " and welaway !  
Tell us what your cause may be."

" For me list it not," quod she,  
" No wight shall speake of you, ywis,  
Good ne harme, ne that ne thia."

And with that worde she gan to call  
Her messenger that was in hall,  
And bad that he should faste gone,  
Upon paine to be blinde anone,  
For Eolus the god of winde,  
" In Trace there ye shall him finde,  
And bid him bring his clarioun,  
That is full divers of his soun,  
And it is cleped cleare laude,  
With which he wont is to heraude  
Hem that me list ypraised bee ;  
And also bid him how that hee  
Bring eke his other clarioun,  
That height sclaunder in every toun,  
With which he wont is to diffame  
Hem that me list, and doe hem shame."

This messenger gan fast to gone,  
And found where in a cave of stone,  
In a countree that height Trace,  
This Eolus with harde grace,  
Helde the windes in distresse,  
And gan hem under him to presse,  
That they gonne as the beres rore,  
He bound and pressed hem so sorre.

This messenger gan fast crie,  
" Rise up," quod he, " and fast thee hie  
Till thou at my lady bee,  
And take thy clarions eke with thee,  
And speed thee fast : " and he, anone,  
Tooke to one that hight Tritone,  
His clarions to bearen tho,  
And let a certaine winde go,  
That blew so hidously and hie,  
That it ne left not a skie  
And all the welkin long and brode.

This Eolus no where abode,  
Till he was come to Fames feete,  
And eke the man that Triton heete,  
And there he stode as still as stone,  
And herewithall, there came anone,  
Another huge companie  
Of good folke and gan to crie,  
" Lady, graunt us now good fame  
And let our workes have that name,  
Now in honour of gentillesse,  
And also God your soule blesse,  
For we han well deserved it,  
Therefore is right that we be quit."  
" As thrive I," quod she, " ye shall faile,  
Good workes shall you not avale,  
To have of me good fame as now,  
But wote ye what, I graunt you,  
That ye shall have a shrewd name,  
And wicked loos and worse fame,  
Though ye good loos have well deserved,  
Now goeth your way for you been served :  
And thou dan Eolus," quod she,  
" Take forth thy trumpe anone, let see,  
That is ycleped sclaunder light,  
And blow hir loos, that every wight  
Speake of hem harme and shreudnesse,  
In stede of good and worthinesse,

For thou shalt trumpe all the contrarie,  
Of that they have done well and faire."

Alas, thought I, what adventures  
Have these sory creatures,  
That they among all the pres,  
Should thus be shamed gillies !  
But what, it must needes be.  
What did this Eolus, but he  
Tooke out his blacke trumpe of bras,  
That fouler than the Devil was,  
And gan this trompe for to blow,  
As all the world should overthrow.  
Throughout every regioun,  
Went this foule trumpe soun,  
As swifte as a pellet out of a gonne,  
When fire is in the powder ronne,  
And soch a smoke gan out wende,  
Out of the foule trumpe ende,  
Blacke, blue, grenishe, swartish, red,  
As doth where that man melte led,  
Lo, all on hie from the tewell ;  
And thereto, one thing saw I well,  
That the ferther that it ranne,  
The greater wexen it beganne,  
As doth the river from a well,  
And it stanke as the pitte of Hell :  
Alas, thus was hir shame yrong,  
And gilllesse on every tong.

Tho came the third companie,  
And gone up to the dees to hie,  
And doune on knees they fell anone,  
And saiden, " We been everichone  
Folke that han full truly  
Deserved fame rightfully,  
And prayed you it might be know,  
Right as it is and forth blow."

" I graunt," quod she, " for now me list  
That your good workes shall be wist,  
And yet ye shall have better loos,  
Right in dispite of all your foos,  
Than worthy is, and that anone :  
Let now," quod she, " thy trumpe gone,  
Thou Eolus that is so blacke,  
And out thine other trumpe take  
That hight laude, and blow it so  
That through the world hir fame go,  
All easely and not too fast,  
That it be known at the last."

" Full gladly, lady mine," he saied,  
And out his trumpe of gold he braied  
Anone, and set it to his mouth,  
And blewe it east, west, and south,  
And north, as loude as any thonder,  
That every wight hath of it wonder,  
So brode it ran or that it stent,  
And certes, all the breath that went  
Out of his trumpe mouth smelde  
As men a pottle full of baume helde  
Among a basket full of roses,  
This favour did he to hir loses.

And right with this I gan espie,  
There came the fowrth companie,  
But certaine they were wonder fewe,  
And gonne to standen on a rewe,  
And saiden, " Certes, lady bright,  
We have done well with all our might,  
But we ne keepe to have fame ;  
Hide our workes and our name,  
For Goddes love, for certes wee  
Have surely done it for bountee,

And for no manner other thing."

" I graunt you all your asking,"  
Quod she, " let your workes be dedde."

With that about I tourned my hedde,  
And sawe anone the fifth rout  
That to this lady gan lout,  
And doune on knees, anone, to fall,  
And to her tho besoughten all,  
To hidden hir good workes eke,  
And said, they yeve not a leke  
For no fame, ne noch renoun,  
For they for contemplacioun,  
And Goddes love had it wrought,  
Ne of fame would they nought.

" What !" quod she, " and be ye wood !  
And wene ye for to do good,  
And for to have of that no fame !  
Have ye dispite to have my name !  
Nay, ye shall lien everichone :  
Blowe thy trumpe and that anone,"  
Quod she, " thou Eolus I hote,  
And ring these folkes workes by note,  
That all the world may of it here :"  
And he gan blowe hir loos so cleare  
In his golden clarioun,  
Through the worlde went the soun,  
Also kindly, and eke so soft,  
That their fame was blowe aloft.

Tho came the sixt companie,  
And gan fast to Fame crie,  
Right verely in this manere,  
They saiden, " Mercy, lady dere,  
To tell certain as it is,  
We have done neither that ne this,  
But idell all our life hath be,  
But nathelesse, yet pray we,  
That we may have as good a fame,  
And great renome and knownen name,  
As they that have do noble jestes,  
And acheved all hir questes,  
As well of love as other thing,  
All was us never broche no ring,  
Ne els what fro women sent,  
Ne ones in hir herte yment,  
To maken us onely frendly chere,  
But mought temen us on bere,  
Yet let us to the people seeme  
Soch as the world may of us deeme,  
That women loven us for wood,  
It shall do us as moch good,  
And to our herte as moch availle,  
The counterpeise, ease, and travaille,  
As we had won with labour,  
For that is dere bought honoure,  
At regard of our great ease :  
And yet ye must us more please,  
Let us be hold eke therto,  
Worthy, wise, and good also,  
And rich, and happy unto love.  
For Goddes love that sitteth above,  
Though we may not the body have  
Of women, yet so God me save,  
Let men glewe on us the name,  
Suffiseth that we have the fame."

" I graunt," quod she, " by my trouth,  
Now Eolus, withouten slouth," quod she,  
Take out thy trumpe of gold," quod she,  
" And blowe as they have asked me,  
That every man wene hem at ease,  
Though they go in full badde lease."

This Eolus gan it so blowe,  
That through the world it was yknow.

Tho came the seventh route anone,  
And fill on knees everichone,  
And sayed, "Lady, graunt us soone  
The same thing, the same boone,  
That this nexte folke have done."

"Fie on you," quod she, "everichone,  
Ye nastie swine, ye idle wretches,  
Full of rotten slow tetches,  
What false theeves where ye wold,  
Been famed good, and nothing n'old  
Deserve why, ne never thought,  
Men rather you to hangen ought,  
For ye be like the slepie cat,  
That would have fish; but wost thou what?  
He wold nothing wette his claws;  
Evil thrifte come to your jawes,  
And on mine, if I it graunt,  
Or do favour you to avaut.

"Thou Eolus, thou king of Thrace,  
Go blowe this folke a sorie grace,"  
Quod she, "anone, and wost thou how,  
As I shall tell thee right now,  
Say these ben they that would honour  
Have, and do no kind labour,  
Ne do no good, and yet have laude,  
And that men wende that belle Isaude,  
Ne coude hem not of love werne,  
And yet she that grint at querne,  
Is all too good to ease hir herte."

This Eolus anone up sterte,  
And with his blacke clarioun  
He gan to blasen out a soun,  
As loude as belleth winde in Hell,  
And eke therewith, sothe to tell,  
This sowne was so full of japes  
As ever mowes were in apes,  
And that went all the world about,  
That every wight gan on hem shout,  
And for to laugh as they were wood,  
Such game found they in hir hood.

Tho came another company,  
That had ydone the trechery,  
The harme and great wickednesse,  
That any herte coulden gesse,  
And prayed her to have good fame,  
And that she n'olde do hem no shame,  
But give hem loos and good renoun,  
And do it blowe in clarioun.

"Nay wis," quod she, "it were a vice,  
Al be there in me no justice,  
Me list not to do it now,  
Ne this I n'll graunt it you."

Tho came there leaping in a rout,  
And gan clappen all about,  
Every man upon the crowne  
That all the hall gan to sowne,  
And said, "Lady lefe and dere,  
We ben soch folkes as ye may here,  
To tell all the tale aright,  
We ben shrewes every wight,  
And have delite in wickednesse,  
As good folke have in goodnesse,  
And joy to been known shrewes,  
And full vice and wicked thewes,  
Wherefore we pray you on a rowe,  
That our fame be such yknow,  
In all things right as it is."

"I graunt it you," quod she, "ywis,

But what art thou that saiest this tale,  
That wearest on thy hose a pale,  
And on thy tippet soch a bell!"

"Madame," quod he, "sothe to tell,  
I am that ilke shrewe ywis,  
That brent the temple of Isidis  
In Athenes, lo, that citee."

"And wherefore diddest thou so?" quod she.  
"By my trouth," quod he, "madame,  
I wolde faine have had a name,  
As other folke had in the towne,  
Although they were of great renowe  
For hir vertue and hir thewes,  
Thought I, as great fame have shrewes,  
(Though it be nought) for shrewdnesse,  
As good folke have for goodnesse,  
And sithen I may not have that one,  
That other n'll I not forgone,  
As for to get a fame here,  
The temple set I all on fire.

"Now done our loos be blowe swithe,  
As wisely be thou ever blithe."

"Gladly," quod she, "thou Eolus,  
Herest thou not what they prayen us?"  
"Madame yes, full well," quod he,  
"And I will trumpen it, parde:"  
And tooke his blacke trumpe fast,  
And gan to puffen and to blast,  
Till it was at the worlds end.

With that I gan about wend,  
For one that stode right at my backe,  
Me thought full goodly to me spake,  
And said, "Frende, what is thy name?  
Arte thou come hider to have fame?"

"Nay forsothe, frende," quod I,  
"I come not hither, graunt mercy,  
For no soch cause by my heed,  
Suffiseth me as I were deed,  
That no wight have my name in honde,  
I wot my selfe best how I stonde,  
For what I drie or what I thinke,  
I wold my selfe all it drinke,  
Certaine for the more part,  
As ferforth as I can mine art."  
"What dost thou here than?" quod he:  
Quod I, "that wold I tell thee,  
The cause why I stand here  
Some new tidings for to lerc,  
Some new thing, I not what,  
Tidings eyther this or that,  
Of love, or such things guide,  
For certainly he that me made  
To come hyder, said to mee  
I sholde bothe heare and see,  
In this place wonder things,  
But these be no soch tidings  
As I meant of:"—"No!" quod he.  
And I answerde "No, parde,  
For well I wote ever yet,  
Sith that first I had wit,  
That some folke han desired fame,  
Diversly, and loos and name,  
But certainly I n'ist how,  
Ne where that Fame dwelled or now,  
Ne eke of her descripcion,  
Ne also her condicion,  
Ne the order of her dome,  
Knew I not till I hider come."

"Why than be, lo, these tidings,  
That thou now hether brings,

That thou hast herde," quod he to mee;  
 "But now, no force, for well I see  
 What thou desirest for to lere,  
 Come forth and stande no lenger here,  
 And I woll thee without drede,  
 Into soch another place lede,  
 There thou shalt here many one."

Tho gan I forth with him gone,  
 Out of the castell, sothe to sey.

Tho sawe I stand in a valey,  
 Under the castell fast by,  
 An house, that domus Dedali,  
 That Laborintus ycleped is,  
 N'as made so wonderly ywis,  
 Ne halfe so queintly ywrought,  
 And evermo, as swift as thought,  
 This quaint house about went,  
 That nevermo it still stent,  
 And there came out so great a noise,  
 That had it stonde upon Oise,  
 Men might have heard it easily  
 To Rome, I trowe sikerly,  
 And the noise which that I herde,  
 For all the world right so it ferde,  
 As doth the routing of the stone,  
 That fro th'engin is letyn gone.

And all this house of which I rede,  
 Was made of twigges, salow, rede,  
 And green eke, and some were white,  
 Such as men to the cages twite,  
 Or maken of these paniers.  
 Or els hutches or doffers,  
 That for the swough and for the twigges,  
 This house was also full of gigges,  
 And also full eke of chirkinges,  
 And of many other werkings,  
 And eke this house hath of entrees  
 As many as leves ben on trees,  
 In sommer whan they been greene,  
 And on the rofe yet men may see  
 A thousand holes, and wel mo,  
 To letten the sowne out go,  
 And by day in every tide  
 Bene all the dores open wide,  
 And by night eche one unshet,  
 Ne porter is there none to let  
 No maner tidings in to pace,  
 Ne never rest is in that place,  
 That it n'is filled full of tidings,  
 Eyther loude or of whisperings,  
 And ever all the houses angles  
 Is ful of rownings and of jangles,  
 Of werres, of peace, of mariages,  
 Of restes, and of labour, of viages,  
 Of abode, of death, and of lyfe,  
 Of love, of hate, accord, of strife,  
 Of losse, of lore, and of winnings,  
 Of heale, of sicknesse, or of leasings,  
 Of faire wether, and eke of tempests,  
 Of qualme, of folke, and of beests,  
 Of divers transmutacions,  
 Of estates and eke of regions,  
 Of trust, of drede, of jalousie,  
 Of witte, of winning, of folie,  
 Of plenty, and of great famine,  
 Of chepe, derth, and of ruine,  
 Of good or misgoverment,  
 Of fire, and of divers accident.

And lo, this house of which I write,  
 Syker be ye it n'as not lite,

For it was sixtie mile of length, ✓  
 Al was the timber of no strength,  
 Yet it is founded to endure,  
 While that it list to aventure,  
 That is the mother of tidings,  
 As the sea of welles and springs,  
 And it was shaped lyke a cage.

"Certes," quod I, "in all mine age,  
 Ne saw I soch an house as this."

And as I wondred me, ywis,  
 Upon this house tho ware was I  
 How mine egle, fast by,  
 Was perched hie upon a stone,  
 And I gan streight to him gone,  
 And said thus, "I pray thee,  
 That thou a while abide mee  
 For goddes love, and let me see  
 What wonders in that place bene,  
 For yet, paraunter, I may lere  
 Some good therein, or somewhat here,  
 That lefe me were, or that I went."

"Parde, that is now mine entent,"  
 Quod he to me, "therefore I dwell,  
 But certaine one thing I thee tell,  
 That but I bring thee therin,  
 Ne shall thou never conne the gin  
 To come into it out of doubt,  
 So faste it whirleth, lo, about,  
 But sith that Joves of his grace,  
 As I have said, will the solace  
 Finally with these things,  
 Uncouth sighes and tidings,  
 To passe with thine hevinesses,  
 Soch routh hath he of thy distresse,  
 That thou suffrest debonairly,  
 And woste they selven utterly,  
 Desperate of all blisse,  
 Sith that fortune hath made a misse,  
 The swete of all thine hertes rest,  
 Languish and eke in point to brest,  
 But he through his mighty merite,  
 Wil do thee ease, al be it lite,  
 And gave in expresse commandement,  
 To which I am obedient,  
 To further thee with all my might,  
 And wish and teach thee aright,  
 Where thou maist most tidings here,  
 Thou shalt here many one lere."  
 With this word he right anone,  
 Hent me up bytwene his tone,  
 And at a window in me brought,  
 That in this house was at me thought,  
 And therewithall me thought it stent,  
 And nothing it about went,  
 And me set in the floore adoun;  
 But such a great congregacioun  
 Of folke as I sawe rome about,  
 Some within and some without,  
 N'as never seene, ne shall be efte,  
 That certes, in this world n'is lefte  
 So many formed by nature,  
 Ne need so many a creature,  
 That wel unneth in that place  
 Had I a foote brede of space;  
 And every wight that I sawe therr,  
 Rownd everich in others eere,  
 A new tiding prively,  
 Or els he told it all openly  
 Right thus, and said, "N'oost nat thou  
 That is betidde, lo, right now!"  
 c c 2

"No," quod he, "tell me what:"  
 And than he told him this and that,  
 And swore thereto that it was soth,  
 Thus bath he said, and thus he doth,  
 And this shal be, and thus herde I say,  
 That shal be found that dare I lay:  
 That all the folke that is on live,  
 Ne have the conning to discrive  
 Tho thinges that I herde there,  
 What a loude, and what in eere;  
 But all the wonder most was this,  
 Whan one had herd a thing ywis,  
 He came streight to another wight  
 And gan him tellen anon right,  
 The same that him was told  
 Or it a forlong way was old,  
 And gan somewhat for to eche  
 To this tiding in his speche,  
 More than ever it spoken was,  
 And nat so sone departed n'as  
 Tho fro him that he ne mette  
 With the third, and ere he lette  
 Any stound he told hym alse,  
 Where the tidings sothe or false,  
 Yet wold he tell it natheles,  
 And evermore with mo encrees,  
 Than it was erst: thus north and south,  
 Went every tiding fro mouth to mouth,  
 And that encreasing evermo,  
 As fire is wont to quicken and go  
 From a sparcle sprongen amis,  
 Till a citie brent up is.  
 And whan that was full up sprong,  
 And waxen more on every tonge  
 Than ever it was, and went anone,  
 Up to a window out to gone,  
 Or but it might out there passe,  
 It gan out crepe at some crevasse,  
 And flewe forth fast for the nones.  
 And sometime I saw there at ones,  
 A leasing and a sadde sothe sawe,  
 That gonnen of aventure drawe,  
 Out at a window for to pace,  
 And whan they metten in that place,  
 They were achecked both two,  
 And neyther of them might out go,  
 For ech other they gonne so croude  
 Til ech of hem gan crie loude,  
 "Let me gone first!"—"nay, but let mee!"  
 And here I wold ensuren thee,  
 With vowe that thou wolt do so,  
 That I shall never fro thee go,  
 But be thine owne sworne brother,  
 We wold meddle us eche in other,  
 That no man be he never so wrothe,  
 Shall have one two, but bothe  
 At ones, as beside his leve,  
 Come we a morrowe or on eve,  
 But we cride or still yrowned:"  
 Thus saw I false and soth compowned.  
 Togider fle for o tiding.  
 Thus out at holes gonne wring,

Every tidying streight to Fame,  
 And she gan yve eche his name,  
 After her disposicion,  
 And yve hem eke duracion;  
 Some to wexe and wane soone,  
 As doth the faire white Moone,  
 And let hem gonne, there might I see  
 Winged wonders fast fleen,  
 Twenty thousand in a route  
 As Eolus hem blewe aboute,  
 And lord! this house in all times  
 Was full of shipmen and pilgrimes,  
 With scrippes bret-full of leasings,  
 Entermelled with tidings,  
 And eke alone by hemseive.  
 O many thousand times twelve  
 Saw I eke of these pardoners,  
 Currouers, and eke messaugers,  
 With boxes crommed full of lies  
 As ever vessell was with lies.  
 And as I alder-fastest went  
 About, and did all mine entent,  
 Me for to playen and for to lere,  
 And eke a tiding for to here,  
 That I had herde of some countree  
 That shall not now be told for mee,  
 For it no need is, redely  
 Folke can sing it bet than I,  
 For al mote out late or rathe,  
 All the sheves in the lathe.  
 I herde a great noise withall,  
 In a corner of the hall;  
 There men of love tidings told  
 And I gan thitherward behold,  
 For I saw renning every wight,  
 As fast as that they hadden might,  
 And everich cride, "What thing is that?"  
 And some said, "I n'ot never what,"  
 And whan they were all on a hepe,  
 Tho behind gone up lepe,  
 And clamben up on other faste,  
 And up the noyse on highen caste,  
 And treden fast on others heles,  
 And stampe as men done after elea.  
 At the last I saw a man,  
 Which that I nought ne can,  
 But he seemed for to be  
 A man of great auctorite.  
 And therewithall I abraido  
 Out of my slepe halfe afraide,  
 Remembring well what I had sene,  
 And how hie and ferre I had bene  
 In my gost, and had great wonder  
 Of that the god of thonder  
 Had let me knowen, and began to write  
 Like as ye have herd me endite,  
 Wherefore to study and rede alway,  
 I purpose to do day by day.  
 Thus in dreaming and in game,  
 Endeth this litell booke of Fame.

HERE ENDETH THE BOOKE OF FAME.

## CHAUCER'S DREAM,

FIRST PRINTED IN 1597.

WHAT WHICH HERETOFORE HATH BENE UNDER THE NAME OF HIS DREAM, IS THE BOOKE OF THE DUTCHESSE: OR  
THE DEATH OF BLANCH, DUTCHESSE OF LANCASTER.

v. 1—104

WHAN Flora the queene of pleasaunce,  
Had whole achieved thobeisaunce  
Of the fresh and new season,  
Thorow out every region,  
And with her mantle whole covert  
That winter made had discover  
Of aventure, withoute light,  
In May, I lay upon a night  
Alone, and on my lady thought,  
And how the lord that her wrought,  
Couth well entaile in imagery  
And shewed had great maistry,  
Whan he in so little space  
Made such a body and a face,  
So great beaute with swiche features  
More than in other creatures;  
And in my thoughtes as I lay  
In a lodge out of the way,  
Beside a well in a forest,  
Where after hunting I tooke rest,  
Nature and kind so in me wrought,  
That halfe on sleepe they me brought,  
And gan to dreame to my thinking,  
With mind of knowliche like making,  
For what I dreamed, as me thought,  
I saw it, and I slept nought;  
Wherefore is yet my full beleeve,  
That some good spirit that eve,  
By meane of some curious port,  
Bare me, where I saw paine and sport;  
But whether it were I woke or slept,  
Well wot I of, I lough and wept,  
Wherefore I woll in remembraunce,  
Put whole the paine, and the pleasaunce,  
Which was to me axen and hele,  
Would God ye wist it every dele,  
Or at the least, ye might o night  
Of such another have a sight,  
Although it were to you a paine,  
Yet on the morow ye would be faine,  
And wish it might longe dure;  
Than might ye say ye had good cure,  
For he that dreames and wenes he see,  
Much the better yet may hee  
Wite what, and of whom, and where,  
And eke the lasse it woll hindere  
To thinke I see this with mine eene,  
Ywis this may not dreame kene,  
But signe or signifaunce  
Of hasty thing souning pleasaunce.  
For on this wise upon a night,  
As ye have heard, without light,

Not all waking, ne full on sleepe,  
About such houre as lovers weepe  
And cry after their ladies grace,  
Befell me this wonder cace,  
Which ye shall heare and all the wise,  
So wholly as I can devise,  
In plaine English evill written,  
For sleepe writer, well ye witten,  
Excused is, though he do mis,  
More than one that waking is,  
Wherefore here of your gentillesse,  
I you require my boistousnesse  
Ye let passe, as thinge rude,  
And heareth what I woll conclude;  
And of the enditing taketh no heed,  
Ne of the tearmes, so God you speed,  
But let all passe as nothing were,  
For thus befell, as you shall here.

Within an yle me thought I was,  
Where wall and yate was all of glasse,  
And so was closed round about  
That leavelesse none come in ne out,  
Uncouth and straunge to behold,  
For every yate of fine gold  
A thousand fanes, aie turning,  
Entuned had, and briddes singing,  
Divers, and on each fane a paire,  
With open mouth again thaire;  
And of a sute were all the toures,  
Subtily corven after floures,  
Of uncouth colours during aye,  
That never been none seene in May,  
With many a small turret lie,  
But man on live could I non sie,  
Ne creatures, save ladies play,  
Which were such of their array  
That, as me thought, of goodlihead  
They passeden all and womanhead;  
For to behold them daunce and sing,  
It seemed like none earthly thing,  
Such was their uncouth countinaunce  
In every play of right usaunce;  
And of one age everichone  
They seemed all, save onely one,  
Which had of yeeres suffisaunce,  
For she might neither sing ne daunce,  
But yet her countenaunce was so glad,  
As she so fewe yeeres had had  
As any lady that was there,  
And as little it did her dere  
Of lustines to laugh and tale  
As she had full stuffed a male

Of disports and new playes :  
 Faire had she been in her daies,  
 And maistresse seemed well to be  
 Of all that lusty companie ;  
 And so she might, I you ensure,  
 For one the conningest creature  
 She was, and so said everichone,  
 That ever her knew, there failed none,  
 For she was sober and well avised,  
 And from every fault disguised,  
 And nothing used but faith and truth ;  
 That she n'as young it was great ruth,  
 For every where and in ech place,  
 She governed her, that in grace  
 She stode alway with poore and riche,  
 That, at a word, was none her liche,  
 Ne halfe so able maistres to be  
 To such a lusty companie.

Befell me so, when I avised  
 Had the yle that me suffised,  
 And whole the state every where,  
 That in that lusty yle was there,  
 Which was more wonder to devise  
 Than the joieux paradise,  
 I dare well say, for floure ne tree,  
 Ne thing wherein pleasaunce might bee  
 There failed none, for every wight  
 Had they desired, day and night,  
 Riches, heale, beauty, and ease,  
 With every thing that them might please,  
 Thinke and have, it cost no more ;  
 In such a country there before,  
 Had I not bene, ne heard tell  
 That lives creature might dwell.  
 And when I had thus all about  
 The yle avised throughout  
 The state, and how they were arrayed,  
 In my heart I were well payed,  
 And in my selfe I me assured  
 That in my body I was well uired,  
 Sith I might have such a grace  
 To see the ladies and the place,  
 Which were so faire, I you ensure,  
 That to my dome, though that nature  
 Would ever strive and do her paine,  
 She should not con ne mow attaine  
 The least feature to amend,  
 Though she would all her conning spend,  
 That to beauty might avail,  
 It were but paine and lost travaile,  
 Such part in their nativity  
 Was them alarged of beauty,  
 And eke they had a thing notable  
 Unto their death, ay durable,  
 And was, that their beauty should dure,  
 Which was never seene in creature,  
 Save onely there (as I trow)  
 It hath not be wist ne know,  
 Wherefore I praise with their conning,  
 That during beauty, rich thing,  
 Had they been of their lives certaine,  
 They had been quite of every paine.

And when I wende thus all have seene,  
 The state, the riches, that might beene,  
 That me thought impossible were  
 To see one thing more than was there,  
 That to beauty or glad conning  
 Serve or avail might any thing ;  
 All sodainly, as I there stode,  
 This lady that couth so much good,

Unto me came with smiling chere,  
 And said, "*Benedicite*, this yere  
 Saw I never man here but you,  
 Tell me how ye come hider now !  
 And your name, and where ye dwell ;  
 And whom ye seeke eke mote ye tell,  
 And how ye come be to this place,  
 The soth well told may cause you grace,  
 And else ye mote prisoner be  
 Unto the ladies here, and me,  
 That have the governaunce of this yle :"  
 And with that word she gan to smile,  
 And so did all the lusty rout  
 Of ladies that stode her about.  
 "Madame," (quod I) "this night past,  
 Lodged I was and slept fast  
 In a forest beside a well,  
 And now am here, how should I tell !  
 Wot I not by whose ordinance,  
 But onely Fortunes purveiance,  
 Which puts many, as I gesse,  
 To travaile, paine, and businesse,  
 And lettes nothing for their truth,  
 But some sleeth eke, and that is ruth,  
 Wherefore, I doubt her brittleness,  
 Her variance and unsteadfastnes,  
 So that I am as yet afraid,  
 And of my being here amaid,  
 For wonder thing seemeth me,  
 Thus many fresh ladies to see,  
 So faire, so cunning, and so yong,  
 And no man dwelling them among :  
 N'ot I not how I hider come,  
 Madame," (quod I) "this all and some,  
 What should I faine a long processe  
 To you that seeme such a princeesse !  
 What please you commaund or say,  
 Here I am you to obey,  
 To my power, and all fulfill,  
 And prisoner bide at your will,  
 Till you duly enformed be  
 Of every thing ye aske me."

This lady there, right well apaid,  
 Me by the hand tooke, and said,  
 "Welcome prisoner adventurous,  
 Right glad am I ye have said thus,  
 And for ye doubt me to displeasse,  
 I will assay to do you ease :"  
 And with that word, ye anon,  
 She, and the ladies everichon  
 Assembled, and to counsaile went,  
 And after that soone for me sent,  
 And to me said on this manere,  
 Word for word, as ye shall here.

"To see you here us thinke marvaile,  
 And how without bote or saile,  
 By any subtilty or wyle,  
 Ye get have entre in this yle ;  
 But not for that, yet shall ye see  
 That we gentill women bee,  
 Loth to displeasse any wight,  
 Notwithstanding our great right,  
 And for ye shall well understand  
 The old custome of this lond,  
 Which hath continued many yere,  
 Ye shall well wete that with us here  
 Ye may not bide, for causes twaine,  
 Which we be purposed you to saine.  
 "Th'one is this, our ordinance,  
 Which is of long continuance,

Woll not, sothly we you tell,  
That no man here among us dwell,  
Wherefore ye mote needs retourne,  
In no wise may you here sojourne.

"Th'other is eke, that our queene  
Out of the realme, as ye may seene,  
Is, and may be to us a charge,  
If we let you goe here at large,  
For which cause the more we doubt,  
To doe a fault while she is out,  
Or suffer that may be noysaunce,  
Againe our old accustomaunce."

And whan I had these causes twaine  
Heard, O God ! what a paine  
All sodainly about mine herte  
There came at ones and how smart,  
In creeping soft as who should steale,  
Or doe me robbe of all mine heale,  
And made me in my thought so afraid,  
That in courage I stode dismayd.  
And standing thus, as was my grace,  
A lady came more than apace,  
With huge prease her about,  
And told how the queene without  
Was arived and would come in,  
Well were they that thider might twin,  
They hied so they would not abide  
The bridling their horse to ride,  
By five, by sixe, by two, by three,  
There was not one abode with me,  
The queene to meet everichone,  
They went, and bode with me not one :  
And I, after a soft pase,  
Imagining how to purchase  
Grace of the queene, there to bide,  
Till good fortune some happy guide  
Me send might, that would me bring  
Where I was borne to my wonning,  
For way ne foot knew I none,  
Ne witherward I n'ist to gone,  
For all was sea about the yle,  
No wonder though me list not smile,  
Seeing the case uncouth and straunge,  
And so in like a perilous chaunge ;  
Imagining thus walking alone,  
I saw the ladies everichone,  
So that I might somewhat offer,  
Sone after that I drew me nere,  
And tho I was ware of the queene,  
And how the ladies on their kneene,  
With joyous words, gladly advised,  
Her welcomed so that it suffised,  
Though she princes hole had be  
Of all environed is with see :  
And thus avising, with chere sad,  
All sodainly I was glad,  
That greater joy, as mote I thrive,  
I trow had never man on live,  
Than I tho, ne heart more light,  
Whan of my lady I had sight,  
Which with the queene come was there,  
And in one clothing both they were,  
A knight also there well besene,  
I saw that come was with the queene,  
Of whome the ladies of that yle  
Had huge wonder longe while,  
Till at the last right soberly,  
The queene her selfe full cunningly,  
With soft words in good wise,  
Said to the ladies young and nise,

" My sisters, how it hath befall,  
I trow ye know it one and all,  
That of long time here have I beene,  
Within this yle biding as queene,  
Living at ease, that never wight  
More parfit joy have ne might,  
And to you been of governance,  
Such as you found in whole plessaunce,  
In every thing as ye know,  
After our custome and our low,  
Which how they first found were,  
I trow ye wote all the manere,  
And who queene is of this yle,  
As I have been long while,  
Ech seven yeeres not of usage,  
Visit the heavenly armitage,  
Which on a rocke so high stonds,  
In strange sea out from all londs,  
That to make the pilgrimage  
Is called a long perilous viage,  
For if the wind be not good frend,  
The journey dures to the end  
Of him that it undertakes,  
Of twenty thousand one not scapes ;  
Upon which rock growth a tree,  
That certaine yeeres beares apples three,  
Which three apples who may have,  
Been from all displeasaunce save,  
That in the seven yeere may fall,  
This wote you well one and all,  
For the first apple and the hext,  
Which growth unto you next,  
Hath three vertues notable,  
And keepeth youth aio durable,  
Beauty and loke, ever in one,  
And is the best in everichone.

" The second apple red and grene,  
Onely with lookes of your yene,  
You nourishes in plessaunce  
Better than partridge or fesaunce,  
And feeds every lives wight  
Pleasantly with the sight.

" The third apple of the three,  
Which groweth lowest on the tree,  
Who it beares may not faile  
That to his plessaunce may avale.  
So your pleasure and beauty rich,  
Your during youth ever liche,  
Your truth, your cunning, and your weale,  
Hath aye floured, and your good heale,  
Without sicknes or displeasaunce,  
Or thing that to you was noysaunce,  
So that you have as goddesses,  
Lived above all princesses :  
Now is befall, as ye may see ;  
To gather these said apples three,  
I have not failed againe the day,  
Thitherward to take the way,  
Wening to speed as I had oft,  
But whan I come, I find aloft  
My sister which that here stands,  
Having those apples in her hands,  
Avising them and nothing said,  
But looked as she were well paid :  
And as I stood her to behold,  
Thinking how my joyes were cold,  
Sith I those apples have ne might,  
Even with that so came this knight,  
And in his armes of me aware,  
Me tooke, and to his ship me bare,



And said, though him I never had seen,  
 Yet had I long his lady been,  
 Wherefore I should with him wend,  
 And he would to his lives end  
 My servant be, and gan to sing  
 As one that had wonne a rich thing ;  
 Tho were my spirits fro me gone,  
 So sodainly everichone,  
 That in me appeared but death,  
 For I felt neither life ne breath,  
 Ne good ne harme none I knew,  
 The sodaine paine me was so new,  
 That had not the hasty grace be  
 Of this lady, that fro the tree  
 Of her gentilnesse so hied  
 Me to comfort, I had died,  
 And of her three apples, one  
 In mine hand there put anone,  
 Which brought againe mind and breath,  
 And me recovered from the death,  
 Wherefore, to her so am I hold,  
 That for her all things do I wold,  
 For she was lech of all my smart,  
 And from great paine so quite mine hart,  
 And, as God wote, right as ye heare,  
 Me to comfort with friendly cheare  
 She did her prowess and her might,  
 And truly eke so did this knight,  
 In that he couth, and oft said,  
 That of my wo he was ill paid,  
 And cursed the ship that them there brought  
 The mast, the master that it wrought ;  
 And as ech thing mote have an end,  
 My sister here your brother frend,  
 Con with her words so womanly  
 This knight entreat, and conningly,  
 For mine honour and his also,  
 And said that with her we should go  
 Both in her ship, where she war brought,  
 Which was so wonderfully wrought,  
 So cleane, so rich, and so araid,  
 That we were both content and paid,  
 And me to comfort and to please,  
 And mine herte to put at ease,  
 She toke great paine in little while,  
 And thus hath brought us to this yle,  
 As ye may see, wherefore echone,  
 I pray you thanke her, one and one,  
 As heartily as ye can devise,  
 Or imagine in any wise."  
 At once there tho men might seen  
 A world of ladies fall on kneen  
 Before my lady, that there about  
 Was left none standing in the rout,  
 But altogether they went at ones  
 To kneele, they spared not for the stones,  
 Ne for estate, ne for their blood,  
 Well shewed there they couth much good,  
 For to my lady they made such feast,  
 With such words, that the least,  
 So friendly and so faithfully  
 Said was, and so cunningly,  
 That wonder was, seing their youth,  
 To here the language they couth,  
 And wholly how they governed were,  
 In thanking of my lady there,  
 And said by will and maundement,  
 They were at her commaundement,  
 Which was to me as great a joy,  
 As winning of the towne of Troy

Was to the hardy Greekes strong,  
 When they it wan with siege long,  
 To see my lady in such a place  
 So received as she was :  
 And when they talked had a while  
 Of this and that, and of the yle,  
 My lady, and the ladies there,  
 Altogether as they were,  
 The queene her selfe began to play,  
 And to the aged lady say :  
 " Now seemeth you not good it were,  
 Sith we be altogether here,  
 To ordaine and devise the best,  
 To set this knight and me at rest !  
 For woman is a feble wight  
 To rere a warre against a knight,  
 And sith he here is in this place,  
 At my list, danger or grace,  
 It were to me great villany  
 To do him any tyranny,  
 But faine I would, now will ye here,  
 In his owne country that he were,  
 And I in peace, and he at ease,  
 This were a way us both to please,  
 If it might be ; I you beseech,  
 With him hereof you fall in speech."  
 This lady tho began to smile,  
 Advising her a little while,  
 And with glad chere she said anone,  
 " Madam, I will unto him gone,  
 And with him speake, and of him fele  
 What he desires every dele : "  
 And soberly this lady tho,  
 Her selfe and other ladies two  
 She tooke with her, and with sad chere,  
 Said to the knight on this manere,  
 " Sir, the princes of this yle,  
 Whom for your pleassance many mile  
 Ye sought have, as I understond,  
 Till at the last ye have her fond,  
 Me sent hath here, and ladies twaine,  
 To heare all thing that ye saine,  
 And for what cause ye have her sought,  
 Faine would she wote, and whol your thought,  
 And why you do her all this wo,  
 And for what cause you be her fo !  
 And why, of every wight unware,  
 By force ye to your ship her bare,  
 That she so nigh was agone,  
 That mind ne speech had she none,  
 But as a painfull creature,  
 Dying, abode her adventure,  
 That her to see indure that paine,  
 Here well say unto you plaine,  
 Right on your selfe ye did amisse,  
 Seing how she a princes is."  
 This knight, the which couth his good,  
 Right of his truth moved his blood,  
 That pale he woxe as any lead,  
 And lookt as he would be dead,  
 Blood was there none in nother cheke,  
 Wordlesse he was and semed sicke,  
 And so it proved well he was,  
 For without moving any paas,  
 All sodainly as thing dying,  
 He fell at once downe sowing,  
 That for his wo this lady fraid,  
 Unto the queene her hied and said,  
 " Cometh on anon as have you blisse,  
 But ye be wise, thing is amisse,

This knight is dead or will be soone,  
 Lo, where he lyeth in a swoone,  
 Without word, or answering  
 To that I have said, any thing :  
 Wherefore, I doubt that the blame  
 Might be hindering to your name,  
 Which floured hath so many yere,  
 So long, that for nothing here,  
 I would in no wise he died,  
 Wherefore good were that ye hied  
 His life to save at the least,  
 And after that his wo be ceast,  
 Commaund him void, or dwell,  
 For in no wise dare I more mell  
 Of thing wherein such perill is,  
 As like is now to fall of this."

This queene right tho full of great feare,  
 With all the ladies present there,  
 Unto the knight came where he lay,  
 And made a lady to him say :  
 "Lo, here the queene, awake for shame !  
 What will you doe, is this good game ?  
 Why lye you here, what is your mind ?  
 Now is well seene your wit is blind,  
 To see so many ladies here,  
 And ye to make none other chere,  
 But as ye set them all at nought ;  
 Arise, for his love that you bought :"  
 But what she said, a word not one  
 He spake, ne answer gave her none.  
 The queene of very pity tho,  
 Her worship, and his like also,  
 To save there she did her paine,  
 And quoke for feare, and gan to saine  
 For woe, "Alas, what shall I doe !  
 What shall I say this man unto !  
 If he die here, lost is my name,  
 How shal I play this perillous game ?  
 If any thing be here amisse,  
 It shall be said it rigour is,  
 Whereby my name impayre might,  
 And like to die eke is this knight :"  
 And with that word her hand she laid  
 Upon his brest, and to him said,  
 "Awake my knight ! lo, it am I  
 That to you speake, now tell me why  
 Ye fare thus, and this paine endure,  
 Seeing ye be in country sure,  
 Among such friends that would you heale,  
 Your hertes ease eke and your weale,  
 And if I wist what you might ease,  
 Or know the thing that you might please,  
 I you ensure it should not faile,  
 That to your heale you might availle :  
 Wherefore, with all my herte I pray  
 Ye rise, and let us talke and play ;  
 And see! how many ladies here  
 Be comen for to make good chere."  
 All was for nought, for still as stone  
 He lay, and word spoke none.  
 Long while was or he might braid,  
 And of all that the queene had said,  
 He wist no word, but at the last,  
 "Mercy," twise he cried fast,  
 That pity was his voice to heare,  
 Or to behold his painefull cheare,  
 Which was not fained well was to sein,  
 Both by his visage and his eyn,  
 Which on the queene at once he cast,  
 And sighed as he would to brast,

And after that he shrigh to  
 That wonder was to see his wo,  
 For sith that paine was first named,  
 Was never more wofull paine attained,  
 For with voice dead he gan to plaine,  
 And to himselfe these words saine,  
 "I wofull wight full of malure,  
 Am worse than dead, and yet dure,  
 Maugre any paine or death,  
 Against my will I fell my breath :  
 Why n'am I dead sith I ne serve,  
 And sith my lady will me sterve !  
 Where art thou Death, art thou agast !  
 Well, shall we meete yet at the last,  
 Though thou thee hide, it is for nought,  
 For where thou dwelst thou shalt be sought ;  
 Maugre thy subtilt double face,  
 Here will I die right in this place,  
 To thy dishonour and mine ease ;  
 Thy manner is no wight to please,  
 What needs thee, sith I thee seclie,  
 So thee to hide my paine to echie !  
 And well wost thou I will not live,  
 Who would me all this world here give,  
 For I have with my cowardise,  
 Lost joy, and heale, and my service,  
 And made my soveraigne lady so,  
 That while she lives I trow my fo  
 She will be ever to her end,  
 Thus have I neither joy ne frend ;  
 Wote I not whether hast or sloth  
 Hath caused this now by my truth,  
 For at the hermitage full hie,  
 Whan I her saw first with mine eye,  
 I hied till I was aloft,  
 And made my pace small and soft,  
 Till in mine armes I had her fast,  
 And to my ship bare at the last,  
 Whereof she was displeased so,  
 That endlesse there seemed her wo,  
 And I thereof had so great fere,  
 That me repent that I come there,  
 Which hast I trow gan her displease,  
 And is the cause of my disease :"  
 And with that word he gan to cry,  
 "Now Death, Death ! try or thry,  
 And motred wot I not what of slouth,  
 And even with that the queene, of routh,  
 Him in her armes tooke and said,  
 "Now mine owne knight, be not evill apaid  
 That I a lady to you sent  
 To have knowledge of your entent,  
 For, in good faith, I meant but well,  
 And would ye wist it every dele,  
 Nor will not do to you ywis :"  
 And with that word she gan him kisse,  
 And prayed him rise, and said she would  
 His welfare, by her truth, and told  
 Him how she was for his disease  
 Right sorry, and faine would him please,  
 His life to save : these words tho  
 She said to him, and many mo  
 In comforting, for from the paine  
 She would he were delivered faine.  
 The knight tho up cast his een,  
 And whan he saw it was the queen,  
 That to him had these words said,  
 Right in his wo he gan to braid,  
 And him up dresses for to knele,  
 The queene avising wonder wele :

But as he rose he overthrew,  
Wherefore the queene, yet eft anew,  
Him in her armes anon tooke,  
And pitiously gan on him looke,  
But for all that nothing she said,  
Ne spake not like she were well paid,  
Ne no chere made, nor sad ne light,  
But all in one to every wight  
There was seene conning, with estate,  
In her without noise or debate,  
For save onely a looke piteous,  
Of womanhead undispiteous,  
That she showed in countenance,  
For seemed her herte from obeisance,  
And not for that she did her reine  
Him to recure from the peine,  
And his herte to put at large,  
For her entent was to his barge  
Him to bring against the eve,  
With certaine ladies and take leve,  
And pray him of his gentillesse,  
To suffer her thenceforth in peace,  
As other princes had before,  
And from thenceforth for evermore,  
She would him worship in all wise,  
That gentillesse might devise,  
And paine her wholly to fulfill,  
In honour, his pleasure and will.  
And during thus this knights wo,  
Present the queene and other mo,  
My lady, and many another wight,  
Ten thousand ships at a sight,  
I saw come over the wayy flood,  
With saile and ore, that as I stood  
Them to behold, I gan marvaile  
From whom might come so many a saile,  
For sith the time that I was bore,  
Such a navy there before  
Had I not seene, ne so arayed,  
That for the sight my herte played  
To and fro within my breast  
For joy, long was or it would rest,  
For there was sailes full of floures,  
After castels with huge toures,  
Seeming full of armes bright,  
That wonder lusty was the sight,  
With large toppes, and mastes long,  
Richly depeint, and rear among  
At certain times gan repaire  
Small birds downe from th'aire,  
And on the ships bounds about  
Sate and song with voice full out,  
Ballades and layes right joyously,  
As they couth in their harmony,  
That you to write that I there see,  
Mine excuse is it may not be,  
For why? the matter were to long  
To name the birds and write their song:  
Whereof, anon, the tidings there  
Unto the queene soone brought were,  
With many alas, and many a doubt,  
Shewing the ships there without.  
Tho gan the aged lady wepe,  
And said, "Alas, our joy on sleepe  
Soone shall be brought, ye, long or night,  
For we desiered been by this knight,  
For certes, it may none other be,  
But he is of yond companie,  
And they be come him here to seehe,"  
And with that word her failed speche

"Without remedy we be destroid,"  
Full oft said all, and gan conclude,  
Holy at once at the last,  
That best was shitt their yates fast,  
And arme them all in good langage,  
As they had done of old usage,  
And of faire wordes make their shot,  
This was their counsaile and the knot,  
And other purpose tooke they none,  
But armed thus forth they gone  
Toward the walles of the yle,  
But or they come there long while,  
They met the great lord of bove,  
That called is the god of love,  
That them avised with such chere,  
Right as he with them angry were:  
Avalled them not their walls of glasse,  
This mighty lord let not to passe,  
The shutting of their yates fast,  
All they had ordaind was but wast,  
For whan his ships had found land,  
This lord anon, with bow in hand,  
Into this yle with huge prease  
Hied fast, and would not cease  
Till he came there the knight lay;  
Of queene ne lady by the way  
Tooke he no heed but forth past,  
And yet all followed at the last;  
And whan he came where lay the knight,  
Well shewed he he had great might,  
And forth the queene called anone,  
And all the ladies everichone,  
And to them said, "Is not thus routh,  
To see my servaunt for his trouth,  
Thus leane, thus sicke, and in this paine,  
And wot not unto whom to plaine,  
Save onely one without mo,  
Which might him him heale and is his fo?"  
And with that word his heavy brow  
He shewed the queene and looked row;  
This mighty lord forth the anone,  
With o looke her faults echone  
He can her shew in little speech,  
Commaunding her to be his leech,  
Withouten more, shortly to say,  
He thought the queene soone should obay,  
And in his hond he shoke his bow,  
And said right soone he would be know,  
And for she had so long refused  
His service, and his lawes not used,  
He let her wit that he was wroth,  
And bent his bow and forth he goth  
A pace or two, and even there  
A large draught, up to his eare,  
He drew, and with an arrow ground  
Sharpe and new, the queene a wound  
He gave, that pierced unto the herte,  
Which afterward full sore gan smart,  
And was not whole of many a yeare;  
And even with that, "Be of good cheare,  
My knight," (quod he) "I will thee hele,  
And thee restore to parfite wele,  
And for each paine thou hast endured,  
To have two joys thou art cured:"  
And forth he past by the rout,  
With sober cheare walking about,  
And what he said I thought to heare,  
Well wist he which his servaunts were,  
And as he passed anon he fond,  
My lady, and her tooke by the hond,

And made her chere as a goddes,  
 And of beaute called her princes,  
 Of bounte eke gave her the name,  
 And said there was nothing blame  
 In her, but she was vertuous,  
 Saving she would no pity use,  
 Which was the cause that he her sought,  
 To put that far out of her thought,  
 And sith she had whole richesse  
 Of womanhead, and friendlinesse,  
 He said it was nothing fitting  
 To void pity his owne legging,  
 And gan her preach and with her play,  
 And of her beauty told her aie,  
 And said she was a creature  
 Of whom the name should endure,  
 And in bookes full of plesaunce  
 Be put for ever in remembrance,  
 And, as me thought, more friendly  
 Unto my lady, and goodly  
 He spake, than any that was there,  
 And for th' apples I trow it were,  
 That she had in possession;  
 Wherefore, long in procession,  
 Many a pace, arme under other,  
 He welke, and so did with none other,  
 But what he would commaund or say,  
 Forthwith needs all must obey,  
 And what he desired at the last,  
 Of my lady, was by request;  
 And whan they long together had beene,  
 He brought my lady to the queene,  
 And to her said, "So God you speed,  
 Shew grace, consent, that is need."  
 My lady tho, full conningly,  
 Right well avised and womanly  
 Downe gan to kneele upon the floures,  
 Which April nourished had with shoures,  
 And to this mighty lord gan say,  
 "That pleasest you, I will obey,  
 And me restraine from other thought,  
 As ye woll all thing shall be wrought."  
 And with that word kneeling she quoke;  
 That mighty lord in armes her touke,  
 And said, "You have a servaunt one,  
 That truer living is there none,  
 Wherefore, good were, seeing his trouth,  
 That on his paines ye had routh,  
 And purpose you to heare his speech,  
 Fully avised him to leech,  
 For of one thyng ye may be sure,  
 He will be yours while he may dure."  
 And with that word, right on his game,  
 Me thought he lough, and told my name,  
 Which was to me marvaile and fere,  
 That what to do I n'ist there,  
 Ne whether was me bet or none,  
 There to abide, or thus to gone,  
 For well wend I my lady wold  
 Imagen or deme that I had told  
 My counsaile whole, or made complaint  
 Unto that lord, that mighty saint,  
 So verily each thing unsought  
 He said, as he had knowne my thought,  
 And told my trouth and mine uncase  
 Bet than I couth have for mine ease,  
 Though I had studied all a weeke,  
 Well wist that lord that I was seek,  
 And would be leched wonder faine,  
 No man me blame, mine was the paine.

And whan this lord had all said,  
 And long with my lady plaid,  
 She gan to smile with spirit glade,  
 This was the answer that she made,  
 Which put me there in double peine,  
 That what to do, ne what to seine  
 Wist I not, ne what was the best,  
 Ferre was my herte than fro his rest,  
 For, as I thought, that smiling signo  
 Was token that the herte encline  
 Would to requests reasonable,  
 Because smiling is favorable  
 To every thing that shall thrive,  
 So thought I tho; anon, blive,  
 That worldlesse answer in no toun  
 Was tane for obligatioun,  
 Ne called surety in no wise,  
 Amongst them that called been wise.  
 Thus was I in a joyous dout,  
 Sure and unaunst of that rout,  
 Right as mine herte thought it were,  
 So more or lesse wexe my fere,  
 That if one thought made it wele  
 Another shent it every dele,  
 Till, at the last, I couth no more,  
 But purposed, as I did before,  
 To serve truly my lives space,  
 Awaiting ever the yere of grace,  
 Which may fall yet or I sterve,  
 If it please her that I serve,  
 And served have, and woll do ever,  
 For thing is none that me is lever  
 Than her service, whose presence  
 Mine Heaven is whole, and her absence  
 An Hell, full of divers paines,  
 Which to the death full oft me straines.  
 Thus in my thoughts as I stood,  
 That unneth felt I harme ne good,  
 I saw the queene a little paas  
 Come where this mighty lord was,  
 And kneeled downe in presence there  
 Of all the ladies that there were,  
 With sober countenaunce avised,  
 In few words that well suffised,  
 And to this lord, anon, present  
 A bill, wherein whole her entent  
 Was written, and how she besought,  
 As he knew every will and thought,  
 That of his godhead and his grace  
 He would forgive all old trespace,  
 And undispleased be of time past,  
 For she would ever be stedfast,  
 And in his service to the death  
 Use every thought while she had breath;  
 And sight and wept, and said no more;  
 Within was written all the sore,  
 At which bill the lord gan smile,  
 And said he would within that yle  
 Be lord and sire, both east and west,  
 And cald it there his new conquest,  
 And in great counsell tooke the queene,  
 Long were the tales them betweene,  
 And over her bill he read thrise,  
 And wonder gladly gan devise  
 Her features faire and her visage,  
 And bad good thrift on that image,  
 And said he trowed her complaint  
 Should after cause her be corseint,  
 And in his sleeve he put the bill,  
 Was there none that knew his will.

And forth he walke apace about  
 Beholding all the lusty rout,  
 Halfe in a thought with smiling chere,  
 Till at the last, as ye shall here,  
 He turned unto the queene ageine,  
 And said, "To morne. here in this plei e,  
 I woll ye be, and all yours,  
 That purposed ben to weare flours,  
 Or of my lusty colour use,  
 It may not be to you excuse,  
 Ne none of yours in no wise,  
 That able be to my servise,  
 For as I said have here before,  
 I will be lord for evermore  
 Of you, and of this yle, and all,  
 And of all yours, that have shall  
 Joy, peace, ease, or in pleasaunce  
 Your lives use without noysaunce ;  
 Here will I in state be seene,"  
 And turned his visage to the queene,  
 "And you give knowledge of my will,  
 And a full answers of your bill."  
 Was there no nay, ne words none,  
 But very obeisaunt seemed echone,  
 Queene and other that were there,  
 Well seemed it they had great fere,  
 And there tooke lodging every night,  
 Was none departed of that night,  
 And some to read old romances,  
 Them occupied for their pleasaunces,  
 Some to make verelaies and laies,  
 And some to other diverse plaies :  
 And I to me a romance tooke,  
 And as I reading was the booke,  
 Me thought the sphere had so run,  
 That it was rising of the Sun,  
 And such a prees into the plaine  
 Assemble gone, that with great paine  
 One might for other go ne stand,  
 Ne none take other by the hand,  
 Withouten they distourbed were,  
 So huge and great the prees was there.  
 And after that within two houres,  
 This mighty lord all in floures  
 Of divers colours many a paire,  
 In his estate up in the aire,  
 Well two fathom, as his hight,  
 He set him there in all their sight,  
 And for the queene and for the knight,  
 And for my lady, and every wight  
 In hast he sent, so that never one  
 Was there absent, but come echone :  
 And whan they thus assembled were,  
 As ye have heard me say you here,  
 Without more tarrying, on hight,  
 There to be seene of every wight,  
 Up stood among the prees above  
 A counsayler, servaunt of Love,  
 Which seemed well of great estate,  
 And shewed there how no debate  
 Owe ne goodly might be used  
 In gentillesse, and be excused,  
 Wherefore, he said, his lordes will  
 Was every wight there should be still,  
 And in pees, and one accord,  
 And thus commaunded at a word,  
 And can his tongue to swiche language  
 Turne, that yet in all mine age  
 Heard I never so conningly  
 Man speake, ne halfe so faithfully,

For every thing he said there  
 Seemed as it inscaled were,  
 Or approved for very trew :  
 Swiche was his cunning language new,  
 And well according to his chere,  
 That where I be, me thiuke I here  
 Him yet alway, whan I mine one  
 In any place may be alone :  
 First con he of the lusty yle  
 All th'astate in little while  
 Rehearse, and wholly every thing  
 That caused there his lordes comming,  
 And every wele and every wo,  
 And for what cause ech thing was so,  
 Well shewed he there in easie speech,  
 And how the sickle had need of leech :  
 And that whole was, and in grace,  
 He told plainly why each thing was,  
 And at the last he con conclude,  
 Voided every language rude,  
 And said, "That prince, that mighty lord,  
 Or his departing, would accord  
 All the parties there present,  
 And was the fine of his entent,  
 Witnesse his presence in your sight,  
 Which sits among you in his might :"  
 And kneeled downe withouten more,  
 And not o word spake he more.  
 Tho gan this mighty lord him dresse,  
 With cheare avised, to do largesse,  
 And said unto this knight and me,  
 "Ye shall to joy restored be,  
 And for ye have ben true, ye twaine,  
 I graunt you here for every paine  
 A thousand joys every weeke,  
 And looke ye be no lenger seeke.  
 And both your ladies, lo, hem here  
 Take ech his own, beeth of good chere,  
 Your happy day is new begun,  
 Sith it was rising of the Sun,  
 And to all other in this place  
 I graunt wholly to stand in grace,  
 That serveth truly, without slouth,  
 And to avanced be by trouth."  
 Tho can this knight and I downe kneele,  
 Wening to doe wonder wele,  
 "Seeing, O Lord, your great mercy,  
 Us hath enriched so openly,  
 That we deserve may never more  
 The least part, but evermore  
 With soule and body truly serve  
 You and yours till we sterve."  
 And to their ladies there they stood,  
 This knight that couth so mikel good,  
 Went in hast, and I also,  
 Joyous, and glad were we tho,  
 And also rich in every thought,  
 As he that all hath and ought nought,  
 And them besought in humble wise,  
 Us t'accept to their service,  
 And shew us of their friendly cheares,  
 Which in their treasure many yeares,  
 They kept had, us to great paine,  
 And told how their servants twaine,  
 Were and would be, and so had ever,  
 And to the death chaunge would we never,  
 Ne doe offence, ne thiinke like ill,  
 But fill their ordinance and will :  
 And made our othes fresh new,  
 Our old service to renew,

And wholly theirs for evermore,  
We there become, what might we more !  
And well awaiting, that in slouth  
We made ne fault, ne in our trouth,  
Ne thought not do, I you ensure,  
With our will, where we may dure.

This season past, againe an eve,  
This lord of the queene tooke leve,  
And said he would hastily returne,  
And at good leisure there sojournne,  
Both for his honour and for his ease,  
Commanding fast the knight to please,  
And gave his statutes in papers,  
And ordent divers officers,  
And forth to ship the same night  
He went, and soone was out of sight.  
And on the morrow, whan the aire  
Attempred was and wonder faire,  
Early at rising of the Sun,  
After the night away was run,  
Playing us on the rivage,  
My lady spake of her voyage,  
And said she made small journies,  
And held her in straunge countries,  
And forthwith to the queene went,  
And shewed her wholly her entent,  
And tooke her leave with cheare weeping,  
That pitty was to see that parting :  
For to the queene it was a paine,  
As to a martyr new yslaine,  
That for her woe, and she so tender,  
Yet I weepe oft whan I remember ;  
She offerd there to resigne,  
To my lady eight times or nine,  
Th'astate, the yle, shortly to tell,  
If it might please her there to dwell,  
And said for ever her linage  
Should to my lady doe homage,  
And hers be hole withouten more,  
Ye, and all theirs for evermore :  
" Nay, God forbid," my lady oft,  
With many conning word and soft,  
Seid, " that ever such thing should beene,  
That I consent should, that a queene  
Of your estate, and so well named,  
In any wise should be attamed ;  
But would be faine with all my herte,  
What so befell, or how me smert,  
To doe thing that you might please,  
In any wise, or be your ease : "  
And kissed there, and bad good night,  
For which leve wept many a wight ;  
There might men here my lady praised,  
And such a name of her araised,  
What of cunning and friendlinesse,  
What of beauty with gentilnesse,  
What of glad and friendly cheares,  
That she used in all her yeares,  
That wonder was here every wight,  
To say well how they did their night ;  
And with a prees, upon the morrow,  
To ship her brought, and what a sorrow  
They made, whan she should under saile,  
That, and ye wist, ye would mervaille.  
Forth goeth the ship, out goeth the sond,  
And I as a wood man unbend,  
For doubt to be behind there,  
Into the sea withouten fere,  
Anon I ran, till with a waw,  
All sodenly I was overthraw.

And with the water to and fro,  
Backward and forward travailed so,  
That mind and breath nigh was gone  
For good ne harme knew I none,  
Til at the last with hookes tweine,  
Men of the ship with mikel peine,  
To save my life, did such travaile,  
That, and ye wist, ye would mervaille,  
And in the ship me drew on hie,  
And saiden all that I would die,  
And laid me long downe by the mast,  
And of their clothes on me cast,  
And there I made my testament,  
And wist my selfe not what I ment,  
But whan I said had what I would,  
And to the mast my wo all told,  
And tane my leave of every wight,  
And closed mine eyen, and lost my sight,  
Avised to die, without more speech,  
Or any remedy to seech  
Of grace new, as was great need :  
My lady of my paine tooke heed,  
And her bethought how that for trouth  
To see me die it were great routh,  
And to me came in sober wise,  
And softly said, " I pray you rise,  
Come on with me, let be this fare,  
All shall be wel, have ye no care,  
I will obey ye and fulfill  
Holy in all that lords will,  
That you and me not long ago,  
After his list commaunded so,  
That there againe no resistance  
May be without great offence,  
And, therefore, now loke what I say,  
I am and will be friendly aye,  
Rise up, behold this avauntage,  
I graunt you inheritance,  
Peaceably without strive,  
During the daies of your live."  
And of her apples in my sleve  
One she put, and took her leve  
In words few and said, " Good hele,  
He that all made, you send and welle : "  
Wherewith my paines, all at ones,  
Tooke such leave, that all my bones,  
For the new duranse pleasaunce,  
So as they couth, desired to daunce,  
And I as whole as any wight,  
Up rose, with joyous herte and light,  
Hole and unsicke, right welle at ease,  
And all forget had my disease,  
And to my lady, where she plaid,  
I went anone, and to her said :  
" He that all joies persons to please  
First ordained with parfite ease,  
And every pleasure can depart,  
Send you madame, as large a part,  
And of his goods such plenty,  
As he has done you of beauty,  
With hele and all that may be thought,  
He send you all as he all wrought :  
Madame," (quoth I) " your servaunt trew,  
Have I ben long, and yet will new,  
Without change or repentance,  
In any wise or variance,  
And so will do, as thrive I ever,  
For thing is none that me is lever  
Than you to please, how ever I fare,  
Mine hertes lady and my welfare,

My life, mine hele, my lech also,  
 Of every thing that doth me wo,  
 My helpe at need, and my surete  
 Of every joy that longs to me,  
 My succours whole in all wise,  
 That may be thought or man devise,  
 Your grace, madame, such have I found,  
 Now in my need that I am bound  
 To you for ever, so Christ me save,  
 For heale and live of you I have,  
 Wherefore is reasoun I you serve,  
 With due obeisaunce till I sterve,  
 And dead and quicke be ever yours,  
 Late, early, and at all hours."  
 Tho came my lady small alite,  
 And in plaine English con consite  
 In words few, whole her entent  
 She shewed me there, and how she ment  
 To meward in every wise,  
 Wholly she came at their devise,  
 Without processe or long travell,  
 Charging me to keepe counsell,  
 As I would to her grace attaine,  
 Of which commaundement I was faine,  
 Wherefore I passe over at this time,  
 For counsell cords not well in rime,  
 And eke the oth that I have swore,  
 To breake me were better unbore,  
 Why for untrue for evermore  
 I should be hold, that nevermore  
 Of me in place should be report  
 Thing that availe might, or comfort  
 To mewards in any wise,  
 And ech wight would me dispise  
 In that they couth, and me repreve,  
 Which were a thing sore for to greeve,  
 Wherefore hereof more mencion  
 Make I not now ne long sermon,  
 But shortly thus I me excuse,  
 To rime a counsell I refuse.  
 Sailing thus two dayes or three,  
 My lady towards her countree,  
 Over the waves high and greene,  
 Which were large and deepe betweene,  
 Upon a time me called, and said  
 That of my hele she was well paid,  
 And of the queene and of the yle,  
 She talked with me long while,  
 And of all that she there had seene,  
 And of the state, and of the queene,  
 And of the ladies name by name,  
 Two houres or mo, this was her game,  
 Till at the last the wind gan rise,  
 And blew so fast, and in such wise,  
 The ship that every wight can say,  
 "Madame, er eve be of this day,  
 And God tofore, ye shall be there  
 As ye would faintest that ye were,  
 And doubt not within sixe hours,  
 Ye shall be there, as all is yours."  
 At which words she gan to smile,  
 And said that was no long while,  
 That they her set, and up she rose,  
 And all about the ship she gose,  
 And made good cheare to every wight,  
 Till of the land she had a sight,  
 Of which sight glad, God it wote,  
 She was abashed and abote,  
 And forth goeth, shortly you to tell,  
 Where she accustomed was to dwell,

And received was, as good right,  
 With joyous cheere and hertes light,  
 And as a glad new aventure,  
 Pleasaunt to every creature,  
 With which landing tho I woke,  
 And found my chamber full of smoke,  
 My cheekes eke unto the eares,  
 And all my body wet with teares,  
 And all so feeble and in such wise,  
 I was, that unneth might I rise,  
 So fare travailed and so faint,  
 That neither knew I kirke ne saint,  
 Ne what was what, ne who was who,  
 Ne avised what way I would go,  
 But by a venturous grace,  
 I rise and walkt, sought pace and pace,  
 Till I a winding staire found,  
 And held the vice aye in my hond,  
 And upward softly so gan creepe,  
 Till I came where I thought to sleepe  
 More at mine ease, and out of preace,  
 At my good leisure, and in peace,  
 Till somewhat I recomfort were  
 Of the travell and great feare  
 That I endured had before,  
 This was my thought without more,  
 And as a wight witlesse and faint,  
 Without more, in a chamber paint  
 Full of stories old and divers,  
 More than I can now rehearse,  
 Unto a bed full soberly,  
 So as I might full sothly,  
 Pace after other, and nothing said,  
 Till at the last downe I me laid,  
 And as my mind would give me leve,  
 All that I dreamed had that eve,  
 Before all I can rehearse,  
 Right as a child at schoole his verse  
 Doth after that he thinketh to thrive,  
 Right so did I for all my live,  
 I thought to have in remembraunce,  
 Both the paine and the pleasaunce,  
 The dreame whole, as it me befell,  
 Which was as ye here me tell.  
 Thus in my thoughts as I lay,  
 That happy or unhappy day,  
 Wot I not, so have I blame,  
 Of the two which is the name:  
 Befell me so, that there a thought,  
 By processe new on sleepe me brought,  
 And me governed so in a while,  
 That againe within the yle,  
 Methought I was, whereof the knight,  
 And of the ladies I had a sight,  
 And were assembled on a greene,  
 Knight and lady, with the queene,  
 At which assembly there was said,  
 How they all content and paid  
 Were wholly as in that thing,  
 That the knight there should be king,  
 And they would all for sure witness  
 Wedded be both more and lesse,  
 In remembraunce without more,  
 Thus they consent for evermore,  
 And was concluded that the knight  
 Depart should the same night,  
 And forthwith there tooke his voinge,  
 To journey for his marriage,  
 And returne with such an host,  
 That wedded might be least and most,

This was concluded, written and sealed,  
 That it might not be repealed  
 In no wise, but aie be firme,  
 And all should be within a tearme,  
 Without more excusation,  
 Both feast and coronation.  
 This knight which had thereof the charge,  
 Anon into a little barge  
 Brought was late against an eve,  
 Where of all he tooke his leave ;  
 Which barge was as a mans thought,  
 After his pleasure to him brought,  
 The queene her selfe accustomed aye  
 In the same barge to play,  
 It needeth neither mast ne rother,  
 I have not heard of such another,  
 No maister for the governaunce,  
 Hie sayled by thought and pleasaunce,  
 Without labour, east and west,  
 All was one, calme or tempest,  
 And I went with at his request,  
 And was the first prayed to the fest.  
 Whan he came in his countree,  
 And passed had the wavy see,  
 In an haven deepe and large  
 He left his rich and noble barge,  
 And to the court, shortly to tell,  
 He went, where he wont was to dwell,  
 And was received as good right,  
 As heire, and for a worthy knight,  
 With all the states of the lond,  
 Which came anon at his first sond,  
 With glad spirits full of trouth,  
 Loth to do fault or with a slouth,  
 Attaint be in any wise ;  
 Their riches was their old servise,  
 Which ever trew had be fond,  
 Sith first inhabit was the lond,  
 And so received there hir king,  
 That forgotten was no thing,  
 That owe to be done ne might please,  
 Ne their sovaine lord do ease,  
 And with them, so shortly to say,  
 As they of custome had done aye,  
 For seven yere past was and more,  
 The father, the old wise and hore  
 King of the land tooke his leve  
 Of all his barons on an eve,  
 And told them how his dayes past  
 Were all, and comen was the last,  
 And hertily prayed hem to remember  
 His sonne, which yong was and tender,  
 That borne was their prince to be,  
 If he returne to that countree  
 Might, by adventure or grace,  
 Within any time or space,  
 And to be true and friendly aye,  
 As they to him had bene alway :  
 Thus he them prayd, without more,  
 And tooke his leave for evermore.  
 Knownen was how, tender in age,  
 This young prince a great viage  
 Uncouth and straunge, honours to seeche,  
 Tooke in hond with little speeche,  
 Which was to seeke a princes  
 That he desired more than riches,  
 For her great name that flourd so,  
 That in that time there was no mo  
 Of her estate no so well named,  
 For borne was none that ever her blamed :

Of which princes somewhat before,  
 Here have I spoke, and some will more.  
 So thus befell as ye shall heare,  
 Unto their lord they made such cheare,  
 That joy was there to be present  
 To see their troth and how they ment,  
 So very glad they were ech one,  
 That them among there was no one,  
 That desired more riches,  
 Than for their lord such a princes,  
 That they might please, and that were faire,  
 For fast desired they an heire,  
 And said great surety were ywis.  
 And as they were speaking of this,  
 The prince himselfe him avised,  
 And in plaine English undisguised,  
 Them shewed hole his journey,  
 And of their counsell gan them prey,  
 And told how he ensured was,  
 And how his day he might not passe,  
 Without diffame and great blame,  
 And to him for ever shame,  
 And of their counsell and advise,  
 There he prayth them once or twice,  
 And that they would within ten daies,  
 Advise and ordaine him such waies,  
 So that it were no displeasaunce,  
 Ne to this realme over great grievance,  
 And that he have might to his feast,  
 Sixty thousand at the least,  
 For his intent within short while  
 Was to returne unto his yle  
 That he came fro, and kepe his day,  
 For nothing would he be away.  
 To counsaile tho the lords anon,  
 Into a chamber everychone,  
 Together went, them to devise,  
 How they might best and in what wise,  
 Purvey for their lords pleasaunce  
 And the realmes continuance  
 Of honor, which in it before  
 Had continued evermore.  
 So, at the last, they found the waies,  
 How within the next ten daies,  
 All might with paine and diligence  
 Be done, and cast what the dispence  
 Might draw, and in conclusion,  
 Made for ech thing provision.  
 Whan this was done, wholly tofore  
 The prince, the lords all before  
 Come, and shewed what they had done,  
 And how they couth by no reason  
 Find that within the ten daies,  
 He might depart by no waies,  
 But would be fiftene, at the least,  
 Or he returne might to his feist :  
 And shewed him every reason why  
 It might not be so hastily,  
 As he desired, ne his day  
 He might not keepe by no way,  
 For divers causes wonder great :  
 Which, whan he heard, in such an heat  
 He fell, for sorow and was seke,  
 Still in his bed whole that weke,  
 And nigh the tother for the shaine,  
 And for the doubt, and for the blame  
 That might on him be aret,  
 And oft upon his brest he bet,  
 And said, " Alas, mine honour for aye,  
 Have I here lost cleane this day,



Dead would I be ! alas, my name  
 Shall aye be more henceforth in shame,  
 And I dishonoured and reprevé,  
 And never more shall be beleevé : ”  
 And made swich sorow, that in trouth,  
 Him to behold it was great routh :  
 And so endured the dayes fiftene,  
 Till that the lords on an even  
 Him come, and told they ready were,  
 And shewed in few words there,  
 How and what wise they had purveyd  
 For his estate, and to him said,  
 That twenty thousand knights of name,  
 And fourty thousand without blame,  
 All come of noble lignee,  
 Togider in a companee,  
 Were lodged on a rivers side,  
 Him and his pleasure there t’abide.  
 The prince tho for joy up rose,  
 And where they lodged were, he goes  
 Without more that same night,  
 And these his supper made to dight,  
 And with them bode till it was dey,  
 And forthwith to take his journey,  
 Leving the streight, holding the large,  
 Till he came to his noble barge ;  
 And when this prince, this lusty knight,  
 With his people in armes bright,  
 Was comen where he thought to pas,  
 And knew well none abiding was  
 Behind, but all were there present,  
 Forthwith anon all his intent  
 He told them there, and made his cries  
 Through his hoste that day twise,  
 Commaunding every lives wight,  
 There being present in his sight,  
 To be the morow on the rivage,  
 Where he begin would his viage.  
 The morrow come, the cry was kept,  
 Few was there that night that slept,  
 But trussed and purveyed for the morrow,  
 For fault of ships was all their sorrow,  
 For save the barge, and other two,  
 Of ships there saw I no mo :  
 Thus in their doubts as they stood,  
 Waxing the sea, comming the flood,  
 Was cried, “ To ship goe every wight,”  
 Than was but hie, that hie might,  
 And to the barge me thought echone  
 They went, without was left not one,  
 Horse, male, trusse, ne bagage,  
 Salade, speare, gard-brace, ne page,  
 But was lodged and roome ynough,  
 At which shipping me thought I lough,  
 And gan to marvaile in my thought,  
 How ever such a ship was wrought,  
 For what people that can encrease,  
 Ne never so thicke might be the prease,  
 But all had roome at their will,  
 There was not one was lodged ill,  
 For as I trow, my selfe the last  
 Was one, and lodged by the mast,  
 And where I looked I saw such rome,  
 As all were lodged in a towne.  
 Forth goth the ship, said was the creed,  
 And on their knees for their good speed,  
 Downe kneeled every wight a while,  
 And praied fast that to the yle  
 They might come in safety,  
 The prince and all the company.

With worship and without blame,  
 Or disclaunder of his name,  
 Of the promise he should retourne,  
 Within the time he did sojourne,  
 In his lond biding his host,  
 This was their prayer of least and most ;  
 To keepe the day it might not been,  
 That he appointed had with the queen,  
 To retourne without slouth.  
 And so assured had his trouth,  
 For which fault this prince, this knight,  
 During the time slept not a night,  
 Such was his wo and his disease,  
 For doubt he should the queene displease.  
 Forth goeth the ship with such speed,  
 Right as the prince for his great need  
 Desiro would after his thought,  
 Till it unto the yle him brought,  
 Where in hast upon the sand,  
 He and his people tooke the land,  
 With hertes glad, and chere light,  
 Weening to be in Heaven that night :  
 But or they passed a while,  
 Entring in toward that yle,  
 All clad in blacke with chere piteous,  
 A lady which never dispiteous  
 Had be in all her life tofore,  
 With sory chere, and herte to tore,  
 Unto this prince where he gan ride,  
 Come and said, “ Abide, abide,  
 And have no hast, but fast retourne,  
 No reason is ye here sojourne,  
 For your untruth hath us discried,  
 Wo worth the time we us allied  
 With you, that are so soone untrew,  
 Alas, the day that we you knew !  
 Alas, the time that ye were bore,  
 For all this lond by you is lore !  
 Accursed be he you hider brought,  
 For all your joy is turnd to nought,  
 Your acquaintance we may complaine,  
 Which is the cause of all our paine.”  
 “ Alas, madame,” quoth tho this knight,  
 And with that from his horse he light,  
 With colour pale, and cheekes lene,  
 “ Alas, what is this for to mene !  
 What have ye said, why be ye wroth !  
 You to displease I would be loth,  
 Know ye not well the promessee  
 I made have to your princesse,  
 Which to perfourme is mine intent,  
 So mote I speed, as I have ment,  
 And as I am her very trew,  
 Without change or thought new,  
 And also fully her servand,  
 As creature or man livand  
 May be to lady or princesse,  
 For she mine Heaven and whole riches  
 Is, and the lady of mine heale,  
 My worlds joy and all my weale,  
 What may this be, whence coms this spech  
 Tell me, madame, I you beseech,  
 For sith the first of my living,  
 Was I so fearfull of nothing,  
 As I am now to heare you speake ;  
 For dout I feele mine herte breake ;  
 Say on, madame, tell me your will,  
 The remenaunt is it good or ill ! ”  
 “ Alas,” (quod she) “ that ye were bore,  
 For, for your love this land is lore !

The queene is dead, and that is ruth,  
 For sorrow of your great untruth ;  
 Of two partes of the lusty rout  
 Of ladies that were there about,  
 That wont were to talke and play,  
 Now are dead and cleane away,  
 And under earth tane lodging new ;  
 Alas, that ever ye were untrew !  
 For whan the time ye set was past,  
 The queene to counsaile sone in hast,  
 What was to doe, and said great blame  
 Your acquaintaunce cause would and shame,  
 And the ladies of their avise  
 Prayed, for need was to be wise,  
 In eschewing tales and songs,  
 That by them make would ill tonges,  
 And sey they were lightly conquest,  
 And prayed to a poore feast,  
 And foule had their worship weived,  
 Whan so unwisely they conceived,  
 Their rich treasure, and their heale,  
 Their famous name, and their weale,  
 To put in such an adventure,  
 Of which the sclauder ever dure  
 Was like, without helpe of appele,  
 Wherefore they need had of counsele,  
 For every wight of them would say  
 Their closed yle an open way  
 Was become to every wight,  
 And well appreve by a knight,  
 Which he alas, without paysaunce,  
 Had soone achieved thobesaunce :  
 All this was moved at counsell thrise,  
 And concluded daily twise,  
 That bet was die without blame  
 Than lose the riches of their name,  
 Wherefore, the deaths acquaintaunce  
 They chese, and left have their pleasaunce,  
 For doubt to live as repreve,  
 In that they you so soone beleved,  
 And made their othes with one accord,  
 That eat, ne drinke, ne speake word,  
 They should never, but ever weping  
 Bide in a place without parting,  
 And use their dayes in penaunce,  
 Without desire of allegeaunce,  
 Of which the truth, anon, con prove,  
 For why ? the queen forthwith her leve  
 Toke at them all that were present,  
 Of her defaults fully repent,  
 And died there withouten more :  
 Thus are we lost for evermore ;  
 What should I more hereof rehearse ?  
 Comen within, come see her herse,  
 Where ye shall see the pitous sight,  
 That ever yet was shewen to knight,  
 For ye shall see ladies stonde,  
 Ech with a great rod in hond,  
 Clad in black, with visage white,  
 Ready each other for to smite,  
 If any be that will not wepe,  
 Or who that makes countenaunce to slepe ;  
 They be so bet, that all so blew  
 They be as cloth that died is new,  
 Such is their parfite repentance ;  
 And thus they kepe their ordinance,  
 And will do ever to the death,  
 While them endures any breath."  
 This knight tho in armes twaine,  
 This lady tooke and gan her saune,

"Alas, my birth ! wo worth my life !"  
 And even with that he drew a knife,  
 And through gowne, doublet, and shert,  
 He made the blood come from his herte,  
 And set him downe upon the greene,  
 And full repent closed his eene,  
 And save that ones he drew his breath,  
 Without more thus he tooke his death.  
 For which cause the lusty hoast,  
 Which in a battaile on the coast,  
 At once for sorrow such a cry  
 Gan rewe thorow the company,  
 That to the Heaven heard was the sowne,  
 And under therth als fer adowne,  
 That wild beasts for the feare  
 So sodainly afrayed were,  
 That for the doubt, while they might dure,  
 They ran as of their lives unsure,  
 From the woods unto the plaine,  
 And from the valleys the high mountaine  
 They sought, and ran as beastes blind,  
 That cleane forgotten had their kind.  
 This wo not ceased, to counsaile went  
 These lords, and for that lady sent,  
 And of avise what was to done,  
 They her besought she say would sone.  
 Weeping full sore, all clad in blake,  
 This lady softly to them spake,  
 And said, " My lords, by my trouth,  
 This mischief it is of your slouth,  
 And if ye had that judge would right,  
 A prince that were a very knight,  
 Ye that ben of astate, echone,  
 Die for his fault should one and one ;  
 And if he hold had the promesse,  
 And done that longs to gentillesse,  
 And fulfilled the princes behest,  
 This hasty farme had bene a feast,  
 And now is unrecoverable,  
 And us a slaunder aye durable ;  
 Wherefore, I say, as of counsaile,  
 In me is none that may avale,  
 But, if ye list, for remembraunce  
 Purvey and make such ordinaunce,  
 That the queene, that was so meke,  
 With all her women, dede or ake,  
 Might in your land a chappell have,  
 With some remembraunce of her grave,  
 Shewing her end with the pity,  
 In some notable old city,  
 Nigh unto an high way,  
 Where every wight might for her pray,  
 And for all hers that have ben trew :  
 And even with that she changed hew.  
 And twise wished after the death,  
 And sight, and thus passed her breath.  
 Than said the lords of the hoost,  
 And so conclude least and most,  
 That they would ever in houses of tharke  
 Their lives lead, and weare but blacke,  
 And forsake all their pleasaunces,  
 And turn all joy to penaunces,  
 And beare the dead prince to the berge,  
 And named them should have the charge ;  
 And to the hearse where lay the queen,  
 The remenaunt went, and down on kneen,  
 Holding their honds on high, gon cris,  
 " Mercy, mercy," everich thrie,  
 And cursed the time that ever slouth  
 Should have such masterdome of trouth.

And to the barge a long mile,  
 They bare her forth, and in a while  
 All the ladies one and one,  
 By companies were brought echone,  
 And past the sea and tooke the land,  
 And in new hersees on a sand,  
 Put and brought were all anon,  
 Unto a city closed with stonc,  
 Where it had been used aye  
 The kings of the land to lay,  
 After they raigned in honouris,  
 And writ was which were conquerours,  
 In an abbey of nunnes which were blake,  
 Which accustomed were to wake,  
 And of usage rise ech a night  
 To pray for every lives wight;  
 And so befell as in the guise,  
 Ordeint and said was the servise,  
 Of the prince and of the queen,  
 So devoutly as might been,  
 And after that about the hersees,  
 Many orisons and verses,  
 Without note full softly,  
 Said were and that full heartily,  
 That all the night till it was day,  
 The people in the church con pray  
 Unto the holy Trinity,  
 Of these soules to have pity.

And whan the night past and ronme  
 Was, and the new day begonne,  
 The yong morrow with rayes red,  
 Which from the Sunne over all con sped,  
 Atempred clere was and faire,  
 And made a time of wholesome aire,  
 Befell a wonder case and strange,  
 Among the people and gan change  
 Soone the word and every woo  
 Unto a joy, and some to two:  
 A bird, all fedred blew and greene,  
 With bright rayes like gold betweenne,  
 As small thred over every joynt,  
 All full of colour strange and coint,  
 Uncouth and wonderfull to sight,  
 Upon the queenes herse con light,  
 And song full low and softly,  
 Three songs in her harmony,  
 Unletted of every wight,  
 Till, at the last, an aged knight  
 Which seemed a man in great thought  
 Like as he set all thing at nought,  
 With visage and eyen all forwept  
 And pale, as man long unslept,  
 By the hersees as he stood  
 With hasty hondling of his hood  
 Unto a prince that by him past  
 Made the bridde somewhat agast,  
 Wherefore he rose and left his song,  
 And depart from us among,  
 And spread his wings for to passe  
 By the place he entred was,  
 And in his haat, shortly to tell,  
 Him hurt, that backward downe he fell,  
 From a window richly peint  
 With lives of many divers seint,  
 And bet his wings and bled fast,  
 And of the hurt thus died and past,  
 And lay there well an houre and more,  
 Till, at the last, of briddes a score  
 Come and sembled at the place  
 Where the window broken was,

And made swiche waimentacioun,  
 That pity was to heare the soun,  
 And the warbles of their throtes,  
 And the complaint of their notes,  
 Which from joy cleane was reversed,  
 And of them one the glas soone perced,  
 And in his beke of colours nine,  
 An herbe he brought flourelesse, all greene,  
 Full of small leaves and plaine,  
 Swart and long with many a vaine,  
 And where his fellow lay thus dede,  
 This hearbe down laid by his hede,  
 And dressed it full softly,  
 And hong his head and stood thereby,  
 Which hearb, in lesse than halfe an houre  
 Gan over all knit, and after floure  
 Full out and wexe ripe the seed,  
 And right as one another feed  
 Would, in his beake he tooke the graine,  
 And in his fellowes beake certaine  
 It put, and thus, within the third,  
 Up stood and pruned him the bird,  
 Which dead had be in all our sight,  
 And both together forth their flight  
 Tooke singing from us, and their leve,  
 Was none disturb hem would ne greve;  
 And whan they parted were and gone  
 Th'abbesse the seeds soone echone  
 Gadred had, and in her hand  
 The herb she tooke, well avisand  
 The leafe, the seed, the stalke, the floure,  
 And said it had a good savour,  
 And was no common herb to find,  
 And well approved of uncouth kind,  
 And than other more vertuose,  
 Who so have it might for to use  
 In his need, floure, leafe, or graine,  
 Of their heale might be certaine;  
 And laid it downe upon the herse  
 Where lay the queene, and gan rehersi,  
 Echone to other that they had seene,  
 And taling thus the sede wex greene,  
 And on the dry herse gan spring,  
 Which me thought a wondrous thing,  
 And after that floure and new seed,  
 Of which the people all tooke heed,  
 And said, it was some great miracle,  
 Or medicine fine more than triacle,  
 And were well done there to assay,  
 If it might ease in any way  
 The corsees, which with torch light,  
 They waked had there all that night.  
 Soone did the lords there consent,  
 And all the people thereto content,  
 With easie words and little fare,  
 And made the queenes visage bare,  
 Which shewed was to all about,  
 Wherefore in swoone fell whole the rout  
 And were so sory, most and least,  
 That long of weeping they not ceast,  
 For of their lord the remembrance  
 Unto them was such displeasaunce,  
 That for to live they called a paine,  
 So were they very true and plaine;  
 And after this, the good abbesse  
 Of the graine gan chese and dreese  
 Three, with her fingers cleane and small,  
 And in the queenes mouth by tale,  
 One after other full easily,  
 She put and full conningly.

Which shewed soone such vertue,  
 That preved was the medicine true,  
 For with a smiling countenance  
 The queene uprose, and of usaunce,  
 As she was wont, to every wight  
 She made good cheere, for which sight  
 The people kneeling on the stones,  
 Thought they in Heaven were soules and bones:  
 And to the prince where he lay,  
 They went to make the same assay;  
 And whan the queene it understood,  
 And how the medicine was good,  
 She prayed she might have the graines  
 To releve him from the paines  
 Which she and he had both endured,  
 And to him went, and so him cured,  
 That within a little space,  
 Lusty and fresch on live he was  
 And in good hele, and hole of speech,  
 And lough, and said, "Gramercy leech,"  
 For which the joy throughout the toun,  
 So great was that the bels sown  
 Afraied the people, a journey  
 About the city every way,  
 And come and asked cause and why,  
 They rongen were so statly!  
 And after that the queene, th'abbesse  
 Made diligence, or they would cesse,  
 Such, that of ladies soone a rout  
 Shewing the queene was all about,  
 And called by name echone and told,  
 Was none forgotten young ne old;  
 There might men see joyes new,  
 Whan the medicine fine and trew,  
 Thus restored had every wight,  
 So well the queene as the knight,  
 Unto perfit joy and hele,  
 That fleting they were in such wele  
 As folke that would in no wise,  
 Desire more perfit paradise.  
 And thus, whan passed was the sorrow,  
 With mikel joy soone on the morrow,  
 The king, the queene, and every lord,  
 With all the ladies by one accord,  
 A generall assembly  
 Great cry through the country,  
 The which after as their intent  
 Was turned to a parliament,  
 Where was ordained and avised  
 Every thing and devised,  
 That please might to most and least,  
 And there concluded was the feast,  
 Within the yle to be hold  
 With full consent of young and old,  
 In the same wise as before,  
 As thing should be withouten more;  
 And shipped and thither went,  
 And into straunge realmes sent  
 To kings, queenes, and duchesses,  
 To divers princes and princesses,  
 Of their linage, and can pray  
 That it might like them at that day  
 Of marriage, for their sport,  
 Come see the yle and them disport,  
 Where should be jousts and turnaies,  
 And armes done in other waies,  
 Signifying over all the day,  
 After Aprill within May;  
 And was avised that ladies tweine,  
 Of good estate and well besene,

With certaine knights and squiers,  
 And of the queenes officers,  
 In manner of an embassade,  
 With certain letters closed and made,  
 Should take the barge and depart,  
 And seeke my lady every part,  
 Till they her found for any thing,  
 Both charged have queene and king,  
 And as their lady and maistres,  
 Her to beseke of gentilles,  
 At the day there for to been,  
 And oft her recommaund the queen,  
 And prayes for all loves to hast,  
 For, but she come, all wolle be wast,  
 And the feast a businesse  
 Without joy or lustinesse:  
 And tooke them tokens and good speed  
 Praid God send, after their need.  
 Forth went the ladies and the knights,  
 And were out fourteene daies and nights,  
 And brought my lady in their barge,  
 And had well sped and done their charge;  
 Whereof the queene so hartly glad  
 Was, that, in soth, such joy she had  
 Whan the ship approched lond,  
 That she my lady on the sond  
 Met, and in armes so constraine,  
 That wonder was behold them twaine,  
 Which to my dome during twelve houres,  
 Neither for heat ne watry shoures,  
 Departed not no company,  
 Saving themselves but none them by,  
 But gave them leisir to their ease,  
 To rehearse joy and discease,  
 After the pleasure and courages  
 Of their young and tender ages:  
 And after with many a knight  
 Brought were, where, as for that night,  
 They parted not, for to pleasaunce,  
 Content was herte and countenance  
 Both of the queene and my maistresse,  
 This was that night their businesse:  
 And on the morrow with huge rout,  
 This prince of lords him about,  
 Come and to my lady said  
 That of her comming glad and well apaid  
 He was, and full conningly  
 Her thanked and full heartily,  
 And lough and smiled, and said, "ywis,  
 That was in doubt in safety is:"  
 And commaunded do diligence,  
 And spare for neither gold ne spence,  
 But make ready, for on the morow  
 Wedded, with saint John to borrow,  
 He would be, withouten more,  
 And let them wite this lesse and more.  
 The morow come, and the service  
 Of marriage, in such a wise  
 Said was, that with more honour  
 Was never prince ne conquerour  
 Wedde, ne with such company  
 Of gentillesse in chivalry,  
 Ne of ladies so great routs,  
 Ne so besene, as all about  
 They were there, I certifie  
 You on my life withouten lie.  
 And the feast hold was in teutin,  
 As to tell you mine entent is,  
 In a rome, a large plaine  
 Under a wood in a champaigne,  
 D D 2

Betwixt a river and a welle,  
Where never had abbay, ne selle  
Ben, ne kirke, house, ne village,  
In time of any mans age :  
And dured three months the feast,  
In one estate and never ceast,  
From early the rising of the Sonne,  
Till the day spent was and yronne,  
In justing, dauncing, and lustinesse,  
And all that sowned to gentilnesse.

And, as me thought, the second morrow,  
Whan ended was all old sorrow,  
And in surety every wight  
Had with his lady slept a night,  
The prince, the queene, and all the rest,  
Unto my lady made request,  
And her besought oft and praid  
To mewards to be well apaid,  
And consider mine old trouth,  
And on my paines have routh,  
And me accept to her servise,  
In such forme and in such wise,  
That we both might be as one,  
Thus prayed the queene, and everichone :  
And, for there should be no nay,  
They stint justing all a day,  
To pray my lady and requere  
Be content and out of fere,  
And with good herte make friendly cheare,  
And said it was a happy yeare :  
At which she smiled and said, ywis,  
" I trow well he my servaunt is,  
And would my welfare, as I trist,  
So would I his, and would he wist  
How, and I knew that his trouth  
Continue would without slouth,  
And be such as ye here report,  
Restraining both courage and sport,  
I coult consent at your request,  
To be named of your fest,  
And do after your usaunce,  
In obeying your pleasaunce ;  
At your request this I consent,  
To please you in your entent,  
And eke the sovereigne above  
Commanded hath me for to love,  
And before othir him prefer,  
Against which prince may be no wer,  
For his power over all raigneth,  
That othir would for nought him paineth,  
And sith his will and yours is one,  
Contrary in me shall be none."  
Tho (as me thought) the promise  
Of marriage before the mese  
Desired was of every wight  
To be made the same night,  
To put away all maner douts  
Of every wight thereabouts,  
And so was do; and on the morrow,  
Whan every thought and every sorrow  
Dislodged was out of mine herte,  
With every wo and every smert,  
Unto a tent prince and princes,  
Me thought, brought me and my maistres,  
And said we were at full age  
There to conclude our marriage,  
With ladies, knights, and squiers,  
And a great host of ministers,  
With instruments and sounes diverse,  
That long were here to rehearse,

Which tent was church perochiall,  
Ordaint was in especiall,  
For the feast and for the sacre,  
Where archbishop, and archdiacre  
Song full out the servise,  
After the custome and the guise,  
And the churches ordinaunce ;  
And after that to dine and daunce  
Brought were we, and to divers playes,  
And for our speed ech with prayes,  
And merry was most and least,  
And said amended was the feast,  
And were right glad lady and lord,  
Of the marriage and th'accord,  
And wished us hertes pleasaunce,  
Joy, hie, and continuance,  
And to the ministrils made request,  
That in encreasing of the fest,  
They would touch their cords,  
And with some new joyeux accords,  
Moove the people to gladnesse,  
And praiden of all gentilnesse,  
Ech to paine them for the day,  
To shew his cunning and his play.  
Tho began sownes mervelous  
Entuned with accords joyous,  
Round about all the tents,  
With thousands of instruments,  
That every wight to daunce them pained,  
To be merry was none that fained,  
Which sowne me troubled in my sleepe,  
That fro my bed forth I lepe,  
Wening to be at the feast,  
But whan I woke all was ceast,  
For there n'as lady ne creature,  
Save on the wals old portraiture  
Of horsmen, hawkes, and hounds,  
And hurt deere full of wounds,  
Some like bitten, some hurt with shot,  
And, as my dreame, seemed that was not ;  
And whan I wake, and knew the trouth,  
And ye had seen, of very routh,  
I trow ye would have wept a weke,  
For never man yet halfe so seke ;  
I went escaped with the life,  
And was for fault that sword ne knife  
I find ne might my life t'abridge,  
Ne thing that kerved, ne had edge,  
Wherewith I might my woful paine  
Have voided with bleeding of my vaine.  
Lo, here my blisse, lo, here my paine,  
Which to my lady I do complaine,  
And grace and mercy her requere,  
To end my wo and busie fere,  
And me accept to her servise,  
After her servise in such avise,  
That of my dreame the substance  
Might turne once to cognisaunce,  
And cognisaunce to very preve  
By full consent and good leve,  
Or els without more I pray,  
That this night, or it be day,  
I mote unto my dreame returne,  
And sleeping so, forth aie sojourne  
About the yle of pleasaunce,  
Under my ladies obeisaunce,  
In her servise, and in such wise,  
As it please her may to devise,  
And grace ones to be accept,  
Like as I dreamed whan I slept,

And dure a thousand yeare and ten,  
In her good will, amen, amen.

FAIREST of faire, and goodliest on live,  
All my secret to you I plaine and shrive,  
Requiring grace and of complaint,  
To be healed or martyred as a saint,  
For by my trowth I sweare, and by this booke,  
Ye may both heale and slee me with a looke.

Go forth mine owne true herte innocent,  
And with humblesse, do thine observaunce,  
And to thy lady on thy knees present  
Thy servise new, and think how great pleasance  
It is to live under th'obeisance  
Of her that may with her looks soft  
Give thee the blisse that thou desirest oft.

Be diligent, awake, obey, and drede,  
And not too wild of thy countenance,  
But meeke and glad, and thy nature feed,  
To do each thing that may her pleasance,  
Whan thou shalt sleep, have aie in remembrance  
Th'image of her which may with looks soft  
Give thee the blisse that thou desirest oft.

And if so be that thou her name find  
Written in booke, or els upon wall,  
Looke that thou, as servaunt true and kind,  
Thine obeisance, as she were there withall;  
Faining in love is breeding of a fall  
From the grace of her, whose looks soft  
May give the blisse that thou desirest oft.

Ye that this ballade read shall,  
I pray you keepe you from the fall.

## THE FLOWER AND THE LEAF. *Not Chaucer.*

A gentlewoman out of an arboure in a grove, seeth a great compaignie of knights and ladies in a daunce upon the greene grasse: the which being ended, they all kneele downe, and do honour to the daisie, some to the flower, and some to the leafe. Afterward this gentlewoman learneth by one of these ladies the meaning hereof, which is this: They which honour the flower, a thing fading with every blast, are such as looke after beaultie and worldly pleasure. But they that honour the leafe, which abideth with the root, notwithstanding the frosts and winter stormes, are they which follow vertue and during qualities, without regard of worldly respects.

### v. 1—56

WHAN that Phebus his chair of gold so hie  
Had whirled up the sterry sky aloft,  
And in the Boole was entred certainly,  
When shoures sweet of raine descended soft,  
Causing the ground fele times and oft,  
Up for to give many an wholesome airc,  
And every plaine was clothed faire

With new greene, and maketh small floures  
To springen here and there in field and in mede,  
So very good and wholesome be the shoures,  
That it renueth that was old and dede,  
In winter time; and out of every sede  
Springeth the hearbe, so that every wight  
Of this season wexeth glad and light.

And I so glad of the season swete,  
Was happed thus upon a certaine night,  
As I lay in my bed, sleepe full unmete  
Was unto me, but why that I ne might  
Rest, I ne wist: for there n'as earthly wight  
As I suppose had more herts ease  
Than I; for I n'ad sicknesse nor disease.

Wherefore I mervaille greatly of my selfe,  
That I so long withouten sleepe lay,  
And up I rose three houres after twelfe,  
About the springing of the day,  
And on I put my geare and mine array,  
And to a pleasaunt grove I gan passe,  
Long er the bright Sunne up risen was.

In which were okes great, streight as a line,  
Under the which the grasse so fresh of hew,  
Was newly sprong, and an eight foot or nine  
Every tree well fro his fellow grew,  
With branches brode, laden with leves new,  
That sprongen out ayen the sunne-shene,  
Some very red, and some a glad light grene.

Which as me thought was right a pleasant sight,  
And eke the briddes songe for to here,  
Would have rejoiced any earthly wight,  
And I that couth not yet in no manere  
Hears the nightingale of all the yeare,  
Ful busily herkened with herte and with care,  
If I her voice perceiue could any where.

And, at the last, a path of litle brede  
I found, that greatly had not used be,  
For it forgrown was with grasse and weede,  
That well unneth a wights might it se:  
Thought I, this path some whider goth, parde;  
And so I followed, till it me brought  
To right a pleasaunt herber well ywrought,

That benched was, and with turfes new  
Freshly turved, whereof the grene gras,  
So small, so thicke, so short, so fresh of hew,  
That most like unto green wool wot I it was:  
The hegge also that yede in compas,  
And closed in all the greene herbere,  
With sicamour was set and eglatere;

Wrethen in fere so well and cunningly,  
That every branch and leafe grew by measure,  
Plaine as a bord, of an height by and by,  
I sie never thing I you ensure,  
So well done ; for he that tooke the cure  
It to make ythrow, did all his peine  
To make it passe all tho that men have seine.

And shapen was this herber rooffe and all  
As a prety parlour ; and also  
The hegge as thicke as a castle wall,  
That who that list without to stond or go,  
Though he would all day prien to and fro,  
He should not see if there were any wight  
Within or no ; but one within well might

Perceive all tho that yeden there without  
In the field, that was on every side  
Covered with corn and graese, that out of doubt,  
Though one would seeke all the world wide,  
So rich a field coude not be espide  
On no coast, as of the quantity,  
For of all good thing there was plenty.

And I that all this pleasaunt sight sie,  
Thought sodainly I felt so sweet an aire  
Of the eglentere, that certainly  
There is no hert, I deme, in such dispaire,  
Ne with thoughts froward and contraire,  
So overlaid, but it should soone have bote,  
If it had ones felt this savour sote.

And as I stood and cast aside mine eie,  
I was ware of the fairest medler tree,  
That ever yet in all my life I sie,  
As full of blossomes as it might be,  
Therein a goldfinch leaping pretile  
Fro bough to bough ; and, as him list, he eet  
Here and there of buds and floures sweet.

And to the herber side was joyning  
This faire tree, of which I have you told,  
And at the last the brid began to sing,  
Whan he had eaten what he eat wold ;  
So passing sweetly, that by manifold  
It was more pleasaunt than I coude devise,  
And whan his song was ended in this wise,

The nightingale with so merry a note  
Answered him, that all the wood rong  
So sodainly, that as it were a sote,  
I stood astonied, so was I with the song  
Thorow ravished, that till late and long,  
I ne wist in what place I was, ne where ;  
And ayen, me thought, she song ever by mine ere.

Wherefore I waited about busily  
On every side, if I her might see ;  
And, at the last, I gan full well aspy  
Wher she sat in a fresh grene laurer tree,  
On the further side even right by me,  
That gave so passing a delicious smell,  
According to the eglentere full well.

Whereof I had so inly great pleasure,  
That, as me thought, I surely ravished was  
Into Paradise, whome my desire  
Was for to be, and no farther passe  
As for that day, and on the sote grasse  
I sat me downe, for as for mine entent,  
The birdes song was more convenient,

And more pleasaunt to me by many fold,  
Than meat or drinke, or any other thing,  
Thereto the herber was so fresh and cold,  
The wholesome savours eke so comforting,  
That, as I demed, sith the beginning  
Of the world was never scene er than  
So pleasaunt a ground of none earthly man.

And as I sat the birds harkening thus,  
Me thought that I heard voices sodainly,  
The most sweetest and most delicious  
That ever any wight I trow truly  
Heard in their life, for the armony  
And sweet accord was in so good musike,  
That the voice to angels most was like.

At the last, out of a grove even by,  
That was right goodly and pleasaunt to sight,  
I sie where there came singing lustily  
A world of ladies ; but, to tell aright  
Their great beauty, it lieth not in my might,  
Ne their array ; nevertheless I shall  
Tell you a part, though I speake not of all.

The surcootes white of velvet wele sitting,  
They were in cladde ; and the semes echone,  
As it were a manere garnishing,  
Was set with emerauds one and one,  
By and by ; but many a riche stone  
Was set on the purples, out of dout,  
Of colors, sleeves, and traines round about.

As great pearles round and orient,  
Diamonds fine, and rubies red,  
And many another stone of which I went  
The names now ; and everich on her head  
A rich fret of gold, which without dread  
Was full of stately riche stones set,  
And every lady had a chapelet

On her head of [branches] fresh and grene,  
So wele wrought and so mervelously,  
That it was a noble sight to sene,  
Some of laurer, and some full pleasauntly  
Had chapelets of woodbind, and sadly  
Some of *agnus castus* were also  
Chapelets fresh ; but there were many of the

That daunced, and eke song full soberly,  
But all they yede in manner of compase,  
But one there yede in mid the company,  
Sole by her selfe, but all followed the pace  
That she kepte, whose heavenly figured face  
So pleasaunt was, and her wele shape persou,  
That of beauty she past hem everichon.

And more richly besene, by many fold  
She was also in every maner thing,  
On her head full pleasaunt to behold,  
A crowne of golde rich for any king,  
A branch of *agnus castus* eke bearing  
In her hand ; and to my sight truly,  
She lady was of the company.

And she began a roundell lustely,  
That "*Suse le foyle, desers moy,*" men call,  
"*Siene et mon joly couer est endormy,*"  
And than the company answered all,  
With voices sweet untuned, and so small,  
That me thought it the sweetest melody  
That ever I heard in my life soothly.

And thus they came, dauncing and singing  
 Into the middes of the mede echone,  
 Before the herber where I was sitting,  
 And, God wot, me thought I was wel bigone,  
 For than I might avise hem one by one,  
 Who fairest was, who coude best dance or sing,  
 Or who most womanly was in all thing.

They had not daunced but a little throw,  
 Whan that I hearde ferre off sodainly,  
 So great a noise of thundering trumpes blow,  
 As though it should have departed the skie;  
 And after that within a while I sie,  
 From the same grove where the ladies come out,  
 Of men of armes comming such a rout,

As all the men on earth had been assembled  
 In that place, wele horsed for the nones,  
 Stering so fast, that all the earth trembled:  
 But for to speake of riches and [of] stoues,  
 And men and horse, I trow the large wones,  
 Of Pretir John, ne all his treasury,  
 Might not unneth have boght the tenth party

Of their array: who so list heare more,  
 I shall rehearse, so as I can, a lite.  
 Out of the grove, that I spake of before,  
 I sie come first all in their clokes white,  
 A company, that ware for their delite,  
 Chapelets fresh of okes seriall,  
 Newly sprong, and trumpets they were all.

On every trumpe hanging a broad banere  
 Of fine tartarium were full richely bete,  
 Every trumpet his lords armes bere,  
 About their neckes with great pearles sete  
 Collers brode, for cost they would not lere,  
 As it would seem, for their schochones echone,  
 Were set about with many a precious stone.

Their horse harneis was all white also,  
 And after them next in one company,  
 Came kings of armes, and no mo,  
 In clokes of white cloth of gold richly;  
 Chapelets of greene on their heads on lie,  
 The crowns that they on their schochones bere,  
 Were set with pearle, ruby, and saphere,

And eke great diamondes many one;  
 But all their horse harneis and other geare  
 Was in a sute according everichone,  
 As ye have heard the foresaid trumpets were;  
 And by seeming they were nothing to lere,  
 And their guiding they did so manerly,  
 And after hem came a great company

Of heraudes and pursevauntes eke,  
 Arraied in clothes of white velvet,  
 And hardly they were no thing to seke,  
 How they on them should the harneis set;  
 And every man had on a chapelet;  
 Schochones and eke horse harneis indede,  
 They had in sute of hem that fore hem yede.

Next after hem came in armour bright  
 All save their heades, seemely knightes nine,  
 And every claspe and naile, as to my sight,  
 Of their harneis were of red folde fine,  
 With cloth of gold, and furred with ermine  
 Were the trappoures of their stedes strong,  
 Wide and large, that to the ground did hong

And every bosse of bridle and paitrell  
 That they had, was worth, as I would wene,  
 A thousand pound; and on their leades well  
 Dressed were crownes of laurer grene,  
 The best made that ever I had sene,  
 And every knight had after him riding  
 Three henchemen on him awaiting.

Of which every [first] on a short tronchoun  
 His lordes helme bare, so richly dight,  
 That the worst was worthe the ransoun  
 Of [any] king; the second a shield bright  
 Bare at his backe; the thred bare upright  
 A mighty spere, full sharpe ground and keue,  
 And every childe ware of leaves grene

A fresh chapelet upon his haireis bright;  
 And clokes white of fine velvet they ware,  
 Their steeds trapped and raied right  
 Without difference as their lordes were,  
 And after hem on many a fresh corsere,  
 There came of armed knights such a rout,  
 That they bespread the large field about.

And all they ware after their degrees  
 Chapelets newe made of laurer grene,  
 Some of [the] oke, and some of other trees,  
 Some in their honds bare boughes shene,  
 Some of laurer, and some of okes keue,  
 Some of hauthorne, and some of [the] woodblind,  
 And many mo which I had not in mind.

And so they came, their horses freshly stering,  
 With bloody sownes of hir trompes loud;  
 There sie I many an uncouth disguising  
 In the array of these knightes proud,  
 And at the last as evenly as they coude,  
 They took their places in middles of the mede,  
 And every knight turned his horses hede

To his fellow, and lightly laid a spere  
 In the rest; and so justes began  
 On every part about here and there;  
 Some brake his spere, some drew down hors and  
 About the field astray the stedes ran; [man,  
 And to behold their rule and governance,  
 I you ensure it was a great pleasaunce.

And so the justes last an houre and more;  
 But tho, that crowned were in laurer grene,  
 Wan the prise; their dints were so sore,  
 That there was none ayenst hem might sustene,  
 And the justing all was left off clene,  
 And fro their horse the ninth alight anone,  
 And so did all the remnant everichone.

And forth they yede togider, twain and twain,  
 That to behold it was a worthy sight,  
 Toward the ladies on the greene plain,  
 That song and daunced as I said now right:  
 The ladies as soone as they goodly might,  
 They brake of both the song and dance  
 And yede to meet hem with ful glad semblance.

And every lady tooke full womanly  
 By the hond a knight, and forth they yede  
 Unto a faire laurer that stood fast by,  
 With leves lade the boughes of great brede;  
 And to my dome there never was indede  
 Man, that had seene halfe so faire a tre;  
 For underneath there might it well have be



An hundred persons at their owne plesaunce  
Shadowed fro the heat of Phebus bright,  
So that they should have felt no grevaunce  
Of raine ne haile that hem hurte might,  
The savour, eke, rejoices would any wight  
That had be sicke or melancolious ;  
It was so very good and vertuous.

And with great reverence they enclined low  
To the tree so soot and faire of hew ;  
And after that, within a little throw,  
They began to sing and daunce of new,  
Some song of love, some plaining of untrew,  
Environing the tree that stood upright ;  
And ever yede a lady and a knight.

And at the last I cast mine eye aside,  
And was ware of a lusty company  
That came roming out of the field wide,  
Hond in hond a knight and a lady ;  
The ladies all in surcotes, that richely  
Purfled were with many a rich stonc,  
And every knight of green ware mantles on,

Embrouded well so as the surcotes were,  
And everich had a chapelet on her hed,  
Which did right well upon the shining here,  
Made of goodly floures white and red,  
The knightes eke, that they in honde led,  
In sute of hem ware chapelets everichone,  
And before hem went minstrels many one,

As harpes, pipes, lutes, and sautry  
Alle in greene ; and on their heades bare  
Of divers floures made full craftely,  
All in a sute goodly chapelets they ware ;  
And so dauncing into the mede they fare,  
In mid the which they found a tuft that was  
All oversprad with floures in compas.

Whereto they enclined everichone  
With great reverence, and that full humbly ;  
And, at the last, there began, anonie,  
A lady for to sing right womanly,  
A bargaret in praising the daisie ;  
For as me thought among her notes swete,  
She said "*Si douce est la Margarete.*"

Than they alle answered her in fere,  
So passingly well, and so pleasauntly,  
That it was a blisful noise to here,  
But I n'ot how it happed, suddainly,  
As about noone, the Sunne so fervently  
Waxe hote, that the prety tender floures  
Had lost the beauty of hir fresh colourcs.

Forslronke with heat, the ladies eke to-brent,  
That they ne wist where they hem might bestow ;  
The knightes swelt for lack of shade ne shent,  
And after that, within a little throw,  
The wind began so sturshly to blow,  
That down goeth all the floures everichone,  
So that in all the mede there left not one ;

Save such as succoured were among the leves  
Fro every storme that might hem assaile,  
Growing under [the] liegges and thicke greves ;  
And after that, there came a storme of haile,  
And raine in fere, so that withouten faile,  
The ladies ne the knightes n'ade o threed  
Drie on them, so dropping was hir weed.

And whan the storm was cleane passed away  
Tho in white that stood under the tree,  
They felt nothing of the great affray,  
That they in greene without had in ybc,  
To them they yede for routh and pite,  
Them to comfort after their great disease,  
So faine they were the helpeles for to ease.

Than I was ware how one of hem in grene  
Had on a crowne rich and well sitting,  
Wherefore I demed well she was a queene,  
And tho in greene on her were awaiting ;  
The ladies then in white that were comming  
Toward them, and the knights in fere  
Began to comfort hem, and make hem chere.

The queen in white, that was of great beauty,  
Took by the hond the queen that was in grene,  
And said, "Suster, I have right great pity  
Of your annoy, and of the troublous tene,  
Wherein ye and your company have bene  
So long, alas ! and if that it you please  
To go with me, I shall do you the ease,

"In all the pleasure that I can or may ;"  
Whereof the other humbly as she might,  
Thanked her ; for in right ill array  
She was with storm and heat I you behight,  
And every lady then anonie right  
That were in white, one of them took in grene  
By the hond, which whan the knights had sene,

In like wise ech of them tooke a knight  
Cladde in greene, and forth with hem they fare,  
To an hegge, where they anonie right,  
To make their justs they would not spare  
Boughes to hew down, and eke trees square,  
Wherwith they made hem stately fires great,  
To dry their clothes that were wringing weat.

And after that of hearbes that there grew,  
They made for blisters of the Sunne brenning,  
Very good and wholesome ointments new,  
Where that they yede the sick fast anointing ;  
And after that they yede about gadering  
Pleasaunt salades which they made hem eat,  
For to refresh their great unkindly heat.

The lady of the Lease than began to pray  
Her of the Floure (for so to my seeming  
They should be as by their array)  
To soupe with her, and eke for any thing,  
That she should with her all her people bring ;  
And she ayen in right goodly manere,  
Thanketh her of her most friendly cheare,

Saying plainely, that she would obay  
With all her hert all her commaundement ;  
And then, anon, without lenger delay  
The lady of the Lease hath one ysent  
For a palfray, after her intent,  
Arrayed wel and faire in harnais of gold,  
For nothing acked, that to him long shold.

And after that to all her company  
She made to purvey horse and every thing  
That they needed, and than full lustily,  
Even by the herber where I was sitting  
They passed all so pleasauntly singing,  
That it would have comforted any wight ;  
But then I sie a passing wonder sight.

For then the nightingale, that all the day  
Had in the laurer sate, and did her might  
The whole service to sing longing to May,  
All sodainly began to take her flight;  
And to the lady of the Leafe forthright  
She flew, and set her on her hond softly,  
Which was a thing I marveled of greatly.

The goldfinch eke, that fro the medler tree  
Was fled for heat into the bushes cold,  
Unto the lady of the Flower gan flee,  
And on her hond he set him as he wold,  
And pleasauntly his winges gan to fold;  
And for to sing they pained hem both as sore,  
As they had do of all the day before.

And so these ladies rode forth a great pace,  
And all the rout of knightes eke in fere;  
And I that had seen all this wonder case,  
Thought I would assay in some manere,  
To know fully the trouth of this matere;  
And what they were that rode so pleasauntly:  
And whan they were the herber passed by,

I drest me forth, and happed to mete, anone,  
Right a faire lady, I do you ensue;  
And she came riding by herselfe alone,  
Alle in white, with semblance ful demure;  
I salued her, and bad good aventure  
Might her befall, as I could most humbly;  
And she answered, "My daughter, gramercy!"

"Madame," quoth I, "if that I durst enquire  
Of you, I would faine of that company  
Wite what they be that past by this arbore?"  
And she ayen answered right friendly;  
"My faire daughter, all tho that passed here by  
In white clothing, be servants everichone  
Unto the Leafe, and I my selfe am one.

"See ye not her that crowned is," quoth she,  
"All in white?"—"Madame," quoth I, "yes:"  
"That is Diane, goddesse of chaastite,  
And for because that she a maiden is,  
In her hond the braunch she beareth this,  
That *agnus castus* men call properly;  
And all the ladies in her company,

"Which ye se of that hearbe chapelets weare,  
Be such as han kept alway hir maidenheed:  
And all they that of laurer chapelets beare,  
Be such as hardy were and manly in deed,  
Victorious name which never may be dede;  
And all they were so worthy of hir hond,  
In hir time that none might hem withstond.

"And tho that weare chapelets on their hede  
Of fresh woodbind, be such as never were  
To love untrue in word, thought, ne dede,  
But aye stedfast, ne for pleasaunce, ne fere,  
Though that they should their hertes all to-tere,  
Would never flit but ever were stedfast,  
Till that their lives there asunder brast."

"Now faire madame," quoth I, "yet I would pray  
Your ladieship, if that it might be,  
That I might knowe by some maner way,  
Sith that it hath liked your beaute,  
The trouth of these ladies for to tell me,  
What that these knightes be in rich armour,  
And what tho be in grene and weare the flour!"

"And why that some did reverence to that tre,  
And some unto the plot of floures faire!"  
"Withright good will my fair daughter," quoth she.  
"Sith your desire is good and debonnaire:  
Tho nine crowned be very exemplaire,  
Of all honour longing to chivalry,  
And those certaine be called the Nine Worthy,

"Which ye may see [now] riding all before,  
That in hir time did many a noble dede,  
And for their worthines full oft have bore  
The crowne of laurer leaves on their hede,  
As ye may in your old bookes rede;  
And how that he that was a conquerour,  
Had by laurer alway his most honour.

"And tho that beare bowes in their hond  
Of the precious laurer so notable,  
Be such as were, I woll ye understond,  
Noble knightes of the round table,  
And eke the Douseperis honourable,  
Which they beare in signe of victory;  
It is witnessse of their deeds mightily.

"Eke there be knightes old of the garter,  
That in hir time did right worthily,  
And the honour they did to the laurer,  
Is for by it they have their laud wholly,  
Their triumph eke, and martial glory;  
Which unto them is more parfite richesse,  
Than any wight imagine can or gesse.

"For one leafe given of that noble tree  
To any wight that hath done worthily,  
And it be done so as it ought to be,  
Is more honour than any thing earthly;  
Witnes of Rome that founder was truly  
Of all knighthood and deeds marvelous,  
Record I take of Titus Livius.

"And as for her that crowned is in greene,  
It is Flora, of these floures guddesse,  
And all that here on her awaiting beene,  
It are such folk that loved idlenessse,  
And not delite in no businesse,  
But for to hunt and hauke, and play in medes,  
And many other suchlike idle dedes.

And for the great delite and pleasaunce  
They have to the floure, and so reverently  
They unto it do such obeisaunce  
As ye may se."—"Now faire Madame," quoth I,  
"If I durst aske what is the cause and why,  
That knightes have the ensigne of honour,  
Rather by the leafe than the flour!"

"Soothly daughter," quod she, "this is the trouth;  
For knightes ever should be persevering,  
To seeke honour without feintise or slouth;  
Fro wele to better in all manner thing;  
In signe of which with leaves aye lasting,  
They be rewarded after their degre,  
Whome lusty green May may not appaied be,

"But aye keping their beauteie fresh and greene,  
For there n'is storme that may hem deface,  
Haile nor snow, winde nor frosts kene,  
Wherfore they have this property and grace;  
And for the floure, within a litle space  
Woll be [all] lost, so simple of nature  
They be, that they no grevance may endure.

"And every storme will blow them soone away,  
Ne they last not but for a season;  
That is the cause, the very trouthe to say,  
That they may not by no way of reason  
Be put to no such occupation."  
"Madame," quoth I, "with all mine whole servise  
I thanke you now, in my most humble wise,

"For now I am ascertained throughly,  
Of every thing [that] I desired to know."  
"I am right glad that I have said sothly,  
Ought to your pleasure, if ye will me trow,"  
Quod she ayen, "but to whom do ye owe  
Your service I and which will ye honour,  
Tel me I pray, this yere I the Leafe or the Flour?"

"Madame," quoth I, "though I least worthy,  
Unto the Leafe I owe mine observance:"  
"That is," quod she, "right well done certainly;  
And I pray God to honour you avauce,

And kepe you fro the wicked remembraunce  
Of Malebouch, and all his crueltie,  
And all that good and well conditioned be.

"For here may I no longer now abide,  
I must follow the great company,  
That ye may see yonder before you ride."  
And forth as I couth most humbly,  
I tooke my leve of her, as she gan hie,  
After them as fast as ever she might,  
And I drow homeward, for it was nigh night.

And put all that I had seene in writing,  
Under support of them that lust it to rede.  
O little booke, thou art so unconning,  
How darst thou put thy self in prees for drede?  
It is wonder that thou wexest not rede!  
Sith that thou wost full lite who shall behold  
Thy rude langage, full boistously unfold.

EXPLICIT.

## THE LEGEND OF GOOD WOMEN.

v. 1—71

### PROLOGUE.

A THOUSAND times I have heard men tell,  
That there is joy in Heaven, and pain in Hell,  
And I accord it wele that it is so,  
But nathelesse yet wote I wele also,  
That there n'is non dwelling in this countrie,  
That either hath in Heaven or in Hell ybe,  
Ne may of it none other waies witten,  
But as he heard sayd, or found it written,  
For by assay there may no man it preve.

But God forbode but men should leve  
Wel more thing than they have seen with eye,  
Men shall nat wenen every thing a lie  
But if himself he seeth, or els it dooth,  
For, God wote, thing is never the leese soth,  
Though every wight ne may it not ysee.  
Bernarde the monke ne saugh all, parde,  
Than mote we to bookes that we find,  
(Through which that old things ben in mind)  
And to the doctrine of the old wise,  
Yeve credence, in every skilful wise,  
That tellen of the old apprevd stories,  
Of holines, of reignes, of victories,  
Of love, of hate, and other sundry things,  
Of which I may not make rehearsings:  
And if that old bookes were away,  
Ylorne were of all remembraunce the kay.

Well ought us than, honouren and beleve  
These bookes, there we han none other preve.

And as for me, though that I can but lite,  
On bookes for to rede I me delite,  
And to hem yeve I faith and full credence,  
And in mine herte have hem in reverence  
So hertely, that there is game none,  
That fro my bookes maketh me to gone,

But it be seldome on the holy daie,  
Save certainly, whan that the month of May  
Is comen, and that I heare the foules sing,  
And that the floures ginnen for to spring,  
Farwell my booke, and my devotion.

Now have I than eke this condition,  
That of all the floures in the mede,  
Than love I most these floures white and rede,  
Soch that men callen daisies in our toun,  
To hem I have so great affection,  
As I sayd erst, whan comen is the May,  
That in my bedde there daweth me no day,  
That I nam up and walking in the mede,  
To seen this floure ayenst the Sunne sprede,  
Whan it up riseth early by the morrow,  
That blisfull sight softeneth all my sorow,  
So glad am I, whan that I have presence  
Of it, to done it all reverence,  
As she that is of all floures the floure,  
Fulfilled of all vertue and honoure,  
And every ylike faire, and fresh of hewe,  
And ever I love it, and ever ylike newe,  
And ever shall, till that mine herte die,  
All swears I not, of this I woll not lie.

There loved no wight hotter in his life,  
And whan that it is eve I renne blithe,  
As sone as ever the Sunne gineth west,  
To seen this floure, how it woll go to rest,  
For feare of night, so hateth she derkenesse,  
Her chere is plainly spred in the brightnesse  
Of the Sunne, for there it woll unclose:  
Alas, that I ne had English rime, or prose  
Suffisaunt this floure to praise aright,  
But helpeth ye, that han conning and m ght,  
Ye lovers, that can make of sentemes t,  
In this case ought ye be diligent,  
To forthren me somewhat in my labour,

Whether ye been with the lefe or with the flour,  
For well I wote, that ye han here-before  
Of making *roven*, and *Mad a way* the corne, *reapen*  
And I come after, glening here and there,  
And am full glad if I may find an eare,  
Of any goodly worde that ye han left,  
And though it happen me *rehearsen* sayd,  
That ye han in your freshe songes sayd,  
Forebareth me, and beth not evill apayd,  
Sith that ye se, I doe it in the honour  
Of love, and eke *of* service of the flour,  
Whom that I serve, as I have wit or might,  
She is the clerenesse and the very light,  
That in this derke world me wint and ledeth;  
The herte within my sorowfull brest you dredeth,  
And loveth so sore, that ye ben verily  
The maistres of my wit, and nothing I,  
My word, my workes, is knit so in your bonde  
That as an harpe obeith to the honde,  
And make it sounne after his fingring,  
Right so mowe ye out of mine herte bring,  
Soch voice, right as you list, to laugh or pain;  
Be ye my guide, and lady soverain!  
As to mine yearthly God, to you I call,  
Both in this werke, and my sorowes all.  
But wherefore that I spake to yewe credence  
To old stories, and done hem reverence,  
And that men musten more thing bileve  
That men may seen at eye or els prove,  
That shall I sein, whan that I see my time,  
I may nat all atones speake in rime;  
My busie ghost, that thursteth alway new,  
To seen this flour so yong, so fresh of lew,  
Constrained me, with so gredy desire,  
That in my herte I fele yet the fire,  
That made me rise ere it were day,  
And this was now the first morow of May,  
With dreadfull herte and glad devotion  
For to been at the resurrection  
Of this floure, whan that it should uncloose  
Again the Sunne, that rose as redde as rose,  
That in the brest was of the beast that day,  
That Angenores daughter ladde away:  
And doune on knees, anon, right I mo sette,  
And as I could, this fresh floure I grette,  
Kneeling alway, till it unclosed was,  
Upon the small, soft, swete gras,  
That was with floures swete embrouded all,  
Of such swetenesse, and soch odour over all,  
That for to speake of gomme, herbe, or tree,  
Comparison may not ymakde be,  
For it surmounteth plainly all odoures,  
And of riche beaute of floures:  
Forgotten had the yearth his poore estate  
Of Winter, that him naked made and mute,  
And with his sword of cold so sore grieved;  
Now hath the attempre sunne al that releved  
That naked was, and clad it new again;  
The small foules of the season faun,  
That of the panter and the net been scaped,  
Upon the fouler, that hem made awaped  
In Winter, and destroyed had hir brood,  
In his dispite hem thought it did hem good  
To sing of him, and in hir song dispise  
The foule chorle, that for his covetise,  
Had hem betrayed with his sophistrie,  
This was hir song, "The fouler we defie,  
And all his craft:" and some songen clere,  
Laies of love, that joy it was to here,  
In worshipping and praying of hir make.

And for the now blisfull Somers sake,  
Upon the braunches full of blowmes soft,  
In hir dilite, they tourned hem ful oft,  
And songen, "Blissed be Sainct Valentîne,  
For on his day I chese you to be mine,  
Withouten repenting mine herte swete;"  
And therewithall hir bekes gonnen mete,  
Yelding honour, and humble obeisaunce  
To love, and didden hir other observaunce  
That longeth unto love, and unto nature,  
Constrewe that as you list, I do no cure:  
And tho that had done unkindnesse,  
As doeth the tidife, for new fangleuesse,  
Besought mercy of hir trespassing,  
And humbly song hir repenting,  
And sworn on the blowmes to be true,  
So that hir makes woud upon hem rue,  
And at the last maden hir acorde,  
All found they Daunger for the time a lord,  
Yet Pite, through his strong gentill might,  
Foryave, and made Mercy passen right  
Through Innocence, and ruled Curtisie:  
But I ne cleape it nat innocence folie,  
Ne false pite, for vertue is the meane,  
As etlicke sayth, in soch maner I meane.  
And thus these foule, voide of all malice,  
Accorden to love, and latten vice  
Of hate, and song all of one acorde,  
"Welcome Sommer, our governour and lorde."  
And Zephirus, and Flora gentelly,  
Yave to the floures soft and tenderly,  
Hir swote breth, and made hem for to spredo,  
As god and goddesse of the flourie mede,  
In which me thoughte I might day by day,  
Dwellen alway, the joly month of May,  
Withouten slepe, withouten meat or drinke:  
Adowne full softly I gan to sinke,  
And leaning on my elbow and my side,  
The long day I shope me for to abide,  
For nothing els, and I shall nat lie,  
But for to looke upon the daisie,  
That well by reason men it call may  
The daisie, or els the eye of the day,  
The emprise, and floure of floures all,  
I pray to God that faire mote she fall,  
And all that loven floures, for her sake:  
But nathelesse, ne wene nat that I make  
In praising of the floure againe the lefe,  
No more than of the corne againe the shefe:  
For as to me n'is lever none ne lother,  
I n'am withholden yet with never nother,  
Ne I not who serveth lefe, ne who the floure,  
Well brouken they hir service or laboure,  
For this thing is all of another tonne,  
Of old storie, or soch thing was begonne.  
Whan that the Sunne out the south gan west,  
And that this floure gan close, and gan to rest,  
For derknes of the night, the which she dred,  
Home to mine house full swiftly I me sped  
To gone to rest, and carely for to rise,  
To seene this floure to sprede, as I devise.  
And in a little herber that I have,  
That benched was on turves fresh ygrave,  
I bad men shoulde me my couche make,  
For deintie of the newe Sommers sake,  
I bad hem straven floures on my beddo;  
Whan I was laid, and had mine eyen hedde,  
I fell a slepe, and slept an houre or two,  
Me met how I lay in the medow tho,  
To seene this floure, that I love so and drede,

And from a ferre came walking in the mede  
 The god of love, and in his hand a queene,  
 And she was clad in royall habite grene,  
 A fret of golde she had next her heere,  
 And upon that a white croune she beare,  
 With flourouns small, and I shall not lie,  
 For all the world right as a daisie  
 Ycrouned is, with white leaves lite,  
 So were the flourouns of her croune white,  
 For of o perle fine orientall,  
 Her white croune was ymaked all,  
 For which the white croune above the grene  
 Made her like a daisie for to seme,  
 Considred eke her fret of gold above :  
 Yclothed was this mighty god of love  
 In silke, embroidered full of grene greves,  
 In which a fret of redde rose leves,  
 The freshest sens the world was first begun ;  
 His gilt heere was crouned with a sun,  
 In stede of gold, for heviness and weight,  
 Therwith, mo thought, his face alone so bright  
 That well unnethes might I him behold,  
 And in his hand, me thought, I saw him hold  
 Two fire darters, as the gledes rede,  
 And angelike his winges saw I sprede :  
 And all be that men sain that blinde is he,  
 Algate, me thought, that he might se,  
 For sternely on me he gan behold,  
 So that his loking doeth mine herte cold,  
 And by the hand he held this noble queene,  
 Crouned with white, and clothed al in greene,  
 So womanly, so benigne, and so meke,  
 That in this worlde though that men wold seke,  
 Halfe her beaute should they not finde  
 In creature that formed is by kinde,  
 And therefore may I sain as thinketh me,  
 This song in praising of this lady fre.

" Hide, Absolon, thy gilte tresses clere,  
 Hester lay thou thy mekenesse all a'loun,  
 Hide, Jonathas, all thy frendly manere,  
 Penelopee, and Marcia Catoun,  
 Make of your wifedome no comparisoun,  
 Hide your beauties, Isoude and Helein,  
 My lady cometh, that all this may distain.

" Thy faire body let it not appere,  
 Lavine, and thou Lucrece of Rome toun,  
 And Polixene, that boughten love so dere,  
 And Cleopatras, with all thy passoun,  
 Hide your trouthe of love, and your renoun,  
 And thou Tisbe, that hast of love such pain,  
 My lady commeth, that all this may distain.

" Hero, Dido, Laodomia, al yfere,  
 And Phillis, hanging for Demophoun,  
 And Canace, espied by thy chere,  
 Hipsiphile betrayed with Jasoun,  
 Maketh of your trouth neither boste ne soun,  
 Nor Hipermistrie, or Ariadne, ye twain,  
 My lady cometh, that all this may distain."

This balade may full well ysongen be,  
 As I have sayd erst, by my lady fre,  
 For certainly, all these mowe not suffice,  
 To apperen with my lady in no wise,  
 For as the Sunne wold the fire distain,  
 So passeth all my lady sovereign,  
 That is so good, so faire, so debonaire,  
 I pray to God that ever fall her faire,  
 For uad comforte ven of her presence,

I had ben dead, withouten any defence,  
 For drede of Loves wordes, and his chere,  
 As whan time is, hereafter ye shall here.

Behind this god of love upon the grene,  
 I saw coming of ladies ninetene,  
 In roiall habit, a full easie pace,  
 And after hem came of women such a trace,  
 That sens that God Adam had made of yerth,  
 The third part of mankinde, or the ferth,  
 No wende I nat by possibilite,  
 Had ever in this wide world ybe,  
 And true of love, these women were echon :  
 Now, whether was that a wonder thing or non,  
 That right anon, as that they goune espye  
 This floure, which that I clepe the dayse,  
 Full sodainly they stinten all at oues,  
 And kneled doune, as it were for the nones,  
 And songen with o voice, " Heale and honom  
 To trouth of womanhede, and to this flour,  
 That beareth our alderprize in figuring,  
 Her white croune beareth the witnessing."  
 And with that word, a compas enviroun,  
 They sitten hem ful softly adoun :  
 First sat the god of love, and sith his queene,  
 With the white croune, clad all in grene,  
 And sithen al the remnaunt by and by,  
 As they were of estate, full curtesly,  
 No nat a worde was spoken in the place  
 The mountenance of a furlong way of space.

I, kneeling by this floure, in good entent  
 Abode to knowen what this people ment,  
 As still as any stone, till, at the last,  
 This god of love, on me his eyen cast,  
 And said, " Who kneleth there ?" and I answered  
 Unto his asking, whan that I it herde,  
 And said, " Sir, it am I," and come him nere,  
 And salued him : quod he, " What doest thou here  
 So nigh mine owne floure, so boldly !  
 It were better worthy truely,

A worme to nighen nere my floure than thou."  
 " And why sir," quod I, " and it like you !"  
 " For thou," quod he, " art therto nothing able,  
 It is my relike, digne and delitable,  
 And thou my fo, and all my folke werriest,  
 And of mine old servaunts thou missaist,  
 And hindrest hem with thy translation,  
 And lettest folke from hir devocioun,  
 To serve me, and holdest it folie  
 To serve Love, thou mayst it nat denie,  
 For in plain text, withouten nede of glose,  
 Thou hast translated the Romaunt of the Rose,  
 That is an heresie ayenst my law,  
 And makest wise folke fro me withdraw ;  
 And of Creseide, thou hast said as the list,  
 That maketh men to women lesse trist,  
 That ben as trewe as ever was any stele :  
 Of thine answeres avise thee right wele,  
 For though thou renied hast my lay,  
 As other wretches have done many a day,  
 By seint Venus, that my mother is,  
 If that thou live, thou shalt repenten this,  
 So cruelly, that it shall well be sene."

Tho spake this lady, clothed all in greene,  
 And saied, " God, right of your curtesie,  
 Ye mote herken if he can repleie  
 Ayenst all this that ye have to him meved ;  
 A God ne shulde nat be thus agreved,  
 But of his deite he shal be stable,  
 And there gracious and merciable :  
 And if ye nere a God that knowen all,

And, at the last, unto her suster Anne  
She made her mone, and right thus spake she than.

"Now dere suster mine, what may it be  
That me agasteth in my dreame," quod she,  
"This ilke new Trojan is so in my thought,  
For that me thinketh he is so wel iwrought,  
And eke so likely to ben a man,  
And therwith so mikell good he can,  
That all my love and life lieth in his cure ;  
Have ye nat heard him tell his aventure !

"Now certes, Anne, if that ye rede me,  
I woll faine to him ywedded be,  
This is the effect, what should I more seine !  
In him lieth all, to do me live or deine."

Her suster Anne, as she that coude her good,  
Said as her thought, and somdele it withstood,  
But hereof was so long a sermoning,  
It were to long to make rehearsing :  
But, finally, it may not be withstonde,  
Love woll love, for no wight woll it wonde.  
The dawning uprist out of the see,  
This amorous quene chargeth her meine }  
The nettes dresse, and speres brode and kene,  
In hunting woll this lustie fresh quene,  
So pricketh her this new jolly wo,  
To horse is all her lustie folke ygo,  
Unto the court the houndes ben ybrought,  
And up on courser, swift as any thought,  
Her yong knights heven all about,  
And of her women eke an huge rout.  
Upon a thicke palfrey, paper white,  
With saddle redde, embrouded with delite,  
Of gold the barres, up enbossed high,  
Sate Dido, all in gold and perrie wrigh,  
And she is faire as is the bright morrow,  
That healeth sicke folkes of nights sorrow ;  
Upon a courser, startling as the fire,  
Men might tourne him with a little wire.

But Eneas, like Phebus to devise,  
So was he fresh arrayed in his wise,  
The fomie bridle, with the bitte of gold,  
Governeth he right as himselfe hath would ;  
And forth this noble queene, this lady ride  
On hunting, with this Trojan by her side.  
The herd of hartes founden is anon,  
With "Hey, go bet, pricke thou, let gon, let gon,  
Why n'ill the lion comen or the beare,  
That I might him ones meten with this spear !"   
Thus saine this yong folke, and up they kill  
The wild hartes, and have hem at hir will.

Emong all this, to romblen gan the Heven,  
The thunder rored with a grisly steven,  
Doun come the rain, with haile and sleet so fast,  
With Hevens fire, that made so sore agast  
This noble queene, and also her meine,  
That eche of hem was glad away to fle,  
And shortly, fro the tempest her to save,  
She fled her selfe into a little cave,  
And with her went this Eneas also,  
I n'ot with hem if there went any mo,  
The authour maketh of it no mention :  
And here began the deepe affection  
Betwixt hem two, this was the first morrow  
Of her gladnesse, and ginning of her sorrow,  
For there hath Eneas ykneled so,  
And told her all his hurt and all his wo,  
And sworne so deepe to her to be true,  
For wele or wo, and chaunge for no new,  
And as a false lover so well can plaine,  
That sely Dido rewed on his paine,

And toke him for husbond, and became his wife  
For evermore, while that hem last life ;  
And after this, whan that the tempest stent,  
With mirth out as they came, home they went.  
The wicked fame up rose, and that anon,  
How Eneas hath with the queene ygon  
Into the cave, and demed as hem list :  
And whan the king (that Yarbass hight) it wist,  
As he that had her loved ever his life,  
And woed her to have her to his wife,  
Such sorrow as he hath maked, and such chere,  
It is a routh and pitie for to here,  
But as in love, alday it happeth so,  
That one shall laughen at anothers wo,  
Now laughed Eneas, and is in joy,  
And more richesse than ever was in Troy.

O sely woman, full of innocence,  
Full of pitie, of truth, and continence,  
What maked you to men to trusten so !  
Have ye such routh upon hir fained wo,  
And have such old ensamples you beforne !  
See ye nat all how they ben forsworne !  
Where see ye one, that he ne hath left his lefe,  
Or ben unkind, or done her some mischefe,  
Or pilled her or boeted of his dede !  
Ye may as well it seene, as ye may rede.  
Take hede now of this great gentilman,  
This Trojan, that so well her please can,  
That faineth him so true and obeysing,  
So gentill, and so privie of his doing,  
And can so well done all his obaysaunce  
To her, at feastes and at daunce,  
And whan she goeth to temple, and home agayn,  
And fasten till he hath his lady seyn,  
And bearen in his devises for her sake,  
N'ot I nat what, and songes would he make,  
Justen, and done of armes many thinge,  
Send her letters, tokens, brooches, and rings.

Now herkne how he shal his lady serve :  
There as he was in perill for to sterve  
For hunger and for mischefe in the see,  
And desolate, and fled fro his countree,  
And all his folke with tempest all to driven,  
She hath her body and eke her realme yeven  
Into his hond, there she might have been  
Of other land than of Cartage a queen,  
And lived in joy inough, what would ye more !

This Eneas, that hath thus deepe yswore,  
Is wearie of his craft within a throw,  
The hote earnest is all overblow,  
And prively he dothe his shipe dight,  
And shapeth him to steale away by night.

This Dido hath suspicion of this,  
And thought well that it was al amis,  
For in his bed he lieth a night and siketh,  
She asketh him anon, what him misliketh,  
"My dere herte, which that I love most."

"Certes," quod he, "this night my fathers ghost  
Hath in my slepe me so sore tourmented,  
And eke Mercury his message hath presented,  
That needes to the conquest of Itaile  
My destinie is soone for to saile,  
For which, me thinketh, brosten is mine herte :"  
Therwith his false teares out they start,  
And taketh her within his armes two.

"Is that in earnest," quod she, "woll ye so ?  
Have ye nat sworne to wife me to take !  
Alas, what woman woll ye of me make !  
I am a gentyl woman, and a queen,  
Ye woll not fro your wife thus foule flee."

For in your world that is now hold a game :  
 And though thee like nat a lover be,  
 Speke wel of love, this penance yeve I thee,  
 And to the god of love I shal so pray,  
 That he shal charge his servaunts by any way,  
 To forthren thee, and wel thy labour quite,  
 Go now thy waie, this penaunce is but lite :  
 And whan this boke is made, yeve it the quene  
 On my behalfe, at Eltham, or at Shene."  
 The god of love gan smile, and than he said :  
 " Wost thou," quod he, " where this be wife or maid,  
 Or queene, or countesse, or of what degree,  
 That hath so littell penaunce yeven thee,  
 That hast deserved sore for to smart,  
 But pite renneth sone in gentle herte :  
 That maist thou sene, she kitheth what she is."  
 And I answerde, " Naie, sir, so have I blis,  
 No more, but that I see well she is good."  
 " That is a trewe tale, by mine hood,"  
 Quod Love, " and thou knowest wel, parde,  
 If it be so that thou avise the :  
 Hast thou nat in a booke in thy cheste,  
 The great goodnesse of the quene Alceste,  
 That turned was into a dayesie,  
 She that for her husband chese to die,  
 And eke to gone to Hell, rather than he,  
 And Hercules rescued her, parde,  
 And brought her out of Hel againe to blis ?"  
 And I answerde againe, and said " Yes,  
 Now know I her, and is this good Alceste,  
 The dayesie, and mine owne hertes reste !  
 Now fele I well the goodnesse of this wife,  
 That both after her death, and in her life,  
 Her great bounte doubleth her renoun,  
 Wel hath she quit me mine affectioun,  
 That I have to her floure the dayesie,  
 No wonder is though Jove her stellife,  
 As telleth Agaton, for her great goodnesse,  
 Her white corowne beareth of it witness :  
 For all so many vertues had she,  
 As smal florounes in her corowne be,  
 In remembrance of her, and in honour,  
 Cibylla made the dayesie and the floure,  
 Yecrowned al with white, as men may se,  
 And Mars yave to her a corowne reed, parde,  
 In stede of rubies set among the white :"  
 Therewith this quene woxe red for shame alite,  
 Whan she was prayesd so in her presence,  
 Than said Love, " A full great negligence  
 Was it to thee, that ilke time thou made,  
 ' Hide Absolon thy tresses,' in balade,  
 That thou forget in thy songe to sette,  
 Sith that thou art so greatly in her dette,  
 And wost well that kalender is she  
 To any woman, that woll lover be :  
 For she taught all the craft of trewe loving,  
 And namely of wifehode the living,  
 And all the bondes that she ought keepe ;  
 Thy litel witte was thilke time asleepe :  
 But now I charge thee upon thy life,  
 That in thy legende thou make of this wife,  
 Whan thou hast other smale ymade before :  
 And fare now well, I charge thee no more,  
 But er I go, thus much I will the tell,  
 Ne shal no trewe lover come in Hell.  
 " These other ladies sitting here a rowe,  
 Ben in thy balade, if thou const hem know,  
 And in thy bokes al thou shalt hem find,  
 Have hem now in thy legende al in mind,  
 I meane of hem that ben in thy knowing,

For here ben twenty thousand mo sitting  
 Than thou knowest, good women all,  
 And trewe of love, for ought that may befall :  
 Make the metres of hem as thee lest,  
 I mote gone home, the Sunne draweth west,  
 To Paradis, with all this companie,  
 And serve alway the fresch dayesie.  
 At Cleopatras I woll that thou begin,  
 And so forth, and my love so shalt thou win ;  
 For let see now, what man, that lover be,  
 Wol done so strong a paine for love as she.  
 I wote well that thou maist nat all it rime,  
 That suche lovers did in hir time :  
 It were too long to reden and to here,  
 Suffiseth me thou make in this manere,  
 That thou rehce of al her life the great,  
 After these old authours listen for to treat,  
 For who so shall so many a story tell,  
 Sey shortely or he shall too longe dwell :"  
 And with that worde my bookes gan I take,  
 And right thus on my legende gan I make.

THUS ENDETH THE PROLOGUE.

— — —  
 HERE BEGINNETH

### THE LEGENDE OF CLEOPATRAS, Queene of Egypt.

AFTER the death of Ptholome the king,  
 That all Egypt had in his governing,  
 Reigned his queene Cleopatras,  
 Till on a time bifel there such a caos,  
 That out of Rome was sent a senatour,  
 For to conqueren realmes and honour,  
 Unto the toun of Rome, as was usaunce,  
 To have the world at her obeisaunce,  
 And soth to say, Antonius was his name,  
 So fil it, as fortune him ought a shame,  
 Whan he was fallen in prosperite,  
 Rebel unto the toun of Rome is he,  
 And over al this, the suster of Cesare  
 He left her falsely, er that she was ware,  
 And would algates han another wife,  
 For which he toke with Rome and Cesar strife  
 Nathelesse, forsooth, this ilke senatour,  
 Was a full worthy gentill werriour,  
 And of his deth it was ful great damage,  
 But Love had brought this man in such a rage  
 And him so narrow bounden in his laas,  
 And all for the love of Cleopatras,  
 That al the world he set at no value,  
 Him thought there was nothing to him so due,  
 As Cleopatras for to love and serve ;  
 Him thought that in armes for to sterve  
 In the defence of her, and of her right.  
 This noble quene, eke loved so this knight,  
 Through his desert, and for his chevalrie,  
 As certainly, but if that bokes lie,  
 He was of person, and of gentilnesse,  
 And of discrecion, and of hardinesse,  
 Worthy to any wight that liven may,  
 And she was faire, as is the rose in May ;  
 And, for to maken shorte is the best,  
 She woxe his wife, and had him as her best.  
 The wedding and the feast to devise,  
 To me that have ytake such empirie,  
 And so many a storie for to make,  
 It were to longe, lest that I should slake

Of thing that beareth more effect and charge,  
For men may overlade a ship or barge,  
And forthy, to effect than woll I skippe,  
And al the remnaunt I woll let it slippe.

Octavian, that wood was of this dede,  
Shope him an hooste on Antony to lede,  
Al utterly for his destruction,  
With stoute Romaines, cruell as lion ;  
To ship they went, and thus I let hem sailo.

Antonius was ware, and woll nat faile  
To meten with these Romaines, if he may,  
Toke eke his rede, and both upon a day,  
His wife and he, and all his host forth went  
To ship anone, no lenger they ne stent,  
And in the see it happed hem to mete ;  
Up goeth the trumpe, and for to shoute and shete,  
And painen hem to set on with the Sunne,  
With grisly sown out goeth the great gunne,  
And hertely they hurtlen in all at ones,  
And fro the top doune cometh the great stones,  
In goeth the grapnel so full of crokes,  
Among the ropes ran the shering hokes,  
In with the polaxe preaseth he and he,  
Behind the maste beginneth he to flee,  
And out againe, and driveth him over borde,  
He sticketh him upon his speares orde,  
He rent the saile with hookes like a sith,  
He bringeth the cup, and biddeth hem be blith,  
He poureth peesen upon the hatches slider,  
With pottes full of lime, they gone togider,  
And thus the longe day in fight they spend,  
Till at the last, as every thing hath end,  
Antony is shent, and put him to the flight,  
And all his folke to go, that best go might,  
Fleeth eke the queene, with all her purple saile,  
For strokes which that went as thicke as haile,  
No wonder was, she might it nat endure :  
And whan that Antony saw that aventure,  
"Alas," quod he, "the day that I was borne,  
My worship in this day thus have I lorne,"  
And for dispaire out of his wit he start,  
And rofe himselfe, anon, throughout the herte,  
Ere that he ferther went out of the place :  
His wife, that could of Cesar have no grace,  
To Egypt is fled, for drede and for distresse,  
But herkeneth ye that speken of kindnesse.

Ye men that falsely sweren many an oth,  
That ye woll die if that your love be wroth,  
Here may ye seene of women such a trouth.  
This woful Cleopatra had made such routh,  
That there n'is tonge none that may it tell,  
But on the morow she woll no lenger dwell,  
But made her subtyll werkmen make a shrine  
Of all the rubies and the stones fine  
In all Egypt that she coude espie,  
And put full the shrine of spicerie,  
And let the corse enbaume, and forth she fette  
This dead corse, and in the shrine it shette,  
And next the shrine a pit than doth she grave,  
And all the serpentes that she might have,  
She put hem in that grave, and thus she seid :  
"Now love, to whom my sorowfull herte obeid,  
So ferforthly, that fro that blisfull hour  
That I you swore to ben all freely your,  
I meane you, Antonius my knight,  
That never waking in the day or night,  
Ye n'ere out of mine hertes remembraunce,  
For wele or wo, for carole, or for daunce,  
And in my selfe this covenannt made I tho,  
That right such as ye felten wele or wo.

As ferforth as it in my power lay,  
Unreprovable unto my wifeshood aye,  
The same would I felen, life or death,  
And thilke covenannt while me lasteth breath  
I woll fulfill, and that shall well be seene,  
Was never unto her love a truer queene :"  
And with that word, naked, with full good herte,  
Among the serpents in the pit she start,  
And there she chese to have her buryng.  
Anone the neders gonne her for to sting,  
And she her death receiveth with good chere,  
For love of Antony that was her so dere.  
And this is storiall, sooth it is no fable :  
Now ere I find a man thus true and stable,  
And woll for love his death so freely take,  
I pray God let our hedes never ake.

#### THE LEGEND OF TISBE OF BABILON.

At Babiloine whylome fill it thus,  
The whiche toun the queen Simiramus  
Let dichen al about, and walles make  
Full hie, of harde tiles well ylake :  
There were dwelling in this noble toun,  
Two lordes, which that were of great renoun,  
And woneden so nigh upon a grene,  
That there nas but a stone wal hem between,  
As oft in great tounes is the wonne :  
And sothe to saine, that one man had a sonne,  
Of all that lond one of the lustiest,  
That other had a daughter, the fairest  
That estward in the world was tho dwelling ;  
The name of everiche gan to other spring,  
By women that were neighbours aboute,  
For in that countre yet withouten doute,  
Maidenes ben ykept for jelousie  
Ful strait, lest they didden some folie.

This yonge man was cleped Piramus,  
Thisbe hight the maide, (Naso saith thus)  
And thus by report was hir name yshove, *such a yon*  
That as they woxe in age, so woxe hir love :  
And certaine, as by reason of hir age,  
Ther might have ben betwixt hem mariage,  
But that hir fathers n'olde it nat assent,  
And bothe in love ylike sore they brent,  
That none of all hir friendes might it lette,  
But prively sometime yet they mette  
By sleight, and spaken some of hir desire,  
As wrie the glede and hotter is the fire, *corn - erat*  
Forbid a love, and it is ten times so wode.

This wal, which that betwixt hem both stode,  
Was cloven atwo, right fro the top adoun,  
Of old time, of his foundatioun,  
But yet this clift was so narrow and lile  
It was nat seene, dere inough a mite,  
But what is that, that love cannot espie !  
Ye lovers two, if that I shall not lie,  
Ye founden first this little narrow clift,  
And with a sound, as soft as any shrift,  
They let hir wordes through the clifte pace,  
And tolden, while that they stoden in the place,  
All hir complaint of love, and all hir wo,  
At every time whan they durst so.

On that one side of the wall stood he,  
And on that other side stood Tisbe,  
The sweet soun of other to receive,  
And thus hir warde'as would they disceive,



And every daie this wall they would throte,  
And wish to God that it were down ybete,  
Thus wold they sain, "Alas, thou wicked wall,  
Through thine envie thou us lettest all,  
Why nilt thou cleave, or fallen all atwo,  
Or at the least, but thou wouldest so,  
Yet wouldest thou but ones let us mete,  
Or ones that we might kissen swete,  
Than were we cured of our cares cold,  
But nathelesse, yet be we to thee hold,  
In as much as thou suffrest for to gone,  
Our words through thy lime and eke thy stone,  
Yet ought we with thee ben well apaid."

And whan these idle wordes weren said,  
The cold wall they wolden kisse of stone,  
And take hir leave, and forth they wolden gone,  
And this was gladly in the eventide,  
Or wonder erly, least men it espide.  
And long time they wrought in this manere,  
Till on a day, whan Phebus gan to clere,  
Aurora with the stremes of her herte,  
Had dried up the dew of herbes wete,  
Unto this clift, as it was wont to be,  
Come Piramus, and after come Tisbe,  
And plighen trouthe fully in hir fay,  
That ilke same night to steale away,  
And to beguile hir wardeins everychone,  
And forth out of the cite for to gone,  
And for the fieldes ben so brode and wide,  
For to mete in o place at o tide,  
They set markes, hir meetings should be  
There king Ninus was graven, under a tree,  
For old paynims, that idolles heried,  
Useden tho in fields to ben buried,  
And fast by his grave was a well,  
And shortely of this tale for to tell,  
This covenant was affirmed wonder fast,  
And long hem thought that the Sunne last,  
That it nere gone under the see adoun.

This Tisbe hath so great affection,  
And so great liking Piramus to see,  
That whan she saw her time might be,  
At night she stole away full prively,  
With her face iwimpeld subtelly,  
For all her friends (for to save her trouth)  
She hath forsake alas, and that is routh,  
That ever woman woude be so trew,  
To trusten man, but she the bet him knew:  
And to the tree she goeth a full good pace,  
For love made her so hardy in this case,  
And by the well adoun she gan her dresse,  
Alas, that commeth a wild lionesse  
Out of the wood, withouten more arrest,  
With bloody mouth, strangling of a beast,  
To drinken of the well there as she sat,  
And whan that Tisbe had espied that,  
She rist her up with a full drery herte,  
And in a cave, with dreadfull foot she start,  
For by the Moone she saw it well withall.  
And as she ran, her wimple let she fall,  
And toke none hede, so sore she was awlaped,  
And eke so glad that she was escaped,  
And that she sat, and lurketh wonder still:  
Whan that this lionesse hath dronke her fill,  
About the well gan she for to wind,  
And right anon the wimple gan she find,  
And with her bloody mouth it all to rent,  
Whan this was done, no lenger she ne stent,  
But to the wood her way than hath she nome.

And, at the last, this Piramus is come,

But all too long, alas, at home was hec,  
The Moone shone, men might well ysee,  
And in his way, as that he come full fast,  
His eyen to the ground adoun he cast,  
And in the sonde, as he beheld adoun,  
He saw the steppes brode of a lion,  
And in his herte he suddainly agrose, *brodded*  
And pale he wext, therewith his herte arose,  
And nere he came, and found the wimple torne,  
"Alas" quod he, "the day that I was borne:  
This o night wold both us lovers slee;  
How should I asken mercy of Tisbe,  
Whan I am he that have you shine! *as* I  
My bidding hath you slaine in this caas.  
Alas, to bidde a woman gone by night  
In place theas perill fallen might,  
And I so slow, alas, I ne had be  
Here in this place a furlong way ere ye!  
Now, what lion that is in this Forrest,  
My body mote he rente, or what beast  
That wild is, gnawen mote he mine herte."  
And with that word he to the wimple start,  
And kist it oft, and wept on it full sore,  
And said, "Wimpie, alas, there n'is no more,  
But thou shalt feele as well the blood of me,  
As thou hast felt the bleeding of Tisbe."  
And with that word he smote him to the herte,  
The blood out of the wound as broad start,  
As water, whan the conduit broken is.

Now Tisbe, which that wist nat this,  
But sitting in her drede, she thought thus,  
"If it so fall out that my Piramus  
Be comen hither, and may me nat yfind,  
He may me holden false, and eke unkind:"  
And out she commeth, and after him gan espie,  
Both with her herte and with her eien,  
And thought, "I wold him tellen of my drede,  
Both of the lionesse and of my dede."  
And, at the last, her love than hath she found,  
Beating with his heeles on the ground,  
All bloody, and therewithall abacke she start,  
And like the waves, *quappe* gan her herte, *quappe*  
And pale as boxe she woxe, and in a *thur* *thrus*  
Avised her, and gan him well to know,  
That it was Piramus her herte dere.

Who could write whiche a deadly chere  
Hath Tisbe now, and how her haire she rent,  
And how she gan her selfe to turment,  
And how she lieth and swouneth on the ground,  
And how she wept of teares full his wound,  
How medleth she his blood with her complaint,  
How with her blood her selven gan she paint,  
How clippeth she the red corse, alas!  
How doth this wofull Tisbe in this caas!  
How kisseth she his frosty mouth so cold!  
"Who hath don this? and who hath ben so bold  
To sleen my lefe! o speake Piramus,  
I am thy Tisbe, that thee calleth thus,"  
And therewithall she lifeth up his head.

This wofull man that was nat fully dead,  
Whan that he herd the name of Tisbe crie,  
On her he cast his heavy deadly eyen,  
And down againe, and yeeldeth to the ghost.

Tisbe rist up, without noise or bust,  
And saw her wimple and his empty sheath,  
And eke his sword, that him hath done to death,  
Than spake she thus, "My woful hand," quod she,  
"Is strong ynough in such a werke to me,  
For love shall yve me strength and hardinesse.  
To make my wound large ynough I gesse,

I woll thee followen dead, and I woll be  
Felow, and cause eke of thy death," quod she,  
"And though that nothing save the death only,  
Might thee fro me depart, trewly  
Thou shalt no more departe now fro me  
Than fro the death, for I woll go with thee.

"And now ye wretched jelous fathers our,  
We that weren whylome children your,  
We praien you, withouten more envie,  
That in o grave we moten lie,  
Sens love hath brought us to this pitous end;  
And right wise God, to every lover send,  
That loveth trewly, more prosperite  
Than ever had Piramus and Tisbe,  
And let no gentill woman her assure  
To putten her in such an aventure,  
But God forbid but that a woman can  
Ben as true and loving as a man,  
And, for my part, I shall anon it kithen: *sherr*  
And with that word, his swerde she tooke gwithen,  
That warme was of her loves blood, and hote,  
And to the herte she her selven smote.

And thus are Tisbe and Piramus ago;  
Of true men I find but few mo  
In all my bookes, save this Piramus,  
And therefore have I spoken of him thus;  
For it is deintie to us men to find *her reason*  
A man that can in love be true and kind.  
Here may ye seene, what lover so he be,  
A woman dare and can as well as he.

### THE LEGEND OF DIDO,

Queen of Carthage.

GLORY and honour, Virgile Mantuan,  
Be to thy name, and I shall as I can  
Follow thy lanterne, as thou goest beforen,  
How Eneas to Dido was forsworne,  
In thine Eneide, and Naso woll I take  
The tenour and the great effects make.  
Whan Troy brought was to destruction  
By Grekes sleight, and namely by Sinon,  
Faining the horse offred unto Minerve,  
Through which that many a Trojan must sterre,  
And Hector had after his death apered,  
And fire so wood it might nat ben stered,  
In all the noble toures of Ilion,  
That of the cite was the cheefe dungeon,  
And all the country was so low ybrought,  
And Priamus the king fordene and nought,  
And Eneas was charged by Venus  
To flien away, he tooke Ascanius  
That was his son, in his right hand and flied,  
And on his backe he bare and with him led  
His old father, cleped Anchises,  
And by the way his wife Creusa he leas,  
And mokell sorrow had he in his mind,  
Ere that he coulde his fellowship find:  
But, at the last, whan he had hem found,  
He made hem redy in a certaine stound,  
And to the sea full fast he gau him hie,  
And sailleth forth with all his compaignie  
Towards Itale, as would destinee:  
But of his aventures in the see,  
N'is nat to purpose for to speke of here,  
For it accordeth nat to my matere,

But, as I said, of him and of Dido  
Shall be my tale, till that I have do.

So long he sailed in the salt see,  
Till in Libie unneth arrived he,  
So was he with the tempest all to shake,  
And whan that he the haven had ytake,  
He had a knight was called Achatees,  
And him of all his fellowship he chees,  
To gone with him the country for t'espie,  
He tooke with him no more compaignie,  
But forth they gon, and left his ships ride,  
His feere and he, withouten any guide.

So long he walketh in this wilderness,  
Till at the last he met an hunteresse,  
A bow in hond, and arrowes had she,  
Her clothes cutted were unto the kneec,  
But she was yet the fairest creature  
That ever was yformed by nature,  
And Eneas and Achates she gret,  
And thus she to hem spake, whan she hem met.

"Saw ye," quod she, "as ye han walked wide,  
Any of my sustren walke you beside,  
With any wild bore or other beast,  
That they have hunted into this Forrest,  
Ytucked up with arrowes in her caas!"  
"Nay, sothly, lady," quod this Eneas,  
"But by thy beaute, as it thinketh me,  
Thou mightest never yearlyly woman be,  
But Phebus suster art thou, as I gesse,  
And if so be that thou be a goddesse,  
Have mercy on our labour and our wo."

"I n'am no goddesse soothly," quod she tho,  
For maidens walken in this country here,  
With arrows and with bow, in this manere:  
This is the realme of Libie there ye been,  
Of which that Dido lady is and queen,"  
And shortly told all the occasion  
Why Dido came into that region,  
Of which as now me listeth nat to rime,  
It nedeth nat, it nere but losse of time,  
For this is all and some, it was Venus,  
His owne mother, that spake with him thus,  
And to Cartage she bade he should him dight,  
And vanished anon out of his sight.  
I could follow word for word Vergile,  
But it would lasten all to longe while.

This noble queen that cleped was Dido,  
That whylom was the wife of Sicheo,  
That fairer was than the bright Sunne,  
This noble toun of Carthage hath begunne,  
In which she reigneth in so great honour,  
That she was hold of all quenes flour,  
Of gentillesse, of freedome, and of beaute,  
That well was him that might her ones see,  
Of kings and lordes so desired,  
That all the world her beaute had yfired,  
She stood so well in every wights grace.

Whan Eneas was come unto the place,  
Unto the maister temple of all the toun,  
There Dido was in her devotioun,  
Full prively his way than hath he nome.  
Whan he was in the large temple come,  
I cannot saine if that it be possible,  
But Venus had him maked invisible,  
Thus sayth the booke, withouten any leas.

And whan this Eneas and Achates  
Hadden in this temple ben over all,  
Than found they depainted on a wall,  
How Troy and all the land destroyed was  
"Alas, that I was borne!" quod Eneas,

"Through the world our shame is kid so wide,  
Now it is painted upon every side :  
We that weren in prosperite,  
Ben now disclaundred, and in such degre,  
No lenger for to liven I ne kepe ;"  
And with that word he brast out for to weve.  
So tenderly that routh it was to seene.

This fresh lady, of the citie queen,  
Stood in the temple, in her estate roially,  
So richely, and eke so faire withall,  
So yong, so lustie, with her eyen glade,  
That if that God that Heaven and yearth made,  
Would have a love, for beauty and goodnesse,  
And womanhede, trouth, and semelnesse,  
Whom should he loven but this lady swete !  
There n'is no woman to him halfe so mete :  
Fortune, that hath the world in governaunce,  
Hath sodainly brought in so new a chaunce,  
That never was there yet so fremed a caas,  
For all the company of Eneas,  
Which that we wend have lorne in the see,  
Arrived is nought ferre fro that citee,  
For which the greatest of his lords, some,  
By aventure ben to the citie come  
Unto that same temple for to seke  
The queene, and of hir socour her beseeke,  
Such renome was ther sprung of her goodnes.

And whan they had tolde all hir distresse,  
And all hir tempest and all hir hard caas,  
Unto the queene appeared Eneas,  
And openly beknew that it was he ;  
Who had joy than, but his meine,  
That hadden found hir lord, hir governour !

The queene saw they did him such honour,  
And had heard of Eneas, ere tho,  
And in her herte had routh and wo,  
That ever such a noble man as he  
Shall ben disherited in such degre,  
And saw the man, that he was like a knight,  
And suffisaunt of person and of might,  
And like to ben a very gentilman,  
And well his wordes he besette can,  
And had a noble visage for the nones,  
And formed well of brawne and of bones,  
And after Venus had such fairenesse  
That no man might be halfe so faire I gesse,  
And well a lord him semed for to be,  
And for he was a straunger, somewhat she  
Liked him the bet, as God do boote,  
To some folke often new thing is soote ;  
Anon her herte hath pitee of his wo,  
And with pitie love came also,  
And thus for pitie and for gentilnesse,  
Refreshed must he ben of his distresse.

She said, certes, that she sorry was,  
That he hath had such perill and such caas,  
And in her friendly speech, in this manere  
She to him spake, and sayd as ye may here.

"Be ye nat Venus sonne and Anchises !  
In good faith, all the worship and encrees  
That I may goodly done you, ye shall have,  
Your shippes and your meine shall I save ;"  
And many a gentle word she spake him to,  
And commaunded her messengers to go  
The same day, withouten any faile,  
His shippes for to seeke and hem vitale ;  
Full many a beast she to the ships sent,  
And with the wine she gan hem to present,  
And to her roiall paleis she her sped,  
And Eneas she alway with her led.

What nedeth you the feastes to discrive,  
He never better at ease was in his live,  
Full was the feast of deinties and richesse,  
Of instruments, of song, and of gladnesse,  
And many an amorous looking and devise.

This Eneas is come to Paradise  
Out of the swolowe of Hell, and thus in joy  
Remembreth him of his estate in Troy,  
To dauncing chambers full of paraments,  
Of rich beds, and of pavements,  
This Eneas is ledde after the meat,  
And with the queene whan that he had seat,  
And spices parted, and the wine agon,  
Unto his chamber was he lad anon,  
To take his ease, and for to have his rest  
With all his folke, to done what so him lest.

Ther nas courser well ybridled none,  
Ne stede for the justing well to gone,  
Ne large palfrey, easie for the nones,  
Ne jewell fret full of rich stones,  
Ne sakes full of gold, of large wight,  
Ne rubie none that shineth by night,  
Ne gentill hautein faukon heronere,  
Ne hound for hart, wild bore, or dere,  
Ne cup of gold, with fiores new ybette,  
That in the lond of Libie may ben gette,  
That Dido ne hath Eneas it ysent,  
And all is payed what that he hath spent.  
Thus can this honorable queene her gestes call,  
As she that can in freedome passen all.

Eneas sothly eke, without leas,  
Hath sent to his shippe by Achates  
After his sonne, and after rich things,  
Both scepter, clothes, broches, and eke rings,  
Some for to weare, and some to present  
To her, that all these noble things him sent,  
And bad his sonne how that he should make  
The presenting, and to the queene it take.

Repaired is this Achates againe,  
And Eneas full blisfull is and faine  
To seene his yong sonne Ascanius,  
For to him it was reported thus,  
That Cupido, that is the god of love,  
At prayer of his mother high above,  
Had the likeness of the child ytake,  
This noble queene enamoured for to make  
On Eneas ; but of that scripture  
Be as he may, I make of it no cure ;  
But soth is this, the queen hath made such chere  
Unto this child, that wonder was to here,  
And of the present that his father sent,  
She thanked him oft in good entent.

Thus is this queen in pleasaunce and joy,  
With all these new lustie folke of Troy,  
And of the deeds hath she more enquired  
Of Eneas, and all the story lered  
Of Troy, and all the long day they tway  
Entendeden for to speake and for to play,  
Of which there gan to bredden such a fire,  
That sely Dido hath now such desire  
With Eneas her new guest to deale,  
That she lost her hew and eke her heale.

Now to th'effect, now to the fruit of all,  
Why I have told this story, and tellen shall.

Thus I begin ; it fell upon a night,  
Whan that the Mone upreised had her light,  
This noble queene unto her rest went,  
She sighed sore, and gon her selfe tourment,  
She walketh, waloweth, and made many braide,  
As done these lovers, as I have heard saide,

And, at the last, unto her suster Anne  
She made her mone, and right thus spake she than.

"Now dere suster mine, what may it be  
That me agasteth in my dreame," quod she,  
"This ilke new Trojan is so in my thought,  
For that me thinketh he is so wel iwrought,  
And eke so likely to ben a man,  
And therewith so mikell good he can,  
That all my love and life lieth in his cure ;  
Have ye nat heard him tell his aventure ?  
"Now certes, Anne, if that ye rede me,  
I woll faine to him ywedded be,  
This is the effect, what should I more seine !  
In him lieth all, to do me live or deine."

Her suster Anne, as she that coude her good,  
Said as her thought, and somdele it withstood,  
But hereof was so long a sermoning,  
It were to long to make rehearsing :  
But, finally, it may not be withstonde,  
Love woll love, for no wight woll it wonde.  
The dawning uprist out of the see,  
This amorous queene chargeth her meine }  
The nettes dresse, and speres brode and keue,  
In hunting woll this lustie freshe queene,  
So pricketh her this new jolly wo,  
To horse is all her lustie folke ygo,  
Unto the court the houndes ben ybrought,  
And up on courser, swift as any thought,  
Her yong knights heven all about,  
And of her women eke an huge rout.  
Upon a thicke palfray, paper white,  
With saddle redde, embrouded with delite,  
Of gold the barres, up embossed high,  
Sate Dido, all in gold and perrie wrigh,  
And she is faire as is the bright morrow,  
That healeth sicke folkes of nights sorrow ;  
Upon a courser, starting as the fire,  
Men might tourne him with a little wire.

But Eneas, like Phebus to devise,  
So was he freshe arrayed in his wise,  
The fomie bridle, with the bittle of gold,  
Governeth he right as himselfe hath would ;  
And forth this noble queene, this lady ride  
On hunting, with this Trojan by her side.  
The herd of hartes founden is anon,  
With "Hey, go bet, pricke thou, let gon, let gon,  
Why nill the lion comen or the beare,  
That I might him ones meten with this spear !"   
Thus saine this yong folke, and up they kill  
The wild hartes, and have hem at hir will.

Emong all this, to romblen gan the Heven,  
The thunder rored with a grisly steven,  
Doun come the rain, with haile and sleet so fast,  
With Heavens fire, that made so sore agast  
This noble queene, and also her meine,  
That eche of hem was glad away to fle,  
And shortly, fro the tempest her to save,  
She fled her selfe into a little cave,  
And with her went this Eneas also,  
I n'ot with hem if there went any mo,  
The authour maketh of it no mention :  
And here began the deepe affection  
Betwixt hem two, this was the first morrow  
Of her gladnesse, and ginning of her sorrow,  
For there hath Eneas ykneled so,  
And told her all his hurt and all his wo,  
And sworne so deepe to her to be true,  
For wele or wo, and change for no new,  
And as a false lover so well can plaine,  
That sely Dido rewed on his paine,

And toke him for husbond, and became his wife  
For evermore, while that hem last life ;  
And after this, whan that the tempest stent,  
With mirth out as they came, home they went.  
The wicked fame up rose, and that anon,  
How Eneas hath with the queene ygon  
Into the cave, and demed as hem list :  
And whan the king (that Yarbass hight) it wist,  
As he that had her loved ever his life,  
And woad her to have her to his wife,  
Such sorrow as he hath maked, and such chere,  
It is a routh and pitie for to here,  
But as in love, alday it happeth so,  
That one shall laughen at anothers wo,  
Now laughed Eneas, and is in joy,  
And more richesse than ever was in Troy.

O sely woman, full of innocence,  
Full of pitie, of truth, and continence,  
What maked you to men to trusten so !  
Have ye such routh upon hir fained wo,  
And have such old ensamples you beforne !  
See ye nat all how they ben forsworne !  
Where see ye one, that he ne hath laft his lefe,  
Or ben unkind, or done her some mischefe,  
Or pilled her or bosted of his dede !  
Ye may as well it seene, as ye may rede.  
Take hede now of this great gentilman,  
This Trojan, that so well her please can,  
That faineth him so true and obeysing,  
So gentill, and so privie of his doing,  
And can so well done all his obeysaunce  
To her, at feastes and at danche,  
And whan she goeth to temple, and home agayn,  
And fasten till he hath his lady seyn,  
And bearen in his devises for her sake,  
N'ot I nat what, and songes would he make,  
Justen, and done of armes many thinge,  
Send her letters, tokens, brooches, and rings.

Now herkneth how he shal his lady serve :  
There as he was in perill for to sterve  
For hunger and for mischefe in the see,  
And desolate, and fled fro his cuntrye,  
And all his folke with tempest all to driven,  
She hath her body and eke her realme yeven  
Into his hond, there she might have ben  
Of other land than of Cartage a queen,  
And lived in joy inough, what would ye more !  
This Eneas, that hath thus deepe yswore,  
Is wearie of his craft within a throw,  
The hote earnest is all overblow,  
And prively he dothe his ships dight,  
And shapeth him to steale away by night.

This Dido hath suspicion of this,  
And thought well that it was al amis,  
For in his bed he lieth a night and siketh,  
She asketh him anon, what him misliketh,  
"My dere herte, which that I love most."  
"Certes," quod he, "this night my fathers ghost  
Hath in my slepe me so sore tourmented,  
And eke Mercury his message hath prescuted,  
That needes to the conquest of Itale  
My destinie is soone for to saile,  
For which, me thinketh, brosten is mine herte : "  
Therewith his false teares out they start,  
And taketh her within his armes two.

"Is that in earnest," quod she, "woll ye so ?  
Have ye nat sworne to wife me to take !  
Alas, what woman woll ye of me make !  
I am a gentyl woman, and a queen,  
Ye woll not fro your wife thus foule fleeen  
\*\*\*

That I was borne, alas ! what shall I do ?"

To tellen in short, this noble queen Dido  
She seeketh halowes, and doth sacrifice,  
She kneeleth, crieth, that routh is to devise,  
Conjureth him, and profereth him to be  
His thrall, his servaunt, in the best degre,  
She falleth him to foot, and sowneth there,  
Discheville with her bright gilt heere,  
And sayth, " Have mercy, let me with you ride,  
These lordes, which that wonnen me beside,  
Woll me destroyen, only for your sake :  
And ye woll me now to wife take,  
As ye have sworne, than woll I yeve you leve  
To sleen me with your sward now sone at eve,  
For than yet shall I dien as your wife ;  
I am with child, and yeve my child his life !  
Mercy lord, have pitie in your thought !"  
But all this thing availeth her right nought !  
And as a traitour forthe gan to saile  
Toward the large cuntry of Itaile,  
And thus hath he left Dido in wo and pine,  
And wedded there a ladie hight Lavine.  
A cloth he left, and eke his sword standing,  
Whan he fro Dido stale in her sleeping,  
Right at her beds head, so gan he hie,  
Whan that he stale away to his navie.

Which cloth, whan selie Dido gan awake,  
She hath it kist full oft for his sake,  
And said, " O sweet cloth, while Jupiter it lest,  
Take my soule, unbind me of this unrest,  
I have fulfilled of fortune all the course."  
And thus, alas, withouten his socourse,  
Twentie time yswouned hath she than,  
And whan that she unto her suster Anne  
Complained had, of which I may not write  
So great routh I have it for to endite,  
And bad her norice and her sustren gone  
To fetchen fire, and other things anone,  
And sayd that she would sacrifice,  
And whan she might her time well aspie,  
Upon the fire of sacrifice she start,  
And with his sword she rofe her to the herte :  
But as mine authour saith, yet this she seide,  
(Or she was hurt, beforne or she deide,  
She wrote a letter anon, and thus began.

" Right so," quod she, " as the white swan  
Aeynst his deeth beginneth for to sing,  
Right so to you I make my complaining,  
Not that I trow to getten you againe,  
For well I wote it is all in vaine,  
Sens that the gods ben contrarious to me,  
But sin my name is lost through you," quod she,  
" I may well lese a word on you or letter,  
Albeit I shall be never the better,  
For thilke wind that blew your ship away,  
The same wind hath blow away your fay : "  
But who so woll all this letter have in mind,  
Rede Ovide, and in him he shall it find.

#### THE LEGEND OF HIPSPHILE AND MEDEA.

Thou root of false lovers, duxe Jason.  
Thou sleer, devourer, and confusion  
Of gentyl women, gentle creatures,  
Thou madest thy reclaiming and thy lures  
To ladies of thy scathliche appaunce,  
And of thy wordes farsed with pleasaunce,

And of thy fained trouth, and thy manere,  
With thine obeysaunce and humble chere,  
And with thine counterfeited paine and wo,  
There other falsen one, thou falsed two,  
O oft swore thou that thou wouldest die  
For love, whan thou ne feltest nualdie,  
Save foule delite, which thou callest love ;  
If that I live, thy name shall be shove  
In English, that thy deceit shall be know,  
Have at thee Jason, now thine honor is blow.  
But certes, it is both routh and wo,  
That love with false lovers werketh so,  
For they shall have well better love and chere  
Than he that hath bought love full dere,  
Or had in armes many a bloodie boxe,  
For ever as tender a capon eateth the foxe.  
Though he be fals, and hath the foule betraied,  
As shall the good man that therefore paid.  
Although he have to the capon skill and right,  
The false foxe woll have his part at night.  
On Jason this ensample is well yseene,  
By Hipsiphile and Medea the queene.

In Thessalie, as Ovide telleth us,  
There was a knight, that hight Peleus,  
That had a brother, which that hight Eson,  
And whan for age he might unnethes gon,  
He yave to Peleus the governing  
Of al his reign, and made him lord and king,  
Of which Eson, this Jason gotten was,  
That in his time in all that land there nas  
Nat such a famous knight of gentillesse,  
Of freedom, of strength, and of lustinesse ;  
After his fathers deeth he bare him so,  
That there nas none that list ben his fo,  
But did him all honour and companie,  
Of which this Peleus hath great envie,  
Imagining that Jason might be  
Enhaused so, and put in such degre,  
With love of lordes of his regioun,  
That from his reigne he may be put adoun,  
And in his wit a night compassed he  
How Jason might best destroyed be,  
Withouten slaunder of his compasment ;  
And, at the last, he tooke avisement,  
That to send him into some ferre cuntry,  
There as this Jason may destroyed be ;  
This was his wit, all made he to Jason  
Great chere of looke, and of affection,  
For drede least his lords it espide.  
So fell it, as fame ronnethe wide,  
There was such tiding over all, and such loos,  
That in an isle, that called was Colcos,  
Beyond Troy eastward in the see,  
That there was a ram, that men might see,  
That had a flees of gold that shone so bright,  
That no where was there such another sight ;  
But it was kept alway with a dragoun,  
And many other mervailles up and doun,  
And with two bulles maked all of bras,  
That spitten fire, and much thing there was,  
But this was eke the tale nathelces,  
That who so would winnen thilke flees,  
He must both, or he it winnen might,  
With the buls and the dragon fight.

And king Otes lord was of that isle :  
This Peleus bethought upon this wile,  
That he his nephew Jason would exhort  
To sailen to that lond, him to disport,  
And sayd, " Nephew, if it might be,  
That such worship might fall thee,

That thou this famous treasure might win,  
And bring it my region within,  
It were to me great plesaunce and honour,  
Than were I hold to quite thy labour,  
And all thy costes I wold my selfe make,  
And chose what folke thou wolt with thee take,  
Let see now, darste thou taken this voyage?"

Jason was yonge, and lustie of corage,  
And undertooke to done this ilke emprise;  
Anon, Argus his ships gan devise.

With Jason went the strong Hercules,  
And many another, that he with him ches,  
But who so asketh who is with him gon,  
Let him rede Argonauticon,  
For he wold tell a tale long ynough.  
Philoctetes anon the saile up drough,  
Whan the wind was good, and gan him his  
Out of his cuntry, called Thessalie.  
So long they sayled in the salt see,  
Till in the isle of Lemnon arrived hee,  
All be this nat rehearsed of Guido,  
Yet saith Ovide in his Epistles so,  
And of this isle lady was and quene,  
The faire yong Hipsiphile the shene,  
That whilom Thoas doughter was, the king.

Hipsiphile was gone in her playing,  
And, roming on the clevis by the see,  
Under a banke, anone, espied she  
Where lay the ship that Jason gan arrive:  
Of her goodnesse adoune she sendeth blive,  
To weten if that any straunge wight  
With tempest thider were yblow night,  
To done him succour, as was her usaunce,  
To furtheren every wight, and done plesaunce  
Of very bountie and of courtesie.

This messenger adoune him gan to hie,  
And found Jason and Hercules also,  
That in a cogge to lond were ygo,  
Hem to refreshen and to take the aire.  
The morning attempre was and faire,  
And in hir way this messenger hem mette;  
Full cunningly these lordes two he grette,  
And did his message, asking hem anon,  
If that they were broken, or aught wo begon,  
Or had need of lodesmen, or vitale,  
For socoure they shoulde nothing faile,  
For it was utterly the queenes will.

Jason answerde meekely and still:  
"My lady," quod he, "thanke I hertely  
Of her goodnesse; us needeth truly  
Nothing as now, but that we weary be,  
And come for to play out of the see,  
Till that the wind be better in our way."

This lady rometh by the cliffe to play  
With her meinie, endlong the strond,  
And findeth this Jason and this other stond  
In speaking of this thing, as I you told.

This Hercules and Jason gan behold  
Howe that the queene it was, and faire her grete,  
Anone, right as they with this lady mete,  
And she toke heed, and knew by hir manere,  
By hir array, by wordes, and by chere,  
That it were gentyl men of great degre,  
And to the castle with her leadeth she  
These straunge folk, and doth hem great honour,  
And asketh hem of travaile and of labour  
That they have suffred in the salte see,  
So that within a day, two or three,  
She knew by the folke that in his shippes be,  
That it was Jason, full of renomee,

And Hercules, that had the great loon,  
That soughten the aventures of Colcos,  
And did hem honour more than before,  
And with hem dealed ever longer the more,  
For they ben worthy folke, withouten lees,  
And namely most she spake with Hercules,  
To him her herte bare, he shoulde be  
Sadde, wise, and true, of words avisee,  
Withouten any other affection  
Of love, or any other imagination.

This Hercules hath this Jason praised,  
That to the Sunne he hath it up raised,  
That halfe so true a man there n'as of love  
Under the cope of Heaven that is above,  
And he was wise, hardie, secrete, and riche,  
Of these three points there nas none him liche,  
Of freedome passed he, and lustyhead,  
All tho that liven, or ben dead;  
Thereto, so great a gentyl man was he,  
And of Thessalye likely king to be,  
Ther n'as no lacke, but that he was agast  
To love, and for to speake shamefast,  
Him had lever himselfe to murder and die,  
Than that men shoulde a lover him espie,  
As woulde God that I had iyeve  
My blood and flesh, so that I might live  
With the bones, that he had aught where a wife  
For his estate, for such a lustio life  
She shoulde lede with this lustie knight.  
And all this was compassed on the night  
Betwixe him Jason, and this Hercules,  
Of these two here was a shreud lees,  
To come to housse upon an innocent,  
For to bedote this queene was hir entent:  
And Jason is as coy as is a maid,  
He looketh pitously, but naught he sayd,  
But freely yave he to her counsailers  
Yeftes great, and to her officers,  
As woulde God that I leyser had and time,  
By processe all his wrong for to rime:  
But in this house, if any false lover be,  
Right as himselfe now doth, right so did he,  
With faining, and with every subtil dede,  
Ye get no more of me, but ye wold rede  
Th'original, that telleth all the caas.

The sooth is this, that Jason wedded was  
Unto this queene, and toke of her substaunce  
What so him list unto his purveyaunce,  
And upon her begate children two,  
And drough his saile, and saw her never mo:  
A letter sent she him certaine,  
Which were too long to writen and to saine,  
And him reproveth of his great untrouth,  
And praieth him on her to have some routh,  
And on his children two, she sayd him this,  
That they be like of all thing ywis  
To Jason, save they couth nat beguile,  
And prayd God, or it were long while,  
That she that had his herte yreft her fro,  
Must finden him untrue also:  
And that she must both her children spill,  
And all tho that suffreth him his will:  
And true to Jason was she all her life,  
And ever kept her chast, as for his wife,  
Ne never had she joy at her hart,  
But died for his love of sorrowes smart.

To Colcos come is this duke Jason,  
That is of love devourer and dragon,  
As matire appeteth forme alway,  
And from forme to forme it passen may.

Or as a well that were bottomles,  
 Right so can Jason have no pees,  
 For to desiren through his appetite  
 To done with gentyl women his delite ;  
 This is his lust, and his felicitie.  
 Jason is romed forth to the citie,  
 That whylome cleped was Jasonicos,  
 That was the master toun of all Colcos,  
 And hath ytold the cause of his comming  
 Unto Otes, of that countrey king,  
 Praying him that he must done his assay  
 To get the fleese of gold, if that he may ;  
 Of which the king assenteth to his boone,  
 And doth him honour, as it is doone,  
 So ferforth that his daughter and his heire,  
 Medea, which that was so wise and faire,  
 That fairer saw there never man with eie,  
 He made her done to Jason companie  
 At meat, and sitte by him in the hall.

Now was Jason a seemely man withall,  
 And like a lord, and had a great renoun,  
 And of his looke as royall as a lion,  
 And godly of his speech, and famillere,  
 And coud of love all the craft and art plenere  
 Withouten booke, with everiche observaunce,  
 And as fortune her ought a foule mischaunce,  
 She woxe enamoured upon this man.

"Jason," quod she, "for ought I see or can,  
 As of this thing, the which ye ben about,  
 Ye and your selfe ye put in much dout,  
 For who so wold this aventure atcheve  
 He may nat wele asterten, as I leve,  
 Withouten death, but I his helpe be,  
 But nathelesse, it is my will," quod she,  
 "To forthren you, so that ye shall nat die,  
 But turnen sound home to your Thessalie."

"My right lady," quod this Jason, "tho  
 That ye have of my death or my wo  
 Any regard, and done me this honour,  
 I wot well that my might, ne my labour,  
 May nat deserve it my lives day,  
 God thanke you, there I ne can ne may,  
 Your man am I, and lowly you beseech  
 To ben my helpe, withouten more speech,  
 But certes, for my death shall I not spare."

Tho gan this Medea to him declare  
 The perill of this case, fro point to point  
 Of his batayle, and in what disjoint  
 He mote stonde, of which no creature,  
 Save only she, ne might his life assure :  
 And shortely, right to the point for to go,  
 They ben accorded fully betwixe hem two,  
 That Jason shall her wedde, as trewe knight,  
 And terme yset to come soone at night  
 Unto her chambre, and make there his othe  
 Upon the goddess, that he for lefe or lothe  
 Ne shulde her never falsen, night ne day,  
 To ben her husband whyle he live may,  
 As she that from his deth him saved here,  
 And here upon at night they mete yfere,  
 And doth his othe, and gothe with her to bedde,  
 And on the morow upward he him spedde,  
 For she hath taught him how he shall nat faile  
 The flees to winne, and stinten his bataile,  
 And saved him his life and his honour,  
 And gate him a name as a conquerour,  
 Right through the sleight of her enchantment.  
 Now hath Jason the fleese, and home is went  
 With Medea, and treasours fell great wounne,  
 But unwist of her father she is gonne

To Thessalie, with duke Jason her lefe,  
 That afterward hath brought her to mischeife,  
 For as a traytour he is from her go,  
 And with her left yonge children two,  
 And falsely hath betrayed her, alas !  
 And ever in love a chefe traytour he was,  
 And wedded yet the thirde wife anon,  
 That was the daughter of king Creon.

This is the meede of loving, and guerdon  
 That Medea received of duke Jason  
 Right for her trowth, and for her kindnesse,  
 That loved him better than her selfe I gesse,  
 And left her father, and her heritage,  
 And of Jason this is the vassalage,  
 That in his dayes nas never none yfound  
 So false a lover going on the ground,  
 And therefore in her letter thus she said,  
 First whan she of his falsenesse him upbraid :  
 "Why liked thee my yellow haire to see,  
 More than the boundes of mine honestie !  
 Why liked me thy youth and thy fairenesse,  
 And of thy tong the infinite graciusnesse !  
 O haddest thou in thy conquest dead ybe,  
 Ful mikel untrouth had there died with thee."

Well can Ovide her letter in verse endite,  
 Which were, as now, too long for to write.

#### THE LEGEND OF LUCRECE OF ROME.

Now mote I saine th'exiling of kings  
 Of Rome, for hir horrible doings  
 Of the last kinge Tarquinius,  
 As saith Ovid, and Titus Livius,  
 But for that cause tell I nat this storie,  
 But for to praysen, and drawn in memorie  
 The very wife, the very Lucrese,  
 That for her wifhood, and her stedfastnesse,  
 Nat only that these paynims her commend,  
 But that cleped is in our legend  
 The great Austyn, that hath compassion  
 Of this Lucrece, that starfe in Rome toun,  
 And in what wise I wold but shortly treat,  
 And of this thing I touch but the great.

When Ardea besieged was about  
 With Romanes, that full sterne were and stout,  
 Full long lay the siege, and little wroughten,  
 So that they were halfe idle, as hem thoughten,  
 And in his play Tarquinius the yonge,  
 Gan for to yape, for he was light of tonge,  
 And said, that "it was an idle life,  
 No man did there no more than his wife,  
 And let us speke of wives that is best,  
 Praise every man his owne as him lest,  
 And with our spech let us ease our herte."

A knight (that hight Colatin) up stert,  
 And sayd thus, "Nay, sir, it is no nede  
 To trowen on the word, but on the dede :  
 I have a wife," quod he, "that as I trow  
 Is holden good of all that ever her know ;  
 Go we to Rome to night, and we shull see."  
 Tarquinius answerde, "That liketh mee."  
 To Rome they be comen, and fast hem dight  
 To Colatins house, and downe they light,  
 Tarquinius, and eke this Colatine ;  
 The husband knew the efters well and fine,  
 And full prively into the house they gone,  
 Nor at the gate porter was there none,

And at the chamber dore they abide :  
 This noble wifo sate by her beds side  
 Discheveled, for no mallice she ne thought,  
 And soft wooll, sayth Livie, that she wrought,  
 To kepe her from slouth and idlenesse,  
 And bad her servaunts done hir businesse,  
 And asketh hem, "What tidings heren ye ?  
 How sayth men of the siege, how shall it be ?  
 God would the wals were fallen adoun,  
 Mine husbond is too long out of this toun,  
 For which drede doth me sore to smert,  
 Right as a sword it stingeth to mine herte,  
 Whan I thinke on this or of that place,  
 God save my lord, I pray him for his grace :"  
 And therewithall so tenderly she gan wepe,  
 And of her werke she tooke no more keepe,  
 But meekely she let her eyen fall,  
 And thilke semblant sate her well withall,  
 And eke her teares full of heavinesse,  
 Embelessed her wifely chastnesse.  
 Her countenance is to her herte digne,  
 For they acordeden in deed and signe,  
 And with that word her husbond, Colatin,  
 Or she of him was ware, came sterling in,  
 And said, "Drede thee nat, for I am here ;"  
 And she anone up rose, with blisfull chere,  
 And kissed him, as of wives is the wounne.

Tarquinius, this proud kings sonne,  
 Conceived hath her beauteie and her chere,  
 Her yellow haire, her bountie, and her manere,  
 Her hew, her words, that she hath complained,  
 And by no craft her beauteie was nat fained,  
 And caught to this lady such desire,  
 That in his herte he brent as any fire,  
 So woody that his wit was all forgotten,  
 For well thought he she should nat be gotten,  
 And aye the more he was in dispaire,  
 The more coveiteth, and thought her faire ;  
 His blind lust was all his coveiteng.  
 On morrow, whan the bird began to sing,  
 Unto the siege he commeth full prively,  
 And by himselfe he walketh soberly,  
 The image of her recording alway new,  
 Thus lay her hair, and thus fresh was her hew,  
 Thus sate, thus span, this was her chere,  
 Thus fair she was, and this was her manere :  
 All this conceit his herte hath new ytake,  
 And as the see with tempest all to shake,  
 That after whan the storme is all ago,  
 Yet wold the water quappe a day or two,  
 Right so, though that her forme were absent,  
 The pleasaunce of her forme was present,  
 But nathelesse, nat pleasaunce, but delite,  
 Or an unrightfull talent with dispite :  
 "For, maugre her, she shall my lemman be ;  
 Hap helpeth hardy man alway," quod he,  
 "What end that I make, it shall be so,"  
 And girt him with his sword, and gan to go,  
 And he forthright, till to Rome he come,  
 And all alone his way that he hath nome  
 Unto the house of Colatin full right ;  
 Doun was the Sunne, and day hath lost his light,  
 And in he come unto a privie halke,  
 And in the night full theefely gan he stalke,  
 Whan every wight was to his rest brought,  
 Ne no wight had of treason such a thought,  
 Whether by window, or by other gin,  
 With sward ydraw, shortly he commeth in  
 There as she lay, this noble wifo Lucesse,  
 And as she woke, her bodde she felt presse.

"What beast is that," quod she, "that wayeth !  
 "I am the kings sonne Tarquinius," [thus !]  
 Quod he, "but and thou crie, or any noise make,  
 Or if thou any creature awake,  
 By thilke God that formed man of live,  
 This sward through thine herte shall I rive ;"  
 And therewithall unto her throte he stert,  
 And set the sward all sharpe on her herte :  
 No word she spake, she hath no might therto,  
 What shall she saine ! her wit is all ago ;  
 Right as whan a wolfe findeth a lamb alone,  
 To whom shall she complaine or make mone ?  
 What, shall she fight with an hardy knight ?  
 Well wote men a woman hath no might :  
 What, shall she crie, or how shall she astert,  
 That hath her by the throte, with sward at herte ?  
 She asketh grace, and said all that she can.

"No wolt thou nat," quod this cruell man,  
 "As wisely Jupiter my soule save,  
 I shall in thy stable slee thy knave,  
 And lay him in thy bed, and loud crie,  
 That I thee find in such avoutrie,  
 And thus thou shalt be dead, and also lese  
 Thy name, for thou shalt nat chese."  
 This Romans wives loveden so her name  
 At thilke time, and dreden so the shame,  
 That what for fere of slander, and drede of death  
 She lost both at ones wit and breath,  
 And in a swough she lay, and woxe so dead,  
 Men mighten smite off her arme or head,  
 She feleth nothing, neither foule ne faire.

Tarquinius, that art a kings heire,  
 And shouldest, as by linage and by right,  
 Done as a lord and a very knight,  
 Why hast thou done dispite to chivalrie ?  
 Why hast thou done this lady villanie ?  
 Alas, of thee this was a villanous dede,  
 But now to the purpose : in the story I rede,  
 Whan he was gon, and this mischaunce is fall,  
 This lady sent after her friendes all,  
 Father, mother, and husbond, all yfere,  
 And discheveled with her haire clere,  
 In habite such as women used the  
 Unto the burying of hir frends go,  
 She sate in hall, with a sorowfull sight ;  
 Her friends asken what her aylen might,  
 And who was dead ! and she sate aye weeping,  
 A word for shame ne may she forth out bring,  
 Ne upon hem she durst nat behold,  
 But, at the last, of Tarquiny she hem told  
 This ruffall case, and all this thing horrible,  
 The wo to tell were impossible  
 That she and all her friends make at ones ;  
 All had folkes hertes ben of stones,  
 It might have maked hem upon her rew,  
 Her herte was so wifely and so trew ;  
 She said, that for her gilt ne for her blame  
 Her husbond should nat have the foule name,  
 That would she nat suffren by no way :  
 And they answerde all unto her fay,  
 That they foryave it her, for it was right,  
 It was no gilt, it lay nat in her might,  
 And saiden her ensamples many one,  
 But all for naught, for thus she said anone :  
 "Be as be may," quod she, "of forgyving,  
 I will nat have no forgyt for nothing ;"  
 But prively she cought forth a knife,  
 And therewithall she raft her selfe her life,  
 And as she fell adowne she cast her looke,  
 And of her clothes yet heed she tooke,



For in her falling, yet she had a care  
 Least that her feet or such things lay bare,  
 So well she loved cleanness, and eke trouth;  
 Of her had all the towne of Rome routh,  
 And Brutus hath by her chaste blood swore  
 That Tarquin should ybanished be therfore,  
 And all his kinne; and let the people call,  
 And openly the tale he told hem all,  
 And openly let carry her on a bere  
 Through all the town, that men may see and here  
 The horrible deed of her oppressioun,  
 Ne never was there king in Rome toun  
 Sens thilke day, and she was holden there  
 A saint, and ever her day yhallowed dere,  
 As in hir law: and thus endeth Lucrese,  
 The noble wife, Titus beareth witnesse:  
 I tell it, for she was of love so trew,  
 Ne in her will she chaunged for no new,  
 And in her stable herte, sadde and kind,  
 That in these women men may all day find  
 There as they cast hir herte, there it dwelleth,  
 For well I wote, that Christ himselfe telleth  
 That in Israel, as wide as is the lond,  
 That so great faith in all the lond he ne fond  
 As in a woman, and this is no lie,  
 And as for men, looke ye, such tyrannie  
 They doen all day, assay hem who so list,  
 The truest is full brotell for to trist.

#### THE LEGEND OF ARIADNE OF ATHENS.

Judas infernall, Minos, of Crete king,  
 Now commeth thy lot, thou comest on the ring;  
 Nat for thy sake only writt:n is this storie,  
 But for to clepe ayen unto memorie,  
 Of Theseus the great untrouth of love,  
 For which the gods of Heaven above  
 Ben wroth, and wrath have take for thy sinne;  
 Be red for shame! now I thy life beginne.

Minos, that was the mighty king of Crete,  
 That had an hundred cities strong and grete,  
 To schoole hath sent his sonne Androgeus  
 To Athens, of the which it happed thus,  
 That he was slaine, learning philosophie,  
 Right in that cite, nat but for envie.

The great Minos, of the which I speke,  
 His sonnes death is come for to wreke,  
 Alcathoe he besieged hard and long,  
 But nathelesse, the walles be so strong,  
 And Nisus, that was king of that cite,  
 So chivalrous, that little dredeth he;  
 Of Minos or his lust tooke he no cure,  
 Till on a day befell an aventure,  
 That Nisus doughter stood upon the wall,  
 And of the siege saw the manner all:  
 So happed it, that at scarmishing  
 She cast her herte upon Minos the king,  
 For his beutie, and his chevalrie,  
 So sore that she wende for to die.  
 And shortly of this processe for to pace,  
 She made Minos winnen thilke place,  
 So that the cite was all at his will,  
 To saven whom him list, or els spill;  
 But wickedly he quit her kindnesse,  
 And let her drench in sorrow and distrace,  
 N'ere that the gods had of her pite,  
 But that tale were too long as now for me.

Athenes wan this king Minos also,  
 As Alcathoe, and other townes mo,  
 And this the effect, that Minos hath so driven  
 Hem of Athenes, that they mote him yeven  
 Fro yere to yere her owne children dere  
 For to be slaine, as ye shall after here.

This Minos hath a monster, a wicked best,  
 That was so cruell, that without areest,  
 Whan that a man was brought into his presence  
 He would him eat, there helpeth no defence:  
 And every third yere, withouten dout,  
 They casten lotte, as it came about,  
 On rich and poore, he must his sonne take,  
 And of his childe he must present make  
 To Minos, to save him or to spill.  
 Or let his beast devour him at his will.  
 And this hath Minos done right in dispite,  
 To wreke his sonne was set all his delite,  
 And make hem of Athenes his thrall  
 Fro yere to yere, while he liven shall;  
 And home he saileth whan this toun is wonne  
 This wicked custome is so long yronne,  
 Till of Athenes king Egeus  
 Mote senden his owne sonne Theseus,  
 Sens that the lotte is fallen him upon  
 To ben devoured, for grace is there non.  
 And forth is ladde this wofull yonge knight  
 Unto the country of king Minos full of might,  
 And in a prison fettred fast is he,  
 Till the time he should yfroten be.

Well maist thou wepe, O wofull Theseus,  
 That art a kings sonne, and damned thus,  
 Me thinketh this, that thou art depe yhold  
 To whom that saved thee fro cares cold,  
 And now if any woman helpe thee,  
 Well oughtest thou her servaunt for to bee,  
 And ben her true lover, yere by yere,  
 But now to come ayen to my matere.

The toure, there this Theseus is throw,  
 Down in the bottome derk, and wonder low,  
 Was joyning to the wall of a foreine  
 Longing unto the doughtren tweine  
 Of Minos, that in hir chambers grete  
 Dwelten above the maister strete  
 Of the towne, in joy and in solas:  
 Not I nat how it happed, percase,  
 As Theseus complained him by night,  
 The kings doughter, that Ariadne hight,  
 And eke her suster Phedra, herden all  
 His complaint, as they stood on the wall  
 And looked upon the bright Moone,  
 Hem list nat to go to bed so soone:  
 And of his wo they had compassion  
 A kings sonne to be in such prison,  
 And ben devoured, thought hem great pite:  
 Than Ariadne spake to her suster free,  
 And said: "Phedra, lefe suster dere,  
 This wofull lords sonne may ye nat here,  
 How pitously he complaineth his kin,  
 And eke his poore estate that he is in,  
 And guiltesse, certes, now it is routh,  
 And if ye woll assent, by my trouth,  
 He shall ben holpen, how so that we do."

Phedra answerde, "Ywis me is as wo  
 For him as ever I was for any man,  
 And to his helpe the best rede I can  
 Is that we done the gailer prively  
 To come and speke with us hastily,  
 And done this wofull man with him to come  
 For if he may this monster overcome,

Than were he quit, there is none other boot,  
 Let us well taste him at his herte root,  
 That if so be that he a weapon have,  
 Where that he his life dare kepe or save,  
 Fighten with this fiend, and him defend,  
 For in the prison, here as he shall descend,  
 Ye wote well, that the beast is in a place  
 That is not derke, and hath roume and eke space  
 To welde an axe or sward, staffe or knife,  
 So that me thinketh he should save his life,  
 If that he be a man, he shall do so :  
 And we shall make him balles eke also  
 Of wexe and towe, that whan he gapeth fast,  
 Into the beestes throte he shall hem cast,  
 To sleke his hunger, and encomber his teeth,  
 And right anon, whan that Theseus seeth  
 The beest ached, he shall on him leepe  
 To sleen him, or they comen more to keepe ;  
 This weapon shal the gailer, or that tide,  
 Full privly within the prison hide :  
 And, for the house is crenclod to and fro,  
 And hath so queint waies for to go,  
 For it is shapen as the mase is wrought,  
 Thereto have I a remedy in my thought,  
 That by a clewe of twine, as he hath gun  
 The same way he may returne anon,  
 Following alway the threde, as he hath com,  
 And whan this beest is overcome,  
 Than may he flien away out of this stede,  
 And eke the gailer may ne with him lede,  
 And him avaunce at home in his cowntre,  
 Sens that so great a lordes sonne is he :  
 This is my rede, if that ye dare it take."

What shold I lenger sermon of it make !

The gailer cometh, and with him Theseus,  
 Whan these things ben accorded thus.

Downe sate Theseus upon his knee,  
 "The right lady of my life," quod he,  
 "I sorowfull man, ydamned to the deth,  
 Fro you, whiles that me lasteth breth,  
 I wol nat twinne, after this aventure,  
 But in your service thus I woll endure,  
 That as a wretch unknow I woll you serve  
 For evermore, till that mine herte sterve,  
 Forsake I woll at home mine heritage,  
 And, as I said, ben of your court a page,  
 If that ye vouchsafe that in this place  
 Ye graunt me to have soche a grace  
 That I may have nat but my meate and drinke,  
 And for my sustinaunce yet woll I swinke,  
 Right as you list, that Minos, ne no wight,  
 Sens that he saw me never with eyen sight,  
 Ne no man else shall me espie,  
 So sliely and so well I shal me grie,  
 And me so wel disfigure, and so low,  
 That in this world there shall no man me know,  
 To have my life, and to have presence  
 Of you, that done to me this excellence ;  
 And to my fether shall I sende here  
 This worthy man, that is your gaylere,  
 And him so guerdon that he shall well be  
 One of the greatest men of my cowntre,  
 And if I durst saine, my lady bright,  
 I am a kings sonne, and eke a knight,  
 As wold God, if that it might be,  
 Ye weren in my cowntrey all thre,  
 And I with you, to beare you companie,  
 Than shuld ye sene if that I thereof lie ;  
 And if that I profer you in lowe manere  
 To ben your page, and serven you right here,

But I you serve as lowly in that place,  
 I pray to Mars to yeve me suche grace  
 That shames death on me there mote fall,  
 And death and povert to my frends all,  
 And that my sprite by night mote go,  
 After my death, and walke to and fro,  
 That I mote of traitour have a name,  
 For which my sprit mote go, to do me shame,  
 And if I clayme ever other degree,  
 But ye vouchsafe to yeve it mee,  
 As I have said, of shames death I dey,  
 And mercy, lady, I can naught else sey."

A semely knight was this Theseus to see,  
 And yonge, but of twenty yere and thre,  
 But who so had ysene his countenance,  
 He wold have wept for routh of his penance :  
 For which this Ariadne in this manere,  
 Answerde to his profre and to his chere.

"A kings sonne, and eke a knight," quod she,  
 "To ben my servaunt in so lowe degree,  
 God shilde it, for the shame of women all,  
 And lene me never soch a case befall,  
 And sende you grace, and sleight of herte also,  
 You to defend, and knightly to sleen your foe,  
 And lene hereafter I may you find  
 To me, and to my suster here, so kind,  
 That I ne repent nat to yeve you life,  
 Yet were it better I were your wife,  
 Sith ye ben as gentill borne as I,  
 And have a realme nat but fast by,  
 Than that I suffred your gentillesse to sterve,  
 Or that I let you as a page serve ;  
 It is no profite, as unto your kinrede,  
 But what is that, that man woll nat do for dred ?  
 And to my suster, sith that it is so,  
 That she mote gone with me, if that I go,  
 Or els suffre death as wel as I,  
 That ye unto your sonne as trewly,  
 Done her be wedded, at your home coming,  
 This is the final end of all this thing,  
 Ye swere it here, upon all that may be sworne !"

"Ye, lady mine," quod he, "or els to torne  
 Mote I be with the Minotaure or to morrow,  
 And haveth here of mine herte blood to borow,  
 If that ye woll, if I had knife or speare,  
 I wold it letten out, and thereon sweare,  
 For than at erste, I wot ye wold me leve.  
 By Mars, that is chiefe of my beleve,  
 So that I might liven, and nat faile .  
 To morow for to taken my bataile,  
 I nolde never fro this place fle,  
 Till that ye should the very profre se,  
 For now, if that the soth I shall you say,  
 I have loved you full many a day,  
 Though ye ne wist nat, in my cowntre,  
 And aldermost desired you to see,  
 Of any earthly living creature,  
 Upon my truth I swear and you assure,  
 This seven yere I have your servaunt be,  
 Now have I you, and also have ye me,  
 My dere herte, of Athenes duchesse."

This lady smileth at his stedfastnesse,  
 And at his hertely wordes, and at his chere,  
 And to her suster said in this manere :

"And sothly, suster mine," quod she,  
 "Now be we duchesses, both I and ye,  
 And sikerde to the regals of Athenes,  
 And both hereafter likely to be queenes,  
 And saved fro his death a kings sonne,  
 As ever of gentili women is the weene,

To save a gentil man, enforth hir might,  
In honest cause, and, namely, in his right,  
Me thinketh no wight ought us herof blame,  
Ne bearen us therefore an yvel name."  
And shortly of this mater for to make,  
This Theseus of her hath leave ytake,  
And every point was performed in dede,  
As ye have in this covenant herde me rede,  
His wepen, his clewe, his thing that I have said,  
Was by the gailer in the house ylaide,  
There as the Minotaure hath his dwelling,  
Right fast by the dore, at his entring,  
And Theseus is lad unto his dethe,  
And forth unto this Minotaure he gethe,  
And by the teaching of this Adriane,  
He overcame this beest, and was his bane,  
And out he cometh by the clewe againe  
Ful prively, whan he this beest hath slaine,  
And the gailer gotten hath a barge,  
And of his wives treasure gan it charge,  
And toke his wife, and eke her suster free,  
And by the gailer, and with hem al three  
Is stole away out of the lond by night,  
And to the countre of Eupie him dight,  
There as he had a frende of his knowing,  
There feesten they, there dauncen they and sing,  
And in his armes hath this Adriane,  
That of the beest hath kept him fro his bane,  
And get him there a noble barge anone,  
And of his countrey folke a ful great wone,  
And taketh his leave, and homeward sailleth hee,  
And in an yle, amidde the wilde see,  
There as there dwelt creature none,  
Save wild beestes, and that full many one,  
He made his shippe a londe for to sette,  
And in that yle halfe a day he lette,  
And said, that on the londe he must him rest.  
His mariners have done right as him leest,  
And for to tell shortly in this caas,  
Whan Ariadne his wife a slepe was,  
For that her suster fayrer was than she,  
He taketh her in his honde, and forth goeth ho  
To ship, and as a traitour stale away,  
While that this Ariadne a slepe lay,  
And to his countrey warde he sailed blive,  
A twenty divel way the winde him drive,  
And found his father drenched in the see.  
Me list no more to speke of him, parde,  
These false Jovers, poison be hir bane.

But I wol turne againe to Adriane,  
That is with slepe for werinesse ytake,  
Ful sorowfully her herte may awake.  
Alas, for thees mine herte hath pite,  
Right in the dawning awaketh she,  
And gropeth in the bed, and fond right nought :

"Alas," quod she, "that ever I was wrought,  
I am betrayed," and her heere to rent,  
And to the stronde barefote fast she went,  
And cried : "Theseus, mine herte swete,  
Where be ye, that I may nat with you mete ?"  
And might thus with beestes ben yslaine.

The holowe rockes answerde her againe,  
No man she saw, and yet shone the moone,  
And hie upon a rocke she went soone,  
And sawe his barge sayling in the see,  
Cold woxe her herte, and right thus said she :

"Meker then ye find I the beestes wilde."  
Hath he nat sinne, that he her thus begilde ?  
She cried, "O turne againe for routhe and sinne,  
Thy barge hath nat all his meinie in !"

Her kercheffe on a pole sticked she,  
Ascaunce he should it well yse,  
And him remembre that she was behind,  
And turne againe, and on the strode her find.

But all for naught, his way he is gone,  
And downe she fel a swowne on a stone,  
And up she riste, and kissed in all her care  
The steppes of his foete, there he hath farr,  
And to her bed right thus she speketh tho :  
"Thou bed," quod she, "that hast received two  
Thou shalt answer of two, and not of one,  
Where is the greater parte away gone ?

"Alas, wher shal I wretched wight become ?  
For though so be that bote none here come,  
Home to my countrey dare I nat for drede,  
I can my selfe in this case nat rede."

What should I tell more her complaining ?  
It is so long, it were an heavy thing ;  
In her epistle, Naso telleth all,  
But shortly to the end tell I shall,  
The goddes have her holpen for pite,  
And in the signe of Taurus men may see  
The stones of her crowne shine clere,  
I will no more speake of this matere,  
But thus this false lover can begile  
His trew love, the divol quite him his wile.

#### THE LEGEND OF PHILOMENE.

Thou yever of the formes, that hast wrought  
The fayre world, and bare it in thy thought  
Eternally, er thou thy werke began,  
Why madest thou unto the slaunder of man,  
Or all be that it was not thy doing,  
As for that end to make suche a thing,  
Why suffrestest thou that Tereus was bore,  
That is in love so false and so forswore,  
That fro this world up to the first Heaven,  
Corrumpeth, whan that folke his name nevern ?  
And as to me, so grisly was his dede,  
That whan that I this foule storie rede  
Mine eyen wexen foule, and sore also,  
Yet lasteth the venime of so longe ago,  
That enfecteth him that wolde behold  
The storie of Tereus, of which I told,  
Of Trace was he lord, and kin to Marte,  
The cruel god that stante with bloody darte,  
And wedded had he with blisfull chere  
King Pandionis faire daughter dere,  
That hight Progne, floure of her countre.  
Though Juno list not at the feast be,  
Ne Hymeneus, that god of wedding is,  
But at the feast ready ben, ywis,  
The furies three, with all hir mortall bronde,  
The oule all night above the balkes woude,  
That prophete is of wo and of mischaunce ;  
This revell, full of song and full of dauncer,  
Last a fourtenight, or little lasse ;  
But shortly of this storie for to passe,  
(For I am weary of him for to tell)  
Five yere his wife and he together dwell,  
Till on a day she gan so sore long  
To seene her suster, that she saw not long,  
That for desire she nist what to say,  
But to her husband gan she for to pray  
For Gods love, that she mote ones gone  
Her suster for to seene, and come ayen anone,

Or else, but she mote to her wond,  
She praid him that he would after her send :  
And this was, day by day, all her prayere,  
With al humblesse of wifehood, word and chere.

This Tereus let make his ships yare,  
And into Grece himselfe is forth yfare,  
Unto his father-in-law gan he pray,  
To vouchsafe, that for a moneth or tway,  
That Philomene his wives suster might  
On Progne his wife but ones have a sight,  
“ And she shall come to you again, anon,  
My selfe with her, I will both come and gon,  
And as my hertes life I will her kepe.”

This old Pandion, this king gan wepe  
For tendernesse of herte, for to leve  
His daughter gon, and for to yeve her leve ;  
Of all this world he loved nothing so,  
But, at the last, leave hath she to go,  
For Philomene, with salt teares eke,  
Gan of her father grace to beseeke  
To seene her suster, that her longeth so,  
And him embraceth with her armes two ;  
And there also yong and faire was she,  
That whan that Tereus saw her beaute,  
And of array, that there was none her liche,  
And yet of beauteie was she to so riche,  
He cast his fierie herte upon her so,  
That he woll have her, how so that it go,  
And with his wiles kneled, and so praid,  
Till at the last Pandion thus saied.

“ Now sonne,” quod he, “ that art to me so dere,  
I thee betake my yong daughter dere,  
That beareth the key of all mine hertes life,  
And grete well my doughter and thy wife,  
And yeve her leave sometime for to play,  
That she may seen me ones, or I deie.”  
And sothly he hath made him riche feast,  
And to his folke, the most and eke the least,  
That with him came : and yave him yests great,  
And him conveyeth through the master streat  
Of Athenes, and to the sea him brought,  
And tourneth home, no malice he ne thought.  
The ores pulleth forth the vessell fast,  
And into Trace arriveth at the last,  
And up in to a forest he her led,  
And to a cave prively he him sped,  
And in this darke cave, if her lest  
Or list nought, he had her for to rest,  
Of which her herte agrose, and saied thus :

“ Where is my suster, brother Tereus ?”  
And therewithall she wept tenderly,  
And quoke for feare, pale and pitiously,  
Right as the lambe, that of the wolfe is bitten,  
Or as the culver, that of the egle is smitten,  
And is out of his claws forth escaped,  
Yet it is aferde, and awaped,  
Lest it be hent eftsones : so sate she,  
But utterly it may none other be,  
By force hath this traitour doue a deede,  
That he hath rest her of her maidenhode,  
Maugre her head, by strength and by his might.  
Lo, here a deede of men, and that a right.  
She crieth, “ Suster !” with full loude steven,  
And, “ Father dere ! Helpe me God in Heven !”  
All helpeth not, and yet this false thefe  
Hath done this lady yet a more mischefe,  
For feare lest she should his shame crie,  
And done him openly a villanie,  
And with his sward her tong of kerfe he,  
And in a castell made her for to be,

Full prively in prison evermore,  
And kept her to his usage and to his store,  
So that she ne might never more astarte.  
O sely Philomene, wo is in thine herte,  
Huge been thy sorowes, and wonder smart !  
God wreke thee, and sende thee thy boone !  
Now is time I make an end soone.

This Tereus is to his wife ycome,  
And in his armes hath his wife ynome,  
And pitiously he wept, and shoke his hedde,  
And swore her that he found her suster dedde,  
For which this selie Progne hath soch wo,  
That nigh her sorowfull herte brake a two.  
And thus in teares let I Progne dwell,  
And of her suster forth I woll you tell.

This wofull lady ylearned had in youth,  
So that she worken and enbrauden couth,  
And weaven in stole the radevore,  
As it of women hath be woved yore,  
And sothly for to saine, she hath her fill  
Of meate and drinke, of clothing at her will,  
And couthe eke rede well ynough and endite,  
But with a penne she could not write,  
But letters can she weave to and fro,  
So that by the yere was all ago,  
She had woven in a flames large,  
How she was brought fro Athens in a barge,  
And in a cave how that she was brought,  
And all the thing that Tereus wrought,  
She wote it wel, and wrote the storie above,  
How she was served for her susters love.  
And to a man a ring she yave anon,  
And praid him by signes for to gon  
Unto the queene, and bearen her that clothe,  
And by signe swore many an othe  
She should him yeve what she gotten might.

This man, anon, unto the queene him cight,  
And toke it her, and all the maner told,  
And whan that Progne hath this thing behold,  
No worde she spake, for sorow and eke for rage,  
But fained her to gon on pilgrimage  
To Baccus temple, and in a little stound  
Her dombe suster sitting hath she found  
Weeping in the castell, her selfe aloue ;  
Alas, the wo, constraint, and the mone  
That Progne upon her dombe suster maketh,  
In armes everich of hem other taketh,  
And thus I let hem in hir sorow dwell ;  
The remnaunt is no charge to tell,  
For this is all and some, thus was she served  
That never agilte, ne deserved  
Unto this cruell man, that she of wist.  
Ye may beware of men, if that you list,  
For all be that he woll not for shame  
Doen as Tereus, to lese his name,  
Ne serve you as a murderor or a knave,  
Full little while shull ye trew him have,  
That wol I sain, al were he now my brother,  
But it so be that he may have another.

#### THE LEGENDE OF PHILLIS.

By prove, as well as by auctorite,  
That wicked fruite commeth of a wicked tree,  
That may ye find, if that it liketh you,  
But for this end, I speake this as now,  
To tell you of false Demophon :  
In love a falsor heard I never non,

But it were his father, Theseus,  
God for his grace fro soch one kepe us,  
Thus these women praien, that it here,  
Now to the effect tourne I of my matere.

Destroied is of Troie the citee,  
This Demophon came sayling in the see  
Toward Athenes, to his paleis large,  
With him came many a ship and many a barge  
Full of folke, of which full many one  
Is wounded sore, and sicke and wo begone,  
And they have at the siege long ylaïne,  
Behind him came a winde, and eke a raine,  
That shofe so sore his saile might not stonde,  
Him were lever than all the world a londe,  
So hunted him the tempest to and fro,  
So darke it was he could no where go,  
And with a wave brusten was his sterc,  
His ship was rent so lowe, in such manere,  
That carpenter could it not amende,  
The see by night as any torche brende  
For wood, and posseth him up and down,  
Till Neptune hath of him compassion,  
And Thetis, Chorus, Triton, and they all,  
And maden him up a londe to fall,  
Wherof that Phillis lady was and queene,  
Lycurgus doughter, fairer unto scene  
Than is the floure again the bright Sonne.  
Unneth is Demophon to londe ywonne,  
Weake and eke werie, and his folke forpined  
Of werinesse, and also enfamed,  
And to the death he was almost ydriven,  
His wise folke consaile have him yeven,  
To seken helpe and succour of the queene,  
And loken what his grace might bene,  
And maken in that lande some chevesaunce,  
And kepen him fro wo, and fro mischaunce,  
For sicke he was, and almost at the death,  
Unneth might he speake, or drawe breath,  
And lieth in Rhodopeia him for to rest.  
Whan he may walk, him thought it was best  
Unto the cuntry to seeken for succour,  
Men knew him wele, and did him honour,  
For at Athenes duke and lord was he,  
As Theseus his father hath ybe,  
That in his time was great of renoun,  
No man so great in all his regiou,  
And like his father of face and of stature,  
And false of love, it came him of nature,  
As doth the foxe Renarde, the foxes sonne,  
Of kinde he coulde his old father wonne  
Without lore, as can a drake swimme,  
Whan it is caught and carried to the brimme :  
This honorable queen Phillis doth him chere,  
Her liketh well his sporte and his manere,  
But I am agroted here beforne,  
To write of hem that in love been forsworne,  
And eke to haste me in my legende,  
Which to performe, God me grace sende ;  
Therefore, I passe shortly in this wisce,  
Ye have well heard of Theseus the gise,  
In the betraiyng of faire Adriane,  
That of her pitee kept him fro his bane ;  
At short wordes, right so Demophon,  
The same way, and the same pathe hath gon  
That did his false father Theseus,  
For unto Phillis hath he sworne thus,  
To wedden her, and her his trouth plight,  
And piked of her all the good he might,  
Whan he was hole and sound, and had his rest,  
And doth with Phillis what so that him lest,

As well I could, if that me list so,  
Tellen all his doing to and fro.

He sayd to his cuntry mote him saile,  
For there he would her wedding appaile,  
As fill to her honour, and his also,  
And openly he tooke his leave tho,  
And to her swore he would not sojourn,  
But in a month again he would retourne,  
And in that londe let make his ordinaunce,  
As very lorde, and tooke the olemaunce  
Well and humbly, and his shippes dight,  
And home he goeth the next way he might,  
For unto Phillis yet came he nought,  
And that hath she so harde and sore ybought,  
Alas, as the storie doth us record,  
She was her owne death with a corde,  
Whan that she saw that Demophon her traied.  
But first wrote she to him, and fast him praied  
He would come, and deliver her of pain,  
As I rehearse shall a worde or twain,  
Me liste not vouchsafe on him to awinke,  
Dispenden on him a penne full of ynke,  
For false in love was he, right as his sire,  
The Devill set hir soules both on a fire :  
But of the letter of Phillis woll I write,  
A worde or twain, although it be but lite.

"Thine hostesse," quod she, "O Demophon,  
Thy Phillis, which that is so wo begon,  
Of Rhodopeie, upon you mote complain,  
Over the terme set betwixt us twain,  
That ye ne holden forward, as ye sayd :  
Your anere, which ye in our haven layd,  
Hight us, that ye would comen out of doubt,  
Or that the Moone ones went about,  
But times fower the Moone hath hid her face  
Sens thilke day ye went fro this place,  
And fower times light the world again,  
But for all that, yet shall I sothly sain,  
Yet hath the streme of Seython not brought  
From Athenes the ship, yet came it nought,  
And if that ye the terme reken would,  
As I or other true lovers doe should,  
I plain not, God wot, before my day."  
But al her letter written I ne may,  
By order, for it were to me a charge,  
Her letter was right long, and therto large,  
But here and there, in rime, I have it layd  
There as me thought that she hath wel sayd.

She sayd, "The sailes commeth not again,  
Ne to the word there n'is no fey certain,  
But I wot why ye come not," quod she,  
"For I was of my love to you so fre,  
And of the goddess that ye have swore,  
That hir vengeance fall on you therfore,  
Ye be not suffisaunt to beare the pain,  
Too moche trusted I, well may I sain,  
Upon your linage, and your faire tong,  
And on your teares falsely out wrong,  
How coude ye wepe so by craft !" quod she,  
"May there suche teares fained be !

"Now, certes, if ye would have in memory,  
It ought be to you but little glory,  
To have a sely maide thus betrayed,  
To God," quod she, "pray I, and oft have prayed  
That it be now the greatest price of all,  
And most honour that ever you shall befall,  
And whan thine old auncesters painted bee,  
In which men may hir worthinesse see,  
Than pray I God, thou panted be also,  
That folke may reden, forth by as they go,

"Lo, this is he, that with his flattery  
Betrayed hath, and done her villany,  
That was his true love, in thought and drede."

"But sothly, of o point yet may they rede,  
That ye been like your father, as in this,  
For he begiled Ariadne, ywis,  
With such an arte, and such subtelte,  
As thou thy selven hast begiled me :  
As in that point, although it be not feire,  
Thou folowest certain, and art his heire.  
But sens thus sinfully ye me begile,  
My body mote ye sene, within a while,  
Right in the haven of Athenes fleeing,  
Withouten sepulture and burying,  
Though ye been harder than is any stone."

And whan this letter was forth sent, anone,  
And knew how brotill and how fals he was,  
She for dispaire fordid her selfe, alas !  
Such sorow hath she, for he beset her so.  
Beware ye women of your subtil fo,  
Sens yet this day men may ensample se,  
And trusteth now in love no man but me.

#### THE LEGENDE OF HYPERMESTRE.

In Grece, whilom, were brethren two  
Of which that one was called Danao,  
That many a son hath of his body wonne,  
As such false lovers ofte conne.

Among his sonnes all there was one,  
That aldermost he loved of everychone,  
And whan this child was borne, this Danao  
Shope him a name, and called him Lino,  
That other brother called was Egiste,  
That was of love as false as ever him liste,  
And many a daughter gate he in his life,  
Of which he gate upon his right wife,  
A daughter dere, and did her for to call,  
Hypermestra, yongest of hem all,  
The which child of her nativite,  
To all good thewes borne was she,  
As liked to the goddes or she was borne,  
That of the shefe she should be the corne.  
The werdes that we clepen destine,  
Hath shapen her, that she must needs be  
Pitous, sad, wise, true as stele,  
And to this woman it accordeth wele,  
For though that Venus yave her great beute,  
With Jupiter compowned so was she,  
That conscience, trouthe, and drede of shame,  
And of her wifhode for to kepe her name,  
This thought her was felicitie as here,  
And reed Mars, was that time of the yere  
So feble, that his malice is him raft,  
Repressed hath Venus his cruell craft,  
And what with Venus, and other oppression  
Of houses, Mars his venime is adon,  
That Hypermeestre dare not handle a knife,  
In malice, though she should lese her life ;  
But nathelesse, as Heaven gan tho turne,  
Two bad aspectes hath she of Saturne,  
That made her to die in prison,  
And I shall after make mencion,  
Of Danao and Egistes also,  
And though so be that they were brethren two,  
For thilke tyme n'as spared no linage,  
It liked hem to maken mariage

Betwixt Hypermeestre, and him Lino,  
And casten soch a day it shall be so,  
And full accorded was it utterly,  
The aray is wrought, the time is fast by,  
And thus Lino hath of his fathers brother,  
The daughter wedded, and ech of hem hath othe.  
The torches brennen, and the lamps bright,  
The sacrifice been full ready dight,  
Th'ensence out of the fire reketh soote,  
The floure, the leefe, is rent up by the roote,  
To maken garlandes and crounes hie,  
Full is the place of sound of minstrelcie,  
Of songes amorous of mariage,  
As thilke tyme was the plain usage,  
And this was in the paleis of Egiste,  
That in his hous was lord, right as him liste :  
And thus that day they driven to an end,  
The frendes taken leve, and home they wend,  
The night is come, the bride shall go to bed,  
Egiste to his chamber fast him sped,  
And prively let his daughter call,  
Whan that the house voided was of hem all,  
He looked on his daughter with glad chere,  
And to her spake, as ye shall after here.

"My right daughter, tresour of mine herte,  
Sens first that day that shapen was my shert,  
Or by the fatal suster had my dome,  
So nie mine herte never thing ne come,  
As thou, Hypermeestre, daughter dere,  
Take hede what thy father sayth thee here,  
And werke after thy wiser ever mo,  
For alderfirst daughter I love thee so,  
That all the world to me n'is halfe so lefe,  
Ne n'olde rede thee to thy mischefe,  
For all the good under the cold Mone,  
And what I mene, it shall be said right sone,  
With protestacion as sain these wise,  
That but thou doe as I shall thee devise,  
Thou shalt be ded, by him that all hath wrought,  
At short wordes, thou ne scapest nought  
Out of my paleis, or that thou be deed,  
But thou consent, and werke after my reed,  
Take this to the fearfull conclusioun."  
This Hypermeestre cast her eyen down,  
And quoke as doth the leefe of ashe grene,  
Deed wext her hew, and like ashen to sene,  
And said : "Lord and father, all your will,  
After my might, God wote, I will fulfill,  
So it be to me no confusion."

"I n'ill," quod he, "have none excepcion,"  
And out he caught a knife, as rasour kene,  
"Hide this," quod he, "that it be not ysene,  
And whan thine husband is to bed go,  
While that he slepeth, cut his throte atwo,  
For in my dreame it is warned me,  
How that my newewe shall my bane be,  
But which I n'ot, wherfore I woll be siker,  
If thou say nay, we two shall have a biker,  
As I have said, by him that I have sworn."  
This Hypermeestre hath nigh her wit forlorn,  
And for to passen harmelesse out of that place,  
She graunted him, there was none other gruce :  
And withall a costrell taketh he tho,  
And said, "Hereof a draught or two,  
Yeve him drinke, whan he goeth to rest,  
And he shal slepe as long as ever thou lest,  
The narcotikes and apies been so strong,  
And go thy way, lest that him thinke to long."  
Out cometh the bride, and with full sobri chere,  
As is of maidens oft the manere,

To chamber brought with revel and with song,  
 And shortly, lest this tale be to long,  
 This Lino and she beth brought to bed,  
 And every wight out at the doore him sped,  
 The night is wasted, and he fell aslepe,  
 Full tenderly beginneth she to weepe,  
 She rist her up, and dredfully she quaketh,  
 As doth the braunch that Zephirus shaketh,  
 And husht were all in Argone that citee,  
 As cold as any frost now wexeth shee,  
 For pite by the herte strained her so,  
 And drede of death doth her so moche wo,  
 That thrise doune she fill, in suche a were,  
 She rist her up, and stakereth here and there,  
 And on her handes fast looketh she,  
 "Alas, shall mine hands bloudie be ?  
 I am a maide, and as by my nature,  
 And by my semblaunt, and by my vesture,  
 Mine hands been not shapen for a knife,  
 As for to reve no man fro his life.  
 What devill have I with the knife to do ?  
 And shall I have my throte corve a two ?  
 Than shall I blede, alas, and be shende,  
 And nedes this thing mote have an ende,  
 Or he or I mote nedes lese our life,  
 Now certes," quod she, "sens I am his wile,

And hath my faith, yet is bette for me  
 For to be dedde in wifely honeste,  
 Than be a traitour living in my shame,  
 Be as be may, for earnest or for game,  
 He shall awake, and rise and go his way  
 Out at this gutter er that it be day :"  
 And wept full tenderly upon his face,  
 And in her armes gan him to embrace,  
 And him she joggeth, and awaketh soft,  
 And at the window lepe he fro the loft,  
 Whan she hath warned him, and done him bete :  
 This Lino swift was and light of foote,  
 And from her ran a full good paas.  
 This sely woman is so weake, alas,  
 And helpless, so that er she ferre went,  
 Her cruell father did her for to bent.  
 Alas, Lino ! why art thou so unkind ?  
 Why ne hast thou remembered in thy mind,  
 And taken her, and led her forth with thee ?  
 For whan she saw that gone away was hee,  
 And that she might not so fast go,  
 Ne folowen him, she sate doune right tho,  
 Untill she was caught, and fettered in prison :  
 This tale is sayd for this conclusion.

HERE ENDETH THE LEGENDE OF GOOD WOMEN.

## THE COMPLAINT OF MARS AND VENUS.

v. 1—56

GLADETH ye lovers in the morowe graie,  
 Lo, Venus risen among yon rowes rede,  
 And floures freshe honour ye this daie,  
 For whan the Sun uprist than wold they sprede,  
 But ye lovers that lie in any drede,  
 Flieth, least wicked tongues you aspie,  
 Lo, yonde the Sun, the candell of jelousie.

With tears blew, and with a wounded herte  
 Taketh your leve, and, with saint John to borow,  
 Apeseth somewhat of your paines smert,  
 Time cometh eft, that cessen shall your sorrow,  
 The glad night is worth an heavy morow,  
 Saint Valentine, a foule thus heard I sing,  
 Upon thy day, or Sunne gan up spring.

Yet sang this foule, "I rede you all awake,  
 And ye that have not chosen, in humble wise,  
 Without repenting, cheseth your make,  
 Yet at the least, renoveleth your service :  
 And ye that have full chosen, as I devise,  
 Confermeth it perpetually to dure,  
 And patiently taketh your aventure."

And for the worship of this high feast,  
 Yet wold I in my birdes wise sing,  
 The sentence of the complaint at the least,  
 That wofull Mars made at the departing  
 Fro fresh Venus in a morowning,  
 Whan Phebus with his fire torches rede,  
 Ransaked hath every lover in his drede.

Whilome, the three Heavens lorde above,  
 As well by heavenlich revolucion,  
 As by Jesert, hath wonne Venus his love,  
 And she hath take him in subjection,  
 And as a maistresse taught him his lesson,  
 Commaunding him never in her service,  
 He were so bold no lover to dispise.

For she forbade him jealousy at all,  
 And cruelty, and boete, and tyranny,  
 She made him at her lust so humble and tall,  
 That when she dained to cast on him her eye,  
 He tooke in patience to live or die,  
 And thus she bridleth him in her maner,  
 With nothing but with scorning of her chere.

Who reigneth now in blisse but Venus,  
 That hath this worthy knight in governance ?  
 Who singeth now but Mars, that serveth thus  
 The faire Venus, causer of pleasaunce ?  
 He hint him to perpetuel obeysaunce,  
 And she binte her to love him for ever,  
 But so be that his trespass it discover.

Thus be they knit, and reignen as in Heven,  
 By loking most, as it fell on a tide,  
 That by hir both assent was set a steven  
 That Mars shall enter, as fast as he may glide,  
 In to her next palais to abide,  
 Walking his course till she had him ytake,  
 And he prayed her to hast her for his sake.

Than said he thus, "Mine hertes lady sweete,  
Ye know well my mischief in that place,  
For sikerly, till that I with you meete,  
My life stant there in aventure and grace,  
But whan I see the beaute of your face,  
There is no drede of death may do me smert,  
For al your luste is ease to mine herte."

She hath so great compassion of her knight,  
That dwelleth in solitude till she come,  
For it stode so, that like time, no wight  
Counsailed him, ne said to him welcome,  
That nigh her wit for sorow was overcome,  
Wherefore, she speeded as fast in her way,  
Almost in one day as he did in tway.

The great joy that was betwix hem two,  
Whan they be mette, there may no tong tel,  
There is no more but unto bedde they go,  
And thus in joy and blisse I let hem dwell,  
This worthy Mars, that is of knighthood well,  
The floure of fairnesse happeth in his arma,  
And Venus kiseth Mars, the god of arma.

Sojourned hath this Mars, of which I rede,  
In chambre amide the palais prively,  
A certaine time, till him fell a drede  
Through Phebus, that was commen hastily,  
Within the palais yates sturdely,  
With torch in hond, of which the stremes bright  
On Venus chambre knockeden ful light.

The chambre there as lay this fresch queene,  
Depainted was with white boles grete,  
And by the light she knew that shon so shene,  
That Phebus cam to bren hem with his lute;  
This sely Venus, ny dreint in teares wete,  
Enbrasseth Mars, and said, "Alas, I die,  
The torch is come that al this world wol wrie."

Up sterde Mars, him list not to sleepe,  
Whan he his lady herde so complaine,  
But for his nature was not for to weepe,  
Instede of teares, from his eyen twaine  
The fry sparles sprongen out for paine,  
And hente his hauberke that lay him beside,  
Fle wold he nought, ne might himself hide.

He throweth on his helme of huge weight,  
And girt him with his swerde, and in his honde  
His mighty speare, as he was wont to feight,  
He shaketh so, that it almost to wonde,  
Full hevy was he to walken over londe,  
He may not hold with Venus company,  
But bad her fle least Phebus her espy.

O woful Mars, alas! what maist thou sain,  
That in the palais of thy disturbaunce  
Art left behind in peril to be slain!  
And yet there to is double thy penaunce,  
For she that hath thine herte in governance,  
Is passed halfe the stremes of thine eyen,  
That thou nere swift, wel maist thou wepe and crien.

Now flieth Venus in to Cielinius tour,  
With void corse, for fear of Phebus light,  
Alas, and there hath she no socour,  
For she ne found ne sey no maner wight,  
And eke as there she had but littel might,  
Wherefore her selven for to hide and save,  
Within the gape she fledde in to a cave.

Darke was this cave, and smoking as the hell,  
Nat but two paas within the yate it stood;  
A naturel day in darke I let her dwell;  
Now wol I speake of Mars, furious and wood,  
For sorow he wold have seene his herte blood,  
Sith that he might have done her no company,  
He ne rought not a mite for to die.

So feble he wext for hete, and for his wo,  
That nigh he swelt, he might unneth endure,  
He passeth but a sterre in daies two,  
But nevertheles, for al his hevy armure,  
He foloweth her that is his lives cure,  
For whose departing he tooke greater ire,  
Than for his brenning in the fire.

After he walketh softly a paas,  
Complaining that it pitie was to here,  
He saide, "O lady bright, Venus, alas,  
That ever so wide a compas is my sphere,  
Alas, whan shall I mete you herte dere?  
This twelve dayes of April I endure,  
Through jelous Phebus this misaventure."

Now God helpe sely Venus alone,  
But, as God wold, it happed for to be,  
That while the weping Venus made her mone,  
Cielinius, riding in his chivachee,  
Fro Venus Valanus might this palais see,  
And Venus he salveth, and maketh chere,  
And her receiveth as his frende full dere.

Mars dwelleth forth in his adversite,  
Complaining ever in her departing,  
And what his complaint was remembreth me,  
And therefore in this lusty morowning,  
As I best can, I woll it saine and sing,  
And after that I woll my leave take,  
And God yeve every wight joy of his make.

### The Complaint of Mars.

THE order of complaint requirith skillfully,  
That if a wight shal plaine pitously,  
There mote be cause wherfore that he him plain,  
Or men may deme he plaineth folily,  
And causeles: alas, that do not I.  
Wherfore the ground and cause of al my pain,  
So as my troubled witte may it attain,  
I wol reherse, not for to have redresse,  
But to declare my ground of hevynesse.

The first time, alas, that I was wrought,  
And for certain effects hider brought,  
By him that lorded each intelligence,  
I yave my trew service and my thought,  
For evermo, how dere I have it bought,  
To her that is of so great excellence,  
That what wight that sheweth first her offence,  
Whan she is wroth and taketh of him no cure,  
He may not long in joy of love endure.

This is no fained mater that I tell,  
My lady is the very sours and well  
Of beaute, luste, fredome, and gentilnesse,  
Of rich array, how dere men it sell,  
Of all disport in which men frendly dwell,  
Of love and play, and of benigne humblesse.  
Of sowne of instruments of al sweetnesse,  
And thereto so well fortunad and shewed,  
That through the world her goodnes is shewed



What wonder is than though that I be set  
My service on such one that may me knot  
To wele or wo, sith it lithe in her might,  
Therefore mine herte for ever I to her hette,  
Ne trewly, for my death shall I not lette  
To ben her trewest servaunt and her knight,  
I flatter not, that may wele every wight,  
For this day in her service shall I dye,  
But grace be, I see her never with eye.

To whom shall I plaine of my distresse,  
Who may me help, who may my heart redresse?  
Shall I complaine unto my lady free?  
Nay, certes, for she hath such heavinesse,  
For feare and eke for wo, that, as I gesse,  
In litle time it would her bane bee,  
But were she safe, it were no force of mee,  
Alas, that ever lovers mote endure  
For love, so many perilous aventure.

For though so be that lovers be as trewe,  
As any metal that is forged newe,  
In many a case him tideth oft sorowe;  
Somtime hir ladies wolle nat on hem rewe;  
Somtime, if that jelousie it knewe,  
They might lightly lay hir heed to borowe;  
Somtime envious folke with tonges horowe,  
Depraven hem; alas! whom may they pleso?  
But he be false, no lover hath his ease.

But what availeth such a long sermoun  
Of adventures of love up and doun?  
I wol retourne and spoken of my paine;  
The point is this, of my destruction,  
My right lady, my salvacioun,  
Is in affray, and not to whom to plaine;  
O herte swete, O lady soveraine,  
For your disease I ought wel swoun and swolt,  
Though I none other harme ne drede felt.

To what fine made the God that sit so hie,  
Beneth him love [or] other companie,  
And straineth folke to love mauger hir heed?  
And than hir joy, for aught I can espie,  
Ne lasteth not the twincle of an eye,  
And some have never joy till they be deed:  
What meaneth this? what is this mistilheed?  
Wherto constraineth he his folke so fast,  
Thing to desire, but it should last?

And though he made a lover love a thing,  
And maketh it seem stedfast and during,  
Yet putteth he in it soch misaventure,  
That rest n'is there in his yeving.  
And that is wonder, that so just a king  
Doth such hardnesse to his creature;  
Thus, whether love break or els dure,  
Algaates he that hath with love to doon,  
Hath after wo than chaunged is the Moon.

It seemeth he hath to lovers enmite,  
And, like a fisher, as men may all day see,  
Baited his angle hoke with some pleasance,  
Till many a fish is wood, till that he be  
Ceased therewith, and than at erst hath he  
All his desire, and therewith all mischaunce,  
And though the line breke he hath penaunce,  
For with that hoke he wounded is so sore,  
That he his wages hath for evermore.

The broche of Thebes was of soch kinde,  
So full of rubies and of stones of Inde,  
That every wight that set on it an eye,  
He wende, anone, to worth out of his mind,  
So sore the beaute wold his herte bind,  
Till he it had, him thought he must die,  
And whan that it was his, than should he drie  
Soch wo for drede, aye while that he it had,  
That welnigh for the feare he should [be] mad

And whan it was fro his possession,  
Than had he double wo and passion,  
That he so faire a jewell hath forgo,  
But yet this broche, as in conclusion,  
Was not the cause of his confusion,  
But he that wrought it enfortuned it so,  
That every wight that had it shold have wo,  
And therefore in the worcher was the vice,  
And in the coveitour that was so nice.

So fareth it by lovers, and by me,  
For though my lady have so great beaute,  
That I was mad till I had gette her grace,  
She was not cause of mine adversite,  
But he that wrought her, as mote I the,  
That put soch a beaute in her face,  
That made me coveiten and purchase  
Mine owne death, him wite I, that I die,  
And mine unwit that ever I clambe so hie.

But to you, hardy knightes of renoun,  
Sith that ye be of my devisioun,  
Albe I not worthy to so great a name,  
Yet saine these clerkes I am your patroune,  
Therefore ye ought have some compassion  
Of my disease, and take it nat a game,  
The proudest of you may be made ful tame,  
Wherfore I pray you, of your gentillesse,  
That ye complaine for mine heavinesse.

And ye, my ladies, that be true and stable,  
By way of kind ye ought to ben able  
To have pite of folke that been in paine,  
Now have ye cause to cloth you in sable,  
Sith that your emprise, the honorable,  
Is desolate, wel ought you to plaine,  
Now should your holy teares fall and raine;  
Alas, your honour and your emprise,  
Nigh dead for drede, ne can her not chevisse.

Complaineth eke ye lovers, all in fere,  
For her that with unfained humble chere,  
Was ever redy to do you socour,  
Complaineth her that ever hath be you dere,  
Complaineth beaute, freedome, and manere,  
Complaineth her that endeth your labour,  
Complaineth thilke ensample of al honour,  
That never did but gentillesse,  
Kitheth therfore in her some kindnesse.

#### The Complaint of Venus.

THERE n'is so high comfort to my pleasance,  
Whan that I am in any heavinesse,  
As to have leiser of remembraunce,  
Upon the manhood and the worthinesse,  
Upon the trouth, and on the stedfastnesse,  
Of him whose I am all, while I may dure,  
There ought to blame me no creature,  
For every wight praiseth his gentillesse.

In him is bounte, wisdom, and governaunce,  
Wel more than any mans witte can gesse,  
For grace hath wolde so ferforth him avance,  
That of knighthood he his parfite richesse,  
Honour honoureth him for his noblesse,  
Thereto so well hath fourmed him nature,  
That I am his for ever I him ensure,  
For every wight praiseth his gentillesse.

And nat withstanding all his suffisaunce,  
His gentil herte is of so great humblesse  
To me in word, in werke, and in countenance,  
And me to serve is all his besinesse,  
That I am sette in very aikernesse ;  
Thus ought I blisse well mine aventour,  
Sith that him list me serve and honour,  
For every wight praiseth his gentillesse.

Now certes, Love, it is right covenable  
That men ful dere abie thy noble things,  
As wake a bedde, and fasten at the table,  
Weping to laugh, and sing in complainings,  
And downe to cast visage and lookings,  
Often to chaunge visage and countenance,  
Play in sleeping, and dremen at the daunce,  
All the revers of any glad feeling.

Jelousie he hanged by a cable,  
She wold al know through her espying,  
There doth no wight nothing so reasonable,  
That al n'is harme in her imagining,  
Thus dere about is Love in yeving,  
Which oft he yeveth without ordinaunce,  
As sorow ynough, and little of pleasaunce,  
All the revers of any glad feling.

A little time his yest is agreable,  
But full accombrous is the using,  
For subtel Jelousie, the deceivable,  
Full often time causeth distourbing,  
Thus ben we ever in drede and suffering,  
In no certaine, we languishen in penaunce,

And have well oft many au hard mischance,  
All the revers of any glad feling.

But certes, Love, I say not in soch wise,  
That for to scape out of your lace I ment,  
For I so long have been in your service,  
That for to lete, of will, I never assent,  
No force, though Jelousie me tourment,  
Suffiseth me to see him whan I may,  
And therefore, certes, to my ending day,  
To love him best shall me never repent.

And certes, Love, whan I me well advise,  
Of any estate that man may represent,  
Than have ye made me, through your franchise,  
These the best that ever in earth went ;  
Now love well herte, and look thou never stent,  
And let the jealous put it in assay,  
That for no paine wold I not say nay,  
To love him best shall I never repent.

Harte, to thee it ought ynough suffice,  
That Love so high a grace to you sent,  
To chose the worthies in all wise,  
And most agreable unto mine entent,  
Seek no ferther, neither way ne went,  
Sith ye have suffisaunce unto my pay ;  
Thus wol I end this complaining or this lay,  
To love him best shall I never repent.

## LENOVOY.

Princes, receiveth this complaining in gree,  
Unto your excellent benignite,  
Direct after my litel suffisaunce,  
For elde, that in my spirite dulthe me,  
Hath of enditing all the subtelte  
Weligh berafte out of my remembraunce :  
And eke to me it is a great penaunce,  
Sith rime in English hath soch scarcite,  
To folow, word by word, the curiosite  
Of Graunson, flour of hem that make in Frisunce

## EXPLICIT

## OF THE CUCKOW AND THE NIGHTINGALE.

Chaucer dreameth that hee heareth the cuckow and the nightingale contend for excellencie in singing.

## v. 1—20

THE god of love, and benedicite,  
How mighty and how great a lord is he !  
For he can make of low hertes hie,  
And of high low, and like for to die,  
And hard hertes he can maken free.

He can make within a little stound,  
Of sicke folke hole, fresh, and sound,  
And of hole he can make seke,  
He can bind and unbinden eke,  
That he wold have bounden or unbound.

To tell his might my wit may not suffice,  
For he can make of wise folke full nice,  
For he may do all that he wold devise,  
And lither folke to destroyen vice,  
And proud hertes he can make agrise.

Shortly, ail that ever he wold he may,  
Against him dare no wight say nay,  
For he can glad and greve whom him liketh,  
And who that he wold he lougheth or siketh,  
And most his might he shedeth ever in May

For every true gentle herte free,  
That with him is or thinketh for to be,  
Againe May now shall have some stering  
Or to joy or els to some mourning,  
In no season so much, as thinketh me.

For whan they may here the birds sing,  
And see the floures and the leaves spring,  
That bringeth into hir remembraunce  
A manner ease, medled with grevaunce,  
And lustie thoughts full of great longing.

And of that longing commeth hevynesse,  
And thereof growth of great sicknesse,  
And for lacke of that that they desire,  
And thus in May ben hertes set on fire,  
So that they brennen forth in great distresse.

I speake this of feeling truly  
If I be old and unlusty,  
Yet I have felt of the sicknesse through May,  
Both hote and cold, and access every day,  
How sore ywis there wote no wight but I.

I am so shaken with the fevers white,  
Of all this May sleepe I but a lite,  
And also it is not like to me  
That any herte should sleepe be  
In whom that Love his fry dart woll smite.

But as I lay this other night waking,  
I thought how lovers had a tokening,  
And among hem it was a commune tale  
That it were good to here the nightingale  
Rather than the leud cuckow sing.

And than I thought, anon, as it was day,  
I would go some where to assay  
If that I might a nightingale here,  
For yet had I none heard of all that yere,  
And it was tho the third night of May.

And anon, as I the day aspid, e,  
No lenger would I in my bed abide,  
But unto a wood that was fast by,  
I went forth alone boldly,  
And held the way downe by a brooke side,

Till I came to a laund of white and green,  
So faire one had I never in been,  
The ground was green, ypoudred with daisie,  
The floures and the greves like lie,  
All greene and white, was nothing els scene.

There sate I downe among the faire flours,  
And saw the birds trip out of hir bours,  
There as they rested hem all the night,  
They were so joyfull of the dayes light,  
They began of May for to done honours.

They coud that service all by rote,  
There was many a lovely note,  
Some song loud, as they had plained,  
And some in other manner voice yfained,  
And some all out with the full throte.

They prynced hem and made hem right gay,  
And daunceden and lepen on the spray,  
And evermore two and two in fere,  
Right so as they had chosen hem to yere  
In Feverere upon saint Valentines day.

And the river that I sate upon,  
It made such a noise as it ron,  
Accordaunt with the birdes armony,  
Me thought it was the best melody  
That might ben yheard of any mon.

And for delite, I wote never how,  
I fell in such a slomber and a swow,  
Nat all asleepe, ne fully waking,  
And in that swow, me thought, I hearde sing  
The sorry bird, the leud cuckow.

And that was on a tree right fast by,  
But who was than evill apaid but I!  
"Now God," quod I, "that died on the crois,  
Yeve sorrow on thee, and on thy leud vois,  
Full little joy have I now of thy cry."

And as I with the cuckow thus gan chide,  
I heard in the next bush beside  
A nightingale so lustely sing  
That with her clere voice she made ring  
Through all the greene wood wide.

"Ah, good nightingale," quod I then,  
"A little hast thou ben too long hen,  
For here hath ben the leud cuckow,  
And songen songs rather than hast thou,  
I pray to God evill fire her bren."

But now I woll you tell a wonder thing,  
As long as I lay in that sweuning,  
Me thought I wist what the birds mont,  
And what they said, and what was hir entent,  
And of hir speech I had good knowing.

There heard I the nightingale say,  
"Now good cuckow, go somewhere away,  
And let us that can singen dwellen here,  
For every wight escheweth thee to here,  
Thy songs be so elenge, in good f. y."

"What," quod she, "what may thee aylen now!  
It thinketh me, I sing as well as thou,  
For my song is both true and plaine,  
And though I cannot crakell so in vaine,  
As thou dost in thy throte, I wot never how.

"And every wight may understande mee,  
But, nightingale, so may they not done thee,  
For thou hast many a nice queint cry,  
I have thee heard saine, ocy, ocy,  
How might I know what that should be?"

"Ah foole," quod she, "wost thou not what it is,  
Whan that I say, ocy, ocy! ywis,  
Than meane I that I would wonder faine,  
That all they were shamefully yslaine,  
That meanen ought againe love amis.

"And also I would that all tho were dede  
That thinke not in love hir life to lede,  
For who so that wol not the god of love serve,  
I dare well say he is worthy to sterre,  
And for that skill, ocy, ocy, I grede."

"Eye," quod the cuckow, "this is a queint law,  
That every wight shall love or be to draw,  
But I forsake all such companie,  
For mine entent is not for to die,  
Ne never while I live as Loves yoke to draw;

"For lovers beu the folke that ben on live  
That most disease have, and most unthrive,  
And most endure sorrow, wo, and care,  
And least feelen of welfare,  
What needeth it ayenst trouth to strive!"

"What!" quod she, "thou art out of thy mind;  
How might thou in thy churlenesse find  
To speake of Loves servaunts in this wise,  
For in this world is none so good servise  
To every wight that gentle is of kind.

"For thereof truly commeth all goodnesse,  
All honour and all gentlenesse,  
Worship, ease, and all hertes lust,  
Parfite joy, and full assured trust,  
Jolitie, pleasaunce, and freshnesse,

"Lowlyhead, largesse, and curtesie,  
Semelyhead, and true companie,  
Drede of shame for to done amis:  
For he that truly Loves servaunt is,  
Were lother be shamed than to die.

"And that this is soth that I sey,  
In that beleve I will live and dey,  
And cuckow, so I rede that thou do ywis:"  
"Than," quod he, "let me never have blisse,  
If ever I unto that counsaile obey.

"Nightingale, thou speakest wonder faire,  
But for all that is the sooth contraire,  
For love is in yong folke but rage,  
And in old folke a great dotage,  
Who most it useth, most shall enpaire.

"For thereof cometh disease and hevinesse,  
So sorow and care, and many a great sicknesse,  
Despite, debate, anger, and envie,  
Depraving, shame, untrust, and jelousie,  
Pride, mischeefe, poverty, and woodnesse:

"Loving is an office of despaire,  
And one thing is therein that is not faire,  
For who that getteth of love a little blisse,  
But if he be alway therewith, ywis,  
He may full soone of age have his haire.

"And nightingale, therefore hold thee nie,  
For leve me well, for all thy queint crie,  
If thou be ferre or long fro thy make,  
Thou shalt be as other that been forsake,  
And than thou shalt hoten as doe I."

"Fie," quod she, "on thy name, and on thice!  
The god of love ne let thee never ythe,  
For thou art worse a thousand fold than wood,  
For many a one is full worthy and full good,  
That had be naught ne had love ybe.

"For evermore Love his servants amendeth,  
And from all evill taches hem defendeth,  
And maketh hem to brenne right in a fire,  
In trouth and in worshipfull desire,  
And whan him liketh, joy inough him sendeth."

"Thou nightingale," he said, "be still,  
For Love hath no reason, but it is will,  
For oft time untrue folke he easeth,  
And true folke so biterly he displeaseth,  
That for default of courage he let hem spill.

"With suche a lord wulle I never be,  
For he is blinde and may not se;  
And when he liethe he not ne when he fayletho;  
In his courte full seld trouthe availletho;  
So dyverse and so wilfull ys he"

Than tooke I of the nightingale keepe,  
How she cast a sigh out of her deepe,  
And said, "Alas, that ever I was bore,  
I can for tene not say one word more,"  
And right with that word she braist out to weepa.

"Alas," quod she, "my herte woll to breake,  
To hearken thus this leud bird speake  
Of Love, and of his worshipfull servise.  
Now God of love, thou help me in some wise,  
That I may on this cuckow been awreake."

Me thought then that I stert out anon,  
And to the broke I ran and gate a ston,  
And at the Cuckow hertely I cast;  
And he for drede fle away full fast,  
And glad was I when that he was gon.

And evermore the Cuckow, as he fleý,  
He seid, "farewell, farewell, papyngay!"  
As thogh he had skorryd thought of me:  
But ay I hunted him fro tre to tre  
Till he was fer all out of sight away.

And than came the nightingale to mee,  
And said, "Friend, forsooth I thanke thee,  
That thou hast liked me to rescow,  
And one avow to Love make I now,  
That all this May I woll thy singer be."

I thanked her, and was right well apaid:  
"Ye," quod she, "and be thou not dismaied,  
Tho thou have herd the cuckow erst than me,  
For, if I live, it shall amended be  
The next May, if I be not affraied.

"And one thing I woll rede thee also,  
Ne leve thou not the cuckow, ne his loves so,  
For all that he hath said is strong leasig:"  
"Nay," quod I, "thereto shall nothing me bring,  
For love, and it hath doe me much wo.

"Ye, use," quod she, "this medicie  
Every day this May or thou dine,  
Go looke upon the fresh daisie,  
And though thou be for wo in point to die,  
That shall full greatly lessen thee of thy pine.

"And looke alway that thou be good and trew,  
And I woll sing one of the songes new  
For love of thee, as loud as I may crie:"  
And than she began this song full hie,  
"I shrew all hem that been of love untrue."

And when she had song it to the end,  
"Now farewell," quod she, "for I mote wend,  
And god of love, that can right well, and may,  
As much joy send thee this day,  
As any lover yet he ever send."

Thus taketh the nightingale her leave of me,  
I pray to God alway with her be,  
And joy of love he send her evermore,  
And shilde us fro the cuckow and his lore,  
For there is not so false a bird as he.

## L'ENVOY DE CHAUCER.

A SCOGAN.

Tobroken been the statutes hie in Heaven,  
That create were eternally t'endure,  
Sith that I see the bright goddes seven  
Mowe wepe and waile, and passion endure,  
As may in yearth a mortall creature :  
Alas, fro whens may this thing procede,  
Of which errour I die almost for drede !

By word eterne, whilom, was it shape,  
That fro the fifth cercele, in no manere,  
Ne might of teares doune escape,  
But now so weepeth Venus in her sphere,  
That with her teares she wol drench us here.  
Alas, Scogan, this is for thine offence,  
Thou causest this deluge of pestilence.

Hast thou not said, in blaspheme of the goddis,  
Through pride, or through thy gret rekernes,  
Such things as in the law of love forbode is,  
That for thy lady saw not thy distresse,  
Therefore thou yave her up at Mighelmesse !  
Alas, Scogan, of olde folke ne yong,  
Was never erst Scogan blamed for his tong.

Thou drew in scorne Cupide eke to record,  
Of thilke rebell word that thou hast spoken,  
For which he woll no lenger be thy lord,  
And Scogan, though his bow be not broken,  
He woll not with his arowes be ywroken  
On thee ne me, ne none of our figure,  
We shall of him have neither hurte ne cure.

Now certes, frend, I drede of thine unhape,  
Lest for thy gilte the wreche of love procede  
On all hem that been hore and round of shape,  
That be so likely folke to spede,  
Than we shall of our labour have our mede,  
But well I wot, thou wolt answer and say,  
Lo, old Grisell list to renne and play.

Nay, Scogan, say not so, for I me excuse,  
God helpe me so, in no rime doubtles,  
Ne thinke I never of sleepe wake my muse,  
That rusteth in my sheath still in pees,  
While I was yong I put her forth in prees,  
But all shall passe that men prose or rime,  
Take every man his tourne as for his time.

Scogan, thou knelest at the streemes hedde  
Of grace, of all honour, and of worthiness,  
In th'ende of which I am dull as dedde,  
Forgotten in solitary wilderness,  
Yet, Scogan, thinke on Tullius' kindness,  
Mind thy frende there it may fructifie,  
Farewel, and looke thou never eft love defie.

EXPLICIT.

## TO HIS EMPTY PURSE.

To you, my purse, and to none other wight  
Complaine I, for ye be my lady dere,  
I am sorry now that ye be light,  
For, certes, ye now make me heavy chere,  
Me were as lefe laid upon a bere,  
For which unto your mercy thus I cris,  
Be heavy againe, or els mote I die.

Now vouchsafe this day or it be night,  
That I of you the blissful sowne may here,  
Or see your colour like the Sunne bright,  
That of yelowness had never pere,  
Ye be my life, ye be my hertes stere,  
Queene of comfort and of good companie,  
Be heavy againe, or els mote I die.

Now purse, that art to me my lives light,  
And saviour, as downe in this world here,  
Out of this towne helpe me by your might,  
Sith that you woll not be my treasure,  
For I am shawe as nere as any frere,  
But I pray unto your curtesie,  
Be heavy againe, or els mote I die.

EXPLICIT.

## A BALLAD

MADE BY CHAUCER, TEACHING WHAT IS GENTILNES, ON  
WHOM IS WORTHY TO BE CALLED GENTILL.

THE first stocke father of gentilnes,  
What man desireth gentil for to bee,  
Must followe his trace, and all his wittes dres  
Vertue to love and vices for to flee,  
For unto vertue longeth dignitee,  
And not the revers falsly, dare I deme,  
All weare he miter, crowne, or diademe.

This first stocke was full of rightwisnes,  
Trewe of his worde, sober, pitous and free,  
Clene of his goste, and loved besinesse,  
Against the vice of slouth in honeste,  
And, but his heire love vertue as did he,  
He is not gentill, though he rich seme,  
All weare he miter, crowne, or diademe.

Viceste may well be heir to old richesse,  
But there may no man, as men may wel see,  
Bequethe his heire his vertues noblenesse,  
That is appropriated unto no degree,  
But to the first father in majestee,  
That maketh his heires them that him queme,  
All weare he miter, crowne, or diademe.

EXPLICIT.

## GOOD COUNSAIL OF CHAUCER.

FLY fro the prease, and dwell with soothfastnesse,  
 Suffice unto thy good though it be small,  
 For horde hath hate, and climbing tikelnesse,  
 Prease hath envy, and wele is blent over all,  
 Savour no more than thee behove shall,  
 Rede well thy selfe that other folke canst rede,  
 And trouth thee shall deliver, it is no drede.

Paine thee not ech crooked to redresse  
 In trust of her that tourneth as a ball,  
 Great rest standeth in little businesse,  
 Beware also to spurne againe a nail,  
 Strive not as doth a crocke with a wall,  
 Deme thy selfe that demest others dede,  
 And trouth thee shall deliver, it is no drede.

That thee is sent receive in buxornesse,  
 The wrastling of this world asketh a fall,  
 Here is no home, here is but wildernesse,  
 Forth, pilgrime ! forth, beast, out of thy stall !  
 Looke up on high, and thanke God of all !  
 Weive thy luste, and let thy ghost thee lede,  
 And trouth thee shall deliver, it is no drede.

EXPLICIT.

## A BALLADE OF THE VILLAGE WITHOUT PAINTING.

## PLAINTIFE TO FORTUNE.

THIS wretched worldes transmutation,  
 As wele and wo, now poor, and now honour,  
 Without order or due discretion,  
 Governed is by Fortunes errour,  
 But natheless, the lacke of her favour  
 Ne may not doe me sing, though that I die,  
*J'ay tout perdu, mon temps et mon labour,*  
 For finally Fortune I defie.

Yet is me left the sight of my reason,  
 To know friend fro foe in thy mirrour,  
 So much hath yet thy turning up and down  
 Ytaught me to knowen in an hour,  
 But truly, no force of thy reddour  
 To him that over himselfe hath maistrise,  
 My suffisance shall be my succour,  
 For finally Fortune I defie.

O Socrates, thou stedfast champion,  
 She might never be thy tarmetour,  
 Thou never dredest her oppression,  
 Ne in her chere found thou no favour,  
 Thou knew the deceit of her colour,  
 And that her moste worship is for to lie,  
 I know her eke a false dissimulour,  
 For finally Fortune I defie.

## THE ANSWERE OF FORTUNE.

No man is wretched, but himselfe it wene,  
 Ne that hath in himselfe suffisance,

Why saist thou than I am to thee so kene,  
 That hast thy selfe out of my governance !  
 Say thus, graunt mercy of thine habundance  
 That thou hast lent, or this, thou shalt not strive,  
 What wost thou yet how I thee woll advance !  
 And eke thou hast thy best friend alive.

I have thee taught devision betweene  
 Friend of effect, and friend of countenance,  
 Thee needeth nat the gall of an hine,  
 That cureth eyen darke for her pennaunce,  
 Now seest thou clere that were in ignorance,  
 Yet holt thine anker, and yet thou maist arrive  
 There bounty beareth the key of my substance,  
 And eke thou hast thy best friend alive.

How many have I refused to sustene,  
 Sith I have thee fostred in thy pleasaunce !  
 Wolt thou than make a statute on thy quene,  
 That I shall be aye at thine ordinaunce !  
 Thou born art in my reigne of variance,  
 About the whele with other must thou drive,  
 My lore is bet than wicke is thy grevaunce,  
 And eke thou hast thy best friend alive.

## THE ANSWERE TO FORTUNE.

Thy lore I dampne, it is adversity,  
 My frend maist thou not reve, blind goddessse,  
 That I thy friends know, I thanke it thee,  
 Take hem againe, let hem go lie a prease,  
 The niggardes in keeping hir richesse,  
 Pronostike is, thou wolt hir toure assaile,  
 Wicke appetite commeth aye before sicknesse,  
 In general this rule may not faile.

## FORTUNE.

Thou pinchest at my mutability,  
 For I thee lent a droppe of my richesse,  
 And now me liketh to withdraw me,  
 Why shouldest thou my royalty oppressse !  
 The sea may ebbe and flow more and lesse,  
 The welken hath might to shine, rain, and hail,  
 Right so must I kithe my brotilnesse,  
 In generall this rule may not fail.

## THE PLAINTIFE.

Lo, the execution of the majesty,  
 That all purveigheth of his rightwisenesse,  
 That same thing Fortune clepen ye,  
 Ye blind beasts, full of leandnesse,  
 The Heaven hath property of sikernesse,  
 This world hath ever restlesse travaile,  
 The last day is end of mine entresse,  
 In generall this rule may not faile.

## TH'ENVOYE OF FORTUNE.

Princes, I pray you of your gentillesse  
 Let not this man and me thus cry and plain,  
 And I shall quite you this businesse,  
 And if ye liste releve him of his pain,  
 Pray ye his best frende, of his noblesse,  
 That to some better state he may attain.

## L'ENVOY DE CHAUCER.

A SCOGAN.

Tobroken been the statutes his in Heaven,  
That create were eternally t'endure,  
Sithe that I see the bright goddess seven  
Mowe wepe and waile, and passion endure,  
As may in yearth a mortall creature :  
Alas, fro whens may this thing procede,  
Of which errour I die almost for drede !

By word eterne, whilom, was it shape,  
That fro the fifth cercle, in no manere,  
Ne might of teares doune escape,  
But now so weepeth Venus in her sphere,  
That with her teares she wol drench us here.  
Alas, Scogan, this is for thine offence,  
Thou causost this deluge of pestilence.

Hast thou not said, in blasphemie of the goddis,  
Through pride, or through thy gret rekelnes,  
Such things as in the law of love forbode is,  
That for thy lady saw not thy distresse,  
Therefore thou yave her up at Mighelmesse !  
Alas, Scogan, of olde folke ne yong,  
Was never erst Scogan blamed for his tong.

Thou drew in scorne Cupide eke to record,  
Of thilke rebell word that thou hast spoken,  
For which he woll no lenger be thy lord,  
And Scogan, though his bow be not broken,  
He woll not with his arrowes be ywroken  
On thee ne me, ne none of our figure,  
We shall of him have neither hurte ne cure.

Now certes, frend, I drede of thine unhape,  
Lest for thy gilte the wreche of love procede  
On all hem that been hore and round of shape,  
That be so likely folke to spede,  
Than we shall of our labour have our mede,  
But well I wot, thou wolt answer and say,  
Lo, old Grisell list to renne and play.

Nay, Scogan, say not so, for I me excuse,  
God helpe me so, in no rime doubtles,  
Ne thinke I never of sleepe wake my muse,  
That rusteth in my sheath still in pees,  
While I was yong I put her forth in prees,  
But all shall passe that men prose or rime,  
Take every man his tourne as for his time.

Scogan, thou knelest at the stremes hedde  
Of grace, of all honour, and of worthinesse,  
In th'ende of which I am dull as dedde,  
Forgotten in solitary wildernesse,  
Yet, Scogan, thinke on Tullius' kindness,  
Mind thy frende there it may fructifie,  
Farewel, and looke thou never eft love defie.

EXPLICIT.

## TO HIS EMPTY PURSE.

To you, my purse, and to none other wight  
Complaine I, for ye be my lady dere,  
I am sorry now that ye be light,  
For, certes, ye now make me heavy chere,  
Me were as lefe laid upon a bere,  
For which unto your mercy thus I cris,  
Be heavy againe, or els mote I die.

Now vouchsafe this day or it be night,  
That I of you the blisful sowne may here,  
Or see your colour like the Sunne bright,  
That of yelowness had never pere,  
Ye be my life, ye be my hertes stere,  
Queene of comfort and of good companie,  
Be heavy againe, or els mote I die.

Now purse, that art to me my lives light,  
And saviour, as downe in this world here,  
Out of this towne helpe me by your might,  
Sith that you woll not be my treasure,  
For I am shave as nere as any frere,  
But I pray unto your curtesie,  
Be heavy againe, or els mote I die.

EXPLICIT.

## A BALLAD

MADE BY CHAUCER, TEACHING WHAT IS GENTILNESSE, OR  
WHOM IS WORTHY TO BE CALLED GENTILL.

THE first stocke father of gentilles,  
What man desireth gentil for to bee,  
Must followe his trace, and all his wittes dres  
Vertue to love and vices for to flee,  
For unto vertue longeth dignitee,  
And not the revers falsly, dare I deme,  
All weare he miter, crowne, or diademe.

This first stocke was full of rightwises,  
Trewe of his worde, sober, pitous and free,  
Clene of his goste, and loved besinesse,  
Against the vice of slouth in honeste,  
And, but his heire love vertue as did he,  
He is not gentill, though he rich seme,  
All weare he miter, crowne, or diademe.

Viceste may well be heir to old richesse,  
But there may no man, as men may wel see,  
Bequethe his heire his vertues noblesse,  
That is appropriated unto no degree,  
But to the first father in majestee,  
That maketh his heires them that him queme,  
All weare he miter, crowne, or diademe.

EXPLICIT.

## PROVERBES

## AGAINST COVETISE AND NEGLIGENCE.

WHAT shall these clothes manifold,  
Lo, this hote somers day !  
After great heat commeth cold,  
No man cast his pilche away.  
Of all this world the large compasse  
It will not in mine armes twaine ;  
Who so mokol woll embrace,  
Litel thereof he shall distraine.

—◆—  
EPILOGUE.

## CHAUCER'S WORDS UNTO HIS OWN SCRIVENER.

ADAM Scrivener, if ever it thee befall  
Boece or Troilus for to write new,  
Under thy long locks thou maist have the scall,  
But after my making thou write more trew,  
So oft a day I mote thy werke renew,  
It to correct and eke to rubbe and scrape,  
And all is thorow thy negligence and rape.

—◆—  
VIRELAI.

ALONE walking,  
In thought plaining,  
And sore sighing,  
All desolate :

Me remembring  
Of my living,  
My death wishing,  
Both early and late ;

Infortunate  
Is so my fate  
That wote ye what ?  
Out of measure

My life I hate :  
Thus desperate,  
In such poor estate  
Do I endure.

Of other cure  
Am I not sure,  
Thus to endure  
Is hard certain.

Such is my ure,  
I you ensure,  
What creature  
May have more pain !

My truth so plain  
Is taken in vain,  
And great disdain  
In remembraunce,

Yet I full fain,  
Would me complain,  
Me to abstain  
From this penaunce

But in substaunce,  
None allegeaunce  
Of my grevaunce  
Can I not find.

Right so my chauce  
With displeasaunce  
Doth me avauce,  
And thus an end.





**GLOSSARY.**



## ADVERTISEMENT.

THE following Glossary is intended to facilitate the reading of Chaucer, by explaining, in our present language, such of his words and phrases as are now become difficult to be understood, either from a total disuse, or from any smaller alterations of orthography or inflexion. Many of these words and phrases having been already explained in the Notes of this edition, it has been thought sufficient in that case to refer the reader to those Notes. For the rest, it is hoped that this work may be of use in removing some of the most material difficulties, which occur, not only in the Canterbury Tales, but also in the other *genuine* compositions of Chaucer, as far as the present state of their text makes it safe to attempt any explanation of them.

It would be injustice to the learned author of the Glossary to Mr. Urry's edition<sup>1</sup>, not to acknowledge, that I have built upon his foundations, and often with his materials. In particular, I have followed, and have endeavoured to improve upon, his example, by constantly citing one or more places, in which the word or phrase explained is to be found<sup>2</sup>. Where the places cited by him were apposite and satisfactory, I have generally spared myself the trouble of hunting for others, with this caution however, that I have not made use of any one of his references without having first verified it by actual inspection; a caution which every compiler ought to take in all cases, and which in the present case was indispensably necessary, on account of the numerous and gross errors in the text of that edition<sup>3</sup> to which Mr. Thomas's Glossary was adapted.

For the further prevention of uncertainty and confusion, care has been taken to mark the part of speech to which each word belongs, and to distribute all homonymous words into separate articles<sup>4</sup>. The numbers, cases, modes, times, and other inflexions of the declinable parts of speech are also marked, whenever they are expressed in a manner differing from modern usage.

Etymology is so clearly not a necessary branch of the duty of a Glossarist, that, I trust, I shall be easily excused for not having troubled the reader with longer or more frequent digressions of that sort. In general, I have thought it sufficient to mark shortly the original language from which each word is probably to be derived, according to the hypothesis, which has

<sup>1</sup> At the end of this advertisement I shall add a short *Account* of what I conceive to be the *genuine works of Chaucer*, and of those which have been either falsely ascribed to him, or improperly mixed with his, in the Editions. Those under the two latter descriptions may be of use to illustrate the works of Chaucer, but should not be confounded with them.

<sup>2</sup> Mr. Timothy Thomas. See App. to the Preface. A. note<sup>3</sup>.

<sup>3</sup> The expediency of this practice is obvious. It enables the reader to apprehend more clearly the interpretation of the Glossarist, when right; and it affords him an opportunity of correcting those mistakes, to which we are all so exceedingly liable.

<sup>4</sup> See App. to the Preface. A. p. viii.

<sup>5</sup> The neglect of this precaution, and of that just mentioned, has made Mr. Hearne's Glossaries to *Robert of Gloucester* and *Robert of Brunne* of very little use. Who would place any confidence in such interpretations as the following?—*R. G. H. as, after, before, ere, till. H. better, bid, bad, desired, prayed, be, are.*—*P. L. H. aim, esteem, love, desire, reckon'd, aim'd, fathom, tell. H. biting, abiding, tarrying, bidding, praying, bidden, being bidden, being desired, continually, commanded, judged, adjudged, readily.*

been more fully explained in the *Essay*, &c. *Part the second*, that the *Norman-Saxon* dialect in which Chaucer wrote, was almost entirely composed of words derived from the *Saxon* and *French* languages<sup>6</sup>.

As every author must be allowed to be the best expositor of his own meaning, I have always endeavoured to establish the true import of any doubtful word or phrase by the usage of Chaucer himself in some other similar passage. Where it has been necessary to call in foreign assistance, recourse has been chiefly had to such authors as wrote before him, or at least were contemporary with him in some part of his life<sup>7</sup>.

The proper names of persons and places, as they occur in Chaucer, are often either so obscure in themselves, or so disguised by a vitious orthography, that they stand in as much need of an interpreter as the most obsolete appellative. Some other proper names, particularly of authors quoted, though sufficiently known and clear, have been inserted in this Glossary, in order to make it, in that respect, answer the purposes of an Index.

As there are several passages, of which, after all my researches, I am unable to give any probable explanation, I shall follow the laudable example of the learned Editor of "*Ancient Scottish Poems* from the MS. of *George Bannatyne*. Edinb. 1770." by subjoining a list of such words and phrases as I profess not to understand. I only wish the reader may not find occasion to think, that I ought to have made a considerable addition to the number.

I will just add, for the sake of those who may be disposed to make use of this Glossary in reading the works of Chaucer not contained in this edition, that it will be found to be almost equally well adapted to every edition of those works, except Mr. Urry's. Mr. Urry's edition should never be opened by any one for the purpose of reading Chaucer.

1778.

T. TYRWHITT.

<sup>6</sup> A few words are marked as having been taken immediately from the *Latin* language. The number has increased very considerably since the time of Chaucer. It is observable, that the *verbs* of this sort are generally formed from the *participle past*, whereas those which have come to us through France are as generally formed from the *infinitive mode*.

In referring words to the other two great classes a precise accuracy has not been attempted. The small remains of the genuine *Anglo-Saxon* language, which our lexicographers have been able to collect, do not furnish authorities for a multitude of words, which however may be fairly derived from that source, because they are to be found with little variation in the other collateral languages descended from the *Gothic*. The term *Saxon* therefore is here used with such a latitude as to include the *Gothic*, and *all its branches*. At the same time, as the *Francic* part of the *French* language had a common original with the *Anglo-Saxon*, it happens that some words may be denominated either *French* or *Saxon* with almost equal probability. In all such cases, the final judgement is left to those, who have leisure and inclination (according to our author's phrase ver. 15346.) *to doubt the matter to the bren*.

<sup>7</sup> Some of these authors have been pointed out in the *Essay*, &c. §. viii. n. 24. Of the others the most considerable are, the author of the *Visions of Pierce Ploughman*, GOWER, OCCLEVE, and LYDGATE.

In the *Essay*, &c. n. 57. a circumstance is mentioned, which shews that the *Visions of Pierce Ploughman* were written after 1350. I have since taken notice of a passage which will prove, I think, that they were written after 1362. The great storm of wind, alluded to in fol. xx. b. l. 14.

And the Southwesterne winde on Satterdale at even, &c. is probably the storm recorded by Thorn, *inter x Script.* c. 2122. Walsingham, p. 178. and most particularly by the Continuator of Adam Murimuth, p. 114

A.D. M.CCC.LXII.—XV. die Januarii, circa horam vespertinam, ventus vehemens notus *Australis Africus* tanta rabie erupit, &c.

The 15th of January in the year 1362, N. S. was a *Saturday*

AN ACCOUNT  
OF THE  
WORKS OF CHAUCER

TO WHICH  
THIS GLOSSARY IS ADAPTED;

AND OF THOSE OTHER PIECES WHICH HAVE BEEN IMPROPERLY INTERMIXED WITH HIS IN THE EDITIONS.

---

OF the CANTERBURY TALES, the greatest work of Chaucer, it is needless to repeat what has been said in different parts of this Edition; particularly in the *App. to the Preface*, A. and in the *Introductory Discourse*. One of the earliest of his other works was probably

I. THE ROMAUNT OF THE ROSE. He speaks of it himself in L.W. 329 and 441. It is professedly a translation of the French *Roman de la Rose*, and many gross blunders in the printed text may be corrected by comparing it with the original. Dr. Hunter was so obliging as to lend me a MS. of this poem, the only one that I have ever heard of, which has occasionally been consulted to good advantage; but it does not supply any of the most material defects of the printed Editions. See page 209.

II. TROILUS AND CRESEIDE, in v. Books. This Poem is also mentioned by our author in L.W. 332 and 441. It is for the most part a translation of the *Filostrato* of Boccace; but with many variations, and such large additions, that it contains above 2700 lines more than its original. See the Essay, &c. n. 62. and page 209.

There are several MSS. of this poem in the Bodleian Library and in the Museum, which have been occasionally consulted.

III. THE COURT OF LOVE was first printed among the additions made to Chaucer's works by John Stowe, in the Edition of 1561. One might reasonably have expected to find it mentioned in L.W. *loc. cit.* but notwithstanding the want of that testimony in its favour, I am induced by the internal evidence to consider it as one of Chaucer's genuine productions. I have never heard of any MS. of this poem.

IV. THE COMPLAINT OF PITEE. So this Poem is entitled in MS. *Harl.* 78. It is extant also in MS. *Bodl.* Fairf. 16. The subject is alluded to in the *Court of Love*, ver. 700. seq.

V. OF QUEEN ANNELIDA AND FALSE ARCITE, with the COMPLAINT OF ANNELIDA. The story of this poem is said in ver. 10. to have been originally in Latin; and in ver. 21. Chaucer names the authors whom he professes to follow. "*Firste folwe I STACE and after him CORINNE.*" As the opening only is taken from Statius, L. IV. v. 519, we must suppose that *Corinne* furnished the remainder; but who *Corinne* was is not easy to guess. See the Gloss. in v. CORINNE. It should be observed, that the *Arcite*, whose infidelity is here complained of, is quite a different person from the *Arcite* of the *Knights tale*; from which circumstance we may perhaps be allowed to infer, that this poem was written before Chaucer had met with the *Thessida*.

It is extant in MSS. *Harl.* 372. and *Bodl.* Fairf. 16.

VI. THE ASSEMBLEE OF FOULES is mentioned by Chaucer himself in L.W. 419. under the title of "*The Parlement of foules*." In MS. *Bodl. Fairf. 16.* it is entitled "*The Parlement of Briddes*."

The opening of this poem is built upon the *Somnium Scipionis* of Cicero, as it appears at the head of Macrobius's commentary. The description of a *Garden and Temple*, from ver. 183 to ver. 287, is almost entirely taken from Boccaccio's description of the Temple of Venus in the vii book of the *Theseida*. See the note on ver. 1920. I have found no reason to retract the suspicion there intimated as to the date of this poem; nor can I confirm it by any external evidence.

VII. THE COMPLAINT OF THE BLACK KNIGHT, in MSS. *Bodl. Fairf. 16.* and *Bod. 638.* is entitled "*Complaint of a lover's life*." I do not wish much confidence to be given to the conjecture, in App. to the Pref. C. n. \* that this poem relates to John of Gaunt.

VIII. CHAUCER'S A. B. C. was first printed in Mr. Speght's 2d Edit. in 1602. It is said, in the title, to have been composed at the request of the *Duchesse Blanche*. If that be true, it ought to be placed before

IX. THE BOOKE OF THE DUCHESS, which Chaucer himself has mentioned by the title of "*The deth of Blaunche the Duchesse*." L.W. 418. See an account of this poem in the n. on ver. 4467. and page 209.

X. THE HOUSE OF FAME is mentioned by Chaucer himself in L.W. 417. It was probably written while he was comptroller of the custom of wools, and consequently not earlier than 1374. See the passage from B. II. quoted in the App. to the Pref. C. n. \*. It is extant in MSS. *Bodl. Fairf. 16.* and *Bod. 638.*

XI. CHAUCER'S DREME was first printed in Mr. Speght's Edit. of his works in 1597. Bale seems to speak of it under the title, "*De castello dominarum. Lib. i.*" The supposed plan of this poem, prefixed to it by Mr. Speght, is a mere fancy; but there is no ground for doubting the authenticity of the poem itself.

When I imagined that a passage in this Dreme, ver. 1820—1926, was probably copied from the *Lay of Elidus* (Discourse, &c. n. 24.) I did not recollect, that the incident there related is very similar to one in the Grecian fabulous history (See Hyginus, fab. CXXXVI. *de Polydo.*) and therefore might easily have come to Chaucer through some other channel.

XII. THE FLOUR AND THE LEFE was also printed for the first time in the Edit. of 1597; but I do not think its authenticity so clear as that of the preceding poem. The subject, at least, is alluded to by Chaucer in L.W. 188—194.

XIII. THE LEGENDE OF GOODE WOMEN is extant in MSS. *Bodl. Arch. Seld. B. 24.* and *Fairf. 16.* For the time of its composition see the Discourse, &c. n. 3. See also the n. on ver. 4481. An additional argument, for believing that the number intended was *nineteen*, may be drawn from the *Court of Love*, ver. 108. where, speaking of *Alceste*, Chaucer says—

"To whom obeyed the ladies gode ninetene."

XIV. THE COMPLAINT OF MARS AND VENUS is said, in the conclusion, to have been translated from the French of *Graunson*; probably that *Otho de Graunson*, who was retained in the military service of Richard II, with an annuity of 200 marks. Pat. 17. R. II. p. 1. m. 6. ap. Rymer. Mr. Speght mentions a tradition, if I understand him right, that this poem was originally made of the Lady *Elizabeth*, daughter to *John of Gaunt*, whom he calls *King of Spaine*, and her husband the Lord *John Holland*, half-brother to Richard II. I cannot see any thing in the poem itself that countenances this particular notion, though I have little doubt, that it was intended to describe the situation of some two lovers under a veil of mystical allegory.

This poem is extant in MSS. *Bodl. Arch. Seld. B. 24.* and *Fairf. 16.* In MS. *Harl. 7333* it is entitled "*The broche of Thebes as of the love of Mars and Venus*;" which inclines me to believe,

that it is the poem, mentioned by Lydgate, and from him by Bale, which has of late been supposed to be lost. Lydgate's words are—

Of *Annelida* and of false *Arcite*  
He made a *complaynt* dolefull and piteous,  
And of the *broche* which that *Vulcanus*  
At *Thebes* wrought, full divers of nature.

Prol. to *Trag.* Sign. A. ii. b.

From this passage Bale, as I suppose, deceived by the ambiguous sense of the word *broche*, has attributed to Chaucer a poem "*De Vulcani ceru*;" of Vulcan's spit. He should have said "*De Vulcani gemmâ*, or *monili*." See *Broche* in the Glossary.

This *broche* of *Thebes*, from which the whole poem is here supposed to have taken its title, is described at large in the *Complaint of Mars*, ver. 93—109. The first idea of it seems to have been derived from what Statius has said of the fatal necklace made by Vulcan for Harmonia. Theb. II. 265—305. Lydgate refers us to *Ovide*; but I cannot find anything in him upon the subject.

XV. THE CUCKOW AND THE NIGHTINGALE in MS. Fairf. 16. is entitled "*The boke of Cupide God of Love*." It is extant also in MS. Bod. 638. and as far as ver. 235. in Arch. Seld. B. 24. and might be much improved and augmented with some lines from those MSS. The Ballade of three Stanzas with an Envoy, which seems to belong to this poem in the Edit. does not appear at all in MS. Bod. 638. In MS. Fairf. 16. it is at the end of the *Books of the Duchesse*. I cannot believe that it was written by Chaucer.

Beside these more considerable works, it appears from L.W. 422. 430. that our author had composed many "*balades, roundels, rirdayes*;" that he had "*made many a lay and many a thing*." A few pieces of this sort are still extant, but hardly any, I think, of so early a date as the *Legende*. I will set them down here as they stand in the Edit.

1. *L'Envoy de Chaucer à Bukton*. Beginning,

*My maister Bukton, whan of Christ, &c.*

So this little poem is entitled in MS. Fairf. 16. It has always been printed at the end of the *Books of the Duchesse*, with an &c. in the first line instead of the name of *Bukton*; and in Mr. Urry's Edit. the following most unaccountable note is prefixed to it. "This seems an Envoy to the Duke of Lancaster after his loss of *Blanch*."

From the reference to the *Wife of Bath*, ver. 29. I should suppose this to have been one of our author's later compositions, and I find that there was a *Peter de Bukton*, the King's Escheator for the County of York, in 1397, (Pat. 20 R. II. p. 2. m. 3. ap. Rymer.) to whom this poem, from the familiar style of it, is much more likely to have been addressed than to the Duke of Lancaster.

2. *Balade sent to King Richard*.

Beginn. *Sometime the world*, &c.

So this poem is entitled in MS. Harl. E. It is extant also in Fairf. 16. and in Cotton. Otho. A. XVIII.

3. *Balade beginning—Fle fro the prene*, &c.

In MS. Cotton. Otho. A. XVIII. this balade is said to have been made by Chaucer "*upon his death-bed lying in his anygh*;" but of such a circumstance some further proof should be required. It is found, without any such note, in MS. Arch. Seld. B. 24. and Fairf. 16.

4. *Balade of the village*.

Beginn. *This wretched worldes*, &c.

It is extant in MS. Fairf. 16. and Bod. 638. In MS. Ashmol. 59. it is said to have been translated from the French. Tanner in v. CHAUCER.

5. *L'Envoy de Chaucer à Skogan*.

Beginn. *Tobroken ben the Statutes*, &c.

So this poem is entitled in MS. Fairf. 16. Among a number of people of all sorts, who had



letters of protection to attend Richard II. upon his expedition to Ireland in 1390, is *Henricus Scogan, Armiger*. This jocose expostulation was probably addressed to him by our author some years before, when Scogan's interest at court may be supposed to have been better than his own.

6. *Chaucer to his empty purse.*

Beginn. *To you, my purse, &c.*

This balade is extant in MS. Fairf. 16. and in Cotton. Otho. A. XVIII. The *Envoy* appears to be addressed to Henry the 4th.

7. Balade beginning—*The firste stock, &c.*

These three stanzas have been preserved in a "*Moral Balade by Henry Scogan*;" of which some notice will be taken below.

8. *Proverbs by Chaucer.*

Beginn. *What shal these clothes, &c.*

So this little piece is entitled in MS. Harl. 7578. It evidently contains two distinct *Proverbs* or *Moral Admonitions*.

9. *Chaucer's words to his Scribe.*

Beginn. *Adam Scribe, &c.*

A proof of his attention to the correctness of his writings. See also T. V. 1794, 6.

The works of Chaucer in prose are,

I. A TRANSLATION OF BOETHIUS *de consolations Philosophia*, which he has mentioned himself in L.W. ver. 425.

II. A TREATISE ON THE ASTROLABE, addressed to his son *Lewis*, in 1391. It is plain from what is said at the beginning of this treatise, that the printed copies do not contain more than two of the five parts, of which it was intended to consist.

III. THE TESTAMENT OF LOVE is evidently an imitation of Boethius *de consolations Philosophia*. It seems to have been begun by our author after his troubles, in the middle part of the reign of Richard II, and to have been finished about the time that Gower published his *Confessio Amantis*, in the 16th year of that reign. At least it must then have been far advanced, as Gower mentions it by its title. *Conf. Am.* 190. b.

The foregoing I consider as the genuine works of Chaucer. Of those, which have been improperly intermixed with his in the Editions, the following are known to be the works of other authors.

1. *The Testament and Complaint of Creseide* appears from ver. 41. not to have been written by Chaucer; and Mr. Urry was informed "by Sir James Ereskin, late Earl of Kelly, and diverse aged scholars of the Scottish nation," that the true author was "Mr. ROBERT HENDERSON, chief School-master of Dumferlin, a little time before Chaucer was first printed, and dedicated to King Henry VIII. by Mr. Thynne." I suppose, the same person is meant that is called ROBERT HENRYSON in "*Ancient Scottish Poems*," where several of his compositions may be seen, from p. 98 to p. 138.

2. *The Floure of Courtesie* is said, in the title, to have been made by JOHN LYDGATE.

3. *La Belle Dame sans merci*, a translation from Alain Chartier, is attributed in MS. Harl. 372. to Sir RICHARD ROS. See App. to the Pref. C. note. Upon looking further into Alain's works I find a Balade upon the taking of Fougieres by the English in 1448 (*Oeuvres d'Al. Chartier*, p. 717.); so that he was certainly living near fifty years after Chaucer's death; which makes it quite incredible that the latter should have translated any thing of his.

4. *The Letter of Cupide* is dated in 1402, two years after Chaucer's death. It was written by THOMAS OCCLEVE, who mentions it himself, as one of his own compositions, in a *Dialogue*, which follows his *Complaint*. MS. Bodl. 1504.

"Yes, Thomas, yes, in the epistle of Cupide  
Thou hast of hem so largelich said."

5. JOHN GOWER unto the noble King Henry the 4th, with some Latin verses of the same author.

6. *Sayings of* DAN JOHN (LYDGATE).

7. SCOGAN unto the lordes and gentlemen of the Kynges house.

So the title of this poem is expressed in the old Editt. but, according to Mr. Speght, in the written copies it is thus ; " Here followeth a moral balade to the Prince, the Duke of Clarence, the Duke of Bedford, the Duke of Gloucester, the King's sonnes ; by Henry Scogan, at a supper among the Marchants in the Vintry at London in the house of Lewis John." This cannot be quite accurate ; as neither of the two younger sons of Henry IV. had the title of Duke while their eldest brother was Prince ; but I find that there was, about that time, a Lewis John, a Welshman, who was naturalized by act of Parliament, 2 H. V. and who was concerned with Thomas Chaucer in the execution of the office of Chief Butler. *Rot. Parl.* 2 H. V. n. 18. The same person, probably, was appointed Remitter of all monies that should be sent to Rome for three years. Ap. Rymer. *an. eodem.*

The article concerning Skogan in Tanner's *Bibl. Brit.* is a heap of confusion. He is there called John ; is said to have been a *Master of Arts* of Oxford and *jester* to K. Edward VI. (perhaps a misprint for IV) ; to have been contemporary with Chaucer, and famous in the year 1480. In a collection of foolish stories, which is supposed to have been first published by Dr. Andrew Borde, in the time of Henry VIII, under the title of *Scogan's jests*, he is called Thomas ; and there too he is represented as a Graduate, I think, of Oxford, and as jester to some King, but without any circumstances sufficient to determine what King is meant.

I am inclined to believe that the Scogan, who wrote this poem, is rightly named Henry in Mr. Speght's MS. As to the two circumstances of his having been a *Master of Arts* of Oxford and *jester* to a King, I can find no older authority for either than Dr. Borde's book. That he was contemporary with Chaucer, but so as to survive him for several years, perhaps till the reign of Henry V, is sufficiently clear from this poem.

Shakespeare seems to have followed the jest-book, in considering Scogan as a mere buffoon, when he mentions, as one of Falstaff's boyish exploits, that he " broke Scogan's head at the Court-gate ;" (2d Part of Henry IV. A. 3.) but Jonson has given a more dignified, and, probably, a juster account of his situation and character. *Masque of the Fortunate Isles*, Vol. vi. p. 192.

*Mere fool.* Skogan ? what was he ?

*Johphiel.* O, a fine gentleman and master of arts  
Of Henry the fourth's time, that made disguises  
For the king's sons, and writ in ballad-royal  
Daintily well.

*Mere-fool.* But wrote he like a gentleman ?

*Johphiel.* In rhyme, fine tinkling rhyme and flowand verse,  
With now and then some sense ; and he was paid for't,  
Regarded and rewarded ; which few poets  
Are now a-days.

This description of Skogan corresponds very well with the ideas which would naturally be suggested by the perusal of the poem before us, and of that addressed to him by Chaucer. See above, p. 447. And indeed I question whether Jonson had any other good foundation for what he has said of him.

8. *A balade of gooder counseil, translated out of Latin verses into English*, by DAN JOHN LYDGATE.

9. *A balade made in the preise, or rather dispreise, of women for their doubleness* ; by LYDGATE, according to MS. Ashmol. 6943.

10. *A balade warning men to beware of deceitful women* ; by LYDGATE, according to MS. Harl. 2251.

To these, which are known to be the works of other authors, we should perhaps add an 11th, viz. *Balade in commendation of our Ladie* ; as a poem with the same beginning is ascribed to LYDGATE, under the title of " *Invocation to our Lady*." Tanner, in v. LYDGATE.

The anonymous compositions, which have been from time to time added to Chaucer's in the several Editt. seem to have been received, for the most part, without any external evidence whatever, and in direct contradiction to the strongest internal evidence. Of this sort are '*The Plowman's tale*,' first printed in 1542: See the Discourse, &c. §. xl. n. 32. '*The Story of Gaudyn*,' and '*The Continuation of the Canterbury Tales*,' first printed in Mr. Urry's Edition: '*Jack Upland*,' first produced by Mr. Speght in 1602. I have declared my suspicion, in the Gloss. v. ORIGENES, that the '*Lamentation of Marie Magdalene*' was not written by Chaucer; and I am still clearer that the '*Assemblée of Ladies*,' '*A Praise of Women*,' and the '*Remedie of Love*,' ought not to be imputed to him. It would be a waste of time to sift accurately the heap of rubbish, which was added, by John Stowe, to the Edit. of 1561. Though we might perhaps be able to pick out two or three genuine fragments of Chaucer, we should probably find them so soiled and mangled \*, that he would not thank us for asserting his claim to them.

---

\* As a specimen of the care and discernment, with which Mr. Stowe's collections were made, I would refer the curious reader to what is called a *Balade*, fol. 324. b. Ed. Sp.

Beginn. *O merciful and o merciable.*

The four first stanzas are found in different parts of an imperfect poem upon the *Fall of Man*. MS. Harl. 2251. n. 132. The 11th stanza makes part of an *Envoy*, which in the same MS. n. 37. is annexed to the poem entitled '*The Craft of Lovers*,' among the Additions to Chaucer's works, by J. Stowe; which poem, by the way, though printed with a date of 1347, and ascribed to Chaucer, has in the MS. a much more probable date of 1459, near sixty years after Chaucer's death.

There is one little piece, perhaps by Chaucer, fol. 224. Ed. Sp.

Beginn. *Alone walking, In thought plaining, &c.*

which comes nearer to the description of a *Virelay*, than anything else of his that has been preserved. See the book quoted in the Gloss. v. *Virelaye*.

## EXPLANATION OF THE ABBREVIATIONS

BY WHICH THE WORKS OF CHAUCER AND SOME OTHER BOOKS ARE GENERALLY CITED IN THE  
FOLLOWING GLOSSARY.

*The Arabian numerals, without any letter prefixed, refer to the verses of the Canterbury Tales in this Edition.*

|              |                                                                                                 | Edit. 9p. 1002. |
|--------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|
| A. B. C.     | —Chaucer's A. B. C, . . . . .                                                                   | fol. 347        |
| A. F.        | —Assemble of Foules, . . . . .                                                                  | 233             |
| An.          | —Annelida and Arctite, . . . . .                                                                | 243 b.          |
| Astr.        | —Treatise on the Astrolabe, . . . . .                                                           | 240             |
| Bal. VII.    | —Balade of the Village, . . . . .                                                               | 219 b.          |
| Ber.         | —The History of Beryn, Edit. Urr. p. 600.                                                       |                 |
| B. K.        | —Complaint of the Black Knight, . . . . .                                                       | 257 b.          |
| Bo.          | —Translation of Boethius, 5 Books, . . . . .                                                    | 197 b.          |
| C. D.        | —Chaucer's Dreame, . . . . .                                                                    | 334             |
| C. L.        | —Court of Love, . . . . .                                                                       | 327             |
| C. M.        | —Complaint of Mars, . . . . .                                                                   | 309 b.          |
| C. M. V.     | —Complaint of Mars and Venus, . . . . .                                                         | 308 b.          |
| C. N.        | —Cuckow and Nightingale, . . . . .                                                              | 316 b.          |
| Cotg.        | —Cotgrave's Fr. and Eng. Dictionary.                                                            |                 |
| Conf. Am.    | —Gower's <i>Confessio Amantis</i> , Edit. 1532.                                                 |                 |
| C. V.        | —Complaint of Venus, . . . . .                                                                  | 310             |
| lbu.         | —The Book of the Duchesse, commonly called, <i>The Dreame of Chaucer</i> , . . . . .            | 227             |
| F.           | —The House of Fame, 3 Books, . . . . .                                                          | 203             |
| F. L.        | —The Flour and Leaf, . . . . .                                                                  | 344             |
| Gam.         | —The Tale of Gamelyn, Edit. Urr. p. 36.                                                         |                 |
| Jun. Etymol. | —Junii Etymologicum Ling. Angl. by Lye.                                                         |                 |
| Kilian.      | —Kilian's Etymologicum Ling. Teuton.                                                            |                 |
| L. V.        | —Legende of good Women, . . . . .                                                               | 105             |
| Lydg. Trag.  | —Lydgate's Translation of Boccaccio <i>De casibus virorum illustrium</i> , Edit.<br>J. Wayland. |                 |
| M.           | —The Tale of Melibens, p. 106.                                                                  |                 |
| Magd.        | —Lamentation of Marie Magdalene, . . . . .                                                      | 308             |
| P.           | —The Persones Tale, p. 148.                                                                     |                 |
| P. L.        | —Translation of Peter of Langtoft, by Robert of Brunne. Ed. Hearne.                             |                 |
| P. P.        | —Visions of Pierce Ploughman, Edit. 1350.                                                       |                 |

Prompt Parv.—*Promptorium Parvulorum sive Clericorum*. MS. Harl. 221. A dictionary, in which many hundreds of English words are translated into Latin, compiled in 1440, by a Friar Preacher, a Recluse, at Lynne in Norfolk. He gives notice in his preface, that his English is that spoken in the East country; and accord-

ingly his orthography will be found to differ very much from Chaucer's. His name was *Richard Fraunces*, if we may believe a MS. note cited by Hearne. Glos. to P. L. v. *Nesske*; who has there also given an account of an edition of this dictionary, printed by Fynson in 1499. Dr. Hunter has a copy of it.

|       |                                                |        |
|-------|------------------------------------------------|--------|
| Prov. | —Proverbs by Chaucer, . . . . .                | 321 h. |
| R.    | —The Romaunt of the Rose, . . . . .            | 100    |
| R. G. | —Robert of Gloucester's Chronicle. Ed. Hearne. |        |
| Sk.   | —Skinner's <i>Etymologicon Ling. Angl.</i>     |        |
| Sp.   | —Speght, the Editor of Chaucer.                |        |
| T.    | —Troilus and Creseide, 5 Books, . . . . .      | 143    |
| T. L. | —Testament of Love, 3 Books, . . . . .         | 27 h.  |
| Ur.   | —Urry, the Editor of Chaucer.                  |        |

# GLOSSARY.

**A**, which is commonly called the *Indefinite Article*, is really nothing more than a corruption of the Saxon Adjective *AN*, or *AN*, before a Substantive beginning with a consonant.

It is sometimes prefixed to another Adjective; the Substantive, to which both belong, being understood. ver. 208.

*A Frere there was, a WANTON and a MERRY.* See ver. 165, and the note.

It is also joined to *Nouns plural*, taken collectively; as, *An hundred frankes*, ver. 13901. *A thousand frankes*, ver. 13906.—and to such as are not used in the singular number; as, *A listes*, ver. 1715. See the Note. So the Latins said, *Unæ litteræ*, Cic. ad Att. v. 9. and the French, formerly, *unes lices*; *unes lettres*; *unes trêves*. Froissart. v. l. c. 153. 237. v. li. c. 78.

*A*, prep. before a *Gerund*, is a corruption of *ON*. *To go a begging*. 11884. R. 6718. l. c. *on begging*. The prep. is often expressed at length. *ON HUNTING den they ridden*. 1669. *To ride ON HAWKING*. 13667.

In the same manner, before a *noun* it is generally a corruption of *ON* or *IN*. *A bed*. 5689, 6509. *A're*. 6308. *A'Goddes name*. 17367. *A'morwe*. 624. *A'night*. 5784. *A'werke*. 4335, 5797, though in some of these instances perhaps it may as well be supposed to be a corruption of *AT*.

*A* in composition, in words of Saxon original, is an abbreviation of *AF*, or *OF*; of *AT*; of *ON*, or *IN*; and often only a corruption of the prepositive particle *on*, or *v*. In words of French original, it is generally to be deduced from the Latin *AB*, *AD*, and sometimes *EX*.

*A*, Interj. Ah! 1080. 9109.

*ABACK*, adv. SAX. Backwards. L. W. 864.

*ABAIST*, part. pa. FR. Abashed, ashamed. 8193. 9887.

*ABATE*, v. FR. To beat down.

*ABAWED*, part. pa. FR. *Ebahé*. Astonished. R. 3646.

*I was ABAWED for merveille.* Orig. *Moult m'esbahy de la merveille*.

*ABEGGE*, *ABEVE*, *ABIE*, v. SAX. To suffer for. 3636. 19034. 16162.

*ABET*, n. SAX. Help. T. II. 357.

*ABIDE*, v. SAX. To stay. 3131, 3.

*ABIDDEN*, } part. pa. { T. II. 935.

*ABIDEN*, } { 2984. 9763.

*ABIT* for *ABIDETH*. 10643. R. 4977.

*ABLE*, adj. FR. Fit, proper. 167. R. 906.

*ABOTE*, part. pa. of *ABATE*. C. D. 1290.

*ABOUT*, part. pa. of *ABEGGE*. 2306.

*ABOUTEN*, prep. SAX. *On-butan*. About. 2191. 4146.

*ABRAIDE*, v. SAX. To awake; to start. 4182. See *BRADEN*.

— pa. t. Awaked, started. 9637. 10791. 18014.

*ABREDE*, adv. SAX. Abroad. R. 2263.

*ABREDE*, v. FR. To shorten, to abridge. 9531.

*ABROCH*, v. FR. To tap, to set abroach; spoken of a vessel of liquor. 5759.

*ABUSON*, n. FR. Abuse, impropriety. T. iv. 980.

*ACCESS*, n. FR. Properly, the approach of a fever; *A fever*. B. K. 136.

*ACCIDEN*, n. FR. from *Accidens*, Gr. Negligence; arising from discontent, melancholy, &c. P. 161, col. 2, l. 62, seq.

*ACCORD*, n. FR. Agreement. 840.

— v. FR. To agree. 532.

*ACCORDEDEN*, pa. t. pl. L. W. 108.

*ACCORDANT*, } part. pr. { 10417.

*ACCORDING*, } { 6308.

*ACCUSE*, v. FR. To discover. R. 1561.

*ACHATE*, n. FR. Purchase. 573.

*ACHATOUR*, n. FR. A purchaser; a caterer. 570.

*ACHEKED*, part. pa. SAX. Choaked. L. W. 2006.

*ACHEVE*, v. FR. To accomplish. R. 2049. 4800.

*ACKELE* (*Akele*), v. SAX. To cool. C. L. 1076.

*ACLOVE*, v. A. F. 517. may perhaps mean—To cloy; to embarrass with superfluity.

*ACQIS*, v. FR. To make quiet. R. 3364.

*ACOMBERD*, part. pa. FR. Encumbered. 510.

*ACROKE*, adj. FR. Crooked, aukward. C. L. 378.

*ADAWE*, v. SAX. To awake. 10874. T. III. 1126.

*ADO*, v. SAX. To do. It is used to express the FR. *à faire*.

*To have ADO*. R. 3038. *To have to do*. *And den all*

*that they han ADO*. R. 5080. *Et facent ce qu'ils doivent FAIRE*. Orig. 4801.

*ADON* (corruption of *OF-DON*), part. pa. SAX. Done away. L. W. 2582.

*ADON*, pr. n. Adonis. 2226.

*ADOUN*, adv. SAX. Downward. 3417.—Below. 17034.

*ADRAD*, *ADRADDE*, part. pa. of *ADREDE*, v. SAX. *Afraid*, 607, 3425.

*ADRIANE* for *ARIADNE*, pr. n. 4487.

*ADVENTENCE*, n. FR. Attention. T. iv. 608.

*ADVOCACIES*, n. pl. FR. Law-suits. T. II. 1469.

*ADVOCAS*, n. pl. FR. Lawyers, advocates. 12225.

*AFFERD*, *AFFERDE*, part. pa. SAX. *Afraid*, frightened. 12218. T. II. 606.

*AFFECTE*, n. LAT. Affection. R. 5496. T. III. 1397.

*AFFERMED*, part. pa. FR. Confirmed. 2351. L. W. 790.

*AFFIE*, v. FR. To trust. R. 3185.

*AFFRAY*, v. FR. To affright. 8331.

— n. FR. Disturbance, 5557.—Fear. R. 4397.

*AFFRIKAN*, pr. n. The elder *Scipio Africanus*. A. F. 41.

*AFIL*, v. FR. To file, polish, 714.

*AFOREN*, *AFORNE*, *AFOR*, adv. et prep. SAX. *Æt*-*foran*. Before.

*AGAIN*, prep. SAX. *On-ȝeæn*. Against. 2453. 10456. Toward. 4811. 5412.—adv. 993. 10456.

*AGAST*, for *AGASTED*, part. pa. Terrified. 2343.

*AGASTE*, v. SAX. To terrify. 1509.

*AGATHON*, pr. n. L. W. 586. I have nothing to say concerning this writer, except that one of the same name is quoted in the *Prolog* to the *Tragedy of Cambises*, by Thomas Preston. There is no ground for supposing, with *Gloss. Ur.* that a *philosopher of Samos* is meant, or any of the *Agathoes* of antiquity.

*AGAINS*, prep. 13067, as *AGAIN*.

*AGEN*, adv. 803, as *AGAIN*.

*AGILTE*, v. SAX. To offend, to sin against. P. 171, col. 1, l. 57.

— for *AGILTED*, pa. t. Sinned. 5674.

*AGO*, *AGON*, for *Yeon*, part. pa. SAX. Gone; past. 2339. 6445.

*AGRES*, FR. *à gré*. In good part. R. 4349.

*AGREFE*, (*d'gréfe*). In grief. 14890. T. III. 894.

**AGRORE**, *n. Fr.* To aggravate. *M. 167*, col. 2, l. 46.  
**AGROVED**, *part. pa. Fr.* Injured, agrieved. 4197. *L. W. 345*.  
**AGRISE**, *v. Sax.* To shudder. 6034.—To make to shudder. 7231.  
**AGRORE**, *pa. t.* Shuddered, trembled. *T. ii. 930. L. W. 830*.  
**AGROTED**, *part. pa.* Cloyed, surfeited. **AGROTONES** WITH MEKE OR DRINKS. *Ingurgito*. Prompt. Parv.  
**AGUTLER**, *n. Fr.* A needle-case. *R. 98*.  
**AJUST**, *v. Fr.* To applie. *Bo. ii. pr. 3*.  
**AKENORNS**, *n. pl. Sax.* Acorus. *Bo. i. m. 6*.  
**AKNOWS**, *part. pa. Sax.* To ben aknooes. *C. L. 1199*. To confess. *I am aknooe*. *Bo. iv. pr. 4*. I acknowledge.  
**AL**, **ALLS**, *adj. Sax.* All. *Al and some*. 5673, 11916. The whole thing. *At al.* 821, 9098. In the whole. *Over all*. 7695, 8994. Through the whole. *In alle manere wise*. 1376. By every kind of means. *At alle rightes*. 2102. With every thing requisite.  
**ALAIN**, *pr. n. A. F.* 316. A poet and divine of the thirteenth Century. Beside his *Plantus Naturæ*, or *Plaint of Kinde*, which is here quoted, he wrote another poem in Latin verse, called *Anticlaudianus*, to which our author alludes in *F. ii. 478*. For the rest of his works see *Fabric. Bibl. Med. Æt.* in *v. ALANUS DE INSULIS*.  
**ALDER**, **ALLER**, *grs. ca. pl.* Of all. 601. 625. It is frequently joined in composition with adjectives of the superl. deg. *Alderfirst*. 9498. *Alderlast*. *B. K. 804*. *Alderleest*. *T. iii. 240*. First, Last, Dearest of all.  
**AL**, **ALL**, *adv. Sax.* generally answers to the *Lat. Omnino*. *Al alone*. 9900. Quite alone. *Al hol.* 11762. Entire. *Al holly*. 7678. Entirely. *All in onc.* *C. D. 670*. At the same time. *All newe*. 13308. A-new. *Al only*. 13368. *T. iv. 1698*. Solely, singly. It is sometimes used elliptically for *although*, or *all be it that*. 2208. *All tell I not as now his observances*. 2477. *All be ye not of a complexion*.  
**ALARGED**, *part. pa. Fr.* *Elargi*. Given largely. *C. D. 156*.  
**ALAUENS**, *n. pl. A.* A species of Dog. See the *n. on* ver. 2150. They were much esteemed in Italy in the thirteenth century. *Gualfr. de la Ramma*, (ap. Murator. *Antiq. Med. Æ. t. ii. p. 394*.) commends the governors of Milan, *quod equos emissarios equabuss magnis commiserunt, et procreati sunt in nostro territorio Dextrarii nobiles, qui in magno prelio habentur*. Item *CANES ALANOS alta statura et mirabilis fortitudinis nutrire studuerunt*.  
**ALAYS**, *n. Fr.* Alloy; a mixture of base metal. 9043.  
**ALBIFICATION**, *n. Lat.* A Chemical term for making white. 16273.  
**ALCALY**, *n. Arab.* A Chemical term for a species of Salt. 16278.  
**ALCHYMISTRE**, *n. Fr.* Alchemist. 16672.  
**ALDIAN**, *pr. n. A.* A star on the neck of the Lion. *Sp. 10579*.  
**ALC AND BRED**. 13901. This oath of Sire Thopas on *alc and bred* was perhaps intended to ridicule the solemn vows, which were frequently made in the days of Chivalrie to a Peacock, a Pheasant, or some other noble bird. See *M. de Sainte Palaye, Sur l'anc. chev. Mem. IIIme*. I will add here, from our own history, a most remarkable instance of this strange practice. When Edward I. was setting out upon his last expedition to Scotland in 1306, he knighted his eldest son and several other young noblemen with great solemnity. At the close of the whole (says Matthew of Westminster, p. 454.) *allati sunt in pompatic gloria duo cyoni rei olores ante regem, phalerati retibus aureis vel astutis drauatis, desiderabile spectaculum intuentibus. Quibus visis, Rex votum votit Deo Cæli et Cyonis se proficisci in Scotiam, mortem Johannis Comyn et fidem læsam Scotorum vivus sive mortuus vindicaretur, &c.* This practice is alluded to in "Dunbar's wish, that the King were John Thomson's man." *MS. Maitland. St. 5*.

I wold gif all that ever I have  
 To that condition, so God me sail,  
 That ye had vovit to the swan  
 And yair to be John Thomson's man.

And so in the *Prol. to the Contin. of the Canterb. T.* ver. 432. the Hosteler says—I MAKE A VOWE TO THE PROCKE, *they shall wake a foule mist*.  
**AL SESE**, *v. Fr.* To alleviate. *R. 6936*.

**ALBUERANCE**, *n. Fr.* Alleviation. *C. D. 1098*.  
**ALNIS**, *n. Fr.* *Alise*. The Lote-tree. *R. 1377*.  
**ALNEMERS**, *n. pl. Fr.* Vessels for distilling; Still. 16362.  
**ALE-STAKE**, *n. Sax.* A stake set up before an Ale-house, by way of sign. 12355.  
**ALVEY**, *n. Fr.* An alley. 13491.  
**ALGATES**, **ALGATS**, *adv. Sax.* Always. *Toutes/bis. Fr.* 7031, 7619.  
**ALGIZIN**, *pr. n. A.* A city of Spain. 57.  
**ALIGNT**, *v. Sax.* To descend. 8785.  
 ——— *pa. t.* for **ALIGHTED**. 985, 2191.  
**ALEXANDRE**, *pr. n.* Alexandria, a city in Egypt. 51.  
**ALLEGGE**, *Fr.* To alledge. 9632.  
**ALMAGIST**, *pr. n.* 5765. The Arabs called the *Μηγιστὸν Σαρραφῆ* of Ptolemae *Almagesti*, or *Almegisti*, a corruption of *Μηγιστῶν*. See *D'Herbelot*, in *v.*  
**ALMANDRES**, *n. pl. Fr.* Almond-trees. *R. 1363*.  
**ALMERS**, *n. Sax.* from the *Lat. Gr. Elemeoyra*. *Alme*, 7191. *P. 171*, col. 1, l. 5. **ALMERS**, *pl. F.* 171, col. 1, l. 17.  
**ALMATH**, *pr. n.* The first star in the horns of *Aries*, whence the first mansion of the moon takes its name. *Sp. 11263*.  
**ALONDE**, (*A'loude*); *On land.* *L. W. 2164*. 2402.  
**ALONG**, *prep. Sax.* **On-long**, 16368. *Whereon it was along*. By what it was occasioned. *T. ii. 1001*. *On me is nought along thine evil fare*. *Thy ill fare is not occasioned by me*.  
**ALOUNE**, *part. pa. Fr.* Praised. *R. 2364*.  
**ALOUS**, *v. Fr.* To allow, to approve. 16698. *His dodes are to allowe for his hardyness*. *P. L. 281*. *Therefore lords allow him litle, or listen to his reason*. *F. F. 78. b*.  
**ALOWE**, *adv. Sax.* Low. *C. L. 1201*.  
**ALPES**, *n. pl.* Bullfinches. *R. 628*.  
**ALS**, *conj. Sax.* Also. 4315, 11908.—*As. T. v. 387*.  
**AMALGAMING**. A Chemical term for mixing of Quicksilver with any metal. 16336.  
**AMBASATRIE**, *n. Fr.* Embassy. 4663.  
**AMBES AS**, 4644. Two Aces, at dice. *Fr.*  
**AMBLING**, *part. pr. Fr.* 2364.  
**AMENDE**, *v. Fr.* To mend. 3068, 3076.  
**AMENUSE**, *v. Fr.* To lessen. *P. 154*, col. 2, l. 36.  
**AMEVED**, *part. pa. Fr.* Moved. 6374.  
**AMIAS**, *pr. n.* The city of Amiens. *R. 3698*.  
**ANIDDES**, *prep. Sax.* At, or in, the middle. 2011.  
**ANIS**, *adv. Sax.* Ill, badly. 11610, 17197. See *Mm*.  
**ANONESTE**, *v. Fr.* To admonish, to advise. *M. 112*, col. 2, l. 14. *P. 170*, col. 2, l. 22.  
**AMONG**, *adv. Sax.* Together; at the same time; at the same place. *R. 660*, 3681. *Du. 398*. *Ever among*. *R. 3771*. *Ever at the same time*. *Conf. Am. 114. b*.  
**AMONGES**, *prep. Sax.* Among. 6534, 9902. See the *n. on* ver. 761.  
**AMORETTE**, *n. Fr.* An amorous woman. *R. 4755*. *And eke as well by (r. be) AMORETTES.—Car aussi bien sont AMORETTES*. Orig. 4437.  
**AMORILY**, *C. L.* 1383. is perhaps put by mistake for *Merily*.  
**AMORTISED**, *part. pa. Fr.* Killed. *P. 151*, col. 2, l. 2.  
**AMORWE**, *On the morrow*. 824, 2491.  
**AMPHIBOLOGIES**, *n. pl. Fr.* *Ga.* Ambiguous expressions. *T. iv. 1406*.  
**AN**, for *ON*, *prep.* 11161. *R. 2270*.  
**ANCILLE**, *n. Lat.* A maid-servant. *A. B. C. 100*.  
**ANCHE**, *n. Fr.* Anchor. *R. 3780*.  
**AND**, *conj. Sax.* If. 769, 10307, 16613, 16714.  
**ANELACE**, *n.* 359. See the note.  
**ANES**, *adv.* for *ONKE*. *Once*. 4072.  
**ANHANG**, *v. Sax.* To hang up. 12193.  
**ANTIETHISED**, *part. pa. Fr.* Reduced to nothing. *M. 111*, col. 2, l. 59.  
**ANIGHT**, *In the night*. *L. W. 1473*.  
**ANKER**, *n. Sax.* An anchorite, or hermit. *R. 6348*.  
**ANNWILLER**, *n.* 16480. See the note.  
**ANNUNCIAT**, *part. pa. Lat.* Foretold. 14021.  
**ANOIK**, *n. Fr.* Hurt, trouble. *R. 4404*. 15066  
 ——— *v.* To hurt, to trouble. *M. 108*, col. 1, l. 48.  
**ANOIFUL**, *adj.* Hurtful; unpleasant. *M. 108*, col. 1, l. 8.  
**ANTEM**, *n. Sax.* Antepn. An anthem. 13390.  
**ANTICLAUDIAN**. *F. ii. 478*. The title of a Latin poem by *Alanus de Insulis*. See *ALAIN*.

- ANTILEGIUS, *pr. n.* Antiochus. Du. 1084.  
 ANTIPHONERE, *n. LAT. GR.* A book of Antiphones, or *Antheus*. 13449.  
 ANVIL, *n. SAX.* An anvil. Du. 1165.  
 ANY, *adj. SAX.* Either; One of two. 7115.—It usually signifies one of many.  
 APAISE, *part. pa. FR.* Paid, satisfied. 1870, 9439.  
 APAIRE, *v. FR.* See *APERIRE*.  
 APE, *n. SAX.* Metaphorically, a fool. 3389, 16781. *The monk put in the manne hode an ape, And in his wife's etc.* 13370. The monk made a fool of the man, and of his wife too.—*Win of ape*. 16993. See the note.  
 APERIRE, *v. FR.* To impair; to detract from. 3149. *Our state it aperire.* P. L. 290.—To be impaired; to go to ruin. T. II. 329. *6. 267*  
 APERT, *adj. FR.* Open. P. 161, col. 1, l. 39. *Pries and apert*. 6698. In private and in publick. *10 54, 5*.  
 APRES for OPRES, *n. pl. FR.* Opiates. L. W. 2656.  
 APPALED, *part. pa. FR.* Made pale. 10679, 13032.  
 APPARAILE, *v. FR.* To prepare. L. W. 2462.  
 APPARENCE, *n. FR.* An appearance. 11577.  
 APPERCEIVE, *v. FR.* To perceive. 8476.  
 APPERCEIVING, *n. pl.* Perceptions. 10600.  
 APPETITE, *v. FR.* To desire, to covet. L. W. 1580.  
 APPOSE, *v. FR.* To object to; to question. 7179, 15831. It seems to be a corruption of *Oppose*.  
 APPROVER, *n. FR.* An informer. 6925.  
 APPRENTICE, *n. pl. FR.* Apprentices, novices. R. 687.  
 AQUITABLE, *adj. FR.* Easy to be acquainted with. R. 2213.  
 AQUITE, *v. FR.* To pay for. 6742.  
 ARACHE, *v. FR.* To draw away by force. 8979.  
 ARANDE, *n. SAX.* A message. T. II. 72.  
 ARAYE, *n. FR.* Order. 8138.—Situation. 6484, 13300.—Clothing. 6509.—Equipment. 6821.  
 —, *v. FR.* To dress. 3689.—To dispose. 8837.  
 ARBALASTERS, *n. pl. FR.* *Arbalestres*. Engines to cast darts, &c. R. 4196.  
 ARCHANGE, *n. R.* 915. The herb so called; a dead nettle. *Gloss. Urr.*—In the Orig. it is *Mesange*, the bird which we call a Titmouse.  
 ARCHBISHOP, *n. SAX. LAT.* An Archbishop. 7084.  
 ARCHDEKEN, *n. SAX. LAT.* An Archdeacon. 6884.  
 ARCHIDIACRE, *n. FR.* Archdeacon. C. D. 2136.  
 ARCHWIVES, 9071. Wives of a superior order.  
 ARDURE, *n. FR.* Burning. P. 168, col. 1, l. 17.  
 ARDE, *v. SAX.* To interpret. Du. 289. See *Itede*.  
 ARERAGE, *n. FR.* Arrest. 604.  
 ARISE, *v. SAX.* To raise. P. 159, col. 1, l. 23.  
 ARBONE, *v. FR.* *Arraisonner*. To reason with. R. 6220.  
 ARREST, *n. FR.* Arrest, constraint. 9158. Delay. L. W. 806.  
 —, *v. FR.* To stop. 829.  
 ARRTTE, *v. FR.* To impute to. 728. P. 159, col. 1, l. 69.  
 ARGOIL, *n. FR.* Potter's clay. 16281.  
 ARISTE, *pr. n.* Aries, one of the signs in the Zodiac. T. IV. 1562. T. v. 1180.  
 ARISTOTLE, *pr. n.* 10547. A treatise on *Perspective*, under his name, is mentioned by Vincent of Beauvais, in the XIII. century. *Spec. Histor. L. III. c. 84. Extat etiam liber, qui dicitur Perspectiva Aristotelis*.  
 ARIVAGE, *n. FR.* F. l. 223. as *Arivaille*.  
 ARIVAILL, *n. FR.* Arrival. F. 451.  
 ARK, *n. LAT.* A part of the circumference of a circle. 4422.  
 ARME, *n. T. II.* 1650. may perhaps be put for *defence, security*.  
 ARMLES, *adj. SAX.* Without an arm. 14906.  
 ARM-ORETS, *adj. SAX.* As thick as a man's arm, 2147.  
 ARMIPOTENT, *adj. LAT.* Mighty in arms. 1964.  
 ARMORIK, *pr. n.* *Basse Bretagne*, in France, called antiently *Britannia Armorica*. 11041.  
 ARMURE, *n. FR.* Armour. M. 113, col. 1, l. 25.  
 ARM, *pl. n. of AM. v. SAX.* Are. 4706, 8918.  
 ARNOLDE OF THE NEWE TOWNE, *pr. n.* of a Physician Chemist of the XIII. Century. 16896. See *Fabric. Bibl. Med. Hist.* in v. ARNALDUS VILLANOVANUS.  
 AROUNE, *F. II. 32.* seems to signify *At large*. AROUNS on more utter. *Remota deprope scorum*. Prompt. Parv. *A'now*; in a row; probably from the *FR. Esc.* Successively. 6836. R. 7606.  
 ARITHMETIK, *n. LAT.* *Arithmetick*. 1908. See the note.  
 ARTE, *v. LAT.* To constrain. T. I. 369. C. L. 46.  
 ARTILLERIE, *n. pl. FR.* Artillerie. M. 113, col. 1, l. 25.  
 AS, *adv. SAX.* *Alp.* Al so. *Omnino sic.* *As fast.* T. v. 1640. Very fast. *As swith.* 6087, 16404. Very quickly; immediately. See the n. on ver. 3172.  
 ASCAUNCE. See the n. on ver. 7337.  
 ASHEN, *n. pl. SAX.* Ashes. 1304. T. II. 539.  
 ASLAKE, *v. SAX.* To slacken; to abate. 1762. 3553.  
 ASPE, *n. SAX.* A sort of poplar. 2923. L. W. 2637.  
 ASPEN, *adj.* Of an asp. 7949.  
 ASPIC, *v. FR.* To espie. 13321.  
 ASPRE, *adj. FR.* Rough, sharp. T. IV. 827. Bo. IV. pr. 7.  
 ASPRENESE, *n.* Sharpness. Bo. IV. pr. 4.  
 ASSAUT, *n. FR.* Assault. 991.  
 ASSEGE, *n. FR.* Siege. 10890.  
 ASSETH, *R.* 5600. Sufficient, enough. *Asses.* Orig. P. P. fol. 94. b. *And if it suffice not for ASSETH.*  
 ASSESE, *n. FR.* Situation. R. 1238.  
 ASSOILE, *v. FR.* To absolve; to answer. 9528. C. L. 1284. *Assoliteh.* imp. m. 2. perf. pl. 9528.  
 ASSOMONED, *part. pa.* Summoned. C. L. 170.  
 ASSURE, *v. FR.* To confide. T. I. 681.  
 ASTERTE, *v. SAX.* To escape. 1597. 6550.—To release. 6936. *Asterie* for *Asteried.* *part. pa.* 1594.  
 ASTONED, 8192, *ASTONIED.* 11651. *part. pa. FR.* Confounded, astonished.  
 ASTROLABRE, *n. FR.* Astrolabe. 3900.  
 ASTROLOGIEN, *n. FR.* Astrologer. *At.*  
 ASWYVED, *part. pa. SAX.* Stupified, as in a dream. F. II. 41.  
 ASWOUNE, *n.* in a swoon. 3621, 6. 10788. T. III. 1098. *Adoun he fell all sodenly in swoun.*  
 AT, ATTE, *prep. SAX.* See the n. on ver. 12542. *At after souper.* 10616, 11531. As soon as supper was finished. *At day.* 13169. At break of day. *At on.* 4193, 8313. Of one mind.  
 ATTACK, *v. SAX.* To overtake. 16094.  
 —, for *ATAKER.* *part. pa.* 6968.  
 A'THRE; in three parts. 2935.  
 ATTAKED, *part. pa. FR.* *Entamé.* Opened; Begun. 14894.—Tasted, felt. C. D. 596.—Disgraced. C. D. 1128.  
 ATTEMPRE, *adj. FR.* Temperate. 14844. M. 107, col. 1, l. 34.  
 ATTEMPRELY, *adv. FR.* Temperately. 13192.  
 ATTOUR, *n. FR.* Head-dress. R. 3718.  
 ATTRY, ATTERLY, *adj. SAX.* Poisonous, pernicious. P. 156, col. 2, l. 2.  
 A'TWINNE, 3569. A'two, P. 167, col. 1, l. 46. In two, asunder.  
 ATYEAR. See the n. on ver. 4728.  
 AVALE, *v. FR.* To lower; to let down. 3194.—To fall down. T. III. 627.  
 AVANCE, *v. FR.* To advance; to profit. 246. T. v. 434.  
 AVANT, *n. FR.* Boast. 227.  
 AVANTAGE, *n. FR.* Advantage. 2449.  
 AVANTE, *v. FR.* To boast. 5985.  
 AVAUNT, *adv. FR.* Forward. R. 3958, 4790.  
 AUDITORIS, *n. LAT.* A text of Scripture; or of some respectable writer. See the n. on ver. 6858.—and ver. 5583. 6790.  
 AUCTION, *n. LAT.* A writer of credit. 6794.  
 AVENAUT, *adj. FR.* Becoming. R. 1263.  
 AVENTAIL, *n. FR.* See n. on ver. 9060.  
 AVENTURE, *n. FR.* Adventure. 846.  
 AVENROU, *pr. n.* 435. Ebn Roschd, an Arabian Physician of the XII. century. See D'Herbelot, in v. Roschd, and the authors mentioned in n. on ver. 433.  
 AUGHT, *n. SAX.* *Apht.* Any thing. T. III. 468. It is sometimes used as an adverb. *If that the childes mother were aught she.* 5454. *Can he ought tell a merry tale or twee?* 71065.  
 AUGHT, *ps. t. of OWE.* T. III. 1801. as *OUGHT*.  
 AUGHT-WHERE, *adv. SAX.* Any where. L. W. 1538.  
 AUGRIN, a corruption of *Algorithm*. See n. on ver. 3310.  
 AVICEN, *pr. n.* 434. 12823. Ebn Sina, an Arabian physician of the X. century. See D'Herbelot, in v. Sina, and the authors mentioned in n. on ver. 433.  
 AVIS, *n. FR.* Advice. 1670. *The king at his avis sent messengers thre.* P. L. 288.



**AVISAND**, *part. pr.* Observing. C. D. 1882.  
**AVISS**, *v. Fr.* To observe. T. H. 576. *Arise! you. imp. m. 2 perf. pl.* Look to yourselves; take care of yourselves. 3185.  
**AVISION**, *n. Fr.* Vision. 15150, 3.  
**AUMALE**, *n. Fr.* An ambling pace. 13814.  
**AUMERIE**, *n. Fr.* *Aumerie*. A purse. R. 2087.  
**AUMERE**, *n. R.* 2271. *Aumere* of silk. *Bourse de soy.* Orig. It seems to be a corruption of **AUMERIE**.  
**AUTRE**, *v. Fr.* Corruption of **AVENTURE**. To adventure. 4207.  
**AUTROUS**, *adj.* Adventurous. 13837.  
**AVOUTERIE**, **AVOUTRE**, *n. Fr.* An adulterer. F. 167, col. 1, l. 7. 6954.  
**AVOUTERIE**, **AVOUTRE**, *n.* Adulteries. 6883. 9309.  
**AVOW**, *n. Fr.* Vow. 2239. 2419.  
**AUSORA**, *Du.* 1169. The title of a Latin metrical version of several parts of the Bible by *Petrus de Riga*, Canon of Rheims, in the XII. century. *Leyser*, in his *Hist. Poet. Med. Ævi*, p. 692—736. has given large extracts from this work, and among others the passage which Chaucer seems to have had in his eye. See p. 728.  
*Aure Jubal varios ferramenti notat ictus.  
 Pondera libat in his. Consona quaque facit.  
 Hoc inventa modis prius est ars musica, quamvis  
 Pythagoram dicant hanc docuisse prius.*  
**AUTER**, *n. Fr.* Altar. 2294.  
**AWAITE**, *n. Fr.* Watch. 7239. 17086.  
**AWAITING**, *part. pr.* Keeping watch. 7634.  
**AWAPED**, *part. pa. Sax.* Confounded, stupified. T. I. 316. L. W. 814.  
**AWAYWARD**, *adv. Sax.* Away. 17311.  
**AWREKE**, *v. Sax.* To revenge. 10768. R. 578.  
**AXE**, *v. Sax.* To ask. 3537.  
**AXING**, *n.* Request. 1828.  
**AY**, *adv. Sax.* Ever. 7406.  
**AYEL**, *n. Fr.* Grandfather. 2478.  
**AYEN**, *adv. & prep.* P. 106, col. 1, l. 56. as AGAIN.  
**AYENET**, *prep.* P. 169, col. 1, l. 15. as AGAIN.  
**AYENWARD**, *adv. Sax.* Back. T. III. 751.

## B.

**BA**, *v.* 6015, seems to be formed from **BASSE**, *v. Fr.* To kiss.  
**BACHELER**, *n. Fr.* An unmarried man. 9150.—A Knight: 3067. 3465.—One who has taken his first degree in an University. 11438.  
**BACHELERIE**, *n. Fr.* Knighthood; 17074. *The Bachelerie.* 8146. The Knights.  
**BADE**, *pa. t. of BEDE.* 6706. 7449.  
**BADDER**, *comp. d. of BAD.* *adj. Sax.* Worse. 10538.  
**BAGGE**, *v.* To swell; to disdain. *Sk.* Rather, perhaps, to squint. *Du.* 624.  
**BAGGINGLY**, *adv. R.* 292. seems to be the translation of *en lorgnoyant*; squintingly.  
**BAILLIE**, *n. Fr.* Custody, government. R. 4302. 7574.  
**BAITE**, *v. Sax.* To feed; to stop to feed. T. I. 192. C. L. 195.  
**BALANCE**, *n. Fr.* Doubt, suspense. R. 4667.—*I dare LAY IN BALANCE All that I have.* 16079. *I dare wager all t. I. h.*  
**BALE**, *n. Sax.* Mischief, sorrow. 16949.  
**BALES**, *C. L.* 80. *v. BALAIS.* *pr. n. Fr.* A sort of bastard Ruby.  
**BALKES**, *n. pl. Sax.* The timbers of the roof. 3626.  
**BALLED**, *adj.* Smooth as a ball; bald. 181. 3520.  
**BALDON**, *n. Fr.* See **Du Cange**, in *v. ANANDONS*. To *h. r. bandon*. R. 1163. To her disposal. *A son bandon.* Orig.  
**BANE**, *n. Sax.* Destruction. 1099.  
**BARBE**, *n.* A hood, or muffler, which covered the lower part of the face, and the shoulders. T. II. 110. See **Du Cange**, in *v. BARBUTA*.  
**BARRE**, *pa. t. pl. of BERE.* *v. Sax.* Bore. 723.  
**BARGAINE**, *n. Fr.* Contention. R. 2531.  
**BARGARET**, *n. Fr.* *Bergerette*. A sort of song. F. L. 348.  
**BARNE**, *n. Sax.* The lap. 10945. 14750. *BARNE-CLOTH*, 7236. An apron.  
**BARRE**, *n. Fr.* A bar of a door. 552.—A stripe. 331.  
**BARRENE**, *adj. Sax.* Barren. 2294.  
**BASILCOCK**, *n.* A Basilisk. P. 106, col. 1, l. 68.  
**BASSE**, *n. Fr.* A Kiss. C. L. 797.  
**BASTING**, *part. pr.* Sewing slightly. R. 164.  
**BATAILED**, *part. pa. Fr.* Embattled. R. 4162.  
**BATHE** for **BOTHE**. 4085. 4189.  
 — *v. Sax.* 16273. We should rather say to *bask*.  
**BAUDE**, *adj. Fr.* Joyous. R. 5674.  
**BAUDERIE**, **BAUDRE**, *n.* Pimping. 1928. T. II. 328. Keeping a bawdy-house. 6867.  
**BAUDY**, *adj.* Dirty. 16103. *With BAUDY cote.* *Lydg. Trag.* R. ix. l. 36. b.  
**BAVARD**, *pr. n. Fr.* Originally, a Bay-horse; a horse in general, 16881. T. I. 218.  
**BAY-WINDOW**, *C. L.* 1058. A large window; probably so called, because it occupied a whole bay, i. e. the space between two cross-beams.  
**BE**, *prep. Sax.* By. 2577.  
**BE** for **BEEN**, *part. pa. Sax.* 60. 7611. 2945.  
**BEAU SEMBLANT**, *Fr.* Fair appearance. C. L. 1085.  
**BEAU SIRE**, *Fr.* Fair Sir; a mode of address. R. 6053.  
**BERLEDDER**, *part. pa. Sax.* Covered with blood. 2004.  
**BERLOTTE**, *v. Sax.* To stain. T. II. 1027.  
**BECKE**, *v. Fr.* To nod. 12330. 17295.  
**BECLAPPE**, *v. Sax.* To catch. 15477.  
**BEDAFFED**, *part. pa. Sax.* Made a fool of. 9067. See **DAFFE**.  
**BEDDE**, *v. Sax.* To order, to bid.—To offer. 6236. 9638. T. v. 185.—To pray. R. 7374. *To bede his necke.* T. iv. 1105. To offer his neck for execution.  
**BEDOTE**, *v. Sax.* To make to dote; to deceive. L. W. 1845. See **DOT**.  
**BEDREDE**, *adj. Sax.* Confined to bed. 7351. 9168.  
**BEDREINTE**, *part. pa. Sax.* Drenched, thoroughly wetted. C. L. 577.  
**BEEN**, *n. pl. Sax.* Been. 10518.  
**BEFILL** for **BEFELL**, *pa. t. of BEFALL.* *v. Sax.* 10067.  
**BEFOREN**, **BEFORNE**, *adv. et prep. Sax.* Before.  
**BEFOILED**, *part. pa. Fr.* Beguiled. 12208.  
**BEGON**, *part. pa. of BEGO.* *v. Sax.* Gone. *Wel begon.* 6188. R. 5533. In a good way. *W'o begon.* 5338. 11628. Far gone in woe. *W'orse begon.* T. v. 1327. In a worse way. *With gold begon.* R. 943. Painted over with gold; *d or painted.* Orig.  
**BEGONNE**, *part. pa. of BEGINNE.* *v. Sax.* Begun. 11341.  
**BEHALVE**, *n. Sax.* Half; side, or part. T. iv. 945.  
**BEHESTE**, *n. Sax.* Promise. 4461, 2.  
**BEHETE**, *v. Sax.* To promise. 1856.  
**BEHEWE**, *part. pa. Sax.* Coloured. T. iii. 216. See **HEWE**.  
**BEHIGTE**, *v. Sax.* To promise. P. 154, col. 2, l. 42.  
 — *part. pa.* Promised. 11100.  
**BEHIGHTEN**, *pa. t. pl.* Promised. 11639.  
**BEHOVE**, *n. Sax.* Behoof, advantage. R. 1120.  
**BEJAFED**, *part. pa. Sax.* Tricked. 19863. Laughed at. T. I. 532.  
**BEKNOWE**, *v. Sax.* To confess. 1558. 5306.  
**BEL ANY**, *Fr.* Good friend. 12252.  
**BELIEVE**, *n. Sax.* Belief. *His beleve.* 3456. His creed.  
**BELLE**, *adj. fem. Fr.* Fair. T. ii. 288.  
**BELLE CHERE**, *Fr.* Good cheer. 13330.  
**BELLE CHOSE**, *Fr.* 6029. 6092.  
**BELLE ISAUDE**, *F. III.* 707. The fair Isaude; the mistress of Tristan. She is called *Isoude*. L. W. 254.  
**BELLE**, *v. Sax.* To quarrel. F. iii. 713.  
**BELMARIS**, *pr. n.* See *n. on ver.* 57.  
**BELOUS**, *n. Sax.* Bellows. P. 154, col. 1, l. 8.  
**BEMES**, *n. pl. Sax.* Trumpets. 15404. R. 7605.  
**BEN**, *inf. m. Sax.* To be. 141. 167.  
 — *pr. t. pl.* Are. 764. 890. 945.  
 — *part. pa.* Been. 361. 463.  
**BENCHED**, *part. pa.* Furnished with benches. L. W. 204.  
**BENDE**, *n. Fr.* A band; or horizontal stripe. R. 1078.  
**BENDING**, *n.* Stripping; making of bands, or stripes. F. 153, col. 2, l. 30.  
**BENE**, *n. Sax.* A beard. 9728. *And al n'as wurth a BENE.* R. G. 497.  
**BENEDICTS!** *LAT.* An exclamation, answering to our

- Bless us* It was often pronounced as a Trisyllable, *Bencite*! 18369. T. i. 781. ill. 788. 862.
- BENIGNE, a f. Fr.** Kind. 8973.
- BENINGE, v. SAX.** To take away. P. 158, col. 2, l. 25.
- BENIMON, n. Fr.** Benediction. 9239.
- BENIMON, part. pa. of BENINGE.** Taken away. R. 1509.
- BENT, n. SAX.** The bending, or declivity of a hill. 1863.
- BERAINED, part. pa. SAX.** Rained upon. T. iv. 1172.
- BERDS, n. SAX.** Beard. *To make any one's berde*; to cheat him. See n. on ver. 4094.
- BERE, n. SAX.** A bear. 8090.
- **v. SAX.** To bear; to carry. *To bere in, or on hand*; To accuse falsely. 5040. 5975. To persuade falsely. 5814, 5962.—*To bere the belle*. T. iii. 199. To carry the prize.
- **n. SAX.** A bier. 2906.—A pillow-bear. Du. 254.
- BERING, n. SAX.** Behaviour. P. 155, col. 1, l. 40.
- BERNE, n. SAX.** Yest. 16381.
- BERNARD, pr. n. 436.** A Physician of Montpellier in the thirteenth Century. See the authors mentioned in n. on ver. 433.
- **pr. n. L. W. 16.** St. Bernard, Abbot of Clairvaux in the thirteenth Century. Our author alludes to a proverbial saying concerning him. *Bernardus ipse non vidit omnia*. See Hoffman, in v.
- BERNE, n. SAX.** A barn. 3328.
- BESANT, n. Fr.** A piece of gold, so called because first coined at Byzantium, now Constantinople. Sk. lt. 1106.
- BESSEKE, v. SAX.** To beseech. 9290.
- BESST, BESITTE, part. pa. SAX.** Placed, employed. 3896. 7534.
- BESSEY, part. pa. of BESSE, v. SAX.** Besoon. *Evil bessey*, 8841. Ill-beseen; of a bad appearance. *Richely bessey*, 8860, of a rich appearance. *p. 369*
- BESHET, part. pa. SAX.** Shut up. R. 4488. T. iii. 603.
- BESHREWE, v. SAX.** To curse. 6426. 7.
- BESIDE, prep. SAX.** By the side of. 5597. 6002.
- BESMOTRED, part. pa. SAX.** Smutted. 76.
- BESPET, part. pa. SAX.** Spit upon. P. 152, col. 1, l. 33.
- BESTADDE, BESTAD, part. pa. SAX.** Situated. 5069. It is sometimes used in an ill sense, for *Distressed*. R. 1227.
- BESTE, n. Fr.** A beast. 1978.
- **adj. sup. SAX.** Best. 1808. 11843.
- BEST, adj. SAX.** Busy. 2855.
- BET, BETTE, adv. comp. for BETTER.** 7533. 13362.
- BETAKE, v. SAX.** To give. 3748. To recommend to. 8037.
- BETAUGHT, pa. t. Recommended to. R. 4438.** See the n. on ver. 13852.
- BETE, v. SAX.** To prepare, make ready. *To bete fies*. 2255. 2294. To make fies.—*To mend*; to heal. *To bete nettes*, 3925. To mend nets. *To bete sorwe*, T. i. 606. To heal sorrow.
- **v. Fr.** To beat. 4206.
- BETECHS, v. as BETAKE.** See the n. on ver. 13852.
- BETE, imp. m. 2 pers. pl. SAX.** Be ye. 7656. 17239.
- BETID, BETIDDE, pa. t. & part. of BETIDE, v. SAX.** Happened. 7773. T. ii. 55.
- BETOKS, pa. t. of BETAKE.** Recommended. 16009.
- BETRAINED, part. pa. Fr.** Betrayed. *Thei have BETRAINED thec*. P. l. 255.
- BETWIX, BETWIXEN, prep. SAX.** Between. 2134.
- BEWEP, v. SAX.** To weep over. T. i. 763.
- BEWRET, BEWRET, v. SAX.** To discover. 5193. 9747. T. ii. 537.
- BEYE, v. SAX.** To buy. 16762. See **AREYE**.
- BEYETS, part. pa. SAX.** Begotten. T. i. 978.
- BIALACOL, pr. n. Fr.** *Bel-accueil*. Courteous reception. R. 2984. & al. The same person is afterwards called *Faire welcoming*. R. 3836.
- BIBED, part. pa. LAT.** Drunk. 4160.
- BIBLE, n. Fr.** Any great book, 16325. F. iii. 244.
- BIOCHEL BONES.** See the n. on ver. 12890.
- BIDDE, v. as BIDE.** 3641.
- BIE, v. SAX.** To suffer. 5749. See **AREYE**.
- BIGINE, pr. n. Fr.** *Beguine*. A nun, of a certain order. R. 6861, 7308. See Du Cange, in v. *Beghinas*.
- BIKEN, n. SAX.** A quarrel. L. W. 2650.
- BILDER, n. SAX.** A builder. *The bilder oks*. A. F. 176. The oak used in building.
- BILL, n.** A letter. 9611.
- BIMENE, n. SAX.** To bemoan. R. 2967.
- BINT, for BINDETH.** C. M. V. 47, 8.
- BIRDE for BRIDE, n. SAX.** R. 1014.
- Hire chere was simple, as BRIDE in bower*. l. e. as bride in chamber.
- Simple fut comme une REPOUSER.* Orig.
- BISMARE, n. SAX.** Abusive speech. 3963. *And bold, and abiding, BISMARE to suffer*. P. P. 108. b.
- BIT, for BIDDETH.** 187. 10605.
- BITORE, n. Fr.** A bittern. 6554.
- BITRENT, part. pa.** Twisted; carried round. T. iii. 1237. iv. 870. Perhaps from the SAX. *Betpýmian*. *Circumdare*.
- BIVOFEN, part. pa. of BEWEP.** Drowned in tears. T. iv. 916.
- BLANCMAISER, n. Fr.** 369. seems to have been a very different dish in the time of Chaucer, from that which is now called by the same name. There is a receipt for making it in *Ms. Harl. n. 4016*. One of the ingredients is, "*the braune of a capon, tised small*."
- BLANDISE, v. Fr.** To flatter. P. 154, col. 2, l. 34.
- BLANCHE FEVERE, T. i. 917.** See Cotgrave, in v. "*Fievres blanches*. The agues wherewith maidens that have the greenesickness are troubled; and hence; *Il a les fievres blanches*: Either he is in love, or sick of wantonness." C. N. 41. *I am so shaken with the FEVERS WHITE*.
- BLK, n. SAX.** Colour. Magd. 391.
- BLKE, pr. n. 16024. 16952.** A forest in Kent. Ur.
- BLEINS, n. SAX.** A pustule. R. 553.
- BLEND, v. SAX.** To blind. To deceive. T. ii. 1496.
- BLENT, pa. t. of BLEND.** T. v. 1194.
- **part. pa.** 9967. 16545.
- **pa. t. of BLENC, v. SAX.** Shrunked, started aside. 1080. And so perhaps it should be understood in ver. 3751. and T. iii. 1352.
- BLEERED, part. pa. SAX.** In its literal sense is used to describe a particular disorder of the eye, attended with soreness and dimness of sight: and so perhaps it is to be understood in ver. 16198. But more commonly, in Chaucer, a man's eye is said to be *bleered* metaphorically, when he is any way imposed upon. 17201. lt. 3912. See also ver. 3863.
- BLEVE, v. SAX.** To stay. T. iv. 1357.
- BLIN, v. SAX.** To cease. 16539.
- BLISS, v. SAX.** To bless. 8428.
- BLIVE, BELIVE, adv. SAX.** Quickly. 5973. 7102.
- BLOOME, n. SAX.** Blossom. 3324.
- **v.** To blossom. 9336.
- BLOOMY, adj.** Full of blossoms. 9337.
- BOB UP AND DOWN, pr. n.** of a town in the road to Canterbury. 16931. It is not marked in the common maps.
- BOBANCE, n. Fr.** Boasting. 6151.
- BOCHE, n. Fr.** *Bosse*. A swelling; a wen or boil. Do. ill. pr. 4.
- BODE, BODEN, part. pa. of BEDE, v. SAX.** Bidden, commanded. 6612.
- BODE, pa. t. of BIDE, v. SAX.** Remained. T. v. 92.
- **n. SAX.** A stay, or delay. An. 120.
- **An omen.** A. F. 343.
- BODERIN, n. SAX.** A dagger. 3968.
- BOECK, pr. n. 6750. 15248.** Boethius. His most popular work *De consolations Philosophie* was translated by Chaucer certainly before 1381, (See L. W. 425.) and probably much earlier. The reflections on Predestination, in T. iv. 966—1078, of which there is no trace in the *Filosofo*, are almost entirely taken from Bo. v. pr. 3. Several other passages of the same work, which our author has copied, have been pointed out in the notes on ver. 743. 2923.
- BOISTE, n. Fr.** A box. 12241.
- BOISTOUS, adj. SAX.** Boisterous; rough. 17160.
- BOISTOUSLY, adv.** Roughly. 8067.
- BOKEWER, n. Fr.** A buckler. 112.
- BORELING, part. pr. Fr.** Buckling. 2505.
- BOKET, n. SAX.** A bucket. 1535.
- BOLAS, n.** Bullace; a sort of plumb, or sloe. R. 1577.
- BOLN ARMONIAC.** 16258. Armenian earth. Fr. Ga.

- BULLEN**, part. pa. of *BALAN*, v. SAX. Swollen. R. K. 101.  
**BOLT**, n. SAX. An arrow. 3364. *Bolt-upright*. 13946.  
 Straight as an arrow.  
**BONE**, n. SAX. A boon, petition. 3671. *He bade hem all a bone*. 9492. He made a request to them all.  
**BORAS**, n. FR. BORAX. 632. 16258.  
**BORD**, n. FR. A border; the side of a ship. 3585. *Over bord*. 5342.  
**BORDE**, n. SAX. A table. 82.  
**BORDEL**, n. FR. A brothel.—*Bordel-women*. P. 169, col. 2, l. 26. Whores.  
**BORDELLERS**, n. pl. Keepers of bawdy-houses. R. 7084.  
**BOREL**, n. FR. Bureau. Coarse cloth of a brown colour. See *Du Cange*, in v. *BURELLUS*. In ver. 5338, it seems to signify clothing in general.  
 — *adj.* made of plain, coarse stuff. 11028.—*Borel folk*. 7454, 6. *Borel men*. 13661. Laymen. So in P. P. 50. *Borel clerks* is probably put for *Lay clerks*.  
**BORWE**, n. SAX. A pledge. *Hath laid to borwe*. 1634. Hath pledged. *Have here my feith to borwe*. 11546. Have here my faith for a pledge. *Saint John to borwe*. 10910. St. John being my security.  
**BOSARD**, n. FR. A buzzard; a species of Hawk, unfit for sporting. R. 4033.  
**BOSS**, n. FR. A protuberance. 3365.  
**BOST**, n. SAX. Pride, boasting. 14108.  
 — *adv.* Aloud. *He cracked wost*. 3699. *He spake thise wordes bost*. P. L. 273.  
**BOTE**, n. SAX. Remedy; Help; Profit. 426. 13306.  
 — n. SAX. To help. P. 155, col. 2, l. 46.  
 — pa. t. of *BITR*. v. SAX. Bit. 14519. *His sword best bote*. P. L. 243.  
**BOTELS**, *adj.* SAX. Bootless; remediless. T. l. 783.  
**BOTEL**, *BOTELLE*, n. FR. Bottle. 7513. 12820.  
**BUTTERFLIE**, n. SAX. A butterfly. 15390.  
**BOTHE**, *adj.* SAX. Two together. *Our bothe labow*. T. l. 973. The labour of us two together. *Nostrum amborum labor*. In T. iv. 168. Ed. Ca. reads *your botther low*, which might lead one to suspect that *botther* was the ancient genitive case of *BOTHE*, as *Allee* was of *Alle*. See the Essay, &c. n. 27.  
 — *conj.* is generally used to copulate two members of a sentence; but sometimes *more*. See ver. 992.  
 And rent adoun *bothe* wall, and sparre, and rafter.— And ver. 2300.  
 To whom *bothe* heven, and erthe, and see is sene.  
 So the Greeks sometimes used *ἄμφω*.  
 Od. i. 78. *Ἀμφὶν ἄνδρσιν, καὶ ἀνδράσιν, καὶ οὐρανῷ*.  
**BOTHUM**, n. FR. Bouton. A bud, particularly of a rose. R. 1721. *et al.*  
**BOUDERON**, n. FR. A sodomite. R. 7072.  
**BOUGHTON UNDER BLEE**, *pr. n.* of a town in Kent. 16024.  
**BOUKE**, n. SAX. The body. 7748.  
**BOULTE**, v. SAX. To sift, to separate the flour of wheat from the bran. 15246.  
**BOUN**, *adj.* SAX. Ready. 11807. *And bade hem all to be bowne*. P. P. 10. b.  
**BOUNTEE**, n. FR. Goodness. 8033, 10163.  
**BOURDE**, n. FR. A jest. 17030.  
**BOURDE**, v. FR. To jest. 12712.  
**BOURDON**, n. FR. A staff. R. 3401. 4092.  
**BOURE**, n. SAX. A house; a chamber. 3367. 13673.  
**BOWE**, n. SAX. A bow, 108. *A dogge for the bowe*. 6051. 9888. A dog used in shooting.  
**BOXE**, n. A blow. L. W. 1386.  
**BRACER**, n. FR. Armour for the arm. 111.  
**BRADWARDIN**, *pr. n.* 15248. Thomas Bradwardine, Archbishop of Canterbury in 1349. His book *De causa Dei*, to which our author alludes, is in print. See Tanner, in v. *BRADWARDINUS*.  
**BRAIDE**, n. SAX. A start. L. W. 1164. *At a BRAIDE*. R. 1338. *Tantlost*. Orig.  
 — v. SAX. To awake; to start. 4283. 6381. See *ABRAIDE*. *Out of his wit he braide*. 11339. 14456. He ran out of his senses. In ver. 5257, it signifies to take off. See also F. iii. 588.  
**BRACKET**, n. BRIT. *Bragot*. A sweet drink made of the wort of ale, honey, and spice. 3861. It is still in use in Wales. Richards, in v. *Bragot*.  
**BRASIL**, n. A wood used in dyeing, to give a red colour. 15465.—This passage of Chaucer is a decisive proof, that the Brazil-wood was long known by that name before the discovery of the country so called in America. See *Huetiana*, p. 268. In the inventory of the effects of Henry V. *Rot. Parl.* 2 H. VI. m. 20. is the following article. "ii *Graundes peces du Bracile*, pris vi. s. viii d." **BRATT**, n. SAX. A coarse mantle. 16349.  
**BRECH**, n. SAX. Breeches. 12682.  
**BREDS**, n. SAX. Breadth. 1972. *In brade*. T. l. 531. A broad. In F. iii. 132. it seems to be put for *bride*.  
**BREME**, *adj.* SAX. Furious. 1701. *full scharply and full brim*. P. L. 244.  
**BRENNE**, v. SAX. To burn. 2333.  
**BRENT**, pa. t. & part. Burnt. 2427. 2939.  
**BRENNINGLY**, *adv.* SAX. Hotly. 1503.  
**BRENS**, n. pl. FR. Briars. 1534.  
**BRESTE**, v. SAX. To burst. 1982. 11071.  
**BRET-FUL**, *adj.* 689. The sense is much more clear than the etymology.  
**BRIE**, n. FR. Properly, what is given to a beggar; *What is given to an extortioner, or cheat*. 6890.  
**BRIEN**, *inf. m.* FR. To beg. 4415. or perhaps, *To steal*. See *Rot. Parl.* 22 E. IV. n. 30. *Have stolen and maked Signette* (Cygnet). And so in P. P. 115. b. a *brishour* seems to signify a thief; as *brishors*, *pilors*, and *pitsharweis*, are classed together; and still more plainly in *Lydg. Trag.* 152.  
 Who saveth a *theft*, when the rope is knet,—  
 With some false turne the *brishour* will him quite.  
 See also *Antical Scottish Poems*, p. 171. st. 7. l. 2.  
**BRIGOURS**. 6940. Upon second thoughts, I believe that I was wrong in adopting this word from *Ma. C. i.* and that we should rather read with other MSS.  
 "Certain he knew of *britheries* mo."  
 See the n. on ver. 2469.  
**BRIDALE**, n. SAX. A marriage-feast. 4373.  
**BRIDDES**, n. pl. SAX. Hirds. 10925.  
**BRIGE**, n. FR. Contention. M. 118, col. 1, l. 4.  
**BRIKE**, n. SAX. Breach; Ruin. 14700.  
**BRIKKE**, *adj.* R. 1836. T. iv. 184. as *BREKKE*.  
**BRIOAGE**, n. A treaty by a broker or agent. 3375. R. 6871.  
**BROCHE**, n. FR. Seems to have signified originally the tongue of a buckle or clasp; and from thence the buckle or clasp itself. 3265. 8131. T. v. 1660. But see ver. 168. It probably came by degrees to signify any sort of jewel.  
**BROCHE JUELL**. Monile, armilla. Prompt l'arr. See *NOUCHE*.  
**BROIDED**, part. pa. FR. Braided; woven. 1051.  
**BROKKING**, part. pr. Throbbing; quavering. 3377.  
**BRONKHOLME**, *pr. n.* A priory in Norfolk. 4284. *The roode of Bronkholme* is mentioned in P. P. 24.  
**BRONDE**, n. FR. A torch. 9651.  
**BROSTEN**, part. pa. of *BRESTE*. 3827.  
**BROTEL**, *adj.* SAX. Brittle. 9155. M. 114, col. 2, l. 45.  
**BROTELNESSE**, n. Brittleness. 9155.  
**BROTHERNED**, n. SAX. Brotherly affection. 12972.  
**BROUDED**, part. pr. FR. Brodd. Embroidered. 14367.  
**BROKEN**, *inf. m.* SAX. To brook; enjoy; use. 10182. 15306.  
**BUCKES HORNE**. A buck's horn. 3367. To blow the *bucks horne* is put for any useless employment.  
**BUFFETTE**, n. FR. A blow. P. 151, col. 2, l. 46.  
**BUOLE-HORN**, n. A drinking-vessel made of horn. 11265.  
 Gloss. *Ur.* derives it from *Bucula cornu*. The Gloss. to *Anc. Scott. Po.* explains *Bougle* to mean a Buffalo. I have been told that in some parts of the North a Bull is now called a *Bougle*.  
**BUMBLE**, v. SAX. To make a humming noise. In ver. 6354. it is used to describe the noise made by a bittern.  
**BURDON**, n. FR. Bourdon. A humming noise; the bass in music. 675. 4163.  
**BURIELS**, n. pl. SAX. Burying-places. 15654.  
**BURNED**, part. pa. FR. Burnished. 1985.  
**BURNEL THE ASSE**. 15318. See the note. The story supposes, that the priest's son, when he was to be ordained,

- directed his servant to call him at cock-crowing, and that the cock, whose leg he had formerly broken, having overheard this, purposely refrained from crowing at his usual time; by which artifice the young man was suffered to sleep till the ordination was over.
- BURNETTE, n. Fr. *Brunette*. Cloth dyed of a brown colour. R. 236. 4756. See Du Cange in v. BURNETUM.
- BUSH, n. Fr. A bush. R. 54. 102.
- BUTTE, BUT, adv. & conj. SAX. But; *Sed*. 4894.—Unless; *Nisi*. 13115. *I n'ere but lost. Non cassem nisi perdit.* 15042. 16069.—Only. 11349. *which that am but torne.*
- BUT, prep. SAX. Without. *Gloss. Ur.* I cannot say that I have myself observed this preposition in Chaucer, but I may have overlooked it. The Saxons used it very frequently; and how long the Scottish writers have laid it aside, I am doubtful. It occurs repeatedly in Bp. Douglas. *But spot or fall*. p. 3. l. 53. *Poets but pers.* p. 9. l. 19. *But and ren.* p. 123. l. 40. *Without and within*; *Butan and binnan*; originally, I suppose, *Bi utan and bi innan*. *By and with* are often synonymous.
- BUXOME, adj. SAX. Obedient; civil. 13107. 13172.
- BUXOMLY, adv. SAX. Obediently. 8062.
- BY, prep. SAX. has sometimes the signification of *IN*. *By the morrow*. 18965. In the morning, or day-time. See the note. *By his life*. R. 5955. In his life-time.—It is sometimes used adverbially. *By and by*. 1013. 4141. Near, hard by. *By and by*. *Significatio*. Prompt. Parv. See R. 4581. *These were his wordes by and by. i. e. Severally; distinctly.* And so perhaps this phrase should be understood in the passage above quoted.
- BYFORNE. See BEFORE.
- BYLEVE, v. SAX. To stay. 10897. T. iii. 624.
- BYRAFT, part. pa. of BYRYVE, n. SAX. Bereaved; taken away. 1363.
- BYWORD, n. SAX. A proverb. T. iv. 769.
- C.
- CACCHIE, v. To catch. P. 166. col. 1. l. 57.
- CADENCE, n. Fr. F. ii. 114. See the n. on ver. 17354. and *Jun. Etymolog.* in v. p. 208
- CAENRUD, pr. n. of a city in Bretagne. 11120.
- CATTIF, n. & adj. Fr. *Cetif*. A wretch; wretched. 1719. 1948.
- CALCINATION, n. Fr. A chemical process, by which bodies are reduced to a calx. 16272.
- CALCULED, pa. t. Fr. Calculated. 11506.
- CALSWITH, R. 7093. Is probably mis-written. The Orig. has *La poire du CAILOUET*. 12468. Coigrave says, that *Caillout* is the name of a very sweet pear.
- CALIDONE, pr. n. 12539. It should be *Lacdomie*. See the n. on ver. 12537.
- CALIOPIA, pr. n. F. iii. 182. We should rather read *CALYPIA*, with the two Bodl. MSS. for *Calyssa*.
- CALLE, n. Fr. A species of cap. 6600. T. iii. 775.
- CAMAILLE, n. Fr. A camel. 9072.
- CAMELINE, n. Fr. A stuff made of camel's hair. R. 7367.
- CAMUSE, adj. Fr. Flat. 3632. 3673.
- CAN, v. SAX. To know. 4467. 5632. See CONNE.
- CANANEN, adj. Fr. Cananean. 15527.
- CANE, pr. n. Cana in Galilee. 5593.
- CANEL, n. Fr. Canal. Channel. Du 943.
- CANNELLE, n. Fr. Cinnamon. R. 1370.
- CANEVAS, n. Fr. Canvas. 16407.
- CANON, 12294. The title of Avicenna's great work. See D'Herbelot, in v. CANON.
- CANTER, n. SAX. A fragment. 3010.
- CAPEL, n. LAT. A horse. 17013. 4. *And gave him CAPLES to his carle*. P. P. 108.
- CAPTAIN, n. Fr. A captain. 12516.
- CAPITOLIE, n. LAT. The Capitol at Rome. 14621. 3.
- CAPPE, n. LAT. A cap, or hood. *To set a man's cap*. 568. 2145. *To make a fool of him.*
- CAPTIF, adj. Fr. Captive. T. iii. 363.
- CARDIALE, n. Fr. Gr. A pain about the heart. 12947.
- CARACTER, n. pl. LAT. Gr. Characters. P. P. 61.
- CARPE, pa. t. of CARVE, v. SAX. Cut. 14519.
- CARLE, n. SAX. A churl; a hardy country fellow. 547.
- CARMES, n. pl. Fr. Carmelite Friars. R. 7462.
- CAROLE, n. Fr. A sort of dance. 1933.
- v. Fr. To dance. 2204. *In caroling*. 16813. In dancing.
- CARPE, v. To talk. 476. *By CARPING of longe*; *By speech*. P. P. 566.
- CARRAINE, n. Fr. A carrion; dead or putrified flesh. 2015. 14542.
- CARRIKE, n. Fr. A large ship. 7970.
- CARTE, n. SAX. A chariot. 9024.
- CARTER, n. SAX. A charioteer. 9024.
- CAS, n. Fr. Cas. Chance. 846. *Upon cas*. 3661. T. i. 271. *By chance*.
- n. Fr. *Casse*. A case; quiver. 2360.
- CASIODORE, pr. n. M. 111, col. 1, l. 8. *Casiodorus*; a Roman Senator and Consul. A. C. 513. Several of his works are extant. See Fabric. *Bibl. Lat. and Bidl. Met. &c.*
- CAST, n. SAX. A contrivance. 3605. 2470.
- CASTE, v. To throw. T. iii. 712. L. W. 1931.—*To contrive*. M. 120, col. 1, l. 23.
- CASTELOUNE, pr. n. Catalonia, in Spain. F. iii. 158.
- CASURI, adj. Fr. Accidental. T. iv. 419.
- CATAPUCE, n. Fr. A species of spurge. 14071.
- CATEL, n. Fr. Goods; valuable things of all sorts. 542. 3977. 4447.
- CATERWAWED, 5636. *To gon a caterwawed* seems to signify the same as *to go a caterwauling*; or *caterwauling*, as it has been called by later writers.
- CATON, pr. n. See the n. on ver. 3257.
- CAUGHT, pa. t. et part. of CATCH. 8086. 11824.
- CAVILATOUN, n. Fr. Cavil. 7718.
- CECILE, CECILIE, pr. n. Cecilia. 15664. 15686.
- CEISE, R. 7252. *CEISE*. A. F. 481, are misprinted for *SEISE*, v. Fr. To seize; to lay hold of.
- CELEBER, n. LAT. *Celebrius*. The officer in a monastery who had the care of the provisions. 13942.
- CELLE, n. LAT. A religious house. 172. It seems to be put for a man's head. 13978. See also 1378.
- CELSITUDE, n. Fr. Highness. C. L. 611.
- CENSER, n. Fr. An incense-pot. 3340.
- CENSING, part. pr. Fr. Fumigating with incense. 3341.
- CENTAURIE, pr. n. of an herb. 14069.
- CERCLE, v. Fr. To surround. R. 1619.
- CERCLA, n. pl. Fr. Circles. 9036.
- CERIAL, adj. Fr. Belonging to the species of oak called *Cerrus*. LAT. *Cerro*. ITAL. *Cerre*. Fr. 2292.
- CERTAIN, adj. Fr. Is used sometimes as a substantive. *Of unces a certain*. 16944. *A certain of gold*. 16402. i. e. A certain number of ounces; a certain quantity of gold.
- CERTAIN, CERTEN, adv. Certainly. 3495. 6790.
- CHERUK, n. Fr. White lead. 632.
- CHESD, part. pa. for CHESSED, C. M. 87. is used in a legal sense. *To that he cesed therewith*; Till that he be possessed thereof; Till he have *seisen* thereof.
- CHESSE, v. Fr. To cease. T. ii. 483.
- CHASE, v. Fr. To chase; to pursue. 8217. 8269.
- CHAFE, v. Fr. To grow warm or angry. P. 161, col. 1, l. 64.
- CHAFFARE, n. SAX. Merchandise. 4558. 13915.
- v. SAX. To merchandise. 4559.
- CHAIRRE, n. Fr. A chair. 14531. The chair, or pulpit, of a professor or preacher. 7100.
- CHALONS, 4138. See the note.
- CHAMBERERE, n. Fr. A chamber-maid. 5822. 8695.
- CHAMFARTIE, n. Fr. A share of land; *A partnership in power*. 1951. Lydgate has the same expression. *Trag.* 139. B. viii. 17.
- CHANTEPLEURE, n. Fr. A sort of proverbial expression for singing and weeping successively. An. 323. See Lydg. *Trag.* St. the last; where he says that his book is
- “ Lyke Chantepleure, now singing now weping.”
- In MS. Harl. 4333. is a Ballad, which turns upon this expression. It begins; *Moult want mieux pleure chante que ne fait chante pleure.*
- CHANTERIE, n. Fr. An endowment for the payment of a priest, to sing mass agreeably to the appointment of the founder. 812. There were thirty-five of these Chanteries

- established at St. Paul's, which were served by fifty-four Priests. *Dugd. Hist. prof.* p. 41.
- CHAPMAN, n. Saxon. A merchant or trader. 13184, 6.
- CHAPMANNEDE, n. Saxon. The condition of a chapman or tradesman. 13169.
- CHAR, n. French. A chariot. 2140. 14398.
- CHARBOOLE, n. French. A carbuncle. 13800.
- CHARGE, n. French. A load, burthen; business of weight. *It n're no charge.* 2869. It was no harm. *Of which there is no charge.* 10673. From which there is no consequence to be expected. *Of that no charge.* 16217. No matter for that.
- v. French. To weigh, to incline on account of weight. F. ii. 237.—Which chargepath not to say. T. iii. 1882. Which it is of no importance to say.
- CHARBANT, particip. French. Burthensome. M. iii. col. 2, l. 49. P. 162, col. 1, l. 55.
- CHARMERES, n. French. An enchantress. F. iii. 171.
- CHASTELAINE, n. French. The wife of a *Chastelain*, or lord of a castle. R. 3740.
- CHASTIE, v. French. To chastise. R. 6063.
- CHAUNTECLERE, pr. n. of a cock. 14875.
- CHEERE, n. French. A chess-board. Du. 690.
- CHEER, pa. t. of CHESE, v. Saxon. Chose. 9471. 10039.
- CHEVVIS, R. 7091. We should read *Cheses*. The Orig. has *fromages*.
- CHEKE, Du. 659. A term at chess, to give notice to the opposite party, that his king, if not removed, or guarded by the interposition of some other piece, will be made prisoner. It is derived originally from the Persian *Shah*, i. e. *King*; and means, *Take care of your king*. See Hyde, *Hist. Shahid.* p. 3, 4.
- CHEKELATOUN, 13064. See the note.
- CHEKEMATE, or simply *MATE*, is a term used at chess, when the king is actually made prisoner, and the game consequently finished. The Persian phrase is *Shah mat*, i. e. *The King is conquered*. T. ii. 754. Du. 659. 660. See Hyde, *Hist. Shahid.* p. 182.
- CHELAUNDRE, n. French. A goldfinch. R. 81.
- CHEPE, v. Saxon. To cheapen; to buy. 5830.
- n. Cheapness. 6105. F. iii. 894.
- pr. n. Cheapside in London. 756. 4378.
- CHECHE, n. Saxon. A church. 2762.
- CHEER, n. French. Countenance; appearance. 8114. 9117.—Entertainment; good cheer. 13257.
- CHEICHE, v. French. To cherish. 14438.
- CHEIBANCE, n. French. Comfort. R. 3337.
- CHERL, n. Saxon. A man of mean birth and condition. 6740. 7764.
- CHEALISH, adj. Illiberal. 11887.
- CHEE, n. French. The game of chess. 11212.
- CHESE, v. Saxon. To choose. 6480. 11368.
- for CHESTH. 6497.
- CHESTR, n. Latin. A coffin. 7905.
- n. Debate. P. 158, col. 2, l. 57.
- CHESTRINE, n. French. The chestnut tree. 2924.—The chestnut fruit. R. 1375.
- CHEVACHIE, n. French. An expedition. See the n. on ver. 85. and ver. 16999.
- CHEVALRIE, n. French. Knighthood; the manners, exercises, and valiant exploits, of a knight. 45. 2108. 2106.
- CHEVALROUS, adj. Vallant. T. v. 802.
- CHEVE, v. French. To come to an agreement, or conclusion. *Yvel mote he cheve.* 16693. Ill may he end. See ver. 4173. *Ye, they shal have the flour of YVEL ENDING.*
- CHEVERAILE, n. French. A necklace. R. 1042. The word does not occur in the Orig. in this place, but it is used in ver. 21897.
- Et pour tenir la CHEVERAILE  
Deux fermes d'or au col luy baillie.*
- CHEVETAIN, n. French. Chieftain. 2557.
- CHEVIBANCE, n. French. An agreement for borrowing of money. 13259. 13277. 13321.
- CHICHE, adj. French. Niggardly, sparing. R. 5588.
- CHICHEVACHE. See the n. on ver. 9064.
- CHIDRESSH, n. Saxon. A female scold. R. 4276.
- CHIDESTER, n. Saxon. A female scold. 9409.
- CHIENTER, French. Tenderness; affection. 8078. 13908.
- CHIKK, n. Saxon. A chicken. R. 541.
- CHIMNEY, n. Saxon. The prominent part of the staves beyond the head of a barrel. 3893.
- CHIMBE, v. To sound in consonance, like bells. 3894.
- CHIMNEY, n. French. A chimney. T. iii. 1147.
- CHINCHE, adj. as CHICHE. R. 5598. *Conf. Am.* 108. b.
- CHINCHESSH, n. Niggardliness. M. 116, col. 2, l. 63.
- CHIRCHE, n. Saxon. A church. 11263.
- CHIRCHESWE, n. Saxon. A church-warden. 6869.
- CHIRCHHAWE, n. Saxon. A church-yard. P. 169, col. 1, l. 54.
- CHIRK, v. Saxon. To chirp, as a sparrow. 7366.
- CHIRKING, n. A disagreeable sound. 2005. F. iii. 853.
- CHIT for CHIDETH. 16399.
- CHIVACHE, n. as CHEVACHIE. 16999.
- CHIVER, v. Saxon. To shiver. R. 1732. B. K. 231.
- CIBBERE, n. pl. French. Wax-tapers. R. 6348.
- CIPPOUN, pr. n. Scipio. R. 10.
- CIPRIS, pr. n. Venus. F. ii. 10.
- CIRCE, pr. n. for CIRCE. 1946.
- CITTE, n. French. A city. 941.
- CITOLE, n. French. A musical instrument. 1961. Sir John Hawkins, in his very curious *History of Music*, v. 2. p. 108. n. supposes it to have been a sort of *Dulcimer*, and that the name is a corruption of the Lat. *Cestella*. Beside the passage which he has quoted from Gower, *Conf. Am.* 178. it is mentioned again in fol. 189. among the instruments which *sounded lowe*. See also Du Cange, in v. CITOLA, and M. de la Ravalliere, *Poésies du Roy de Navarre*. T. i. p. 248.
- CITRIN, adj. French. Of a pale yellow, or citron-colour. 2169.
- CITRINATION, n. A chemical term. Arnoldus in Rosario MS. l. l. c. 5. *Citrinacio nihil aliud est quam completa albedinis digestio, nec albedo est aliud quam nigredinis ablatio*. Gloss. Carpent. in v.
- CLAMEN, pa. t. pl. of CLIME, v. Saxon. F. iii. 1061.
- CLAPPERS, n. pl. French. Rabbit-burrows. R. 1405.
- CLAPPE, v. Saxon. To knock repeatedly. 7163, 6.—To talk fast. 9076.
- CLAPPETH, imp. n. 2 pers. pl. 9076.
- CLAPPING, n. Noisy talking. 8875.
- CLAPPED. Clapped. 275.
- CLARKE, n. French. Wine mixed with honey and spices, and afterwards strained till it is *clear*. 1473. 9717. It was otherwise called *Piment*; as appears from the title of the following receipt, in the *Medulla Chirurgie Rolandi*. MS. Bod. 761. fol. 86. "*Claretum bonum, sive pigmentum*.—*Accipe nucem moschatam, cariophyllos, gingebas, macis, cinamomum, galangum; que omnia in pulverem redacta distempera cum bono vino cum terit parte mellis: post cola per sacculum, et da ad bibendum*. Et nota, quod illud idem potest fieri de *cerreisid*." And so in R. 8967. *Clarre* is the translation of *Piment*. Orig. 11453.
- CLATTEREDEN, pa. t. pl. of CLATTER, v. Saxon. 2425.
- CLAUDIAN, pr. n. His poem *De rapto Proserpine* is alluded to in v. 10106. See also F. l. 449. iii. 419.
- CLAUSE, n. French. An end, or conclusion. T. ii. 728.
- CLAW, v. Saxon. To stroke. T. iv. 728. *He CLAWED him on the back.* 4324. He stroked him on the back, to encourage him. *To claw on the gall,* 6522. signifies the same as *To rub on a sore place*.
- CLIO for CLAD. T. iii. 1527.
- CLENENESS, n. Saxon. Purity. 7465. 7492.
- CLEPE, v. Saxon. To call. 3432.—To name. 4011.
- CLERGIE, n. French. The clerical profession. 6850.
- CLERGIAL, adj. Learned. 16220.
- CLERGION, n. A young clerk. 13433.
- CLERK, n. French. A person in holy orders. P. 169, col. 1, l. 44.—A man of learning. 482.—A student at the university. 3199. 6109. THE CLERK OF OXFORD. See his CHARACTER, ver. 287—310.
- CLEVES, n. pl. Saxon. Rocks. L. W. 7468. See CLIFFE.
- CLIFFE, n. Saxon. A rock. L. W. 1495.
- CLIFFE, n. Saxon. A cleft. 7737.
- CLIKET, n. French. A key. 9901, 5. 7.
- CLINKK, v. French. To ring. 12926.
- v. neut. To tinkle. 12598.
- CLIPPE, v. Saxon. To cut hair. 3324.—To embrace. 10687.
- CLIPPY, adj. As if oil-piled. R. 5346.

- CLOBBED**, *adj.* SAX. Like a club. 13904.  
**CLOISTER**, *n.* FR. A cloister. 7681.—An inclosure. 15511.  
**CLOMBEN**, *pa. t. pl.* of CLIMB, *n.* SAX. 3638.  
**CLOSED**, *n.* FR. An inclosure. R. 4069.  
**CLOTE-LEFE**. A leaf of the bur-dock, or clove-bur. 18045.  
**CLOTHED**, *part. pa.* SAX. Clotted. 2747.  
**CLOVE-GILFIRE**. See the note on ver. 13692.  
**CLOUTER**, *n. pl.* SAX. Small pieces. 9837.  
**CLUM**, 3639. This word seems to be formed from the Sax. *clumian*. *Mussilare, murmurare*; to express the mumbling noise, which is made by a congregation in accompanying prayers, which they cannot perfectly repeat.  
**COAGULAT**, *part. pa.* LAT. Curdled. 16379.  
**COCKES BONES**. 16938. 17340. A corruption of a familiar oath, which appears undisguised in ver. 18629.  
**COD**, *n.* SAX. A bag. 12468.  
**COFRE**, *n.* FR. A chest. 300. 8461.  
**COGGE**, *n.* SAX. A cock-boat. L. W. 1479. See Du Cange, in *v.* Cogge.  
**COILONS**, *n. pl.* FR. Testicles. 12886.  
**COINE**, *n.* FR. A piece of money. 9044.  
 — A quince. R. 1373.  
**COINT**, *adj.* FR. Neat; trim. C. D. 1824.  
**COKE**, *n.* LAT. A cook. See his CHARACTER, ver. 381, 9.  
**COKENEY**. See the *n.* on ver. 4206.  
**COKEWOLD**, *n.* A cuckold. How this word has been formed is difficult to say, but probably it has some relation to the *FR. Cocus*. In the best MSS. of the CANTERBURY TALES it is constantly spelled as above; and is always, I believe, to be pronounced as a *trisyllable*. See ver. 3184. 3286. 6796. 7198. 10130. 12316. The author of the *Remedie of Love*, ver. 298. seq. pretends, that the *true orthographie* of this word is *cokcold*, according to a most absurd *etymologie*, which he has there given of it; an additional proof, if any were wanted, that the *Remedie of Love* was not written by Chaucer.  
**COL**. See the *n.* on ver. 16321.  
**COLD**, *v.* SAX. To grow cold. 6299.  
**COLER**, *n.* FR. A collar. 3239. T. V. 1689.  
**COLLARED**, *part. pa.* Collared; wearing collars. 2154.  
**COLLATION**, *n.* FR. A conference. 8801.  
**COLLINGS**, *n. pl.* FR. Embraces round the neck. T. L. ii. 340.  
**COLTISH**, *adj.* SAX. Playful as a colt. 9791.  
**COLUMBINE**, *adj.* LAT. Belonging to a dove; dove-like. 10018.  
**COMBRE-WORLD**, *n.* An incumbrance to the world. T. iv. 279.  
**COMBUST**, *adj.* LAT. Burnt. 16379. A term in astrology, when a planet is not more than 8° 30' distant from the sun. T. iii. 718.  
**COMES FOR COMETH**, 15710.  
**COMMENIAL**, *n.* FR. A companion at table. T. L. i. 319.  
**COMMUNE**, *n.* FR. Commonalty. 7946.  
**COMMUNES**, *n. pl.* Commoners; common people. 5511.  
**COMPAIGNABLE**, *adj.* FR. Sociable. 12934.  
**COMPANS FOR COMPAGNE**. 3709. See the note.  
**COMPAS**, *n.* FR. A compass; a circle. *The trine compas*. 15613. The Trinity; an appellation borrowed, as it seems, from the common emblem of that mystery, a circle circumscribing a triangle.—*Contrivance*. F. L. 461. iii. 80.  
**COMPASSENT**, *n.* L. W. 1414. } *Contrivance*.  
**COMPASSING**, *n.* 1996.  
**COMPASS**, *v.* To contrive. L. W. 1412. *He compassed his thought*. 5011. He contrived in his thought.  
**COMPENABLE**, *adj.* FR. 14878. as *COMPAGNABLE*.  
**COMPERS**, *n.* FR. A gossip; a near friend. 672. 4417.  
**COMPLAIN**, *n.* FR. *Complic*. Even-song; the last service of the day. P. 154, col. 2, l. 68.—Singing, in general. 4169.  
**COUPOWNED**, *part. pa.* Composed; put together. L. W. 2574. F. ii. 521.  
**COMPTES**, *n.* FR. Account. R. 8026.  
**CONCRETE**, *n.* FR. Conception; apprehension. Bo. iii. pr. 10.  
**CONDESCENDS**, *v.* FR. To yield. 10721.  
**CONDESE**, *n. pl.* FR. Conduits. R. 1414.  
**CONJECTURE**, *n.* FR. Composition. 12798.  
**CONFUSE**, *adj.* FR. Confounded. 2332. 15631. *He became so CONFUSE, he conneth not loks*. P. F. 47. b.  
**CONJECTS**, *v.* FR. To project. R. 6928.  
**CONSAUNCE**, *n.* FR. Understanding. It. 3468.  
**CONJURE**, *v.* FR. To adjure. 13574.  
**CONNE**, *v.* SAX. To know; to be able. *I shal not cowne answers*. M. 118, col. 1, l. 85. *I shall not know how, or be able, to answer. Thou shalt never—Con known*. R. 7135. *Thou shalt never be able to know.—To conne thank*; to be pleased, or obliged; *Spavoir gré*. Fr. 1810. 3068. *To conne maugré*. R. 4559. To be displeased; *Spavoir mal gré*. Orig.  
**CONSEIL**, *n.* FR. Counsel. 9237.  
**CONSENTANT**, *part. pr.* FR. *Consentant of this cursedness*. 12210. Consenting to *t. o.*  
**CONSERVE**, *v.* FR. To preserve. 15835.  
**CONSTORY**, *n.* FR. signifies usually an Ecclesiastical Court; but in *v.* 12098. 12191. any court of justice.  
**CONSTABLERIE**, *n.* FR. A ward, or division of a castle, under the care of a constable. R. 4218. See Du Cange, in *v.* CONSTABULARIUS CASTRI.  
**CONSTANTINE**, *pr. n.* See the *n.* on ver. 9694.  
**CONTREKE**, *n.* SAX. Contention. 2005. T. V. 1478. 14958.  
**CONTENANCE**, *n.* FR. Appearance; pretence. 4419. 16732.  
**CONTRACT**, *part. pa.* LAT. Contracted. P. 163, col. 2, l. 18.  
**CONTRARIANES**, *part. pr.* is used in the plural number, according to the French custom. T. L. i. 312. b. Opposing; contradicting.  
**CONTRARIIS**, *v.* FR. To contradict. 6939.  
**CONTRARIOUS**, *adj.* FR. Opposite. 6280. Perverse. 6362.  
**CONTRARY**, *n.* FR. Adversary. 1961.  
**CONTREFEITE**, *v.* FR. To counterfeit; imitate. 130. 15327.  
**CONTROVE**, *v.* FR. To invent. R. 4949. 7547.  
**CONTUMERIAL**, *adj.* LAT. Familiar. P. 163, col. 2, l. 69.  
**CONTUNE** for CONTINUE. R. 4354. 5305. 5332. This is one of those licences for the sake of rhyme, of which see the *n.* on *v.* 8915. Our author seems to have been ashamed of it, as I do not recollect to have met with it in the CANTERBURY TALES. Lydgate has been less scrupulous. See *Trag.* 2. b. 14. b. 24. b.  
**COPE**, *n.* FR. Cape. A cloak. 13665.  
**COPE**, *n.* SAX. The top of any thing. 556. F. iii. 76.  
**CORAGE**, *n.* FR. Heart. 22.—Inclination. 9130.—Spirit; courage. 1947. 8066.  
**CORSETTES**, *n. pl.* FR. Niches for statues. F. iii. 214.  
**CORDETH** for ACCORDETH. T. ii. 1043.  
**CORDEWANE**, *n.* FR. *Cordouan*. Spanish leather, so called from Corduba. 13662.  
**CORDILIERES**, *n. pl.* FR. *Cordeliers*. An order of Friars, so called from their wearing a cord for a girdle. R. 7461.  
**CORINNE**, *pr. n.* An. 21. What author is meant, I cannot say. One can hardly suppose that Chaucer had met with that poem of the ancient Corinna, the contemporary of Pindar, which was entitled *Ερως εν Θύκαις* (*Fragm. ex Apollonio Dyscolo*, ap. Maltair. de Dialect. p. 428. l. 4.) nor do I know that any fictitious work upon the War of Thebes has ever been set forth under her name. She is mentioned by Propertius (3 El. 3. v. 21.) and by Statius (Sylv. V. Carm. 3. v. 158.) but neither of them takes notice of her having written on the affairs of Thebes.  
**CORNEWILLE**, *pr. n.* Cornouaille, in Bretagne. R. 4250.  
**CORNICULERE**, *n.* LAT. An officer in the Roman Government. 15637. See *Pittic. Lex. Ant. Rom.* in *v.* *Cornicularius*.  
**CORNUR**, *n.* FR. A bagpipe. F. iii. 198.  
**CORNY**, *adj.* SAX. Strong of the corn, or malt. 12949. 12990.  
**COROUNE**, *n.* FR. A crown, or garland. 2292. 15699.  
**CORPS**, *n.* FR. Body. 12236. 13636.  
**CORPUS**, *n.* LAT. Body. *Corpus Domini*. 13386. God's body. *Corpus Medrian*. 13898.  
**CORRIGE**, *v.* FR. To correct. Bo. iv. pr. 4. pr. 7.  
**CORRUMPLES**, *adj.* FR. Corruptible. 3012.  
**CORRUMPS**, *v.* FR. To corrupt. 2748.  
**CORSE**, *v.* SAX. To curse. T. iii. 1707.  
**CORSENT**, *n.* FR. A holy body; a Saint. C. D. 940. *The CORSAINT and the kirke*. P. L. 44.  
**CORRYNT**, *part. pa.* of CARVE, *v.* SAX. Cut. 2608.  
**COSIN**, *n.* FR. A cousin, or kinsman. It is sometimes used adjectively. 744. 17189. Allied; related.

**COINAGE**, *n. Fr.* Kindred. 13339.  
**COSTAGE**, *n. Fr.* Cost, expence. 5831. 9002.  
**COSTER**, *v. Fr.* To go by the coast. B. K. 36.  
**COSTLEWE**, *adj.* Costly. P. 155, col. 2, l. 23.  
**COSTRELL**, *n.* A drinking-vessel. L. W. 2655 See Du Cange, in v. **COSTRELLUS**.  
**COTE**, *n. SAX.* A cottage. 8374.  
 — *n. Fr.* A coat. 5789.—**COTE-ARMURE**; A coat worn over armour; upon which the armorial ensigns of the wearer were usually embroidered. 1018. 2142.  
**COTIDIE**, *adj. Fr.* Daily. It is used as a *substantive* for *A quotidian ague*. R. 2401.  
**COUCHE**, *v. Fr.* To lay. 16620.  
**COUCHED**, *part. pa. Lat.* Laid. 16662. **COUCHED with perles**. 2163. Laid, or trimmed with pearls.  
**COUD**, **COUDE**, *pa. t. of CONNE*. Knew; was able. 94, 5. See the Essay, &c. n. 35. It is used as a *participle pa.* P. 171, col. 1, l. 46. So that instead of *always* in the note, I should have said *generally*.  
**COVERTE**, *v. Fr.* To covert. R. 6173.  
**COVERABLE**, *adj. Fr.* Convenient; suitable. P. 149, col. 1, l. 12.  
**COVERCHIEFS**, *n. pl. Fr.* Head-cloaths. 455.  
**COYACLE**, *n. Fr.* A pot-lid. F. II. 264.  
**COVERT**, *adj. Fr.* Secret; covered. R. 6149.  
**COVINE**, *n. Fr.* Secret contrivances. 606. R. 3790.  
**COULPE**, *n. Fr.* A fault. P. 153, col. 2, l. 23.  
**COUNT**, *v. Fr.* To account; to esteem. 4054. 4190.  
**COUNTERPRISE**, *n. Fr.* A counterpoise; a weight which balances another. T. III. 1413.  
 — *v. Fr.* To counterpoise. F. III. 690.  
**COUNTERPLEITE**, *v. Fr.* To plead against. L. W. 476.  
**COUNTERWAITE**, *v. Fr.* To watch against. M. 119, col. 2, l. 65.  
**COUNTOUR**, *n. Fr.* *Comptoir*. A computing house. 13143.—*Compteur*. An arithmetician. Du. 435.  
 — 361. See the note.  
**COUNTRAILLIE**, *n. Fr.* A tally answering exactly to another. Hence echo is said to answer *at the countre-taille*. 9066.  
**COURS**, *v. Fr.* To sit crouching, like a brooding hen. R. 463.  
**COURTEY**. See the *n.* on ver. 292.  
**COURT-MAN**. 9366. A courtier. *Homme de Cour*. *Fr.*  
**COUTH**, **COUTHE**, *pa. t. of CONNE*. Knew; was able. 302. R. 753.  
 — *part. pa.* Known. 14. 8818.  
**COWARDISE**, *n. Fr.* Want of courage. *Cowardie*, 2732. R. 2490. As to the etymology of the *adj.* from which this word has been formed, I think the opinion of Twysden and Somner. Gloss. ad X. Script. v. *Fridwile*, much the most probable, who derive it from the *BARB. Lat.* *Culum vertere*; to turn tail, or run away. See Du Cange, in v. **CULVERTA**, and **CULVERTAGIUM**, who rejects the opinion above mentioned, but without suggesting any thing so plausible. *Culvert*, as it is written in the oldest and best French MSS. that I have seen, might easily be corrupted, according to the French mode of pronunciation, into *Cowart* and *Coward*.  
 I have somewhere seen the French language seriously charged with indelicacy for its frequent and wanton use of the word *cul* in composition; nor can the charge be said to be groundless. Beside the numerous instances which will occur to every body, I suspect that this monosyllable makes part of a common and solemn term in our Law, imported originally from France. *Culprist* seems to me to have been a vulgar name for a *prisoner*; a person *taken by that part* which is most exposed in running away. Holmshad has expressed the same idea more delicately. Vol. III. p. 842. *The prentists were caught by the backs and had to prison*. And so it is expressed in "*Ancient Scottish Poems*," p. 182. ver. 15.  
*Yet deid [death] sal tak him be the bak.*  
**COYE**, *v. Fr.* To quiet, to sooth. T. II. 801.  
**CRAPTESMAN**, *n. SAX.* A man of skill. 1899.  
**CRACK**, *v. Fr.* To crack. 3999.  
 — **CRACKEL**, *v. SAX.* To quaver hoarsely in singing. 3794. C. N. 119.

**CRAMPISH**, *v. Fr.* To contract violently, as the cramp does. An. 170.  
**CRATCHING**, *n. SAX.* Scratching. 2836.  
**CRASED**, *part. pa. Fr.* *Ecrasé*. Broken. 16402.  
**CRANCE**, *n. Fr.* Faith; belief. 5338.  
 — *v. Fr.* To borrow money. 13219, 33, 96.  
**CREATE**, *part. pa. Lat.* Crested. P. 150, col. 2, l. 63.  
**CRENCLED**, *part. pa.* Crinced; circularly formed. L. W. 2010. Perhaps from the *Island*. *Krynge*. *Circino*, *gyre*.  
**CREPIL**, *n. SAX.* A cripple. T. IV. 1408.  
**CREVASSE**, *n. Fr.* A chink, or crevice. F. III. 396.  
**CRIANDE**, *part. pr. of CRIS*, *v. Fr.* Crying. R. 3138.  
**CRISPE**. F. III. 296. as **CRISPE**.  
**CRISPIUS**, *pr. n.* 6226. I find the title of a work in Mont-faucon, *Bibl.* p. 513. to which Chaucer may possibly allude. *Chrysippi, discipuli Euthymii, in Joannem evangelium*.—and again p. 1314. *Chrysippi Presbyteri laudatio & Joannis Baptiste*. It is not likely that a Panegyrist on the Baptist might be led by his rage against Herodias to say some harsh things of women in general.  
**CRISPE**, *adj. Lat.* Curled. 4693.  
**CROCE**, *n. SAX.* A cross. 6008.  
**CROSS**, *n. Fr.* A cross. 12993.  
**CROMER**, *n. pl. SAX.* Crumbs. 15228.  
**CROMMED**, *part. pa. SAX.* Stuffed, crammed. F. III. 1038.  
**CROWN**, *n. SAX.* An old woman. 4282. *Kronle*; *Ovis stercula*. *Kilian*.  
**CROPE**, **CROPHEN**, *part. pa. of CREPE*, *v. SAX.* Cropt. 4257. 11912.  
**CROPPES**, *n. pl. SAX.* The extremities of the shoots of vegetables. 7. *Now in the crop*. 1634. *Now at the top*. *Crope* and *rote*. T. II. 348. *Root and branch*; the whole of a thing.  
**CROSBLEY**, *n. Fr.* A crucible. 16985.  
**CROUCHE**, *v. SAX.* To sign with the cross. 9581.  
**CROUDE**, *v. SAX.* To shove together. 4716.  
**CROUK**, *n. SAX.* An earthen pitcher. 4136.  
**CROWN**, *n. Fr.* signifies *Head*. 4029. 4097.  
**CROUPS**, *n. Fr.* The ridge of the back. 7141.  
**CROWES FEET**. T. II. 404. The wrinkles which spread from the outer corners of the eyes. Spenser describes this mark of old age in the same manner, *Ecl.* 12.  
*And by mine eie the crow his claw doth wriggle.*  
**CROWNED**, *part. pa.* Wearing a crown. *Crowned malice*. 10840. *Sovereign malice*.  
**CRULL**, *adj. SAX.* Curled. 81. 3314.  
**CUCURBITS**, *n. Lat.* A gourd; a vessel, shaped like a gourd, used in distillation. 16262.  
**CULPONS**, *n. pl. Fr.* Shreds. 681. *Loga*. 2949.  
**CULVER**, *n. SAX.* A dove. L. W. 2307.  
**CUPPE**, *n. Fr.* A cup. *Withouten cuppe he drank all his penance*. 11254. He took large draughts of grief; he made no use of a cup, but drank out of the pot.  
**CURATION**, *n. Fr.* Cure; healing. T. I. 792. Bo. I. pr. 6.  
**CURE**, *n. Fr.* Care. *I do no cure*. L. W. 159. I take no care.  
**CURFEW-TIME**, 3645. according to the Conqueror's edict, is said to have been 8 h. P. M. Walsingham, speaking of an event on the 2d of September, 1311 mentions 9 h. as the *hora ignitigil*. It probably varied with the seasons of the year.  
**CURIOUS**, *adj. Fr.* Careful. 13156. R. 6578.  
**CURTIS**, *adj. Fr.* Courteous. 99. 6969.  
**CUSTOMER**, *adj. Fr.* Accustomed. R. 4936.  
**CUTTE**, *CUT*. 837. 847. 12727. seq. See the *n.* on ver. 837.

## D.

**DAFFE**, *n. SAX.* A fool. 4206. *Thou dolest*, **DAFFE**, *quod she*, *dull are thy wittes*. P. P. 6. b.  
**DAGGE**, *n.* A slip, or shred. R. 7212.  
**DAGGED**, *part. pa.* Cut into slips. P. 153, col. 2, 44.  
**DAGGING**, *n.* slitting; cutting into slips. P. 153, col. 2, 33.  
**DAGON**, *n.* A slip, or piece. 7333.  
**DAMASCENE**, *pr. n.* The country about Damascus. 14013.  
 — *pr. n.* 435. *Joannes Mesue Damascenus*, an Arabian Physician, in the ninth and tenth century. See *Fabric. Bibl. Gr. t. xiii. p. 226*.

**DAME**, n. Fr. LAT. *Domina*. Mistress, Lady. 7387. 7451.  
—Mother. 3860.

**DAMPNE**, v. Fr. To condemn. 5530. 5652.

**DAN**, n. Fr. LAT. *Dominus*. Lord; was a title commonly given to Monks. 12973. 13935. 6. See the n. on ver. 9684. It is also prefixed by Chaucer to the names of other persons of all sorts. *Dan Arcite*. 2893. *Dan Burnell*. 15318. *Dan Caton*. 14977.

**DANCE**, n. Fr. *The olde dance*. 478. 12013. The old game. See R. 4300. T. III. 606. The French have the same phrase. *Elle spait assez de la vieille dance*. Cotgrave.

**DANGER**, n. Fr. A dangerous situation. *In danger*. 665. See the note; and R. 1470.—Coyne; sparingness. R. 1147. T. II. 384. *With danger*. 6103. Sparingly.

**DANGEROUS**, adj. Difficult; sparing. 519. 5733.

**DANTE**, pr. n. of 6708. 14771. L. W. 360. F. I. 450. See the n. on ver. 6710. and Gloss. in v. **LAVENDER**.

**DAFFLE-GRAY**. 13813. The colour which is called in Fr. *Pommele*. See ver. 618.

**DARE**, v. SAX. To stare. 13033.

**DARES**, pr. n. of a supposed Historian of the Trojan war. F. II. 379. Du. 1070.

**DARREIN**, v. Fr. *Derreiner*. LAT. *Derationare*. To contest. 1611. 1633.

**DART**, n. SAX. A spear, or javelin. *The dart is sette up for virginitee*. 8657. There is an allusion to the same custom in Lydg. *Trag.* 26.

And oft it happeneth, he, that hath best ron,  
Doth not the spere like his desert possede.

**DASEN**, pr. i. pl. of **DARE**, v. SAX. Grow dim-sighted. 16090.

**DAUNT**, v. Fr. To conquer. P. 152, col. 1, l. 10. R. 4764. *That he with love may daunted be*. Orig. 4444. *Qui par amour ne soit domptez*.

**DAWE**, v. SAX. To dawn. 1678. 9716.

**DAWNING**, n. SAX. Day-break. 14888. L. W. 2183.

**DAWES**, n. pl. for **DAYES**. 11492. The Saxon  $\gamma$  is frequently expressed by *w* as well as by *y*.

**DAVE**, n. SAX. Day; Time. 9012. *At my day*. 16495. *At the day appointed to me*. *To graunt him dayes of the remenaunt*. 11679. To permit him to pay the remainder at certain days, by instalments.

**DEAURAT**, part. pa. LAT. Gilded. R. K. 599.

**DEBATE**, v. Fr. To fight. 13797.

**DEBONAIRE**, adj. Fr. Courteous. M. 118, col. 2, l. 37. Gentle. Bo. I. m. 5.

**DECOOPED**, part. pa. Fr. Cut down. R. 843.

**DECORATE**, pr. n. Decoratus. Bo. III. pr. 4.

**DEDE**, v. SAX. To grow dead. F. II. 44.

—part. pa. Dead. 7090.

**DEDLEY**, adj. SAX. Devoted to death. 11332. Bo. v. pr. 6.

**DEDUIT**, n. Fr. Pleasure. 2179.

**DEFAIT**, **DEFAITED**, part. pa. Fr. Wasted. T. V. 618.

**DEFAME**, n. Fr. Infamy. 14467.

—v. Fr. To make infamous. 3149.

**DEFAUTE**, n. Fr. Want. Bo. III. pr. 3. **DEFAUTES**, pl. Defects. 7392.

**DEFENDER**, v. Fr. To forbid. 7416. 16938.—To ransom. R. 7088.

**DEFENCE**, n. Fr. Prohibition. T. III. 136.

**DEFINIRE**, v. Fr. To define; to make a definition of. Bo. v. pr. 1.

**DEGRE**, n. Fr. A stair, or set of steps. R. 45.—Rank in life. 9001.

**DEIDEN**, pa. t. pl. of **DEYN**, v. SAX. Died. 7433.

**DIENE** for **DIEN**, inf. m. of **DEYN**, v. SAX. To die. L. W. 1179.

**DEINOUS**, adj. Fr. Disdainful. 3630.

**DEINTRE**, n. Fr. Value; a thing of value. *Hath deintee*. 4589. Values highly. *Told no deintee of*. 5790. Set no value upon. *It was deintee*. 6968. It was a valuable thing. See also T. II. 164.

**DEINTHOUS**, adj. Choice; valuable. 8141.

**DEIS**, n. Fr. See the n. on ver. 372.

**DEL**, n. SAX. A part. *Never a del*. 3006. Not a bit. *Every del*. 3369. Every part. p. 369.

**DALS**, v. SAX. To divide. 7831.

**DELIBERE**, v. Fr. To deliberate. M. 118, col. 2, l. 12. T. IV. 169.

**DELICACIE**, n. Fr. Pleasure. 14397.

**DELICIE**, n. pl. Fr. Delights. 15471.

**DELIE**, adj. Fr. *Deid*. Thin; slender. Bo. I. pr. 1.

**DELIT**, n. Fr. Delight. 7457.

**DELITABLE**, adj. Fr. Delectable. 7938. 8075.

**DELIVER**, adj. Fr. Nimble. 84. *Conf. Am.* 177. b.

**DELIVERLY**, adv. Quickly. 15422.

**DELIVERNESS**, n. Fr. Agility. M. 110, col. 1, l. 66.

**DELVE**, v. SAX. To dig. 536.

**DELUVY**, n. LAT. Deluge. Bo. II. pr. 6.

**DEMAINE**, v. Fr. To manage. F. II. 451.

—n. Fr. Management. 14583.

**DEME**, v. SAX. To judge. 1363.

**DEMONIAK**, n. Fr. One possessed by a devil. 7822.

**DENT**, n. SAX. A stroke. F. II. 26. See **DINT**.

**DENWERE**, n. Doubt. 58. This interpretation suits well enough with the only passage in which I have found this word. T. L. I. 323. b. but I should be glad to see some other instance of the use of it.

*De par dieux jee assente*. 4459. In God's name I agree.

**DEPART**, v. Fr. To part; to distribute. 7796.

**DEPRINT**, part. pa. Fr. Painted. 12884.

**DEQUACE**, v. To shake down. q? T. L. II. 327. b.

**DERE**, v. SAX. To hurt. 1294. 10554. 14007.

—adj. SAX. Dear. 2455.

**DERELING**, n. SAX. Darling. 3791.

**DEREWORTH**, adj. SAX. Precious; valued at a high rate. Bo. II. pr. 1.

**DERNE**, adj. SAX. Secret. 3290. 3297.

**DERRE**, comp. of **DERE**. Dearer. 1450. T. I. 174.

**DES**, F. III. 270. As **DEIN**.

**DESCENSORIE**, n. Fr. A vessel used in Chemistry for the extraction of oils per descensum. 16260.

**DESCRIVEN**, inf. m. Fr. To describe. 10354.

**DESIROUS**, adj. Fr. Eager. 10337.

**DESOLAT**, part. pa. LAT. Abandoned; distressed. 6283.

**DESPITE**, n. Fr. Malicious anger. 949.

**DESPITOUS**, adj. Angry to excess. 6340.

**DESPITOUSLY**, adv. Angrily. 8411.

**DESPOILE**, v. Fr. To undress. 6250.

**DESTRINE**, v. Fr. To vex; to constrain. 1818. 17110.

**DESTRER**, n. Fr. A war-horse. LAT. *Dextrarius*. 13841.

**DESTRUE**, **DESTRUIS**, v. Fr. To destroy. 1532. 17110.—C. D. 1605. *Deserted* should be *Destried*.

**DETERMINAT**, part. pa. LAT. Fixed; determined. 7041.

**DETTELES**, adj. Free from debt. 584.

**DEVK**, adj. SAX. Deaf. 15754.

**DEVINING**, n. Fr. Divination. 2223.

**DEVISE**, n. Fr. Direction. 818. R. 1974.

—v. Fr. To direct; to order. 1418. 1427.—To relate. 7485. 7922.—*At point devise*. 3699. *A point devised*. Fr. With the greatest exactness.

**DEVOIR**, n. Fr. Duty. 2600. *Wels thei stode and did thei devere*. P. L. 331.

**DEVY**, n. See the n. on ver. 14832.

**DEVK**, v. SAX. To die. 6967. 7210.

**DEVEN**, n. SAX. A Dyer. 364.

**DIAPRED**, part. pa. Fr. Diversified with flourishes, &c. 2160. R. 934.

**DICHE**, v. SAX. To dig; to surround with a ditch. L. W. 708.

**DIDE** for **DIEDR**. 6547.

—pa. t. of **DO**, v. SAX. 3421. **DIDEN**, pa. t. pl. 7073. 12901.

**DIE**, v. SAX. To tinge. R. 1705.

**DIETE**, n. Fr. Daily food. 457.

**DIFFAME**, n. Fr. Bad reputation. 8416. 8606. See **DEFAME**.

**DIGESTABLE**, adj. LAT. Easy to be digested. 439.

**DIGESTIVES**, n. pl. Fr. Things to help digestion. 14967.

**DIGHT**, v. SAX. To dispose. 14447.—To dress. 6349. 17361. See ver. 10235.

**DIGNE**, adj. Fr. Worthy. 2218. 5198.—Proud; disdainful. 519.

**DIKE**, v. SAX. To dig; to make ditches. 536.

**DILATATION**, n. Fr. Enlargement. 4662.

**DINT**, n. SAX. as **DERT**. *Thunder-dint*. 5858. T. V. 1804. A stroke of thunder.

**DIOSCORIDES**, pr. n. of a Greek writer on Plants, whose work is extant. 432.



- DIRABRAY**, n. Fr. Disorder. P. 168, col. 1, l. 62.  
**DIRAUNCE**, v. Fr. To drive back. T. ii. 511.  
**DIRAVENTURE**, n. Fr. Misfortune. T. iv. 297.  
**DISBLAME**, v. Fr. To clear from blame. T. ii. 17.  
**DISCOMFURE**, n. Fr. Defeat. 1010.  
**DISCOMFORT**, n. Fr. Displeasure. 11308.  
**DISCOMFOTEN**, v. Fr. To discourage. 3706.  
**DISCOVERTE**, adj. Fr. *At discoverte*. P. 162, col. 2, l. 51.  
 Uncovered. *A descoverte*.  
**DISDAINFUL**, adj. Fr. Disdainful. R. 7412.  
**DISMINUTION**, n. Fr. Diminution. B. K. 203.  
 — v. neut. Fr. To decrease. Bo. v. pr. 6.  
**DISFIGURE**, n. Fr. Deformity. 6542.  
**DISHERITED**, part. pa. Fr. Disinherited; stripped of possessions. 2988. L. W. 1063.  
**DISHEVELS**, part. pa. Fr. With hair hanging loose. 685.  
*Deschevelé*.  
**DISJOINT**, n. Fr. A difficult situation. 2964. 13341.  
**DISOBEYANT**, part. pa. Fr. Disobedient. A. P. 429.  
**DISORDERED**, part. pa. Fr. Disorderly. P. 165, col. 2, l. 5.  
**DISORDINATE**, adj. Lat. Disorderly. P. 168, col. 1, l. 14.  
**DISORDINAUNCE**, n. Fr. Irregularity. F. l. 27.  
**DISPARAGE**, n. Fr. A disparagement. 8784.  
**DISPENCE**, n. Fr. Expence. 443. 6843.  
**DISPERANCE**, n. Fr. Despair. T. ii. 530.  
**DISPTOUS**, adj. Angry to excess. 518. See **DISPTOUX**.  
**DISPLEASANCE**, n. Fr. Displeasure. R. 3436.  
**DISPOSE**, v. Lat. To dispose. Bo. iv. pr. 6.  
**DISPORT**, n. Fr. *Deport*. Sport; diversion. 777.  
 — v. To divert. T. iii. 1159.  
**DISPRISING**, part. pa. Fr. Undervaluing. M. 116, col. 1, l. 34.  
**DISPUTATION**, n. Fr. Dispute. 9348. 11302. *The clergy of the south made a disputatoun*. P. L. 300.  
**DISRUALLY**, adv. Irregularly. R. 4900.  
**DISSEMBLE**, v. Fr. To dissemble. 17296.  
**DISSEMBLING**, n. pl. Fr. Dissemblings. 10800.  
**DISONANT**, part. pa. Fr. Dissonant. R. 4248.  
**DISTAIN**, v. Fr. To discolour; to take away the colour. T. ii. 840. L. W. 274.  
**DISTINCT**, v. Lat. To distinguish. R. 6199.  
**DISTINGUED**, part. pa. Fr. Distinguished. Bo. ii. pr. &  
**DISTURBED**, part. pa. Fr. Disturbed. R. 1713.  
**DISTREYN**, n. Fr. To constrain. P. 148, col. 2, l. 21. See **DESTRINE**.  
**DISTROUBLE**, v. Fr. To disturb. P. 148, col. 1, l. 22. Du. 524.  
**DISTURNE**, v. Fr. To turn aside. T. iii. 719.  
**DITE**, v. Fr. To dictate; to write. R. 6786.  
**DITES**, n. pl. Fr. Sayings, ditties. F. ii. 114.  
**DITUS**, pr. n. Dictys Cretensis. F. iii. 379.  
**DIVERSE**, adj. Fr. Different. 4631.  
 — v. To diversify. T. iii. 1758.  
**DIVINE**, n. for *Divinity*. R. 6488.  
**DIVINISTRE**, n. Fr. A divine. 2813.  
**DO**, v. Sax. See the *Essay*, &c. n. 37.  
 — for *Don*, part. pa. M. 120, col. 1, l. 34.  
**DOAND**, part. pr. Doing. R. 2708.  
**DOGBREL**, adj. derived, I suppose, from *Dog*; so that *Rime-dogrel* in ver. 13853. may be understood to mean what in French might be called *Rime de chien*. See *Cotgrave*, in v. *CHIEU*. "*Chose de chien*; A paultrie thing; a trifle; trash, trumperie."  
**DOUG**, FOR THE **BOWE**. 6951, 9888. A dog used in shooting.  
**DOKE**, n. Sax. A duck. 3576.  
**DOLE**, n. Sax. as *DEL*. R. 2364.  
 — n. Fr. Grief, mourning. R. 2939.  
**DOLVEN**, part. pa. of *DELVE*, v. Sax. Buried. 4070.  
**DUMBE**, adj. Sax. Dumb. 776.  
**DONE**, n. Sax. Judgement, opinion. 10969.  
**DONESMAN**, n. Sax. A judge. 14408.  
**DONET**, n. A grammar; the elements of any art; from *Elius Donatus*, a Roman Grammarian, whose introduction to the Latin language (*inter Gramm. Vel. Putsch*. p. 1735.) was commonly read in schools. T. L. ii. fol. 338. *Then drave I me among drapers, my donet to lerne*. P. P. 23. b.  
**DONNOW**, pr. n. 5799. See the note; and P. P. 44. b.  
**DONNE**, DON. adj. Sax. Of a brown or dun colour. T. ii. 908. A. P. 334.  
**DORMANT**, part. pr. Fr. Fixed; ready. 365. *Les vaisseliers qui id dormoient à l'ancre*. Froissart, v. iii. c. 52.  
**DORTOUR**, n. Fr. A dormitory, or common sleeping-room. 7437.  
**DUSEIN**, n. Fr. A dozen. 580.  
**DOSSEL**, n. Fr. A basket to be carried on the back. . 111. 850.  
**DOTN**, v. Sax. To be foolish, through age or ctherwise. 9315. 16451.  
**DOTN**, imp. m. 2 per. pl. of *Do*. 6631. *Do ye*.  
**DOUCED**, F. iii. 131. may perhaps be a corruption of *Doué*, which is the name of a musical instrument, in a poem of Lydgate's. MS. Bodl. Fairf. 16.  
 "There were trumpes and trumpetes,  
 "Lowde shallys and doucetes."  
**DOUGHTREN**, n. pl. Sax. Daughters. 41833.  
**DOUTANCE**, n. Fr. Doubt. T. iv. 263.  
**DOUTE**, v. Fr. To fear. R. 1069.  
**DOULELES**, **DOULELES**, adv. Without doubt. 2000. 4541.  
**DOUTOUS**, adj. Doubtful. T. iv. 292.  
**D'outre mere**, Fr. From beyond sea. Du. 253.  
**DOWAIRE**, n. Fr. Dower. 8794.  
**DRADDER**, **DRAD**, part. t. & part. of **DREDE**, v. Sax. *Fear*. 15483. 7945.  
**DRAF**, n. Sax. Things thrown away, as unfit for man's food. 17346.  
**DRAF-SAX**. 4204. A sack full of draffe.  
**DRAFTY**, adj. Sax. Of no more value than draffe. 137.  
**DRAOGES**, n. pl. Fr. Drugs. 422.  
**DREDE**, n. Sax. Fear; Doubt. *Withouten drede*. § Without doubt. *Out of drede*. 5313. *Out of doubt*.  
 — v. Sax. To fear. 2595. *Dred*. part. t. 8056. for *D* ad.  
**DREDEFUL**, adj. Timorous. 1481. 11621.  
**DREDELES**, adv. Without doubt. T. l. 1035.  
**DREINT**, part. t. & part. of **DRENCH**. Drowned. 11694. 7370.  
**DRENCH**, v. Sax. To drown. 3617.  
 — v. neut. Sax. To be drowned. 3521. 5343.  
**DREINERIE**, n. Sax. Sorrow. R. 4728.  
**DREY**, adj. Sax. Sorrowful. T. i. 13.  
**DRESS**, v. Fr. To address; apply. 8883.  
**DRETCH**, v. act. Sax. To vex; to trouble. T. ii. 1471.  
**DRETCHED**, part. pa. Oppressed; troubled. 14821. n. Am. 79.  
**DRETCH**, v. neut. Sax. To delay. T. ii. 1264. iv. 1. 1. Conf. Am. 178.  
**DRETCHING**, n. Delay. T. iii. 855.  
**DRIE**, v. Sax. To suffer. R. 4390. 7484. T. v. 264. 296.  
**DRIFE**, v. Sax. To drive. R. 1874.  
**DRINKLES**, adj. Sax. Without drink. T. ii. 718.  
**DROCKLEW**, adj. Sax. Given to drink. 7625. 12429. P. P. 41.  
**DROKKEN**, part. pa. of **DRINK**, v. Sax. Drunk. 7481.  
**DROUGH**, part. t. of **DRAW**, v. Sax. Drew. T. V. 1557. W. 1457.  
**DROVY**, adj. Sax. Dirty. P. 165, col. 1, l. 63.  
**DRUERIN**, n. Fr. Courtship; gallantry. 13823. R. 344—  
 A mistress. R. 5064. See *Du Cange*, in v. **DRUDARI**.  
 The reader may perhaps be not displeased to see the following description of a *Drut*, or *Lover*, by Gu en Aesmar a Provençal poet. MS. Crofta. fol. cxxviii.  
 Ben paoc ama drut, qí non es gelos,  
 Et paoc ama, qí non est aïros,  
 Et paoc ama, qí non es soletit,  
 Et paoc ama, qí non fa tracios;  
 Mais vaut d'amor qí ben est enveios  
 Un dolz plorar non fait qatorze ris.  
 Quant eu li quier merce en genoillos,  
 E la mi colpa et mi met ochainos,  
 Et li algus m'cur aval per mer lo via,  
 Et ela m'fai un regard amoros,  
 Et eu li bais la bucha els ols amdos,  
 Adonc mi par un foi de paradis.  
**DRUGG**, v. Sax. To drag. 1418.  
**DUBBED**, part. pa. Sax. Created a knight. P. 64, col. 1, l. 24. The phrase is derived from the *stroke*, with a sword or otherwise, which was always a principal ceremony at the creation of a knight. *At Dabba*, island signifies to strike. This *stroke* in French was called *La coüe*. See *L'Ordene de Chevalerie*, par Hue de Tabaria.

ver. 244. seq. published by M. Barbazan. 1799. and Du Cange, in v. *ALAPA MILITARIA*.  
**DUTY**, n. Fr. Duty; what is due to any one. 6334. 6973.  
**DULL**, v. act. SAX. To make dull. 16661.  
 — v. neut. SAX. To grow dull. R. 4792.  
*Dun is in the mire.* 16954. See *Ray's Proverbial Similies*, p. 219. *As dull as Dun in the mire.* I suppose *Dun* was a nickname given to the Ass, from his colour, as well as *Burnell*. See the n. on ver. 15318.  
**DURE**, v. Fr. To endure. 1363. 11148.  
**DURNESS**, n. Fr. Hardship; severity. R. 3547.  
**DUSKED**, pa. t. SAX. Grew dark, or dim. 2808.  
**DUTEE**. 3662. as **DUTTEE**.  
**DWALE**, n. SAX. A sleeping-potion. 4150. C. L. 986.  
**DWELLINGS**, n. pl. SAX. Delays. Bo. l. m. l. *Moras*. Orig.  
**DWINED**, part. pa. SAX. Wasted. R. 380.

## E

**EARED**, part. pa. Ploughed. P. l. 485. See **EAE**.  
**ERRAINE**, adj. Hebrew. 4909.  
**ECCLIAST**, n. An ecclesiastical person. 710.—The book of Ecclesiastes, or Ecclesiasticus. 6233.  
**ECHRE**, adj. SAX. *Ælce*. Each one, every one, of any number. 39. 662. 1134.  
 — v. SAX. To add. P. iii. 975.—To add to; to encrease. T. l. 706.  
**EDIPIR**, pr. n. *Edipus*. T. iv. 300.  
**EFFECT**, n. Fr. Substance. 7033. 9272.  
**EFT**, adv. SAX. Again. 1671. 5212. 10945.  
**EFTONE**, **EFTONES**, adv. SAX. Soon after; presently. 3480. 5329. 6390.  
**EGALITE**, n. Fr. Equality. P. 169, col. 1, l. 5.  
**EGRE**, **EGRE**, adj. Fr. Sharp. P. 148, col. 2, l. 60. R. 217.  
**EGRE**, v. SAX. To incite. P. 169, col. 1, l. 68.  
**EGREMENT**, n. SAX. Incitement. 5362.  
**EGGING**, n. 10000. as **EGGEMENT**.  
**EGREMOINE**, n. Fr. Agrimony. 16366.  
**EIRE** for **AIRE**. 3473.  
**SISEL**, n. SAX. Vinegar. R. 217. But see **Dr. RO. CXIV**. *Vynegar assell other alegar*.—And **CXV**. *Vynegar other assell*.  
**ELAT**, part. pa. LAT. Elated. 14173.  
**ELDE**, n. SAX. Old age. 6797. 10054.  
 — v. SAX. To make old. R. 391, 2.—v. neut. To grow old. R. 395.  
**ELENOR**, adj. Strange. 6781. See the note; but I much distrust the etymology there proposed from *Gloss. Ur.* In ver. 13152, it seems to signify *Dull*, *Chearless*; as in P. P. 111. b. *Heavy-chere'd I yede, and ELENOR in heric*. And so perhaps it should be understood in the passages quoted from C. N. 115. and P. P. 3 b. and 46 b.  
**ELENGEEME**, n. R. 7406. in the Orig. *Soucy*; Care; trouble.  
**ELFE**, n. SAX. A witch. 5174.—A faery. 6453.  
**ELF QUEEN**, n. Queen of elves or faeries. 6442. 13720. 4.  
**ELI**, pr. n. 7472. seems to be put for **ELIZ**. See 1 Kings. c. 19.  
**ELIZ**, pr. n. *Elijah*. 7698. The Carmelites pretend that *Elijah* was the founder of their order.  
**ELISER**, pr. n. *Elisha*, the 2<sup>d</sup> disciple of *Elijah*. 7698.  
**ELI...** adv. SAX. *Eli...* 377. 1153. *Eli...* what. P. iii. 651.  
 Any thing else. *Eller...* 2115. 13520. Elsewhere.  
**ELVISH**, adj. SAX. Faery-like; fantastick. 16219. 16310.—  
 In ver. 16333, it seems to signify *shy*, *reserved*.  
**EMBELE**, v. Fr. To beautify. L. W. 1735.  
**EMOLDE**, v. Fr. To make bold. C. L. 1147.  
**EMVOYEMENT**, n. Fr. Ambush. M. 112, col. 2, l. 65.  
**EMBOUDED**, part. pa. Fr. Embroidered. 89. L. W. 119.  
**EMK**, n. SAX. Uncle. T. ii. 162.  
**EMFORTH**, prep. SAX. Even with. *EMFORTH my might*. 2237. Even with my might; with all my power. *EMFORTH my wit*. T. ii. 243. To the utmost of my understanding. It is a corruption of *epenforð*, which occurs at length in P. P. 66. b. *evenforth with thyselfe*, and 108. b. *He did equite for all, evenforth his power*.  
**EMPRE**, v. Fr. To impair; hurt. 10072.  
**EMPRECE**, n. Fr. Empress. 6828. 11380.

**EMPLASTRE**, v. Fr. To plaister over. 10171.  
**EMPLIK**, v. To infold; to involve. Bo. v. m. l. *Implicat* Orig.  
**EMPOISONER**, n. Fr. A poisoner. 12828.  
**EMPRESE**, v. neut. Fr. To crowd. 9452. 16339.  
**EMPRISE**, n. Fr. Undertaking. 2542.  
**EMPTIE**, v. SAX. To empty. 16209.  
**ENBRATTELLED**, part. pa. Fr. Indented, like a battlement. 14806.  
**ENBRING**, part. pr. LAT. Imbibing. 16282.  
**EMBOSSED**, part. pa. Fr. *Embosquet*. Sheltered in a wood. Du. 353.  
**EMBOSSED**, part. pa. Fr. *Embossed*. Raised. L. W. 1198.  
**ENBRACE**, v. Fr. To take hold of. 8298.  
**ENBRAIDE**, v. Fr. To embroider. L. W. 2340.  
**ENCENSE**, n. Fr. Incense. 2279.  
 — v. Fr. To burn incense. 15863. To burn incense to. 15880.  
**ENCHAFUING**, n. Fr. Heat. P. 168, col. 1, l. 17.  
**ENCHERSON**, n. Fr. Cause; occasion. 10770. M. 116, col. 2, l. 48.  
**ENCHORFING**, part. pr. Fr. Incorporating. 16283.  
**ENDELONG**, prep. SAX. Along. 2680. 11304.—adv. Lengthways. 1903.  
**ENDETTED**, part. pa. Fr. Indebted. 16202.  
**ENDITE**, v. Fr. To dictate; relate. 2743.  
**ENDOUTE**, v. Fr. To doubt; to fear. R. 1664.  
**ENDRIE**, v. SAX. To suffer. C. L. 757. 941.  
**ENEE**, pr. n. *Æneas*. 4484.  
**ENNEIOS**, pr. n. Virgil's *Æneis*. 15365.  
**ENFAMINED**, part. pa. Fr. Hungry. L. W. 2418.  
**ENFECTE**, v. Fr. To infect. 16441.  
 — part. pa. Infected. C. L. 217.  
**ENFORCE**, v. Fr. To strengthen. 6022.  
**ENFORCED**, part. pa. Constrained by force. P. 169, col. 2, l. 18.  
**ENFORTUNE**, v. Fr. To endow with a certain fortune. C. M. 108.  
**ENFUNDRE**, n. Fr. Generation. 5716. 5719.  
**ENFUMED**, part. pa. Fr. Racked; tortured. 15066.  
**ENGLUTING**. 16234. Rather *ENGLUTING*. Stopping with clay.  
**ENGROG**, v. Fr. To aggravate. P. 169, col. 2, l. 32.  
**ENGREVE**, v. Fr. To hurt. R. 3444.  
**ENHAUNSE**, v. Fr. To raise. 1436.  
**ENHAUNSED**, part. pa. Raised. 9248.  
**ENHONT**, v. Fr. To exhort. 2853.  
**ENLACED**, part. pa. Fr. Entangled. Bo. v. pr. 1.  
**ENLANGOURED**, part. pa. Fr. Faded with languor. R. 7384.  
**ENLEVEN**, num. SAX. Eleven. 17317.  
**ENLUMINE**, v. Fr. To illuminate. 7909.  
**ENOINT**, part. pa. Fr. Anointed. 2263.  
**ENSELED**, part. pa. Fr. Sealed up; kept secret. T. v. 151.  
**ENSPIRE**, v. Fr. To inspire. 6.  
**ENSURE**, v. Fr. To assure. 12977. 12971.  
**ENTAIL**, n. Fr. Shape. R. 162. 3711.  
**ENTAILED**, part. pa. Fr. Carved. R. 140.  
**ENTALENTE**, v. Fr. To excite. Bo. v. pr. 5.  
**ENTEND**, v. Fr. To attend. 5857. 11001.  
**ENTENDEMENT**, n. Fr. Understanding. T. iv. 1626.  
**ENTENTE**, n. Fr. Intention. 1480.  
**ENTENTIF**, adj. Fr. Attentive. 9165.  
**ENTERCHANGED**, pa. t. pl. Fr. Exchanged. T. iii. 1374.  
**ENTERMEDLED**, part. pa. Fr. Intermixed. R. 906.  
**ENTERMETE**, v. Fr. To interpose. 6416. R. 2266.  
**ENTERPART**, v. Fr. To share. T. l. 563.  
**ENTETCHED**, part. pa. Fr. *Entaché*. It is applied indifferently to things and persons *marked*, or *endowed*, with good or bad qualities. *Entetched and defouled with yrel*. Bo. iv. pr. 3. Stained and defiled with evil.—*The best entetched*. T. v. 832. Endowed with the best qualities.  
**ENTREE**, n. Fr. Entry. 1968.  
**ENTREMESE**, n. pl. Fr. "Choice dishes served in between the courses at a feast. *Colp.*" R. 6831.  
**ENTRIKE**, v. Fr. To deceive. R. 1642.  
 — To intangle. A. F. 403.  
**ENTUNED**, part. pa. Fr. Tuned. 122.  
**ENTUNE**, n. pl. Fr. Songs; tunes. Du. 362.  
**ENVENIME**, v. Fr. To poison. 8066.  
**ENVENIMING**, n. Poisoning. 9934.  
**ENVIN**, v. Fr. To vie; to contend. 5724. Du. 434.

**ENVIRON**, *adv.* Fr. About. C. L. 1631. *Conf. Am.* 136. b.  
— *v.* Fr. To surround. R. 7067.  
**ENVELOPED**, *part. pa.* Fr. Wrapt up. 12676.  
**ENVYED**. See the *n.* on ver. 344.  
**Epistola**, *LAT.* Epistles. 4475.  
**EQUIPOLENCES**, *n. pl.* Fr. Equivalent. R. 7126.  
**Fr.** *adv.* Sax. Before. 3747.—Before that. 4193. 2636.  
**ERRAND**, *n.* Sax. A message; an errand. Du. 134.  
**ERR**, *v.* Fr. To plough. 888.  
**ERROS** for **EROS**, *pr. n.* Gr. Love. 1376.  
**ERKE**, *adj.* Sax. Weary; sick. R. 4867.  
**ERLY**, *adv.* Sax. Early. 811. 2491.  
**ERNE**, *v.* Sax. To grieve. 12246.  
**ERNEFUL**. See the *n.* on ver. 12235.  
**ERMIN**, *adj.* Armenian. 14344.  
**ERNEST**, *n.* Sax. Zeal; studious pursuit of any thing.  
L. W. 1285.  
**ERNESTFUL**, *adj.* Serious. 9051. T. II. 1757.  
**ERRATIKES**, *adj.* Fr. Wandering; applied to the Planets.  
T. v. 1811.  
**ERRAUNT**, *part. pr.* Fr. Strolling; applied to a thief.  
17173.  
**ERR**, *adv.* Sax. The fundament. 3732. 7272.  
**ERST**, *adv.* *superf.* of **Er**. First. 773. *At erst*. At first;  
for the first time. 8861. 15732. 13634.—It is sometimes  
redundant. *Long erst* or. 12596. Long before.  
**ETHELES**, *adj.* Sax. Without earth. T. IV. 770.  
**ESCHAUNGE**, *n.* Fr. Exchange. T. IV. 146.  
**ESCHEVE**, **RECHUS**, *v.* Fr. To shun; to decline. 9086.  
C. N. 114.  
**ESCALAPIUS**, *fr. n.* 431. A book of Medicine, under his  
name, is mentioned by Fabric. *Bibl. Gr. t. i. p. 55. n. v.*  
**ESSE**, *n.* Fr. Pleasure. 5709.  
— *v.* To accommodate. 2196.  
**ESRD**, *part. pa.* 2672. See the *n.* on ver. 29.  
**ESSENT**, *n.* Relief. 4177. 4184.  
**ESIE**, *adj.* Gentle; light. *Esie sighe*. T. III. 1369. which  
passage Lord Surry has copied. *Songer*, &c. p. 12. "And  
easy sighe, such as folkes draw in love."  
**ESIER**, *comp. d.* Lighter. *Of esier avail*. C. L. 116. Of  
lighter, or less value.  
**ESLICH**, *adv.* Gently. T. I. 317.  
**ESPERUS**, *pr. n.* Hesperus; a name of the Planet Venus.  
B. K. 613.  
**ESPIALLE**, *n.* Fr. Spying; private watching. 6905. M. 112,  
col. 2. l. 65.  
**ESPIRITUALL**, *adj.* Fr. Spiritual; heavenly. R. 650. 672.  
**ESPOINE**, *n.* Fr. A legal excuse. P. 149, col. 2. l. 45.  
**ESTAT**, **ESTATE**, *n.* Fr. State; condition. 203. 524.—Ad-  
ministration of government. 7600.  
**ESTATELICH**, *adj.* Stately. 140.  
**ESTRES**, *n. pl.* Fr. The inward parts of a building. 1973.  
4293. R. de la R. 13667. *Car il s'ert de l'Hostel les estres*.  
**ETERNNE**, *adj.* LAT. Everlasting. 1366.  
**ETHE**, *adj.* Sax. Easy. R. 3955. T. v. 850.  
**EVANGILES**, *n. pl.* Fr. Gospels. 5006.  
**EVEN**, *adj.* Sax. Equal. *An even-cristen*. P. 153, col. 1,  
l. 30. 159, col. 2. l. 57. A fellow-christian.  
**EVENLIKE**, *adj.* Sax. Equal. Bo. IV. m. 6.  
— *adv.* Equally. Bo. IV. pr. 2.  
**EVER**, *adj.* Sax. Always. *Ever in on*. 1773. 3378. Conti-  
nually in the same manner. *Ever lenger the more*.  
10718. 11772. See P. 170, col. 1, l. 30. where this elliptical  
phrase is expressed at length.  
**EVERICH**, *adj.* Sax. Every one of many. 373. 2194.  
— Each of two. 2098. 2101. 6986.  
**EW**, *n.* Sax. Yew. 2925.  
**EXALTAT**, *part. pa.* LAT. Exalted. 6286.  
**EXAMETRON**. 13965. Is explained by the context to signifie  
a verse of six feet. It usually signifies the *Heroic* verse,  
but here, I suppose, must be understood to mean the  
*Iambic*, in which the antient Tragedies were "community  
versified."  
**EXECUTOR**, *n.* Fr. Executioner. 7592.  
**EXECUTRICE**, *n.* Fr. A female executioner. T. III. 618.  
**EXORCISATIONS**, *n. pl.* Fr. Exorcisms; conjurations.  
F. III. 173.  
**EXPANS YERES**. 11567. "In this and the following verses,

the Poet describes the Alphonsine Astronomical tables  
by the several parts of them, wherein some technical  
terms occur, which were used by the old astronomers,  
and continued by the compilers of those tables. *Collect*  
years are certain sums of years, with the motions of the  
heavenly bodies corresponding to them, as of 20, 40, 60,  
&c. disposed into tables; and *Expans* years are the  
single years, with the motions of the heavenly bodies  
answering to them, beginning at 1, and continued on to  
the smallest *Collect* sum, as 20, &c. A *Root*, or *Kadir*,  
is any certain time taken at pleasure, from which, as an  
era, the celestial motions are to be computed. By *Pro-  
porcional convenientes* are meant the Tables of Proportional parts." Gloss. *Ur.* "Argument in astronomy is  
an arch whereby we seek another unknown arch propor-  
tional to the first." Chambers.

**EXPECTAUNT**, *part. pr.* Fr. Waiting. R. 4571.

**EXPLETE**, *v.* Fr. To perform. R. 6174.

**EY**, *n.* Sax. An egg. 14851. 16274. *But as it were a grypes  
eye*. *Conf. Am.* 22.

— *interj.* 10165.

**EYEN**, *n. pl.* Sax. Eyes. 152. 201.

**EVER** for **AIR**. F. II. 419.

**EVRISH**, *adj.* Aerial, belonging to the air. F. II. 424. 457.

## F.

**FABLE**, *n.* Fr. Idle discourse. R. 1439. 6803.

**FACONDE**, *n.* Fr. Eloquence. A. F. 558.

— *adj.* Eloquent. *Du. 922*. A. F. 521.

**FAERIE**, *n.* Fr. The nation of Faeries. 6441. See the note  
— Enchantment; the work of Faeries. 9617. 10513. *King  
of Faerie*. 13101, 8. *Queene of Faerie*. 10190. *Contree of  
Faerie*. 13731.

**FAIN**, *adj.* Sax. Glad. 13241. *Than was I as FAYNE as  
Joule of fayre morowe*. P. P. 47. b.

— *adv.* Gladly. 9949.

**FAINE**, *v.* Fr. To feign; to dissemble. R. 3069. *To swinke  
and travail he not faineth*. R. 5665. He does not feign,  
or pretend, only to labour; i. e. he labours seriously.

**FAIREHEDE**, *n.* Sax. Beauty. R. 2484.

**FAITOUR**, *n.* Fr. A lazy, idle fellow. P. P. 32. b. 33. b. *Fai-  
tard, Faitour*, un paresseux, pigre. Lacombe.

**FALDING**, *n.* 392. 3212. "A kind of coarse cloth. *Fr.*"

He derives it from the A. S. *Fælb*, *plica*. However  
that may be, *Helmoldus* (Chron. Slav. l. i. c. 1.) speaks  
of *indumenta lanea*, probably coarse enough, *quæ nos  
appellamus FALDONES*; and *Fallin* in Irish, according to  
Lhuyd, signifies a mantle. *Giraldus Camb.* (Top. g.  
Hibern. dist. 3. c. 10.) describes the Irish as clothed in  
*phalngis laneis, vice palliorum*. "FALDYNG cloth.  
*Amphibalus. Birrus*." Prompt. Parv. "Row cloth,  
as FALDYNG and other lyke. *Endromis. Amphibalus*."  
*Ibid.* See Du Cange, in v. *AMPHIBALUS*.

**FALL** for **FALLEN**, *part. pa.* P. 149, col. 1, l. 44.

**FALSEN**, *v.* Fr. To falsify. 3175.—To deceive. R. 5416.

**FALWE**, *adj.* Sax. Yellow. 1366.

**FALWES**, *n. pl.* Sax. Harrowed lands. 6238.

**FANULAR**, *adj.* LAT. Domestick. 9638.

**FAN**, *n.* See the *n.* on ver. 16991.

**FANDE**, *pa. t.* of **FINDE**, *v.* Sax. Found. R. 2707.

**FANE**, *n.* A weathercock. 8872. C. D. 79.

**FANTASIE**, *n.* Fr. Fancy. 9451.

**FANTOM**, *n.* Fr. Any false imagination. 5457. *Et dirent  
plusieurs qu'ils avoient été EN FANTOSME*. Froissart, v. l.  
c. 63.

**FANCE**, *v.* Fr. *Farder*. To paint. R. 2285.

**FARDEL**, *n.* Fr. A burthen. R. 5683.

**FARE**, *v.* Sax. To go. 1397. 12963. *To fare wel*; To speed;  
to be happy. 2437.

**FAREN**, **FARE**, *part. pa.* 7354. 7364. 13129.

**FARES** for **FARETH**, 4021.

**FARING**, *part. pr.* 11244. 13948.

**FARE**, *n.* seems to have been derived from the French *v.*  
*Faire*, whenever it can be interpreted by the word *Aid*.  
See ver. 1811. *This hote fare*. ver. 3997. *For which the  
wardin childe and made fare*. ver. 4989. *What  
amounteth all this fare?* ver. 13193. *Detraict us two*

- sedeth no strange* FARE. T. iv. 532. *And leve this nice*  
 FARE. In other instances it follows the sense of the  
 Saxon *v. Fare*, as in the compound words *Wetfare*,  
*Thoroughfare*, &c.  
 FARE, n. SAX. Food; a meal. C. D. 1750. See Spelman,  
 in *v. Firma*.  
 FARSE, v. FR. *Farcir*. To stuff. 233.  
 FATH, n. F. III. 1030. See LATHE.  
 FAUTE, n. FR. Want. 10757.  
 FAWE, adj. SAX. Glad. 5802. as FAIN.  
 FAY, n. FR. Faith. 3284.  
 FAYRE, adj. SAX. Fair. 204. 234.  
 — adv. Fairly; gracefully. 94. 275.  
 FEBLESSE, n. FR. Weakness. T. ii. 863.  
 FECHER, v. SAX. To fetch. 6942. 7136.  
 FEE, n. SAX. Money. 6212. In R. 6044. it seems to signify  
*inheritable possessions* in contradistinction to *money*, or  
*moveables*.  
 FEFEE, v. FR. To infeoff; to present. T. v. 1688. C. L. 932.  
 FEINE, v. FR. To feign. 738.  
 FEL, adj. SAX. Cruel; destructive. 7584. 13758.  
 FELAW, n. SAX. Fellow; companion. 6967.  
 FELAWSHIP, n. SAX. Company. 476.  
 FELAWSHIP, v. To accompany. Bo. iv. m. 1. pr. 3.  
 FELDE, n. SAX. A field. 1594.  
 FELDEN, pa. t. pl. of FELLE, v. SAX. Felled; made to fall.  
 R. 911.  
 FELE, adj. SAX. Many. 8793. C. L. 191.  
 — v. SAX. To feel. 6068. To have sense. 11039. To  
 perceive. 15023.  
 FELL, n. SAX. Skin. T. i. 91.  
 FELONIE, n. FR. All sorts of criminal violence. 1996.  
 FELON, adj. FR. Cruel. R. 3250.  
 FEMINIE, pr. n. The country of Amazons. 968. See the note.  
 FEMININITE, n. FR. Womanhood. 4780.  
 FEND, n. SAX. An enemy; the devil. 5200. 7030.  
 FENDLICH, adj. Devilish. 5171. 5203.  
 FENNE, n. 12824. The name of the *Sections of Avicenne's*  
 great work, entitled *Canon*. See *Canon*.  
 FROFFED, part. pa. FR. Infeoffed. 9572.  
 FER, adv. SAX. Far. 4013. 5078.  
 FERRE, comp. 48. 1852. 2062. Further.  
 FERREST, superl. 498. Furthest.  
 FERD, FERED, part. pa. of FERRE. Terrified. 15392. 16392.  
 T. ii. 124.  
 — FERDE, pa. t. of FARE. 1374. 3457. 10775.  
 FERDEN, pa. t. pl. 1649. 2119.  
 FERRE, n. SAX. A companion; a wife. T. iv. 791. In *serv.*  
 4748. 4814. Together; in company.  
 — for FIRE. R. 9471. T. i. 229.  
 — n. SAX. FOR. 2346. 6904.  
 — v. SAX. To terrify. T. iv. 1483.  
 FERFORTH, FERFORTHLY, adv. SAX. Far forth. 963. 4902.  
 FERLY, adj. SAX. Strange. 4171.  
 FERMACIE for PHARMACIE, n. FR. A medicine. 2715.  
 FERME, n. FR. A farm. 283.  
 FERNERERE, n. LAT. *Infirmarius*. The officer, in a  
 religious house, who had the care of the infirmary.  
 7441. Du Cange, in *v*.  
 FERRE, adv. SAX. Before. 10570. See the note.  
 FERRE, adj. FR. Fierce. 1600.  
 — n. Du. 654. seq. The piece at chess next to the  
 king, which we and other European nations call the  
*queen*; though very improperly, as Hyde has observed.  
*Pherz*, or *Pherzan*, which is the Persian name for the  
 same piece, signifies the King's *Chief Counsellor*, or  
*General*. Hist. Shahrud. p. 88, 9.  
 FERTHING, n. SAX. A farthing; any very small thing. *No*  
*ferthing-of grease*. 134. Not the smallest spot of grease.  
 FEET, n. SAX. Feet. 12736.  
 FESTE, n. FR. Feast. 10375.  
 FESTEYING, part. pr. FR. Feasting. 10659.  
 FESTLICH, adj. Used to feasts. 10595.  
 FECHER, n. SAX. A vetch. T. iii. 938. *See f. 1016*  
 FEYS, n. FR. Work. 8305.  
 FEYSIE, adj. Well made; neat. 157.  
 FEYSIVELY, adv. Neatly; properly. 124. 3205.  
 FEYS, FEY, part. pa. of FECHER. 821. 2529. 5067.  
 FEY, n. FR. Faith. L. W. 2508.  
 FEYRE, n. FR. A fair, or market. 5803.  
 FIAUNCE, n. FR. Trust. R. 5481.  
 FIDEL, n. SAX. A fiddle. 298.  
 FILL for FELL, pa. t. of FALL. 1105. 2668.  
 FINCH, n. SAX. A small bird. *To pull a finch*. 654. was a  
 proverbial expression, signifying, *To strip a man, by*  
*fraud, of his money*. &c. See R. 5863.  
 If I may gripe a riche man,  
 I shall so *puile* him, if I can,  
 That he shall in a fewe stoundes  
 Lose all his markes and his poundes.—  
 Our maidens shall eke *plucke* him so,  
 That him shall neder *fethers* mo.—  
 See also R. 6820.  
 Without scalding they hem *pulle*.  
 FIND, v. SAX. To find; to supply. 12471. See the n.  
 PINT for FINEDETH. 4069. 15886.  
 FINE, FIN, n. FR. End. 4844. 9980.  
 — v. FR. To cease. 6718. R. 1797.  
 — adj. FR. *Offine force*. T. v. 421. Of very necessity  
 FIT, n. SAX. A division, or short portion of a poem. 13816.  
 See Gloss. *Percy*, in *v*.  
 FITTINGEST, adj. sup. SAX. Most fitting. A. F. 521.  
 FIXE, adj. FR. Fixed. 11594. 16247.  
 FLAIR for FLEV, pa. t. of FLEER. Flow. C. N. 213.  
 FLAINE, part. pa. of FLAIS, v. SAX. Flaied, or flood. P  
 155, col. 2. l. 62.  
 FLAMBE, n. FR. Flame. T. v. 302.  
 FLATOUR, n. FR. A flatterer. 15331. *Conf. Am.* 154. b.  
 FLAWE, adj. Yellow; from the LAT. *Flavus*. C. L.  
 782. Gloss. *Ur*.  
 FLECKED, adj. Spotted. 9722. 16033.  
 FLECKERING, part. pr. 1964. See FLICKER.  
 FLEE, v. neut. SAX. To Fly. 6102. 10436.  
 FLEEN, n. pl. SAX. Fleas. 16966.  
 FLENE, v. SAX. To banish. 17131. R. 6781.  
 FLEMED, part. pa. 15526.  
 FLEMER, n. Banisher. 4880.  
 FLETE, v. SAX. To float; to swim. 2309.  
 — for FLETETH. 4883.  
 FLETING, part. pr. 1958.  
 FLICKER, v. neut. SAX. To flutter. P. 166, col. 2. l. 8. T. iv. 1221.  
 FLIT, v. neut. SAX. To Fly. P. 154, col. 2. l. 3. R. 5399.  
*Elle full*. Orig.  
 — v. act. R. 1812. To remove. 8.  
 FLITTED, part. pa. Removed; shifted. T. v. 1543.  
 FLITTERING, part. pr. Floating. Bo. iii. m. 9. *Fluitan-*  
*tis*. Orig.  
 FLO, n. SAX. An arrow. 17213. FLONE, pl. D. K. 469.  
 FLOCKMEL, adv. SAX. In a flock. 7962.  
 FLOKIN, pr. n. A species of gold coin. 12704.  
 FLOTTRY, adj. SAX. Floating. See the n. on *v*. 2085.  
 FLOTTE, v. Bo. iii. pr. 11. as FLETE.  
 — v. FR. To float. Bo. iii. pr. 11.  
 FLOURELES, adj. Without flower. C. D. 1860.  
 FLOURETTE, n. FR. A small flower. R. 891.  
 FLOYTING. 91. Playing on the flute. See the note.  
 FOINE, v. FR. To make a pass in fencing; to push. 1654. 2532.  
 FOISON, n. FR. Abundance. 3165. 4924.  
 FOLED, part. pa. SAX. Foaled. 7127.  
 FOLKHAARDINESS, n. FR. Rashness. Bo. i. pr. 3.  
 FOLE LARGE, adj. M. 117, col. 1. l. 26. P. 165. col. 1. l. 56.  
 Foolishly liberal.  
 FOLIE, n. FR. Folly. 3148. 1800.  
 FOLILY, adv. Foolishly. 9777. 15806.  
 FOLWE, v. SAX. To follow. 530. 6165.  
 FOLV, adj. Foolish. R. 5006. 5085.  
 FOND, adj. SAX. Foolish. R. 5366.  
 — pa. t. of FIND. 3919. 10121.  
 FONDE, v. SAX. To try. 4767. 9284. T. iii. 1161.  
 FONG, v. SAX. To take. 4797.  
 FONNE, n. SAX. A fool. 4067.  
 — v. To be foolish. C. L. 458.  
 FONT-STONE, n. SAX. A font for baptizing. 5143.  
 FOR, prep. SAX. Pro. LAT. *Pour*. FR. It is frequently  
 prefixed to verbs in the infinitive mode, in the French  
 n n 2

- manner. *For to tellen*. 73. *For to don*. 78. *Pour dire*; *Pour faire*. *For to han ben*. 754. *Pour avoir tñ*.—It sometimes signifies—Against. *For percing of his herte*. 13791. Against, or to prevent, piercing. *For steling of the Rose*. R. 4329. Against stealing. See P. P. 31. *Some shall sow the sacks for sheding of the wheate*. l. e. to prevent shedding.
- FON**, conj. SAX. *Quia*. LAT. *Pour ce que*. FR. Because that. *For him luste to ride so*. 102. *For she wolde virtue please*. 8092. *Fon I teche*. 12374.
- in composition, has various powers. It is most commonly intensive of the signification of the word with which it is joined; as in *Fordronken*, *Fordry*, *Forfered*, &c., sometimes privative, as in *Forboden*, *Foryete*; and sometimes only communicative of an ill sense, as in *Forfaile*, *Forfare*, *Forfuged*, &c.
- For**, FR. and **Ver**, BRU. have similar powers in composition.
- FORBERE**, v. SAX. To abstain. R. 4751.
- FORBODEN**, part. pa. of **FORBERE**, v. SAX. Forbidden. P. 165, col. 1, l. 32. R. 6616.
- FORBRAKE**, pa. t. Broke off. Bo. iv. pr. 1. *Abrupt*. Orig.
- FORBRUSED**, part. pa. FR. Sorely bruised. 14532.
- FORCE**, n. FR. *No force*. 7771. No matter. *I do no force*. 6816. I care not. *I do no force of your divinities*. 7094. I care not for your divinity. *No force of deth*. 8968. No matter for death. *They yewe no force*. R. 4835. They care not. "*De fruit avoir ne fait force*." Orig.
- FORCUTTE**, v. SAX. To cut through. 17289.
- FURDO** v. SAX. To do away; to ruin. 13057.
- FORDON**, **FORDO**, part. pa. Undone. 11856. 17239.
- FORDRIVE** (*Fordriven*), part. pa. SAX. Driven away. R. 3782.
- FORDRONKEN**, part. pa. SAX. Very drunken. 3122. 12608.
- FORDRY**, adj. SAX. Very dry. 10723.
- FORDWINED**, part. pa. SAX. Wasted away. R. 368.
- FORX**, (*Foren*), part. pa. of **PARX**, v. SAX. Gone. R. 2710.
- prep. SAX. is seldom used by itself. In composition it has the power of *Before*.
- FORXIN**, n. L. W. 1960. A jakes. Gloss. *Ur*. from Sk. The context seems rather to require that it should signify *An outward court*, or garden.
- FOREWETING**, n. SAX. Foreknowledge. 15249.
- FORWOTE**, **FOREWETE**, v. SAX. To foreknow. 15340.
- FORFAITE**, v. FR. To misdo. P. 152, col. 1, l. 19.
- FORFARE**, v. SAX. To fare ill. R. 5384.
- FORFERED**, part. pa. SAX. Much afraid. 10841. T. iv. 1411.
- FORGIFTE**, n. SAX. Forgiveness. L. W. 1851.
- FORGON**, inf. v. SAX. To omit; to lose. 9959. 17344.
- FORGROWN**, part. pa. SAX. Overgrown. F. L. 45.
- FORJUGED**, part. pa. FR. Wrongfully judged. B. K. 275.
- FORKERVE**, v. SAX. To carve, or cut through. 17289.
- FORLAFTE**, part. pa. SAX. Left off entirely. 12017.
- FORLENE**, v. SAX. To lose entirely. P. 164, col. 2, l. 37.
- FORLETE**, v. SAX. To give over; to quit. P. 148, col. 1, l. 49.
- FORLORE** (*Forloren*), part. pa. SAX. Utterly lost. 3505.
- FORLOYNE**, n. FR. *Forlonge*. A term of the chase, which signifies that the game is far off. Du. 386.
- FORNE**, adj. SAX. First. *Adam oure forme father*. NL 109, col. 2, l. 2.
- FORMEST**, adj. sup. SAX. First. Du. 890.
- FORMELL**, A. F. 371. is put for the female of any fowl; more frequently for a female eagle. See ver. 445. 535.
- FORPINED**, part. pa. SAX. Wasted away; tormented. 205. 1455.
- FORSAKE**, v. SAX. To denie. Bo. ii. pr. 3. 4.
- FORSHAPEN**, part. pa. SAX. Transformed. T. ii. 66.
- FORSRONKE** (*Forsronken*), part. pa. SAX. Shrunk up. F. L. 358.
- FORSLEUTHE**, **FORSLOITHE**, **FORSLOGGE**, v. SAX. To lose through sloth. 15102. P. 162, col. 1, l. 28.
- FORSONGEN**, part. pa. SAX. Tired with singing. R. 664.
- FORSTER**, n. FR. A forester. 117.
- FORSTRAUGHT**, part. pa. SAX. Distracted. 13035.
- FORTHBY**, adv. SAX. Forward by. 13499. 13532.
- FORTHER**, v. SAX. To further; to advance. T. ii. 1363.
- FORTHINKE**, v. SAX. To grieve; to vex. 9780. T. ii. 1414.
- FORTHUGHT**, pa. t. of **FORTHINKE**. R. 1671.
- FORTHREN**, inf. m. of **FORTHER**. T. v. 1708.
- FORTHY**, conj. SAX. Therefore. 1843.
- FORTRODEN**, part. pa. of **FORTREAD**, v. SAX. Trodden down. P. 150, col. 1, l. 53.
- FORTUTT**, adj. FR. Accidental. Bo. v. pr. 1.
- FORTUNE**, v. FR. To make fortunate. 419. To give good or bad fortune. 2379.
- FORTUNOUS**, adj. Proceeding from fortune. Bo. ii. pr. 3. 4.
- FORWAKED**, part. pa. SAX. Having waked long. 5016.
- FORWANDRED**, part. pa. SAX. Having wandered long. R. 3336.
- FORWELKED**, part. pa. SAX. Much wrinkled. R. 360.
- FORWEPT**, part. pa. Having much wept. C. D. 1833.
- FORWERED**, part. pa. of **FORTER**, v. SAX. Worn out. R. 235.
- FORWERIE**, adj. SAX. Very weary. R. 3336.
- FORWORD**, (*Foreword*), n. SAX. A promise, or covenant. 831. 854.
- FORWOUNDED**, part. pa. SAX. Much wounded. R. 4539.
- FORWRAPPED**, part. pa. Wrapped up. 12622. P. 163, col. 1, l. 35.
- FORYELDE**, v. SAX. To repay. 6707. L. W. 457.
- FORYETE**, v. SAX. To forget. 1894.
- FORYETTEN**, part. pa. 3055.
- FOSTER**, n. FR. R. 6329. as **FORSTER**.
- FOSTRED**, part. pa. of **FOSTER**, v. SAX. Nourished. 8916. 9.
- FOSTRING**, n. Nutriment. 7457.
- FOTE-HOT**. 4858. Immediately. See the n. and add to the instances there quoted. Du. 375.
- FOTE-MANTEL**. 474. means, I suppose, a sort of riding-petticoat, such as is now used by market-women.
- FOTHER**, n. SAX. A carriage-load; an indefinite large quantity. 532. 1910.
- FOUDRE**, n. FR. Lightning. F. ii. 27.
- FOULE**, n. SAX. A bird. 10463.
- FOUND**, pa. t. of **FIND**. Supplied. 12471. See the n.
- FOUNDE**, v. AD. 244. as **FONDE**.
- FOUNDERED**, pa. t. of **FOUNDER**, v. FR. Fell down. 2882.
- FOWERTIE**, num. SAX. Forty. R. 5733.
- FOXERIE**, n. Foxish manners. R. 6795.
- FRA** for **FRO**, prep. SAX. From. It is sometimes used adverbially. *Til and fra*. 4037. To and fro. 2850.
- FRANE**, v. SAX. To ask. T. v. 1226.
- FRANKES**, n. pl. SAX. Spots, freckles. 2171.
- FRANCHISE**, n. FR. Frankness; generosity. 9661. 11828.
- FRANK**, n. A denomination of French money; answering at present to the *Livre Tournois*. 13111.
- FRANKLEIN**, n. FR. See his **CHARACTER**. v. t. 333–362. and the n. on ver. 333.
- FRAUGHT**, v. SAX. To freight, load a ship. 4591.
- FRE**, adj. SAX. Willing; unconstrained. 854.—At liberty. 5631.—Liberal, bountiful. 13106. 13462.
- FREDON**, n. SAX. 46. 17075. as **FRANCHISE**.
- FRELTEE**, n. FR. Frailty. 5674, 5.
- FREIGUS** for **PHRYGIUS**. Du. 1070.
- FRENDE**, **FRENED**, adj. SAX. Strange. 10743. T. ii. 248. *To friend ne to frened*. P. P. 79.
- FRENETIKE**, adj. FR. Frantick. T. v. 206.
- FRENSEIE**, n. FR. A frenzy. T. i. 728.
- FRIERE**, n. FR. A Frier. See his **CHARACTER**. ver. 206–271. and P. P. 12. a. b.
- FRESHE**, v. FR. To refresh. R. 1513.
- FRET**, n. FR. A band. L. W. 225. 8. F. L. 152.
- FRET**, **FRETTE**, part. pa. FR. Fraught, filled. R. 4705. L. W. 1115. C. L. 124. or, perhaps, *Wrought in a kind of fret work*. A sort of Blazon is called *fretted*. In R. ver. 4705. And through the *fret full of falsehoods*—we should read—A trouthe *fret full of falsehood*.
- FRETE**, v. SAX. To eat, devour. 2070.
- FRETING**, part. pr. 2021.
- FRETTE** (*Fretet*), part. pa. 4895.
- FREYNE**, v. SAX. 13530. 15901. as **FRANE**.
- FRISE**, pr. n. Friesland. R. 1093.
- FRO** v. T. i. 5. From you. *Ye* is put for *Yow*, that *Fro* ye may rime, in appearance at least, with *joye* and *Troye*. So in ver. 7038. *say ye* rimes to *praye*. See more of these double rimes in the n. on ver. 674. and add the following passages, in which *the* (*thee*), being the eleventh and last syllable of the verse, is to be pronounced without any accent.

- Ver. 10967. *aloue the rimes to youthe.*  
16131. *to the ——— sothe.*  
16762. *Ate the ——— swithe.*
- FROTE, v. Fr. To rub. 3746. T. ii. 1121.  
FROUNCELES, *adj.* Fr. Without wrinkle. R. 860.  
FROWARD, *adj.* Sax. Averse. R. 4940.  
FRUCTUOUS, *adj.* Fr. Fruitful. 17384.  
FRUITESTERE, n. Sax. A female seller of fruit. 12402.  
FUL-DRIVE, *part. pa.* Fully driven, completed. 12402.  
FULKE (f. FOLKE), n. Sax. People. F. L. 73.  
FULSUMNESSE, n. Sax. Satiety. 10719.  
FUMETERE, *pr. n.* of a plant; Fumitory. 14989. FUMARIA  
—*purgat bilem et humores adustos.* Ray's Synops. *syn.*  
FUMOSITEE, n. Fr. Fumes arising from excessive drink-  
ing. 10672. 12501.  
FUNDAMENT, n. Fr. Foundation. 7685.  
FURIAL, *adj.* Fr. Raging. 10762.  
FUSIBLE, *adj.* Fr. Capable of being melted. 16394.  
Fv, *interj.* Fr. 7809. *I say fy.* 4500. *I cry shame.*  
G.  
GARBE, v. Fr. To talk idly; to lye. 3510. 15072. *Garbe I*  
*of this ?* Bo. ii. pr. 5. *Nun id mentor ?*  
GACIDES, F. iii. 116. is probably a misprint for *Æacides*;  
though I do not know that Chiron had any right to that  
title.  
GADLING, n. Sax. An idle vagabond. R. 938.  
GADRED, *part. pa.* Sax. Gathered. 4379.  
GAILER, n. Fr. Gaoier. 1476.  
GAILLARD, *adj.* Fr. Brisk, gay. 3336. 4575.  
GAIRAS-BERIE. 14971. Berries of the dog-wood tree; *Cornus*  
*femina.*  
GALAXIE, *pr. n.* The milky way; a tract in the heaven so  
called. F. ii. 428.  
GALE, v. Sax. See the n. on ver. 6414.  
GALFRIDE, *pr. n.* Geoffrey of Monmouth. F. iii. 382.  
Geoffrey Vinsauf. C. L. 11. See GAUFRIDE.  
GALICE, *pr. n.* A province of Spain. 468. The famous  
shrine of *St. James at Compostella* was in Galicia.  
GALINGALE, *pr. n.* Sweet cyperus. 383.  
GALLIEN, GALLIAN, *pr. n.* Galen. 433. 12240. See the notes.  
GALOCHIE, n. Fr. A shoe. 10869.  
GALPE, v. Sax. To gape, to yawn. 16984.  
GALPING, *part. pr.* Gaping, yawning. 10684.  
GALWES, n. pl. Sax. The gallowa. 6340. 14652.  
GAN, *pa. t.* of GINNE, v. Sax. Began. 11153. GANNEN, *pl.*  
T. ii. 194.  
GAR, v. Sax. To make. 4130.  
GARDEBRACE, n. Fr. Armour for the arm. C. D. 1554.  
GARGATE, n. Fr. The throat. 15341.  
GARISON, R. 3949. Seems to be used as a v. To heal. The  
Orig. has *Garison*, a n. Healing, recovery.  
GARNEMENT, n. Fr. A garment. Magd. 354.  
GARNER, n. Fr. A granary, or store-room. R. 1148. 6810.  
GARRISON, n. Fr. A guard, or garrison. M. 107., col. 2,  
l. 68. R. 4204.  
GASTNESS, n. Sax. Gastliness. Bo. iii. pr. 5.  
GATE, GATTE, *pa. t.* of GET, v. Sax. Gate; Begate. R.  
2692. L. W. 2661.  
— n. Sax. A way. *Went her gate.* R. 3332. *Went her way.*  
GATESDEN, *pr. n.* 436 John Gatesden, author of a medical  
work, entitled *Rosa Anglicana*, in the XIVth Century.  
See Tanner, in v.  
GAT-TOTHED. 470. See the note.  
GAUDE, n. Fr. Jest. 12323. T. ii. 351.  
GAUDIE, pl. Ridiculous tricks. P. 161, col. 1, l. 45.  
GAUDED. 152. See the note.  
GAUFRIDE, *pr. n.* 15353. See the note.  
GAURE, v. To stare. 3825. 5332. *For them, that GAURED*  
*and cast on me their sight.* Lydg. Trag. B. ix. f. 22. b.  
GAWAIN, *pr. n.* nephew to King Arthur, by his sister,  
married to King Lot. So says the *British History*,  
which goes under the name of *Geoffrey of Monmouth*;  
and I believe it will be in vain to look for any more  
authentic genealogist of all that family. He is there  
called *Walganus*. The French Romancers, who have  
built upon Geoffrey's foundations, agree in describing  
Gawain as a model of knightly courtesy. To this his  
established character our author alludes in ver. 10409.  
and in R. 2219.  
GAYLER, n. Fr. 1472. as GAILER.  
GRANT, n. Fr. Giant. *The Crane the geant.* A. F. 344.  
GRAR, n. F. L. 26. See GERRE.  
GRNDE, for GRIT. B. K. 127.  
GENELON, *pr. n.* of one of *Charlemagne's* officers, who, by  
his treachery, was the cause of the defeat at *Roncevaux*,  
the death of *Roland*, &c. for which he was torn to pieces  
by horses. This at least is the account of the author  
who calls himself *Archbishop Turpin*, and of the Ro-  
mancers who followed him; upon whose credit the name  
of *Genelon*, or *Ganelon*, was for several centuries a  
synonymous expression for the worst of traitors. Our  
author alludes to his treachery, ver. 14699. 15233. and to  
his punishment, ver. 13124. See also Du. 1121.  
GENT, *adj.* Fr. Neat, pretty. 3234. 13645.  
GENTERIE, n. Fr. Gentility. 6728.  
GENTIL, *adj.* Fr. In its original sense means *Well-born*;  
*of a noble family.* 6735. R. 2194. *Il y avoit un Cheva-*  
*lier, Capitaine de la ville; — point gentilhomme n'estoit*;  
*— et l'avoit fait, pour sa vaillance, le Roy Edouard Che-*  
*valier.* Froissart, v. ii. c. 77.—It commonly put for  
*Civil*; *liberal*; *gentlemanlike*.  
GENTILLESSE, n. Fr. follows the significations of GENTIL.  
GEMANCKIE, n. Fr. Divination by figures made on the  
earth. P. 160, col. 1, l. 27.  
GERRE, n. Sax. All sorts of instruments; of Cookery. 354.  
of War. 2182. of Apparel. 8948. of Chemistry. 16763. *In*  
*hir quaintegeres.* 1833. In their strange fashions.  
GERIE, GERFUL. 1536. 1540. Changeable. Probably from  
the Fr. *Girer*. To turn round. GIERFUL. T. iv. 296.  
GERLOND, n. Fr. A garland. 668. The name of a dog. 15309  
GESSE, v. Sax. To guess. 2595. 3467.  
GEST, n. Sax. A guest. 8914.  
GESTS, v. See the n. on ver. 17354.  
GESTES, n. pl. LAT. Actions; adventures. T. ii. 1349  
*The Roman gestes.* 10158. See the note.  
GESTOUR, n. A relater of gestes. See the n. on ver. 13775.  
GET, n. Fr. *Geste*. Fashion; behaviour. 684. See the  
note. *With that false get.* 16745. With that cheating  
contrivance.  
GETHE, for GETH. L. W. 2143.  
GIE, v. Sax. To guide. 15604. 15627.  
GIGGERS, n. pl. F. iii. 852. Irregular sounds, produced by  
the wind, &c. *Gigue*, Fr. argued a musical instrument,  
like a fiddle; and from thence a sort of light tune.  
Menage, in v. It is probably a word of Teutonic ori-  
ginal. See Junius.  
GILBERTIN, *pr. n.* An English Physician of the xivth  
Century. See Fabricius *Bibl. Med. Et.* in v. GILBERTUS  
DE AQUILA.  
GILOUR, n. Fr. A deceiver. 4319.  
GILT, *part. pa.* Sax. Gilded; of the colour of gold.  
L. W. 230.  
GILT, n. Sax. Guilt. 5969.  
GILTS-LES, *adj.* Sax. Free from guilt. 1312. 1314.  
GILTIF, *adj.* Sax. Guilty. 5068. *Conf. Am.* 62. b.  
GIN, n. Fr. Engine; contrivance. 10442. 16633.  
GINGIBER, n. Fr. Ginger. R. 1369.  
GINNE, v. Sax. To begin. T. v. 657.  
GIPCERE, n. Fr. A pouch or purse. 359.  
GIPPE, n. Fr. An upper frock, or cassock. R. 7214.  
GIPON, n. Fr. A short cassock. 75. 2122.  
GIRDE, v. Sax. To strike; to smite. 14464. This word is  
perhaps the original of *Gride*, in Spenser. See Obs. on  
*Sp.* v. ii. p. 62.  
GIRDELESTEDDE, n. Sax. The waist; the place of the girdle.  
R. 826.  
GIRLEN, n. pl. Sax. Young persons, either male or  
female. 666.  
GIRT, *part. pa.* of GIRDE. *Thurgh girt.* 1012. *Smitten*  
through.  
GISARME, n. Fr. A battle-ax. R. 8978. See Du Cange, in  
v. *Gisarma*.  
GISE, n. Fr. Guise; fashion. 2127. *At his owen gise.* 666.  
In his own manner; as he would wish.  
GITE, n. Fr. A gown. 3646. 6141.

GRISLY, *adj.* SAK. Dreadful. 1973. 6318.

---

**GROCHE**, *v. Sax.* To grutch; to murmur. 3861. 8025.  
**GROFF**, *adj. Sax.* Flat on the ground. 851. 13605. R. 2561.  
**GROINE**, *n. Fr.* The snout of a swine. P. 149, col. 2, l. 29.  
 A hanging lip. T. l. 350.  
 — *v.* To hang the lip, in discontent. R. 7099.  
**GRONE**, *v. Fr.* To groan. To grunt. 7411.  
**GRONT**, *pa. t.* 14627. Groaned.  
**GROPE**, *v. Sax.* To search; to examine by feeling. 7369. 7723.  
**GROT**, *n.* A coin, worth four-pence. 6974. 7546.  
**GROUNDE**, *part. pa.* of **GRIND**. 16243.  
**GROYNING**, *n.* 2462. Discontent. See **GROINE**.  
**GUERDON**, *n. Fr.* Reward; Recompense. 7460. 8759.  
 — *v.* To reward. P. 152, col. 1, l. 55.  
**GUERDONLES**, *adj.* Without reward. B. K. 400.  
**GUIDO**, *pr. n.* L. W. 1462. **GUIDO DE COLUMPNIS**. F. iii. 381. *Guido dalle Colonne*, of Messina in Sicily, a lawyer and poet, died about 1290. Quadrio, vol. ii. p. 160. His *History of the Trojan war*, to which our author refers, was written in Latin, and finished in 1287. See the *n.* on *ver.* 15147. I have there intimated my suspicion, that he translated it, for the most part, from a French Romance of *Benoit de Sainte More*. However that may have been, Guido's work is certainly the original, from which the later writers of the middle ages have generally taken their accounts of Trojan affairs. It was translated into Italian in 1384 by *Filippo Cotti*, a Florentine. Quadrio, vol. vi. p. 475. A French translation is also extant, in which it is said to be *translatée en François premierement du commandement du Maire de la cité de Beauvais, en nom et en honneur de Charles le roy de France, l'an mil occ. quatre vingts*. MS. Reg. 16. F. ix. This is probably the French translation mentioned by Lydgate in the Prologue to his *Boke of Troie*, which is a mere paraphrase *in verse* of Guido's history, with some digressions and additions of his own. Lydgate's work was finished, as he tells us himself at the end, in 1490.

## II.

**HABERGEON**, *n. Fr.* A diminutive of *Hauberg*, a coat of mail. 76. 13790.  
**HABILLTEE**, *n. Fr.* Ability. C. L. 1344.  
**HABITACLES**, *n. pl. Fr.* Places of habitation. F. iii. 104.  
**HABITE**, *v. Fr.* To dwell. R. 694.  
**HABUNDANT**, *part. pr. Fr.* Abundant. 7935.  
**HACKNAIE**, *n. Fr.* An ambling horse, or pad. R. 1137.  
**HACKING**, *n. Fr.* Cutting in pieces. F. iii. 213.  
**HADDEN**, *pa. t. pl.* of **HAVE**. 575. 762.  
**HAF**, *pa. t.* of **HAVE**, *v. Sax.* Heaved, raised. 2430.  
**HAIE**, *hav*, *n. Fr.* A hedge. R. 54. 3007.  
**HAILE**, *n. Sax.* Health; welfare. 4067.  
**HAILES**, *pr. n.* of an Abbey in Gloucestershire. See the *n.* on *ver.* 12587.  
**HAIRE**, *n. Fr.* A hair-cloth. 18601. R. 438.  
**HAKENNY**, *n. Fr.* 16027. as **HACKNAIE**.  
**HAKETON**, *n. Fr.* A short cassock, without sleeves. 13789.  
**HALDEN** for **HOLDEN**, *part. pa.* of **HOLD**. 4206.  
**HALFE**, *n. Sax.* A side; a part. *A' Goddes half*. 5632. Du. 370. On God's part; with God's favour. *A' this halfe God*. T. l. i. 325. b. On this side of God. *Four halves*. 3481. Four sides.  
**HALL**, *pr. n.* 433. An Arabian Physician. Fabric. Bibl. Gr. t. xiii. p. 17.  
**HALKE**, *n. Sax.* A corner. 11433. 15779.  
**HALPE**, *pa. t.* of **HELP**, *v. Sax.* 14052. R. 1911.  
**HALS**, *n. Sax.* The neck. 4493.  
**HALSE**, *v. Sax.* See the *n.* on *ver.* 13575.  
**HALT**, *pa. t.* of **HOLD**, *v. Sax.* Held, or kept. 5141. — for **HOLT**, *i. e.* Holdeth. Du. 621.  
**HALTE**, *v. Fr.* To go lamely. Du. 622.  
**HAME** for **HOMME**, *n. Sax.* 4030.  
**HAMELE**, *v. Sax.* To hamstring; to cut off. T. ii. 964.  
**HAMERS**, *n. pl. Sax.* Hammers. Du. 1164.  
**HAN**, *inf. m.* of **HAVE**, *v. Sax.* 754. 1048. 2109. — *pr. t.* pl. 931. 1022. 7681.  
**HANDELING**, P. 155, col. 2, l. 50. appears from the context to mean a *sort of breeches*

**HAPPE**, *n. Sax.* Chance. 13168. Bo. v. pr. i.  
 — *v.* To happen. 587. 6467.  
**HARD**, *adj. Sax.* Hard. *Harde grace*. 7810. 16133. Misfortune. See **GRACE**. It is used adverbially. 9879. 13133.  
**HARDE**, *v. Sax.* To make hard. 10359.  
**HARDELY** (*Hardily*), *adv. Fr.* Boldly. 10147. *adv. Sax.* Certainly. 7867. 7901. 9186. T. v. 673.  
**HARDING**, *n. Sax.* Hardening. 10537.  
**HARIE**, *v. Fr.* To hurry. To harie and *drave*. P. 149, col. 2, l. 64.  
**HARIED**, *part. pa.* Hurried. 2728. *Its seroient haries en grand manere*. Froissart, v. i. c. 225.  
**HARLOT**, *n.* See the *n.* on *ver.* 649.  
**HARLOTRIES**, *n. pl.* Ribaldries. 563.  
**HARNEIS**, *n. Fr.* Armour. 1615. Furniture. 5718.  
**HARNEISE**, *v. Fr.* To dress. It. 2648.  
**HAROW**, *interj. Fr.* See the *n.* on *ver.* 3286.  
**HARPOUR**, *n. Fr.* A harper. T. ii. 1030. In the Act of Resumption, 28 H. vi. there is a proviso in favour of John Turges, *Harpourt with the Queen*, for the reversion of an annuity of 10 Marks, after the death of William Langton, Minstrell.  
**HARWED**, *pa. t.* of **HARWE**, *v. Sax.* See the *n.* on *ver.* 3512.  
**HARWARDUR**, *n. Fr.* A Player at Hazard; A gamester. 12530.  
**HARARDRIK**, *n. Fr.* Gaming, in general. 12524.  
**HASELWODE**. T. iii. 892. V. 565. 1174. All these passages plainly allude to the same proverbial saying, which appears to have been used in scorn or derision of any improbable hope or expectation. Why it was so used, is beyond my reach to discover. It may be proper however to mention that in T. iii. 892. MS. Harl. 3643. reads—*Haselwode is shaken*,—and that the passage, T. v. 1174. is an imitation of the following in the *Filostrato*. See Essay, &c. n. 62.  
 Ma pandero seco tacitamente  
 Ride de cio che Troylo dicea—  
 Chel al fusse semblante facia  
 Di credèrio, e dicia, di mungitelo  
 Aspetta il vento questo tapincello.  
**HASTIF**, *adj. Fr.* Hasty. 3545.  
**HASTILY**, *adv.* Hastily. 13546.  
**HATE**, *v. Sax.* To be named. R. 38.  
**HAUBERKE**, *n. Fr.* A coat of mail. 13792.  
**HAVEN**, *inf. m.* of **HAVE**, *v. Sax.* Bo. iv. pr. 2. It is more commonly abbreviated into **HAN**.  
**HAUNCE**, *v. Fr.* To raise, to enhance. B. K. 431.  
**HAUNT**, *n. Fr.* Custom; practice. 449.  
**HAUNTE**, *v. Fr.* To practise. P. 164. col. 2, l. 4.  
**HAUNTEDEN**, *pa. t. pl.* 12398. Practised, frequented.  
**HAUTIN**, *adj. Fr.* Haughty. 3730.—Loud. 12264.—*A hautein faucon*. L. W. 1118. A high-flying hawk; *Faulcon hautain*. Fr.  
**HAVOIR** for **AVOIR**, *n. Fr.* Wealth. R. 4720.  
**HAWKE**, *n. Sax.* A hawthorn-berry. 6341. T. iii. 856.—A farm-yard. 12789. A church-yard. P. 165, col. 1, l. 10.  
**HAWKEBAKS**, 4515. See the note.  
**HE**, *pron. Sax.* is often prefixed in all its cases to proper names emphatically, according to the Saxon usage. *He Moises*. 10564. *He Tityus*. T. i. 787. See the *n.* on *ver.* 9694.—**HE** is also frequently used for *It* in all cases. 7550. 7838. 9737. See the *n.* on *ver.* 9694.  
**HED**, *n. Sax.* Head. On his *hed*. 1346. On pain of losing his head. See the note.  
**HEDDE** for **HIDDEN** (*Hidden*). L. W. 208.  
**HEDGES**, *n. pl. Sax.* Hedges. 18224.  
**HEISUGGE**. A. F. 612. *Currucio*, a little bird, which is supposed to hatch the Cuckow's egg, and to be destroyed by the young Cuckow. *Sp.*  
**HELE**, *v. Sax.* Helan. To hide. 6531. R. 6982.  
 — *v. Sax.* Helan. To heal; to help. 1250. 10965.  
 — *n. Sax.* Health. 3104. 4237.  
**HELELES**, *adj.* Helpless. T. v. 1562.  
**HELIE**, *pr. n.* Elysium. C. L. 119.  
**HELMED**, *part. pa.* Fr. Armed with an helmet. 14376. T. ii. 503.  
**HELOWIS**, *pr. n.* 6289. Eloise, the mistress of Abelard. See a summary of their history in *Rom. de la Rose*, *ver.* 9179—9247.  
**HEN**, *obl. c. pl.* of *HE*. Them. See *HE*, and *SEEM*, &c. n. 28.



**HIMSELF, HIMSELVE, HIMSELVEN.** See **SELF**.  
**HENCHMEN, n. pl.** Pages. F. L. 252. See a note on the *Midsummer Night's Dream* of Shakespeare. Act. II. Sc. 2. Last Edit.  
**HENDE, HENDY, adj. SAX.** Civil; courteous. 6863. 3190.  
**HENNE, 4031. HENNE, 2368. 3887. HENNES. R. 4922.**  
**HENNA. 18631. adv. SAX.** Hence.  
**HENO, pa. t. and part. of HANG, v. SAX.** 360. 678. 9757.  
**HENNESFORTH, adv. SAX.** Hennesforth. 10072.  
**HENTE, v. SAX.** To take hold of; to catch. 906. 7062.  
**HENT, pa. t. and part. 700. 6899. 1583.**  
**HEPE, n. SAX.** A heap.—*To hepe.* T. III. 1770. Bo. iv. pr. 6. Together; in a heap.—The fruit of the Dog-rose. 13577.  
**HERAUD, n. Fr.** A herald. 2533.  
**HERBERGAGE, n. Fr.** Lodging. 4397.  
**HERBERGOURS, n. pl. Fr.** Providers of lodgings; Harbingers. 5417.  
**HERBERWE, n. SAX.** An inn; a lodging. 767. 4143.—The place of the Sun. 11347. In ver. 405. (see the note) it rather means, I think, *A harbour*.—**HERBER.** T. II. 1705. F. L. 49. An harbour.  
**HERD, v. SAX.** To lodge. R. 6145.  
**HERD, HIERDE, n. SAX.** A keeper. 605. 18680.—**HERDS-GROUES.** F. III. 135. Shepherd-boys.  
**HIERDRA, n. pl. Coarse SAX.** *Herde, fibra lini.* Killian. R. 1233.  
*That not of hamps ne herdin was.*  
 So this ver. is written in Ms. Hunter. The Orig. has only—*elle ne fut de bourras*.  
**HERE for HIRE, pron. 3050. 3691. 4880.** and in other places, for the sake of the rhyme.  
**HERE, adv. SAX.** In this place.  
**—** in composition, signifies this, without including any idea of place. *Herecainnes.* 3041. Against this. *Herebefore.* 1586. Before this.  
**— v. SAX.** To hear. 2347.  
**HERD, HERDE, pa. t. and part. 221. 965. 1597.**  
**HERDEN, pa. t. pl. 15382.**  
**HERE, n. SAX.** Hair. 677.  
**HEREK, adj.** Made of hair. 12670.  
**HERKING, part. pr. of HERKE, v. SAX.** Harkening. 10392.  
**HERMES, pr. n. 16902.** A chemical treatise under his name is extant in the *Theat. Chemic.* t. iv. See Fabric. *Bibl. Gr. L. t. c. 10.* **HERMES BALLENUB.** F. III. 183. Whether a different person from him just mentioned, I cannot tell.  
**HERNE, n. SAX.** A corner. 11433. 16126.  
**HERONERE, n. Fr.** A hawk made to file only at the heron. T. iv. 413. L. W. 1118.  
**HERONSEWES, n. pl. Fr.** Young Herons. 10382. See the note.  
**HERTE for HURT, v. SAX.** Du. 883.  
**— n. SAX.** Heart. *Herte-blood.* 6300. 19836. Heart's blood. *Herte-spone.* See the n. on ver. 2608.  
**HERTELKE, adj.** Without courage. 14914.  
**HERTLY, adj.** Hearty. 10319.  
**HERY, v. SAX.** To praise. 8492. 13548.  
**HERVING, n.** Praise. 13389.  
**HESTE, n. SAX.** Command. 12574.—Promise. R. 4475. 7.  
**HET, HETTE, pa. t. of HETE, v. SAX.** Heated. A. F. 145.  
**HETE, v. SAX.** To promise. 2400. 4754. To be called. Du. 200. See **HIGHTE**.  
**HETHNESSE, n. SAX.** Country of Heathens. 40. 5532.  
**HETHING, n. SAX.** Contempt. 4108. *All is thy HETHING fallen upon thee.* F. L. 273.  
**HEVE, v. SAX.** To heave, to raise. 552.—*v. neut.* To labour. T. II. 1209.  
**HEVED, n. SAX.** Head. F. II. 42. *Every virtue in my heved.* So I apprehend this line should be read, instead of in mo *heved*.  
**HEVEN-QUEEN, n. SAX.** The queen of heaven; the Virgin Mary. 16357.  
**HEW of LINCOLN, pr. n. 13614.** See Discourse, &c. §. xxxii.  
**HEWE, v. SAX.** To cut. 1424.  
**— v. neut.** C. L. 990. T. L. 1. 325. b. *He that heweth to ale, with chippes he may lese his sight.* So Conf. Am. 18. b.  
*Full afte he heweth up so hye,  
 That chippes fallen in his eye.*

**HEWE, n. SAX.** Colour; appearance. 10901. T. II. 21.  
**HEWED, part. pa.** Coloured. 11557.  
**HEXT, adj. superl. SAX.** Highest. C. D. 345. *Hegh, Hephast, Hephst, Hext.* In the same manner *Next* is formed from *Neph*.  
**HIDOUS, adj. Fr.** Dreadful. 3520.  
**HIDOUSLY, adv.** Terribly. 1703.  
**HIS, v. SAX.** To hasten. 10608. C. D. 1550.  
**— n.** Haste; diligence. *In, or On his,* 2981. 4025. T. iv. 1365. In haste.  
**— HIGHS, adj. SAX.** High. *In high and low.* 819. 5413. See the n. on ver. 819.  
**HIERDESSE, n. SAX.** A shepherdess. T. I. 654. See **HERDRA**.  
**HIGHEM, F. III. 1062.** is perhaps miswritten for *Highe*.  
**HIGHT, n. SAX.** Highth. 1822. *On hight.* 1796. seems to signify—aloud; in a high voice. *En haut.* Fr.  
**HIGHTS, v. SAX.** See the n. on ver. 1016.  
**HIM, obl. c. of HE, is often used alone in that reciprocal sense, which is generally expressed by the addition of the adj. Self. 3052. Then hath he don his friend, ne him, no shame, i. e. nor himself. As he him laid. 1380. And clod him. 1411. And bare him. 1440.**  
 It is also frequently put without the usual preposition. *Him to grete shame.* 17309. To great shame of him. *She falleth him to fete.* 5534. She falleth at the feet of him. *She swere him.* 6543. She swore to him. *Hem and Hire* are used in the same manner.  
**HIMSELF, HIMSELVE, HIMSELVEN.** See **SELF**.  
**HINDEREST, superl. d. of HIND, adv. SAX.** Hindmost. 634.  
**HINE, n. SAX.** A servant in husbandry; a hind. 605.  
**— n. Bal. VII. 35.** should probably be *Hiene*. The *gall of an Apens* was used to cure a certain disorder of the eye. *Plin. N. H. L. 29, c. 38.*  
**HIPOCRAS, pr. n.** Hippocrates. 433. See the note.  
**HIR, pron. poss. SAX.** Their. See **ESSAY**, &c. p. xli.  
**HIRE, obl. c. of HIR, pron. SAX.** is often put for *Hieracif*. 139. 4869. and without the usual preposition. 11057. See **HIM**.  
**— pron. poss. SAX.** Her. See **ESSAY**, &c. p. xli.  
**HIRESELF, HIRESELVE, HIRESELVEN.** See **SELF**.  
**HIRE, pron. poss. SAX.** Their. 7508. See the **ESSAY**, &c. p. 29.  
**HISTORIAL, adj. Fr.** Historical. 12090.  
**HO, interj. Fr.** commanding a cessation of any action. See the n. on ver. 2535. and I believe *o* in that verse is put for *Ho*, and not for *Oyez*. See the C. L. ver. 270.  
**HOCHPOT, n. Fr.** A mixture of various things shaken together in the same pot. M. 112, col. 1, l. 10. *Hutspot.* BELG.  
**HOKER, n. SAX.** Frowardness. 5717.  
**HOKERLY, adv.** Frowardly. P. 159, col. 2, l. 11.  
**HOLD, n. SAX.** A fort, or castle. 4927.  
**— v. SAX.** To keep. *To hold in honde.* T. V. 1370. To keep in suspense. T. V. 1614. 1679. To amuse in order to deceive.  
**— HOLDEN, part. pa.** Obligated. 5717. T. III. 1363.  
**HOLE, HOL, adj. SAX.** Entire; whole; sound. 6352. 7615.  
**HOLLY, adv.** Entirely; wholly. 5793.  
**HOLOUR, n. SAX.** A whoremonger. 5836. P. 165, col. 2, l. 1.  
**HOLT, n. SAX.** A grove, or forest. 6 T. III. 332.  
**— for HOLDETH.** 9294. 9366.  
**HOMLY, adj. SAX.** Domestic. 9605.—Plain; simple. 7425.  
**HOMLINESS, n. SAX.** Domestic management. 8305.—Familiarity. M. 118, col. 1, l. 10.  
**HONDE, n. SAX.** A hand. *An honde-brede.* 3909. An hand's breadth. *Withouten honde.* T. III. 182. Without being pulled by any hand.—**HONDEN, pl. R.** 6963.  
**HONEST, adj. Fr.** means generally, according to the French usage, Creditable; honourable. 246. 13491. Becoming a person of rank. 8302. 9902.  
**HONESTETE, HONESTEE, n. Fr.** Virtue. 8298.—Decency. 14630.—Good manners. 6849.  
**HONO, v. SAX.** To hang. 12724.  
**HONT, n. SAX.** Du. 385. as **HUNT**.  
**HONY-SWETE, adj. SAX.** Sweet as honey. 9270.  
**HOPE, v. SAX.** To expect. 4027. See the note.  
**HOFFESTERES, n. pl. SAX.** Dancers. 2019. See the note.  
**HORD, n. SAX.** Treasure. 13014.—A private place, fit for the keeping of treasure. P. 165, col. 2, l. 16.

**HORN**, *HOOR*, *adj.* SAX. Hoary; grey. 7764. 9335.  
**HOROWS**, *adj.* SAX. Foul. C. M. 52.  
**HORRIBLETTE**, *n.* FR. Horribleness. R. 7285.  
**HORS**, *n. pl.* SAX. Horses. 5807. 7141. 13563.  
**HOARSE**, *adj.* SAX. Hoarse. Du. 347.  
**HORSLEY**, *adj.* 10508. is applied to a horse, as *manly* is to a man.  
**HOSPITALERS**, *n. pl.* LAT. Religious persons, of both sexes, who attended the sick in hospitals. P. 167, col. 1, l. 59.  
 —Knights Hospitalers, of different orders. R. 6693. See **Du Cange**, in v. *Hospitalarius*.  
**HOST**, *n.* FR. An army. 14486.  
**HOSTELER**, *n.* FR. An inn-keeper. 4358. 15035.  
**HOSTELRIE**, *n.* FR. An inn, or lodging-house. 23.  
**HOSTILEMENTS**, *n. pl.* Household furniture. Bo. II. pr. 5.  
**HOTE**, *adj.* SAX. Hot. 7018.  
**HOTE, HOTEIN**, *part. pa.* of **HETE**. Called. 3939.  
**HOVE**, *v.* SAX. To hover. T. III. 1433. T. v. 33.  
**HOUND-FISH**, *n.* SAX. The dog-fish. 9699.  
**HOUNE**, *n.* for **HOUND**. T. IV. 210. Thus said both here and house, i. e. hare and bound; all sorts of people.  
**HOOPED**, *part. t.* FR. Hooped, or hollowed. 15406.  
**HOUSAL**, *n.* SAX. The Eucharist. R. 6386.  
 —*v.* To administer the sacrament. R. 6437.  
 —To be *houseled*. To receive the sacrament. P. 170, col. 2, l. 60.  
**HOWVE**, *n.* SAX. A cap, or hood. See the *n.* on ver. 3009.  
**HULFERN**, *n.* SAX. Holly. B. K. 129.  
**HULSTRED**, *part. pa.* SAX. Hidden. R. 6146.  
**HUMBLEDEE**, *n.* SAX. Humblestate. 14590.  
**HUMBLEDEE**, *n.* FR. Humility. 4585.  
**HUMBLING**, *n.* A humming. F. II. 431. *Hommelen*; *Bombilli*, *bombum edere*. Kilian. Hence our *Humble-bee*.  
**HUNT**, *n.* SAX. A huntsman. 1690. 2090.  
**HURTLE**, *v.* FR. To push. 2618. 4717.  
**HUSBANDRIE**, *n.* SAX. Thrift, economical management. 4075.  
**HUSBOND-MAN**, *n.* SAX. The master of the family. 7350.  
**HUNT**, *adj.* SAX. Silent; whilst. Ito. II. m. 5.  
**HVLDE**, *v.* SAX. To pour. Bo. II. m. 2.  
**HVLLED**, *part. pa.* SAX. Hidden. 15461. See **IIKLE**.

## I.

**I**, at the beginning of a word, in the common Edit. and even in the MSS. of Chaucer, is often used to express a corruption of the Saxon prepositive particle *Ic*; which, in this Edit. of the Canterbury Tales, (as has been said before in the Essay, &c. p. xlv.) is always expressed by *y*. All such words, therefore, occurring in the works of Chaucer not contained in this Edition, should be looked for either under *y*, or under their second letters.

**JACKS OF DOVER**. 4345. See the note.

**JACKS POOL**. 5708. See the *n.* on ver. 14816.

**JACOBIN**, *pr. n.* A grey-frier. R. 6338.

**JAKKE STRAW**, *pr. n.* 15400. The noise made by the followers of this rebel, to which our author alludes, he had probably heard himself. It is called by Walsingham, p. 251. *clamor horrendissimus, non similis clamoribus quos edere solent homines, sed qui ultra omnem estimationem superaret omnes clamores humanos, et maxime posset assimilari nutatibus infernalium incolarum*. Many Flemings (*Flandrenses*) were beheaded by the rebels *cum clamore consueto*. Walsingham, *ibid.*

**JAMBEUX**, *n. pl.* FR. Boots; armour for the legs. 13804.  
**JANE**, *n.* A coin of (Jania) Genoa. It is put for any small coin. 8875. 13665.

**JANGLE**, *v.* FR. To prate; to talk much, or fast. 10534.  
 —*n.* Prate; babble. 6089.

**JANGLEKE**, *n.* A prater. 17292, 7.

**JANGLEKEKE**, *n.* A female prater. 6290. 10181.

**JAPE**, *n.* SAX. A trick; a jest. 4341. 16780.

—*v.* To jest. 13623.—To cheat; to laugh at. 1731.

**JAPE-WORTHY**, *adj.* Ridiculous. Ito. v. pr. 3.

**JAPER**, *n.* A common jester, or buffoon. P. 161, col. 1, l. 43.

**JAFERIE**, *n.* Buffoonerie. P. 161, col. 1, l. 43.

**ICH**, *ICH*, *pron.* SAX. I. So the *ich*. 12881. So the *icha*. 16397. So may I prosper.

**IDEL**, *adj.* SAX. Idle; fruitless. *In idel*. 11179. P. 189, col. 2, l. 29. In vain.

**IDOLASTRE**, *n.* FR. An idolater. 10172.

**JMOPARD**, *v.* To hazard; to put in danger. T. IV. 1560.

**JMOPARDIE**, *n.* Danger. T. II. 465. T. v. 1529. **JEOPARDIE**. Du. 666.

**JEREMIE**, *pr. n.* Jeremiah. 12560.

**JEROME**, *pr. n.* 6256. Our author has made much use of a treatise of St. Jerome, *contra Jovinianum*. See the *n.* on ver. 9172, and ver. 11679, and the Discourse, &c. n. 19.

**JESTES**, *n. pl.* T. v. 1510. F. III. *passim*. as **GESTES**.

**JEWERIE**, *n.* FR. A district, inhabited by Jews. 13419.

**JEWISE**, *n.* Judgement; punishment. 1741. 5215. It may have been formed by corruption either of the LAT. *Judicium*, or the FR. *Justice*. Conf. Am. 157. b. 158.

**ICH**, *pron.* SAX. I. 3667. 3665. See **ICH**.

**LIEN**, *pr. n.* The citadel of Troy. 15362.

**ILKE**, *adj.* SAX. Same. 64. 3035.

**IMAGINATIF**, *adj.* FR. Suspicious. 11408.

**IMPED**, *part. pa.* SAX. Planted. R. 5137.

**IMPETREN**, *pr. t.* pl. FR. Obtain by prayer. Bo. v. pr. 3.

**IMPRES**, *n. pl.* SAX. Shoots of trees. 13063. R. 6293.

**IMPORTABLE**, *adj.* FR. Intolerable. 14530. It. 6902.—Impossible. 9020.

**IMPORTUNE**, *adj.* FR. Troublesome. R. 5632.

**IMPOSSIBLE**, *adj.* FR. used as a substantive. 6270. T. III. 525.

**IN**, *prep.* SAX. Upon. 6350. 14500. 14545. *In with*. 9465. 9818. Within.

**INCUMBEROUS**, *adj.* FR. Cumbersome. F. II. 354.

**INCONSTANCE**, *n.* FR. Inconstancy. 7540.

**INCUBUS**. 6462. See the *n.* on ver. 6441.

**INDS**, *adj.* FR. Azure-coloured. R. 67.

**INDIGNE**, *adj.* FR. Unworthy. 8235.

**INNECED**, *part. pa.* SAX. Inserted. T. III. 1335.

**INEQUAL**, *adj.* FR. Unequal. 2273.

**INFORTUNAT**, *adj.* LAT. Unfortunate. 4722.

**INFORTUNE**, *n.* FR. Misfortune. R. 5551.

**INGOT**, *n.* A mould for casting ingots. 10674. 16701. 16782.

**INHABIT**, *part. pa.* FR. Inhabited. C. D. 1400.

**INHILDE**, *v.* SAX. To pour in. T. III. 44. See **IIVLDE**.

**INJURE**, *n.* FR. Injury. T. III. 1080.

**INLY**, *adv.* SAX. Inwardly, deeply, thoroughly. 6930. R. 397. T. III. 1612. F. I. 31.

**INNE**, *prep.* SAX. In. 14002.

—*In*, *n.* SAX. A house, habitation, lodging. 3347. 5517. 13372.

**INNED**, *part. pa.* SAX. Lodged. 2194.

**INNERESTE**, *adj. n. p.* SAX. Inmost. Bo. IV. pr. 6.

**INNOCENT**, *adj.* FR. Ignorant. 8150. 10840.

**INBELES**, *part. pa.* FR. Attested under seal. C. D. 1014.

**INSET**, *part. pa.* SAX. Implanted. Ito. II. pr. 3.

**INTERMINABLE**, *adj.* FR. Infinite. Bo. v. pr. 6.

**INWITTE**, *n.* SAX. Understanding. T. I. l. 390. b.

**JOCKE**, *pr. n.* 6065. See the note.

**JOCOIDE**, *adj.* FR. Joyous; pleasant. 16064.

**JOCKLOUR**, *n.* FR. A juggler. 7049.

**JOINANT**, *part. pr.* FR. Joining. 1082.

**JOINE**, *v.* FR. To enjoin. R. 2355.

**JOLIE ROBIN**. The name of a dance. R. 7455. *De la danse le beau Robin*. Orig. 12984.—See T. v. 1174.

**JOLIV**, *adj.* FR. Jolly; joyful. 3335. 4152.

**JOMBEKE**, *v.* To jumble. T. II. 1037.

**JONGLERIE**, *n.* T. v. 755. should rather be *Janglerie*; Idle talk. See **JANGLE**.

**JORDANES**, *n. pl.* See the *n.* on ver. 12239.

**JOSA**, *interj.* 4099. seems to be partly formed from the FR. *ça*! Come hither!

**JOVIS**, *pr. n.* Jupiter. T. III. 15. F. I. 219. F. III. 917.

**JOUREE**, *n.* FR. A day's journey. 3740. C. D. 1248.

—A day's work. R. 579.

**JOUSTES**, *n. pl.* FR. Justs. C. D. 1087.

**JOWELES**, *n. pl.* FR. Jewels. R. 5490.

**JOVE**, *v.* FR. To enjoy. R. 5023.

**IPROCAS**, *n.* FR. Wine mixed with spices and other ingredients; so named, because it is strained through a woollen cloth, called the *stieve* of *Hippocrates*. 9681. See **CLAREE**.

**IRR**, *n.* FR. Anger. 7416.

IROUS, *adj.* Passionate. 7596, 7. 8.

ISAUDE, *pr.* n. F. iii. 707. See BELLE ISAUDE. She is called YSEUT by Bernard du Ventador. MS. Crofts. fol. LXVII.

Tant trag pena d'amor,  
Q'anc Tristan l'amador  
Non sofret maior dolor  
Per Yseut la blonda.

And so in *Fabliaux*, &c. T. i. p. 242. *Yseut la blonde*. Petrarch calls her *Isotta*. Trionfo d'Amore. iii. 82. A late French writer, in what he has been pleased to style, "*Histoire littéraire des Troubadours*," (T. ii. p. 323.) having quoted a passage celebrating the love of "*Tristan à Isault*," adds very coolly—"*C'est une allusion à quelque Roman*," which is just as if a commentator upon Ovid should say of the epistle from Paris to Helen, that it alludes to some Greek story.

IT, *pron.* 3 *pers. neut. gen.* SAX. is used instead of *He* and *She*. 3764. 5529. 13144.

ITAILLE, *pr.* n. Italy. 8142.

JUBALTARE, *pr.* n. Gibraltar. 5367.

JURBE, n. A vessel for holding ale, or wine. 3628. 13000.

JUDICUM. 14052. The book of Judges. So *Metamorphoseos* is put for the Metamorphosis of Ovid. 4513. and *Eneidis* for the *Æneis* of Virgil. 15365.

JUGE, n. Fr. A judge. 12957. 12190.

JULI, *pr.* n. The month of July. 10007.

JULIAN, *pr.* n. See the n. on ver. 341.

JUIARDIE, n. R. 2666. as JEOPARDIE.

JUPARTIE, n. Fr. Jeopardie. See the n. on ver. 10211.

JUSTICE, n. Fr. A judge. 15965.

JUTINIAN, *pr.* n. R. 6615. The law referred to is in the Code, L. xi. tit. 25. *De mendicantibus validis*.

JUVENAL, *pr.* n. The Roman Satirist. 6774. T. iv. 197.

## K.

KALENDER, n. LAT. A Calendar. 15136.—A guide, or director. L. W. 542.

KALENDES, n. *pl.* LAT. The first day of the month; the beginning of any thing. T. ii. 7. T. v. 1633.

KAYNARD. See the n. on ver. 5817.

KELK, v. SAX. To cool. C. L. 775.

KIMBED, KEMPED, *part. pa.* SAX. Combed. 2291. 2136.

KIMELIN, n. SAX. A tub. 3548.

KINELM, *pr.* n. 15116. See the note.

KEFE, n. SAX. Care; attention. 4162. 8934.

— v. To take care. 2240. 2962.

KERCHER, n. 6690. a corruption of COVERCHIEF.

KERNELS, n. *pl.* Fr. Battlements. R. 4195.

KERS, n. SAX. Water-crosses. *Of paramours ne raught he not a kers*. 3754. He cared not a rush for love. *Cresse* is used, in the same sense, in T. L. i. 320. and ii. 332. b.

KERVER, n. SAX. A carver. 1901.

KESSE, v. SAX. To kiss. 8933. R. 2610.

KESTE, *pa. t.* Kissed. 10664.

KETCHKE, v. T. iii. 1381. as CACKE.

KEYENE, v. Fr. To cover. In T. i. 918. it signifies to recover.

KICHEL, n. SAX. A little cake. 7329. See the note.

KID, KIDDE, *pa. t.* and *part.* of KITHM. Made known; discovered. 9817. T. i. 208. R. 2172.

KIKE, v. SAX. To kick. 6523.

KIN, n. SAX. Kindred. *By my fader kin*. 9389. 16297. *By my-father's kindred*. 11775.

— *adj.* Of the same nature. 5557.

KIND, n. SAX. Nature. 7130. T. i. 238.

KINDLY, *adv.* Naturally. 5964.

KINRDE, n. Kindred. M. 113. col. 2, l. 33.

KIRTEL, n. SAX. A tunic, or waistcoat. 3321. 11884. In *kirtels* and none other wede. R. 778. *Qui estoient en pure cottes*. Orig. 775.

KITHK, = SAX. To shew; to make known. 5056. 7191. *Ne kithke hire jealousye*. 11060. Nor shew to her any jealousye.

KITHED, *part. pa.* 16725. See KIN.

KITTE, *pa. t.* SAX. Cut. 6304.

KNACKES, n. *pl.* SAX. Trifling tricks. 4049. The word seems to have been formed from the *knacking*, or *snap-ping*, of the fingers, used by jugglers. See Cotgrave, in v. *Matassiner des mains*, and *Niquet*.—Trifling words. P. 161. col. 1, l. 49.

KNAPPE, n. A short sleep; a nap. R. 4005.

KNARRY, *adj.* SAX. Full of *gnarres*, or knots. 1179.

— KNAVE, n. SAX. A servant; properly, a boy-servant. 2730. 13240.—A knave-child. 5135. 8330. A male child.—*This boie knave*. R. 3849. *Ce garçon*. Orig.

KNEDEDE, *part. pa.* of KNEDE, v. SAX. Kneaded. R. 4811.

KNEEN, KNENE, n. *pl.* SAX. Knees. C. D. 294. 436.

KNET, *part. pa.* R. 2692. as KNIT.

KNIQHT, n. SAX. A servant; generally, a servant in war; a soldier. M. 117, col. 2, l. 31. 15851.—A dubbed knight. See his CHARACTER, ver. 43—78.

KNIQHTHODE, n. Valour. 14560.

KNIT, *part. pa.* SAX. Joined; bound. 11298.—Agreed. 11542.

KNORRES, n. *pl.* SAX. Excrescences, in the shape of buds, or buttons. 633. See KNOPPE.

KNOPPE, n. SAX. A button. R. 1090.—A rose-bud. R. 1702.

KNOPPED, *part. pa.* Buttoned; fastened. R. 7212.

KNOTTE, n. SAX. A knot. In ver. 10715. 10721. it is used, in the sense of *Naud*, Fr. for the chief point, or head of a matter.

KNOTTELES, *adj.* SAX. Without a knot; without any thing to obstruct or retard the passage. T. V. 703.

KNOWE for KNEE. T. ii. 1202.

KNOWLECHE, v. SAX. To acknowledge. M. 118, col. 2, l. 45.

KNOWLECHING, n. Knowledge. 16900. R. 4676.

KONNING, n. F. iii. 966. as CONNING; Cunning.

KYKE, v. SAX. To look stedfastly. 3445. *Kijcken*. Teut. *Spektare*. Killan.

## L.

LARBE, n. A blab; a great talker. 3509.

LABBING, *part. pr.* Blabbing. 10302.

LACED, *part. pa.* Fr. Tied, bound. R. 3178.

LACERT, n. Fr. "A fleshy muscle; so termed from its having a tail like a lizard. *Cotg.*" 2755.

LACHE, *adj.* Fr. Sluggish. Bo. iv. pr. 3.

LACHESE, n. Fr. Slackness; negligence. P. 162, col. 2, l. 67.

LAD, LADDE, *pa. t.* of LEDE, v. SAX. Led; carried. 7260. 13264.

LAFT, *pa. t.* and *part.* of LEVE, v. SAX. Left. 16351. L. W. 168.

LAIE, n. T. i. 341. 1002. as LAV.

LAIED, *part. pa.* of LAV, v. SAX. *With orfryes laied*, i. e. trimmed. R. 1076. So this word is frequently used by Hollinshed, vol. iii. p. 1317. *Laid with gold lace*.—*Laid on with red silke and gold lace*.—*Laid about with silver lace*. See COUCHED.

LAINNE, *inf.* v. SAX. To lay. R. 184.

LAINERS, n. *pl.* Fr. Straps, or thongs. 2506.

LAKK, n. 13787. It is difficult to say what sort of cloth is meant. *Laecken*, BELG. signifies both *linen* and *woollen cloth*. Killan.

LAKKE, n. SAX. A fault; a disgraceful action. 10073.—Want. 10145.

LAKKE, v. To find fault; to blame. R. 284. 4804.

LAMEN, n. *pl.* SAX. Lambs. R. 7063.

LANGOUR, v. Fr. To languish. 9741.

LAPIDAIRE. F. iii. 262. A treatise on precious stones, so entitled; probably a French translation of the Latin poem of Marbodius *de gemmis*, which is frequently cited by the name of *Lapidarius*. Fabric. Bibl. Med. Æt. in v. MARBODUS.

LAPPE, n. SAX. A skirt, or lapet of a garment. 8461. 15480. T. iii. 59. 743.

LARGE, *adj.* Fr. Spacious; free. Prodigal. 13361. *At large*. 2290. At liberty. *Til that it was prime la pe*. 10674. Till prime was far spent.

LARGELY, *adv.* Fully. 1910.

LAS, n. Fr. A lace. 384.—A snare. 1819. 11553.

LAUNE, *Las*, *adj. comp. Sax.* Less. 4407. 13047. R. 3045.

LAICHE, *n.* R. 1624. as *Las*.

LATERED, *part. pa. Sax.* Delayed. P. 162, col. 2, l. 62.

LATHE, *n.* 4068. A *byrn*. "It is still used in Lincolnshire. *Sk.*" In P. iii. 1080. where the Editt. have *rathe* and *fathe*, the MSS. give the true reading—*lathe*.

LATON, *n.* Fr. A kind of mixed metal. 701. of the colour of brass. 11537.

LAUDE, *n.* LAT. Praise. 13385.

LAUDER, 3655. The service performed in the fourth, or last watch of the night. *Dicuntur autem Laudes, quod illud officium laudem precipue sonat divinam, &c.* Du Cange in v. LAUS 2. The same service was often called *Matins*. Idem in v. MATUTINI.

LAVED, *part. pa. Fr.* Drawn; spoken of water taken out of a well. Bo. iii. m. 12.

LAVENDER, *n.* Fr. A washerwoman, or laundress. L. W. 358. In the passage of DANTE, which is here quoted, *Envy* is called,

LA NERETRICE, che mai dall' ospizio  
Di Cesare non torse gli occhi putti,  
Morte comune, e delle corte vizio.

Inf. xiii. 64.

LAVEROCK, *n.* SAX. A lark. R. 662.

LAUNCEGAY, *n.* A sort of lance. See the *n.* on ver. 13682.

LAUNCELOT DU LAKE, 18918. An eminent knight of the round table, whose adventures were the subject of a Romance begun by *Christien de Troyes*, one of the oldest of the Romance-poets, and finished by *Godefroid de Leigni*. See Fauchet. L. ii. c. 10, 11. They have been repeatedly printed in French prose, and make a considerable part of the compilation called "*Mori d'Arthur*." His accomplishments, as a courtier and a man of gallantry, have been alluded to before, ver. 10601. *Signee-Volpi, in his notes upon Dante, Inf. v. 136, has most unaccountably represented Lancillotto, as innamorato di Ginevra, moglie del Re Marso. If there be any faith in history, Ginevra was the wife of King Arthur. The story in Dante, which is the occasion of Signee Volpi's note, is a curious one. It is alluded to by Petrarch, Fr. 3006 d'Amore III. 62.*

Vedi Ginevra, Isotta, e l'altre donne,  
R-le coppie d'Arminio. —

LAUNDE, *n.* Fr. A plain not ploughed. 1693.

LAVOURS, *n.* pl. Fr. Lavers. 5869.

LAUREAT, *adj.* LAT. Crowned with laurel. 7907. 14614.

LAUREOLE, *n.* Fr. Spurge-laurel. 14969.

LAURER, *n.* Fr. Laurel. 9340.

LAUS, *adj.* SAX. Loose. 4062. *Laus*. Island. *Solutus*. This is the true original of that termination of adjectives, so frequent in our language, in *les* or *less*. Consuetud. de Beverley. MS. Harl. 560. *Hujus sacrilegii emenda non erat determinata, sed dicebatur ab Anglis Botalaus, i. e. sine emenda.* So Chaucer uses *Boteles*, and other words of the same form; as *Detetes*, *Drinkeles*, *Gilleles*, &c.

LAWES, *adj.* for Low. R. 8046.

LAXATIF, *n.* Fr. A purging medicine. 2758. 14949.

LAY, *n.* SAX. Law; religious profession. 4796. 10332.

LAY, *n.* Fr. A species of poem. 9755. 11259. See the Discourse, &c. n. 24.

LAY, *pa. t.* of LIS, or LIOS. 972. LAYEN, *pl.* 2210.

LAZAR, *n.* Fr. A leper. 942.

LECHE, *n.* SAX. A physician. 3602. *Lechecraft*. 2747. The skill of a physician.

— *v.* To heal. C. D. 842.

LECHEROUS, *adj.* Provoking lecherie. 12483.

LECHOUR, *n.* Fr. A leacher. 6053.

LECTORNE, *n.* LAT. A reading-desk. C. L. 1363.

LEDEN, *n.* SAX. Language. 10749. See the note.

LEDOE, *v.* C. L. 1065. as ALLESE.

LEME, *n.* Fr. A leash, by which dogs are held. P. 155, col. 1, l. 3.

— *adj.* SAX. False. *Withouten leas*. R. 3004. *Without lying; truly.*

LEVE, *adj.* SAX. Pleasing, agreeable. *Al be him LOTHE or LEVE*. 1839. Though it be unpleasant to him, or pleasing

For LEVE ne LOTHE. 13062. For friend nor enemy. *He turned not—for LEVE ne for LOTHE*. P. L. 286.—It sometimes signifies, *Pleased*. *I nam not LEVE to gab-be*. 3510. I am not pleased to prate; I take no pleasure in prating.

LEFULL, *adj.* Lawful. 5619. 9322.

LEOKE, *v.* SAX. To lay. 3535.

— *v.* Fr. To ease. R. 5016. as ALEOE.

LEIE, *v.* SAX. To lay. T. iii. 72.

LEISER, *n.* Fr. Lelaure. 1190. 9706. Opportunity. 3292.

LEITE, *n.* SAX. Light. *Thonder-lete*. Bo. i. m. 4. Lightning.

LEKE, *n.* SAX. A lock. 3677. It is put for any thing of very small value. 16263. R. 4830.

LEMES, *n.* pl. SAX. Flames. 14936.

LENNAN, *n.* SAX. A lover, or gallant. 4238. 5337.—A mistress. 14063.

LENDES, *n.* pl. SAX. The loins. 3237.

LENE, *adj.* SAX. Lean. 289. 9727.

— *v.* SAX. To lend. 613. 3775.—To grant. 7296. 13613.

LENGER, *adv. comp. Sax.* Longer. 14437.

LENTE, *pa. t.* of LENE, 13294.

LENTON, *n.* SAX. The season of Lent. P. 148, col. 2, l. 21.

L'ENVOY, *Fr.* was a sort of postscript, sent with poetical compositions, and serving either to recommend them to the attention of some particular person, or to enforce what we call the moral of them. The six last Stanzas of the CLERKES TALE are in many Mss. entitled, *L'envoy de Chaucer a les maris de nostre temps*. See also the Stanzas at the end of the *Complaint of the Black Knight*, and of *Chaucer's Dreame*.

LEON, *n.* LAT. A lion. 1600.

LEONINE, *adj.* Belonging to a lion. 14564.

LEOPART, LEFARD, *n.* Fr. A leopard. 2189. 14267.

LEOS, *n.* GR. People. 15571, 4.

LEPANDR, *part. pr.* of LEPE, *v.* SAX. Leaping. R. 1928.

LEPE, LEP, for LEPETH, 3 *pers. sing.* 4226. 10225.

— for LEPED, *pa. t.* 2689. C. D. 2164.

— *pr. n.* A town in Spain. 12504.

LERE, LERNE, *v.* SAX. To learn. 10002. 13468.—To teach. 16312.

LERED, *pa. t.* and *part.* 577. 13449.

LERES, *n.* SAX. The skin. 13786. See the note.

LESE, *n.* Fr. as LERS. *In lustie lese*. T. ii. 763. In Love's leash.

— *adj.* SAX. as LERS. R. 85093.

— *v.* SAX. To lose. 11672, 4.

LESETH, 2 *pers. pl. imp.* m. 4439. Lose ye.

LESING, *n.* SAX. A lie; a falsity. 15647. R. 4508. LEWINGES, *pl.* 12525.

LEST, LIST, LUST, *n.* SAX. Pleasure. 132. 192. 6215. 11124.

LESTE, LISTE, LUSTE, *v.* To please. It is generally used, as an impersonal, in the third person only, for *It pleaseth*, or *It pleased*. *Him luste to ride so*. 102. *It pleased him t. r. a. Wei to drink us leste*. 752. *It pleased us well t. d. If you lest*. 830. *If it please you. Me list not play*. 3865. *It pleaseth me not to play*.

— *adj.* SAX. *superl. d.* Least. 2900. *At the leste way*. 1123. *At the leste*. 5432. At least.

— for LEST. T. ii. 1330.

LET, *v.* SAX. To leave; to omit. 1319. To leave; to permit. 1325. *Let thy fapes be*. 5824. *Let the sompoure be*. 6871.—To cause. 2978. 5377.—To hinder. T. iii. 726.

LETE, *pr. n.* The river Lethe. F. l. 71.

LETUAME, *n.* SAX. A hinderer of pleasure. T. iii. 538.

LETTE, *n.* Delay; hindrance. 8176.

LETTOWE, *pr. n.* Lithuania. 54.

LETTRED, *adj.* Fr. Learned. R. 7691.

LETTURE, LETTERES, *n.* Fr. Literature. 14414. 16314.

LETTUARE, *n.* Fr. An electuary. 428. 9683.

LEVE, *v.* for LIVE. 7114.

— *n.* SAX. Desire; inclination. 13952.

— *adj.* Dear. 3139. See LEVE.

— *v.* SAX. To believe. 10079.

LEVETH, *imp. m.* 2 *pers. pl.* 3090. *Leveth we*. Believe me.

In R. 3519. *Leveth* is misprinted for *Leeth*.

He leseth more than ye may doe.

So this verse should be written.

Plus y pert-il que vous ne faictes. Orig.

- In T. II. 36. *Lere* is misprinted for *Lene*; and also in T. II. 1212. and T. v. 1749.
- LEVELES**, *adj.* SAX. Without leave. C. D. 74.
- LEVEN**, *n.* SAX. Lightning. 5358.
- LEVER**, *comp. d.* of *LEVE*. More agreeable. *It were me lev-r.* 10995. *I hadde lever.* 10037. *Hink hadde lever.* 5447. See also ver. 16844. 16972.
- LEVERELL**. See the *n.* on ver. 4059. though I am by no means satisfied with the explanation there given of this word. The interpretation of it in the *Prompt. Parv.* will not help us much. "*LEVEREL* before a WYNDOWE OR OTHER PLACE. *Umbraclum.*" My conjecture with respect to the origin of the proverb, *Good wine needs no bush*, is certainly wrong. That refers to a very old practice of hanging up a bush, or bough, where wine is to be sold. The Italians have the same proverb, *Al buon vino non bisogna frasca.*
- LEWED**, **LEWDE**, *adj.* SAX. Ignorant; unlearned. 6928. 12370.—Lascivious. 10023.
- LEYR**, *v.* SAX. as **LEGE**. To lay. R. 4143.—To lay a wager. 10064.
- LEYRE**, *pr. n.* **LAYRE**, in *Armonia*. 58. See the *n.* on ver. 51.
- LEYTE**, *n.* SAX. Flame. P. 169, col. 1, l. 21. See **LEITE**.
- LIARD**, *pr. n.* belonged originally to a horse of a grey colour. See the *n.* on ver. 7145.
- LICENCIAT**, *n.* LAT. 220. seems to signify, that he was licensed by the Pope to hear confessions, &c. in all places, independently of the local ordinaries. See R. 6364—6472.
- LICHE-WAKE**. See the *n.* on ver. 2960.
- LIDR**, *pr. n.* Lydia. 14845.
- LIEGE**, *n. pl.* FR. Subjects. 7943.
- LIEN**, *pr. l. pl.* of **LIE**, or **LIOR**. 16947.
- *part. pa.* of **LIE**, or **LIOR**. Latin. P. 170, col. 1, l. 55. P. 172, col. 1, l. 20.
- LIES**, *n. pl.* FR. Loes of wine, &c. F. III. 1040.
- LIETH**, R. 4143. is misprinted for **LEVETH**.
- LIFLY**, *adv.* SAX. Like the life. 2089.
- LIGRANCE**, *n.* FR. Allegiance. 5315.
- LIGOR**, **LIE**, *v. neut.* SAX. To lie down. 2207. 13879.
- LIGGING**, *part. pr.* Lying. 1013.
- LIGHT**, *v.* SAX. To enlighten. 15359. 13401.—To make light, or pleasant. 10710.
- *v. neut.* To descend; to alight. 5524. 10483.
- LIGNE**, *n.* FR. Lineage; lineal descent. T. v. 1480. **LIGNE**. C. D. 1517. should probably be *Lignee*, to rime to *Compagnee*.
- LIGN ALDES**. T. iv. 1137. *Lignum aloes*; a very bitter drug.
- LIKE**, **LIKEN**, *v.* SAX. To compare. 5951. 3. 5.
- *v.* SAX. To please. 8382. T. l. 432. *If you liketh.* 779. If it pleaseth you. *It liketh hem.* 5679. It pleaseth them.
- LIKEBOUS**, *adj.* SAX. Gluttonous. 12473.—Lascivious. 6048.
- LIKINO**, *part. pr.* Pleasing. R. 678.
- *n.* Pleasure. 12389.
- LIMAIL**, *n.* FR. Filings of any metal. 16321.
- LIME**, *v.* SAX. To smear, as with bird-lime. T. l. 354.
- LIMED**, *part. pa.* Caught, as with bird-lime. 6516.
- *part. pa.* FR. Polished, as with a file. F. III. 34.
- LIMER**, *n.* FR. *Limier*. A blood-hound. Du. 362. 5.
- LIME-ROD**. 14694. A twig with bird-lime.
- LIMITATION**, *n.* LAT. A certain precinct allowed to a Limitour. 6459.
- LIMITOUR**, *n.* A Fryer licensed to beg within a certain district. 209. 253. 4.
- LIMMES**, *n. pl.* SAX. Limbs. P. 149, col. 1, l. 45.
- LINAGE**, *n.* FR. Family. 4270. R. 258.
- LINDE**, *n.* SAX. The lime tree. 9087. R. 1385.
- LISSE**, *n.* SAX. Remission; abatement. 11550.
- *v. neut.* SAX. To grow easy. R. 3758. 4128.
- LISSED**, *part. pa.* of **LISSE**, *v.* SAX. Eased; relieved. 11482.
- LISSE**, *v.* See **LESTE**.
- LISTENETH**, *imp. m.* 2 *pers. pl.* of **LISTEN**, *v.* SAX. Hearken ye. 13642.
- LISTER**, *n. pl.* FR. Lists; a place enclosed for combats, &c. See the *n.* on ver. 1715.
- LITARG**, *n.* FR. White lead. 16243.
- LITE**, *adv.* SAX. Little. 1195. P. 162, col. 1, l. 47.
- LITH**, *n.* SAX. A limb. 14881.
- *for* **LITH**. 3653. 10349.
- LITHE**, *adj.* SAX. Soft; flexible. Du. 253. F. l. 119.
- *v.* SAX. To soften. T. iv. 754.
- LITHER**, *adj.* SAX. Wicked. C. N. 14. In the Edit. it is *Litly*. **LUTHER** and *quede*. R. G. 414. See **QUADE**.
- LITHERLY**, *adv.* SAX. Very ill. 3299.
- LITING**, *adj.* SAX. Very little. F. III. 133.
- LIVAND**, *part. pr.* SAX. Living. C. D. 1628.
- LIVE**, *n.* SAX. Life. *On live.* 3041. 5622. In life; A live.
- Lives creature.* 2397. 6779. Living creature. *Lives body.* F. II. 555. Living body.
- See the note on ver. 405. and the statute 3 Geo. I. c. 13. where *Load-manage* is used repeatedly in the sense of *l'olage*.
- LODEMANAGE**. 405.
- LODESTERAE**. 9061.
- LODSMEN**, *n. pl.* SAX. Pilots. L. W. 1486.
- LOFT**, *adv.* SAX. *On loft.* 4697. On high; A-loft.
- LOKE**, *n.* FR. A lodge; habitation. 14879.
- LOGGED**, *part. pa.* FR. Lodged. 15004.
- LOGGING**, *n.* Lodging. 15001.
- LOKE**, *v.* SAX. To see; to look upon. Bo. iv. pr. 6. v. pr. 3.
- LOKEN**, **LOKE**, *part. pa.* of **LOKE**, *v.* SAX. Locked. 14881. R. 2082. Shut close. *Conf. Am.* 29. *His one eye anon was LOCKE.*
- LOLLER**, *n.* A Lollard. See the *n.* on ver. 12923. and ver. 12914.
- LOLLIUS**, *pr. n.* of a writer, from whom Chaucer professes to have translated his poem of *Troilus and Creseide*. See the note on P. 179, col. 2, l. 23. I have not been able to find any further account of him.
- LOMDE**, *n.* SAX. Land. 4806. 5333.
- LOMENOVA**. A Londoner; one born in London. T. L. l. 325.
- LOME**, *n.* SAX. A loan; any thing lent. 7443.
- LONG**, *v.* SAX. To belong. 2980. *Longing for his art.* 3262.
- Belonging to his art. 10353.—To desire. L. W. 2775.
- 16390. See **ALONG**.
- LOOS**, **LOS**, *n.* FR. Praise. 16836. M. 117, col. 2, l. 1. **LOSSES**, *pl.* F. III. 568.
- LOAD**, *n.* SAX. A title of honour, given to Monks, as well as to other persons of superior rank. 172. 13030.—In ver. 830. *Lordes* is used in the sense of *Lordings*.
- LORDINGS**, *n. pl.* Sire; Masters. 763. 790. A diminutive of *Lords*.
- LORDSHIP**, *n.* SAX. Supreme power. 1627.
- LORE**, *n.* SAX. Knowledge. 8664.—Doctrine. 529.—Advice. 3527.
- LOREL**, *n.* SAX. A good-for-nothing fellow. 5855. Bo. l. pr. 4. where it is the translation of *perditissimum*. Skinner supposes it to be derived from the LAT. *Lurco*; and in the *Promptorium Parvulorum*, "*LOREL*, or *LOREL*, or *LURDEN*," is rendered "*Lurco*." But *Lurco*, I apprehend, signifies only a *glutton*, which falls very short of our idea of a *fool*; and besides I do not believe that the word was ever sufficiently common in Latin to give rise to a derivative in English. One of Skinner's friends deduces it with much more probability from the **BALE**. (rather SAX.) *Loren*; Lost; *Perditus*.
- LORENE**, *part. pa.* of **LORE**, *v.* SAX. Lost. 8947. Undone. 10943. 13959.
- LOS**, *n.* SAX. Loss. 16477. T. iv. 27.
- LOSED**, *part. pa.* SAX. Loosed. R. 4511.
- *part. pa.* FR. Praised. T. L. l. 325.
- LOSENGE**, *n.* FR. A quadrilateral figure, of equal sides but unequal angles, in which the Arms of women are usually painted. R. 893. In F. III. 227. *Losynges* seems to signify small figures of the same form in the fret-work of a crown.
- LOSENOUBOUR**, *n.* FR. A flatterer. 15332.
- LOTREY**, *n.* R. 6339. In the Orig. *Compaigne*. A private companion, or bed-fellow. In F. P. 14. the *concubines* of priests are called their *Lotebies*. Perhaps it may be derived from the SAX. *Loute*; to lurk.
- LOTH**, *adj.* SAX. Disagreeable; odious. 3793.
- LOTHER**, *comp. d.* More hateful. L. W. 191.
- LOTHERT**, *superl. d.* Most unwilling. 11625.
- LOTHLY**, *adj.* Loathsome. 6682.
- LOVE-DAYES**. See the *n.* on ver. 260. and add T. L. l. 319. "Maked I not a *Love-daye* betwene God and mankynde, and chose a mayde to be *nompers*, to put the quarrell at ende?"

LOVE-DRINK, n. SAX. A drink to excite love. 6338.  
 LOVE-LONGING, n. SAX. Desire of love. 3349. 3673.  
 LOVESOME, *adj.* SAX. Lovely. T. v. 463.  
 LOUGH, *pa. t.* of LAUGH, v. SAX. Laughed. 6254. 19410.  
 LOUKE. 4413. See the note. In P. P. 20. *Wrong* is called a *wicked luske*; and I learn from Cotgrave, that *luske* is a synonymous word to *lowt*, *lorel*, &c. so that perhaps *Louke* may be still another term for an idle, good-for-nothing fellow. See Cotg. in v. *Luske*, Eng. and in v. *Loricard*, *Falourdin*. Fr.  
 LOURE, v. *neut.* SAX. To look discontented. R. 7099.  
 LOURING, *part. pa.* 6848.  
 LOURE, v. SAX. To bow. 14168. R. 4384.—To lurk. 10654.  
 LOW, n. for LAW. C. D. 319.  
 LOWLYHEDE, n. SAX. Humility. B. K. 315.  
 LUCAN, *pr. n.* The Roman poet. 14637.  
 LUCE, n. LAT. The fish, called a pike. 352.  
 LUCINA, *pr. n.* The Moon. 11357.  
 LULLED, *pa. t.* of LULL, v. SAX. Invited to sleep. 8439.  
 LUMBARDES, n. *pl.* Bankers; Remitters of money. 13297.  
 LUNARIE, *pr. n.* of a herb; moon-wort. 16888.  
 LUNE, n. Fr. A device used by falconers for calling their hawks. 6923. 17021.  
 — v. Fr. To bring to the lure. 5997.  
 LUSHKURGHES. See the n. on ver. 13068.  
 LUST, n. See LEST.  
 LUSTE, v. See LESTE.  
 LUSTYHEDE, n. SAX. Pleasure, mirth. 17923. L. W. 1528.  
 LUXURIE, n. Fr. Lecherie. 5345.  
 LYNIAN, *pr. n.* 7910. See the note. A learned correspondent, to whom I am obliged for other useful hints, has suggested to me, that Fabricius, upon the authority of Ghilini, has placed the death of *Joannes Lignanus* in 1383. Bibl. Med. Et. in v. This furnishes an additional reason for believing that the Canterbury Tales were composed, or at least collected into a body, after that period.

M.

MACE, n. Fr. A club. 2126.  
 MACHARS, *pr. n.* The books of the Maccabees. 14497. 14573.  
 MACROBIA, *pr. n.* R. 7. MACROBIA. 15129. Du. 284. A. F. 111. The author of the Commentary on the *Somnium Scipionis* of Cicero.  
 MADDE, v. SAX. To be mad. 3639. R. 1072.  
 MADRIAN. 13898. See the note. I have found since that the French have a Saint called *Materne*. But Mr. Steevens, with much more probability, supposes, that the *precious body*, by which the Host swears, was that of St. *Mathurin*. See his story in the *Golden Legend*, Edit. 1837, by Winkin de Worde, 151. b. "Than toke they the *precious body* and enoynted it with moche reverence; and when they had layd it in the erth, on the morowe they came to the sepulture and founde the *holy body* above the erth nygh unto the same sepulture, and than were they all abashed and wist not what to do." It seems, the knights, who had brought him out of France, had promised that, if he died on his journey, he should be sent back and buried "where as they had taken him;" and therefore his body would not stay in the ground, till it was deposited, according to promise, in France; where it afterwards worked many miracles.  
 MAFER, Fr. *Ma foy*; by my faith. T. iii. 52.  
 MAGICIEN, n. Fr. A magician. 11553.  
 MAGIKE, n. Fr. Magick. 11607. *Magike naturel*. 418. See the note.  
 MAHOWND, *pr. n.* Mahomet. 4644. See Du Cange, in v.  
 MAILLE, n. Fr. A coat of mail. 9078.  
 MAINT, *part. pa.* B. K. 230. as MENT.  
 MAINTENANCE, n. Fr. Behaviour. Du. 634.  
 MAISONDEWE, Fr. *Maison-dieu*; a hospital. R. 5619.  
 MAISTER, n. Fr. A skilful artist; a master. 11514. 11532. *Maister-strete*. 2904. The chief street. *Maister-temple*. L. W. 1014. The chief temple. *Maister-tour*. 10540. The principal tower.  
 MAISTERFUL, *adj.* Imperious. T. ii. 756.  
 MAISTERIE, MAISTRIE, n. Fr. Skill; skilful management. 3363. 6400.—Power; superiority. 6622. 9048. 11076.

Love wol not be constrained by maistris.  
 Whan maistris cometh, the God of love anon  
 Beteth his wings, and, farewell! he is gon.

I cite these elegant lines, as I omitted to observe before, that Spenser has inserted them in his *Faery Queen*, B. 9. C. 1. St. 28. with very little alteration, and certainly without any improvement.

No may love be compel'd my mastery;  
 For, soon as mastery comes, sweet love anon  
 Taketh his nimble wings, and soon away is gone.

MAISTRIS. 16328. A mastery operation; *Un coup de maitre*.—For the *maistris*. 165. See the note.  
 MAISTRESSE, n. Fr. Mistress, governess. 15040.  
 MAISTRIS, n. Fr. Masterly workmanship. R. 4172.  
 MAKE, n. SAX. A fellow; a mate. 2358.—A husband. 8667. 8716. A wife. 9175. 9696. MAKE or METCUM. *Compar.* Prompt. Parv.  
 — v. SAX. To compose, or make verses. L. W. 69. 394. *To solact him sometime, as I do whan I MAKE*. P. P. 60.—*To make a man's berde*; To cheat him. See the n. on ver. 4084.  
 MAKED, *part. pa.* Made. 2326.  
 MAKE. Bo. iv. m. 7. *Why make ye your backes?* We should read—*nake*, i. e. make naked. *Cur inertes terga nudatis?* Orig.  
 MAKELES, *adj.* SAX. Peerless; without a fellow. T. i. 172.  
 MAKING, n. Poetry. L. W. 74. MAKINGES, *pl.* Poetical compositions. L. W. 413. *And thou meddest with MAKINGES*. P. P. 60.  
 MALAPERT, *adj.* Pert, forward. C. L. 737. And so we should read in T. iii. 87. with the MSS. J. K. instead of *in all pert*. The word seems to be evidently of French original, though I do not recollect to have seen it used by any French writer. *Appert*, *adj.* Fr. signifies *Expert*, &c. Cotgrave.  
 MALE, n. Fr. A budget, or portmanteau. 3117. 12854.  
 MALEFICE, n. Fr. Enchantment. P. 153, col. 2, l. 47.  
 MALE-TALENT, n. Fr. Ill will. R. 274. 330.  
 MALISON, n. Fr. Malediction, curse. 16713. P. 156, col. 1, l. 50. *I gyve it my MALISON*. P. L. 318.  
 MALT, *pa. t.* of MELT, v. SAX. Melted. T. i. 563.  
 MALVERIE, *pr. n.* Malmsey-wine. See the n. on ver. 9081.  
 MALURE, n. Fr. Misfortune. C. D. 599.  
 MANACE, n. Fr. A threat. 2005.  
 — v. To threaten. 7996. 9636.  
 MANACING, n. Threatening. 2037.  
 MANCIPLE, n. An officer, who has the care of purchasing victuals for an Inn of Court. See his CHARACTER, ver. 580—588. The name is probably derived from the LAT. *Manceps*, which signified particularly the *superintendent of a public bakehouse*, and from thence a *baker* in general. See Du Cange, in v. MANCIPS. 2. The office still subsists in several Colleges as well as Inns of Court.  
 MANDEMENT, n. Fr. Mandate. 6828.  
 MANERE, n. Fr. Carriage, behaviour. 140. 10660.—Kind, or sort. *A manere Latin*. 4939. A kind of Latin. *Sweiche a maner love-drinke*. 6335. Such a sort of love-potion. *Sweiche maner rime*. 6709.  
 MANGONEL, n. Fr. An engine used to batter walls. R. 6279.  
 MANIE, n. Fr. Gr. Madness. 1376.  
 MANNISH, *adj.* SAX. Human; proper to the human species. M. 119, col. 1, l. 25.—Masculine; proper to man, as distinguished from woman. T. i. 284. In this last sense, when applied to a woman, it is a strong term of reproach. 5202.  
 MANOR, n. Fr. Dwelling. Du. 1004.  
 MANSUETE, *adj.* Fr. Gentle. T. v. 194.  
 MANTELET, n. Fr. A short mantle. 2165.  
 MARIAN, *pr. n.* Martinianus Capella. 9605. F. ii. 477.  
 — *adj.* Martial; under the influence of Mars. Cf. *¶*.  
 MARIS, n. Fr. A marsh. 6582.  
 MARGARIE, n. Fr. A pearl. T. L. l. 315. b.  
 MARIS, MARY, n. SAX. Marrow. 12476. *Naribones*. 389. Marrow-bones.  
 MARKET-BETER. 3934. See the note. But I am now more inclined to believe, that this word is to be understood in a sense similar to that in which the French phrases, *Battre les rues*—and *Batteur de pavés* are used. *Battre*

*les rues*; To revel, jet, or swagger up and down the streets at night. *Bateur de pavés*; A jettor abroad in the streets.—A pavement beater. See Cotgrave, in v. *Bateur*. *Batre. Pavé*. So that "He was a market-beter *alle full*" may mean perhaps;—He was used to swagger up and down the market, when it was fullest: a circumstance, which suits very well with the rest of his character.—MARKET DASHMAN. *Circumforaneus*. Prompt. Parv.

MARKIS, n. FR. A marquis. 7940.

— for MARKISSE, gen. ca. sing. 8870. In the same manner *Peneus* is put for *Peneus*. 8066. *Theseus* for *Theseus*. 2901. 3087. *Venus* for *Venus*. 2774. 10866. *Ceres* for *Ceres*. 10139. *Melibeus* for *Melibeus*. 13908. and in prose, M. 119, col. 1, l. 50. Perhaps it might have been proper to add a mark of *Apocope* to the words so abbreviated. As to the present method of expressing the genitive cases of nouns ending in *s*, by adding another *s*, with a mark of *Syncope*, as *Peneus's*, *Theseus's*, *Venus's*, &c. it seems absurd, whether the addition be intended to be pronounced, or not. In the first case, the *s* should not be cut out; in the second, the *s* is quite superfluous. But the absurdity of this practice is most striking, when the genitives of monosyllabic nouns are thus written; as *ox's horns*; *an ass's ears*; *a fish's tail*; *St. John's park*; notwithstanding that the *s*, which is thus directed to be cut out, is constantly and necessarily to be pronounced, as if the several words were written at length; *oxes, asses, fishes, James's*.

MARKISSE, n. FR. The wife of a Marquis. 8159. 8270.

MARTE, n. FR. MARE. 2023.

MARTIRE, n. FR. Martyrdom; torment. R. 2547.

— v. FR. To torment. 1564.

MARY, MARIE, pr. n. A vulgar oath; *By Mary*. 13322. 1637.

MASE, n. A wild fancy. 15069. T. v. 468.

— v. *neut.* To doubt; to be confounded. 10261.

MASSONNÉ, n. Astonishment; confusion. 8337.

MASSIN, n. Rather *Mazerin*. 13781. A drinking cup. See Du Cange, in v. *MAZER*.

MATE, part. pa. of *MATE*, v. FR. Dejected; struck dead. 957. R. 1789. *So feble and mate*. *Conf. Am.* 127. b.

MATINE for MATÈRE, n. FR. Matter. T. iv. 818.

MAUGRE, MALGRE, FR. In spite of. *Maugre all thy might*. 1609. *Maugre thin cyn.* 5897. *Maugre hire hed.* 6469. P. 169, col. 2, l. 17.—The original of this expression appears more plainly in the following passages. *I drede thou canst me grete maugre*. R. 4399.

*Car je cuido, que me sceaves*

*Mal gré.*

Orig. 4118.

*Malgre his*. R. 2386. 5933. With his ill will; against his will; *Mal gré lui*.

MAVIS, n. SAX. A thrush. R. 619.

— R. 5590. is probably a mistake for *Muis*, n. pl. FR. The Orig. has *Cent muis de froment*. 5197. The Paris *Muid* contains something more than five quarters English.

MAUMET, n. An idol. P. 163, col. 2, l. 31.

MAUMETRIE, n. The religion of Mahomet. 4636.—Idolatrie. P. 163, col. 2, l. 34.

MAWE, n. SAX. The stomach. 12930.

MAY, v. SAX. To be able, physically. 2314. 3045. 8. morally. 739. 2355. 6. See *Mowe*.

MAY, n. SAX. A virgin. 5271. *Of Mary, moder and MAY*. P. L. 235. 307.—A young woman. T. v. 1719.

MAYDENHED, n. SAX. Virginity. 2331.

MAXIMIAN, pr. n. C. L. 798. The author of vi Elegies, which have been frequently printed under the name of Gallus. He is said by Fabricius (Bibl. Lat. T. i. p. 297. Ed. Patav.) to have lived under the Emperor Anastasius, q. I. or II.? A translation, or rather abridgement, of these Elegies, in English verse, is in MS. Harl. 2253.

MEANLICHK, adj. SAX. Moderate. Bo. i. pr. 6. *Mediocribus*. Orig.

MEKLES, n. pl. FR. Mcveable goods. 9188. 10908.

MEKON, n. SAX. Reward. 3380. P. 164, col. 2, l. 65.—A meadow. 83.

— METHS, METH, n. BARB. LAT. Mead; a liquor made of honey. 2281. 3378. 3261.

MEULE, v. FR. To mix. P. 149, col. 1, l. 1.

MEULES, adj. Of a mixed stuff, or colour. 330.

MERIN, n. FR. Household attendant. 7627. 7738.—An army. 14348. 17177. *Hurlewagnes meyne*. Contin. of Canterb. Tales, l. 8. This obscure phrase, I think, may be understood to relate to a particular set of ghostly apparitions, which were used to run about the country at night, and were called in French *La megnie de Hellequin* or *Herlequin*. The fullest account that I have seen of them is in "*L'histoire de Richard sans peur, Duc de Normandie, qui fut fils de Robert le Diable*." In one of his rides he meets with three black Knights, whom he engages. "Et quand les Chevaliers virent le jeumal party pour eux ils monterent a cheval et s'enfuyrent;—et Richard—chevaucha apres eux; et ainal qu'il chevauchoit il apperceut une dance de gens noirs qui s'entretenoyent. Adonc luy souvint de la megnie de Hellequin, dont il avoit autres foys ouy parler." The title of the next chapter (4.) is "*Cy devise de la megnie de Hellequin et qui il estoit*." He is there said to have been a knight, who, having spent all his substance in the wars of Charles Martel against the Saracens, lived afterwards by pillage. "Adonc il avint qu'il mourut et fut en danger d'estre damne, mais Dieu luy fit pardon, pource que il avoit bataille contre les Sarrazins et exaulce la foy. Si fut condamne de Dieu que pour un tems determine luy et ceux de son lignage feroient penitence et yroient toute la nuit parmy la terre, pour leurs penitences faire et endurer plusieurs maux et calamitez." The belief of such apparitions was certainly of great antiquity in Normandy, as they are mentioned by Ordericus Vitalis, under the title of *familia Herlechini*, in a most extraordinary story related by him, L. vii. p. 605. ann. 1091. And I suspect that in a passage quoted by Du Cange, in v. HERLININI, from *Petr. Blesens Ep.* 14. we should read *Herlikini* instead of *Hertlinini*.

Gervase of Tilbery, who wrote in 1211, mentions another set of apparitions, which were called *familia Arturi*. Ot. Imper. Dec. ii. c. 12. "In sylvia Britannie majoris aut minoris consimilis contigisse referuntur, narrantibus nemorum custodibus, quos forestarios—vulgus nominat, se alternis diebus circa horam meridianam, et in primo noctium conticinio sub plenilunio luna lucente, sepius me videre militum copiam venantium et canum et cornuum strepitum, qui sciscitantibus se de societate et familia Arturi esse affirmant." He had just said that Arthur, not long before, had been seen in a palace, "*miro opere constructo*," in a most delicious valley in the neighbourhood of Mount Aetna, where he had resided ever since the time of his supposed death, "*eveneribus quotannis recrudescuntibus*."

MEINT, part. pa. of *MENG*, v. SAX. Mixed, mingled. R. 2296.

MEKE, adj. SAX. Meek, humble. 8017.

— v. To become meek. R. 3541. 3584.

MELES, n. pl. SAX. Meals; dinners, &c. Du. 612.

MELE-TIDE, n. SAX. Dinner-time. T. ii. 1556.

MELLE, v. FR. To meddle. C. D. 536.

— n. for MILE. 3921.

MEMORIE, n. FR. Remembrance. *To be drawn to memorie*. 3114. To be recorded.

And for to drawe in to *memorie*  
Her names bothe and her historye.

*Conf. Am.* f. 76.

— v. To remember. 10118.

MENDIANTS, n. pl. FR. Fryers of the Begging orders. 7488. See the note.

MENE, v. SAX. To mean; to intend. 2065. 2214.

— n. FR. *Moyen*. A mean, or instrument. 9545. T. iii. 255. Where the Orig. has *mezzano*; a procurer. MENES, pl. 7064. 3375.

— adj. Middle. 7027. 17322. But see the note on the latter verse.

MENIVERRE, n. FR. A sort of furr. R. 227. See the n. on ver. 193.

MERCENRIKE, pr. n. The kingdom of Mercia. 15118.

MERCIA, pr. n. F. fil. 139. *Marsyas* is probably meant; but our Poet, I know not upon what authority, has turned him into a female.

MERCIBLE, adj. FR. Merciful. 13618. 362. 413.

**MERITORIOUS**, *adj.* Fr. Meritorious. P. 165, col. 2, l. 47.  
**MERKE**, *n. Sax.* A mark; an image. 11192. *All the merke of Adam.* 6378. All the images of Adam; all mankind.  
 — *adj. Sax.* Dark. R. 5339.  
**MERLION**, *n. Fr.* Emerillon. A merlin; a sort of hawk. A. F. 339.  
**MERVAILLE**, *n. Fr.* Wonder, marvel. 10074.  
**MERY**, *adj. Sax.* Merry. 904.—Pleasant. 14972.  
**MESSE**, R. 3463. *At gode mes* should probably be *At gode-ness*. The Orig. has *en don point*. See **GODNESS**.  
**MESS**, *n.* for **MESS**. C. D. 2116.  
**MESSAL**, *n. Fr.* A leper. P. 160, col. 2, l. 19.  
**MESSUR**, *n. Fr.* Leprosia. P. 160, col. 2, l. 24.  
**MESSAGE**, *n. Fr.* A messenger. 8614. 8923.  
**MESSAGIER**, *pr. n.* A fictitious attendant in the Temple of Venus. A. F. 228. Boccace calls her *Ruffiana*. *Theseida*. b. vii.  
**MESE**, *n. Fr.* The service of the Mass. 9768.  
**MESTE**, *adj. Sax.* *superl. d.* 9006. as **MOSTE**.  
**MESURABLE**, *adj. Fr.* Moderate. 437. 10676.  
**MESURE**, *n. Fr.* Moderation. 11981.  
**METAMORPHOSES**. 4513. **METAMORPHOSES**. C. L. 12670. Ovid's *Metamorphosis*. See **JUDICUM**.  
**METE**, *adj. Sax.* Fitting; convenient. 1633.  
 — *n. Sax.* Meat. 1617. *During the metes space.* 5434. During the time of eating.  
**METE-BORDE**, *n. Sax.* An eating-table. T. L. ii. 326. b.  
**METELV**, *adj.* Proportionable. R. 822.  
**METE**, *v. Sax.* To meet. 18627.—To dream. T. iii. 1350.  
**METTE**, *met*, *pa. t.* Dreamed. 15089. 18118. *I mette.* 6189. *Me mette.* 14900. *I dreamed*.  
**METRICIENS**, *n. pl.* Writers in verse. C. L. 30.  
**MEVABLE**, *adj. Fr.* Moveable. R. 4736.  
**MEWE**, *n. Fr.* A cage for hawks, while they mow, or change their feathers. 10957.—A cage, in general, or any sort of confinement. R. 4778. T. iii. 603. *In mewe*. T. l. 363. In secret.  
**MEWER**, *adj. Fr.* Mute. *In mewet.* C. L. 148. Dumbly, speaking inwardly.  
**MICHER**, *n.* A thief. R. 6541. *Lierres*. Orig. 12008. *MYCHYN OF FRYVEL STELYN SNALE THYNOS*. *Surripio*. Prompt. Parv.  
**MIGHT**, *pa. t.* of **MAY**, *v. Sax.* Was able. 301. 1519.  
**MIGHTEN**, *pl.* 7965.  
 — *part. pa. t.* iii. 653. *If godely had he might.* If he had been able with propriety.  
 — *n. Sax.* Power; strength. 1152. 1858.  
**MILKSOP**, *n.* An effeminate fellow. 13916.  
**MILNE-STONES**, *n. pl. Sax.* Mill-stones. T. ii. 1384.  
**MIND**, *n. Sax.* Remembrance. 1908. *Conf. Am.* 148. *As the bokes maken minde*.  
**MINE**, *v. Fr.* To penetrate. T. ii. 637.  
**MINISTRALLES**, *n. pl. Fr.* Minstrels. 10392.  
**MINISTRES**, *n. pl. Fr.* Officers of justice. 15049. 15064.  
**MINISTERS**. C. D. 2130. Minstrels.  
**MINORESS**, *n. R.* 149. A nun, under the rule of St. Clare.  
 Du Cange, in *v. MINORISSA*. It is not clear however why Chaucer has likened *Hate* to a Sister of this order. His original gave him no authority.  
**MINOUR**, *n. Fr.* A miner. 2477.  
**MINSTRALCIE**, *n. Fr.* Musick. 2199. 10582.—Musical instruments. 17216.  
**MINOUR**, *n. Fr.* A looking-glass. 10446.  
**MIRTHELES**, *adj. Sax.* Without mirth. A. F. 592.  
**MIS**, *adv.* Ill; amiss. 16467. R. 3243. T. iv. 1267. It is often to be supplied to a second verb, having been expressed in composition with a former. *If that I mispeke* or *say*. 3141. *That hire misdoth* or *saith*. 13928. *There is nothing misaleid nor do.* Du. 528.  
 — *n.* A wrong. 17226.  
**MIS-ACCOMPTED**, *part. pa.* Misreckoned. T. v. 1184.  
**MIS-ADVENTURE**, *n.* Misfortune. 6916.  
**MIS-ADVISE**, *v.* To advise wrongly. 5812.  
**MIS-BODEN**, *part. pa.* of **MIS-BEDE**. Injured. 911.  
**MIS-BORNE**, *part. pa.* of **MIS-BERE**. Misbehaved. M. 120, col. 2, l. 19.  
**MISCHANCE**, *n. Fr.* Misfortune. *With mischance.* 6916. 17142. See **WITTE**.

**MISCHEVE**, *n. Fr.* Misfortune. R. 6741.  
**MISCOVERING**, *n. R.* 196. should probably be **MISCOMPTING**. *Mescompter*. Orig.  
**MIS-DEPART**, *v.* To distribute wrongly. 4627.  
**MISERICORDE**, *n. Fr.* Mercy; pity. 7492.  
**MIS-ERE**, *n.* Uneasiness. P. 150, col. 1, l. 10.  
**MIS-FORAYE**, *pa. t.* of **MIS-FORAYE**. *Mis-gave*. T. iv. 1426.  
**MIS-GUED**, *part. pa.* of **MIS-GUE**. Misguided. 14461.  
**MIS-GON**, *Mis-oo*, *part. pa.* of **MIS-GO**. Gone wrong. 4216. 4253.  
**MIS-HAPPING**, *part. pr.* Falling amiss. R. 5543.  
**MIS-LEDE**, *v.* To conduct amiss. T. iv. 48.  
**MIS-LIVED**, *part. pa.* Having lived to a bad purpose. T. iv. 330.  
**MIS-METRE**, *v.* To spoil the metre of verses, by writing or reading them ill. T. v. 1793.  
**MIS-SATE**, *pa. t.* of **MIS-SIT**. Misbecame. R. 1194.  
**MIS-SAYDE**, *part. pa.* of **MIS-SAYE**. Ill spoken of. R. 156.  
**MIS-SAYER**, *n.* An evil speaker. R. 2231.  
**MISSE**, *v. Sax.* To fail. T. iii. 1630.  
**MISSE-METRE**, *v.* See **MIS-METRE**.  
**MISTAKE**, *v.* To take a wrong part; to transgress. R. 1540. *Mesprendre*. Orig.  
**MISTERE**, *n. Fr.* Trade; occupation. 615.—Condition of life. 1342. *What mistere men ye den.* 1712. What kind of men ye are.—Need. R. 5614. 6078.  
**MISTHEDE**, *n. Sax.* Darkness. C. M. 71.  
**MISTILY**, *adv. Sax.* Darkly. 16962.  
**MISTRUST**, *v.* for **MISTRUST**. 12303.  
**MIS-WALK**, *n.* A wrong way. R. 4766.  
**MIS-WENT**, *part. pa.* of **MIS-WENDE**. Gone amiss. R. 7280.  
**MIS-WRITE**, *v.* To write wrong. T. v. 1794.  
**MITAINE**, *n. Fr.* A glove. 12307. 8.  
**MITCHE**, *n. Fr.* A manchet; a loaf of fine bread. R. 5585.  
**MITE**, *n. Sax.* A small worm. 6142. 16166. *p. 4, 13*  
**MIXEN**, *n. Sax.* A dunghill. P. 167, col. 2, l. 67.  
**MO** for **ME**. 8915. See the note.  
 — for **MORE**, *adj. comp.* 546. 810. 1937.—*adv. comp.* 1354. 2073.  
**MOCHEL**, **MOCHN**, *adj. Sax.* Great, in quantity. 2354. 7393. in number. 6586. 6855. in degree. 496.—*adv.* Much, greatly. 1118. 2852. *p. 270*  
**MODER**, **MODRE**, *n. Sax.* Mother. 10139. 10291.—*The Matrix*, or principal plate of the *Astrolabe*. *Aut.*  
**MOISON**, *n. Fr.* Harvest; growth. R. 1677.  
**MOIST**, **MOISTV**, *adj. Fr.* New. 459. 12949. 17009. See the *n.* on ver. 459.  
**MOSEL**, *n. Du.* 454. 961. may perhaps signify *size, magnitude*; as *Michel* seems to be used in that sense in P. P. 89. b. *Of one Michel and might.* *p. 270 = moosel*  
**MOLESTIN**, *n. Fr.* Trouble. Bo. iii. pr. 9.  
**MOLTE**, *pa. t.* of **MELTE**, *v. Sax.* Melted. F. ii. 414.—*part. pa. t.* v. 10.  
**MONCHE**, *v.* To chew. T. l. 915.  
**MONN**, *n. Sax.* The Moon. 9759.—Lamentation. 5076. 11232.  
**MONESTE**, *v. Fr.* To admonish. R. 3579.  
**MONIOURS**, *n. pl. Fr.* Coiners. R. 6811. In the Original it is *Faultz Monnoyeurs*.  
**MONSTRE**, *n. Fr.* A monster, or prodigy. 11656.—A pattern. Du. 912.  
**MOOD**, *n. Sax.* Anger. 1762.  
**MORCELS**, *n. pl. Fr.* Morsels. R. 6179.  
**MORE**, *adj. comp. Sax.* Greater, in quantity. 705. 785. in number. 10192. in degree. 1758. 6516.—*adv. comp.* 1309. 2746. It is usually joined to adjectives and adverbs to express the comparative degree. 6023. 7551. 10786.  
**MORMAL**, *n.* See the *n.* on ver. 388.  
**MORTER**, *n. Fr.* A sort of wax-light. T. iv. 1245.  
**MORTIFIE**, *v. Fr.* To kill (speaking of *Quicksilver*). 16594.  
**MORTWEES**, *n.* See the *n.* on ver. 396.  
**MORWE**, *n. Sax.* The morning. 2493. *A'morwe*. 824. 6173. In the morning. 1623. 2491. In the morning of the following day.—*To-morwe*, I believe, always means *the following day*. 782. 1612. 2341. 2404. and it includes the whole day. *To-morwe at night*. 3593.  
**MORWENING**, *n. Sax.* The morning. 4233. 15308. **MORWENINGES**, *pl.* 6457.  
**MOSL**, *n. Fr.* The muzzle; mouth of a beast. 2157.



**MORNA**, *adj. superl. Sax.* Greatest, in quantity. 305. 807. in number. 10675. in degree. 2200. 10614.—*adv. superl.* 563. 2409. It is usually joined to adjectives and adverbs to express the superlative degree. 2205. 9423.

— *v. Sax.* Must. 734. 7. **MORSEN**, *pl.* 6024.

**MOTR**, *v. Sax.* Must. 232. 1647. B.—May. 834. 4175. **MOTRIN**, *pl.* 10530. 2.

— *n. Sax.* An atom. 6450. T. III. 1609.

**MOTRIN**, *n. pl. Sax.* Moths. 6142.

**MOTIF**, *n. Fr.* A motive, incitement. 5048. 9365.

**MOUGHT**, *pa. t. of MOWE*, *v. Sax.* Might.

**MOULE**, *v. Sax.* To grow mouldy. 4452. **MOULED**, *part. pa.* 3968.

**MOUN** for **MOWEN**, *pr. t. pl. of MOWE*, *v. Sax.* May. 12868. 13160.

**MOUNTAIN**, *n. Fr.* Amount; in value. 1672.—in quantity. 12797. *Not full the mountain of a mile.* Conf. Am. 187.

**MOURDANT**, *n. Fr.* The tongue of a buckle. R. 1094.

**MOWE**, *v. Sax.* May; to be able. **MOWEN**, *pl.* 12867. 16142.—It is sometimes used in the *inf. m.* M. 115, col. 1, l. 8. *Which thou shalt not mowe suffre.* Which thou shalt not be able to endure.—*To mowen such a knight done live or die.* T. II. 1594. *To be able to make such a knight to live or die.*—*She should not con ne mow attaine.* C. D. 150. She should not know nor be able to attain.

**MOWE**, *n. Fr.* A distortion of the mouth. T. IV. 7. F. III. 716. *What do I than but laugh and make a mowe?* Lydg. *Trag.* 137.

**MOWING**, *n.* Ability. Bo. IV. pr. 4. In the following passage it seems to be used as a *GERUND.* *That shrewes werea disposed of mowing to don yvel.* Ibid.

**MUCH**, **MUCHEL**. See **MOCHRE**.

**MUCKRE**, *v. Sax.* To heap. T. III. 1381.

**MUX**, *v. Fr.* To change. T. II. 1258.

**MUT**, *adj. Fr.* Dumb, mute. T. V. 194.

**MULCK**, *n. Sax.* Dung; rubbish. 3671. 16406.

**MULTIPLICATION**, *n. Fr.* The art of making gold and silver. 16317.

**MULTIPLE**, *v. Fr.* To make gold and silver. 16303.

**MUSARD**, *n. Fr.* A muner, or dreamer. R. 3236. 4034.

**MUSE**, *v. Fr.* To gaze. R. 1592.

**MYSELF**, **MYSELVE**, **MYSELVEN**. See **SELF**.

## N.

**NA** for **NO**. 4174. See the *n.* on ver. 4021.

**N'ADDER** for **NE HADDER**; Had not. 10212.

**NAILE**, *n. Sax.* A nail. 6351. *By nailes.* 12222. *By Goddes nailes.* 12285. an oath. See the *n.* on ver. 12583.

**NAKERKE**, *n. pl. Fr.* See the *n.* on ver. 2513.

**NALK**, *n. Sax.* An ale-house. 6931. See the note. But I am now less inclined to adopt Skinner's explanation of this word, because I observe that *Ale* alone is commonly put for an *Ale-house*, and I cannot find that *Nale* is ever used, except where it follows the preposition *Atte*. In the passage quoted from P. P. 32 b. the *Cotton MS. Vesp. B. xvi.* has *at the ale*. And so in P. P. 26 b. With idle tales *at the ale*.—Robert of Brunne's translation of *Manuel des pechés*. MS. Bodl. 2313. fol. 1.

In gamys, in festys, and at the ale—fol. 38. Or yf thou leddest any man to the ale.

I suspect therefore that *Nale*, in those few passages in which it is found, should be considered as merely a corruption, which has arisen from the mispronunciation and consequent miswriting of *atte nale* for *atten ale*. See the *n.* on ver. 12542. A similar corruption seems to have taken place in the name of that celebrated personage in our law, Mr. John *atle nake*, whose original appellation, I believe, was John *atten nake*, as that of his constant antagonist was John *atle stile*. Sim. *atle stile* is a name in P. P. 23 b. and there are many others of the same form; as, *Atle cliff*, *Atle ley*, *Atle-well*, *Atle-wood*, &c. That the letter *n* is apt to pass from the end of one word to the beginning of another, we have an instance in *Newt*, which has certainly been formed by corruption from *An eut*, or *et*; and perhaps *Neider*, *n. Sax.* may have been formed in the same way from *An adder*. The

word in the Teutonic is *Adder*, as we write it now, without the initial *n*. The same corruptions have happened in other languages. See the notes of Signor *Nadi* upon his *Bacco in Toscana*, p. 133. 4. 5. 182. 3.

**N'AM** for **NE AM**; Am not. 5730.

**NAME**, *pa. t. of NINE*, *v. Sax.* Took. 16765.

**NAPPE**, *v. Sax.* To sleep. 16968. See **KNAP**.

**NAMOTIKES**, *n. pl. Fr. Gr.* Drugs causing sleep. 1474. L. W. 2658.

**NARWE**, *adj. Sax.* Close, narrow. 3224. 14828. *When they hem narwe avise.* 9962. When they closely consider their conduct.

**NAS** for **NE WAS**; Was not. 1450. 1651.

**NASO**, *pr. n. L. W.* 228. 2218. P. Ovidius Naso. See **OVIDE**.

**NAT**, *adv. Sax.* Not. 5899. 6551.

**NATAL**, *adj. Lat.* Presiding over nativity. T. III. 150.

**NATHELESS**, **NATHELES**, *adv. Sax.* Not the less; nevertheless. 2475. 3606.

**NATION**, *n. Fr.* 4701. Nation.—Family. 6580.

**NAUGHT**, **NOUGHT**, *n. Sax.* Nothing. 758. 770.

— *adv.* Not; not at all. 2070. 4890. It may more properly perhaps be considered as a noun used adverbially. See **NOTHING**.

**NAV**, *adv. Sax.* 8297. It seems to be used sometimes as a noun. *It is no nay.* 8692. 9015. It cannot be denied.

— *v.* To deny. P. 170, col. 2, l. 20.

**NE**, *adv. Sax.* Not. 9356. 10070. *Ne had he ben holpen.* 10980. Had he not been helped.

— *conj. Sax.* Nor. 970, l. 8847. 11795.

**NECE**, *n. Fr.* A niece.—A cousin. 13030. 13065. *p. 262*

**NECESSARIE**, *adj. Fr.* Necessary. T. IV. 1031.

**NEDE**, *n. Sax.* Need; necessity. 4523.

— *v.* is generally used as an Impersonal. *It nedeth thee nought techen.* 3599. *Nedeth hem no dwale.* 4129. *Nedeth no more to hem to go ne ride.* 2489.

**NEDEFUL**, *adj.* Distress, indigent. 4532.

**NEDELV**, *adv.* Necessarily. 6550.

**NEDES**, **NEDE**, *adv.* Necessarily. It is usually joined with *must*. 1171. 11475. 17157.

**NEDDER**, *n. Sax.* An adder. 9690. **NEDDER**, *pl.* L. W. 698.

**NIGHTE**, *adj. Sax.* Nigh. 3392.

— *v.* To approach; to come near. R. 1775. 2063.

**NKKKE**, *n. Sax.* The neck. 5869. *Nekkebene.* 6482.

**NEMPNE**, *v. Sax.* To name. 10632.

**NKR**, *adv. Sax.* Near. 10315. 12900.

**NERE**, *comp. d. Nigher.* *Never the nere.* 16189. *Never the nigher.* *Nere and nere.* 13450. *Nigher and nigher.* *Ferre ne nere.* 1852. Later nor earlier.

**NERE** for **NE WERE**; Were not. 17222. *Nere il.* 1602. Were it not. *Ne're the friendship.* 16830.

**NERVE**, *n. Fr.* Nerve; sinew. T. II. 642.

**NESSE**, *adj. Sax.* Soft; tender. C. L. 1092. *Nesch and hard.* P. L. 242. 300.

**NETE**, *n. Sax.* Neat-cattle. 509.

**NETHER**, *adj. comp. Sax.* Lower. 3850.

**NETTLE IN**, **DOCK OUT**. T. IV. 461. See **RAKET**.

**NEVEV**, *v. Sax.* To name. 8483. 16289.

**NEVEW**, *n. Fr.* A nephew.—A grandson. L. W. 2648.

**NEWE**, *adj. Sax.* New; fresh. 459.

— *adv.* Newly. 7879. *Neves and nere.* T. III. 116. *Again and again.* *All nere.* 9700. *Of nere.* 8614. *Newly; lately.* *All nere.* 13308. *Anew; afresh.*

— *v.* To renew. T. III. 306.

**NEWED**, *part. pa.* Renewed. M. 120, col. 1, l. 6.

**NEWKANGEL**, *adj.* Desirous of new things. 10932. 17143.

**NEWKANGELNEN**, *n.* Inconstancy. 10924.

**NEXTE**, *superl. d. Nighest.* It generally signifies the *nighest following*, but sometimes the *nighest preceding*. F. III. 683.

**N'HATH** for **NE HATH**; Hath not. 925.

**NICE**, *adj. Fr.* Foolish. 5508. 6520. 10539.

**NICKTE**, *n.* Folly. 4044. 17101. *Do his nictees.* 5694. So the French use *Faire folie*.

**NIFLES**, *n. pl.* Trifles. 7342.

**NIGARD**, *n.* A stingy fellow. 5915.

**NIGARDIE**, *n.* Stinginess. 13102.

**NIGHTERTALE**. 97. Night-time. See the note.

**NIGHT-SPEL**, *n. Sax.* A night charm. See the *n.* on ver. 3480.

**N'ILL** for **N' WILL**; Will not. 5734. 5762.  
**N'is** for **N' is**; Is not. 978. 1679.  
**N'isre** for **N' is wre**; Knew not. *sing.* 11340. 3414. **N'isren** for **N' is wreten**; Knew not. *pl.* 10948.  
**NOBLEDIST**, *pa. l. 2 pers. sing.* of **NOBLE**, *v. Fr.* Ennobledst. 15508.  
**NOBLEMAN**, *n. Fr.* Dignity, splendour. 8344. 8658.  
**NOBLEV**, *n.* 8704. 10301. as **NOBLEMAN**.  
**NOCHRA**, *part. pa.* Notched. R. 942.  
**NOH**, *n. Fr.* Hurt; trouble. 3772.  
 — *v. Fr.* To hurt; to trouble. R. 4416.  
**NOISE**, *v. Fr.* To make a noise. Ro. iii. m. 6.  
**NOLDS** for **N' WOLDS**; Would not. 3153. 3168.  
**NUMBER**, *n. Fr.* Number. 718.  
**NUMEN**, **NUME**, *part. pa.* of **NINE**, *v. SAX.* Taken. T. v. 190. 514. L. W. 1016.  
**NUMERUS**, *n.* An arbitrator. T. L. i. 319. See the passage quoted above in *v. LOVEDAIR*. The sense of this word is established by the *Prompt. Par.* "Nowmper or ownmper. *Arbitr. Sequester*." If the etymology of it were as clear, we might be able to determine which of the two methods of writing it is the best. Custom has long declared for the latter. The modern word is *umpire*; and in P. P. 25 b. the Editt. read *an umpir*; but the *Cotton MS. Vesp. B. xvi.* has—a *numper*. I cannot find that any such word is used, in the same sense, in any other of the Gothic or Romance languages. It has been supposed by some to be a corruption of *un pere*, *Fr.* which I can hardly believe; and perhaps the reader will be as backward to admit of a derivation of it from the *Fr. Nompair*; An odd, or third person; which an *arbitrator* generally is. This however is the most probable etymology that has occurred to me; and I see that the compiler of the Statutes for the University of Oxford (whoever he was) had the same idea, for he expresses the word *umpire*, in his Latin, by *Impar*. Tit. xv. §. 14. *Index, IMPAR, aut Arbitrator, in quodcumque causis electus.*  
**NUM**, *adv. SAX.* Not one; none. 656. 682.  
 — *adv. Fr.* Not 13011. *Absent or non.* 8311. *Whether we get or non.* 11090.  
**NUNE**, *n. Fr.* The ninth hour of the natural day; Nine o'clock in the morning; the hour of dinner. 9767. T. v. 1114. 22, 30.  
**NUNES**. For the *nunes*. See the *n.* on ver. 381. and add, if necessary, the following instances, T. i. 562. li. 1381. iv. 428. L. W. 295. 1068. 1114. [There seems to be now no doubt that the original form was the Saxon *for than aene*. See Price's note on Warton's *Hist. of Engl. Poet.* li. 496, and Sir F. Madden's *Gloss. to Syr Gawayne*, &c.]  
**NUNNE**, *n. Fr.* A nun. 118.  
**NURSE**, *n. Fr.* A nurse. 5881. Bo. ii. pr. 4. In other passages, Bo. l. pr. 3. li. pr. 9. it is printed by mistake, I suppose, for **NORIS**, *n.* A foster-child. *Alumnus*.  
**NORTELEIS**, *n.* Nurture; education. 3965.  
**NOSTRILLES**, *n. pl. SAX.* Nostrils. 559. P. 150, col. 2, l. 38.  
**N'OT** for **N' WOT**; Know not. 286. 3664.  
**NOTABILITIES**, *n. Fr.* A thing worthy of observation. 15215.  
**NOTE**, *n. SAX.* Need; business. 4065.  
 — *n. Fr.* A musical note. To cry by note. T. iv. 583. To cry aloud, in a high tone.  
**NOTMUG**, *n.* Nutmeg. 13993. R. 1361.  
**NOTES**, *n. pl. SAX.* Nuts. R. 1377.  
**NOT-HED**; A head like a nut. See the *n.* on ver. 109.  
**NOTHER**, *conj. SAX.* Nor, neither. 5795. 9951.  
**N'OTHER**, *adv. SAX.* For **N' OTHER**. Neither n' other. L. W. 192. Nor one nor other. He n' is in neither n' other habite. Bo. v. m. 3. *Neutro est habitus.* Orig.  
**NOUENO**, *adv. SAX.* Not; not at all. 1756. 8251.  
**NOUCHE**, *n. pl.* 6258. See the note. It is probable, I think, that *Nouche* is the true word, and that *Ouche* has been introduced by a corruption, the reverse of that which has been taken notice of in **NALB**. See Du Cange, in *v. Nochie*, and *Nusca*; and Schilter, *Gloss. Teut.* in *v. Nuosci*; from whence it appears that *Nuschin*, *Teut.* signifies *Fibula*; a clasp, or buckle. As these were some of the most useful instruments of dress, they were probably some of the first that were ornamented with jewels; by which means the name by degrees may have been ex-

tended, so as to include several other sorts of jewels. The same thing may have happened in the case of the word **BROCHES** (see above); which indeed seems, originally, to have been a French expression for *Nouche*.  
**NOVELRIES**, *n. pl. Fr.* Novelties. F. li. 178.  
**NOUGHT**, *n. & adv. SAX.* See **NAUGHT**.  
**NOUTH**, *adv. SAX.* Now. 464. T. i. 986. See the *n.* on ver. 464.  
**Now**, *adv. SAX.* Now and now. 10744. Once and again. *Now adays.* 9040. 16864. In these days.  
**NOWEL**, *n. Fr.* Christmas. See the *n.* on ver. 11567.  
**NOYALUNCE**, *n. Fr.* Offence; trespass. C. D. 255.

## O.

**O** for **HO**. 2535. See **HO**.  
**O**, *adj.* for **ON**; One. 740. 5555. In the curious old Ballad on the battle of Lewes (*Ant. Poet.* v. li. p. 4.) l. 10. *oferlyng* should be written, I believe, *oferlyng*, i. e. one farthing.  
**OBEYANCE**, *n. Fr.* Obedience. 8378. **OBEYING**, R. 3380.  
**OBEYANT**, *part. pr. Fr.* Obedient. 7942. **OBEYING**, L. W. 1264.  
**OBSERQUIE**, *n. pl. Fr.* Funeral rites. 905.  
**OBSERVANCE**, *n. Fr.* Respect. 10630.  
**OBSERVE**, *v. Fr.* To respect; to pay regard to. 13560.  
**OCCIDENT**, *n. Fr.* The West. 4717.  
**OCTAVIEN**, *pr. n. Du.* 368. I do not suppose that Augustus is meant, but rather the fabulous emperor, who is a subject of a Romance entitled "*Octavianus imperator*." MS. Cotton. Calig. A. li. See Percy's Catalogue, n. 18. and the passage quoted from MS. Reg. 17. C. viii. in the *n.* on ver. 13775. The same Octavian, I apprehend, was celebrated in a piece of Arras hangings, which made part of the furniture of Henry V. and is thus described in the Inventory. *Rot. Parl.* 2. Hen. VI. Item *l'autre pece d'arras D or q comence en l'estorie "Le Octavian Roy de Rome."*  
**OCT**, **OCT**, C. N. 124. The nightingale's note.  
**OVERTHROW** for **OVERTHROW**, *part. pa. SAX.* Overthrown. C. D. 1151.  
**ORTUS**, *pr. n.* *Ecce.* L. W. 1435.  
**OF**, *adv. SAX.* Off. 552. 784. 2678.  
**OFFENDED**, *part. pa. Fr.* Hurt. 2396.  
**OFFENSIOUM**, *n.* Offence; damage. 2418.  
**OFFERTORIE**, *n. Fr.* A part of the Mass. 712.  
**OFFERING**, *n. Fr.* Offering at Mass. 482. P. 155, col. 1, l. 63.  
**OFT**, **OFT**, *adv. SAX.* Often. **OFTENWIT**; Oftentimes. 1879. 8109.  
**OINTMENT**, *n. Fr.* Ointment. 633.  
**OLIFANT**, *n. Fr.* Elephant. 15739. See the note, and *R. de la Rose*. 18686. *OLIFANT sur sa haute eschine*, &c.  
**OLIVENES**, *n. pl. Fr.* Olive-trees. 14042. R. 1314.  
**OMER**, *pr. n.* Homer. T. i. 146. P. iii. 375.  
**ON**, *prep. SAX.* In. *On live.* 3041. In life; Alive. *On twelve.* 7549. In twelve. *On hunting.* 1689. *On hawking.* 13667. See *A. prep.*—Upon. *On to see.* 3347. To look upon. See the note; and add L. W. 2414. *Lycurgus daughter, fairer on to sene*—So this line is written in MS. Bodl.  
 — *adv. SAX.* One. *After on.* 343. 1783. *Alilke. They were at on.* 4195. They were agreed. See R. 5817. T. iii. 566. *Ever in on.* 1773. 3878. Continually. *I minc on.* C. D. 1019. I single; I by myself. *And thus I went sidewher walking mine own.* P. P. 40 b. *Non saw but he one.* P. L. 44. *All him one.* Conf. Am. 175.  
**ONDE**, *n. SAX.* Zeal; malice. R. 148. *Ny the and ONDB.* P. L. 245.  
**ONED**, *part. pa. SAX.* Made one, united. 7380. P. 150, col. 1, l. 62.  
**ONES**, *pl. of ON.* 12630. *W'e three ben alle ones.* We three are all one.  
 — *adv. SAX.* Once. *At ones.* 767. At once; at the same time. 3470.  
**ONHED**, *n. SAX.* Unity. T. L. H. 339.  
**ONLY**, *adv. SAX.* At only. 15385. M. 115, col. 1, l. 10. Solely.  
**ONY**, *adv. SAX.* Any. 2410.  
**OPEN-ERA**, *n. SAX.* The fruit of the Medlar-tree. 2609.

**OPEN-HEADED**, *adj.* Bare-headed. 2392.  
**OPHE**, *n. Fr.* Opium. 1374.  
**OPPRESS**, *v. Fr.* To ravish. 11723. **OPPRESSED**, *part. pa.* 11697.  
**OPPRESSION**, *n.* Rape. 6471. L. W. 1898.  
**OP**, *adv. Sax.* Er, before. 275. 1187.  
**ORATORIC**, *n. Fr.* A chappie. 1907. A closet. 6776.  
**ORDAL**, *n. Sax.* Judicial trial. T. iii. 1048. See Killian. in *v. Oor-deel*, and Hickey. *Dissert. Epist.* p. 149. It is possible however that Chaucer may have used this word in its more confined sense, for a trial by fire, or water, without considering whether such trials were practised at Troy.  
**ORDE**, *n. Sax.* A point. L. W. 645.  
**ORDERED**, *part. pa.* Ordained, in holy orders. P. 164, col. 2, l. 13.  
**ORDERS FOUR**, 210. The four orders of Mendicant Friars.  
**ORDINANCE**, *n. Fr.* Orderly disposition. 8837. 11215.  
**ORDINAT**, *part. pa. LAT.* Orderly; regular. 9160.  
**ORE**, *n. Sax.* Grace; favour. 3724. See the note.  
**ORRWELL**, *pr. n.* A sea-port in Essex. 279.  
**ORPHEA**, *n. Fr.* Gold-embroidery. R. 562. 869. See Du Cange, in *v. AuriFrige*.  
**ORIENT**, *n. Fr.* The east. 14320.  
**ORIGENES**, *pr. n.* In the list of Chaucer's works in L. W. ver. 427. he says of himself, that  
 "He made also, gon is a grete while,  
*Origenes upon the Maudelaine.*"  
 meaning, I suppose, a translation, into prose or verse, of the Homily de *Marid Magdalene*, which has been commonly, though falsely, attributed to Origen. *v. Opp.* *Origenis*. T. ii. p. 291. Ed. Paris. 1604. I cannot believe that the Poem, entitled "*The Lamentation of Marie Magdalene*," which is in all the editions of Chaucer, is really that work of his. It can hardly be considered as a translation, or even imitation, of the Homily; and the composition, in every respect, is infinitely meaner than the worst of his genuine pieces.  
**ORISONT**, *n. Fr.* The horizon. 9671.  
**ORLOOE**, *n. Fr.* A clock, or dial. 14860.  
**ORNIMENT**, *pr. n.* A mineral so called. 16201.  
**OTHER**, *adj. Sax.* *Alter.* LAT. The other of two. 1134. 1137. 1277. *OTHERS* *gen. cu.* 2736.  
 — *adj. Sax.* *Alius.* LAT. 463. 1218.  
 — *conj. Sax.* Or, either. 1714. 1814. 5556.  
**OUCHER**, *n.* 6325. F. iii. 260. See *NOUCHE*.  
**OVER**, *prep. Sax.* Above. 2045. *Over all.* In every case; on every side. 249. 5846. 8924.  
 — *adj. Sax.* Upper. 133.  
**OVEREST**, *superl. d.* Uppermost. 292. 16101.  
**OVER-GRAT**, *adj. Sax.* Too great. 16116.  
**OVER-LADDE**, *part. pa.* Overborn. 13917. *Do not the people oppress, nor OVERLEDE.* Lydg. *Trag.* 104.  
**OVER-LIVE**, *v. Sax.* To out-live. 6842.  
**OVER-MERILY**, *adv. Sax.* Too merrily. C. L. 406.  
**OVER-MOCH**, *adj. Sax.* Too great. C. L. 394.  
**OVER-NOME**, *part. pa.* of *OVER-NIME*, *v. Sax.* Overtaken. 2802.  
**OVER-SPRADDE**, *pa. t. Sax.* Over-spread. 2873. T. ii. 769.  
**OVERTE**, *adj. Fr.* Open. F. ii. 210.  
**OVERTHREW**, *pa. t. of OVERTHROW*, *v. neut. Sax.* Fell down. C. D. 663.  
**OVERTHROWING**, *part. pr. Sax.* Falling headlong. *By overthrowing way.* Bo. i. m. 6. *Præcipiti vid.* Orig. *And therefore clepeth Cassiodore poverte the moder of ruine*, that is to say, the moder of overthrowing or falling down. M. 116, col. 1, l. 62.  
**OVER-THWART**, *adv. Sax.* Across. 1993. Du. 863.—Over against. T. iii. 696.  
**OVER-TIMELICHE**, *adv. Sax.* Too early. Bo. i. m. 1.  
**OUGHT**, *n. Sax.* *Opilic.* Any thing. 5158. 8471. *ade.* 3047. See *AOUGHT*. The difference has arisen merely from the different usages of writing *A* or *O* for *One*.  
 — *pa. t. of OWE*. 4331. L. W. 589. 1607.  
**DOUGHTEN**, *DOUGHT*, *pl.* M. 118, col. 2, l. 31.—From hence, as it seems, has been formed a new verb *Ought*, which is very commonly used in the present tense, for

*Owe*, in both numbers. 3063. 90468. 2. 14937. M. 10 col. 1. l. 38.  
*Ought* is also used as an *Impers.* in the *pr.* and *pa. t.* *Wel ought us werke.* 15482. Well behoveveth it us to work. *Hem oughte have gret repenance.* M. 118, col. 2, l. 21. It behoved them to have *g. r.*  
**OVIDE**, *pr. n.* 4474. 6534. 9999. M. 107, col. 1, l. 2. Our author seems to have been well acquainted with the best part of Ovid's works. Most of the histories in his *Legende of good women* are taken from the *Epistole Heroidum*, or the *Metamorphoses*. That of *Lucrece* shows that he had read the *Fasti*.  
**OUNDING**, *n. Fr.* Waving; imitating waves. P. 158, col. 2, l. 29.  
**OURS**, *pr. poss. Sax.* *Ours.* 12720. 13203. See the *Remy*, &c. n. 23.  
**OUT**, *interj. Sax.* Away! 3123. 10240.  
 — *adv. Sax.* Out and out. T. ii. 739. Throughout.  
**OUTHRES**, *n. LAT. BARA.* Outcry. 2014. *And born to London brigge full his outhrewe.* P. L. 339.  
**OUTRAGE**, *n. Fr.* Violence. 2014.  
**OUTRAIE**, *v. Fr.* To fly out; to be outrageous. 8512.  
**OUT-REDE**, *v. Sax.* To surpass in counsel. 2451.  
**OUTRELV**, *adv. Fr.* Utterly. 12763.  
**OUT-RENNE**, *v. Sax.* To out-run. 2451.  
**OUT-STRAUGHT**, *pa. t. of OUT-STRETCH*, *v. Sax.* Stretched out. R. 1515.  
**OUT-TAKEN**, *part. pa.* Taken out; excepted. *OUT-TAKEN Crist on lofr.* 4697. Christ in heaven being excepted.  
*OUT-TAKE Carleon, that was in Arthurs tyme.* P. L. 332.  
**OWE**, *v. Sax.* Debeo. 3091. **OWEN**, *pl.* 7688. M. 115, col. 2, l. 13.  
**OWEN**, *OWNE*, *part. pa.* 8380. 9664. 13126.  
**OWHERE**, *adv. Sax.* Anywhere. 665.  
**OWNDE**, *adj. Fr.* Waving. F. iii. 298.  
**OXENFORD**, *pr. n.* Oxford. 3399.  
**OVES**, *pr. n.* A river in Picardie. F. iii. 838.

## P.

**PAGE**, *v. Fr.* To pass away. 8968. 10808.—To surpass. 576.  
**PAGE**, *n. Fr.* A boy-child. 3670.—A boy-servant. 12973. L. W. 2035.  
**PAIR**, *n. Fr.* Liking; satisfaction. R. 5938.  
 — *v. Fr.* To please; to satisfy. R. 3599.—To pay. 13120.  
**PAIDE**, *part. pa.* Pleased. 6767. C. D. 426.—Paid. 13319, 29.  
**PAILLET**, *n. Fr.* A couch (properly of straw). T. iii. 230.  
**PAINDEMAIN**. 13658. See the note.  
**PAIRE**, *v. Fr.* To impair. R. 6103. *If I speke ought to PAIRE her loos*, i. e. to impair their credit or reputation. So this line is written in Edit. 1542. and MS. Hunter.  
**PALAMEDES**, *pr. n.* B. K. 331. Not the son of Nauplius, one of the Grecian commanders at the war of Troy, but a knight of the Round table, called *PALOMIDES* in "*Mort d' Arthur*," the unsuccessful rival of Tristan for the love of *la belle Isoude*. See *Mort d' Arthur*, B. ii. which seems to be compiled chiefly from the *Roman de Tristan*.  
**PALASINS**, *n. pl. Fr.* R. 6902. *Ladies Palasins*; Ladies of the court. In the Orig. *Palatines*. See Du Cange, in *v. PALATIN*.  
**PALATIE**, *pr. n.* See the *n.* on ver. 65.  
**PALE**, *n.* A perpendicular stripe, in Heraldry. F. iii. 780.  
 — *v. Fr.* To make pale. Bo. ii. m. 3.  
**PALEIS**, *n. Fr.* A palace. 2201. 10374.  
**PALFREIS**, *n. pl. Fr.* Horses for the road. 2497. where *Stedes* are horses for battle. *Ne large palfreys, eay for the nones.* L. W. 1114.  
**PALING**, *n. Fr.* Imitating pales. P. 155, col. 2, l. 29.  
**PALLADION**, *n. Gr.* The image of Pallas at Troy. T. i. 153.  
**PALLID**, *part. pa. Fr.* Made pale. 17004.  
**PALMERES**, *n. pl.* See the *n.* on ver. 13.  
**PALMERIE**, *pr. n.* Palmyra in Syria. 14253.  
**PAMPHILUS**, *pr. n.* 11422. See the note.  
**PAMPRED**, *part. pa.* Pumppered; made plump. C. L. 177. See *Jun. Etymol.* who derives it from the *Fr. Pampre*, a vine branch, full of leaves.  
**PAN**, *pr. n.* The heathen deity. Du. 512.  
 — *n. Sax.* The skull; the head. 1167. 13959.  
**PANTER**, *n. Fr.* A net. R. 1621. L. W. 131.

- PAPELARD, n. Fr.** A hypocrite. R. 7233.  
**PAPELANDIE, n. Fr.** Hypocrisis. R. 6756.  
**PAPER-WHITE, adj.** White as paper. L. W. 1156.  
**PAR, prep. Fr.** *Par amour*. 1157. With love. See the note. *Par compaignie*. 3537. For company. *Par chance*. 12540. By chance. *Par cuer*. R. 4796. By heart. *Memoirer*. So this line should be written.  
**PARABOLES, n. pl. Fr.** Parables; the Proverbs of Solomon. 6261.  
**PARAGE, n. Fr.** Kindred. 5832.  
**PARAILLE, n. Fr.** Apparel. 6143. 1, 367  
**PARAMOUR, PARAMOURS, n. Fr.** Love; gallantry. 3134. 3754, 6. 13772.—A lover, of either sex. 6036. 6964. See the n. on ver. 1157.  
**PERAVENTURE, adv. Fr.** Haply; by chance. 6475.  
**PARAUNTER, corruption of Peraventure.** Du. 536. 779.  
**PARCE, n. pl. LAT.** The Fates. T. v. 3.  
**PARCEL-MELE, adv.** By parcels, or parts. P. 170, col. 1, l. 61.  
**PARDE, PARDIEUX** 7257. 9110. T. ii. 759. A common Fr. oath, which most of the personages in Chaucer express very frequently in English, with as little ceremony as the Greeks used their *καὶ ὅς*, and with as little meaning too. See ver. 1812. 4084. 4033. 6168. 7432.  
**PARDONER, n. Fr.** A seller of pardons or indulgences. See his CHARACTER, ver. 671—716. See also the n. on ver. 710. and P. P. 2.  
**PARFEMENTS, n. pl. Fr.** Ornamental furniture, or clothes. See the n. on ver. 10583.  
**PARENTHE, n. Fr.** Kindred. P. 167, col. 2, l. 53.  
**PARFAY, Fr. Par foy.** By my faith. 3681.  
**PARFEL R.** 6228. as PARFAY.  
**PARFIT, adj. Fr.** Perfect. 72. 5607.  
**PARFITLY, adv.** Perfectly. 5603.  
**PARFOURME, v. Fr.** To perform. 7843. 9926.  
**PARISHENS, n. pl. Fr.** Parishioners. 484.  
**PARITORE, n. Fr. LAT.** The herb *Parietaria*, or *Pellitory of the wall*. 16049.  
**PARLEMENT, n. Fr.** An assembly for consultation. 2973. T. iv. 211.—A consultation. R. 7358.  
**PARTEN, inf. m. Fr.** To take part. 2504. L. W. 465.  
**PARTIS, n. Fr.** A part. 3010. 4437.—A party, in a dispute. 2659.  
**PARVIS, n. Fr.** A portico before a church. Du Cange, in v. *Paradise*, l. It appears from R. 7158. Orig. 12530. that books were commonly sold *au parvis* devant *Notre Dame* at Paris. At London, the *Parvis* was frequented by Sergeants at Law. See ver. 312. and *Fortescue de laud. leg. Ang. c. li. Post meridiem curie non tenentur; sed placitantes tunc se divertunt ad Perisum et alibi consulentes cum serventibus ad Legem et aliis consiliariis suis*. There is a difference of opinion where the *Parvis* at London, to which the Lawyers resorted, was situated. Sumner supposes it to have been in Old Palace-yard, before Westminster-hall. Gloss. in x Script. v. *Triurium*. But others, with more probability, think it was what Dugdale calls the *Pervyse* of *Paske*. See the notes upon *Fortescue, loc. cit.* When the Sergeants had dined in any of the Inns of Court, St. Paul's lay much more conveniently for an afternoon consultation than Westminster-hall.  
**PAS, n. Fr.** A foot-pace. See the n. on ver. 827. and T. ii. 67. *His horse*—On which he rode a *pas* *ful softly*.  
**PASS, v. Fr.** To surpass; to excell. 450. L. W. 1125.—To judge; to pass sentence. 3091. T. iii. 1288. L. W. 162.  
**PASSANT, PASSING, part. pr.** Excelling. 2109. 16062.  
**PATREN, inf. m.** To pray; properly, to repeat the *Pater noster*. R. 7195. 6794.  
**PAVADE, n.** 3927. See the note.  
**PAUMES, n. pl. Fr.** The palms of the hands. T. iii. 1190.  
**PAX.** To kiss the *Pax*. P. 155, col. 1, l. 63. For an account of this ceremony, see Du Cange, in v.  
**PAYEN, adj. Fr.** Pagan. 2572.  
**PAYENES, n. pl.** Heathens. 4962.  
**PAVAUNCE, n. C. D.** 1673. "Pausing or stopping. Gloss. Ur." q?  
**PECUNIAL, adj.** Pecuniary; paid in money. 6906.  
**PEE, n. Fr.** Peace. 2319. When used as an interjection, 6420. 6432. It signifies the same as *Hold thy peace*. 2670. Be siler.  
**PEINE, n. Fr.** Penalty. *Up peine of death*. 5304. See Ur.—Grief; torment. 1331. 2385.—Labour. 11042.  
**PEIN, v. Fr.** To torture; to put to pain. 1748. See *peined hire*. 139. 4740. She took great pains.  
**PEISE, v. Fr.** To poize; to weigh. T. iii. 1413.  
**PELL, n. P. iii.** 220. "A house; a cell. *Sp. and Sk. f.* a palace. Gloss. Ur." q?  
**PELLET, n. Fr. Pelotte.** A ball. P. iii. 552.  
**PENANCE, n. Fr.** Repentance. P. 148, col. 1, l. 15.—Pains to be undergone by way of satisfaction for sin. 222. 5411.—Pain; sorrow. 4758. 5294. 11050.  
**PENANT, n. Fr.** A person doing penance. 13940.  
**PENCELL, n. Fr. Penoncel.** A small streamer. T. v. 1043.  
**PENIBLE, adj. Fr.** Industrious; pains-taking. 7428. 8590.  
**PENITENCER, n. Fr.** A priest, who enjoins penance in extraordinary cases. P. 170, col. 1, l. 68.  
**PENMAR, pr. n.** A place in Bretagne. See the n. on ver. 11113.  
**PENNER, n.** 9753. A pen-case. In the inventory of the goods of Henry V. *Rot. Parl.* 2 H. 6. n. 15. m. 13 is the following article: "*Un penner et i ynkhorn d'arg dorrez*." And again, m. 20. "*i pennere et i corne covert du velvet bloy*."  
**PENON, n. Fr.** A streamer, or ensign. 960.  
**PENNA, n. pl. SAX.** Pennies. 12310. 1264.  
**PENNEL, n. R.** 6280. as PENCELL.  
**PENPENED, n.** Pensiveness. B. K. 102.  
**PEPPER, n. LAT.** Pepper. 16230. To bruce *peper*. R. 6028. seems to be an expression for the preparation of a hot, pungent liquor, which should burn the throats of the drinkers. In the Orig. it is—*Dames les brasseron tel poture*. 11514.  
**PEPLE, n. Fr.** People. 2532. 6.  
**PEPLISH, adj.** Vulgar. T. iv. 1677.  
**PERCHE, n. Fr.** A perch for birds. 14890.  
**PERCEL, adv.** B. K. 225. r. *Parcel*. Ed. 1542. By parcels, or parts.  
**PERDE, F. ii.** 332. as PARDE.  
**PERE, v.** To appear. C. L. 55.  
**PERE, n. Fr.** A peer, an equal. 4094. 10090.  
**PERSEAL, adj.** Equal. T. v. 840.  
**PERSEINE, adj. Fr.** Wandering. 10742. See the note.  
**PERLES, adj.** Without an equal. B. K. 347.  
**PERJENE, n.** A young pear. See the n. on ver. 3248.  
**PERNASO, pr. n.** Mount Parnassus. 11033.  
**PERRIE, n. Fr.** Jewels; precious stones. 2938. 5926.  
**PERRAUNT, part. pr. Fr.** Piercing. R. 2809.  
**PERRE, pr. n.** Persia. 14258.  
**PERRE, adj. Fr.** Skie-coloured; of a bluish-grey. 441.  
**PERSELER, n. SAX. LAT.** Paraly. 4348.  
**PERSONE, n. HARB. LAT.** A man; generally, a man of dignity. 10339.—A parson, or rector of a church. 7500.—See his CHARACTER, 479—530. PERSONER. T. L. ii. 326.  
**PENTELOTE, pr. n.** of a hen. 14678.  
**PERTURBE, v. Fr.** To trouble. 908.  
**PERTURBING, n.** Disturbance. 7836.  
**PERVINK, n. SAX. LAT.** The herb *periwinkle*. R. 903.  
**PERV, n. Fr.** A pear-tree. 10091.  
**PES, n. Fr.** R. 4703. as PEE.  
**PESEN, n. pl. SAX.** Peas. L. W. 646.  
**PESSIBLE, adj.** Peaceable. R. 7413.  
**PETER ALFONSE, M.** 110, col. 2, l. 60. 111, col. 1, l. 60. PIES ALFONSE. M. 108, col. 2, l. 2. 112, col. 2, l. 42. 116, col. 1, l. 63. See the note on M. 108, col. 2, l. 2.  
**PETRARK, pr. n.** 7907. 14331. See the note on ver. 7927. and 14253. Our author has inserted a translation of the 102d Sonnet of Petrarch into his *Troilus and Criseide*. B. i. ver. 204—227. It is not in the *Flostrato*. There seems to be no sufficient reason for believing that Chaucer had ever seen Petrarch. See the Discourse, &c. §. xx. n. 20.  
**PEYTREL, n. Fr.** The breast-plate of a horse. 16031. P. 156, col. 1, l. 17.  
**PHISKE, n. Fr.** Medicine. 415. 2762. *Doctour of Phisike*. See his CHARACTER. 413—446.  
**PHISOLOGUS, pr. n.** 15277. See the note. There was a larger work, with the same title, in prose, which is frequently quoted by Vincent of Beauvais.

- Python**, *pr. n.* The serpent Python. 17658. 77.  
**Pythonesse**, *n.* BARR. LAT. A witch. 7092. F. iii. 171. See the *n.* on ver. 7092.  
**Pir**, *n.* FR. A mag-pie. 10963.—A prating gossip, or tell-tale. T. iii. 598. F. ii. 195.  
**Pierre**, *n.* FR. Jewels; precious stones. 14311.  
**Piogessnie**. See the *n.* on ver. 3968.  
**Pight**, *pa. t.* of **PIKE**, *v.* SAX. Pitched. 9691.  
**Pike**, *v.* SAX. To pitch. To pick, as a hawk does his feathers. 9885. To steal. L. W. 2486.—To peep. T. iii. 60.  
 — *n.* SAX. A fish so called. 9893.  
**Pikerel**, *n.* SAX. A young pike. 9893.  
**Pilche**, *n.* SAX. A coat, or cloak, of skins. Prov. 4. *Toga pellicea*. Junius in v.  
**Piler**, *n.* FR. A pillar. 1995. Du. 739.  
**Pille**, *v.* FR. *Piller*. To rob; to plunder. 6944. P. 164. col. 1, l. 25.  
**Pilled**, rather **FILED**, *part. pa.* FR. *Peld*. Bald. 629. 3933.  
**Pilours**, *n. pl.* FR. Plunders. 1009. P. 164. col. 1, l. 31.  
**Pilwe**, *n.* SAX. A pillow. T. v. 224.  
**Pluwe ske**, *n.* SAX. The covering of a pillow. 698.  
**Piment**, *n.* BARR. LAT. Spiced wine. R. 6027.—Wine mixed with honey. Bo. ii. m. 5. See **CLARE**.  
**Pinche**, *v.* FR. To squeeze. *Ther coude no wight pinche at his writing*. 328. No one could lay hold of any flaw in his writings.  
**Pink**, *n.* SAX. Pain; grief. 1326. 6369.  
 — *v.* SAX. To torment. R. 3511.  
**Pined**, *part. pa.* Tortured. 15063.  
**Pipe**, *v.* SAX. To play on a pipe. 3874. *To pipe in an try lefe*. 1840. T. l. iii. 348. Is put for any *useless employment*; as it is now said of a disappointed man, *He may go whistle*. See **BUCKEN HORN**.  
**Pistell**, *n.* SAX. LAT. An epistle. 9030.—A short lesson. 6893.  
**Pitance**, *n.* FR. A mess of victuals. 224. It properly means an extraordinary allowance of victuals, given to Monastics, in addition to their usual commons. See **Du Cange**, in v. **PICANTIA**.  
**Pith**, *n.* SAX. Marrow; strength. 6057.  
**Pitous**, *adj.* FR. Merciful. 10334.—Compassionate. 8990.—Exciting compassion. 8962.  
**Pitously**, *adv.* Pitifully. 5333. 8958.  
**Plague**, *n.* LAT. The plague. P. 159. col. 2, l. 49.  
**Places**, *n. pl.* LAT. The divisions of the globe. *The places of the North*. 4963. The Northern regions.  
**Plain**, *n.* FR. A plain. 4444. 11510.  
 — *adj.* Simple; clear. 11032. It is often used as an *adverb*. 792. 5306. See **PLAT**.  
 — *v.* To make plain. T. v. 1229.  
**Plaine**, *v.* FR. To complain. 5969. 11629.  
**Plainliche**, *adv.* Plainly. T. ii. 372.  
**Plat**, **PLATTE**, *adj.* FR. Flat; plain. 1847. 12582.—The flat of a sword. 10476. T. iv. 937.—It is often used as an *adverb*. 12582. *All plat*, i. e. Flatly. *Ful plat and eke ful plain*. 14675.  
**Plate**, *n.* A flat piece of metal. *A breast-plate*. 2122. Armour for the breast. *A pair of plates*. 2123. Armour for the breast and back.  
**Play**, *n.* SAX. Sport; pleasure. 8906. 3047.  
 — *v.* To sport; to take pleasure. 12892. 12902. To act upon a stage. 3384. To play upon musical instruments. 3306. 3333. *To play a pilgrimage*. 13163. & To withdraw upon pretence of going on a pilgrimage.  
**Plr**, *n.* FR. An argument, or pleading. A. F. 485.  
**Plkin**, *adj.* FR. Full; perfect. 339. 8802.  
**Plenne**, *adj.* FR. Complete. L. W. 1605.  
**Plenace**, *n.* FR. Pleasure. 9308. 9524.  
**Plkingses**, *n. pl.* Pleasures. 5131.  
**Plkte**, *v.* FR. To plead. T. ii. 1468.  
**Plkting**, *n.* Pleading. P. 149. col. 2, l. 48.  
**Pluk**, *v.* FR. To bend, or mould. 9045. 9304.  
**Plught**, *n.* Condition. P. 164. col. 1, l. 7.  
 — *pa. t.* and *part.* of **PLUCK**, *v.* SAX. Pulled; plucked. 4455. 6372. 14055. R. 1745.  
**Plughte**, *v.* SAX. To engage; to promise. 6591. 13128.  
 — *pa. t.* 6533. **PLUGHTEN**, *p. t.* 11640.  
**Plitz**, *v.* To plait, or fold. T. ii. 697. 1204. See **PLIZ**.  
**Plitz**, *n.* Condition; form. 16420. See **PIZON**.  
**Plumov**, *adj.* FR. Wet; rainy. Bo. iii. m. 1.  
**Poulsen**, *adj.* FR. Of Apulia, antiently called *Postum*. See the *n.* on ver. 10509. *William's dogier Convergence in Povles to wyge he nome*. R. G. 412.  
**Point**, *n.* FR. The principal business. 2967.—A stop, or full point. 16946.—In good point. 900. In good case, or condition. *At point devise*. 3999. 10874. R. 1215. With the greatest exactness. *At point to breast*. T. iv. 1638. *In point for to breast*. R. 3186. Ready to burst.  
**Pointel**, *n.* FR. A style, or pencil, for writing. 7394. Bo. l. pr. 1.  
**Ponten**, *inf. m. v.* FR. To prick with any thing pointed. R. 1058.  
**Poke**, *n.* FR. A pocket. 3778.—A bag. 4276. See **POCHRE**.  
 — *v.* FR. To thrust. 4167.  
**Polive**, *n.* A pullie. 10498.  
**Pollax**, *n.* SAX. A halberd. 2546. *Bipennis*. Prompt. Parv.  
**Ponel**, *n.* FR. Any ball, or round thing. The top of the head. 2691.  
**Pomeles**, *adj.* FR. Spotted with round spots like apples, dappled. *Pomeles gris*. 16027. Of a dapple-grey colour.  
**Popelet**, *n.* See the *n.* on ver. 3254.  
**Pupet**, *n.* FR. A puppet. 13631.  
**Popingay**, *n.* A parrot. 10196. 13299. *Papagaut*, *Fr.* *Papagay*. BULO. *Papagallo*. ITAL.  
**Popped**, *adj.* FR. Nicely dressed. R. 1019.  
**Popper**, *n.* See the *n.* on ver. 3929.  
**Pore**, *v.* To look earnestly. 5677. 7390.  
 — *adj.* 7518. for **POURE**.  
**Poren**, *pr. t. pl.* 16138.  
**Porisme**, *n.* GR. Bo. iii. pr. 10. Is used in the sense of—A corollary; a theorem deduced from another.  
**Porphure**, *pr. n.* of a species of marble; Porphyrie. 16243.  
**Post**, *n.* FR. Carriage; behaviour. 69. 138.  
**Portecolbe**, *n.* FR. A falling gate, a portcullis. R. 4168.  
**Portos**, *n.* See the *n.* on ver. 13661.  
**Pose**, *n.* A rheum, or defluxion, obstructing the voice. 4150. 17011. *Catarus. Coriso*. Prompt. Parv.  
 — *v.* FR. To suppose. 1164. T. iii. 572. I *pose*, I *had sinned so*. P. P. 95. b.  
**Posse**, *v.* FR. To push. L. W. 2409.  
**Possed**, *part. pa.* R. 4479.  
**Possessors**, *n. pl.* LAT. An invidious name for such religious communities as were endowed with lands. &c. 7314. The Mendicant orders professed to live entirely upon alms.  
**Post**, *n.* SAX. A prop, or support. 214. T. l. 1001.  
**Poste**, *n.* FR. Power. R. 6484. 6533.  
**Potecary**, *n.* FR. An apothecary. 12786.  
**Potent**, *n.* FR. A crutch. R. 368. 7417. A walking stick. 7358.  
**POTENTIAL**, *adj.* FR. Strong; powerful. F. iii. 5.  
**POTESTAT**, *n.* FR. A principal magistrate. 7599.  
**Pouche**, *n.* FR. Pocket; pouch. 3929.  
**Poudre**, *n.* FR. Powder. 16228. P. ii. 28.  
**Poudres**, *pl.* 16275.  
**POUDRE MARCHANT**. 383. See the note.  
**POVERTE**, *n.* FR. Poverty. 6759. 6767. It is to be pronounced *Povérte*; the final *e* being considered as an *e* feminine.  
**Poulsen**, *n.* FR. The pulse. T. iii. 1120.  
**Pouls**, *pr. n.* St. Paul. 7229. *Pouls windoves*. 3318. See the note.  
**Pounsoned**, *part. pa.* FR. Punched with a bodkin. P. 155. col. 2, l. 44.  
**Poupe**, *v.* To make a noise with a horn. 15405. 17036.  
**Pourchace**, *n.* FR. To buy. 610.—To provide. 5293. T. ii. 1125.  
**Pourchas**, *n.* FR. Acquisition; purchase. 258. 7633.  
**Poure**, *v.* R. 1640. T. ii. 1706. as **POUR**.  
 — *adj.* FR. Poor. 6769. 6775.  
**Pourtrait**, *v.* FR. To draw a picture. 96.  
**Pourtraitour**, *n.* A drawer of pictures. 1901.  
**Pourtraiture**, *n.* A picture, or drawing. 1917. 1976.  
**PRACTICE**, *n.* FR. Practice. 5769.  
**Preamble**, *n.* FR. Preface. 6413.  
**PREAMBULATION**, *n.* Preamble. 6419.

**PRECIOUS**, *adj.* Fr. Over-nice. 5730. 9036.  
**PREDISTINE**, *n.* Fr. Predetermination. T. iv. 968.  
**PREDICATION**, *n.* Fr. Preaching; a sermon. 12279.  
**PREES**, *n.* Fr. A press, or crowd. 5066. 6104.  
**PREVE**, *PREVE*, *n.* Fr. Proof; trial. 8663. *At prove*. T. iii. 1004. Upon trial. *With evil prefe*. 5829. Evil may it prove! See **WITH**.  
**PREFECT**, *n.* Fr. LAT. A governor, or principal magistrate. 15830.  
**PREISE**, *n.* Fr. Commendation. 8902.  
 — *v.* Fr. To commend. 8896. 9420.—To value. 9728.  
**PRENTIS**, *n.* Fr. An apprentice. 4383. 5883.  
**PRENTISHODE**, *n.* Apprenticeship. 4368.  
**PREPARAT**, *part. pa.* LAT. Prepared. 16378.  
**PREB**, *adv.* Fr. Near. So I suspect this word is to be understood in ver. 14143. *Q' prës*. i. e. at hand; close. *De prës*. Fr. Or perhaps *Q' prës* may be put for *In a press*. See **PREES**.  
**PRESE**, *v.* Fr. To press, or crowd. 2582. R. 4198.  
**PRESENT**, *v.* Fr. To offer; to make a present of. 12120. *And with the wine she gan him to present*. L. W. 1093. *And smote his hed of, his fader to present*. F. L. 18.  
**PRESENTARIE**, *adj.* LAT. Present. Bo. v. pr. 6.  
**PREST**, *adj.* Fr. Ready. T. ii. 785. iii. 919.  
**PRETEND**, *v.* Fr. To lay claim to. T. iv. 922.  
**PRETRAIT**, *adj.* Fr. Passed. R. 5011.  
**PREVE**, *v.* Fr. To try. 8573. 9028.—To demonstrate by trial. 10112.  
 — *v. neut.* To turn out upon trial. 8876.  
**PRIXE**, *n.* SAX. A point. Bo. ii. pr. 7. F. ii. 369.—A pointed weapon. 2606.  
 — **PRIXE**, *v.* SAX. To wound. 8914.—To spur a horse; to ride hard. 16029. R. 2314.  
**PRICKASOUR**, *n.* A hard rider. 189.  
**PRICKING**, *n.* Hard riding. 191.  
**PRIDELES**, *adj.* SAX. Without pride. 8806.  
**PRIE**, *v.* To look curiously. 3458. 7320.  
**PRIKKE**, *n.* 5449. See **PRICE**.  
**PRIME**, *adj.* Fr. LAT. First. *At prime temps*. R. 3373. At the first time. *At prime face*. T. iii. 921. At first appearance.  
 — *n.* The first quarter of the artificial day. T. ii. 1095. *Half way prime*. 3904. Prime half spent. See the *n.* on ver. 3904. *Prime large*. 10674. Prime far advanced. In ver. 10387. It seems to be used metaphorically for the season of action or business.  
**PRIMEROLE**, *n.* Fr. A primrose. 3268. *Conf. Am.* 148. b.  
**PRIMETEMPS**, *n.* Fr. Spring. R. 4747.  
**PRIS**, *n.* Fr. Price. 817.—Praise. 67. 237. T. ii. 181. 376. Or it be pry, or it be blame. *Conf. Am.* 165.  
**PRIVE**, *adj.* Fr. Private. *Privé and apert*. 6896. Private and publick. *Privé man*. 8395. A man entrusted with private business.  
**PRIVELY**, *adv.* Privately. 1445.  
**PRIVYTES**, *n.* Private business. 3484. 3603.  
**PROGRESSE**, *n.* LAT. Progress. 2963.  
**PROFESSIOUN**, *n.* Fr. The monastic profession. 13062. R. 4910.  
**PROHENS**, *n.* Fr. Gr. A preface. 7919.  
**PROINS**, *v.* Fr. *Provigner*. It seems to have signified, originally, to take cuttings from vines, in order to plant them out. From hence it has been used for the cutting away of the superfluous shoots of all trees; which we now call *pruning*; and for that operation, which birds, and particularly hawks, perform upon themselves, of picking out their superfluous or damaged feathers. In allusion to this last sense, Damian is said to *proins* and *pke* himself. 9885. Gower, speaking of an eagle, says,  
 For there he *pruneth* him and *piketh*,  
 As doth an hawke, whan him wel liketh.  
*Conf. Am.* 130.  
**PROLLE**, *v.* To go about in search of a thing. 16696.  
**PROVABLE**, *adj.* Fr. Capable of being demonstrated. R. 5414.  
**PROVENS**, *n.* Fr. *Præbenda*. LAT. A prebend; a daily or annual allowance, or stipend. R. 6931. See **Du Cange**, in *v.* **PRÆBENDA**.  
**PROVENDRE**, *n.* A prebendary. T. L. ii. 326.  
**PROVERBE**, *n.* Fr. LAT. A prudential maxim. 6933. 9441.

**PROVERBE**, *v.* To speak proverbially. T. iii. 994.  
**PROVOSTRY**, *n.* Fr. The office of Provost, or Prefect. *Præfectura*. Bo. iii. pr. 4.  
**PROW**, *n.* Fr. Profit; advantage. 12234. 13338.  
**PROWESSE**, *n.* Fr. Integrity. Bo. iv. pr. 3.  
**PRUCE**, *pr. n.* Prussia. 53.  
 — *adj.* Prussian. 2124.  
**PRUNED**, *pa. t.* C. D. 1874. as **PROINED**.  
**PTOLOMER**, *pr. n.* 5764. 5906. See the note on ver. 5764. and 17276. and *Rom. dela R.* 7399. 19449.  
**PUELLA** and **RUBEUS**. 2047. "The names of two figures in Geomancie, representing two constellations in heaven: *Puella* signifieth Mars retrograde, and *Rubeus* Mars direct." *Sp.*  
**PULCHRITUDE**, *n.* LAT. Beauty. C. L. 613.  
**PULLAILE**, *n.* Fr. Poultry. R. 7094.  
**PULLED HEN**. 177. See the note. I have been told since that a hen whose feathers are pulled, or plucked off, will not lay any eggs. If that be true, there is more force in the epithet than I apprehended.  
**PUNICE**, *v.* Fr. To punish. R. 7187. T. v. 1706.  
**PURE**, *adj.* Fr. Mere; very. See the *n.* on ver. 1281. and add these instances. *Pure fere*. Du. 1251. *Pure kind*. F. ii. 316.  
**PURED**, *part. pa.* Purified. 5725. 11864.  
**PURFILED**, *part. pa.* See the *n.* on ver. 193.  
**PURPOS**, *n.* Fr. Purpose; design. 6293.—Proposition in discourse. T. ii. 897.  
**PURPRISE**, *n.* Fr. An inclosure. R. 3687.  
**PURVEYANCE**, *n.* Fr. Foresight; Providence. 1254. 3013. —Provision. 3566.  
**PURVEYE**, *v.* To foresee. T. iv. 1066.—To provide. 6173.  
**PUTRIE**, *n.* Fr. Whoredom. P. 167, col. 1. l. 38.  
**PUTOURS**, *n. pl.* Whoremongers. P. 167, col. 1. l. 37.  
**PYTHAGORAS**, *pr. n.* Du. 1167. See the passage quoted in *v.* **AURORA**.

## Q.

**QUAD**, **QUADE**, *adj.* TRUT. Bad. See the *n.* on ver. 4345. and ver. 13368. *None quad*; Nothing evil. *Conf. Am.* 103.  
**QUAILE-PIPE**, *n.* A pipe used to call quails. R. 7213.  
**QUAIRE**, *n.* Fr. A quire of paper; a book. B. K. 675.  
**QUAKKE**, *n.* 4150. seems to be put for an inarticulate noise, occasioned by any obstruction in the throat.  
**QUALME**, *n.* SAX. Sickness. 2016.—The noise made by a raven. T. v. 382.  
**QUAPPE**, *v.* To tremble; to quake. T. iii. 87. L. W. 865.  
**QUARELS**, *n. pl.* Fr. Square arrows. R. 1623.  
**QUEINT**, *n.* See *Junii Etymolog.* in *v.*  
**QUEINTE**, *adj.* Fr. Strange. 2335. 10553. *I made of that left full quint*. R. 3079. See ver. 11330. He made it strange.—Cunning; artful. 3605. 4049.—Trim; neat. R. 2251.  
 — *pa. t.* & *part.* of **QUENCH**, *v.* SAX. Quenched. 2336. 2338. 9.  
**QUENTINE**, *n.* Trimness; neatness. R. 2250.—Excessive trimness. P. 169, col. 2. l. 16.—Cunning. P. 163, col. 1. l. 42.  
**QUELLE**, *v.* SAX. To kill; to destroy. 15396. 16173.  
**QUEME**, *v.* SAX. To please. R. 7222. T. v. 693. *W'el we quemeth*. *Conf. Am.* 68.  
**QUENE**, *n.* SAX. A queen. 4581.—A harlot. R. 7062.  
**QUERNE**, *n.* SAX. A hand-mill. 14080. F. iii. 706.  
**QUERROUR**, *n.* Fr. One that works in a stone-quarry. R. 4149.  
**QUEST**, *n.* Fr. A prayer or demand. F. iii. 648.  
**QUEST MONERS**, *n. pl.* Packers of inquests, or juries. P. 164, col. 2. l. 67.  
**QUETHS**, *v.* SAX. To say; to declare. *I queth him quille*. R. 6998. Is a translation of an old technical term in the law; *Clamo illi quietum*. The original Fr. has only *Je quille*.  
**QUKE**, *adj.* SAX. Alive. 1017. R. 5086.  
**QUIKKEST**, *superl. d.* Speediest. *The quikkest strela*. 11806. The most expeditious way.  
**QUIKEN**, *v.* SAX. To make alive. 15949.  
**QUIKEN**, *part. pa.* Made alive. 11362.  
 — *pa. t.* of the same *v.* used in a *neutrl* sense. 2337. Became alive.  
**QUINIEL**, *n.* 3332. Is the instrument, I suppose, which is

called in *BARR. LAT.* *Quinterna* and *Quintaria*. See *Du Cange*, and *Carpentier*, in v. *Quinternizare*; and *Mehus, Vita d'Ambr. Camald.* p. 323. *Lyrd Umbudt*, *quintaris, ribebd, ewend, liblique*.  
*QUISHIN*, n. Fr. A cushion. T. iii. 965.  
*QUISTRON*, n. R. 885. A beggar. *Gl. Ur.* I rather believe it signifies a Scullion; *un garçon de cuisine*.  
*QUITE*, adj. Fr. Free; quiet. 15916.  
 — n. Fr. To requite; to pay for. 773. 3121.—To acquit. R. 3089.  
*QUITTE*, part. ps. *Requited*. R. 3146.  
*QUITTEL*, adv. Freely; at liberty. 1794.  
*QUOD*, ps. l. of *QUITTE*. Said. 790. 839.  
*QUOKE*, ps. l. of *QUAKE*, v. Sax. Trembled; shook. 1578. 14210.

## R.

*RA*, n. Sax. A roe deer. 4084.  
*RACINE*, n. Fr. A root. R. 4881.  
*RAD*, *RADDE*, ps. l. of *REDE*, v. Sax. Advised. A. F. 579.—Explained. Du. 281.  
*RADYVORE*, L. W. 2341. Tapestry. "*Ras* in Fr. signifies any stuff, as *Ras de Chalons*, *Ras de Gennev*, *Ras de Vere*, or *Vaur*, may be a stuff made at such a place." *Gloss. Ur.* There is a town in Languedoc, called *La Vaur*; but I know not that it was ever famous for tapestry.  
*RAVLE*, n. pl. Fr. Plays with dice. P. 164, col. 2, l. 51.  
*RAVTE*, ps. l. of *REVE*, v. Sax. Took away. 14104, 7.  
*RAGE*, v. Fr. To toy wantonly. 259. 3873.  
*RAGHER*, n. Wantonness. 6037. 9731.  
*RAGOUNCH*, R. 1117. should probably be *JACOUNCH*, as in the Orig. Fr. The precious stones, called *Jacinths*, or *Hyalinths*.  
*RAIMS*, pr. n. The city of Rennes in Bretagne. Du. 255.  
*RAKE-STELLE*, n. Sax. The handle of a rake. 6531.  
*RAKEL*, adj. Hasty, rash. 17227. T. l. 1098.  
*RAKELNESS*, n. Rashness. 17232.  
*RAKET*. To play *raket*; *nettle in, dock out*; seems to be used as a proverbial expression, signifying, to be inconsistent. T. iv. 461. T. L. l. 319. b. What the original of the phrase may have been is not so clear.  
*RAMAGE*, adj. Fr. Wild. R. 5384.  
*RAMNEN*, adj. Sax. Rank, like a ram. 16353.  
*RAMP*, v. Fr. To climb. *She rampeth in my face*. 13010. *She rises against me; flies in my face*.  
*RAM*, ps. l. of *RAMME*, 4103. 6533. *RANNEN*, pl. 2927.  
*RAM*, adv. Quickly; speedily. R. 6516.  
 — n. Haste. Ch. *words to his Scrivener*. 7.  
 — v. Sax. To take captive. To *rape* and *renne*. 10890.  
 To seize and plunder. See *RENNE*.  
*RASIE*, pr. n. 434. An Arabian Physician of the xth Century. See *Fabric. Bibl. Gr. t. xiii.* p. 46. in v. *ALBUBACAR*.  
*RASKAILE*, n. A pack of rascals. T. v. 1852.  
*RATED*, part. ps. Chidden. 3463.  
*RATHE*, adv. Sax. Soon; early. 13029.—Speedily. T. ii. 1008.  
*RATHER*, comp. d. Sooner. 10176.  
*RATHEST*, superl. d. Soonest. B. K. 428.  
*RATHER*, adj. Sax. comp. d. Former. T. iii. 1342.  
*RATOUNS*, n. pl. Fr. Rats. 17788.  
*RAUGHT*, ps. l. of *RECAN*, v. Sax. Reached. 136. 2917. *On his way he raught*. T. ii. 447. He sprang forth on his way.  
 — ps. l. of *RECOAN*, v. Sax. Cared; recked. 3770. 15346.  
*RAVENERS* (*Ravinours*), n. pl. Plunderers. Bo. i. pr. 3.  
*RAVINE*, n. Fr. Rapine. *Foules of ravine*. A. F. 323. Birds of prey.  
*RAYTRABLE*, adj. Fr. Ravenous. R. 7066.  
*RAYISHING*, part. pr. Fr. Rapid. *With a rayishing swoigh*. Bo. i. m. 5. *Rapido turbine*. Orig. See *SWOIGH*.  
*RAUNNON*, n. Fr. Ransom. 1178.  
*RAYED*, part. ps. Fr. Streaked, or striped. Du. 252.  
*REAL*, adj. Fr. Royal. 1499. 15190.  
*REALIER*, comp. d. More royal. 4622.  
*REALICH*, adv. Royally. 390.  
*REALTER*, n. Royalty. 4638.  
*REKKEKE*, pr. n. Rebecca. 9578.  
 — n. Fr. A musical instrument. See the n. on ver. 6259.  
*REKHABED*, ps. l. Fr. A term in hunting. Du. 379.

*RECCHE*, *REKKE*, v. Sax. To care. 2947. 4514.  
*RECCHELES*, adj. Careless. 5364.  
*RECCHELESNESS*, n. Carelessness. P. 162, col. 2, l. 38.  
*RECLAME*, v. Fr. A term in Falconry, for bringing the hawk to the fist, by a certain call. 17021.  
*RECLAIMING*, n. Calling; in the sense of *RECLAIM*. L. W. 1389.  
*RECOMFORT*, v. Fr. To comfort. 2834. M. 117, col. 2, l. 34.  
*RECORD*, n. Fr. Witness; testimony. Du. 934.  
*RECORD*, v. Fr. To remember. Bo. iii. m. 11.—In ver. 1747. it seems to be used in a technical legal sense, for what is called to *enter upon record* in judicial proceedings.  
*RECREANDISE*, n. Fr. signifies fear; cowardice; desertion of principle. R. 2107. 4038.  
*RECREANT*, adj. One who yields himself to his adversary in single combat. P. 162, col. 2, l. 4. R. 4098. For the full import of these two words, see *Du Cange*, in v. *RECREMENTIA*.  
*RECUR*, n. Fr. Recovery. B. K. 692.  
*RECUR*, part. ps. Fr. Recovered. R. 4920. B. K. 692.  
*REDD*, *RED*, ps. l. of *REDE*, v. Sax. 6298. 6303. T. v. 737.  
*REDDOUR*, n. Fr. Strength; violence. *Forl.* 12.  
*REDE*, n. Sax. Advice; counsel. 14467. 3527.—A read. T. ii. 1367.  
 — n. Sax. To advise. 3073. 16478.—To read. 6252. 6267.—To explain. Du. 279.  
 — adj. Sax. Red. 1971. 14694.  
*REDOUT*, v. Fr. To fear. R. 2023.  
*REDOUTING*, n. Reverence. 2062.  
*REDESS*, v. Fr. To recover. T. ii. 999.—To make amends for. 11748.  
*REFECT*, part. ps. LAT. Recovered. Bo. iv. pr. 6.  
*REFIGURING*, part. pr. Fr. Figuring again. T. v. 472.  
*REFRAIN*, n. Fr. The burden of a song. T. ii. 1571.  
*REFRAINING*, n. The singing of the burden of a song. R. 749.  
*REFREIDE*, v. Fr. To cool. T. ii. 1343.  
*REFRETE*, n. The same as *REFRAIN*. T. L. iii. 341. b. In *Br.* 468. It is printed corruptly *Frefreit*.  
*REFTE*, *RIFTE*, n. Sax. A chink, or crevice. R. 2661.  
*REFUTE*, n. Fr. Refuge. 5272. 15543.  
*REGALS*, n. pl. Fr. Royalties. L. W. 2126.  
*REGARD*, n. Fr. *At regard of*. P. 164, col. 2, l. 34. 171, col. 2, l. 49. With respect to; in comparison of.  
*REKNE*, n. Fr. A kingdom. 808. 14190.  
*REKETE*, v. Fr. *Rekailer*. To revive; to cheer. R. 6309.  
*RENETING*, n. T. iii. 350. according to several MSS. "*And all the reheting of his sikes sore*." "Some MSS. and most of the printed Editions read *richesse* instead of *reheting*." *Gloss. Ur.* *Richesse*, though almost as awkward an expression as the other, is more agreeable to the corresponding passage in the *Filastroto*.  
 "*E sospir che gli avea a gran dovizia*"—and one can hardly conceive that it could come from any hand but that of the author. I can make no sense of *reheting*; but at the same time I must allow that it is not likely to have been inserted by way of a gloss.  
*REILS*, v. neut. To roll. *Rilleth diversly*. Bo. i. m. 7. *Vagatur*. Orig.  
*REINES*, pr. n. R. 3826. See *RAINES*.  
*REJOIE*, v. Fr. To rejoice. T. v. 395.  
*REKE*, v. Sax. To exhale. L. W. 2601.  
*REKEN*, v. Sax. To reckon. 3198.—To come to a reckoning. 4530.  
*REKER*, n. pl. Sax. Ricks (of corn). T. L. Prol.  
*RELAIKS*, n. pl. Fr. Fresh sets of hounds. Du. 362.  
*RELIES*, n. Fr. Release. B. K. 333. See the n. on ver. 13514.  
*RELEFE*, n. Sax. What is left. T. L. Prol.  
*RELIGIUNTE*, n. Fr. Persons of a religious profession; the Clergy. C. L. 686.  
*RELICK*, n. Fr. A relic. 12883. *RELIES*, pl. 703.  
*REMNANT*, n. Fr. A remnant; a remaining part. 1571. 3166.  
*REMES*, n. pl. Fr. Realms. 15142.  
*REMSAILE*, n. pl. Fr. Orts; leavings. T. L. Prol.  
*REMOVED*, v. Fr. To cause remorse. T. iv. 491. To afflict. Bo. iv. pr. 6.

**REMUABLE**, *adj.* Fr. Moveable; inconstant. T. iv. 1682.  
**REMOVED**, *adv.* Fr. Reasonably. 7091.  
**RENEGATE**, *n.* Fr. An apostate from Christianity. 8353.  
**RENEGE**, *v.* Fr. To renounce; to abjure. 4760. 4796.  
**RENORS**, *n. pl.* Fr. Ranks. 2396.—The steps of a ladder. 3625. See the note.  
**RENNE**, *v.* SAX. To run. 3888. 4063.—To rend. q? 16890.  
**RENOUEE**, *n.* Fr. Renown. 6741. L. W. 1511.  
**RENOUELAUNCE**, *n.* Fr. A renewing. F. ii. 185.  
**RENOUELE**, *v.* Fr. To renew. M. 120, col. 1, l. 4. P. 170, col. 2, l. 70.  
**RENT**, *v.* SAX. To tear, or rend. R. 324.  
**REPAIRS**, *n.* Fr. Resort. 6905.  
 — *v.* Fr. To return. 10903.  
**REPENTANT**, *part. pr.* Fr. Repenting. 228. 10089.  
**REPREVE**, *REPREVE*, *n.* Fr. Reproof. 10080. 10137.  
**REPRESSION**, *n.* T. iii. 1040. seems to be put for *power of repressing*.  
**REQUIRE**, *v.* Fr. To require. 6592.  
**RISE**, *v.* SAX. To raise. C. D. 468.  
**RESCUE**, *n.* Fr. Rescue. 2645.  
**RESCUE**, *v.* Fr. To rescue. T. v. 231.  
**RESON**, *n.* Fr. Reason. 9532. Proportion. Bo. ii. pr. 7.  
**RESONS**, *n. pl.* Fr. Discourses. T. iii. 90.  
**RESPECT**, *n.* T. v. 137. may, perhaps, be put for *Respect*.  
**RESPECT**, *inf.* *m.* Fr. To grant a respite. 11886.—To excuse. R. 6084.  
**RESPOND**, *n.* T. iv. 850. is probably put for *Respect*.  
**REPOSE**, *n.* SAX. Repose. 9729.  
 — *v.* SAX. To repose; to cease from labour. 2623.  
**RETENUS**, *n.* Fr. Retinue. 8146. *At his retinue.* 6937. Retained by him.  
**RETHOR**, *n.* Fr. LAT. An orator, or rhetorician. 10352.  
**REVE**, *n.* SAX. A steward, or bailiff. See his **CHARACTER**, ver. 580—624.  
 — *v.* SAX. To take away. 4008. P. 156, col. 1, l. 4.  
**REVEL**, *n.* Fr. Entertainment, properly *during the night*. 2719. Sport; festivity. 4400. L. W. 2242.  
**REVELLOU**, *n.* A reveller. 4399.  
**REVELLE**, *n.* Pleasure. R. 730.  
**REVERE**, *adj.* Fr. Contrary. 7638. 14983.  
**REVERSE**, *v.* Fr. To overturn. R. 5468.  
**REVERT**, *v.* Fr. To turn back. R. 7384.  
**REVERT**, *v.* Fr. To cloath again. T. iii. 354.  
**REW**, *n.* A row, or line. *On a row.* 2668. In a line. *All by row.* 6088. See **A' row**.  
**REWAKE**, *v.* SAX. To waken again. T. iii. 1194.  
**REWARD**, *n.* Fr. Regard; respect. *Take reward of thine own value.* P. 149, col. 2, l. 16. Have regard to t. o. v. *In reward of.* R. 3254. In comparison with. See **REWARD**.  
**REWE**, *v.* SAX. To have compassion. 1865.—To suffer; to have cause to repent. 3530.  
**REWEL BONE**. 13907. See the note.  
**REYES**, *n. pl.* F. iii. 146. Danors, in use among the Dutch. *Reye*. BELG. *Chorea celerior, chorea in longam seriem.* Killian.  
**REYED**. See the n. on ver. 54. "*Les Gandois firent une reye sur les marches de Haynavit, et dedans le pays pilerent, bruslerent, et firent moult de maux.*" Mem. de la Marche, p. 284. Where a note in the margin says, "*Reyes* en bas Alemand signifie un voyage on course."  
**RIBANINGS**, *n. pl.* R. 1077. seems to signifie *Borders*.  
**RIBAUDE**, *n.* A poor labourer. R. 5673. But the word generally implies profligacy of manners as well as meanness of condition. See Du Cange, in v. **RIBAUDE**.  
**RIBAUDRIE**, *n.* Ribaldry; indecent words, or actions. 3864. 12258.  
**RIBINE**, *n.* See the n. on ver. 6259.  
**RIBBLE**, *n.* A small ribble. 3331. 4394.  
**RICHARD**, *pr.* n. 15354. In the Essay, &c. n. 50. I have vindicated the character of this heroic prince from an aspersion, which was first cast upon him, I find, by Mr. Rymer, in consequence of a mistaken construction of a passage in Hoveden. I am tempted to add here the be-

ginning of a poem, which having been composed after his death by *Anselm Paydit*, must stand clear of all suspicion of having been either *devised* or *bought*.

For chausse es et tot lo maior dan,  
 El maior dol, las! q en sanc male agues,  
 Et so, don del tos temps plaigner ploran,  
 M aven a dir en chanter et retraire,  
 De cel q era de valorz cape et paire,  
 Li reis valens Rizard, reis des Engles,  
 Es mors; si deus! cals perda et cals dans es!  
 Can estraign mox et qan greu per audir!  
 Ben a dur cor tos hom co po sofrir.  
 Mors es li reis, et son passat mli an  
 Qanc tan pros hom no fo ne noi vit res,  
 Ne is mais hom non er del sen senblant,  
 Tan larcs, tan pros, tan ardis, tals donaire;  
 Q Alixandres lo reis, qe venqi Daire,  
 No cuit qe tan dones ni tan messes,  
 Ni an Charles ni Artus tan valgues,  
 Q a tot lo mon sen ses, q i n vol ver dir,  
 Als us doplar et als altres grazil.

MS. Crofta. fol. cxi.

**RICHESSE**, *n.* Fr. Wealth. 6022. **RICHESSES**, *pl.* Riches. M. 113, col. 2, l. 28. 114, col. 1, l. 38.  
**RIDDELED**, *part. pa.* R. 1235. 43. Plaited. Gl. Ur. In the first of the places quoted, the French Orig. has—*Et fut si bien cueillie et jointe*,—which Chaucer has translated—*—Lorde! it was riddede felaily*.  
**RIDDEN**, *part. pa.* of **RIDE**. *He is ridden.* 1505. *They ben ridden.* 1689. *He had ridden.* 15729.  
**RIDE**, *v.* SAX. *He rideth him.* 1093.  
**RIDING**, *n.* See the n. on ver. 4375.  
**RIVE**, *RIVA*, *v.* SAX. To thrust through. 9112. 13769.  
**RIGHT**, *n.* SAX. A right, or due. *At alle rightes.* 1384. 2102. At all points.  
 — *adj.* Good; true. 169.  
 — *adv.* Truly; rightly; exactly; completely. It is frequently joined to adjectives, as the adverbs *well* and *full* are, to augment their force. 290. 617.  
**RIMS**, *n.* Fr. A composition in rime. 13630. Hence the title of **THE RIMS OF STAN THOMAS**. For the original of compositions in rime, see the Essay, &c. n. 43—*Rime dogeret.* 13651. See **DOGERET**.  
**RIMVED**, *part. pa.* Fr. Composed in rime, or verse. 11623. See the n. on ver. 11091.  
**RIMPLED**, *part. pa.* SAX. Wrinkled. R. 4495.  
**RING**, *n.* SAX. To make to sound. 2433. 12265.  
 — *v. neut.* To sound. 2602.  
**RISE**, *n.* SAX. Small twigs of trees or bushes. 3324. R. 1015.  
**RISE**, *n.* SAX. A rash. R. 1701. T. iii. 1167.  
**RIST** for **RISETH**. 3698. T. ii. 812.  
**RIT** for **RISETH**. 976. 17028.  
**RIVAGE**. F. l. 223. See **ARIVAGE**.  
**RIVE**, *v. neut.* SAX. To split; to fall asunder. R. 5393. 5718.  
**RIVELING**, *part. pr.* SAX. Wrinkling. R. 7314. *Rugfulen.* BELG. *Rugare.* Killian.  
**RIVER**, *n.* Fr. See the n. on ver. 6468.  
**ROCKE**, *n.* Fr. A rock. F. iii. 98. **ROCHES**, *pl.* F. ii. 527.  
**RODE**, *n.* SAX. The Cross. *Rode-beem.* 6078. It is also called the *Rode-tree*; from its being made of wood.  
 — *n.* SAX. Complexion. 3317.  
**RODY**, *adj.* SAX. Ruddy. 10690.  
**ROFE**, *pa. t.* of **RIFE**. L. W. 661. 1349. **ROFTE**. F. l. 373. should probably be **ROVE**.  
**ROGGE**, *v.* SAX. To shake. L. W. 7697. **ROGOVN** on **MEYVN**. *Agito.* Prompt. Parv.  
**ROIGNE**, *n.* Fr. A scab, mange, &c. R. 553.  
**ROGNOUS**, *adj.* Fr. Scabby; rough. It. 6190. 988.  
**ROKETTE**, *n.* Fr. A loose upper garment. R. 1940. 2. 4784.  
**ROKING**, *part. pr.* of **ROKKE**, or **ROGGE**, *v. neut.* SAX. Shaking; trembling. R. 1906. **ROGOVN** or **WAVEYVN**. *Vacillo.* Prompt. Parv.  
**ROMAUNCE BRALES**. See the n. on ver. 13777.  
**ROMBEL**, *n.* A rumbling noise. 1961.—*Rumour.* 8673.  
**ROME**, *v.* SAX. To walk about. 7994. 11185.  
**RONDEL**, *n.* Fr. "*A rime or sonnet which ends as it begins.* Colgrave." L. W. 423.  
**ROWE**, *pr.* n. Ronen in Normandy. R. 1674.  
 — *pa. t.* of **RAW**, *v.* SAX. Rained. T. iii. 678.  
**ROVEN**, *part. pa.* of **REVN**, *v.* SAX. Reaped. L. W. 74.



**ROSALGAR.** 16282. Red arsenic; a preparation of orpiment. Chambers, in *v. Realgar*. It should rather perhaps have been written *Rysalgar*, with MS. C. I. as the Latin name is *Risigallum*.

**ROSEN, adj.** Rosy. B.K. 657.

**ROSEN, n. FR.** A rose-bush. P. 166, col. 2, l. 10.

**ROSS-RED, adj.** 15722. Red as a rose.

**ROTE, n. SAX.** A root. 2. T. II. 348.

— A root, in astrology. 4734. See *EXPANS YERRE*.

— n. A musical instrument. 236. See *Du Cange*, in *v. ROTA*. Notker, who lived in the 11th century, says, that it was the ancient *Psalterium*, but altered in its shape and with an additional number of strings. Schüller, in *v. ROTA*.

— n. FR. Practice. *By rote*. 13422, 75. *By heart*. *Par routine*. Cotg.

— v. SAX. To rot. 4405.

**ROTEK, part pa.** 3671.

**ROTHA, n. SAX.** The rudder of a ship. C. D. 1377.

**ROUGHT for RAUGHT, pa. L of RACHEN.** 8561. T. I. 497.

**ROUKE, v. SAX.** To lie close. 1310. T. v. 409. *But now they RUCKEN in her nest*. Conf. Am. 72.

**ROULE, v. neut. SAX.** To roll; to run easily. 6235. Where some copies have *royle*. See *REILS*.

**ROUME, n. SAX.** Room; space. L. W. 1997.

— adj. Wide; spacious. 4124.

**ROUMER, comp. d.** Wider. 4143.

**ROUNCEVALL, pr. n.** See the n. on ver. 672.

**ROUNCIE, n. BARR. LAT.** A common hackney horse. 392. See *Du Cange*, in *v. RUNCINUS*.

**ROUNDEL, n. FR.** A sort of song. 1531. See *RONDEL*.—A circular figure. F. II. 283, 290.

**ROUTE, n. FR.** A company. 624, 9424.

— v. To assemble in a company. 4950.

— v. FR. To snore. 3647, 4165.—To roar. F. II. 530.

**ROUTER, n. SAX.** Compassion. 11824.—The object of compassion. 11833.

**ROUTHELK, adj.** Without compassion. T. II. 346.

**ROW, n.** A line of writing. F. I. 448. See *RAW*.

— *adj. SAX.* Rough. 736, 163, 9. C. D. 772. *He looked wel rowe*. R. G. 507.

**ROWNE, v. SAX.** To whisper. 5823, 7132.

**RUBENS.** 2047. See *PUELLA*.

**RUBINS, n. pl. FR.** Rubies. 3149.

**RUCKING, part. pa. of RUCKE, or ROUCE, v. SAX.** Lying close. 15232.

**RUDGE, n. SAX.** Complexion. 13657. See *RODE*.

**RUDDOCK, n. SAX.** A bird, called Robin red-breast. A. F. 349.

**RUFUS, pr. n.** 432. A Greek physician, of whose works some are extant. See *Fabric. Bibl. Gr. L. iv. c. 3*.

**RUGGY, adj.** Rough. 2885.

**RUSSEL, pr. n.** The fox is called *Dan Russel* in ver. 15340, from his red colour, I suppose.

## S.

**SACHELLES, n. pl. FR.** Small sacks. Bo. I. pr. 3.

**SACKED FRERES.** R. 7462. Friars wearing a coarse upper garment called *Saccus*. Mat. Paris, ad an. 1257. *Eodem tempore novus ordo apparuit Londini de quibusdam fratribus ignotis et non prævisis, qui, quia sacculis incedebant induti, FRATRES SACCATI vocabantur*.

**SACRE, n. FR.** A sacred solemnity. C. D. 2133.

**SAD, adj. SAX.** Grave; steady. 8278, 8923.—Sorrowful; repentant. 16345.

**SADLY, adv.** Steadily; carefully. 2904. This messenger drank sadly ale and wine. 5163. This messenger applied himself to drink a. & w.

**SADNESS, n.** Gravity; steadiness. 8328, 9465.

**SAFFRON, v. FR.** To tinge with saffron. 12279.

**SAIE, for SEIE, pa. t. of SE, v. SAX.** Saw. T. III. 993.

**SAILE, v. FR.** To assail. R. 7338.

**SAILOURS, n. pl. R.** 770 may mean *Dancers* from the *Lat. FR.* So in P. P. GR. *For I can—neither saylen, ne saule, ne syng to the gyterne*. The lines which Chaucer has here translated are not in the best Edit. of the *Rom.*

*de la Rose*. Paris. 1733. but they are quoted by *Junius, Elym. Ling. Angl.* in *v. Timbertere*, from an Edit. of 1529.

*Après y cul farces japeuses,  
Et batelleurs et batelleuses,  
Qui de passe passe jouissent,  
Et en l'air ung bassin rugissent.  
Puis le scevoient bien recueillir  
Sur ung day, sans point y faillir.*

Where it is plain that the author is speaking of jugglers rather than dancers.

**SAINES for SEINE, part. pa. of SE, v. SAX.** Seen. R. 7448.

— *pr. n.* The river Seine. 11534.

**SALADE, n. FR.** A sort of armour for the head. C. D. 185.

**SALADES, n. pl. FR.** Ballads of herba. F. L. 412.

**SALUTE, SALUX, v. FR.** To salute. 1494, 10405.

**SALUED, part. pa.** 11622.

**SALUTIONS, n. pl.** Salutations. T. II. 1568.

**SANITE, n. FR. GR.** A rich silk. R. 873. T. I. 109. See *Du Cange*, in *v. EXAMITUS*.

**SANGUIN, adj. FR.** Of a blood-red colour. 441, 2170.

**SARLINISHE, R.** 1188, should perhaps be *SARINISHE*, from the *FR. Sarrainois*; a sort of fine silk used for vells. See *Du Cange*, in *v. SARACENICUM* and *SARACENUM*. It is still called *Saracnet*.

**SARPLERES, n. pl.** Packages of a larger size than sacks. Bo. I. pr. 3. See *Du Cange*, in *v. SARPLERIUM*. *Sarpillere*, *FR.* A piece of canvas, &c. to wrap or pack up wares in. Cotgrave.

**SATEN, pa. L. pl. of SIT, v. SAX.** 2895.

**SATALIE, pr. n.** The ancient Attalia. 58.

**SAVE, n. LAT.** The herb sage. 2716.

**SAUF, adj. FR.** Safe. See *VOUCHES*.—Saved, or accepted. 685, 12048, 12216.

**SAVETH, n. FR.** Safety. R. 6969.

**SAULE for SOULE.** 4185, 4261.

**SAVOUR, v. neut. FR.** To taste; to relish. 5753.

**SAVOURING, n. FR.** The sense of tasting. P. 150, col. 2, l. 34.

**SAVOUROUS, adj.** Sweet; pleasant. R. 84.

**SAUSEFLIKE.** See the n. on ver. 627. But MS. Bodl. 2463, furnishes another etymology, which I think still more probable. "Unguentum contra *salsum flegma, scabiem, &c.*" See *Galen*, in *Hippoc. de Aliment.* Comment. iii. p. 277. ἡ λαχρὴ—γίνεται ἀπὸ φαιεμάτων 'AAMTPOT και τις ἐκείνης χυλός. And again, ἡ αλφός—ἐκ τῶν φαιεμάτων, αὐχ 'AATKOT.

**SAUTES, n. pl. FR.** Assaults. R. K. 419.

**SAUTRIE, n. FR. GR.** A musical string-instrument. 3213, 3305. See *ROTE*.

**SAWE, n. SAX.** Speech; discourse. 1528, 16150, R. 6475.—A proverb, or wise saying. 6242.

**SAY for SEY, pa. t. of SE, v. SAX.** Saw. 62, 7, 1810.

**SCALL, n. SAX.** A scale or scub. Ch. *wordes to his Scrivener*. 3.

**SCALLID, adj.** Scabby; scurfy. 630.

**SCANTILON, n. FR.** A pattern; a scantling. R. 7114.

**SCARCE, adj. FR.** Sparing; stingy. R. 2329.

**SCARIOT, pr. n.** Judas Iscariot. 15233.

**SCARMISHE, n. FR.** A skirmish; a battle. T. II. 934. V. 1507.

**SCATHIN, n. SAX.** Harm; damage. 448, 9048.

**SCATHEFUL, SCATHELICHE, adj.** Pernicious. 4519. L. W. 1370.

**SCATHELES, adj.** Without harm. R. 1550.

**SCLAUNDRE, n. FR.** Slander. 8598, 8806.

**SCLENDRE, adj.** Slender. 9478.

**SCOCHONS, n. pl. FR.** Scutcheons of arms. F. L. 216.

**SCOLAIE, v. FR.** To attend school; to study. 304. See the note.

**SCRIPT, n. FR.** A writing. 9571. T. II. 1130.

**SCRIPTURES, n. pl. FR.** Writings; books. 2046.

**SCRIVEN-LIKE, T. II.** 1026. Like a scrivener, or writing-master; *Comme un escriivain*.

**SEAMES, n. pl. SAX.** Scams. *Suturæ*. P. 160, col. 2, l. 12.

**SECREN, adj. FR.** Secret. 9783, 15646. 12, 927.

**SECRENESSE, n.** Privacy. 5193.

**SECULER, adj. FR.** Of the laity; in opposition to Clerical. 9127, 15456.

**SEDE, v. SAX.** To produce seed. R. 4344.

**SEE, n. FR.** A seat. 14155. T. iv. 1023. **SEES, pl. F. III.** 120.  
— **v. SAX.** To see. *God you see!* 7751. *God him see!* 4575. *May God keep you, or him, in his sight!* In T. II. 85. It is fuller:—*God you see and see!*—To look. *On to see.* 3247. To look on. See the note, and T. III. 130. *That—Ye wolde somtyme frendly on me see.* That ye would sometimes look friendly on me.

— **n. SAX.** The sea. 2458. 3033. *The Grete see.* 59. A learned friend has suggested to me, that the Sea on the coast of Palestine is called the *Great Sea* in the Bible (See Numb. xxxiv. 6, 7. Josh. xv. 12); which puts the meaning of the appellation in this passage out of all doubt.

**SEGE, n. FR.** A siege. 939.

**SEIE, SEV, pa. l. of SEE, v. SAX.** Saw. 5229. 8690. T. v. 816.—*part. pa.* Seen. 6134.

**SEIGNORIE, n. FR.** Power. R. 3213.

**SEIN, part. pa. of SEE, v. SAX.** Seen. 10967.

**SEINDE, part. pa. of SEIN, v. SAX.** Singed. 14851.

**SEINT, n. FR.** *Seint.* A girlie. 331. 3233.

**SEINTUARIE, n. FR.** Sanctuary. 12887.

**SEKS, v. SAX.** To seek. 13. 17.

— **v. adj. SAX.** Sick. 18.

**SELDEN, adv. SAX.** Seldom. 10125. *Selden time.* 9029.

**SELLE, n. FR.** A seat. 7710. **SELLES, pl. T. III.** 1468.

**SELF, SELVE, adj. SAX.** answering to the BELG. *Self*, the FR. *Même*, the LAT. *Ipse*, and the GR. *Autw*. See the Essay, &c. n. 30.—With the article prefixed it answers to the LAT. *Idem*, and the GERM. *Samo*, from whence our *Same*. See ver. 2580. *In the selve moment*; *In the same moment.* ver. 11706. *In the selve place*; *In the same place*.

These two usages of the *adj. SELF*, when joined to a substantive, might be confirmed by the uniform practice of all our writers, from the earliest times down to Shakespeare; but, as they are both now obsolete, I choose rather to take this opportunity of adding a few words to what has been said in the Essay, &c. *loc. cit.* upon the usage of the *adj. SELF*, when joined to a *Pronoun*; in which light only it appears to have been considered by Wallis, when he pronounced it a *Substantive*, answering nearly to the Latin *persona*.

Dr. Johnson, in his Dictionary, has very rightly established the primary signification of *SELF* to be that of an *Adjective*; but, in its connexions with *Pronouns*, he seems rather inclined to suppose it a *Substantive*, first, because it is joined to *possessive*, or *adjective* pronouns, as *my, thy, her, &c.* and secondly, because it has a plural number *selves*, contrary to the nature of the English adjective.

The latter reason, I think, cannot have much weight, when it is remembered, that the use of *Selves*, as the plural number of *Self*, has been introduced into our language since the time of Chaucer. *Selven*, which was originally the *accusative ca. sing. of SELF*, is used by him indifferently in both numbers. *I myselve-n.* 9334. *Ye yourselven.* 9380. 12676. *He himselven.* 494. 9919.

The former reason also will lose its force, if the hypothesis, which I have ventured to propose in the Essay, &c. *loc. cit.* shall be admitted, viz. that, in their combinations with *Self*, the pronouns *my, thy, her, our, your*, are not to be considered as *possessive* or *adjective*, but as the old oblique cases of the personal pronouns *I, thou, she, we, ye*. According to this hypothesis, the use of these combinations, with respect to the pronouns, is almost always solecistical; but not more so than that of *himself* in the *nominal* case, which has long been authorised by constant custom; and it is remarkable, that a solecism of the same sort has prevailed in the French language, in which *moi* and *toi*, the *obl. cases of je* and *tu*, when combined with *même*, are used as ungrammatically as our *my* and *thy* have just been supposed to be, when combined with *Self*. *Je l'ai vu moi-même*; I have seen it myself: *Tu le verras toi-même*; Thou shalt see it thyself; and so in the *accusative* case, *moi-même* is added emphatically to *me*, and *toi-même* to *te*.

It is probable, I think, that these departures from grammar, in both languages, have been made for the

sake of fuller and more agreeable sounds. *Je-même, me-même, tu-même, and te-même*, would certainly sound much thinner and more languid than *moi-même* and *toi-même*; and *myself, thyself, &c.* are as clearly preferable, in point of pronunciation, to *self, meself, theouself, theeself, &c.* though not all, perhaps, in an equal degree. It should be observed, that *itself*, where a change of case in the pronoun would not have improved the sound, has never undergone any alteration.

**SELLE, n. FR. Celle.** Cell. C. D. 8764.

**SELLE for SILLE, n. SAX.** A door-sill or threshold. 3699. See the note.

**SELVE, adj.** 2585. 2693. See *SELF*.

**SELY, adj. SAX.** Silly, simple; harmless. 4088. 4106. 5522.

**SELYNESSE, n. SAX.** Happiness. T. III. 815. 837.

**SENELEABLE, adj. FR.** Like. 9374.

**SENELAUNT, n. FR.** Seeming; appearance. 10630.

**SENELEICHE, SESELY, adj. SAX.** Soonly; comely. **SENELEISTE, superl. d.** 17068.

**SENELYHED, n.** Seemliness; comeliness. R. 777. 1130.

**SENEBON, n. LAT.** A low, or broken tone. 3697.

**SEMICOF, n.** A half, or short, cloke. 264.

**SEN, SESE, inf. m. of SE.** 1711. 2178.—*part. pa.* 1967. 2300.

**SEND for SENDETH.** 4134.

**SENDALL, n.** 442. A thin silk. See Du Cange, in v. *CEN DALUM*.

**SENEK, pr. n.** Seneca, the philosopher. 6750. 6767. 9397.

What is said of him in the *Monkes tale*, ver. 14421—14436 is taken from the *Rom. de la Rose*, ver. 6461—6469.

**SENG, v. SAX.** To singe. 5691.

**SENIOR, pr. n.** 16918. See the note.

**SENTENCE, n. FR.** Sense; meaning. 308. 10162.—*Judgment.* 4533.

**SEPT, pr. n.** 5367. Ceuta, formerly *Septa*, in Africa, over against Gibraltar.

**SEPULTURE, n. FR.** Grave. T. iv. 327.

**SERAPION, pr. n.** 434. Joannes Serapion, an Arabian physician of the xth Century. *Fabric. Bibl. Gr. t. XIII. p. 229*

**SERE, adj. SAX.** Dry. R. 4749.

**SERGEANT, n. FR.** A Squier, attendant upon a prince or nobleman. 8393.—A SERGEANT OF THE LAW. See his CHARACTER, ver. 311—332. His name is derived from his having been originally a *servant of the King* in his law-business; *Serviens ad legem*, just as *Serviens ad arma*. The King had formerly a Serjeant in every county. *Spelman, in v. SERVIENT*.

**SERIE, n. FR.** Series. 3069.

**SERMONING, n. FR.** Preaching. 3093.

**SERVAGE, n. FR.** Servitude; slavery. 4788. 11106. 7.

**SERVAND, part. pr. of SERV, v. SERVING.** C. D. 1627.

**SERVE, v. FR.** To serve. 6845.—To behave to. 8516. 7.

**SET for SETTETH.** 7564. for *SETTE, pa. l.* 11124.

**SETEWALE, n. SAX.** The herb Valerian. 3807. 13691.

**SETH, v. SAX.** To boil. 365.

**SETHE for SETHED, pa. l.** 8103.

**SETTE, v. SAX.** To place; to put. 7851. *Setteth him down*

P. 170, col. 1, l. 10. *Placeth himself on a seat.* *Yet sette I cas.* M. 115, col. 1, l. 54. *Yet I put the cas;* or

suppose.—To put a value on a thing; to rate. *I n'olde sette his sorrow at a myle.* T. III. 902. *I would not*

value h. n.—*To sette a man's cappe*; to make a fool of him. See the n. on ver. 588.

— *pa. l.* 6241.

**SEUREMENT, n. FR.** Security, in a legal sense, 11838.

**SEURETE, n. FR.** Certainty. 6485.—Surety, in a legal sense. 6493.

**SEWE, v. FR.** To follow. R. 4953.

**SEWES, n. pl. FR.** Dishea. 10381. See the note.

**SEYE.** See *SEIE*.

**SHADDE, pa. l. of SHED, v. SAX.** Fell in drops. 14649.

— *pa. l. of SHADE, v. SAX.* Shaded; covered with shade. Du. 426.

**SHADOWY, adj. SAX.** Unsubstantial. Do. III. pr. 4.

**SHAFT, n. SAX.** An arrow. 1364.

**SHAL, auxil. v. SAX.** is used sometimes with an ellipsis of the infinitive mode, which ought to follow it. 10912. *Both swiche as I have ben to you and shal, i. e. shall be.*

15771. *First tell me whither I shal, i. e. shall go.* T. II.

46. *Yet all is don or shal, i. e. shall be done.* See also ver. 15100. T. v. 833.

SHALE, n. SAX. A shell, or husk. F. iii. 191. *But all n'is worthe a nulle shale.* Conf. Am. 66.

SHALMIES, n. pl. Shalms; Musical string-instruments, otherwise called *Psalteries* or *Sautries*. F. iii. 198. See *ROTE*.

SHAME, n. SAX. *Shames dethe.* 5839. 10251. A death of shame; a shameful death. *To York he did him lede,* SHAMES *DEDE to dete.* P. L. 247.

SHAMEFAST, adj. SAX. Modest. 2057.

SHAPE, n. SAX. Form; figure. 7040. 7093.

SHAPELICH, adj. SAX. Fit; likely. 374. T. iv. 1432.

SHAPEN, SHAPE, part. pa. of SHAPE, v. SAX. Formed; figured. 7045. 7096. Prepared. 1110. 1237. 1394.

SHAW, n. SAX. A shade of trees; a grove. 4365. 6963. T. iii. 721.

SHEAF, n. SAX. A bundle. A sheaf of arrows. 104. SHEVES, pl. of corn. R. 4336.

SHEFFELD pr. n. Sheffield, in Yorkshire. 3631.

SHELD, n. SAX. A shield. 2134. SHIELDS, pl. French crowns, called in Fr. *Ecus*, from their having on one side the figure of a shield. 980. 13261.

SHENKING, n. SAX. A glimmering. 4298.

SHEND, n. SAX. To ruin. 5347. P. 162, col. 1, l. 42.

SHENDING, n. Ruin; punishment. P. 162, col. 1, l. 22.

SHENS, adj. SAX. Bright; shining. 1070.

SHENT, part. pa. of SHEND. 5351. 9194.

SHEPEN, n. SAX. A stable. 2007. 6453. See the n. on ver. 2002.

SHERE, v. SAX. To cut.—To shave. R. 6196.

SHERTE, n. SAX. A shirt. 9879. *I hadde lever than my sherte.* 15126. *I would give my shirt, i. e. all that I have.—It seems to mean the linen in which a new-born child is wrapped.* 1508. *That shopen was my delthe erst than my sherte.* Compare T. iii. 734.

*O fatal sustren, whiche, or any clothe  
Me shapen was, my destines me sponne—  
and L. W. 2618.*

*Sons first that day, that shapen was my sherte,  
Or by the fatal rustler had my dome.—*

In T. iv. 96. *Alas! that I ne had brought her in my sherte!* it seems to be put for *skirt* (or *lap*), which perhaps was the original word.

SHETE, v. SAX. To shoot. 3226. R. 969.

SHETES, n. pl. SAX. Sheets. 4138.

SHETTE, SHET, v. SAX. To close, or shut. 15965. 16603.

— SHET, part. pa. t. and part. 2589. 3420. *So was hire herte shette in hire distresse.* 5476. *So was her heart overwhelmed with h. d.*

SHIFT, v. SAX. To divide. 5686.

SHILDE, SHILDE, v. SAX. To shield. *God shilde.* 3427. *God shield, or forbid!*

SHIPMAN, n. SAX. A mariner; the master of a barge. See his *CHARACTER*, ver. 390—412.

SHIVER, n. SAX. A small slice. 7422.

SHODE, n. SAX. The hair of a man's head. 2009. 3316.

— part. pa. of SHOE, v. SAX. Shod, having shoes on. R. 7463.

SHOPE, part. t. of SHOVE, v. SAX. Pushed. R. 534. L. W. 2401.

SHODE, n. SAX. Harm. 13836. F. l. 88.

SHOPE, part. t. of SHAPE. 7120. 11121.

SHORE, part. pa. of SHERE. 13958.

SHORTE, v. SAX. To make short. P. 163, col. 1, l. 21.

SHOT, part. pa. of SHETTE. Shut. 3358. 3695. See the n. on ver. 3358.

SHOTES, n. SAX. A shooter. A. P. 180. The yew-tree is called *Shoter*, because bows are usually made of it.

SHOTTES, n. pl. SAX. Arrows, darts; any thing that is shot. T. ii. 58.

SHOVE, SHOWVE, v. SAX. To push. 3910.

— part. pa. 11593.

SHREWE, v. SAX. To curse. 6644. 7809.

— n. SAX. An ill-tempered, curst man, or woman. 5947. 6067. 10302. SHREWES, pl. Bo. l. pr. 3. *Pessim.* Orig.

SHREWED, adj. SAX. Wicked. *Shrude folk.* Bo. l. pr. 4. *Impios.* Orig.

SHREWEDNESS, n. SAX. Ill-nature. T. ii. 898.

SHRIFF, n. SAX. Confession. P. 169, col. 2, l. 11.

SHRIFF-FATHER, n. pl. SAX. Father-confessors. 7094.

SHRIVE, v. SAX. To make confession. P. 170, col. 1, l. 41.

SHRIVEN, part. pa. 7022. *I have ben shriven this day of my cural.* 7677. *I have made my confession t. d. to my curate.* P. 170, col. 1, l. 70.

SHRIGHT for SHRICHETH. 2819. Shrikeeth.

— part. t. of SHRICH, v. SAX. Shrieked. 10721. 15388.

SHROUDE, v. SAX. To hide. R. K. 148.

SHULDE, part. t. of SHAL. Should. 964. See the *Essay*, &c. p. xxvii. n. 33. SHULDEN, pl. 747. 3229.

SHULLEN, SHULN, SHUL, ind. m. pr. l. pl. of SHAL. 3016. 2766. 1823. 4. M. 111, col. 1, l. 5.

SIDE, adj. SAX. Related; allied. M. 113, col. 2, l. 40.

SIE for SEIE. Saw. 11162. P. L. 194.

SIFT, v. SAX. To shake in a sieve. 16408.

SIGH for SEIE. Saw. R. 818.

SIGHTE, part. t. of SEIE. 5455. R. 1746. Sighed.

SIGNE, v. Fr. To appoint. C. L. 642.

SIGNIFY, n. LAT. The Zodiac. T. v. 1030.

SIGNIFICATION, n. Fr. Signification. T. v. 1446.

SICK, adj. SAX. Sick. 428. 9165. In ver. 5678. *It seems to be used, as a noun, for Sickness.*

— v. SAX. To sigh. 2567. 11316.

— n. SAX. A sigh. 10812. SIKES, pl. 1292. 11176.

SIKER, adj. SAX. Sure. 9264. 9567.

SIKERDE, part. pa. of SIKER, v. SAX. Assured. L. W. 2126.

SIKERNESSE, n. Security. 9156.

SIKERLY, adv. Surely. 13064. 13213.

SIMPLESS, n. Fr. Simplicity. R. 954.

SIN, adv. SAX. abbreviation of STRICH. Since. 5234. 20121.

SINAMOME, n. Fr. Cinnamon. 3696.

SIP, n. SAX. Drink. An. 193.

SIPHER, n. A cipher, or figure of 9, in Arithmetic. *Although a sipher in a ugrim have no might in signification of itselfe, yet he peth power in signification to other.* T. l. ii. 333. b. There is another passage in Du. ver. 438—40. which seems to imply, that, in Chaucer's time, the numerals, commonly called Arabian, had not been long in use in this country.

SIRE, n. Fr. *Sieur, Seigneur*. A respectful title, given formerly to men of various descriptions, as well as to knights. *Sire knight.* 839. *Sire clerk.* 842. *Sire monk.* 3120. *Sire man of lawe.* 4453. It was so usually given to priests, that it has crept even into acts of parliament. *Rol. Parl.* 12. and 13. E. IV. n. 14. *Sir James Thekeness, Prestre.* 1. 11. *VIL p. 11.* *Sir Oliver Langton, Prest.* *Sir Robert Naylethorp, Prest.* Hence a *Sir John* came to be a nickname for a Priest. See ver. 14816, and the note.—*Sire* is sometimes put for *personage*. R. 4998. *And melancholy, that angry sire.—Our sire.* 6295. Our husband; our Goodman; as the French, in their old familiar language, use *Notre sire*.

SIS, n. Fr. The cast of six; the highest cast upon a die. 14579.

SIT for SITTETH. 3641. 9308. *It sit me not to lie.* 10189. *It doth not become me t. l. 8335. 9153. It spt a kynge seld to be chast.* Conf. Am. 168. b.

SITH for SITHES, n. pl. SAX. Times. 5153. 5573.

SITHEN, SITH, adv. SAX. Since. 1817. 4478. 55. l. 1.

SITHES, n. pl. SAX. Scythes. T. L. prol.

SITTE, v. SAX. To sit.—To become; to sit with. See *SIT*.

SITTAND, part. pr. R. 2263.

SITTEN, part. pa. 1454. 6002.

SKAFFAUT, n. Fr. A scaffold; a wooden tower. R. 4175.

SKAFFOLD, n. A scaffold, or stage. 3384.

SKIE, n. SAX. A cloud. F. iii. 510.

SKILL, n. SAX. Reason. 9028. 9552. SKILLES, pl. 10519.

SKILFUL, adj. Reasonable. T. iii. 288. 940.

SKINKE, v. SAX. To pour out; to serve with drink. 5696.

SKIPLE, part. t. of SKIPPE, v. SAX. Leaped. 11714.

SROGAN, pr. n. See the Account, &c. p. 449.

SKORCLE, v. SAX. To scorch. Bo. ii. m. 6.

SKRIPPE, n. Fr. *Escharpe*. A scrip. R. 7405.

SLACKE, adj. SAX. Slow. 2903.

SLAIN, part. pa. of SLE. 1743. 2040.

SLAKE, v. SAX. To appease; to make slack. 8678. 8935.

**SLAKE**, *v. naut.* To fall. 8013. To deist. 8581.  
**SLAWS**, *part. pa.* of **SLIE**. 15020.  
**SLIE**, *v. SAX.* To kill; to slay. 2558.  
**SLIER**, *n. SAX.* A killer. 2007. L. W. 1367.  
**SLEIGHTLY**, *adv. SAX.* Cunningly. 1446.  
**SLEIGHT**, *n. SAX.* Contrivance. R. 7109.  
**SLEIGHTS**, *pl. R.* 7121. *Suche sleights as I shall you  
 neven.*—So this line should probably be written. See the  
 Orig. ver. 12498. *Neven* is from MS. Hunter.  
**SLIN**, *pr. t. pl.* of **SLIE**. 1569. 5384.—*in/.* m. 1565. 5379.  
**SLEP**, **SLEPS**, *pa. t.* of **SLEPE**, *v. SAX.* Slept. 98. 369.  
**SLETE**, *n. SAX.* Sleet; a mixture of rain and snow. 11502.  
 R. 9831.  
**SLEVELESS**, *adj. T. L. II.* 334. seems to signify *idle, un-  
 profitable*; as it does still in vulgar language.  
**SLIDER**, *adj. SAX.* Slippery. 1268. L. W. 648.  
**SLIDING**, *part. pr. Uncertain.* 16300. *Lydg. Trag.* 98. b.  
*Sliding fortune.* Bo. I. m. 3. *Lubrica fortuna.* Orig.  
**SLIE**, **SLIEN**, *adj. SAX.* Cunning. 3399.  
**SLIES** for **SWILKE**, *adj. SAX.* Such. 4128.  
**SLIT** for **SLIDETH**. 16150.  
 — *v. SAX.* To cut through, to cleave. 11572.  
**SLIVER**, *n. SAX.* A small slice, or piece. T. III. 1018.  
**SLO**, *v. SAX.* To slay. R. 1963. 4592.  
**SLOGARDIE**, *n. Fr. SAX.* Sloth. 1044.  
**SLOMBERINGS**, *n. pl. SAX.* Slumberings. T. v. 246.  
**SLOPPE**, *n. SAX.* A sort of breeches. 16101. P. 135,  
 col. 2, l. 80.  
**SLOW**, *pa. t.* of **SLEW**. 11745. 14104.  
**SLOWE**, *n. SAX.* A moth. R. 4781. In the Orig. *Fr.*  
*Taigne*.  
**SLUGG**, *adj. SAX.* Sluggish. P. 162, col. 2, l. 27.  
**SMALLER**, *adj. SAX.* Diminutive of *Smale*, or *Small*.  
 R. 826.  
**SMERTE**, *v. SAX.* To smart; to suffer pain. R. 7107.  
 — 149. seems to be used as an *Adverb*; smartly.  
 P. L. Gl. v. *Fortought*.  
**SMIT** for **SMITETH**, *ind. m. 3 pers. sing.* 7996.  
**SMITETH**, *imp. m. 3 pers. pl.* Smite ye. 784.  
**SMITH**, *v. SAX.* To forge, as a smith. 3769. P. P. 16 b.  
**SMITTEN** for **SMITTEN**, *part. pa.* of **SMITE**. T. v. 1544.  
**SMOKLES**, *adj. SAX.* Without a smock. 8751.  
**SMOTERICH**, *adj.* 3661. means, I suppose, smatty, dirty.  
 But the whole passage is obscure.  
**SMREW**, *v. SAX.* To smow; to be in as great abundance  
 as snow. 347.  
**SMIBBE**, *v. SAX.* To smubb; to reprove. 325. 11000.  
**SNOW-WHITE**, *adj. SAX.* White as snow. 15722. 17982.  
**SODEN**, *adj. SAX.* Sudden. 4841.  
**SOGET**, *n. Fr.* Subject. C. L. 93.  
**SOIGNE**, *n. Fr.* Care. R. 3682.  
**SOJOUR**, *n. Fr.* Stay; abode. R. 4282.  
**SOKEN**, *n. SAX.* Toll. 3685.  
**SOKINGLY**, *adv.* Suckingly; gently. M. 116, col. 2, l. 14.  
 See **SOKE**.  
**SOLAS**, *n. Fr.* Mirth; sport. 800. 3634.  
**SOLIN**, *adj. Fr.* One; single. Du. 982.—Sullen. R. 3667.  
**SOLEMPNE**, *adj. Fr.* Solemn. 10426.  
**SOLEMPNELY**, *adv.* Solemnly. 278.  
**SOLER HALL**. See the n. on ver. 3668. *A solere windowe  
 occurs in Gam. ver. 257. for the window of a loft, or  
 garret. See before, ver. 252.*  
**SOM**, *adj. SAX.* Some. *This is all and som.* 5673. This is  
 the whole. *All and some.* 9817. T. II. 1149. One  
 and all.  
**SOMDEL**, *adv. SAX.* Somewhat; in some measure. 448. 3609.  
**SOMER**, *pr. n.* In the treatise on the Astrolabe, fol. 291. b.  
 Chaucor professes to make use of the *Kalenders of the  
 reverent clerkes frere JOHN SOMER and frere NICHOLAS  
 LENNE*. The *Kalendar of John Somer* is extant in MS.  
*Cotton*, Vesp. B. vii. It is calculated for 140 years from  
 1367, the year of the birth of Richard II, and is said, in  
 the introduction, to have been published in 1380, at the  
 instance of Joan mother to the King. The *Kalendar of  
 Nicholas Lenne*, or *Lynne*, was calculated for 76 years  
 from 1367. Tanner in v. *NICOLAUS LINENHUS*. The story  
 there quoted from Hakluyt of a voyage made by this  
 Nicholas in 1380 *ad insulas septentrionales antehac*

*Europæ incognitas*, and of a book written by him to  
 describe those countries *a gradu 54. usque ad polum*, is  
 a mere fable; as appears from the very authorities which  
 Hakluyt has produced in support of it.

**SOMME**. T. II. 1249. *Lo! Troilus*—

*Come riding with his tenthe somme ifere.*

So this line stands in the Edit. but a Ms. quoted in  
 Gloss. *Ur.* instead of *tenthe* has x. and MS. I. *tenteth*.  
 Perhaps the original reading was xx. *With his twenty  
 some ifere*, according to the Saxon mode of expression  
 would signify *Together with some twenty of his attend-  
 ants*. See Hicke, Gramm. A. B. p. 32, i.

— *n. Fr.* A sum. Bo. IV. pr. 2.

**SOMMER**, *n. SAX.* Summer. *A Sommer-game.* 6230. See  
 the note.

**SOMONE**, **SOMPNE**, *v. LAT.* To summon. 7189. 6029. 43.

**SOMPNOUR**, *n.* An officer employed to summon delinquents  
 to appear in Ecclesiastical courts, now called an Appari-  
 tor. See his *CHARACTER*, ver. 625—670.

**SOND**, *n. SAX.* Sand. 15973.

— *n. C. D.* 1147. seems to signify a sounding line;  
 from the *Fr.* *Sonde*.

**SONDE**, *n. SAX.* A message. 4908. 5489. *Goddess sonde.*  
 4943. 13149. What God has sent; God's gift.

**SONE**, *adv. SAX.* Soon. 15097, 4.

— *n. SAX.* A son. 79. 338. **SONES**, *pl.* 10343.

**SONKEN**, *part. pa.* of **SINK**, *v. SAX.* Sunk. R. 5113.

**SONNE**, *n. SAX.* The Sun. 1511. 2534.

**SONNIN**, *adj. SAX.* Like the Sun, T. IV. 735. See ver.  
 11971, 2.

**SOOTY**, *adj. SAX.* Foul with soot. 14838.

**SOP**, *n. Fr.* A piece of bread dipped in any sort of liquor.  
 338. 9717. *He take a soppe.* Conf. Am. 104.

**SOPHINE**, *n. Fr.* Gr. A sophism, a subtle fallacy. 7881.  
 10938.

**SORKE**, *v. Fr.* *Esorer.* To soar. T. I. 671.

**SORT**, *n. Fr.* Chance; destiny. 946. T. II. 754.

**SORTED**, *pa. t.* of **SORT**, *v. Fr.* Allotted. T. v. 1636.

**SORWE**, *n. SAX.* Sorrow. 1221. 2234.

**SORY**, *adj. SAX.* Sorrowful. 3618, 2. *Sory grace.* 6328.  
 Misfortune. See *GRACE* and *WIT*.

**SOTE**, *n. SAX.* Soot. T. III. 1900.

— **SWOTE**, *adj. SAX.* Sweet. 3205. 3691.

— *n. Fr.* A fool. F. L. 101.

**SOTED**, *part. pa.* *Fr.* Fooled; befooled. 16809.

**SOTEL**, *adj. Fr.* Subtle; artfully contrived. 1056.

**SOTH**, *adj. SAX.* True. 4356. Certain. 3685. **SOETHES**, *comp.* l.  
 18663.

— **SOETHLY**, *adv.* 1523. 1627. 1186. 1201. Truly.

**SOETH**, *n. SAX.* Truth. 3622. 6513.

**SOETHFASTNESS**, *n. SAX.* Truth. 17344.

**SOETHNES**, *adj. SAX.* Southern. 17353.

**SOETHNESS**, *n. SAX.* Truth; reality. 15759.

**SOETH-SAY**, *n.* Veracity; true-saying. II. 6125.

**SOUDAN**, *n.* A Sultan; any Mahometan Sovereign. 4927.  
 See *D'Herbelot*, in v. *FOLTHAN*.

**SOUDANNESS**, *n.* The wife of a Sultan. 4778.

**SOUDEN**, *part. pa.* See the note on ver. 13509. **SOUDEN-  
 METEL**. *Consolidum*. Prompt. Parv.

**SOVERAINE**, *adj. Fr.* Excellent; in a high degree. 15215.

**SOVERAINELY**, *adv.* Above all. 15366.

**SOVKE**, *v. Fr.* To suck. 4155.

**SOVKED**, *part. pa.* 8326.

**SOVKED**, *part. pa.* *SAX.* Endued with a soul. 15797.

**SOUN**, *n. Fr.* Sound; noise. 7815. 12487.

**SOUND**, *v. SAX.* To make sound; to heal. Am. 248.—*n.*  
*ment.* To grow sound. B. K. 293.

**SOUNE**, *v. Fr.* To sound. 517. *As fer as souneth into  
 honscite.* 13773. As far as is consonant to h. *That  
 souneth unto gentillesse of love.* 10631. That is consonant  
 to g. o. l.

**SOUNING**, *part. pr.* 277. 309.

**SOURE**, *v. Fr.* To sup; to take the evening-meal. 11522.

**SOUREV**, *pl.* 10611.

**SOUPER**, *n.* Supper; the evening-meal. 350. 16604.

**SOUPLE**, *a. fr. Fr.* Supple; pliant. 903.

**SOURED**, *v. Fr.* To rise. P. 156, col. 1, l. 68.

- SOUND**, *n.* A rise; a rapid ascent. 7330. 3. F. II. 35. 43.—  
The source of a stream of water. 7925.
- SOUTER**, *n.* LAT. A cobbler. 3902.
- SEW**, *v.* LAT. To sew. T. II. 1201. 3. It was usual, and indeed necessary, formerly to *sew* letters, when they were written upon parchment. But the practice continued long after the invention of paper.
- *n.* SAX. To sow. 17346. 7.
- SOWERS**, *n.* pl. Sores; Bucks in their fourth year. Du. 423.
- SPAN-NEWS**, *adj.* T. III. 1671. seems to signify *Quite new*; but why it does so, I cannot pretend to say.
- SPANNISHING**, *n.* FR. *Espanouissement*. The full blow of a flower. R. 3633.
- SPARE**, *v.* SAX. To refrain. 7017. L. W. 2391.
- SPARRETH**, *imp.* *m.* 2 *pers.* pl. 6919. 7004.
- SPARRETH**, *part. pr.* Sparring; niggardly. R. 3363.
- SPARHAUK**, *n.* SAX. A sparrow-hawk. 15463.
- SPARRS**, *n.* SAX. A wooden bar. 902.
- SPARRER**, *part. pa.* Barred; bolted. R. 3390.
- SPARTHE**, *n.* SAX. An ax, or halberd. R. 2678. See Du Cange, in *v.* SPARTHE, SACRIS DANICA.
- SPECS**, *n.* pl. FR. *Sarts*, or kinds. 3015.
- SPEDE**, *v.* FR. To dispatch. Bo. v. pr. 4. 5.
- SPEDFUL**, *adj.* Effectual. Bo. IV. pr. 4. v. pr. 4.
- SPEYKAKEL**, *n.* FR. LAT. A spying glass. 6783.
- SPELL**, *n.* SAX. Sport; play. 4365. See the note.—Tale, or history. 13821.
- SPENCE**, *n.* FR. *Despence*. A store-room for wine, or victuals. 7513.
- SPERE**, *n.* FR. A sphere. 11599.
- *n.* SAX. A spent. 2712.
- SPERED**. R. 2098. **SPEERED**. T. v. 531. as *Sparred*.
- SPEARRE**, *n.* FR. GR. Seed. 14015.
- SPICED**. 528. 6017. See the note. I have since met with a passage, in which *spiced*, applied to *conscience*, seems to signify *nice*, *scrupulous*. Beaumont and Fletcher. *Mad Lover*. Act 3. When *Cleanthe* offers a purse, the *Priestess* says,  
“Py! no corruption —  
Cle. Take it; it is yours;  
Be not so *spiced*; it is good gold;  
And goodness is no ill to the conscience.”
- SPICKE**. P. 148. col. 1. l. 20. as *Specie*.
- SPILE**, *v.* SAX. To waste; to throw away. 17102.—To destroy. 6480.—*v.* neut. To perish. 5067. 5235.
- SPINE**, *n.* A stake. T. II. 1335. a corruption probably of *Spere*. SAX.
- SPIRED**. See the *n.* on ver. 13733.
- SPIROUS**, *adj.* FR. *Despitueux*. Angry; spiteful. R. 979.
- SPIROUSLY**, *adv.* Angriely. 3476. 5805.
- SPLAIE**, *v.* FR. *Despioier*. To unfold. B. K. 33.
- SPONE**, *n.* SAX. A spoon. 10916.
- SPONNE**, *pa. t.* of SPINNE, *v.* SAX. Spun. T. III. 735.
- SPORE**, *n.* SAX. A spur. 2605.
- SPOUNE**, *v.* SAX. To strike the foot against any thing. 4278. T. II. 797.
- SPOUSALE**, *n.* FR. Marriage. 7991. 8055.
- SPRAY**, *n.* SAX. A twig, or sprig. 13700.
- SPREINT**, *part. pa.* of SPRENOR, *v.* SAX. Sprinkled. 4842. 13570.
- SPRINGOLDS**, *n.* pl. FR. *Espringalle*. Machines for casting stones and arrows. R. 4191. See Du Cange, in *v.* MUSCHETIA.
- SQUANES**, *n.* pl. LAT. Scales. 16227.
- SQUAINOUS**. 3337. See the note.
- SQUIER**, *n.* FR. A squire. See his CHARACTER, ver. 79—100.
- *v.* To attend as a squire. 5887.
- SQUIERIE**, *n.* A number of squires. 10607. And alle ther squierie. P. L. 241. And of his squierie gentille men auhtene. Ibid. 283.
- STACE**, *pr. n.* Statius, the Roman poet. 2296.
- STACKE**, *n.* SAX. A stack of wood, &c. P. 166. col. 1. l. 19.
- *pa. t.* of STICK, *v.* SAX. Stuck. R. 438.
- STAFF-SLING**. 13758. means, I suppose, a sling fastened to a staff. Lydgate in his *Trag.* 39. b. describes David as armed  
“With a STAFFE SLYNGE, voyde of plate and mayle.”
- STAKER**, *v.* SAX. To stagger. L. W. 2676.
- STALKE**, *v.* SAX. To step slowly. 8401. Ful thefely gan he
- STALKE**. L. W. 1779. And to the bedde he STALKETH *aplys* Comf. Am. 32.
- STALKES**, *n.* pl. SAX. The upright pieces of a ladder. 3088.
- STAMEN**, *STAMIN*, *n.* FR. *Estamine*. A sort of woollen cloth. P. 171. col. 2. l. 25. L. W. 2349.
- STANT** for **STANDETH**. 3577. 3695.
- STARFE**, *pa. t.* of STERVE. Died. 935. 14141.
- STARKE**, *adj.* SAX. Stiff, stout. 9332. 14376.
- STARLINGES**, *n.* pl. Pence of sterling money. 12841. See ver. 12864.
- STAUNCE**, *v.* FR. To stop; to satisfy. Bo. III. pr. 3. m. 3.
- STELE**, *n.* SAX. A handle. 3783.
- STELLIVIS**, *v.* LAT. To make a star. L. W. 625. F. II. 78.
- STENTE**, *v.* SAX. To cease; to desist. 905.
- STENTEN**, *part. pa.* 2970.
- STEPS**, *adj.* 201. 785. seems to be used in the sense of *deep*; so that *eyen steps* may signify *eyes sunk deep in the head*.
- STERE**, *v.* SAX. To stir. 12280.
- STERE**, *n.* SAX. A young bullock. 2151.—A rudder. 4892. 2813.
- STERELLES**, *adj.* SAX. Without a rudder. 4859.
- STERENMAN**, *n.* SAX. A pilot. F. I. 436.
- STERNE**, *n.* SAX. A rudder. F. I. 437.
- STERNE**, *adj.* SAX. Fierce; cruel. 2612.
- STERRE**, *n.* SAX. A star. 3063.
- STERT**, *n.* SAX. A leap. At a stert. 1707. Immediately.
- STERTE**, *pa. t.* of STERTE, *v.* SAX. Leaped. 11699. Escaped; ran away. T. IV. 43.
- STERTING**, *part. pr.* Leaping nimbly. 1504.
- STERTLING**, as **STERTING**. L. W. 1902. 1739.
- STERVE**, *v.* SAX. To die; to perish. 17799.
- STEVEN**, *n.* SAX. Voice; sound. 2564. 15297.—A time of performing any action, previously fixed by message, order, summons, &c. At *unset steven*. 1528. Without any previous appointment. *They setten steven*. 4381. They appointed a time.
- STEW**, *n.* FR. A small pond for fish. 351.—A small closet. T. III. 602. 699.
- STEWAS**, *pl.* Stewa, bandy-houses. 12399.
- STEW**, *v.* SAX. To ascend. T. L. I. 315 b.
- STEWERS**, *n.* pl. SAX. Stairs. T. L. I. 315. b.
- STIBBORNE**, *adj.* Stubbhorn. 6038. 6219.
- STIKE**, *v.* SAX. To stick; pierce. 2548.
- STILK**, *n.* SAX. A set of steps, to pass from one field to another. *By stile and cke by strelc*. 12628. Everywhere; in town and country.
- STILLATORIE**, *n.* FR. A still. 16048.
- STILLE**, *adj.* SAX. Quiet. 11782.
- STITHE**, *n.* SAX. An anvil. 2028.
- STIVES**. 6914. as **STEWES**.
- STORLE-GOOS**. 4349. A goose fed on stubble-grounds.
- STOCKED**, *part. pa.* Confined. T. III. 381.
- STOLE**, *n.* FR. LAT. Part of the ecclesiastical habit worn about the neck. 9577. See Du Cange, in *v.* STOLA. 2.
- *n.* SAX. A stool. 5870.
- STONDEN**, *part. pa.* of STONDE, or STANDF, *v.* SAX. Stood. 5368.
- STONT**, for **STONDETH**. 3921.
- STOPEN**, *part. pa.* of STIPE, *v.* FAX. Stopped; advanced. 9388. 14827.
- STORE**. 10241. See the note.
- *n.* FR. To stock, or furnish. 13203.
- *n.* Any thing laid up; for use. Hence the phrase, *to tell no store* of a thing. 5785. 15160. means, *to consider it as of no use or importance*.
- STORIAL**, *adj.* FR. Historical; true. 3179.
- STORVEN**, *pa. t.* pl. of STERVE. 12290.
- STOT**, *n.* SAX. See the *n.* on ver. 617.
- STOTF**, *n.* A species of weasel; a polecat. 7212.
- STOUND**, *n.* SAX. A moment; a short space of time. 1214. 4005. In a stound. 3990. On a sudden. In stound. R. 1733. should probably be *In a stound*. The Orig. FR. has *tantost*. STOUNDES, *pl.* Times; seasons. 5898. T. III. 1758.
- STOUNDEMELE**, *adv.* Momentarily; every moment. R. 2304. T. v. 674.
- STROUPEN**. 14827. should probably be **STOPEN**.
- STOURN**, *n.* SAX. Fight; battle. 14376. T. III. 1066.
- STRAKK**, *v.* SAX. To proceed directly. Du. 1312. Stracken Stricken. Tenders. Killan.

**STRANGE**, *adj.* Fr. Foreign. 10403.—Uncommon. 10381. *He made it strange.* 3078. 11535. He made it a matter of difficulty, or nicety.

**STRAUGHTS**, *pa. l.* of **STRACCHS**, *v.* SAX. Stretched. 2918. *Conf. Am.* 184.

**STRE**, *n.* SAX. Straw. 2920.

**STREIGHT**, *part. pa.* of **STRACCHS**, *v.* SAX. Stretched. Bo. III. pr. i.

**STRINE**, *v.* Fr. To constrain. 15355.—To press closely. 1027.

**STRITH**, *adj.* Fr. Strait. *Strithe seerd.* 14933.

**STRIMKEN**, *pa. l.* pl. of **STRIMS**, *v.* SAX. Streamed; flowed. T. iv. 247.

**STRIMMS**, *n. pl.* The rays of the Sun. 1497.

**STRIMPS**, *n.* SAX. Stock; race; progeny. 8038. R. 4850.

**STRENGHT-FAITHED**, *adj.* Endowed with the strongest faith. T. i. 1008.

**STRIPS**, *v.* Fr. To strip. R. 6818.

**STRETE**, *n.* SAX. A street. 3758. *The maister strete.* 2904. See the note.

**STRIPPS**, *n.* SAX. A line; a streak. *A strike of flax.* 678.

**STRIPS**, *n.* LAT. *Stirps*. Race; kindred. C. L. 16.

— *v.* 10074. as **STRIFE**.

**STRODE**, *pr. n.* T. v. 1856. *The philosophical Strode*, to whom, jointly with the *moral Gower*, Chaucer directs his *Troilus*, was probably *Ralph Strode*, of Merton College, Oxford. A. Wood, who had made the antiquities of that college a particular object of his enquiries, says only of him, "*RADULPHUS Strodes, de quo sic vetus noster catalogus. Poeta fuit et versificavit librum elegiacum vocat. Phantasma Radulphi. Claruit cccccxxx.*" Some of his logical works are said to be extant in print. Venet. 1517. 4to. Tanner, in *v.* **STRODMS**.

**STROF**, *pa. l.* of **STRIVE**, *v.* Fr. Strove; contended. 1040.

**STRONDE**, *n.* SAX. A shore. 13.

**STROUTER**, *pr. n.* A town in the North. 4012. See the note.

**STROUTS**, *v.* To strut. 3315.

**STRUBBS**, *n. pl.* LAT. *Suburbs*. 16125.

**SUBFUMIGATION**, *n.* LAT. A species of charm by smoke. F. III. 174.

**SUBGET**, *adj.* Fr. LAT. *Subject*. P. 171, col. 1, l. 64.

**SUBLIMATORIS**, *n.* Fr. LAT. A vessel used by Chemists in Sublimation, i. e. separating certain parts of a body, and driving them to the top of the vessel, in the form of a very fine powder. 16261.

**SUBSTANCE**, *n.* Fr. The material part of a thing. 14903.

**SUCKINY**, *n.* Fr. *Souguerie*. A loose frock, worn over their other clothes by carters, &c. R. 1232.

**SUE**, *v.* Fr. To follow. M. 114, col. 2, l. 2.

**SUCTON**, *pr. n.* Suetonius, the Roman historian. 14638.

**SUFFRANCE**, *n.* Fr. Sufficiency; satisfaction. 492. 8638.

**SUFFRANT**, *adj.* Sufficient. 1633. 3551.

**SWEED**, *part. pa.* Sweetened as with sugar. T. II. 394.

**SUPPLIS**, *v.* Fr. To supplicate. Bo. III. pr. 2.

**SURCOTE**, *n.* Fr. An upper coat, or kirtle. F. L. 141.

**SURPLIS**, *n.* Fr. A surplice. 16028.

**SURQUEDRIS**, *n.* Fr. Presumption; an overweening conceit. P. 156, col. 1, l. 50. 179, col. 2, l. 4. *J. J. 515.*

**SURRIE**, *pr. n.* Syria. 4554.

**SURRANURE**, *n.* Fr. A wound healed outwardly only. 11425.

**SURVEANCE**, *n.* Fr. Superintendence. 12029.

**SUSPECT**, *adj.* Fr. Suspected. 8417, 8.

— *n.* Suspicion. 5781. 12197.

**SUSPECTIOM**, *n.* Suspicion. 5101.

**SUSTER**, *n.* SAX. Sister. **STUSTEN**, *pl.* 1021. T. III. 734.

**SWA**, *adv.* SAX. So. 4028. 4032.

**SWALLS**, *pa. l.* of **SWELL**, *v.* SAX. Swelled. 6549. 13490.

**SWAPPS**, *v.* SAX. To throw down. T. iv. 244.—To strike off. 8462. 12634.—*v. neut.* To fall down. 6975.

**SWART**, *adj.* SAX. Black; of a dark colour. C. D. 1862.

**SWATTS**, *pa. l.* of **SWETS**, *v.* SAX. Sweated. 13705. 16028.

**SWEDS**, *n.* SAX. A violent motion. 4716. Bo. i. m. 5.

**SWELTS**, *v.* SAX. To die; to faint. 3703.

**SWELT**, *pa. l.* 1358. 9550.

**SWERNS** for **SWEREN**, *pl. n.* of **SWERS**, *v.* SAX. Swear. H. 4834.

**SWEVEN**, *n.* SAX. A dream. 14902. 14926. **SWEVENS**, *pl.* 14929. In *ver.* 14927. It is written *Suervenis* for the sake of the rhyme.

**SWICHE**, *adj.* SAX. corruption of *Swilke*. Sach. 243. 487.

**SWINKS**, *n.* SAX. Labour. 198.

— *v.* To labour. 187. 12808.

**SWIRK**, *n.* SAX. The neck. R. 325. It is more commonly written *Sierre*.

**SWITHS**, *adv.* SAX. Quickly; immediately. 5150. 12730. *6. 17.*

**SWIVE**, *v.* SAX. See *Junii Etymolog.* in *v.*

**SWOLOWE**, *n.* SAX. A whirlpool. L. W. 1102.

**SWONKEN**, *part. pa.* of **SWINKS**. 4233.

**SWOTON**, *n.* SAX. Sound; noise. 1981. 3619.—A swoon. 6381. 8976.

T.

**TABARD**, *n.* 20. See the quotation from Speght's Gloss. Discourse, &c. n. 6.

**TABLES**, *n. pl.* Fr. A game so called. 11212.—*Tables Tolaines*. 11865. See the note.

**TABOUR**, *v.* Fr. To drum. L. W. 354.

**TACHE**, *n.* Fr. A spot, or blemish. C. N. 192.

**TAILLAGES**, *n.* Fr. A collector of taxes. R. 6811.

**TAILLE**, *n.* Fr. A tally; an account scored on a piece of wood. 572.

**TAKS**, *v.* SAX. To deliver a thing to another person. 5137. 13334. 15691.

— for **TAKEN**, *part. pa.* 1868. 10789.

**TAKEL**, *n.* SAX. An arrow. 106. R. 1737.

**TALK**, *v.* SAX. To tell stories. C. D. 103. *And namely when they TALEN longe.* *Conf. Am.* 27. b.

— *n.* Speech; discourse. Bo. l. pr. 5.—Reckoning; account. *Little tale hath he told of any dreame.* 15124. He made little account of any dream.

**TALENT**, *n.* Fr. Desire; affection. 5537. P. 151, col. 1, l. 23.

**TALING**, *n.* Story-telling. 13364.

**TANE** for **TAKEN**. C. D. 882.

**TAPES**, *n. pl.* SAX. Bands of linen. 3941.

**TAPINAGE**, *n.* Fr. *En tapinois*. Lurking; skulking about. H. 7363. *Conf. Am.* 93. b.

**TAPISER**, *n.* Fr. A maker of tapestry. 354.

**TAPTE**, *v.* Fr. To cover with tapestry. Du. 200.

**TAPPS**, *n.* SAX. A tap, or spigot, which closes that orifice through which the liquor is drawn out of a vessel. 36904.

**TAPSTERS**, *n.* SAX. A woman, who has the care of a tap in a public-house. 241. 3356. See the *n.* on *ver.* 2019. That office, formerly, was usually executed by women. See the *Adventure of the Pardoner and the Tapster*, in the *Continuation of the Canterbury Tales*. p. 504. Ed. U.

**TARS**, *pa. l.* of **TEAR**, *v.* SAX. Tora. Magd. 150.

**TARGE**, *n.* Fr. A sort of shield. 473. 2194.

**TARS**, *n.* Cloth of Tars. 2162. *Tartarium*. F. L. 112. A sort of silk. See Du Cange, in *v.* **TARSICUS**, **TANTARINUS**.

**TAS**, *n.* Fr. A heap. 1007. 1011.

**TASSELED**, *part. pa.* Adorned with tassels. 3251.

**TASTE**, *v.* Fr. To feel. 15171.—To examine. L. W. 1901.

**TATARWAGERS**, *n. pl.* R. 7211. The Orig. is—*Toutes fretelles de crotes*. All bedagled with dirt.

**TAVERNER**, *n.* Fr. The keeper of a tavern. 12619. 12641.

**TAURS**, *pr. n.* The constellation Taurus. 6126. 9761.

**TAWES**, *n.* SAX. Tow. 3772.

**TEACH**, *v.* SAX. To teach. 310.

**TEINS**, *n.* 16693, 7. 16708. seems to signify a narrow, thin plate of metal; perhaps from the LAT. *Gn. Tania*.

**TEMPS**, *n.* Fr. Time. 16343.

**TEVE**, *n.* SAX. Grief. 3106. *Conf. Am.* 140.

— *v.* To grieve; to afflict. T. II. 338. b.

**TERCELET**, **TERCELL**, *n.* Fr. The male hawk. 10818.—The male eagle. A. F. 388.

**TERING**, *n. pl.* H. 653. A sort of singt-bird, called in F. *Tarin*. See Cotgrave in *v.*

**TERMAGANT**, *pr. n.* 13741. See the note.

**TERRESTRE**, *n.* Fr. Earthly. 9206.

**TEVV**, *adj.* SAX. Full of tears. T. iv. 821.

**TESTERS**, *n. pl.* Fr. Head-pieces. 2501.

**TESTES**, *n. pl.* LAT. Vessels for assaying metals. 16928.

**TESTIV**, *adj.* Fr. Head-strong. 4002.

**TETCH**, *n.* as **TACHE**. R. 6817.

**TREWELL**, *n.* Fr. A pipe, or funnel. F. III. 550.

**TEXTUEL**, *adj.* Fr. Ready at citing texts. 17184. 17865.

**THACKER**, *n.* Sax. Thatch. C. D. 1771.

— *v.* To thump; to thwack. 7141.

**THAN**, *adv.* Sax. *Quidm.* LAT. 219. 242.

**THANK**, *n.* Sax. Thankfulness; good will. R. 2741. In **THANKS**—is taken more.—

*En plus grand ore, sent recess.* Orig.

So the phrases, *his thanks, his thanks*, (see the *n.* on ver. 1628.) answer to the French, *son gré, leur gré*.

**THANNE**, **THAN**, *adv.* Sax. Then. 12260. 12284.

**THAR**, *v.* Sax. *imper.* Behoveth. See the *n.* on ver. 4318.

**THATTE**, **THAT**, *pron. dem.* Sax. used as a relative. 10. 699. *Thatte Seint Peter had.* So this verse should be written.

—*That he might.* 5456. As much as he was able; *Quod potuit*.—It is sometimes put, not inelegantly, for the same. See ver. 194. *With gris, and THAT the finest of the lond.* ver. 346. *Of fish and flesh, and THAT so plentiful.* ver. 3517. *Shal fall a rain, and THAT so wild and wood.* See also ver. 563. 3638. 9280.

**THATTE**, **THAT**, *conj.* Sax. *Quidd.* LAT. 131. 226. 8.

**THE**, *prep. art.* Sax. See the Essay, &c. p. xxiv. The when prefixed to adjectives, or adverbs, in the comparative degree, is generally to be considered as a corruption of *py*, which was commonly put by the Saxons for *pam*, the ablative *ca. stng.* of the art. **PAT**, used as a pronoun.

**THE merier**. 716. *So latid.* **THE more mery**. 804. *So keliours.* Of the same construction are the phrases—*Yel fare they THE worse.* 4348. *Yel fare I never THE bet.* 7533.

When *the* is repeated with a second comparative, either *adj.* or *adv.* the first *the* is to be understood in the sense of the LAT. *Quo*. See ver. 5855.

*The more it brenneth, the more it hath desire To consume every thing.*—

—*Quo magis—eo magis*—And ver. 6289.

And say the further that she was in age,  
The more trice (if that it were possible)  
She was to him in love and more penible.

Sometimes the first *the* is omitted, as in the phrases, *Ever longer the worse.* 3870. *Ever longer the more.* 8563. See P. 170, col. 1, l. 30. For certes, if a man hadde a dedly wound, *ever the longer* that he taried to warishe himself, the more wold it corrupt—and also the wound wold be the worse for to hele.

— *v.* Sax. To thrive. See the *n.* on ver. 3062. *! 2, 7, 8 /*

**THEDONE**, *n.* Sax. Thrift; success. 13335.

**THEFELY**, *adj.* Sax. Like a thief. L. W. 1779.

**THENNES**, **THENNE**, *adv.* Sax. Thence. 5463. 6723.

**THENNESFORTH**, *adv.* Sax. From thennesforth. 13495.

From that time forward.

**THEODMAN**, *pr. n.* 9594. See the note.

**THEOPHRAST**, *pr. n.* 9170. See the Discourse, &c. n. 19.

and the *n.* on ver. 9172.

**THER**, *adv.* Sax. There, in that place; is frequently used

in the sense of *Where*. 7348. 7378. 12059.

**THER**, in composition, signifies *that*, without including any idea of place. See **HERE**. *Therabouten.* 939. *Theragain*, 7070. *Therbefore.* 2036. *Therby.* 7706. *Therfore.* 777. *Therfro.* R. 4941. *Thergaine.* R. 6355. *Therof.* 3781. *Theron.* 161. *Therto.* 153. *Therwith.* 3780. *Therwithall.* 564.

**THEWES**, *n. pl.* Sax. Manners; qualities. 8285. 9416.

**THIDER**, *adv.* Sax. Thither, to that place. 1255.

**THIDWARD**, *adv.* Sax. Toward that place. 2532.

**THILKE**, *adj.* Sax. This same, that same. 5600. 5759.

**THINKE**, *v.* Sax. To consider. 12361. It is very frequently used as an *Impersonal* in the *pr.* and *pa. t.* in the sense of **SEENETH**, or **SEEMED**. *Me thinketh.* 3170. *Him thinketh.* 3614. *Him thoughte.* 956. *Hire thoughte.* 9638. *Hwe thinketh you ?* 7796. *Hem thoughte.* 8282.

**THINNE**, *adj.* Sax. Slender; small. 9556. *A thinne imagination.* Bo. iii. pr. 3. *Tenui imagine.* *A thinne suspicion.* Bo. iii. pr. 12. *Tenui suspitione.*

**THIRLE**, *v.* Sax. To pierce through. 3712.

**THIS**, *pron. demonstr.* Sax. is sometimes put for the prepositive article. 12619. **THISE**, *pl.* 6142. 11508.

**TWO**, *prep. art. pl.* Da. Sax. used as a demonstrative pronoun. *Those.* 2315. 2333. 19482. M. 114, col. 2, l. 42.

**THO**, *adv.* Sax. Then. 2214. 2283.

**THOLE**, *v.* Sax. To suffer. 7128. *And what mischance and male case Christ for man THOLED.* P. P. 65 b.

**THORE**. R. 1853. is put for **THERE**, for the sake of the rhyme.

**THORPE**, *n.* Sax. A village. 8075. 17323.

**THOUGHTEN**, *pa. t. pl.* of **THINK**. *v.* Sax. 7612.

**THRALL**, *n.* Sax. A slave, or villain. P. 169, col. 1, l. 42.

**THRALLE**, *v.* To enslave. T. II. 773.

**THRASTE**, *pa. t.* of **THRESTE**. 12194.

**THRED-BARE**, *adj.* Sax. Having the threads bare, the nap being worn away. 16358.

**THRENOTE**. Du. 376. should be written, in two words, *Are mote*, as in the Bodl. MSS. *Mot. n.* Fr. is explained by *Chotgrave* to signify, among other things, *the note winded by a huntsman on his horn*.

**THREPE**, *v.* Sax. To call. 16294.

**THRESTE**, *v.* Sax. To thrust. 2614. 2677.

**THRESWOLD**, *n.* Sax. A threshold. 3482. 8164.

**THRETE**, *v.* Sax. To threaten. L. W. 754.

**THRETTENE**, *num.* Sax. Thirteen. 7841.

**THRIDDE**, *adj.* Sax. Third. 1465. 2373.

**THRIE**, **THRIES**, *adv.* Sax. Thrice. 63. 564. T. II. 89. 1260.

**THRILLED** for **THIRLED**, *pa. t.* of **THIRLE**. R. 7635.

**THRINGE**, *v.* Sax. To thrust. R. 7419. T. IV. 66.

**THRIST**, *pa. t.* of **THRESTE**. T. III. 1580.

**THRONGE**, *pa. t.* of **THRINGE**. 10227.

**THROPE** for **THORPE**. A. F. 350.

**THROSTEL**, *n.* Sax. A thrush. 13609.

**THROW**, *n.* Sax. Time. *But a throw.* 5373. *But a little while.* *Anythrow.* 14148. *Any space of time.* *Many a throw.* 16409. *Many times.*

**THRUST** for **THURST**, *n.* Sax. Thirst. R. 5713.

**THRUSTY** for **THURSTY**, *adj.* Sax. Thirsty. Magd. 708.

**THUNGH**, *prep.* Sax. Through. 2614. 9.—*By means of.* 1330, l.

**THURGHFARE**, *n.* Sax. A passage. 2849.

**THURGHOUT**, *prep.* Sax. Throughout; quite through. 1096. 2569.

**THURROK**, *n.* Sax. The hold of a ship. P. 154, col. 1, l. 54. See the note.

**THWITEL**, *n.* Sax. A whistle; *Cuteilus*. 3931.

**THWITTEN**, *part. pa.* Chipped with a knife; whittled. R. 933. *Bien doll.* Orig.

**TIDDE**, *part. pa.* of **TIDE**, *v.* Sax. Happened. *That shalde never have tidde so faire a grace.* T. I. 948. *So fair a fortune should never have happened to thee.*

**TIDIFE**, *n.* 10662. See the note.

**TIKEL**, *adj.* Sax. Uncertain. 3428.

**TIL**, *prep.* Sax. To. 2067. 2906. *Hire-till.* 10812. To her.

**TIMBESTERE**, *n.* R. 763 is supposed by Lye, (*Etym. Ling. Angl.* in v.) to mean the same with **Tombstere**. The Orig. French has been quoted above in v. **SALOTHE**, which Chaucer has thus imitated.

*There was many a timbestere  
And sailours, that, I dare well sweere,  
Ycouthe hir craft full parfitly.  
The timbres up full subtilly  
Thei casten, and hent hem full oft  
Upon a finger faire and soft,  
That thei ne failed never mo.*

According to this description, it should rather seem, that a **Timbestere** was a woman, (see the *n.* on ver. 2019.) who plaid tricks with *timbres*, basons of some sort or other, by throwing them up into the air, and catching them upon a single finger; a kind of Balance-mistress.

**TIMBRES**, *n. pl.* Fr. R. 772. Basons. See **TIMBESTERE**.

**TIPET**, *n.* Sax. A tipet. 3951.

**TIPPED**, *part. pa.* Headed; covered at the tip, or top. 7319. 7322.

**TIPPOON**, *n. pl.* Sax. Tiptoes; the extremities of the toes. 15313.

**TIRE**, *v.* Fr. To pluck; to feed upon. In the manner of

- birds of prey. T. l. 788. *For look how that a goshaue*  
*TYRETH.* (*Conf. Am.* 132. b.)
- TISSEU**, n. FR. A ribband. T. II. 639.
- TITE** for **TIDETH**. T. l. 334. Happeneth.
- TITERING**, n. SAX. Courtship. T. II. 1744.
- TITLES**, *adj.* SAX. Without title. 17172.
- TITUS LIVIUS**, *pr.* n. 11935. L. W. 1681. The Roman historian.
- TO**, *adv.* SAX. Too. 677. 996.
- *prep.* SAX. To day. 7758. 7821. On this day. To  
 morrow. 782. 1612. On the morrow, the following day.  
 To yere. 5750. T. III. 242. F. l. 84. In this year.
- TO**, in composition with verbs, is generally augmenta-  
 tive. 2611. *The helmes they to HEWEN and to SHREDE.* l. c.  
 hewe and cut to pieces. 2613. *The bones they to SHRETE.*  
 l. c. break in pieces. **TO-SHRETN.** 2693. **TO-DASHED.** T.  
 II. 640. Much bruised. **TO-RENT.** 12036. Rent in pieces.  
**TO-SWITHE.** 12453. Labour greatly.—Sometimes the *adv.*  
 All is added. **AL-TO-RENT.** 14267. **ALL-TO-SHARE.** R.  
 1888. Entirely cut to pieces. **ALL-TO-SHENT.** *Ibid.* 1903.  
 Entirely ruined.
- TOFORE**, **TOFOREN**, *prep.* SAX. Before. M. 113. col. 1, l. 55.  
**TOGITHERA**, *adv.* SAX. Together. T. IV. 1322.
- TOLD**, *pa. t.* of **TELL**, v. SAX. Accounted. 14404.
- TOMBERTH**, n. SAX. A dancing-woman T. II. 336. b.
- TOMBERTHES**, *pl.* 12411. See the note.
- TOMEDEN**, T. II. 1201. should be written as two words. *To*  
*mede*, or *to medes*, according to the Saxon usage, signifies  
 for reward, in return.
- TONE**, n. *pl.* SAX. Tones. 14968. F. III. 938.
- TONNE GRET**, *adj.* Of the circumference of a tun. 1906.
- TONE**, n. *pl.* 13337. as **TONE**.
- TORRETE**, n. *pl.* FR. Rings. See the note on ver. 2154.
- TORNE**, v. FR. To turn. 2380. *The devil out of his skinne*  
*Him torne!* 16742. May the devil turn him, inside out!
- TORNED**, *part. pa.* 16630.
- TORTUOUS**, *adj.* FR. Oblique; winding. 4722.
- TOTLER**, n. A whispher. L. W. 353.
- TOTLAR**, *Susurro.* Prompt. Parv.
- TOUTY**, *adj.* SAX. Dirty. 4261.
- TOUGH**, *adj.* SAX. Difficult. *And maketh it full tough.*  
 13309. And takes a great deal of pains. *Or make it*  
*tough.* T. v. 101. Or take pains about it. See also T. II.  
 1025. III. 87. *And make it neither tough ne quent.* Du.  
 631. Made no difficulty or strangeness.
- At be it ye make it never as tough,*  
*To me your labour is in vane.*  
 MS. Maltland. The mourning maiden.  
*Will, Swane make wonder treche.*  
*Ibid. Pebbis to the play.* St. 21.
- TOUGHT**, *adj.* SAX. Tight. 7849.
- TOUR**, n. FR. A tower. 1032.
- TOURNET**, n. R. 4164. should be written *Tourette*, as in MS.  
 Hunter. A turret, or small tower.
- TOUT**, n. The backside. 3810. 3851.
- TOWAIL**, n. FR. A towel. 14963. 14671.
- TOWARDES**, *prep.* SAX. Toward. 12640.
- TOWEL**, n. 7730. is perhaps put for **TESSEL**; a pipe  
 fundament.
- TRACE**, n. FR. A track, or path. 176.—A train. L.
- TRAD**, *pa. t.* of **TREAD**, v. SAX. Trod. 15184.
- TRAGTOUR**, n. F. III. 167. as **TRENGTOUR**.
- TRAIK**, v. FR. To betray. F. l. 390.
- TRAIK**, n. *pl.* FR. *Trails.* The traces, by which horses  
 draw. 2141. T. l. 222.
- TRANIBENK**, *pr.* n. A kingdom in Africa. See the n. on  
 ver. 57.
- TRANSNEW**, v. FR. To transform. 8261. T. IV. 467.
- TRAPPURES**, n. *pl.* HARR. LAT. The cloths, with which  
 horses were covered for parade. 2501. See Du Cange, in  
 v. **TRAPPATURA**.
- TRASHED**, *part. pa.* Betrayed. R. 3231.
- TRAVE**, n. 7164. See the note. Bp. Douglas frequently  
 uses *Trat* for an old woman. *En. VII.* 410. *in vultus esse*  
*transformat aniles*—he renders,  
*And hir in schape transformyt of ane trat.*  
 See al-o, p. 98, 28. *ould trat*—and p. 122, 36.
- TRAVE**, n. FR. *Travail.* A frame, in which farriers put un-  
 ruly horses. 3282.
- TRE**, n. SAX. A tree; wood. 5682. *Cristes tre.* 3765. The  
 Cross.
- TRECHOUR**, n. FR. A client. R. 6308. 7169.
- TREDE-FOULE**, n. A treader of hens; a cock. 13681. 13457.
- TRENGTOUR**, n. See the n. on ver. 11453.
- TRENGHANT**, *part. pr.* FR. Cutting. 3928.
- TRENTAL**, n. See the n. on ver. 7293.
- TREPEGET**, n. FR. A military engine. R. 6279. See Du  
 Cange, in v. **TREBUCHETUM**.
- TRESS**, n. FR. An artificial lock, or gathering of hair.  
 1051. See Du Cange, in v. **TRICA**, **TRICIA**.
- TRESSED**, *part. pa.* Gathered in a tress, or tresses. 5926.
- TRESSOUR**, n. An instrument used in tressing the hair; or  
 an ornament of it, when tressed. R. 568. 3717. See Du  
 Cange, in v. **TRESSORIUM**.
- TRETABLE**, *adj.* FR. Tractable. P. 161, col. 1, l. 67. L. W.  
 411. *Jo.*
- TRETTE**, v. FR. To treat; to discourse. 10534.
- TRETE**, n. Treaty. 9506.
- TRETY**, n. Treaty. T. IV. 64. 670.
- *adj.* FR. Long and well proportioned. 152. R.  
 1016. 1216.
- TREWE**, n. FR. A truce. T. IV. 1312.
- *adj.* SAX. True, faithful. 2237. 3706.
- TREWE-LOVE**, n. 3692. See the note. Since which Mr.  
 Stevens has very obligingly suggested to me, that there  
 is a herb called *True-love*, according to Gerard, in his  
 Herbal. Ed. 1597. p. 328. "HARBA PARIS. One-berrie,  
 or herbe *True-love*—at the very top whereof come forth  
 fower leaves, directly set one against another, in manner  
 of a Burgunnon cross, or a true love knot; for which  
 cause among the ancients it hath been called herbe  
*True-love.*" This herb, however, to the best of my re-  
 membrance, is rather too large to be carried conveniently  
 under the tongue.—A *trevelore*, of the same or an other  
 sort, is mentioned in the concluding stanza of the Court  
 of Love.
- Eke eche at other threw the floures bright,  
 The primrose, the violete, and the gold;  
 So than as I beheld the royal sight,  
 My lady gan me sodenly behold.  
 And with a *trevelore*, *plitted many a fold*,  
 She smote me through the very heart as blive,  
 And Venus yet I thanke I am alive.
- TRIACLE**, n. FR. corruption of *Theriacque*. A remedy, in  
 general. 4829. 12248.
- TRICE**, v. SAX. To thrust. 14443.
- TRIE**, *adj.* 15786. f. Tried or refined. Gloss. Ur.
- TRILL**, v. SAX. To twirl; to turn round. 10630.
- v. *neut.* To roll; to trickle. 7446. 13604.
- TRINE**, *adj.* FR. Triple. *Trine compas.* 15513. The Trinity.  
 See **COMPAS**.
- TRIPPE**, n. 7323. evidently means a small piece of cheese.  
*Les tripes d'un fagot*, in FR. are *The smallest sticks in a*  
*fagot.* Cotgrave.
- TRISTE**, v. for **TRUSTE**. T. II. 247.
- TRISTE**, n. T. II. 1534. A post or station in hunting. *Cowell*.  
 This seems to be the true meaning of the word, though  
 the etymology is not so clear.
- TRUMPE**, n. FR. A trumpet. 2176. 2813.
- TRUMFOUR**, n. A trumpeter. 2673.
- TRONCHOUR**, n. FR. A spear, without a head. 2617.
- TRONE**, n. FR. A throne. 2531. 12776.
- TROPHIE**, *pr.* n. 14123. See the note. It afterwards occurred  
 to me that the reference might possibly be to the original  
 of the *Troilus* and *Cresside*, which, according to Lydgate,  
 was called *Trophe*; (see the n. on P. 172, col. 2, l. 23, in  
 page 209 of this edit.) but I cannot find any such passage  
 as is here quoted, in the *Flostrata*.
- TROTULA**, *pr.* n. 6230. See the n. on ver. 6263.
- TROUBLE**, *adj.* FR. Dark, gloomy. 6341.
- TROUBLER**, *comp. d.* R. 7020.
- TROWANDISE**, R. 3654. for **TRUANDISE**.
- TROWE**, v. SAX. To believe. 7139. 7567.
- TRUANDISE**, n. FR. Begging. R. 6564.
- TRUANDING**, R. 6721.
- TULLS**, v. SAX. To allure. 4132. See ver. 5207.



TULLIUS, *pr. n.* M. 110, col. 1, l. 64. M. Tullius Cicero. See also R. 3286. A. F. 31.

TURKISH, *n. Fr.* A sort of precious stone. C. L. 80.

— *adj. Fr.* Turkish. 2897. See the note.

TURMENTIA, *n. Fr.* Torment. 14435.

TURVES, *pl. of TURF, n. Sax.* 10109.

TWAIN, *T. III.* 551. TWAY, 794. TWKY, 1686. TWINE, 8526. *numm. Sax.* Two.

TWIFOLD, *adj. Sax.* Double. 16034.

TWICE, *adv. Sax.* Twice. 4346.

TWIGHT, *pa. t. and part. of TWITCH, v. Sax.* Pulled; Plucked. 7145. 10732.

TWINK, *v. Sax.* To depart from a place, or thing. 837. 12364.

TWINNED, *part. pa.* Separated. T. iv. 476.

TWIRE, *v. Bo. III.* m. 2. *Twireth* seems to be the translation of *resurrat*; spoken of a bird.

TWIST, *n. Sax.* A twig. 10223.

TWISTE, *v. Sax.* To twist; to pull hard. 10680.

TWISTE, *pa. t.* Twitched. 9679.

## V.

VALENCE, *pr. n. A. F.* 272. Valencia in Spain. Gloss. *Ur.*

VALERIE, *pr. n.* 6253. See the Discourse, &c. n. 19.

VALERIE, 14638. VALERIUS, 6747. *pr. n.* Valerius Maximus.

VALURE, *n. Fr.* Value. R. 5235.

VARIEN, *inf. m. v. Fr.* To change; to alter. T. II. 1621.

VARIANT, *part. pr.* 16643. Changeable.

VAMALAGE, *n. Fr.* Valour; courage. 3056. R. 5871.

VAYASOUR, *n.* 362. See the note.

VAINTOUR, *n. Fr.* A boaster. T. II. 724.

VECKE, *n. Ital.* An old woman. R. 4286. 4495.

VEINE-RODE, *n.* Blood drawn from a vein. 2749.

VENDABLE, *adj. Fr.* To be sold. R. 5804.

VENKIE, *n. Fr.* Hunting. 166. 2310.

VENGE, *v. Fr.* To revenge. M. 112, col. 1, l. 58.

VEVINE, *n. Fr.* Poison; venom. 2753.

VENTOUSING, *n. Fr.* Cupping. 2749.

VER *n. LAT.* The Spring. T. I. 157.

VERAUNT, *adv. Fr.* Truly. 13643.

VERAY, *adj. Fr.* True. 6786.

VERDERKSE, *n. Fr.* *Verd du gris.* The rust of brass; so called from its colour, a grey green. 16238.

VENDITE, *n. Fr.* Judgement; sentence. 783. A. F. 503.

VERGER, *n. Fr.* A garden. R. 3618. 3831.

VERMEIL, *adj. Fr.* Of a vermilion colour. R. 3645.

VERMELET, *adj. C. L.* 142. as VERMEILE.

VERNAKE, 9681. See the note.

VERNICKE, *n.* 647. diminutive of *Veronike*, *Fr.* A copy in miniature of the picture of Christ, which is supposed to have been miraculously imprinted upon a handkerchief, preserved in the church of St. Peter at Rome. Du Cange, in *v. VERONICA*. Madox, *Form. Angl.* p. 428. Testam. Joh. de Nevill. an. 1386. *Item Domino Archiepiscopo Eborum fratri meo l. testimentum rubeum de velcet cum le verouike (r. veronike) in granis rosarum desuper broudata (r. broudata).* It was usual for persons returning from pilgrimages to bring with them certain tokens of the several places which they had visited; and therefore the Pardoner, who is just arrived from Rome, is represented with a *vernicle*, *sewed upon his cappe*. See P. P. 28. b.

*An hundred amplex on hys hatte sette,  
Sygnes of Synay and shelles of Calice,  
And many a crouch on his cloke and kayes of Rome,  
And the vernicle before, for men should knowe  
And se by hys signes, whom he sought hadde.*

VERNISH, *v. Fr.* To varnish. 4147.

VERRE, *n. Fr.* Glass. T. II. 867.

VERSIPOUR, *n. Fr.* A maker of verses; a poet. M. 116, col. 2, l. 45.

VERTULES, *adj.* Without efficacy. T. II. 344.

VERTUOUS, *adj. Fr.* Active; efficacious. 251.

VESKEL, *n. Fr.* *Vaisselle*. Plate. 14154. 14310.

UGLY, *adj. Sax.* Horrid; frightful. 8549.

VIAGE, *n. Fr.* A journey by sea or land. 77. 794.

VICARY, *n. LAT.* A vicar. 17333.

VICK, *n. Fr.* The newel, or upright centre of a winding stair-case. C. D. 1310.

VIGILE, *n. Fr.* The eve of a festival. 372. — The wake, or watching of a dead body. T. v. 305. See the *n.* on ver. 2896.

VIGILIE, *n. LAT.* as *VIGIL*. 6138.

VILANIE, *n. Fr.* Any thing unbecoming a gentleman. 72. 6733.

VIOLENT, *adj. LAT.* Full of wins. 6049. 7813.

VIRELAYE, *n. Fr.* 11260. "A round, freeman's song." Cotgrave. There is a particular description of a *Virelay*, in the *Jardin de plaisance*. fol. xii. where it makes the *decima sexta species Rhetorice Gallicane*.

VIRGILE, *pr. n.* 7101. L. W. 324. F. I. 449.

VIRAGE, *v. Fr.* To front; to face a thing. 10147.

VIRE, *n.* 1967. In *MS. A. vire*. Perhaps we should read *rese*, a Saxon word signifying violence, impetuously. See T. iv. 350. where (according to Gloss. *Ur.*) instead of *rese* some *MS.* have *rese*; and the *Prolog.* to the *Contin.* of the *Can.* T. ver. 496. 548. If this correction be admitted, we must also read in the next line *rese* for *rise*, with *MS. A.*

VITAILLE, *n. Fr.* Victuals. 3551. 7935.

VITELLON, *pr. n.* 10546. See the note.

UNRETIDE, *v. Sax.* To fall to happen. *Bo. v. pr. 6.*

UNBODIE, *v. Sax.* To leave the body. T. v. 1549.

UNBOKEL, *v. Fr.* To unbuckle; to open. 17337.

OUNCE, *n. Fr. LAT.* Ounce. 16722. 16734.

UNCOMMITTED, *part. pa.* *A. F.* 518. *Office uncommitted of anoyeth.* Compare ver. 16334. 5.

UNCONNING, *part. pr.* Ignorant. 2395.

— *n.* Ignorance. R. K. 618.

UNCONVENABLE, *adj.* Inconvenient. *Bo. iv. pr. 6.*

UNCOUPLE, *v.* To go loose; *Metaphor* from hounds. 14480.

UNCOUPLINGS, *n.* Letting loose. *Du.* 377.

UNCOUTH, *part. pa.* Unknown. See *CGT.*—Uncommon; not vulgar; elegant. 10598. T. III. 1803. F. L. 276. C. D. 93.

UNCOUTHLY, *adv.* Uncommonly. R. 584.

UNDEPARTABLE, *adj.* Not capable of departing. R. iv. pr. 3.

UNDERFONG, *v. Sax.* To undertake. R. 5709.

UNDERGOWE, *part. pa.* Undergrown; of a low stature. 156.

UNDERKING, *n. Sax.* An inferior. P. 164, col. 1, l. 13.

UNDERMELE, *n. Sax.* 6457. See the note. Upon further consideration, I am rather inclined to believe, that *undermele* signifies the time after the meal of dinner; the afternoon. UNDERMELE. *Postmeridies*. Prompt. Parv.

UNDERN, *n. Sax.* The third hour of the artificial day; nine of the clock. A. M. 15228. See the *n.* on ver. 8136. *Till it was UNDERNE hygh, and more.* Conf. Am. 103. b.

UNDERNONE, *pa. t.* of UNDERNIME, *v. Sax.* Took up; received. 15711.

UNDERPIGHT, *pa. t.* See *PIGHT*. *He drank, and wel his girdel underpight.* 5209. He drank, and stuffed his girdle well.

UNDERSPORE, *v. Sax.* To raise a thing, by putting a *spere*, or pole, under it. 3465.

UNDERSTONDE, *part. pa.* Understood. 4940. 9559.

UNDO, *v. Sax.* To unfold. R. 9.

UNDOUBTUS, *adj.* Undoubted. B. v. pr. 1. *Indubitata*. Orig. See *DOUTUS*.

UNESCHUABLE, *adj. Sax.* Unavoidable. *Bo. v. pr. 1.* *Inevitabili*. Orig.

UNESK, *n.* Uneariness. C. D. 867.

UN-ETH, UN-ETHES, *adv. Sax.* Scarcely; not easily. 3123. 7685.

UNFANOUS, *adj.* Unknown. F. III. 56.

UNFESTLICHE, *adj.* Not suitable to a feast. 10680.

UNGOODELY, *adj.* Uncivil; ungenteel. R. 3741. *That I n'olds holde hire UNGOODELY.* Orig. *Que je ne tenisse a vilaine.*

UNORABLE, *adj.* Unpleasant; disagreeable. *Bo. I. m. 1.* *Ingratas*. Orig.

UNHKLK, *n. Sax.* Misfortune. 12050.

UNHIDE, *v.* To discover. R. 2168.

UNJOINE, *v.* To separate; to disjoin. *Bo. III. pr. 12.*

UNKINDLY, *adv.* Unnaturally. 12419.

UNKNOWNABLE, *adj.* Incapable of being known. *Bo. II. m. 7.* *Ignorabiks*. Orig.

UNLETTED, *part. pa.* Undisturbed. C. D. 1829.

UNLOVEN, *v.* To cease loving. T. v. 1697.

UNLUET, *n.* Dialike. P. 162, col. 1, l. 9.

\* *MS. Gales.* Perhaps it should be *Galice*. See ver. 468.

## GLOSSARY.

had on a courtesy, &c. Or perhaps it is an elliptical expression for *He had upon him*. See *ver.* 6141.

UPPERMOST, *adj. superl.* Highest. *Ho.* 1. pr. 1.

UPRIGHT, *adj.* Sax. *Strait*. *Upright* as a *dolt*. 3264.

Strait as an arrow. It is applied indifferently to persons *lying*, as well as standing. 4364. 6350. 13246. 13541. 14480. 15048.

USCHOR, *n.* A hedge-hog. R. 3135.

USE, *n.* Fa. Fortune; destiny. B. K. 152. C. L. 654.

USED, *adj.* Fortunate. *We*l *word.* C. D. 144.

USAGE, *n.* Fa. Experience; practice. 9450.

USANT, *part. pr.* Fa. Using; accustomed. 3238. P. 163, col. 2, l. 14.

UTTER, *comp. d.* of OUT, *ade.* Sax. Outward; more out. 15906. T. III. 661.

UTTERMOST, *superl. d.* Uttermost. 8663.

UTTERLY, *adv.* Fa. *Utterément*. Thoroughly; entirely. 8629. L. W. 1488.

UTTERN, *to* *v.* of *Utter*, *v.* SAX. To publish 16302.

—— *pr. t. n'.* 6103. Give out; accl.

## W.

WADE, *pr. n.* 3238. See the note.—See also Cambden. Brit. 507. and Charlton's Hist. of Whitby, p. 40.

——. v. S<sup>ax</sup>. LAT. To pass through water, without swimming. 7066.—To pass, generally. 9558. 14412. q. ?

WAFERS, *n. pl.* Sellers of wafers; a sort of cakes. 15413.

WAFURES, *n. pl.* Wafers; a sort of cakes. 3378.

WAGST. 3381. See the note. But, upon the whole, I believe that a *light waget* should be understood to mean a *light blue colour*.

WAIMENTING, *n. Sax.* Lamentation. 904. 907.

WAIN, *v. Sax.* A wagon. Bo. iv. m. l.

WAITE, *v. Fr.* To watch. 3895.

WAKE, *v. Sax.* To watch. 7482. C. D. 1904.

WALACHIE, *pr. n.* Walachia. Du. 1024.

WALA WA, or WA LA WA, *interj. Sax.* Woe! alas! 946. See the note. *W'a la wa the wail!* 4790. Alas the time

WALNUT, *n. Sax.* A walnut, i. e. a French, or foreign nut. F. iii. 191.

WALWE, *v. Sax.* To tumble about; to wallow. 6667. 6684.

WALWING, *part. pr.* 3616.

WAN, *pg. t. of* WIN, *v. Sax.* Gained. 444. 7059.

WANE, *v. Sax.* To decrease. 3084. 3127.

WANG, *n. Sax.* A cheek-tooth. 4698.

WANGOR, *n. Sax.* A support for the cheek; a pillow. 3960.

WANROPE, *n. Sax.* Despair. 1251. P. 172. col. 1, l. 21.

WANTRUST, *n. Sax.* Distrust. 17230.

WAPED, *part. pa. Sax.* Stupefied. An. 217.

WARDECOOPS, *n. Fr.* Body-guard. 5641.

WARDEIN, *n. Fr.* A warden of a College. 3097.—A guard. T. ii. 666.—A keeper of a gate. T. v. 1177. WARDEINS, *pl. Guards*; watchmen. 6798.

WARDRESE. 4099. perhaps a corruption of the *Fr. Garde arrivee*.

WARDROPE, *n. Fr. Garderobe*. A house of office. 13502.

WARIANGLE. 6980. See the note; and Cotgrave, in *v. Pile* and *Engroule*, where he explains "the *Wariangle* to be a small *Woodpecker*, black and white of colour, and but half as big as the ordinary green one."

WARICE, WARISE, *v. Fr.* To heal. 18640.—*v. neut.* To recover from sickness. M. 107, col. 1, l. 9.

WARION, *n. R.* 1537. seems to be put for Reward. *Sen perille*. Orig. WARION. *Donalivum*. Prompt. Parv.

WARNS, *v. Sax.* To caution; to apprise. 8949. 10668.—To refuse. R. 3552. 3730.

WARNESTORS, *v. Sax.* To furnish; to store. M. 113, col. 1, l. 22.

WARRE, *v. Sax.* To abuse; to speak evil of. 4792. T. ii. 1619.

WASHE, *part. pa. of* WASH, *v. Sax.* 3311.

WASTE-BREAD. 147. Cake-bread; Bread made of the finest flower; from the *Fr. Gâteau*, a cake.

WASTOUR, *n. Fr.* A spoiler. 9408.

WAT, *v. Sax.* To know. R. 5399.

WATERING OF SAINT THOMAS. 592. A place for watering horses, I suppose, a little out of the borough of South wark, in the road to Canterbury. The same place, I apprehend, was afterwards called *St. Thomas a Water*.

- ings*, probably from some chapel dedicated to that Saint. It was a place of execution in Q. Elizabeth's time. Wood. Ath. Oxon. i. 229.
- WATLYNGE STREET. F. ii. 431. An old street in London.
- WAVE, *pa. t. of* WEAVE, *v. SAX.* Wove. L. W. 2353.
- WAVE, *n. SAX.* A wave. 1980.
- WAY, *n. SAX.* Is often put for the *time* in which a certain space can be passed through. *A furlong way.* 3637. 4197. *A mile way.* 13208. Any short time.—*At the leste way* 16144. seems to signify no more than *At the lest.* 4456. At least.—*A devil way.* 3136. 7834. *A twenty devil way.* 3713. 4255. 10250.
- adv.* Away. *Do way.* 3287. 15955. Do away; put away.
- WAVE, *v. SAX.* To weigh. L. W. 308.—To press with weight. L. W. 1798.
- WEBS, *n. SAX.* A weaver. 364.
- WEDDE, *n. SAX.* A pawn, or pledge. *To wedde.* 1220. 13353. For a pawn. *And leyde to wedde* Normandic. R. G. 393.
- WEDE, *n. SAX.* Clothing; apparel. 8739. *Under wede.* 13045. See the note; and R. 6359. where *Under wede* seems to signify simply *In my clothing*.
- n. SAX.* A weed; an useless herb. T. i. 947.
- WEENE, A word to express the neighing of a horse. 4064. P. P. 36 b.
- WEIVE, *v. SAX.* To forsake. 17197. 17344.—To decline; to refuse. T. ii. 284.
- v. neut.* To depart. 9357. 10298.
- WEIVED, *part. pa.* Departed. 4728.
- WEKE, *v. SAX.* To grow weak. T. iv. 1144.
- adj. SAX.* Weak. 889.
- WEL, *adv. SAX.* Well; in a good condition. 4572. *WEL WAS THE WENCH, with him mighte mete.* C. D. 270. *WEL WERE THEY, that thider might twin.* It is joined to other adverbs and adjectives, as *full* and *right* are; and still more frequently to verbs; in the sense of the Fr. *bien*.
- WELDE, *v. SAX.* To govern; to wield. 7529. 14583.
- WELDY, *adj. SAX.* Active. T. ii. 636.
- WEL, *adv.* for *WEL.* 928. 2233.
- n. SAX.* Wealth; prosperity. 3103. 4695. 9166.
- WELFUL, *adj.* Productive of happiness. 4871.
- WELFULNESS, *n. SAX.* Happiness. Bo. ii. pr. 8.
- WELKE, *pa. t. of* WALK, *v. SAX.* Walked. C. D. 828.
- WELKED, *part. pa. of* WELKE, *v. SAX.* Withered; mouldy. 5859. 12672.
- WELKIN, *n. SAX.* The sky. 9000.
- WELL, *n. SAX.* A spring. 7924. *Well of vices.* 4743.—*of perfection.* 5689.—*of alle gentillesse.* 10819.
- WELLE, *v. SAX.* To flow, as from a spring. T. iv. 709.
- WELMETH, R. 1561. seems to be put for *WELLETH*; Springeth.
- WELTE, *pa. t. of* WELDE. 14016.
- WELTHEWED, *adj. SAX.* Endowed with good qualities. Bo. iv. pr. 6.
- WELWILLY, *adj. SAX.* Favourable; propitious. T. iii. 1263.
- WENME, *n. SAX.* A spot; a fault. 10435. R. 930. *Without wenme.* P. P. 98 b.
- WENCHE, *n. SAX.* A young woman. 4165. It is sometimes used in an opprobrious sense. 10076. *I am a gentil woman and no wench.*
- WEND, *for* WENDE, *pa. t. of* WENK. Thought; intended. 3693. 4257. WENDEN, *pl. T. iv.* 683. 724.
- WENPE, *v. SAX.* To go. 21. 1393.
- n. SAX.* Guess; conjecture. B. K. 463. perhaps for *WENE*.
- WENE, *n. SAX.* Guess; supposition. *Withouten wene.* R. 574. 732. Not by supposition; certainly.
- v. SAX.* To think; to suppose. 2197. 5893.
- WENT, *part. pa. of* WENDE. Gone. 3665. 13470.
- WENTE, WENT, *pa. t. of* WENDE. 78. 257. *Went at borde.* 6110. Lived as a boarder. WENTEN, *pl.* 822.
- WENT, *n. A way; a passage.* T. iii. 788. F. i. 182.—A turn, in walking. T. ii. 815. T. v. 605. in bed. T. ii. 63.
- v. F. L.* 150. for *WANT*.
- WEP, *pa. t. of* WEPPE, *v. SAX.* Wept. 2623.
- WEPPELY, *adj. SAX.* Causing tears. Bo. iii. m. 12.
- WEREN, *n. SAX.* A weapon. 1268.
- WERCHE, *n. & v.* as *WERKE*.
- WERE, *for* WEREN, *ind. m. pa. t. pl. of* AM, *v. SAX.* 12. G. It is sometimes used for *HAN*, according to the French custom, with reflected verbs. 12595. *Thise violence—WERE set hem in a tavern for to drinke.*—*S'entent mie, s'entent assis.*
- subj. m. pa. t. sing.* 89. *As it were.* 148. *If on of hem were.* 1150. *Whether she were.* 2115. *Were it.* 228. *It were a game.*
- v. SAX.* To wear. 2177. 2950.—To defend. 2532.
- n. Fr. Guerre.* Confusion. *His herte in such a were is set.* R. 5699. *Son cueur a mys en tel ouens.* Orig. 2969. L. W. 2676. *And in a were gan I weened with myself to dispute.* P. P. 54. b.
- n. SAX.* A wear, for catching fish. T. iii. 25. A. F. 138.
- WEREN, *pa. t. pl. of* AM, *v. SAX.* 22. 9. Were.
- WERKE, *n. SAX.* Work. 3311. 12274. WERKEN, *pl.* 3308.
- v. SAX.* To work. 3133. 3630. 1.
- WERNE, *v.* 5915. as *WARNE*.
- WERRE, *n. Fr.* War. 47. 1673. In T. v. 1392. it seems to be used as *WERE*.
- WERREIS, *v. Fr.* To make war against. 1546. 16374. 14338.
- WERSE, *comp. d. of* ILL, *adv. SAX.* Worse. 4348. 5753.
- comp. d. of* BAD, *adj. SAX.* Worse. 1226. 367.
- WERSTE, *superl. d. of* BAD. Worst. 9094. 13091.
- WEY, *adj. SAX.* Weary. 4105. 4934.
- WEAR, *pa. t. of* WASH, *v. SAX.* Washed. 2285. 4673.
- WESTREN, *inf. m. v. SAX.* To tend toward the West. T. ii. 906.
- WETE, *adj. SAX.* Wet. 2903.
- v. SAX.* To wet. T. iii. 1121.
- v. SAX.* To know. 7096. 10305.
- WETHER, *n. SAX.* The weather. 10305.—A castrated ram. 3542. T. iv. 1374.
- WETING, *n. SAX.* Knowledge. 1613. 6231.
- WEVE, *v. SAX.* To weave. L. W. 2341.
- v. SAX.* To put off; to prevent. T. ii. 1050. See *WEIVE*.
- WEX, *pa. t. of* WAXE, or *WEXE, v. SAX.* Waxed; grew. 4232.
- WEXING, *part. pr.* Increasing. 2060.
- WEYEDEN, *pa. t. pl.* Weighed. 456. See *WAYE*.
- WHAT, *pron. interrog. SAX.* is often used by itself, as a sort of interjection. 836. *WHAT? welcome be the cattle.*—3477. *WHAT? Nicholas! what how? man!*—3491. *WHAT? thinke on God.*—See also 3900. 6496. 7820.
- pron. indef.* Something. *A little what.* Bo. iv. pr. 6. *Mixen v. What for love and for distress.* 1455. Partly for love and partly f. d. See 3965. 4441. 2. F. ii. 43. *Wete ye what? 10305. 17031.* Do ye know something? *Ne elle what.* F. iii. 651. Nor any thing else. *Oud' aller v.*
- when joined to a *n. subst.* (either expressed or understood) is a mere *adj.* answering to *Qualis.* LAT. *Quel.* Fr. 40. 41. *What they weren.* 1705. *What men they were.*—*What so.* 524. 6873. *What that.* 5892. 7113. *Whatsoever.*
- WHEDER, *conj. SAX.* Whether. 9638. 15141.
- WHELM, *v. SAX.* T. i. 139. To sink; to depress. *WHELMYN A VERBELL.* *Supprima.* Prompt. Parv.
- WHENNES, *adv. SAX.* Whence. 12269.
- WHER, *conj. SAX.* Whether. 7032. 10893.
- adv. SAX.* Where. 423. 899.
- in composition, signifies *Whith.* See *HERE* and *THER.* *Wherefore.* 8533. *Wherein.* 13732. *Wherthrough.* R. 3733. *Wherwith.* 304.—or *What*, when used interrogatively. *Wherof.* 5654. *Wherwith.* 5713.
- WHETHER, *adj. SAX.* Which of two. 1858. 6876.
- WHETTE, *part. pa. of* WHET, *v. SAX.* Sharpened. T. v. 1728.
- WHICHE, *pron. rel. SAX.* Who. 16483. Whom. 13053.—*adj.* What; what sort of. 2677. 5621. 6875.
- WHILE, *n. SAX.* Time. *In this mene while.* 7027. In the mean time.—*How he might quite hire while.* 5004. How he might requite her time, pains, &c. L. W. 2225. R. 1542. *God can ful wel your while quite.* So M<sup>S</sup>. Hunter.
- WHILERE, *adv. SAX.* Some time before. 16796.
- WHILKE, *adj. SAX.* Which. 4076. 4169.

**WHILOM**, *adv.* SAX. Once, on a time. 861. 9121.  
**WHINE**, *v.* SAX. To utter a plaintive cry. 5068. See *An.* 158.  
**WHITE**, *adj.* SAX. Fair; specious. T. iii. 1573.  
 — *v.* To grow white. T. v. 276.  
**WHO**, *pron. interrog.* SAX. 1350. 1456.  
**WHOM**, *gen. ca. sing.* 5438.  
**WHO**, *pron. rel.* SAX. 3154. It is generally expressed by *that*.  
**WHOS**, *gen. ca. sing.* 7908. 9047.  
**WHO**, *pron. indef.* T. iii. 268.

*For weel thou wost, the name as yet of her  
 Amonges the people, as who sayth, halowed is.*

Where *as who sayth* seems to be equivalent to *as one should say*. See also *Du.* 559. In *Bo. iii.* pr. 4. the same phrase is used to introduce a fuller explanation of a passage; as we might use—*That is to say*.—Who so. 743.  
**WHO THAT**. 807. Whosoever. In ver. 4298. there is a phrase which I know not how to explain grammatically. *But sickerly she wiste who was who*. See also *C. D.* 1305, 6.  
**WIDE-WHERE**, *adv.* SAX. Widely; far and near. 4556. T. iii. 405. *Conf. Am.* 162.

**WIERDES**, *n. pl.* SAX. The fates, or destinies; *Parcæ*. T. iii. 618.

**WIF**, *n.* SAX. A wife. 2260.—A woman. 6580.

**WIFHOOD**, *n.* SAX. The state of a wife. 10064.

**WILKS**, *adj.* SAX. Unmarried. 9112. 9124.

**WILY**, *adj.* SAX. Becoming a wife. 8305.

**WIHT**, *n.* SAX. A person, male or female. 2106. 13017. 4234.—A small space of time. 4281.—Weight. T. ii. 1395. A witch. 3484. *WYTH CLEPYD NYGHT MARE*. *Epiatler*. *Prompt. Parv.*

— *adj.* SAX. Active; swift. 4081. 14273. *Of hem that ben deliver and wiht*. *Conf. Am.* 177 b.

**WIGHTES**, *n. pl.* Witches. 3479. See the note.

**WIKK**, *n.* for *WIKKE*. T. ii. 1273.

**WIKET** *n. Fr.* A wicket. 9019.

**WIKKE**, *adj.* SAX. Wicked. 5448. 15429.

**WILLIAM ST. AMOUR**, *pr. n.* R. 0763. A doctor of the Sorbonne in the thirteenth Century, who took a principal part in the dispute between the University of Paris and the Dominican Friars. See *Moreri*, in v.

**WILLY**, *adj.* SAX. Favourable. B. K. 628.

**WILN**, *for* *WILLEN*, *pl. n.* of *WILLE*, *v.* SAX. 6270. 12848.

**WILNE**, *v.* SAX. To desire. 2508.

**WIMPLE**, *n. Fr.* A covering for the neck. It is distinguished from a veil, which covered the head also. R. 3864.

*Wering a vaille*, instead of *wimple*,  
*As nonnes don in hir abbey*.

**WINDA\***, *n. Fr.* *Guindal*. An engine to raise stones, &c. 10496.

**WINDR**, *v.* SAX. To turn round. 6634.

— *as* *WENDE*; To go. R. 2955.

**WINK** *of APE*. 16093. See the note.

**WINNE**. R. 3674. *v.* SAX. To gain. 715. 7003. *To winne to*. R. 3674. To attain. See *L. W.* 2416.

**WIRRY**, *v.* SAX. To worry. R. 6264.

**WIS**, *adv.* SAX. Certainly. 11780. See *Ywis*.

**WISE**, *n.* SAX. Manner. 1663. T. ii. 921. *W. 264*.

**WISLY**, *adv.* SAX. Certainly. 1265. 3292.

**WISSE**, *v.* SAX. To teach; to direct. 6590. 6201. *So God me wisse*. 7440. *So may God direct me*. *WYSSYN ON LEDYN*. *Dirigo*. *Prompt. Parv.*

**WISTE**, *pa. t.* of *WISTE*, *v.* SAX. Knew. 1158. 8690.

**WITE**, *v.* SAX. To know. 9614. R. 7661.—To blame. 10051.

14528.—To impute to. *Wite ife the ale of Southwerk*. 3142. Impute it to the a. o. S.—or, Blame the a. o. S. for it. 14756.

— *n.* SAX. Blame. 16421.

**WITU**, *prep.* SAX. is used in the sense of *by*. 4693. *Was with the leon fette*; was devoured by the lion.—*In with his thought*. 9490. *In with hire bosom*. 9618. *Within his t.* Within hire b.—*With meschance*. 5316. 7797. *With meschance and with misaventure*. 6916. *With sorice and with meschance*. 4410. *With sorice*. 5890. 1622. are phrases of the same import as *God yete him meschance*. 5334. *God yete me sorice*. 5733. They are all to be considered as parenthetical curses, used with more or less seriousness. And so are the following phrases. *With*

*evil prefe*. 5029. *With harde grace*. 7810. *With sory groce*. 12810.

**WITHHOLDE**, *v.* SAX. To stop. 14002.

**WITHHOLDEN**, *WITHHOLD*, *part. pa.* Retained; detained. 513. M. 107, col. 2, l. 30. 15813.

**WITHSAIN**, *inf. m.* of *WITHSAY*, *v.* SAX. 1142.

**WITHSAYE**, *WITHSEYE*, *v.* SAX. To contradict; to deny. 15915. L. W. 367.

**WITNESFULLY**, *adv.* SAX. Evidently. *Bo. iv.* pr. 5.

**WITNESSE**, *n.* SAX. Testimony; a witness. *Witnesse on Mida*. 6533. *Witnesse on Mathew*. 1268.

**WITTE**, *n.* SAX. Understanding; capacity. 748. *To my witte*. 11187. F. ii. 194. In my judgement.

**WITTER**, *n. pl.* SAX. The senses of man. M. 114, col. 1, l. 61.

**WIVE**, *n.* for *WIF*. 1862.

**WIVERE**, *n.* SAX. A serpent. T. iii. 1012.

**WILATSON**, *adj.* SAX. Loathsome. 14542. 15059.

**WO**, *n.* SAX. Woe; sorrow. 1360. 1394. *Wo were us*. 8015.

*Wher me were wo*. 10893. are expressions derived from the Saxon language, in which *us* and *me* were equivalent to *nobis* and *mihi*, without the addition of the prep. *to*. — *adj.* SAX. Sorrowful. R. 312. C. L. 32.

**WOBEON**. 3372. 3658. Far gone in woe. See *BEON*.

**WODE**, *WOOD*, *adj.* SAX. Mad. 3507. Violent. 3517. *For wode*. L. W. 2409. F. iii. 657. Like any thing mad. See ver. 2952. *Into the fire, that brent as it were wode*.

— *v.* SAX. To grow mad. 15935. *Bo. iv.* m. 5.

**WODEWALE**, R. 658. *pr. n.* of a bird. *Widewael*. *BELO*. *Oriolus*. *Kilian*. According to Ray, our *Witell* is a sort of Wood-pecker. *Synop.* Av. p. 43.

**WOL**, *v.* *auxil.* SAX. To will. 42. 805. It is used sometimes by itself, the *infm.* *n.* being understood. 10810. *As she to water wolde*; i. e. would dissolve into w. 1093. *And to the wood he wol*; i. e. will go. 16453. *Fui many a man hath he begiled er this, And wol*; i. e. will begile.

**WOLIE**, *pa. t.* Would. 144. **WOLDEN**, *pl.* 4661.—*pa. t. subj. m.* *Wolde God!* 9933.5. *God wolde!* *Du.* 663. 814. *O that tid were willing!* *Ne wolde God!* 11068. *God forbid!*

**WOLD**, *part. pa.* Willed; been willing. M. 107, col. 1, l. 67. 114, col. 1, l. 63. L. W. 1207.

**WOMANHEDE**, *n.* Womanhood; the virtue of a woman. 8951.

**WONDE**, *v.* SAX. Wandian. To desist through fear. L. W. 1185.

— *pa. t.* C. M. V. 102. may perhaps be deduced from *WINDR*; to turn; to bend. See *T. i.* 257.

*The yerde is bet, that bowen wol and WINDR,  
 Than that that brest.*

— *pa. t.* of *WONE*. Dwelled. L. W. 2241.

**WONDER**, *adj.* SAX. Wonderful. 2075. 5465.

**WONE**, *n.* SAX. Custom; usage. 337. 13434. *Du.* 475.—

Habitation. 7687. 13730.—A heap; an assembly. R. 1673.

L. W. 2159.

— *v.* SAX. To dwell. 7745.

**WONEDEN**, *pa. t. pl.* Dwelled. 2929.

**WONED**, *part. pa.* Wont, accustomed. T. i. 511. *Du.* 140.

**WONING**, *n.* SAX. A dwelling. 601.

**WONNE**, *part. pa.* of *WINNE*, *v.* SAX. Won; conquered.

51. 59.—Begotten. L. W. 2553.

**WONT**, *part. pa.* of *WONE*. Accustomed. *Bo. iv.* pr. 4.

**WOOD**, *adj.* as *WODE*.

**WOONESS**, *n.* Madness. 3452. 12436.

**WORDLES**, *adj.* SAX. Speechless. C. D. 514.

**WORLDES**, *gen. c.* of *WORLD*, *n.* SAX. is used in the sense of the *adj.* *WORLELY*. *Every worlde is sore*. 2551. *My worlde is bliss*. 15206.

**WORT**, *n.* SAX. A cabbage. 8102. 15227.—New beer, in a state of fermentation. 16291.

**WORTH**, *v.* SAX. To be; to go. C. M. 95. *Wo worthe!* T. ii. 344.5.6. Unhappy be! or *Wo be to!*—To climb; to mount. 12681. T. ii. 1011.

**WOST** *for* *WOTEST*. 1165. 1176. 6144. Knowest.

**WOTE**, *WOT*, *v.* SAX. To know. 1142. 1262.4.5.

**WOT**, *pa. t.* Knew. 4036.

**WOWE** (rather *Woe*), *v.* SAX. To woo. T. v. 791. L. W. 1945.

WORE, *pa. l. of WARE, or WRER, v. SAX.* Grew. 7703.  
 WOKEN, *part. pa.* Grown. T. v. 1014.  
 WRATE, *v. SAX.* To betray; discover. T. iii. 283.  
 WRATHEN, *inf. m. v. SAX.* To make angry. 17029. P. 148, col. 2, l. 41.  
 WRAWE, *adj. SAX.* Peevish; angry. 16995. WRAWE.  
 FROWARD. ONGOODLY. *PERV. m. Bilousus.* Prompt. Part.  
 WRAWNESS, *n.* Peevishness. P. 162, col. 1, l. 8.  
 WRAY, *v.* 11256. *as WRATE.*  
 WRACHE, *n. SAX.* Revenge. 14521. 14533.  
 WRENCHES, *n. pl. SAX.* Frauds; stratagems. 16848.  
 WREST, *v. SAX.* To twist. B. K. 48. *The nightingale with so great might hire voice began out wrest.* To turn forcibly. T. iv. 1427.  
 WRETCHES, *Bo. ii. pr. 7.* should probably be WRETCHED.  
 WRETHEN, *part. pa. of WRITH. P. l. 57.* *Wrethen in fere;* Twisted together. In Urry's Edit. it is printed—*W'thin in fere.*  
 WRIT, *v.* 3503, 7. *as WRATE.*  
 WRIT, *v. SAX.* To cover. 7409. R. 6793.—To turn; to incline. 17211. T. ii. 906.  
 WRIGHT, *n. SAX.* A workman. 616.  
 WRINE, *for WRIEN, inf. m. of WRIS. R. 6684.*  
 WRING, *v. SAX.* To squeeze so as to express moisture. 13796.  
 WRITH, *v. SAX.* To twist; to turn aside. 3283. T. iv. 986.  
 WRITHING, *n.* A turning. 10441.  
 WRONGE, *part. pa. of WRING. His hondes wronge.* T. iv. 1171. Later writers have used the same expression of distress. I suppose it means to clasp the hands, and squeeze them strongly one against the other. I do not recollect a similar expression in any other language.  
 WROTE, *v. SAX.* To dig with the snout, as swine do. P. 149, col. 2, l. 30. *Or like a worm, that wrotheth in a tree.* Lydg. *Trag.* 33.  
 WROUGHT, *part. pa. of WORE, v. SAX.* Made. 11184.  
 Y.

Y at the beginning of many words, especially *verbs* and *participles*, is merely a corruption of the Saxon *Ye*, which has remained uncorrupted in the other collateral branches of the Gothic language. What the power of it may have been originally, it is impossible, I apprehend, now to determine. In Chaucer it does not appear to have any effect upon the sense of a word; so that there seems to be no necessity for inserting in a Glossary such words as *ybleased*, *ygranted*, &c. which differ not in signification from *bleased*, *granted*, &c. Some, however, of this sort are inserted, which may serve at least to shew more clearly the extent of this practice in Chaucer's time. Several other words are shortly explained under this letter, of which a more full explanation may be found under their respective *second* letters.

YA, *adv. SAX.* Yea. 3455. 8231. It is used emphatically with both. 4827. *Ya, bothe younge and olde.* 6832. *Ye, bothe faire and good.*  
 YAF, *pa. l. of YEVE, v. SAX.* Gave. 498. 1902.  
 YALTE, *for YELTE. R. 4904.* *Yaltte him.* Yieldeth himself. *Scend. Orig.*  
 YARE, *adj. SAX.* Ready. L. W. 2238.  
 YATE, *n. SAX.* A gate. 8889.  
 YAVE, *pa. l. of YEVE.* Gave. 304. 602.  
 YNE, *part. pa.* Been. 10775.  
 Y-NEIED, *part. pa.* Buried. 948.  
 Y-FETTE, 981. See the note, and R. 837.  
 Y-BLENT, *part. pa. of BLEND. R. 1610.* Blinded.  
 Y-BLENT, *part. pa. of BLENCH. 3751.* Shrunk; started aside. See the note on ver. 1080.  
 Y-BLINT, *part. pa.* 3806. Blinded.  
 Y-BORE, *part. pa. of BERE.* 380. Born; carried.  
 Y-BOURDED, *part. pa.* Jested. A. F. 589.  
 Y-BRENT, *part. pa. of BREYNE.* 918. Burned.  
 Y-CHAPPED, *part. pa.* 368. Furnished with chaps. From *chappe. Fr.*  
 Y-CLOUTED, *part. pa.* R. 223. Wrapped in clouts, or rags.  
 Y-CORVEN, *part. pa.* 2015. Cut. See CORTEN.  
 Y-CUPLED, *part. pa.* 9095.

Y-CRASHED, *part. pa.* Du. 384. Broken.  
 Y-DELED, *part. pa.* 7831. Distributed.  
 Y-DIGHT, *part. pa.* T. v. 541. Adorned.  
 Y-DO, *part. pa.* 2536. Done; finished.  
 Y-DRAWN, *part. pa.* 946. Drawn.  
 YE, *adv. SAX.* as YA. 2212. *Ye eris.* T. ii. 827. Ye certainly.  
 YEDDINGS, 237. See the note. The Prompt. Part. makes *Yedding* to be the same as *Geste*, which it explains thus. *GERST OR ROMANCE. Geste.* So that of *Yeddings* may perhaps mean of *story-telling*.  
 YEDN, *part. pa. of YEDN, v. SAX.* Went. 13248. 16702.  
 YEFTE, *n. SAX.* A gift. 9185. YEFTE, *pl.* 2200. 9186.  
 YELDE, *v. SAX.* To yield; to give. 6494. 8719.—To pay. 5712. *God yelde you!* 7759. *God reward you!*  
 YELLEDEN, *pa. l. pl. of YELLE, v. SAX.* 15325.  
 YELPE, *v. SAX.* To prate; to boast. 2240. T. iii. 308.  
 YELTE, *for YELDEN. T. l. 386.*  
 YEMAN, *n. SAX.* A servant of middling rank; a bailiff. 6962. 6977.—THE KNIGHTS YEMEN. See his CHARACTER, ver. 101—17.—THE CHAMBER YEMAN. See his PROLOGUE, ver. 10022—16187. YEMEN, *pl.* 2311. 2730. See the *n.* on ver. 101.  
 YEMANRIE, *n.* The rank of Yeoman. See the *n.* on ver. 161.  
 YERDE, *n. SAX.* A rod, or staff. 149. T. ii. 154. *Under the yerde.* 13027. See the note.  
 YERE, *for YERRE, n. pl. SAX.* Years. 4919. 11125.  
 YERRE, *adj. SAX.* Brisk; eager. 3257.  
 — *adv.* Briskly; eagerly. 6575. 12352. Early. T. iii. 337. *As yerre.* T. iii. 151. T. iv. 112. Soon; immediately.  
 — *v.* To desire; to seek eagerly. T. iii. 152. T. iv. 198.  
 YERNING, *n.* Activity; diligence. R. 8951. *Esse?* Orig.  
 YETEN, *part. pa.* R. 6702. Gotten.  
 YEVE, *v. SAX.* To give. 507. 613.  
 YEVEN, YEVE, *part. pa.* Given. 1068. 1091. 7125.  
 Y-FALLE, *part. pa.* 25. Fallen.  
 Y-FEINED, *part. pa.* 8405. *Lordes hestes may not ben yfeined.* The commands of sovereigns may not be executed with a feigned, pretended zeal; they must be executed strictly and fully.  
 Y-FETTE, *part. pa.* 10488. Fetched.  
 Y-FONDEN, *part. pa.* 10154. Found.  
 Y-FOSTERED, *part. pa.* 3944. Educated.  
 Y-FRETEN, *part. pa.* L. W. 1949. Devoured.  
 Y-GOTEN, *part. pa.* 3564. Gotten.  
 Y-GLOSED, *part. pa.* 16983. Flattered.  
 Y-GLUED, *part. pa.* 10496. Glowed; fastened with glew.  
 Y-GO, *part. pa.* 288. Gone.  
 Y-GRAVE, *part. pa.* 6078. Buried.  
 Y-HALLOWED, *part. pa.* L. W. 1869. Kept holy.  
 Y-HERD, *part. pa.* 3736. Covered with hair.  
 Y-HOLD, *part. pa.* 1309. L. W. 1952. Beholden.  
 Y-JAFED, *part. pa.* 17094. Tricked; deceived.  
 Y-LESSED, *part. pa.* T. i. 1090. Relieved. See LISED.  
 Y-LICHE, Y-LIKE, *adj. SAX.* Resembling. 594. 1541. Equal. 2736.  
 — *adv. SAX.* Equally; alike. 2528. 7796.  
 Y-LINED, *part. pa.* 6516. Lined; caught, as with bird-lime.  
 Y-LOGGED, *part. pa.* 14997. Lodged.  
 Y-MASKED, *part. pa.* T. iii. 1740. Mashed, or Meshed. *Masche. BELA. Macula retia.* Kilian.  
 Y-MEINT, *part. pa.* 2172. Mingled.  
 Y-MELL, *prep. SAX.* Among. 4169.  
 Y-MENEUS, *pr. n.* Hymeneus. 9604.  
 Y-NOUGH, Y-NOW, *adv. SAX.* Enough. 11020. 13988.  
 YOLDEN, *part. pa. of YELDE.* Given. 3054.—Yielded. T. iii. 1217.—Repaid. R. 4556.  
 YONGHDE, *n. SAX.* Youth. R. 351.  
 YORE, *adv. SAX.* Of a long time. 4692. 7944.—A little before. 9280.—Yere ago. 13639. Long ago. *In olde times yore.* 9016. *Of time yore.* 11275.  
 YOVE, *p. l. of YEVE.* C. L. 688. Gave.  
 YOURRE, *pron. poss. SAX.* is used for YOURRES. 16716. T. ii. 587. L. W. 683. C. L. 855.  
 YOURRES, *pron. poss. SAX.* used generally, when the noun, to which it belongs, is understood, or placed before it. 7493. 8379. 10911. *He was an old felaw of yourres.* 12926. He was an old companion of yours, i. e. *of, or among, your companions.* See the Essay, &c. n. 29.

- YOUTHED, n. Saxon. Youth. R. 4931.  
 YOXE, v. Saxon. Tohickup. 4149. Yvryn. *Singultio*. Prompt.  
 Part.  
 Y-PICKED, part. pa. 367. Picked; spruce.  
 Y-QUINT, part. pa. 3758. Quenched.  
 Y-RIGHT, pa. l. F. III. 784. Reached.  
 Y-REKKE. 3880. seems to be put for the old part. pr.  
 Y-REKEND. Reeking.  
 YREN, n. Saxon. Iron. 1906. 6488.  
 Y-RENT, part. pa. 5263. Torn.  
 Y-RONNE, YRONNE, part. pa. 3891. 3698. Run.  
 Y-SATELED, part. pa. 10279. Settled; established.  
 YSE, n. Saxon. Ice. F. III. 40.  
 Y-SERVED, part. pa. Treated. 905.  
 Y-SETTE, part. pa. 10487. Set; placed. Appointed. 1637.  
 Y-SHENT, part. pa. 6894. Damaged.  
 Y-SHOVE, part. pa. L. W. 738. Pushed forwards.  
 Y-SLAW, part. pa. 945. 4904. Slain.  
 YSOPE, pr. n. M. 110, col. 2, l. 46. So the name of the Fa-  
 bulist was commonly written, notwithstanding the dis-  
 tinction pointed out by the following technical verse.

"Ysopus est herba, sed Æsopus dat bona verba."

In this and many other passages, which are quoted from Æsop by writers of the middle ages, it is not easy to say what author they mean. The Greek collections of fables, which are now current under the name of Æsop, were unknown, I apprehend, in this part of the world, at the time that *Melibes* was written. Phædrus too had disappeared. Avienus indeed was very generally read. He is quoted as Æsop by John of Salisbury, Polycrat. l. vii. *Ut Æsopo, vel Aricino credas.*

But the name of Æsop was chiefly appropriated to the anonymous \* author of 60 fables, in Elegiac metre, which

\* Several improbable conjectures, which have been made with respect to the real name and age of this writer, may be seen in the *Menagiana*, Vol. i. p. 172. and in Fabric. *Bibl. Lat.* Vol. i. p. 376. Ed. Patav. In the edition of these fables in 1503, the commentator, of no great authority, I confess, mentions an opinion of some people, that "*Gallerus Angelicus fecit hunc librum sub nomine Æsopi.*" I suppose the person meant was *Guallerus Anglicus*, who had been tutor to William II. King of Sicily, and was Archbishop of Palermo about the year 1170. I cannot believe that they were much older than his time; and in the beginning of the next century they seem to be mentioned under the name of Æsopus, among the books commonly read in schools, by Eberhardus Bethuniensis in his *Labyrinthus*. Tract. iii. *de Veridicatione*, v. ii. See *Leyser, Hist. Poet. Med. Ævi.* p. 826. About the middle of the same century (the xiiiith) Vincent of Beauvais in his *Speculum Histor.* l. iii. c. 2. gives an account of Æsop, and a large specimen of his fables, *quas Romulus quidam de Græco in Latinum transtulit, ad filium suum Tyberium dirigit.* They are all, as I remember, in the printed Romulus.

Soon after the invention of printing, that larger collection of the fables of Æsop was made and published in Germany, which has been mentioned in this Vol. p. 302. It is divided into vi books, to which is prefixed a life of Æsop *e Græco-Latino per Rimecium facta*. The three first are composed of the 60 Elegiac fables of the metrical Æsopus, with a few trifling variations; and to each of them is subjoined a fable on the same subject in prose from Romulus. Book iv. contains the remaining fables of Romulus in prose only. The vth Book has not more than one or two fables which had ever appeared before under the name of Æsop. The rest are taken from the *Gesta Romanorum*, the *Calila u Damnah* (see p. 201. note \*; and p. 304. note †) and other obscure authors. The vith and last Book contains 17 fables with the following title: *Symonius fabula nove Æsopi ex translatione Rimecii*. There has been a great diversity of opinion among learned men concerning this *Rimecius* or *Rimecius* (see Pref. Nilant.), while some have confounded him with the fictitious Romulus, and others have considered him as the Editor of this collection. I have no doubt but the person meant is that *Rimecius* who translated the life of Æsop by Plautus and 95 of his fables, from the Greek into Latin, about the middle of the xvth Century. See Fabric. *Bibl. Med. Æt.* la v. *Rimecius*. In his translation of the Epistles of Hippocrates, MS. Harl 3527. he is styled in one place *Verdenis*, and in another *Custionensis*. All the fables from *Rimecius* which compose this vith Book, as well as the life of Æsop, which is professedly taken from *Rimecius*, are to be found in this translation by *Rimecius*. There is an Edition of it printed at Milan about 1480; but it might very possibly have

are printed in Novcllet's collection under the title of "*Anonymous fabula Æsopica.*" I have seen an Edition of them in 1803, by Wynkyn de Worde, in which they are entitled simply "*Æsopi fabula.*" The subjects are for the most part plainly taken from Phædrus; but it may be doubted whether the author copied from the original work of Phædrus, or from some version of it into Latin prose. Several versions of this kind are still extant in MS. One of very considerable antiquity has been published by Nilant, Lugd. Bat. 1709, under the title of *Fabula Antiqua*, together with another of a later date, which is pretended to have been made from the Greek by an Emperor Romulus, for the use of his son Tiberinus. They all shew evident marks of being derived from one common origin, like what has been observed of the several Greek collections of Æsopian fables in prose (*Dissert. de Bobris. Lond. 1776.*); like them too they differ very much, one from another, in style, order of fables, and many little particulars; and, what is most material, each of them generally contains a few fables, either invented or stolen by its respective compiler, which are not to be found in the other collections; so that it is often impracticable to verify a quotation from Æsop in the writers of Chaucer's time, unless we happen to light upon the identical book of fables which the writer who quotes had before him.

I have printed in the Discourse, &c. n. 29. a fable of the *Cock and the Fox*, from the French *Esopo de Marie*, which is not to be found in any other collection that I have seen, and which, I suppose, furnished Chaucer with the subject of his *Nonnes Preestes tale*. In the same French Æsop, and in a Latin MS. *Bibl. Reg.* 15 A. vii. there is a fable, which, I think, might have given the hint for Prior's *Ladle*. "A country fellow one day laid hold of a faery (*un folet*, Fa.), who, in order to be set at liberty, gave him three wishes. The man goes home, and gives two of them to his wife. Soon after, as they are dining upon a chine of mutton, the wife feels a longing for the marrow, and not being able to get it, she wishes that her husband had an iron beak (*long com il Wittecoes*. Fa. long as the Woodcock) to extract this marrow for her. An excrescence being immediately formed accordingly, the husband angrily wishes it off from his own face upon his wife's.—"And here the story is unluckily defective in both copies; but it is easy to suppose, that the third and last remaining wish was employed by the wife for her own relief.

A fable upon a similar idea, in French verse, may be seen in MS. Bodl. 1637; the same, as I apprehend, with one in the King's library at Paris (MS. n. 7980. fol. 180.) which is entitled "*Les quatre souhaits de Sains Martin.*" See *Fabliaux*, &c. T. III. p. 311. The vanity of human wishes is there exposed with more pleasantry than in the story just cited, but as it often happens, with much less decency.

- Y-SOWE, part. pa. 5633. Sown.  
 Y-SPREINT, part. pa. 2171. Sprinkled.  
 Y-STICKED, part. pa. 1567. Sticked; thrust.  
 Y-STOVEN, part. pa. 2016. Dead.  
 Y-TAKE, part. pa. 3353. Taken.  
 Y-TYED, part. pa. 430. Tied.  
 Y-TRESPASED, part. pa. M. 114, col. i, l. 52. Trespased.  
 Y-VANISHED, part. pa. 6378.  
 YVEL, adj. Saxon. Bad; unfortunate. 4172. 4182. YVEL, adv. Saxon. Ill. 1129. 3715.  
 YVOIRE, n. Fr. Ivory. Du. 946.  
 Y-WIMPLED, part. pa. Covered with a wimple. 472.  
 Y-WIS, adv. Saxon. Certainly. 3777. 3705.  
 Y-WRAKE, pa. t. T. v. 1467. Wreaked; revenged.  
 Y-WRIK, part. pa. 2406. Covered.

## Z.

ZRUKIS, pr. n. 11980. A Grecian painter.

... come into the hands of the German collector in MS. some years sooner, as the first translations of Greek authors were eagerly sought after and circulated through Europe at that time, when very few persons were capable of reading the original.

# WORDS AND PHRASES NOT UNDERSTOOD.

Afers. R. 4073.  
 Agathon, *pr. n.* L. W. 826.  
 Blakeberiest. 12340.  
 Broken harm. 9229.  
 Cankedort. T. H. 1752.  
 Carrenare. Du. 1629.  
 Conalte. C. D. 1238.  
 Cost. 1489.  
 Countour. 361.  
 Cuppes. To turnen c. 2626.  
 Cytherus, *pr. n.* F. III. 137.  
 Douced. F. III. 131.  
 Dulcarnon. T. H. 933. 5.  
 Durense. C. D. 1129.  
 Eclymjastere, *pr. n.* Du. 177.  
 Farewell feblefare. R. 5510. T. III. 863.  
 Fortenid cress. R. 4675.  
 Frappe. T. H. 411.  
 Gattothed. 470 6183.  
 Gnoffe. 3188.  
 Hawebako. 4515.  
 Hermes Ballenus, *pr. n.* F. III. 181.  
 Hugest and Collo. T. L. B. II. p. 499.  
 Hyghet. F. III. 1062.  
 Iuck of Dover. 4345.  
 Kirked. R. 3137.  
 Lunote, *pr. n.* F. III. 184.

Louke. 4413.  
 Madrian. 13898.  
 Parodie. T. v. 1547.  
 Pavade. 3927.  
 Paysaunce. C. D. 1673.  
 Pell. F. III. 220.  
 Popper. 3929.  
 Pouder marchant. 323.  
 Proserus, *pr. n.* F. III. 138.  
 Radevora. L. W. 2341.  
 Raket. T. iv. 461.  
 Rewel bone. 13807.  
 Sered pokettes, or pottes. 16276.  
 Span-newe. T. III. 1671.  
 Squalmous. 3337.  
 Temen. F. III. 654.  
 Tidife. 16982.  
 Trippe. 7329.  
 Viretote. 368.  
 Vitremite. 14378.  
 Vounde stone. R. 7113.  
 Wades bote. 9298.  
 Whelpul-tree. 2925.  
 Winder, Wintred. R. 1018, 20.  
 Zansis, *pr. n.* T. iv. 414.  
 Zodeorica, *pr. n.* T. L. B. I. p. 485. b.

LONDON:

BRADBURY, AGNEW, & CO. LIMD., PRINTERS, WHITEFRIARS.

# THE CARISBROOKE LIBRARY.

EDITED BY HENRY MORLEY, LL.D.

---

*In Large Crown 8vo, cut or uncut edges, 3s. 6d. ; or Roxburghe binding, gilt top, 5s.*

---

## LIST OF THE SERIES.

THE TALE OF A TUB, AND OTHER WORKS.

By JONATHAN SWIFT.

TALES OF THE SEVEN DEADLY SINS.

Being the *Confessio Amantis* of JOHN GOWER.

THE EARLIER LIFE AND WORKS OF DANIEL DE FOE.

EARLY PROSE ROMANCES.

ENGLISH PROSE WRITINGS OF JOHN MILTON.

PARODIES AND OTHER PIECES OF BURLESQUE

TASSO'S JERUSALEM DELIVERED.

Translated by FAIRFAX.

LONDON UNDER ELIZABETH.

A Survey Written in the Year 1598 by JOHN STOW.

MASQUES AND ENTERTAINMENTS.

By BEN JONSON.

IRELAND UNDER ELIZABETH AND JAMES THE FIRST.

Described by EDMUND SPENSER, by SIR JOHN DAVIES (Attorney-General for Ireland under James the First), and by FYNES MORYSON (Secretary to the Lord Mountjoy, Lord Deputy).

GULLIVER'S TRAVELS.

Exactly reprinted from the First Edition ; and other Works. By JONATHAN SWIFT.

MEMOIRS OF EDWARD GIBBON.

Written by Himself.

MACHIAVELLI'S HISTORY OF FLORENCE.

CHARACTER WRITINGS OF THE SEVENTEENTH CENTURY :

Including those of Sir THOMAS OVERBURY, Dr. JOHN EARLE, and SAMUEL BUTLER.

[On March 25.

---

GEORGE ROUTLEDGE & SONS, LIMITED,  
LONDON, GLASGOW, MANCHESTER, AND NEW YORK.



# ROUTLEDGE'S POCKET LIBRARY.

A SERIES OF THE MASTERPIECES OF FICTION AND POETRY.

16mo, cloth, marbled sides, cut or uncut edges, 1s. With gilt top, 1s. 6d.  
Red Roan, limp, gilt edges, 2s. 6d.

"A series of beautiful little books, tastefully bound."—*Times*.

"Routledge's Perfect Pocket Library."—*Punch*.

- |                                                |                                                                  |
|------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. BRET HARTE'S POEMS.                         | 31. MRS. SHELLEY'S FRANKENSTEIN.                                 |
| 2. THACKERAY'S PARIS SKETCH BOOK.              | 32. TALES FROM PICKWICK. With Illustrations by E. J. WHEELER.    |
| 3. HOOD'S COMIC POEMS.                         | 33. ARTEMUS WARD, HIS BOOK.                                      |
| 4. DICKENS'S CHRISTMAS CAROL.                  | 34. REJECTED ADDRESSES.                                          |
| 5. POEMS BY OLIVER WENDELL HOLMES.             | 35. LORD BYRON'S CHILDE HAROLD'S PILGRIMAGE.                     |
| 6. WASHINGTON IRVING'S SKETCH BOOK.            | 36. DICKENS'S PICTURES FROM ITALY.                               |
| 7. MACAULAY'S LAYS OF ANCIENT ROME.            | 37. CLEMENT SCOTT'S LAYS AND LYRICS.                             |
| 8. GOLDSMITH'S VICAR OF WAKEFIELD.             | 38. SHELLEY'S EARLY POEMS.                                       |
| 9. HOOD'S SERIOUS POEMS.                       | 39. CARMEN. By PROSPER MÉRIMÉE.                                  |
| 10. LORD LYTTON'S THE COMING RACE.             | 40. SCOTT'S MARMION.                                             |
| 11. BIGLOW PAPERS. By J. R. LOWELL.            | 41. DICKENS'S THE BATTLE OF LIFE.                                |
| 12. MANON LESCAUT. By the ABBÉ PRÉVOST.        | 42. THE INGOLDSBY LEGENDS. 1st Series.                           |
| 13. THE SONG OF HIAWATHA. By H. W. LONGFELLOW. | 43. Ditto. 2nd "                                                 |
| 14. STERNE'S SENTIMENTAL JOURNEY.              | 44. Ditto. 3rd "                                                 |
| 15. DICKENS'S THE CHIMES.                      | 45. TALFOURD'S TRAGEDIES.                                        |
| 16. MOORE'S IRISH MELODIES & SONGS.            | 46. SCOTT'S THE LORD OF THE ISLES.                               |
| 17. FIFTY "BAB" BALLADS.                       | 47. COLERIDGE'S POETICAL WORKS.                                  |
| 18. POEMS. By E. BARRETT BROWNING.             | 48. THE TASK. By COWPER.                                         |
| 19. THE LUCK OF ROARING CAMP. By BRET HARTE.   | 49. SELECTIONS FROM KEATS.                                       |
| 20. EDGAR ALLAN POE'S POEMS.                   | 50. WORDSWORTH'S EARLY POEMS.                                    |
| 21. MILTON'S PARADISE LOST.                    | 51. WILL CARLETON'S FARM BALLADS.                                |
| 22. SCOTT'S LADY OF THE LAKE.                  | 52. EMERSON'S POEMS.                                             |
| 23. CAMPBELL'S POETICAL WORKS.                 | 53. LOCKHART'S SPANISH BALLADS.                                  |
| 24. LORD BYRON'S WERNER.                       | 54. ROGERS'S POEMS.                                              |
| 25. THE BOOK OF HUMOUR, WIT, AND WISDOM.       | 55. ROGERS'S ITALY.                                              |
| 26. LONGFELLOW'S HYPERION.                     | 56. LONGFELLOW'S LATEST POEMS.                                   |
| 27. DICKENS'S CRICKET ON THE HEARTH.           | 57. DANTE'S INFERNO. LONGFELLOW'S Translation.                   |
| 28. GRAY'S POETICAL WORKS.                     | 58. DANTE'S PURGATORIO. Ditto.                                   |
| 29. WILLIS'S POETICAL WORKS.                   | 59. DANTE'S PARADISO. Ditto.                                     |
| 30. THACKERAY'S FROM CORNHILL TO CAIRO.        | 60. PAUL AND VIRGINIA.                                           |
|                                                | 61. THE HAUNTED MAN AND THE GHOST'S BARGAIN. By CHARLES DICKENS. |

Price 12s. 6d. each.

DANTE'S DIVINE COMÉDY. LONGFELLOW'S Translation. 3 Volumes, Calf Antique.

THE INGOLDSBY LEGENDS. With Reproductions of the original Illustrations. 3 Volumes, Calf Antique.

GEORGE ROUTLEDGE AND SONS, LIMITED,  
LONDON, GLASGOW, MANCHESTER, AND NEW YORK.

# MORLEY'S UNIVERSAL LIBRARY.

*In 63 Volumes, price 1s. each, or in parchment binding, 1s. 6d. May now also be had with the Books arranged in Historical order, and uniformly bound in 21 Volumes, price 3s. 6d. each. The complete set of 21 Volumes, £3 13s. 6d.; or, in oak bookcase, 30½ x 17 inches, £4 10s.*

## LIST OF THE VOLUMES.

- vol.  
I. HOMER'S ILIAD. THE PLAYS OF ÆSCHYLUS AND SOPHOCLES. [B.C. 800 to B.C. 405.]
- II. THE PLAYS OF EURIPIDES. [B.C. 455 to B.C. 408.]
- III. THREE PLAYS OF ARISTOPHANES. THE POLITICS OF ARISTOTLE. VIRGIL'S ÆNEID. [B.C. 425 to B.C. 19.]
- IV. HITOPADESA. MEDÆVAL TALES. THE CHRONICLE OF THE CID. [A.D. 1100 to A.D. 1473.]
- V. THE DIVINE COMEDY and THE BANQUET OF DANTE. BOCCACCIO'S DECAMERON. [A.D. 1300 to A.D. 1350.]
- VI. THOMAS À KEMPIS. CAVENDISH'S LIFE OF WOLSEY. IDEAL COMMONWEALTHS (namely, PLUTARCH'S LIFE OF LYCURGUS, MORE'S UTOPIA, BACON'S NEW ATLANTIS, and CAMPANELLA'S CITY OF THE SUN). [A.D. 1425 to A.D. 1630.]
- VII. MACHIAVELLI'S PRINCE. RABELAIS' GARGANTUA AND PANTAGRUEL. [A.D. 1513 to A.D. 1553.]
- VIII. PLAYS AND POEMS BY GEORGE PEELE. DRAYTON'S BARONS' WARS, HOOKER'S ECCLESIASTICAL POLITY: Books I.—IV. [A.D. 1584 to A.D. 1603.]
- IX. BACON'S ESSAYS. PLAYS AND POEMS BY BEN JONSON. HERRICK'S HESPERIDES. [A.D. 1597 to A.D. 1648.]
- X. DON QUIXOTE. BURLESQUE PLAYS AND POEMS (Tom Thumb, BOMBASTES FURIOSO, REJECTED ADDRESSES, etc.) [A.D. 1605 to A.D. 1825.]
- XI. HOBBS'S LEVIATHAN. HARRINGTON'S OCEANA. FAMOUS PAMPHLETS (namely, MILTON'S AREOPAGITICA, SEXBY'S KILLING NO MURDER, DEFOE'S SHORTEST WAY WITH THE DISSENTERS, STEELE'S CRISIS, WHATELY'S HISTORIC DOUBTS RELATIVE TO BUONAPARTE. [A.D. 1644 to A.D. 1795.]
- XII. BUTLER'S HUDIBRAS. IZAAC WALTON'S LIVES OF JOHN DONNE, HENRY WOTTON, RICHARD HOOKER, AND GEORGE HERBERT. PLAYS FROM MOLIÈRE. By ENGLISH DRAMATISTS. [A.D. 1663 to A.D. 1753.]
- XIII. TWO TREATISES ON CIVIL GOVERNMENT (by JOHN LOCKE). SIR ROBERT FILMER'S PATRIARCHA. LIFE OF THOMAS ELLWOOD. DEFOE'S HISTORY OF THE PLAGUE YEAR. [A.D. 1680 to A.D. 1722.]
- XIV. BUTLER'S ANALOGY OF RELIGION. VOLTAIRE'S CANDIDE. JOHNSON'S RASSELAS. GOLDSMITH'S VICAR OF WAKEFIELD. [A.D. 1736 to A.D. 1726.]
- XV. STERNE'S TRISTRAM SHANDY. TWO SPEECHES ON CONCILIATION WITH AMERICA, and TWO LETTERS ON IRISH QUESTIONS (by EDMUND BURKE). SHERIDAN'S PLAYS. [A.D. 1759 to A.D. 1779.]
- XVI. THE TWO PARTS OF GOETHE'S FAUST (with MARLOWE'S FAUSTUS). SCHILLER'S POEMS AND BALLADS (Translated by EDWARD, LORD LYTTON). [A.D. 1780 to A.D. 1831.]
- XVII. TALES OF TERROR AND WONDER (by M. G. LEWIS). CONFESSIONS OF AN ENGLISH OPIUM-EATER (THOMAS DE QUINCEY). ESSAYS OF ELIA (CHARLES LAMB). [A.D. 1800 to A.D. 1824.]
- XVIII. SOUTHEY'S LIFE OF NELSON. SCOTT'S DEMONOLOGY AND WITCHCRAFT. COLERIDGE'S TABLE-TALK. [A.D. 1813 to A.D. 1834.]
- XIX. STORIES OF IRELAND (by MARIA EDGEWORTH). POPULAR SONGS OF IRELAND (Collected by THOMAS CROFTON CROKER). TRADITIONAL TALES OF THE ENGLISH AND SCOTTISH PEASANTRY (by ALLAN CUNNINGHAM). [A.D. 1800 to A.D. 1839.]
- XX. PRAED'S ESSAYS. WALKER'S ORIGINAL; and COBBETTS ADVICE TO YOUNG MEN. [A.D. 1821 to A.D. 1835.]
- XXI. VESTIGES OF THE NATURAL HISTORY OF CREATION. ESSAYS, REPRESENTATIVE MEN, and SOCIETY AND SOLITUDE (by R. W. EMERSON). A MISCELLANY (Containing RICHARD OF BURY'S PHILOBIBLON; THE BASILIKON DORON OF KING JAMES I.; MONKS AND GIANTS, by JOHN HOOKHAM FRERE; THE CYPRESS CROWN, by DE LA MOTTE FOUQUÉ; and THE LIBRARY, by GEORGE CRABBE).

GEORGE ROUTLEDGE AND SONS, LIMITED,  
LONDON, GLASGOW, MANCHESTER, AND NEW YORK.

# MORLEY'S UNIVERSAL LIBRARY.

Fifteen Volumes in an Oak Bookcase, 18×10 inches. Price £1 1s.

---

## MORLEY'S UNIVERSAL LIBRARY.

*1s. each, crown 8vo, cloth, cut or uncut edges; or, 1s. 6d.  
Parchment Back, gilt top, uncut edges.*

---

1. SHERIDAN'S PLAYS.
  2. PLAYS FROM MOLIÈRE. By ENGLISH DRAMATISTS.
  3. MARLOWE'S FAUSTUS AND GOETHE'S FAUST.
  4. CHRONICLE OF THE CID.
  5. RABELAIS' GARGANTUA, AND THE HEROIC DEEDS OF PANTAGRUEL.
  6. THE PRINCE, and other PIECES. By MACHIAVELLI.
  7. BACON'S ESSAYS.
  8. DE FOE'S JOURNAL OF THE PLAGUE YEAR.
  9. LOCKE ON CIVIL GOVERNMENT; WITH SIR ROBERT FILMER'S PATRIARCHA.
  10. BUTLER'S ANALOGY OF RELIGION.
  11. DRYDEN'S VIRGIL.
  12. SIR WALTER SCOTT'S DEMONOLOGY AND WITCHCRAFT.
  13. HERRICK'S HESPERIDES.
  14. COLERIDGE'S TABLE TALK: WITH THE ANCIENT MARINER AND CHRISTABEL.
  15. BOCCACCIO'S DECAMERON.
  16. STERNE'S TRISTRAM SHANDY.
  17. HOMER'S ILIAD. Translated by GEORGE CHAPMAN.
  18. MEDIEVAL TALES: TALES FROM THE GESTA ROMANORUM, ETC.
  19. VOLTAIRE'S CANDIDE; AND JOHNSON'S RASSELAS.
  20. PLAYS AND POEMS BY BEN JONSON.
  21. HOBBS'S LEVIATHAN.
  22. BUTLER'S HUDIBRAS.
  23. IDEAL COMMONWEALTHS: MORE'S UTOPIA; BACON'S NEW ATLANTIS; CAMPANELLA'S CITY OF THE SUN, ETC.
  24. CAVENDISH'S LIFE OF WOLSEY.
  - 25 and 26. DON QUIXOTE (Two Volumes).
  27. BURLESQUE PLAYS AND POEMS.
  28. DANTE'S DIVINE COMEDY. LONGFELLOW'S TRANSLATION.
  29. GOLDSMITH'S VICAR OF WAKEFIELD, PLAYS, AND POEMS.
- 

GEORGE ROUTLEDGE AND SONS, LIMITED,  
LONDON, GLASGOW, MANCHESTER, AND NEW YORK.

## MORLEY'S UNIVERSAL LIBRARY—*continued.*

30. HITOPADESA, BEING FABLES AND PROVERBS FROM THE SANSKRIT.
31. CHARLES LAMB'S ESSAYS OF ELIA.
32. THE HISTORY OF THOMAS ELLWOOD. Written by HIMSELF.
33. EMERSON'S ESSAYS, REPRESENTATIVE MEN AND SOCIETY AND SOLITUDE.
34. SOUTHEY'S LIFE OF NELSON.
35. DE QUINCEY'S OPIUM-EATER, SHAKESPEARE, GOETHE.
36. STORIES OF IRELAND. By MARIA EDGEWORTH.
37. THE PLAYS OF ARISTOPHANES. Translated by FRERE.
38. SPEECHES AND LETTERS. By EDMUND BURKE.
39. THOMAS À KEMPIS'S IMITATION OF CHRIST.
40. POPULAR SONGS OF IRELAND. Collected by THOMAS CROFTON CROKER.
41. THE PLAYS OF ÆSCHYLUS. Translated by R. POTTER.
42. GOETHE'S FAUST. The Second Part.
43. FAMOUS PAMPHLETS: MILTON'S AREOPAGITICA; WHATELY'S HISTORIC DOUBTS, ETC.
44. SOPHOCLES. Translated by FRANKLIN.
45. TALES OF TERROR AND WONDER. M. G. LEWIS.
46. VESTIGES OF THE NATURAL HISTORY OF CREATION.
47. THE BARONS' WARS, NYMPHIDIA, ETC. By MICHAEL DRAYTON.
48. COBBETT'S ADVICE TO YOUNG MEN.
49. THE BANQUET OF DANTE. Translated by ELIZABETH P. SAYER.
50. WALKER'S ORIGINAL.
51. POEMS AND BALLADS BY SCHILLER.
52. PEELE'S PLAYS AND POEMS.
53. HARRINGTON'S COMMONWEALTH OF OCEANA.
54. EURIPIDES—ALCESTIS, and other PLAYS.
55. ESSAYS. By WINTHROP MACKWORTH PRAED.
56. TRADITIONAL TALES. ALLAN CUNNINGHAM.
57. HOOKER'S ECCLESIASTICAL POLITY. Books I.—IV.
58. EURIPIDES—BACCHANALS, and other PLAYS.
59. WALTON'S LIVES OF DONNE, WOTTON, HOOKER, AND GEORGE HERBERT.
60. ARISTOTLE ON GOVERNMENT.
61. EURIPIDES—HECUBA, and other PLAYS.
62. RABELAIS' HEROIC DEEDS OF PANTAGRUEL. Books III., IV., and V.
63. A MISCELLANY. Containing PHILOBIBLON, by RICHARD DE BURY; BASILIKON DORON, THE CYPRESS CROWN, ETC.

---

GEORGE ROUTLEDGE AND SONS, LIMITED,  
LONDON, GLASGOW, MANCHESTER, AND NEW YORK.

AND WOMEN OF THE TIME.

A NEW AND ENLARGED EDITION IS NOW READY,

*In One Volume, Demy 8vo, cloth, price 15s.*

# AND WOMEN OF THE TIME

A Dictionary of Contemporaries,

CONTAINING

BIOGRAPHICAL NOTICES

OF

**THE MOST EMINENT CHARACTERS,**

WITH A NECROLOGY OF THOSE WHO HAVE DIED  
DURING THE PAST 30 YEARS.

THIRTEENTH EDITION.

*REVISED AND BROUGHT DOWN TO THE PRESENT TIME*

BY

G. WASHINGTON MOON, HON. F.R.S.I.

21

LONDON:

GEORGE ROUTLEDGE AND SONS, LIMITED,

BROADWAY, LUDGATE HILL.

GLASGOW, MANCHESTER, AND NEW YORK.

1891.

Griff. p. 211, - 213 - 217 - 219 - 299 - 365

Flowers. p. 221.

Seed. p. 221.

Recht. p. 85-

Lawrence. p. 82

Henry (Engl. ch. Robinson) p. 218.

80 81 82 (not 83)

St. Lawrence of the valley p. 82

By the old Lawrence. p. 82.

Chamisso & Petrarck. Ind. Des. p. 1x.

" p. 172

Guillaume de Machaut. p. 209

Guido delle Colonne p. 2171.

799      m  
TC





1

.







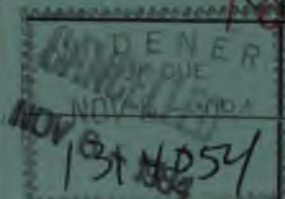
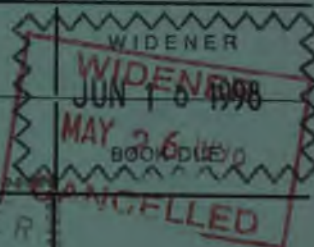
3 2044 019 821 925

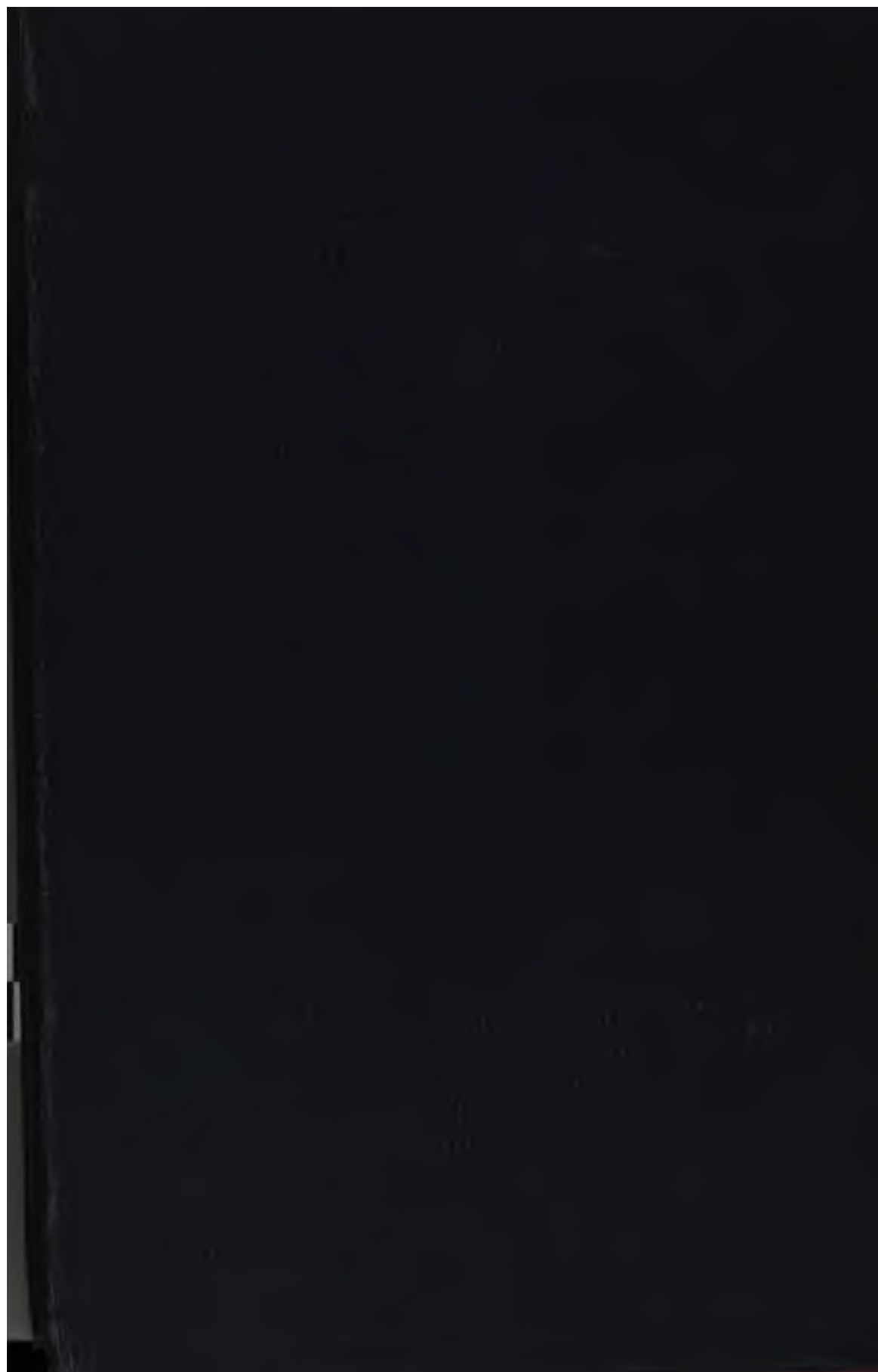
A. F. [illegible] IS  
NOT RETURNED TO THE LIBRARY ON  
OR BEFORE THE LAST DATE STAMPED  
BELOW:

5217065

APR 19 '78

MAR 25 '78







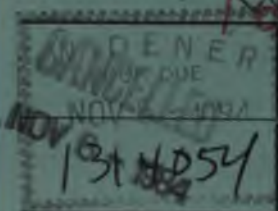
3 2044 019 821 925

A. F. [illegible] IS  
NOT RETURNED TO THE LIBRARY ON  
OR BEFORE THE LAST DATE STAMPED  
BELOW

5217065

APR 19 '76

MAR 23 '76



WIDENER  
CANCELLED

NOV 8 - 1987  
NOV 18 1987  
2426544

